Preface

Welcome to *College Physics*, an OpenStax resource. This textbook was written to increase student access to high-quality learning materials, maintaining highest standards of academic rigor at little to no cost.

About OpenStax

OpenStax is a nonprofit based at Rice University, and it’s our mission to improve student access to education. Our first openly licensed college textbook was published in 2012, and our library has since scaled to over 20 books for college and AP courses used by hundreds of thousands of students. Our adaptive learning technology, designed to improve learning outcomes through personalized educational paths, is being piloted in college courses throughout the country. Through our partnerships with philanthropic foundations and our alliance with other educational resource organizations, OpenStax is breaking down the most common barriers to learning and empowering students and instructors to succeed.

About OpenStax Resources

Customization

College Physics is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International (CC BY) license, which means that you can distribute, remix, and build upon the content, as long as you provide attribution to OpenStax and its content contributors.

Because our books are openly licensed, you are free to use the entire book or pick and choose the sections that are most relevant to the needs of your course. Feel free to remix the content by assigning your students certain chapters and sections in your syllabus, in the order that you prefer. You can even provide a direct link in your syllabus to the sections in the web view of your book.

Instructors also have the option of creating a customized version of their OpenStax book. The custom version can be made available to students in low-cost print or digital form through their campus bookstore. Visit your book page on openstax.org for more information.

Errata

All OpenStax textbooks undergo a rigorous review process. However, like any professional-grade textbook, errors sometimes occur. Since our books are web based, we can make updates periodically when deemed pedagogically necessary. If you have a correction to suggest, submit it through the link on your book page on openstax.org. Subject matter experts review all errata suggestions. OpenStax is committed to remaining transparent about all updates, so you will also find a list of past errata changes on your book page on openstax.org.

Format

You can access this textbook for free in web view or PDF through openstax.org, and in low-cost print and iBooks editions.

About *College Physics*

College Physics meets standard scope and sequence requirements for a two-semester introductory algebra-based physics course. The text is grounded in real-world examples to help students grasp fundamental physics concepts. It requires knowledge of algebra and some trigonometry, but not calculus. *College Physics* includes learning objectives, concept questions, links to labs and simulations, and ample practice opportunities for traditional physics application problems.

Coverage and Scope

College Physics is organized such that topics are introduced conceptually with a steady progression to precise definitions and analytical applications. The analytical aspect (problem solving) is tied back to the conceptual before moving on to another topic. Each introductory chapter, for example, opens with an engaging photograph relevant to the subject of the chapter and interesting applications that are easy for most students to visualize.

Chapter 29: Introduction to Quantum Physics
Chapter 30: Atomic Physics
Chapter 31: Radioactivity and Nuclear Physics
Chapter 32: Medical Applications of Nuclear Physics
Chapter 33: Particle Physics
Chapter 34: Frontiers of Physics
Appendix A: Atomic Masses
Appendix B: Selected Radioactive Isotopes
Appendix C: Useful Information
Appendix D: Glossary of Key Symbols and Notation

Concepts and Calculations

The ability to calculate does not guarantee conceptual understanding. In order to unify conceptual, analytical, and calculation skills within the learning process, we have integrated Strategies and Discussions throughout the text.

Modern Perspective

The chapters on modern physics are more complete than many other texts on the market, with an entire chapter devoted to medical applications of nuclear physics and another to particle physics. The final chapter of the text, “Frontiers of Physics,” is devoted to the most exciting endeavors in physics. It ends with a module titled “Some Questions We Know to Ask.”

Key Features

Modularity

This textbook is organized as a collection of modules that can be rearranged and modified to suit the needs of a particular professor or class. That being said, modules often contain references to content in other modules, as most topics in physics cannot be discussed in isolation.

Learning Objectives

Every module begins with a set of learning objectives. These objectives are designed to guide the instructor in deciding what content to include or assign, and to guide the student with respect to what he or she can expect to learn. After completing the module and end-of-module exercises, students should be able to demonstrate mastery of the learning objectives.

Call-Outs

Key definitions, concepts, and equations are called out with a special design treatment. Call-outs are designed to catch readers' attention, to make it clear that a specific term, concept, or equation is particularly important, and to provide easy reference for a student reviewing content.

Key Terms

Key terms are in bold and are followed by a definition in context. Definitions of key terms are also listed in the Glossary, which appears at the end of the module.

Worked Examples

Worked examples have four distinct parts to promote both analytical and conceptual skills. Worked examples are introduced in words, always using some application that should be of interest. This is followed by a Strategy section that emphasizes the concepts involved and how solving the problem

relates to those concepts. This is followed by the mathematical Solution and Discussion.

Many worked examples contain multiple-part problems to help the students learn how to approach normal situations, in which problems tend to have multiple parts. Finally, worked examples employ the techniques of the problem-solving strategies so that students can see how those strategies succeed in practice as well as in theory.

Problem-Solving Strategies

Problem-solving strategies are first presented in a special section and subsequently appear at crucial points in the text where students can benefit most from them. Problem-solving strategies have a logical structure that is reinforced in the worked examples and supported in certain places by line drawings that illustrate various steps.

Misconception Alerts

Students come to physics with preconceptions from everyday experiences and from previous courses. Some of these preconceptions are misconceptions, and many are very common among students and the general public. Some are inadvertently picked up through misunderstandings of lectures and texts. The Misconception Alerts feature is designed to point these out and correct them explicitly.

Take-Home Investigations

Take Home Investigations provide the opportunity for students to apply or explore what they have learned with a hands-on activity.

Things Great and Small

In these special topic essays, macroscopic phenomena (such as air pressure) are explained with submicroscopic phenomena (such as atoms bouncing off walls). These essays support the modern perspective by describing aspects of modern physics before they are formally treated in later chapters. Connections are also made between apparently disparate phenomena.

Simulations

Where applicable, students are directed to the interactive PHeT physics simulations developed by the University of Colorado. There they can further explore the physics concepts they have learned about in the module.

Summary

Module summaries are thorough and functional and present all important definitions and equations. Students are able to find the definitions of all terms and symbols as well as their physical relationships. The structure of the summary makes plain the fundamental principles of the module or collection and serves as a useful study guide.

Glossary

At the end of every module or chapter is a Glossary containing definitions of all of the key terms in the module or chapter.

End-of-Module Problems

At the end of every chapter is a set of Conceptual Questions and/or skills-based Problems & Exercises. Conceptual Questions challenge students' ability to explain what they have learned conceptually, independent of the mathematical details. Problems & Exercises challenge students to apply both concepts and skills to solve mathematical physics problems. Online,

every other problem includes an answer that students can reveal immediately by clicking on a “Show Solution” button.

In addition to traditional skills-based problems, there are three special types of end-of-module problems: Integrated Concept Problems, Unreasonable Results Problems, and Construct Your Own Problems. All of these problems are indicated with a subtitle preceding the problem.

Integrated Concept Problems

In Integrated Concept Problems, students are asked to apply what they have learned about two or more concepts to arrive at a solution to a problem. These problems require a higher level of thinking because, before solving a problem, students have to recognize the combination of strategies required to solve it.

Unreasonable Results

In Unreasonable Results Problems, students are challenged to not only apply concepts and skills to solve a problem, but also to analyze the answer with respect to how likely or realistic it really is. These problems contain a premise that produces an unreasonable answer and are designed to further emphasize that properly applied physics must describe nature accurately and is not simply the process of solving equations.

Construct Your Own Problem

These problems require students to construct the details of a problem, justify their starting assumptions, show specific steps in the problem’s solution, and finally discuss the meaning of the result. These types of problems relate well to both conceptual and analytical aspects of physics, emphasizing that physics must describe nature. Often they involve an integration of topics from more than one chapter. Unlike other problems, solutions are not provided since there is no single correct answer.

Instructors should feel free to direct students regarding the level and scope of their considerations. Whether the problem is solved and described correctly will depend on initial assumptions.

Additional Resources

Student and Instructor Resources

We've compiled additional resources for both students and instructors, including Getting Started Guides, an instructor solution manual, and PowerPoint slides. Instructor resources require a verified instructor account, which can be requested on your openstax.org log-in. Take advantage of these resources to supplement your OpenStax book.

Partner Resources

OpenStax Partners are our allies in the mission to make high-quality learning materials affordable and accessible to students and instructors everywhere. Their tools integrate seamlessly with our OpenStax titles at a low cost. To access the partner resources for your text, visit your book page on openstax.org.

About the Authors

Senior Contributing Authors

Paul Peter Urone, Professor Emeritus at California State University, Sacramento
Roger Hinrichs, State University of New York, College at Oswego

Contributing Authors

Kim Dirks, University of Auckland
Manjula Sharma, University of Sydney

Reviewers

Matthew Adams, Crafton Hills College, San Bernardino Community College District
Erik Christensen, South Florida Community College
Douglas Ingram, Texas Christian University
Eric Kincanon, Gonzaga University
Lee H. LaRue, Paris Junior College
Chuck Pearson, Virginia Intermont College
Marc Sher, College of William and Mary
Ulrich Zurcher, Cleveland State University

Introduction class="introduction"

Galaxies are as immense as atoms are small. Yet the same laws of physics describe both, and all the rest of nature—an indication of the underlying unity in the universe. The laws of physics are surprisingly few in number, implying an underlying simplicity to nature's apparent complexity. (credit: NASA, JPL-Caltech, P. Barmby, Harvard-Smithsonian Center for

Astrophysics
)

What is your first reaction when you hear the word “physics”? Did you imagine working through difficult equations or memorizing formulas that seem to have no real use in life outside the physics classroom? Many people come to the subject of physics with a bit of fear. But as you begin your exploration of this broad-ranging subject, you may soon come to realize that physics plays a much larger role in your life than you first thought, no matter your life goals or career choice.

For example, take a look at the image above. This image is of the Andromeda Galaxy, which contains billions of individual stars, huge clouds of gas, and dust. Two smaller galaxies are also visible as bright blue spots in the background. At a staggering 2.5 million light years from the Earth, this galaxy is the nearest one to our own galaxy (which is called the Milky Way). The stars and planets that make up Andromeda might seem to be the furthest thing from most people’s regular, everyday lives. But Andromeda is a great starting point to think about the forces that hold together the universe. The forces that cause Andromeda to act as it does are the same forces we contend with here on Earth, whether we are planning to send a rocket into space or simply raise the walls for a new home. The same gravity that causes the stars of Andromeda to rotate and revolve also causes water to flow over hydroelectric dams here on Earth. Tonight, take a moment to look up at the stars. The forces out there are the same as the ones here on Earth. Through a study of physics, you may gain a greater

understanding of the interconnectedness of everything we can see and know in this universe.

Think now about all of the technological devices that you use on a regular basis. Computers, smart phones, GPS systems, MP3 players, and satellite radio might come to mind. Next, think about the most exciting modern technologies that you have heard about in the news, such as trains that levitate above tracks, “invisibility cloaks” that bend light around them, and microscopic robots that fight cancer cells in our bodies. All of these groundbreaking advancements, commonplace or unbelievable, rely on the principles of physics. Aside from playing a significant role in technology, professionals such as engineers, pilots, physicians, physical therapists, electricians, and computer programmers apply physics concepts in their daily work. For example, a pilot must understand how wind forces affect a flight path and a physical therapist must understand how the muscles in the body experience forces as they move and bend. As you will learn in this text, physics principles are propelling new, exciting technologies, and these principles are applied in a wide range of careers.

In this text, you will begin to explore the history of the formal study of physics, beginning with natural philosophy and the ancient Greeks, and leading up through a review of Sir Isaac Newton and the laws of physics that bear his name. You will also be introduced to the standards scientists use when they study physical quantities and the interrelated system of measurements most of the scientific community uses to communicate in a single mathematical language. Finally, you will study the limits of our ability to be accurate and precise, and the reasons scientists go to painstaking lengths to be as clear as possible regarding their own limitations.

Physics: An Introduction

- Explain the difference between a principle and a law.
- Explain the difference between a model and a theory.

The flight formations of migratory birds such as Canada geese are governed by the laws of physics. (credit: David Merrett)

The physical universe is enormously complex in its detail. Every day, each of us observes a great variety of objects and phenomena. Over the centuries, the curiosity of the human race has led us collectively to explore and catalog a tremendous wealth of information. From the flight of birds to the colors of flowers, from lightning to gravity, from quarks to clusters of galaxies, from the flow of time to the mystery of the creation of the universe, we have asked questions and assembled huge arrays of facts. In the face of all these details, we have discovered that a surprisingly small and unified set of physical laws can explain what we observe. As humans, we make generalizations and seek order. We have found that nature is remarkably cooperative—it exhibits the *underlying order and simplicity* we so value.

It is the underlying order of nature that makes science in general, and physics in particular, so enjoyable to study. For example, what do a bag of chips and a car battery have in common? Both contain energy that can be

converted to other forms. The law of conservation of energy (which says that energy can change form but is never lost) ties together such topics as food calories, batteries, heat, light, and watch springs. Understanding this law makes it easier to learn about the various forms energy takes and how they relate to one another. Apparently unrelated topics are connected through broadly applicable physical laws, permitting an understanding beyond just the memorization of lists of facts.

The unifying aspect of physical laws and the basic simplicity of nature form the underlying themes of this text. In learning to apply these laws, you will, of course, study the most important topics in physics. More importantly, you will gain analytical abilities that will enable you to apply these laws far beyond the scope of what can be included in a single book. These analytical skills will help you to excel academically, and they will also help you to think critically in any professional career you choose to pursue. This module discusses the realm of physics (to define what physics is), some applications of physics (to illustrate its relevance to other disciplines), and more precisely what constitutes a physical law (to illuminate the importance of experimentation to theory).

Science and the Realm of Physics

Science consists of the theories and laws that are the general truths of nature as well as the body of knowledge they encompass. Scientists are continually trying to expand this body of knowledge and to perfect the expression of the laws that describe it. **Physics** is concerned with describing the interactions of energy, matter, space, and time, and it is especially interested in what fundamental mechanisms underlie every phenomenon. The concern for describing the basic phenomena in nature essentially defines the *realm of physics*.

Physics aims to describe the function of everything around us, from the movement of tiny charged particles to the motion of people, cars, and spaceships. In fact, almost everything around you can be described quite accurately by the laws of physics. Consider a smart phone ([link]). Physics describes how electricity interacts with the various circuits inside the device. This knowledge helps engineers select the appropriate materials and

circuit layout when building the smart phone. Next, consider a GPS system. Physics describes the relationship between the speed of an object, the distance over which it travels, and the time it takes to travel that distance. When you use a GPS device in a vehicle, it utilizes these physics equations to determine the travel time from one location to another.

The Apple "iPhone" is a common smart phone with a GPS function. Physics describes the way that electricity flows through the circuits of this device. Engineers use their knowledge of physics to construct an

iPhone with features that consumers will enjoy. One specific feature of an iPhone is the GPS function. GPS uses physics equations to determine the driving time between two locations on a map. (credit: @gletham GIS, Social, Mobile Tech Images)

Applications of Physics

You need not be a scientist to use physics. On the contrary, knowledge of physics is useful in everyday situations as well as in nonscientific professions. It can help you understand how microwave ovens work, why metals should not be put into them, and why they might affect pacemakers. (See [link] and [link].) Physics allows you to understand the hazards of radiation and rationally evaluate these hazards more easily. Physics also explains the reason why a black car radiator helps remove heat in a car engine, and it explains why a white roof helps keep the inside of a house cool. Similarly, the operation of a car's ignition system as well as the transmission of electrical signals through our body's nervous system are

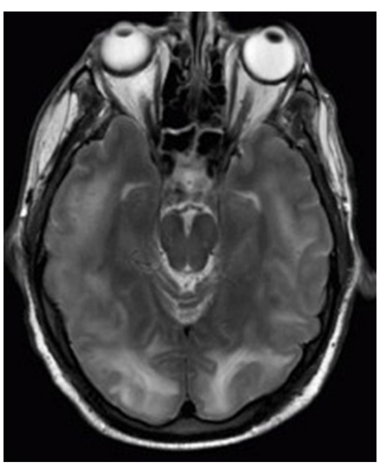
much easier to understand when you think about them in terms of basic physics.

Physics is the foundation of many important disciplines and contributes directly to others. Chemistry, for example—since it deals with the interactions of atoms and molecules—is rooted in atomic and molecular physics. Most branches of engineering are applied physics. In architecture, physics is at the heart of structural stability, and is involved in the acoustics, heating, lighting, and cooling of buildings. Parts of geology rely heavily on physics, such as radioactive dating of rocks, earthquake analysis, and heat transfer in the Earth. Some disciplines, such as biophysics and geophysics, are hybrids of physics and other disciplines.

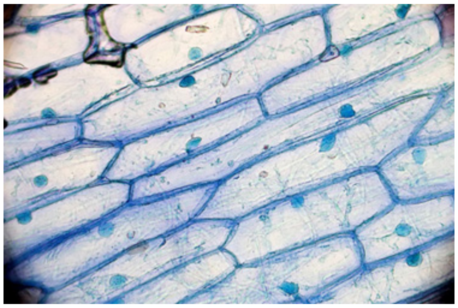
Physics has many applications in the biological sciences. On the microscopic level, it helps describe the properties of cell walls and cell membranes ([link] and [link]). On the macroscopic level, it can explain the heat, work, and power associated with the human body. Physics is involved in medical diagnostics, such as x-rays, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and ultrasonic blood flow measurements. Medical therapy sometimes directly involves physics; for example, cancer radiotherapy uses ionizing radiation. Physics can also explain sensory phenomena, such as how musical instruments make sound, how the eye detects color, and how lasers can transmit information.

It is not necessary to formally study all applications of physics. What is most useful is knowledge of the basic laws of physics and a skill in the analytical methods for applying them. The study of physics also can improve your problem-solving skills. Furthermore, physics has retained the most basic aspects of science, so it is used by all of the sciences, and the study of physics makes other sciences easier to understand.

The laws of physics help us understand how common appliances work. For example, the laws of physics can help explain how microwave ovens heat up food, and they also help us understand why it is dangerous to place metal objects in a microwave oven. (credit: MoneyBlogNewz)

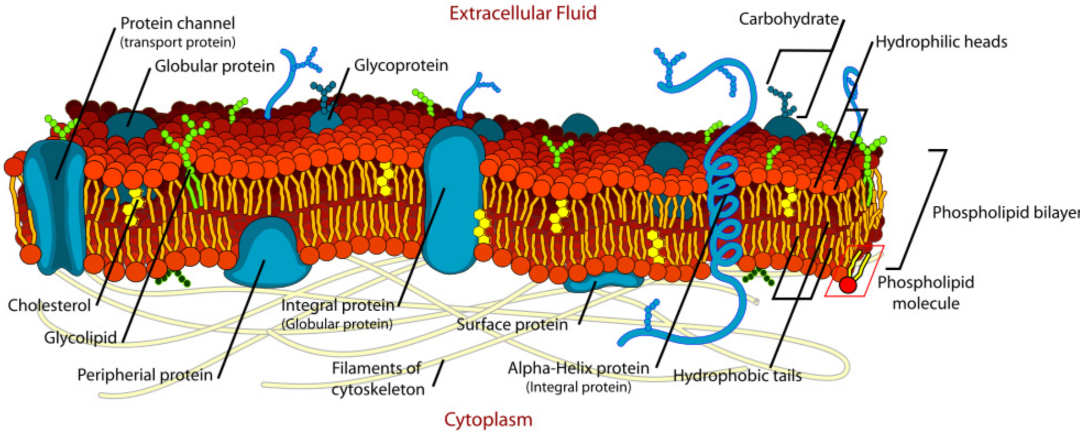


These two applications of physics have more in common than meets the eye. Microwave ovens use electromagnetic waves to heat food. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) also uses electromagnetic waves to yield an image of the brain, from which the exact location of tumors can be determined. (credit: Rashmi Chawla, Daniel Smith, and Paul E. Marik)



Physics, chemistry,

and biology help describe the properties of cell walls in plant cells, such as the onion cells seen here. (credit: Umberto Salvagnin)

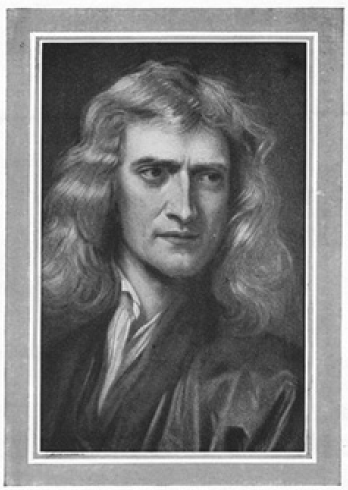


An artist's rendition of the the structure of a cell membrane. Membranes form the boundaries of animal cells and are complex in structure and function. Many of the most fundamental properties of life, such as the firing of nerve cells, are related to membranes. The disciplines of biology, chemistry, and physics all help us understand the membranes of animal cells. (credit: Mariana Ruiz)

Models, Theories, and Laws; The Role of Experimentation

The laws of nature are concise descriptions of the universe around us; they are human statements of the underlying laws or rules that all natural processes follow. Such laws are intrinsic to the universe; humans did not

create them and so cannot change them. We can only discover and understand them. Their discovery is a very human endeavor, with all the elements of mystery, imagination, struggle, triumph, and disappointment inherent in any creative effort. (See [link] and [link].) The cornerstone of discovering natural laws is observation; science must describe the universe as it is, not as we may imagine it to be.



Sir Isaac Newton

Isaac Newton (1642–1727) was very reluctant to publish his revolutionary work and had to be convinced to do so. In his later years, he stepped down from his academic post and became exchequer of the Royal Mint. He took this post

seriously, inventing reeding (or creating ridges) on the edge of coins to prevent unscrupulous people from trimming the silver off of them before using them as currency. (credit: Arthur Shuster and Arthur E. Shipley: *Britain's Heritage of Science*. London, 1917.)

Marie Curie (1867–1934) sacrificed

monetary assets to help finance her early research and damaged her physical well-being with radiation exposure. She is the only person to win Nobel prizes in both physics and chemistry. One of her daughters also won a Nobel Prize. (credit: Wikimedia Commons)

We all are curious to some extent. We look around, make generalizations, and try to understand what we see—for example, we look up and wonder whether one type of cloud signals an oncoming storm. As we become serious about exploring nature, we become more organized and formal in collecting and analyzing data. We attempt greater precision, perform controlled experiments (if we can), and write down ideas about how the data may be organized and unified. We then formulate models, theories, and laws based on the data we have collected and analyzed to generalize and communicate the results of these experiments.

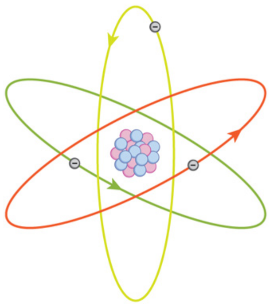
A **model** is a representation of something that is often too difficult (or impossible) to display directly. While a model is justified with experimental proof, it is only accurate under limited situations. An example is the planetary model of the atom in which electrons are pictured as orbiting the

nucleus, analogous to the way planets orbit the Sun. (See [link].) We cannot observe electron orbits directly, but the mental image helps explain the observations we can make, such as the emission of light from hot gases (atomic spectra). Physicists use models for a variety of purposes. For example, models can help physicists analyze a scenario and perform a calculation, or they can be used to represent a situation in the form of a computer simulation. A **theory** is an explanation for patterns in nature that is supported by scientific evidence and verified multiple times by various groups of researchers. Some theories include models to help visualize phenomena, whereas others do not. Newton’s theory of gravity, for example, does not require a model or mental image, because we can observe the objects directly with our own senses. The kinetic theory of gases, on the other hand, is a model in which a gas is viewed as being composed of atoms and molecules. Atoms and molecules are too small to be observed directly with our senses—thus, we picture them mentally to understand what our instruments tell us about the behavior of gases.

A **law** uses concise language to describe a generalized pattern in nature that is supported by scientific evidence and repeated experiments. Often, a law can be expressed in the form of a single mathematical equation. Laws and theories are similar in that they are both scientific statements that result from a tested hypothesis and are supported by scientific evidence. However, the designation *law* is reserved for a concise and very general statement that describes phenomena in nature, such as the law that energy is conserved during any process, or Newton’s second law of motion, which relates force, mass, and acceleration by the simple equation $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. A theory, in contrast, is a less concise statement of observed phenomena. For example, the Theory of Evolution and the Theory of Relativity cannot be expressed concisely enough to be considered a law. The biggest difference between a law and a theory is that a theory is much more complex and dynamic. A law describes a single action, whereas a theory explains an entire group of related phenomena. And, whereas a law is a postulate that forms the foundation of the scientific method, a theory is the end result of that process.

Less broadly applicable statements are usually called principles (such as Pascal’s principle, which is applicable only in fluids), but the distinction

between laws and principles often is not carefully made.



What is a model? This planetary model of the atom shows electrons orbiting the nucleus. It is a drawing that we use to form a mental image of the atom that we cannot see directly with our eyes because it is too small.

Note:
Models, Theories, and Laws
Models, theories, and laws are used to help scientists analyze the data they have already collected. However, often after a model, theory, or law has been developed, it points scientists toward new discoveries they would not otherwise have made.

The models, theories, and laws we devise sometimes *imply the existence of objects or phenomena as yet unobserved.* These predictions are remarkable triumphs and tributes to the power of science. It is the underlying order in the universe that enables scientists to make such spectacular predictions. However, if *experiment* does not verify our predictions, then the theory or law is wrong, no matter how elegant or convenient it is. Laws can never be known with absolute certainty because it is impossible to perform every imaginable experiment in order to confirm a law in every possible scenario. Physicists operate under the assumption that all scientific laws and theories are valid until a counterexample is observed. If a good-quality, verifiable experiment contradicts a well-established law, then the law must be modified or overthrown completely.

The study of science in general and physics in particular is an adventure much like the exploration of uncharted ocean. Discoveries are made; models, theories, and laws are formulated; and the beauty of the physical universe is made more sublime for the insights gained.

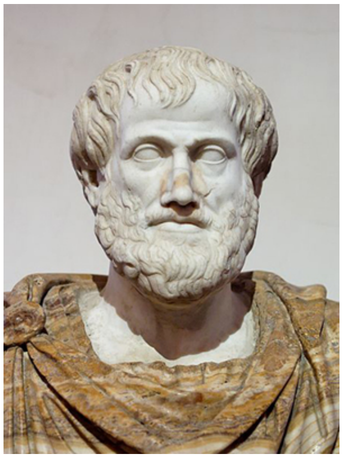
Note:
The Scientific Method
As scientists inquire and gather information about the world, they follow a process called the **scientific method**. This process typically begins with an observation and question that the scientist will research. Next, the scientist

typically performs some research about the topic and then devises a hypothesis. Then, the scientist will test the hypothesis by performing an experiment. Finally, the scientist analyzes the results of the experiment and draws a conclusion. Note that the scientific method can be applied to many situations that are not limited to science, and this method can be modified to suit the situation.

Consider an example. Let us say that you try to turn on your car, but it will not start. You undoubtedly wonder: Why will the car not start? You can follow a scientific method to answer this question. First off, you may perform some research to determine a variety of reasons why the car will not start. Next, you will state a hypothesis. For example, you may believe that the car is not starting because it has no engine oil. To test this, you open the hood of the car and examine the oil level. You observe that the oil is at an acceptable level, and you thus conclude that the oil level is not contributing to your car issue. To troubleshoot the issue further, you may devise a new hypothesis to test and then repeat the process again.

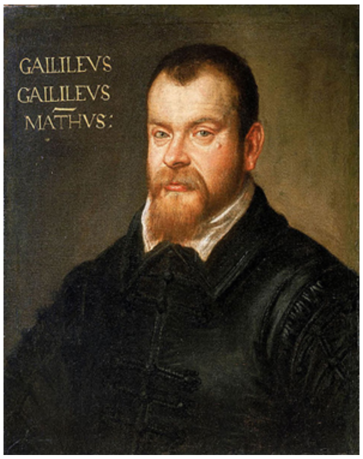
The Evolution of Natural Philosophy into Modern Physics

Physics was not always a separate and distinct discipline. It remains connected to other sciences to this day. The word *physics* comes from Greek, meaning nature. The study of nature came to be called “natural philosophy.” From ancient times through the Renaissance, natural philosophy encompassed many fields, including astronomy, biology, chemistry, physics, mathematics, and medicine. Over the last few centuries, the growth of knowledge has resulted in ever-increasing specialization and branching of natural philosophy into separate fields, with physics retaining the most basic facets. (See [link], [link], and [link].) Physics as it developed from the Renaissance to the end of the 19th century is called **classical physics**. It was transformed into modern physics by revolutionary discoveries made starting at the beginning of the 20th century.

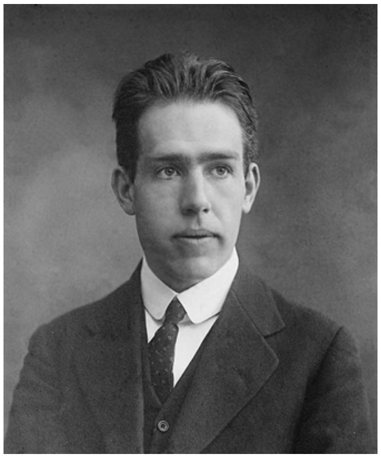


Over the centuries, natural philosophy has evolved into more specialized disciplines, as illustrated by the contributions of some of the greatest minds in history. The Greek philosopher **Aristotle** (384–322 B.C.) wrote on a broad range of topics including physics, animals, the soul, politics, and poetry. (credit: Jastrow

(2006)/Ludovisi Collection)



Galileo Galilei (1564–1642) laid the foundation of modern experimentation and made contributions in mathematics, physics, and astronomy. (credit: Domenico Tintoretto)

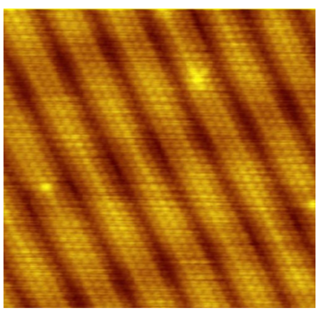


Niels Bohr (1885–1962) made fundamental contributions to the development of quantum mechanics, one part of modern physics. (credit: United States Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division)

Classical physics is not an exact description of the universe, but it is an excellent approximation under the following conditions: Matter must be moving at speeds less than about 1% of the speed of light, the objects dealt with must be large enough to be seen with a microscope, and only weak gravitational fields, such as the field generated by the Earth, can be involved. Because humans live under such circumstances, classical physics seems intuitively reasonable, while many aspects of modern physics seem bizarre. This is why models are so useful in modern physics—they let us

conceptualize phenomena we do not ordinarily experience. We can relate to models in human terms and visualize what happens when objects move at high speeds or imagine what objects too small to observe with our senses might be like. For example, we can understand an atom’s properties because we can picture it in our minds, although we have never seen an atom with our eyes. New tools, of course, allow us to better picture phenomena we cannot see. In fact, new instrumentation has allowed us in recent years to actually “picture” the atom.

Note:
Limits on the Laws of Classical Physics
For the laws of classical physics to apply, the following criteria must be met: Matter must be moving at speeds less than about 1% of the speed of light, the objects dealt with must be large enough to be seen with a microscope, and only weak gravitational fields (such as the field generated by the Earth) can be involved.



Using a scanning tunneling microscope (STM), scientists can see the individual atoms that

compose this sheet of gold. (credit: Erwinrossen)

Some of the most spectacular advances in science have been made in modern physics. Many of the laws of classical physics have been modified or rejected, and revolutionary changes in technology, society, and our view of the universe have resulted. Like science fiction, modern physics is filled with fascinating objects beyond our normal experiences, but it has the advantage over science fiction of being very real. Why, then, is the majority of this text devoted to topics of classical physics? There are two main reasons: Classical physics gives an extremely accurate description of the universe under a wide range of everyday circumstances, and knowledge of classical physics is necessary to understand modern physics.

Modern physics itself consists of the two revolutionary theories, relativity and quantum mechanics. These theories deal with the very fast and the very small, respectively. **Relativity** must be used whenever an object is traveling at greater than about 1% of the speed of light or experiences a strong gravitational field such as that near the Sun. **Quantum mechanics** must be used for objects smaller than can be seen with a microscope. The combination of these two theories is *relativistic quantum mechanics*, and it describes the behavior of small objects traveling at high speeds or experiencing a strong gravitational field. Relativistic quantum mechanics is the best universally applicable theory we have. Because of its mathematical complexity, it is used only when necessary, and the other theories are used whenever they will produce sufficiently accurate results. We will find, however, that we can do a great deal of modern physics with the algebra and trigonometry used in this text.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A friend tells you he has learned about a new law of nature. What can you know about the information even before your friend describes the law? How would the information be different if your friend told you he had learned about a scientific theory rather than a law?

Solution:

Without knowing the details of the law, you can still infer that the information your friend has learned conforms to the requirements of all laws of nature: it will be a concise description of the universe around us; a statement of the underlying rules that all natural processes follow. If the information had been a theory, you would be able to infer that the information will be a large-scale, broadly applicable generalization.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Equation Grapher
Learn about graphing polynomials. The shape of the curve changes as the constants are adjusted. View the curves for the individual terms (e.g. $y = bx$) to see how they add to generate the polynomial curve.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/equation-grapher/equation-grapher_en.html

Summary

- Science seeks to discover and describe the underlying order and simplicity in nature.
- Physics is the most basic of the sciences, concerning itself with energy, matter, space and time, and their interactions.
- Scientific laws and theories express the general truths of nature and the body of knowledge they encompass. These laws of nature are rules that all natural processes appear to follow.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Models are particularly useful in relativity and quantum mechanics, where conditions are outside those normally encountered by humans. What is a model?

Exercise:

Problem: How does a model differ from a theory?

Exercise:

Problem:

If two different theories describe experimental observations equally well, can one be said to be more valid than the other (assuming both use accepted rules of logic)?

Exercise:

Problem: What determines the validity of a theory?

Exercise:

Problem:

Certain criteria must be satisfied if a measurement or observation is to be believed. Will the criteria necessarily be as strict for an expected result as for an unexpected result?

Exercise:

Problem:

Can the validity of a model be limited, or must it be universally valid? How does this compare to the required validity of a theory or a law?

Exercise:

Problem:

Classical physics is a good approximation to modern physics under certain circumstances. What are they?

Exercise:

Problem: When is it *necessary* to use relativistic quantum mechanics?

Exercise:

Problem:

Can classical physics be used to accurately describe a satellite moving at a speed of 7500 m/s? Explain why or why not.

Glossary

classical physics
: physics that was developed from the Renaissance to the end of the 19th century

physics
: the science concerned with describing the interactions of energy, matter, space, and time; it is especially interested in what fundamental mechanisms underlie every phenomenon

model
: representation of something that is often too difficult (or impossible) to display directly

theory
: an explanation for patterns in nature that is supported by scientific evidence and verified multiple times by various groups of researchers

law
: a description, using concise language or a mathematical formula, a generalized pattern in nature that is supported by scientific evidence

and repeated experiments

scientific method
: a method that typically begins with an observation and question that the scientist will research; next, the scientist typically performs some research about the topic and then devises a hypothesis; then, the scientist will test the hypothesis by performing an experiment; finally, the scientist analyzes the results of the experiment and draws a conclusion

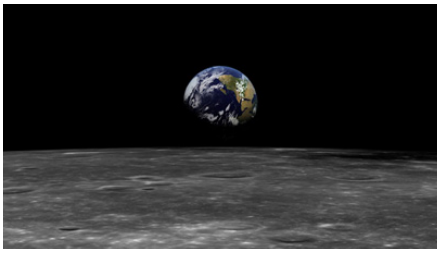
modern physics
: the study of relativity, quantum mechanics, or both

relativity
: the study of objects moving at speeds greater than about 1% of the speed of light, or of objects being affected by a strong gravitational field

quantum mechanics
: the study of objects smaller than can be seen with a microscope

Physical Quantities and Units

- Perform unit conversions both in the SI and English units.
- Explain the most common prefixes in the SI units and be able to write them in scientific notation.

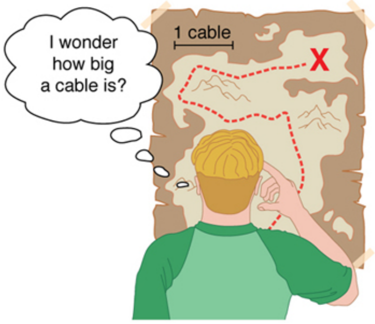


The distance from Earth to the Moon may seem immense, but it is just a tiny fraction of the distances from Earth to other celestial bodies. (credit: NASA)

The range of objects and phenomena studied in physics is immense. From the incredibly short lifetime of a nucleus to the age of the Earth, from the tiny sizes of sub-nuclear particles to the vast distance to the edges of the known universe, from the force exerted by a jumping flea to the force between Earth and the Sun, there are enough factors of 10 to challenge the imagination of even the most experienced scientist. Giving numerical values for physical quantities and equations for physical principles allows us to understand nature much more deeply than does qualitative description alone. To comprehend these vast ranges, we must also have accepted units in which to express them. And we shall find that (even in the potentially mundane discussion of meters, kilograms, and seconds) a profound simplicity of nature appears—all physical quantities can be expressed as combinations of only four fundamental physical quantities: length, mass, time, and electric current.

We define a **physical quantity** either by *specifying how it is measured* or by *stating how it is calculated* from other measurements. For example, we define distance and time by specifying methods for measuring them, whereas we define *average speed* by stating that it is calculated as distance traveled divided by time of travel.

Measurements of physical quantities are expressed in terms of **units**, which are standardized values. For example, the length of a race, which is a physical quantity, can be expressed in units of meters (for sprinters) or kilometers (for distance runners). Without standardized units, it would be extremely difficult for scientists to express and compare measured values in a meaningful way. (See [link].)



Distances given in unknown units are maddeningly useless.

There are two major systems of units used in the world: **SI units** (also known as the metric system) and **English units** (also known as the customary or imperial system). **English units** were historically used in nations once ruled by the British Empire and are still widely used in the United States. Virtually every other country in the world now uses SI units as the standard; the metric system is also the standard system agreed upon by scientists and mathematicians. The acronym "SI" is derived from the French *Système International*.

SI Units: Fundamental and Derived Units

[link] gives the fundamental SI units that are used throughout this textbook. This text uses non-SI units in a few applications where they are in very common use, such as the measurement of blood pressure in millimeters of mercury (mm Hg). Whenever non-SI units are discussed, they will be tied to SI units through conversions.

Length	Mass	Time	Electric Current
meter (m)	kilogram (kg)	second (s)	ampere (A)

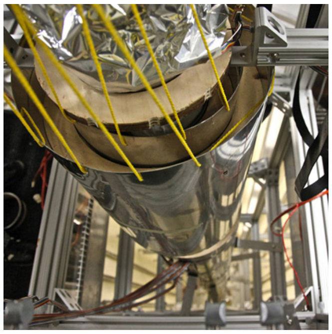
Fundamental SI Units

It is an intriguing fact that some physical quantities are more fundamental than others and that the most fundamental physical quantities can be defined *only* in terms of the procedure used to measure them. The units in which they are measured are thus called **fundamental units**. In this textbook, the fundamental physical quantities are taken to be length, mass, time, and electric current. (Note that electric current will not be introduced until much later in this text.) All other physical quantities, such as force and electric charge, can be expressed as algebraic combinations of length, mass, time, and current (for example, speed is length divided by time); these units are called **derived units**.

Units of Time, Length, and Mass: The Second, Meter, and Kilogram

The Second

The SI unit for time, the **second**(abbreviated s), has a long history. For many years it was defined as 1/86,400 of a mean solar day. More recently, a new standard was adopted to gain greater accuracy and to define the second in terms of a non-varying, or constant, physical phenomenon (because the solar day is getting longer due to very gradual slowing of the Earth's rotation). Cesium atoms can be made to vibrate in a very steady way, and these vibrations can be readily observed and counted. In 1967 the second was redefined as the time required for 9,192,631,770 of these vibrations. (See [link].) Accuracy in the fundamental units is essential, because all measurements are ultimately expressed in terms of fundamental units and can be no more accurate than are the fundamental units themselves.



An atomic clock such as this one uses the vibrations of cesium atoms to keep time to a precision of better than a microsecond per year. The fundamental unit of time, the second, is based on such clocks. This image is looking down from the top of an atomic fountain nearly 30 feet tall! (credit: Steve Jurvetson/Flickr)

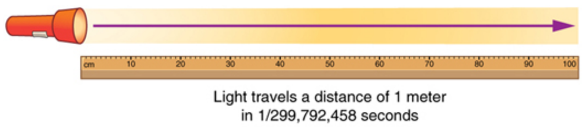
The Meter

The SI unit for length is the **meter** (abbreviated m); its definition has also changed over time to become more accurate and precise. The meter was first defined in 1791 as 1/10,000,000 of the distance from the equator to the North Pole. This measurement was improved in 1889 by redefining the meter to be the distance between two engraved lines on a platinum-iridium bar now kept near Paris. By 1960, it had become possible to define the meter even more accurately in terms of the wavelength of light, so it was again redefined as 1,650,763.73 wavelengths of orange light emitted by krypton atoms. In 1983, the meter was given its present definition (partly for greater accuracy) as the distance light travels in a vacuum in 1/299,792,458 of a second. (See [link].) This change defines the speed of light to be exactly 299,792,458 meters per second. The length of the meter will change if the speed of light is someday measured with greater accuracy.

The Kilogram

The SI unit for mass is the **kilogram** (abbreviated kg); it is defined to be the mass of a platinum-iridium cylinder kept with the old meter standard at the International Bureau of Weights and Measures near Paris. Exact replicas of the standard kilogram are also kept at the United States' National Institute of Standards

and Technology, or NIST, located in Gaithersburg, Maryland outside of Washington D.C., and at other locations around the world. The determination of all other masses can be ultimately traced to a comparison with the standard mass.



The meter is defined to be the distance light travels in 1/299,792,458 of a second in a vacuum. Distance traveled is speed multiplied by time.

Electric current and its accompanying unit, the ampere, will be introduced in Introduction to Electric Current, Resistance, and Ohm's Law when electricity and magnetism are covered. The initial modules in this textbook are concerned with mechanics, fluids, heat, and waves. In these subjects all pertinent physical quantities can be expressed in terms of the fundamental units of length, mass, and time.

Metric Prefixes

SI units are part of the **metric system**. The metric system is convenient for scientific and engineering calculations because the units are categorized by factors of 10. [link] gives metric prefixes and symbols used to denote various factors of 10.

Metric systems have the advantage that conversions of units involve only powers of 10. There are 100 centimeters in a meter, 1000 meters in a kilometer, and so on. In nonmetric systems, such as the system of U.S. customary units, the relationships are not as simple—there are 12 inches in a foot, 5280 feet in a mile, and so on. Another advantage of the metric system is that the same unit can be used over extremely large ranges of values simply by using an appropriate metric prefix. For example, distances in meters are suitable in construction, while distances in kilometers are appropriate for air travel, and the tiny measure of nanometers are convenient in optical design. With the metric system there is no need to invent new units for particular applications.

The term **order of magnitude** refers to the scale of a value expressed in the metric system. Each power of 10 in the metric system represents a different order of magnitude. For example, 10^1, 10^2, 10^3, and so forth are all different orders of magnitude. All quantities that can be expressed as a product of a specific power of 10 are said to be of the *same* order of magnitude. For example, the number 800 can be written as 8×10^2, and the number 450 can be written as 4.5×10^2. Thus, the numbers 800 and 450 are of the same order of magnitude: 10^2. Order of magnitude can be thought of as a ballpark estimate for the scale of a value. The diameter of an atom is on the order of $10^{-9}\ \text{m}$, while the diameter of the Sun is on the order of $10^9\ \text{m}$.

Note:
The Quest for Microscopic Standards for Basic Units

The fundamental units described in this chapter are those that produce the greatest accuracy and precision in measurement. There is a sense among physicists that, because there is an underlying microscopic substructure to matter, it would be most satisfying to base our standards of measurement on microscopic objects and fundamental physical phenomena such as the speed of light. A microscopic standard has been accomplished for the standard of time, which is based on the oscillations of the cesium atom.

The standard for length was once based on the wavelength of light (a small-scale length) emitted by a certain type of atom, but it has been supplanted by the more precise measurement of the speed of light. If it becomes possible to measure the mass of atoms or a particular arrangement of atoms such as a silicon sphere to greater precision than the kilogram standard, it may become possible to base mass measurements on the small scale. There are also possibilities that electrical phenomena on the small scale may someday allow us to base a unit of charge on the charge of electrons and protons, but at present current and charge are related to large-scale currents and forces between wires.

Prefix	**Symbol**	**Value[footnote] See Appendix A for a discussion of powers of 10.**	**Example (some are approximate)**			
exa	E	10^{18}	exameter	Em	10^{18} m	distance light travels in a century
peta	P	10^{15}	petasecond	Ps	10^{15} s	30 million years
tera	T	10^{12}	terawatt	TW	10^{12} W	powerful laser output
giga	G	10^{9}	gigahertz	GHz	10^{9} Hz	a microwave frequency
mega	M	10^{6}	megacurie	MCi	10^{6} Ci	high radioactivity
kilo	k	10^{3}	kilometer	km	10^{3} m	about 6/10 mile
hecto	h	10^{2}	hectoliter	hL	10^{2} L	26 gallons

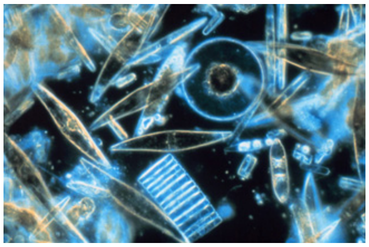
Prefix	Symbol	Value[footnote] See Appendix A for a discussion of powers of 10.	Example (some are approximate)			
deka	da	10^{1}	dekagram	dag	10^{1} g	teaspoon of butter
—	—	10^{0} (=1)				
deci	d	10^{-1}	deciliter	dL	10^{-1} L	less than half a soda
centi	c	10^{-2}	centimeter	cm	10^{-2} m	fingertip thickness
milli	m	10^{-3}	millimeter	mm	10^{-3} m	flea at its shoulders
micro	µ	10^{-6}	micrometer	µm	10^{-6} m	detail in microscope
nano	n	10^{-9}	nanogram	ng	10^{-9} g	small speck of dust
pico	p	10^{-12}	picofarad	pF	10^{-12} F	small capacitor in radio
femto	f	10^{-15}	femtometer	fm	10^{-15} m	size of a proton
atto	a	10^{-18}	attosecond	as	10^{-18} s	time light crosses an atom

Metric Prefixes for Powers of 10 and their Symbols

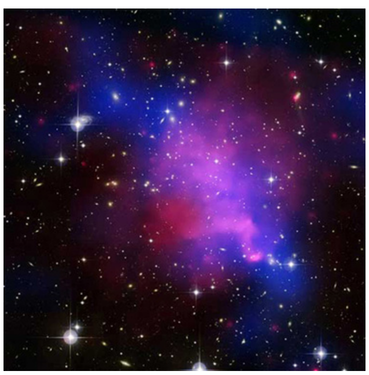
Known Ranges of Length, Mass, and Time

The vastness of the universe and the breadth over which physics applies are illustrated by the wide range of examples of known lengths, masses, and times in [link]. Examination of this table will give you some

feeling for the range of possible topics and numerical values. (See [link] and [link].)



Tiny phytoplankton swims among crystals of ice in the Antarctic Sea. They range from a few micrometers to as much as 2 millimeters in length. (credit: Prof. Gordon T. Taylor, Stony Brook University; NOAA Corps Collections)



Galaxies collide 2.4 billion light years away from Earth. The tremendous range of observable phenomena in nature challenges the imagination. (credit: NASA/CXC/UVic./A. Mahdavi et al. Optical/lensing: CFHT/UVic./H. Hoekstra et al.)

Unit Conversion and Dimensional Analysis

It is often necessary to convert from one type of unit to another. For example, if you are reading a European cookbook, some quantities may be expressed in units of liters and you need to convert them to cups. Or, perhaps you are reading walking directions from one location to another and you are interested in how many miles you will be walking. In this case, you will need to convert units of feet to miles.

Let us consider a simple example of how to convert units. Let us say that we want to convert 80 meters (m) to kilometers (km).

The first thing to do is to list the units that you have and the units that you want to convert to. In this case, we have units in *meters* and we want to convert to *kilometers*.

Next, we need to determine a **conversion factor** relating meters to kilometers. A conversion factor is a ratio expressing how many of one unit are equal to another unit. For example, there are 12 inches in 1 foot, 100 centimeters in 1 meter, 60 seconds in 1 minute, and so on. In this case, we know that there are 1,000 meters in 1 kilometer.

Now we can set up our unit conversion. We will write the units that we have and then multiply them by the conversion factor so that the units cancel out, as shown:
Equation:

$$80\,\cancel{\text{m}}\times\frac{1\text{ km}}{1000\,\cancel{\text{m}}}=0.080\text{ km}.$$

Note that the unwanted m unit cancels, leaving only the desired km unit. You can use this method to convert between any types of unit.

Click [link] for a more complete list of conversion factors.

Lengths in meters		Masses in kilograms (more precise values in parentheses)		Times in seconds (more precise values in parentheses)	
10^{-18}	Present experimental limit to smallest observable detail	10^{-30}	Mass of an electron $\left(9.11\times10^{-31}\text{ kg}\right)$	10^{-23}	Time for light to cross a proton
10^{-15}	Diameter of a proton	10^{-27}	Mass of a hydrogen atom $\left(1.67\times10^{-27}\text{ kg}\right)$	10^{-22}	Mean life of an extremely unstable nucleus

Lengths in meters		Masses in kilograms (more precise values in parentheses)		Times in seconds (more precise values in parentheses)	
10^{-14}	Diameter of a uranium nucleus	10^{-15}	Mass of a bacterium	10^{-15}	Time for one oscillation of visible light
10^{-10}	Diameter of a hydrogen atom	10^{-5}	Mass of a mosquito	10^{-13}	Time for one vibration of an atom in a solid
10^{-8}	Thickness of membranes in cells of living organisms	10^{-2}	Mass of a hummingbird	10^{-8}	Time for one oscillation of an FM radio wave
10^{-6}	Wavelength of visible light	1	Mass of a liter of water (about a quart)	10^{-3}	Duration of a nerve impulse
10^{-3}	Size of a grain of sand	10^{2}	Mass of a person	1	Time for one heartbeat
1	Height of a 4-year-old child	10^{3}	Mass of a car	10^{5}	One day $\left(8.64 \times 10^{4} \text{ s}\right)$
10^{2}	Length of a football field	10^{8}	Mass of a large ship	10^{7}	One year (y) $\left(3.16 \times 10^{7} \text{ s}\right)$
10^{4}	Greatest ocean depth	10^{12}	Mass of a large iceberg	10^{9}	About half the life expectancy of a human
10^{7}	Diameter of the Earth	10^{15}	Mass of the nucleus of a comet	10^{11}	Recorded history
10^{11}	Distance from the Earth to the Sun	10^{23}	Mass of the Moon $\left(7.35 \times 10^{22} \text{ kg}\right)$	10^{17}	Age of the Earth
10^{16}	Distance traveled by light in 1 year (a light year)	10^{25}	Mass of the Earth $\left(5.97 \times 10^{24} \text{ kg}\right)$	10^{18}	Age of the universe
10^{21}	Diameter of the Milky Way galaxy	10^{30}	Mass of the Sun $\left(1.99 \times 10^{30} \text{ kg}\right)$		

Lengths in meters		Masses in kilograms (more precise values in parentheses)		Times in seconds (more precise values in parentheses)	
10^{22}	Distance from the Earth to the nearest large galaxy (Andromeda)	10^{42}	Mass of the Milky Way galaxy (current upper limit)		
10^{26}	Distance from the Earth to the edges of the known universe	10^{53}	Mass of the known universe (current upper limit)		

Approximate Values of Length, Mass, and Time

Example:
Unit Conversions: A Short Drive Home
Suppose that you drive the 10.0 km from your university to home in 20.0 min. Calculate your average speed (a) in kilometers per hour (km/h) and (b) in meters per second (m/s). (Note: Average speed is distance traveled divided by time of travel.)
Strategy
First we calculate the average speed using the given units. Then we can get the average speed into the desired units by picking the correct conversion factor and multiplying by it. The correct conversion factor is the one that cancels the unwanted unit and leaves the desired unit in its place.
Solution for (a)
(1) Calculate average speed. Average speed is distance traveled divided by time of travel. (Take this definition as a given for now—average speed and other motion concepts will be covered in a later module.) In equation form,
Equation:

$$\text{average speed} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}.$$

(2) Substitute the given values for distance and time.
Equation:

$$\text{average speed} = \frac{10.0\text{ km}}{20.0\text{ min}} = 0.500\frac{\text{km}}{\text{min}}.$$

(3) Convert km/min to km/h: multiply by the conversion factor that will cancel minutes and leave hours. That conversion factor is 60 min/hr. Thus,
Equation:

$$\text{average speed} = 0.500\frac{\text{km}}{\text{min}} \times \frac{60\text{ min}}{1\text{ h}} = 30.0\frac{\text{km}}{\text{h}}.$$

Discussion for (a)
To check your answer, consider the following:

(1) Be sure that you have properly cancelled the units in the unit conversion. If you have written the unit conversion factor upside down, the units will not cancel properly in the equation. If you accidentally get the ratio upside down, then the units will not cancel; rather, they will give you the wrong units as follows:

Equation:

$$\frac{\text{km}}{\text{min}} \times \frac{1\ \text{hr}}{60\ \text{min}} = \frac{1}{60}\frac{\text{km}\cdot\text{hr}}{\text{min}^2},$$

which are obviously not the desired units of km/h.

(2) Check that the units of the final answer are the desired units. The problem asked us to solve for average speed in units of km/h and we have indeed obtained these units.

(3) Check the significant figures. Because each of the values given in the problem has three significant figures, the answer should also have three significant figures. The answer 30.0 km/hr does indeed have three significant figures, so this is appropriate. Note that the significant figures in the conversion factor are not relevant because an hour is *defined* to be 60 minutes, so the precision of the conversion factor is perfect.

(4) Next, check whether the answer is reasonable. Let us consider some information from the problem—if you travel 10 km in a third of an hour (20 min), you would travel three times that far in an hour. The answer does seem reasonable.

Solution for (b)

There are several ways to convert the average speed into meters per second.

(1) Start with the answer to (a) and convert km/h to m/s. Two conversion factors are needed—one to convert hours to seconds, and another to convert kilometers to meters.

(2) Multiplying by these yields

Equation:

$$\text{Average speed} = 30.0\frac{\text{km}}{\text{h}} \times \frac{1\ \text{h}}{3{,}600\ \text{s}} \times \frac{1{,}000\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{km}},$$

Equation:

$$\text{Average speed} = 8.33\frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}}.$$

Discussion for (b)

If we had started with 0.500 km/min, we would have needed different conversion factors, but the answer would have been the same: 8.33 m/s.

You may have noted that the answers in the worked example just covered were given to three digits. Why? When do you need to be concerned about the number of digits in something you calculate? Why not write down all the digits your calculator produces? The module Accuracy, Precision, and Significant Figures will help you answer these questions.

Note:

Nonstandard Units

While there are numerous types of units that we are all familiar with, there are others that are much more obscure. For example, a **firkin** is a unit of volume that was once used to measure beer. One firkin equals about 34 liters. To learn more about nonstandard units, use a dictionary or encyclopedia to research different “weights and measures.” Take note of any unusual units, such as a barleycorn, that are not listed in the text. Think about how the unit is defined and state its relationship to SI units.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Some hummingbirds beat their wings more than 50 times per second. A scientist is measuring the time it takes for a hummingbird to beat its wings once. Which fundamental unit should the scientist use to describe the measurement? Which factor of 10 is the scientist likely to use to describe the motion precisely? Identify the metric prefix that corresponds to this factor of 10.

Solution:

The scientist will measure the time between each movement using the fundamental unit of seconds. Because the wings beat so fast, the scientist will probably need to measure in milliseconds, or 10^{-3} seconds. (50 beats per second corresponds to 20 milliseconds per beat.)

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

One cubic centimeter is equal to one milliliter. What does this tell you about the different units in the SI metric system?

Solution:

The fundamental unit of length (meter) is probably used to create the derived unit of volume (liter). The measure of a milliliter is dependent on the measure of a centimeter.

Summary

- Physical quantities are a characteristic or property of an object that can be measured or calculated from other measurements.
- Units are standards for expressing and comparing the measurement of physical quantities. All units can be expressed as combinations of four fundamental units.
- The four fundamental units we will use in this text are the meter (for length), the kilogram (for mass), the second (for time), and the ampere (for electric current). These units are part of the metric system, which uses powers of 10 to relate quantities over the vast ranges encountered in nature.
- The four fundamental units are abbreviated as follows: meter, m; kilogram, kg; second, s; and ampere, A. The metric system also uses a standard set of prefixes to denote each order of magnitude greater than or lesser than the fundamental unit itself.
- Unit conversions involve changing a value expressed in one type of unit to another type of unit. This is done by using conversion factors, which are ratios relating equal quantities of different units.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: Identify some advantages of metric units.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The speed limit on some interstate highways is roughly 100 km/h. (a) What is this in meters per second? (b) How many miles per hour is this?

Solution:

a. 27.8 m/s
b. 62.1 mph

Exercise:

Problem:

A car is traveling at a speed of 33 m/s. (a) What is its speed in kilometers per hour? (b) Is it exceeding the 90 km/h speed limit?

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that $1.0 \text{ m/s} = 3.6 \text{ km/h}$. Hint: Show the explicit steps involved in converting $1.0 \text{ m/s} = 3.6 \text{ km/h}$.

Solution:

$$\frac{1.0 \text{ m}}{\text{s}} = \frac{1.0 \text{ m}}{\text{s}} \times \frac{3600 \text{ s}}{1 \text{ hr}} \times \frac{1 \text{ km}}{1000 \text{ m}}$$

$$= 3.6 \text{ km/h}.$$

Exercise:

Problem:

American football is played on a 100-yd-long field, excluding the end zones. How long is the field in meters? (Assume that 1 meter equals 3.281 feet.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Soccer fields vary in size. A large soccer field is 115 m long and 85 m wide. What are its dimensions in feet and inches? (Assume that 1 meter equals 3.281 feet.)

Solution:

length: 377 ft; 4.53×10^3 in. width: 280 ft; 3.3×10^3 in.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the height in meters of a person who is 6 ft 1.0 in. tall? (Assume that 1 meter equals 39.37 in.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Mount Everest, at 29,028 feet, is the tallest mountain on the Earth. What is its height in kilometers? (Assume that 1 kilometer equals 3,281 feet.)

Solution:

8.847 km

Exercise:

Problem: The speed of sound is measured to be 342 m/s on a certain day. What is this in km/h?

Exercise:

Problem:

Tectonic plates are large segments of the Earth's crust that move slowly. Suppose that one such plate has an average speed of 4.0 cm/year. (a) What distance does it move in 1 s at this speed? (b) What is its speed in kilometers per million years?

Solution:

(a) $1.3 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m}$

(b) 40 km/My

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Refer to [link] to determine the average distance between the Earth and the Sun. Then calculate the average speed of the Earth in its orbit in kilometers per second. (b) What is this in meters per second?

Glossary

physical quantity
: a characteristic or property of an object that can be measured or calculated from other measurements

units
: a standard used for expressing and comparing measurements

SI units
: the international system of units that scientists in most countries have agreed to use; includes units such as meters, liters, and grams

English units
: system of measurement used in the United States; includes units of measurement such as feet, gallons, and pounds

fundamental units
: units that can only be expressed relative to the procedure used to measure them

derived units
: units that can be calculated using algebraic combinations of the fundamental units

second
: the SI unit for time, abbreviated (s)

meter
: the SI unit for length, abbreviated (m)

kilogram
: the SI unit for mass, abbreviated (kg)

metric system
: a system in which values can be calculated in factors of 10

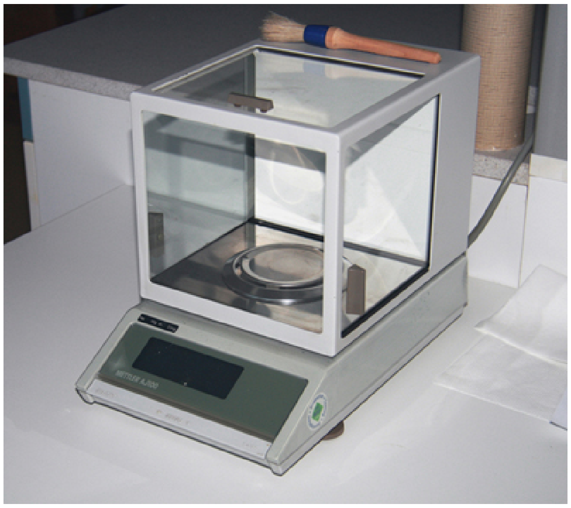
order of magnitude
: refers to the size of a quantity as it relates to a power of 10

conversion factor
: a ratio expressing how many of one unit are equal to another unit

Accuracy, Precision, and Significant Figures

- Determine the appropriate number of significant figures in both addition and subtraction, as well as multiplication and division calculations.
- Calculate the percent uncertainty of a measurement.

A double-pan mechanical balance is used to compare different masses. Usually an object with unknown mass is placed in one pan and objects of known mass are placed in the other pan. When the bar that connects the two pans is horizontal, then the masses in both pans are equal. The "known masses" are typically metal cylinders of standard mass such as 1 gram, 10 grams, and 100 grams. (credit: Serge Melki)



Many mechanical balances, such as double-pan balances, have been replaced by digital scales, which can typically measure the mass of an object more precisely. Whereas a mechanical balance may only read the mass of an object to the nearest tenth of a gram, many digital scales can measure the mass of an object up to the nearest thousandth of a gram. (credit: Karel Jakubec)

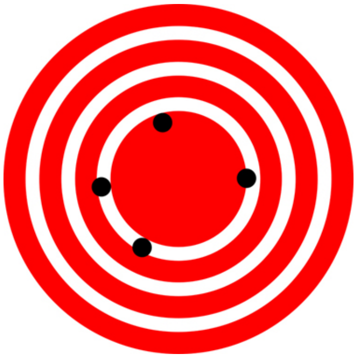
Accuracy and Precision of a Measurement

Science is based on observation and experiment—that is, on measurements. **Accuracy** is how close a measurement is to the correct value for that measurement. For example, let us say that you are measuring the length of standard computer paper. The packaging in which you purchased the paper states that it is 11.0 inches long. You measure the length of the paper three times and obtain the following measurements: 11.1 in., 11.2 in., and 10.9 in.

These measurements are quite accurate because they are very close to the correct value of 11.0 inches. In contrast, if you had obtained a measurement of 12 inches, your measurement would not be very accurate.

The **precision** of a measurement system is refers to how close the agreement is between repeated measurements (which are repeated under the same conditions). Consider the example of the paper measurements. The precision of the measurements refers to the spread of the measured values. One way to analyze the precision of the measurements would be to determine the range, or difference, between the lowest and the highest measured values. In that case, the lowest value was 10.9 in. and the highest value was 11.2 in. Thus, the measured values deviated from each other by at most 0.3 in. These measurements were relatively precise because they did not vary too much in value. However, if the measured values had been 10.9, 11.1, and 11.9, then the measurements would not be very precise because there would be significant variation from one measurement to another.

The measurements in the paper example are both accurate and precise, but in some cases, measurements are accurate but not precise, or they are precise but not accurate. Let us consider an example of a GPS system that is attempting to locate the position of a restaurant in a city. Think of the restaurant location as existing at the center of a bull's-eye target, and think of each GPS attempt to locate the restaurant as a black dot. In [link], you can see that the GPS measurements are spread out far apart from each other, but they are all relatively close to the actual location of the restaurant at the center of the target. This indicates a low precision, high accuracy measuring system. However, in [link], the GPS measurements are concentrated quite closely to one another, but they are far away from the target location. This indicates a high precision, low accuracy measuring system.



A GPS system attempts to locate a restaurant at the center of the bull’s-eye. The black dots represent each attempt to pinpoint the location of the restaurant. The dots are spread out quite far apart from one another, indicating low precision, but they are each rather close to the actual location of the restaurant, indicating high accuracy. (credit: Dark Evil)

In this figure, the dots are concentrated rather closely to one another, indicating high precision, but they are rather far away from the actual location of the restaurant, indicating low accuracy. (credit: Dark Evil)

Accuracy, Precision, and Uncertainty

The degree of accuracy and precision of a measuring system are related to the **uncertainty** in the measurements. Uncertainty is a quantitative measure of how much your measured values deviate from a standard or expected value. If your measurements are not very accurate or precise, then the

uncertainty of your values will be very high. In more general terms, uncertainty can be thought of as a disclaimer for your measured values. For example, if someone asked you to provide the mileage on your car, you might say that it is 45,000 miles, plus or minus 500 miles. The plus or minus amount is the uncertainty in your value. That is, you are indicating that the actual mileage of your car might be as low as 44,500 miles or as high as 45,500 miles, or anywhere in between. All measurements contain some amount of uncertainty. In our example of measuring the length of the paper, we might say that the length of the paper is 11 in., plus or minus 0.2 in. The uncertainty in a measurement, A, is often denoted as δA ("delta A "), so the measurement result would be recorded as $A \pm \delta A$. In our paper example, the length of the paper could be expressed as $11 \text{ in.} \pm 0.2$.

The factors contributing to uncertainty in a measurement include:

1. Limitations of the measuring device,
2. The skill of the person making the measurement,
3. Irregularities in the object being measured,
4. Any other factors that affect the outcome (highly dependent on the situation).

In our example, such factors contributing to the uncertainty could be the following: the smallest division on the ruler is 0.1 in., the person using the ruler has bad eyesight, or one side of the paper is slightly longer than the other. At any rate, the uncertainty in a measurement must be based on a careful consideration of all the factors that might contribute and their possible effects.

Note:

Making Connections: Real-World Connections – Fevers or Chills?

Uncertainty is a critical piece of information, both in physics and in many other real-world applications. Imagine you are caring for a sick child. You suspect the child has a fever, so you check his or her temperature with a thermometer. What if the uncertainty of the thermometer were 3.0°C? If the child's temperature reading was 37.0°C (which is normal body temperature), the "true" temperature could be anywhere from a

hypothermic $34.0^{\circ}C$ to a dangerously high $40.0^{\circ}C$. A thermometer with an uncertainty of $3.0^{\circ}C$ would be useless.

Percent Uncertainty

One method of expressing uncertainty is as a percent of the measured value. If a measurement A is expressed with uncertainty, δA, the **percent uncertainty** (%unc) is defined to be

Equation:

$$\% \text{ unc} = \frac{\delta A}{A} \times 100\%.$$

Example:

Calculating Percent Uncertainty: A Bag of Apples

A grocery store sells 5-lb bags of apples. You purchase four bags over the course of a month and weigh the apples each time. You obtain the following measurements:

Week 1 weight: 4.8 lb
Week 2 weight: 5.3 lb
Week 3 weight: 4.9 lb
Week 4 weight: 5.4 lb

You determine that the weight of the 5-lb bag has an uncertainty of ± 0.4 lb. What is the percent uncertainty of the bag's weight?

Strategy

First, observe that the expected value of the bag's weight, A, is 5 lb. The uncertainty in this value, δA, is 0.4 lb. We can use the following equation to determine the percent uncertainty of the weight:

Equation:

$$\% \text{ unc} = \frac{\delta A}{A} \times 100\%.$$

Solution
Plug the known values into the equation:
Equation:

$$\% \text{ unc} = \frac{0.4 \text{ lb}}{5 \text{ lb}} \times 100\% = 8\%.$$

Discussion
We can conclude that the weight of the apple bag is $5 \text{ lb} \pm 8\%$. Consider how this percent uncertainty would change if the bag of apples were half as heavy, but the uncertainty in the weight remained the same. Hint for future calculations: when calculating percent uncertainty, always remember that you must multiply the fraction by 100%. If you do not do this, you will have a decimal quantity, not a percent value.

Uncertainties in Calculations

There is an uncertainty in anything calculated from measured quantities. For example, the area of a floor calculated from measurements of its length and width has an uncertainty because the length and width have uncertainties. How big is the uncertainty in something you calculate by multiplication or division? If the measurements going into the calculation have small uncertainties (a few percent or less), then the **method of adding percents** can be used for multiplication or division. This method says that *the percent uncertainty in a quantity calculated by multiplication or division is the sum of the percent uncertainties in the items used to make the calculation*. For example, if a floor has a length of 4.00 m and a width of 3.00 m, with uncertainties of 2% and 1%, respectively, then the area of the floor is 12.0 m^2 and has an uncertainty of 3%. (Expressed as an area this is 0.36 m^2, which we round to 0.4 m^2 since the area of the floor is given to a tenth of a square meter.)
Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A high school track coach has just purchased a new stopwatch. The stopwatch manual states that the stopwatch has an uncertainty of ± 0.05 s. Runners on the track coach's team regularly clock 100-m sprints of 11.49 s to 15.01 s. At the school's last track meet, the first-place sprinter came in at 12.04 s and the second-place sprinter came in at 12.07 s. Will the coach's new stopwatch be helpful in timing the sprint team? Why or why not?

Solution:

No, the uncertainty in the stopwatch is too great to effectively differentiate between the sprint times.

Precision of Measuring Tools and Significant Figures

An important factor in the accuracy and precision of measurements involves the precision of the measuring tool. In general, a precise measuring tool is one that can measure values in very small increments. For example, a standard ruler can measure length to the nearest millimeter, while a caliper can measure length to the nearest 0.01 millimeter. The caliper is a more precise measuring tool because it can measure extremely small differences in length. The more precise the measuring tool, the more precise and accurate the measurements can be.

When we express measured values, we can only list as many digits as we initially measured with our measuring tool. For example, if you use a standard ruler to measure the length of a stick, you may measure it to be 36.7 cm. You could not express this value as 36.71 cm because your measuring tool was not precise enough to measure a hundredth of a centimeter. It should be noted that the last digit in a measured value has been estimated in some way by the person performing the measurement. For example, the person measuring the length of a stick with a ruler notices that the stick length seems to be somewhere in between 36.6 cm and 36.7 cm, and he or she must estimate the value of the last digit. Using the

method of **significant figures**, the rule is that *the last digit written down in a measurement is the first digit with some uncertainty*. In order to determine the number of significant digits in a value, start with the first measured value at the left and count the number of digits through the last digit written on the right. For example, the measured value $36.7\ \text{cm}$ has three digits, or significant figures. Significant figures indicate the precision of a measuring tool that was used to measure a value.

Zeros

Special consideration is given to zeros when counting significant figures. The zeros in 0.053 are not significant, because they are only placekeepers that locate the decimal point. There are two significant figures in 0.053. The zeros in 10.053 are not placekeepers but are significant—this number has five significant figures. The zeros in 1300 may or may not be significant depending on the style of writing numbers. They could mean the number is known to the last digit, or they could be placekeepers. So 1300 could have two, three, or four significant figures. (To avoid this ambiguity, write 1300 in scientific notation.) *Zeros are significant except when they serve only as placekeepers*.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Determine the number of significant figures in the following measurements:

a. 0.0009
b. 15,450.0
c. 6×10^3
d. 87.990
e. 30.42

Solution:

(a) 1; the zeros in this number are placekeepers that indicate the decimal point

(b) 6; here, the zeros indicate that a measurement was made to the 0.1 decimal point, so the zeros are significant

(c) 1; the value 10^3 signifies the decimal place, not the number of measured values

(d) 5; the final zero indicates that a measurement was made to the 0.001 decimal point, so it is significant

(e) 4; any zeros located in between significant figures in a number are also significant

Significant Figures in Calculations

When combining measurements with different degrees of accuracy and precision, *the number of significant digits in the final answer can be no greater than the number of significant digits in the least precise measured value*. There are two different rules, one for multiplication and division and the other for addition and subtraction, as discussed below.

1. For multiplication and division: *The result should have the same number of significant figures as the quantity having the least significant figures entering into the calculation*. For example, the area of a circle can be calculated from its radius using $A = \pi r^2$. Let us see how many significant figures the area has if the radius has only two—say, $r = 1.2\text{ m}$. Then,

Equation:

$$A = \pi r^2 = (3.1415927...) \times (1.2\text{ m})^2 = 4.5238934\text{ m}^2$$

is what you would get using a calculator that has an eight-digit output. But because the radius has only two significant figures, it limits the calculated

quantity to two significant figures or
Equation:

$$A = 4.5\ \text{m}^2,$$

even though π is good to at least eight digits.

2. For addition and subtraction: *The answer can contain no more decimal places than the least precise measurement.* Suppose that you buy 7.56-kg of potatoes in a grocery store as measured with a scale with precision 0.01 kg. Then you drop off 6.052-kg of potatoes at your laboratory as measured by a scale with precision 0.001 kg. Finally, you go home and add 13.7 kg of potatoes as measured by a bathroom scale with precision 0.1 kg. How many kilograms of potatoes do you now have, and how many significant figures are appropriate in the answer? The mass is found by simple addition and subtraction:
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rl} & 7.56\ \ \text{kg} \\ - & 6.052\ \text{kg} \\ \end{array}$$
$$\frac{+13.7\ \ \ \text{kg}}{15.208\ \text{kg}} = 15.2\ \text{kg}.$$

Next, we identify the least precise measurement: 13.7 kg. This measurement is expressed to the 0.1 decimal place, so our final answer must also be expressed to the 0.1 decimal place. Thus, the answer is rounded to the tenths place, giving us 15.2 kg.

Significant Figures in this Text

In this text, most numbers are assumed to have three significant figures. Furthermore, consistent numbers of significant figures are used in all worked examples. You will note that an answer given to three digits is based on input good to at least three digits, for example. If the input has fewer significant figures, the answer will also have fewer significant

figures. Care is also taken that the number of significant figures is reasonable for the situation posed. In some topics, particularly in optics, more accurate numbers are needed and more than three significant figures will be used. Finally, if a number is *exact*, such as the two in the formula for the circumference of a circle, $c = 2\pi r$, it does not affect the number of significant figures in a calculation.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Perform the following calculations and express your answer using the correct number of significant digits.

(a) A woman has two bags weighing 13.5 pounds and one bag with a weight of 10.2 pounds. What is the total weight of the bags?

(b) The force F on an object is equal to its mass m multiplied by its acceleration a. If a wagon with mass 55 kg accelerates at a rate of 0.0255 m/s^2, what is the force on the wagon? (The unit of force is called the newton, and it is expressed with the symbol N.)

Solution:

(a) 37.2 pounds; Because the number of bags is an exact value, it is not considered in the significant figures.

(b) 1.4 N; Because the value 55 kg has only two significant figures, the final value must also contain two significant figures.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Estimation
Explore size estimation in one, two, and three dimensions! Multiple levels of difficulty allow for progressive skill improvement.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/estimation/estimation_en.html

Summary

- Accuracy of a measured value refers to how close a measurement is to the correct value. The uncertainty in a measurement is an estimate of the amount by which the measurement result may differ from this value.
- Precision of measured values refers to how close the agreement is between repeated measurements.
- The precision of a *measuring tool* is related to the size of its measurement increments. The smaller the measurement increment, the more precise the tool.
- Significant figures express the precision of a measuring tool.
- When multiplying or dividing measured values, the final answer can contain only as many significant figures as the least precise value.
- When adding or subtracting measured values, the final answer cannot contain more decimal places than the least precise value.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the relationship between the accuracy and uncertainty of a measurement?

Exercise:

Problem:

Prescriptions for vision correction are given in units called *diopters* (D). Determine the meaning of that unit. Obtain information (perhaps by calling an optometrist or performing an internet search) on the minimum uncertainty with which corrections in diopters are determined and the accuracy with which corrective lenses can be produced. Discuss the sources of uncertainties in both the prescription and accuracy in the manufacture of lenses.

Problems & Exercises

Express your answers to problems in this section to the correct number of significant figures and proper units.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose that your bathroom scale reads your mass as 65 kg with a 3% uncertainty. What is the uncertainty in your mass (in kilograms)?

Solution:

2 kg

Exercise:

Problem:

A good-quality measuring tape can be off by 0.50 cm over a distance of 20 m. What is its percent uncertainty?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A car speedometer has a 5.0% uncertainty. What is the range of possible speeds when it reads $90\ \text{km/h}$? (b) Convert this range to miles per hour. $(1\ \text{km} = 0.6214\ \text{mi})$

Solution:

a. $85.5\ \text{to}\ 94.5\ \text{km/h}$
b. $53.1\ \text{to}\ 58.7\ \text{mi/h}$

Exercise:

Problem:

An infant's pulse rate is measured to be 130 ± 5 beats/min. What is the percent uncertainty in this measurement?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Suppose that a person has an average heart rate of 72.0 beats/min. How many beats does he or she have in 2.0 y? (b) In 2.00 y? (c) In 2.000 y?

Solution:

(a) 7.6×10^7 beats

(b) 7.57×10^7 beats

(c) 7.57×10^7 beats

Exercise:

Problem:

A can contains 375 mL of soda. How much is left after 308 mL is removed?

Exercise:

Problem:

State how many significant figures are proper in the results of the following calculations: (a) $(106.7)(98.2)/(46.210)(1.01)$ (b) $(18.7)^2$ (c) $\left(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\right)(3712)$.

Solution:

a. 3
b. 3
c. 3

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How many significant figures are in the numbers 99 and 100? (b) If the uncertainty in each number is 1, what is the percent uncertainty in each? (c) Which is a more meaningful way to express the accuracy of these two numbers, significant figures or percent uncertainties?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If your speedometer has an uncertainty of 2.0 km/h at a speed of 90 km/h, what is the percent uncertainty? (b) If it has the same percent uncertainty when it reads 60 km/h, what is the range of speeds you could be going?

Solution:

a) 2.2%

(b) $59\text{ to }61\text{ km/h}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A person's blood pressure is measured to be $120 \pm 2\text{ mm Hg}$. What is its percent uncertainty? (b) Assuming the same percent uncertainty, what is the uncertainty in a blood pressure measurement of 80 mm Hg?

Exercise:

Problem:

A person measures his or her heart rate by counting the number of beats in 30 s. If 40 ± 1 beats are counted in $30.0 \pm 0.5\text{ s}$, what is the heart rate and its uncertainty in beats per minute?

Solution:

$80 \pm 3 \text{ beats/min}$

Exercise:

Problem: What is the area of a circle 3.102 cm in diameter?

Exercise:

Problem:

If a marathon runner averages 9.5 mi/h, how long does it take him or her to run a 26.22-mi marathon?

Solution:

2.8 h

Exercise:

Problem:

A marathon runner completes a 42.188-km course in 2 h, 30 min, and 12 s. There is an uncertainty of 25 m in the distance traveled and an uncertainty of 1 s in the elapsed time. (a) Calculate the percent uncertainty in the distance. (b) Calculate the uncertainty in the elapsed time. (c) What is the average speed in meters per second? (d) What is the uncertainty in the average speed?

Exercise:

Problem:

The sides of a small rectangular box are measured to be $1.80 \pm 0.01 \text{ cm}$, $2.05 \pm 0.02 \text{ cm}$, and $3.1 \pm 0.1 \text{ cm}$ long. Calculate its volume and uncertainty in cubic centimeters.

Solution:

$11 \pm 1 \text{ cm}^3$

Exercise:

Problem:

When non-metric units were used in the United Kingdom, a unit of mass called the *pound-mass* (lbm) was employed, where $1\ \mathrm{lbm} = 0.4539\ \mathrm{kg}$. (a) If there is an uncertainty of $0.0001\ \mathrm{kg}$ in the pound-mass unit, what is its percent uncertainty? (b) Based on that percent uncertainty, what mass in pound-mass has an uncertainty of 1 kg when converted to kilograms?

Exercise:

Problem:

The length and width of a rectangular room are measured to be $3.955 \pm 0.005\ \mathrm{m}$ and $3.050 \pm 0.005\ \mathrm{m}$. Calculate the area of the room and its uncertainty in square meters.

Solution:

$12.06 \pm 0.04\ \mathrm{m}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

A car engine moves a piston with a circular cross section of $7.500 \pm 0.002\ \mathrm{cm}$ diameter a distance of $3.250 \pm 0.001\ \mathrm{cm}$ to compress the gas in the cylinder. (a) By what amount is the gas decreased in volume in cubic centimeters? (b) Find the uncertainty in this volume.

Glossary

accuracy
: the degree to which a measured value agrees with correct value for that measurement

method of adding percents

the percent uncertainty in a quantity calculated by multiplication or division is the sum of the percent uncertainties in the items used to make the calculation

percent uncertainty
: the ratio of the uncertainty of a measurement to the measured value, expressed as a percentage

precision
: the degree to which repeated measurements agree with each other

significant figures
: express the precision of a measuring tool used to measure a value

uncertainty
: a quantitative measure of how much your measured values deviate from a standard or expected value

Approximation

- Make reasonable approximations based on given data.

On many occasions, physicists, other scientists, and engineers need to make **approximations** or "guesstimates" for a particular quantity. What is the distance to a certain destination? What is the approximate density of a given item? About how large a current will there be in a circuit? Many approximate numbers are based on formulae in which the input quantities are known only to a limited accuracy. As you develop problem-solving skills (that can be applied to a variety of fields through a study of physics), you will also develop skills at approximating. You will develop these skills through thinking more quantitatively, and by being willing to take risks. As with any endeavor, experience helps, as well as familiarity with units. These approximations allow us to rule out certain scenarios or unrealistic numbers. Approximations also allow us to challenge others and guide us in our approaches to our scientific world. Let us do two examples to illustrate this concept.

Example:
Approximate the Height of a Building
Can you approximate the height of one of the buildings on your campus, or in your neighborhood? Let us make an approximation based upon the height of a person. In this example, we will calculate the height of a 39-story building.
Strategy
Think about the average height of an adult male. We can approximate the height of the building by scaling up from the height of a person.
Solution
Based on information in the example, we know there are 39 stories in the building. If we use the fact that the height of one story is approximately equal to about the length of two adult humans (each human is about 2-m tall), then we can estimate the total height of the building to be
Equation:

$$\frac{2 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ person}} \times \frac{2 \text{ person}}{1 \text{ story}} \times 39 \text{ stories} = 156 \text{ m.}$$

Discussion

You can use known quantities to determine an approximate measurement of unknown quantities. If your hand measures 10 cm across, how many hand lengths equal the width of your desk? What other measurements can you approximate besides length?

Example:
Approximating Vast Numbers: a Trillion Dollars

A bank stack contains one-hundred \$100 bills, and is worth \$10,000. How many bank stacks make up a trillion dollars? (credit: Andrew Magill)

The U.S. federal deficit in the 2008 fiscal year was a little greater than \$10 trillion. Most of us do not have any concept of how much even one trillion actually is. Suppose that you were given a trillion dollars in \$100 bills. If you made 100-bill stacks and used them to evenly cover a football field (between the end zones), make an approximation of how high the money pile would become. (We will use feet/inches rather than meters here

because football fields are measured in yards.) One of your friends says 3 in., while another says 10 ft. What do you think?

Strategy

When you imagine the situation, you probably envision thousands of small stacks of 100 wrapped \$100 bills, such as you might see in movies or at a bank. Since this is an easy-to-approximate quantity, let us start there. We can find the volume of a stack of 100 bills, find out how many stacks make up one trillion dollars, and then set this volume equal to the area of the football field multiplied by the unknown height.

Solution

(1) Calculate the volume of a stack of 100 bills. The dimensions of a single bill are approximately 3 in. by 6 in. A stack of 100 of these is about 0.5 in. thick. So the total volume of a stack of 100 bills is:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{volume of stack} &= \text{length} \times \text{width} \times \text{height},\\ \text{volume of stack} &= 6\text{ in.} \times 3\text{ in.} \times 0.5\text{ in.},\\ \text{volume of stack} &= 9\text{ in.}^3.\end{aligned}$$

(2) Calculate the number of stacks. Note that a trillion dollars is equal to $\$1 \times 10^{12}$, and a stack of one-hundred \$100 bills is equal to \$10,000, or $\$1 \times 10^4$. The number of stacks you will have is:

Equation:

$$\$1 \times 10^{12}(\text{a trillion dollars})/\ \$1 \times 10^4 \text{ per stack} = 1 \times 10^8 \text{ stacks.}$$

(3) Calculate the area of a football field in square inches. The area of a football field is $100\text{ yd}\times 50\text{ yd}$, which gives $5{,}000\text{ yd}^2$. Because we are working in inches, we need to convert square yards to square inches:

Equation:

$$\begin{gathered}\text{Area} = 5{,}000\text{ yd}^2 \times \frac{3\text{ ft}}{1\text{ yd}} \times \frac{3\text{ ft}}{1\text{ yd}} \times \frac{12\text{ in.}}{1\text{ ft}} \times \frac{12\text{ in.}}{1\text{ ft}} = 6{,}480{,}000\text{ in.}^2,\\ \text{Area} \approx 6 \times 10^6\text{ in.}^2.\end{gathered}$$

This conversion gives us $6 \times 10^6\text{ in.}^2$ for the area of the field. (Note that we are using only one significant figure in these calculations.)

(4) Calculate the total volume of the bills. The volume of all the $100-bill stacks is $9\text{ in.}^3/\text{stack} \times 10^8\text{ stacks} = 9 \times 10^8\text{ in.}^3$.
(5) Calculate the height. To determine the height of the bills, use the equation:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{volume of bills} &= \text{area of field} \times \text{height of money:} \\ \text{Height of money} &= \frac{\text{volume of bills}}{\text{area of field}}, \\ \text{Height of money} &= \frac{9\times10^8\text{in.}^3}{6\times10^6\text{in.}^2} = 1.33 \times 10^2\text{in.}, \\ \text{Height of money} &\approx 1 \times 10^2\text{in.} = 100\text{ in.} \end{aligned}$$

The height of the money will be about 100 in. high. Converting this value to feet gives
Equation:

$$100\text{ in.} \times \frac{1\text{ ft}}{12\text{ in.}} = 8.33\text{ ft} \approx 8\text{ ft}.$$

Discussion
The final approximate value is much higher than the early estimate of 3 in., but the other early estimate of 10 ft (120 in.) was roughly correct. How did the approximation measure up to your first guess? What can this exercise tell you in terms of rough “guesstimates” versus carefully calculated approximations?

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Using mental math and your understanding of fundamental units, approximate the area of a regulation basketball court. Describe the process you used to arrive at your final approximation.

Solution:

An average male is about two meters tall. It would take approximately 15 men laid out end to end to cover the length, and about 7 to cover the width. That gives an approximate area of $420\ \mathrm{m}^2$.

Summary

Scientists often approximate the values of quantities to perform calculations and analyze systems.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: How many heartbeats are there in a lifetime?

Solution:

Sample answer: 2×10^9 heartbeats

Exercise:

Problem:

A generation is about one-third of a lifetime. Approximately how many generations have passed since the year 0 AD?

Exercise:

Problem:

How many times longer than the mean life of an extremely unstable atomic nucleus is the lifetime of a human? (Hint: The lifetime of an unstable atomic nucleus is on the order of 10^{-22} s.)

Solution:

Sample answer: 2×10^{31} if an average human lifetime is taken to be about 70 years.

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the approximate number of atoms in a bacterium. Assume that the average mass of an atom in the bacterium is ten times the mass of a hydrogen atom. (Hint: The mass of a hydrogen atom is on the order of 10^{-27} kg and the mass of a bacterium is on the order of 10^{-15} kg.)

This color-enhanced photo shows *Salmonella typhimurium* (red) attacking human cells. These bacteria are commonly known for causing foodborne illness. Can you estimate the number of atoms in each bacterium? (credit: Rocky Mountain Laboratories, NIAID, NIH)

Exercise:

Problem:

Approximately how many atoms thick is a cell membrane, assuming all atoms there average about twice the size of a hydrogen atom?

Solution:

Sample answer: 50 atoms

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What fraction of Earth's diameter is the greatest ocean depth? (b) The greatest mountain height?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the number of cells in a hummingbird assuming the mass of an average cell is ten times the mass of a bacterium. (b) Making the same assumption, how many cells are there in a human?

Solution:

Sample answers:

(a) 10^{12} cells/hummingbird

(b) 10^{16} cells/human

Exercise:

Problem:

Assuming one nerve impulse must end before another can begin, what is the maximum firing rate of a nerve in impulses per second?

Glossary

approximation

an estimated value based on prior experience and reasoning

# Introduction to One-Dimensional Kinematics
class="introduction"

The motion of an American kestrel through the air can be described by the bird’s displacement, speed, velocity, and acceleration. When it flies in a straight line without any change in direction, its motion is said to be one dimensional. (credit: Vince Maidens, Wikimedia Commons)

Objects are in motion everywhere we look. Everything from a tennis game to a space-probe flyby of the planet Neptune involves motion. When you are resting, your heart moves blood through your veins. And even in inanimate objects, there is continuous motion in the vibrations of atoms and molecules. Questions about motion are interesting in and of themselves: *How long will it take for a space probe to get to Mars? Where will a football land if it is thrown at a certain angle?* But an understanding of motion is also key to understanding other concepts in physics. An understanding of acceleration, for example, is crucial to the study of force.

Our formal study of physics begins with **kinematics** which is defined as the *study of motion without considering its causes*. The word "kinematics" comes from a Greek term meaning motion and is related to other English words such as "cinema" (movies) and "kinesiology" (the study of human motion). In one-dimensional kinematics and Two-Dimensional Kinematics we will study only the *motion* of a football, for example, without worrying about what forces cause or change its motion. Such considerations come in other chapters. In this chapter, we examine the simplest type of motion—namely, motion along a straight line, or one-dimensional motion. In Two-Dimensional Kinematics, we apply concepts developed here to study motion along curved paths (two- and three-dimensional motion); for example, that of a car rounding a curve.

Displacement

- Define position, displacement, distance, and distance traveled.
- Explain the relationship between position and displacement.
- Distinguish between displacement and distance traveled.
- Calculate displacement and distance given initial position, final position, and the path between the two.

These cyclists in Vietnam can be described by their position relative to buildings and a canal. Their motion can be described by their change in position, or displacement, in the frame of reference. (credit: Suzan Black, Fotopedia)

Position

In order to describe the motion of an object, you must first be able to describe its **position**—where it is at any particular time. More precisely, you need to specify its position relative to a convenient reference frame. Earth is often used as a reference frame, and we often describe the position of an object as it relates to stationary objects in that reference frame. For

example, a rocket launch would be described in terms of the position of the rocket with respect to the Earth as a whole, while a professor's position could be described in terms of where she is in relation to the nearby white board. (See [link].) In other cases, we use reference frames that are not stationary but are in motion relative to the Earth. To describe the position of a person in an airplane, for example, we use the airplane, not the Earth, as the reference frame. (See [link].)

Displacement

If an object moves relative to a reference frame (for example, if a professor moves to the right relative to a white board or a passenger moves toward the rear of an airplane), then the object's position changes. This change in position is known as **displacement**. The word "displacement" implies that an object has moved, or has been displaced.

Note:
Displacement
Displacement is the *change in position* of an object:
Equation:

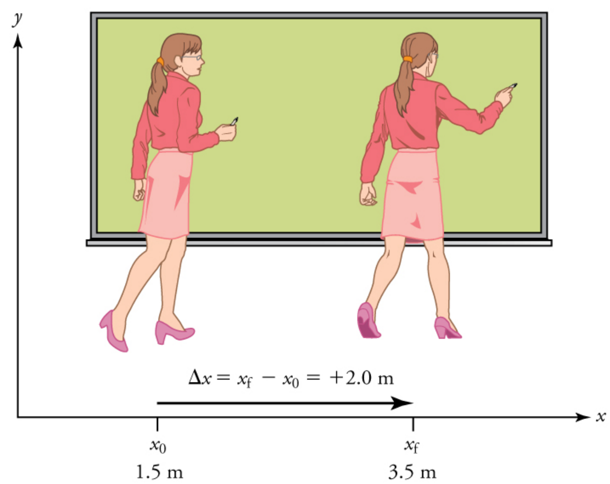
$$\Delta x = x_{\mathrm{f}} - x_0,$$

where Δx is displacement, x_{f} is the final position, and x_0 is the initial position.

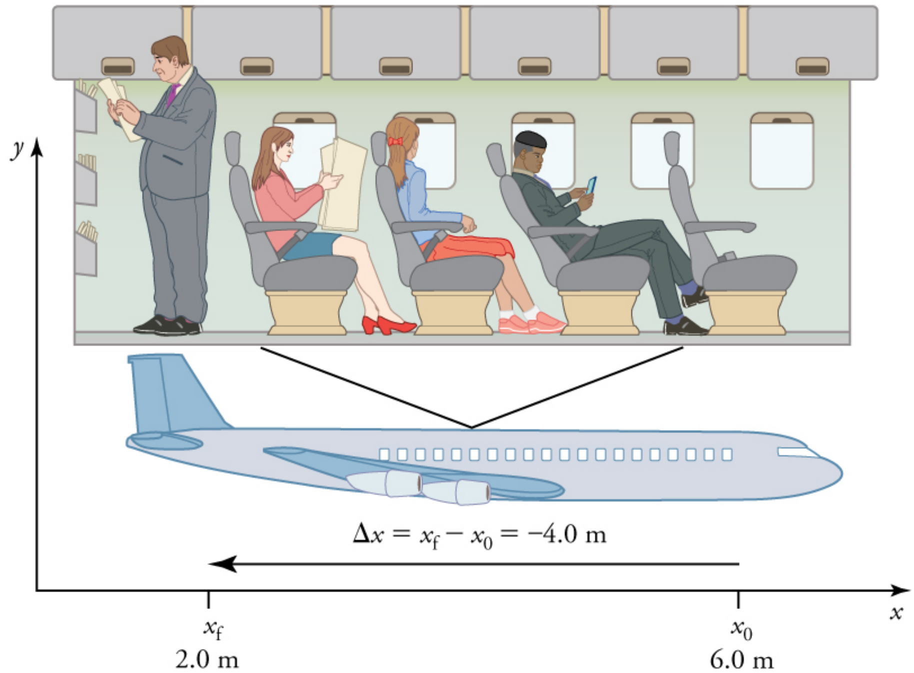
In this text the upper case Greek letter Δ (delta) always means "change in" whatever quantity follows it; thus, Δx means *change in position*. Always solve for displacement by subtracting initial position x_0 from final position x_{f}.

Note that the SI unit for displacement is the meter (m) (see Physical Quantities and Units), but sometimes kilometers, miles, feet, and other units of length are used. Keep in mind that when units other than the meter are

used in a problem, you may need to convert them into meters to complete the calculation.



A professor paces left and right while lecturing. Her position relative to Earth is given by x. The $+2.0 \text{ m}$ displacement of the professor relative to Earth is represented by an arrow pointing to the right.



A passenger moves from his seat to the back of the plane. His location relative to the airplane is given by x. The -4.0-m displacement of the passenger relative to the plane is represented by an arrow toward the rear of the plane. Notice that the arrow representing his displacement is twice as long as the arrow representing the displacement of the professor (he moves twice as far) in [link].

Note that displacement has a direction as well as a magnitude. The professor's displacement is 2.0 m to the right, and the airline passenger's displacement is 4.0 m toward the rear. In one-dimensional motion, direction can be specified with a plus or minus sign. When you begin a problem, you should select which direction is positive (usually that will be to the right or up, but you are free to select positive as being any direction). The professor's initial position is $x_0 = 1.5\text{ m}$ and her final position is $x_\text{f} = 3.5\text{ m}$. Thus her displacement is

Equation:

$$\Delta x = x_\text{f} - x_0 = 3.5\text{ m} - 1.5\text{ m} = +2.0\text{ m}.$$

In this coordinate system, motion to the right is positive, whereas motion to the left is negative. Similarly, the airplane passenger's initial position is $x_0 = 6.0\text{ m}$ and his final position is $x_\text{f} = 2.0\text{ m}$, so his displacement is

Equation:

$$\Delta x = x_\text{f} - x_0 = 2.0\text{ m} - 6.0\text{ m} = -4.0\text{ m}.$$

His displacement is negative because his motion is toward the rear of the plane, or in the negative x direction in our coordinate system.

Distance

Although displacement is described in terms of direction, distance is not. **Distance** is defined to be *the magnitude or size of displacement between two positions*. Note that the distance between two positions is not the same as the distance traveled between them. **Distance traveled** is *the total length of the path traveled between two positions*. Distance has no direction and, thus, no sign. For example, the distance the professor walks is 2.0 m. The distance the airplane passenger walks is 4.0 m.

Note:

Misconception Alert: Distance Traveled vs. Magnitude of Displacement

It is important to note that the *distance traveled*, however, can be greater than the magnitude of the displacement (by magnitude, we mean just the size of the displacement without regard to its direction; that is, just a number with a unit). For example, the professor could pace back and forth many times, perhaps walking a distance of 150 m during a lecture, yet still end up only 2.0 m to the right of her starting point. In this case her displacement would be +2.0 m, the magnitude of her displacement would be 2.0 m, but the distance she traveled would be 150 m. In kinematics we nearly always deal with displacement and magnitude of displacement, and almost never with distance traveled. One way to think about this is to assume you marked the start of the motion and the end of the motion. The

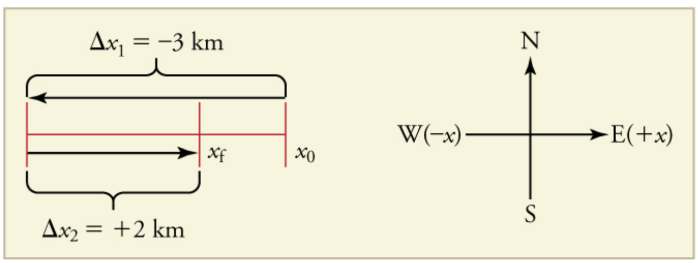
displacement is simply the difference in the position of the two marks and is independent of the path taken in traveling between the two marks. The distance traveled, however, is the total length of the path taken between the two marks.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A cyclist rides 3 km west and then turns around and rides 2 km east. (a) What is her displacement? (b) What distance does she ride? (c) What is the magnitude of her displacement?

Solution:



(a) The rider's displacement is $\Delta x = x_\mathrm{f} - x_0 = -1\ \mathrm{km}$. (The displacement is negative because we take east to be positive and west to be negative.)

(b) The distance traveled is $3\ \mathrm{km} + 2\ \mathrm{km} = 5\ \mathrm{km}$.

(c) The magnitude of the displacement is $1\ \mathrm{km}$.

Section Summary

- Kinematics is the study of motion without considering its causes. In this chapter, it is limited to motion along a straight line, called one-dimensional motion.
- Displacement is the change in position of an object.

- In symbols, displacement Δx is defined to be
  Equation:

  $$\Delta x = x_{\mathrm{f}} - x_0,$$

  where x_0 is the initial position and x_{f} is the final position. In this text, the Greek letter Δ (delta) always means "change in" whatever quantity follows it. The SI unit for displacement is the meter (m). Displacement has a direction as well as a magnitude.
- When you start a problem, assign which direction will be positive.
- Distance is the magnitude of displacement between two positions.
- Distance traveled is the total length of the path traveled between two positions.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example in which there are clear distinctions among distance traveled, displacement, and magnitude of displacement. Specifically identify each quantity in your example.

Exercise:

Problem:

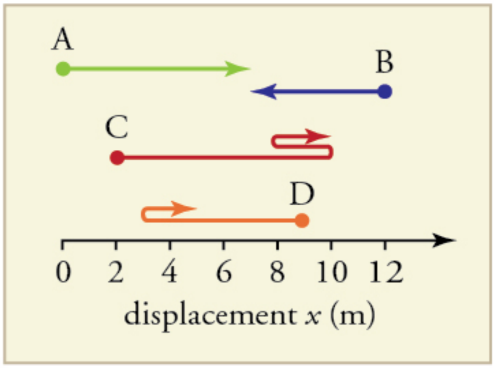
Under what circumstances does distance traveled equal magnitude of displacement? What is the only case in which magnitude of displacement and displacement are exactly the same?

Exercise:

Problem:

Bacteria move back and forth by using their flagella (structures that look like little tails). Speeds of up to $50\ \mu\mathrm{m/s}$ $\left(50 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m/s}\right)$ have been observed. The total distance traveled by a bacterium is large for its size, while its displacement is small. Why is this?

Problems & Exercises



Exercise:

Problem:

Find the following for path A in [link]: (a) The distance traveled. (b) The magnitude of the displacement from start to finish. (c) The displacement from start to finish.

Solution:

(a) 7 m

(b) 7 m

(c) $+7$ m

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the following for path B in [link]: (a) The distance traveled. (b) The magnitude of the displacement from start to finish. (c) The displacement from start to finish.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the following for path C in [link]: (a) The distance traveled. (b) The magnitude of the displacement from start to finish. (c) The displacement from start to finish.

Solution:

(a) 13 m

(b) 9 m

(c) $+9$ m

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the following for path D in [link]: (a) The distance traveled. (b) The magnitude of the displacement from start to finish. (c) The displacement from start to finish.

Glossary

kinematics
: the study of motion without considering its causes

position
: the location of an object at a particular time

displacement
: the change in position of an object

distance
: the magnitude of displacement between two positions

distance traveled
: the total length of the path traveled between two positions

Vectors, Scalars, and Coordinate Systems

- Define and distinguish between scalar and vector quantities.
- Assign a coordinate system for a scenario involving one-dimensional motion.

The motion of this Eclipse Concept jet can be described in terms of the distance it has traveled (a scalar quantity) or its displacement in a specific direction (a vector quantity). In order to specify the direction of motion, its displacement must be described based on a coordinate system. In this case, it may be convenient to choose motion toward the left as positive motion (it is the forward direction for the plane), although in many cases, the x-coordinate runs from left to right, with motion to the right as positive and motion to the left as negative. (credit: Armchair Aviator, Flickr)

What is the difference between distance and displacement? Whereas displacement is defined by both direction and magnitude, distance is defined only by magnitude. Displacement is an example of a vector quantity. Distance is an example of a scalar quantity. A **vector** is any quantity with both *magnitude and direction*. Other examples of vectors include a velocity of 90 km/h east and a force of 500 newtons straight down.

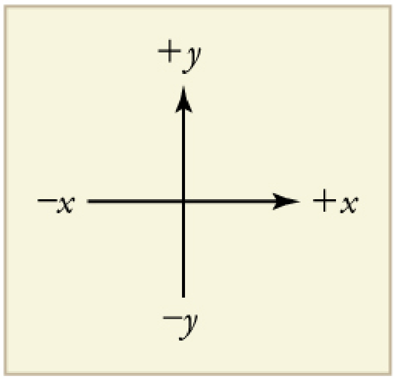
The direction of a vector in one-dimensional motion is given simply by a plus $(+)$ or minus $(-)$ sign. Vectors are represented graphically by arrows. An arrow used to represent a vector has a length proportional to the vector's magnitude (e.g., the larger the magnitude, the longer the length of the vector) and points in the same direction as the vector.

Some physical quantities, like distance, either have no direction or none is specified. A **scalar** is any quantity that has a magnitude, but no direction. For example, a 20°C temperature, the 250 kilocalories (250 Calories) of energy in a candy bar, a 90 km/h speed limit, a person's 1.8 m height, and a distance of 2.0 m are all scalars—quantities with no specified direction. Note, however, that a scalar can be negative, such as a -20°C temperature. In this case, the minus sign indicates a point on a scale rather than a direction. Scalars are never represented by arrows.

Coordinate Systems for One-Dimensional Motion

In order to describe the direction of a vector quantity, you must designate a coordinate system within the reference frame. For one-dimensional motion, this is a simple coordinate system consisting of a one-dimensional coordinate line. In general, when describing horizontal motion, motion to the right is usually considered positive, and motion to the left is considered negative. With vertical motion, motion up is usually positive and motion down is negative. In some cases, however, as with the jet in [link], it can be more convenient to switch the positive and negative directions. For example, if you are analyzing the motion of falling objects, it can be useful to define downwards as the positive direction. If people in a race are

running to the left, it is useful to define left as the positive direction. It does not matter as long as the system is clear and consistent. Once you assign a positive direction and start solving a problem, you cannot change it.



It is usually convenient to consider motion upward or to the right as positive $(+)$ and motion downward or to the left as negative $(-)$.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A person’s speed can stay the same as he or she rounds a corner and changes direction. Given this information, is speed a scalar or a vector quantity? Explain.

Solution:

Speed is a scalar quantity. It does not change at all with direction changes; therefore, it has magnitude only. If it were a vector quantity, it would change as direction changes (even if its magnitude remained constant).

Section Summary

- A vector is any quantity that has magnitude and direction.
- A scalar is any quantity that has magnitude but no direction.
- Displacement and velocity are vectors, whereas distance and speed are scalars.
- In one-dimensional motion, direction is specified by a plus or minus sign to signify left or right, up or down, and the like.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

A student writes, "*A bird that is diving for prey has a speed of* $- \quad m/s$." What is wrong with the student's statement? What has the student actually described? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem: What is the speed of the bird in [link]?

Exercise:

Problem:

Acceleration is the change in velocity over time. Given this information, is acceleration a vector or a scalar quantity? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

A weather forecast states that the temperature is predicted to be $-5^{\circ}C$ the following day. Is this temperature a vector or a scalar quantity? Explain.

Glossary

scalar
: a quantity that is described by magnitude, but not direction

vector
: a quantity that is described by both magnitude and direction

Time, Velocity, and Speed

- Explain the relationships between instantaneous velocity, average velocity, instantaneous speed, average speed, displacement, and time.
- Calculate velocity and speed given initial position, initial time, final position, and final time.
- Derive a graph of velocity vs. time given a graph of position vs. time.
- Interpret a graph of velocity vs. time.

The motion of these racing snails can be described by their speeds and their velocities. (credit: tobitasflickr, Flickr)

There is more to motion than distance and displacement. Questions such as, “How long does a foot race take?” and “What was the runner’s speed?” cannot be answered without an understanding of other concepts. In this section we add definitions of time, velocity, and speed to expand our description of motion.

Time

As discussed in Physical Quantities and Units, the most fundamental physical quantities are defined by how they are measured. This is the case with time. Every measurement of time involves measuring a change in

some physical quantity. It may be a number on a digital clock, a heartbeat, or the position of the Sun in the sky. In physics, the definition of time is simple—**time** is *change*, or the interval over which change occurs. It is impossible to know that time has passed unless something changes.

The amount of time or change is calibrated by comparison with a standard. The SI unit for time is the second, abbreviated s. We might, for example, observe that a certain pendulum makes one full swing every 0.75 s. We could then use the pendulum to measure time by counting its swings or, of course, by connecting the pendulum to a clock mechanism that registers time on a dial. This allows us to not only measure the amount of time, but also to determine a sequence of events.

How does time relate to motion? We are usually interested in elapsed time for a particular motion, such as how long it takes an airplane passenger to get from his seat to the back of the plane. To find elapsed time, we note the time at the beginning and end of the motion and subtract the two. For example, a lecture may start at 11:00 A.M. and end at 11:50 A.M., so that the elapsed time would be 50 min. **Elapsed time** Δt is the difference between the ending time and beginning time,

Equation:

$$\Delta t = t_\mathrm{f} - t_0,$$

where Δt is the change in time or elapsed time, t_f is the time at the end of the motion, and t_0 is the time at the beginning of the motion. (As usual, the delta symbol, Δ, means the change in the quantity that follows it.)

Life is simpler if the beginning time t_0 is taken to be zero, as when we use a stopwatch. If we were using a stopwatch, it would simply read zero at the start of the lecture and 50 min at the end. If $t_0 = 0$, then $\Delta t = t_\mathrm{f} \equiv t$.

In this text, for simplicity's sake,

- motion starts at time equal to zero $(t_0 = 0)$
- the symbol t is used for elapsed time unless otherwise specified $(\Delta t = t_\mathrm{f} \equiv t)$

Velocity

Your notion of velocity is probably the same as its scientific definition. You know that if you have a large displacement in a small amount of time you have a large velocity, and that velocity has units of distance divided by time, such as miles per hour or kilometers per hour.

Note:
Average Velocity
Average velocity is *displacement (change in position) divided by the time of travel,*
Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{x_{\text{f}} - x_0}{t_{\text{f}} - t_0},$$

where $\bar{v}$ is the *average* (indicated by the bar over the v) velocity, Δx is the change in position (or displacement), and x_{f} and x_0 are the final and beginning positions at times t_{f} and t_0, respectively. If the starting time t_0 is taken to be zero, then the average velocity is simply
Equation:

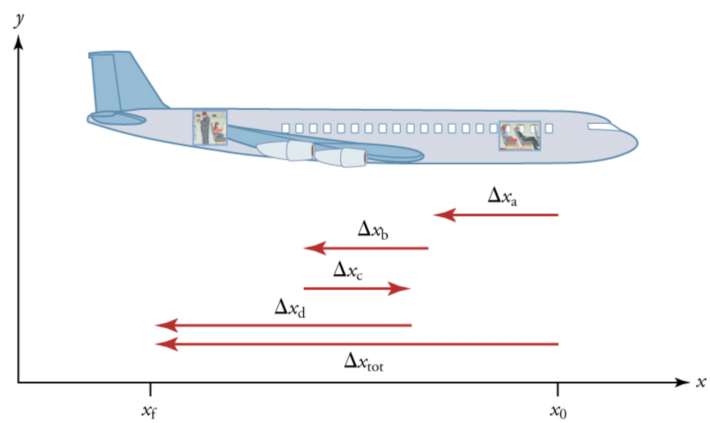
$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{t}.$$

Notice that this definition indicates that *velocity is a vector because displacement is a vector*. It has both magnitude and direction. The SI unit for velocity is meters per second or m/s, but many other units, such as km/h, mi/h (also written as mph), and cm/s, are in common use. Suppose, for example, an airplane passenger took 5 seconds to move −4 m (the negative sign indicates that displacement is toward the back of the plane). His average velocity would be
Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{t} = \frac{-4\text{ m}}{5\text{ s}} = -0.8\text{ m/s}.$$

The minus sign indicates the average velocity is also toward the rear of the plane.

The average velocity of an object does not tell us anything about what happens to it between the starting point and ending point, however. For example, we cannot tell from average velocity whether the airplane passenger stops momentarily or backs up before he goes to the back of the plane. To get more details, we must consider smaller segments of the trip over smaller time intervals.



A more detailed record of an airplane passenger heading toward the back of the plane, showing smaller segments of his trip.

The smaller the time intervals considered in a motion, the more detailed the information. When we carry this process to its logical conclusion, we are left with an infinitesimally small interval. Over such an interval, the average velocity becomes the *instantaneous velocity* or the *velocity at a specific instant*. A car's speedometer, for example, shows the magnitude (but not the

direction) of the instantaneous velocity of the car. (Police give tickets based on instantaneous velocity, but when calculating how long it will take to get from one place to another on a road trip, you need to use average velocity.) **Instantaneous velocity** v is the average velocity at a specific instant in time (or over an infinitesimally small time interval).

Mathematically, finding instantaneous velocity, v, at a precise instant t can involve taking a limit, a calculus operation beyond the scope of this text. However, under many circumstances, we can find precise values for instantaneous velocity without calculus.

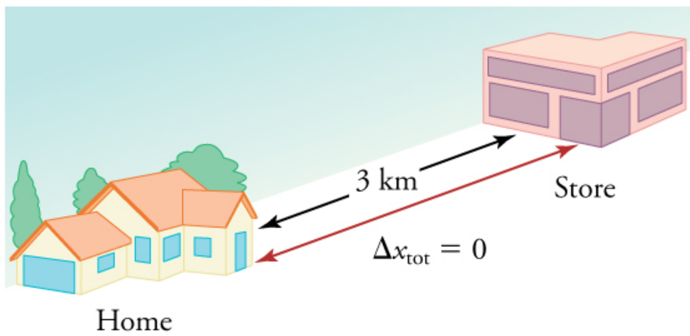
Speed

In everyday language, most people use the terms “speed” and “velocity” interchangeably. In physics, however, they do not have the same meaning and they are distinct concepts. One major difference is that speed has no direction. Thus *speed is a scalar*. Just as we need to distinguish between instantaneous velocity and average velocity, we also need to distinguish between instantaneous speed and average speed.

Instantaneous speed is the magnitude of instantaneous velocity. For example, suppose the airplane passenger at one instant had an instantaneous velocity of −3.0 m/s (the minus meaning toward the rear of the plane). At that same time his instantaneous speed was 3.0 m/s. Or suppose that at one time during a shopping trip your instantaneous velocity is 40 km/h due north. Your instantaneous speed at that instant would be 40 km/h—the same magnitude but without a direction. Average speed, however, is very different from average velocity. **Average speed** is the distance traveled divided by elapsed time.

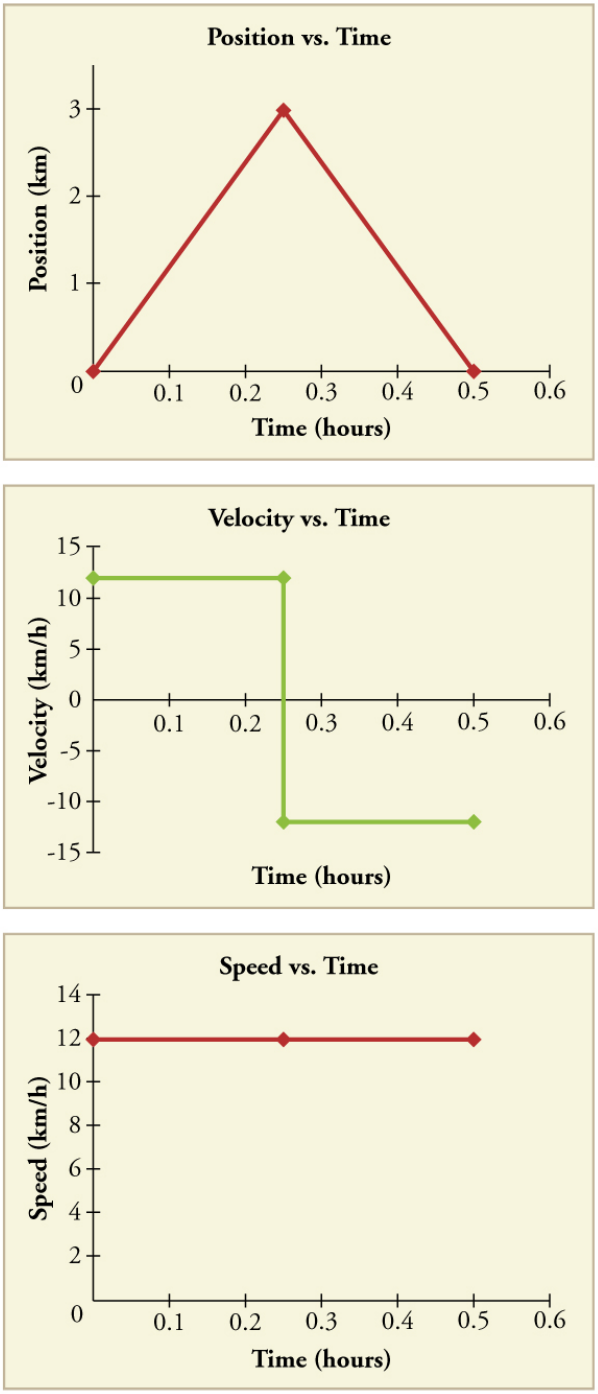
We have noted that distance traveled can be greater than displacement. So average speed can be greater than average velocity, which is displacement divided by time. For example, if you drive to a store and return home in half an hour, and your car’s odometer shows the total distance traveled was 6 km, then your average speed was 12 km/h. Your average velocity, however, was zero, because your displacement for the round trip is zero.

(Displacement is change in position and, thus, is zero for a round trip.) Thus average speed is *not* simply the magnitude of average velocity.



During a 30-minute round trip to the store, the total distance traveled is 6 km. The average speed is 12 km/h. The displacement for the round trip is zero, since there was no net change in position. Thus the average velocity is zero.

Another way of visualizing the motion of an object is to use a graph. A plot of position or of velocity as a function of time can be very useful. For example, for this trip to the store, the position, velocity, and speed-vs.-time graphs are displayed in [link]. (Note that these graphs depict a very simplified **model** of the trip. We are assuming that speed is constant during the trip, which is unrealistic given that we'll probably stop at the store. But for simplicity's sake, we will model it with no stops or changes in speed. We are also assuming that the route between the store and the house is a perfectly straight line.)



Position vs. time, velocity vs. time, and speed vs. time on a trip. Note that the velocity for the return trip is negative.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Getting a Sense of Speed

If you have spent much time driving, you probably have a good sense of speeds between about 10 and 70 miles per hour. But what are these in meters per second? What do we mean when we say that something is moving at 10 m/s? To get a better sense of what these values really mean, do some observations and calculations on your own:

- calculate typical car speeds in meters per second
- estimate jogging and walking speed by timing yourself; convert the measurements into both m/s and mi/h
- determine the speed of an ant, snail, or falling leaf

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A commuter train travels from Baltimore to Washington, DC, and back in 1 hour and 45 minutes. The distance between the two stations is approximately 40 miles. What is (a) the average velocity of the train, and (b) the average speed of the train in m/s?

Solution:

(a) The average velocity of the train is zero because $x_{\mathrm{f}} = x_0$; the train ends up at the same place it starts.

(b) The average speed of the train is calculated below. Note that the train travels 40 miles one way and 40 miles back, for a total distance of 80 miles.

Equation:

$$\frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}} = \frac{80 \text{ miles}}{105 \text{ minutes}}$$

Equation:

$$\frac{80 \text{ miles}}{105 \text{ minutes}} \times \frac{5280 \text{ feet}}{1 \text{ mile}} \times \frac{1 \text{ meter}}{3.28 \text{ feet}} \times \frac{1 \text{ minute}}{60 \text{ seconds}} = 20 \text{ m/s}$$

Section Summary

- Time is measured in terms of change, and its SI unit is the second (s). Elapsed time for an event is
  Equation:

  $$\Delta t = t_{\text{f}} - t_0,$$

  where t_{f} is the final time and t_0 is the initial time. The initial time is often taken to be zero, as if measured with a stopwatch; the elapsed time is then just t.
- Average velocity $\bar{v}$ is defined as displacement divided by the travel time. In symbols, average velocity is
  Equation:

  $$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{x_{\text{f}} - x_0}{t_{\text{f}} - t_0}.$$

- The SI unit for velocity is m/s.
- Velocity is a vector and thus has a direction.
- Instantaneous velocity v is the velocity at a specific instant or the average velocity for an infinitesimal interval.
- Instantaneous speed is the magnitude of the instantaneous velocity.
- Instantaneous speed is a scalar quantity, as it has no direction specified.
- Average speed is the total distance traveled divided by the elapsed time. (Average speed is *not* the magnitude of the average velocity.) Speed is a scalar quantity; it has no direction associated with it.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example (but not one from the text) of a device used to measure time and identify what change in that device indicates a change in time.

Exercise:

Problem:

There is a distinction between average speed and the magnitude of average velocity. Give an example that illustrates the difference between these two quantities.

Exercise:

Problem:

Does a car’s odometer measure position or displacement? Does its speedometer measure speed or velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

If you divide the total distance traveled on a car trip (as determined by the odometer) by the time for the trip, are you calculating the average speed or the magnitude of the average velocity? Under what circumstances are these two quantities the same?

Exercise:

Problem:

How are instantaneous velocity and instantaneous speed related to one another? How do they differ?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate Earth’s average speed relative to the Sun. (b) What is its average velocity over a period of one year?

Solution:

(a) $3.0 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{m/s}$

(b) 0 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

A helicopter blade spins at exactly 100 revolutions per minute. Its tip is 5.00 m from the center of rotation. (a) Calculate the average speed of the blade tip in the helicopter’s frame of reference. (b) What is its average velocity over one revolution?

Exercise:

Problem:

The North American and European continents are moving apart at a rate of about 3 cm/y. At this rate how long will it take them to drift 500 km farther apart than they are at present?

Solution:

$2 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{years}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Land west of the San Andreas fault in southern California is moving at an average velocity of about 6 cm/y northwest relative to land east of the fault. Los Angeles is west of the fault and may thus someday be at the same latitude as San Francisco, which is east of the fault. How far in the future will this occur if the displacement to be made is 590 km northwest, assuming the motion remains constant?

Exercise:

Problem:

On May 26, 1934, a streamlined, stainless steel diesel train called the Zephyr set the world’s nonstop long-distance speed record for trains. Its run from Denver to Chicago took 13 hours, 4 minutes, 58 seconds, and was witnessed by more than a million people along the route. The total distance traveled was 1633.8 km. What was its average speed in km/h and m/s?

Solution:

$34.689\ \text{m/s} = 124.88\ \text{km/h}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Tidal friction is slowing the rotation of the Earth. As a result, the orbit of the Moon is increasing in radius at a rate of approximately 4 cm/year. Assuming this to be a constant rate, how many years will pass before the radius of the Moon’s orbit increases by 3.84×10^6 m (1%)?

Exercise:

Problem:

A student drove to the university from her home and noted that the odometer reading of her car increased by 12.0 km. The trip took 18.0 min. (a) What was her average speed? (b) If the straight-line distance from her home to the university is 10.3 km in a direction 25.0° south of east, what was her average velocity? (c) If she returned home by the same path 7 h 30 min after she left, what were her average speed and velocity for the entire trip?

Solution:

(a) $40.0\ \text{km/h}$

(b) 34.3 km/h, 25° S of E.

(c) average speed $= 3.20\ \text{km/h}$, $\bar{v} = 0$.

Exercise:

Problem:

The speed of propagation of the action potential (an electrical signal) in a nerve cell depends (inversely) on the diameter of the axon (nerve fiber). If the nerve cell connecting the spinal cord to your feet is 1.1 m long, and the nerve impulse speed is 18 m/s, how long does it take for the nerve signal to travel this distance?

Exercise:

Problem:

Conversations with astronauts on the lunar surface were characterized by a kind of echo in which the earthbound person's voice was so loud in the astronaut's space helmet that it was picked up by the astronaut's microphone and transmitted back to Earth. It is reasonable to assume that the echo time equals the time necessary for the radio wave to travel from the Earth to the Moon and back (that is, neglecting any time delays in the electronic equipment). Calculate the distance from Earth to the Moon given that the echo time was 2.56 s and that radio waves travel at the speed of light $(3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})$.

Solution:

384,000 km

Exercise:

Problem:

A football quarterback runs 15.0 m straight down the playing field in 2.50 s. He is then hit and pushed 3.00 m straight backward in 1.75 s. He breaks the tackle and runs straight forward another 21.0 m in 5.20 s. Calculate his average velocity (a) for each of the three intervals and (b) for the entire motion.

Exercise:

Problem:

The planetary model of the atom pictures electrons orbiting the atomic nucleus much as planets orbit the Sun. In this model you can view hydrogen, the simplest atom, as having a single electron in a circular orbit 1.06×10^{-10} m in diameter. (a) If the average speed of the electron in this orbit is known to be 2.20×10^6 m/s, calculate the number of revolutions per second it makes about the nucleus. (b) What is the electron's average velocity?

Solution:

(a) 6.61×10^{15} rev/s

(b) 0 m/s

Glossary

average speed
: distance traveled divided by time during which motion occurs

average velocity
: displacement divided by time over which displacement occurs

instantaneous velocity
: velocity at a specific instant, or the average velocity over an infinitesimal time interval

instantaneous speed
: magnitude of the instantaneous velocity

time
: change, or the interval over which change occurs

model
: simplified description that contains only those elements necessary to describe the physics of a physical situation

elapsed time
: the difference between the ending time and beginning time

Acceleration

- Define and distinguish between instantaneous acceleration, average acceleration, and deceleration.
- Calculate acceleration given initial time, initial velocity, final time, and final velocity.

A plane decelerates, or slows down, as it comes in for landing in St. Maarten. Its acceleration is opposite in direction to its velocity. (credit: Steve Conry, Flickr)

In everyday conversation, to accelerate means to speed up. The accelerator in a car can in fact cause it to speed up. The greater the **acceleration**, the greater the change in velocity over a given time. The formal definition of acceleration is consistent with these notions, but more inclusive.

Note:
Average Acceleration
Average Acceleration is *the rate at which velocity changes,*
Equation:

$$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{v_{\text{f}} - v_0}{t_{\text{f}} - t_0},$$

where $\bar{a}$ is average acceleration, v is velocity, and t is time. (The bar over the a means *average* acceleration.)

Because acceleration is velocity in m/s divided by time in s, the SI units for acceleration are m/s^2, meters per second squared or meters per second per second, which literally means by how many meters per second the velocity changes every second.

Recall that velocity is a vector—it has both magnitude and direction. This means that a change in velocity can be a change in magnitude (or speed), but it can also be a change in *direction*. For example, if a car turns a corner at constant speed, it is accelerating because its direction is changing. The quicker you turn, the greater the acceleration. So there is an acceleration when velocity changes either in magnitude (an increase or decrease in speed) or in direction, or both.

Note:
Acceleration as a Vector
Acceleration is a vector in the same direction as the *change* in velocity, Δv. Since velocity is a vector, it can change either in magnitude or in direction. Acceleration is therefore a change in either speed or direction, or both.

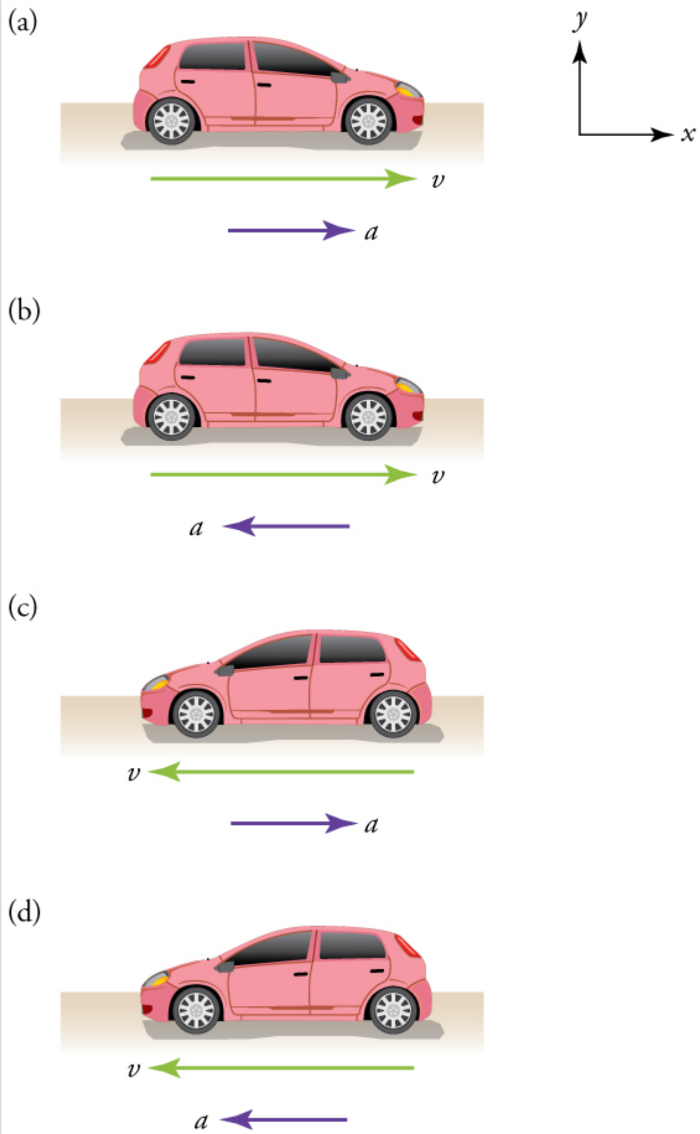
Keep in mind that although acceleration is in the direction of the *change* in velocity, it is not always in the direction of *motion*. When an object slows down, its acceleration is opposite to the direction of its motion. This is known as **deceleration**.

A subway train in Sao Paulo, Brazil, decelerates as it comes into a station. It is accelerating in a direction opposite to its direction of motion. (credit: Yusuke Kawasaki, Flickr)

Note:

Misconception Alert: Deceleration vs. Negative Acceleration

Deceleration always refers to acceleration in the direction opposite to the direction of the velocity. Deceleration always reduces speed. Negative acceleration, however, is acceleration *in the negative direction in the chosen coordinate system*. Negative acceleration may or may not be deceleration, and deceleration may or may not be considered negative acceleration. For example, consider [link].



(a) This car is speeding up as it moves toward the right. It therefore has positive acceleration in our coordinate system. (b) This car is slowing down as it moves toward the right. Therefore, it has negative acceleration in our coordinate system, because its acceleration is toward the left. The car is also decelerating: the direction of its acceleration is opposite to its direction of motion. (c) This car is moving

toward the left, but slowing down over time. Therefore, its acceleration is positive in our coordinate system because it is toward the right. However, the car is decelerating because its acceleration is opposite to its motion. (d) This car is speeding up as it moves toward the left. It has negative acceleration because it is accelerating toward the left. However, because its acceleration is in the same direction as its motion, it is speeding up (*not* decelerating).

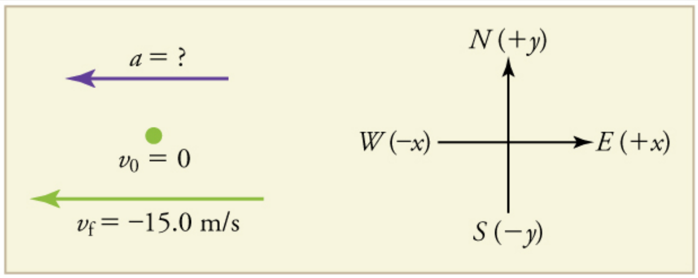
Example:
Calculating Acceleration: A Racehorse Leaves the Gate

A racehorse coming out of the gate accelerates from rest to a velocity of 15.0 m/s due west in 1.80 s. What is its average acceleration?

(credit: Jon Sullivan, PD Photo.org)

Strategy

First we draw a sketch and assign a coordinate system to the problem. This is a simple problem, but it always helps to visualize it. Notice that we assign east as positive and west as negative. Thus, in this case, we have negative velocity.



We can solve this problem by identifying Δv and Δt from the given information and then calculating the average acceleration directly from the equation $\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{v_f - v_0}{t_f - t_0}$.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. $v_0 = 0$, $v_f = -15.0\text{ m/s}$ (the negative sign indicates direction toward the west), $\Delta t = 1.80\text{ s}$.
2. Find the change in velocity. Since the horse is going from zero to -15.0 m/s, its change in velocity equals its final velocity: $\Delta v = v_f = -15.0\text{ m/s}$.
3. Plug in the known values (Δv and Δt) and solve for the unknown $\bar{a}$.

Equation:

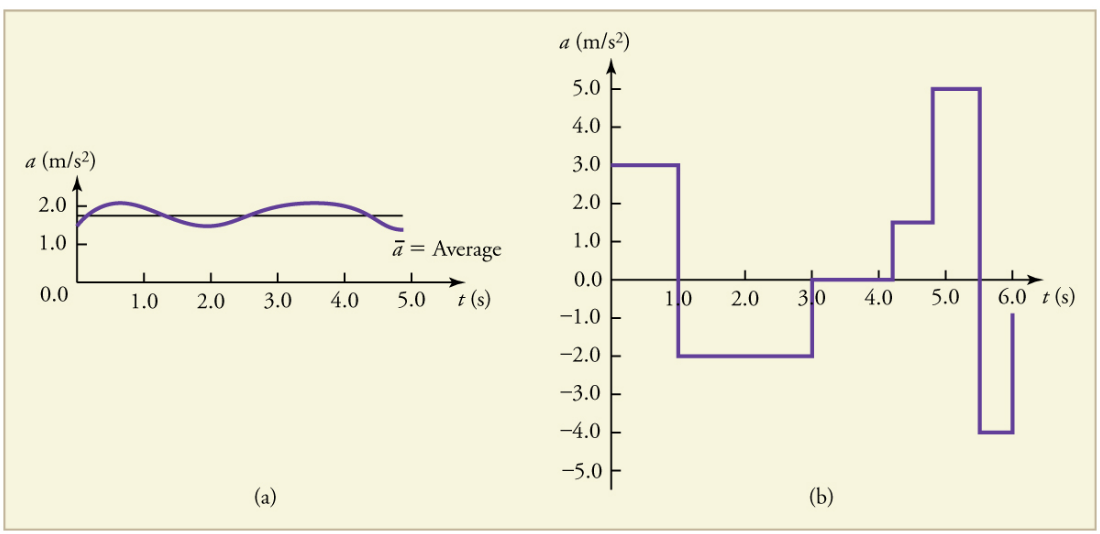
$$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{-15.0\text{ m/s}}{1.80\text{ s}} = -8.33\text{ m/s}^2.$$

Discussion

The negative sign for acceleration indicates that acceleration is toward the west. An acceleration of 8.33 m/s^2 due west means that the horse increases its velocity by 8.33 m/s due west each second, that is, 8.33 meters per second per second, which we write as 8.33 m/s^2. This is truly an average acceleration, because the ride is not smooth. We shall see later that an acceleration of this magnitude would require the rider to hang on with a force nearly equal to his weight.

Instantaneous Acceleration

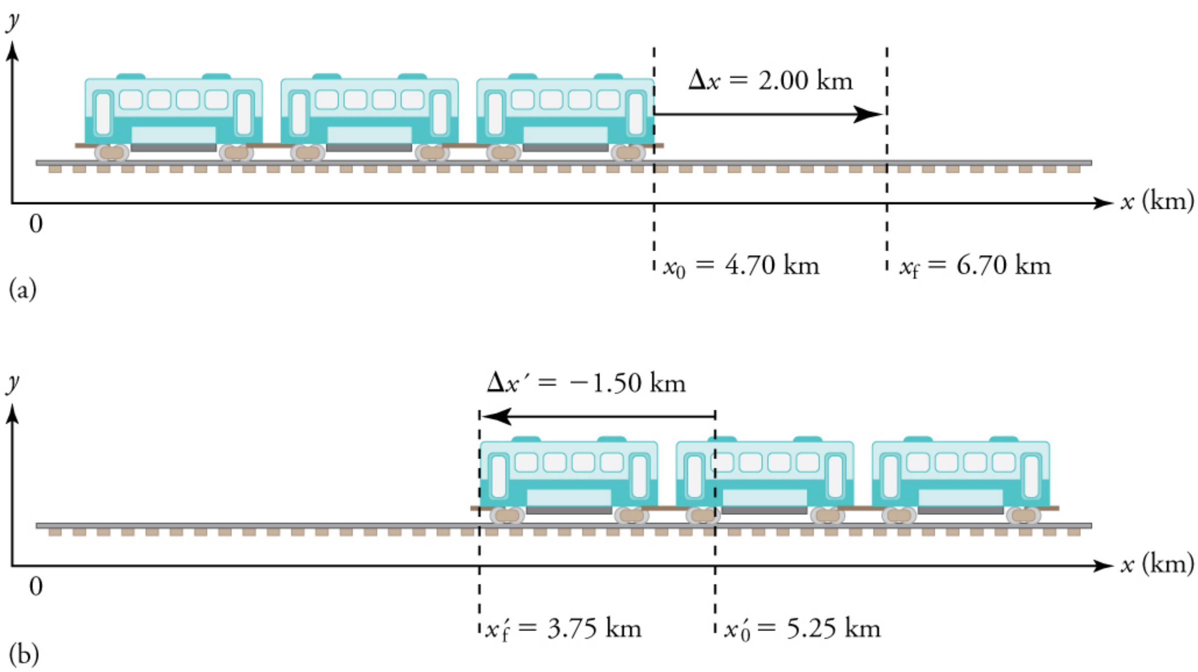
Instantaneous acceleration *a*, or the *acceleration at a specific instant in time*, is obtained by the same process as discussed for instantaneous velocity in Time, Velocity, and Speed—that is, by considering an infinitesimally small interval of time. How do we find instantaneous acceleration using only algebra? The answer is that we choose an average acceleration that is representative of the motion. [link] shows graphs of instantaneous acceleration versus time for two very different motions. In [link](a), the acceleration varies slightly and the average over the entire interval is nearly the same as the instantaneous acceleration at any time. In this case, we should treat this motion as if it had a constant acceleration equal to the average (in this case about $1.8\ \text{m/s}^2$). In [link](b), the acceleration varies drastically over time. In such situations it is best to consider smaller time intervals and choose an average acceleration for each. For example, we could consider motion over the time intervals from 0 to 1.0 s and from 1.0 to 3.0 s as separate motions with accelerations of $+3.0\ \text{m/s}^2$ and $-2.0\ \text{m/s}^2$, respectively.



Graphs of instantaneous acceleration versus time for two different one-dimensional motions. (a) Here acceleration varies only slightly and is always in the same direction, since it is positive. The average over the interval is nearly the same as the

acceleration at any given time. (b) Here the acceleration varies greatly, perhaps representing a package on a post office conveyor belt that is accelerated forward and backward as it bumps along. It is necessary to consider small time intervals (such as from 0 to 1.0 s) with constant or nearly constant acceleration in such a situation.

The next several examples consider the motion of the subway train shown in [link]. In (a) the shuttle moves to the right, and in (b) it moves to the left. The examples are designed to further illustrate aspects of motion and to illustrate some of the reasoning that goes into solving problems.



One-dimensional motion of a subway train considered in [link], [link], [link], [link], [link], and [link]. Here we have chosen the x-axis so that + means to the right and − means to the left for displacements, velocities, and accelerations. (a) The subway train moves to the right from x_0 to x_f. Its displacement Δx is +2.0 km. (b) The train moves to the left from $x\prime_0$ to $x\prime_f$. Its displacement $\Delta x\prime$ is

-1.5 km. (Note that the prime symbol (′) is used simply to distinguish between displacement in the two different situations. The distances of travel and the size of the cars are on different scales to fit everything into the diagram.)

Example:
Calculating Displacement: A Subway Train

What are the magnitude and sign of displacements for the motions of the subway train shown in parts (a) and (b) of [link]?

Strategy

A drawing with a coordinate system is already provided, so we don't need to make a sketch, but we should analyze it to make sure we understand what it is showing. Pay particular attention to the coordinate system. To find displacement, we use the equation $\Delta x = x_{\mathrm{f}} - x_0$. This is straightforward since the initial and final positions are given.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. In the figure we see that $x_{\mathrm{f}} = 6.70\text{ km}$ and $x_0 = 4.70\text{ km}$ for part (a), and $x\prime_{\mathrm{f}} = 3.75\text{ km}$ and $x\prime_0 = 5.25\text{ km}$ for part (b).

2. Solve for displacement in part (a).

Equation:

$$\Delta x = x_{\mathrm{f}} - x_0 = 6.70\text{ km} - 4.70\text{ km} = +2.00\text{ km}$$

3. Solve for displacement in part (b).

Equation:

$$\Delta x\prime = x\prime_{\mathrm{f}} - x\prime_0 = 3.75\text{ km} - 5.25\text{ km} = -1.50\text{ km}$$

Discussion

The direction of the motion in (a) is to the right and therefore its displacement has a positive sign, whereas motion in (b) is to the left and thus has a negative sign.

Example:
Comparing Distance Traveled with Displacement: A Subway Train

What are the distances traveled for the motions shown in parts (a) and (b) of the subway train in [link]?

Strategy

To answer this question, think about the definitions of distance and distance traveled, and how they are related to displacement. Distance between two positions is defined to be the magnitude of displacement, which was found in [link]. Distance traveled is the total length of the path traveled between the two positions. (See Displacement.) In the case of the subway train shown in [link], the distance traveled is the same as the distance between the initial and final positions of the train.

Solution

1. The displacement for part (a) was +2.00 km. Therefore, the distance between the initial and final positions was 2.00 km, and the distance traveled was 2.00 km.
2. The displacement for part (b) was -1.5 km. Therefore, the distance between the initial and final positions was 1.50 km, and the distance traveled was 1.50 km.

Discussion

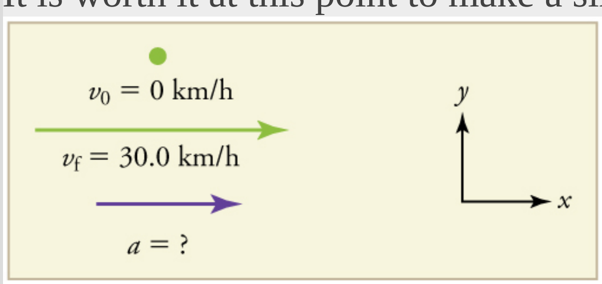
Distance is a scalar. It has magnitude but no sign to indicate direction.

Example:
Calculating Acceleration: A Subway Train Speeding Up

Suppose the train in [link](a) accelerates from rest to 30.0 km/h in the first 20.0 s of its motion. What is its average acceleration during that time interval?

Strategy

It is worth it at this point to make a simple sketch:



This problem involves three steps. First we must determine the change in velocity, then we must determine the change in time, and finally we use these values to calculate the acceleration.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. $v_0 = 0$ (the trains starts at rest), $v_f = 30.0 \text{ km/h}$, and $\Delta t = 20.0 \text{ s}$.

2. Calculate Δv. Since the train starts from rest, its change in velocity is $\Delta v = +30.0 \text{ km/h}$, where the plus sign means velocity to the right.

3. Plug in known values and solve for the unknown, $\bar{a}$.

Equation:

$$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{+30.0 \text{ km/h}}{20.0 \text{ s}}$$

4. Since the units are mixed (we have both hours and seconds for time), we need to convert everything into SI units of meters and seconds. (See Physical Quantities and Units for more guidance.)

Equation:

$$\bar{a} = \left(\frac{+30 \text{ km/h}}{20.0 \text{ s}}\right)\left(\frac{10^3 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ km}}\right)\left(\frac{1 \text{ h}}{3600 \text{ s}}\right) = 0.417 \text{ m/s}^2$$

Discussion

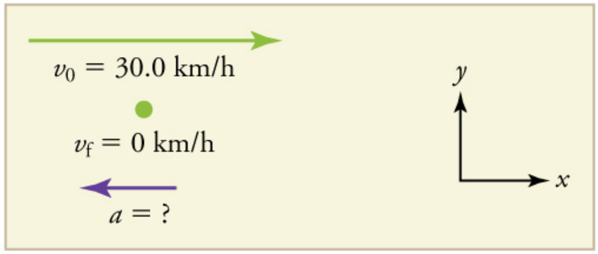
The plus sign means that acceleration is to the right. This is reasonable because the train starts from rest and ends up with a velocity to the right (also positive). So acceleration is in the same direction as the *change* in velocity, as is always the case.

Example:

Calculate Acceleration: A Subway Train Slowing Down

Now suppose that at the end of its trip, the train in [link](a) slows to a stop from a speed of 30.0 km/h in 8.00 s. What is its average acceleration while stopping?

Strategy



In this case, the train is decelerating and its acceleration is negative because it is toward the left. As in the previous example, we must find the change in velocity and the change in time and then solve for acceleration.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. $v_0 = 30.0\ \text{km/h}$, $v_\text{f} = 0\ \text{km/h}$ (the train is stopped, so its velocity is 0), and $\Delta t = 8.00\ \text{s}$.
2. Solve for the change in velocity, Δv.

Equation:

$$\Delta v = v_\text{f} - v_0 = 0 - 30.0\ \text{km/h} = -30.0\ \text{km/h}$$

3. Plug in the knowns, Δv and Δt, and solve for $\bar{a}$.

Equation:

$$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{-30.0\ \text{km/h}}{8.00\ \text{s}}$$

4. Convert the units to meters and seconds.

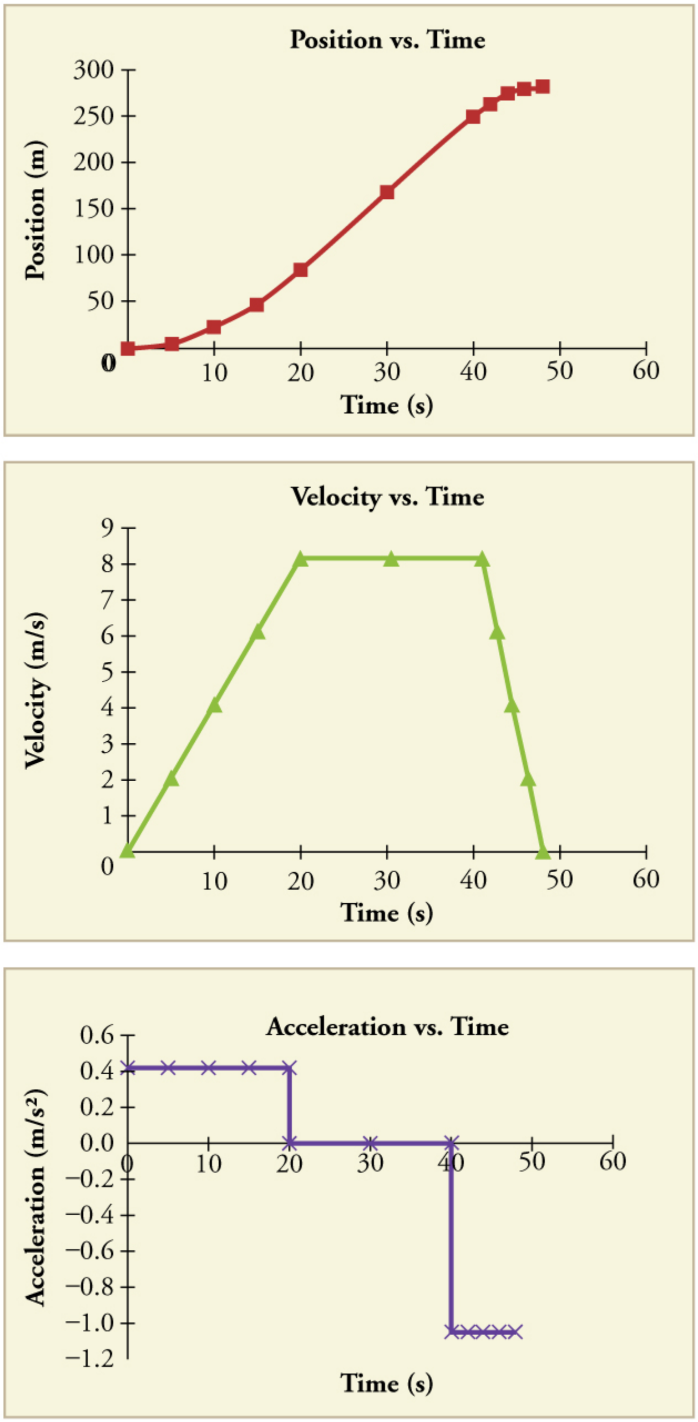
Equation:

$$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \left(\frac{-30.0\ \text{km/h}}{8.00\ \text{s}}\right)\left(\frac{10^3\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{km}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{h}}{3600\ \text{s}}\right) = -1.04\ \text{m/s}^2.$$

Discussion

The minus sign indicates that acceleration is to the left. This sign is reasonable because the train initially has a positive velocity in this problem, and a negative acceleration would oppose the motion. Again, acceleration is in the same direction as the *change* in velocity, which is negative here. This acceleration can be called a deceleration because it has a direction opposite to the velocity.

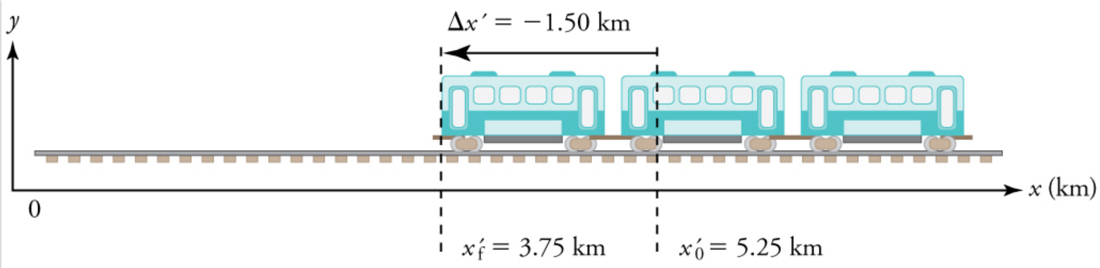
The graphs of position, velocity, and acceleration vs. time for the trains in [link] and [link] are displayed in [link]. (We have taken the velocity to remain constant from 20 to 40 s, after which the train decelerates.)



(a) Position of the train over time. Notice that the train’s position changes slowly at the beginning of the journey, then more and more quickly as it picks up speed. Its position then changes more slowly as it slows down at the end of the journey. In the middle of the journey, while the velocity remains constant, the position changes at a constant rate. (b) Velocity of the train over time. The train’s velocity increases as it accelerates at the beginning of the journey. It remains the same in the middle of the journey (where there is no acceleration). It decreases as the train decelerates at the end of the journey. (c) The acceleration of the train over time. The train has positive acceleration as it speeds up at the beginning of the journey. It has no acceleration as it travels at constant velocity in the middle of the journey. Its acceleration is negative as it slows down at the end of the journey.

Example:
Calculating Average Velocity: The Subway Train

What is the average velocity of the train in part b of [link], and shown again below, if it takes 5.00 min to make its trip?



Strategy

Average velocity is displacement divided by time. It will be negative here, since the train moves to the left and has a negative displacement.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. $x\prime_{\text{f}} = 3.75\text{ km}$, $x\prime_0 = 5.25\text{ km}$, $\Delta t = 5.00\text{ min}$.
2. Determine displacement, $\Delta x\prime$. We found $\Delta x\prime$ to be -1.5 km in [link].
3. Solve for average velocity.

Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x\prime}{\Delta t} = \frac{-1.50\text{ km}}{5.00\text{ min}}$$

4. Convert units.

Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x\prime}{\Delta t} = \left(\frac{-1.50\text{ km}}{5.00\text{ min}}\right)\left(\frac{60\text{ min}}{1\text{ h}}\right) = -18.0\text{ km/h}$$

Discussion

The negative velocity indicates motion to the left.

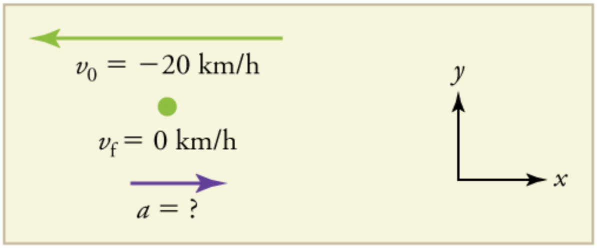
Example:

Calculating Deceleration: The Subway Train

Finally, suppose the train in [link] slows to a stop from a velocity of 20.0 km/h in 10.0 s. What is its average acceleration?

Strategy

Once again, let’s draw a sketch:



As before, we must find the change in velocity and the change in time to calculate average acceleration.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. $v_0 = -20\text{ km/h}$, $v_f = 0\text{ km/h}$, $\Delta t = 10.0\text{ s}$.
2. Calculate Δv. The change in velocity here is actually positive, since

Equation:

$$\Delta v = v_f - v_0 = 0 - (-20\text{ km/h}) = +20\text{ km/h}.$$

3. Solve for $\bar{a}$.

Equation:

$$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{+20.0\text{ km/h}}{10.0\text{ s}}$$

4. Convert units.

Equation:

$$\bar{a} = \left(\frac{+20.0\text{ km/h}}{10.0\text{ s}}\right)\left(\frac{10^3\text{ m}}{1\text{ km}}\right)\left(\frac{1\text{ h}}{3600\text{ s}}\right) = +0.556\text{ m/s}^2$$

Discussion

The plus sign means that acceleration is to the right. This is reasonable because the train initially has a negative velocity (to the left) in this problem and a positive acceleration opposes the motion (and so it is to the right). Again, acceleration is in the same direction as the *change* in velocity, which is positive here. As in [link], this acceleration can be called a deceleration since it is in the direction opposite to the velocity.

Sign and Direction

Perhaps the most important thing to note about these examples is the signs of the answers. In our chosen coordinate system, plus means the quantity is to the right and minus means it is to the left. This is easy to imagine for displacement and velocity. But it is a little less obvious for acceleration. Most people interpret negative acceleration as the slowing of an object. This was not the case in [link], where a positive acceleration slowed a negative velocity. The crucial distinction was that the acceleration was in the opposite direction from the velocity. In fact, a negative acceleration will *increase* a negative velocity. For example, the train moving to the left in [link] is sped up by an acceleration to the left. In that case, both v and a are negative. The plus and minus signs give the directions of the accelerations. If acceleration has the same sign as the velocity, the object is speeding up. If acceleration has the opposite sign as the velocity, the object is slowing down.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

An airplane lands on a runway traveling east. Describe its acceleration.

Solution:

If we take east to be positive, then the airplane has negative acceleration, as it is accelerating toward the west. It is also decelerating: its acceleration is opposite in direction to its velocity.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Moving Man Simulation

Learn about position, velocity, and acceleration graphs. Move the little man back and forth with the mouse and plot his motion. Set the position, velocity, or acceleration and let the simulation move the man for you. https://archive.cnx.org/specials/e2ca52af-8c6b-450e-ac2f-9300b38e8739/moving-man/

Section Summary

- Acceleration is the rate at which velocity changes. In symbols, **average acceleration** $\bar{a}$ is
  Equation:
  $$\bar{a} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{v_{\text{f}} - v_0}{t_{\text{f}} - t_0}.$$
- The SI unit for acceleration is m/s^2.
- Acceleration is a vector, and thus has a both a magnitude and direction.
- Acceleration can be caused by either a change in the magnitude or the direction of the velocity.
- Instantaneous acceleration a is the acceleration at a specific instant in time.
- Deceleration is an acceleration with a direction opposite to that of the velocity.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Is it possible for speed to be constant while acceleration is not zero? Give an example of such a situation.

Exercise:

Problem:

Is it possible for velocity to be constant while acceleration is not zero? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example in which velocity is zero yet acceleration is not.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a subway train is moving to the left (has a negative velocity) and then comes to a stop, what is the direction of its acceleration? Is the acceleration positive or negative?

Exercise:

Problem:

Plus and minus signs are used in one-dimensional motion to indicate direction. What is the sign of an acceleration that reduces the magnitude of a negative velocity? Of a positive velocity?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A cheetah can accelerate from rest to a speed of 30.0 m/s in 7.00 s. What is its acceleration?

Solution:

$4.29\ \text{m/s}^2$

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Dr. John Paul Stapp was U.S. Air Force officer who studied the effects of extreme deceleration on the human body. On December 10, 1954, Stapp rode a rocket sled, accelerating from rest to a top speed of 282 m/s (1015 km/h) in 5.00 s, and was brought jarringly back to rest in only 1.40 s! Calculate his (a) acceleration and (b) deceleration.

Express each in multiples of g $(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2})$ by taking its ratio to the acceleration of gravity.

Exercise:

Problem:

A commuter backs her car out of her garage with an acceleration of $1.40\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$. (a) How long does it take her to reach a speed of 2.00 m/s? (b) If she then brakes to a stop in 0.800 s, what is her deceleration?

Solution:

(a) $1.43\ \mathrm{s}$

(b) $-2.50\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Assume that an intercontinental ballistic missile goes from rest to a suborbital speed of 6.50 km/s in 60.0 s (the actual speed and time are classified). What is its average acceleration in $\mathrm{m/s^2}$ and in multiples of g $(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2})$?

Glossary

acceleration
: the rate of change in velocity; the change in velocity over time

average acceleration
: the change in velocity divided by the time over which it changes

instantaneous acceleration
: acceleration at a specific point in time

deceleration

acceleration in the direction opposite to velocity; acceleration that results in a decrease in velocity

Motion Equations for Constant Acceleration in One Dimension

- Calculate displacement of an object that is not accelerating, given initial position and velocity.
- Calculate final velocity of an accelerating object, given initial velocity, acceleration, and time.
- Calculate displacement and final position of an accelerating object, given initial position, initial velocity, time, and acceleration.

Kinematic equations can help us describe and predict the motion of moving objects such as these kayaks racing in Newbury, England. (credit: Barry Skeates, Flickr)

We might know that the greater the acceleration of, say, a car moving away from a stop sign, the greater the displacement in a given time. But we have not developed a specific equation that relates acceleration and displacement. In this section, we develop some convenient equations for kinematic relationships, starting from the definitions of displacement, velocity, and acceleration already covered.

Notation: *t*, *x*, *v*, *a*

First, let us make some simplifications in notation. Taking the initial time to be zero, as if time is measured with a stopwatch, is a great simplification. Since elapsed time is $\Delta t = t_{\text{f}} - t_0$, taking $t_0 = 0$ means that $\Delta t = t_{\text{f}}$, the final time on the stopwatch. When initial time is taken to be zero, we use the subscript 0 to denote initial values of position and velocity. That is, x_0 *is the initial position* and v_0 *is the initial velocity*. We put no subscripts on the final values. That is, t *is the final time*, x *is the final position*, and v *is the final velocity*. This gives a simpler expression for elapsed time—now, $\Delta t = t$. It also simplifies the expression for displacement, which is now $\Delta x = x - x_0$. Also, it simplifies the expression for change in velocity, which is now $\Delta v = v - v_0$. To summarize, using the simplified notation, with the initial time taken to be zero,

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta t & = & t \\ \Delta x & = & x - x_0 \\ \Delta v & = & v - v_0 \end{array}$$

where *the subscript 0 denotes an initial value and the absence of a subscript denotes a final value* in whatever motion is under consideration.

We now make the important assumption that *acceleration is constant*. This assumption allows us to avoid using calculus to find instantaneous acceleration. Since acceleration is constant, the average and instantaneous accelerations are equal. That is,

Equation:

$$\bar{a} = a = \text{constant},$$

so we use the symbol a for acceleration at all times. Assuming acceleration to be constant does not seriously limit the situations we can study nor degrade the accuracy of our treatment. For one thing, acceleration *is* constant in a great number of situations. Furthermore, in many other situations we can accurately describe motion by assuming a constant acceleration equal to the average acceleration for that motion. Finally, in

motions where acceleration changes drastically, such as a car accelerating to top speed and then braking to a stop, the motion can be considered in separate parts, each of which has its own constant acceleration.

Note:
Solving for Displacement (Δx) and Final Position (x) from Average Velocity when Acceleration (a) is Constant
To get our first two new equations, we start with the definition of average velocity:
Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t}.$$

Substituting the simplified notation for Δx and Δt yields
Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{x - x_0}{t}.$$

Solving for x yields
Equation:

$$x = x_0 + \bar{v}t,$$

where the average velocity is
Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{v_0 + v}{2} \text{ (constant } a\text{)}.$$

The equation $\bar{v} = \frac{v_0+v}{2}$ reflects the fact that, when acceleration is constant, v is just the simple average of the initial and final velocities. For example, if

you steadily increase your velocity (that is, with constant acceleration) from 30 to 60 km/h, then your average velocity during this steady increase is 45 km/h. Using the equation $\bar{v} = \frac{v_0+v}{2}$ to check this, we see that

Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{v_0 + v}{2} = \frac{30\ \text{km/h} + 60\ \text{km/h}}{2} = 45\ \text{km/h},$$

which seems logical.

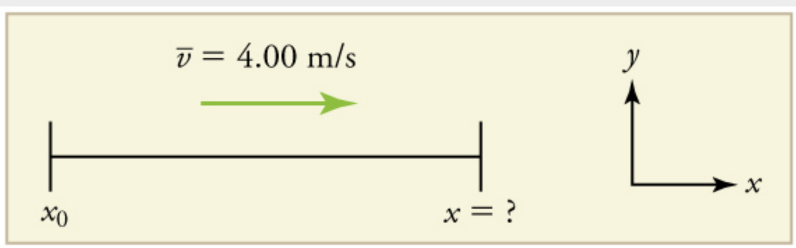
Example:

Calculating Displacement: How Far does the Jogger Run?

A jogger runs down a straight stretch of road with an average velocity of 4.00 m/s for 2.00 min. What is his final position, taking his initial position to be zero?

Strategy

Draw a sketch.



The final position x is given by the equation

Equation:

$$x = x_0 + \bar{v}t.$$

To find x, we identify the values of x_0, $\bar{v}$, and t from the statement of the problem and substitute them into the equation.

Solution

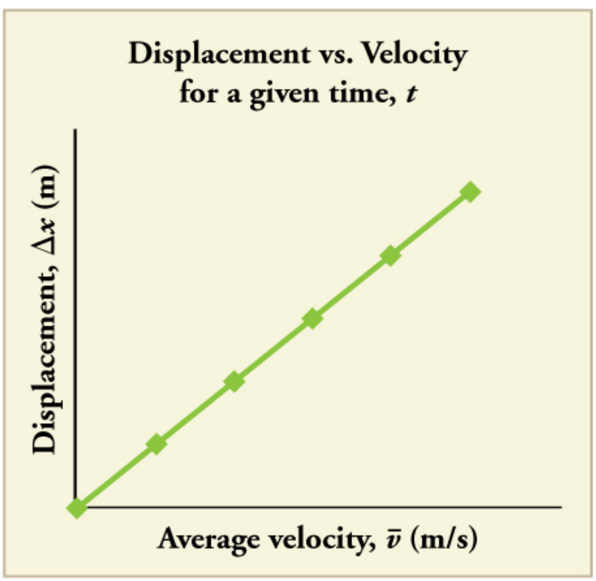
1. Identify the knowns. $\bar{v} = 4.00\ \text{m/s}$, $\Delta t = 2.00$ min, and $x_0 = 0$ m.
2. Enter the known values into the equation.

Equation:

$$x = x_0 + \bar{v}t = 0 + (4.00\ \text{m/s})(120\ \text{s}) = 480\ \text{m}$$

Discussion
Velocity and final displacement are both positive, which means they are in the same direction.

The equation $x = x_0 + \bar{v}t$ gives insight into the relationship between displacement, average velocity, and time. It shows, for example, that displacement is a linear function of average velocity. (By linear function, we mean that displacement depends on $\bar{v}$ rather than on $\bar{v}$ raised to some other power, such as $\bar{v}^2$. When graphed, linear functions look like straight lines with a constant slope.) On a car trip, for example, we will get twice as far in a given time if we average 90 km/h than if we average 45 km/h.



There is a linear relationship between displacement and average velocity. For a given time t, an object moving twice as fast as another object will

move twice as far as the other object.

Note:
Solving for Final Velocity
We can derive another useful equation by manipulating the definition of acceleration.
Equation:

$$a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$$

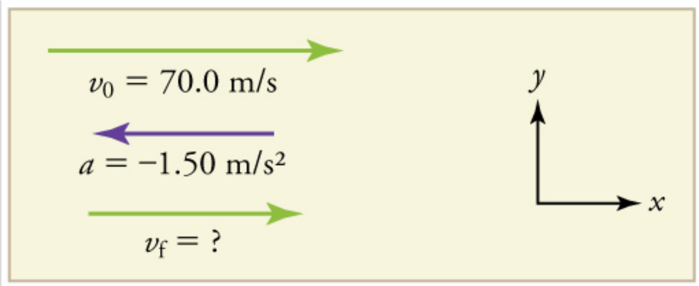
Substituting the simplified notation for Δv and Δt gives us
Equation:

$$a = \frac{v - v_0}{t} \text{ (constant } a\text{).}$$

Solving for v yields
Equation:

$$v = v_0 + \text{at (constant } a\text{).}$$

Example:
Calculating Final Velocity: An Airplane Slowing Down after Landing
An airplane lands with an initial velocity of 70.0 m/s and then decelerates at $1.50\ \text{m/s}^2$ for 40.0 s. What is its final velocity?
Strategy
Draw a sketch. We draw the acceleration vector in the direction opposite the velocity vector because the plane is decelerating.



Solution

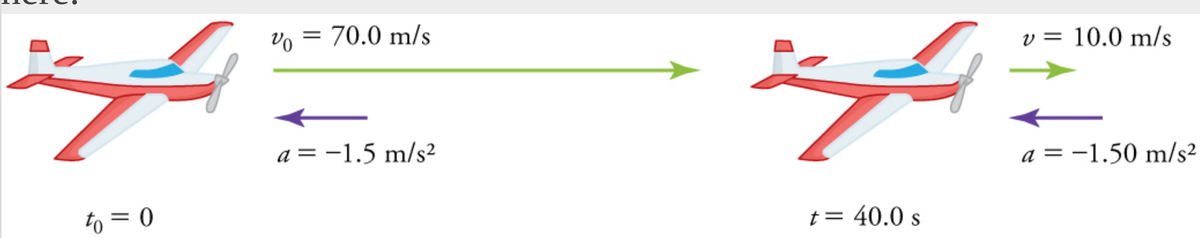
1. Identify the knowns. $v_0 = 70.0\ \text{m/s}$, $a = -1.50\ \text{m/s}^2$, $t = 40.0\ \text{s}$.
2. Identify the unknown. In this case, it is final velocity, v_{f}.
3. Determine which equation to use. We can calculate the final velocity using the equation $v = v_0 + \text{at}$.
4. Plug in the known values and solve.

Equation:

$$v = v_0 + \text{at} = 70.0\ \text{m/s} + \left(-1.50\ \text{m/s}^2\right)(40.0\ \text{s}) = 10.0\ \text{m/s}$$

Discussion

The final velocity is much less than the initial velocity, as desired when slowing down, but still positive. With jet engines, reverse thrust could be maintained long enough to stop the plane and start moving it backward. That would be indicated by a negative final velocity, which is not the case here.



The airplane lands with an initial velocity of 70.0 m/s and slows to a final velocity of 10.0 m/s before heading for the terminal. Note that the acceleration is negative because its direction is opposite to its velocity, which is positive.

In addition to being useful in problem solving, the equation $v = v_0 + \text{at}$ gives us insight into the relationships among velocity, acceleration, and time. From it we can see, for example, that

- final velocity depends on how large the acceleration is and how long it lasts
- if the acceleration is zero, then the final velocity equals the initial velocity $(v = v_0)$, as expected (i.e., velocity is constant)
- if a is negative, then the final velocity is less than the initial velocity

(All of these observations fit our intuition, and it is always useful to examine basic equations in light of our intuition and experiences to check that they do indeed describe nature accurately.)

Note:
Making Connections: Real-World Connection

The Space Shuttle *Endeavor* blasts off from the Kennedy Space Center in February 2010. (credit: Matthew Simantov, Flickr)

An intercontinental ballistic missile (ICBM) has a larger average acceleration than the Space Shuttle and achieves a greater velocity in the

first minute or two of flight (actual ICBM burn times are classified—short-burn-time missiles are more difficult for an enemy to destroy). But the Space Shuttle obtains a greater final velocity, so that it can orbit the earth rather than come directly back down as an ICBM does. The Space Shuttle does this by accelerating for a longer time.

Note:

Solving for Final Position When Velocity is Not Constant ($a \neq 0$)

We can combine the equations above to find a third equation that allows us to calculate the final position of an object experiencing constant acceleration. We start with

Equation:

$$v = v_0 + \text{at}.$$

Adding v_0 to each side of this equation and dividing by 2 gives

Equation:

$$\frac{v_0 + v}{2} = v_0 + \frac{1}{2}\text{at}.$$

Since $\frac{v_0+v}{2} = \bar{v}$ for constant acceleration, then

Equation:

$$\bar{v} = v_0 + \frac{1}{2}\text{at}.$$

Now we substitute this expression for $\bar{v}$ into the equation for displacement, $x = x_0 + \bar{v}t$, yielding

Equation:

$$x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2 \text{ (constant } a\text{)}.$$

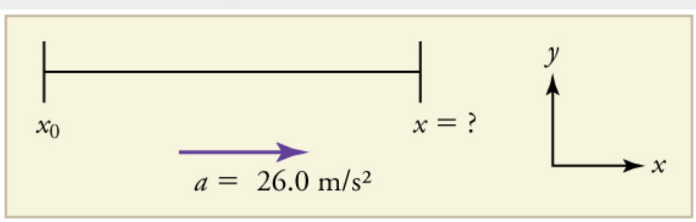
Example:
Calculating Displacement of an Accelerating Object: Dragsters

Dragsters can achieve average accelerations of 26.0 m/s^2. Suppose such a dragster accelerates from rest at this rate for 5.56 s. How far does it travel in this time?

U.S. Army Top Fuel pilot Tony "The Sarge" Schumacher begins a race with a controlled burnout. (credit: Lt. Col. William Thurmond. Photo Courtesy of U.S. Army.)

Strategy

Draw a sketch.



We are asked to find displacement, which is x if we take x_0 to be zero. (Think about it like the starting line of a race. It can be anywhere, but we call it 0 and measure all other positions relative to it.) We can use the equation $x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$once we identify v_0, a, and t from the statement of the problem.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. Starting from rest means that $v_0 = 0$, a is given as $26.0\ \text{m/s}^2$ and t is given as 5.56 s.
2. Plug the known values into the equation to solve for the unknown x:
Equation:

$$x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2.$$

Since the initial position and velocity are both zero, this simplifies to
Equation:

$$x = \frac{1}{2}at^2.$$

Substituting the identified values of a and t gives
Equation:

$$x = \frac{1}{2}\left(26.0\ \text{m/s}^2\right)(5.56\ \text{s})^2,$$

yielding
Equation:

$$x = 402\ \text{m}.$$

Discussion
If we convert 402 m to miles, we find that the distance covered is very close to one quarter of a mile, the standard distance for drag racing. So the answer is reasonable. This is an impressive displacement in only 5.56 s, but top-notch dragsters can do a quarter mile in even less time than this.

What else can we learn by examining the equation $x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$? We see that:

- displacement depends on the square of the elapsed time when acceleration is not zero. In [link], the dragster covers only one fourth of the total distance in the first half of the elapsed time

- if acceleration is zero, then the initial velocity equals average velocity ($v_0 = \bar{v}$) and $x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$ becomes $x = x_0 + v_0 t$

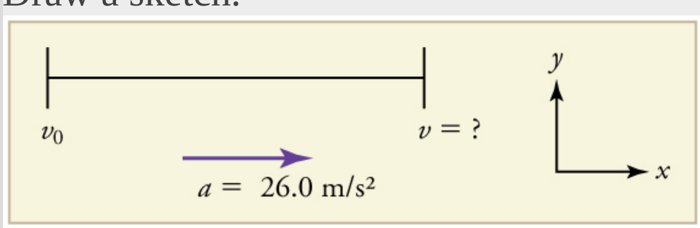
Note:
Solving for Final Velocity when Velocity Is Not Constant ($a \neq 0$)
A fourth useful equation can be obtained from another algebraic manipulation of previous equations.
If we solve $v = v_0 + \text{at}$ for t, we get
Equation:

$$t = \frac{v - v_0}{a}.$$

Substituting this and $\bar{v} = \frac{v_0 + v}{2}$ into $x = x_0 + \bar{v}t$, we get
Equation:

$$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0) \text{ (constant } a\text{).}$$

Example:
Calculating Final Velocity: Dragsters
Calculate the final velocity of the dragster in [link] without using information about time.
Strategy
Draw a sketch.



The equation $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$ is ideally suited to this task because it relates velocities, acceleration, and displacement, and no time information is required.

Solution
1. Identify the known values. We know that $v_0 = 0$, since the dragster starts from rest. Then we note that $x - x_0 = 402\ \text{m}$ (this was the answer in [link]). Finally, the average acceleration was given to be $a = 26.0\ \text{m/s}^2$.
2. Plug the knowns into the equation $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$ and solve for v.

Equation:

$$v^2 = 0 + 2\left(26.0\ \text{m/s}^2\right)(402\ \text{m}).$$

Thus

Equation:

$$v^2 = 2.09 \times 10^4\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2.$$

To get v, we take the square root:

Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{2.09 \times 10^4\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2} = 145\ \text{m/s}.$$

Discussion
145 m/s is about 522 km/h or about 324 mi/h, but even this breakneck speed is short of the record for the quarter mile. Also, note that a square root has two values; we took the positive value to indicate a velocity in the same direction as the acceleration.

An examination of the equation $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$ can produce further insights into the general relationships among physical quantities:

- The final velocity depends on how large the acceleration is and the distance over which it acts
- For a fixed deceleration, a car that is going twice as fast doesn’t simply stop in twice the distance—it takes much further to stop. (This is why

we have reduced speed zones near schools.)

Putting Equations Together

In the following examples, we further explore one-dimensional motion, but in situations requiring slightly more algebraic manipulation. The examples also give insight into problem-solving techniques. The box below provides easy reference to the equations needed.

Note:
Summary of Kinematic Equations (constant a)
Equation:

$$x = x_0 + \bar{v}t$$

Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{v_0 + v}{2}$$

Equation:

$$v = v_0 + \text{at}$$

Equation:

$$x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$$

Equation:

$$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$$

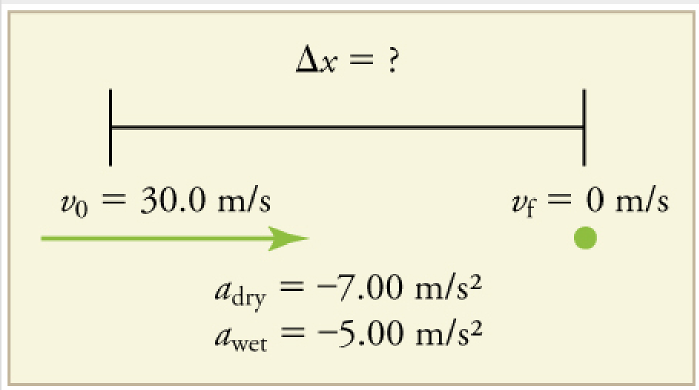
Example:

Calculating Displacement: How Far Does a Car Go When Coming to a Halt?

On dry concrete, a car can decelerate at a rate of $7.00\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$, whereas on wet concrete it can decelerate at only $5.00\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$. Find the distances necessary to stop a car moving at 30.0 m/s (about 110 km/h) (a) on dry concrete and (b) on wet concrete. (c) Repeat both calculations, finding the displacement from the point where the driver sees a traffic light turn red, taking into account his reaction time of 0.500 s to get his foot on the brake.

Strategy

Draw a sketch.



In order to determine which equations are best to use, we need to list all of the known values and identify exactly what we need to solve for. We shall do this explicitly in the next several examples, using tables to set them off.

Solution for (a)

1. Identify the knowns and what we want to solve for. We know that $v_0 = 30.0\ \mathrm{m/s}$; $v = 0$; $a = -7.00\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$ (a is negative because it is in a direction opposite to velocity). We take x_0 to be 0. We are looking for displacement Δx, or $x - x_0$.
2. Identify the equation that will help up solve the problem. The best equation to use is

Equation:

$$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0).$$

This equation is best because it includes only one unknown, x. We know the values of all the other variables in this equation. (There are other equations that would allow us to solve for x, but they require us to know

the stopping time, t, which we do not know. We could use them but it would entail additional calculations.)
3. Rearrange the equation to solve for x.
Equation:

$$x - x_0 = \frac{v^2 - v_0^2}{2a}$$

4. Enter known values.
Equation:

$$x - 0 = \frac{0^2 - (30.0\text{ m/s})^2}{2\left(-7.00\text{ m/s}^2\right)}$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$x = 64.3\text{ m on dry concrete.}$$

Solution for (b)
This part can be solved in exactly the same manner as Part A. The only difference is that the deceleration is -5.00 m/s^2. The result is
Equation:

$$x_{\text{wet}} = 90.0\text{ m on wet concrete.}$$

Solution for (c)
Once the driver reacts, the stopping distance is the same as it is in Parts A and B for dry and wet concrete. So to answer this question, we need to calculate how far the car travels during the reaction time, and then add that to the stopping time. It is reasonable to assume that the velocity remains constant during the driver's reaction time.
1. Identify the knowns and what we want to solve for. We know that $\bar{v} = 30.0\text{ m/s}$; $t_{\text{reaction}} = 0.500\text{ s}$; $a_{\text{reaction}} = 0$. We take $x_{0-\text{reaction}}$ to be 0. We are looking for x_{reaction}.
2. Identify the best equation to use.

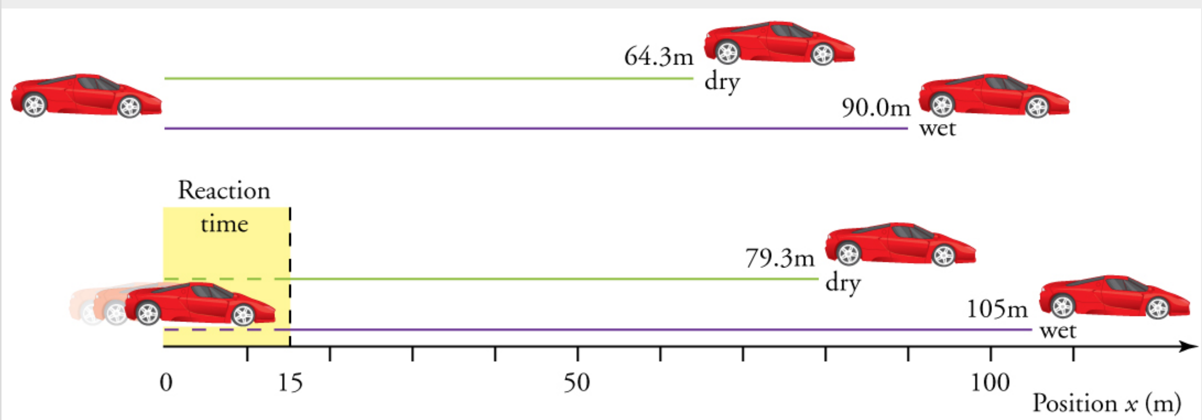
$x = x_0 + \bar{v}t$ works well because the only unknown value is x, which is what we want to solve for.
3. Plug in the knowns to solve the equation.
Equation:

$$x = 0 + (30.0\ \text{m/s})(0.500\ \text{s}) = 15.0\ \text{m}.$$

This means the car travels 15.0 m while the driver reacts, making the total displacements in the two cases of dry and wet concrete 15.0 m greater than if he reacted instantly.
4. Add the displacement during the reaction time to the displacement when braking.
Equation:

$$x_{\text{braking}} + x_{\text{reaction}} = x_{\text{total}}$$

a. 64.3 m + 15.0 m = 79.3 m when dry
b. 90.0 m + 15.0 m = 105 m when wet



The distance necessary to stop a car varies greatly, depending on road conditions and driver reaction time. Shown here are the braking distances for dry and wet pavement, as calculated in this example, for a car initially traveling at 30.0 m/s. Also shown are the total distances traveled from the point where the driver first sees a light turn red, assuming a 0.500 s reaction time.

Discussion

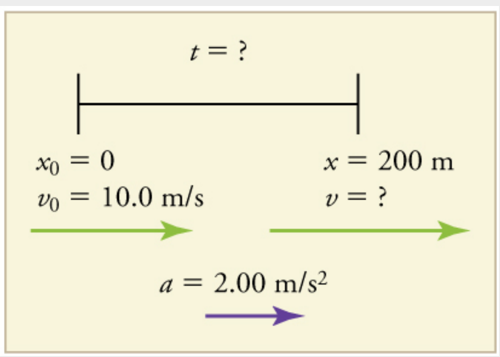
The displacements found in this example seem reasonable for stopping a fast-moving car. It should take longer to stop a car on wet rather than dry pavement. It is interesting that reaction time adds significantly to the displacements. But more important is the general approach to solving problems. We identify the knowns and the quantities to be determined and then find an appropriate equation. There is often more than one way to solve a problem. The various parts of this example can in fact be solved by other methods, but the solutions presented above are the shortest.

Example:
Calculating Time: A Car Merges into Traffic

Suppose a car merges into freeway traffic on a 200-m-long ramp. If its initial velocity is 10.0 m/s and it accelerates at $2.00\ \text{m/s}^2$, how long does it take to travel the 200 m up the ramp? (Such information might be useful to a traffic engineer.)

Strategy

Draw a sketch.



We are asked to solve for the time t. As before, we identify the known quantities in order to choose a convenient physical relationship (that is, an equation with one unknown, t).

Solution

1. Identify the knowns and what we want to solve for. We know that $v_0 = 10\ \text{m/s}$; $a = 2.00\ \text{m/s}^2$; and $x = 200\ \text{m}$.

2. We need to solve for t. Choose the best equation. $x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$ works best because the only unknown in the equation is the variable t for which we need to solve.

3. We will need to rearrange the equation to solve for t. In this case, it will be easier to plug in the knowns first.

Equation:

$$200\ \text{m} = 0\ \text{m} + (10.0\ \text{m/s})t + \frac{1}{2}\left(2.00\ \text{m/s}^2\right)t^2$$

4. Simplify the equation. The units of meters (m) cancel because they are in each term. We can get the units of seconds (s) to cancel by taking $t = t\ \text{s}$, where t is the magnitude of time and s is the unit. Doing so leaves

Equation:

$$200 = 10t + t^2.$$

5. Use the quadratic formula to solve for t.

(a) Rearrange the equation to get 0 on one side of the equation.

Equation:

$$t^2 + 10t - 200 = 0$$

This is a quadratic equation of the form

Equation:

$$at^2 + bt + c = 0,$$

where the constants are $a = 1.00$, $b = 10.0$, and $c = -200$.

(b) Its solutions are given by the quadratic formula:

Equation:

$$t = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4\text{ac}}}{2a}.$$

This yields two solutions for t, which are

Equation:

$$t = 10.0\ \text{and} - 20.0.$$

In this case, then, the time is $t = t$ in seconds, or

Equation:

$$t = 10.0 \text{ s and } -20.0 \text{ s.}$$

A negative value for time is unreasonable, since it would mean that the event happened 20 s before the motion began. We can discard that solution. Thus,

Equation:

$$t = 10.0 \text{ s.}$$

Discussion

Whenever an equation contains an unknown squared, there will be two solutions. In some problems both solutions are meaningful, but in others, such as the above, only one solution is reasonable. The 10.0 s answer seems reasonable for a typical freeway on-ramp.

With the basics of kinematics established, we can go on to many other interesting examples and applications. In the process of developing kinematics, we have also glimpsed a general approach to problem solving that produces both correct answers and insights into physical relationships. Problem-Solving Basics discusses problem-solving basics and outlines an approach that will help you succeed in this invaluable task.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—Breaking News

We have been using SI units of meters per second squared to describe some examples of acceleration or deceleration of cars, runners, and trains. To achieve a better feel for these numbers, one can measure the braking deceleration of a car doing a slow (and safe) stop. Recall that, for average acceleration, $\bar{a} = \Delta v / \Delta t$. While traveling in a car, slowly apply the brakes as you come up to a stop sign. Have a passenger note the initial speed in miles per hour and the time taken (in seconds) to stop. From this, calculate the deceleration in miles per hour per second. Convert this to meters per second squared and compare with other decelerations mentioned in this chapter. Calculate the distance traveled in braking.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A manned rocket accelerates at a rate of $20\ \text{m/s}^2$ during launch. How long does it take the rocket to reach a velocity of 400 m/s?

Solution:

To answer this, choose an equation that allows you to solve for time t, given only a, v_0, and v.
Equation:

$$v\ =\ v_0 + \text{at}$$

Rearrange to solve for t.
Equation:

$$t = \frac{v - v_0}{a} = \frac{400\ \text{m/s} - 0\ \text{m/s}}{20\ \text{m/s}^2} = 20\ \text{s}$$

Section Summary

- To simplify calculations we take acceleration to be constant, so that $\bar{a} = a$ at all times.
- We also take initial time to be zero.
- Initial position and velocity are given a subscript 0; final values have no subscript. Thus,
  Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta t &= t \\ \Delta x &= x - x_0 \\ \Delta v &= v - v_0 \end{aligned}$$

- The following kinematic equations for motion with constant a are useful:
  Equation:
  $$x = x_0 + \bar{v}t$$
  Equation:
  $$\bar{v} = \frac{v_0 + v}{2}$$
  Equation:
  $$v = v_0 + \text{at}$$
  Equation:
  $$x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$$
  Equation:
  $$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0)$$
- In vertical motion, y is substituted for x.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

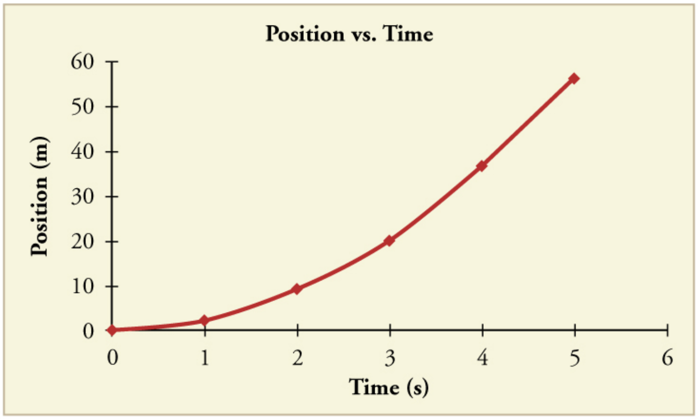
Problem:

An Olympic-class sprinter starts a race with an acceleration of 4.50 m/s^2. (a) What is her speed 2.40 s later? (b) Sketch a graph of her position vs. time for this period.

Solution:

(a) 10.8 m/s

(b)



Exercise:

Problem:

A well-thrown ball is caught in a well-padded mitt. If the deceleration of the ball is $2.10 \times 10^4 \text{ m/s}^2$, and 1.85 ms $(1 \text{ ms} = 10^{-3} \text{ s})$ elapses from the time the ball first touches the mitt until it stops, what was the initial velocity of the ball?

Solution:

38.9 m/s (about 87 miles per hour)

Exercise:

Problem:

A bullet in a gun is accelerated from the firing chamber to the end of the barrel at an average rate of $6.20 \times 10^5 \text{ m/s}^2$ for 8.10×10^{-4} s. What is its muzzle velocity (that is, its final velocity)?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A light-rail commuter train accelerates at a rate of $1.35\ \text{m/s}^2$. How long does it take to reach its top speed of 80.0 km/h, starting from rest? (b) The same train ordinarily decelerates at a rate of $1.65\ \text{m/s}^2$. How long does it take to come to a stop from its top speed? (c) In emergencies the train can decelerate more rapidly, coming to rest from 80.0 km/h in 8.30 s. What is its emergency deceleration in m/s^2?

Solution:

(a) $16.5\ \text{s}$

(b) $13.5\ \text{s}$

(c) $-2.68\ \text{m/s}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

While entering a freeway, a car accelerates from rest at a rate of $2.40\ \text{m/s}^2$ for 12.0 s. (a) Draw a sketch of the situation. (b) List the knowns in this problem. (c) How far does the car travel in those 12.0 s? To solve this part, first identify the unknown, and then discuss how you chose the appropriate equation to solve for it. After choosing the equation, show your steps in solving for the unknown, check your units, and discuss whether the answer is reasonable. (d) What is the car's final velocity? Solve for this unknown in the same manner as in part (c), showing all steps explicitly.

Exercise:

Problem:

At the end of a race, a runner decelerates from a velocity of 9.00 m/s at a rate of $2.00\ \text{m/s}^2$. (a) How far does she travel in the next 5.00 s? (b) What is her final velocity? (c) Evaluate the result. Does it make sense?

Solution:

(a) $20.0\ \mathrm{m}$

(b) $-1.00\ \mathrm{m/s}$

(c) This result does not really make sense. If the runner starts at 9.00 m/s and decelerates at $2.00\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$, then she will have stopped after 4.50 s. If she continues to decelerate, she will be running backwards.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application:**

Blood is accelerated from rest to 30.0 cm/s in a distance of 1.80 cm by the left ventricle of the heart. (a) Make a sketch of the situation. (b) List the knowns in this problem. (c) How long does the acceleration take? To solve this part, first identify the unknown, and then discuss how you chose the appropriate equation to solve for it. After choosing the equation, show your steps in solving for the unknown, checking your units. (d) Is the answer reasonable when compared with the time for a heartbeat?

Exercise:

Problem:

In a slap shot, a hockey player accelerates the puck from a velocity of 8.00 m/s to 40.0 m/s in the same direction. If this shot takes 3.33×10^{-2} s, calculate the distance over which the puck accelerates.

Solution:

$0.799\ \mathrm{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A powerful motorcycle can accelerate from rest to 26.8 m/s (100 km/h) in only 3.90 s. (a) What is its average acceleration? (b) How far does it travel in that time?

Exercise:

Problem:

Freight trains can produce only relatively small accelerations and decelerations. (a) What is the final velocity of a freight train that accelerates at a rate of $0.0500\ \text{m/s}^2$ for 8.00 min, starting with an initial velocity of 4.00 m/s? (b) If the train can slow down at a rate of $0.550\ \text{m/s}^2$, how long will it take to come to a stop from this velocity? (c) How far will it travel in each case?

Solution:

(a) $28.0\ \text{m/s}$

(b) $50.9\ \text{s}$

(c) 7.68 km to accelerate and 713 m to decelerate

Exercise:

Problem:

A fireworks shell is accelerated from rest to a velocity of 65.0 m/s over a distance of 0.250 m. (a) How long did the acceleration last? (b) Calculate the acceleration.

Exercise:

Problem:

A swan on a lake gets airborne by flapping its wings and running on top of the water. (a) If the swan must reach a velocity of 6.00 m/s to take off and it accelerates from rest at an average rate of $0.350\ \text{m/s}^2$, how far will it travel before becoming airborne? (b) How long does this take?

Solution:

(a) $51.4\ \text{m}$

(b) $17.1\ \text{s}$

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application:

A woodpecker's brain is specially protected from large decelerations by tendon-like attachments inside the skull. While pecking on a tree, the woodpecker's head comes to a stop from an initial velocity of 0.600 m/s in a distance of only 2.00 mm. (a) Find the acceleration in m/s^2 and in multiples of g $\left(g = 9.80\ \text{m/s}^2\right)$. (b) Calculate the stopping time. (c) The tendons cradling the brain stretch, making its stopping distance 4.50 mm (greater than the head and, hence, less deceleration of the brain). What is the brain's deceleration, expressed in multiples of g?

Exercise:

Problem:

An unwary football player collides with a padded goalpost while running at a velocity of 7.50 m/s and comes to a full stop after compressing the padding and his body 0.350 m. (a) What is his deceleration? (b) How long does the collision last?

Solution:

(a) -80.4 m/s^2

(b) $9.33 \times 10^{-2} \text{ s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

In World War II, there were several reported cases of airmen who jumped from their flaming airplanes with no parachute to escape certain death. Some fell about 20,000 feet (6000 m), and some of them survived, with few life-threatening injuries. For these lucky pilots, the tree branches and snow drifts on the ground allowed their deceleration to be relatively small. If we assume that a pilot's speed upon impact was 123 mph (54 m/s), then what was his deceleration? Assume that the trees and snow stopped him over a distance of 3.0 m.

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider a grey squirrel falling out of a tree to the ground. (a) If we ignore air resistance in this case (only for the sake of this problem), determine a squirrel's velocity just before hitting the ground, assuming it fell from a height of 3.0 m. (b) If the squirrel stops in a distance of 2.0 cm through bending its limbs, compare its deceleration with that of the airman in the previous problem.

Solution:

(a) 7.7 m/s

(b) $-15 \times 10^2 \text{ m/s}^2$. This is about 3 times the deceleration of the pilots, who were falling from thousands of meters high!

Exercise:

Problem:

An express train passes through a station. It enters with an initial velocity of 22.0 m/s and decelerates at a rate of $0.150\ \text{m/s}^2$ as it goes through. The station is 210 m long. (a) How long is the nose of the train in the station? (b) How fast is it going when the nose leaves the station? (c) If the train is 130 m long, when does the end of the train leave the station? (d) What is the velocity of the end of the train as it leaves?

Exercise:

Problem:

Dragsters can actually reach a top speed of 145 m/s in only 4.45 s—considerably less time than given in [link] and [link]. (a) Calculate the average acceleration for such a dragster. (b) Find the final velocity of this dragster starting from rest and accelerating at the rate found in (a) for 402 m (a quarter mile) without using any information on time. (c) Why is the final velocity greater than that used to find the average acceleration? *Hint*: Consider whether the assumption of constant acceleration is valid for a dragster. If not, discuss whether the acceleration would be greater at the beginning or end of the run and what effect that would have on the final velocity.

Solution:

(a) $32.6\ \text{m/s}^2$

(b) $162\ \text{m/s}$

(c) $v > v_{\text{max}}$, because the assumption of constant acceleration is not valid for a dragster. A dragster changes gears, and would have a greater acceleration in first gear than second gear than third gear, etc. The acceleration would be greatest at the beginning, so it would not be accelerating at $32.6\ \text{m/s}^2$ during the last few meters, but substantially less, and the final velocity would be less than 162 m/s.

Exercise:

Problem:

A bicycle racer sprints at the end of a race to clinch a victory. The racer has an initial velocity of 11.5 m/s and accelerates at the rate of 0.500 m/s^2 for 7.00 s. (a) What is his final velocity? (b) The racer continues at this velocity to the finish line. If he was 300 m from the finish line when he started to accelerate, how much time did he save? (c) One other racer was 5.00 m ahead when the winner started to accelerate, but he was unable to accelerate, and traveled at 11.8 m/s until the finish line. How far ahead of him (in meters and in seconds) did the winner finish?

Exercise:

Problem:

In 1967, New Zealander Burt Munro set the world record for an Indian motorcycle, on the Bonneville Salt Flats in Utah, with a maximum speed of 183.58 mi/h. The one-way course was 5.00 mi long. Acceleration rates are often described by the time it takes to reach 60.0 mi/h from rest. If this time was 4.00 s, and Burt accelerated at this rate until he reached his maximum speed, how long did it take Burt to complete the course?

Solution:

104 s

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A world record was set for the men's 100-m dash in the 2008 Olympic Games in Beijing by Usain Bolt of Jamaica. Bolt "coasted" across the finish line with a time of 9.69 s. If we assume that Bolt accelerated for 3.00 s to reach his maximum speed, and maintained that speed for the rest of the race, calculate his maximum speed and his acceleration. (b) During the same Olympics, Bolt also set the world record in the 200-m dash with a time of 19.30 s. Using the same assumptions as for the 100-m dash, what was his maximum speed for this race?

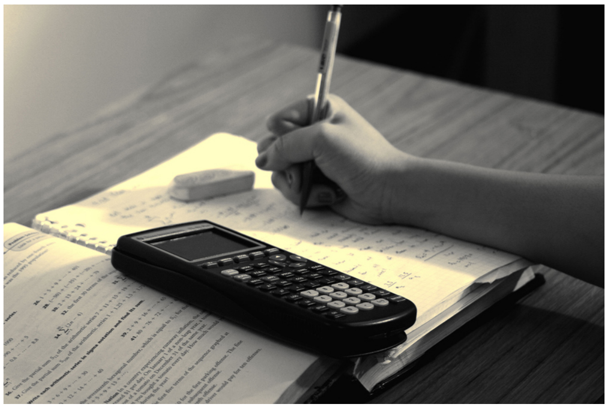
Solution:

(a) $v = 12.2\ \mathrm{m/s}$; $a = 4.07\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$

(b) $v = 11.2\ \mathrm{m/s}$

Problem-Solving Basics for One-Dimensional Kinematics

- Apply problem-solving steps and strategies to solve problems of one-dimensional kinematics.
- Apply strategies to determine whether or not the result of a problem is reasonable, and if not, determine the cause.



Problem-solving skills are essential to your success in Physics. (credit: scui3asteveo, Flickr)

Problem-solving skills are obviously essential to success in a quantitative course in physics. More importantly, the ability to apply broad physical principles, usually represented by equations, to specific situations is a very powerful form of knowledge. It is much more powerful than memorizing a list of facts. Analytical skills and problem-solving abilities can be applied to new situations, whereas a list of facts cannot be made long enough to contain every possible circumstance. Such analytical skills are useful both for solving problems in this text and for applying physics in everyday and professional life.

Problem-Solving Steps

While there is no simple step-by-step method that works for every problem, the following general procedures facilitate problem solving and make it more meaningful. A certain amount of creativity and insight is required as well.

Step 1

Examine the situation to determine which physical principles are involved. It often helps to *draw a simple sketch* at the outset. You will also need to decide which direction is positive and note that on your sketch. Once you have identified the physical principles, it is much easier to find and apply the equations representing those principles. Although finding the correct equation is essential, keep in mind that equations represent physical principles, laws of nature, and relationships among physical quantities. Without a conceptual understanding of a problem, a numerical solution is meaningless.

Step 2

Make a list of what is given or can be inferred from the problem as stated (identify the knowns). Many problems are stated very succinctly and require some inspection to determine what is known. A sketch can also be very useful at this point. Formally identifying the knowns is of particular importance in applying physics to real-world situations. Remember, “stopped” means velocity is zero, and we often can take initial time and position as zero.

Step 3

Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns). In complex problems, especially, it is not always obvious what needs to be found or in what sequence. Making a list can help.

Step 4

Find an equation or set of equations that can help you solve the problem. Your list of knowns and unknowns can help here. It is easiest if you can find equations that contain only one unknown—that is, all of the other variables are known, so you can easily solve for the unknown. If the equation contains more than one unknown, then an additional equation is needed to solve the problem. In some problems, several unknowns must be determined to get at the one needed most. In such problems it is especially important to keep physical principles in mind to avoid going astray in a sea of equations. You may have to use two (or more) different equations to get the final answer.

Step 5

Substitute the knowns along with their units into the appropriate equation, and obtain numerical solutions complete with units. This step produces the numerical answer; it also provides a check on units that can help you find errors. If the units of the answer are incorrect, then an error has been made. However, be warned that correct units do not guarantee that the numerical part of the answer is also correct.

Step 6

Check the answer to see if it is reasonable: Does it make sense? This final step is extremely important—the goal of physics is to accurately describe nature. To see if the answer is reasonable, check both its magnitude and its sign, in addition to its units. Your judgment will improve as you solve more and more physics problems, and it will become possible for you to make finer and finer judgments regarding whether nature is adequately described by the answer to a problem. This step brings the problem back to its conceptual meaning. If you can judge whether the answer is reasonable, you have a deeper understanding of physics than just being able to mechanically solve a problem.

When solving problems, we often perform these steps in different order, and we also tend to do several steps simultaneously. There is no rigid procedure that will work every time. Creativity and insight grow with experience, and the basics of problem solving become almost automatic. One way to get practice is to work out the text's examples for yourself as you read. Another is to work as many end-of-section problems as possible, starting with the easiest to build confidence and progressing to the more difficult. Once you become involved in physics, you will see it all around you, and you can begin to apply it to situations you encounter outside the classroom, just as is done in many of the applications in this text.

Unreasonable Results

Physics must describe nature accurately. Some problems have results that are unreasonable because one premise is unreasonable or because certain premises are inconsistent with one another. The physical principle applied correctly then produces an unreasonable result. For example, if a person starting a foot race accelerates at $0.40\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ for 100 s, his final speed will be 40 m/s (about 150 km/h)—clearly unreasonable because the time of 100 s is an unreasonable premise. The physics is correct in a sense, but there is more to describing nature than just manipulating equations correctly. Checking the result of a problem to see if it is reasonable does more than help uncover errors in problem solving—it also builds intuition in judging whether nature is being accurately described.

Use the following strategies to determine whether an answer is reasonable and, if it is not, to determine what is the cause.

Step 1

Solve the problem using strategies as outlined and in the format followed in the worked examples in the text. In the example given in the preceding paragraph, you would identify the givens as the acceleration and time and use the equation below to find the unknown final velocity. That is,
Equation:

$$v = v_0 + \mathrm{at} = 0 + \left(0.40\ \mathrm{m/s}^2\right)(100\ \mathrm{s}) = 40\ \mathrm{m/s}.$$

Step 2

Check to see if the answer is reasonable. Is it too large or too small, or does it have the wrong sign, improper units, …? In this case, you may need to convert meters per second into a more familiar unit, such as miles per hour.

Equation:

$$\left(\frac{40\ \mathrm{m}}{\mathrm{s}}\right)\left(\frac{3.28\ \mathrm{ft}}{\mathrm{m}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{mi}}{5280\ \mathrm{ft}}\right)\left(\frac{60\ \mathrm{s}}{\mathrm{min}}\right)\left(\frac{60\ \mathrm{min}}{1\ \mathrm{h}}\right) = 89\ \mathrm{mph}$$

This velocity is about four times greater than a person can run—so it is too large.

Step 3

If the answer is unreasonable, look for what specifically could cause the identified difficulty. In the example of the runner, there are only two assumptions that are suspect. The acceleration could be too great or the time too long. First look at the acceleration and think about what the number means. If someone accelerates at $0.40\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$, their velocity is increasing by 0.4 m/s each second. Does this seem reasonable? If so, the time must be too long. It is not possible for someone to accelerate at a constant rate of $0.40\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$ for 100 s (almost two minutes).

Section Summary

- *The six basic problem solving steps for physics are:*

Step 1. Examine the situation to determine which physical principles are involved.

Step 2. Make a list of what is given or can be inferred from the problem as stated (identify the knowns).

Step 3. Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns).

Step 4. Find an equation or set of equations that can help you solve the problem.

Step 5. Substitute the knowns along with their units into the appropriate equation, and obtain numerical solutions complete with units.

Step 6. Check the answer to see if it is reasonable: Does it make sense?

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What information do you need in order to choose which equation or equations to use to solve a problem? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the last thing you should do when solving a problem? Explain.

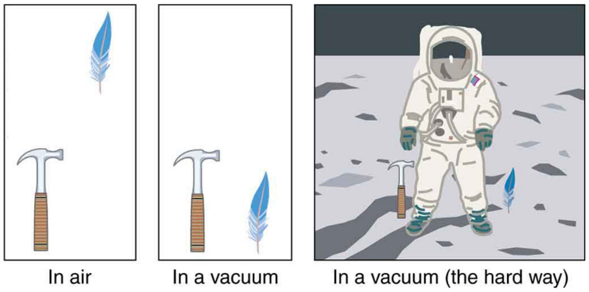
Falling Objects

- Describe the effects of gravity on objects in motion.
- Describe the motion of objects that are in free fall.
- Calculate the position and velocity of objects in free fall.

Falling objects form an interesting class of motion problems. For example, we can estimate the depth of a vertical mine shaft by dropping a rock into it and listening for the rock to hit the bottom. By applying the kinematics developed so far to falling objects, we can examine some interesting situations and learn much about gravity in the process.

Gravity

The most remarkable and unexpected fact about falling objects is that, if air resistance and friction are negligible, then in a given location all objects fall toward the center of Earth with the *same constant acceleration*, *independent of their mass*. This experimentally determined fact is unexpected, because we are so accustomed to the effects of air resistance and friction that we expect light objects to fall slower than heavy ones.



A hammer and a feather will fall with the same constant acceleration if air resistance is considered negligible. This is a general characteristic of gravity not unique to Earth, as astronaut David R. Scott demonstrated on the Moon in 1971, where the

acceleration due to gravity is only 1.67 m/s^2.

In the real world, air resistance can cause a lighter object to fall slower than a heavier object of the same size. A tennis ball will reach the ground after a hard baseball dropped at the same time. (It might be difficult to observe the difference if the height is not large.) Air resistance opposes the motion of an object through the air, while friction between objects—such as between clothes and a laundry chute or between a stone and a pool into which it is dropped—also opposes motion between them. For the ideal situations of these first few chapters, an object *falling without air resistance or friction* is defined to be in **free-fall**.

The force of gravity causes objects to fall toward the center of Earth. The acceleration of free-falling objects is therefore called the **acceleration due to gravity**. The acceleration due to gravity is *constant*, which means we can apply the kinematics equations to any falling object where air resistance and friction are negligible. This opens a broad class of interesting situations to us. The acceleration due to gravity is so important that its magnitude is given its own symbol, g. It is constant at any given location on Earth and has the average value

Equation:

$$g = 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2.$$

Although g varies from 9.78 m/s^2 to 9.83 m/s^2, depending on latitude, altitude, underlying geological formations, and local topography, the average value of 9.80 m/s^2 will be used in this text unless otherwise specified. The direction of the acceleration due to gravity is *downward (towards the center of Earth)*. In fact, its direction *defines* what we call vertical. Note that whether the acceleration a in the kinematic equations has the value $+g$ or $-g$ depends on how we define our coordinate system. If we define the upward direction as positive, then $a = -g = -9.80 \text{ m/s}^2$, and if we define the downward direction as positive, then $a = g = 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2$.

One-Dimensional Motion Involving Gravity

The best way to see the basic features of motion involving gravity is to start with the simplest situations and then progress toward more complex ones. So we start by considering straight up and down motion with no air resistance or friction. These assumptions mean that the velocity (if there is any) is vertical. If the object is dropped, we know the initial velocity is zero. Once the object has left contact with whatever held or threw it, the object is in free-fall. Under these circumstances, the motion is one-dimensional and has constant acceleration of magnitude g. We will also represent vertical displacement with the symbol y and use x for horizontal displacement.

Note:
Kinematic Equations for Objects in Free-Fall where Acceleration = -*g*
Equation:

$$v = v_0 - \text{gt}$$

Equation:

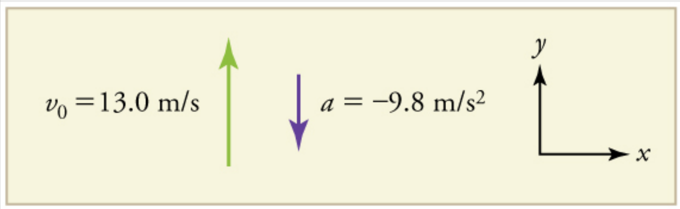
$$y = y_0 + v_0 t - \frac{1}{2} g t^2$$

Equation:

$$v^2 = v_0^2 - 2g(y - y_0)$$

Example:
Calculating Position and Velocity of a Falling Object: A Rock Thrown Upward
A person standing on the edge of a high cliff throws a rock straight up with an initial velocity of 13.0 m/s. The rock misses the edge of the cliff as it falls back to earth. Calculate the position and velocity of the rock 1.00 s, 2.00 s, and 3.00 s after it is thrown, neglecting the effects of air resistance.

Strategy
Draw a sketch.



We are asked to determine the position y at various times. It is reasonable to take the initial position y_0 to be zero. This problem involves one-dimensional motion in the vertical direction. We use plus and minus signs to indicate direction, with up being positive and down negative. Since up is positive, and the rock is thrown upward, the initial velocity must be positive too. The acceleration due to gravity is downward, so a is negative. It is crucial that the initial velocity and the acceleration due to gravity have opposite signs. Opposite signs indicate that the acceleration due to gravity opposes the initial motion and will slow and eventually reverse it.

Since we are asked for values of position and velocity at three times, we will refer to these as y_1 and v_1; y_2 and v_2; and y_3 and v_3.

Solution for Position y_1

1. Identify the knowns. We know that $y_0 = 0$; $v_0 = 13.0\ \text{m/s}$; $a = -g = -9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$; and $t = 1.00$ s.
2. Identify the best equation to use. We will use $y = y_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$ because it includes only one unknown, y (or y_1, here), which is the value we want to find.
3. Plug in the known values and solve for y_1.

Equation:

$$y_1 = 0 + (13.0\ \text{m/s})(1.00\ \text{s}) + \frac{1}{2}\left(-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2\right)(1.00\ \text{s})^2 = 8.10\ \text{m}$$

Discussion

The rock is 8.10 m above its starting point at $t = 1.00$ s, since $y_1 > y_0$. It could be *moving* up or down; the only way to tell is to calculate v_1 and find out if it is positive or negative.

Solution for Velocity v_1

1. Identify the knowns. We know that $y_0 = 0$; $v_0 = 13.0\ \text{m/s}$; $a = -g = -9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$; and $t = 1.00$ s. We also know from the solution above that $y_1 = 8.10$ m.

2. Identify the best equation to use. The most straightforward is $v = v_0 - \text{gt}$ (from $v = v_0 + \text{at}$, where $a = \text{gravitational acceleration} = -g$).
3. Plug in the knowns and solve.

Equation:

$$v_1 = v_0 - \text{gt} = 13.0\ \text{m/s} - \left(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2\right)(1.00\ \text{s}) = 3.20\ \text{m/s}$$

Discussion

The positive value for v_1 means that the rock is still heading upward at $t = 1.00$ s. However, it has slowed from its original 13.0 m/s, as expected.

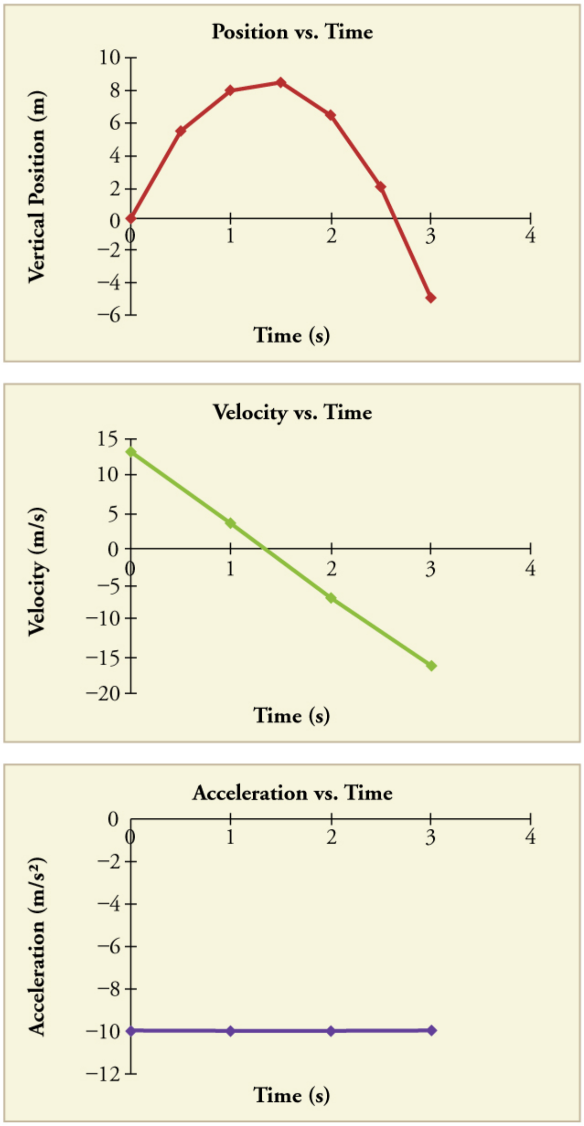
Solution for Remaining Times

The procedures for calculating the position and velocity at $t = 2.00$ s and 3.00 s are the same as those above. The results are summarized in [link] and illustrated in [link].

Time, *t*	**Position, *y***	**Velocity, *v***	**Acceleration, *a***
$1.00\ \text{s}$	$8.10\ \text{m}$	$3.20\ \text{m/s}$	$-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$
$2.00\ \text{s}$	$6.40\ \text{m}$	$-6.60\ \text{m/s}$	$-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$
$3.00\ \text{s}$	$-5.10\ \text{m}$	$-16.4\ \text{m/s}$	$-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$

Results

Graphing the data helps us understand it more clearly.



Vertical position, vertical velocity, and vertical acceleration vs. time for a rock thrown vertically up at the edge of a cliff. Notice that velocity changes linearly with time and that acceleration is constant. *Misconception Alert!* Notice that the position vs. time graph shows vertical position only. It is easy to get the impression that the graph shows some

horizontal motion—the shape of the graph looks like the path of a projectile. But this is not the case; the horizontal axis is *time*, not space. The actual path of the rock in space is straight up, and straight down.

Discussion

The interpretation of these results is important. At 1.00 s the rock is above its starting point and heading upward, since y_1 and v_1 are both positive. At 2.00 s, the rock is still above its starting point, but the negative velocity means it is moving downward. At 3.00 s, both y_3 and v_3 are negative, meaning the rock is below its starting point and continuing to move downward. Notice that when the rock is at its highest point (at 1.5 s), its velocity is zero, but its acceleration is still $-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$. Its acceleration is $-9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$ for the whole trip—while it is moving up and while it is moving down. Note that the values for y are the positions (or displacements) of the rock, not the total distances traveled. Finally, note that free-fall applies to upward motion as well as downward. Both have the same acceleration—the acceleration due to gravity, which remains constant the entire time. Astronauts training in the famous Vomit Comet, for example, experience free-fall while arcing up as well as down, as we will discuss in more detail later.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—Reaction Time

A simple experiment can be done to determine your reaction time. Have a friend hold a ruler between your thumb and index finger, separated by about 1 cm. Note the mark on the ruler that is right between your fingers. Have your friend drop the ruler unexpectedly, and try to catch it between your two fingers. Note the new reading on the ruler. Assuming acceleration is that due to gravity, calculate your reaction time. How far would you travel in a car (moving at 30 m/s) if the time it took your foot to go from the gas pedal to the brake was twice this reaction time?

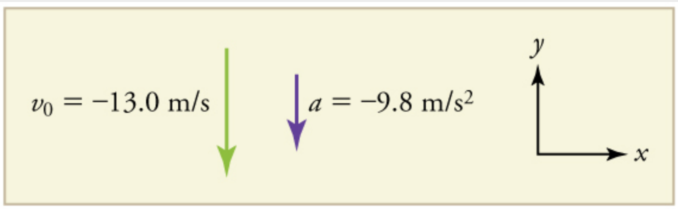
Example:

Calculating Velocity of a Falling Object: A Rock Thrown Down

What happens if the person on the cliff throws the rock straight down, instead of straight up? To explore this question, calculate the velocity of the rock when it is 5.10 m below the starting point, and has been thrown downward with an initial speed of 13.0 m/s.

Strategy

Draw a sketch.



Since up is positive, the final position of the rock will be negative because it finishes below the starting point at $y_0 = 0$. Similarly, the initial velocity is downward and therefore negative, as is the acceleration due to gravity. We expect the final velocity to be negative since the rock will continue to move downward.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. $y_0 = 0$; $y_1 = -5.10\text{ m}$; $v_0 = -13.0\text{ m/s}$; $a = -g = -9.80\text{ m/s}^2$.

2. Choose the kinematic equation that makes it easiest to solve the problem. The equation $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(y - y_0)$ works well because the only unknown in it is v. (We will plug y_1 in for y.)

3. Enter the known values

Equation:

$$v^2 = (-13.0\text{ m/s})^2 + 2\left(-9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)(-5.10\text{ m} - 0\text{ m}) = 268.96\text{ m}^2/\text{s}^2,$$

where we have retained extra significant figures because this is an intermediate result.

Taking the square root, and noting that a square root can be positive or negative, gives

Equation:

$$v = \pm 16.4\text{ m/s}.$$

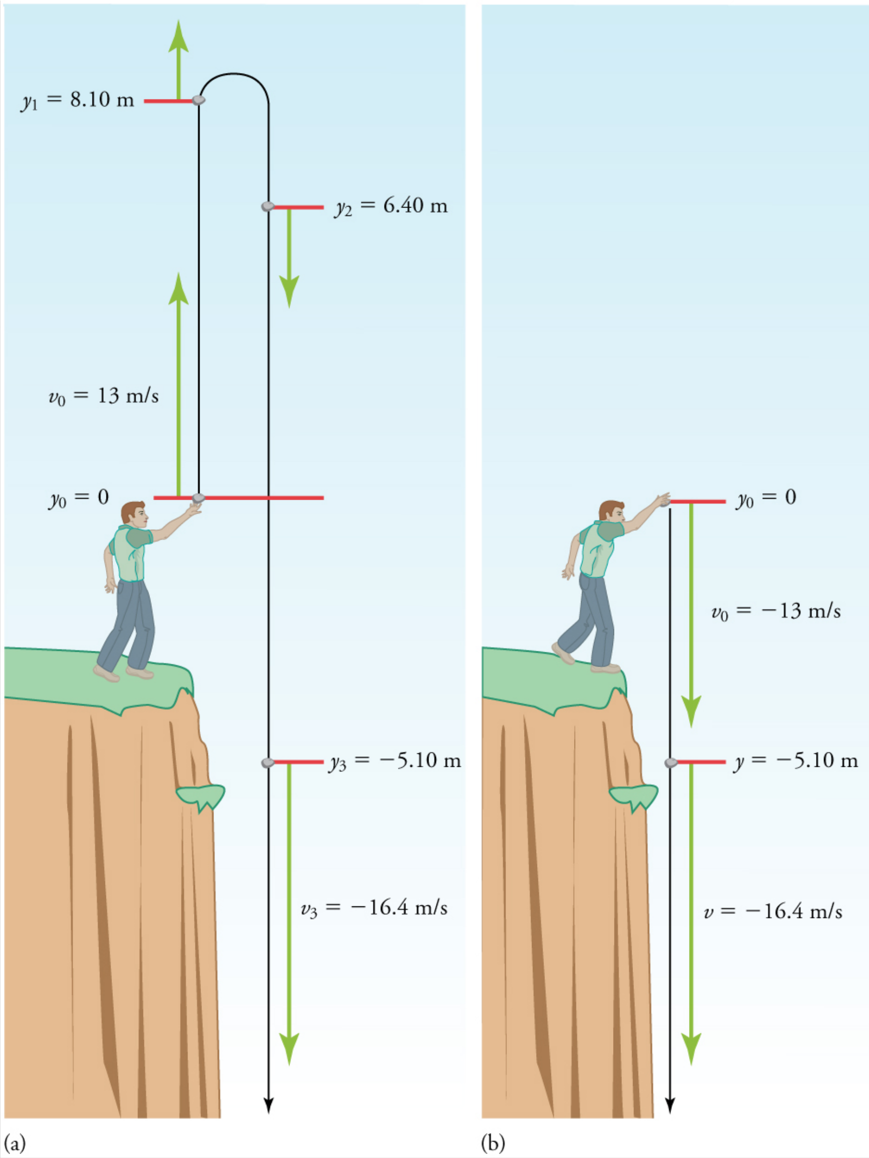
The negative root is chosen to indicate that the rock is still heading down. Thus,

Equation:

$$v = -16.4\ \text{m/s}.$$

Discussion

Note that *this is exactly the same velocity the rock had at this position when it was thrown straight upward with the same initial speed*. (See [link] and [link](a).) This is not a coincidental result. Because we only consider the acceleration due to gravity in this problem, the *speed* of a falling object depends only on its initial speed and its vertical position relative to the starting point. For example, if the velocity of the rock is calculated at a height of 8.10 m above the starting point (using the method from [link]) when the initial velocity is 13.0 m/s straight up, a result of $\pm 3.20\ \text{m/s}$ is obtained. Here both signs are meaningful; the positive value occurs when the rock is at 8.10 m and heading up, and the negative value occurs when the rock is at 8.10 m and heading back down. It has the same *speed* but the opposite direction.



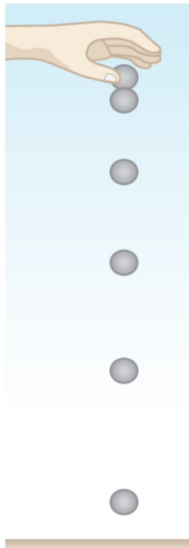
(a) A person throws a rock straight up, as explored in [link]. The arrows are velocity vectors at 0, 1.00, 2.00, and 3.00 s. (b) A person throws a rock straight down from a cliff with the same initial speed as before, as in [link]. Note that at the same distance below the point of release, the rock has the same velocity in both cases.

Another way to look at it is this: In [link], the rock is thrown up with an initial velocity of $13.0\ \text{m}/\text{s}$. It rises and then falls back down. When its

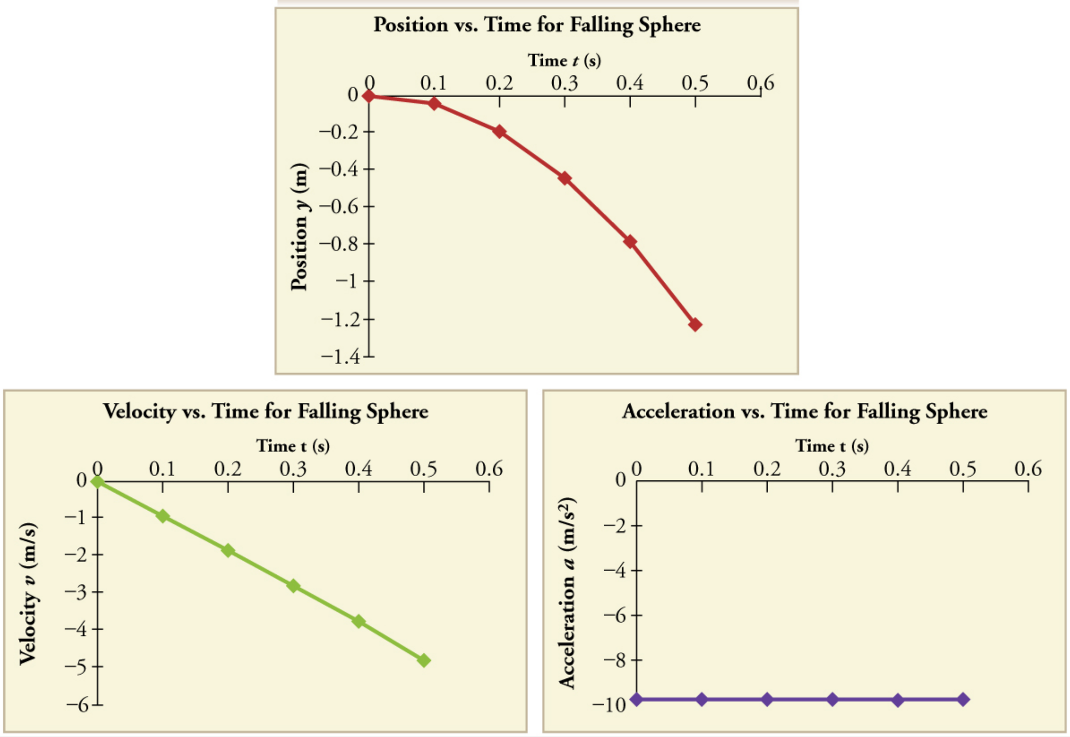
position is $y = 0$ on its way back down, its velocity is -13.0 m/s. That is, it has the same speed on its way down as on its way up. We would then expect its velocity at a position of $y = -5.10 \text{ m}$ to be the same whether we have thrown it upwards at $+13.0 \text{ m/s}$ or thrown it downwards at -13.0 m/s. The velocity of the rock on its way down from $y = 0$ is the same whether we have thrown it up or down to start with, as long as the speed with which it was initially thrown is the same.

Example:
Find *g* from Data on a Falling Object

The acceleration due to gravity on Earth differs slightly from place to place, depending on topography (e.g., whether you are on a hill or in a valley) and subsurface geology (whether there is dense rock like iron ore as opposed to light rock like salt beneath you.) The precise acceleration due to gravity can be calculated from data taken in an introductory physics laboratory course. An object, usually a metal ball for which air resistance is negligible, is dropped and the time it takes to fall a known distance is measured. See, for example, [link]. Very precise results can be produced with this method if sufficient care is taken in measuring the distance fallen and the elapsed time.



y (m)	v (m/s)	t (s)
0	0	0
−0.049	−0.98	0.1
−0.196	−1.96	0.2
−0.441	−2.94	0.3
−0.784	−3.92	0.4
−1.225	−4.90	0.5

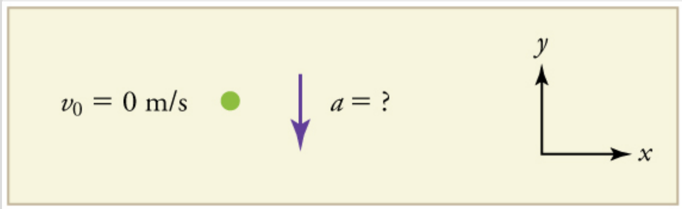


Positions and velocities of a metal ball released from rest when air resistance is negligible. Velocity is seen to increase linearly with time while displacement increases with time squared. Acceleration is a constant and is equal to gravitational acceleration.

Suppose the ball falls 1.0000 m in 0.45173 s. Assuming the ball is not affected by air resistance, what is the precise acceleration due to gravity at this location?

Strategy

Draw a sketch.



We need to solve for acceleration a. Note that in this case, displacement is downward and therefore negative, as is acceleration.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. $y_0 = 0$; $y = –1.0000$ m; $t = 0.45173$; $v_0 = 0$.

2. Choose the equation that allows you to solve for a using the known values.

Equation:

$$y = y_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$$

3. Substitute 0 for v_0 and rearrange the equation to solve for a. Substituting 0 for v_0 yields

Equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{1}{2}at^2.$$

Solving for a gives

Equation:

$$a = \frac{2(y - y_0)}{t^2}.$$

4. Substitute known values yields

Equation:

$$a = \frac{2(-1.0000 \text{ m} – 0)}{(0.45173 \text{ s})^2} = -9.8010 \text{ m/s}^2,$$

so, because $a = -g$ with the directions we have chosen,
Equation:

$$g = 9.8010\ \mathrm{m/s}^2.$$

Discussion
The negative value for a indicates that the gravitational acceleration is downward, as expected. We expect the value to be somewhere around the average value of $9.80\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$, so $9.8010\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$ makes sense. Since the data going into the calculation are relatively precise, this value for g is more precise than the average value of $9.80\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$; it represents the local value for the acceleration due to gravity.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A chunk of ice breaks off a glacier and falls 30.0 meters before it hits the water. Assuming it falls freely (there is no air resistance), how long does it take to hit the water?

Solution:

We know that initial position $y_0 = 0$, final position $y = -30.0\ \mathrm{m}$, and $a = -g = -9.80\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$. We can then use the equation $y = y_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$ to solve for t. Inserting $a = -g$, we obtain
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} y &= 0 + 0 - \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 \\ t^2 &= \tfrac{2y}{-g} \\ t &= \pm\sqrt{\tfrac{2y}{-g}} = \pm\sqrt{\tfrac{2(-30.0\ \mathrm{m})}{-9.80\ \mathrm{m/s}^2}} = \pm\sqrt{6.12\ \mathrm{s}^2} = 2.47\ \mathrm{s} \approx 2.5\ \mathrm{s} \end{aligned}$$

where we take the positive value as the physically relevant answer. Thus, it takes about 2.5 seconds for the piece of ice to hit the water.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Equation Grapher
Learn about graphing polynomials. The shape of the curve changes as the constants are adjusted. View the curves for the individual terms (e.g. $y = \text{bx}$) to see how they add to generate the polynomial curve.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/equation-grapher/equation-grapher_en.html

Section Summary

- An object in free-fall experiences constant acceleration if air resistance is negligible.
- On Earth, all free-falling objects have an acceleration due to gravity g, which averages
  Equation:
  $$g = 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2.$$
- Whether the acceleration a should be taken as $+g$ or $-g$ is determined by your choice of coordinate system. If you choose the upward direction as positive, $a = -g = -9.80 \text{ m/s}^2$ is negative. In the opposite case, $a = +\text{g} = 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2$ is positive. Since acceleration is constant, the kinematic equations above can be applied with the appropriate $+g$ or $-g$ substituted for a.
- For objects in free-fall, up is normally taken as positive for displacement, velocity, and acceleration.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the acceleration of a rock thrown straight upward on the way up? At the top of its flight? On the way down?

Exercise:

Problem:

An object that is thrown straight up falls back to Earth. This is one-dimensional motion. (a) When is its velocity zero? (b) Does its velocity change direction? (c) Does the acceleration due to gravity have the same sign on the way up as on the way down?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you throw a rock nearly straight up at a coconut in a palm tree, and the rock misses on the way up but hits the coconut on the way down. Neglecting air resistance, how does the speed of the rock when it hits the coconut on the way down compare with what it would have been if it had hit the coconut on the way up? Is it more likely to dislodge the coconut on the way up or down? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

If an object is thrown straight up and air resistance is negligible, then its speed when it returns to the starting point is the same as when it was released. If air resistance were not negligible, how would its speed upon return compare with its initial speed? How would the maximum height to which it rises be affected?

Exercise:

Problem:

The severity of a fall depends on your speed when you strike the ground. All factors but the acceleration due to gravity being the same, how many times higher could a safe fall on the Moon be than on Earth (gravitational acceleration on the Moon is about 1/6 that of the Earth)?

Exercise:

Problem:

How many times higher could an astronaut jump on the Moon than on Earth if his takeoff speed is the same in both locations (gravitational acceleration on the Moon is about 1/6 of g on Earth)?

Problems & Exercises

Assume air resistance is negligible unless otherwise stated.

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the displacement and velocity at times of (a) 0.500, (b) 1.00, (c) 1.50, and (d) 2.00 s for a ball thrown straight up with an initial velocity of 15.0 m/s. Take the point of release to be $y_0 = 0$.

Solution:

(a) $y_1 = 6.28\text{ m}$; $v_1 = 10.1\text{ m/s}$

(b) $y_2 = 10.1\text{ m}$; $v_2 = 5.20\text{ m/s}$

(c) $y_3 = 11.5\text{ m}$; $v_3 = 0.300\text{ m/s}$

(d) $y_4 = 10.4\text{ m}$; $v_4 = -4.60\text{ m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the displacement and velocity at times of (a) 0.500, (b) 1.00, (c) 1.50, (d) 2.00, and (e) 2.50 s for a rock thrown straight down with an initial velocity of 14.0 m/s from the Verrazano Narrows Bridge in New York City. The roadway of this bridge is 70.0 m above the water.

Exercise:

Problem:

A basketball referee tosses the ball straight up for the starting tip-off. At what velocity must a basketball player leave the ground to rise 1.25 m above the floor in an attempt to get the ball?

Solution:

$v_0 = 4.95 \text{ m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A rescue helicopter is hovering over a person whose boat has sunk. One of the rescuers throws a life preserver straight down to the victim with an initial velocity of 1.40 m/s and observes that it takes 1.8 s to reach the water. (a) List the knowns in this problem. (b) How high above the water was the preserver released? Note that the downdraft of the helicopter reduces the effects of air resistance on the falling life preserver, so that an acceleration equal to that of gravity is reasonable.

Exercise:

Problem:

A dolphin in an aquatic show jumps straight up out of the water at a velocity of 13.0 m/s. (a) List the knowns in this problem. (b) How high does his body rise above the water? To solve this part, first note that the final velocity is now a known and identify its value. Then identify the unknown, and discuss how you chose the appropriate equation to solve for it. After choosing the equation, show your steps in solving for the unknown, checking units, and discuss whether the answer is reasonable. (c) How long is the dolphin in the air? Neglect any effects due to his size or orientation.

Solution:

(a) $a = -9.80 \text{ m/s}^2$; $v_0 = 13.0 \text{ m/s}$; $y_0 = 0 \text{ m}$

(b) $v = 0\text{m/s}$. Unknown is distance y to top of trajectory, where velocity is zero. Use equation $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(y - y_0)$ because it contains all known values except for y, so we can solve for y. Solving for y gives

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} v^2 - v_0^2 & = & 2a(y - y_0) \\ \frac{v^2 - v_0^2}{2a} & = & y - y_0 \\ y & = & y_0 + \frac{v^2 - v_0^2}{2a} = 0\text{ m} + \frac{(0\text{ m/s})^2 - (13.0\text{ m/s})^2}{2\left(-9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)} = 8.62\text{ m} \end{array}$$

Dolphins measure about 2 meters long and can jump several times their length out of the water, so this is a reasonable result.

(c) 2.65 s

Exercise:

Problem:

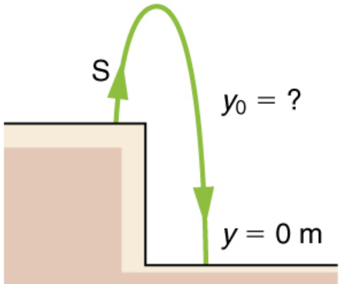
A swimmer bounces straight up from a diving board and falls feet first into a pool. She starts with a velocity of 4.00 m/s, and her takeoff point is 1.80 m above the pool. (a) How long are her feet in the air? (b) What is her highest point above the board? (c) What is her velocity when her feet hit the water?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the height of a cliff if it takes 2.35 s for a rock to hit the ground when it is thrown straight up from the cliff with an initial velocity of 8.00 m/s. (b) How long would it take to reach the ground if it is thrown straight down with the same speed?

Solution:



(a) 8.26 m

(b) 0.717 s

Exercise:

Problem:

A very strong, but inept, shot putter puts the shot straight up vertically with an initial velocity of 11.0 m/s. How long does he have to get out of the way if the shot was released at a height of 2.20 m, and he is 1.80 m tall?

Exercise:

Problem:

You throw a ball straight up with an initial velocity of 15.0 m/s. It passes a tree branch on the way up at a height of 7.00 m. How much additional time will pass before the ball passes the tree branch on the way back down?

Solution:

1.91 s

Exercise:

Problem:

A kangaroo can jump over an object 2.50 m high. (a) Calculate its vertical speed when it leaves the ground. (b) How long is it in the air?

Exercise:

Problem:

Standing at the base of one of the cliffs of Mt. Arapiles in Victoria, Australia, a hiker hears a rock break loose from a height of 105 m. He can't see the rock right away but then does, 1.50 s later. (a) How far above the hiker is the rock when he can see it? (b) How much time does he have to move before the rock hits his head?

Solution:

(a) 94.0 m

(b) 3.13 s

Exercise:

Problem:

An object is dropped from a height of 75.0 m above ground level. (a) Determine the distance traveled during the first second. (b) Determine the final velocity at which the object hits the ground. (c) Determine the distance traveled during the last second of motion before hitting the ground.

Exercise:

Problem:

There is a 250-m-high cliff at Half Dome in Yosemite National Park in California. Suppose a boulder breaks loose from the top of this cliff. (a) How fast will it be going when it strikes the ground? (b) Assuming a reaction time of 0.300 s, how long will a tourist at the bottom have to get out of the way after hearing the sound of the rock breaking loose (neglecting the height of the tourist, which would become negligible anyway if hit)? The speed of sound is 335 m/s on this day.

Solution:

(a) -70.0 m/s (downward)

(b) 6.10 s

Exercise:

Problem:

A ball is thrown straight up. It passes a 2.00-m-high window 7.50 m off the ground on its path up and takes 0.312 s to go past the window. What was the ball's initial velocity? Hint: First consider only the distance along the window, and solve for the ball's velocity at the bottom of the window. Next, consider only the distance from the ground to the bottom of the window, and solve for the initial velocity using the velocity at the bottom of the window as the final velocity.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you drop a rock into a dark well and, using precision equipment, you measure the time for the sound of a splash to return. (a) Neglecting the time required for sound to travel up the well, calculate the distance to the water if the sound returns in 2.0000 s. (b) Now calculate the distance taking into account the time for sound to travel up the well. The speed of sound is 332.00 m/s in this well.

Solution:

(a) 19.6 m

(b) 18.5 m

Exercise:

Problem:

A steel ball is dropped onto a hard floor from a height of 1.50 m and rebounds to a height of 1.45 m. (a) Calculate its velocity just before it strikes the floor. (b) Calculate its velocity just after it leaves the floor on its way back up. (c) Calculate its acceleration during contact with the floor if that contact lasts 0.0800 ms $(8.00 \times 10^{-5} \text{ s})$. (d) How much did the ball compress during its collision with the floor, assuming the floor is absolutely rigid?

Exercise:

Problem:

A coin is dropped from a hot-air balloon that is 300 m above the ground and rising at 10.0 m/s upward. For the coin, find (a) the maximum height reached, (b) its position and velocity 4.00 s after being released, and (c) the time before it hits the ground.

Solution:

(a) 305 m

(b) 262 m, -29.2 m/s

(c) 8.91 s

Exercise:

Problem:

A soft tennis ball is dropped onto a hard floor from a height of 1.50 m and rebounds to a height of 1.10 m. (a) Calculate its velocity just before it strikes the floor. (b) Calculate its velocity just after it leaves the floor on its way back up. (c) Calculate its acceleration during contact with the floor if that contact lasts 3.50 ms $(3.50 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{s})$. (d) How much did the ball compress during its collision with the floor, assuming the floor is absolutely rigid?

Glossary

free-fall
: the state of movement that results from gravitational force only

acceleration due to gravity
: acceleration of an object as a result of gravity

Graphical Analysis of One-Dimensional Motion

- Describe a straight-line graph in terms of its slope and y-intercept.
- Determine average velocity or instantaneous velocity from a graph of position vs. time.
- Determine average or instantaneous acceleration from a graph of velocity vs. time.
- Derive a graph of velocity vs. time from a graph of position vs. time.
- Derive a graph of acceleration vs. time from a graph of velocity vs. time.

A graph, like a picture, is worth a thousand words. Graphs not only contain numerical information; they also reveal relationships between physical quantities. This section uses graphs of position, velocity, and acceleration versus time to illustrate one-dimensional kinematics.

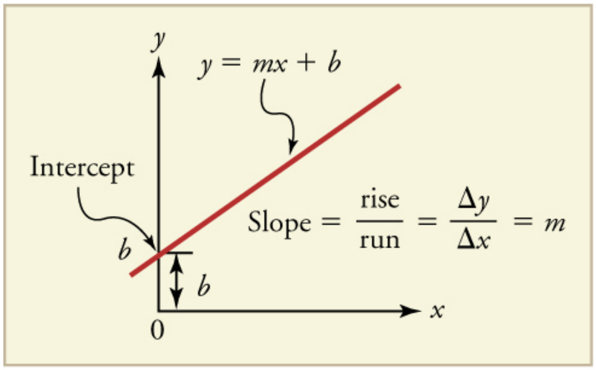
Slopes and General Relationships

First note that graphs in this text have perpendicular axes, one horizontal and the other vertical. When two physical quantities are plotted against one another in such a graph, the horizontal axis is usually considered to be an **independent variable** and the vertical axis a **dependent variable**. If we call the horizontal axis the x-axis and the vertical axis the y-axis, as in [link], a straight-line graph has the general form

Equation:

$$y=\text{mx}+b.$$

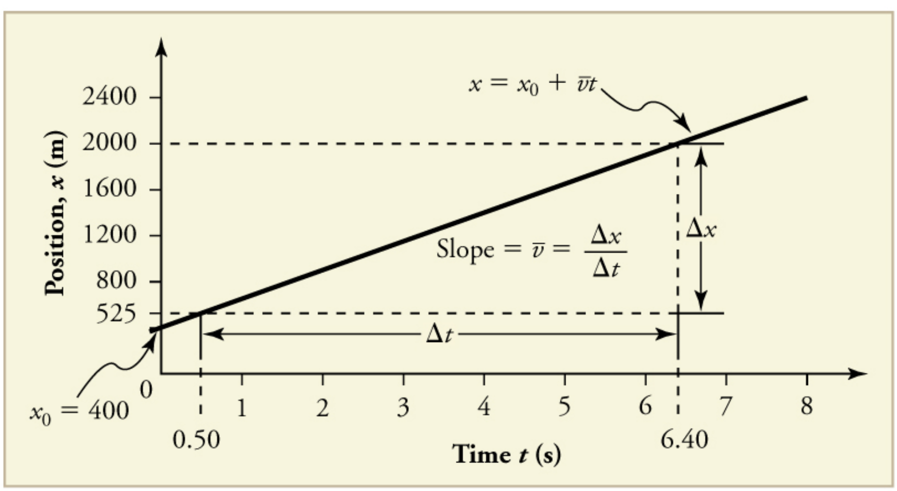
Here m is the **slope**, defined to be the rise divided by the run (as seen in the figure) of the straight line. The letter b is used for the ***y*-intercept**, which is the point at which the line crosses the vertical axis.



A straight-line graph. The equation for a straight line is $y = \text{mx} + b$.

Graph of Position vs. Time (*a* = 0, so *v* is constant)

Time is usually an independent variable that other quantities, such as position, depend upon. A graph of position versus time would, thus, have x on the vertical axis and t on the horizontal axis. [link] is just such a straight-line graph. It shows a graph of position versus time for a jet-powered car on a very flat dry lake bed in Nevada.



Graph of position versus time for a jet-powered car on the Bonneville Salt Flats.

Using the relationship between dependent and independent variables, we see that the slope in the graph above is average velocity $\bar{v}$ and the intercept is position at time zero—that is, x_0. Substituting these symbols into $y = \text{mx} + b$ gives

Equation:

$$x = \bar{v}t + x_0$$

or

Equation:

$$x = x_0 + \bar{v}t.$$

Thus a graph of position versus time gives a general relationship among displacement(change in position), velocity, and time, as well as giving detailed numerical information about a specific situation.

Note:

The Slope of *x* vs. *t*

The slope of the graph of position x vs. time t is velocity v.

Equation:

$$\text{slope} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = v$$

Notice that this equation is the same as that derived algebraically from other motion equations in Motion Equations for Constant Acceleration in One Dimension.

From the figure we can see that the car has a position of 25 m at 0.50 s and 2000 m at 6.40 s. Its position at other times can be read from the graph; furthermore, information about its velocity and acceleration can also be obtained from the graph.

Example:
Determining Average Velocity from a Graph of Position versus Time: Jet Car
Find the average velocity of the car whose position is graphed in [link].
Strategy
The slope of a graph of x vs. t is average velocity, since slope equals rise over run. In this case, rise = change in position and run = change in time, so that
Equation:

$$\text{slope} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \bar{v}.$$

Since the slope is constant here, any two points on the graph can be used to find the slope. (Generally speaking, it is most accurate to use two widely separated points on the straight line. This is because any error in reading data from the graph is proportionally smaller if the interval is larger.)
Solution
1. Choose two points on the line. In this case, we choose the points labeled on the graph: (6.4 s, 2000 m) and (0.50 s, 525 m). (Note, however, that you could choose any two points.)
2. Substitute the x and t values of the chosen points into the equation. Remember in calculating change (Δ) we always use final value minus initial value.
Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{2000\text{ m} - 525\text{ m}}{6.4\text{ s} - 0.50\text{ s}},$$

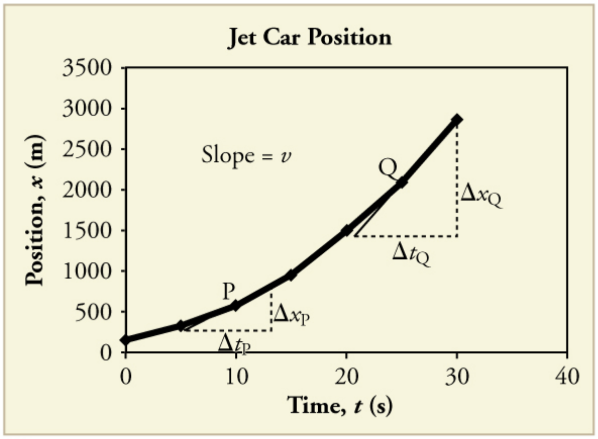
yielding
Equation:

$$\bar{v} = 250 \text{ m/s}.$$

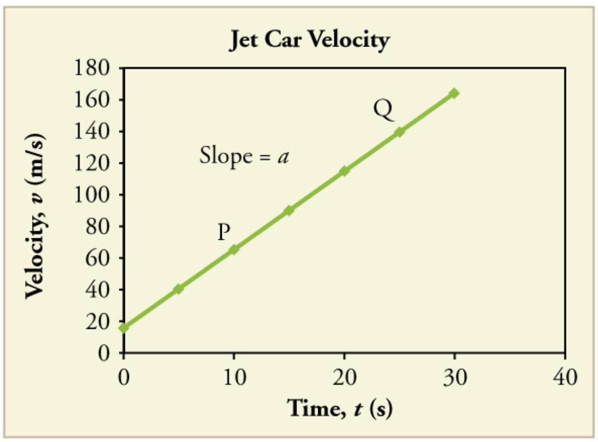
Discussion
This is an impressively large land speed (900 km/h, or about 560 mi/h): much greater than the typical highway speed limit of 60 mi/h (27 m/s or 96 km/h), but considerably shy of the record of 343 m/s (1234 km/h or 766 mi/h) set in 1997.

Graphs of Motion when a is constant but $a \neq 0$

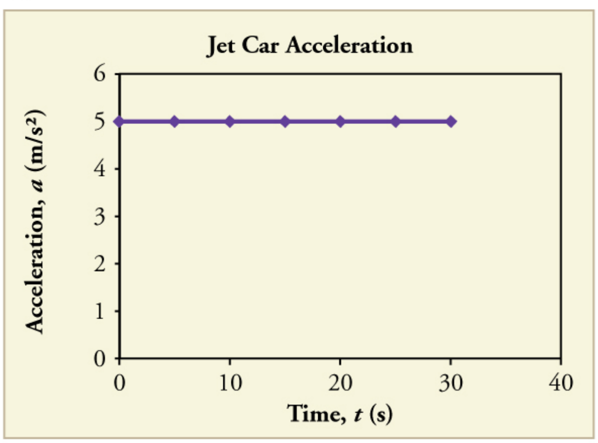
The graphs in [link] below represent the motion of the jet-powered car as it accelerates toward its top speed, but only during the time when its acceleration is constant. Time starts at zero for this motion (as if measured with a stopwatch), and the position and velocity are initially 200 m and 15 m/s, respectively.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Graphs of motion of a jet-powered car during the time span when its acceleration is constant. (a) The slope of an x vs. t graph is velocity. This is

shown at two points, and the instantaneous velocities obtained are plotted in the next graph. Instantaneous velocity at any point is the slope of the tangent at that point. (b) The slope of the v vs. t graph is constant for this part of the motion, indicating constant acceleration. (c) Acceleration has the constant value of 5.0 m/s^2 over the time interval plotted.

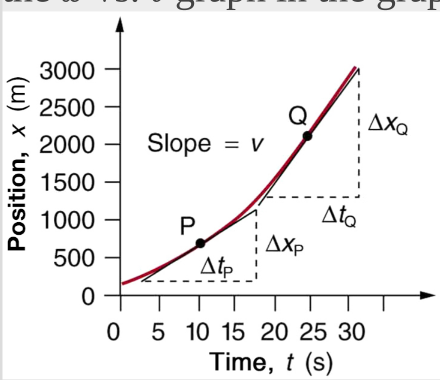
A U.S. Air Force jet car speeds down a track. (credit: Matt Trostle, Flickr)

The graph of position versus time in [link](a) is a curve rather than a straight line. The slope of the curve becomes steeper as time progresses,

showing that the velocity is increasing over time. The slope at any point on a position-versus-time graph is the instantaneous velocity at that point. It is found by drawing a straight line tangent to the curve at the point of interest and taking the slope of this straight line. Tangent lines are shown for two points in [link](a). If this is done at every point on the curve and the values are plotted against time, then the graph of velocity versus time shown in [link](b) is obtained. Furthermore, the slope of the graph of velocity versus time is acceleration, which is shown in [link](c).

Example:
Determining Instantaneous Velocity from the Slope at a Point: Jet Car

Calculate the velocity of the jet car at a time of 25 s by finding the slope of the x vs. t graph in the graph below.



t (s)	x (m)
0	200
5	338
10	600
15	988
20	1500
25	2138
30	2900

The slope of an x vs. t graph is velocity. This is shown at two points. Instantaneous velocity at any point is the slope of the tangent at that point.

Strategy

The slope of a curve at a point is equal to the slope of a straight line tangent to the curve at that point. This principle is illustrated in [link], where Q is the point at $t = 25$ s.

Solution

1. Find the tangent line to the curve at $t = 25$ s.

2. Determine the endpoints of the tangent. These correspond to a position of 1300 m at time 19 s and a position of 3120 m at time 32 s.
3. Plug these endpoints into the equation to solve for the slope, v.
Equation:

$$\text{slope} = v_{\text{Q}} = \frac{\Delta x_{\text{Q}}}{\Delta t_{\text{Q}}} = \frac{(3120\text{ m} - 1300\text{ m})}{(32\text{ s} - 19\text{ s})}$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$v_{\text{Q}} = \frac{1820\text{ m}}{13\text{ s}} = 140\text{ m/s}.$$

Discussion
This is the value given in this figure's table for v at $t = 25$ s. The value of 140 m/s for v_{Q} is plotted in [link]. The entire graph of v vs. t can be obtained in this fashion.

Carrying this one step further, we note that the slope of a velocity versus time graph is acceleration. Slope is rise divided by run; on a v vs. t graph, rise = change in velocity Δv and run = change in time Δt.

Note:
The Slope of *v* vs. *t*
The slope of a graph of velocity v vs. time t is acceleration a.
Equation:

$$\text{slope} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = a$$

Since the velocity versus time graph in [link](b) is a straight line, its slope is the same everywhere, implying that acceleration is constant. Acceleration versus time is graphed in [link](c).

Additional general information can be obtained from [link] and the expression for a straight line, $y = \mathrm{mx} + b$.

In this case, the vertical axis y is V, the intercept b is v_0, the slope m is a, and the horizontal axis x is t. Substituting these symbols yields
Equation:

$$v = v_0 + \mathrm{at}.$$

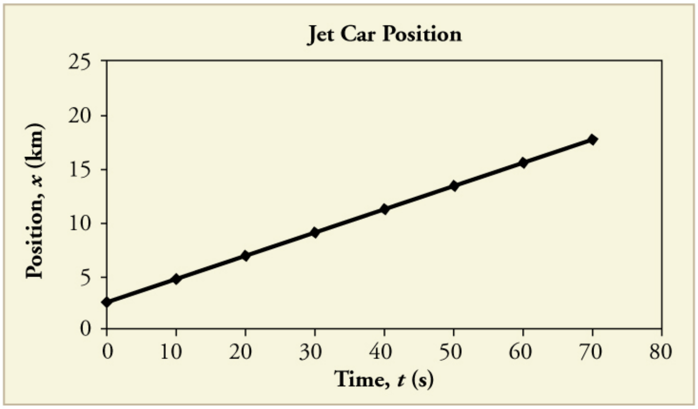
A general relationship for velocity, acceleration, and time has again been obtained from a graph. Notice that this equation was also derived algebraically from other motion equations in Motion Equations for Constant Acceleration in One Dimension.

It is not accidental that the same equations are obtained by graphical analysis as by algebraic techniques. In fact, an important way to *discover* physical relationships is to measure various physical quantities and then make graphs of one quantity against another to see if they are correlated in any way. Correlations imply physical relationships and might be shown by smooth graphs such as those above. From such graphs, mathematical relationships can sometimes be postulated. Further experiments are then performed to determine the validity of the hypothesized relationships.

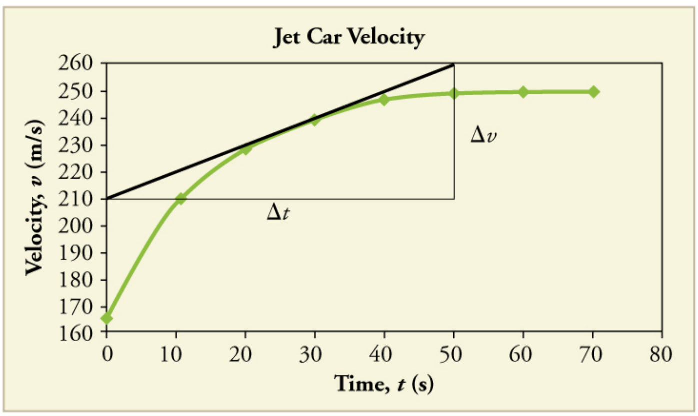
Graphs of Motion Where Acceleration is Not Constant

Now consider the motion of the jet car as it goes from 165 m/s to its top velocity of 250 m/s, graphed in [link]. Time again starts at zero, and the initial position and velocity are 2900 m and 165 m/s, respectively. (These were the final position and velocity of the car in the motion graphed in [link].) Acceleration gradually decreases from $5.0\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$ to zero when the car hits 250 m/s. The slope of the x vs. t graph increases until $t = 55$ s, after which time the slope is constant. Similarly, velocity increases until 55

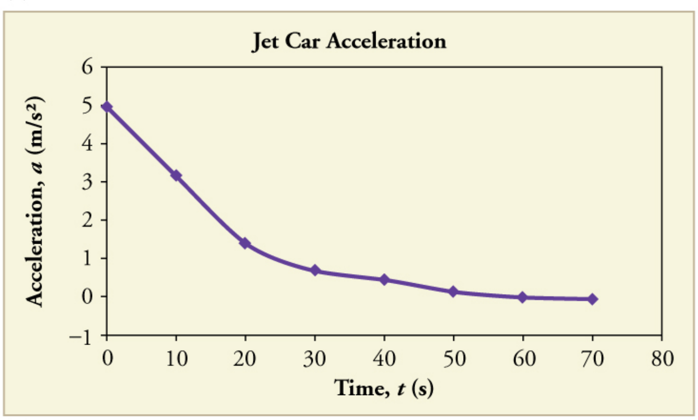
s and then becomes constant, since acceleration decreases to zero at 55 s and remains zero afterward.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Graphs of motion of a jet-powered car as it reaches its top velocity. This motion begins where the motion in

[link] ends. (a) The slope of this graph is velocity; it is plotted in the next graph. (b) The velocity gradually approaches its top value. The slope of this graph is acceleration; it is plotted in the final graph. (c) Acceleration gradually declines to zero when velocity becomes constant.

Example:
Calculating Acceleration from a Graph of Velocity versus Time

Calculate the acceleration of the jet car at a time of 25 s by finding the slope of the v vs. t graph in [link](b).

Strategy

The slope of the curve at $t = 25$ s is equal to the slope of the line tangent at that point, as illustrated in [link](b).

Solution

Determine endpoints of the tangent line from the figure, and then plug them into the equation to solve for slope, a.

Equation:

$$\text{slope} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{(260\ \text{m/s} - 210\ \text{m/s})}{(51\ \text{s} - 1.0\ \text{s})}$$

Equation:

$$a = \frac{50\ \text{m/s}}{50\ \text{s}} = 1.0\ \text{m/s}^2.$$

Discussion

Note that this value for a is consistent with the value plotted in [link](c) at $t = 25$ s.

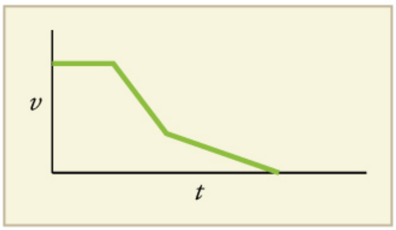
A graph of position versus time can be used to generate a graph of velocity versus time, and a graph of velocity versus time can be used to generate a graph of acceleration versus time. We do this by finding the slope of the graphs at every point. If the graph is linear (i.e., a line with a constant slope), it is easy to find the slope at any point and you have the slope for every point. Graphical analysis of motion can be used to describe both specific and general characteristics of kinematics. Graphs can also be used for other topics in physics. An important aspect of exploring physical relationships is to graph them and look for underlying relationships.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

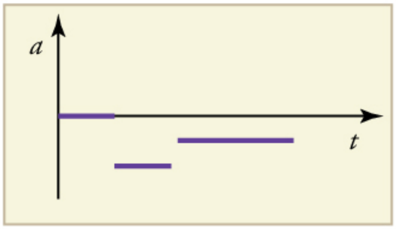
A graph of velocity vs. time of a ship coming into a harbor is shown below. (a) Describe the motion of the ship based on the graph. (b)What would a graph of the ship's acceleration look like?



Solution:

(a) The ship moves at constant velocity and then begins to decelerate at a constant rate. At some point, its deceleration rate decreases. It maintains this lower deceleration rate until it stops moving.

(b) A graph of acceleration vs. time would show zero acceleration in the first leg, large and constant negative acceleration in the second leg, and constant negative acceleration.



Section Summary

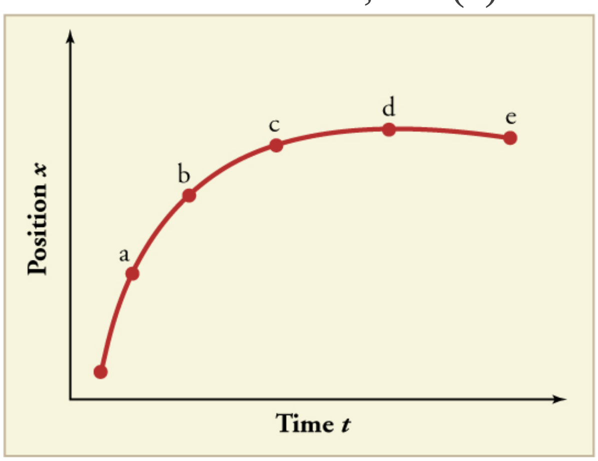
- Graphs of motion can be used to analyze motion.
- Graphical solutions yield identical solutions to mathematical methods for deriving motion equations.
- The slope of a graph of displacement x vs. time t is velocity v.
- The slope of a graph of velocity v vs. time t graph is acceleration a.
- Average velocity, instantaneous velocity, and acceleration can all be obtained by analyzing graphs.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

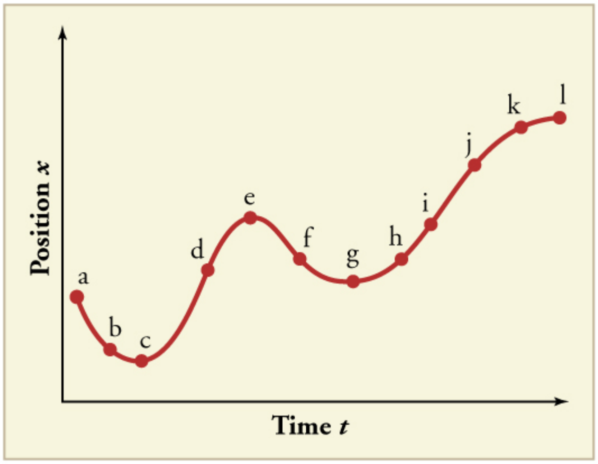
(a) Explain how you can use the graph of position versus time in [link] to describe the change in velocity over time. Identify (b) the time (t_{a}, t_{b}, t_{c}, t_{d}, or t_{e}) at which the instantaneous velocity is greatest, (c) the time at which it is zero, and (d) the time at which it is negative.



Exercise:

Problem:

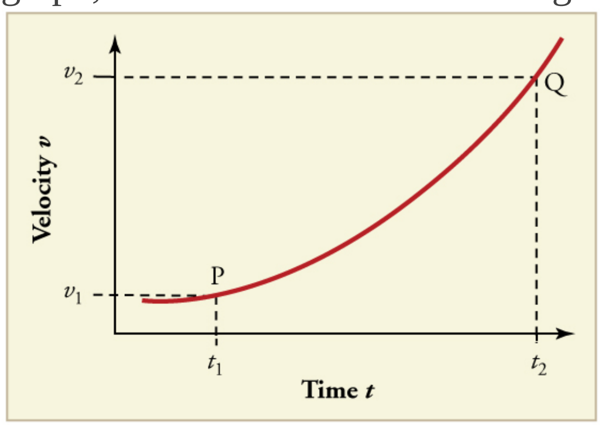
(a) Sketch a graph of velocity versus time corresponding to the graph of position versus time given in [link]. (b) Identify the time or times (t_{a}, t_{b}, t_{c}, etc.) at which the instantaneous velocity is greatest. (c) At which times is it zero? (d) At which times is it negative?



Exercise:

Problem:

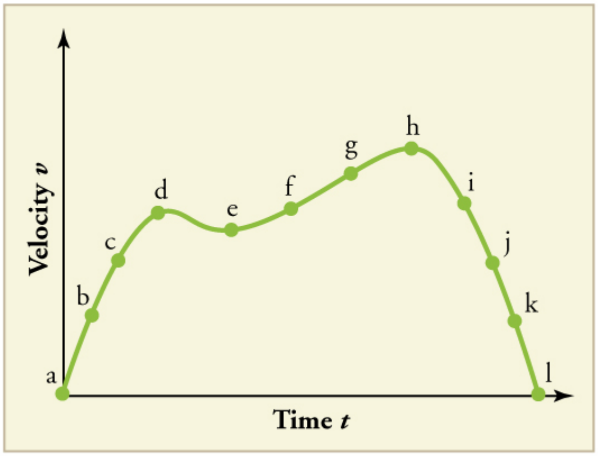
(a) Explain how you can determine the acceleration over time from a velocity versus time graph such as the one in [link]. (b) Based on the graph, how does acceleration change over time?



Exercise:

Problem:

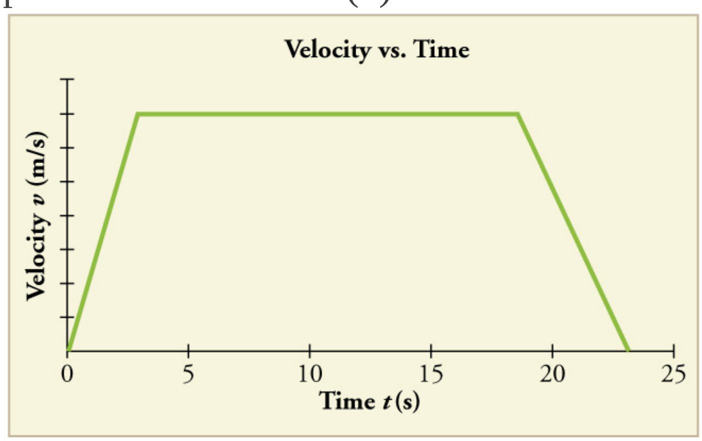
(a) Sketch a graph of acceleration versus time corresponding to the graph of velocity versus time given in [link]. (b) Identify the time or times (t_a, t_b, t_c, etc.) at which the acceleration is greatest. (c) At which times is it zero? (d) At which times is it negative?



Exercise:

Problem:

Consider the velocity vs. time graph of a person in an elevator shown in [link]. Suppose the elevator is initially at rest. It then accelerates for 3 seconds, maintains that velocity for 15 seconds, then decelerates for 5 seconds until it stops. The acceleration for the entire trip is not constant so we cannot use the equations of motion from Motion Equations for Constant Acceleration in One Dimension for the complete trip. (We could, however, use them in the three individual sections where acceleration is a constant.) Sketch graphs of (a) position vs. time and (b) acceleration vs. time for this trip.



Exercise:

Problem:

A cylinder is given a push and then rolls up an inclined plane. If the origin is the starting point, sketch the position, velocity, and acceleration of the cylinder vs. time as it goes up and then down the plane.

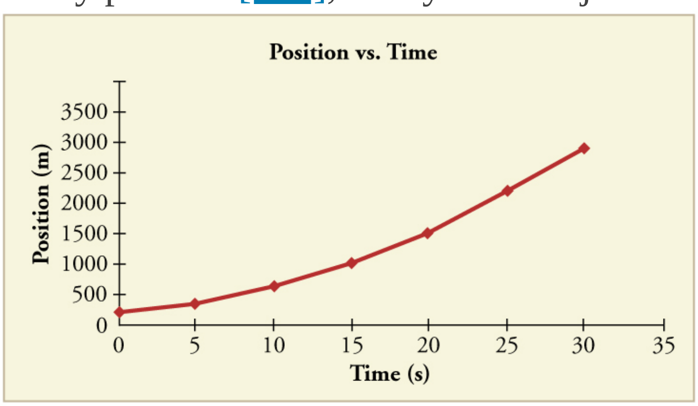
Problems & Exercises

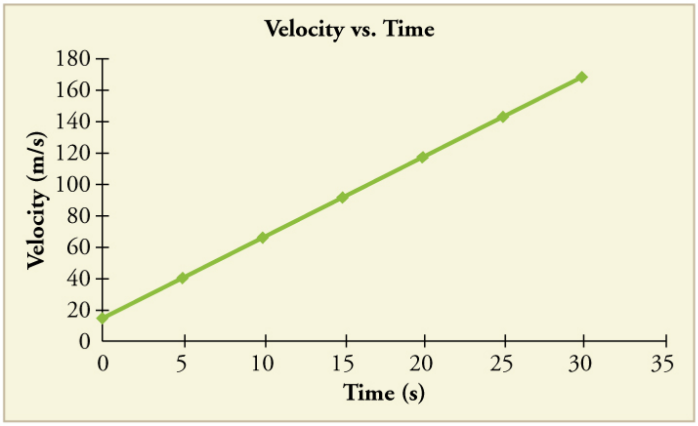
Note: There is always uncertainty in numbers taken from graphs. If your answers differ from expected values, examine them to see if they are within data extraction uncertainties estimated by you.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) By taking the slope of the curve in [link], verify that the velocity of the jet car is 115 m/s at $t = 20$ s. (b) By taking the slope of the curve at any point in [link], verify that the jet car's acceleration is $5.0\ \text{m/s}^2$.





Solution:

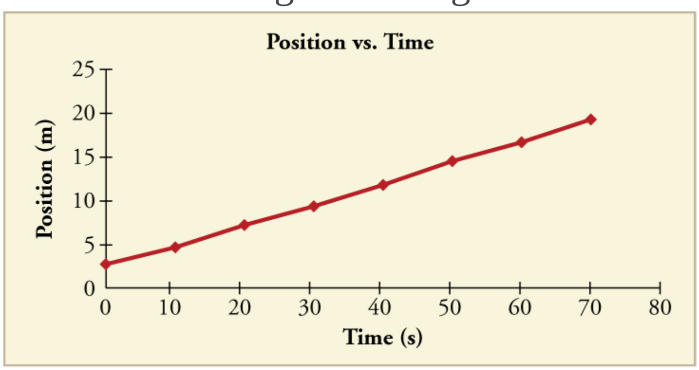
(a) $115\ \mathrm{m/s}$

(b) $5.0\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

Using approximate values, calculate the slope of the curve in [link] to verify that the velocity at $t = 10.0$ s is 0.208 m/s. Assume all values are known to 3 significant figures.



Exercise:

Problem:

Using approximate values, calculate the slope of the curve in [link] to verify that the velocity at $t = 30.0$ s is approximately 0.24 m/s.

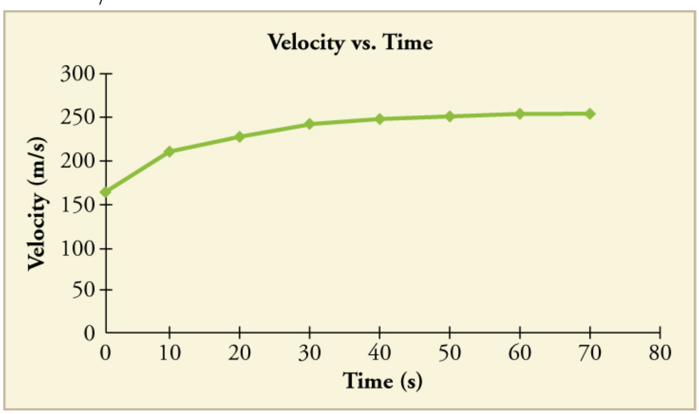
Solution:
Equation:

$$v=\frac{(11.7-6.95)\times 10^{3}\text{ m}}{(40.0-20.0)\text{ s}}=238\text{ m/s}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

By taking the slope of the curve in [link], verify that the acceleration is 3.2 m/s^{2} at $t=10\text{ s}$.

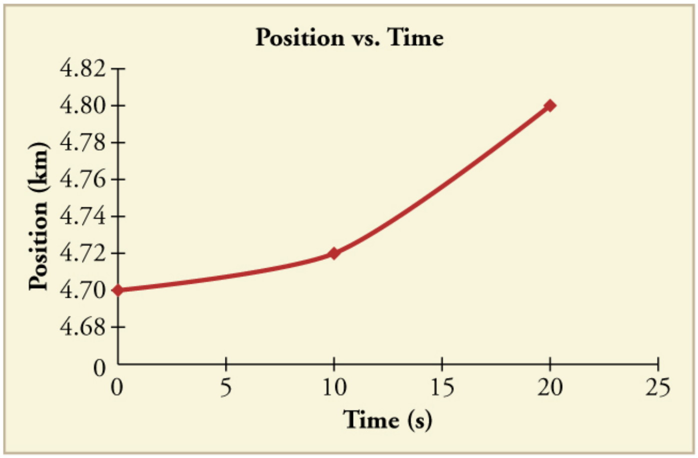


Exercise:

Problem:

Construct the position graph for the subway shuttle train as shown in [link](a). Your graph should show the position of the train, in kilometers, from t = 0 to 20 s. You will need to use the information on acceleration and velocity given in the examples for this figure.

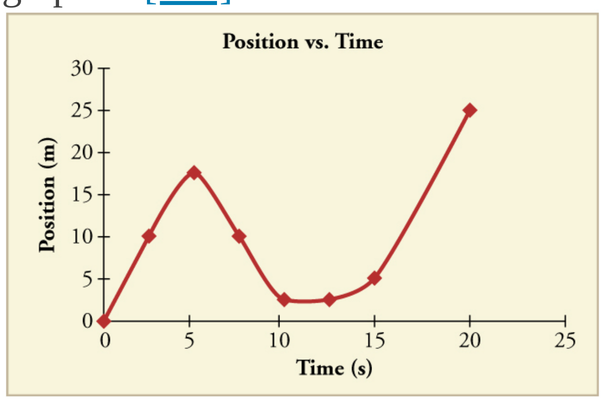
Solution:

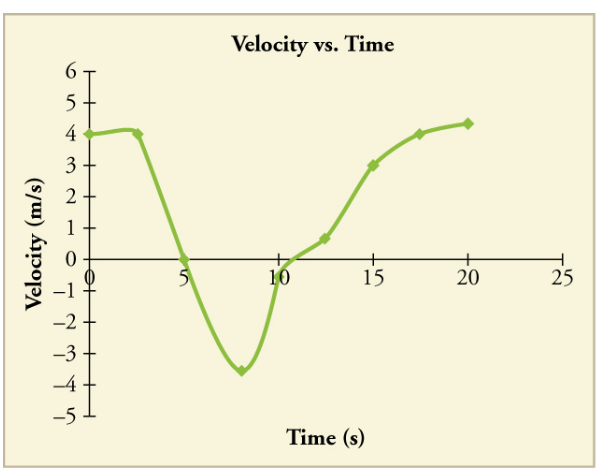


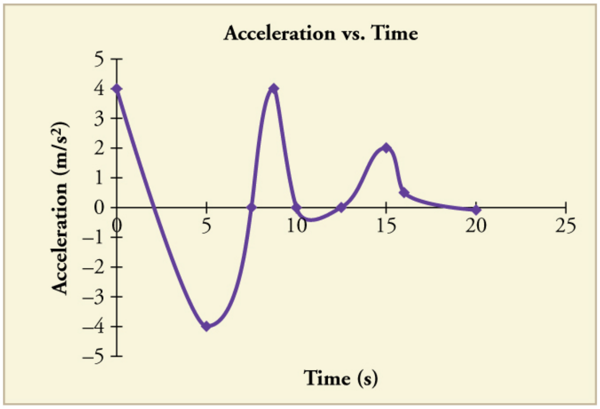
Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Take the slope of the curve in [link] to find the jogger's velocity at $t = 2.5$ s. (b) Repeat at 7.5 s. These values must be consistent with the graph in [link].



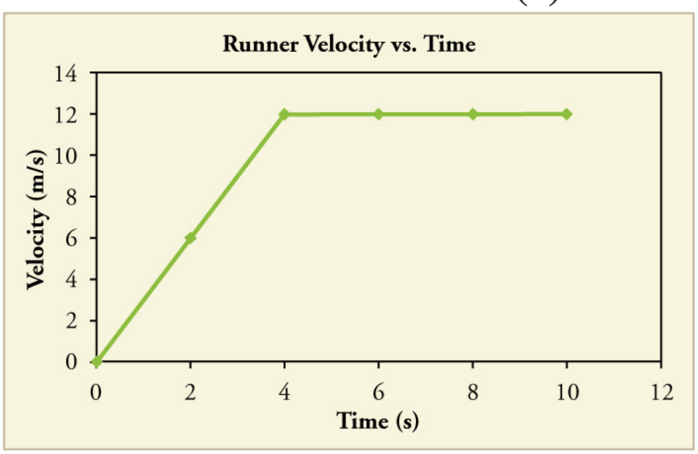




Exercise:

Problem:

A graph of $v(t)$ is shown for a world-class track sprinter in a 100-m race. (See [link]). (a) What is his average velocity for the first 4 s? (b) What is his instantaneous velocity at $t = 5$ s? (c) What is his average acceleration between 0 and 4 s? (d) What is his time for the race?



Solution:

(a) 6 m/s

(b) 12 m/s

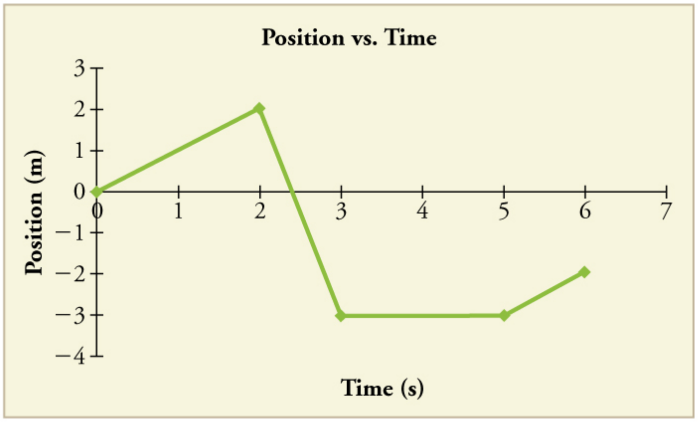
(c) $3\ \text{m/s}^2$

(d) 10 s

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows the position graph for a particle for 5 s. Draw the corresponding velocity and acceleration graphs.



Glossary

independent variable
: the variable that the dependent variable is measured with respect to; usually plotted along the x-axis

dependent variable
: the variable that is being measured; usually plotted along the y-axis

slope
: the difference in y-value (the rise) divided by the difference in x-value (the run) of two points on a straight line

y-intercept
: the y-value when x= 0, or when the graph crosses the y-axis

Introduction to Two-Dimensional Kinematics

class="introduction"

Everyday motion that we experience is, thankfully, rarely as tortuous as a rollercoaster ride like this—the Dragon Khan in Spain’s Universal Port Aventura Amusement Park. However, most motion is in curved, rather than straight-line, paths. Motion along a curved path is two- or three-dimensional motion, and can be described in a similar fashion to one-dimensional motion. (credit: Boris23/Wikimedia Commons)

The arc of a basketball, the orbit of a satellite, a bicycle rounding a curve, a swimmer diving into a pool, blood gushing out of a wound, and a puppy chasing its tail are but a few examples of motions along curved paths. In fact, most motions in nature follow curved paths rather than straight lines. Motion along a curved path on a flat surface or a plane (such as that of a ball on a pool table or a skater on an ice rink) is two-dimensional, and thus described by two-dimensional kinematics. Motion not confined to a plane, such as a car following a winding mountain road, is described by three-dimensional kinematics. Both two- and three-dimensional kinematics are simple extensions of the one-dimensional kinematics developed for straight-line motion in the previous chapter. This simple extension will allow us to apply physics to many more situations, and it will also yield unexpected insights about nature.

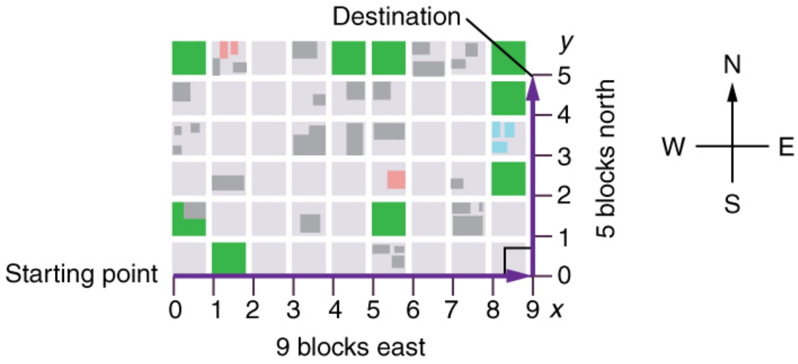
Kinematics in Two Dimensions: An Introduction

- Observe that motion in two dimensions consists of horizontal and vertical components.
- Understand the independence of horizontal and vertical vectors in two-dimensional motion.

Walkers and drivers in a city like New York are rarely able to travel in straight lines to reach their destinations. Instead, they must follow roads and sidewalks, making two-dimensional, zigzagged paths. (credit: Margaret W. Carruthers)

Two-Dimensional Motion: Walking in a City

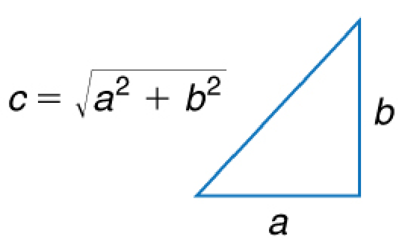
Suppose you want to walk from one point to another in a city with uniform square blocks, as pictured in [link].



A pedestrian walks a two-dimensional path between two points in a city. In this scene, all blocks are square and are the same size.

The straight-line path that a helicopter might fly is blocked to you as a pedestrian, and so you are forced to take a two-dimensional path, such as the one shown. You walk 14 blocks in all, 9 east followed by 5 north. What is the straight-line distance?

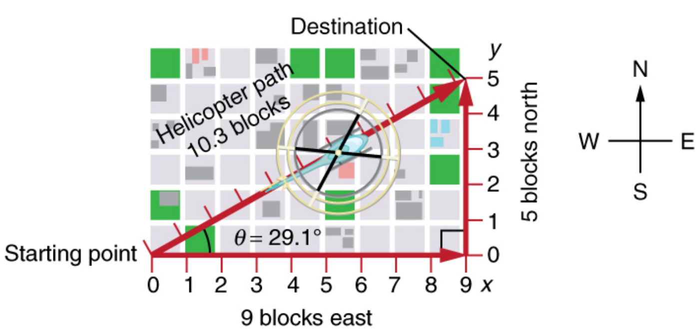
An old adage states that the shortest distance between two points is a straight line. The two legs of the trip and the straight-line path form a right triangle, and so the Pythagorean theorem, $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$, can be used to find the straight-line distance.



The Pythagorean theorem relates the length of the legs of a right triangle,

labeled a and b, with the hypotenuse, labeled c. The relationship is given by: $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$. This can be rewritten, solving for c : $c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$.

The hypotenuse of the triangle is the straight-line path, and so in this case its length in units of city blocks is $\sqrt{(9 \text{ blocks})^2 + (5 \text{ blocks})^2} = 10.3 \text{ blocks}$, considerably shorter than the 14 blocks you walked. (Note that we are using three significant figures in the answer. Although it appears that “9” and “5” have only one significant digit, they are discrete numbers. In this case “9 blocks” is the same as “9.0 or 9.00 blocks.” We have decided to use three significant figures in the answer in order to show the result more precisely.)



The straight-line path followed by a helicopter between the two points is shorter than the 14 blocks walked by the pedestrian. All blocks are square and the same size.

The fact that the straight-line distance (10.3 blocks) in [link] is less than the total distance walked (14 blocks) is one example of a general characteristic of vectors. (Recall that **vectors** are quantities that have both magnitude and direction.)

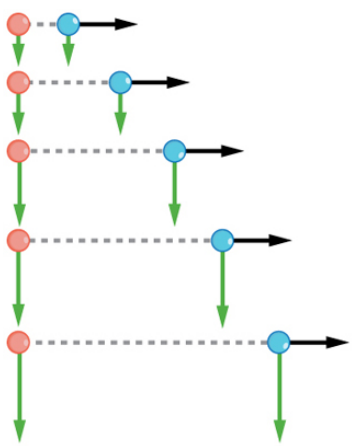
As for one-dimensional kinematics, we use arrows to represent vectors. The length of the arrow is proportional to the vector's magnitude. The arrow's length is indicated by hash marks in [link] and [link]. The arrow points in the same direction as the vector. For two-dimensional motion, the path of an object can be represented with three vectors: one vector shows the straight-line path between the initial and final points of the motion, one vector shows the horizontal component of the motion, and one vector shows the vertical component of the motion. The horizontal and vertical components of the motion add together to give the straight-line path. For example, observe the three vectors in [link]. The first represents a 9-block displacement east. The second represents a 5-block displacement north. These vectors are added to give the third vector, with a 10.3-block total displacement. The third vector is the straight-line path between the two points. Note that in this example, the vectors that we are adding are perpendicular to each other and thus form a right triangle. This means that we can use the Pythagorean theorem to calculate the magnitude of the total displacement. (Note that we cannot use the Pythagorean theorem to add vectors that are not perpendicular. We will develop techniques for adding vectors having any direction, not just those perpendicular to one another, in Vector Addition and Subtraction: Graphical Methods and Vector Addition and Subtraction: Analytical Methods.)

The Independence of Perpendicular Motions

The person taking the path shown in [link] walks east and then north (two perpendicular directions). How far he or she walks east is only affected by his or her motion eastward. Similarly, how far he or she walks north is only affected by his or her motion northward.

Note:
Independence of Motion
The horizontal and vertical components of two-dimensional motion are independent of each other. Any motion in the horizontal direction does not affect motion in the vertical direction, and vice versa.

This is true in a simple scenario like that of walking in one direction first, followed by another. It is also true of more complicated motion involving movement in two directions at once. For example, let’s compare the motions of two baseballs. One baseball is dropped from rest. At the same instant, another is thrown horizontally from the same height and follows a curved path. A stroboscope has captured the positions of the balls at fixed time intervals as they fall.



This shows the motions of two identical balls—one falls from rest, the other has an initial horizontal velocity. Each subsequent

position is an equal time interval. Arrows represent horizontal and vertical velocities at each position. The ball on the right has an initial horizontal velocity, while the ball on the left has no horizontal velocity. Despite the difference in horizontal velocities, the vertical velocities and positions are identical for both balls. This shows that the vertical and horizontal motions are independent.

It is remarkable that for each flash of the strobe, the vertical positions of the two balls are the same. This similarity implies that the vertical motion is independent of whether or not the ball is moving horizontally. (Assuming no air resistance, the vertical motion of a falling object is influenced by gravity only, and not by any horizontal forces.) Careful examination of the

ball thrown horizontally shows that it travels the same horizontal distance between flashes. This is due to the fact that there are no additional forces on the ball in the horizontal direction after it is thrown. This result means that the horizontal velocity is constant, and affected neither by vertical motion nor by gravity (which is vertical). Note that this case is true only for ideal conditions. In the real world, air resistance will affect the speed of the balls in both directions.

The two-dimensional curved path of the horizontally thrown ball is composed of two independent one-dimensional motions (horizontal and vertical). The key to analyzing such motion, called *projectile motion*, is to *resolve* (break) it into motions along perpendicular directions. Resolving two-dimensional motion into perpendicular components is possible because the components are independent. We shall see how to resolve vectors in Vector Addition and Subtraction: Graphical Methods and Vector Addition and Subtraction: Analytical Methods. We will find such techniques to be useful in many areas of physics.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Ladybug Motion 2D
Learn about position, velocity and acceleration vectors. Move the ladybug by setting the position, velocity or acceleration, and see how the vectors change. Choose linear, circular or elliptical motion, and record and playback the motion to analyze the behavior.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/317a2b1e-2fbd-11e5-99b5-e38ffb545fe6/ladybug-motion/#sim-ladybug-motion

Summary

- The shortest path between any two points is a straight line. In two dimensions, this path can be represented by a vector with horizontal and vertical components.
- The horizontal and vertical components of a vector are independent of one another. Motion in the horizontal direction does not affect motion

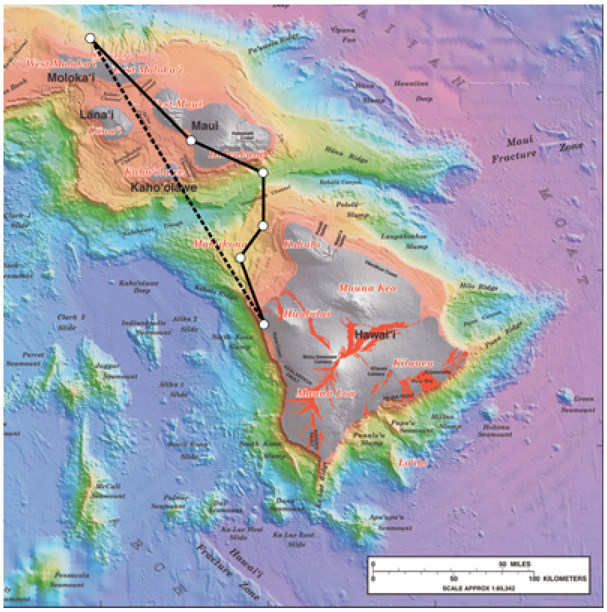
in the vertical direction, and vice versa.

Glossary

vector
: a quantity that has both magnitude and direction; an arrow used to represent quantities with both magnitude and direction

Vector Addition and Subtraction: Graphical Methods

- Understand the rules of vector addition, subtraction, and multiplication.
- Apply graphical methods of vector addition and subtraction to determine the displacement of moving objects.



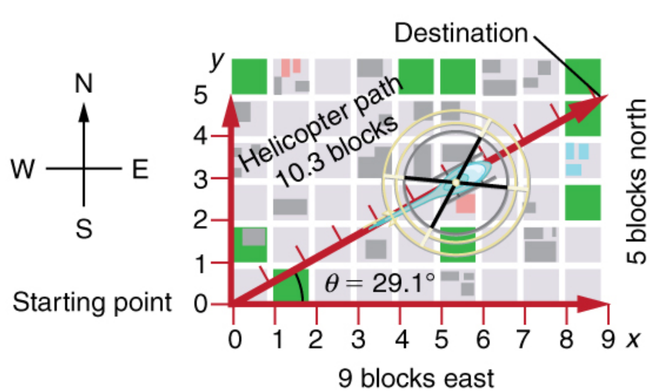
Displacement can be determined graphically using a scale map, such as this one of the Hawaiian Islands. A journey from Hawai’i to Moloka’i has a number of legs, or journey segments. These segments can be added graphically with a ruler to determine the total two-dimensional displacement of the journey. (credit: US Geological Survey)

Vectors in Two Dimensions

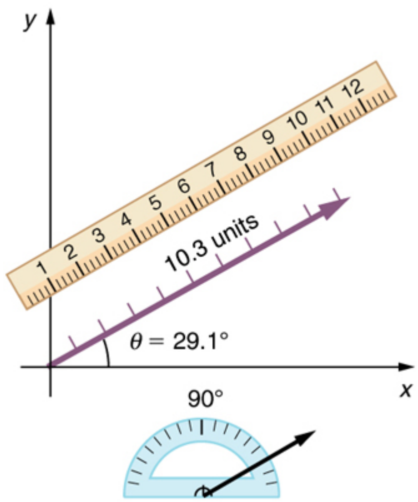
A **vector** is a quantity that has magnitude and direction. Displacement, velocity, acceleration, and force, for example, are all vectors. In one-dimensional, or straight-line, motion, the direction of a vector can be given simply by a plus or minus sign. In two dimensions (2-d), however, we specify the direction of a vector relative to some reference frame (i.e., coordinate system), using an arrow having length proportional to the vector's magnitude and pointing in the direction of the vector.

[link] shows such a *graphical representation of a vector*, using as an example the total displacement for the person walking in a city considered in Kinematics in Two Dimensions: An Introduction. We shall use the notation that a boldface symbol, such as $\mathbf{D}$, stands for a vector. Its magnitude is represented by the symbol in italics, D, and its direction by θ.

Note:
Vectors in this Text
In this text, we will represent a vector with a boldface variable. For example, we will represent the quantity force with the vector $\mathbf{F}$, which has both magnitude and direction. The magnitude of the vector will be represented by a variable in italics, such as F, and the direction of the variable will be given by an angle θ.



A person walks 9 blocks east and 5 blocks north. The displacement is 10.3 blocks at an angle 29.1° north of east.

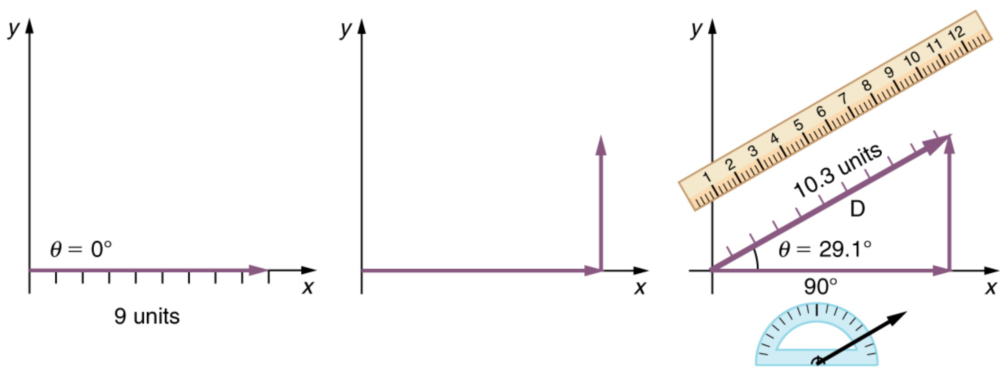


To describe the resultant vector for the person walking in a city considered in [link] graphically, draw an arrow to represent the total displacement vector D. Using a protractor, draw a line at an angle θ relative to the east-west axis. The length D of the arrow is proportional to the vector's

magnitude and is measured along the line with a ruler. In this example, the magnitude D of the vector is 10.3 units, and the direction θ is 29.1° north of east.

Vector Addition: Head-to-Tail Method

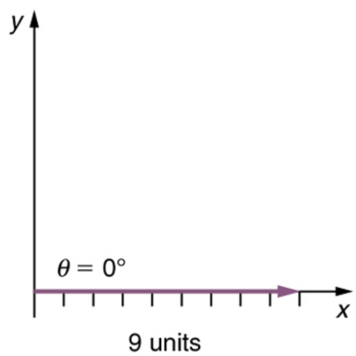
The **head-to-tail method** is a graphical way to add vectors, described in [link] below and in the steps following. The **tail** of the vector is the starting point of the vector, and the **head** (or tip) of a vector is the final, pointed end of the arrow.



Head-to-Tail Method: The head-to-tail method of graphically adding vectors is illustrated for the two displacements of the person walking in a city considered in [link]. (a) Draw a vector representing the displacement to the east. (b) Draw a vector representing the displacement to the north. The tail of this vector should originate from the head of the first, east-pointing vector.

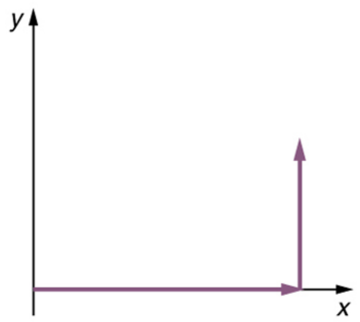
(c) Draw a line from the tail of the east-pointing vector to the head of the north-pointing vector to form the sum or **resultant vector** D. The length of the arrow D is proportional to the vector's magnitude and is measured to be 10.3 units . Its direction, described as the angle with respect to the east (or horizontal axis) θ is measured with a protractor to be 29.1º.

Step 1. *Draw an arrow to represent the first vector (9 blocks to the east) using a ruler and protractor*.



(a)

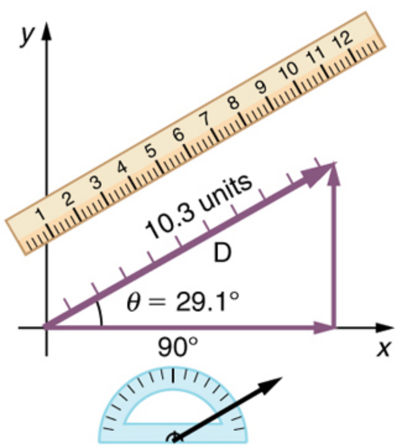
Step 2. Now draw an arrow to represent the second vector (5 blocks to the north). *Place the tail of the second vector at the head of the first vector*.



(b)

Step 3. *If there are more than two vectors, continue this process for each vector to be added. Note that in our example, we have only two vectors, so we have finished placing arrows tip to tail.*

Step 4. *Draw an arrow from the tail of the first vector to the head of the last vector*. This is the **resultant**, or the sum, of the other vectors.



(c)

Step 5. To get the **magnitude** of the resultant, *measure its length with a ruler. (Note that in most calculations, we will use the Pythagorean theorem to determine this length.)*

Step 6. To get the **direction** of the resultant, *measure the angle it makes with the reference frame using a protractor. (Note that in most calculations, we will use trigonometric relationships to determine this angle.)*

The graphical addition of vectors is limited in accuracy only by the precision with which the drawings can be made and the precision of the measuring tools. It is valid for any number of vectors.

Example:
Adding Vectors Graphically Using the Head-to-Tail Method: A Woman Takes a Walk

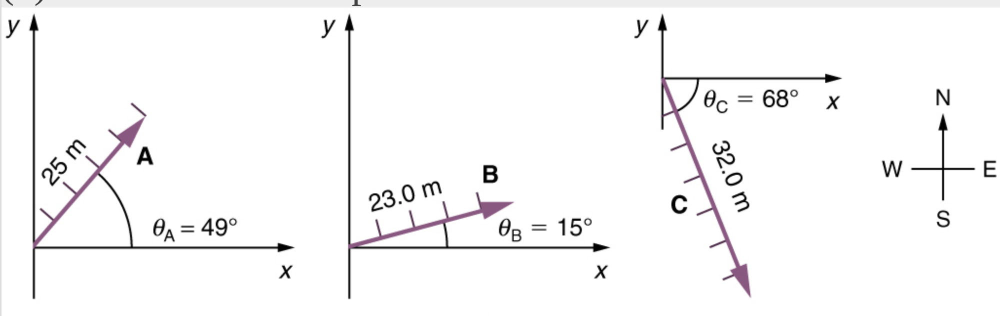
Use the graphical technique for adding vectors to find the total displacement of a person who walks the following three paths (displacements) on a flat field. First, she walks 25.0 m in a direction 49.0º north of east. Then, she walks 23.0 m heading 15.0º north of east. Finally, she turns and walks 32.0 m in a direction 68.0° south of east.

Strategy

Represent each displacement vector graphically with an arrow, labeling the first A, the second B, and the third C, making the lengths proportional to the distance and the directions as specified relative to an east-west line. The head-to-tail method outlined above will give a way to determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant displacement, denoted $\mathbf{R}$.

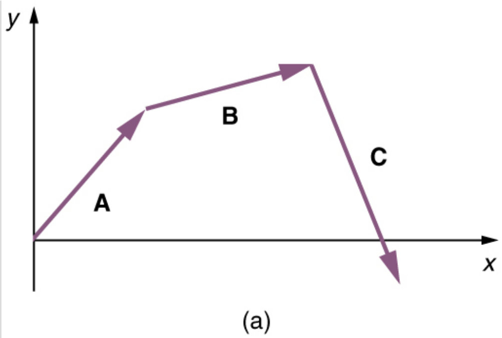
Solution

(1) Draw the three displacement vectors.

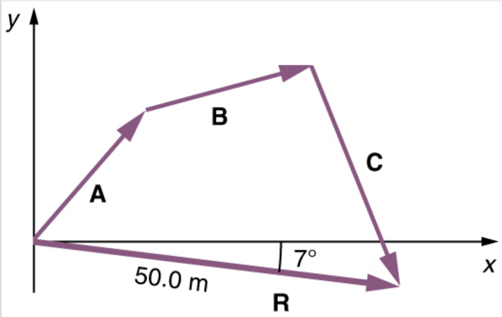


(a)

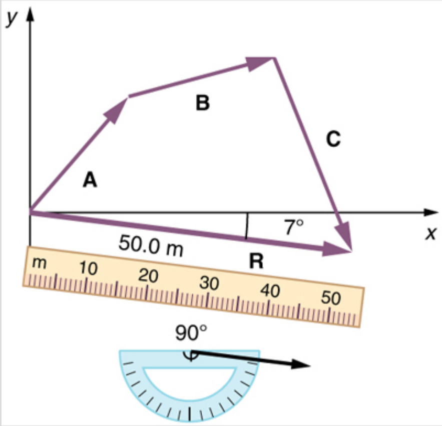
(2) Place the vectors head to tail retaining both their initial magnitude and direction.



(3) Draw the resultant vector, R.



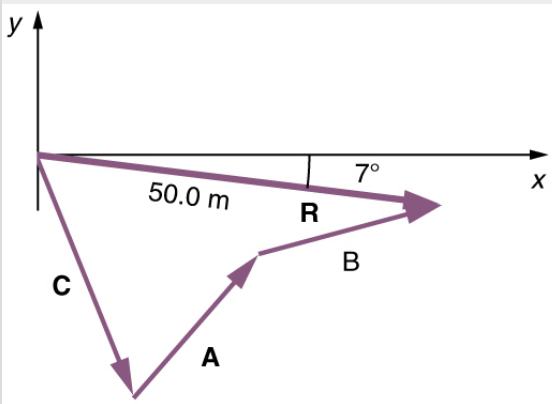
(4) Use a ruler to measure the magnitude of $\mathbf{R}$, and a protractor to measure the direction of R. While the direction of the vector can be specified in many ways, the easiest way is to measure the angle between the vector and the nearest horizontal or vertical axis. Since the resultant vector is south of the eastward pointing axis, we flip the protractor upside down and measure the angle between the eastward axis and the vector.



In this case, the total displacement $\mathbf{R}$ is seen to have a magnitude of 50.0 m and to lie in a direction 7.0^{o} south of east. By using its magnitude and direction, this vector can be expressed as $R = 50.0\ \mathrm{m}$ and $\theta = 7.0^{\mathrm{o}}$ south of east.

Discussion

The head-to-tail graphical method of vector addition works for any number of vectors. It is also important to note that the resultant is independent of the order in which the vectors are added. Therefore, we could add the vectors in any order as illustrated in [link] and we will still get the same solution.



Here, we see that when the same vectors are added in a different order, the result is the same. This characteristic is true in every case and is an important characteristic of vectors. Vector addition is **commutative**. Vectors can be added in any order.

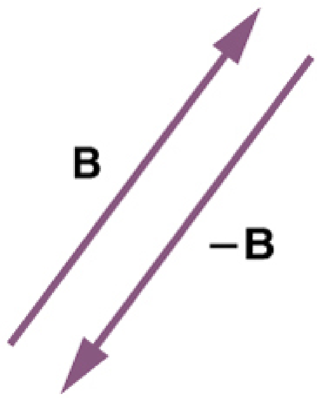
Equation:

$$\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}=\mathbf{B}+\mathbf{A}.$$

(This is true for the addition of ordinary numbers as well—you get the same result whether you add $\mathbf{2}+\mathbf{3}$ or $\mathbf{3}+\mathbf{2}$, for example).

Vector Subtraction

Vector subtraction is a straightforward extension of vector addition. To define subtraction (say we want to subtract $\mathbf{B}$ from $\mathbf{A}$, written $\mathbf{A}–\mathbf{B}$, we must first define what we mean by subtraction. The *negative* of a vector $\mathbf{B}$ is defined to be $–\mathbf{B}$; that is, graphically *the negative of any vector has the same magnitude but the opposite direction*, as shown in [link]. In other words, $\mathbf{B}$ has the same length as $–\mathbf{B}$, but points in the opposite direction. Essentially, we just flip the vector so it points in the opposite direction.



The negative of a vector is just another vector of the same magnitude but pointing in the opposite direction. So $\mathbf{B}$ is the negative of $-\mathbf{B}$; it has the same length but opposite direction.

The *subtraction* of vector $\mathbf{B}$ from vector $\mathbf{A}$ is then simply defined to be the addition of $-\mathbf{B}$ to $\mathbf{A}$. Note that vector subtraction is the addition of a negative vector. The order of subtraction does not affect the results.

Equation:

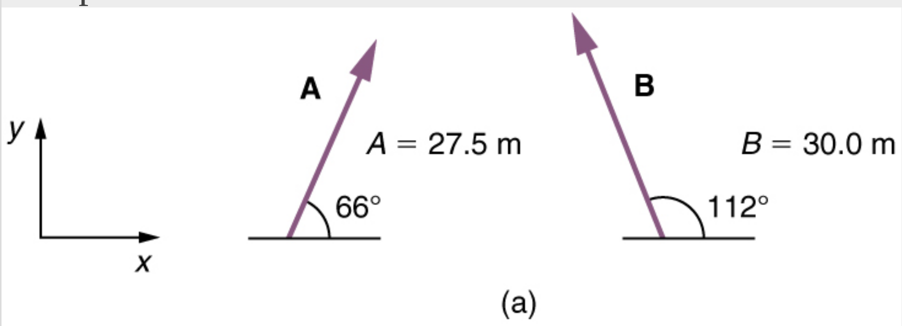
$$\mathrm{A} - \mathrm{B} = \mathrm{A} + (-\mathbf{B}).$$

This is analogous to the subtraction of scalars (where, for example, $5 - 2 = 5 + (-2)$). Again, the result is independent of the order in which

the subtraction is made. When vectors are subtracted graphically, the techniques outlined above are used, as the following example illustrates.

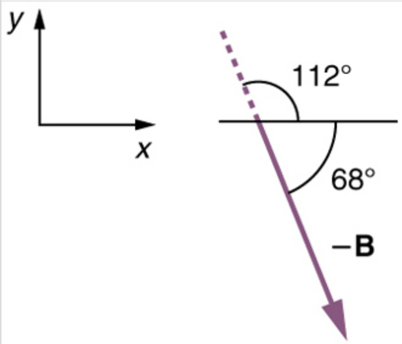
Example:
Subtracting Vectors Graphically: A Woman Sailing a Boat

A woman sailing a boat at night is following directions to a dock. The instructions read to first sail 27.5 m in a direction 66.0° north of east from her current location, and then travel 30.0 m in a direction 112° north of east (or 22.0° west of north). If the woman makes a mistake and travels in the *opposite* direction for the second leg of the trip, where will she end up? Compare this location with the location of the dock.



Strategy

We can represent the first leg of the trip with a vector $\mathbf{A}$, and the second leg of the trip with a vector $\mathbf{B}$. The dock is located at a location $\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}$. If the woman mistakenly travels in the *opposite* direction for the second leg of the journey, she will travel a distance B (30.0 m) in the direction $180^{\circ}-112^{\circ}=68^{\circ}$ south of east. We represent this as $-\mathbf{B}$, as shown below. The vector $-\mathbf{B}$ has the same magnitude as $\mathbf{B}$ but is in the opposite direction. Thus, she will end up at a location $\mathbf{A}+(-\mathbf{B})$, or $\mathbf{A}-\mathbf{B}$.



We will perform vector addition to compare the location of the dock, $\mathrm{A}+\mathbf{B}$, with the location at which the woman mistakenly arrives, $\mathrm{A}+(–\mathrm{B})$.

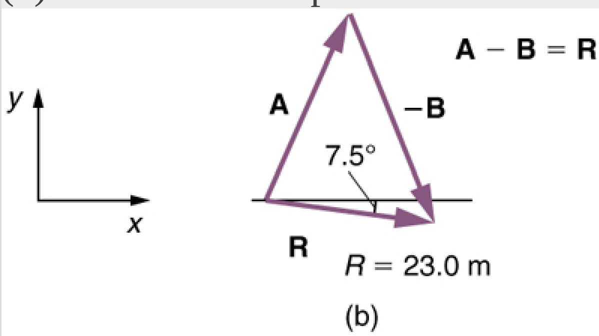
Solution

(1) To determine the location at which the woman arrives by accident, draw vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $-\mathbf{B}$.

(2) Place the vectors head to tail.

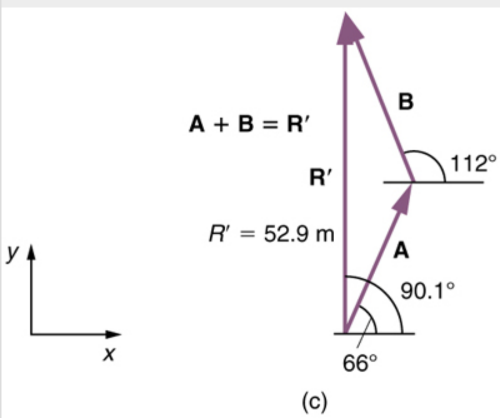
(3) Draw the resultant vector $\mathbf{R}$.

(4) Use a ruler and protractor to measure the magnitude and direction of $\mathbf{R}$.



In this case, $R=23.0\text{ m}$ and $\theta=7.5^{\mathrm{o}}$ south of east.

(5) To determine the location of the dock, we repeat this method to add vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$. We obtain the resultant vector $\mathbf{R}\prime$:



In this case $R=52.9\text{ m}$ and $\theta=90.1^{\mathrm{o}}$ north of east.

We can see that the woman will end up a significant distance from the dock if she travels in the opposite direction for the second leg of the trip.

Discussion

Because subtraction of a vector is the same as addition of a vector with the opposite direction, the graphical method of subtracting vectors works the same as for addition.

Multiplication of Vectors and Scalars

If we decided to walk three times as far on the first leg of the trip considered in the preceding example, then we would walk $3 \times 27.5 \text{ m}$, or 82.5 m, in a direction 66.0^{o} north of east. This is an example of multiplying a vector by a positive **scalar**. Notice that the magnitude changes, but the direction stays the same.

If the scalar is negative, then multiplying a vector by it changes the vector's magnitude and gives the new vector the *opposite* direction. For example, if you multiply by –2, the magnitude doubles but the direction changes. We can summarize these rules in the following way: When vector $\mathbf{A}$ is multiplied by a scalar c,

- the magnitude of the vector becomes the absolute value of cA,
- if c is positive, the direction of the vector does not change,
- if c is negative, the direction is reversed.

In our case, $c = 3$ and $A = 27.5 \text{ m}$. Vectors are multiplied by scalars in many situations. Note that division is the inverse of multiplication. For example, dividing by 2 is the same as multiplying by the value (1/2). The rules for multiplication of vectors by scalars are the same for division; simply treat the divisor as a scalar between 0 and 1.

Resolving a Vector into Components

In the examples above, we have been adding vectors to determine the resultant vector. In many cases, however, we will need to do the opposite. We will need to take a single vector and find what other vectors added together produce it. In most cases, this involves determining the perpendicular **components** of a single vector, for example the *x- and y-*components, or the north-south and east-west components.

For example, we may know that the total displacement of a person walking in a city is 10.3 blocks in a direction 29.0^{o} north of east and want to find out how many blocks east and north had to be walked. This method is called *finding the components (or parts)* of the displacement in the east and north

directions, and it is the inverse of the process followed to find the total displacement. It is one example of finding the components of a vector. There are many applications in physics where this is a useful thing to do. We will see this soon in Projectile Motion, and much more when we cover **forces** in Dynamics: Newton’s Laws of Motion. Most of these involve finding components along perpendicular axes (such as north and east), so that right triangles are involved. The analytical techniques presented in Vector Addition and Subtraction: Analytical Methods are ideal for finding vector components.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Maze Game
Learn about position, velocity, and acceleration in the "Arena of Pain". Use the green arrow to move the ball. Add more walls to the arena to make the game more difficult. Try to make a goal as fast as you can.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/30e37034-2fbd-11e5-83a2-03be60006ece/maze-game/#sim-maze-game

Summary

- The **graphical method of adding vectors** $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ involves drawing vectors on a graph and adding them using the head-to-tail method. The resultant vector $\mathbf{R}$ is defined such that $\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}=\mathbf{R}$. The magnitude and direction of $\mathbf{R}$ are then determined with a ruler and protractor, respectively.
- The **graphical method of subtracting vector** $\mathbf{B}$ from $\mathbf{A}$ involves adding the opposite of vector $\mathbf{B}$, which is defined as $-\mathbf{B}$. In this case, $\mathbf{A}-\mathbf{B}=\mathbf{A}+(-\mathbf{B})=\mathbf{R}$. Then, the head-to-tail method of addition is followed in the usual way to obtain the resultant vector $\mathbf{R}$.
- Addition of vectors is **commutative** such that $\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}=\mathbf{B}+\mathbf{A}$.
- The **head-to-tail method** of adding vectors involves drawing the first vector on a graph and then placing the tail of each subsequent vector at

the head of the previous vector. The resultant vector is then drawn from the tail of the first vector to the head of the final vector.

- If a vector $\mathbf{A}$ is multiplied by a scalar quantity c, the magnitude of the product is given by $c\mathrm{A}$. If c is positive, the direction of the product points in the same direction as $\mathbf{A}$; if c is negative, the direction of the product points in the opposite direction as $\mathbf{A}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Which of the following is a vector: a person's height, the altitude on Mt. Everest, the age of the Earth, the boiling point of water, the cost of this book, the Earth's population, the acceleration of gravity?

Exercise:

Problem:

Give a specific example of a vector, stating its magnitude, units, and direction.

Exercise:

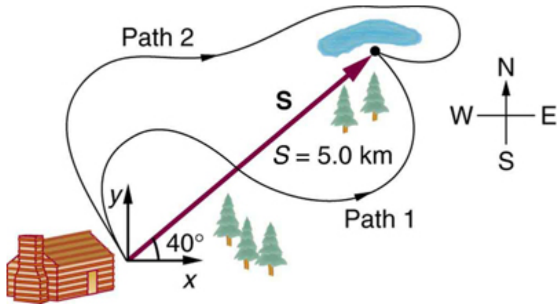
Problem:

What do vectors and scalars have in common? How do they differ?

Exercise:

Problem:

Two campers in a national park hike from their cabin to the same spot on a lake, each taking a different path, as illustrated below. The total distance traveled along Path 1 is 7.5 km, and that along Path 2 is 8.2 km. What is the final displacement of each camper?



Exercise:

Problem:

If an airplane pilot is told to fly 123 km in a straight line to get from San Francisco to Sacramento, explain why he could end up anywhere on the circle shown in [link]. What other information would he need to get to Sacramento?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you take two steps $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ (that is, two nonzero displacements). Under what circumstances can you end up at your starting point? More generally, under what circumstances can two nonzero vectors add to give zero? Is the maximum distance you can end up from the starting point $\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$ the sum of the lengths of the two steps?

Exercise:

Problem: Explain why it is not possible to add a scalar to a vector.

Exercise:

Problem:

If you take two steps of different sizes, can you end up at your starting point? More generally, can two vectors with different magnitudes ever add to zero? Can three or more?

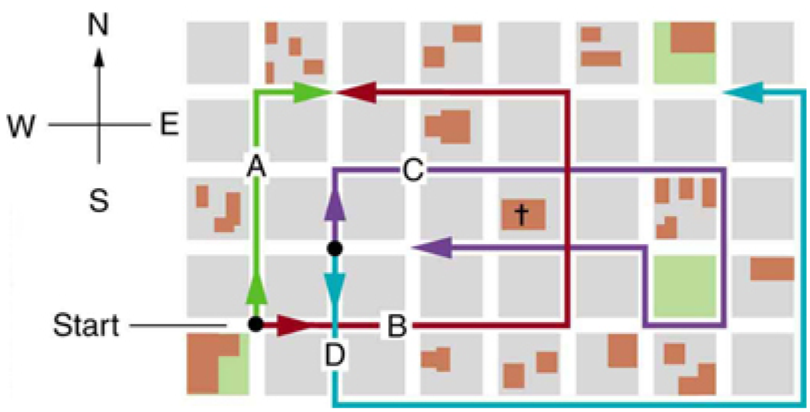
Problems & Exercises

Use graphical methods to solve these problems. You may assume data taken from graphs is accurate to three digits.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the following for path A in [link]: (a) the total distance traveled, and (b) the magnitude and direction of the displacement from start to finish.



The various lines represent paths taken by different people walking in a city. All blocks are 120 m on a side.

Solution:

(a) 480 m

(b) 379 m, 18.4º east of north

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the following for path B in [link]: (a) the total distance traveled, and (b) the magnitude and direction of the displacement from start to finish.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the north and east components of the displacement for the hikers shown in [link].

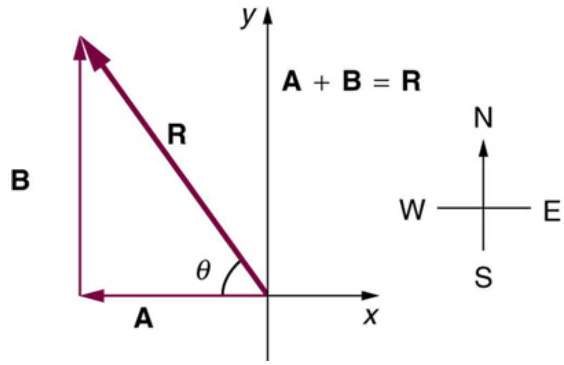
Solution:

north component 3.21 km, east component 3.83 km

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you walk 18.0 m straight west and then 25.0 m straight north. How far are you from your starting point, and what is the compass direction of a line connecting your starting point to your final position? (If you represent the two legs of the walk as vector displacements $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, as in [link], then this problem asks you to find their sum $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$.)

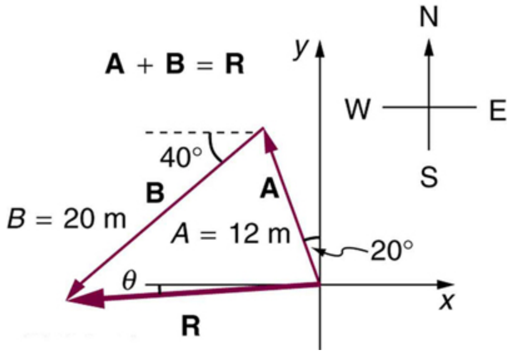


The two displacements $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ add to give a total displacement $\mathbf{R}$ having magnitude R and direction θ.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you first walk 12.0 m in a direction 20^{o} west of north and then 20.0 m in a direction 40.0^{o} south of west. How far are you from your starting point, and what is the compass direction of a line connecting your starting point to your final position? (If you represent the two legs of the walk as vector displacements $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, as in [link], then this problem finds their sum $\mathrm{R} = \mathrm{A} + \mathrm{B}$.)



Solution:

$19.5\ \mathrm{m}$, 4.65^{o} south of west

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat the problem above, but reverse the order of the two legs of the walk; show that you get the same final result. That is, you first walk leg $\mathbf{B}$, which is 20.0 m in a direction exactly 40º south of west, and then leg $\mathbf{A}$, which is 12.0 m in a direction exactly 20º west of north. (This problem shows that $\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A}$.)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Repeat the problem two problems prior, but for the second leg you walk 20.0 m in a direction 40.0^{o} north of east (which is equivalent to subtracting $\mathbf{B}$ from $\mathbf{A}$ —that is, to finding $\mathbf{R}\prime = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}$). (b) Repeat the problem two problems prior, but now you first walk 20.0 m in a direction 40.0^{o} south of west and then 12.0 m in a direction 20.0^{o} east of south (which is equivalent to subtracting $\mathbf{A}$ from $\mathbf{B}$ —that is, to finding $\mathbf{R}\prime\prime = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = -\mathbf{R}\prime$). Show that this is the case.

Solution:

(a) $26.6\ \mathrm{m}, 65.1^{\mathrm{o}}$ north of east

(b) $26.6\ \mathrm{m}, 65.1^{\mathrm{o}}$ south of west

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the *order* of addition of three vectors does not affect their sum. Show this property by choosing any three vectors $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{B}$, and $\mathbf{C}$, all having different lengths and directions. Find the sum $\mathrm{A} + \mathrm{B} + \mathrm{C}$ then find their sum when added in a different order and show the result is the same. (There are five other orders in which $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{B}$, and $\mathbf{C}$ can be added; choose only one.)

Exercise:

Problem:

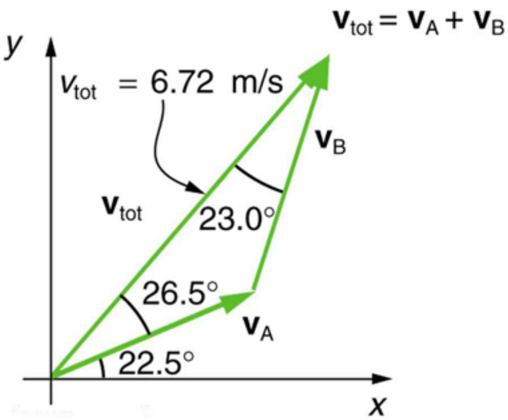
Show that the sum of the vectors discussed in [link] gives the result shown in [link].

Solution:

52.9 m, 90.1° with respect to the *x*-axis.

Exercise:

Problem: Find the magnitudes of velocities v_A and v_B in [link]



The two velocities $\mathbf{v}_\mathrm{A}$ and $\mathbf{v}_\mathrm{B}$ add to give a total $\mathbf{v}_\mathrm{tot}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the components of v_tot along the *x*- and *y*-axes in [link].

Solution:

x-component 4.41 m/s

y-component 5.07 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the components of v_{tot} along a set of perpendicular axes rotated 30^{o} counterclockwise relative to those in [link].

Glossary

component (of a 2-d vector)
: a piece of a vector that points in either the vertical or the horizontal direction; every 2-d vector can be expressed as a sum of two vertical and horizontal vector components

commutative
: refers to the interchangeability of order in a function; vector addition is commutative because the order in which vectors are added together does not affect the final sum

direction (of a vector)
: the orientation of a vector in space

head (of a vector)
: the end point of a vector; the location of the tip of the vector's arrowhead; also referred to as the "tip"

head-to-tail method
: a method of adding vectors in which the tail of each vector is placed at the head of the previous vector

magnitude (of a vector)
: the length or size of a vector; magnitude is a scalar quantity

resultant
: the sum of two or more vectors

resultant vector
: the vector sum of two or more vectors

scalar
: a quantity with magnitude but no direction

tail
: the start point of a vector; opposite to the head or tip of the arrow

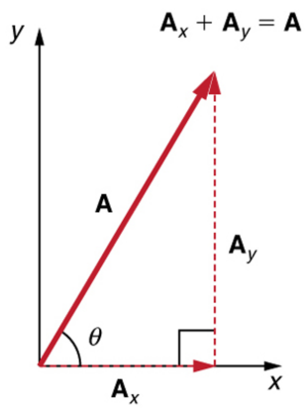
Vector Addition and Subtraction: Analytical Methods

- Understand the rules of vector addition and subtraction using analytical methods.
- Apply analytical methods to determine vertical and horizontal component vectors.
- Apply analytical methods to determine the magnitude and direction of a resultant vector.

Analytical methods of vector addition and subtraction employ geometry and simple trigonometry rather than the ruler and protractor of graphical methods. Part of the graphical technique is retained, because vectors are still represented by arrows for easy visualization. However, analytical methods are more concise, accurate, and precise than graphical methods, which are limited by the accuracy with which a drawing can be made. Analytical methods are limited only by the accuracy and precision with which physical quantities are known.

Resolving a Vector into Perpendicular Components

Analytical techniques and right triangles go hand-in-hand in physics because (among other things) motions along perpendicular directions are independent. We very often need to separate a vector into perpendicular components. For example, given a vector like $\mathbf{A}$ in [link], we may wish to find which two perpendicular vectors, $\mathbf{A}_x$ and $\mathbf{A}_y$, add to produce it.



The vector $\mathbf{A}$, with its tail at the origin of an *x*, *y*-coordinate system, is shown together with its *x*- and *y*-components, $\mathbf{A}_x$ and $\mathbf{A}_y$. These vectors form a right triangle. The analytical relationships among these vectors are summarized below.

$\mathbf{A}_x$ and $\mathbf{A}_y$ are defined to be the components of $\mathbf{A}$ along the *x*- and *y*-axes. The three vectors $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{A}_x$, and $\mathbf{A}_y$ form a right triangle:

Equation:

$$\mathbf{A}_x + \mathrm{A}_y = \mathrm{A}.$$

Note that this relationship between vector components and the resultant vector holds only for vector quantities (which include both magnitude and direction). The relationship does not apply for the magnitudes alone. For example, if $\mathbf{A}_x = 3\text{ m}$ east, $\mathbf{A}_y = 4\text{ m}$ north, and $\mathbf{A} = 5\text{ m}$ north-east, then it is true that the vectors $\mathbf{A}_x + \mathrm{A}_y = \mathrm{A}$. However, it is *not* true that the sum of the magnitudes of the vectors is also equal. That is,

Equation:

$$3\text{ m}+4\text{ m}\neq 5\text{ m}$$

Thus,
Equation:

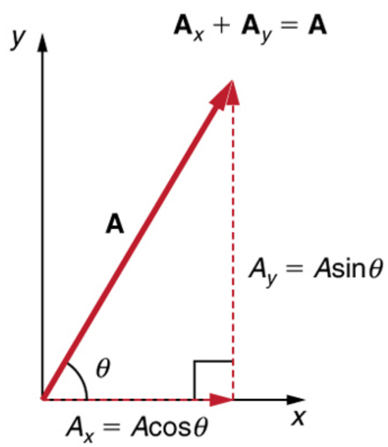
$$A_x+A_y\neq A$$

If the vector $\mathbf{A}$ is known, then its magnitude A (its length) and its angle θ (its direction) are known. To find A_x and A_y, its *x*- and *y*-components, we use the following relationships for a right triangle.
Equation:

$$A_x=A\cos\theta$$

and
Equation:

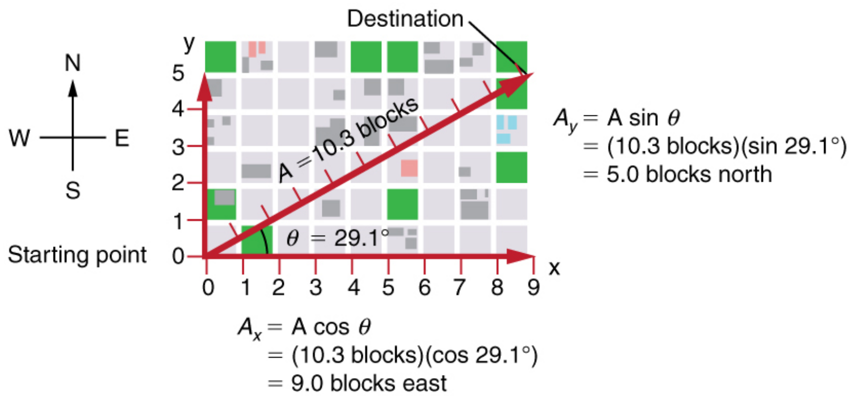
$$A_y=A\sin\theta.$$



The magnitudes of the vector

components $\mathbf{A}_x$ and $\mathbf{A}_y$ can be related to the resultant vector $\mathbf{A}$ and the angle θ with trigonometric identities. Here we see that $A_x = A \cos \theta$ and $A_y = A \sin \theta$.

Suppose, for example, that $\mathbf{A}$ is the vector representing the total displacement of the person walking in a city considered in [Kinematics in Two Dimensions: An Introduction]() and [Vector Addition and Subtraction: Graphical Methods]().



We can use the relationships $A_x = A \cos \theta$ and $A_y = A \sin \theta$ to determine the magnitude of the horizontal and vertical component vectors in this example.

Then $A = 10.3$ blocks and $\theta = 29.1^{\circ}$, so that
Equation:

$$A_x = A \cos \theta = (10.3 \text{ blocks})(\cos 29.1^{\circ}) = 9.0 \text{ blocks}$$

Equation:

$$A_y = A \sin \theta = (10.3 \text{ blocks})(\sin 29.1^{\circ}) = 5.0 \text{ blocks.}$$

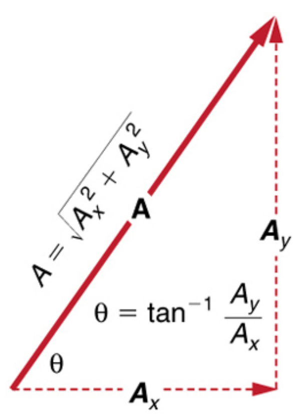
Calculating a Resultant Vector

If the perpendicular components $\mathbf{A}_x$ and $\mathbf{A}_y$ of a vector $\mathbf{A}$ are known, then $\mathbf{A}$ can also be found analytically. To find the magnitude A and direction θ of a vector from its perpendicular components $\mathbf{A}_x$ and $\mathbf{A}_y$, we use the following relationships:
Equation:

$$A = \sqrt{A_{x^2} + A_{y^2}}$$

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(A_y / A_x).$$



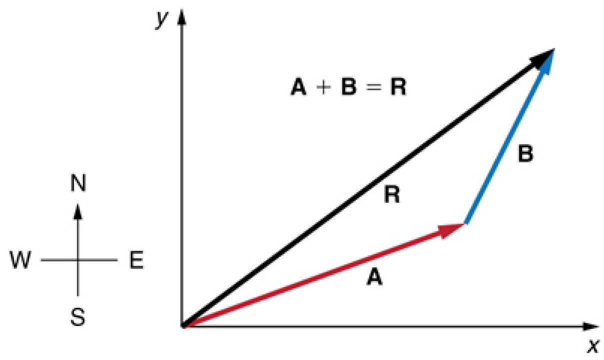
The magnitude and direction of the resultant vector can be determined once the horizontal and vertical components A_x and A_y have been determined.

Note that the equation $A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2}$ is just the Pythagorean theorem relating the legs of a right triangle to the length of the hypotenuse. For example, if A_x and A_y are 9 and 5 blocks, respectively, then $A = \sqrt{9^2+5^2}=10.3$ blocks, again consistent with the example of the person walking in a city. Finally, the direction is $\theta = \tan^{-1}(5/9)=29.1^{\circ}$, as before.

Note:
Determining Vectors and Vector Components with Analytical Methods
Equations $A_x = A \cos\theta$ and $A_y = A \sin\theta$ are used to find the perpendicular components of a vector—that is, to go from A and θ to A_x and A_y. Equations $A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2}$ and $\theta = \tan^{-1}(A_y/A_x)$ are used to find a vector from its perpendicular components—that is, to go from A_x and A_y to A and θ. Both processes are crucial to analytical methods of vector addition and subtraction.

Adding Vectors Using Analytical Methods

To see how to add vectors using perpendicular components, consider [link], in which the vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are added to produce the resultant $\mathbf{R}$.

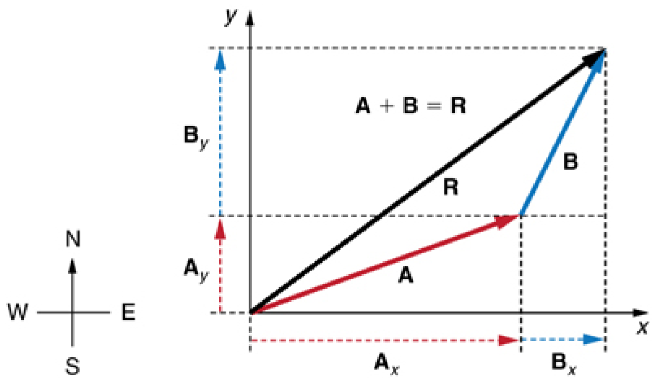


Vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are two legs of a walk, and $\mathbf{R}$ is the resultant or total displacement. You can use analytical methods to determine the magnitude and direction of $\mathbf{R}$.

If $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ represent two legs of a walk (two displacements), then $\mathbf{R}$ is the total displacement. The person taking the walk ends up at the tip of $\mathbf{R}$. There are many ways to arrive at the same point. In particular, the person could have walked first in the *x*-direction and then in the *y*-direction. Those paths are the *x*- and *y*-components of the resultant, $\mathbf{R}_x$ and $\mathbf{R}_y$. If we know $\mathbf{R}_x$ and $\mathbf{R}_y$, we can find R and θ using the equations $A = \sqrt{{A_x}^2 + {A_y}^2}$ and $\theta = \tan^{-1}(A_y/A_x)$. When you use the analytical method of vector addition, you can determine the components or the magnitude and direction of a vector.

Step 1. *Identify the x- and y-axes that will be used in the problem. Then, find the components of each vector to be added along the chosen*

perpendicular axes. Use the equations $A_x = A \cos \theta$ and $A_y = A \sin \theta$ to find the components. In [link], these components are A_x, A_y, B_x, and B_y. The angles that vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ make with the *x*-axis are θ_A and θ_B, respectively.



To add vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, first determine the horizontal and vertical components of each vector. These are the dotted vectors $\mathbf{A}_x$, $\mathbf{A}_y$, $\mathbf{B}_x$ and $\mathbf{B}_y$ shown in the image.

Step 2. *Find the components of the resultant along each axis by adding the components of the individual vectors along that axis*. That is, as shown in [link],

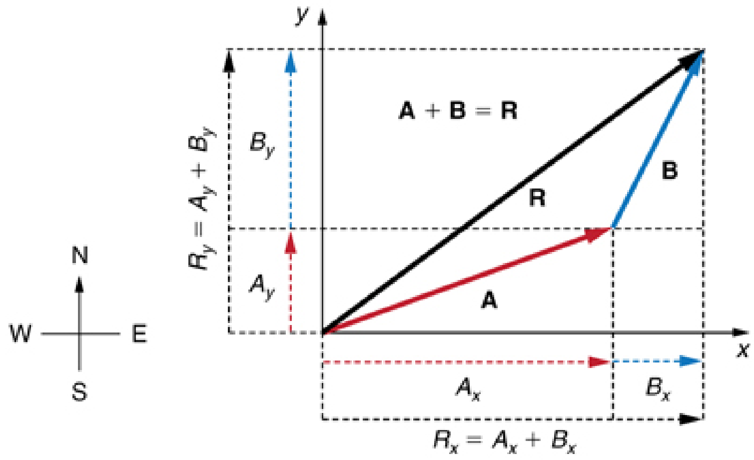
Equation:

$$R_x = A_x + B_x$$

and

Equation:

$$R_y = A_y + B_y.$$



The magnitude of the vectors $\mathbf{A}_x$ and $\mathbf{B}_x$ add to give the magnitude R_x of the resultant vector in the horizontal direction. Similarly, the magnitudes of the vectors $\mathbf{A}_y$ and $\mathbf{B}_y$ add to give the magnitude R_y of the resultant vector in the vertical direction.

Components along the same axis, say the *x*-axis, are vectors along the same line and, thus, can be added to one another like ordinary numbers. The same is true for components along the *y*-axis. (For example, a 9-block eastward walk could be taken in two legs, the first 3 blocks east and the second 6 blocks east, for a total of 9, because they are along the same direction.) So resolving vectors into components along common axes makes it easier to add them. Now that the components of $\mathbf{R}$ are known, its magnitude and direction can be found.

Step 3. *To get the magnitude* R *of the resultant, use the Pythagorean theorem:*

Equation:

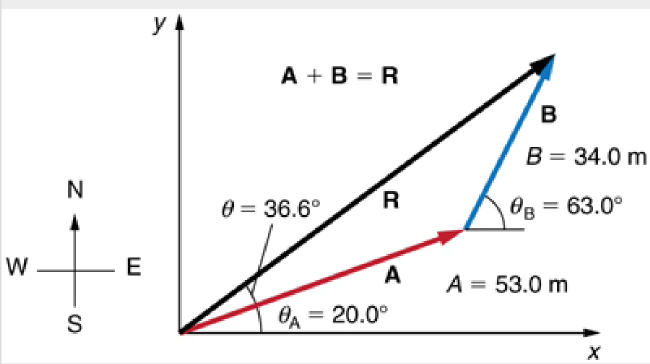
$$R = \sqrt{R_x^2 + R_y^2}.$$

Step 4. *To get the direction of the resultant:*
Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(R_y / R_x).$$

The following example illustrates this technique for adding vectors using perpendicular components.

Example:
Adding Vectors Using Analytical Methods
Add the vector $\mathbf{A}$ to the vector $\mathbf{B}$ shown in [link], using perpendicular components along the *x*- and *y*-axes. The *x*- and *y*-axes are along the east–west and north–south directions, respectively. Vector $\mathbf{A}$ represents the first leg of a walk in which a person walks 53.0 m in a direction 20.0^o north of east. Vector $\mathbf{B}$ represents the second leg, a displacement of 34.0 m in a direction 63.0^o north of east.



Vector $\mathbf{A}$ has magnitude 53.0 m and direction 20.0^o north of the *x*-axis. Vector $\mathbf{B}$ has magnitude 34.0 m and direction 63.0^o north of the *x*-axis. You can use analytical methods to determine the magnitude and direction of $\mathbf{R}$.

Strategy

The components of $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ along the *x*- and *y*-axes represent walking due east and due north to get to the same ending point. Once found, they are combined to produce the resultant.

Solution

Following the method outlined above, we first find the components of $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ along the *x*- and *y*-axes. Note that $A = 53.0\text{ m}$, $\theta_{\text{A}} = 20.0^{\text{o}}$, $B = 34.0\text{ m}$, and $\theta_{\text{B}} = 63.0^{\text{o}}$. We find the *x*-components by using $A_x = A\cos\theta$, which gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} A_x &= A\cos\theta_{\text{A}} = (53.0\text{ m})(\cos 20.0^{\text{o}}) \\ &= (53.0\text{ m})(0.940) = 49.8\text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

and

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} B_x &= B\cos\theta_{\text{B}} = (34.0\text{ m})(\cos 63.0^{\text{o}}) \\ &= (34.0\text{ m})(0.454) = 15.4\text{ m}. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, the *y*-components are found using $A_y = A\sin\theta_{\text{A}}$:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} A_y &= A\sin\theta_{\text{A}} = (53.0\text{ m})(\sin 20.0^{\text{o}}) \\ &= (53.0\text{ m})(0.342) = 18.1\text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

and

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} B_y &= B\sin\theta_{\text{B}} = (34.0\text{ m})(\sin 63.0^{\text{o}}) \\ &= (34.0\text{ m})(0.891) = 30.3\text{ m}. \end{aligned}$$

The *x*- and *y*-components of the resultant are thus

Equation:

$$R_x = A_x + B_x = 49.8\text{ m} + 15.4\text{ m} = 65.2\text{ m}$$

and

Equation:

$$R_y = A_y + B_y = 18.1 \text{ m} + 30.3 \text{ m} = 48.4 \text{ m}.$$

Now we can find the magnitude of the resultant by using the Pythagorean theorem:

Equation:

$$R = \sqrt{R_x^2 + R_y^2} = \sqrt{(65.2)^2 + (48.4)^2 \text{ m}}$$

so that

Equation:

$$R = 81.2 \text{ m}.$$

Finally, we find the direction of the resultant:

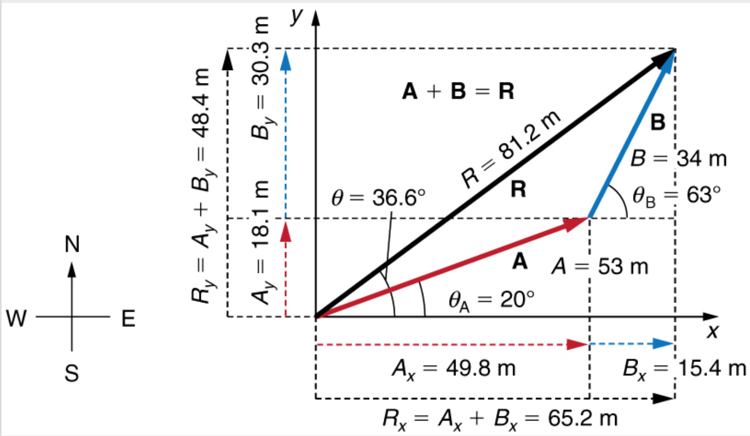
Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(R_y/R_x) = +\tan^{-1}(48.4/65.2).$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(0.742) = 36.6^{\circ}.$$



Using analytical methods, we see that the magnitude of $\mathbf{R}$ is 81.2 m and its

direction is 36.6° north of east.

Discussion

This example illustrates the addition of vectors using perpendicular components. Vector subtraction using perpendicular components is very similar—it is just the addition of a negative vector.

Subtraction of vectors is accomplished by the addition of a negative vector. That is, $\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} \equiv \mathbf{A} + (-\mathbf{B})$. Thus, *the method for the subtraction of vectors using perpendicular components is identical to that for addition*. The components of $-\mathbf{B}$ are the negatives of the components of $\mathbf{B}$. The *x*- and *y*-components of the resultant $\mathbf{A} - \mathrm{B} = \mathrm{R}$ are thus

Equation:

$$R_x = A_x + (-B_x)$$

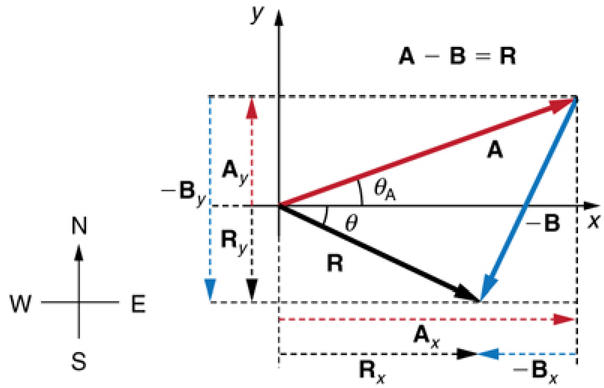
and

Equation:

$$R_y = A_y + (-B_y)$$

and the rest of the method outlined above is identical to that for addition. (See [link].)

Analyzing vectors using perpendicular components is very useful in many areas of physics, because perpendicular quantities are often independent of one another. The next module, Projectile Motion, is one of many in which using perpendicular components helps make the picture clear and simplifies the physics.



The subtraction of the two vectors shown in [link]. The components of $-\mathbf{B}$ are the negatives of the components of $\mathbf{B}$. The method of subtraction is the same as that for addition.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Vector Addition
Learn how to add vectors. Drag vectors onto a graph, change their length and angle, and sum them together. The magnitude, angle, and components of each vector can be displayed in several formats.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/vector-addition/vector-addition_en.html

Summary

- The analytical method of vector addition and subtraction involves using the Pythagorean theorem and trigonometric identities to determine the magnitude and direction of a resultant vector.
- The steps to add vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ using the analytical method are as follows:

Step 1: Determine the coordinate system for the vectors. Then, determine the horizontal and vertical components of each vector using the equations
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} A_x &= A \cos\theta \\ B_x &= B \cos\theta \end{aligned}$$

and
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} A_y &= A \sin\theta \\ B_y &= B \sin\theta. \end{aligned}$$

Step 2: Add the horizontal and vertical components of each vector to determine the components R_x and R_y of the resultant vector, $\mathbf{R}$:
Equation:

$$R_x = A_x + B_x$$

and
Equation:

$$R_y = A_y + B_{y.}$$

Step 3: Use the Pythagorean theorem to determine the magnitude, R, of the resultant vector $\mathbf{R}$:
Equation:

$$R = \sqrt{R_x^2 + R_y^2}.$$

Step 4: Use a trigonometric identity to determine the direction, θ, of $\mathbf{R}$
:

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(R_y/R_x).$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you add two vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$. What relative direction between them produces the resultant with the greatest magnitude? What is the maximum magnitude? What relative direction between them produces the resultant with the smallest magnitude? What is the minimum magnitude?

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a nonzero vector that has a component of zero.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why a vector cannot have a component greater than its own magnitude.

Exercise:

Problem:

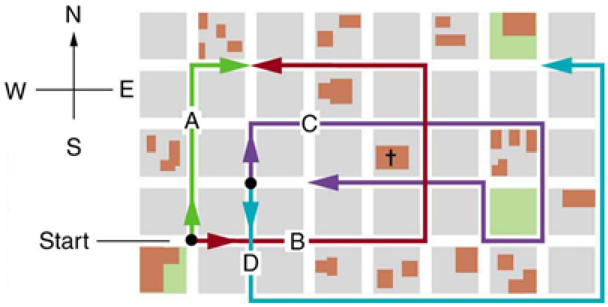
If the vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are perpendicular, what is the component of $\mathbf{A}$ along the direction of $\mathbf{B}$? What is the component of $\mathbf{B}$ along the direction of $\mathbf{A}$?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the following for path C in [link]: (a) the total distance traveled and (b) the magnitude and direction of the displacement from start to finish. In this part of the problem, explicitly show how you follow the steps of the analytical method of vector addition.



The various lines represent paths taken by different people walking in a city. All blocks are 120 m on a side.

Solution:

(a) 1.56 km

(b) 120 m east

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the following for path D in [link]: (a) the total distance traveled and (b) the magnitude and direction of the displacement from start to finish. In this part of the problem, explicitly show how you follow the steps of the analytical method of vector addition.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the north and east components of the displacement from San Francisco to Sacramento shown in [link].

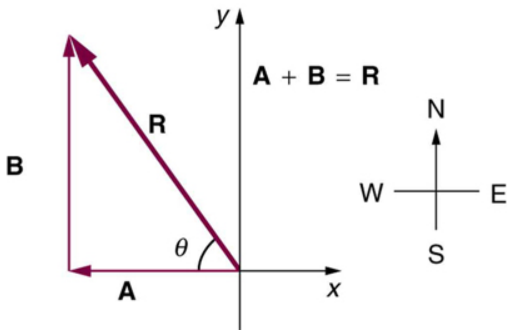
Solution:

North-component 87.0 km, east-component 87.0 km

Exercise:

Problem:

Solve the following problem using analytical techniques: Suppose you walk 18.0 m straight west and then 25.0 m straight north. How far are you from your starting point, and what is the compass direction of a line connecting your starting point to your final position? (If you represent the two legs of the walk as vector displacements $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, as in [link], then this problem asks you to find their sum $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$.)



The two displacements $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ add to give a total displacement $\mathbf{R}$ having magnitude R and direction θ.

Note that you can also solve this graphically. Discuss why the analytical technique for solving this problem is potentially more accurate than the graphical technique.

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat [link] using analytical techniques, but reverse the order of the two legs of the walk and show that you get the same final result. (This problem shows that adding them in reverse order gives the same result —that is, $\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$.) Discuss how taking another path to reach the same point might help to overcome an obstacle blocking you other path.

Solution:

30.8 m, 35.8 west of north

Exercise:

Problem:

You drive $7.50\ \text{km}$ in a straight line in a direction 15º east of north. (a) Find the distances you would have to drive straight east and then straight north to arrive at the same point. (This determination is equivalent to find the components of the displacement along the east and north directions.) (b) Show that you still arrive at the same point if the east and north legs are reversed in order.

Exercise:

Problem:

Do [link] again using analytical techniques and change the second leg of the walk to $25.0\ \text{m}$ straight south. (This is equivalent to subtracting $\mathbf{B}$ from $\mathbf{A}$ —that is, finding $\mathbf{R}' = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}$) (b) Repeat again, but now you first walk $25.0\ \text{m}$ north and then $18.0\ \text{m}$ east. (This is equivalent to subtract $\mathbf{A}$ from $\mathbf{B}$ —that is, to find $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}$. Is that consistent with your result?)

Solution:

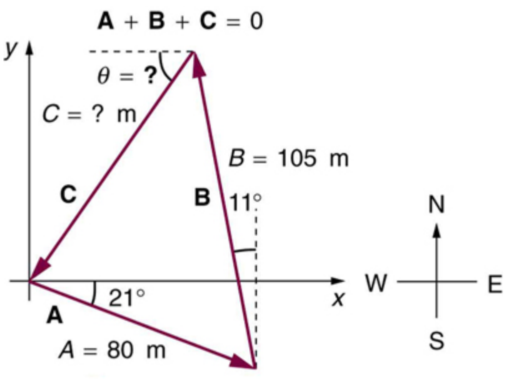
(a) $30.8\ \text{m}$, $54.2º$ south of west

(b) $30.8\ \text{m}$, $54.2º$ north of east

Exercise:

Problem:

A new landowner has a triangular piece of flat land she wishes to fence. Starting at the west corner, she measures the first side to be 80.0 m long and the next to be 105 m. These sides are represented as displacement vectors $\mathbf{A}$ from $\mathbf{B}$ in [link]. She then correctly calculates the length and orientation of the third side $\mathbf{C}$. What is her result?



Exercise:

Problem:

You fly 32.0 km in a straight line in still air in the direction 35.0° south of west. (a) Find the distances you would have to fly straight south and then straight west to arrive at the same point. (This determination is equivalent to finding the components of the displacement along the south and west directions.) (b) Find the distances you would have to fly first in a direction 45.0° south of west and then in a direction 45.0° west of north. These are the components of the displacement along a different set of axes—one rotated 45°.

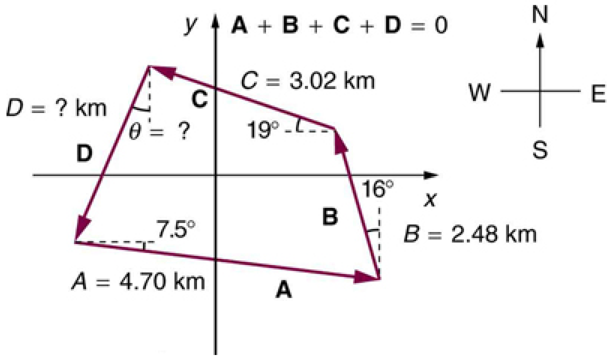
Solution:

18.4 km south, then 26.2 km west(b) 31.5 km at 45.0° south of west, then 5.56 km at 45.0° west of north

Exercise:

Problem:

A farmer wants to fence off his four-sided plot of flat land. He measures the first three sides, shown as $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{B}$, and $\mathbf{C}$ in [link], and then correctly calculates the length and orientation of the fourth side $\mathbf{D}$. What is his result?



Exercise:

Problem:

In an attempt to escape his island, Gilligan builds a raft and sets to sea. The wind shifts a great deal during the day, and he is blown along the following straight lines: 2.50 km 45.0° north of west; then 4.70 km 60.0° south of east; then 1.30 km 25.0° south of west; then 5.10 km straight east; then 1.70 km 5.00° east of north; then 7.20 km 55.0° south of west; and finally 2.80 km 10.0° north of east. What is his final position relative to the island?

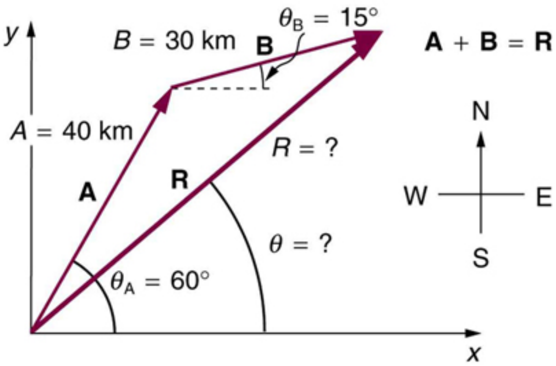
Solution:

7.34 km, 63.5° south of east

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a pilot flies 40.0 km in a direction 60° north of east and then flies 30.0 km in a direction 15° north of east as shown in [link]. Find her total distance R from the starting point and the direction θ of the straight-line path to the final position. Discuss qualitatively how this flight would be altered by a wind from the north and how the effect of the wind would depend on both wind speed and the speed of the plane relative to the air mass.



Glossary

analytical method
: the method of determining the magnitude and direction of a resultant vector using the Pythagorean theorem and trigonometric identities

Projectile Motion

- Identify and explain the properties of a projectile, such as acceleration due to gravity, range, maximum height, and trajectory.
- Determine the location and velocity of a projectile at different points in its trajectory.
- Apply the principle of independence of motion to solve projectile motion problems.

Projectile motion is the **motion** of an object thrown or projected into the air, subject to only the acceleration of gravity. The object is called a **projectile**, and its path is called its **trajectory**. The motion of falling objects, as covered in Problem-Solving Basics for One-Dimensional Kinematics, is a simple one-dimensional type of projectile motion in which there is no horizontal movement. In this section, we consider two-dimensional projectile motion, such as that of a football or other object for which **air resistance** *is negligible*.

The most important fact to remember here is that *motions along perpendicular axes are independent* and thus can be analyzed separately. This fact was discussed in Kinematics in Two Dimensions: An Introduction, where vertical and horizontal motions were seen to be independent. The key to analyzing two-dimensional projectile motion is to break it into two motions, one along the horizontal axis and the other along the vertical. (This choice of axes is the most sensible, because acceleration due to gravity is vertical—thus, there will be no acceleration along the horizontal axis when air resistance is negligible.) As is customary, we call the horizontal axis the *x*-axis and the vertical axis the *y*-axis. [link] illustrates the notation for displacement, where $\mathbf{s}$ is defined to be the total displacement and $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ are its components along the horizontal and vertical axes, respectively. The magnitudes of these vectors are *s*, *x*, and *y*. (Note that in the last section we used the notation $\mathbf{A}$ to represent a vector with components $\mathbf{A}_x$ and $\mathbf{A}_y$. If we continued this format, we would call displacement $\mathbf{s}$ with components $\mathbf{s}_x$ and $\mathbf{s}_y$. However, to simplify the notation, we will simply represent the component vectors as $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$.)

Of course, to describe motion we must deal with velocity and acceleration, as well as with displacement. We must find their components along the *x*- and *y*-axes, too. We will assume all forces except gravity (such as air resistance and friction, for example) are negligible. The components of acceleration are then very simple: $a_y = -g = -9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$. (Note that this definition assumes that the upwards direction is defined as the positive direction. If you arrange the coordinate system instead such that the downwards direction is positive, then acceleration due to gravity takes a positive value.) Because gravity is vertical, $a_x = 0$. Both accelerations are constant, so the kinematic equations can be used.

Note:
Review of Kinematic Equations (constant a)
Equation:

$$x = x_0 + \bar{v}t$$

Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{v_0 + v}{2}$$

Equation:

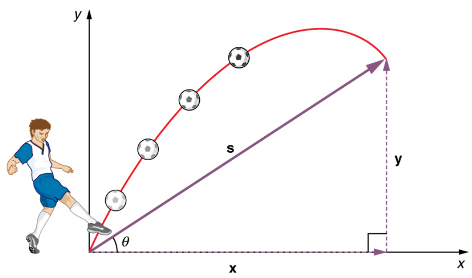
$$v = v_0 + \text{at}$$

Equation:

$$x = x_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$$

Equation:

$$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a(x - x_0).$$



The total displacement **s** of a soccer ball at a point along its path. The vector **s** has components **x** and **y** along the horizontal and vertical axes. Its magnitude is s, and it makes an angle θ with the horizontal.

Given these assumptions, the following steps are then used to analyze projectile motion:

Step 1. *Resolve or break the motion into horizontal and vertical components along the x- and y-axes.* These axes are perpendicular, so $A_x = A\cos\theta$ and $A_y = A\sin\theta$ are used. The magnitude of the components of displacement **s** along these axes are x and y. The magnitudes of the components of the velocity **v** are $v_x = v\cos\theta$ and $v_y = v\sin\theta$, where v is the magnitude of the velocity and θ is its direction, as shown in [link]. Initial values are denoted with a subscript 0, as usual.

Step 2. *Treat the motion as two independent one-dimensional motions, one horizontal and the other vertical.* The kinematic equations for horizontal and vertical motion take the following forms:

Equation:

$$\text{Horizontal Motion}(a_x = 0)$$

Equation:

$$x = x_0 + v_x t$$

Equation:

$$v_x = v_{0x} = v_x = \text{velocity is a constant.}$$

Equation:

$$\text{Vertical Motion}(\text{assuming positive is up } a_y = -g = -9.80\text{m/s}^2)$$

Equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{1}{2}(v_{0y} + v_y)t$$

Equation:

$$v_y = v_{0y} - \text{gt}$$

Equation:

$$y = y_0 + v_{0y}t - \frac{1}{2}gt^2$$

Equation:

$$v_y^2 = v_{0y}^2 - 2g(y - y_0).$$

Step 3. *Solve for the unknowns in the two separate motions—one horizontal and one vertical.* Note that the only common variable between the motions is time t. The problem solving procedures here are the same as for one-dimensional **kinematics** and are illustrated in the solved examples below.

Step 4. *Recombine the two motions to find the total displacement* **s** *and velocity* **v**. Because the *x* - and *y* -motions are perpendicular, we determine these vectors by using the techniques outlined in the Vector Addition and Subtraction: Analytical Methods and employing $A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2}$ and $\theta = \tan^{-1}(A_y/A_x)$ in the following form, where θ is the direction of the displacement **s** and θ_v is the direction of the velocity **v**:

Total displacement and velocity
Equation:

$$s = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

Equation:

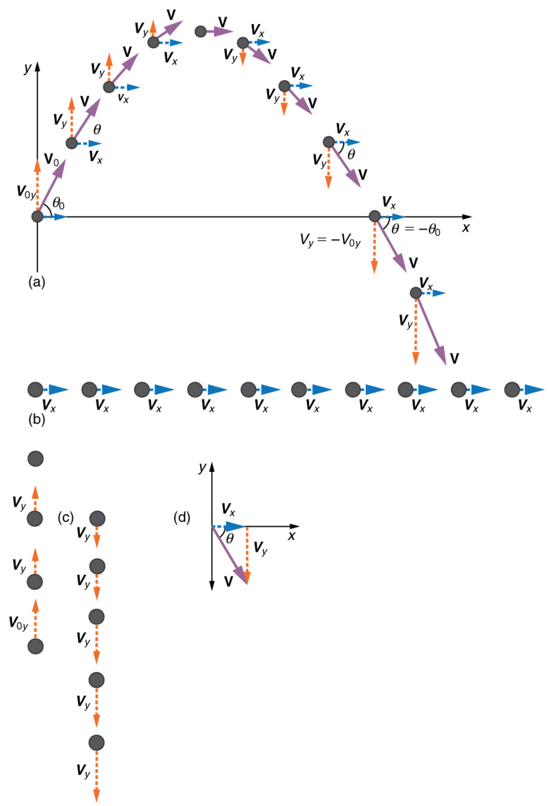
$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(y/x)$$

Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2}$$

Equation:

$$\theta_v = \tan^{-1}(v_y/v_x).$$



(a) We analyze two-dimensional projectile motion by breaking it into two independent one-dimensional motions along the vertical and horizontal axes. (b) The horizontal motion is simple, because $a_x = 0$ and v_x is thus constant. (c) The velocity in the vertical direction begins to decrease as the object rises; at its highest point, the vertical velocity is zero. As the object falls towards the Earth again, the vertical velocity increases again in magnitude but points in the opposite direction to the initial vertical velocity. (d) The x - and y -motions are recombined to give the total velocity at any given point on the trajectory.

Example:
A Fireworks Projectile Explodes High and Away
During a fireworks display, a shell is shot into the air with an initial speed of 70.0 m/s at an angle of 75.0° above the horizontal, as illustrated in [link]. The fuse is timed to ignite the shell just as it reaches its highest point above the ground. (a) Calculate the height at which the shell explodes. (b) How much time passed between the launch of the shell and the explosion? (c) What is the horizontal displacement of the shell when it explodes?
Strategy
Because air resistance is negligible for the unexploded shell, the analysis method outlined above can be used. The motion can be broken into horizontal and vertical motions in which $a_x = 0$ and $a_y = -g$. We can then define x_0

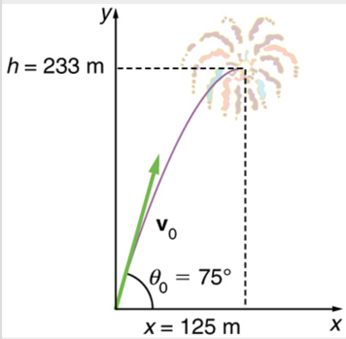
and y_0 to be zero and solve for the desired quantities.

Solution for (a)

By "height" we mean the altitude or vertical position y above the starting point. The highest point in any trajectory, called the apex, is reached when $v_y = 0$. Since we know the initial and final velocities as well as the initial position, we use the following equation to find y:

Equation:

$$v_y^2 = v_{0y}^2 - 2g(y - y_0).$$



The trajectory of a fireworks shell. The fuse is set to explode the shell at the highest point in its trajectory, which is found to be at a height of 233 m and 125 m away horizontally.

Because y_0 and v_y are both zero, the equation simplifies to

Equation:

$$0 = v_{0y}^2 - 2\text{gy}.$$

Solving for y gives

Equation:

$$y = \frac{v_{0y}^2}{2g}.$$

Now we must find v_{0y}, the component of the initial velocity in the *y*-direction. It is given by $v_{0y} = v_0 \sin \theta$, where v_{0y} is the initial velocity of 70.0 m/s, and $\theta_0 = 75.0^\text{o}$ is the initial angle. Thus,

Equation:

$$v_{0y} = v_0 \sin \theta_0 = (70.0 \text{ m/s})(\sin 75^\text{o}) = 67.6 \text{ m/s}.$$

and y is

Equation:

$$y = \frac{(67.6 \text{ m/s})^2}{2(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)},$$

so that

Equation:

$$y = 233\text{m}.$$

Discussion for (a)

Note that because up is positive, the initial velocity is positive, as is the maximum height, but the acceleration due to gravity is negative. Note also that the maximum height depends only on the vertical component of the initial velocity, so that any projectile with a 67.6 m/s initial vertical component of velocity will reach a maximum height of 233 m (neglecting air resistance). The numbers in this example are reasonable for large fireworks displays, the shells of which do reach such heights before exploding. In practice, air resistance is not completely negligible, and so the initial velocity would have to be somewhat larger than that given to reach the same height.

Solution for (b)

As in many physics problems, there is more than one way to solve for the time to the highest point. In this case, the easiest method is to use $y = y_0 + \frac{1}{2}(v_{0y} + v_y)t$. Because y_0 is zero, this equation reduces to simply

Equation:

$$y = \frac{1}{2}(v_{0y} + v_y)t.$$

Note that the final vertical velocity, v_y, at the highest point is zero. Thus,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \frac{2y}{(v_{0\text{y}} + v_y)} = \frac{2(233\text{ m})}{(67.6\text{ m/s})} \\ &= 6.90\text{ s}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (b)

This time is also reasonable for large fireworks. When you are able to see the launch of fireworks, you will notice several seconds pass before the shell explodes. (Another way of finding the time is by using $y = y_0 + v_{0y}t - \frac{1}{2}\text{g}t^2$, and solving the quadratic equation for t.)

Solution for (c)

Because air resistance is negligible, $a_x = 0$ and the horizontal velocity is constant, as discussed above. The horizontal displacement is horizontal velocity multiplied by time as given by $x = x_0 + v_x t$, where x_0 is equal to zero:

Equation:

$$x = v_x t,$$

where v_x is the *x*-component of the velocity, which is given by $v_x = v_0 \cos\theta_0$. Now,

Equation:

$$v_x = v_0 \cos\theta_0 = (70.0\text{ m/s})(\cos 75.0^\circ) = 18.1\text{ m/s}.$$

The time t for both motions is the same, and so x is

Equation:

$$x = (18.1\text{ m/s})(6.90\text{ s}) = 125\text{ m}.$$

Discussion for (c)

The horizontal motion is a constant velocity in the absence of air resistance. The horizontal displacement found here could be useful in keeping the fireworks fragments from falling on spectators. Once the shell explodes, air resistance has a major effect, and many fragments will land directly below.

In solving part (a) of the preceding example, the expression we found for y is valid for any projectile motion where air resistance is negligible. Call the maximum height $y = h$; then,

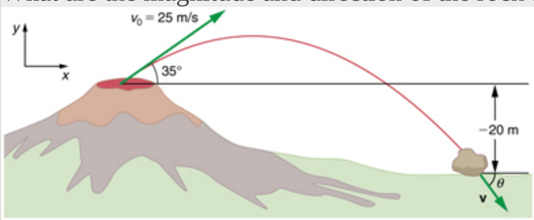
Equation:

$$h=\frac{v_{0y}^2}{2g}.$$

This equation defines the *maximum height of a projectile* and depends only on the vertical component of the initial velocity.

Note:
Defining a Coordinate System
It is important to set up a coordinate system when analyzing projectile motion. One part of defining the coordinate system is to define an origin for the x and y positions. Often, it is convenient to choose the initial position of the object as the origin such that $x_0 = 0$ and $y_0 = 0$. It is also important to define the positive and negative directions in the x and y directions. Typically, we define the positive vertical direction as upwards, and the positive horizontal direction is usually the direction of the object's motion. When this is the case, the vertical acceleration, g, takes a negative value (since it is directed downwards towards the Earth). However, it is occasionally useful to define the coordinates differently. For example, if you are analyzing the motion of a ball thrown downwards from the top of a cliff, it may make sense to define the positive direction downwards since the motion of the ball is solely in the downwards direction. If this is the case, g takes a positive value.

Example:
Calculating Projectile Motion: Hot Rock Projectile
Kilauea in Hawaii is the world's most continuously active volcano. Very active volcanoes characteristically eject red-hot rocks and lava rather than smoke and ash. Suppose a large rock is ejected from the volcano with a speed of 25.0 m/s and at an angle 35.0° above the horizontal, as shown in [link]. The rock strikes the side of the volcano at an altitude 20.0 m lower than its starting point. (a) Calculate the time it takes the rock to follow this path. (b) What are the magnitude and direction of the rock's velocity at impact?



The trajectory of a rock ejected from the Kilauea volcano.

Strategy
Again, resolving this two-dimensional motion into two independent one-dimensional motions will allow us to solve for the desired quantities. The time a projectile is in the air is governed by its vertical motion alone. We will solve for t first. While the rock is rising and falling vertically, the horizontal motion continues at a constant velocity. This example asks for the final velocity. Thus, the vertical and horizontal results will be recombined to obtain v and θ_v at the final time t determined in the first part of the example.
Solution for (a)
While the rock is in the air, it rises and then falls to a final position 20.0 m lower than its starting altitude. We can find the time for this by using
Equation:

$$y=y_0+v_{0y}t-\frac{1}{2}\text{gt}^2.$$

If we take the initial position y_0 to be zero, then the final position is $y = -20.0\ \text{m}$. Now the initial vertical velocity is the vertical component of the initial velocity, found from $v_{0y} = v_0\ \text{sin}\ \theta_0$ = (25.0 m/s)(sin 35.0º) = $14.3\ \text{m/s}$. Substituting known values yields

Equation:

$$-20.0\ \text{m} = (14.3\ \text{m/s})t - \left(4.90\ \text{m/s}^2\right)t^2.$$

Rearranging terms gives a quadratic equation in t:

Equation:

$$\left(4.90\ \text{m/s}^2\right)t^2 - (14.3\ \text{m/s})t - (20.0\ \text{m}) = 0.$$

This expression is a quadratic equation of the form $\text{at}^2 + \text{bt} + c = 0$, where the constants are $a = 4.90$, $b = -14.3$, and $c = -20.0$. Its solutions are given by the quadratic formula:

Equation:

$$t = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4\text{ac}}}{2a}.$$

This equation yields two solutions: $t = 3.96$ and $t = -1.03$. (It is left as an exercise for the reader to verify these solutions.) The time is $t = 3.96\ \text{s}$ or $-1.03\ \text{s}$. The negative value of time implies an event before the start of motion, and so we discard it. Thus,

Equation:

$$t = 3.96\ \text{s}.$$

Discussion for (a)

The time for projectile motion is completely determined by the vertical motion. So any projectile that has an initial vertical velocity of 14.3 m/s and lands 20.0 m below its starting altitude will spend 3.96 s in the air.

Solution for (b)

From the information now in hand, we can find the final horizontal and vertical velocities v_x and v_y and combine them to find the total velocity v and the angle θ_0 it makes with the horizontal. Of course, v_x is constant so we can solve for it at any horizontal location. In this case, we chose the starting point since we know both the initial velocity and initial angle. Therefore:

Equation:

$$v_x = v_0\ \text{cos}\ \theta_0 = (25.0\ \text{m/s})(\text{cos}\ 35^\text{o}) = 20.5\ \text{m/s}.$$

The final vertical velocity is given by the following equation:

Equation:

$$v_y = v_{0y} - \text{gt},$$

where $v_{0\text{y}}$ was found in part (a) to be $14.3\ \text{m/s}$. Thus,

Equation:

$$v_y = 14.3\ \text{m/s} - (9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(3.96\ \text{s})$$

so that

Equation:

$$v_y = -24.5\ \text{m/s}.$$

To find the magnitude of the final velocity v we combine its perpendicular components, using the following equation:

Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2} = \sqrt{(20.5\ \text{m/s})^2 + (-24.5\ \text{m/s})^2},$$

which gives

Equation:

$$v = 31.9\ \text{m/s}.$$

The direction θ_v is found from the equation:

Equation:

$$\theta_v = \tan^{-1}(v_y/v_x)$$

so that

Equation:

$$\theta_v = \tan^{-1}(-24.5/20.5) = \tan^{-1}(-1.19).$$

Thus,

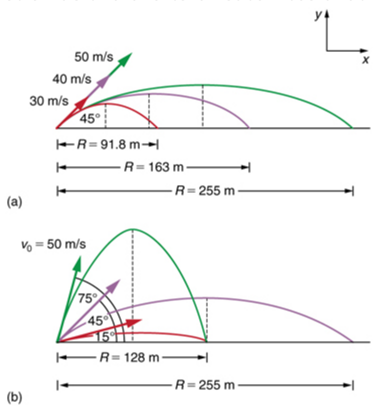
Equation:

$$\theta_v = -50.1^{\text{o}}.$$

Discussion for (b)

The negative angle means that the velocity is 50.1^{o} below the horizontal. This result is consistent with the fact that the final vertical velocity is negative and hence downward—as you would expect because the final altitude is 20.0 m lower than the initial altitude. (See [link].)

One of the most important things illustrated by projectile motion is that vertical and horizontal motions are independent of each other. Galileo was the first person to fully comprehend this characteristic. He used it to predict the range of a projectile. On level ground, we define **range** to be the horizontal distance R traveled by a projectile. Galileo and many others were interested in the range of projectiles primarily for military purposes—such as aiming cannons. However, investigating the range of projectiles can shed light on other interesting phenomena, such as the orbits of satellites around the Earth. Let us consider projectile range further.



Trajectories of projectiles on level ground. (a) The greater the initial speed v_0, the greater the range for a given initial angle. (b) The effect of initial angle θ_0 on the range of a projectile with a

given initial speed. Note that the range is the same for 15° and 75°, although the maximum heights of those paths are different.

How does the initial velocity of a projectile affect its range? Obviously, the greater the initial speed v_0, the greater the range, as shown in [link](a). The initial angle θ_0 also has a dramatic effect on the range, as illustrated in [link](b). For a fixed initial speed, such as might be produced by a cannon, the maximum range is obtained with $\theta_0 = 45^{\circ}$. This is true only for conditions neglecting air resistance. If air resistance is considered, the maximum angle is approximately 38°. Interestingly, for every initial angle except 45°, there are two angles that give the same range—the sum of those angles is 90°. The range also depends on the value of the acceleration of gravity g. The lunar astronaut Alan Shepherd was able to drive a golf ball a great distance on the Moon because gravity is weaker there. The range R of a projectile on *level ground* for which air resistance is negligible is given by

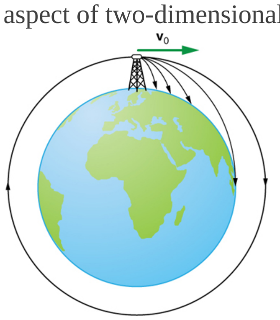
Equation:

$$R = \frac{v_0^2 \sin 2\theta_0}{g},$$

where v_0 is the initial speed and θ_0 is the initial angle relative to the horizontal. The proof of this equation is left as an end-of-chapter problem (hints are given), but it does fit the major features of projectile range as described.

When we speak of the range of a projectile on level ground, we assume that R is very small compared with the circumference of the Earth. If, however, the range is large, the Earth curves away below the projectile and acceleration of gravity changes direction along the path. The range is larger than predicted by the range equation given above because the projectile has farther to fall than it would on level ground. (See [link].) If the initial speed is great enough, the projectile goes into orbit. This possibility was recognized centuries before it could be accomplished. When an object is in orbit, the Earth curves away from underneath the object at the same rate as it falls. The object thus falls continuously but never hits the surface. These and other aspects of orbital motion, such as the rotation of the Earth, will be covered analytically and in greater depth later in this text.

Once again we see that thinking about one topic, such as the range of a projectile, can lead us to others, such as the Earth orbits. In Addition of Velocities, we will examine the addition of velocities, which is another important aspect of two-dimensional kinematics and will also yield insights beyond the immediate topic.



Projectile to satellite. In each case shown here, a projectile is launched from a very high tower to avoid air resistance. With increasing initial speed, the

range increases and becomes longer than it would be on level ground because the Earth curves away underneath its path. With a large enough initial speed, orbit is achieved.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Projectile Motion
Blast a Buick out of a cannon! Learn about projectile motion by firing various objects. Set the angle, initial speed, and mass. Add air resistance. Make a game out of this simulation by trying to hit a target.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/projectile-motion/projectile-motion_en.html

Summary

- Projectile motion is the motion of an object through the air that is subject only to the acceleration of gravity.
- To solve projectile motion problems, perform the following steps:

Determine a coordinate system. Then, resolve the position and/or velocity of the object in the horizontal and vertical components. The components of position	$\mathbf{s}$ are given by the quantities	x and y, and the components of the velocity	$\mathbf{v}$ are given by	$v_x = v \cos \theta$ and $v_y = v \sin \theta$,	where	v is the magnitude of the velocity and	θ is its direction.
Analyze the motion of the projectile in the horizontal direction using the following equations:	**Equation:** Horizontal motion $(a_x = 0)$		**Equation:** $x = x_0 + v_x t$	**Equation:** $v_x = v_{0x} = \mathbf{v}_\mathrm{x} =$ velocity is a constant.			
Analyze the motion of the projectile in the vertical	**Equation:** Vertical motion (Assuming positive direction is up; $a_y = -g = -9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$)					**Equation:** $y = y_0 + \frac{1}{2}(v_{0y}$	

direction using the following equations:

Recombine the horizontal and vertical components of location and/or velocity using the following equations:

Equation:

$$s = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(y/x)$$

Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2}$$

Equation:

$$\theta_{\text{v}} = \tan^{-1}(v_y/v_x).$$

- The maximum height h of a projectile launched with initial vertical velocity v_{0y} is given by
  Equation:

$$h = \frac{v_{0y}^2}{2g}.$$

- The maximum horizontal distance traveled by a projectile is called the **range**. The range R of a projectile on level ground launched at an angle θ_0 above the horizontal with initial speed v_0 is given by
  Equation:

$$R = \frac{v_0^2 \sin 2\theta_0}{g}.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Answer the following questions for projectile motion on level ground assuming negligible air resistance (the initial angle being neither 0º nor 90º): (a) Is the velocity ever zero? (b) When is the velocity a minimum? A maximum? (c) Can the velocity ever be the same as the initial velocity at a time other than at $t = 0$? (d) Can the speed ever be the same as the initial speed at a time other than at $t = 0$?

Exercise:

Problem:

Answer the following questions for projectile motion on level ground assuming negligible air resistance (the initial angle being neither 0º nor 90º): (a) Is the acceleration ever zero? (b) Is the acceleration ever in the same direction as a component of velocity? (c) Is the acceleration ever opposite in direction to a component of velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

For a fixed initial speed, the range of a projectile is determined by the angle at which it is fired. For all but the maximum, there are two angles that give the same range. Considering factors that might affect the ability of an archer to hit a target, such as wind, explain why the smaller angle (closer to the horizontal) is preferable. When would it be necessary for the archer to use the larger angle? Why does the punter in a football game use the higher trajectory?

Exercise:

Problem:

During a lecture demonstration, a professor places two coins on the edge of a table. She then flicks one of the coins horizontally off the table, simultaneously nudging the other over the edge. Describe the subsequent motion of the two coins, in particular discussing whether they hit the floor at the same time.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A projectile is launched at ground level with an initial speed of 50.0 m/s at an angle of 30.0^{o} above the horizontal. It strikes a target above the ground 3.00 seconds later. What are the x and y distances from where the projectile was launched to where it lands?

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 1.30\text{ m} \times 10^{2} \\ y &= 30.9\text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A ball is kicked with an initial velocity of 16 m/s in the horizontal direction and 12 m/s in the vertical direction. (a) At what speed does the ball hit the ground? (b) For how long does the ball remain in the air? (c)What maximum height is attained by the ball?

Exercise:

Problem:

A ball is thrown horizontally from the top of a 60.0-m building and lands 100.0 m from the base of the building. Ignore air resistance. (a) How long is the ball in the air? (b) What must have been the initial horizontal component of the velocity? (c) What is the vertical component of the velocity just before the ball hits the ground? (d) What is the velocity (including both the horizontal and vertical components) of the ball just before it hits the ground?

Solution:

(a) 3.50 s

(b) 28.6 m/s (c) 34.3 m/s

(d) 44.7 m/s, 50.2^{o} below horizontal

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A daredevil is attempting to jump his motorcycle over a line of buses parked end to end by driving up a 32^{o} ramp at a speed of 40.0 m/s (144 km/h). How many buses can he clear if the top of the takeoff ramp is at the same height as the bus tops and the buses are 20.0 m long? (b) Discuss what your answer implies about the margin of error in this act—that is, consider how much greater the range is than the horizontal distance he must travel to miss the end of the last bus. (Neglect air resistance.)

Exercise:

Problem:

An archer shoots an arrow at a 75.0 m distant target; the bull's-eye of the target is at same height as the release height of the arrow. (a) At what angle must the arrow be released to hit the bull's-eye if its initial speed is 35.0 m/s? In this part of the problem, explicitly show how you follow the steps involved in solving projectile motion problems. (b) There is a large tree halfway between the archer and the target with an overhanging horizontal branch 3.50 m above the release height of the arrow. Will the arrow go over or under the branch?

Solution:

(a) 18.4º

(b) The arrow will go over the branch.

Exercise:

Problem:

A rugby player passes the ball 7.00 m across the field, where it is caught at the same height as it left his hand. (a) At what angle was the ball thrown if its initial speed was 12.0 m/s, assuming that the smaller of the two possible angles was used? (b) What other angle gives the same range, and why would it not be used? (c) How long did this pass take?

Exercise:

Problem: Verify the ranges for the projectiles in [link](a) for $\theta = 45^{\text{o}}$ and the given initial velocities.

Solution:

$R = \frac{v_0^2}{\text{sin}2\theta_0 g}$

For $\theta = 45^{\text{o}}, \quad R = \frac{v_0^2}{g}$

$R = 91.8\text{ m}$ for $v_0 = 30\text{ m/s}$; $R = 163\text{ m}$ for $v_0 = 40\text{ m/s}$; $R = 255\text{ m}$ for $v_0 = 50\text{ m/s}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the ranges shown for the projectiles in [link](b) for an initial velocity of 50 m/s at the given initial angles.

Exercise:

Problem:

The cannon on a battleship can fire a shell a maximum distance of 32.0 km. (a) Calculate the initial velocity of the shell. (b) What maximum height does it reach? (At its highest, the shell is above 60% of the atmosphere—but air resistance is not really negligible as assumed to make this problem easier.) (c) The ocean is not flat, because the Earth is curved. Assume that the radius of the Earth is $6.37 \times 10^3\text{ km}$. How many meters lower will its surface be 32.0 km from the ship along a horizontal line parallel to the surface at the ship? Does your answer imply that error introduced by the assumption of a flat Earth in projectile motion is significant here?

Solution:

(a) 560 m/s

(b) $8.00 \times 10^3\text{ m}$

(c) 80.0 m. This error is not significant because it is only 1% of the answer in part (b).

Exercise:

Problem:

An arrow is shot from a height of 1.5 m toward a cliff of height H. It is shot with a velocity of 30 m/s at an angle of 60° above the horizontal. It lands on the top edge of the cliff 4.0 s later. (a) What is the height of the cliff? (b) What is the maximum height reached by the arrow along its trajectory? (c) What is the arrow's impact speed just before hitting the cliff?

Exercise:

Problem:

In the standing broad jump, one squats and then pushes off with the legs to see how far one can jump. Suppose the extension of the legs from the crouch position is 0.600 m and the acceleration achieved from this position is 1.25 times the acceleration due to gravity, g. How far can they jump? State your assumptions. (Increased range can be achieved by swinging the arms in the direction of the jump.)

Solution:

1.50 m, assuming launch angle of 45°

Exercise:

Problem:

The world long jump record is 8.95 m (Mike Powell, USA, 1991). Treated as a projectile, what is the maximum range obtainable by a person if he has a take-off speed of 9.5 m/s? State your assumptions.

Exercise:

Problem:

Serving at a speed of 170 km/h, a tennis player hits the ball at a height of 2.5 m and an angle θ below the horizontal. The base line is 11.9 m from the net, which is 0.91 m high. What is the angle θ such that the ball just crosses the net? Will the ball land in the service box, whose service line is 6.40 m from the net?

Solution:

$\theta = 6.1^{\circ}$

yes, the ball lands at 5.3 m from the net

Exercise:

Problem:

A football quarterback is moving straight backward at a speed of 2.00 m/s when he throws a pass to a player 18.0 m straight downfield. (a) If the ball is thrown at an angle of 25° relative to the ground and is caught at the same height as it is released, what is its initial speed relative to the ground? (b) How long does it take to get to the receiver? (c) What is its maximum height above its point of release?

Exercise:

Problem:

Gun sights are adjusted to aim high to compensate for the effect of gravity, effectively making the gun accurate only for a specific range. (a) If a gun is sighted to hit targets that are at the same height as the gun and 100.0 m away, how low will the bullet hit if aimed directly at a target 150.0 m away? The muzzle velocity of the bullet is 275 m/s. (b) Discuss qualitatively how a larger muzzle velocity would affect this problem and what would be the effect of air resistance.

Solution:

(a) −0.486 m

(b) The larger the muzzle velocity, the smaller the deviation in the vertical direction, because the time of flight would be smaller. Air resistance would have the effect of decreasing the time of flight, therefore increasing the vertical deviation.

Exercise:

Problem:

An eagle is flying horizontally at a speed of 3.00 m/s when the fish in her talons wiggles loose and falls into the lake 5.00 m below. Calculate the velocity of the fish relative to the water when it hits the water.

Exercise:

Problem:

An owl is carrying a mouse to the chicks in its nest. Its position at that time is 4.00 m west and 12.0 m above the center of the 30.0 cm diameter nest. The owl is flying east at 3.50 m/s at an angle 30.0° below the horizontal when it accidentally drops the mouse. Is the owl lucky enough to have the mouse hit the nest? To answer this question, calculate the horizontal position of the mouse when it has fallen 12.0 m.

Solution:

4.23 m. No, the owl is not lucky; he misses the nest.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a soccer player kicks the ball from a distance 30 m toward the goal. Find the initial speed of the ball if it just passes over the goal, 2.4 m above the ground, given the initial direction to be 40° above the horizontal.

Exercise:

Problem:

Can a goalkeeper at her/ his goal kick a soccer ball into the opponent’s goal without the ball touching the ground? The distance will be about 95 m. A goalkeeper can give the ball a speed of 30 m/s.

Solution:

No, the maximum range (neglecting air resistance) is about 92 m.

Exercise:

Problem:

The free throw line in basketball is 4.57 m (15 ft) from the basket, which is 3.05 m (10 ft) above the floor. A player standing on the free throw line throws the ball with an initial speed of 8.15 m/s, releasing it at a height of 2.44 m (8 ft) above the floor. At what angle above the horizontal must the ball be thrown to exactly hit the basket? Note that most players will use a large initial angle rather than a flat shot because it allows for a larger margin of error. Explicitly show how you follow the steps involved in solving projectile motion problems.

Exercise:

Problem:

In 2007, Michael Carter (U.S.) set a world record in the shot put with a throw of 24.77 m. What was the initial speed of the shot if he released it at a height of 2.10 m and threw it at an angle of 38.0° above the horizontal? (Although the maximum distance for a projectile on level ground is achieved at 45° when air resistance is neglected, the actual angle to achieve maximum range is smaller; thus, 38° will give a longer range than 45° in the shot put.)

Solution:

15.0 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

A basketball player is running at $5.00\ \text{m/s}$ directly toward the basket when he jumps into the air to dunk the ball. He maintains his horizontal velocity. (a) What vertical velocity does he need to rise 0.750 m above the floor? (b) How far from the basket (measured in the horizontal direction) must he start his jump to reach his maximum height at the same time as he reaches the basket?

Exercise:

Problem:

A football player punts the ball at a 45.0° angle. Without an effect from the wind, the ball would travel 60.0 m horizontally. (a) What is the initial speed of the ball? (b) When the ball is near its maximum height it experiences a brief gust of wind that reduces its horizontal velocity by 1.50 m/s. What distance does the ball travel horizontally?

Solution:

(a) 24.2 m/s

(b) The ball travels a total of 57.4 m with the brief gust of wind.

Exercise:

Problem:

Prove that the trajectory of a projectile is parabolic, having the form $y = \text{ax} + \text{bx}^2$. To obtain this expression, solve the equation $x = v_{0x}t$ for t and substitute it into the expression for $y = v_{0y}t – (1/2)\text{gt}^2$ (These equations describe the x and y positions of a projectile that starts at the origin.) You should obtain an equation of the form $y = \text{ax} + \text{bx}^2$ where a and b are constants.

Exercise:

Problem:

Derive $R = \frac{v_0^2 \sin 2\theta_0}{g}$ for the range of a projectile on level ground by finding the time t at which y becomes zero and substituting this value of t into the expression for $x - x_0$, noting that $R = x - x_0$

Solution:

$y - y_0 = 0 = v_{0y}t - \frac{1}{2}\text{gt}^2 = (v_0 \sin \theta)t - \frac{1}{2}\text{gt}^2,$

so that $t = \frac{2(v_0 \sin \theta)}{g}$

$x - x_0 = v_{0x}t = (v_0 \cos \theta)t = R,$ and substituting for t gives:

$$R = v_0 \cos\theta \left(\frac{2v_0 \sin\theta}{g}\right) = \frac{2v_0^2 \sin\theta \cos\theta}{g}$$

since $2 \sin\theta \cos\theta = \sin 2\theta$, the range is:

$$R = \frac{{v_0}^2 \sin 2\theta}{g}.$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Unreasonable Results (a) Find the maximum range of a super cannon that has a muzzle velocity of 4.0 km/s. (b) What is unreasonable about the range you found? (c) Is the premise unreasonable or is the available equation inapplicable? Explain your answer. (d) If such a muzzle velocity could be obtained, discuss the effects of air resistance, thinning air with altitude, and the curvature of the Earth on the range of the super cannon.

Exercise:

Problem:

Construct Your Own Problem Consider a ball tossed over a fence. Construct a problem in which you calculate the ball’s needed initial velocity to just clear the fence. Among the things to determine are; the height of the fence, the distance to the fence from the point of release of the ball, and the height at which the ball is released. You should also consider whether it is possible to choose the initial speed for the ball and just calculate the angle at which it is thrown. Also examine the possibility of multiple solutions given the distances and heights you have chosen.

Glossary

air resistance
: a frictional force that slows the motion of objects as they travel through the air; when solving basic physics problems, air resistance is assumed to be zero

kinematics
: the study of motion without regard to mass or force

motion
: displacement of an object as a function of time

projectile
: an object that travels through the air and experiences only acceleration due to gravity

projectile motion
: the motion of an object that is subject only to the acceleration of gravity

range
: the maximum horizontal distance that a projectile travels

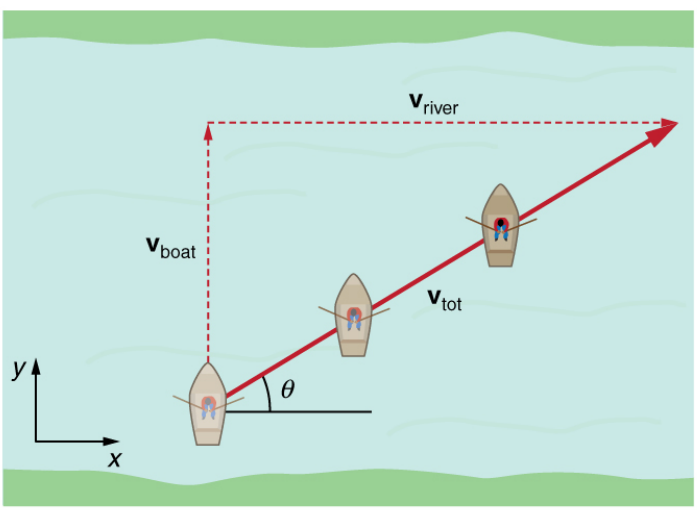
trajectory
: the path of a projectile through the air

Addition of Velocities

- Apply principles of vector addition to determine relative velocity.
- Explain the significance of the observer in the measurement of velocity.

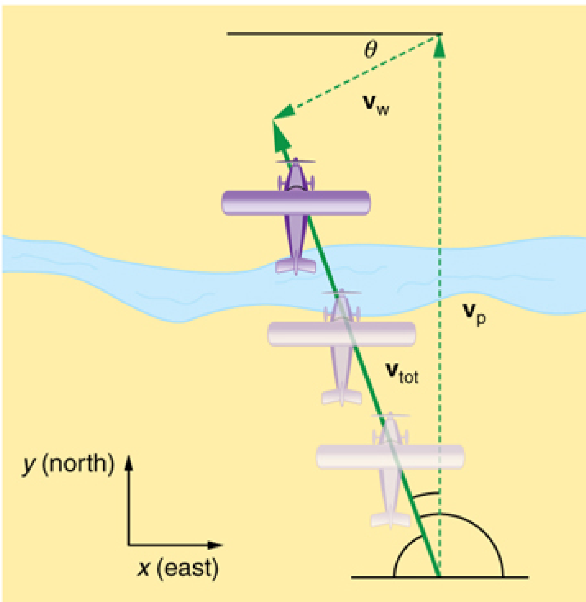
Relative Velocity

If a person rows a boat across a rapidly flowing river and tries to head directly for the other shore, the boat instead moves *diagonally* relative to the shore, as in [link]. The boat does not move in the direction in which it is pointed. The reason, of course, is that the river carries the boat downstream. Similarly, if a small airplane flies overhead in a strong crosswind, you can sometimes see that the plane is not moving in the direction in which it is pointed, as illustrated in [link]. The plane is moving straight ahead relative to the air, but the movement of the air mass relative to the ground carries it sideways.



A boat trying to head straight across a river will actually move diagonally relative to the shore as shown. Its total velocity (solid arrow) relative to the shore is the sum of its velocity relative

to the river plus the velocity of the river relative to the shore.



An airplane heading straight north is instead carried to the west and slowed down by wind. The plane does not move relative to the ground in the direction it points; rather, it moves in the direction of its total velocity (solid arrow).

In each of these situations, an object has a **velocity** relative to a medium (such as a river) and that medium has a velocity relative to an observer on solid ground. The velocity of the object *relative to the observer* is the sum of these velocity vectors, as indicated in [link] and [link]. These situations are only two of many in which it is useful to add velocities. In this module,

we first re-examine how to add velocities and then consider certain aspects of what relative velocity means.

How do we add velocities? Velocity is a vector (it has both magnitude and direction); the rules of **vector addition** discussed in Vector Addition and Subtraction: Graphical Methods and Vector Addition and Subtraction: Analytical Methods apply to the addition of velocities, just as they do for any other vectors. In one-dimensional motion, the addition of velocities is simple—they add like ordinary numbers. For example, if a field hockey player is moving at $5\ \text{m/s}$ straight toward the goal and drives the ball in the same direction with a velocity of $30\ \text{m/s}$ relative to her body, then the velocity of the ball is $35\ \text{m/s}$ relative to the stationary, profusely sweating goalkeeper standing in front of the goal.

In two-dimensional motion, either graphical or analytical techniques can be used to add velocities. We will concentrate on analytical techniques. The following equations give the relationships between the magnitude and direction of velocity (v and θ) and its components (v_x and v_y) along the *x*- and *y*-axes of an appropriately chosen coordinate system:

Equation:

$$v_x = v \cos \theta$$

Equation:

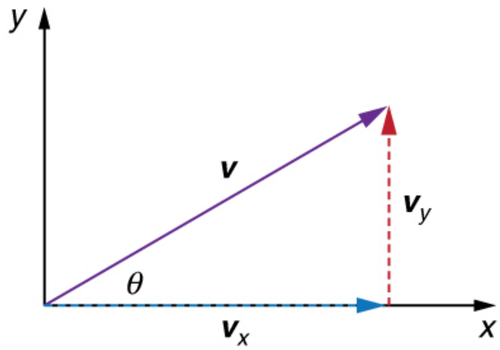
$$v_y = v \sin \theta$$

Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2}$$

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(v_y / v_x).$$



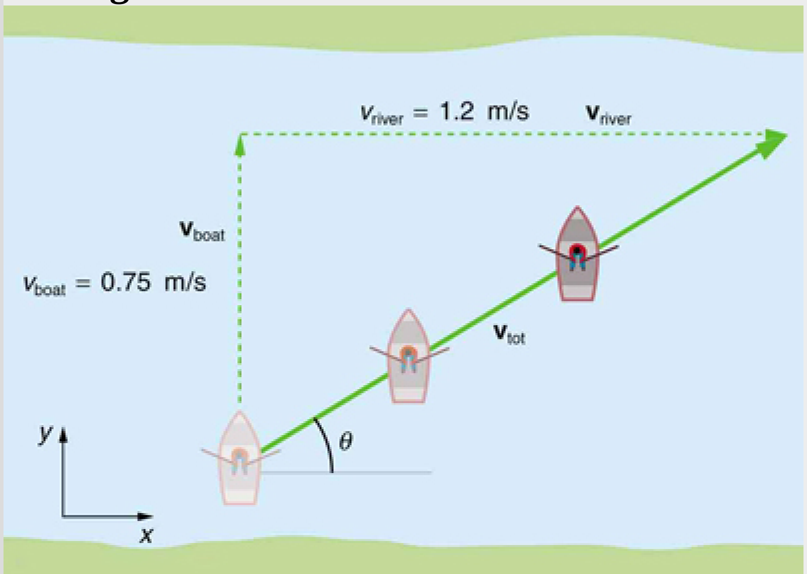
The velocity, v, of an object traveling at an angle θ to the horizontal axis is the sum of component vectors $\mathbf{v}_x$ and $\mathbf{v}_y$.

These equations are valid for any vectors and are adapted specifically for velocity. The first two equations are used to find the components of a velocity when its magnitude and direction are known. The last two are used to find the magnitude and direction of velocity when its components are known.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Relative Velocity of a Boat
Fill a bathtub half-full of water. Take a toy boat or some other object that floats in water. Unplug the drain so water starts to drain. Try pushing the boat from one side of the tub to the other and perpendicular to the flow of water. Which way do you need to push the boat so that it ends up immediately opposite? Compare the directions of the flow of water, heading of the boat, and actual velocity of the boat.

Example:

Adding Velocities: A Boat on a River



A boat attempts to travel straight across a river at a speed 0.75 m/s. The current in the river, however, flows at a speed of 1.20 m/s to the right. What is the total displacement of the boat relative to the shore?

Refer to [link], which shows a boat trying to go straight across the river. Let us calculate the magnitude and direction of the boat's velocity relative to an observer on the shore, $\mathbf{v}_{\text{tot}}$. The velocity of the boat, $\mathbf{v}_{\text{boat}}$, is 0.75 m/s in the y-direction relative to the river and the velocity of the river, $\mathbf{v}_{\text{river}}$, is 1.20 m/s to the right.

Strategy

We start by choosing a coordinate system with its x-axis parallel to the velocity of the river, as shown in [link]. Because the boat is directed straight toward the other shore, its velocity relative to the water is parallel to the y-axis and perpendicular to the velocity of the river. Thus, we can add the two velocities by using the equations $v_{\text{tot}} = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2}$ and $\theta = \tan^{-1}(v_y / v_x)$ directly.

Solution

The magnitude of the total velocity is

Equation:

$$v_{\text{tot}} = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2},$$

where

Equation:

$$v_x = v_{\text{river}} = 1.20 \text{ m/s}$$

and

Equation:

$$v_y = v_{\text{boat}} = 0.750 \text{ m/s}.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$v_{\text{tot}} = \sqrt{(1.20 \text{ m/s})^2 + (0.750 \text{ m/s})^2}$$

yielding

Equation:

$$v_{\text{tot}} = 1.42 \text{ m/s}.$$

The direction of the total velocity θ is given by:

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(v_y/v_x) = \tan^{-1}(0.750/1.20).$$

This equation gives

Equation:

$$\theta = 32.0^{\text{o}}.$$

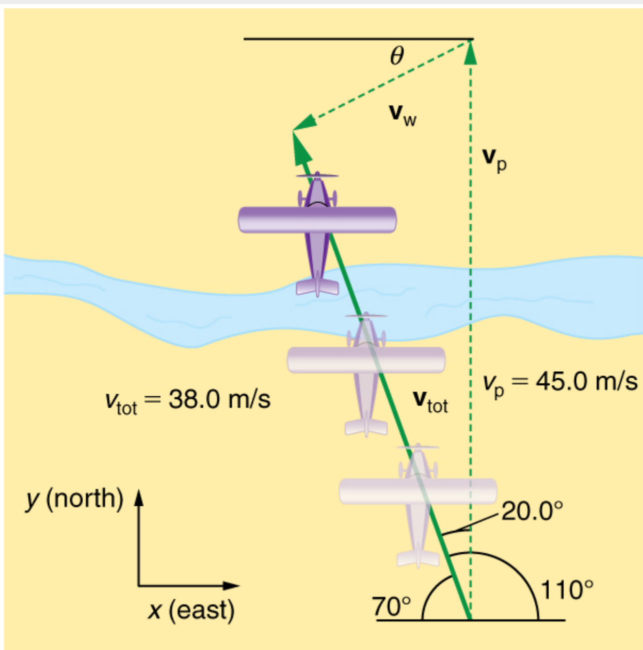
Discussion

Both the magnitude v and the direction θ of the total velocity are consistent with [link]. Note that because the velocity of the river is large compared

with the velocity of the boat, it is swept rapidly downstream. This result is evidenced by the small angle (only 32.0°) the total velocity has relative to the riverbank.

Example:
Calculating Velocity: Wind Velocity Causes an Airplane to Drift

Calculate the wind velocity for the situation shown in [link]. The plane is known to be moving at 45.0 m/s due north relative to the air mass, while its velocity relative to the ground (its total velocity) is 38.0 m/s in a direction 20.0° west of north.



An airplane is known to be heading north at 45.0 m/s, though its velocity relative to the ground is 38.0 m/s at an angle west of north. What is the speed and direction of the wind?

Strategy

In this problem, somewhat different from the previous example, we know the total velocity $\mathbf{v}_{\text{tot}}$ and that it is the sum of two other velocities, $\mathbf{v}_{\text{w}}$ (the wind) and $\mathbf{v}_{\text{p}}$ (the plane relative to the air mass). The quantity $\mathbf{v}_{\text{p}}$ is known, and we are asked to find $\mathbf{v}_{\text{w}}$. None of the velocities are perpendicular, but it is possible to find their components along a common set of perpendicular axes. If we can find the components of $\mathbf{v}_{\text{w}}$, then we can combine them to solve for its magnitude and direction. As shown in [link], we choose a coordinate system with its *x*-axis due east and its *y*-axis due north (parallel to $\mathbf{v}_{\text{p}}$). (You may wish to look back at the discussion of the addition of vectors using perpendicular components in Vector Addition and Subtraction: Analytical Methods.)

Solution

Because $\mathbf{v}_{\text{tot}}$ is the vector sum of the $\mathbf{v}_{\text{w}}$ and $\mathbf{v}_{\text{p}}$, its *x*- and *y*-components are the sums of the *x*- and *y*-components of the wind and plane velocities. Note that the plane only has vertical component of velocity so $v_{\text{p}x} = 0$ and $v_{\text{p}y} = v_{\text{p}}$. That is,

Equation:

$$v_{\text{tot}x} = v_{\text{w}x}$$

and

Equation:

$$v_{\text{tot}y} = v_{\text{w}y} + v_{\text{p}}.$$

We can use the first of these two equations to find $v_{\text{w}x}$:

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}x} = v_{\text{tot}x} = v_{\text{tot}}\text{cos } 110^{\text{o}}.$$

Because $v_{\text{tot}} = 38.0\text{ m/s}$ and $\text{cos } 110^{\text{o}} = –0.342$ we have

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}x} = (38.0\text{ m/s})(–0.342) = –13\text{ m/s}.$$

The minus sign indicates motion west which is consistent with the diagram.

Now, to find $v_{\text{w}y}$ we note that

Equation:

$$v_{\text{tot}y} = v_{\text{w}y} + v_{\text{p}}$$

Here $v_{\text{tot}y} = v_{\text{tot}}\text{sin } 110^{\text{o}}$; thus,

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}y} = (38.0 \text{ m/s})(0.940) - 45.0 \text{ m/s} = -9.29 \text{ m/s}.$$

This minus sign indicates motion south which is consistent with the diagram.

Now that the perpendicular components of the wind velocity $v_{\text{w}x}$ and $v_{\text{w}y}$ are known, we can find the magnitude and direction of $\mathbf{v}_{\text{w}}$. First, the magnitude is

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} v_{\text{w}} & = & \sqrt{v_{\text{w}x}^{2} + v_{\text{w}y}^{2}} \\ & = & \sqrt{(-13.0 \text{ m/s})^{2} + (-9.29 \text{ m/s})^{2}} \end{array}$$

so that

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}} = 16.0 \text{ m/s}.$$

The direction is:

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(v_{\text{w}y}/v_{\text{w}x}) = \tan^{-1}(-9.29/-13.0)$$

giving

Equation:

$$\theta = 35.6^{\text{o}}.$$

Discussion

The wind's speed and direction are consistent with the significant effect the wind has on the total velocity of the plane, as seen in [link]. Because the

plane is fighting a strong combination of crosswind and head-wind, it ends up with a total velocity significantly less than its velocity relative to the air mass as well as heading in a different direction.

Note that in both of the last two examples, we were able to make the mathematics easier by choosing a coordinate system with one axis parallel to one of the velocities. We will repeatedly find that choosing an appropriate coordinate system makes problem solving easier. For example, in projectile motion we always use a coordinate system with one axis parallel to gravity.

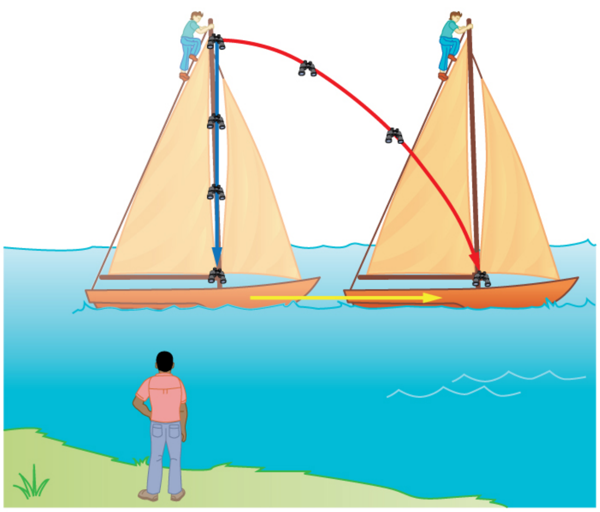
Relative Velocities and Classical Relativity

When adding velocities, we have been careful to specify that the *velocity is relative to some reference frame*. These velocities are called **relative velocities**. For example, the velocity of an airplane relative to an air mass is different from its velocity relative to the ground. Both are quite different from the velocity of an airplane relative to its passengers (which should be close to zero). Relative velocities are one aspect of **relativity**, which is defined to be the study of how different observers moving relative to each other measure the same phenomenon.

Nearly everyone has heard of relativity and immediately associates it with Albert Einstein (1879–1955), the greatest physicist of the 20th century. Einstein revolutionized our view of nature with his *modern* theory of relativity, which we shall study in later chapters. The relative velocities in this section are actually aspects of classical relativity, first discussed correctly by Galileo and Isaac Newton. **Classical relativity** is limited to situations where speeds are less than about 1% of the speed of light—that is, less than $3,000 \text{ km/s}$. Most things we encounter in daily life move slower than this speed.

Let us consider an example of what two different observers see in a situation analyzed long ago by Galileo. Suppose a sailor at the top of a mast on a moving ship drops his binoculars. Where will it hit the deck? Will it hit

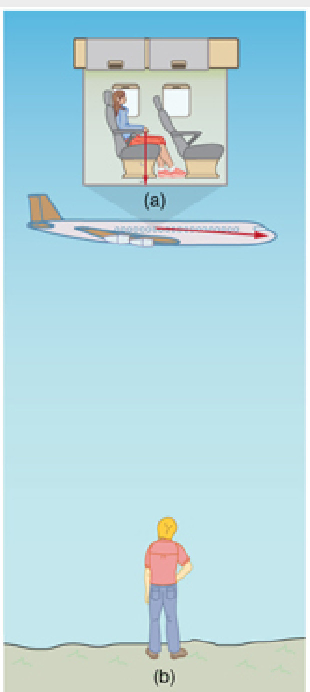
at the base of the mast, or will it hit behind the mast because the ship is moving forward? The answer is that if air resistance is negligible, the binoculars will hit at the base of the mast at a point directly below its point of release. Now let us consider what two different observers see when the binoculars drop. One observer is on the ship and the other on shore. The binoculars have no horizontal velocity relative to the observer on the ship, and so he sees them fall straight down the mast. (See [link].) To the observer on shore, the binoculars and the ship have the *same* horizontal velocity, so both move the same distance forward while the binoculars are falling. This observer sees the curved path shown in [link]. Although the paths look different to the different observers, each sees the same result—the binoculars hit at the base of the mast and not behind it. To get the correct description, it is crucial to correctly specify the velocities relative to the observer.



Classical relativity. The same motion as viewed by two different observers. An observer on the moving ship sees the binoculars dropped from the top of its mast fall straight down. An observer on shore sees the binoculars take the curved path,

moving forward with the ship. Both observers see the binoculars strike the deck at the base of the mast. The initial horizontal velocity is different relative to the two observers. (The ship is shown moving rather fast to emphasize the effect.)

Example:
Calculating Relative Velocity: An Airline Passenger Drops a Coin
An airline passenger drops a coin while the plane is moving at 260 m/s. What is the velocity of the coin when it strikes the floor 1.50 m below its point of release: (a) Measured relative to the plane? (b) Measured relative to the Earth?



The motion of

a coin dropped inside an airplane as viewed by two different observers. (a) An observer in the plane sees the coin fall straight down. (b) An observer on the ground sees the coin move almost horizontally.

Strategy
Both problems can be solved with the techniques for falling objects and projectiles. In part (a), the initial velocity of the coin is zero relative to the plane, so the motion is that of a falling object (one-dimensional). In part (b), the initial velocity is 260 m/s horizontal relative to the Earth and gravity is vertical, so this motion is a projectile motion. In both parts, it is best to use a coordinate system with vertical and horizontal axes.

Solution for (a)
Using the given information, we note that the initial velocity and position are zero, and the final position is 1.50 m. The final velocity can be found using the equation:

Equation:

$$v_y{}^2 = v_{0y}{}^2 - 2g(y - y_0).$$

Substituting known values into the equation, we get

Equation:

$$v_y{}^2 = 0^2 - 2(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(-1.50 \text{ m} - 0 \text{ m}) = 29.4 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}^2$$

yielding
Equation:

$$v_y = -5.42 \text{ m/s}.$$

We know that the square root of 29.4 has two roots: 5.42 and -5.42. We choose the negative root because we know that the velocity is directed downwards, and we have defined the positive direction to be upwards. There is no initial horizontal velocity relative to the plane and no horizontal acceleration, and so the motion is straight down relative to the plane.
Solution for (b)
Because the initial vertical velocity is zero relative to the ground and vertical motion is independent of horizontal motion, the final vertical velocity for the coin relative to the ground is $v_y = -5.42 \text{ m/s}$, the same as found in part (a). In contrast to part (a), there now is a horizontal component of the velocity. However, since there is no horizontal acceleration, the initial and final horizontal velocities are the same and $v_x = 260 \text{ m/s}$. The *x*- and *y*-components of velocity can be combined to find the magnitude of the final velocity:
Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{v_x{}^2 + v_y{}^2}.$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{(260 \text{ m/s})^2 + (-5.42 \text{ m/s})^2}$$

yielding
Equation:

$$v = 260.06 \text{ m/s}.$$

The direction is given by:

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(v_y/v_x) = \tan^{-1}(-5.42/260)$$

so that

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(-0.0208) = -1.19^{\text{o}}.$$

Discussion

In part (a), the final velocity relative to the plane is the same as it would be if the coin were dropped from rest on the Earth and fell 1.50 m. This result fits our experience; objects in a plane fall the same way when the plane is flying horizontally as when it is at rest on the ground. This result is also true in moving cars. In part (b), an observer on the ground sees a much different motion for the coin. The plane is moving so fast horizontally to begin with that its final velocity is barely greater than the initial velocity. Once again, we see that in two dimensions, vectors do not add like ordinary numbers—the final velocity v in part (b) is *not* $(260 – 5.42)\ \text{m/s}$; rather, it is $260.06\ \text{m/s}$. The velocity's magnitude had to be calculated to five digits to see any difference from that of the airplane. The motions as seen by different observers (one in the plane and one on the ground) in this example are analogous to those discussed for the binoculars dropped from the mast of a moving ship, except that the velocity of the plane is much larger, so that the two observers see *very* different paths. (See [link].) In addition, both observers see the coin fall 1.50 m vertically, but the one on the ground also sees it move forward 144 m (this calculation is left for the reader). Thus, one observer sees a vertical path, the other a nearly horizontal path.

Note:

Making Connections: Relativity and Einstein

Because Einstein was able to clearly define how measurements are made (some involve light) and because the speed of light is the same for all

observers, the outcomes are spectacularly unexpected. Time varies with observer, energy is stored as increased mass, and more surprises await.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Motion in 2D
Try the new "Motion in 2D" simulation for the latest updated version. Learn about position, velocity, and acceleration vectors. Move the ball with the mouse or let the simulation move the ball in four types of motion (2 types of linear, simple harmonic, circle).

Motion in 2D

Summary

- Velocities in two dimensions are added using the same analytical vector techniques, which are rewritten as
  Equation:
  $$v_x = v \cos \theta$$
  Equation:
  $$v_y = v \sin \theta$$
  Equation:

$$v=\sqrt{v_x^2+v_y^2}$$

Equation:

$$\theta=\tan^{-1}(v_y/v_x).$$

- Relative velocity is the velocity of an object as observed from a particular reference frame, and it varies dramatically with reference frame.
- **Relativity** is the study of how different observers measure the same phenomenon, particularly when the observers move relative to one another. **Classical relativity** is limited to situations where speed is less than about 1% of the speed of light (3000 km/s).

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What frame or frames of reference do you instinctively use when driving a car? When flying in a commercial jet airplane?

Exercise:

Problem:

A basketball player dribbling down the court usually keeps his eyes fixed on the players around him. He is moving fast. Why doesn't he need to keep his eyes on the ball?

Exercise:

Problem:

If someone is riding in the back of a pickup truck and throws a softball straight backward, is it possible for the ball to fall straight down as viewed by a person standing at the side of the road? Under what condition would this occur? How would the motion of the ball appear to the person who threw it?

Exercise:

Problem:

The hat of a jogger running at constant velocity falls off the back of his head. Draw a sketch showing the path of the hat in the jogger's frame of reference. Draw its path as viewed by a stationary observer.

Exercise:

Problem:

A clod of dirt falls from the bed of a moving truck. It strikes the ground directly below the end of the truck. What is the direction of its velocity relative to the truck just before it hits? Is this the same as the direction of its velocity relative to ground just before it hits? Explain your answers.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Bryan Allen pedaled a human-powered aircraft across the English Channel from the cliffs of Dover to Cap Gris-Nez on June 12, 1979. (a) He flew for 169 min at an average velocity of 3.53 m/s in a direction 45º south of east. What was his total displacement? (b) Allen encountered a headwind averaging 2.00 m/s almost precisely in the opposite direction of his motion relative to the Earth. What was his average velocity relative to the air? (c) What was his total displacement relative to the air mass?

Solution:

(a) 35.8 km, 45º south of east

(b) 5.53 m/s, 45º south of east

(c) 56.1 km, 45º south of east

Exercise:

Problem:

A seagull flies at a velocity of 9.00 m/s straight into the wind. (a) If it takes the bird 20.0 min to travel 6.00 km relative to the Earth, what is the velocity of the wind? (b) If the bird turns around and flies with the wind, how long will he take to return 6.00 km? (c) Discuss how the wind affects the total round-trip time compared to what it would be with no wind.

Exercise:

Problem:

Near the end of a marathon race, the first two runners are separated by a distance of 45.0 m. The front runner has a velocity of 3.50 m/s, and the second a velocity of 4.20 m/s. (a) What is the velocity of the second runner relative to the first? (b) If the front runner is 250 m from the finish line, who will win the race, assuming they run at constant velocity? (c) What distance ahead will the winner be when she crosses the finish line?

Solution:

(a) 0.70 m/s faster

(b) Second runner wins

(c) 4.17 m

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the coin dropped by the airline passenger in the [link] travels 144 m horizontally while falling 1.50 m in the frame of reference of the Earth.

Exercise:

Problem:

A football quarterback is moving straight backward at a speed of 2.00 m/s when he throws a pass to a player 18.0 m straight downfield. The ball is thrown at an angle of 25.0° relative to the ground and is caught at the same height as it is released. What is the initial velocity of the ball *relative to the quarterback* ?

Solution:

$17.0 \text{ m/s}, 22.1^{\circ}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A ship sets sail from Rotterdam, The Netherlands, heading due north at 7.00 m/s relative to the water. The local ocean current is 1.50 m/s in a direction 40.0° north of east. What is the velocity of the ship relative to the Earth?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A jet airplane flying from Darwin, Australia, has an air speed of 260 m/s in a direction 5.0° south of west. It is in the jet stream, which is blowing at 35.0 m/s in a direction 15° south of east. What is the velocity of the airplane relative to the Earth? (b) Discuss whether your answers are consistent with your expectations for the effect of the wind on the plane’s path.

Solution:

(a) $230 \text{ m/s}, 8.0^{\circ}$ south of west

(b) The wind should make the plane travel slower and more to the south, which is what was calculated.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) In what direction would the ship in [link] have to travel in order to have a velocity straight north relative to the Earth, assuming its speed relative to the water remains 7.00 m/s? (b) What would its speed be relative to the Earth?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Another airplane is flying in a jet stream that is blowing at 45.0 m/s in a direction 20° south of east (as in [link]). Its direction of motion relative to the Earth is 45.0° south of west, while its direction of travel relative to the air is 5.00° south of west. What is the airplane's speed relative to the air mass? (b) What is the airplane's speed relative to the Earth?

Solution:

(a) 63.5 m/s

(b) 29.6 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

A sandal is dropped from the top of a 15.0-m-high mast on a ship moving at 1.75 m/s due south. Calculate the velocity of the sandal when it hits the deck of the ship: (a) relative to the ship and (b) relative to a stationary observer on shore. (c) Discuss how the answers give a consistent result for the position at which the sandal hits the deck.

Exercise:

Problem:

The velocity of the wind relative to the water is crucial to sailboats. Suppose a sailboat is in an ocean current that has a velocity of 2.20 m/s in a direction 30.0° east of north relative to the Earth. It encounters a wind that has a velocity of 4.50 m/s in a direction of 50.0° south of west relative to the Earth. What is the velocity of the wind relative to the water?

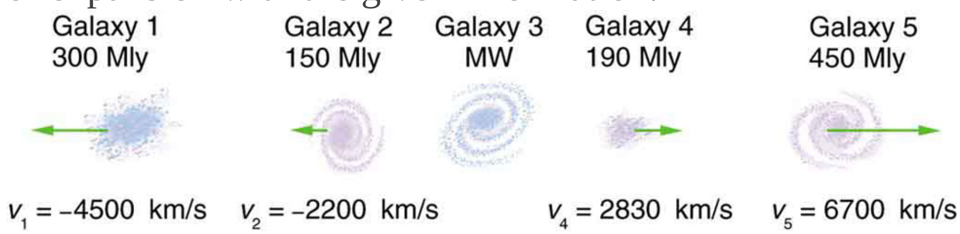
Solution:

6.68 m/s, 53.3° south of west

Exercise:

Problem:

The great astronomer Edwin Hubble discovered that all distant galaxies are receding from our Milky Way Galaxy with velocities proportional to their distances. It appears to an observer on the Earth that we are at the center of an expanding universe. [link] illustrates this for five galaxies lying along a straight line, with the Milky Way Galaxy at the center. Using the data from the figure, calculate the velocities: (a) relative to galaxy 2 and (b) relative to galaxy 5. The results mean that observers on all galaxies will see themselves at the center of the expanding universe, and they would likely be aware of relative velocities, concluding that it is not possible to locate the center of expansion with the given information.



Five galaxies on a straight line, showing their distances and velocities relative to the Milky Way (MW) Galaxy. The distances are in millions of light years (Mly), where a light year is the distance light

travels in one year. The velocities are nearly proportional to the distances. The sizes of the galaxies are greatly exaggerated; an average galaxy is about 0.1 Mly across.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Use the distance and velocity data in [link] to find the rate of expansion as a function of distance.

(b) If you extrapolate back in time, how long ago would all of the galaxies have been at approximately the same position? The two parts of this problem give you some idea of how the Hubble constant for universal expansion and the time back to the Big Bang are determined, respectively.

Solution:

(a) $H_{\text{average}} = 14.9\frac{\text{km/s}}{\text{Mly}}$

(b) 20.2 billion years

Exercise:

Problem:

An athlete crosses a 25-m-wide river by swimming perpendicular to the water current at a speed of 0.5 m/s relative to the water. He reaches the opposite side at a distance 40 m downstream from his starting point. How fast is the water in the river flowing with respect to the ground? What is the speed of the swimmer with respect to a friend at rest on the ground?

Exercise:

Problem:

A ship sailing in the Gulf Stream is heading 25.0° west of north at a speed of 4.00 m/s relative to the water. Its velocity relative to the Earth is $4.80\ \text{m/s}$ 5.00° west of north. What is the velocity of the Gulf Stream? (The velocity obtained is typical for the Gulf Stream a few hundred kilometers off the east coast of the United States.)

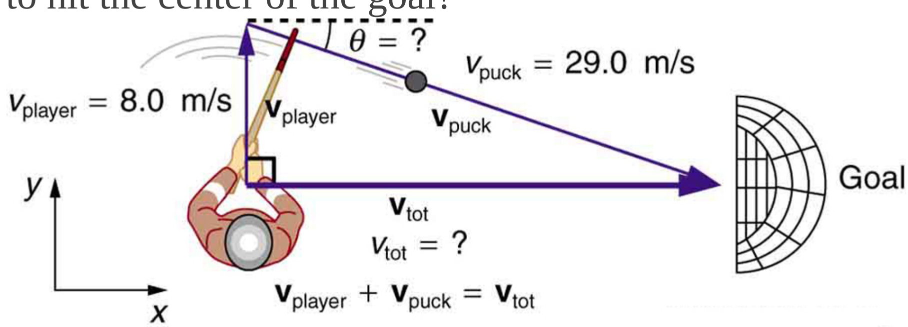
Solution:

$1.72\ \text{m/s}$, 42.3° north of east

Exercise:

Problem:

An ice hockey player is moving at 8.00 m/s when he hits the puck toward the goal. The speed of the puck relative to the player is 29.0 m/s. The line between the center of the goal and the player makes a 90.0° angle relative to his path as shown in [link]. What angle must the puck's velocity make relative to the player (in his frame of reference) to hit the center of the goal?



An ice hockey player moving across the rink must shoot backward to give the puck a velocity toward the goal.

Exercise:

Problem:

Unreasonable Results Suppose you wish to shoot supplies straight up to astronauts in an orbit 36,000 km above the surface of the Earth. (a) At what velocity must the supplies be launched? (b) What is unreasonable about this velocity? (c) Is there a problem with the relative velocity between the supplies and the astronauts when the supplies reach their maximum height? (d) Is the premise unreasonable or is the available equation inapplicable? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Unreasonable Results A commercial airplane has an air speed of 280 m/s due east and flies with a strong tailwind. It travels 3000 km in a direction 5^{o} south of east in 1.50 h. (a) What was the velocity of the plane relative to the ground? (b) Calculate the magnitude and direction of the tailwind's velocity. (c) What is unreasonable about both of these velocities? (d) Which premise is unreasonable?

Exercise:

Problem:

Construct Your Own Problem Consider an airplane headed for a runway in a cross wind. Construct a problem in which you calculate the angle the airplane must fly relative to the air mass in order to have a velocity parallel to the runway. Among the things to consider are the direction of the runway, the wind speed and direction (its velocity) and the speed of the plane relative to the air mass. Also calculate the speed of the airplane relative to the ground. Discuss any last minute maneuvers the pilot might have to perform in order for the plane to land with its wheels pointing straight down the runway.

Glossary

classical relativity

the study of relative velocities in situations where speeds are less than about 1% of the speed of light—that is, less than 3000 km/s

relative velocity
: the velocity of an object as observed from a particular reference frame

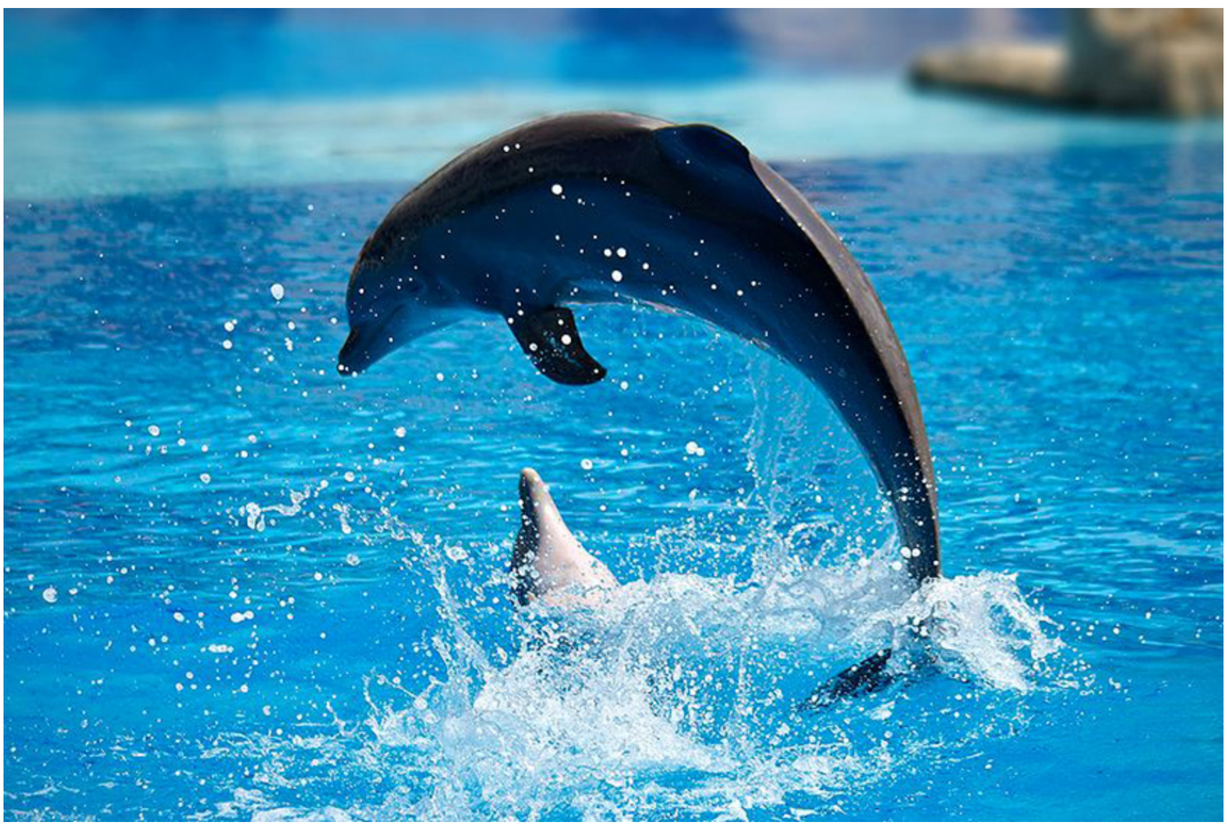
relativity
: the study of how different observers moving relative to each other measure the same phenomenon

velocity
: speed in a given direction

vector addition
: the rules that apply to adding vectors together

Introduction to Dynamics: Newton’s Laws of Motion
class="introduction"

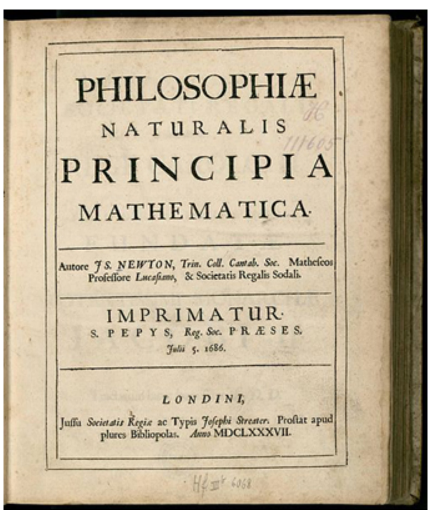
Newton’s laws of motion describe the motion of the dolphin’s path. (credit: Jin Jang)



Motion draws our attention. Motion itself can be beautiful, causing us to marvel at the forces needed to achieve spectacular motion, such as that of a

dolphin jumping out of the water, or a pole vaulter, or the flight of a bird, or the orbit of a satellite. The study of motion is kinematics, but kinematics only *describes* the way objects move—their velocity and their acceleration. **Dynamics** considers the forces that affect the motion of moving objects and systems. Newton's laws of motion are the foundation of dynamics. These laws provide an example of the breadth and simplicity of principles under which nature functions. They are also universal laws in that they apply to similar situations on Earth as well as in space.

Isaac Newton's (1642–1727) laws of motion were just one part of the monumental work that has made him legendary. The development of Newton's laws marks the transition from the Renaissance into the modern era. This transition was characterized by a revolutionary change in the way people thought about the physical universe. For many centuries natural philosophers had debated the nature of the universe based largely on certain rules of logic with great weight given to the thoughts of earlier classical philosophers such as Aristotle (384–322 BC). Among the many great thinkers who contributed to this change were Newton and Galileo.


PHILOSOPHIÆ
NATURALIS
PRINCIPIA
MATHEMATICA.

Autore JS. NEWTON, Trin. Coll. Cantab. Soc. Matheseos Professore Lucasiano, & Societatis Regalis Sodali.

IMPRIMATUR.
S. PEPYS, Reg. Soc. PRÆSES.
Julii 5. 1686.

LONDINI,
Jussu Societatis Regiæ ac Typis Josephi Streater. Prostat apud plures Bibliopolas. Anno MDCLXXXVII.

Isaac Newton's monumental work, *Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica*, was published in 1687. It proposed scientific

laws that are still used today to describe the motion of objects. (credit: Service commun de la documentation de l'Université de Strasbourg)

Galileo was instrumental in establishing *observation* as the absolute determinant of truth, rather than “logical” argument. Galileo’s use of the telescope was his most notable achievement in demonstrating the importance of observation. He discovered moons orbiting Jupiter and made other observations that were inconsistent with certain ancient ideas and religious dogma. For this reason, and because of the manner in which he dealt with those in authority, Galileo was tried by the Inquisition and punished. He spent the final years of his life under a form of house arrest. Because others before Galileo had also made discoveries by *observing* the nature of the universe, and because repeated observations verified those of Galileo, his work could not be suppressed or denied. After his death, his work was verified by others, and his ideas were eventually accepted by the church and scientific communities.

Galileo also contributed to the formation of what is now called Newton’s first law of motion. Newton made use of the work of his predecessors, which enabled him to develop laws of motion, discover the law of gravity, invent calculus, and make great contributions to the theories of light and color. It is amazing that many of these developments were made with Newton working alone, without the benefit of the usual interactions that take place among scientists today.

It was not until the advent of modern physics early in the 20th century that it was discovered that Newton’s laws of motion produce a good approximation to motion only when the objects are moving at speeds much, much less than the speed of light and when those objects are larger than the

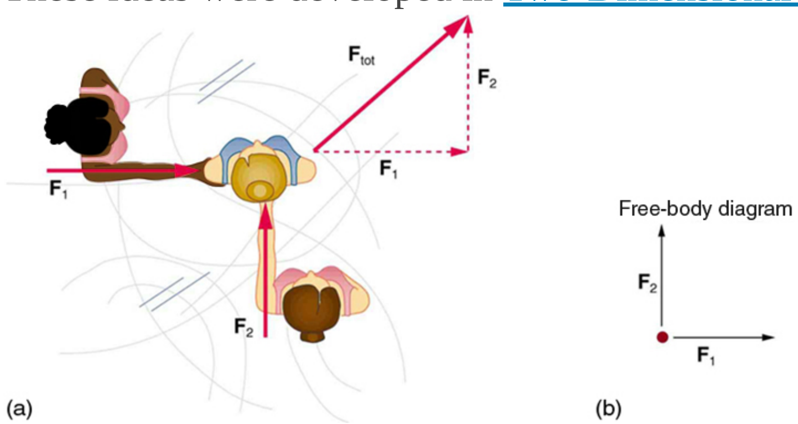
size of most molecules (about 10^{-9} m in diameter). These constraints define the realm of classical mechanics, as discussed in Introduction to the Nature of Science and Physics. At the beginning of the 20^{th} century, Albert Einstein (1879–1955) developed the theory of relativity and, along with many other scientists, developed quantum theory. This theory does not have the constraints present in classical physics. All of the situations we consider in this chapter, and all those preceding the introduction of relativity in Special Relativity, are in the realm of classical physics.

Note:
Making Connections: Past and Present Philosophy
The importance of observation and the concept of *cause and effect* were not always so entrenched in human thinking. This realization was a part of the evolution of modern physics from natural philosophy. The achievements of Galileo, Newton, Einstein, and others were key milestones in the history of scientific thought. Most of the scientific theories that are described in this book descended from the work of these scientists.

Development of Force Concept

- Understand the definition of force.

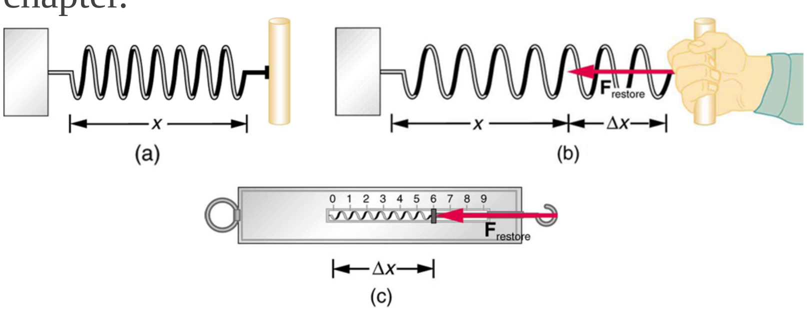
Dynamics is the study of the forces that cause objects and systems to move. To understand this, we need a working definition of force. Our intuitive definition of **force**—that is, a push or a pull—is a good place to start. We know that a push or pull has both magnitude and direction (therefore, it is a vector quantity) and can vary considerably in each regard. For example, a cannon exerts a strong force on a cannonball that is launched into the air. In contrast, Earth exerts only a tiny downward pull on a flea. Our everyday experiences also give us a good idea of how multiple forces add. If two people push in different directions on a third person, as illustrated in [link], we might expect the total force to be in the direction shown. Since force is a vector, it adds just like other vectors, as illustrated in [link](a) for two ice skaters. Forces, like other vectors, are represented by arrows and can be added using the familiar head-to-tail method or by trigonometric methods. These ideas were developed in Two-Dimensional Kinematics.



Part (a) shows an overhead view of two ice skaters pushing on a third. Forces are vectors and add like other vectors, so the total force on the third skater is in the direction shown. In part (b), we see a free-body diagram representing the forces acting on the third skater.

[link](b) is our first example of a **free-body diagram**, which is a technique used to illustrate all the **external forces** acting on a body. The body is represented by a single isolated point (or free body), and only those forces acting *on* the body from the outside (external forces) are shown. (These forces are the only ones shown, because only external forces acting on the body affect its motion. We can ignore any internal forces within the body.) Free-body diagrams are very useful in analyzing forces acting on a system and are employed extensively in the study and application of Newton's laws of motion.

A more quantitative definition of force can be based on some standard force, just as distance is measured in units relative to a standard distance. One possibility is to stretch a spring a certain fixed distance, as illustrated in [link], and use the force it exerts to pull itself back to its relaxed shape—called a *restoring force*—as a standard. The magnitude of all other forces can be stated as multiples of this standard unit of force. Many other possibilities exist for standard forces. (One that we will encounter in Magnetism is the magnetic force between two wires carrying electric current.) Some alternative definitions of force will be given later in this chapter.



The force exerted by a stretched spring can be used as a standard unit of force. (a) This spring has a length x when undistorted. (b) When stretched a distance Δx, the spring exerts a restoring force, $\mathbf{F}_{\text{restore}}$, which is reproducible. (c) A spring scale is one device that uses a spring to measure force. The force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{restore}}$ is exerted on whatever is attached to the hook. Here $\mathbf{F}_{\text{restore}}$ has a

magnitude of 6 units in the force standard being employed.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment: Force Standards

To investigate force standards and cause and effect, get two identical rubber bands. Hang one rubber band vertically on a hook. Find a small household item that could be attached to the rubber band using a paper clip, and use this item as a weight to investigate the stretch of the rubber band. Measure the amount of stretch produced in the rubber band with one, two, and four of these (identical) items suspended from the rubber band. What is the relationship between the number of items and the amount of stretch? How large a stretch would you expect for the same number of items suspended from two rubber bands? What happens to the amount of stretch of the rubber band (with the weights attached) if the weights are also pushed to the side with a pencil?

Section Summary

- **Dynamics** is the study of how forces affect the motion of objects.
- **Force** is a push or pull that can be defined in terms of various standards, and it is a vector having both magnitude and direction.
- **External forces** are any outside forces that act on a body. A **free-body diagram** is a drawing of all external forces acting on a body.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Propose a force standard different from the example of a stretched spring discussed in the text. Your standard must be capable of producing the same force repeatedly.

Exercise:

Problem:

What properties do forces have that allow us to classify them as vectors?

Glossary

dynamics
: the study of how forces affect the motion of objects and systems

external force
: a force acting on an object or system that originates outside of the object or system

free-body diagram
: a sketch showing all of the external forces acting on an object or system; the system is represented by a dot, and the forces are represented by vectors extending outward from the dot

force
: a push or pull on an object with a specific magnitude and direction; can be represented by vectors; can be expressed as a multiple of a standard force

Newton’s First Law of Motion: Inertia

- Define mass and inertia.
- Understand Newton's first law of motion.

Experience suggests that an object at rest will remain at rest if left alone, and that an object in motion tends to slow down and stop unless some effort is made to keep it moving. What **Newton’s first law of motion** states, however, is the following:

> **Note:**
> Newton’s First Law of Motion
> A body at rest remains at rest, or, if in motion, remains in motion at a constant velocity unless acted on by a net external force.

Note the repeated use of the verb “remains.” We can think of this law as preserving the status quo of motion.

Rather than contradicting our experience, **Newton’s first law of motion** states that there must be a *cause* (which is a net external force) *for there to be any change in velocity (either a change in magnitude or direction)*. We will define *net external force* in the next section. An object sliding across a table or floor slows down due to the net force of friction acting on the object. If friction disappeared, would the object still slow down?

The idea of cause and effect is crucial in accurately describing what happens in various situations. For example, consider what happens to an object sliding along a rough horizontal surface. The object quickly grinds to a halt. If we spray the surface with talcum powder to make the surface smoother, the object slides farther. If we make the surface even smoother by rubbing lubricating oil on it, the object slides farther yet. Extrapolating to a frictionless surface, we can imagine the object sliding in a straight line indefinitely. Friction is thus the *cause* of the slowing (consistent with Newton’s first law). The object would not slow down at all if friction were

completely eliminated. Consider an air hockey table. When the air is turned off, the puck slides only a short distance before friction slows it to a stop. However, when the air is turned on, it creates a nearly frictionless surface, and the puck glides long distances without slowing down. Additionally, if we know enough about the friction, we can accurately predict how quickly the object will slow down. Friction is an external force.

Newton’s first law is completely general and can be applied to anything from an object sliding on a table to a satellite in orbit to blood pumped from the heart. Experiments have thoroughly verified that any change in velocity (speed or direction) must be caused by an external force. The idea of *generally applicable or universal laws* is important not only here—it is a basic feature of all laws of physics. Identifying these laws is like recognizing patterns in nature from which further patterns can be discovered. The genius of Galileo, who first developed the idea for the first law, and Newton, who clarified it, was to ask the fundamental question, “What is the cause?” Thinking in terms of cause and effect is a worldview fundamentally different from the typical ancient Greek approach when questions such as “Why does a tiger have stripes?” would have been answered in Aristotelian fashion, “That is the nature of the beast.” True perhaps, but not a useful insight.

Mass

The property of a body to remain at rest or to remain in motion with constant velocity is called **inertia**. Newton’s first law is often called the **law of inertia**. As we know from experience, some objects have more inertia than others. It is obviously more difficult to change the motion of a large boulder than that of a basketball, for example. The inertia of an object is measured by its **mass**. Roughly speaking, mass is a measure of the amount of “stuff” (or matter) in something. The quantity or amount of matter in an object is determined by the numbers of atoms and molecules of various types it contains. Unlike weight, mass does not vary with location. The mass of an object is the same on Earth, in orbit, or on the surface of the Moon. In practice, it is very difficult to count and identify all of the atoms and molecules in an object, so masses are not often determined in this

manner. Operationally, the masses of objects are determined by comparison with the standard kilogram.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Which has more mass: a kilogram of cotton balls or a kilogram of gold?

Solution:

Answer

They are equal. A kilogram of one substance is equal in mass to a kilogram of another substance. The quantities that might differ between them are volume and density.

Section Summary

- **Newton's first law of motion** states that a body at rest remains at rest, or, if in motion, remains in motion at a constant velocity unless acted on by a net external force. This is also known as the **law of inertia**.
- **Inertia** is the tendency of an object to remain at rest or remain in motion. Inertia is related to an object's mass.
- **Mass** is the quantity of matter in a substance.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: How are inertia and mass related?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the relationship between weight and mass? Which is an intrinsic, unchanging property of a body?

Glossary

inertia
: the tendency of an object to remain at rest or remain in motion

law of inertia
: see Newton’s first law of motion

mass
: the quantity of matter in a substance; measured in kilograms

Newton’s first law of motion
: a body at rest remains at rest, or, if in motion, remains in motion at a constant velocity unless acted on by a net external force; also known as the law of inertia

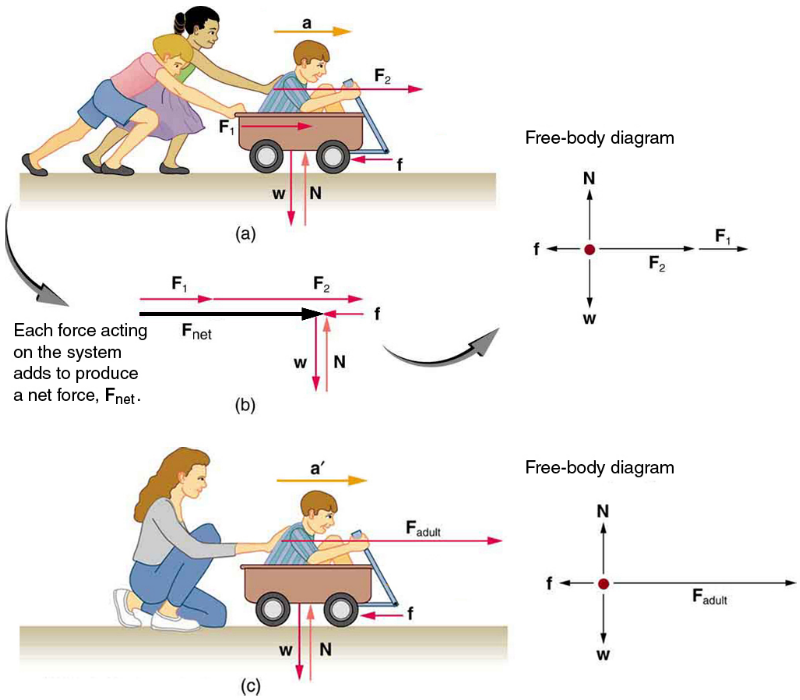
Newton’s Second Law of Motion: Concept of a System

- Define net force, external force, and system.
- Understand Newton’s second law of motion.
- Apply Newton’s second law to determine the weight of an object.

Newton’s second law of motion is closely related to Newton’s first law of motion. It mathematically states the cause and effect relationship between force and changes in motion. Newton’s second law of motion is more quantitative and is used extensively to calculate what happens in situations involving a force. Before we can write down Newton’s second law as a simple equation giving the exact relationship of force, mass, and acceleration, we need to sharpen some ideas that have already been mentioned.

First, what do we mean by a change in motion? The answer is that a change in motion is equivalent to a change in velocity. A change in velocity means, by definition, that there is an **acceleration**. Newton’s first law says that a net external force causes a change in motion; thus, we see that a *net external force causes acceleration*.

Another question immediately arises. What do we mean by an external force? An intuitive notion of external is correct—an **external force** acts from outside the **system** of interest. For example, in [link](a) the system of interest is the wagon plus the child in it. The two forces exerted by the other children are external forces. An internal force acts between elements of the system. Again looking at [link](a), the force the child in the wagon exerts to hang onto the wagon is an internal force between elements of the system of interest. Only external forces affect the motion of a system, according to Newton’s first law. (The internal forces actually cancel, as we shall see in the next section.) *You must define the boundaries of the system before you can determine which forces are external*. Sometimes the system is obvious, whereas other times identifying the boundaries of a system is more subtle. The concept of a system is fundamental to many areas of physics, as is the correct application of Newton’s laws. This concept will be revisited many times on our journey through physics.



Different forces exerted on the same mass produce different accelerations. (a) Two children push a wagon with a child in it. Arrows representing all external forces are shown. The system of interest is the wagon and its rider. The weight $\mathbf{w}$ of the system and the support of the ground $\mathbf{N}$ are also shown for completeness and are assumed to cancel. The vector $\mathbf{f}$ represents the friction acting on the wagon, and it acts to the left, opposing the motion of the wagon. (b) All of the external forces acting on the system add together to produce a net force, $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}$. The free-body diagram shows all of the forces acting on the system of interest. The dot represents the center of mass of the system. Each force vector extends from this dot. Because there are two forces acting to the right, we draw the vectors collinearly. (c) A larger net external force produces a larger

acceleration ($\mathbf{a}\prime > \mathbf{a}$) when an adult pushes the child.

Now, it seems reasonable that acceleration should be directly proportional to and in the same direction as the net (total) external force acting on a system. This assumption has been verified experimentally and is illustrated in [link]. In part (a), a smaller force causes a smaller acceleration than the larger force illustrated in part (c). For completeness, the vertical forces are also shown; they are assumed to cancel since there is no acceleration in the vertical direction. The vertical forces are the weight $\mathbf{w}$ and the support of the ground $\mathbf{N}$, and the horizontal force $\mathbf{f}$ represents the force of friction. These will be discussed in more detail in later sections. For now, we will define **friction** as a force that opposes the motion past each other of objects that are touching. [link](b) shows how vectors representing the external forces add together to produce a net force, $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}$.

To obtain an equation for Newton’s second law, we first write the relationship of acceleration and net external force as the proportionality

Equation:

$$\mathbf{a} \propto \mathbf{F}_{\text{net}},$$

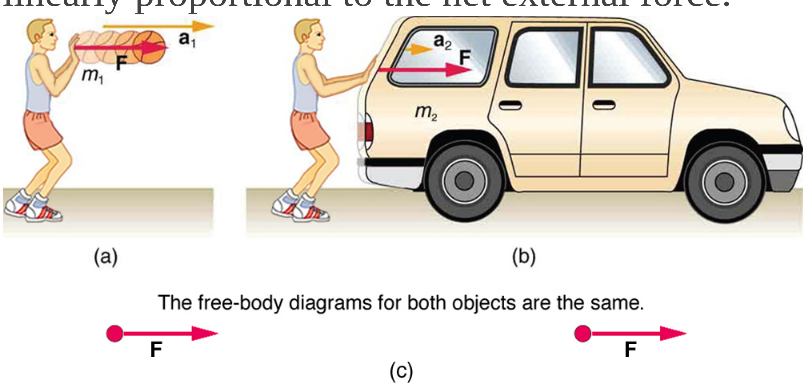
where the symbol $\propto$ means “proportional to,” and $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}$ is the **net external force**. (The net external force is the vector sum of all external forces and can be determined graphically, using the head-to-tail method, or analytically, using components. The techniques are the same as for the addition of other vectors, and are covered in Two-Dimensional Kinematics.) This proportionality states what we have said in words—*acceleration is directly proportional to the net external force*. Once the system of interest is chosen, it is important to identify the external forces and ignore the internal ones. It is a tremendous simplification not to have to consider the numerous internal forces acting between objects within the system, such as muscular forces within the child’s body, let alone the myriad of forces between atoms in the objects, but by doing so, we can easily solve some very complex problems with only minimal error due to our simplification

Now, it also seems reasonable that acceleration should be inversely proportional to the mass of the system. In other words, the larger the mass (the inertia), the smaller the acceleration produced by a given force. And indeed, as illustrated in [link], the same net external force applied to a car produces a much smaller acceleration than when applied to a basketball. The proportionality is written as

Equation:

$$\mathbf{a} \propto \frac{1}{m}$$

where m is the mass of the system. Experiments have shown that acceleration is exactly inversely proportional to mass, just as it is exactly linearly proportional to the net external force.



The same force exerted on systems of different masses produces different accelerations. (a) A basketball player pushes on a basketball to make a pass. (The effect of gravity on the ball is ignored.) (b) The same player exerts an identical force on a stalled SUV and produces a far smaller acceleration (even if friction is negligible). (c) The free-body diagrams are identical, permitting direct comparison of the two situations. A series of patterns for the free-body diagram will emerge as you do more problems.

It has been found that the acceleration of an object depends *only* on the net external force and the mass of the object. Combining the two proportionalities just given yields Newton's second law of motion.

Note:
Newton’s Second Law of Motion
The acceleration of a system is directly proportional to and in the same direction as the net external force acting on the system, and inversely proportional to its mass.
In equation form, Newton’s second law of motion is
Equation:

$$\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}}{m}.$$

This is often written in the more familiar form
Equation:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = m\mathbf{a}.$$

When only the magnitude of force and acceleration are considered, this equation is simply
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma}.$$

Although these last two equations are really the same, the first gives more insight into what Newton’s second law means. The law is a *cause and effect relationship* among three quantities that is not simply based on their definitions. The validity of the second law is completely based on experimental verification.

Units of Force

$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = m\mathbf{a}$ is used to define the units of force in terms of the three basic units for mass, length, and time. The SI unit of force is called the **newton** (abbreviated N) and is the force needed to accelerate a 1-kg system at the rate of 1m/s^2. That is, since $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = m\mathbf{a}$,

Equation:

$$1\text{ N} = 1\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2.$$

While almost the entire world uses the newton for the unit of force, in the United States the most familiar unit of force is the pound (lb), where 1 N = 0.225 lb.

Weight and the Gravitational Force

When an object is dropped, it accelerates toward the center of Earth. Newton's second law states that a net force on an object is responsible for its acceleration. If air resistance is negligible, the net force on a falling object is the gravitational force, commonly called its **weight $\mathbf{w}$**. Weight can be denoted as a vector $\mathbf{w}$ because it has a direction; *down* is, by definition, the direction of gravity, and hence weight is a downward force. The magnitude of weight is denoted as w. Galileo was instrumental in showing that, in the absence of air resistance, all objects fall with the same acceleration g. Using Galileo's result and Newton's second law, we can derive an equation for weight.

Consider an object with mass m falling downward toward Earth. It experiences only the downward force of gravity, which has magnitude w. Newton's second law states that the magnitude of the net external force on an object is $F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma}$.

Since the object experiences only the downward force of gravity, $F_{\text{net}} = w$. We know that the acceleration of an object due to gravity is g, or $a = g$. Substituting these into Newton's second law gives

Note:
Weight
This is the equation for *weight*—the gravitational force on a mass m:
Equation:

$$w = \text{mg}.$$

Since $g = 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2$ on Earth, the weight of a 1.0 kg object on Earth is 9.8 N, as we see:
Equation:

$$w = \text{mg} = (1.0 \text{ kg})(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2) = 9.8 \text{ N}.$$

Recall that *g* can take a positive or negative value, depending on the positive direction in the coordinate system. Be sure to take this into consideration when solving problems with weight.

When the net external force on an object is its weight, we say that it is in **free-fall**. That is, the only force acting on the object is the force of gravity. In the real world, when objects fall downward toward Earth, they are never truly in free-fall because there is always some upward force from the air acting on the object.

The acceleration due to gravity *g* varies slightly over the surface of Earth, so that the weight of an object depends on location and is not an intrinsic property of the object. Weight varies dramatically if one leaves Earth's surface. On the Moon, for example, the acceleration due to gravity is only 1.67 m/s^2. A 1.0-kg mass thus has a weight of 9.8 N on Earth and only about 1.7 N on the Moon.

The broadest definition of weight in this sense is that *the weight of an object is the gravitational force on it from the nearest large body*, such as Earth, the Moon, the Sun, and so on. This is the most common and useful definition of weight in physics. It differs dramatically, however, from the definition of weight used by NASA and the popular media in relation to space travel and exploration. When they speak of "weightlessness" and

“microgravity,” they are really referring to the phenomenon we call “free-fall” in physics. We shall use the above definition of weight, and we will make careful distinctions between free-fall and actual weightlessness.

It is important to be aware that weight and mass are very different physical quantities, although they are closely related. Mass is the quantity of matter (how much “stuff”) and does not vary in classical physics, whereas weight is the gravitational force and does vary depending on gravity. It is tempting to equate the two, since most of our examples take place on Earth, where the weight of an object only varies a little with the location of the object. Furthermore, the terms *mass* and *weight* are used interchangeably in everyday language; for example, our medical records often show our “weight” in kilograms, but never in the correct units of newtons.

Note:

Common Misconceptions: Mass vs. Weight

Mass and weight are often used interchangeably in everyday language. However, in science, these terms are distinctly different from one another. Mass is a measure of how much matter is in an object. The typical measure of mass is the kilogram (or the “slug” in English units). Weight, on the other hand, is a measure of the force of gravity acting on an object. Weight is equal to the mass of an object (m) multiplied by the acceleration due to gravity (g). Like any other force, weight is measured in terms of newtons (or pounds in English units).

Assuming the mass of an object is kept intact, it will remain the same, regardless of its location. However, because weight depends on the acceleration due to gravity, the weight of an object *can change* when the object enters into a region with stronger or weaker gravity. For example, the acceleration due to gravity on the Moon is $1.67\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ (which is much less than the acceleration due to gravity on Earth, $9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$). If you measured your weight on Earth and then measured your weight on the Moon, you would find that you “weigh” much less, even though you do not look any skinnier. This is because the force of gravity is weaker on the Moon. In fact, when people say that they are “losing weight,” they really

mean that they are losing “mass” (which in turn causes them to weigh less).

Note:

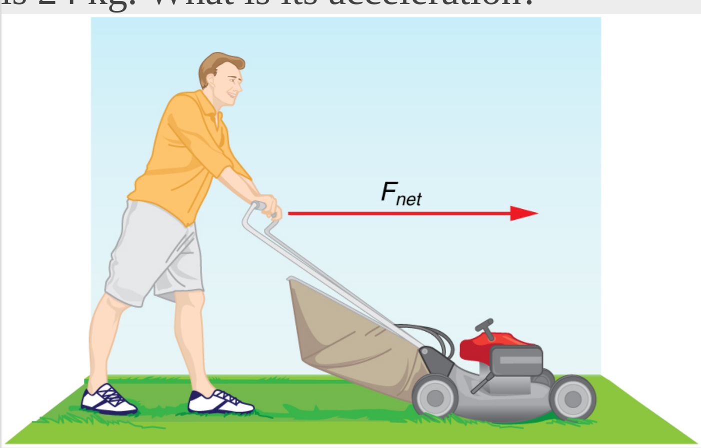
Take-Home Experiment: Mass and Weight

What do bathroom scales measure? When you stand on a bathroom scale, what happens to the scale? It depresses slightly. The scale contains springs that compress in proportion to your weight—similar to rubber bands expanding when pulled. The springs provide a measure of your weight (for an object which is not accelerating). This is a force in newtons (or pounds). In most countries, the measurement is divided by 9.80 to give a reading in mass units of kilograms. The scale measures weight but is calibrated to provide information about mass. While standing on a bathroom scale, push down on a table next to you. What happens to the reading? Why? Would your scale measure the same “mass” on Earth as on the Moon?

Example:

What Acceleration Can a Person Produce when Pushing a Lawn Mower?

Suppose that the net external force (push minus friction) exerted on a lawn mower is 51 N (about 11 lb) parallel to the ground. The mass of the mower is 24 kg. What is its acceleration?



The net force on a lawn mower is 51

N to the right. At what rate does the lawn mower accelerate to the right?

Strategy

Since $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}$ and m are given, the acceleration can be calculated directly from Newton's second law as stated in $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = m\mathbf{a}$.

Solution

The magnitude of the acceleration a is $a = \frac{F_{\text{net}}}{m}$. Entering known values gives

Equation:

$$a = \frac{51\ \text{N}}{24\ \text{kg}}$$

Substituting the units $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2$ for N yields

Equation:

$$a = \frac{51\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2}{24\ \text{kg}} = 2.1\ \text{m/s}^2.$$

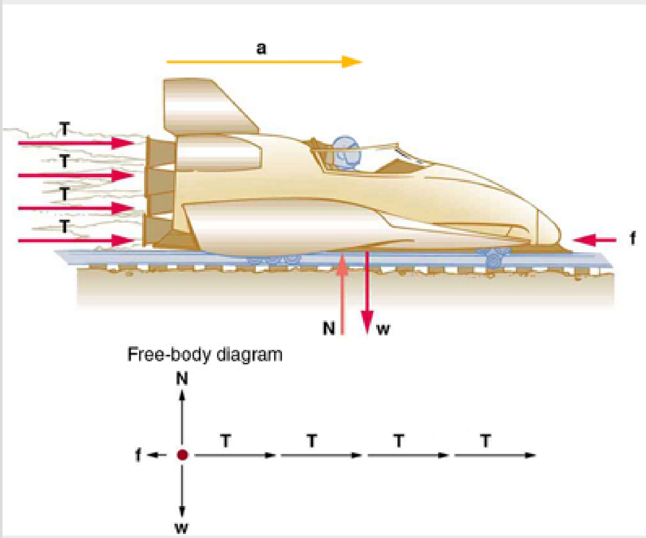
Discussion

The direction of the acceleration is the same direction as that of the net force, which is parallel to the ground. There is no information given in this example about the individual external forces acting on the system, but we can say something about their relative magnitudes. For example, the force exerted by the person pushing the mower must be greater than the friction opposing the motion (since we know the mower moves forward), and the vertical forces must cancel if there is to be no acceleration in the vertical direction (the mower is moving only horizontally). The acceleration found is small enough to be reasonable for a person pushing a mower. Such an effort would not last too long because the person's top speed would soon be reached.

Example:

What Rocket Thrust Accelerates This Sled?

Prior to manned space flights, rocket sleds were used to test aircraft, missile equipment, and physiological effects on human subjects at high speeds. They consisted of a platform that was mounted on one or two rails and propelled by several rockets. Calculate the magnitude of force exerted by each rocket, called its thrust $\mathbf{T}$, for the four-rocket propulsion system shown in [link]. The sled's initial acceleration is $49\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$, the mass of the system is 2100 kg, and the force of friction opposing the motion is known to be 650 N.



A sled experiences a rocket thrust that accelerates it to the right. Each rocket creates an identical thrust $\mathbf{T}$. As in other situations where there is only horizontal acceleration, the vertical forces cancel. The ground exerts an upward force $\mathbf{N}$ on the system that is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to its weight, $\mathbf{w}$. The system here is the sled, its rockets, and rider, so none of the forces *between* these objects are considered. The arrow representing friction ($\mathbf{f}$) is drawn larger than scale.

Strategy
Although there are forces acting vertically and horizontally, we assume the vertical forces cancel since there is no vertical acceleration. This leaves us with only horizontal forces and a simpler one-dimensional problem. Directions are indicated with plus or minus signs, with right taken as the positive direction. See the free-body diagram in the figure.
Solution
Since acceleration, mass, and the force of friction are given, we start with Newton's second law and look for ways to find the thrust of the engines. Since we have defined the direction of the force and acceleration as acting "to the right," we need to consider only the magnitudes of these quantities in the calculations. Hence we begin with
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma},$$

where F_{net} is the net force along the horizontal direction. We can see from [link] that the engine thrusts add, while friction opposes the thrust. In equation form, the net external force is
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = 4T - f.$$

Substituting this into Newton's second law gives
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma} = 4T - f.$$

Using a little algebra, we solve for the total thrust $4T$:
Equation:

$$4T = \text{ma} + f.$$

Substituting known values yields
Equation:

$$4T = \text{ma} + f = (2100\ \text{kg})(49\ \text{m/s}^2) + 650\ \text{N}.$$

So the total thrust is
Equation:

$$4T = 1.0 \times 10^5 \text{ N},$$

and the individual thrusts are
Equation:

$$T = \frac{1.0 \times 10^5 \text{ N}}{4} = 2.6 \times 10^4 \text{ N}.$$

Discussion
The numbers are quite large, so the result might surprise you. Experiments such as this were performed in the early 1960s to test the limits of human endurance and the setup designed to protect human subjects in jet fighter emergency ejections. Speeds of 1000 km/h were obtained, with accelerations of 45 g's. (Recall that g, the acceleration due to gravity, is 9.80 m/s^2. When we say that an acceleration is 45 g's, it is $45 \times 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2$, which is approximately 440 m/s^2.) While living subjects are not used any more, land speeds of 10,000 km/h have been obtained with rocket sleds. In this example, as in the preceding one, the system of interest is obvious. We will see in later examples that choosing the system of interest is crucial—and the choice is not always obvious.
Newton’s second law of motion is more than a definition; it is a relationship among acceleration, force, and mass. It can help us make predictions. Each of those physical quantities can be defined independently, so the second law tells us something basic and universal about nature. The next section introduces the third and final law of motion.

Section Summary

- Acceleration, **a**, is defined as a change in velocity, meaning a change in its magnitude or direction, or both.
- An external force is one acting on a system from outside the system, as opposed to internal forces, which act between components within the

system.

- Newton’s second law of motion states that the acceleration of a system is directly proportional to and in the same direction as the net external force acting on the system, and inversely proportional to its mass.
- In equation form, Newton’s second law of motion is $\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}}{m}$.
- This is often written in the more familiar form: $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = m\mathbf{a}$.
- The weight $\mathbf{w}$ of an object is defined as the force of gravity acting on an object of mass m. The object experiences an acceleration due to gravity $\mathbf{g}$:
  Equation:

$$\mathbf{w} = m\mathbf{g}.$$

- If the only force acting on an object is due to gravity, the object is in free fall.
- Friction is a force that opposes the motion past each other of objects that are touching.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Which statement is correct? (a) Net force causes motion. (b) Net force causes change in motion. Explain your answer and give an example.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why can we neglect forces such as those holding a body together when we apply Newton’s second law of motion?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how the choice of the “system of interest” affects which forces must be considered when applying Newton’s second law of motion.

Exercise:

Problem:

Describe a situation in which the net external force on a system is not zero, yet its speed remains constant.

Exercise:

Problem:

A system can have a nonzero velocity while the net external force on it *is* zero. Describe such a situation.

Exercise:

Problem:

A rock is thrown straight up. What is the net external force acting on the rock when it is at the top of its trajectory?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Give an example of different net external forces acting on the same system to produce different accelerations. (b) Give an example of the same net external force acting on systems of different masses, producing different accelerations. (c) What law accurately describes both effects? State it in words and as an equation.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the acceleration of a system is zero, are no external forces acting on it? What about internal forces? Explain your answers.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a constant, nonzero force is applied to an object, what can you say about the velocity and acceleration of the object?

Exercise:

Problem:

The gravitational force on the basketball in [link] is ignored. When gravity *is* taken into account, what is the direction of the net external force on the basketball—above horizontal, below horizontal, or still horizontal?

Problem Exercises

You may assume data taken from illustrations is accurate to three digits.

Exercise:

Problem:

A 63.0-kg sprinter starts a race with an acceleration of $4.20\ \text{m}/\text{s}^2$. What is the net external force on him?

Solution:

265 N

Exercise:

Problem:

If the sprinter from the previous problem accelerates at that rate for 20 m, and then maintains that velocity for the remainder of the 100-m dash, what will be his time for the race?

Exercise:

Problem:

A cleaner pushes a 4.50-kg laundry cart in such a way that the net external force on it is 60.0 N. Calculate the magnitude of its acceleration.

Solution:

$13.3\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

Since astronauts in orbit are apparently weightless, a clever method of measuring their masses is needed to monitor their mass gains or losses to adjust diets. One way to do this is to exert a known force on an astronaut and measure the acceleration produced. Suppose a net external force of 50.0 N is exerted and the astronaut's acceleration is measured to be $0.893\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$. (a) Calculate her mass. (b) By exerting a force on the astronaut, the vehicle in which they orbit experiences an equal and opposite force. Discuss how this would affect the measurement of the astronaut's acceleration. Propose a method in which recoil of the vehicle is avoided.

Exercise:

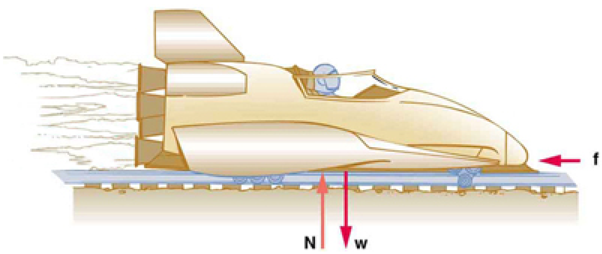
Problem:

In [link], the net external force on the 24-kg mower is stated to be 51 N. If the force of friction opposing the motion is 24 N, what force F (in newtons) is the person exerting on the mower? Suppose the mower is moving at 1.5 m/s when the force F is removed. How far will the mower go before stopping?

Exercise:

Problem:

The same rocket sled drawn in [link] is decelerated at a rate of $196\ \text{m/s}^2$. What force is necessary to produce this deceleration? Assume that the rockets are off. The mass of the system is 2100 kg.



Exercise:

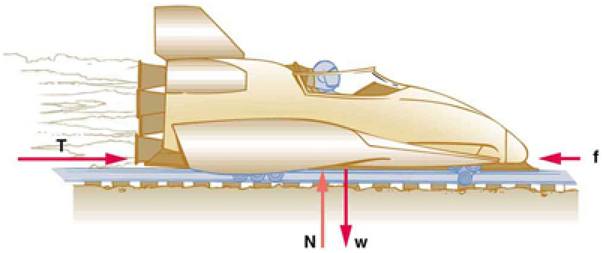
Problem:

(a) If the rocket sled shown in [link] starts with only one rocket burning, what is the magnitude of its acceleration? Assume that the mass of the system is 2100 kg, the thrust T is 2.4×10^4 N, and the force of friction opposing the motion is known to be 650 N. (b) Why is the acceleration not one-fourth of what it is with all rockets burning?

Solution:

(a) $12\ \text{m/s}^2$.

(b) The acceleration is not one-fourth of what it was with all rockets burning because the frictional force is still as large as it was with all rockets burning.



Exercise:

Problem:

What is the deceleration of the rocket sled if it comes to rest in 1.1 s from a speed of 1000 km/h? (Such deceleration caused one test subject to black out and have temporary blindness.)

Exercise:

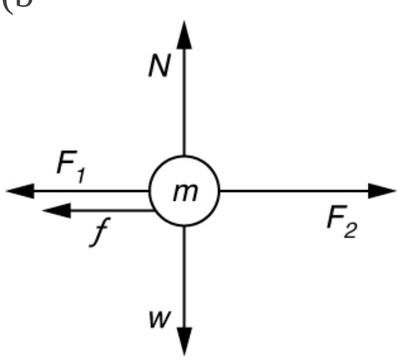
Problem:

Suppose two children push horizontally, but in exactly opposite directions, on a third child in a wagon. The first child exerts a force of 75.0 N, the second a force of 90.0 N, friction is 12.0 N, and the mass of the third child plus wagon is 23.0 kg. (a) What is the system of interest if the acceleration of the child in the wagon is to be calculated? (b) Draw a free-body diagram, including all forces acting on the system. (c) Calculate the acceleration. (d) What would the acceleration be if friction were 15.0 N?

Solution:

(a) The system is the child in the wagon plus the wagon.

(b



(c) $a = 0.130\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ in the direction of the second child’s push.

(d) $a = 0.00\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A powerful motorcycle can produce an acceleration of $3.50\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ while traveling at 90.0 km/h. At that speed the forces resisting motion, including friction and air resistance, total 400 N. (Air resistance is analogous to air friction. It always opposes the motion of an object.) What is the magnitude of the force the motorcycle exerts backward on the ground to produce its acceleration if the mass of the motorcycle with rider is 245 kg?

Exercise:

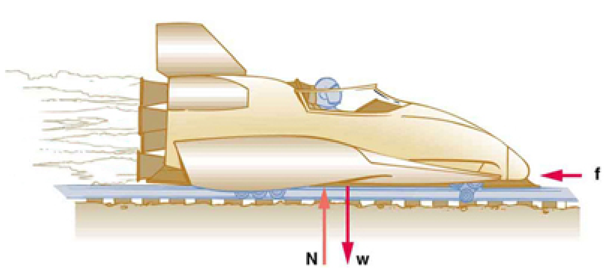
Problem:

The rocket sled shown in [link] accelerates at a rate of $49.0\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$. Its passenger has a mass of 75.0 kg. (a) Calculate the horizontal component of the force the seat exerts against his body. Compare this with his weight by using a ratio. (b) Calculate the direction and magnitude of the total force the seat exerts against his body.

Solution:

(a) $3.68 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{N}$. This force is 5.00 times greater than his weight.

(b) $3750\ \mathrm{N}$; 11.3^{o} above horizontal



Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat the previous problem for the situation in which the rocket sled decelerates at a rate of $201\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$. In this problem, the forces are exerted by the seat and restraining belts.

Exercise:

Problem:

The weight of an astronaut plus his space suit on the Moon is only 250 N. How much do they weigh on Earth? What is the mass on the Moon? On Earth?

Solution:

$1.5 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{N}, 150\ \mathrm{kg}, 150\ \mathrm{kg}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the mass of a fully loaded module in which astronauts take off from the Moon is 10,000 kg. The thrust of its engines is 30,000 N. (a) Calculate its the magnitude of acceleration in a vertical takeoff from the Moon. (b) Could it lift off from Earth? If not, why not? If it could, calculate the magnitude of its acceleration.

Glossary

acceleration
: the rate at which an object's velocity changes over a period of time

free-fall
: a situation in which the only force acting on an object is the force due to gravity

friction

a force past each other of objects that are touching; examples include rough surfaces and air resistance

net external force
: the vector sum of all external forces acting on an object or system; causes a mass to accelerate

Newton’s second law of motion
: the net external force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}$ on an object with mass m is proportional to and in the same direction as the acceleration of the object, $\mathbf{a}$, and inversely proportional to the mass; defined mathematically as $\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}}{m}$

system
: defined by the boundaries of an object or collection of objects being observed; all forces originating from outside of the system are considered external forces

weight
: the force $\mathbf{w}$due to gravity acting on an object of mass m; defined mathematically as: $\mathbf{w} = m\mathbf{g}$, where $\mathbf{g}$ is the magnitude and direction of the acceleration due to gravity

Newton’s Third Law of Motion: Symmetry in Forces

- Understand Newton's third law of motion.
- Apply Newton's third law to define systems and solve problems of motion.

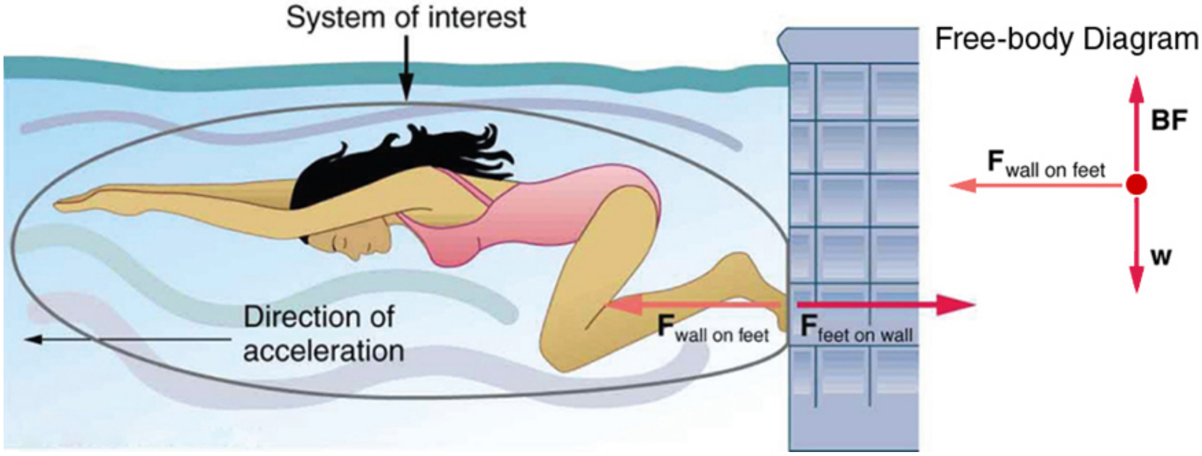
There is a passage in the musical *Man of la Mancha* that relates to Newton’s third law of motion. Sancho, in describing a fight with his wife to Don Quixote, says, “Of course I hit her back, Your Grace, but she’s a lot harder than me and you know what they say, ‘Whether the stone hits the pitcher or the pitcher hits the stone, it’s going to be bad for the pitcher.’” This is exactly what happens whenever one body exerts a force on another—the first also experiences a force (equal in magnitude and opposite in direction). Numerous common experiences, such as stubbing a toe or throwing a ball, confirm this. It is precisely stated in **Newton’s third law of motion**.

> **Note:**
> Newton’s Third Law of Motion
> Whenever one body exerts a force on a second body, the first body experiences a force that is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the force that it exerts.

This law represents a certain *symmetry in nature*: Forces always occur in pairs, and one body cannot exert a force on another without experiencing a force itself. We sometimes refer to this law loosely as “action-reaction,” where the force exerted is the action and the force experienced as a consequence is the reaction. Newton’s third law has practical uses in analyzing the origin of forces and understanding which forces are external to a system.

We can readily see Newton’s third law at work by taking a look at how people move about. Consider a swimmer pushing off from the side of a pool, as illustrated in [link]. She pushes against the pool wall with her feet

and accelerates in the direction *opposite* to that of her push. The wall has exerted an equal and opposite force back on the swimmer. You might think that two equal and opposite forces would cancel, but they do not *because they act on different systems*. In this case, there are two systems that we could investigate: the swimmer or the wall. If we select the swimmer to be the system of interest, as in the figure, then $\mathbf{F}_{\text{wall on feet}}$ is an external force on this system and affects its motion. The swimmer moves in the direction of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{wall on feet}}$. In contrast, the force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{feet on wall}}$ acts on the wall and not on our system of interest. Thus $\mathbf{F}_{\text{feet on wall}}$ does not directly affect the motion of the system and does not cancel $\mathbf{F}_{\text{wall on feet}}$. Note that the swimmer pushes in the direction opposite to that in which she wishes to move. The reaction to her push is thus in the desired direction.

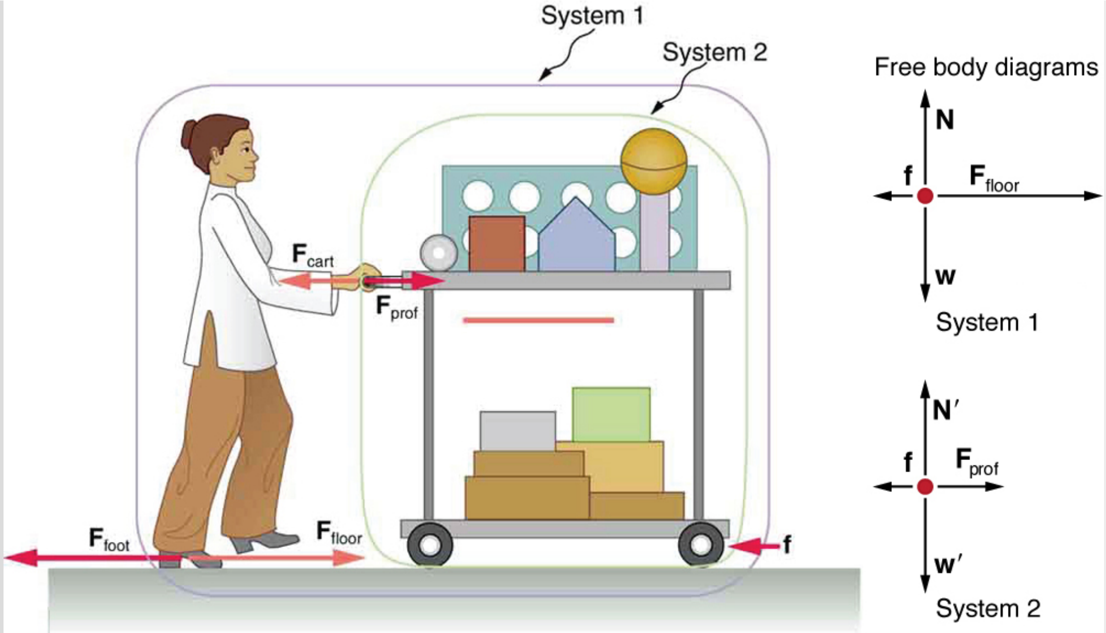


When the swimmer exerts a force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{feet on wall}}$ on the wall, she accelerates in the direction opposite to that of her push. This means the net external force on her is in the direction opposite to $\mathbf{F}_{\text{feet on wall}}$. This opposition occurs because, in accordance with Newton's third law of motion, the wall exerts a force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{wall on feet}}$ on her, equal in magnitude but in the direction opposite to the one she exerts on it. The line around the swimmer indicates the system of interest. Note that $\mathbf{F}_{\text{feet on wall}}$ does not act on this system (the swimmer) and, thus, does not cancel $\mathbf{F}_{\text{wall on feet}}$. Thus the free-body diagram shows only $\mathbf{F}_{\text{wall on feet}}$, $\mathbf{w}$, the gravitational force, and $\mathbf{BF}$, the buoyant force of the water supporting the swimmer's weight. The vertical forces $\mathbf{w}$ and $\mathbf{BF}$ cancel since there is no vertical motion.

Other examples of Newton’s third law are easy to find. As a professor paces in front of a whiteboard, she exerts a force backward on the floor. The floor exerts a reaction force forward on the professor that causes her to accelerate forward. Similarly, a car accelerates because the ground pushes forward on the drive wheels in reaction to the drive wheels pushing backward on the ground. You can see evidence of the wheels pushing backward when tires spin on a gravel road and throw rocks backward. In another example, rockets move forward by expelling gas backward at high velocity. This means the rocket exerts a large backward force on the gas in the rocket combustion chamber, and the gas therefore exerts a large reaction force forward on the rocket. This reaction force is called **thrust**. It is a common misconception that rockets propel themselves by pushing on the ground or on the air behind them. They actually work better in a vacuum, where they can more readily expel the exhaust gases. Helicopters similarly create lift by pushing air down, thereby experiencing an upward reaction force. Birds and airplanes also fly by exerting force on air in a direction opposite to that of whatever force they need. For example, the wings of a bird force air downward and backward in order to get lift and move forward. An octopus propels itself in the water by ejecting water through a funnel from its body, similar to a jet ski. In a situation similar to Sancho’s, professional cage fighters experience reaction forces when they punch, sometimes breaking their hand by hitting an opponent’s body.

Example:
Getting Up To Speed: Choosing the Correct System

A physics professor pushes a cart of demonstration equipment to a lecture hall, as seen in [link]. Her mass is 65.0 kg, the cart’s is 12.0 kg, and the equipment’s is 7.0 kg. Calculate the acceleration produced when the professor exerts a backward force of 150 N on the floor. All forces opposing the motion, such as friction on the cart’s wheels and air resistance, total 24.0 N.



A professor pushes a cart of demonstration equipment. The lengths of the arrows are proportional to the magnitudes of the forces (except for $\mathbf{f}$, since it is too small to draw to scale). Different questions are asked in each example; thus, the system of interest must be defined differently for each. System 1 is appropriate for this example, since it asks for the acceleration of the entire group of objects. Only $\mathbf{F}_{floor}$ and $\mathbf{f}$ are external forces acting on System 1 along the line of motion. All other forces either cancel or act on the outside world. System 2 is chosen for [link] so that $\mathbf{F}_{prof}$ will be an external force and enter into Newton's second law. Note that the free-body diagrams, which allow us to apply Newton's second law, vary with the system chosen.

Strategy
Since they accelerate as a unit, we define the system to be the professor, cart, and equipment. This is System 1 in [link]. The professor pushes backward with a force $\mathbf{F}_{foot}$ of 150 N. According to Newton's third law, the floor exerts a forward reaction force $\mathbf{F}_{floor}$ of 150 N on System 1. Because all motion is horizontal, we can assume there is no net force in the vertical direction. The problem is therefore one-dimensional along the

horizontal direction. As noted, $\mathbf{f}$ opposes the motion and is thus in the opposite direction of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{floor}}$. Note that we do not include the forces $\mathbf{F}_{\text{prof}}$ or $\mathbf{F}_{\text{cart}}$ because these are internal forces, and we do not include $\mathbf{F}_{\text{foot}}$ because it acts on the floor, not on the system. There are no other significant forces acting on System 1. If the net external force can be found from all this information, we can use Newton's second law to find the acceleration as requested. See the free-body diagram in the figure.

Solution

Newton's second law is given by

Equation:

$$a = \frac{F_{\text{net}}}{m}.$$

The net external force on System 1 is deduced from [link] and the discussion above to be

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = F_{\text{floor}} - f = 150\text{ N} - 24.0\text{ N} = 126\text{ N}.$$

The mass of System 1 is

Equation:

$$m = (65.0 + 12.0 + 7.0)\text{ kg} = 84\text{ kg}.$$

These values of F_{net} and m produce an acceleration of

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} a &= \tfrac{F_{\text{net}}}{m}, \\ a &= \tfrac{126\text{ N}}{84\text{ kg}} = 1.5\text{ m/s}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

None of the forces between components of System 1, such as between the professor's hands and the cart, contribute to the net external force because they are internal to System 1. Another way to look at this is to note that forces between components of a system cancel because they are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. For example, the force exerted by the

professor on the cart results in an equal and opposite force back on her. In this case both forces act on the same system and, therefore, cancel. Thus internal forces (between components of a system) cancel. Choosing System 1 was crucial to solving this problem.

Example:
Force on the Cart—Choosing a New System
Calculate the force the professor exerts on the cart in [link] using data from the previous example if needed.
Strategy
If we now define the system of interest to be the cart plus equipment (System 2 in [link]), then the net external force on System 2 is the force the professor exerts on the cart minus friction. The force she exerts on the cart, $\mathbf{F}_{\text{prof}}$, is an external force acting on System 2. $\mathbf{F}_{\text{prof}}$ was internal to System 1, but it is external to System 2 and will enter Newton's second law for System 2.
Solution
Newton's second law can be used to find $\mathbf{F}_{\text{prof}}$. Starting with
Equation:

$$a = \frac{F_{\text{net}}}{m}$$

and noting that the magnitude of the net external force on System 2 is
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = F_{\text{prof}} - f,$$

we solve for F_{prof}, the desired quantity:
Equation:

$$F_{\text{prof}} = F_{\text{net}} + f.$$

The value of f is given, so we must calculate net F_{net}. That can be done since both the acceleration and mass of System 2 are known. Using Newton's second law we see that

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma},$$

where the mass of System 2 is 19.0 kg (m= 12.0 kg + 7.0 kg) and its acceleration was found to be $a = 1.5 \text{ m/s}^2$ in the previous example. Thus,

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma},$$

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = (19.0 \text{ kg})(1.5 \text{ m/s}^2) = 29 \text{ N}.$$

Now we can find the desired force:

Equation:

$$F_{\text{prof}} = F_{\text{net}} + f,$$

Equation:

$$F_{\text{prof}} = 29 \text{ N} + 24.0 \text{ N} = 53 \text{ N}.$$

Discussion

It is interesting that this force is significantly less than the 150-N force the professor exerted backward on the floor. Not all of that 150-N force is transmitted to the cart; some of it accelerates the professor.

The choice of a system is an important analytical step both in solving problems and in thoroughly understanding the physics of the situation (which is not necessarily the same thing).

Note:

PhET Explorations: Gravity Force Lab

Visualize the gravitational force that two objects exert on each other. Change properties of the objects in order to see how it changes the gravity force.

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/gravity-force-lab/latest/gravity-force-lab_en.html

Section Summary

- **Newton's third law of motion** represents a basic symmetry in nature. It states: Whenever one body exerts a force on a second body, the first body experiences a force that is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the force that the first body exerts.
- A **thrust** is a reaction force that pushes a body forward in response to a backward force. Rockets, airplanes, and cars are pushed forward by a thrust reaction force.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

When you take off in a jet aircraft, there is a sensation of being pushed back into the seat. Explain why you move backward in the seat—is there really a force backward on you? (The same reasoning explains whiplash injuries, in which the head is apparently thrown backward.)

Exercise:

Problem:

A device used since the 1940s to measure the kick or recoil of the body due to heart beats is the “ballistocardiograph.” What physics principle(s) are involved here to measure the force of cardiac contraction? How might we construct such a device?

Exercise:

Problem:

Describe a situation in which one system exerts a force on another and, as a consequence, experiences a force that is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. Which of Newton's laws of motion apply?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why does an ordinary rifle recoil (kick backward) when fired? The barrel of a recoilless rifle is open at both ends. Describe how Newton's third law applies when one is fired. Can you safely stand close behind one when it is fired?

Exercise:

Problem:

An American football lineman reasons that it is senseless to try to out-push the opposing player, since no matter how hard he pushes he will experience an equal and opposite force from the other player. Use Newton's laws and draw a free-body diagram of an appropriate system to explain how he can still out-push the opposition if he is strong enough.

Exercise:

Problem:

Newton's third law of motion tells us that forces always occur in pairs of equal and opposite magnitude. Explain how the choice of the "system of interest" affects whether one such pair of forces cancels.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What net external force is exerted on a 1100-kg artillery shell fired from a battleship if the shell is accelerated at $2.40 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$? What is the magnitude of the force exerted on the ship by the artillery shell?

Solution:

Force on shell: $2.64 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{N}$

Force exerted on ship = $-2.64 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{N}$, by Newton's third law

Exercise:

Problem:

A brave but inadequate rugby player is being pushed backward by an opposing player who is exerting a force of 800 N on him. The mass of the losing player plus equipment is 90.0 kg, and he is accelerating at $1.20\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ backward. (a) What is the force of friction between the losing player's feet and the grass? (b) What force does the winning player exert on the ground to move forward if his mass plus equipment is 110 kg? (c) Draw a sketch of the situation showing the system of interest used to solve each part. For this situation, draw a free-body diagram and write the net force equation.

Glossary

Newton's third law of motion
: whenever one body exerts a force on a second body, the first body experiences a force that is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the force that the first body exerts

thrust
: a reaction force that pushes a body forward in response to a backward force; rockets, airplanes, and cars are pushed forward by a thrust reaction force

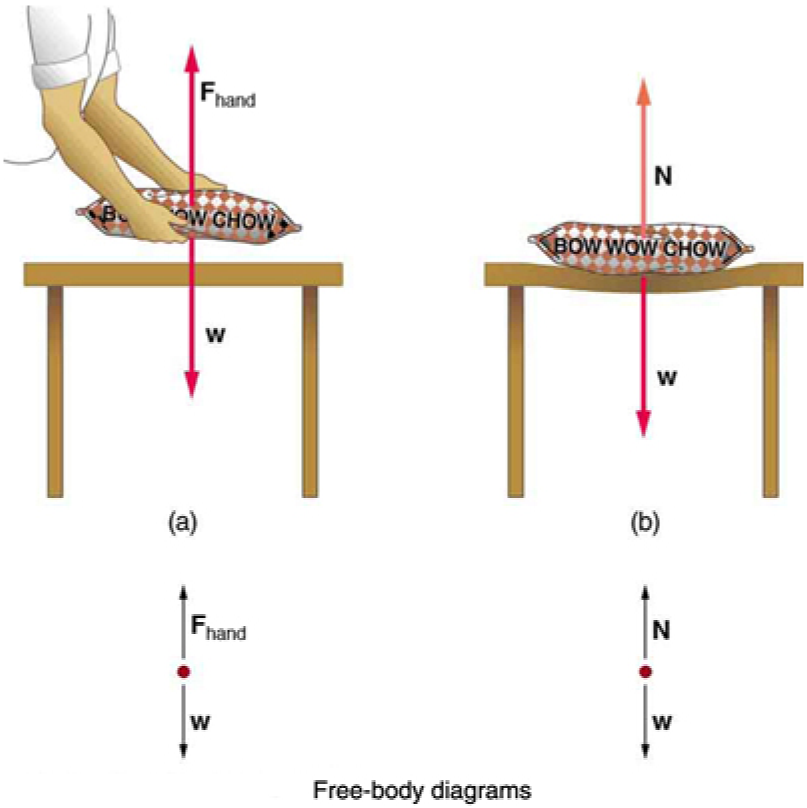
Normal, Tension, and Other Examples of Forces

- Define normal and tension forces.
- Apply Newton's laws of motion to solve problems involving a variety of forces.
- Use trigonometric identities to resolve weight into components.

Forces are given many names, such as push, pull, thrust, lift, weight, friction, and tension. Traditionally, forces have been grouped into several categories and given names relating to their source, how they are transmitted, or their effects. The most important of these categories are discussed in this section, together with some interesting applications. Further examples of forces are discussed later in this text.

Normal Force

Weight (also called force of gravity) is a pervasive force that acts at all times and must be counteracted to keep an object from falling. You definitely notice that you must support the weight of a heavy object by pushing up on it when you hold it stationary, as illustrated in [link](a). But how do inanimate objects like a table support the weight of a mass placed on them, such as shown in [link](b)? When the bag of dog food is placed on the table, the table actually sags slightly under the load. This would be noticeable if the load were placed on a card table, but even rigid objects deform when a force is applied to them. Unless the object is deformed beyond its limit, it will exert a restoring force much like a deformed spring (or trampoline or diving board). The greater the deformation, the greater the restoring force. So when the load is placed on the table, the table sags until the restoring force becomes as large as the weight of the load. At this point the net external force on the load is zero. That is the situation when the load is stationary on the table. The table sags quickly, and the sag is slight so we do not notice it. But it is similar to the sagging of a trampoline when you climb onto it.



(a) The person holding the bag of dog food must supply an upward force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{hand}}$ equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the weight of the food $\mathbf{w}$. (b) The card table sags when the dog food is placed on it, much like a stiff trampoline. Elastic restoring forces in the table grow as it sags until they supply a force $\mathbf{N}$ equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the weight of the load.

We must conclude that whatever supports a load, be it animate or not, must supply an upward force equal to the weight of the load, as we assumed in a few of the previous examples. If the force supporting a load is perpendicular to the surface of contact between the load and its support, this force is defined to be a **normal force** and here is given the symbol $\mathbf{N}$. (This is not the unit for force N.) The word *normal* means perpendicular to a

surface. The normal force can be less than the object's weight if the object is on an incline, as you will see in the next example.

Note:

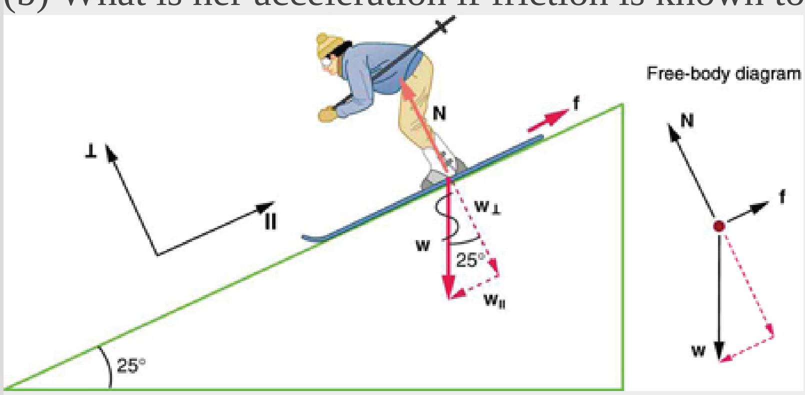
Common Misconception: Normal Force (N) vs. Newton (N)

In this section we have introduced the quantity normal force, which is represented by the variable $\mathbf{N}$. This should not be confused with the symbol for the newton, which is also represented by the letter N. These symbols are particularly important to distinguish because the units of a normal force ($\mathbf{N}$) happen to be newtons (N). For example, the normal force $\mathbf{N}$ that the floor exerts on a chair might be $\mathbf{N} = 100$ N. One important difference is that normal force is a vector, while the newton is simply a unit. Be careful not to confuse these letters in your calculations! You will encounter more similarities among variables and units as you proceed in physics. Another example of this is the quantity work (W) and the unit watts (W).

Example:

Weight on an Incline, a Two-Dimensional Problem

Consider the skier on a slope shown in [link]. Her mass including equipment is 60.0 kg. (a) What is her acceleration if friction is negligible? (b) What is her acceleration if friction is known to be 45.0 N?



Since motion and friction are parallel to the slope, it is most convenient to project all

forces onto a coordinate system where one axis is parallel to the slope and the other is perpendicular (axes shown to left of skier). $\mathbf{N}$ is perpendicular to the slope and **f** is parallel to the slope, but $\mathbf{w}$ has components along both axes, namely $\mathbf{w}_{\perp}$ and $\mathbf{w}_{||}$. $\mathbf{N}$ is equal in magnitude to $\mathbf{w}_{\perp}$, so that there is no motion perpendicular to the slope, but f is less than $w_{||}$, so that there is a downslope acceleration (along the parallel axis).

Strategy

This is a two-dimensional problem, since the forces on the skier (the system of interest) are not parallel. The approach we have used in two-dimensional kinematics also works very well here. Choose a convenient coordinate system and project the vectors onto its axes, creating *two* connected *one*-dimensional problems to solve. The most convenient coordinate system for motion on an incline is one that has one coordinate parallel to the slope and one perpendicular to the slope. (Remember that motions along mutually perpendicular axes are independent.) We use the symbols $\perp$ and $||$ to represent perpendicular and parallel, respectively. This choice of axes simplifies this type of problem, because there is no motion perpendicular to the slope and because friction is always parallel to the surface between two objects. The only external forces acting on the system are the skier's weight, friction, and the support of the slope, respectively labeled $\mathbf{w}$, $\mathbf{f}$, and $\mathbf{N}$ in [link]. $\mathbf{N}$ is always perpendicular to the slope, and $\mathbf{f}$ is parallel to it. But $\mathbf{w}$ is not in the direction of either axis, and so the first step we take is to project it into components along the chosen axes, defining $w_{||}$ to be the component of weight parallel to the slope and $w_{\perp}$ the component of weight perpendicular to the slope. Once this is done, we can consider the two separate problems of forces parallel to the slope and forces perpendicular to the slope.

Solution

The magnitude of the component of the weight parallel to the slope is $w_{||} = w \sin{(25^{\circ})} = mg \sin{(25^{\circ})}$, and the magnitude of the component of

the weight perpendicular to the slope is
$w_{\perp} = w \cos\left(25^{\text{o}}\right) = mg \cos\left(25^{\text{o}}\right)$.
(a) Neglecting friction. Since the acceleration is parallel to the slope, we need only consider forces parallel to the slope. (Forces perpendicular to the slope add to zero, since there is no acceleration in that direction.) The forces parallel to the slope are the amount of the skier's weight parallel to the slope $w_{\|}$ and friction f. Using Newton's second law, with subscripts to denote quantities parallel to the slope,
Equation:

$$a_{\|} = \frac{F_{\text{net}\|}}{m}$$

where $F_{\text{net}\|} = w_{\|} = \text{mg sin}\left(25^{\text{o}}\right)$, assuming no friction for this part, so that
Equation:

$$a_{\|} = \frac{F_{\text{net}\|}}{m} = \frac{\text{mg sin}\left(25^{\text{o}}\right)}{m} = g\,\text{sin}\left(25^{\text{o}}\right)$$

Equation:

$$(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(0.4226) = 4.14\ \text{m/s}^2$$

is the acceleration.
(b) Including friction. We now have a given value for friction, and we know its direction is parallel to the slope and it opposes motion between surfaces in contact. So the net external force is now
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}\|} = w_{\|} - f,$$

and substituting this into Newton's second law, $a_{\|} = \frac{F_{\text{net}\|}}{m}$, gives
Equation:

$$a_{\|} = \frac{F_{\text{net}\|}}{m} = \frac{w_{\|} - f}{m} = \frac{\text{mg sin}\left(25^{\text{o}}\right) - f}{m}.$$

We substitute known values to obtain

Equation:

$$a_{\parallel} = \frac{(60.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(0.4226) - 45.0\ \text{N}}{60.0\ \text{kg}},$$

which yields

Equation:

$$a_{\parallel} = 3.39\ \text{m/s}^2,$$

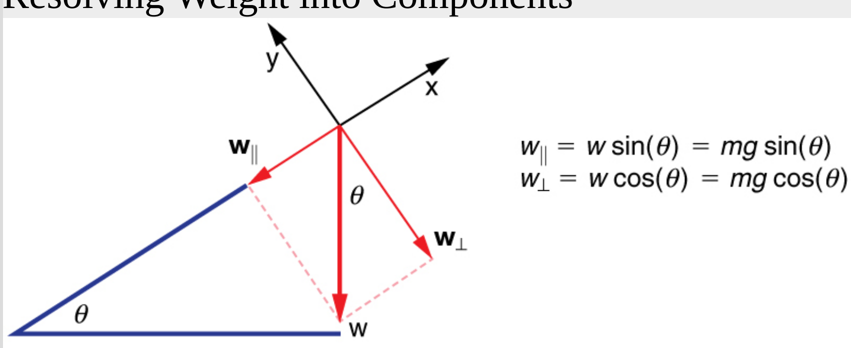
which is the acceleration parallel to the incline when there is 45.0 N of opposing friction.

Discussion

Since friction always opposes motion between surfaces, the acceleration is smaller when there is friction than when there is none. In fact, it is a general result that if friction on an incline is negligible, then the acceleration down the incline is $a = g\,\sin\theta$, *regardless of mass*. This is related to the previously discussed fact that all objects fall with the same acceleration in the absence of air resistance. Similarly, all objects, regardless of mass, slide down a frictionless incline with the same acceleration (if the angle is the same).

Note:

Resolving Weight into Components



An object rests on an incline that makes an

angle θ with the horizontal.

When an object rests on an incline that makes an angle θ with the horizontal, the force of gravity acting on the object is divided into two components: a force acting perpendicular to the plane, $\mathbf{w}_{\perp}$, and a force acting parallel to the plane, $\mathbf{w}_{\|}$. The perpendicular force of weight, $\mathbf{w}_{\perp}$, is typically equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the normal force, $\mathbf{N}$. The force acting parallel to the plane, $\mathbf{w}_{\|}$, causes the object to accelerate down the incline. The force of friction, $\mathbf{f}$, opposes the motion of the object, so it acts upward along the plane.

It is important to be careful when resolving the weight of the object into components. If the angle of the incline is at an angle θ to the horizontal, then the magnitudes of the weight components are

Equation:

$$w_{\|} = w \sin(\theta) = \text{mg} \sin(\theta)$$

and

Equation:

$$w_{\perp} = w \cos(\theta) = \text{mg} \cos(\theta).$$

Instead of memorizing these equations, it is helpful to be able to determine them from reason. To do this, draw the right triangle formed by the three weight vectors. Notice that the angle θ of the incline is the same as the angle formed between $\mathbf{w}$ and $\mathbf{w}_{\perp}$. Knowing this property, you can use trigonometry to determine the magnitude of the weight components:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \cos(\theta) &= \frac{w_{\perp}}{w} \\ w_{\perp} &= w \cos(\theta) = \text{mg} \cos(\theta) \end{aligned}$$

Equation:

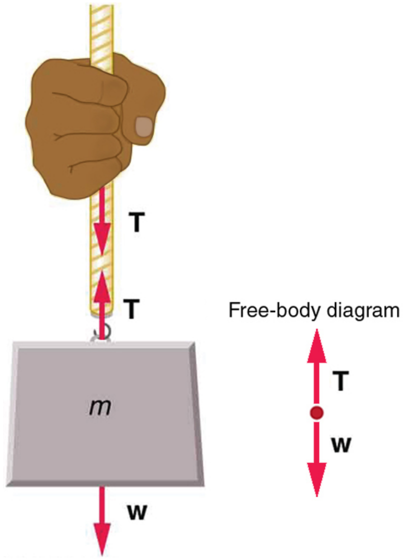
$$\begin{aligned} \sin(\theta) &= \frac{w_{\|}}{w} \\ w_{\|} &= w \sin(\theta) = \text{mg} \sin(\theta) \end{aligned}$$

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Force Parallel
To investigate how a force parallel to an inclined plane changes, find a rubber band, some objects to hang from the end of the rubber band, and a board you can position at different angles. How much does the rubber band stretch when you hang the object from the end of the board? Now place the board at an angle so that the object slides off when placed on the board. How much does the rubber band extend if it is lined up parallel to the board and used to hold the object stationary on the board? Try two more angles. What does this show?

Tension

A **tension** is a force along the length of a medium, especially a force carried by a flexible medium, such as a rope or cable. The word "tension" comes from a Latin word meaning "to stretch." Not coincidentally, the flexible cords that carry muscle forces to other parts of the body are called *tendons*. Any flexible connector, such as a string, rope, chain, wire, or cable, can exert pulls only parallel to its length; thus, a force carried by a flexible connector is a tension with direction parallel to the connector. It is important to understand that tension is a pull in a connector. In contrast, consider the phrase: "You can't push a rope." The tension force pulls outward along the two ends of a rope.

Consider a person holding a mass on a rope as shown in [link].



When a perfectly flexible connector (one requiring no force to bend it) such as this rope transmits a force $\mathbf{T}$, that force must be parallel to the length of the rope, as shown. The pull such a flexible connector exerts is a tension. Note that the rope pulls with equal force but in opposite directions on the hand and the supported mass (neglecting the weight of the rope). This is an example of Newton’s third law. The rope is the medium that carries

the equal and opposite forces between the two objects. The tension anywhere in the rope between the hand and the mass is equal. Once you have determined the tension in one location, you have determined the tension at all locations along the rope.

Tension in the rope must equal the weight of the supported mass, as we can prove using Newton’s second law. If the 5.00-kg mass in the figure is stationary, then its acceleration is zero, and thus $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = 0$. The only external forces acting on the mass are its weight $\mathbf{w}$ and the tension $\mathbf{T}$ supplied by the rope. Thus,

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = T - w = 0,$$

where T and w are the magnitudes of the tension and weight and their signs indicate direction, with up being positive here. Thus, just as you would expect, the tension equals the weight of the supported mass:

Equation:

$$T = w = \text{mg}.$$

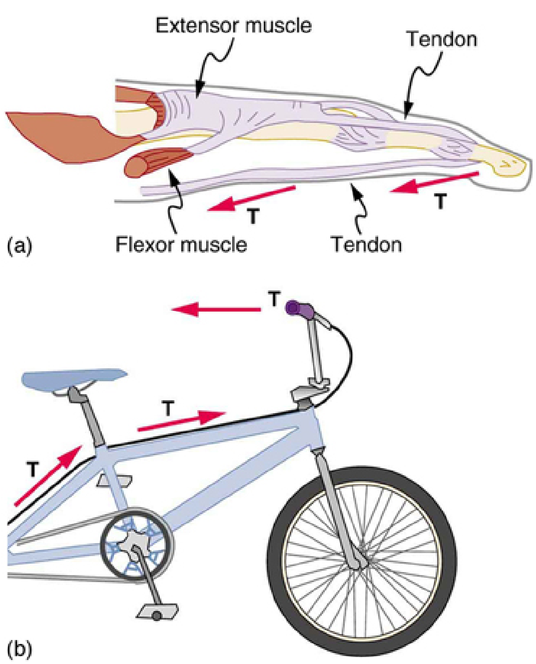
For a 5.00-kg mass, then (neglecting the mass of the rope) we see that

Equation:

$$T = \text{mg} = (5.00\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2) = 49.0\text{ N}.$$

If we cut the rope and insert a spring, the spring would extend a length corresponding to a force of 49.0 N, providing a direct observation and measure of the tension force in the rope.

Flexible connectors are often used to transmit forces around corners, such as in a hospital traction system, a finger joint, or a bicycle brake cable. If there is no friction, the tension is transmitted undiminished. Only its direction changes, and it is always parallel to the flexible connector. This is illustrated in [link] (a) and (b).

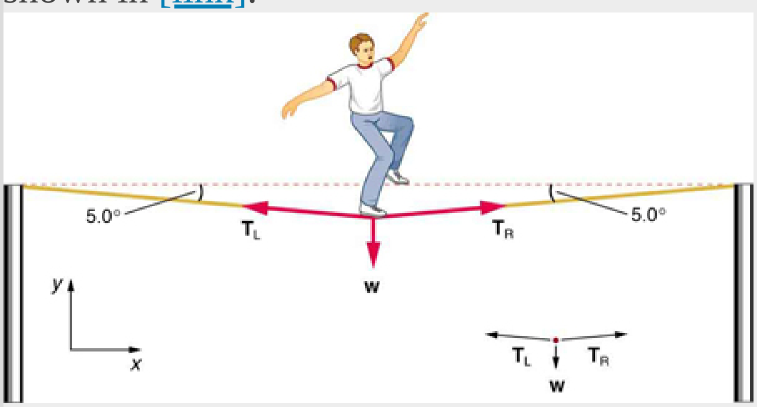


(a) Tendons in the finger carry force $\mathbf{T}$ from the muscles to other parts of the finger, usually changing the force's direction, but not its magnitude (the

tendons are relatively friction free). (b) The brake cable on a bicycle carries the tension $\mathbf{T}$ from the handlebars to the brake mechanism. Again, the direction but not the magnitude of $\mathbf{T}$ is changed.

Example:
What Is the Tension in a Tightrope?

Calculate the tension in the wire supporting the 70.0-kg tightrope walker shown in [link].



The weight of a tightrope walker causes a wire to sag by 5.0 degrees. The system of interest here is the point in the wire at which the tightrope walker is standing.

Strategy

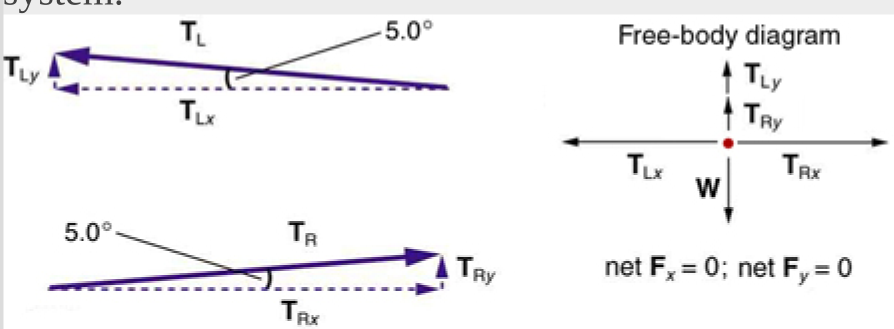
As you can see in the figure, the wire is not perfectly horizontal (it cannot be!), but is bent under the person's weight. Thus, the tension on either side of the person has an upward component that can support his weight. As

usual, forces are vectors represented pictorially by arrows having the same directions as the forces and lengths proportional to their magnitudes. The system is the tightrope walker, and the only external forces acting on him are his weight $\mathbf{w}$ and the two tensions $\mathbf{T}_{\mathrm{L}}$ (left tension) and $\mathbf{T}_{\mathrm{R}}$ (right tension), as illustrated. It is reasonable to neglect the weight of the wire itself. The net external force is zero since the system is stationary. A little trigonometry can now be used to find the tensions. One conclusion is possible at the outset—we can see from part (b) of the figure that the magnitudes of the tensions T_{L} and T_{R} must be equal. This is because there is no horizontal acceleration in the rope, and the only forces acting to the left and right are T_{L} and T_{R}. Thus, the magnitude of those forces must be equal so that they cancel each other out.

Whenever we have two-dimensional vector problems in which no two vectors are parallel, the easiest method of solution is to pick a convenient coordinate system and project the vectors onto its axes. In this case the best coordinate system has one axis horizontal and the other vertical. We call the horizontal the x-axis and the vertical the y-axis.

Solution

First, we need to resolve the tension vectors into their horizontal and vertical components. It helps to draw a new free-body diagram showing all of the horizontal and vertical components of each force acting on the system.



When the vectors are projected onto vertical and horizontal axes, their components along those axes must add to zero, since the tightrope walker is stationary. The small angle results in T being much greater than w.

Consider the horizontal components of the forces (denoted with a subscript x):
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}x} = T_{\text{L}x} - T_{\text{R}x}.$$

The net external horizontal force $F_{\text{net}x} = 0$, since the person is stationary. Thus,
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} F_{\text{net}x} = 0 & = & T_{\text{L}x} - T_{\text{R}x} \\ T_{\text{L}x} & = & T_{\text{R}x}. \end{array}$$

Now, observe [link]. You can use trigonometry to determine the magnitude of T_{L} and T_{R}. Notice that:
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{cos}\ (5.0º) & = & \frac{T_{\text{L}x}}{T_{\text{L}}} \\ T_{\text{L}x} & = & T_{\text{L}}\ \text{cos}\ (5.0º) \\ \text{cos}\ (5.0º) & = & \frac{T_{\text{R}x}}{T_{\text{R}}} \\ T_{\text{R}x} & = & T_{\text{R}}\ \text{cos}\ (5.0º). \end{array}$$

Equating $T_{\text{L}x}$ and $T_{\text{R}x}$:
Equation:

$$T_{\text{L}}\ \text{cos}\ (5.0º) = T_{\text{R}}\ \text{cos}\ (5.0º).$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$T_{\text{L}} = T_{\text{R}} = T,$$

as predicted. Now, considering the vertical components (denoted by a subscript y), we can solve for T. Again, since the person is stationary, Newton’s second law implies that net $F_y = 0$. Thus, as illustrated in the free-body diagram in [link],
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}y} = T_{\text{L}y} + T_{\text{R}y} - w = 0.$$

Observing [link], we can use trigonometry to determine the relationship between $T_{\text{L}y}$, $T_{\text{R}y}$, and T. As we determined from the analysis in the horizontal direction, $T_{\text{L}} = T_{\text{R}} = T$:

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right) & = & \frac{T_{\text{L}y}}{T_{\text{L}}} \\ T_{\text{L}y} = T_{\text{L}}\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right) & = & T\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right) \\ \text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right) & = & \frac{T_{\text{R}y}}{T_{\text{R}}} \\ T_{\text{R}y} = T_{\text{R}}\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right) & = & T\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right). \end{array}$$

Now, we can substitute the values for $T_{\text{L}y}$ and $T_{\text{R}y}$, into the net force equation in the vertical direction:

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} F_{\text{net}y} & = & T_{\text{L}y} + T_{\text{R}y} - w = 0 \\ F_{\text{net}y} & = & T\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right) + T\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right) - w = 0 \\ 2\,T\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right) - w & = & 0 \\ 2\,T\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right) & = & w \end{array}$$

and

Equation:

$$T = \frac{w}{2\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right)} = \frac{\text{mg}}{2\,\text{sin}\left(5.0^{\text{o}}\right)},$$

so that

Equation:

$$T = \frac{(70.0\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)}{2(0.0872)},$$

and the tension is

Equation:

$$T = 3900\text{ N}.$$

Discussion

Note that the vertical tension in the wire acts as a normal force that supports the weight of the tightrope walker. The tension is almost six times the 686-N weight of the tightrope walker. Since the wire is nearly horizontal, the vertical component of its tension is only a small fraction of the tension in the wire. The large horizontal components are in opposite directions and cancel, and so most of the tension in the wire is not used to support the weight of the tightrope walker.

If we wish to *create* a very large tension, all we have to do is exert a force perpendicular to a flexible connector, as illustrated in [link]. As we saw in the last example, the weight of the tightrope walker acted as a force perpendicular to the rope. We saw that the tension in the roped related to the weight of the tightrope walker in the following way:

Equation:

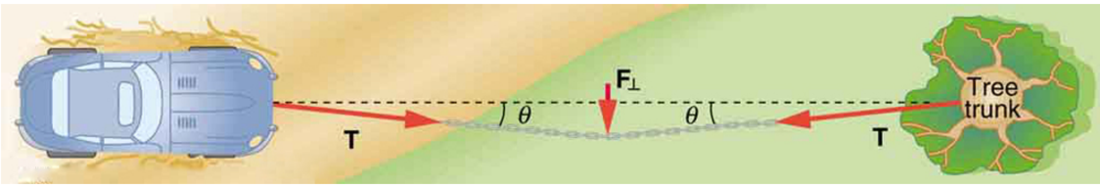
$$T = \frac{w}{2\text{ sin }(\theta)}.$$

We can extend this expression to describe the tension T created when a perpendicular force ($\mathbf{F}_\perp$) is exerted at the middle of a flexible connector:

Equation:

$$T = \frac{F_\perp}{2\text{ sin }(\theta)}.$$

Note that θ is the angle between the horizontal and the bent connector. In this case, T becomes very large as θ approaches zero. Even the relatively small weight of any flexible connector will cause it to sag, since an infinite tension would result if it were horizontal (i.e., $\theta = 0$ and sin $\theta = 0$). (See [link].)



We can create a very large tension in the chain by pushing on it perpendicular to its length, as shown. Suppose we wish to pull a car out of the mud when no tow truck is available. Each time the car moves forward, the chain is tightened to keep it as nearly straight as possible. The tension in the chain is given by $T = \frac{F_{\perp}}{2\,\text{sin}\,(\theta)}$; since θ is small, T is very large. This situation is analogous to the tightrope walker shown in [link], except that the tensions shown here are those transmitted to the car and the tree rather than those acting at the point where $\mathbf{F}_{\perp}$ is applied.

Unless an infinite tension is exerted, any flexible connector—such as the chain at the bottom of the picture—will sag under its own weight, giving a characteristic curve when the weight is evenly

distributed along the length. Suspension bridges—such as the Golden Gate Bridge shown in this image—are essentially very heavy flexible connectors. The weight of the bridge is evenly distributed along the length of flexible connectors, usually cables, which take on the characteristic shape. (credit: Leaflet, Wikimedia Commons)

Extended Topic: Real Forces and Inertial Frames

There is another distinction among forces in addition to the types already mentioned. Some forces are real, whereas others are not. *Real forces* are those that have some physical origin, such as the gravitational pull. Contrastingly, *fictitious forces* are those that arise simply because an observer is in an accelerating frame of reference, such as one that rotates (like a merry-go-round) or undergoes linear acceleration (like a car slowing down). For example, if a satellite is heading due north above Earth's northern hemisphere, then to an observer on Earth it will appear to experience a force to the west that has no physical origin. Of course, what is happening here is that Earth is rotating toward the east and moves east under the satellite. In Earth's frame this looks like a westward force on the satellite, or it can be interpreted as a violation of Newton's first law (the law of inertia). An **inertial frame of reference** is one in which all forces are real and, equivalently, one in which Newton's laws have the simple forms given in this chapter.

Earth's rotation is slow enough that Earth is nearly an inertial frame. You ordinarily must perform precise experiments to observe fictitious forces and the slight departures from Newton's laws, such as the effect just described. On the large scale, such as for the rotation of weather systems and ocean currents, the effects can be easily observed.

The crucial factor in determining whether a frame of reference is inertial is whether it accelerates or rotates relative to a known inertial frame. Unless stated otherwise, all phenomena discussed in this text are considered in inertial frames.

All the forces discussed in this section are real forces, but there are a number of other real forces, such as lift and thrust, that are not discussed in this section. They are more specialized, and it is not necessary to discuss every type of force. It is natural, however, to ask where the basic simplicity we seek to find in physics is in the long list of forces. Are some more basic than others? Are some different manifestations of the same underlying force? The answer to both questions is yes, as will be seen in the next (extended) section and in the treatment of modern physics later in the text.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Forces in 1 Dimension
Explore the forces at work when you try to push a filing cabinet. Create an applied force and see the resulting friction force and total force acting on the cabinet. Charts show the forces, position, velocity, and acceleration vs. time. View a free-body diagram of all the forces (including gravitational and normal forces).

Forces in 1 Dimension

Section Summary

- When objects rest on a surface, the surface applies a force to the object that supports the weight of the object. This supporting force acts

perpendicular to and away from the surface. It is called a normal force, $\mathbf{N}$.

- When objects rest on a non-accelerating horizontal surface, the magnitude of the normal force is equal to the weight of the object:
  Equation:

  $$N = \text{mg}.$$

- When objects rest on an inclined plane that makes an angle θ with the horizontal surface, the weight of the object can be resolved into components that act perpendicular ($\mathbf{w}_{\perp}$) and parallel ($\mathbf{w}_{\|}$) to the surface of the plane. These components can be calculated using:
  Equation:

  $$w_{\|} = w \sin{(\theta)} = \text{mg} \sin{(\theta)}$$

  Equation:

  $$w_{\perp} = w \cos{(\theta)} = \text{mg} \cos{(\theta)}.$$

- The pulling force that acts along a stretched flexible connector, such as a rope or cable, is called tension, $\mathbf{T}$. When a rope supports the weight of an object that is at rest, the tension in the rope is equal to the weight of the object:
  Equation:

  $$T = \text{mg}.$$

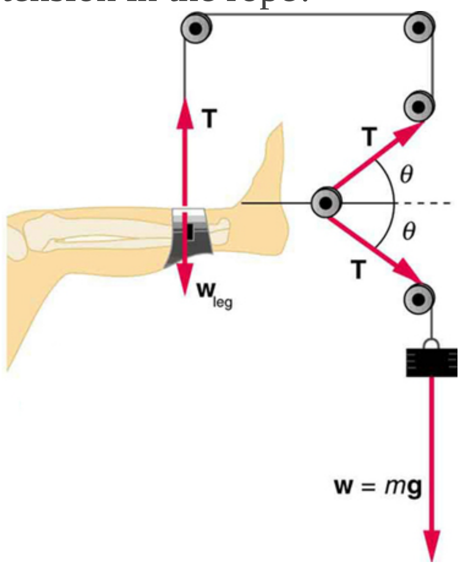
- In any inertial frame of reference (one that is not accelerated or rotated), Newton’s laws have the simple forms given in this chapter and all forces are real forces having a physical origin.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

If a leg is suspended by a traction setup as shown in [link], what is the tension in the rope?



A leg is suspended by a traction system in which wires are used to transmit forces. Frictionless pulleys change the direction of the force T without changing its magnitude.

Exercise:

Problem:

In a traction setup for a broken bone, with pulleys and rope available, how might we be able to increase the force along the tibia using the same weight? (See [link].) (Note that the tibia is the shin bone shown in this image.)

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Two teams of nine members each engage in a tug of war. Each of the first team's members has an average mass of 68 kg and exerts an average force of 1350 N horizontally. Each of the second team's members has an average mass of 73 kg and exerts an average force of 1365 N horizontally. (a) What is magnitude of the acceleration of the two teams? (b) What is the tension in the section of rope between the teams?

Solution:

a. $0.11\ \text{m/s}^2$
b. $1.2 \times 10^4\ \text{N}$

Exercise:

Problem:

What force does a trampoline have to apply to a 45.0-kg gymnast to accelerate her straight up at $7.50\ \text{m/s}^2$? Note that the answer is independent of the velocity of the gymnast—she can be moving either up or down, or be stationary.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the tension in a vertical strand of spider web if a spider of mass 8.00×10^{-5} kg hangs motionless on it. (b) Calculate the tension in a horizontal strand of spider web if the same spider sits motionless in the middle of it much like the tightrope walker in [link]. The strand sags at an angle of 12^{o} below the horizontal. Compare this with the tension in the vertical strand (find their ratio).

Solution:

(a) $7.84 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{N}$

(b) $1.89 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{N}$. This is 2.41 times the tension in the vertical strand.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a 60.0-kg gymnast climbs a rope. (a) What is the tension in the rope if he climbs at a constant speed? (b) What is the tension in the rope if he accelerates upward at a rate of $1.50\ \text{m/s}^2$?

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that, as stated in the text, a force $\mathbf{F}_{\perp}$ exerted on a flexible medium at its center and perpendicular to its length (such as on the tightrope wire in [link]) gives rise to a tension of magnitude $T = \frac{F_{\perp}}{2\ \text{sin}\ (\theta)}$.

Solution:

Newton's second law applied in vertical direction gives

Equation:

$$F_y = F - 2T\ \text{sin}\ \theta = 0$$

Equation:

$$F = 2T\ \text{sin}\ \theta$$

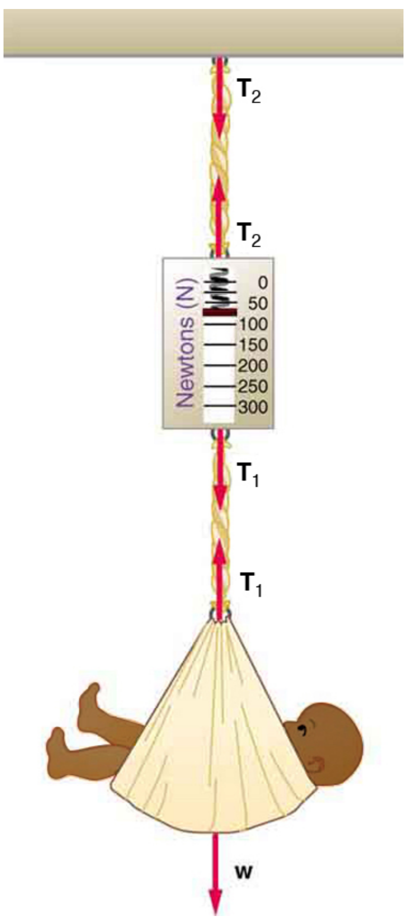
Equation:

$$T = \frac{F}{2\ \text{sin}\ \theta}.$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider the baby being weighed in [link]. (a) What is the mass of the child and basket if a scale reading of 55 N is observed? (b) What is the tension T_1 in the cord attaching the baby to the scale? (c) What is the tension T_2 in the cord attaching the scale to the ceiling, if the scale has a mass of 0.500 kg? (d) Draw a sketch of the situation indicating the system of interest used to solve each part. The masses of the cords are negligible.



A baby is weighed using a spring scale.

Glossary

inertial frame of reference
: a coordinate system that is not accelerating; all forces acting in an inertial frame of reference are real forces, as opposed to fictitious forces that are observed due to an accelerating frame of reference

normal force
: the force that a surface applies to an object to support the weight of the object; acts perpendicular to the surface on which the object rests

tension
: the pulling force that acts along a medium, especially a stretched flexible connector, such as a rope or cable; when a rope supports the weight of an object, the force on the object due to the rope is called a tension force

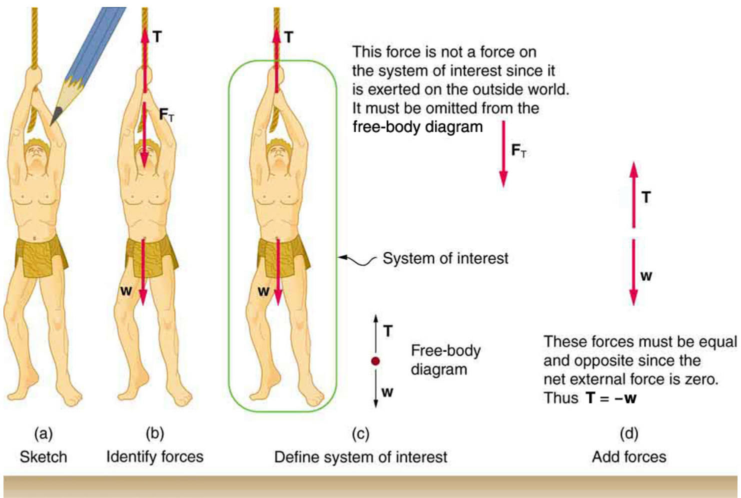
Problem-Solving Strategies

- Understand and apply a problem-solving procedure to solve problems using Newton's laws of motion.

Success in problem solving is obviously necessary to understand and apply physical principles, not to mention the more immediate need of passing exams. The basics of problem solving, presented earlier in this text, are followed here, but specific strategies useful in applying Newton’s laws of motion are emphasized. These techniques also reinforce concepts that are useful in many other areas of physics. Many problem-solving strategies are stated outright in the worked examples, and so the following techniques should reinforce skills you have already begun to develop.

Problem-Solving Strategy for Newton’s Laws of Motion

Step 1. As usual, it is first necessary to identify the physical principles involved. *Once it is determined that Newton’s laws of motion are involved (if the problem involves forces), it is particularly important to draw a careful sketch of the situation*. Such a sketch is shown in [link](a). Then, as in [link](b), use arrows to represent all forces, label them carefully, and make their lengths and directions correspond to the forces they represent (whenever sufficient information exists).



(a) A sketch of Tarzan hanging from a vine. (b) Arrows are used to represent all forces. $\mathbf{T}$ is the tension in the vine above Tarzan, $\mathbf{F}_{\text{T}}$ is the force he exerts on the vine, and $\mathbf{w}$ is his weight. All other forces, such as the nudge of a breeze, are assumed negligible. (c) Suppose we are given the ape man’s mass and asked to find the tension in the vine. We then define the system of interest as shown and draw a free-body diagram. $\mathbf{F}_{\text{T}}$ is no longer shown, because it is not a force acting on the system of interest; rather, $\mathbf{F}_{\text{T}}$ acts on the outside world. (d) Showing only the arrows, the head-to-tail method of addition is used. It is apparent that $\mathbf{T} = -\mathbf{w}$, if Tarzan is stationary.

Step 2. Identify what needs to be determined and what is known or can be inferred from the problem as stated. That is, make a list of knowns and unknowns. *Then carefully determine the system of interest*. This decision is a crucial step, since Newton’s second law involves only external forces. Once the system of interest has been identified, it becomes possible to determine which forces are external and which are internal, a necessary step to

employ Newton’s second law. (See [link](c).) Newton’s third law may be used to identify whether forces are exerted between components of a system (internal) or between the system and something outside (external). As illustrated earlier in this chapter, the system of interest depends on what question we need to answer. This choice becomes easier with practice, eventually developing into an almost unconscious process. Skill in clearly defining systems will be beneficial in later chapters as well.

A diagram showing the system of interest and all of the external forces is called a **free-body diagram**. Only forces are shown on free-body diagrams, not acceleration or velocity. We have drawn several of these in worked examples. [link](c) shows a free-body diagram for the system of interest. Note that no internal forces are shown in a free-body diagram.

Step 3. Once a free-body diagram is drawn, *Newton’s second law can be applied to solve the problem*. This is done in [link](d) for a particular situation. In general, once external forces are clearly identified in free-body diagrams, it should be a straightforward task to put them into equation form and solve for the unknown, as done in all previous examples. If the problem is one-dimensional—that is, if all forces are parallel—then they add like scalars. If the problem is two-dimensional, then it must be broken down into a pair of one-dimensional problems. This is done by projecting the force vectors onto a set of axes chosen for convenience. As seen in previous examples, the choice of axes can simplify the problem. For example, when an incline is involved, a set of axes with one axis parallel to the incline and one perpendicular to it is most convenient. It is almost always convenient to make one axis parallel to the direction of motion, if this is known.

Note:
Applying Newton’s Second Law
Before you write net force equations, it is critical to determine whether the system is accelerating in a particular direction. If the acceleration is zero in a particular direction, then the net force is zero in that direction. Similarly, if the acceleration is nonzero in a particular direction, then the net force is described by the equation: $F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma}$. For example, if the system is accelerating in the horizontal direction, but it is not accelerating in the vertical direction, then you will have the following conclusions:
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net }x} = \text{ma},$$

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net }y} = 0.$$

You will need this information in order to determine unknown forces acting in a system.

Step 4. As always, *check the solution to see whether it is reasonable*. In some cases, this is obvious. For example, it is reasonable to find that friction causes an object to slide down an incline more slowly than when no friction exists. In practice, intuition develops gradually through problem solving, and with experience it becomes progressively easier to judge whether an answer is reasonable. Another way to check your solution is to check the units. If you are solving for force and end up with units of m/s, then you have made a mistake.

Section Summary

- To solve problems involving Newton’s laws of motion, follow the procedure described:
  1. Draw a sketch of the problem.
  2. Identify known and unknown quantities, and identify the system of interest. Draw a free-body diagram, which is a sketch showing all of the forces acting on an object. The object is represented by a dot, and the forces are represented by vectors extending in different directions from the dot. If vectors act in

directions that are not horizontal or vertical, resolve the vectors into horizontal and vertical components and draw them on the free-body diagram.

3. Write Newton’s second law in the horizontal and vertical directions and add the forces acting on the object. If the object does not accelerate in a particular direction (for example, the x-direction) then $F_{\text{net }x} = 0$. If the object does accelerate in that direction, $F_{\text{net }x} = \text{ma}$.
4. Check your answer. Is the answer reasonable? Are the units correct?

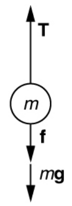
Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A 5.00×10^5-kg rocket is accelerating straight up. Its engines produce 1.250×10^7 N of thrust, and air resistance is 4.50×10^6 N. What is the rocket’s acceleration? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Newton’s laws of motion.

Solution:



Using the free-body diagram:

$$F_{\text{net}} = T - f - mg = \text{ma},$$

so that

$$a = \frac{T-f-\text{mg}}{m} = \frac{1.250\times10^7\text{ N}-4.50\times10^6\ N-(5.00\times10^5\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)}{5.00\times10^5\text{ kg}} = 6.20\text{ m/s}^2.$$

Exercise:

Problem:

The wheels of a midsize car exert a force of 2100 N backward on the road to accelerate the car in the forward direction. If the force of friction including air resistance is 250 N and the acceleration of the car is 1.80 m/s^2, what is the mass of the car plus its occupants? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Newton’s laws of motion. For this situation, draw a free-body diagram and write the net force equation.

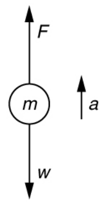
Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the force a 70.0-kg high jumper must exert on the ground to produce an upward acceleration 4.00 times the acceleration due to gravity. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Newton’s laws of motion.

Solution:

Use Newton’s laws of motion.



Given : $a = 4.00g = (4.00)(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) = 39.2\ \text{m/s}^2$; $m = 70.0$ kg, Find: F.

$\sum F{=}{+}F - w = \text{ma}$, so that $F = \text{ma} + w = \text{ma} + \text{mg} = m(a+g)$.

$F = (70.0\ \text{kg})[(39.2\ \text{m/s}^2) + (9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)$ $= 3.43 \times 10^3\text{N}$. The force exerted by the high-jumper is actually down on the ground, but F is up from the ground and makes him jump.

This result is reasonable, since it is quite possible for a person to exert a force of the magnitude of 10^3 N.

Exercise:

Problem:

When landing after a spectacular somersault, a 40.0-kg gymnast decelerates by pushing straight down on the mat. Calculate the force she must exert if her deceleration is 7.00 times the acceleration due to gravity. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Newton’s laws of motion.

Exercise:

Problem:

A freight train consists of two 8.00×10^4-kg engines and 45 cars with average masses of 5.50×10^4 kg . (a) What force must each engine exert backward on the track to accelerate the train at a rate of $5.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m/s}^2$ if the force of friction is 7.50×10^5 N, assuming the engines exert identical forces? This is not a large frictional force for such a massive system. Rolling friction for trains is small, and consequently trains are very energy-efficient transportation systems. (b) What is the force in the coupling between the 37th and 38th cars (this is the force each exerts on the other), assuming all cars have the same mass and that friction is evenly distributed among all of the cars and engines?

Solution:

(a) 4.41×10^5 N

(b) 1.50×10^5 N

Exercise:

Problem:

Commercial airplanes are sometimes pushed out of the passenger loading area by a tractor. (a) An 1800-kg tractor exerts a force of 1.75×10^4 N backward on the pavement, and the system experiences forces resisting motion that total 2400 N. If the acceleration is $0.150\ \text{m/s}^2$, what is the mass of the airplane? (b) Calculate the force exerted by the tractor on the airplane, assuming 2200 N of the friction is experienced by the airplane. (c) Draw two sketches showing the systems of interest used to solve each part, including the free-body diagrams for each.

Exercise:

Problem:

A 1100-kg car pulls a boat on a trailer. (a) What total force resists the motion of the car, boat, and trailer, if the car exerts a 1900-N force on the road and produces an acceleration of $0.550\ \text{m/s}^2$? The mass of the boat plus trailer is 700 kg. (b) What is the force in the hitch between the car and the trailer if 80% of the resisting forces are experienced by the boat and trailer?

Solution:

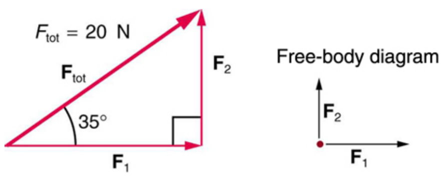
(a) $910\ \text{N}$

(b) $1.11 \times 10^3\ \text{N}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the magnitudes of the forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ that add to give the total force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{tot}}$ shown in [link]. This may be done either graphically or by using trigonometry. (b) Show graphically that the same total force is obtained independent of the order of addition of $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$. (c) Find the direction and magnitude of some other pair of vectors that add to give $\mathbf{F}_{\text{tot}}$. Draw these to scale on the same drawing used in part (b) or a similar picture.



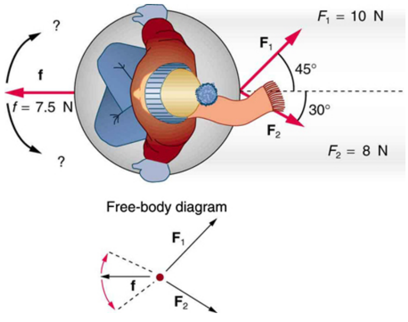
Exercise:

Problem:

Two children pull a third child on a snow saucer sled exerting forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ as shown from above in [link]. Find the acceleration of the 49.00-kg sled and child system. Note that the direction of the frictional force is unspecified; it will be in the opposite direction of the sum of $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$.

Solution:

$a = 0.139\ \text{m/s}$, $\theta = 12.4°$ north of east



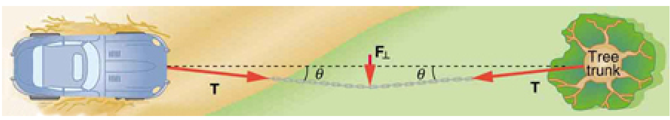
An overhead view of the horizontal forces acting on a

child’s snow saucer sled.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose your car was mired deeply in the mud and you wanted to use the method illustrated in [link] to pull it out. (a) What force would you have to exert perpendicular to the center of the rope to produce a force of 12,000 N on the car if the angle is 2.00°? In this part, explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Newton’s laws of motion. (b) Real ropes stretch under such forces. What force would be exerted on the car if the angle increases to 7.00° and you still apply the force found in part (a) to its center?



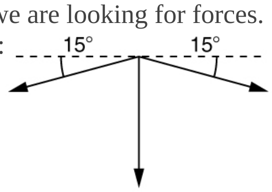
Exercise:

Problem:

What force is exerted on the tooth in [link] if the tension in the wire is 25.0 N? Note that the force applied to the tooth is smaller than the tension in the wire, but this is necessitated by practical considerations of how force can be applied in the mouth. Explicitly show how you follow steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Newton’s laws of motion.

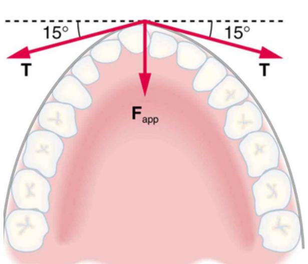
Solution:

Use Newton’s laws since we are looking for forces.
Draw a free-body diagram:



The tension is given as $T = 25.0\ \text{N}$. Find F_{app}. Using Newton’s laws gives: $\Sigma F_y = 0$, so that y- applied force is due to the components of the two tensions: $F_{\text{app}} = 2\,T\,\sin\theta = 2(25.0\ \text{N})\sin(15^{\text{o}}) =$

This seems reasonable, since the applied tensions should be greater than the force applied to the tooth.

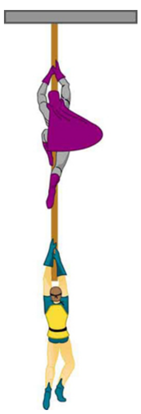


Braces are used to apply forces to teeth to realign them. Shown in this figure are the tensions applied by the wire to the protruding tooth. The total force applied to the tooth by the wire, $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$, points straight toward the back of the mouth.

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows Superhero and Trusty Sidekick hanging motionless from a rope. Superhero’s mass is 90.0 kg, while Trusty Sidekick’s is 55.0 kg, and the mass of the rope is negligible. (a) Draw a free-body diagram of the situation showing all forces acting on Superhero, Trusty Sidekick, and the rope. (b) Find the tension in the rope above Superhero. (c) Find the tension in the rope between Superhero and Trusty Sidekick. Indicate on your free-body diagram the system of interest used to solve each part.



Superhero and Trusty Sidekick hang motionless on a rope as they try to figure out what to do next. Will the tension be the same everywhere in the rope?

Exercise:

Problem:

A nurse pushes a cart by exerting a force on the handle at a downward angle 35.0^{o} below the horizontal. The loaded cart has a mass of 28.0 kg, and the force of friction is 60.0 N. (a) Draw a free-body diagram for the system of interest. (b) What force must the nurse exert to move at a constant velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

Construct Your Own Problem Consider the tension in an elevator cable during the time the elevator starts from rest and accelerates its load upward to some cruising velocity. Taking the elevator and its load to be the system of interest, draw a free-body diagram. Then calculate the tension in the cable. Among the things to consider are the mass of the elevator and its load, the final velocity, and the time taken to reach that velocity.

Exercise:

Problem:

Construct Your Own Problem Consider two people pushing a toboggan with four children on it up a snow-covered slope. Construct a problem in which you calculate the acceleration of the toboggan and its load. Include a free-body diagram of the appropriate system of interest as the basis for your analysis. Show vector forces and their components and explain the choice of coordinates. Among the things to be considered are the forces exerted by those pushing, the angle of the slope, and the masses of the toboggan and children.

Exercise:

Problem:

Unreasonable Results (a) Repeat [link], but assume an acceleration of $1.20\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$ is produced. (b) What is unreasonable about the result? (c) Which premise is unreasonable, and why is it unreasonable?

Exercise:

Problem:

Unreasonable Results (a) What is the initial acceleration of a rocket that has a mass of $1.50 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{kg}$ at takeoff, the engines of which produce a thrust of $2.00 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{N}$? Do not neglect gravity. (b) What is unreasonable about the result? (This result has been unintentionally achieved by several real rockets.) (c) Which premise is unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent? (You may find it useful to compare this problem to the rocket problem earlier in this section.)

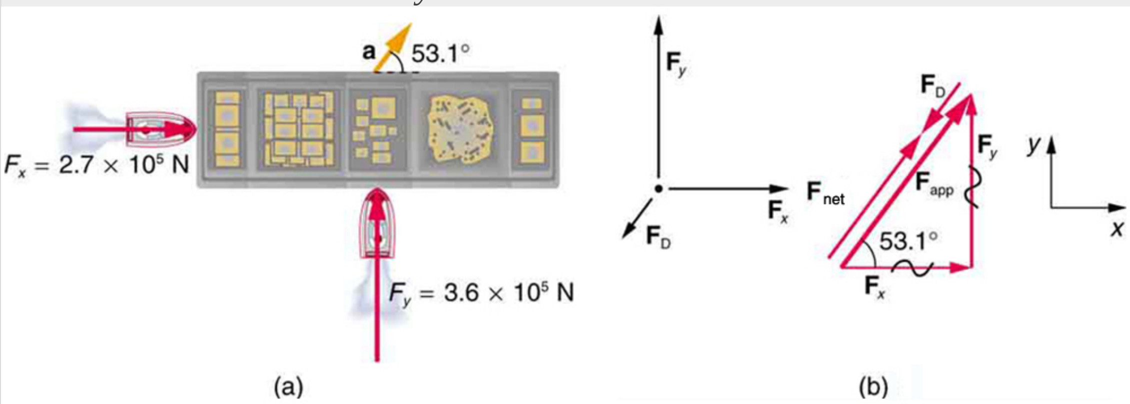
Further Applications of Newton’s Laws of Motion

- Apply problem-solving techniques to solve for quantities in more complex systems of forces.
- Integrate concepts from kinematics to solve problems using Newton's laws of motion.

There are many interesting applications of Newton’s laws of motion, a few more of which are presented in this section. These serve also to illustrate some further subtleties of physics and to help build problem-solving skills.

Example:
Drag Force on a Barge

Suppose two tugboats push on a barge at different angles, as shown in [link]. The first tugboat exerts a force of 2.7×10^5 N in the *x*-direction, and the second tugboat exerts a force of 3.6×10^5 N in the *y*-direction.



(a) A view from above of two tugboats pushing on a barge. (b) The free-body diagram for the ship contains only forces acting in the plane of the water. It omits the two vertical forces—the weight of the barge and the buoyant force of the water supporting it cancel and are not shown. Since the applied forces are perpendicular, the *x*- and *y*-axes are in the same direction as $\mathbf{F}_x$ and $\mathbf{F}_y$. The problem quickly becomes a one-dimensional problem along the direction of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$, since friction is in the direction opposite to $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$.

If the mass of the barge is 5.0×10^6 kg and its acceleration is observed to be $7.5 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m/s}^2$ in the direction shown, what is the drag force of the water on the

barge resisting the motion? (Note: drag force is a frictional force exerted by fluids, such as air or water. The drag force opposes the motion of the object.)

Strategy

The directions and magnitudes of acceleration and the applied forces are given in [link]**(a)**. We will define the total force of the tugboats on the barge as $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$ so that:

Equation:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}=\mathbf{F}_x+\mathbf{F}_y$$

Since the barge is flat bottomed, the drag of the water $\mathbf{F}_{\text{D}}$ will be in the direction opposite to $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$, as shown in the free-body diagram in [link](b). The system of interest here is the barge, since the forces on *it* are given as well as its acceleration. Our strategy is to find the magnitude and direction of the net applied force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$, and then apply Newton’s second law to solve for the drag force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{D}}$.

Solution

Since $\mathbf{F}_x$ and $\mathbf{F}_y$ are perpendicular, the magnitude and direction of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$ are easily found. First, the resultant magnitude is given by the Pythagorean theorem:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{app}} &= \sqrt{\mathrm{F}_x^2+\mathrm{F}_y^2} \\ F_{\text{app}} &= \sqrt{(2.7\times10^5\ \mathrm{N})^2+(3.6\times10^5\ \mathrm{N})^2} = 4.5\times10^5\ \mathrm{N}. \end{aligned}$$

The angle is given by

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \theta &= \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{F_y}{F_x}\right) \\ \theta &= \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{3.6\times10^5\ \mathrm{N}}{2.7\times10^5\ \mathrm{N}}\right) = 53^{\mathrm{o}}, \end{aligned}$$

which we know, because of Newton’s first law, is the same direction as the acceleration. $\mathbf{F}_{\text{D}}$ is in the opposite direction of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$, since it acts to slow down the acceleration. Therefore, the net external force is in the same direction as $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$, but its magnitude is slightly less than $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$. The problem is now one-dimensional. From [link]**(b)**, we can see that

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}}=F_{\text{app}}-F_{\text{D}}.$$

But Newton’s second law states that

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma}.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$F_{\text{app}} - F_{\text{D}} = \text{ma}.$$

This can be solved for the magnitude of the drag force of the water F_{D} in terms of known quantities:

Equation:

$$F_{\text{D}} = F_{\text{app}} - \text{ma}.$$

Substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$\text{F}_{\text{D}} = (4.5 \times 10^5\ \text{N}) - (5.0 \times 10^6\ \text{kg})(7.5 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m/s}^2) = 7.5 \times 10^4\ \text{N}.$$

The direction of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{D}}$ has already been determined to be in the direction opposite to $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$, or at an angle of 53^{o} south of west.

Discussion

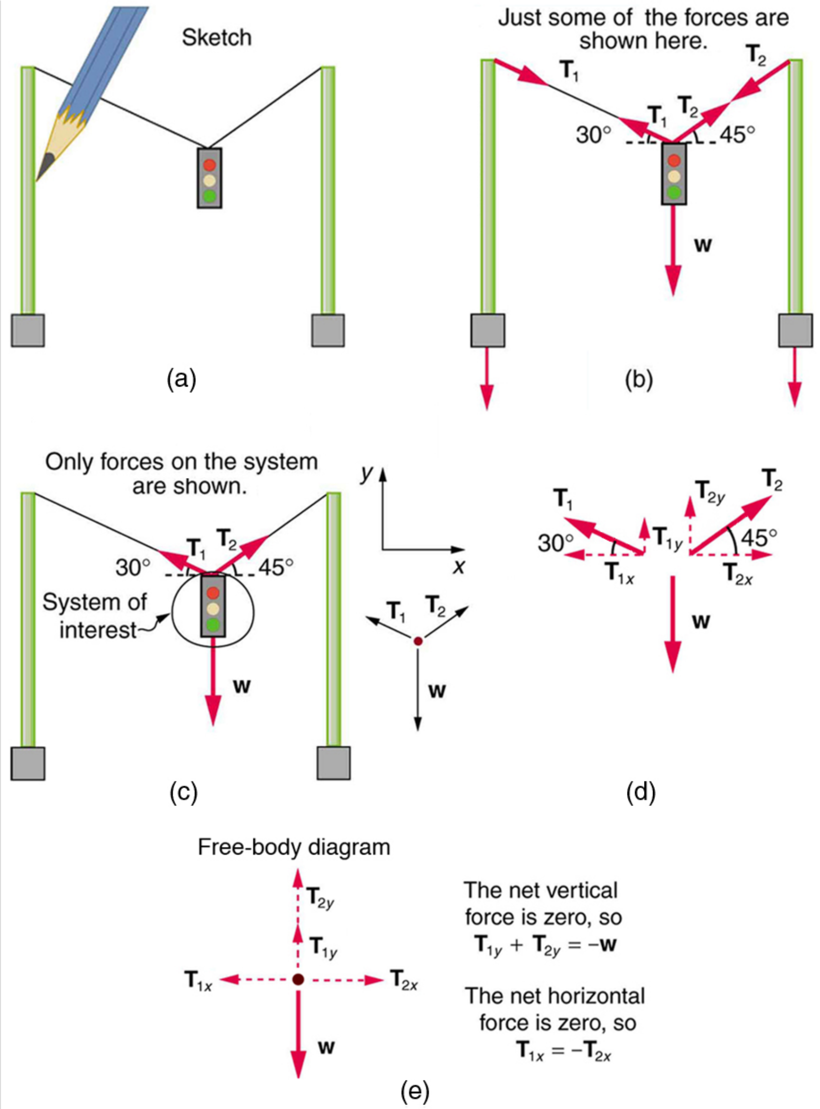
The numbers used in this example are reasonable for a moderately large barge. It is certainly difficult to obtain larger accelerations with tugboats, and small speeds are desirable to avoid running the barge into the docks. Drag is relatively small for a well-designed hull at low speeds, consistent with the answer to this example, where F_{D} is less than 1/600th of the weight of the ship.

In the earlier example of a tightrope walker we noted that the tensions in wires supporting a mass were equal only because the angles on either side were equal. Consider the following example, where the angles are not equal; slightly more trigonometry is involved.

Example:

Different Tensions at Different Angles

Consider the traffic light (mass 15.0 kg) suspended from two wires as shown in [link]. Find the tension in each wire, neglecting the masses of the wires.



A traffic light is suspended from two wires. (b) Some of the forces involved. (c) Only forces acting on the system are shown here. The free-body diagram for the traffic light is also shown. (d) The forces projected onto vertical (*y*) and horizontal (*x*) axes. The horizontal components of the tensions must cancel, and the sum of the vertical components of the tensions must equal the weight of the traffic light. (e) The free-body diagram shows the vertical and horizontal forces acting on the traffic light.

Strategy

The system of interest is the traffic light, and its free-body diagram is shown in [link] (c). The three forces involved are not parallel, and so they must be projected onto a coordinate system. The most convenient coordinate system has one axis vertical and one horizontal, and the vector projections on it are shown in part (d) of the figure. There are two unknowns in this problem (T_1 and T_2), so two equations are needed to find them. These two equations come from applying Newton's second law along the vertical and horizontal axes, noting that the net external force is zero along each axis because acceleration is zero.

Solution

First consider the horizontal or *x*-axis:

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}x} = T_{2x} - T_{1x} = 0.$$

Thus, as you might expect,

Equation:

$$T_{1x} = T_{2x}.$$

This gives us the following relationship between T_1 and T_2:

Equation:

$$T_1 \text{ cos } (30^{\text{o}}) = T_2 \text{ cos } (45^{\text{o}}).$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$T_2 = (1.225)T_1.$$

Note that T_1 and T_2 are not equal in this case, because the angles on either side are not equal. It is reasonable that T_2 ends up being greater than T_1, because it is exerted more vertically than T_1.

Now consider the force components along the vertical or *y*-axis:

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net }y} = T_{1y} + T_{2y} - w = 0.$$

This implies

Equation:

$$T_{1y} + T_{2y} = w.$$

Substituting the expressions for the vertical components gives

Equation:

$$T_1 \sin(30^{\circ}) + T_2 \sin(45^{\circ}) = w.$$

There are two unknowns in this equation, but substituting the expression for T_2 in terms of T_1 reduces this to one equation with one unknown:

Equation:

$$T_1(0.500) + (1.225T_1)(0.707) = w = \text{mg},$$

which yields

Equation:

$$(1.366)T_1 = (15.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2).$$

Solving this last equation gives the magnitude of T_1 to be

Equation:

$$T_1 = 108\ \text{N}.$$

Finally, the magnitude of T_2 is determined using the relationship between them, T_2 = 1.225 T_1, found above. Thus we obtain

Equation:

$$T_2 = 132\ \text{N}.$$

Discussion

Both tensions would be larger if both wires were more horizontal, and they will be equal if and only if the angles on either side are the same (as they were in the earlier example of a tightrope walker).

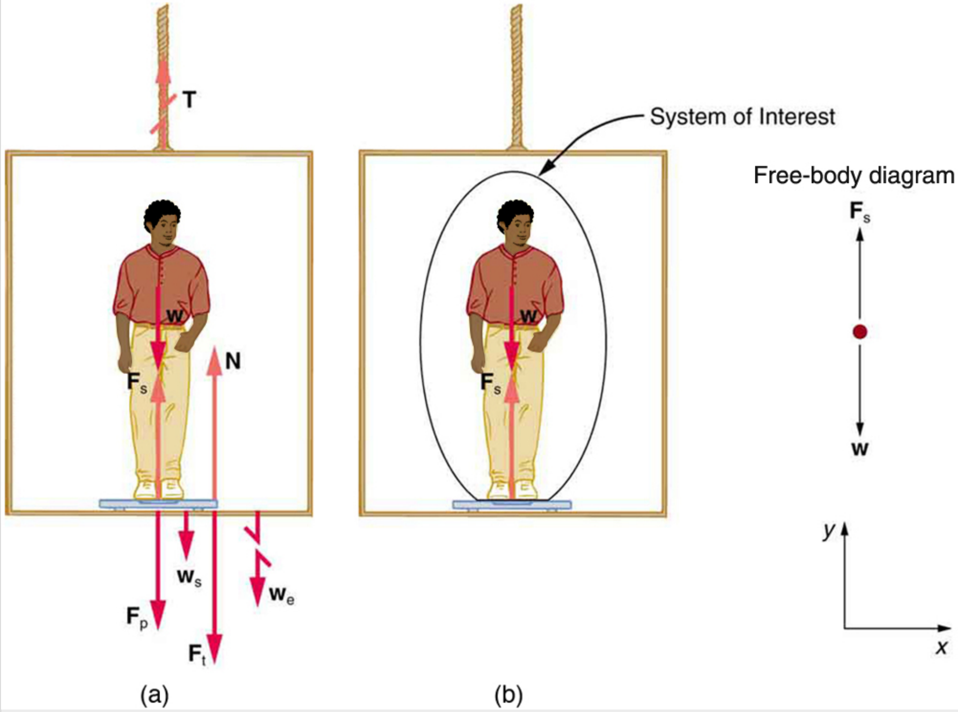
The bathroom scale is an excellent example of a normal force acting on a body. It provides a quantitative reading of how much it must push upward to support the weight of an object. But can you predict what you would see on the dial of a bathroom scale if you stood on it during an elevator ride? Will you see a value greater than your weight when the elevator starts up? What about when the elevator moves upward at a constant speed: will the scale still read more than your weight at rest? Consider the following example.

Example:

What Does the Bathroom Scale Read in an Elevator?

[link] shows a 75.0-kg man (weight of about 165 lb) standing on a bathroom scale in an elevator. Calculate the scale reading: (a) if the elevator accelerates upward at a rate

of 1.20 m/s^2, and (b) if the elevator moves upward at a constant speed of 1 m/s.



(a) The various forces acting when a person stands on a bathroom scale in an elevator. The arrows are approximately correct for when the elevator is accelerating upward—broken arrows represent forces too large to be drawn to scale. $\mathbf{T}$ is the tension in the supporting cable, $\mathbf{w}$ is the weight of the person, $\mathbf{w}_\text{s}$ is the weight of the scale, $\mathbf{w}_\text{e}$ is the weight of the elevator, $\mathbf{F}_\text{s}$ is the force of the scale on the person, $\mathbf{F}_\text{p}$ is the force of the person on the scale, $\mathbf{F}_\text{t}$ is the force of the scale on the floor of the elevator, and $\mathbf{N}$ is the force of the floor upward on the scale. (b) The free-body diagram shows only the external forces acting on the designated system of interest—the person.

Strategy

If the scale is accurate, its reading will equal F_p, the magnitude of the force the person exerts downward on it. [link](a) shows the numerous forces acting on the elevator, scale, and person. It makes this one-dimensional problem look much more formidable than if the person is chosen to be the system of interest and a free-body diagram is drawn as in [link](b). Analysis of the free-body diagram using Newton's laws can produce answers to both parts (a) and (b) of this example, as well as some other questions that might arise. The only forces acting on the person are his weight $\mathbf{w}$ and the upward force of the scale $\mathbf{F}_\text{s}$. According to Newton's third law $\mathbf{F}_\text{p}$ and $\mathbf{F}_\text{s}$ are

equal in magnitude and opposite in direction, so that we need to find F_{s} in order to find what the scale reads. We can do this, as usual, by applying Newton's second law,

Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma}.$$

From the free-body diagram we see that $F_{\text{net}} = F_{\text{s}} - w$, so that

Equation:

$$F_{\text{s}} - w = \text{ma}.$$

Solving for F_{s} gives an equation with only one unknown:

Equation:

$$F_{\text{s}} = \text{ma} + w,$$

or, because $w = mg$, simply

Equation:

$$F_{\text{s}} = \text{ma} + \text{mg}.$$

No assumptions were made about the acceleration, and so this solution should be valid for a variety of accelerations in addition to the ones in this exercise.

Solution for (a)

In this part of the problem, $a = 1.20\ \text{m/s}^2$, so that

Equation:

$$F_{\text{s}} = (75.0\ \text{kg})(1.20\ \text{m/s}^2) + (75.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2),$$

yielding

Equation:

$$F_{\text{s}} = 825\ \text{N}.$$

Discussion for (a)

This is about 185 lb. What would the scale have read if he were stationary? Since his acceleration would be zero, the force of the scale would be equal to his weight:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{net}} &= \text{ma} = 0 = F_{\text{s}} - w \\ F_{\text{s}} &= w = \text{mg} \\ F_{\text{s}} &= (75.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) \\ F_{\text{s}} &= 735\ \text{N}. \end{aligned}$$

So, the scale reading in the elevator is greater than his 735-N (165 lb) weight. This means that the scale is pushing up on the person with a force greater than his weight, as it must in order to accelerate him upward. Clearly, the greater the acceleration of the elevator, the greater the scale reading, consistent with what you feel in rapidly accelerating versus slowly accelerating elevators.

Solution for (b)

Now, what happens when the elevator reaches a constant upward velocity? Will the scale still read more than his weight? For any constant velocity—up, down, or stationary—acceleration is zero because $a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$, and $\Delta v = 0$.

Thus,

Equation:

$$F_{\text{s}} = \text{ma} + \text{mg} = 0 + \text{mg}.$$

Now

Equation:

$$F_{\text{s}} = (75.0\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2),$$

which gives

Equation:

$$F_{\text{s}} = 735\ \text{N}.$$

Discussion for (b)

The scale reading is 735 N, which equals the person's weight. This will be the case whenever the elevator has a constant velocity—moving up, moving down, or stationary.

The solution to the previous example also applies to an elevator accelerating downward, as mentioned. When an elevator accelerates downward, a is negative, and the scale reading is *less* than the weight of the person, until a constant downward velocity is reached, at which time the scale reading again becomes equal to the person's weight. If the elevator is in free-fall and accelerating downward at g, then the scale reading will be zero and the person will *appear* to be weightless.

Integrating Concepts: Newton's Laws of Motion and Kinematics

Physics is most interesting and most powerful when applied to general situations that involve more than a narrow set of physical principles. Newton's laws of motion can also be integrated with other concepts that have been discussed previously in this text to

solve problems of motion. For example, forces produce accelerations, a topic of kinematics, and hence the relevance of earlier chapters. When approaching problems that involve various types of forces, acceleration, velocity, and/or position, use the following steps to approach the problem:

Problem-Solving Strategy

Step 1. *Identify which physical principles are involved*. Listing the givens and the quantities to be calculated will allow you to identify the principles involved.
Step 2. *Solve the problem using strategies outlined in the text*. If these are available for the specific topic, you should refer to them. You should also refer to the sections of the text that deal with a particular topic. The following worked example illustrates how these strategies are applied to an integrated concept problem.

Example:
What Force Must a Soccer Player Exert to Reach Top Speed?
A soccer player starts from rest and accelerates forward, reaching a velocity of 8.00 m/s in 2.50 s. (a) What was his average acceleration? (b) What average force did he exert backward on the ground to achieve this acceleration? The player's mass is 70.0 kg, and air resistance is negligible.
Strategy

To solve an *integrated concept problem*, we must first identify the physical principles involved and identify the chapters in which they are found. Part (a) of this example considers *acceleration* along a straight line. This is a topic of *kinematics*. Part (b) deals with *force*, a topic of *dynamics* found in this chapter.

The following solutions to each part of the example illustrate how the specific

problem-solving strategies are applied. These involve identifying knowns and unknowns, checking to see if the answer is reasonable, and so forth.

Solution for (a)
We are given the initial and final velocities (zero and 8.00 m/s forward); thus, the change in velocity is $\Delta v = 8.00 \text{ m/s}$. We are given the elapsed time, and so $\Delta t = 2.50$ s. The unknown is acceleration, which can be found from its definition:
Equation:

$$a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}.$$

Substituting the known values yields
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} a &= \frac{8.00 \text{ m/s}}{2.50 \text{ s}} \\ &= 3.20 \text{ m/s}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)
This is an attainable acceleration for an athlete in good condition.
Solution for (b)
Here we are asked to find the average force the player exerts backward to achieve this forward acceleration. Neglecting air resistance, this would be equal in magnitude to the net external force on the player, since this force causes his acceleration. Since we now know the player's acceleration and are given his mass, we can use Newton's second law to find the force exerted. That is,
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma}.$$

Substituting the known values of m and a gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{net}} &= (70.0 \text{ kg})(3.20 \text{ m/s}^2) \\ &= 224 \text{ N}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (b)
This is about 50 pounds, a reasonable average force.
This worked example illustrates how to apply problem-solving strategies to situations that include topics from different chapters. The first step is to identify the physical principles involved in the problem. The second step is to solve for the unknown using familiar problem-solving strategies. These strategies are found throughout the text, and many worked examples show how to use them for single topics. You will find these

techniques for integrated concept problems useful in applications of physics outside of a physics course, such as in your profession, in other science disciplines, and in everyday life. The following problems will build your skills in the broad application of physical principles.

Summary

- Newton's laws of motion can be applied in numerous situations to solve problems of motion.
- Some problems will contain multiple force vectors acting in different directions on an object. Be sure to draw diagrams, resolve all force vectors into horizontal and vertical components, and draw a free-body diagram. Always analyze the direction in which an object accelerates so that you can determine whether $F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma}$ or $F_{\text{net}} = 0$.
- The normal force on an object is not always equal in magnitude to the weight of the object. If an object is accelerating, the normal force will be less than or greater than the weight of the object. Also, if the object is on an inclined plane, the normal force will always be less than the full weight of the object.
- Some problems will contain various physical quantities, such as forces, acceleration, velocity, or position. You can apply concepts from kinematics and dynamics in order to solve these problems of motion.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

To simulate the apparent weightlessness of space orbit, astronauts are trained in the hold of a cargo aircraft that is accelerating downward at g. Why will they appear to be weightless, as measured by standing on a bathroom scale, in this accelerated frame of reference? Is there any difference between their apparent weightlessness in orbit and in the aircraft?

Exercise:

Problem:

A cartoon shows the toupee coming off the head of an elevator passenger when the elevator rapidly stops during an upward ride. Can this really happen without the person being tied to the floor of the elevator? Explain your answer.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A flea jumps by exerting a force of 1.20×10^{-5} N straight down on the ground. A breeze blowing on the flea parallel to the ground exerts a force of 0.500×10^{-6} N on the flea. Find the direction and magnitude of the acceleration of the flea if its mass is 6.00×10^{-7} kg. Do not neglect the gravitational force.

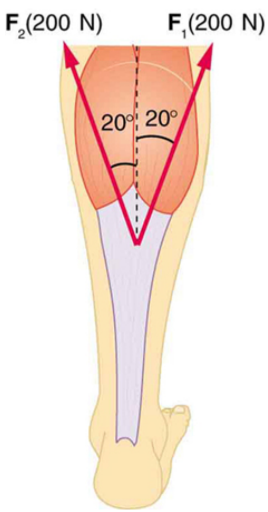
Solution:

$10.2\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$, 4.67^{o} from vertical

Exercise:

Problem:

Two muscles in the back of the leg pull upward on the Achilles tendon, as shown in [link]. (These muscles are called the medial and lateral heads of the gastrocnemius muscle.) Find the magnitude and direction of the total force on the Achilles tendon. What type of movement could be caused by this force?



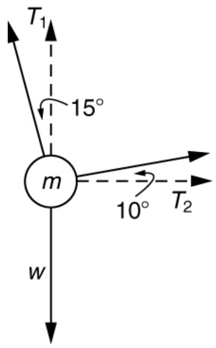
Achilles tendon

Exercise:

Problem:

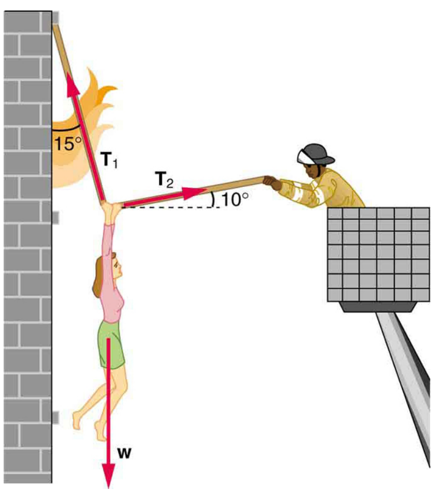
A 76.0-kg person is being pulled away from a burning building as shown in [link]. Calculate the tension in the two ropes if the person is momentarily motionless. Include a free-body diagram in your solution.

Solution:



$$T_1 = 736\text{ N}$$

$$T_2 = 194\text{ N}$$



The force $\mathbf{T}_2$ needed to hold steady the person being rescued from the fire is less than her weight and less than the force $\mathbf{T}_1$ in the other rope, since the more

vertical rope supports a greater part of her weight (a vertical force).

Exercise:

Problem:

Integrated Concepts A 35.0-kg dolphin decelerates from 12.0 to 7.50 m/s in 2.30 s to join another dolphin in play. What average force was exerted to slow him if he was moving horizontally? (The gravitational force is balanced by the buoyant force of the water.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Integrated Concepts When starting a foot race, a 70.0-kg sprinter exerts an average force of 650 N backward on the ground for 0.800 s. (a) What is his final speed? (b) How far does he travel?

Solution:

(a) 7.43 m/s

(b) 2.97 m

Exercise:

Problem:

Integrated Concepts A large rocket has a mass of $2.00\times 10^{6}\text{ kg}$ at takeoff, and its engines produce a thrust of $3.50\times 10^{7}\text{ N}$. (a) Find its initial acceleration if it takes off vertically. (b) How long does it take to reach a velocity of 120 km/h straight up, assuming constant mass and thrust? (c) In reality, the mass of a rocket decreases significantly as its fuel is consumed. Describe qualitatively how this affects the acceleration and time for this motion.

Exercise:

Problem:

Integrated Concepts A basketball player jumps straight up for a ball. To do this, he lowers his body 0.300 m and then accelerates through this distance by forcefully straightening his legs. This player leaves the floor with a vertical velocity sufficient to carry him 0.900 m above the floor. (a) Calculate his velocity when he leaves the floor. (b) Calculate his acceleration while he is straightening his legs. He goes from zero to the velocity found in part (a) in a distance of 0.300 m. (c) Calculate the force he exerts on the floor to do this, given that his mass is 110 kg.

Solution:

(a) $4.20\ \text{m/s}$

(b) $29.4\ \text{m/s}^2$

(c) $4.31 \times 10^3\ \text{N}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Integrated Concepts A 2.50-kg fireworks shell is fired straight up from a mortar and reaches a height of 110 m. (a) Neglecting air resistance (a poor assumption, but we will make it for this example), calculate the shell's velocity when it leaves the mortar. (b) The mortar itself is a tube 0.450 m long. Calculate the average acceleration of the shell in the tube as it goes from zero to the velocity found in (a). (c) What is the average force on the shell in the mortar? Express your answer in newtons and as a ratio to the weight of the shell.

Exercise:

Problem:

Integrated Concepts Repeat [link] for a shell fired at an angle 10.0º from the vertical.

Solution:

(a) 47.1 m/s

(b) $2.47 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}^2$

(c) $6.18 \times 10^3\ \text{N}$. The average force is 252 times the shell's weight.

Exercise:

Problem:

Integrated Concepts An elevator filled with passengers has a mass of 1700 kg. (a) The elevator accelerates upward from rest at a rate of $1.20\ \text{m/s}^2$ for 1.50 s. Calculate the tension in the cable supporting the elevator. (b) The elevator continues upward at constant velocity for 8.50 s. What is the tension in the cable during this time? (c) The elevator decelerates at a rate of $0.600\ \text{m/s}^2$ for 3.00 s. What is the tension in the cable during deceleration? (d) How high has the elevator moved above its original starting point, and what is its final velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

Unreasonable Results (a) What is the final velocity of a car originally traveling at 50.0 km/h that decelerates at a rate of $0.400\ \text{m/s}^2$ for 50.0 s? (b) What is unreasonable about the result? (c) Which premise is unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem:

Unreasonable Results A 75.0-kg man stands on a bathroom scale in an elevator that accelerates from rest to 30.0 m/s in 2.00 s. (a) Calculate the scale reading in newtons and compare it with his weight. (The scale exerts an upward force on him equal to its reading.) (b) What is unreasonable about the result? (c) Which premise is unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent?

Extended Topic: The Four Basic Forces—An Introduction

- Understand the four basic forces that underlie the processes in nature.

One of the most remarkable simplifications in physics is that only four distinct forces account for all known phenomena. In fact, nearly all of the forces we experience directly are due to only one basic force, called the electromagnetic force. (The gravitational force is the only force we experience directly that is not electromagnetic.) This is a tremendous simplification of the myriad of *apparently* different forces we can list, only a few of which were discussed in the previous section. As we will see, the basic forces are all thought to act through the exchange of microscopic carrier particles, and the characteristics of the basic forces are determined by the types of particles exchanged. Action at a distance, such as the gravitational force of Earth on the Moon, is explained by the existence of a **force field** rather than by "physical contact."

The *four basic forces* are the gravitational force, the electromagnetic force, the weak nuclear force, and the strong nuclear force. Their properties are summarized in [link]. Since the weak and strong nuclear forces act over an extremely short range, the size of a nucleus or less, we do not experience them directly, although they are crucial to the very structure of matter. These forces determine which nuclei are stable and which decay, and they are the basis of the release of energy in certain nuclear reactions. Nuclear forces determine not only the stability of nuclei, but also the relative abundance of elements in nature. The properties of the nucleus of an atom determine the number of electrons it has and, thus, indirectly determine the chemistry of the atom. More will be said of all of these topics in later chapters.

Note:
Concept Connections: The Four Basic Forces
The four basic forces will be encountered in more detail as you progress through the text. The gravitational force is defined in Uniform Circular Motion and Gravitation, electric force in Electric Charge and Electric Field, magnetic force in Magnetism, and nuclear forces in Radioactivity and Nuclear Physics. On a macroscopic scale, electromagnetism and gravity are the basis for all forces. The nuclear forces are vital to the substructure of matter, but they are not directly experienced on the macroscopic scale.

Force	Approximate Relative Strengths	Range	Attraction/Repulsion	Carrier Particle
Gravitational	10^{-38}	∞	attractive only	Graviton

Force	Approximate Relative Strengths	Range	Attraction/Repulsion	Carrier Particle
Electromagnetic	10^{-2}	∞	attractive and repulsive	Photon
Weak nuclear	10^{-13}	$< 10^{-18} \mathrm{m}$	attractive and repulsive	W^{+}, W^{-}, Z^{0}
Strong nuclear	1	$< 10^{-15} \mathrm{m}$	attractive and repulsive	gluons

Properties of the Four Basic Forces[footnote]
The graviton is a proposed particle, though it has not yet been observed by scientists. See the discussion of gravitational waves later in this section. The particles W^{+}, W^{-}, and Z^{0} are called vector bosons; these were predicted by theory and first observed in 1983. There are eight types of gluons proposed by scientists, and their existence is indicated by meson exchange in the nuclei of atoms.

The gravitational force is surprisingly weak—it is only because gravity is always attractive that we notice it at all. Our weight is the gravitational force due to the *entire* Earth acting on us. On the very large scale, as in astronomical systems, the gravitational force is the dominant force determining the motions of moons, planets, stars, and galaxies. The gravitational force also affects the nature of space and time. As we shall see later in the study of general relativity, space is curved in the vicinity of very massive bodies, such as the Sun, and time actually slows down near massive bodies.

Electromagnetic forces can be either attractive or repulsive. They are long-range forces, which act over extremely large distances, and they nearly cancel for macroscopic objects. (Remember that it is the *net* external force that is important.) If they did not cancel, electromagnetic forces would completely overwhelm the gravitational force. The electromagnetic force is a combination of electrical forces (such as those that cause static electricity) and magnetic forces (such as those that affect a compass needle). These two forces were thought to be quite distinct until early in the 19th century, when scientists began to discover that they are different manifestations of the same force. This discovery is a classical case of the *unification of forces*. Similarly, friction, tension, and all of the other classes of forces we experience directly (except gravity, of course) are due to electromagnetic interactions of atoms and molecules. It is still convenient to consider these forces separately in specific applications, however, because of the ways they manifest themselves.

Note:
Concept Connections: Unifying Forces

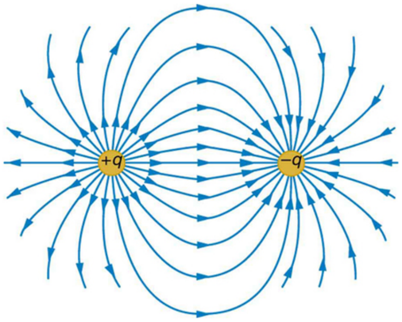
Attempts to unify the four basic forces are discussed in relation to elementary particles later in this text. By “unify” we mean finding connections between the forces that show that they are different manifestations of a single force. Even if such unification is achieved, the forces will retain their separate characteristics on the macroscopic scale and may be identical only under extreme conditions such as those existing in the early universe.

Physicists are now exploring whether the four basic forces are in some way related. Attempts to unify all forces into one come under the rubric of Grand Unified Theories (GUTs), with which there has been some success in recent years. It is now known that under conditions of extremely high density and temperature, such as existed in the early universe, the electromagnetic and weak nuclear forces are indistinguishable. They can now be considered to be different manifestations of one force, called the *electroweak* force. So the list of four has been reduced in a sense to only three. Further progress in unifying all forces is proving difficult—especially the inclusion of the gravitational force, which has the special characteristics of affecting the space and time in which the other forces exist.

While the unification of forces will not affect how we discuss forces in this text, it is fascinating that such underlying simplicity exists in the face of the overt complexity of the universe. There is no reason that nature must be simple—it simply is.

Action at a Distance: Concept of a Field

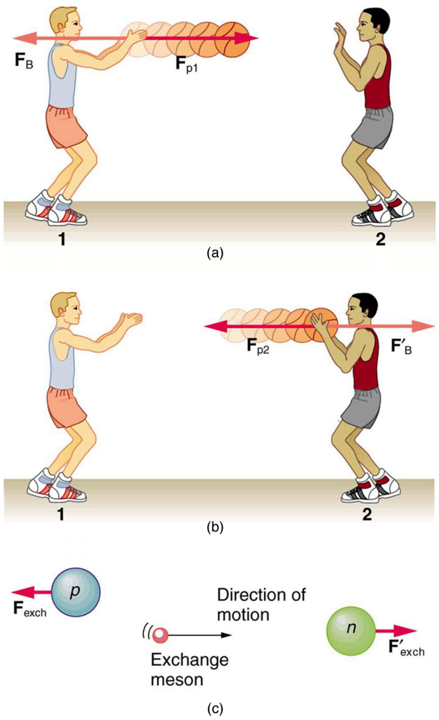
All forces act at a distance. This is obvious for the gravitational force. Earth and the Moon, for example, interact without coming into contact. It is also true for all other forces. Friction, for example, is an electromagnetic force between atoms that may not actually touch. What is it that carries forces between objects? One way to answer this question is to imagine that a **force field** surrounds whatever object creates the force. A second object (often called a *test object*) placed in this field will experience a force that is a function of location and other variables. The field itself is the “thing” that carries the force from one object to another. The field is defined so as to be a characteristic of the object creating it; the field does not depend on the test object placed in it. Earth’s gravitational field, for example, is a function of the mass of Earth and the distance from its center, independent of the presence of other masses. The concept of a field is useful because equations can be written for force fields surrounding objects (for gravity, this yields $w = \mathrm{mg}$ at Earth’s surface), and motions can be calculated from these equations. (See [link].)



The electric force field between a positively charged particle and a negatively charged particle. When a positive test charge is placed in the field, the charge will experience a force in the direction of the force field lines.

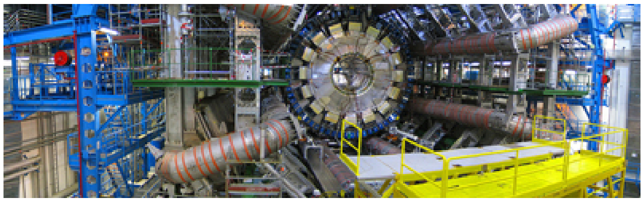
Note:
Concept Connections: Force Fields
The concept of a *force field* is also used in connection with electric charge and is presented in Electric Charge and Electric Field. It is also a useful idea for all the basic forces, as will be seen in Particle Physics. Fields help us to visualize forces and how they are transmitted, as well as to describe them with precision and to link forces with subatomic carrier particles.

The field concept has been applied very successfully; we can calculate motions and describe nature to high precision using field equations. As useful as the field concept is, however, it leaves unanswered the question of what carries the force. It has been proposed in recent decades, starting in 1935 with Hideki Yukawa’s (1907–1981) work on the strong nuclear force, that all forces are transmitted by the exchange of elementary particles. We can visualize particle exchange as analogous to macroscopic phenomena such as two people passing a basketball back and forth, thereby exerting a repulsive force without touching one another. (See [link].)



The exchange of masses resulting in repulsive forces. (a) The person throwing the basketball exerts a force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{p1}}$ on it toward the other person and feels a reaction force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{B}}$ away from the second person. (b) The person catching the basketball exerts a force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{p2}}$ on it to stop the ball and feels a reaction force $\mathbf{F'}_{\text{B}}$ away from the first person. (c) The analogous exchange of a meson between a proton and a neutron carries the strong nuclear forces $\mathbf{F}_{\text{exch}}$ and $\mathbf{F'}_{\text{exch}}$ between them. An attractive force can also be exerted by the exchange of a mass—if person 2 pulled the basketball away from the first person as he tried to retain it, then the force between them would be attractive.

This idea of particle exchange deepens rather than contradicts field concepts. It is more satisfying philosophically to think of something physical actually moving between objects acting at a distance. [link] lists the exchange or **carrier particles**, both observed and proposed, that carry the four forces. But the real fruit of the particle-exchange proposal is that searches for Yukawa's proposed particle found it *and* a number of others that were completely unexpected, stimulating yet more research. All of this research eventually led to the proposal of quarks as the underlying substructure of matter, which is a basic tenet of GUTs. If successful, these theories will explain not only forces, but also the structure of matter itself. Yet physics is an experimental science, so the test of these theories must lie in the domain of the real world. As of this writing, scientists at the CERN laboratory in Switzerland are starting to test these theories using the world's largest particle accelerator: the Large Hadron Collider. This accelerator (27 km in circumference) allows two high-energy proton beams, traveling in opposite directions, to collide. An energy of 14 trillion electron volts will be available. It is anticipated that some new particles, possibly force carrier particles, will be found. (See [link].) One of the force carriers of high interest that researchers hope to detect is the Higgs boson. The observation of its properties might tell us why different particles have different masses.



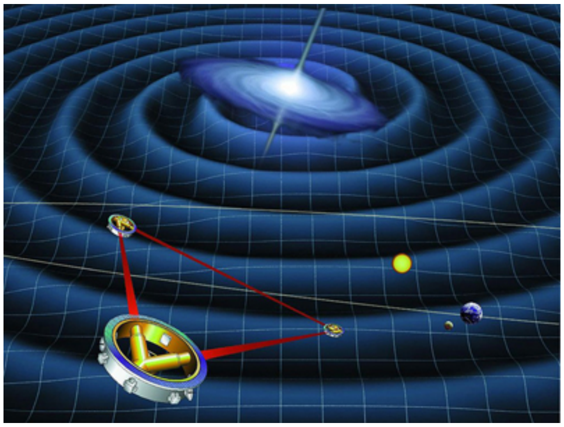
The world's largest particle accelerator spans the border between Switzerland and France. Two beams, traveling in opposite directions close to the speed of light, collide in a tube similar to the central tube shown here. External magnets determine the beam's path. Special detectors will analyze particles created in these collisions. Questions as broad as what is the origin of mass and what was matter like the first few seconds of our universe will be explored. This accelerator began preliminary operation in 2008. (credit: Frank Hommes)

Tiny particles also have wave-like behavior, something we will explore more in a later chapter. To better understand force-carrier particles from another perspective, let us consider gravity. The search for gravitational waves has been going on for a number of years. Almost 100 years

ago, Einstein predicted the existence of these waves as part of his general theory of relativity. Gravitational waves are created during the collision of massive stars, in black holes, or in supernova explosions—like shock waves. These gravitational waves will travel through space from such sites much like a pebble dropped into a pond sends out ripples—except these waves move at the speed of light. A detector apparatus has been built in the U.S., consisting of two large installations nearly 3000 km apart—one in Washington state and one in Louisiana! The facility is called the Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory (LIGO). Each installation is designed to use optical lasers to examine any slight shift in the relative positions of two masses due to the effect of gravity waves. The two sites allow simultaneous measurements of these small effects to be separated from other natural phenomena, such as earthquakes. Initial operation of the detectors began in 2002, and work is proceeding on increasing their sensitivity. Similar installations have been built in Italy (VIRGO), Germany (GEO600), and Japan (TAMA300) to provide a worldwide network of gravitational wave detectors.

International collaboration in this area is moving into space with the joint EU/US project LISA (Laser Interferometer Space Antenna). Earthquakes and other Earthly noises will be no problem for these monitoring spacecraft. LISA will complement LIGO by looking at much more massive black holes through the observation of gravitational-wave sources emitting much larger wavelengths. Three satellites will be placed in space above Earth in an equilateral triangle (with 5,000,000-km sides) ([link]). The system will measure the relative positions of each satellite to detect passing gravitational waves. Accuracy to within 10% of the size of an atom will be needed to detect any waves. The launch of this project might be as early as 2018.

"I'm sure LIGO will tell us something about the universe that we didn't know before. The history of science tells us that any time you go where you haven't been before, you usually find something that really shakes the scientific paradigms of the day. Whether gravitational wave astrophysics will do that, only time will tell." —David Reitze, LIGO Input Optics Manager, University of Florida



Space-based future experiments for the measurement of gravitational waves. Shown here is a drawing of

LISA’s orbit. Each satellite of LISA will consist of a laser source and a mass. The lasers will transmit a signal to measure the distance between each satellite’s test mass. The relative motion of these masses will provide information about passing gravitational waves. (credit: NASA)

The ideas presented in this section are but a glimpse into topics of modern physics that will be covered in much greater depth in later chapters.

Summary

- The various types of forces that are categorized for use in many applications are all manifestations of the *four basic forces* in nature.
- The properties of these forces are summarized in [link].
- Everything we experience directly without sensitive instruments is due to either electromagnetic forces or gravitational forces. The nuclear forces are responsible for the submicroscopic structure of matter, but they are not directly sensed because of their short ranges. Attempts are being made to show all four forces are different manifestations of a single unified force.
- A force field surrounds an object creating a force and is the carrier of that force.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain, in terms of the properties of the four basic forces, why people notice the gravitational force acting on their bodies if it is such a comparatively weak force.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the dominant force between astronomical objects? Why are the other three basic forces less significant over these very large distances?

Exercise:

Problem:

Give a detailed example of how the exchange of a particle can result in an *attractive* force. (For example, consider one child pulling a toy out of the hands of another.)

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the strength of the weak nuclear force relative to the strong nuclear force? (b) What is the strength of the weak nuclear force relative to the electromagnetic force? Since the weak nuclear force acts at only very short distances, such as inside nuclei, where the strong and electromagnetic forces also act, it might seem surprising that we have any knowledge of it at all. We have such knowledge because the weak nuclear force is responsible for beta decay, a type of nuclear decay not explained by other forces.

Solution:

(a) 1×10^{-13}

(b) 1×10^{-11}

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the ratio of the strength of the gravitational force to that of the strong nuclear force? (b) What is the ratio of the strength of the gravitational force to that of the weak nuclear force? (c) What is the ratio of the strength of the gravitational force to that of the electromagnetic force? What do your answers imply about the influence of the gravitational force on atomic nuclei?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the ratio of the strength of the strong nuclear force to that of the electromagnetic force? Based on this ratio, you might expect that the strong force dominates the nucleus, which is true for small nuclei. Large nuclei, however, have sizes greater than the range of the strong nuclear force. At these sizes, the electromagnetic force begins to affect nuclear stability. These facts will be used to explain nuclear fusion and fission later in this text.

Solution:

10^{2}

Glossary

carrier particle
: a fundamental particle of nature that is surrounded by a characteristic force field; photons are carrier particles of the electromagnetic force

force field

a region in which a test particle will experience a force

Introduction: Further Applications of Newton’s Laws class="introduction"

Total hip replacement surgery has become a common procedure. The head (or ball) of the patient’s femur fits into a cup that has a hard plastic-like inner lining. (credit: National Institutes of Health, via Wikimedia Commons)

Describe the forces on the hip joint. What means are taken to ensure that this will be a good movable joint? From the photograph (for an adult) in [link], estimate the dimensions of the artificial device.

It is difficult to categorize forces into various types (aside from the four basic forces discussed in previous chapter). We know that a net force affects the motion, position, and shape of an object. It is useful at this point to look at some particularly interesting and common forces that will provide further applications of Newton’s laws of motion. We have in mind the forces of friction, air or liquid drag, and deformation.

Friction

- Discuss the general characteristics of friction.
- Describe the various types of friction.
- Calculate the magnitude of static and kinetic friction.

Friction is a force that is around us all the time that opposes relative motion between systems in contact but also allows us to move (which you have discovered if you have ever tried to walk on ice). While a common force, the behavior of friction is actually very complicated and is still not completely understood. We have to rely heavily on observations for whatever understandings we can gain. However, we can still deal with its more elementary general characteristics and understand the circumstances in which it behaves.

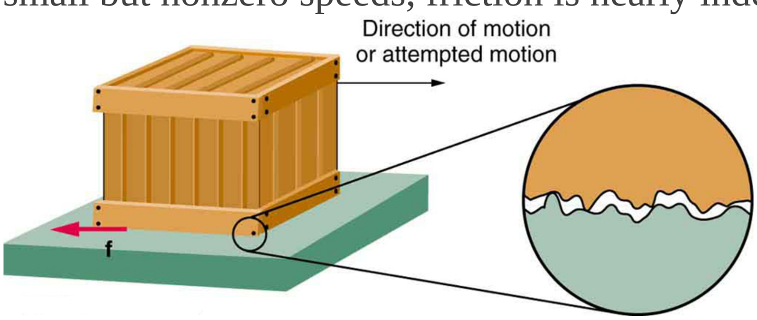
Note:
Friction
Friction is a force that opposes relative motion between systems in contact.

One of the simpler characteristics of friction is that it is parallel to the contact surface between systems and always in a direction that opposes motion or attempted motion of the systems relative to each other. If two systems are in contact and moving relative to one another, then the friction between them is called **kinetic friction**. For example, friction slows a hockey puck sliding on ice. But when objects are stationary, **static friction** can act between them; the static friction is usually greater than the kinetic friction between the objects.

Note:
Kinetic Friction
If two systems are in contact and moving relative to one another, then the friction between them is called kinetic friction.

Imagine, for example, trying to slide a heavy crate across a concrete floor—you may push harder and harder on the crate and not move it at all. This means that the static friction responds to what you do—it increases to be equal to and in the opposite direction of your push. But if you finally push hard enough, the crate seems to slip suddenly and starts to move. Once in motion it is easier to keep it in motion than it was to get it started, indicating that the kinetic friction force is less than the static friction force. If you add mass to the crate, say by placing a box on top of it, you need to push even harder to get it started and also to keep it moving. Furthermore, if you oiled the concrete you would find it to be easier to get the crate started and keep it going (as you might expect).

[link] is a crude pictorial representation of how friction occurs at the interface between two objects. Close-up inspection of these surfaces shows them to be rough. So when you push to get an object moving (in this case, a crate), you must raise the object until it can skip along with just the tips of the surface hitting, break off the points, or do both. A considerable force can be resisted by friction with no apparent motion. The harder the surfaces are pushed together (such as if another box is placed on the crate), the more force is needed to move them. Part of the friction is due to adhesive forces between the surface molecules of the two objects, which explain the dependence of friction on the nature of the substances. Adhesion varies with substances in contact and is a complicated aspect of surface physics. Once an object is moving, there are fewer points of contact (fewer molecules adhering), so less force is required to keep the object moving. At small but nonzero speeds, friction is nearly independent of speed.



Frictional forces, such as f, always oppose motion or attempted motion between objects in contact. Friction arises in part because of the roughness of

the surfaces in contact, as seen in the expanded view. In order for the object to move, it must rise to where the peaks can skip along the bottom surface. Thus a force is required just to set the object in motion. Some of the peaks will be broken off, also requiring a force to maintain motion. Much of the friction is actually due to attractive forces between molecules making up the two objects, so that even perfectly smooth surfaces are not friction-free. Such adhesive forces also depend on the substances the surfaces are made of, explaining, for example, why rubber-soled shoes slip less than those with leather soles.

The magnitude of the frictional force has two forms: one for static situations (static friction), the other for when there is motion (kinetic friction).

When there is no motion between the objects, the **magnitude of static friction $\mathbf{f}_{\mathrm{s}}$** is
Equation:

$$f_{\mathrm{s}} \leq \mu_{\mathrm{s}} N,$$

where μ_{s} is the coefficient of static friction and N is the magnitude of the normal force (the force perpendicular to the surface).

Note:
Magnitude of Static Friction
Magnitude of static friction f_{s} is

Equation:

$$f_{\mathrm{s}} \leq \mu_{\mathrm{s}} N,$$

where μ_{s} is the coefficient of static friction and N is the magnitude of the normal force.

The symbol $\leq$ means *less than or equal to*, implying that static friction can have a minimum and a maximum value of $\mu_{\mathrm{s}} N$. Static friction is a responsive force that increases to be equal and opposite to whatever force is exerted, up to its maximum limit. Once the applied force exceeds $f_{\mathrm{s(max)}}$, the object will move. Thus

Equation:

$$f_{\mathrm{s(max)}} = \mu_{\mathrm{s}} N.$$

Once an object is moving, the **magnitude of kinetic friction $\mathbf{f}_{\mathrm{k}}$** is given by

Equation:

$$f_{\mathrm{k}} = \mu_{\mathrm{k}} N,$$

where μ_{k} is the coefficient of kinetic friction. A system in which $f_{\mathrm{k}} = \mu_{\mathrm{k}} N$ is described as a system in which *friction behaves simply*.

Note:

Magnitude of Kinetic Friction

The magnitude of kinetic friction f_{k} is given by

Equation:

$$f_{\mathrm{k}} = \mu_{\mathrm{k}} N,$$

where μ_{k} is the coefficient of kinetic friction.

As seen in [link], the coefficients of kinetic friction are less than their static counterparts. That values of μ in [link] are stated to only one or, at most, two digits is an indication of the approximate description of friction given by the above two equations.

System	Static friction μ_s	Kinetic friction μ_k
Rubber on dry concrete	1.0	0.7
Rubber on wet concrete	0.7	0.5
Wood on wood	0.5	0.3
Waxed wood on wet snow	0.14	0.1
Metal on wood	0.5	0.3
Steel on steel (dry)	0.6	0.3
Steel on steel (oiled)	0.05	0.03
Teflon on steel	0.04	0.04
Bone lubricated by synovial fluid	0.016	0.015
Shoes on wood	0.9	0.7

System	Static friction μ_{s}	Kinetic friction μ_{k}
Shoes on ice	0.1	0.05
Ice on ice	0.1	0.03
Steel on ice	0.04	0.02

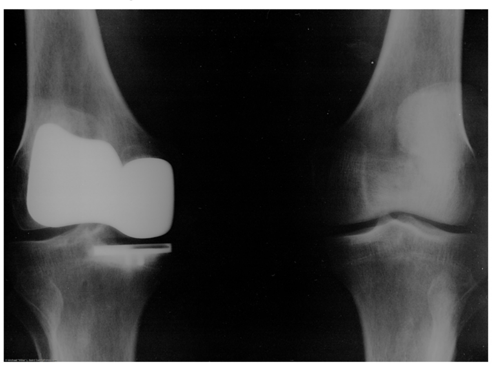
Coefficients of Static and Kinetic Friction

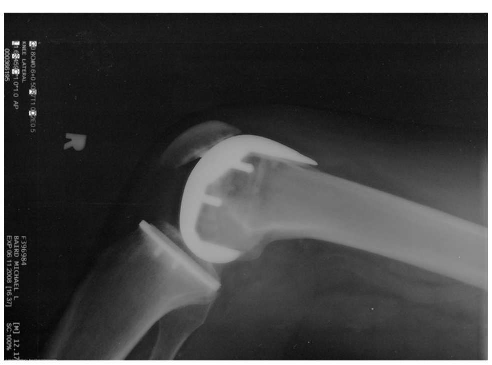
The equations given earlier include the dependence of friction on materials and the normal force. The direction of friction is always opposite that of motion, parallel to the surface between objects, and perpendicular to the normal force. For example, if the crate you try to push (with a force parallel to the floor) has a mass of 100 kg, then the normal force would be equal to its weight, $W = mg = (100\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2) = 980\text{ N}$, perpendicular to the floor. If the coefficient of static friction is 0.45, you would have to exert a force parallel to the floor greater than $f_{\mathrm{s(max)}} = \mu_{\mathrm{s}}N = (0.45)(980\text{ N}) = 440\text{ N}$ to move the crate. Once there is motion, friction is less and the coefficient of kinetic friction might be 0.30, so that a force of only 290 N ($f_{\mathrm{k}} = \mu_{\mathrm{k}}N = (0.30)(980\text{ N}) = 290\text{ N}$) would keep it moving at a constant speed. If the floor is lubricated, both coefficients are considerably less than they would be without lubrication. Coefficient of friction is a unit less quantity with a magnitude usually between 0 and 1.0. The coefficient of the friction depends on the two surfaces that are in contact.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment
Find a small plastic object (such as a food container) and slide it on a kitchen table by giving it a gentle tap. Now spray water on the table,

simulating a light shower of rain. What happens now when you give the object the same-sized tap? Now add a few drops of (vegetable or olive) oil on the surface of the water and give the same tap. What happens now? This latter situation is particularly important for drivers to note, especially after a light rain shower. Why?

Many people have experienced the slipperiness of walking on ice. However, many parts of the body, especially the joints, have much smaller coefficients of friction—often three or four times less than ice. A joint is formed by the ends of two bones, which are connected by thick tissues. The knee joint is formed by the lower leg bone (the tibia) and the thighbone (the femur). The hip is a ball (at the end of the femur) and socket (part of the pelvis) joint. The ends of the bones in the joint are covered by cartilage, which provides a smooth, almost glassy surface. The joints also produce a fluid (synovial fluid) that reduces friction and wear. A damaged or arthritic joint can be replaced by an artificial joint ([link]). These replacements can be made of metals (stainless steel or titanium) or plastic (polyethylene), also with very small coefficients of friction.





Artificial knee replacement is a procedure that has been performed for more than 20 years. In this figure, we see the post-op x rays of the right knee joint replacement. (credit: Mike Baird, Flickr)

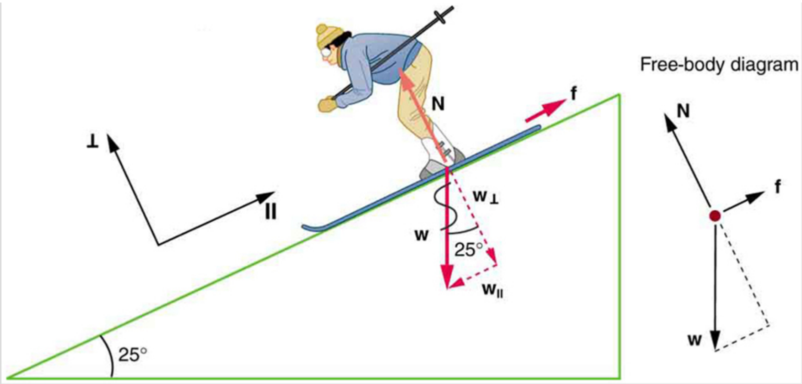
Other natural lubricants include saliva produced in our mouths to aid in the swallowing process, and the slippery mucus found between organs in the body, allowing them to move freely past each other during heartbeats, during breathing, and when a person moves. Artificial lubricants are also common in hospitals and doctor's clinics. For example, when ultrasonic imaging is carried out, the gel that couples the transducer to the skin also serves to to lubricate the surface between the transducer and the skin—thereby reducing the coefficient of friction between the two surfaces. This allows the transducer to move freely over the skin.

Example:
Skiing Exercise

A skier with a mass of 62 kg is sliding down a snowy slope. Find the coefficient of kinetic friction for the skier if friction is known to be 45.0 N.

Strategy

The magnitude of kinetic friction was given in to be 45.0 N. Kinetic friction is related to the normal force N as $f_{\text{k}} = \mu_{\text{k}} N$; thus, the coefficient of kinetic friction can be found if we can find the normal force of the skier on a slope. The normal force is always perpendicular to the surface, and since there is no motion perpendicular to the surface, the normal force should equal the component of the skier's weight perpendicular to the slope. (See the skier and free-body diagram in [link].)



The motion of the skier and friction are parallel to the slope and so it is most convenient to project all forces onto a coordinate system where one axis is parallel to the slope and the other is perpendicular (axes shown to left of skier). **N** (the normal force) is perpendicular to the slope, and **f** (the friction) is parallel to the slope, but **w** (the skier's weight) has components along both axes, namely $\mathbf{w}_{\perp}$ and $\mathbf{W}_{//}$. **N** is equal in magnitude to $\mathbf{w}_{\perp}$, so there is no motion perpendicular to the slope. However, **f** is less than $\mathbf{W}_{//}$ in magnitude, so there is acceleration down the slope (along the *x*-axis).

That is,
Equation:

$$N = w_{\perp} = w\cos 25^{\mathrm{o}} = mg\cos 25^{\mathrm{o}}.$$

Substituting this into our expression for kinetic friction, we get
Equation:

$$f_{\mathrm{k}} = \mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}\cos 25^{\mathrm{o}},$$

which can now be solved for the coefficient of kinetic friction μ_{k}.

Solution

Solving for μ_{k} gives

Equation:

$$\mu_{\text{k}} = \frac{f_{\text{k}}}{N} = \frac{f_{\text{k}}}{w\cos 25^{\text{o}}} = \frac{f_{\text{k}}}{\text{mg}\cos 25^{\text{o}}.}$$

Substituting known values on the right-hand side of the equation,

Equation:

$$\mu_{\text{k}} = \frac{45.0\text{ N}}{(62\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)(0.906)} = 0.082.$$

Discussion

This result is a little smaller than the coefficient listed in [link] for waxed wood on snow, but it is still reasonable since values of the coefficients of friction can vary greatly. In situations like this, where an object of mass m slides down a slope that makes an angle θ with the horizontal, friction is given by $f_{\text{k}} = \mu_{\text{k}}\text{mg}\cos\theta$. All objects will slide down a slope with constant acceleration under these circumstances. Proof of this is left for this chapter’s Problems and Exercises.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment

An object will slide down an inclined plane at a constant velocity if the net force on the object is zero. We can use this fact to measure the coefficient of kinetic friction between two objects. As shown in [link], the kinetic friction on a slope $f_{\text{k}} = \mu_{\text{k}}\text{mg}\cos\theta$. The component of the weight down the slope is equal to $\text{mg}\sin\theta$ (see the free-body diagram in [link]). These forces act in opposite directions, so when they have equal magnitude, the acceleration is zero. Writing these out:

Equation:

$$f_{\text{k}} = \text{Fg}_{\text{x}}$$

Equation:

$$\mu_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{mg} \cos \theta = \mathrm{mg} \sin \theta.$$

Solving for μ_{k}, we find that

Equation:

$$\mu_{\mathrm{k}} = \frac{\mathrm{mg} \sin \theta}{\mathrm{mg} \cos \theta} = \tan \theta.$$

Put a coin on a book and tilt it until the coin slides at a constant velocity down the book. You might need to tap the book lightly to get the coin to move. Measure the angle of tilt relative to the horizontal and find μ_{k}. Note that the coin will not start to slide at all until an angle greater than θ is attained, since the coefficient of static friction is larger than the coefficient of kinetic friction. Discuss how this may affect the value for μ_{k} and its uncertainty.

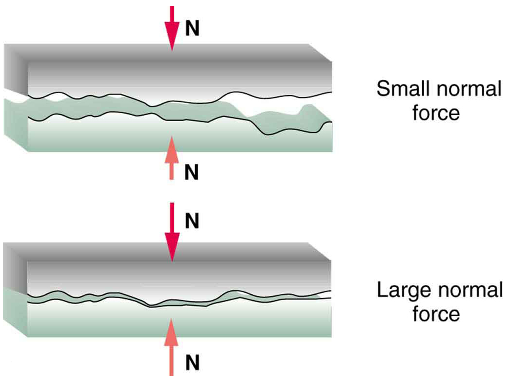
We have discussed that when an object rests on a horizontal surface, there is a normal force supporting it equal in magnitude to its weight. Furthermore, simple friction is always proportional to the normal force.

Note:

Making Connections: Submicroscopic Explanations of Friction

The simpler aspects of friction dealt with so far are its macroscopic (large-scale) characteristics. Great strides have been made in the atomic-scale explanation of friction during the past several decades. Researchers are finding that the atomic nature of friction seems to have several fundamental characteristics. These characteristics not only explain some of the simpler aspects of friction—they also hold the potential for the development of nearly friction-free environments that could save hundreds of billions of dollars in energy which is currently being converted (unnecessarily) to heat.

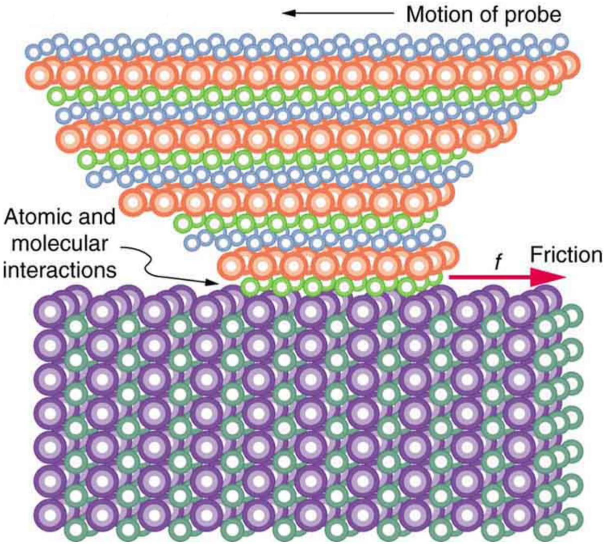
[link] illustrates one macroscopic characteristic of friction that is explained by microscopic (small-scale) research. We have noted that friction is proportional to the normal force, but not to the area in contact, a somewhat counterintuitive notion. When two rough surfaces are in contact, the actual contact area is a tiny fraction of the total area since only high spots touch. When a greater normal force is exerted, the actual contact area increases, and it is found that the friction is proportional to this area.



Two rough surfaces in contact have a much smaller area of actual contact than their total area. When there is a greater normal force as a result of a greater applied force, the area of actual contact increases as does friction.

But the atomic-scale view promises to explain far more than the simpler features of friction. The mechanism for how heat is generated is now being determined. In other words, why do surfaces get warmer when rubbed? Essentially, atoms are linked with one another to form lattices. When surfaces rub, the surface atoms adhere and cause atomic lattices to vibrate —essentially creating sound waves that penetrate the material. The sound waves diminish with distance and their energy is converted into heat. Chemical reactions that are related to frictional wear can also occur

between atoms and molecules on the surfaces. [link] shows how the tip of a probe drawn across another material is deformed by atomic-scale friction. The force needed to drag the tip can be measured and is found to be related to shear stress, which will be discussed later in this chapter. The variation in shear stress is remarkable (more than a factor of 10^{12}) and difficult to predict theoretically, but shear stress is yielding a fundamental understanding of a large-scale phenomenon known since ancient times—friction.



The tip of a probe is deformed sideways by frictional force as the probe is dragged across a surface. Measurements of how the force varies for different materials are yielding fundamental insights into the atomic nature of friction.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Forces and Motion

Explore the forces at work when you try to push a filing cabinet. Create an applied force and see the resulting friction force and total force acting on the cabinet. Charts show the forces, position, velocity, and acceleration vs. time. Draw a free-body diagram of all the forces (including gravitational and normal forces).

Forces and Motion

Section Summary

- Friction is a contact force between systems that opposes the motion or attempted motion between them. Simple friction is proportional to the normal force N pushing the systems together. (A normal force is always perpendicular to the contact surface between systems.) Friction depends on both of the materials involved. The magnitude of static friction f_s between systems stationary relative to one another is given by
  Equation:
  $$f_s \leq \mu_s N,$$
  where μ_s is the coefficient of static friction, which depends on both of the materials.
- The kinetic friction force f_k between systems moving relative to one another is given by
  Equation:
  $$f_k = \mu_k N,$$

where μ_k is the coefficient of kinetic friction, which also depends on both materials.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Define normal force. What is its relationship to friction when friction behaves simply?

Exercise:

Problem:

The glue on a piece of tape can exert forces. Can these forces be a type of simple friction? Explain, considering especially that tape can stick to vertical walls and even to ceilings.

Exercise:

Problem:

When you learn to drive, you discover that you need to let up slightly on the brake pedal as you come to a stop or the car will stop with a jerk. Explain this in terms of the relationship between static and kinetic friction.

Exercise:

Problem:

When you push a piece of chalk across a chalkboard, it sometimes screeches because it rapidly alternates between slipping and sticking to the board. Describe this process in more detail, in particular explaining how it is related to the fact that kinetic friction is less than static friction. (The same slip-grab process occurs when tires screech on pavement.)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A physics major is cooking breakfast when he notices that the frictional force between his steel spatula and his Teflon frying pan is only 0.200 N. Knowing the coefficient of kinetic friction between the two materials, he quickly calculates the normal force. What is it?

Solution:

5.00 N

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) When rebuilding her car’s engine, a physics major must exert 300 N of force to insert a dry steel piston into a steel cylinder. What is the magnitude of the normal force between the piston and cylinder? (b) What is the magnitude of the force would she have to exert if the steel parts were oiled?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the maximum frictional force in the knee joint of a person who supports 66.0 kg of her mass on that knee? (b) During strenuous exercise it is possible to exert forces to the joints that are easily ten times greater than the weight being supported. What is the maximum force of friction under such conditions? The frictional forces in joints are relatively small in all circumstances except when the joints deteriorate, such as from injury or arthritis. Increased frictional forces can cause further damage and pain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a 120-kg wooden crate resting on a wood floor. (a) What maximum force can you exert horizontally on the crate without moving it? (b) If you continue to exert this force once the crate starts to slip, what will the magnitude of its acceleration then be?

Solution:

(a) 588 N

(b) $1.96\ \text{m/s}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If half of the weight of a small 1.00×10^3 kg utility truck is supported by its two drive wheels, what is the magnitude of the maximum acceleration it can achieve on dry concrete? (b) Will a metal cabinet lying on the wooden bed of the truck slip if it accelerates at this rate? (c) Solve both problems assuming the truck has four-wheel drive.

Exercise:

Problem:

A team of eight dogs pulls a sled with waxed wood runners on wet snow (mush!). The dogs have average masses of 19.0 kg, and the loaded sled with its rider has a mass of 210 kg. (a) Calculate the magnitude of the acceleration starting from rest if each dog exerts an average force of 185 N backward on the snow. (b) What is the magnitude of the acceleration once the sled starts to move? (c) For both situations, calculate the magnitude of the force in the coupling between the dogs and the sled.

Solution:

(a) 3.29 m/s^2

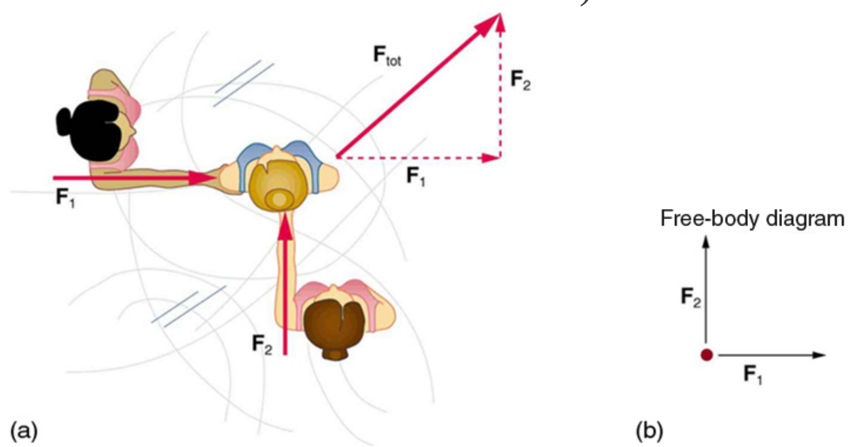
(b) 3.52 m/s^2

(c) 980 N; 945 N

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider the 65.0-kg ice skater being pushed by two others shown in [link]. (a) Find the direction and magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{tot}}$, the total force exerted on her by the others, given that the magnitudes F_1 and F_2 are 26.4 N and 18.6 N, respectively. (b) What is her initial acceleration if she is initially stationary and wearing steel-bladed skates that point in the direction of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{tot}}$? (c) What is her acceleration assuming she is already moving in the direction of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{tot}}$? (Remember that friction always acts in the direction opposite that of motion or attempted motion between surfaces in contact.)



Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the acceleration of any object down a frictionless incline that makes an angle θ with the horizontal is $a = g \sin \theta$. (Note that this acceleration is independent of mass.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the acceleration of any object down an incline where friction behaves simply (that is, where $f_k = \mu_k N$) is $a = g(\sin \theta - \mu_k \cos \theta)$. Note that the acceleration is independent of mass and reduces to the expression found in the previous problem when friction becomes negligibly small $(\mu_k = 0)$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the deceleration of a snow boarder going up a 5.0^{o}, slope assuming the coefficient of friction for waxed wood on wet snow. The result of [link] may be useful, but be careful to consider the fact that the snow boarder is going uphill. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in Problem-Solving Strategies.

Solution:

1.83 m/s^2

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the acceleration of a skier heading down a 10.0^{o} slope, assuming the coefficient of friction for waxed wood on wet snow. (b) Find the angle of the slope down which this skier could coast at a constant velocity. You can neglect air resistance in both parts, and you will find the result of [link] to be useful. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies.

Exercise:

Problem:

If an object is to rest on an incline without slipping, then friction must equal the component of the weight of the object parallel to the incline. This requires greater and greater friction for steeper slopes. Show that the maximum angle of an incline above the horizontal for which an object will not slide down is $\theta = \tan^{-1} \mu_s$. You may use the result of the previous problem. Assume that $a = 0$ and that static friction has reached its maximum value.

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the maximum deceleration of a car that is heading down a 6° slope (one that makes an angle of 6° with the horizontal) under the following road conditions. You may assume that the weight of the car is evenly distributed on all four tires and that the coefficient of static friction is involved—that is, the tires are not allowed to slip during the deceleration. (Ignore rolling.) Calculate for a car: (a) On dry concrete. (b) On wet concrete. (c) On ice, assuming that $\mu_s = 0.100$, the same as for shoes on ice.

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the maximum acceleration of a car that is heading up a 4° slope (one that makes an angle of 4° with the horizontal) under the following road conditions. Assume that only half the weight of the car is supported by the two drive wheels and that the coefficient of static friction is involved—that is, the tires are not allowed to slip during the acceleration. (Ignore rolling.) (a) On dry concrete. (b) On wet concrete. (c) On ice, assuming that $\mu_s = 0.100$, the same as for shoes on ice.

Solution:

(a) 4.20 m/s^2

(b) 2.74 m/s^2

(c) -0.195 m/s^2

Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link] for a car with four-wheel drive.

Exercise:

Problem:

A freight train consists of two 8.00×10^5-kg engines and 45 cars with average masses of 5.50×10^5 kg. (a) What force must each engine exert backward on the track to accelerate the train at a rate of $5.00 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m/s}^2$ if the force of friction is 7.50×10^5 N, assuming the engines exert identical forces? This is not a large frictional force for such a massive system. Rolling friction for trains is small, and consequently trains are very energy-efficient transportation systems. (b) What is the magnitude of the force in the coupling between the 37th and 38th cars (this is the force each exerts on the other), assuming all cars have the same mass and that friction is evenly distributed among all of the cars and engines?

Solution:

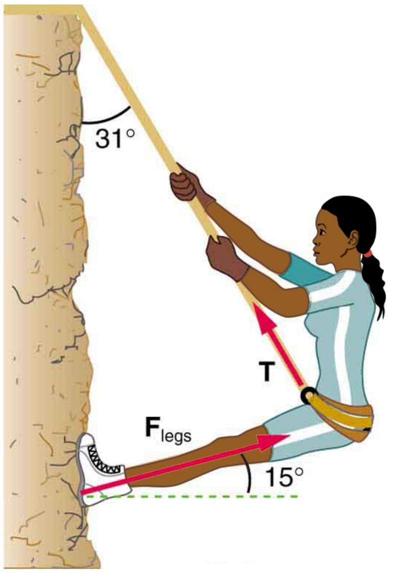
(a) 1.03×10^6 N

(b) 3.48×10^5 N

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider the 52.0-kg mountain climber in [link]. (a) Find the tension in the rope and the force that the mountain climber must exert with her feet on the vertical rock face to remain stationary. Assume that the force is exerted parallel to her legs. Also, assume negligible force exerted by her arms. (b) What is the minimum coefficient of friction between her shoes and the cliff?



Part of the climber's weight is supported by her rope and part by friction between her feet and the rock face.

Exercise:

Problem:

A contestant in a winter sporting event pushes a 45.0-kg block of ice across a frozen lake as shown in [link](a). (a) Calculate the minimum force F he must exert to get the block moving. (b) What is the magnitude of its acceleration once it starts to move, if that force is maintained?

Solution:

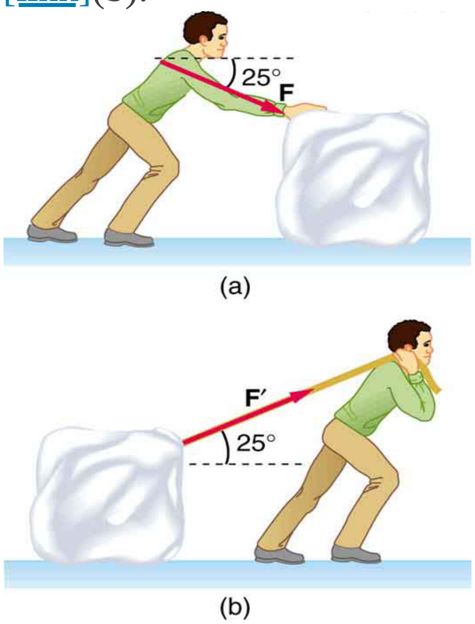
(a) 51.0 N

(b) $0.720\ \text{m/s}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat [link] with the contestant pulling the block of ice with a rope over his shoulder at the same angle above the horizontal as shown in [link](b).



Which method of sliding a block of ice requires less force—(a) pushing or (b) pulling at the same angle above the horizontal?

Glossary

friction
: a force that opposes relative motion or attempts at motion between systems in contact

kinetic friction

a force that opposes the motion of two systems that are in contact and moving relative to one another

static friction

a force that opposes the motion of two systems that are in contact and are not moving relative to one another

magnitude of static friction

$f_{\mathrm{s}} \leq \mu_{\mathrm{s}}\, N$, where μ_{s} is the coefficient of static friction and N is the magnitude of the normal force

magnitude of kinetic friction

$f_{\mathrm{k}} = \mu_{\mathrm{k}} N$, where μ_{k} is the coefficient of kinetic friction

Drag Forces

- Express mathematically the drag force.
- Discuss the applications of drag force.
- Define terminal velocity.
- Determine the terminal velocity given mass.

Another interesting force in everyday life is the force of drag on an object when it is moving in a fluid (either a gas or a liquid). You feel the drag force when you move your hand through water. You might also feel it if you move your hand during a strong wind. The faster you move your hand, the harder it is to move. You feel a smaller drag force when you tilt your hand so only the side goes through the air—you have decreased the area of your hand that faces the direction of motion. Like friction, the **drag force** always opposes the motion of an object. Unlike simple friction, the drag force is proportional to some function of the velocity of the object in that fluid. This functionality is complicated and depends upon the shape of the object, its size, its velocity, and the fluid it is in. For most large objects such as bicyclists, cars, and baseballs not moving too slowly, the magnitude of the drag force F_{D} is found to be proportional to the square of the speed of the object. We can write this relationship mathematically as $F_{\mathrm{D}} \propto v^2$. When taking into account other factors, this relationship becomes
Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{D}} = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{C}\rho A v^2,$$

where C is the drag coefficient, A is the area of the object facing the fluid, and ρ is the density of the fluid. (Recall that density is mass per unit volume.) This equation can also be written in a more generalized fashion as $F_{\mathrm{D}} = bv^2$, where b is a constant equivalent to $0.5C\rho A$. We have set the exponent for these equations as 2 because, when an object is moving at high velocity through air, the magnitude of the drag force is proportional to the square of the speed. As we shall see in a few pages on fluid dynamics, for small particles moving at low speeds in a fluid, the exponent is equal to 1.

Note:
Drag Force
Drag force F_D is found to be proportional to the square of the speed of the object. Mathematically

Equation:

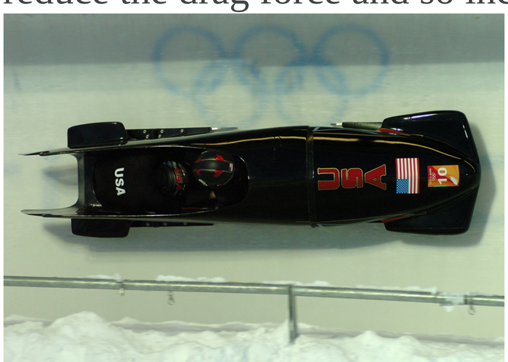
$$F_D \propto v^2$$

Equation:

$$F_D = \frac{1}{2} C \rho A v^2,$$

where C is the drag coefficient, A is the area of the object facing the fluid, and ρ is the density of the fluid.

Athletes as well as car designers seek to reduce the drag force to lower their race times. (See [link]). “Aerodynamic” shaping of an automobile can reduce the drag force and so increase a car’s gas mileage.



From racing cars to bobsled racers, aerodynamic shaping is crucial to achieving top speeds. Bobsleds are designed for speed. They are shaped like a bullet with tapered fins. (credit:

U.S. Army, via
Wikimedia Commons)

The value of the drag coefficient, C , is determined empirically, usually with the use of a wind tunnel. (See [link]).

NASA researchers test a model plane in a wind tunnel. (credit: NASA/Ames)

The drag coefficient can depend upon velocity, but we will assume that it is a constant here. [link] lists some typical drag coefficients for a variety of objects. Notice that the drag coefficient is a dimensionless quantity. At highway speeds, over 50% of the power of a car is used to overcome air drag. The most fuel-efficient cruising speed is about 70–80 km/h (about 45–50 mi/h). For this reason, during the 1970s oil crisis in the United States, maximum speeds on highways were set at about 90 km/h (55 mi/h).

Object	C
Airfoil	0.05
Toyota Camry	0.28
Ford Focus	0.32
Honda Civic	0.36
Ferrari Testarossa	0.37
Dodge Ram pickup	0.43
Sphere	0.45
Hummer H2 SUV	0.64
Skydiver (feet first)	0.70
Bicycle	0.90
Skydiver (horizontal)	1.0
Circular flat plate	1.12

Drag Coefficient Values Typical values of drag coefficient C.

Substantial research is under way in the sporting world to minimize drag. The dimples on golf balls are being redesigned as are the clothes that athletes wear. Bicycle racers and some swimmers and runners wear full bodysuits. Australian Cathy Freeman wore a full body suit in the 2000 Sydney Olympics, and won the gold medal for the 400 m race. Many swimmers in the 2008 Beijing Olympics wore (Speedo) body suits; it might have made a difference in breaking many world records (See [link]). Most elite swimmers (and cyclists) shave their body hair. Such innovations can have the effect of slicing away milliseconds in a race, sometimes making

the difference between a gold and a silver medal. One consequence is that careful and precise guidelines must be continuously developed to maintain the integrity of the sport.

Body suits, such as this LZR Racer Suit, have been credited with many world records after their release in 2008. Smoother “skin” and more compression forces on a swimmer’s body provide at least 10% less drag. (credit: NASA/Kathy Barnstorff)

Some interesting situations connected to Newton’s second law occur when considering the effects of drag forces upon a moving object. For instance, consider a skydiver falling through air under the influence of gravity. The two forces acting on him are the force of gravity and the drag force (ignoring the buoyant force). The downward force of gravity remains constant regardless of the velocity at which the person is moving. However, as the person’s velocity increases, the magnitude of the drag force increases until the magnitude of the drag force is equal to the gravitational force, thus producing a net force of zero. A zero net force means that there is no

acceleration, as given by Newton's second law. At this point, the person's velocity remains constant and we say that the person has reached his *terminal velocity* (v_t). Since F_D is proportional to the speed, a heavier skydiver must go faster for F_D to equal his weight. Let's see how this works out more quantitatively.

At the terminal velocity,
Equation:

$$F_\mathrm{net} = \mathrm{mg} - F_\mathrm{D} = \mathrm{ma} = 0.$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$\mathrm{mg} = F_\mathrm{D}.$$

Using the equation for drag force, we have
Equation:

$$\mathrm{mg} = \frac{1}{2}\rho C A v^2.$$

Solving for the velocity, we obtain
Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2\mathrm{mg}}{\rho \mathrm{CA}}}.$$

Assume the density of air is $\rho = 1.21\ \mathrm{kg/m}^3$. A 75-kg skydiver descending head first will have an area approximately $A = 0.18\ \mathrm{m}^2$ and a drag coefficient of approximately $C = 0.70$. We find that
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \sqrt{\frac{2(75\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)}{(1.21\text{ kg/m}^3)(0.70)(0.18\text{ m}^2)}} \\ &= 98\text{ m/s} \\ &= 350\text{ km/h.} \end{aligned}$$

This means a skydiver with a mass of 75 kg achieves a maximum terminal velocity of about 350 km/h while traveling in a pike (head first) position, minimizing the area and his drag. In a spread-eagle position, that terminal velocity may decrease to about 200 km/h as the area increases. This terminal velocity becomes much smaller after the parachute opens.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment

This interesting activity examines the effect of weight upon terminal velocity. Gather together some nested coffee filters. Leaving them in their original shape, measure the time it takes for one, two, three, four, and five nested filters to fall to the floor from the same height (roughly 2 m). (Note that, due to the way the filters are nested, drag is constant and only mass varies.) They obtain terminal velocity quite quickly, so find this velocity as a function of mass. Plot the terminal velocity v versus mass. Also plot v^2 versus mass. Which of these relationships is more linear? What can you conclude from these graphs?

Example:

A Terminal Velocity

Find the terminal velocity of an 85-kg skydiver falling in a spread-eagle position.

Strategy

At terminal velocity, $F_{\text{net}} = 0$. Thus the drag force on the skydiver must equal the force of gravity (the person’s weight). Using the equation of drag force, we find mg $= \frac{1}{2}\rho C A v^2$.

Thus the terminal velocity v_{t} can be written as

Equation:

$$v_{\text{t}} = \sqrt{\frac{2\text{mg}}{\rho CA}}.$$

Solution

All quantities are known except the person's projected area. This is an adult (85 kg) falling spread eagle. We can estimate the frontal area as

Equation:

$$A = (2\text{ m})(0.35\text{ m}) = 0.70\text{ m}^2.$$

Using our equation for v_{t}, we find that

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v_{\text{t}} &= \sqrt{\frac{2(85\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)}{(1.21\text{ kg/m}^3)(1.0)(0.70\text{ m}^2)}} \\ &= 44\text{ m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This result is consistent with the value for v_{t} mentioned earlier. The 75-kg skydiver going feet first had a $v = 98\text{ m/s}$. He weighed less but had a smaller frontal area and so a smaller drag due to the air.

The size of the object that is falling through air presents another interesting application of air drag. If you fall from a 5-m high branch of a tree, you will likely get hurt—possibly fracturing a bone. However, a small squirrel does this all the time, without getting hurt. You don't reach a terminal velocity in such a short distance, but the squirrel does.

The following interesting quote on animal size and terminal velocity is from a 1928 essay by a British biologist, J.B.S. Haldane, titled "On Being the Right Size."

To the mouse and any smaller animal, [gravity] presents practically no dangers. You can drop a mouse down a thousand-yard mine shaft; and, on arriving at the bottom, it gets a slight shock and walks away, provided that the ground is fairly soft. A rat is killed, a man is broken, and a horse splashes. For the resistance presented to movement by the air is proportional to the surface of the moving object. Divide an animal's length, breadth, and height each by ten; its weight is reduced to a thousandth, but its surface only to a hundredth. So the resistance to falling in the case of the small animal is relatively ten times greater than the driving force.

The above quadratic dependence of air drag upon velocity does not hold if the object is very small, is going very slow, or is in a denser medium than air. Then we find that the drag force is proportional just to the velocity. This relationship is given by **Stokes' law**, which states that
Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{s}} = 6\pi r\eta v,$$

where r is the radius of the object, η is the viscosity of the fluid, and v is the object's velocity.

Note:
Stokes' Law
Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{s}} = 6\pi r\eta v,$$

where r is the radius of the object, η is the viscosity of the fluid, and v is the object's velocity.

Good examples of this law are provided by microorganisms, pollen, and dust particles. Because each of these objects is so small, we find that many of these objects travel unaided only at a constant (terminal) velocity. Terminal velocities for bacteria (size about $1\ \mu\mathrm{m}$) can be about $2\ \mu\mathrm{m/s}$. To

move at a greater speed, many bacteria swim using flagella (organelles shaped like little tails) that are powered by little motors embedded in the cell. Sediment in a lake can move at a greater terminal velocity (about $5\ \mu\text{m/s}$), so it can take days to reach the bottom of the lake after being deposited on the surface.

If we compare animals living on land with those in water, you can see how drag has influenced evolution. Fishes, dolphins, and even massive whales are streamlined in shape to reduce drag forces. Birds are streamlined and migratory species that fly large distances often have particular features such as long necks. Flocks of birds fly in the shape of a spear head as the flock forms a streamlined pattern (see [link]). In humans, one important example of streamlining is the shape of sperm, which need to be efficient in their use of energy.

Geese fly in a V formation during their long migratory travels. This shape reduces drag and energy consumption for individual birds, and also allows them a better way to communicate. (credit: Julo, Wikimedia Commons)

Note:
Galileo's Experiment
Galileo is said to have dropped two objects of different masses from the Tower of Pisa. He measured how long it took each to reach the ground. Since stopwatches weren't readily available, how do you think he measured their fall time? If the objects were the same size, but with different masses, what do you think he should have observed? Would this result be different if done on the Moon?

Note:
PhET Explorations: Masses & Springs
A realistic mass and spring laboratory. Hang masses from springs and adjust the spring stiffness and damping. You can even slow time. Transport the lab to different planets. A chart shows the kinetic, potential, and thermal energy for each spring.

Masses & Springs

Section Summary

- Drag forces acting on an object moving in a fluid oppose the motion. For larger objects (such as a baseball) moving at a velocity v in air, the drag force is given by
  Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{D}} = \frac{1}{2}C\rho Av^2,$$

where C is the drag coefficient (typical values are given in [link]), A is the area of the object facing the fluid, and ρ is the fluid density.

- For small objects (such as a bacterium) moving in a denser medium (such as water), the drag force is given by Stokes' law,
  Equation:

  $$F_s = 6\pi\eta r v,$$

  where r is the radius of the object, η is the fluid viscosity, and v is the object's velocity.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Athletes such as swimmers and bicyclists wear body suits in competition. Formulate a list of pros and cons of such suits.

Exercise:

Problem:

Two expressions were used for the drag force experienced by a moving object in a liquid. One depended upon the speed, while the other was proportional to the square of the speed. In which types of motion would each of these expressions be more applicable than the other one?

Exercise:

Problem:

As cars travel, oil and gasoline leaks onto the road surface. If a light rain falls, what does this do to the control of the car? Does a heavy rain make any difference?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why can a squirrel jump from a tree branch to the ground and run away undamaged, while a human could break a bone in such a fall?

Problems & Exercise

Exercise:

Problem:

The terminal velocity of a person falling in air depends upon the weight and the area of the person facing the fluid. Find the terminal velocity (in meters per second and kilometers per hour) of an 80.0-kg skydiver falling in a pike (headfirst) position with a surface area of $0.140\ \text{m}^2$.

Solution:

$115\ \text{m/s}$; $414\ \text{km/hr}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A 60-kg and a 90-kg skydiver jump from an airplane at an altitude of 6000 m, both falling in the pike position. Make some assumption on their frontal areas and calculate their terminal velocities. How long will it take for each skydiver to reach the ground (assuming the time to reach terminal velocity is small)? Assume all values are accurate to three significant digits.

Exercise:

Problem:

A 560-g squirrel with a surface area of $930\ \text{cm}^2$ falls from a 5.0-m tree to the ground. Estimate its terminal velocity. (Use a drag coefficient for a horizontal skydiver.) What will be the velocity of a 56-kg person hitting the ground, assuming no drag contribution in such a short distance?

Solution:

$25\ \text{m/s}; 9.9\ \text{m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

To maintain a constant speed, the force provided by a car's engine must equal the drag force plus the force of friction of the road (the rolling resistance). (a) What are the magnitudes of drag forces at 70 km/h and 100 km/h for a Toyota Camry? (Drag area is $0.70\ \text{m}^2$) (b) What is the magnitude of drag force at 70 km/h and 100 km/h for a Hummer H2? (Drag area is $2.44\ \text{m}^2$) Assume all values are accurate to three significant digits.

Exercise:

Problem:

By what factor does the drag force on a car increase as it goes from 65 to 110 km/h?

Solution:

2.9

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the speed a spherical rain drop would achieve falling from 5.00 km (a) in the absence of air drag (b) with air drag. Take the size across of the drop to be 4 mm, the density to be $1.00 \times 10^3 \ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$, and the surface area to be πr^2.

Exercise:

Problem:

Using Stokes' law, verify that the units for viscosity are kilograms per meter per second.

Solution:
Equation:

$$[\eta] = \frac{[F_\mathrm{s}]}{[r][v]} = \frac{\mathrm{kg} \cdot \mathrm{m/s^2}}{\mathrm{m} \cdot \mathrm{m/s}} = \frac{\mathrm{kg}}{\mathrm{m} \cdot \mathrm{s}}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the terminal velocity of a spherical bacterium (diameter $2.00 \ \mu\mathrm{m}$) falling in water. You will first need to note that the drag force is equal to the weight at terminal velocity. Take the density of the bacterium to be $1.10 \times 10^3 \ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Stokes' law describes sedimentation of particles in liquids and can be used to measure viscosity. Particles in liquids achieve terminal velocity quickly. One can measure the time it takes for a particle to fall a certain distance and then use Stokes' law to calculate the viscosity of the liquid. Suppose a steel ball bearing (density $7.8 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3$, diameter 3.0 mm) is dropped in a container of motor oil. It takes 12 s to fall a distance of 0.60 m. Calculate the viscosity of the oil.

Solution:

$0.76 \text{ kg/m} \cdot \text{s}$

Glossary

drag force
: F_D, found to be proportional to the square of the speed of the object; mathematically

Equation:

$$F_\text{D} \propto v^2$$

Equation:

$$F_\text{D} = \frac{1}{2} C \rho A v^2,$$

where C is the drag coefficient, A is the area of the object facing the fluid, and ρ is the density of the fluid

Stokes' law
: $F_\text{s} = 6\pi r \eta v$, where r is the radius of the object, η is the viscosity of the fluid, and v is the object's velocity

Elasticity: Stress and Strain

- State Hooke’s law.
- Explain Hooke’s law using graphical representation between deformation and applied force.
- Discuss the three types of deformations such as changes in length, sideways shear and changes in volume.
- Describe with examples the young’s modulus, shear modulus and bulk modulus.
- Determine the change in length given mass, length and radius.

We now move from consideration of forces that affect the motion of an object (such as friction and drag) to those that affect an object’s shape. If a bulldozer pushes a car into a wall, the car will not move but it will noticeably change shape. A change in shape due to the application of a force is a **deformation**. Even very small forces are known to cause some deformation. For small deformations, two important characteristics are observed. First, the object returns to its original shape when the force is removed—that is, the deformation is elastic for small deformations. Second, the size of the deformation is proportional to the force—that is, for small deformations, Hooke’s law is obeyed. In equation form, **Hooke’s law** is given by

Equation:

$$F = k\Delta L,$$

where ΔL is the amount of deformation (the change in length, for example) produced by the force F, and k is a proportionality constant that depends on the shape and composition of the object and the direction of the force. Note that this force is a function of the deformation ΔL —it is not constant as a kinetic friction force is. Rearranging this to

Equation:

$$\Delta L = \frac{F}{k}$$

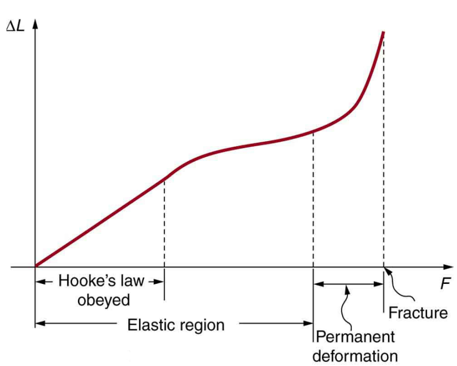
makes it clear that the deformation is proportional to the applied force. [link] shows the Hooke's law relationship between the extension ΔL of a spring or of a human bone. For metals or springs, the straight line region in which Hooke's law pertains is much larger. Bones are brittle and the elastic region is small and the fracture abrupt. Eventually a large enough stress to the material will cause it to break or fracture. **Tensile strength** is the breaking stress that will cause permanent deformation or fracture of a material.

Note:
Hooke's Law
Equation:

$$F = k\Delta L,$$

where ΔL is the amount of deformation (the change in length, for example) produced by the force F, and k is a proportionality constant that depends on the shape and composition of the object and the direction of the force.
Equation:

$$\Delta L = \frac{F}{k}$$

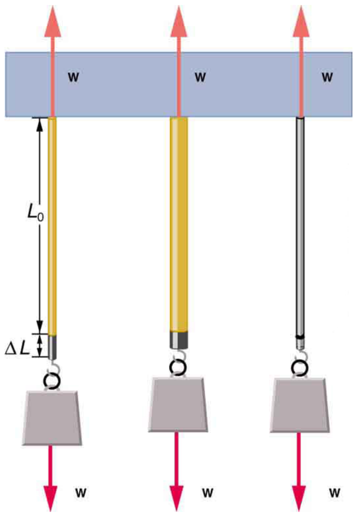


A graph of deformation ΔL versus applied force F

. The straight segment is the linear region where Hooke’s law is obeyed. The slope of the straight region is $\frac{1}{k}$. For larger forces, the graph is curved but the deformation is still elastic— ΔL will return to zero if the force is removed. Still greater forces permanently deform the object until it finally fractures. The shape of the curve near fracture depends on several factors, including how the force F is applied. Note that in this graph the slope increases just before fracture, indicating that a small increase in F is producing a large increase in L near the fracture.

The proportionality constant k depends upon a number of factors for the material. For example, a guitar string made of nylon stretches when it is tightened, and the elongation ΔL is proportional to the force applied (at least for small deformations). Thicker nylon strings and ones made of steel stretch less for the same applied force, implying they have a larger k (see [link]). Finally, all three strings return to their normal lengths when the force

is removed, provided the deformation is small. Most materials will behave in this manner if the deformation is less than about 0.1% or about 1 part in 10^3.



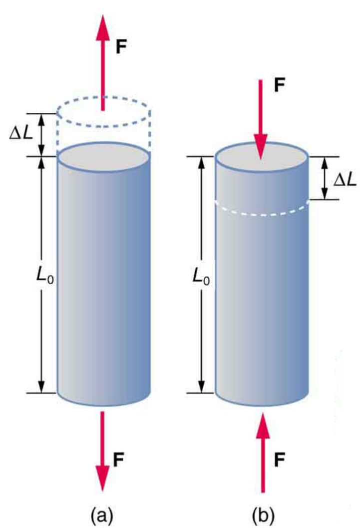
The same force, in this case a weight (w), applied to three different guitar strings of identical length produces the three different deformations shown as shaded segments. The string on the left is thin nylon, the one in the middle is thicker nylon, and the one on the right is steel.

Note:
Stretch Yourself a Little
How would you go about measuring the proportionality constant k of a rubber band? If a rubber band stretched 3 cm when a 100-g mass was attached to it, then how much would it stretch if two similar rubber bands were attached to the same mass—even if put together in parallel or alternatively if tied together in series?

We now consider three specific types of deformations: changes in length (tension and compression), sideways shear (stress), and changes in volume. All deformations are assumed to be small unless otherwise stated.

Changes in Length—Tension and Compression: Elastic Modulus

A change in length ΔL is produced when a force is applied to a wire or rod parallel to its length L_0, either stretching it (a tension) or compressing it. (See [link].)



(a) Tension. The rod is stretched

a length ΔL when a force is applied parallel to its length. (b) Compression. The same rod is compressed by forces with the same magnitude in the opposite direction. For very small deformations and uniform materials, ΔL is approximately the same for the same magnitude of tension or compression. For larger deformations, the cross-sectional area changes as the rod is compressed or stretched.

Experiments have shown that the change in length (ΔL) depends on only a few variables. As already noted, ΔL is proportional to the force F and depends on the substance from which the object is made. Additionally, the change in length is proportional to the original length L_0 and inversely proportional to the cross-sectional area of the wire or rod. For example, a long guitar string will stretch more than a short one, and a thick string will

stretch less than a thin one. We can combine all these factors into one equation for ΔL:

Equation:

$$\Delta L = \frac{1}{Y}\frac{F}{A}L_0,$$

where ΔL is the change in length, F the applied force, Y is a factor, called the elastic modulus or Young's modulus, that depends on the substance, A is the cross-sectional area, and L_0 is the original length. [link] lists values of Y for several materials—those with a large Y are said to have a large tensile stiffness because they deform less for a given tension or compression.

Material	**Young's modulus (tension–compression)** ***Y*** $(10^9\ \text{N/m}^2)$	**Shear modulus** ***S*** $(10^9\ \text{N/m}^2)$	**Bulk modulus** ***B*** $(10^9\ \text{N/m}^2)$
Aluminum	70	25	75
Bone – tension	16	80	8
Bone – compression	9		
Brass	90	35	75
Brick	15		

Material	**Young's modulus (tension–compression)*Y*** $(10^9\ \text{N/m}^2)$	**Shear modulus *S*** $(10^9\ \text{N/m}^2)$	**Bulk modulus *B*** $(10^9\ \text{N/m}^2)$
Concrete	20		
Glass	70	20	30
Granite	45	20	45
Hair (human)	10		
Hardwood	15	10	
Iron, cast	100	40	90
Lead	16	5	50
Marble	60	20	70
Nylon	5		
Polystyrene	3		
Silk	6		
Spider thread	3		
Steel	210	80	130
Tendon	1		

Material	Young’s modulus (tension–compression)*Y* $(10^9\ \mathrm{N/m^2})$	Shear modulus *S* $(10^9\ \mathrm{N/m^2})$	Bulk modulus *B* $(10^9\ \mathrm{N/m^2})$
Acetone			0.7
Ethanol			0.9
Glycerin			4.5
Mercury			25
Water			2.2

Elastic Moduli[footnote]
Approximate and average values. Young’s moduli Y for tension and compression sometimes differ but are averaged here. Bone has significantly different Young’s moduli for tension and compression.

Young’s moduli are not listed for liquids and gases in [link] because they cannot be stretched or compressed in only one direction. Note that there is an assumption that the object does not accelerate, so that there are actually two applied forces of magnitude F acting in opposite directions. For example, the strings in [link] are being pulled down by a force of magnitude w and held up by the ceiling, which also exerts a force of magnitude w.

Example:
The Stretch of a Long Cable
Suspension cables are used to carry gondolas at ski resorts. (See [link]) Consider a suspension cable that includes an unsupported span of 3020 m. Calculate the amount of stretch in the steel cable. Assume that the cable has a diameter of 5.6 cm and the maximum tension it can withstand is 3.0×10^6 N.

Gondolas travel along suspension cables at the Gala Yuzawa ski resort in Japan. (credit: Rudy Herman, Flickr)

Strategy

The force is equal to the maximum tension, or $F = 3.0 \times 10^6$ N. The cross-sectional area is $\pi r^2 = 2.46 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^2$. The equation $\Delta L = \frac{1}{Y}\frac{F}{A}L_0$ can be used to find the change in length.

Solution

All quantities are known. Thus,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta L &= \left(\frac{1}{210\times 10^9\ \text{N/m}^2}\right)\left(\frac{3.0\times 10^6\ \text{N}}{2.46\times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^2}\right)(3020\ \text{m}) \\ &= 18\ \text{m}. \end{aligned}$$

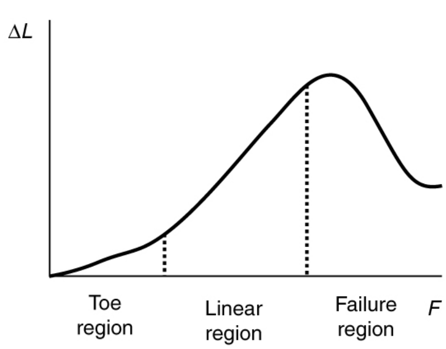
Discussion

This is quite a stretch, but only about 0.6% of the unsupported length. Effects of temperature upon length might be important in these environments.

Bones, on the whole, do not fracture due to tension or compression. Rather they generally fracture due to sideways impact or bending, resulting in the

bone shearing or snapping. The behavior of bones under tension and compression is important because it determines the load the bones can carry. Bones are classified as weight-bearing structures such as columns in buildings and trees. Weight-bearing structures have special features; columns in building have steel-reinforcing rods while trees and bones are fibrous. The bones in different parts of the body serve different structural functions and are prone to different stresses. Thus the bone in the top of the femur is arranged in thin sheets separated by marrow while in other places the bones can be cylindrical and filled with marrow or just solid. Overweight people have a tendency toward bone damage due to sustained compressions in bone joints and tendons.

Another biological example of Hooke's law occurs in tendons. Functionally, the tendon (the tissue connecting muscle to bone) must stretch easily at first when a force is applied, but offer a much greater restoring force for a greater strain. [link] shows a stress-strain relationship for a human tendon. Some tendons have a high collagen content so there is relatively little strain, or length change; others, like support tendons (as in the leg) can change length up to 10%. Note that this stress-strain curve is nonlinear, since the slope of the line changes in different regions. In the first part of the stretch called the toe region, the fibers in the tendon begin to align in the direction of the stress—this is called *uncrimping*. In the linear region, the fibrils will be stretched, and in the failure region individual fibers begin to break. A simple model of this relationship can be illustrated by springs in parallel: different springs are activated at different lengths of stretch. Examples of this are given in the problems at end of this chapter. Ligaments (tissue connecting bone to bone) behave in a similar way.



Typical stress-strain curve for mammalian tendon. Three regions are shown: (1) toe region (2) linear region, and (3) failure region.

Unlike bones and tendons, which need to be strong as well as elastic, the arteries and lungs need to be very stretchable. The elastic properties of the arteries are essential for blood flow. The pressure in the arteries increases and arterial walls stretch when the blood is pumped out of the heart. When the aortic valve shuts, the pressure in the arteries drops and the arterial walls relax to maintain the blood flow. When you feel your pulse, you are feeling exactly this—the elastic behavior of the arteries as the blood gushes through with each pump of the heart. If the arteries were rigid, you would not feel a pulse. The heart is also an organ with special elastic properties. The lungs expand with muscular effort when we breathe in but relax freely and elastically when we breathe out. Our skins are particularly elastic, especially for the young. A young person can go from 100 kg to 60 kg with no visible sag in their skins. The elasticity of all organs reduces with age. Gradual physiological aging through reduction in elasticity starts in the early 20s.

Example:

Calculating Deformation: How Much Does Your Leg Shorten When You Stand on It?

Calculate the change in length of the upper leg bone (the femur) when a 70.0 kg man supports 62.0 kg of his mass on it, assuming the bone to be equivalent to a uniform rod that is 40.0 cm long and 2.00 cm in radius.

Strategy

The force is equal to the weight supported, or

Equation:

$$F = \text{mg} = (62.0\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right) = 607.6\text{ N},$$

and the cross-sectional area is $\pi r^2 = 1.257 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}^2$. The equation $\Delta L = \frac{1}{Y}\frac{F}{A}L_0$ can be used to find the change in length.

Solution

All quantities except ΔL are known. Note that the compression value for Young's modulus for bone must be used here. Thus,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta L &= \left(\frac{1}{9 \times 10^9\text{ N/m}^2}\right)\left(\frac{607.6\text{ N}}{1.257 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}^2}\right)(0.400\text{ m}) \\ &= 2 \times 10^{-5}\text{ m}.\end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This small change in length seems reasonable, consistent with our experience that bones are rigid. In fact, even the rather large forces encountered during strenuous physical activity do not compress or bend bones by large amounts. Although bone is rigid compared with fat or muscle, several of the substances listed in [link] have larger values of Young's modulus Y. In other words, they are more rigid.

The equation for change in length is traditionally rearranged and written in the following form:

Equation:

$$\frac{F}{A} = Y\frac{\Delta L}{L_0}.$$

The ratio of force to area, $\frac{F}{A}$, is defined as **stress** (measured in N/m^2), and the ratio of the change in length to length, $\frac{\Delta L}{L_0}$, is defined as **strain** (a unitless quantity). In other words,

Equation:

$$\text{stress} = Y \times \text{strain}.$$

In this form, the equation is analogous to Hooke's law, with stress analogous to force and strain analogous to deformation. If we again rearrange this equation to the form

Equation:

$$F=\text{YA}\frac{\Delta L}{L_0},$$

we see that it is the same as Hooke's law with a proportionality constant

Equation:

$$k=\frac{\text{YA}}{L_0}.$$

This general idea—that force and the deformation it causes are proportional for small deformations—applies to changes in length, sideways bending, and changes in volume.

> **Note:**
> Stress
> The ratio of force to area, $\frac{F}{A}$, is defined as stress measured in N/m^2.

> **Note:**
> Strain
> The ratio of the change in length to length, $\frac{\Delta L}{L_0}$, is defined as strain (a unitless quantity). In other words,
> **Equation:**
>
> $$\text{stress}=Y\times\text{strain}.$$

Sideways Stress: Shear Modulus

[link] illustrates what is meant by a sideways stress or a *shearing force*. Here the deformation is called Δx and it is perpendicular to L_0, rather than parallel as with tension and compression. Shear deformation behaves similarly to tension and compression and can be described with similar equations. The expression for **shear deformation** is

Equation:

$$\Delta x = \frac{1}{S}\frac{F}{A}L_0,$$

where S is the shear modulus (see [link]) and F is the force applied perpendicular to L_0 and parallel to the cross-sectional area A. Again, to keep the object from accelerating, there are actually two equal and opposite forces F applied across opposite faces, as illustrated in [link]. The equation is logical—for example, it is easier to bend a long thin pencil (small A) than a short thick one, and both are more easily bent than similar steel rods (large S).

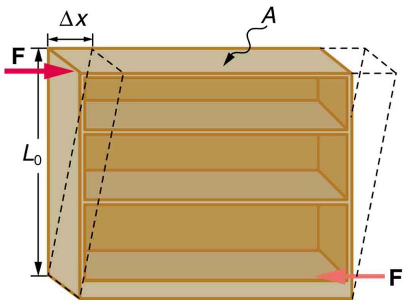
Note:

Shear Deformation

Equation:

$$\Delta x = \frac{1}{S}\frac{F}{A}L_0,$$

where S is the shear modulus and F is the force applied perpendicular to L_0 and parallel to the cross-sectional area A.



Shearing forces are applied perpendicular to the length L_0 and parallel to the area A, producing a deformation Δx. Vertical forces are not shown, but it should be kept in mind that in addition to the two shearing forces, $\mathbf{F}$, there must be supporting forces to keep the object from rotating. The distorting effects of these supporting forces are ignored in this treatment. The weight of the object also is not shown, since it is usually negligible compared with forces large enough to cause significant deformations.

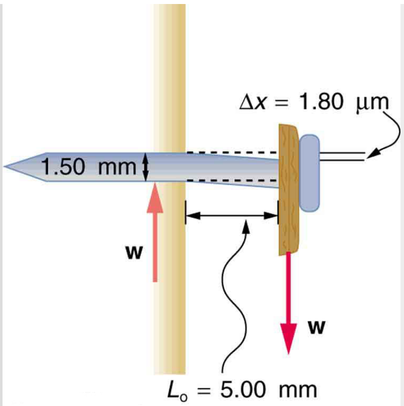
Examination of the shear moduli in [link] reveals some telling patterns. For example, shear moduli are less than Young’s moduli for most materials. Bone is a remarkable exception. Its shear modulus is not only greater than its Young’s modulus, but it is as large as that of steel. This is why bones are so rigid.

The spinal column (consisting of 26 vertebral segments separated by discs) provides the main support for the head and upper part of the body. The spinal column has normal curvature for stability, but this curvature can be increased, leading to increased shearing forces on the lower vertebrae. Discs are better at withstanding compressional forces than shear forces. Because the spine is not vertical, the weight of the upper body exerts some of both. Pregnant women and people that are overweight (with large abdomens) need to move their shoulders back to maintain balance, thereby increasing the curvature in their spine and so increasing the shear component of the stress. An increased angle due to more curvature increases the shear forces along the plane. These higher shear forces increase the risk of back injury through ruptured discs. The lumbosacral disc (the wedge shaped disc below the last vertebrae) is particularly at risk because of its location.

The shear moduli for concrete and brick are very small; they are too highly variable to be listed. Concrete used in buildings can withstand compression, as in pillars and arches, but is very poor against shear, as might be encountered in heavily loaded floors or during earthquakes. Modern structures were made possible by the use of steel and steel-reinforced concrete. Almost by definition, liquids and gases have shear moduli near zero, because they flow in response to shearing forces.

Example:
Calculating Force Required to Deform: That Nail Does Not Bend Much Under a Load

Find the mass of the picture hanging from a steel nail as shown in [link], given that the nail bends only 1.80 µm. (Assume the shear modulus is known to two significant figures.)



Side view of a nail with a picture hung from it. The nail flexes very slightly (shown much larger than actual) because of the shearing effect of the supported weight. Also shown is the upward force of the wall on the nail, illustrating that there are equal and opposite forces applied across opposite cross sections of the nail. See [link] for a calculation of the mass of the picture.

Strategy
The force F on the nail (neglecting the nail's own weight) is the weight of the picture w. If we can find w, then the mass of the picture is just $\frac{w}{g}$. The equation $\Delta x = \frac{1}{S}\frac{F}{A}L_0$ can be solved for F.

Solution
Solving the equation $\Delta x = \frac{1}{S}\frac{F}{A}L_0$ for F, we see that all other quantities can be found:
Equation:

$$F = \frac{SA}{L_0}\Delta x.$$

S is found in [link] and is $S = 80 \times 10^9 \text{ N/m}^2$. The radius r is 0.750 mm (as seen in the figure), so the cross-sectional area is
Equation:

$$A = \pi r^2 = 1.77 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}^2.$$

The value for L_0 is also shown in the figure. Thus,
Equation:

$$F = \frac{(80 \times 10^9 \text{ N/m}^2)(1.77 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}^2)}{(5.00 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m})}(1.80 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}) = 51 \text{ N}.$$

This 51 N force is the weight w of the picture, so the picture's mass is
Equation:

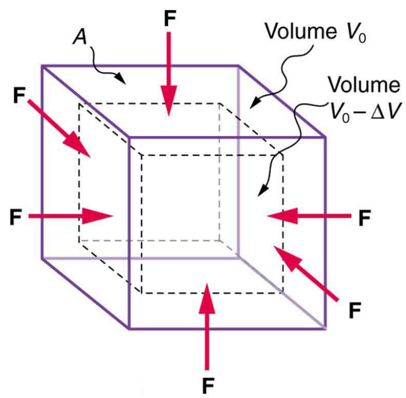
$$m = \frac{w}{g} = \frac{F}{g} = 5.2 \text{ kg}.$$

Discussion
This is a fairly massive picture, and it is impressive that the nail flexes only 1.80 µm—an amount undetectable to the unaided eye.

Changes in Volume: Bulk Modulus

An object will be compressed in all directions if inward forces are applied evenly on all its surfaces as in [link]. It is relatively easy to compress gases and extremely difficult to compress liquids and solids. For example, air in a

wine bottle is compressed when it is corked. But if you try corking a brim-full bottle, you cannot compress the wine—some must be removed if the cork is to be inserted. The reason for these different compressibilities is that atoms and molecules are separated by large empty spaces in gases but packed close together in liquids and solids. To compress a gas, you must force its atoms and molecules closer together. To compress liquids and solids, you must actually compress their atoms and molecules, and very strong electromagnetic forces in them oppose this compression.



An inward force on all surfaces compresses this cube. Its change in volume is proportional to the force per unit area and its original volume, and is related to the compressibility of the substance.

We can describe the compression or volume deformation of an object with an equation. First, we note that a force “applied evenly” is defined to have

the same stress, or ratio of force to area $\frac{F}{A}$ on all surfaces. The deformation produced is a change in volume ΔV, which is found to behave very similarly to the shear, tension, and compression previously discussed. (This is not surprising, since a compression of the entire object is equivalent to compressing each of its three dimensions.) The relationship of the change in volume to other physical quantities is given by

Equation:

$$\Delta V = \frac{1}{B}\frac{F}{A}V_0,$$

where B is the bulk modulus (see [link]), V_0 is the original volume, and $\frac{F}{A}$ is the force per unit area applied uniformly inward on all surfaces. Note that no bulk moduli are given for gases.

What are some examples of bulk compression of solids and liquids? One practical example is the manufacture of industrial-grade diamonds by compressing carbon with an extremely large force per unit area. The carbon atoms rearrange their crystalline structure into the more tightly packed pattern of diamonds. In nature, a similar process occurs deep underground, where extremely large forces result from the weight of overlying material. Another natural source of large compressive forces is the pressure created by the weight of water, especially in deep parts of the oceans. Water exerts an inward force on all surfaces of a submerged object, and even on the water itself. At great depths, water is measurably compressed, as the following example illustrates.

Example:
Calculating Change in Volume with Deformation: How Much Is Water Compressed at Great Ocean Depths?

Calculate the fractional decrease in volume ($\frac{\Delta V}{V_0}$) for seawater at 5.00 km depth, where the force per unit area is $5.00 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$.

Strategy

Equation $\Delta V = \frac{1}{B}\frac{F}{A}V_0$ is the correct physical relationship. All quantities in the equation except $\frac{\Delta V}{V_0}$ are known.

Solution

Solving for the unknown $\frac{\Delta V}{V_0}$ gives

Equation:

$$\frac{\Delta V}{V_0} = \frac{1}{B}\frac{F}{A}.$$

Substituting known values with the value for the bulk modulus B from [link],

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\Delta V}{V_0} &= \frac{5.00\times10^{7}\ \text{N/m}^2}{2.2\times10^{9}\ \text{N/m}^2}\\ &= 0.023 = 2.3\%.\end{aligned}$$

Discussion

Although measurable, this is not a significant decrease in volume considering that the force per unit area is about 500 atmospheres (1 million pounds per square foot). Liquids and solids are extraordinarily difficult to compress.

Conversely, very large forces are created by liquids and solids when they try to expand but are constrained from doing so—which is equivalent to compressing them to less than their normal volume. This often occurs when a contained material warms up, since most materials expand when their temperature increases. If the materials are tightly constrained, they deform or break their container. Another very common example occurs when water freezes. Water, unlike most materials, expands when it freezes, and it can easily fracture a boulder, rupture a biological cell, or crack an engine block that gets in its way.

Other types of deformations, such as torsion or twisting, behave analogously to the tension, shear, and bulk deformations considered here.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Masses & Springs

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/mass-spring-lab/mass-spring-lab_en.html

Section Summary

- Hooke’s law is given by
  Equation:
  $$F = k\Delta L,$$
  where ΔL is the amount of deformation (the change in length), F is the applied force, and k is a proportionality constant that depends on the shape and composition of the object and the direction of the force. The relationship between the deformation and the applied force can also be written as
  Equation:
  $$\Delta L = \frac{1}{Y}\frac{F}{A}L_0,$$
  where Y is *Young’s modulus*, which depends on the substance, A is the cross-sectional area, and L_0 is the original length.
- The ratio of force to area, $\frac{F}{A}$, is defined as *stress*, measured in N/m^2.
- The ratio of the change in length to length, $\frac{\Delta L}{L_0}$, is defined as *strain* (a unitless quantity). In other words,
  Equation:
  $$\text{stress} = Y \times \text{strain}.$$
- The expression for shear deformation is
  Equation:

$$\Delta x = \frac{1}{S} \frac{F}{A} L_0,$$

where S is the shear modulus and F is the force applied perpendicular to L_0 and parallel to the cross-sectional area A.

- The relationship of the change in volume to other physical quantities is given by
  Equation:

  $$\Delta V = \frac{1}{B} \frac{F}{A} V_0,$$

  where B is the bulk modulus, V_0 is the original volume, and $\frac{F}{A}$ is the force per unit area applied uniformly inward on all surfaces.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

The elastic properties of the arteries are essential for blood flow. Explain the importance of this in terms of the characteristics of the flow of blood (pulsating or continuous).

Exercise:

Problem:

What are you feeling when you feel your pulse? Measure your pulse rate for 10 s and for 1 min. Is there a factor of 6 difference?

Exercise:

Problem:

Examine different types of shoes, including sports shoes and thongs. In terms of physics, why are the bottom surfaces designed as they are? What differences will dry and wet conditions make for these surfaces?

Exercise:

Problem:

Would you expect your height to be different depending upon the time of day? Why or why not?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why can a squirrel jump from a tree branch to the ground and run away undamaged, while a human could break a bone in such a fall?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why pregnant women often suffer from back strain late in their pregnancy.

Exercise:

Problem:

An old carpenter’s trick to keep nails from bending when they are pounded into hard materials is to grip the center of the nail firmly with pliers. Why does this help?

Exercise:

Problem:

When a glass bottle full of vinegar warms up, both the vinegar and the glass expand, but vinegar expands significantly more with temperature than glass. The bottle will break if it was filled to its tightly capped lid. Explain why, and also explain how a pocket of air above the vinegar would prevent the break. (This is the function of the air above liquids in glass containers.)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

During a circus act, one performer swings upside down hanging from a trapeze holding another, also upside-down, performer by the legs. If the upward force on the lower performer is three times her weight, how much do the bones (the femurs) in her upper legs stretch? You may assume each is equivalent to a uniform rod 35.0 cm long and 1.80 cm in radius. Her mass is 60.0 kg.

Solution:
Equation:

$$1.90 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{cm}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

During a wrestling match, a 150 kg wrestler briefly stands on one hand during a maneuver designed to perplex his already moribund adversary. By how much does the upper arm bone shorten in length? The bone can be represented by a uniform rod 38.0 cm in length and 2.10 cm in radius.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The “lead” in pencils is a graphite composition with a Young’s modulus of about $1 \times 10^9\ \text{N/m}^2$. Calculate the change in length of the lead in an automatic pencil if you tap it straight into the pencil with a force of 4.0 N. The lead is 0.50 mm in diameter and 60 mm long. (b) Is the answer reasonable? That is, does it seem to be consistent with what you have observed when using pencils?

Solution:

(a)1 mm
(b) This does seem reasonable, since the lead does seem to shrink a little when you push on it.

Exercise:

Problem:

TV broadcast antennas are the tallest artificial structures on Earth. In 1987, a 72.0-kg physicist placed himself and 400 kg of equipment at the top of one 610-m high antenna to perform gravity experiments. By how much was the antenna compressed, if we consider it to be equivalent to a steel cylinder 0.150 m in radius?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) By how much does a 65.0-kg mountain climber stretch her 0.800-cm diameter nylon rope when she hangs 35.0 m below a rock outcropping? (b) Does the answer seem to be consistent with what you have observed for nylon ropes? Would it make sense if the rope were actually a bungee cord?

Solution:

(a)9 cm
(b)This seems reasonable for nylon climbing rope, since it is not supposed to stretch that much.

Exercise:

Problem:

A 20.0-m tall hollow aluminum flagpole is equivalent in stiffness to a solid cylinder 4.00 cm in diameter. A strong wind bends the pole much as a horizontal force of 900 N exerted at the top would. How far to the side does the top of the pole flex?

Exercise:

Problem:

As an oil well is drilled, each new section of drill pipe supports its own weight and that of the pipe and drill bit beneath it. Calculate the stretch in a new 6.00 m length of steel pipe that supports 3.00 km of pipe having a mass of 20.0 kg/m and a 100-kg drill bit. The pipe is equivalent in stiffness to a solid cylinder 5.00 cm in diameter.

Solution:

8.59 mm

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the force a piano tuner applies to stretch a steel piano wire 8.00 mm, if the wire is originally 0.850 mm in diameter and 1.35 m long.

Exercise:

Problem:

A vertebra is subjected to a shearing force of 500 N. Find the shear deformation, taking the vertebra to be a cylinder 3.00 cm high and 4.00 cm in diameter.

Solution:
Equation:

$$1.49 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A disk between vertebrae in the spine is subjected to a shearing force of 600 N. Find its shear deformation, taking it to have the shear modulus of $1 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$. The disk is equivalent to a solid cylinder 0.700 cm high and 4.00 cm in diameter.

Exercise:

Problem:

When using a pencil eraser, you exert a vertical force of 6.00 N at a distance of 2.00 cm from the hardwood-eraser joint. The pencil is 6.00 mm in diameter and is held at an angle of 20.0° to the horizontal. (a) By how much does the wood flex perpendicular to its length? (b) How much is it compressed lengthwise?

Solution:

(a) $3.99 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{m}$

(b) $9.67 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

To consider the effect of wires hung on poles, we take data from [link], in which tensions in wires supporting a traffic light were calculated. The left wire made an angle 30.0° below the horizontal with the top of its pole and carried a tension of 108 N. The 12.0 m tall hollow aluminum pole is equivalent in stiffness to a 4.50 cm diameter solid cylinder. (a) How far is it bent to the side? (b) By how much is it compressed?

Exercise:

Problem:

A farmer making grape juice fills a glass bottle to the brim and caps it tightly. The juice expands more than the glass when it warms up, in such a way that the volume increases by 0.2% (that is, $\Delta V/V_0 = 2 \times 10^{-3}$) relative to the space available. Calculate the magnitude of the normal force exerted by the juice per square centimeter if its bulk modulus is $1.8 \times 10^9\ \text{N/m}^2$, assuming the bottle does not break. In view of your answer, do you think the bottle will survive?

Solution:

$4 \times 10^6\ \text{N/m}^2$. This is about 36 atm, greater than a typical jar can withstand.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) When water freezes, its volume increases by 9.05% (that is, $\Delta V/V_0 = 9.05 \times 10^{-2}$). What force per unit area is water capable of exerting on a container when it freezes? (It is acceptable to use the bulk modulus of water in this problem.) (b) Is it surprising that such forces can fracture engine blocks, boulders, and the like?

Exercise:

Problem:

This problem returns to the tightrope walker studied in [link], who created a tension of $3.94 \times 10^3\ \text{N}$ in a wire making an angle 5.0° below the horizontal with each supporting pole. Calculate how much this tension stretches the steel wire if it was originally 15 m long and 0.50 cm in diameter.

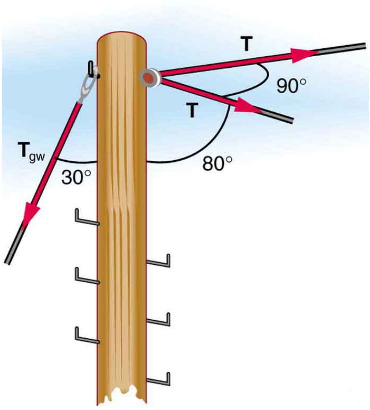
Solution:

1.4 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

The pole in [link] is at a 90.0° bend in a power line and is therefore subjected to more shear force than poles in straight parts of the line. The tension in each line is 4.00×10^{4} N, at the angles shown. The pole is 15.0 m tall, has an 18.0 cm diameter, and can be considered to have half the stiffness of hardwood. (a) Calculate the compression of the pole. (b) Find how much it bends and in what direction. (c) Find the tension in a guy wire used to keep the pole straight if it is attached to the top of the pole at an angle of 30.0° with the vertical. (Clearly, the guy wire must be in the opposite direction of the bend.)



This telephone pole is at a 90° bend in a power line. A guy wire is attached to the top of the pole at an angle of 30° with the vertical.

Glossary

deformation

change in shape due to the application of force

Hooke’s law
: proportional relationship between the force F on a material and the deformation ΔL it causes, $F = k\Delta L$

tensile strength
: the breaking stress that will cause permanent deformation or fraction of a material

stress
: ratio of force to area

strain
: ratio of change in length to original length

shear deformation
: deformation perpendicular to the original length of an object

Introduction to Uniform Circular Motion and Gravitation class="introduction"

This Australian Grand Prix Formula 1 race car moves in a circular path as it makes the turn. Its wheels also spin rapidly—the latter completing many revolutions, the former only part of one (a circular arc). The same physical principles are involved in each. (credit: Richard Munckton)

Many motions, such as the arc of a bird’s flight or Earth’s path around the Sun, are curved. Recall that Newton’s first law tells us that motion is along a straight line at constant speed unless there is a net external force. We will therefore study not only motion along curves, but also the forces that cause it, including gravitational forces. In some ways, this chapter is a continuation of Dynamics: Newton's Laws of Motion as we study more applications of Newton’s laws of motion.

This chapter deals with the simplest form of curved motion, **uniform circular motion**, motion in a circular path at constant speed. Studying this topic illustrates most concepts associated with rotational motion and leads to the study of many new topics we group under the name *rotation*. Pure *rotational motion* occurs when points in an object move in circular paths centered on one point. Pure *translational motion* is motion with no rotation. Some motion combines both types, such as a rotating hockey puck moving along ice.

Glossary

uniform circular motion
: the motion of an object in a circular path at constant speed

Rotation Angle and Angular Velocity

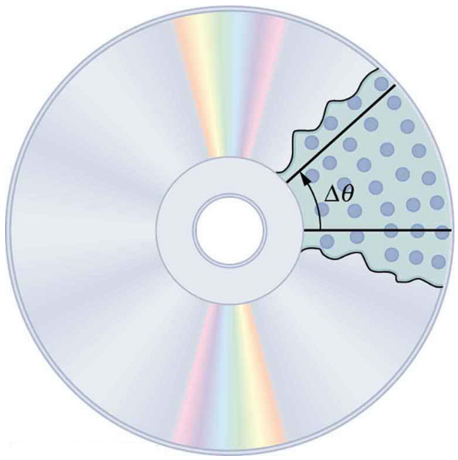
- Define arc length, rotation angle, radius of curvature and angular velocity.
- Calculate the angular velocity of a car wheel spin.

In Kinematics, we studied motion along a straight line and introduced such concepts as displacement, velocity, and acceleration. Two-Dimensional Kinematics dealt with motion in two dimensions. Projectile motion is a special case of two-dimensional kinematics in which the object is projected into the air, while being subject to the gravitational force, and lands a distance away. In this chapter, we consider situations where the object does not land but moves in a curve. We begin the study of uniform circular motion by defining two angular quantities needed to describe rotational motion.

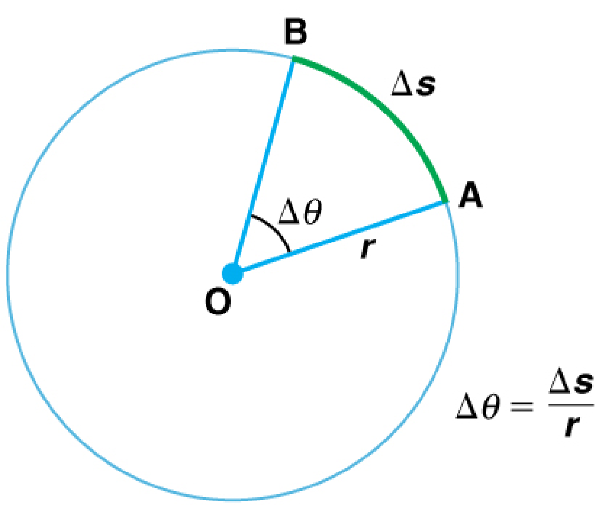
Rotation Angle

When objects rotate about some axis—for example, when the CD (compact disc) in [link] rotates about its center—each point in the object follows a circular arc. Consider a line from the center of the CD to its edge. Each **pit** used to record sound along this line moves through the same angle in the same amount of time. The rotation angle is the amount of rotation and is analogous to linear distance. We define the **rotation angle** $\Delta\theta$ to be the ratio of the arc length to the radius of curvature:
Equation:

$$\Delta\theta = \frac{\Delta s}{r}.$$



All points on a CD travel in circular arcs. The pits along a line from the center to the edge all move through the same angle $\Delta\theta$ in a time Δt.



The radius of a circle is rotated through an angle $\Delta\theta$. The arc

length Δs is described on the circumference.

The **arc length** Δs is the distance traveled along a circular path as shown in [link] Note that r is the **radius of curvature** of the circular path.

We know that for one complete revolution, the arc length is the circumference of a circle of radius r. The circumference of a circle is $2\pi r$. Thus for one complete revolution the rotation angle is
Equation:

$$\Delta\theta = \frac{2\pi r}{r} = 2\pi.$$

This result is the basis for defining the units used to measure rotation angles, $\Delta\theta$ to be **radians** (rad), defined so that
Equation:

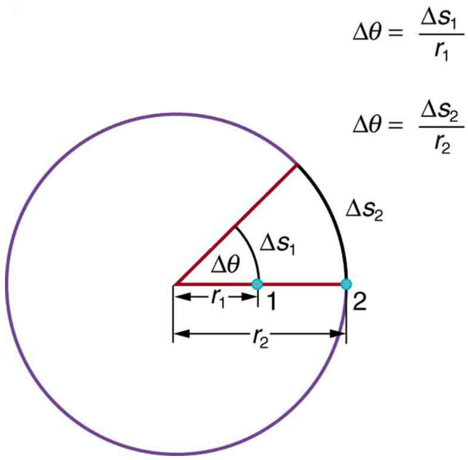
$$2\pi\ \text{rad} = 1\ \text{revolution.}$$

A comparison of some useful angles expressed in both degrees and radians is shown in [link].

Degree Measures	Radian Measure
30°	$\frac{\pi}{6}$

Degree Measures	**Radian Measure**
60^o	$\frac{\pi}{3}$
90^o	$\frac{\pi}{2}$
120^o	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$
135^o	$\frac{3\pi}{4}$
180^o	π

Comparison of Angular Units



Points 1 and 2 rotate through the same angle ($\Delta\theta$), but point 2 moves through a greater arc length (Δs) because it is at a greater distance from the center of rotation (r).

If $\Delta\theta = 2\pi$ rad, then the CD has made one complete revolution, and every point on the CD is back at its original position. Because there are 360^{o} in a circle or one revolution, the relationship between radians and degrees is thus

Equation:

$$2\pi \text{ rad} = 360^{\text{o}}$$

so that

Equation:

$$1 \text{ rad} = \frac{360^{\text{o}}}{2\pi} \approx 57.3^{\text{o}}.$$

Angular Velocity

How fast is an object rotating? We define **angular velocity** ω as the rate of change of an angle. In symbols, this is

Equation:

$$\omega = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t},$$

where an angular rotation $\Delta\theta$ takes place in a time Δt. The greater the rotation angle in a given amount of time, the greater the angular velocity. The units for angular velocity are radians per second (rad/s).

Angular velocity ω is analogous to linear velocity v. To get the precise relationship between angular and linear velocity, we again consider a pit on the rotating CD. This pit moves an arc length Δs in a time Δt, and so it has a linear velocity

Equation:

$$v = \frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t}.$$

From $\Delta\theta = \frac{\Delta s}{r}$ we see that $\Delta s = r\Delta\theta$. Substituting this into the expression for v gives

Equation:

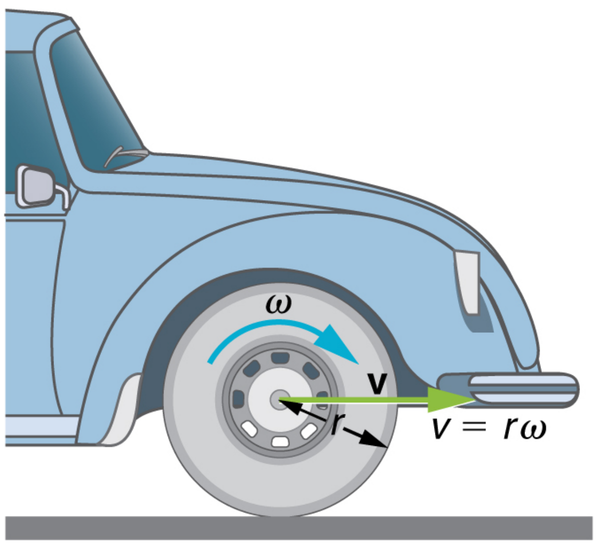
$$v = \frac{r\Delta\theta}{\Delta t} = r\omega.$$

We write this relationship in two different ways and gain two different insights:

Equation:

$$v = r\omega \text{ or } \omega = \frac{v}{r}.$$

The first relationship in $v = r\omega$ or $\omega = \frac{v}{r}$ states that the linear velocity v is proportional to the distance from the center of rotation, thus, it is largest for a point on the rim (largest r), as you might expect. We can also call this linear speed v of a point on the rim the *tangential speed*. The second relationship in $v = r\omega$ or $\omega = \frac{v}{r}$ can be illustrated by considering the tire of a moving car. Note that the speed of a point on the rim of the tire is the same as the speed v of the car. See [link]. So the faster the car moves, the faster the tire spins—large v means a large ω, because $v = r\omega$. Similarly, a larger-radius tire rotating at the same angular velocity (ω) will produce a greater linear speed (v) for the car.



A car moving at a velocity v to the right has a tire rotating with an angular velocity ω.The speed of the tread of the tire relative to the axle is v, the same as if the car were jacked up. Thus the car moves forward at linear velocity $v = r\omega$, where r is the tire radius. A larger angular velocity for the tire means a greater velocity for the car.

Example:
How Fast Does a Car Tire Spin?
Calculate the angular velocity of a 0.300 m radius car tire when the car travels at 15.0 m/s (about 54 km/h). See [link].

Strategy

Because the linear speed of the tire rim is the same as the speed of the car, we have $v = 15.0 \text{ m/s}$. The radius of the tire is given to be $r = 0.300 \text{ m}$. Knowing v and r, we can use the second relationship in $v = r\omega, \omega = \frac{v}{r}$ to calculate the angular velocity.

Solution

To calculate the angular velocity, we will use the following relationship:

Equation:

$$\omega = \frac{v}{r}.$$

Substituting the knowns,

Equation:

$$\omega = \frac{15.0 \text{ m/s}}{0.300 \text{ m}} = 50.0 \text{ rad/s}.$$

Discussion

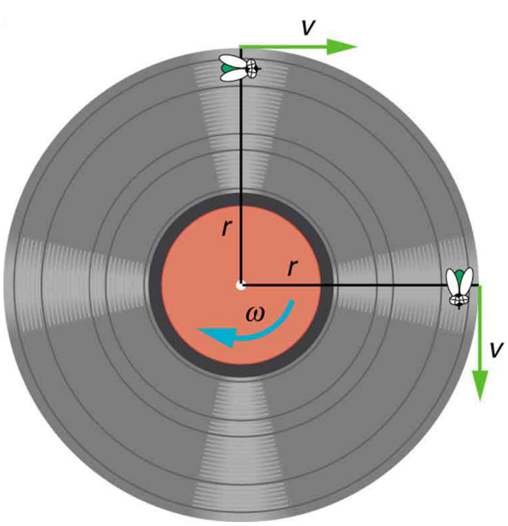
When we cancel units in the above calculation, we get 50.0/s. But the angular velocity must have units of rad/s. Because radians are actually unitless (radians are defined as a ratio of distance), we can simply insert them into the answer for the angular velocity. Also note that if an earth mover with much larger tires, say 1.20 m in radius, were moving at the same speed of 15.0 m/s, its tires would rotate more slowly. They would have an angular velocity

Equation:

$$\omega = (15.0 \text{ m/s})/(1.20 \text{ m}) = 12.5 \text{ rad/s}.$$

Both ω and v have directions (hence they are angular and linear *velocities*, respectively). Angular velocity has only two directions with respect to the axis of rotation—it is either clockwise or counterclockwise. Linear velocity is tangent to the path, as illustrated in [link].

Note:
Take-Home Experiment
Tie an object to the end of a string and swing it around in a horizontal circle above your head (swing at your wrist). Maintain uniform speed as the object swings and measure the angular velocity of the motion. What is the approximate speed of the object? Identify a point close to your hand and take appropriate measurements to calculate the linear speed at this point. Identify other circular motions and measure their angular velocities.



As an object moves in a circle, here a fly on the edge of an old-fashioned vinyl record, its instantaneous velocity is

always tangent to the circle. The direction of the angular velocity is clockwise in this case.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Ladybug Revolution

Ladybug Revolution

Join the ladybug in an exploration of rotational motion. Rotate the merry-go-round to change its angle, or choose a constant angular velocity or angular acceleration. Explore how circular motion relates to the bug's x,y position, velocity, and acceleration using vectors or graphs.

Section Summary

- Uniform circular motion is motion in a circle at constant speed. The rotation angle $\Delta\theta$ is defined as the ratio of the arc length to the radius of curvature:
  Equation:
  $$\Delta\theta = \frac{\Delta s}{r},$$
  where arc length Δs is distance traveled along a circular path and r is the radius of curvature of the circular path. The quantity $\Delta\theta$ is

measured in units of radians (rad), for which
Equation:

$$2\pi \text{ rad} = 360^{\circ} = 1 \text{ revolution.}$$

- The conversion between radians and degrees is $1 \text{ rad} = 57.3^{\circ}$.
- Angular velocity ω is the rate of change of an angle,
  Equation:

$$\omega = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t},$$

where a rotation $\Delta\theta$ takes place in a time Δt. The units of angular velocity are radians per second (rad/s). Linear velocity v and angular velocity ω are related by
Equation:

$$v = r\omega \text{ or } \omega = \frac{v}{r}.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

There is an analogy between rotational and linear physical quantities. What rotational quantities are analogous to distance and velocity?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Semi-trailer trucks have an odometer on one hub of a trailer wheel. The hub is weighted so that it does not rotate, but it contains gears to count the number of wheel revolutions—it then calculates the distance traveled. If the wheel has a 1.15 m diameter and goes through 200,000 rotations, how many kilometers should the odometer read?

Solution:

723 km

Exercise:

Problem:

Microwave ovens rotate at a rate of about 6 rev/min. What is this in revolutions per second? What is the angular velocity in radians per second?

Exercise:

Problem:

An automobile with 0.260 m radius tires travels 80,000 km before wearing them out. How many revolutions do the tires make, neglecting any backing up and any change in radius due to wear?

Solution:

$5 \times 10^7 \text{ rotations}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the period of rotation of Earth in seconds? (b) What is the angular velocity of Earth? (c) Given that Earth has a radius of $6.4 \times 10^6 \text{ m}$ at its equator, what is the linear velocity at Earth's surface?

Exercise:

Problem:

A baseball pitcher brings his arm forward during a pitch, rotating the forearm about the elbow. If the velocity of the ball in the pitcher's hand is 35.0 m/s and the ball is 0.300 m from the elbow joint, what is the angular velocity of the forearm?

Solution:

117 rad/s

Exercise:

Problem:

In lacrosse, a ball is thrown from a net on the end of a stick by rotating the stick and forearm about the elbow. If the angular velocity of the ball about the elbow joint is 30.0 rad/s and the ball is 1.30 m from the elbow joint, what is the velocity of the ball?

Exercise:

Problem:

A truck with 0.420-m-radius tires travels at 32.0 m/s. What is the angular velocity of the rotating tires in radians per second? What is this in rev/min?

Solution:

76.2 rad/s

728 rpm

Exercise:

Problem:

Integrated Concepts When kicking a football, the kicker rotates his leg about the hip joint.

(a) If the velocity of the tip of the kicker's shoe is 35.0 m/s and the hip joint is 1.05 m from the tip of the shoe, what is the shoe tip's angular velocity?

(b) The shoe is in contact with the initially stationary 0.500 kg football for 20.0 ms. What average force is exerted on the football to give it a velocity of 20.0 m/s?

(c) Find the maximum range of the football, neglecting air resistance.

Solution:

(a) 33.3 rad/s

(b) 500 N

(c) 40.8 m

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider an amusement park ride in which participants are rotated about a vertical axis in a cylinder with vertical walls. Once the angular velocity reaches its full value, the floor drops away and friction between the walls and the riders prevents them from sliding down. Construct a problem in which you calculate the necessary angular velocity that assures the riders will not slide down the wall. Include a free body diagram of a single rider. Among the variables to consider are the radius of the cylinder and the coefficients of friction between the riders' clothing and the wall.

Glossary

arc length
: Δs, the distance traveled by an object along a circular path

pit
: a tiny indentation on the spiral track moulded into the top of the polycarbonate layer of CD

rotation angle
: the ratio of the arc length to the radius of curvature on a circular path:

$$\Delta\theta = \frac{\Delta s}{r}$$

radius of curvature
: radius of a circular path

radians
: a unit of angle measurement

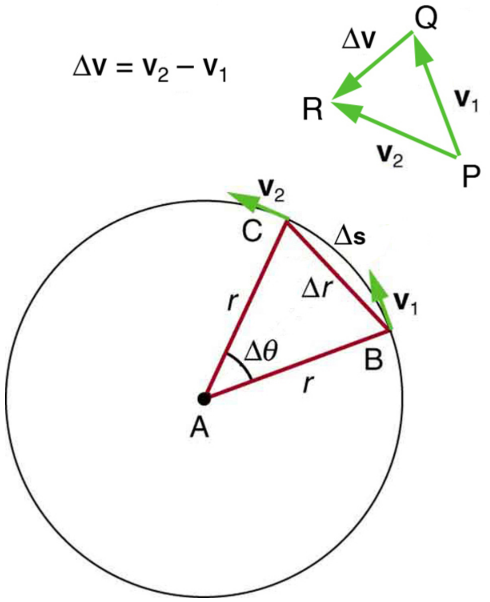
angular velocity
: ω, the rate of change of the angle with which an object moves on a circular path

Centripetal Acceleration

- Establish the expression for centripetal acceleration.
- Explain the centrifuge.

We know from kinematics that acceleration is a change in velocity, either in its magnitude or in its direction, or both. In uniform circular motion, the direction of the velocity changes constantly, so there is always an associated acceleration, even though the magnitude of the velocity might be constant. You experience this acceleration yourself when you turn a corner in your car. (If you hold the wheel steady during a turn and move at constant speed, you are in uniform circular motion.) What you notice is a sideways acceleration because you and the car are changing direction. The sharper the curve and the greater your speed, the more noticeable this acceleration will become. In this section we examine the direction and magnitude of that acceleration.

[link] shows an object moving in a circular path at constant speed. The direction of the instantaneous velocity is shown at two points along the path. Acceleration is in the direction of the change in velocity, which points directly toward the center of rotation (the center of the circular path). This pointing is shown with the vector diagram in the figure. We call the acceleration of an object moving in uniform circular motion (resulting from a net external force) the **centripetal acceleration**(a_c); centripetal means "toward the center" or "center seeking."



The directions of the velocity of an object at two different points are shown, and the change in velocity $\mathbf{\Delta v}$ is seen to point directly toward the center of curvature. (See small inset.) Because $\mathbf{a}_{\mathrm{c}} = \mathbf{\Delta v}/\Delta t$, the acceleration is also toward the center; $\mathbf{a}_c$ is called centripetal acceleration. (Because $\Delta\theta$ is very small, the arc length Δs is equal to the chord length Δr for small time differences.)

The direction of centripetal acceleration is toward the center of curvature, but what is its magnitude? Note that the triangle formed by the velocity vectors and the one formed by the radii r and Δs are similar. Both the

triangles ABC and PQR are isosceles triangles (two equal sides). The two equal sides of the velocity vector triangle are the speeds $v_1 = v_2 = v$. Using the properties of two similar triangles, we obtain
Equation:

$$\frac{\Delta v}{v} = \frac{\Delta s}{r}.$$

Acceleration is $\Delta v / \Delta t$, and so we first solve this expression for Δv:
Equation:

$$\Delta v = \frac{v}{r} \Delta s.$$

Then we divide this by Δt, yielding
Equation:

$$\frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{v}{r} \times \frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t}.$$

Finally, noting that $\Delta v / \Delta t = a_{\text{c}}$ and that $\Delta s / \Delta t = v$, the linear or tangential speed, we see that the magnitude of the centripetal acceleration is
Equation:

$$a_{\text{c}} = \frac{v^2}{r},$$

which is the acceleration of an object in a circle of radius r at a speed v. So, centripetal acceleration is greater at high speeds and in sharp curves (smaller radius), as you have noticed when driving a car. But it is a bit surprising that a_{c} is proportional to speed squared, implying, for example, that it is four times as hard to take a curve at 100 km/h than at 50 km/h. A sharp corner has a small radius, so that a_{c} is greater for tighter turns, as you have probably noticed.

It is also useful to express a_c in terms of angular velocity. Substituting $v = r\omega$ into the above expression, we find $a_c = (r\omega)^2/r = r\omega^2$. We can express the magnitude of centripetal acceleration using either of two equations:

Equation:

$$a_c = \frac{v^2}{r};\; a_c = r\omega^2.$$

Recall that the direction of a_c is toward the center. You may use whichever expression is more convenient, as illustrated in examples below.

A **centrifuge** (see [link]b) is a rotating device used to separate specimens of different densities. High centripetal acceleration significantly decreases the time it takes for separation to occur, and makes separation possible with small samples. Centrifuges are used in a variety of applications in science and medicine, including the separation of single cell suspensions such as bacteria, viruses, and blood cells from a liquid medium and the separation of macromolecules, such as DNA and protein, from a solution. Centrifuges are often rated in terms of their centripetal acceleration relative to acceleration due to gravity (g); maximum centripetal acceleration of several hundred thousand g is possible in a vacuum. Human centrifuges, extremely large centrifuges, have been used to test the tolerance of astronauts to the effects of accelerations larger than that of Earth’s gravity.

Example:
How Does the Centripetal Acceleration of a Car Around a Curve Compare with That Due to Gravity?

What is the magnitude of the centripetal acceleration of a car following a curve of radius 500 m at a speed of 25.0 m/s (about 90 km/h)? Compare the acceleration with that due to gravity for this fairly gentle curve taken at highway speed. See [link](a).

Strategy

Because v and r are given, the first expression in $a_{\mathrm{c}} = \frac{v^2}{r}$; $a_{\mathrm{c}} = r\omega^2$ is the most convenient to use.

Solution

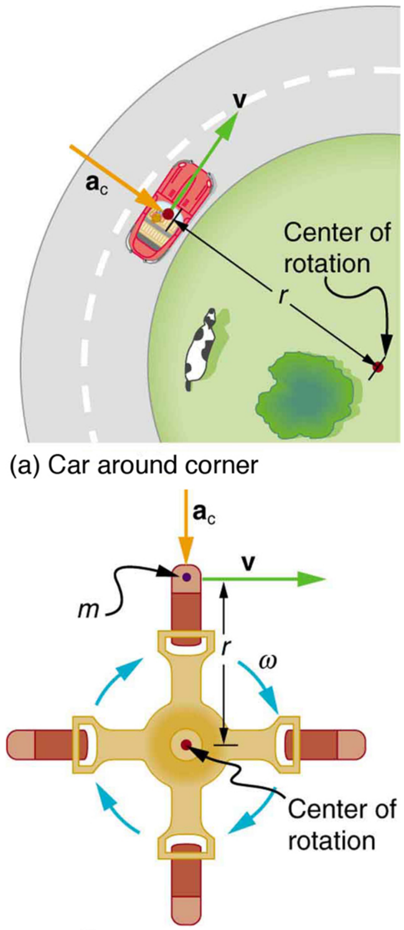
Entering the given values of $v = 25.0\ \mathrm{m/s}$ and $r = 500\ \mathrm{m}$ into the first expression for a_{c} gives

Equation:

$$a_{\mathrm{c}} = \frac{v^2}{r} = \frac{(25.0\ \mathrm{m/s})^2}{500\ \mathrm{m}} = 1.25\ \mathrm{m/s}^2.$$

Discussion

To compare this with the acceleration due to gravity $(g = 9.80\ \mathrm{m/s}^2)$, we take the ratio of $a_{\mathrm{c}}/g = \left(1.25\ \mathrm{m/s}^2\right)/\left(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s}^2\right) = 0.128$. Thus, $a_{\mathrm{c}} = 0.128$ g and is noticeable especially if you were not wearing a seat belt.



(a) The car following a circular path at constant speed is accelerated perpendicular to its velocity, as shown. The magnitude of this centripetal acceleration is found in [link]. (b) A particle of mass in a centrifuge is rotating at constant angular velocity . It

must be accelerated perpendicular to its velocity or it would continue in a straight line. The magnitude of the necessary acceleration is found in [link].

Example:
How Big Is the Centripetal Acceleration in an Ultracentrifuge?
Calculate the centripetal acceleration of a point 7.50 cm from the axis of an **ultracentrifuge** spinning at $7.5 \times 10^4\ \text{rev/min}$. Determine the ratio of this acceleration to that due to gravity. See [link](b).
Strategy
The term rev/min stands for revolutions per minute. By converting this to radians per second, we obtain the angular velocity ω. Because r is given, we can use the second expression in the equation $a_c = \frac{v^2}{r}; a_c = r\omega^2$ to calculate the centripetal acceleration.
Solution
To convert $7.50 \times 10^4\ \text{rev/min}$ to radians per second, we use the facts that one revolution is $2\pi\text{rad}$ and one minute is 60.0 s. Thus,
Equation:

$$\omega = 7.50 \times 10^4\ \frac{\text{rev}}{\text{min}} \times \frac{2\pi\ \text{rad}}{1\ \text{rev}} \times \frac{1\ \text{min}}{60.0\ \text{s}} = 7854\ \text{rad/s}.$$

Now the centripetal acceleration is given by the second expression in $a_c = \frac{v^2}{r}; a_c = r\omega^2$ as
Equation:

$$a_c = r\omega^2.$$

Converting 7.50 cm to meters and substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$a_{\mathrm{c}} = (0.0750\ \mathrm{m})(7854\ \mathrm{rad/s})^2 = 4.63 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{m/s}^2.$$

Note that the unitless radians are discarded in order to get the correct units for centripetal acceleration. Taking the ratio of a_{c} to g yields

Equation:

$$\frac{a_{\mathrm{c}}}{g} = \frac{4.63 \times 10^6}{9.80} = 4.72 \times 10^5.$$

Discussion

This last result means that the centripetal acceleration is 472,000 times as strong as g. It is no wonder that such high ω centrifuges are called ultracentrifuges. The extremely large accelerations involved greatly decrease the time needed to cause the sedimentation of blood cells or other materials.

Of course, a net external force is needed to cause any acceleration, just as Newton proposed in his second law of motion. So a net external force is needed to cause a centripetal acceleration. In Centripetal Force, we will consider the forces involved in circular motion.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Ladybug Motion 2D

Learn about position, velocity and acceleration vectors. Move the ladybug by setting the position, velocity or acceleration, and see how the vectors change. Choose linear, circular or elliptical motion, and record and playback the motion to analyze the behavior.

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/317a2b1e-2fbd-11e5-99b5-e38ffb545fe6/ladybug-motion/#sim-ladybug-motion

Section Summary

- Centripetal acceleration a_{c} is the acceleration experienced while in uniform circular motion. It always points toward the center of rotation. It is perpendicular to the linear velocity v and has the magnitude **Equation:**

$$a_{\mathrm{c}} = \frac{v^2}{r}; a_{\mathrm{c}} = r\omega^2.$$

- The unit of centripetal acceleration is $\mathrm{m/s^2}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Can centripetal acceleration change the speed of circular motion? Explain.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A fairground ride spins its occupants inside a flying saucer-shaped container. If the horizontal circular path the riders follow has an 8.00 m radius, at how many revolutions per minute will the riders be subjected to a centripetal acceleration whose magnitude is 1.50 times that due to gravity?

Solution:

12.9 rev/min

Exercise:

Problem:

A runner taking part in the 200 m dash must run around the end of a track that has a circular arc with a radius of curvature of 30 m. If he completes the 200 m dash in 23.2 s and runs at constant speed throughout the race, what is the magnitude of his centripetal acceleration as he runs the curved portion of the track?

Exercise:

Problem:

Taking the age of Earth to be about 4×10^9 years and assuming its orbital radius of 1.5×10^{11} m has not changed and is circular, calculate the approximate total distance Earth has traveled since its birth (in a frame of reference stationary with respect to the Sun).

Solution:

$4 \times 10^{21}\ \text{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

The propeller of a World War II fighter plane is 2.30 m in diameter.

(a) What is its angular velocity in radians per second if it spins at 1200 rev/min?

(b) What is the linear speed of its tip at this angular velocity if the plane is stationary on the tarmac?

(c) What is the centripetal acceleration of the propeller tip under these conditions? Calculate it in meters per second squared and convert to multiples of *g*.

Exercise:

Problem:

An ordinary workshop grindstone has a radius of 7.50 cm and rotates at 6500 rev/min.

(a) Calculate the magnitude of the centripetal acceleration at its edge in meters per second squared and convert it to multiples of *g*.

(b) What is the linear speed of a point on its edge?

Solution:

a) $3.47 \times 10^{4}\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$, $3.55 \times 10^{3}\ g$

b) $51.1\ \mathrm{m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Helicopter blades withstand tremendous stresses. In addition to supporting the weight of a helicopter, they are spun at rapid rates and experience large centripetal accelerations, especially at the tip.

(a) Calculate the magnitude of the centripetal acceleration at the tip of a 4.00 m long helicopter blade that rotates at 300 rev/min.

(b) Compare the linear speed of the tip with the speed of sound (taken to be 340 m/s).

Exercise:

Problem: Olympic ice skaters are able to spin at about 5 rev/s.

(a) What is their angular velocity in radians per second?

(b) What is the centripetal acceleration of the skater’s nose if it is 0.120 m from the axis of rotation?

(c) An exceptional skater named Dick Button was able to spin much faster in the 1950s than anyone since—at about 9 rev/s. What was the centripetal acceleration of the tip of his nose, assuming it is at 0.120 m radius?

(d) Comment on the magnitudes of the accelerations found. It is reputed that Button ruptured small blood vessels during his spins.

Solution:

a) 31.4 rad/s

b) 118 m/s

c) 384 m/s

d)The centripetal acceleration felt by Olympic skaters is 12 times larger than the acceleration due to gravity. That’s quite a lot of acceleration in itself. The centripetal acceleration felt by Button’s nose was 39.2 times larger than the acceleration due to gravity. It is no wonder that he ruptured small blood vessels in his spins.

Exercise:

Problem:

What percentage of the acceleration at Earth’s surface is the acceleration due to gravity at the position of a satellite located 300 km above Earth?

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the linear speed of an ultracentrifuge is about 0.50 km/s, and Earth in its orbit is about 30 km/s by calculating:

(a) The linear speed of a point on an ultracentrifuge 0.100 m from its center, rotating at 50,000 rev/min.

(b) The linear speed of Earth in its orbit about the Sun (use data from the text on the radius of Earth's orbit and approximate it as being circular).

Solution:

a) 0.524 km/s

b) 29.7 km/s

Exercise:

Problem:

A rotating space station is said to create "artificial gravity"—a loosely-defined term used for an acceleration that would be crudely similar to gravity. The outer wall of the rotating space station would become a floor for the astronauts, and centripetal acceleration supplied by the floor would allow astronauts to exercise and maintain muscle and bone strength more naturally than in non-rotating space environments. If the space station is 200 m in diameter, what angular velocity would produce an "artificial gravity" of $9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$ at the rim?

Exercise:

Problem:

At takeoff, a commercial jet has a 60.0 m/s speed. Its tires have a diameter of 0.850 m.

(a) At how many rev/min are the tires rotating?

(b) What is the centripetal acceleration at the edge of the tire?

(c) With what force must a determined 1.00×10^{-15} kg bacterium cling to the rim?

(d) Take the ratio of this force to the bacterium's weight.

Solution:

(a) 1.35×10^3 rpm

(b) 8.47×10^3 m/s^2

(c) 8.47×10^{-12} N

(d) 865

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Riders in an amusement park ride shaped like a Viking ship hung from a large pivot are rotated back and forth like a rigid pendulum. Sometime near the middle of the ride, the ship is momentarily motionless at the top of its circular arc. The ship then swings down under the influence of gravity.

(a) Assuming negligible friction, find the speed of the riders at the bottom of its arc, given the system's center of mass travels in an arc having a radius of 14.0 m and the riders are near the center of mass.

(b) What is the centripetal acceleration at the bottom of the arc?

(c) Draw a free body diagram of the forces acting on a rider at the bottom of the arc.

(d) Find the force exerted by the ride on a 60.0 kg rider and compare it to her weight.

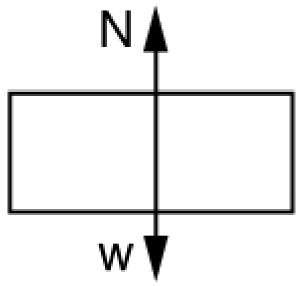
(e) Discuss whether the answer seems reasonable.

Solution:

(a) $16.6\ \text{m/s}$

(b) $19.6\ \text{m/s}^2$

(c)



(d) 1.76×10^3 N or $3.00\ w$, that is, the normal force (upward) is three times her weight.

(e) This answer seems reasonable, since she feels like she’s being forced into the chair MUCH stronger than just by gravity.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A mother pushes her child on a swing so that his speed is 9.00 m/s at the lowest point of his path. The swing is suspended 2.00 m above the child’s center of mass.

(a) What is the magnitude of the centripetal acceleration of the child at the low point?

(b) What is the magnitude of the force the child exerts on the seat if his mass is 18.0 kg?

(c) What is unreasonable about these results?

(d) Which premises are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

a) $40.5\ \text{m/s}^2$

b) 905 N

c) The force in part (b) is very large. The acceleration in part (a) is too much, about 4 g.

d) The speed of the swing is too large. At the given velocity at the bottom of the swing, there is enough kinetic energy to send the child all the way over the top, ignoring friction.

Glossary

centripetal acceleration
: the acceleration of an object moving in a circle, directed toward the center

ultracentrifuge
: a centrifuge optimized for spinning a rotor at very high speeds

Centripetal Force

- Calculate coefficient of friction on a car tire.
- Calculate ideal speed and angle of a car on a turn.

Any force or combination of forces can cause a centripetal or radial acceleration. Just a few examples are the tension in the rope on a tether ball, the force of Earth’s gravity on the Moon, friction between roller skates and a rink floor, a banked roadway’s force on a car, and forces on the tube of a spinning centrifuge.

Any net force causing uniform circular motion is called a **centripetal force**. The direction of a centripetal force is toward the center of curvature, the same as the direction of centripetal acceleration. According to Newton’s second law of motion, net force is mass times acceleration: net $\mathrm{F} = \mathrm{ma}$. For uniform circular motion, the acceleration is the centripetal acceleration — $a = a_c$. Thus, the magnitude of centripetal force $\mathrm{F_c}$ is

Equation:

$$\mathrm{F_c} = ma_\mathrm{c}.$$

By using the expressions for centripetal acceleration a_c from $a_c = \frac{v^2}{r}; a_c = r\omega^2$, we get two expressions for the centripetal force $\mathrm{F_c}$ in terms of mass, velocity, angular velocity, and radius of curvature:

Equation:

$$F_c = m\frac{v^2}{r}; F_c = \mathrm{mr}\omega^2.$$

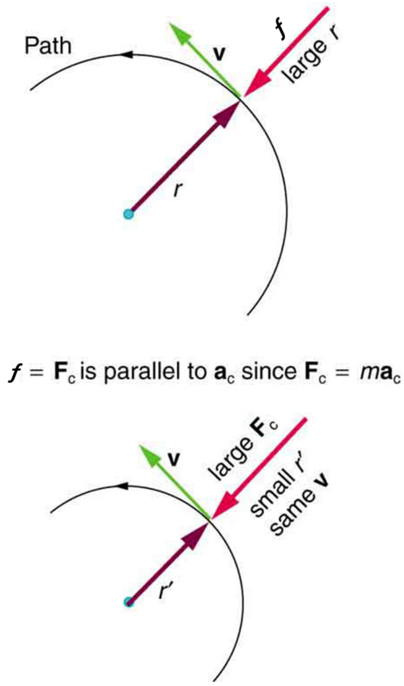
You may use whichever expression for centripetal force is more convenient. Centripetal force F_c is always perpendicular to the path and pointing to the center of curvature, because $\mathbf{a}_c$ is perpendicular to the velocity and pointing to the center of curvature.

Note that if you solve the first expression for r, you get

Equation:

$$r = \frac{mv^2}{F_c}.$$

This implies that for a given mass and velocity, a large centripetal force causes a small radius of curvature—that is, a tight curve.



The frictional force supplies the centripetal force and is numerically equal to it. Centripetal force is perpendicular to velocity and causes uniform circular motion. The larger the $\mathrm{F_c}$, the smaller the radius of curvature r and the sharper the curve. The second curve

has the same v, but a larger F_c produces a smaller $r\prime$.

Example:

What Coefficient of Friction Do Car Tires Need on a Flat Curve?

(a) Calculate the centripetal force exerted on a 900 kg car that negotiates a 500 m radius curve at 25.0 m/s.

(b) Assuming an unbanked curve, find the minimum static coefficient of friction, between the tires and the road, static friction being the reason that keeps the car from slipping (see [link]).

Strategy and Solution for (a)

We know that $F_{\text{c}} = \frac{mv^2}{r}$. Thus,

Equation:

$$F_{\text{c}} = \frac{mv^2}{r} = \frac{(900\ \text{kg})(25.0\ \text{m/s})^2}{(500\ \text{m})} = 1125\ \text{N}.$$

Strategy for (b)

[link] shows the forces acting on the car on an unbanked (level ground) curve. Friction is to the left, keeping the car from slipping, and because it is the only horizontal force acting on the car, the friction is the centripetal force in this case. We know that the maximum static friction (at which the tires roll but do not slip) is $\mu_{\text{s}}N$, where μ_{s} is the static coefficient of friction and N is the normal force. The normal force equals the car's weight on level ground, so that $N = mg$. Thus the centripetal force in this situation is

Equation:

$$F_{\text{c}} = f = \mu_{\text{s}}N = \mu_{\text{s}}\text{mg}.$$

Now we have a relationship between centripetal force and the coefficient of friction. Using the first expression for F_{c} from the equation

Equation:

$$\left.\begin{array}{r}F_{\text{c}}=m\frac{v^2}{r}\\ F_{\text{c}}=mr\omega^2\end{array}\right\},$$

Equation:

$$m\frac{v^2}{r}=\mu_{\text{s}}\text{mg}.$$

We solve this for μ_{s}, noting that mass cancels, and obtain

Equation:

$$\mu_{\text{s}}=\frac{v^2}{\text{rg}}.$$

Solution for (b)

Substituting the knowns,

Equation:

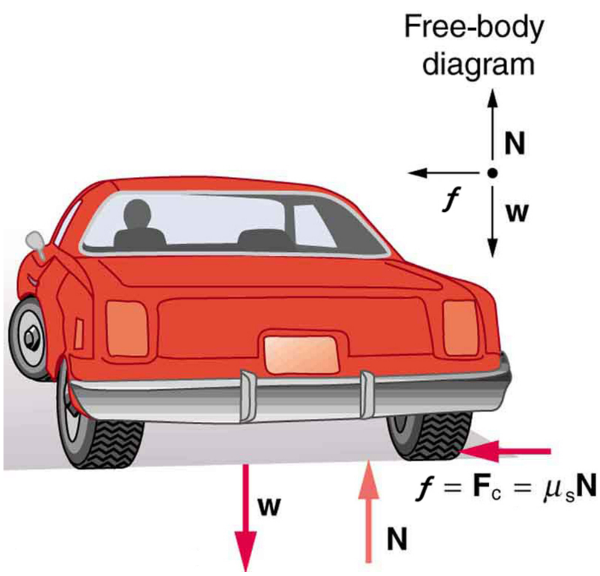
$$\mu_{\text{s}}=\frac{(25.0\text{ m/s})^2}{(500\text{ m})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)}=0.13.$$

(Because coefficients of friction are approximate, the answer is given to only two digits.)

Discussion

We could also solve part (a) using the first expression in $\left.\begin{array}{r}F_{\text{c}}=m\frac{v^2}{r}\\ F_{\text{c}}=mr\omega^2\end{array}\right\},$ because m,v, and r are given. The coefficient of friction found in part (b) is much smaller than is typically found between tires and roads. The car will still negotiate the curve if the coefficient is greater than 0.13, because static friction is a responsive force, being able to assume a value less than but no more than $\mu_{\text{s}}N$. A higher coefficient would also allow the car to negotiate the curve at a higher speed, but if the coefficient of friction is

less, the safe speed would be less than 25 m/s. Note that mass cancels, implying that in this example, it does not matter how heavily loaded the car is to negotiate the turn. Mass cancels because friction is assumed proportional to the normal force, which in turn is proportional to mass. If the surface of the road were banked, the normal force would be less as will be discussed below.



This car on level ground is moving away and turning to the left. The centripetal force causing the car to turn in a circular path is due to friction between the tires and the road. A minimum coefficient of friction is needed, or the car will move in a larger-radius curve and leave the roadway.

Let us now consider **banked curves**, where the slope of the road helps you negotiate the curve. See [link]. The greater the angle θ, the faster you can

take the curve. Race tracks for bikes as well as cars, for example, often have steeply banked curves. In an “ideally banked curve,” the angle θ is such that you can negotiate the curve at a certain speed without the aid of friction between the tires and the road. We will derive an expression for θ for an ideally banked curve and consider an example related to it.

For **ideal banking**, the net external force equals the horizontal centripetal force in the absence of friction. The components of the normal force N in the horizontal and vertical directions must equal the centripetal force and the weight of the car, respectively. In cases in which forces are not parallel, it is most convenient to consider components along perpendicular axes—in this case, the vertical and horizontal directions.

[link] shows a free body diagram for a car on a frictionless banked curve. If the angle θ is ideal for the speed and radius, then the net external force will equal the necessary centripetal force. The only two external forces acting on the car are its weight $\mathbf{w}$ and the normal force of the road $\mathbf{N}$. (A frictionless surface can only exert a force perpendicular to the surface—that is, a normal force.) These two forces must add to give a net external force that is horizontal toward the center of curvature and has magnitude mv^2/r. Because this is the crucial force and it is horizontal, we use a coordinate system with vertical and horizontal axes. Only the normal force has a horizontal component, and so this must equal the centripetal force—that is,

Equation:

$$N \sin \theta = \frac{mv^2}{r}.$$

Because the car does not leave the surface of the road, the net vertical force must be zero, meaning that the vertical components of the two external forces must be equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. From the figure, we see that the vertical component of the normal force is N cos θ, and the only other vertical force is the car’s weight. These must be equal in magnitude; thus,

Equation:

$$N \cos \theta = \mathrm{mg}.$$

Now we can combine the last two equations to eliminate N and get an expression for θ, as desired. Solving the second equation for $N = \mathrm{mg}/(\cos\theta)$, and substituting this into the first yields

Equation:

$$\mathrm{mg}\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \frac{\mathrm{mv}^2}{r}$$

Equation:

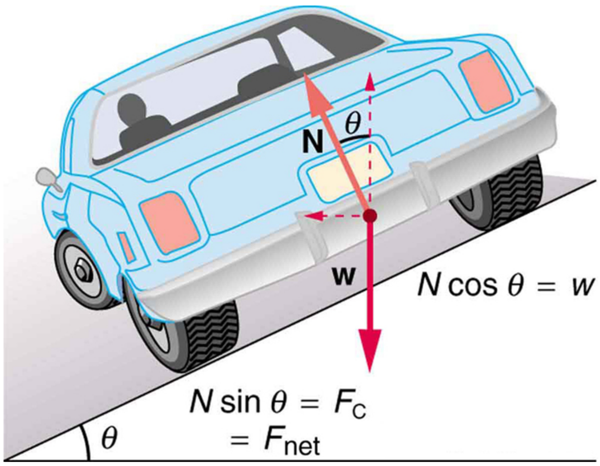
$$\begin{aligned} mg\tan(\theta) &= \tfrac{mv^2}{r} \\ \tan\theta &= \tfrac{v^2}{\mathrm{rg.}} \end{aligned}$$

Taking the inverse tangent gives

Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{v^2}{\mathrm{rg}}\right) \text{ (ideally banked curve, no friction).}$$

This expression can be understood by considering how θ depends on v and r. A large θ will be obtained for a large v and a small r. That is, roads must be steeply banked for high speeds and sharp curves. Friction helps, because it allows you to take the curve at greater or lower speed than if the curve is frictionless. Note that θ does not depend on the mass of the vehicle.



The car on this banked curve is moving away and turning to the left.

Example:

What Is the Ideal Speed to Take a Steeply Banked Tight Curve?

Curves on some test tracks and race courses, such as the Daytona International Speedway in Florida, are very steeply banked. This banking, with the aid of tire friction and very stable car configurations, allows the curves to be taken at very high speed. To illustrate, calculate the speed at which a 100 m radius curve banked at 65.0° should be driven if the road is frictionless.

Strategy

We first note that all terms in the expression for the ideal angle of a banked curve except for speed are known; thus, we need only rearrange it so that speed appears on the left-hand side and then substitute known quantities.

Solution

Starting with

Equation:

$$\tan\theta = \frac{v^2}{\mathrm{rg}}$$

we get

Equation:

$$v = (\text{rg } \tan\theta)^{1/2}.$$

Noting that tan 65.0º = 2.14, we obtain

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \left[(100\text{ m})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)(2.14)\right]^{1/2} \\ &= 45.8\text{ m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This is just about 165 km/h, consistent with a very steeply banked and rather sharp curve. Tire friction enables a vehicle to take the curve at significantly higher speeds.

Calculations similar to those in the preceding examples can be performed for a host of interesting situations in which centripetal force is involved—a number of these are presented in this chapter’s Problems and Exercises.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment

Ask a friend or relative to swing a golf club or a tennis racquet. Take appropriate measurements to estimate the centripetal acceleration of the end of the club or racquet. You may choose to do this in slow motion.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Gravity and Orbits

Move the sun, earth, moon and space station to see how it affects their gravitational forces and orbital paths. Visualize the sizes and distances between different heavenly bodies, and turn off gravity to see what would happen without it!

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/gravity-and-orbits/latest/gravity-and-orbits_en.html

Section Summary

- Centripetal force $\mathbf{F}_c$ is any force causing uniform circular motion. It is a "center-seeking" force that always points toward the center of rotation. It is perpendicular to linear velocity v and has magnitude
  Equation:

  $$F_c = ma_c,$$

  which can also be expressed as
  Equation:

  $$\left.\begin{array}{c} F_c = m\frac{v^2}{r} \\ \text{or} \\ F_c = mr\omega^2 \end{array}\right\},$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

If you wish to reduce the stress (which is related to centripetal force) on high-speed tires, would you use large- or small-diameter tires? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Define centripetal force. Can any type of force (for example, tension, gravitational force, friction, and so on) be a centripetal force? Can any combination of forces be a centripetal force?

Exercise:

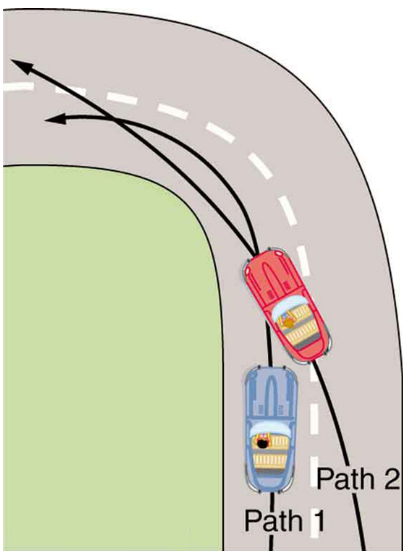
Problem:

If centripetal force is directed toward the center, why do you feel that you are 'thrown' away from the center as a car goes around a curve? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Race car drivers routinely cut corners as shown in [link]. Explain how this allows the curve to be taken at the greatest speed.



Two paths around a race track curve are shown. Race car drivers will take the inside path (called cutting the corner)

whenever possible because it allows them to take the curve at the highest speed.

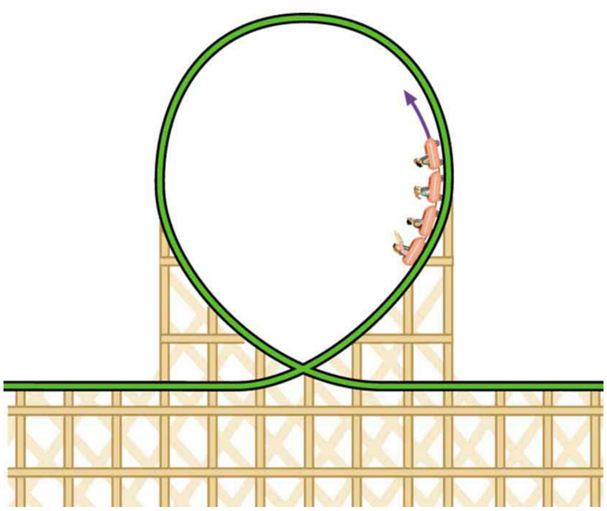
Exercise:

Problem:

A number of amusement parks have rides that make vertical loops like the one shown in [link]. For safety, the cars are attached to the rails in such a way that they cannot fall off. If the car goes over the top at just the right speed, gravity alone will supply the centripetal force. What other force acts and what is its direction if:

(a) The car goes over the top at faster than this speed?

(b)The car goes over the top at slower than this speed?



Amusement rides with a vertical loop are an example of a form of curved motion.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the force exerted by the car on the passenger as the car goes over the top of the amusement ride pictured in [link] under the following circumstances:

(a) The car goes over the top at such a speed that the gravitational force is the only force acting?

(b) The car goes over the top faster than this speed?

(c) The car goes over the top slower than this speed?

Exercise:

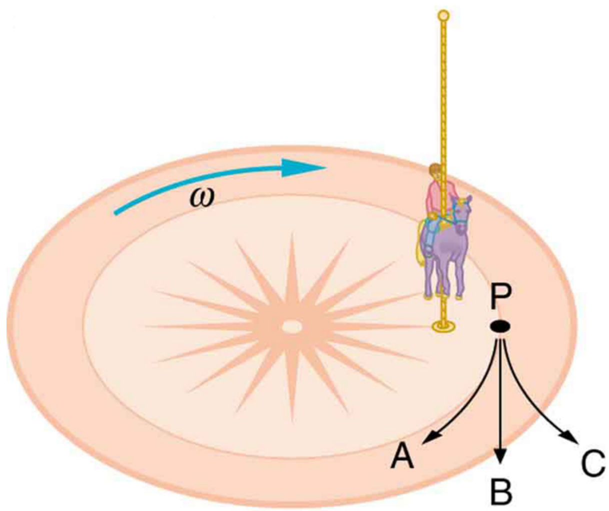
Problem:

As a skater forms a circle, what force is responsible for making her turn? Use a free body diagram in your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a child is riding on a merry-go-round at a distance about halfway between its center and edge. She has a lunch box resting on wax paper, so that there is very little friction between it and the merry-go-round. Which path shown in [link] will the lunch box take when she lets go? The lunch box leaves a trail in the dust on the merry-go-round. Is that trail straight, curved to the left, or curved to the right? Explain your answer.



A child riding on a merry-go-round releases her lunch box at point P. This is a view from above the clockwise rotation. Assuming it slides with negligible friction, will it follow path A, B, or C, as viewed from Earth's frame of reference? What will be the shape of the path it leaves in the dust on the merry-go-round?

Exercise:

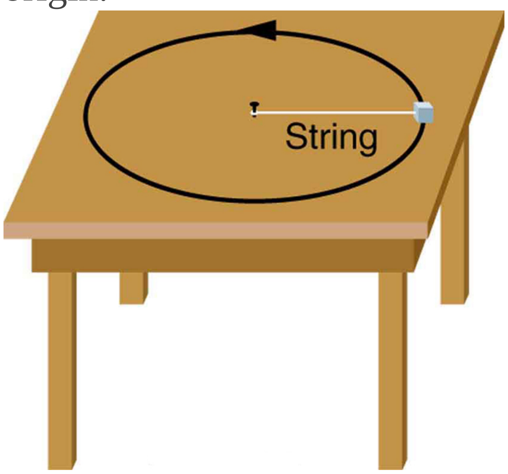
Problem:

Do you feel yourself thrown to either side when you negotiate a curve that is ideally banked for your car's speed? What is the direction of the force exerted on you by the car seat?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a mass is moving in a circular path on a frictionless table as shown in figure. In the Earth's frame of reference, there is no centrifugal force pulling the mass away from the centre of rotation, yet there is a very real force stretching the string attaching the mass to the nail. Using concepts related to centripetal force and Newton's third law, explain what force stretches the string, identifying its physical origin.



A mass attached to a nail on a frictionless table moves in a circular path. The force stretching the string is real and not fictional. What is the physical origin of the force on the string?

Problems Exercise

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A 22.0 kg child is riding a playground merry-go-round that is rotating at 40.0 rev/min. What centripetal force must she exert to stay on if she is 1.25 m from its center?

(b) What centripetal force does she need to stay on an amusement park merry-go-round that rotates at 3.00 rev/min if she is 8.00 m from its center?

(c) Compare each force with her weight.

Solution:

a) 483 N

b) 17.4 N

c) 2.24 times her weight, 0.0807 times her weight

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the centripetal force on the end of a 100 m (radius) wind turbine blade that is rotating at 0.5 rev/s. Assume the mass is 4 kg.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the ideal banking angle for a gentle turn of 1.20 km radius on a highway with a 105 km/h speed limit (about 65 mi/h), assuming everyone travels at the limit?

Solution:

4.14°

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the ideal speed to take a 100 m radius curve banked at a 20.0° angle?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the radius of a bobsled turn banked at 75.0° and taken at 30.0 m/s, assuming it is ideally banked?

(b) Calculate the centripetal acceleration.

(c) Does this acceleration seem large to you?

Solution:

a) 24.6 m

b) $36.6\ \text{m/s}^2$

c) $a_{\text{c}} = 3.73\ g$. This does not seem too large, but it is clear that bobsledders feel a lot of force on them going through sharply banked turns.

Exercise:

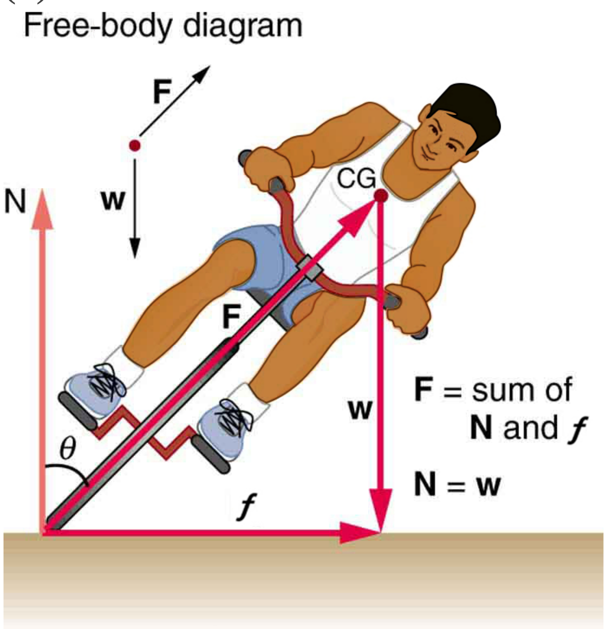
Problem:

Part of riding a bicycle involves leaning at the correct angle when making a turn, as seen in [link]. To be stable, the force exerted by the ground must be on a line going through the center of gravity. The force on the bicycle wheel can be resolved into two perpendicular components—friction parallel to the road (this must supply the centripetal force), and the vertical normal force (which must equal the system's weight).

(a) Show that θ (as defined in the figure) is related to the speed v and radius of curvature r of the turn in the same way as for an ideally

banked roadway—that is, $\theta = \tan^{-1} v^2 / rg$

(b) Calculate θ for a 12.0 m/s turn of radius 30.0 m (as in a race).



A bicyclist negotiating a turn on level ground must lean at the correct angle—the ability to do this becomes instinctive. The force of the ground on the wheel needs to be on a line through the center of gravity. The net external force on the system is the centripetal force. The vertical component of the force on the wheel cancels the weight of the system while its horizontal component must supply the centripetal force. This process produces a relationship among the angle θ, the speed v, and the radius of curvature r of the turn similar to

that for the ideal banking of roadways.

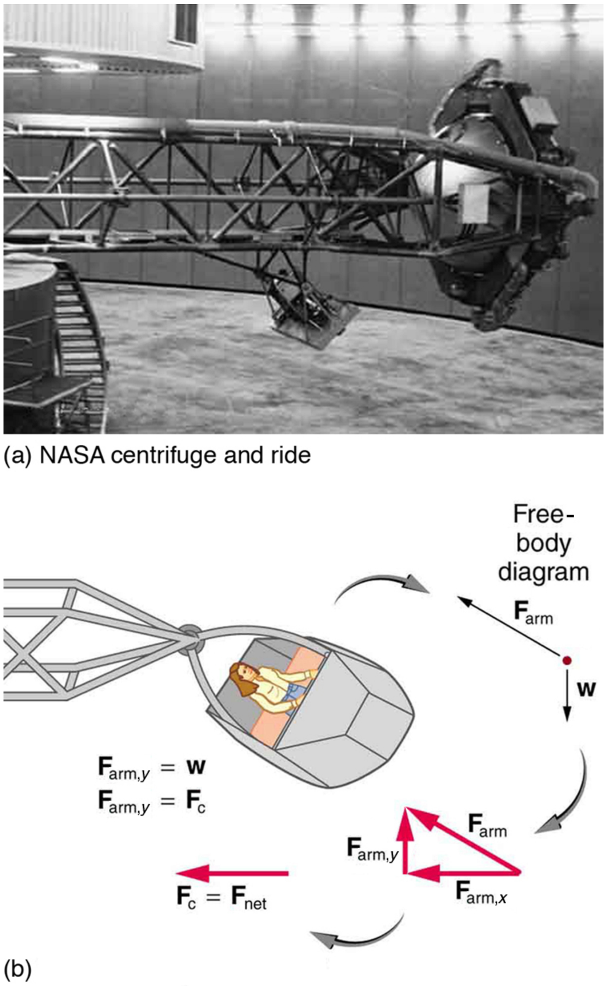
Exercise:

Problem:

A large centrifuge, like the one shown in [link](a), is used to expose aspiring astronauts to accelerations similar to those experienced in rocket launches and atmospheric reentries.

(a) At what angular velocity is the centripetal acceleration 10 g if the rider is 15.0 m from the center of rotation?

(b) The rider's cage hangs on a pivot at the end of the arm, allowing it to swing outward during rotation as shown in [link](b). At what angle θ below the horizontal will the cage hang when the centripetal acceleration is 10 g ? (Hint: The arm supplies centripetal force and supports the weight of the cage. Draw a free body diagram of the forces to see what the angle θ should be.)



(a) NASA centrifuge used to subject trainees to accelerations similar to those experienced in rocket launches and reentries. (credit: NASA) (b) Rider in cage showing how the cage pivots outward during rotation. This allows the total force exerted on the rider by the cage to be along its axis at all times.

Solution:

a) 2.56 rad/s

b) 5.71º

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

If a car takes a banked curve at less than the ideal speed, friction is needed to keep it from sliding toward the inside of the curve (a real problem on icy mountain roads). (a) Calculate the ideal speed to take a 100 m radius curve banked at 15.0º. (b) What is the minimum coefficient of friction needed for a frightened driver to take the same curve at 20.0 km/h?

Solution:

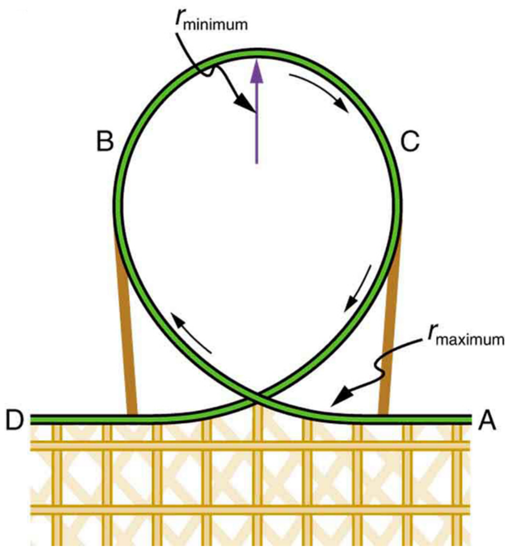
a) 16.2 m/s

b) 0.234

Exercise:

Problem:

Modern roller coasters have vertical loops like the one shown in [link]. The radius of curvature is smaller at the top than on the sides so that the downward centripetal acceleration at the top will be greater than the acceleration due to gravity, keeping the passengers pressed firmly into their seats. What is the speed of the roller coaster at the top of the loop if the radius of curvature there is 15.0 m and the downward acceleration of the car is 1.50 g?



Teardrop-shaped loops are used in the latest roller coasters so that the radius of curvature gradually decreases to a minimum at the top. This means that the centripetal acceleration builds from zero to a maximum at the top and gradually decreases again. A circular loop would cause a jolting change in acceleration at entry, a disadvantage discovered long ago in railroad curve design. With a small radius of curvature at the top, the centripetal acceleration can more easily be kept greater than g so that the passengers do not lose contact with their seats nor do they

need seat belts to keep
them in place.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Calculate the minimum coefficient of friction needed for a car to negotiate an unbanked 50.0 m radius curve at 30.0 m/s.

(b) What is unreasonable about the result?

(c) Which premises are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

a) 1.84

b) A coefficient of friction this much greater than 1 is unreasonable .

c) The assumed speed is too great for the tight curve.

Glossary

centripetal force
: any net force causing uniform circular motion

ideal banking
: the sloping of a curve in a road, where the angle of the slope allows the vehicle to negotiate the curve at a certain speed without the aid of friction between the tires and the road; the net external force on the vehicle equals the horizontal centripetal force in the absence of friction

ideal speed

the maximum safe speed at which a vehicle can turn on a curve without the aid of friction between the tire and the road

ideal angle
: the angle at which a car can turn safely on a steep curve, which is in proportion to the ideal speed

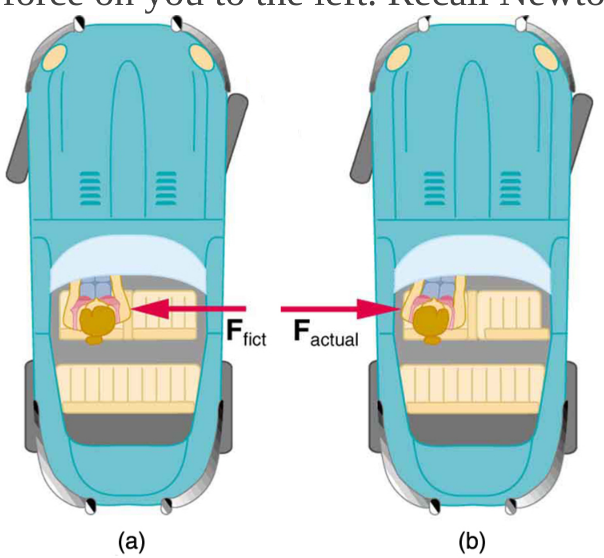
banked curve
: the curve in a road that is sloping in a manner that helps a vehicle negotiate the curve

Fictitious Forces and Non-inertial Frames: The Coriolis Force

- Discuss the inertial frame of reference.
- Discuss the non-inertial frame of reference.
- Describe the effects of the Coriolis force.

What do taking off in a jet airplane, turning a corner in a car, riding a merry-go-round, and the circular motion of a tropical cyclone have in common? Each exhibits fictitious forces—unreal forces that arise from motion and may *seem* real, because the observer's frame of reference is accelerating or rotating.

When taking off in a jet, most people would agree it feels as if you are being pushed back into the seat as the airplane accelerates down the runway. Yet a physicist would say that *you* tend to remain stationary while the *seat* pushes forward on you, and there is no real force backward on you. An even more common experience occurs when you make a tight curve in your car—say, to the right. You feel as if you are thrown (that is, *forced*) toward the left relative to the car. Again, a physicist would say that *you* are going in a straight line but the *car* moves to the right, and there is no real force on you to the left. Recall Newton's first law.

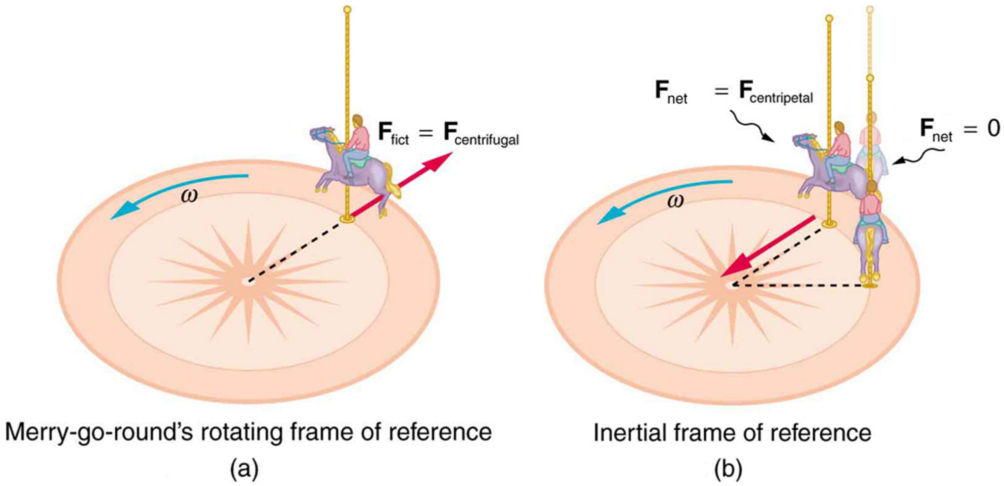


(a) The car driver feels herself forced to the left relative to the car when she makes a right turn. This is a fictitious force arising

from the use of the car as a frame of reference. (b) In the Earth’s frame of reference, the driver moves in a straight line, obeying Newton’s first law, and the car moves to the right. There is no real force to the left on the driver relative to Earth. There is a real force to the right on the car to make it turn.

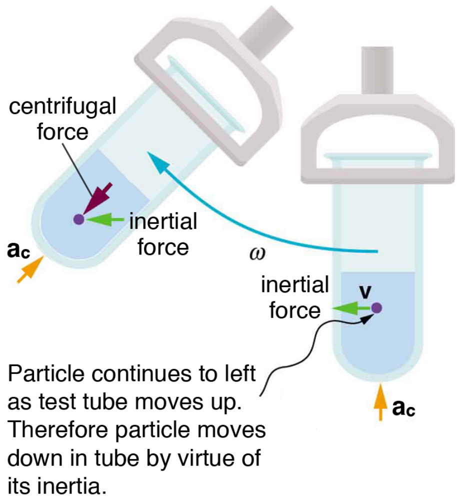
We can reconcile these points of view by examining the frames of reference used. Let us concentrate on people in a car. Passengers instinctively use the car as a frame of reference, while a physicist uses Earth. The physicist chooses Earth because it is very nearly an inertial frame of reference—one in which all forces are real (that is, in which all forces have an identifiable physical origin). In such a frame of reference, Newton’s laws of motion take the form given in Dynamics: Newton's Laws of Motion The car is a **non-inertial frame of reference** because it is accelerated to the side. The force to the left sensed by car passengers is a **fictitious force** having no physical origin. There is nothing real pushing them left—the car, as well as the driver, is actually accelerating to the right.

Let us now take a mental ride on a merry-go-round—specifically, a rapidly rotating playground merry-go-round. You take the merry-go-round to be your frame of reference because you rotate together. In that non-inertial frame, you feel a fictitious force, named **centrifugal force (**not to be confused with centripetal force**)**, trying to throw you off. You must hang on tightly to counteract the centrifugal force. In Earth’s frame of reference, there is no force trying to throw you off. Rather you must hang on to make yourself go in a circle because otherwise you would go in a straight line, right off the merry-go-round.



(a) A rider on a merry-go-round feels as if he is being thrown off. This fictitious force is called the centrifugal force—it explains the rider's motion in the rotating frame of reference. (b) In an inertial frame of reference and according to Newton's laws, it is his inertia that carries him off and not a real force (the unshaded rider has $F_{\text{net}} = 0$ and heads in a straight line). A real force, $F_{\text{centripetal}}$, is needed to cause a circular path.

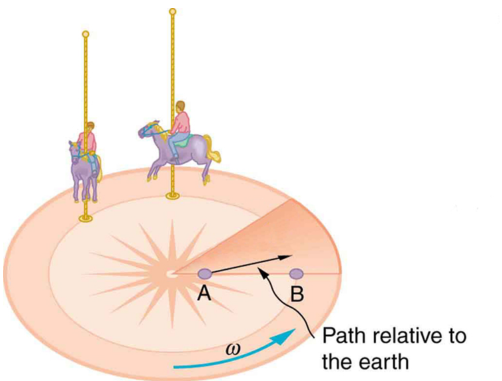
This inertial effect, carrying you away from the center of rotation if there is no centripetal force to cause circular motion, is put to good use in centrifuges (see [link]). A centrifuge spins a sample very rapidly, as mentioned earlier in this chapter. Viewed from the rotating frame of reference, the fictitious centrifugal force throws particles outward, hastening their sedimentation. The greater the angular velocity, the greater the centrifugal force. But what really happens is that the inertia of the particles carries them along a line tangent to the circle while the test tube is forced in a circular path by a centripetal force.



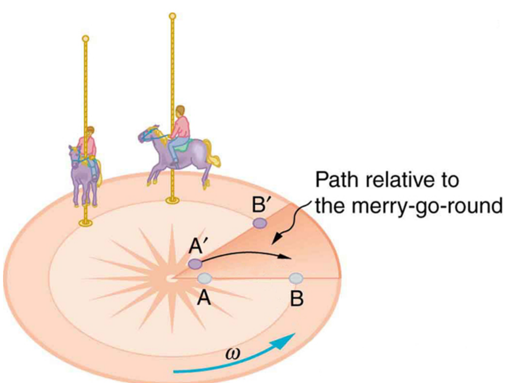
Centrifuges use inertia to perform their task. Particles in the fluid sediment come out because their inertia carries them away from the center of rotation. The large angular velocity of the centrifuge quickens the sedimentation. Ultimately, the particles will come into contact with the test tube walls, which will then supply the centripetal force needed to make them move in a circle of constant radius.

Let us now consider what happens if something moves in a frame of reference that rotates. For example, what if you slide a ball directly away

from the center of the merry-go-round, as shown in [link]? The ball follows a straight path relative to Earth (assuming negligible friction) and a path curved to the right on the merry-go-round's surface. A person standing next to the merry-go-round sees the ball moving straight and the merry-go-round rotating underneath it. In the merry-go-round's frame of reference, we explain the apparent curve to the right by using a fictitious force, called the **Coriolis force**, that causes the ball to curve to the right. The fictitious Coriolis force can be used by anyone in that frame of reference to explain why objects follow curved paths and allows us to apply Newton's Laws in non-inertial frames of reference.



(a)



(b)

Looking down on the counterclockwise rotation of a merry-go-round, we see that a ball slid straight toward the edge follows a path curved to the right. The person slides the ball toward point B, starting at

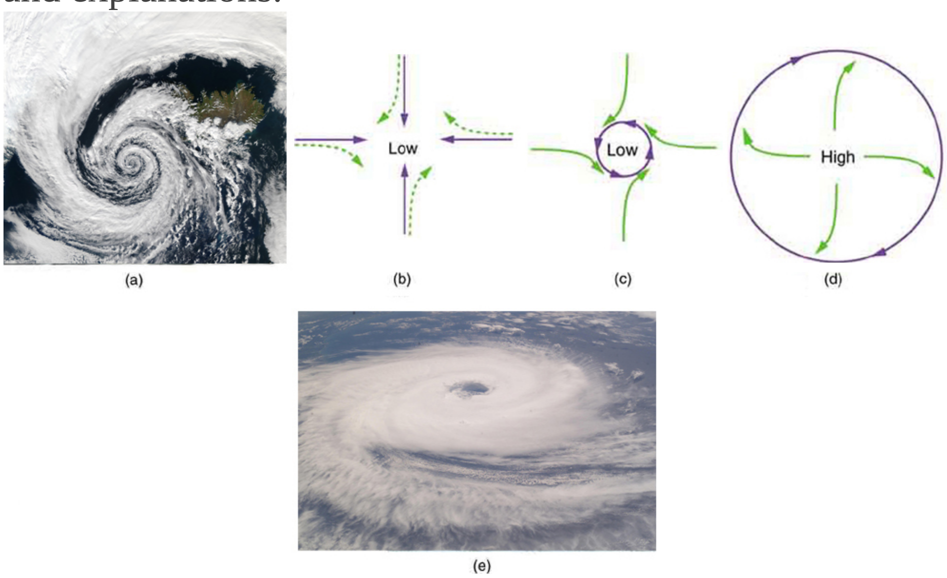
point A. Both points rotate to the shaded positions (A’ and B’) shown in the time that the ball follows the curved path in the rotating frame and a straight path in Earth’s frame.

Up until now, we have considered Earth to be an inertial frame of reference with little or no worry about effects due to its rotation. Yet such effects *do* exist—in the rotation of weather systems, for example. Most consequences of Earth’s rotation can be qualitatively understood by analogy with the merry-go-round. Viewed from above the North Pole, Earth rotates counterclockwise, as does the merry-go-round in [link]. As on the merry-go-round, any motion in Earth’s northern hemisphere experiences a Coriolis force to the right. Just the opposite occurs in the southern hemisphere; there, the force is to the left. Because Earth’s angular velocity is small, the Coriolis force is usually negligible, but for large-scale motions, such as wind patterns, it has substantial effects.

The Coriolis force causes hurricanes in the northern hemisphere to rotate in the counterclockwise direction, while the tropical cyclones (what hurricanes are called below the equator) in the southern hemisphere rotate in the clockwise direction. The terms hurricane, typhoon, and tropical storm are regionally-specific names for tropical cyclones, storm systems characterized by low pressure centers, strong winds, and heavy rains. [link] helps show how these rotations take place. Air flows toward any region of low pressure, and tropical cyclones contain particularly low pressures. Thus winds flow toward the center of a tropical cyclone or a low-pressure weather system at the surface. In the northern hemisphere, these inward winds are deflected to the right, as shown in the figure, producing a counterclockwise circulation at the surface for low-pressure zones of any type. Low pressure at the surface is associated with rising air, which also produces cooling and cloud formation, making low-pressure patterns quite

visible from space. Conversely, wind circulation around high-pressure zones is clockwise in the northern hemisphere but is less visible because high pressure is associated with sinking air, producing clear skies.

The rotation of tropical cyclones and the path of a ball on a merry-go-round can just as well be explained by inertia and the rotation of the system underneath. When non-inertial frames are used, fictitious forces, such as the Coriolis force, must be invented to explain the curved path. There is no identifiable physical source for these fictitious forces. In an inertial frame, inertia explains the path, and no force is found to be without an identifiable source. Either view allows us to describe nature, but a view in an inertial frame is the simplest and truest, in the sense that all forces have real origins and explanations.



(a) The counterclockwise rotation of this northern hemisphere hurricane is a major consequence of the Coriolis force. (credit: NASA) (b) Without the Coriolis force, air would flow straight into a low-pressure zone, such as that found in tropical cyclones. (c) The Coriolis force deflects the winds to the right, producing a counterclockwise rotation. (d) Wind flowing away from a high-pressure zone is also deflected to the right, producing a clockwise rotation. (e) The opposite direction of rotation is produced by

the Coriolis force in the southern hemisphere, leading to tropical cyclones. (credit: NASA)

Section Summary

- Rotating and accelerated frames of reference are non-inertial.
- Fictitious forces, such as the Coriolis force, are needed to explain motion in such frames.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

When a toilet is flushed or a sink is drained, the water (and other material) begins to rotate about the drain on the way down. Assuming no initial rotation and a flow initially directly straight toward the drain, explain what causes the rotation and which direction it has in the northern hemisphere. (Note that this is a small effect and in most toilets the rotation is caused by directional water jets.) Would the direction of rotation reverse if water were forced up the drain?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is there a real force that throws water from clothes during the spin cycle of a washing machine? Explain how the water is removed.

Exercise:

Problem:

In one amusement park ride, riders enter a large vertical barrel and stand against the wall on its horizontal floor. The barrel is spun up and the floor drops away. Riders feel as if they are pinned to the wall by a force something like the gravitational force. This is a fictitious force sensed and used by the riders to explain events in the rotating frame of reference of the barrel. Explain in an inertial frame of reference (Earth is nearly one) what pins the riders to the wall, and identify all of the real forces acting on them.

Exercise:

Problem:

Action at a distance, such as is the case for gravity, was once thought to be illogical and therefore untrue. What is the ultimate determinant of the truth in physics, and why was this action ultimately accepted?

Exercise:

Problem:

Two friends are having a conversation. Anna says a satellite in orbit is in freefall because the satellite keeps falling toward Earth. Tom says a satellite in orbit is not in freefall because the acceleration due to gravity is not 9.80 m/s^2. Who do you agree with and why?

Exercise:

Problem:

A non-rotating frame of reference placed at the center of the Sun is very nearly an inertial one. Why is it not exactly an inertial frame?

Glossary

fictitious force
: a force having no physical origin

centrifugal force
: a fictitious force that tends to throw an object off when the object is rotating in a non-inertial frame of reference

Coriolis force
: the fictitious force causing the apparent deflection of moving objects when viewed in a rotating frame of reference

non-inertial frame of reference
: an accelerated frame of reference

Newton’s Universal Law of Gravitation

- Explain Earth’s gravitational force.
- Describe the gravitational effect of the Moon on Earth.
- Discuss weightlessness in space.
- Examine the Cavendish experiment

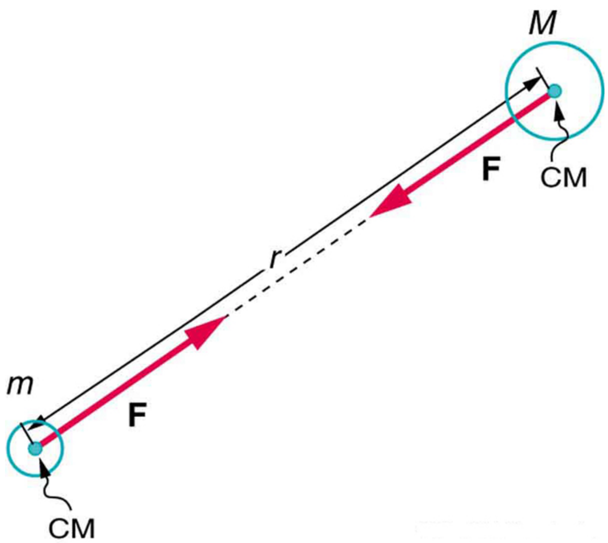
What do aching feet, a falling apple, and the orbit of the Moon have in common? Each is caused by the gravitational force. Our feet are strained by supporting our weight—the force of Earth’s gravity on us. An apple falls from a tree because of the same force acting a few meters above Earth’s surface. And the Moon orbits Earth because gravity is able to supply the necessary centripetal force at a distance of hundreds of millions of meters. In fact, the same force causes planets to orbit the Sun, stars to orbit the center of the galaxy, and galaxies to cluster together. Gravity is another example of underlying simplicity in nature. It is the weakest of the four basic forces found in nature, and in some ways the least understood. It is a force that acts at a distance, without physical contact, and is expressed by a formula that is valid everywhere in the universe, for masses and distances that vary from the tiny to the immense.

Sir Isaac Newton was the first scientist to precisely define the gravitational force, and to show that it could explain both falling bodies and astronomical motions. See [link]. But Newton was not the first to suspect that the same force caused both our weight and the motion of planets. His forerunner Galileo Galilei had contended that falling bodies and planetary motions had the same cause. Some of Newton’s contemporaries, such as Robert Hooke, Christopher Wren, and Edmund Halley, had also made some progress toward understanding gravitation. But Newton was the first to propose an exact mathematical form and to use that form to show that the motion of heavenly bodies should be conic sections—circles, ellipses, parabolas, and hyperbolas. This theoretical prediction was a major triumph—it had been known for some time that moons, planets, and comets follow such paths, but no one had been able to propose a mechanism that caused them to follow these paths and not others.

According to early accounts, Newton was inspired to make the connection between falling bodies and astronomical motions when he saw an apple fall from a tree and realized that if the gravitational force could extend above the ground to a tree, it might also reach the Sun. The inspiration of Newton's apple is a part of worldwide folklore and may even be based in fact. Great importance is attached to it because Newton's

universal law of gravitation and his laws of motion answered very old questions about nature and gave tremendous support to the notion of underlying simplicity and unity in nature. Scientists still expect underlying simplicity to emerge from their ongoing inquiries into nature.

The gravitational force is relatively simple. It is always attractive, and it depends only on the masses involved and the distance between them. Stated in modern language, **Newton's universal law of gravitation** states that every particle in the universe attracts every other particle with a force along a line joining them. The force is directly proportional to the product of their masses and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them.



Gravitational attraction is along a line joining the centers of mass of these two bodies. The magnitude of the force is the same on each, consistent with Newton’s third law.

Note:
Misconception Alert
The magnitude of the force on each object (one has larger mass than the other) is the same, consistent with Newton’s third law.

The bodies we are dealing with tend to be large. To simplify the situation we assume that the body acts as if its entire mass is concentrated at one specific point called the **center of mass** (CM), which will be further explored in Linear Momentum and Collisions. For two bodies having masses m and M with a distance r between their centers of mass, the equation for Newton’s universal law of gravitation is
Equation:

$$F = G\frac{\text{mM}}{r^2},$$

where F is the magnitude of the gravitational force and G is a proportionality factor called the **gravitational constant**. G is a universal gravitational constant—that is, it is thought to be the same everywhere in the universe. It has been measured experimentally to be
Equation:

$$G = 6.674 \times 10^{-11}\frac{\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{kg}^2}$$

in SI units. Note that the units of G are such that a force in newtons is obtained from $F = G\frac{\text{mM}}{r^2}$, when considering masses in kilograms and distance in meters. For example, two 1.000 kg masses separated by 1.000 m will experience a gravitational attraction of 6.674×10^{-11} N. This is an extraordinarily small force. The small magnitude of the gravitational force is consistent with everyday experience. We are unaware that even large objects like mountains exert gravitational forces on us. In fact, our body weight is the force of attraction of the *entire Earth* on us with a mass of 6×10^{24} kg.

Recall that the acceleration due to gravity *g* is about 9.80 m/s^2 on Earth. We can now determine why this is so. The weight of an object *mg* is the gravitational force between it and Earth. Substituting *mg* for F in Newton's universal law of gravitation gives

Equation:

$$\text{mg} = G\frac{\text{mM}}{r^2},$$

where m is the mass of the object, M is the mass of Earth, and r is the distance to the center of Earth (the distance between the centers of mass of the object and Earth). See [link]. The mass m of the object cancels, leaving an equation for *g*:

Equation:

$$g = G\frac{M}{r^2}.$$

Substituting known values for Earth's mass and radius (to three significant figures),

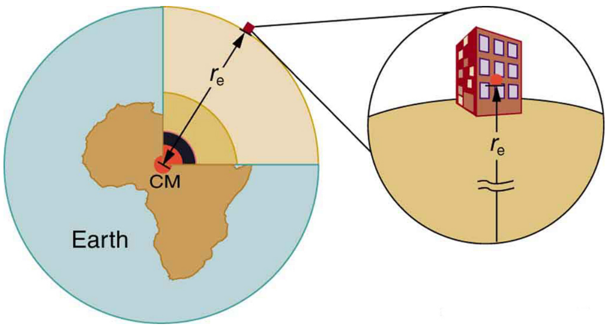
Equation:

$$g = \left(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{kg}^2}\right) \times \frac{5.98 \times 10^{24}\text{ kg}}{(6.38 \times 10^6\text{ m})^2},$$

and we obtain a value for the acceleration of a falling body:

Equation:

$$g = 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2.$$



The distance between the centers of mass of Earth and an object on its surface is very nearly the same as the radius of Earth, because Earth is so much larger than the object.

This is the expected value *and is independent of the body's mass*. Newton's law of gravitation takes Galileo's observation that all masses fall with the same acceleration a step further, explaining the observation in terms of a force that causes objects to fall—in fact, in terms of a universally existing force of attraction between masses.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment

Take a marble, a ball, and a spoon and drop them from the same height. Do they hit the floor at the same time? If you drop a piece of paper as well, does it behave like the other objects? Explain your observations.

Note:
Making Connections
Attempts are still being made to understand the gravitational force. As we shall see in Particle Physics, modern physics is exploring the connections of gravity to other forces, space, and time. General relativity alters our view of gravitation, leading us to think of gravitation as bending space and time.

In the following example, we make a comparison similar to one made by Newton himself. He noted that if the gravitational force caused the Moon to orbit Earth, then the acceleration due to gravity should equal the centripetal acceleration of the Moon in its orbit. Newton found that the two accelerations agreed “pretty nearly.”

Example:
Earth’s Gravitational Force Is the Centripetal Force Making the Moon Move in a Curved Path
(a) Find the acceleration due to Earth’s gravity at the distance of the Moon.
(b) Calculate the centripetal acceleration needed to keep the Moon in its orbit (assuming a circular orbit about a fixed Earth), and compare it with the value of the acceleration due to Earth’s gravity that you have just found.
Strategy for (a)
This calculation is the same as the one finding the acceleration due to gravity at Earth’s surface, except that $r$is the distance from the center of Earth to the center of the Moon. The radius of the Moon’s nearly circular orbit is 3.84×10^8 m.
Solution for (a)
Substituting known values into the expression for g found above, remembering that M is the mass of Earth not the Moon, yields
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} g &= G\frac{M}{r^2} = \left(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\,\frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{kg}^2}\right) \times \frac{5.98\times10^{24}\ \text{kg}}{(3.84\times10^{8}\ \text{m})^2} \\ &= 2.70 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m/s.}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Strategy for (b)

Centripetal acceleration can be calculated using either form of

Equation:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} a_c &= \frac{v^2}{r} \\ a_c &= r\omega^2 \end{aligned}\right\}.$$

We choose to use the second form:

Equation:

$$a_c = r\omega^2,$$

where ω is the angular velocity of the Moon about Earth.

Solution for (b)

Given that the period (the time it takes to make one complete rotation) of the Moon's orbit is 27.3 days, (d) and using

Equation:

$$1\ \text{d} \times 24\frac{\text{hr}}{\text{d}} \times 60\frac{\text{min}}{\text{hr}} \times 60\frac{\text{s}}{\text{min}} = 86{,}400\ \text{s}$$

we see that

Equation:

$$\omega = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t} = \frac{2\pi\ \text{rad}}{(27.3\ \text{d})(86{,}400\ \text{s/d})} = 2.66 \times 10^{-6}\frac{\text{rad}}{\text{s}}.$$

The centripetal acceleration is

Equation:

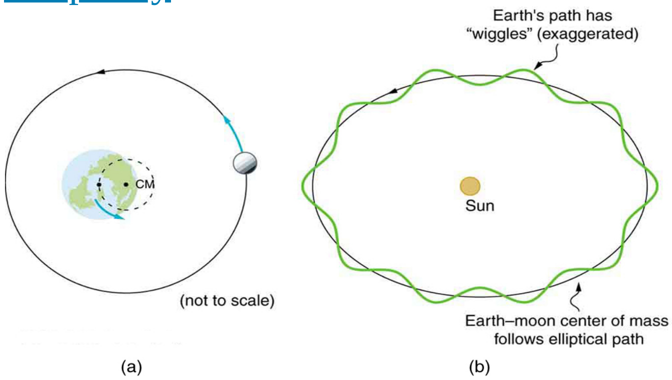
$$\begin{aligned} a_c &= r\omega^2 = (3.84 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m})(2.66 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{rad/s})^2 \\ &= 2.72 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m/s.}^2 \end{aligned}$$

The direction of the acceleration is toward the center of the Earth.

Discussion

The centripetal acceleration of the Moon found in (b) differs by less than 1% from the acceleration due to Earth's gravity found in (a). This agreement is approximate because the Moon's orbit is slightly elliptical, and Earth is not stationary (rather the Earth-Moon system rotates about its center of mass, which is located some 1700 km below Earth's surface). The clear implication is that Earth's gravitational force causes the Moon to orbit Earth.

Why does Earth not remain stationary as the Moon orbits it? This is because, as expected from Newton's third law, if Earth exerts a force on the Moon, then the Moon should exert an equal and opposite force on Earth (see [link]). We do not sense the Moon's effect on Earth's motion, because the Moon's gravity moves our bodies right along with Earth but there are other signs on Earth that clearly show the effect of the Moon's gravitational force as discussed in Satellites and Kepler's Laws: An Argument for Simplicity.

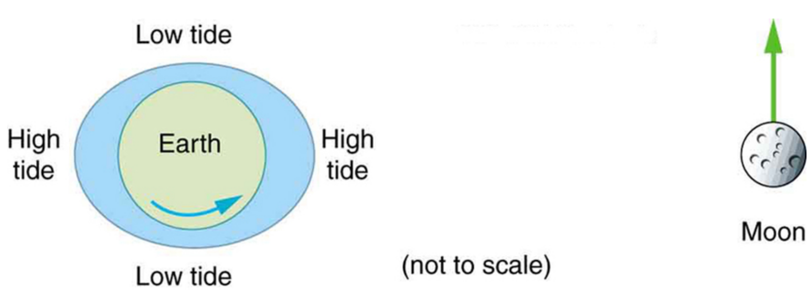


(a) Earth and the Moon rotate approximately once a month around their common center of mass. (b) Their center of mass orbits the Sun in an elliptical orbit, but Earth's path around the Sun has "wiggles" in it. Similar wiggles in the paths of stars have been observed and are

considered direct evidence of planets orbiting those stars. This is important because the planets' reflected light is often too dim to be observed.

Tides

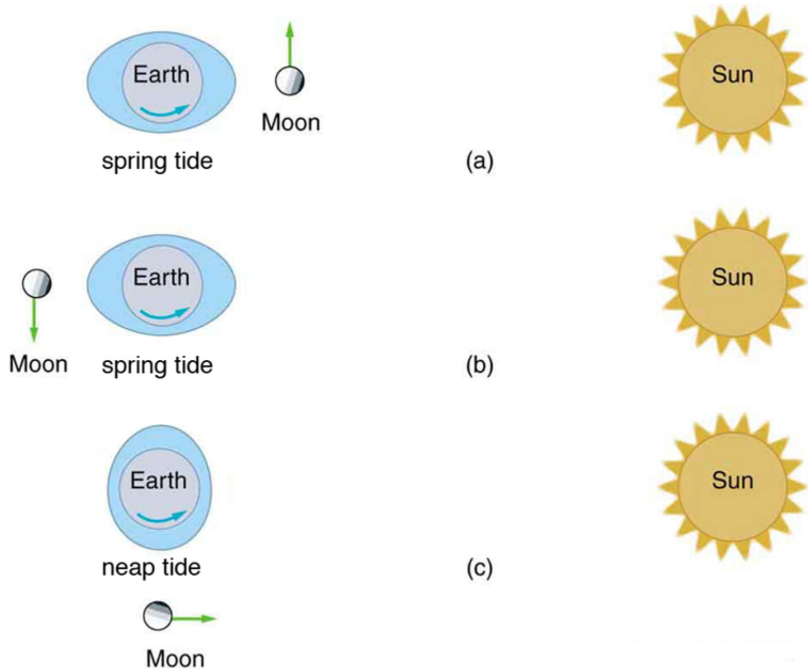
Ocean tides are one very observable result of the Moon's gravity acting on Earth. [link] is a simplified drawing of the Moon's position relative to the tides. Because water easily flows on Earth's surface, a high tide is created on the side of Earth nearest to the Moon, where the Moon's gravitational pull is strongest. Why is there also a high tide on the opposite side of Earth? The answer is that Earth is pulled toward the Moon more than the water on the far side, because Earth is closer to the Moon. So the water on the side of Earth closest to the Moon is pulled away from Earth, and Earth is pulled away from water on the far side. As Earth rotates, the tidal bulge (an effect of the tidal forces between an orbiting natural satellite and the primary planet that it orbits) keeps its orientation with the Moon. Thus there are two tides per day (the actual tidal period is about 12 hours and 25.2 minutes), because the Moon moves in its orbit each day as well).



The Moon causes ocean tides by attracting the water on the near side more than Earth, and by attracting Earth more than the water on the far side. The distances and sizes are

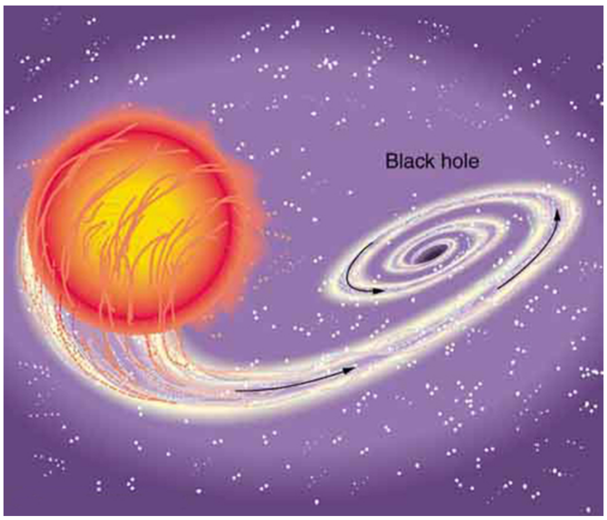
not to scale. For this simplified representation of the Earth-Moon system, there are two high and two low tides per day at any location, because Earth rotates under the tidal bulge.

The Sun also affects tides, although it has about half the effect of the Moon. However, the largest tides, called spring tides, occur when Earth, the Moon, and the Sun are aligned. The smallest tides, called neap tides, occur when the Sun is at a 90º angle to the Earth-Moon alignment.



(a, b) Spring tides: The highest tides occur when Earth, the Moon, and the Sun are aligned. (c) Neap tide: The lowest tides occur when the Sun lies at 90º to the Earth-Moon alignment. Note that this figure is not drawn to scale.

Tides are not unique to Earth but occur in many astronomical systems. The most extreme tides occur where the gravitational force is the strongest and varies most rapidly, such as near black holes (see [link]). A few likely candidates for black holes have been observed in our galaxy. These have masses greater than the Sun but have diameters only a few kilometers across. The tidal forces near them are so great that they can actually tear matter from a companion star.



A black hole is an object with such strong gravity that not even light can escape it. This black hole was created by the supernova of one star in a two-star system. The tidal forces created by the black hole are so great that it tears matter from the companion star. This matter is compressed and heated as it is sucked into the black hole, creating light and X-rays observable from Earth.

”Weightlessness” and Microgravity

In contrast to the tremendous gravitational force near black holes is the apparent gravitational field experienced by astronauts orbiting Earth. What is the effect of “weightlessness” upon an astronaut who is in orbit for months? Or what about the effect of weightlessness upon plant growth? Weightlessness doesn’t mean that an astronaut is not being acted upon by the gravitational force. There is no “zero gravity” in an astronaut’s orbit. The term just means that the astronaut is in free-fall, accelerating with the acceleration due to gravity. If an elevator cable breaks, the passengers inside will be in free fall and will experience weightlessness. You can experience short periods of weightlessness in some rides in amusement parks.

Astronauts experiencing weightlessness on board the International Space Station. (credit: NASA)

Microgravity refers to an environment in which the apparent net acceleration of a body is small compared with that produced by Earth at its surface. Many interesting biology and physics topics have been studied over the past three decades in the presence of microgravity. Of immediate concern is the effect on astronauts of extended times in outer space, such as at the International Space Station. Researchers have observed that muscles will atrophy (waste away) in this environment. There is also a corresponding loss of bone mass. Study continues on cardiovascular adaptation to space flight. On Earth, blood pressure is usually higher in the feet than in the head, because the higher column of blood exerts a downward force on it, due to gravity. When standing, 70% of your blood is below the level of the heart, while in a horizontal position, just the opposite occurs. What difference does the absence of this pressure differential have upon the heart?

Some findings in human physiology in space can be clinically important to the management of diseases back on Earth. On a somewhat negative note, spaceflight is known to affect the human immune system, possibly making the crew members more vulnerable to infectious diseases. Experiments flown in space also have shown that some bacteria grow faster in microgravity than they do on Earth. However, on a positive note, studies indicate that microbial antibiotic production can increase by a factor of two in space-grown cultures. One hopes to be able to understand these mechanisms so that similar successes can be achieved on the ground. In another area of physics space research, inorganic crystals and protein crystals have been grown in outer space that have much higher quality than any grown on Earth, so crystallography studies on their structure can yield much better results.

Plants have evolved with the stimulus of gravity and with gravity sensors. Roots grow downward and shoots grow upward. Plants might be able to provide a life support system for long duration space missions by regenerating the atmosphere, purifying water, and producing food. Some studies have indicated that plant growth and development are not affected by gravity, but there is still uncertainty about structural changes in plants grown in a microgravity environment.

The Cavendish Experiment: Then and Now

As previously noted, the universal gravitational constant G is determined experimentally. This definition was first done accurately by Henry Cavendish (1731–1810), an English scientist, in 1798, more than 100 years after Newton published his universal law of gravitation. The measurement of G is very basic and important because it determines the strength of one of the four forces in nature. Cavendish's experiment was very difficult because he measured the tiny gravitational attraction between two ordinary-sized masses (tens of kilograms at most), using apparatus like that in [link]. Remarkably, his value for G differs by less than 1% from the best modern value.

One important consequence of knowing G was that an accurate value for Earth's mass could finally be obtained. This was done by measuring the acceleration due to gravity as accurately as possible and then calculating the mass of Earth M from the relationship Newton's universal law of gravitation gives

Equation:

$$\mathrm{mg} = G\frac{\mathrm{mM}}{r^2},$$

where m is the mass of the object, M is the mass of Earth, and r is the distance to the center of Earth (the distance between the centers of mass of the object and Earth). See [link]. The mass m of the object cancels, leaving an equation for g:

Equation:

$$g = G\frac{M}{r^2}.$$

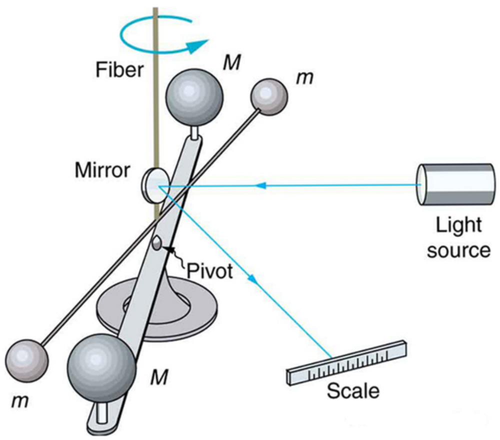
Rearranging to solve for M yields

Equation:

$$M = \frac{gr^2}{G}.$$

So M can be calculated because all quantities on the right, including the radius of Earth r, are known from direct measurements. We shall see in Satellites and Kepler's Laws: An Argument for Simplicity that knowing G also allows for the determination of astronomical masses. Interestingly, of all the fundamental constants in physics, G is by far the least well determined.

The Cavendish experiment is also used to explore other aspects of gravity. One of the most interesting questions is whether the gravitational force depends on substance as well as mass—for example, whether one kilogram of lead exerts the same gravitational pull as one kilogram of water. A Hungarian scientist named Roland von Eötvös pioneered this inquiry early in the 20th century. He found, with an accuracy of five parts per billion, that the gravitational force does not depend on the substance. Such experiments continue today, and have improved upon Eötvös' measurements. Cavendish-type experiments such as those of Eric Adelberger and others at the University of Washington, have also put severe limits on the possibility of a fifth force and have verified a major prediction of general relativity—that gravitational energy contributes to rest mass. Ongoing measurements there use a torsion balance and a parallel plate (not spheres, as Cavendish used) to examine how Newton's law of gravitation works over sub-millimeter distances. On this small-scale, do gravitational effects depart from the inverse square law? So far, no deviation has been observed.



Cavendish used an apparatus like this to measure the gravitational attraction between the two suspended spheres (m) and the two on the stand (M) by observing the amount of torsion (twisting) created in the fiber. Distance between the masses can be varied to check the dependence of the force on distance. Modern experiments of this type continue to explore gravity.

Section Summary

- Newton's universal law of gravitation: Every particle in the universe attracts every other particle with a force along a line joining them. The force is directly proportional to the product of their masses and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them. In equation form, this is

Equation:

$$F = G\frac{\text{mM}}{r^2},$$

where F is the magnitude of the gravitational force. G is the gravitational constant, given by $G = 6.674 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$.

- Newton’s law of gravitation applies universally.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Action at a distance, such as is the case for gravity, was once thought to be illogical and therefore untrue. What is the ultimate determinant of the truth in physics, and why was this action ultimately accepted?

Exercise:

Problem:

Two friends are having a conversation. Anna says a satellite in orbit is in freefall because the satellite keeps falling toward Earth. Tom says a satellite in orbit is not in freefall because the acceleration due to gravity is not $9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$. Who do you agree with and why?

Exercise:

Problem:

Draw a free body diagram for a satellite in an elliptical orbit showing why its speed increases as it approaches its parent body and decreases as it moves away.

Exercise:

Problem:

Newton’s laws of motion and gravity were among the first to convincingly demonstrate the underlying simplicity and unity in nature. Many other examples have since been discovered, and we now expect to find such underlying order in complex situations. Is there proof that such order will always be found in new explorations?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate Earth’s mass given the acceleration due to gravity at the North Pole is $9.830\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ and the radius of the Earth is 6371 km from center to pole.

(b) Compare this with the accepted value of $5.979 \times 10^{24}\ \mathrm{kg}$.

Solution:

a) $5.979 \times 10^{24}\ \mathrm{kg}$

b) This is identical to the best value to three significant figures.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the magnitude of the acceleration due to gravity on the surface of Earth due to the Moon.

(b) Calculate the magnitude of the acceleration due to gravity at Earth due to the Sun.

(c) Take the ratio of the Moon’s acceleration to the Sun’s and comment on why the tides are predominantly due to the Moon in spite of this

number.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the acceleration due to gravity on the surface of the Moon?

(b) On the surface of Mars? The mass of Mars is 6.418×10^{23} kg and its radius is 3.38×10^{6} m.

Solution:

a) $1.62\ \text{m/s}^2$

b) $3.75\ \text{m/s}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the acceleration due to gravity on the surface of the Sun.

(b) By what factor would your weight increase if you could stand on the Sun? (Never mind that you cannot.)

Exercise:

Problem:

The Moon and Earth rotate about their common center of mass, which is located about 4700 km from the center of Earth. (This is 1690 km below the surface.)

(a) Calculate the magnitude of the acceleration due to the Moon's gravity at that point.

(b) Calculate the magnitude of the centripetal acceleration of the center of Earth as it rotates about that point once each lunar month (about 27.3 d) and compare it with the acceleration found in part (a).

Comment on whether or not they are equal and why they should or should not be.

Solution:

a) $3.42 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$

b) $3.34 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$

The values are nearly identical. One would expect the gravitational force to be the same as the centripetal force at the core of the system.

Exercise:

Problem: Solve part (b) of [link] using $a_c = v^2/r$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Astrology, that unlikely and vague pseudoscience, makes much of the position of the planets at the moment of one's birth. The only known force a planet exerts on Earth is gravitational.

(a) Calculate the magnitude of the gravitational force exerted on a 4.20 kg baby by a 100 kg father 0.200 m away at birth (he is assisting, so he is close to the child).

(b) Calculate the magnitude of the force on the baby due to Jupiter if it is at its closest distance to Earth, some $6.29 \times 10^{11}\ \mathrm{m}$ away. How does the force of Jupiter on the baby compare to the force of the father on the baby? Other objects in the room and the hospital building also exert similar gravitational forces. (Of course, there could be an unknown force acting, but scientists first need to be convinced that there is even an effect, much less that an unknown force causes it.)

Solution:

a) $7.01 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{N}$

b) 1.35×10^{-6} N, 0.521

Exercise:

Problem:

The existence of the dwarf planet Pluto was proposed based on irregularities in Neptune’s orbit. Pluto was subsequently discovered near its predicted position. But it now appears that the discovery was fortuitous, because Pluto is small and the irregularities in Neptune’s orbit were not well known. To illustrate that Pluto has a minor effect on the orbit of Neptune compared with the closest planet to Neptune:

(a) Calculate the acceleration due to gravity at Neptune due to Pluto when they are 4.50×10^{12} m apart, as they are at present. The mass of Pluto is 1.4×10^{22} kg.

(b) Calculate the acceleration due to gravity at Neptune due to Uranus, presently about 2.50×10^{12} m apart, and compare it with that due to Pluto. The mass of Uranus is 8.62×10^{25} kg.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The Sun orbits the Milky Way galaxy once each $2.60 \text{ x } 10^8$ y, with a roughly circular orbit averaging $3.00 \text{ x } 10^4$ light years in radius. (A light year is the distance traveled by light in 1 y.) Calculate the centripetal acceleration of the Sun in its galactic orbit. Does your result support the contention that a nearly inertial frame of reference can be located at the Sun?

(b) Calculate the average speed of the Sun in its galactic orbit. Does the answer surprise you?

Solution:

a) 1.66×10^{-10} m/s^2

b) 2.17×10^5 m/s

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Result**

A mountain 10.0 km from a person exerts a gravitational force on him equal to 2.00% of his weight.

(a) Calculate the mass of the mountain.

(b) Compare the mountain's mass with that of Earth.

(c) What is unreasonable about these results?

(d) Which premises are unreasonable or inconsistent? (Note that accurate gravitational measurements can easily detect the effect of nearby mountains and variations in local geology.)

Solution:

a) 2.937×10^{17} kg

b) 4.91×10^{-8}

of the Earth's mass.

c) The mass of the mountain and its fraction of the Earth's mass are too great.

d) The gravitational force assumed to be exerted by the mountain is too great.

Glossary

gravitational constant, *G*
: a proportionality factor used in the equation for Newton's universal law of gravitation; it is a universal constant—that is, it is thought to be the same everywhere in the universe

center of mass

the point where the entire mass of an object can be thought to be concentrated

microgravity

an environment in which the apparent net acceleration of a body is small compared with that produced by Earth at its surface

Newton’s universal law of gravitation

every particle in the universe attracts every other particle with a force along a line joining them; the force is directly proportional to the product of their masses and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them

Satellites and Kepler’s Laws: An Argument for Simplicity

- State Kepler’s laws of planetary motion.
- Derive the third Kepler’s law for circular orbits.
- Discuss the Ptolemaic model of the universe.

Examples of gravitational orbits abound. Hundreds of artificial satellites orbit Earth together with thousands of pieces of debris. The Moon’s orbit about Earth has intrigued humans from time immemorial. The orbits of planets, asteroids, meteors, and comets about the Sun are no less interesting. If we look further, we see almost unimaginable numbers of stars, galaxies, and other celestial objects orbiting one another and interacting through gravity.

All these motions are governed by gravitational force, and it is possible to describe them to various degrees of precision. Precise descriptions of complex systems must be made with large computers. However, we can describe an important class of orbits without the use of computers, and we shall find it instructive to study them. These orbits have the following characteristics:

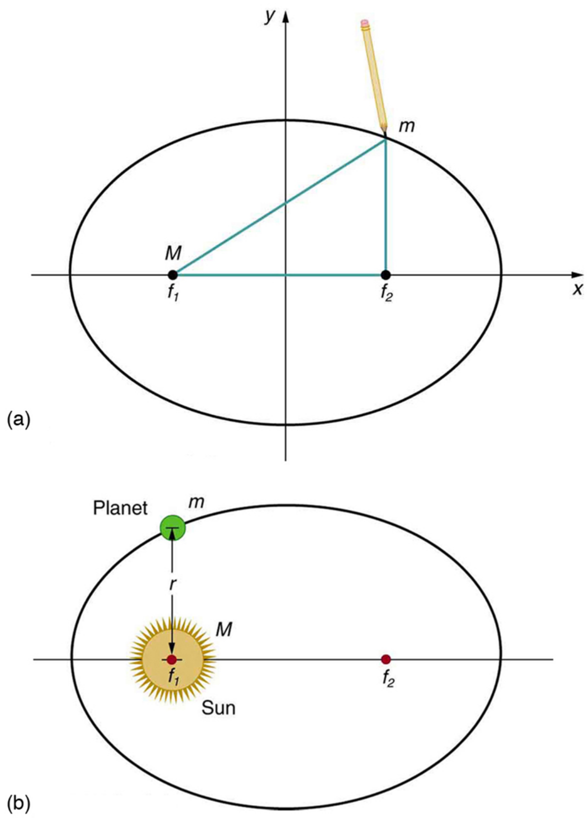
1. *A small mass m orbits a much larger mass M*. This allows us to view the motion as if M were stationary—in fact, as if from an inertial frame of reference placed on M —without significant error. Mass m is the satellite of M, if the orbit is gravitationally bound.
2. *The system is isolated from other masses*. This allows us to neglect any small effects due to outside masses.

The conditions are satisfied, to good approximation, by Earth’s satellites (including the Moon), by objects orbiting the Sun, and by the satellites of other planets. Historically, planets were studied first, and there is a classical set of three laws, called Kepler’s laws of planetary motion, that describe the orbits of all bodies satisfying the two previous conditions (not just planets in our solar system). These descriptive laws are named for the German astronomer Johannes Kepler (1571–1630), who devised them after careful study (over some 20 years) of a large amount of meticulously recorded observations of planetary motion done by Tycho Brahe (1546–1601). Such careful collection and detailed recording of methods and data are hallmarks of good science. Data constitute the evidence from which new interpretations and meanings can be constructed.

Kepler’s Laws of Planetary Motion

Kepler’s First Law

The orbit of each planet about the Sun is an ellipse with the Sun at one focus.



(a) An ellipse is a closed curve such that the sum of the distances from a point on the curve to the two foci (f_1 and f_2) is a constant. You can draw an ellipse as shown by putting a pin at each focus, and then placing a string around a pencil and the pins and tracing a line on paper. A circle is a special case of an ellipse in which the

two foci coincide (thus any point on the circle is the same distance from the center). (b) For any closed gravitational orbit, m follows an elliptical path with M at one focus. Kepler’s first law states this fact for planets orbiting the Sun.

Kepler’s Second Law

Each planet moves so that an imaginary line drawn from the Sun to the planet sweeps out equal areas in equal times (see [link]).

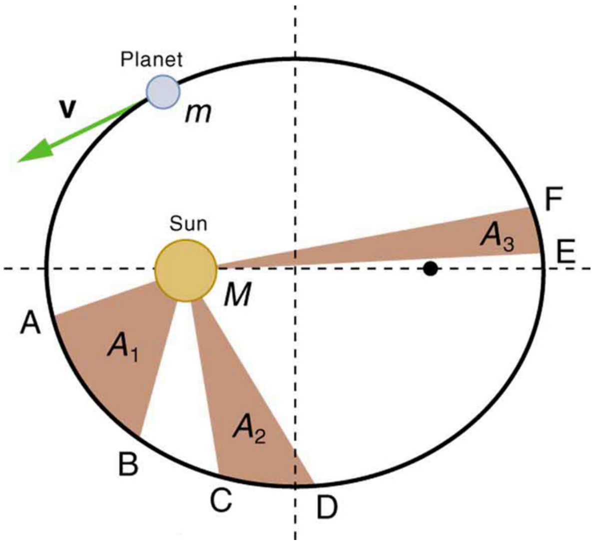
Kepler’s Third Law

The ratio of the squares of the periods of any two planets about the Sun is equal to the ratio of the cubes of their average distances from the Sun. In equation form, this is

Equation:

$$\frac{{T_1}^2}{{T_2}^2} = \frac{{r_1}^3}{{r_2}^3},$$

where T is the period (time for one orbit) and r is the average radius. This equation is valid only for comparing two small masses orbiting the same large one. Most importantly, this is a descriptive equation only, giving no information as to the cause of the equality.



The shaded regions have equal areas. It takes equal times for m to go from A to B, from C to D, and from E to F. The mass m moves fastest when it is closest to M. Kepler's second law was originally devised for planets orbiting the Sun, but it has broader validity.

Note again that while, for historical reasons, Kepler's laws are stated for planets orbiting the Sun, they are actually valid for all bodies satisfying the two previously stated conditions.

Example:
Find the Time for One Orbit of an Earth Satellite
Given that the Moon orbits Earth each 27.3 d and that it is an average distance of 3.84×10^8 m from the center of Earth, calculate the period of an artificial satellite orbiting at an average altitude of 1500 km above Earth's surface.
Strategy

The period, or time for one orbit, is related to the radius of the orbit by Kepler's third law, given in mathematical form in $\frac{{T_1}^2}{{T_2}^2} = \frac{r_1^3}{r_2^3}$. Let us use the subscript 1 for the Moon and the subscript 2 for the satellite. We are asked to find T_2. The given information tells us that the orbital radius of the Moon is $r_1 = 3.84 \times 10^8$ m, and that the period of the Moon is $T_1 = 27.3$ d. The height of the artificial satellite above Earth's surface is given, and so we must add the radius of Earth (6380 km) to get $r_2 = (1500 + 6380)$ km $= 7880$ km. Now all quantities are known, and so T_2 can be found.

Solution

Kepler's third law is

Equation:

$$\frac{{T_1}^2}{{T_2}^2} = \frac{r_1^3}{r_2^3}.$$

To solve for T_2, we cross-multiply and take the square root, yielding

Equation:

$${T_2}^2 = {T_1}^2 \left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)^3$$

Equation:

$$T_2 = T_1 \left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)^{3/2}.$$

Substituting known values yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} T_2 &= 27.3 \text{ d} \times \frac{24.0 \text{ h}}{\text{d}} \times \left(\frac{7880 \text{ km}}{3.84 \times 10^5 \text{ km}}\right)^{3/2} \\ &= 1.93 \text{ h.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion This is a reasonable period for a satellite in a fairly low orbit. It is interesting that any satellite at this altitude will orbit in the same amount

of time. This fact is related to the condition that the satellite’s mass is small compared with that of Earth.

People immediately search for deeper meaning when broadly applicable laws, like Kepler’s, are discovered. It was Newton who took the next giant step when he proposed the law of universal gravitation. While Kepler was able to discover *what* was happening, Newton discovered that gravitational force was the cause.

Derivation of Kepler’s Third Law for Circular Orbits

We shall derive Kepler’s third law, starting with Newton’s laws of motion and his universal law of gravitation. The point is to demonstrate that the force of gravity is the cause for Kepler’s laws (although we will only derive the third one).

Let us consider a circular orbit of a small mass m around a large mass M, satisfying the two conditions stated at the beginning of this section. Gravity supplies the centripetal force to mass m. Starting with Newton’s second law applied to circular motion,
Equation:

$$F_{\text{net}} = ma_{\text{c}} = m\frac{v^2}{r}.$$

The net external force on mass m is gravity, and so we substitute the force of gravity for F_{net}:
Equation:

$$G\frac{\text{mM}}{r^2} = m\frac{v^2}{r}.$$

The mass m cancels, yielding
Equation:

$$G\frac{M}{r} = v^2.$$

The fact that m cancels out is another aspect of the oft-noted fact that at a given location all masses fall with the same acceleration. Here we see that at a given orbital radius r, all masses orbit at the same speed. (This was implied by the result of the preceding worked example.) Now, to get at Kepler's third law, we must get the period T into the equation. By definition, period T is the time for one complete orbit. Now the average speed v is the circumference divided by the period—that is,

Equation:

$$v = \frac{2\pi r}{T}.$$

Substituting this into the previous equation gives

Equation:

$$G\frac{\mathrm{M}}{r} = \frac{4\pi^2 r^2}{T^2}.$$

Solving for T^2 yields

Equation:

$$T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2}{\mathrm{GM}} r^3.$$

Using subscripts 1 and 2 to denote two different satellites, and taking the ratio of the last equation for satellite 1 to satellite 2 yields

Equation:

$$\frac{{T_1}^2}{{T_2}^2} = \frac{{r_1}^3}{{r_2}^3}.$$

This is Kepler’s third law. Note that Kepler’s third law is valid only for comparing satellites of the same parent body, because only then does the mass of the parent body M cancel.

Now consider what we get if we solve $T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2}{\text{GM}} r^3$ for the ratio r^3/T^2. We obtain a relationship that can be used to determine the mass M of a parent body from the orbits of its satellites:
Equation:

$$\frac{r^3}{T^2} = \frac{G}{4\pi^2} M.$$

If r and T are known for a satellite, then the mass M of the parent can be calculated. This principle has been used extensively to find the masses of heavenly bodies that have satellites. Furthermore, the ratio r^3/T^2 should be a constant for all satellites of the same parent body (because $r^3/T^2 = \text{GM}/4\pi^2$). (See [link]).

It is clear from [link] that the ratio of r^3/T^2 is constant, at least to the third digit, for all listed satellites of the Sun, and for those of Jupiter. Small variations in that ratio have two causes—uncertainties in the r and T data, and perturbations of the orbits due to other bodies. Interestingly, those perturbations can be—and have been—used to predict the location of new planets and moons. This is another verification of Newton’s universal law of gravitation.

Note:
Making Connections
Newton’s universal law of gravitation is modified by Einstein’s general theory of relativity, as we shall see in Particle Physics. Newton’s gravity is not seriously in error—it was and still is an extremely good approximation for most situations. Einstein’s modification is most noticeable in extremely large gravitational fields, such as near black holes. However, general relativity also explains such phenomena as small but long-known deviations of the orbit of the planet Mercury from classical predictions.

The Case for Simplicity

The development of the universal law of gravitation by Newton played a pivotal role in the history of ideas. While it is beyond the scope of this text to cover that history in any detail, we note some important points. The definition of planet set in 2006 by the International Astronomical Union (IAU) states that in the solar system, a planet is a celestial body that:

1. is in orbit around the Sun,
2. has sufficient mass to assume hydrostatic equilibrium and
3. has cleared the neighborhood around its orbit.

A non-satellite body fulfilling only the first two of the above criteria is classified as “dwarf planet.”

In 2006, Pluto was demoted to a ‘dwarf planet’ after scientists revised their definition of what constitutes a “true” planet.

Parent	**Satellite**	**Average orbital radius *r*(km)**	**Period *T(y)***	**r^3 / T^2 (km^3 / y^2)**
Earth	Moon	3.84×10^5	0.07481	1.01×10^{19}
Sun	Mercury	5.79×10^7	0.2409	3.34×10^{24}

Parent	Satellite	Average orbital radius r(km)	Period $T(y)$	r^3 / T^2 (km^3 / y^2)
	Venus	1.082×10^8	0.6150	3.35×10^{24}
	Earth	1.496×10^8	1.000	3.35×10^{24}
	Mars	2.279×10^8	1.881	3.35×10^{24}
	Jupiter	7.783×10^8	11.86	3.35×10^{24}
	Saturn	1.427×10^9	29.46	3.35×10^{24}
	Neptune	4.497×10^9	164.8	3.35×10^{24}
	Pluto	5.90×10^9	248.3	3.33×10^{24}
Jupiter	Io	4.22×10^5	0.00485 (1.77 d)	3.19×10^{21}
	Europa	6.71×10^5	0.00972 (3.55 d)	3.20×10^{21}

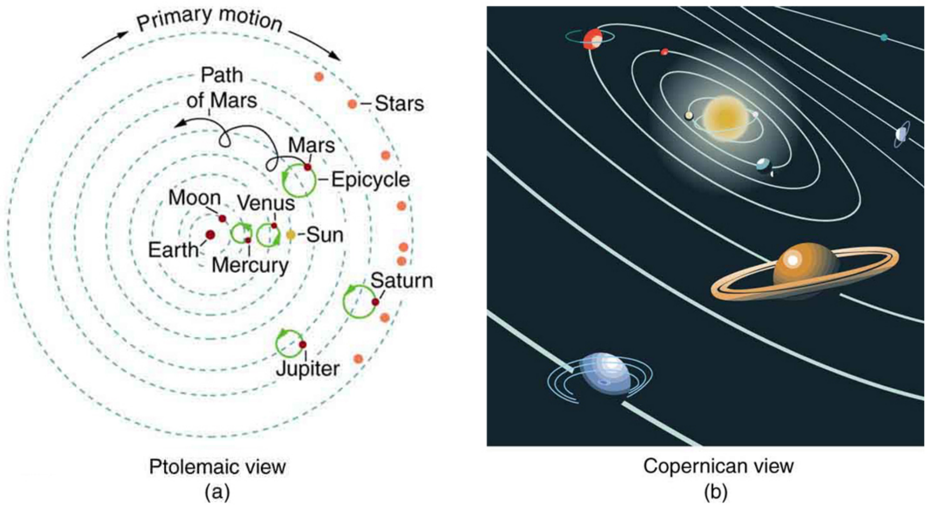
Parent	Satellite	Average orbital radius *r*(km)	Period *T(y)*	r^3 / T^2 (km^3 / y^2)
	Ganymede	1.07×10^6	0.0196 (7.16 d)	3.19×10^{21}
	Callisto	1.88×10^6	0.0457 (16.19 d)	3.20×10^{21}

Orbital Data and Kepler's Third Law

The universal law of gravitation is a good example of a physical principle that is very broadly applicable. That single equation for the gravitational force describes all situations in which gravity acts. It gives a cause for a vast number of effects, such as the orbits of the planets and moons in the solar system. It epitomizes the underlying unity and simplicity of physics.

Before the discoveries of Kepler, Copernicus, Galileo, Newton, and others, the solar system was thought to revolve around Earth as shown in [link](a). This is called the Ptolemaic view, for the Greek philosopher who lived in the second century AD. This model is characterized by a list of facts for the motions of planets with no cause and effect explanation. There tended to be a different rule for each heavenly body and a general lack of simplicity.

[link](b) represents the modern or Copernican model. In this model, a small set of rules and a single underlying force explain not only all motions in the solar system, but all other situations involving gravity. The breadth and simplicity of the laws of physics are compelling. As our knowledge of nature has grown, the basic simplicity of its laws has become ever more evident.



(a) The Ptolemaic model of the universe has Earth at the center with the Moon, the planets, the Sun, and the stars revolving about it in complex superpositions of circular paths. This geocentric model, which can be made progressively more accurate by adding more circles, is purely descriptive, containing no hints as to what are the causes of these motions. (b) The Copernican model has the Sun at the center of the solar system. It is fully explained by a small number of laws of physics, including Newton's universal law of gravitation.

Section Summary

- Kepler's laws are stated for a small mass m orbiting a larger mass M in near-isolation. Kepler's laws of planetary motion are then as follows:

  Kepler's first law

  The orbit of each planet about the Sun is an ellipse with the Sun at one focus.

  Kepler's second law

Each planet moves so that an imaginary line drawn from the Sun to the planet sweeps out equal areas in equal times.

Kepler’s third law

The ratio of the squares of the periods of any two planets about the Sun is equal to the ratio of the cubes of their average distances from the Sun:
Equation:

$$\frac{{T_1}^2}{{T_2}^2} = \frac{{r_1}^3}{{r_2}^3},$$

where T is the period (time for one orbit) and r is the average radius of the orbit.

- The period and radius of a satellite’s orbit about a larger body M are related by
  Equation:

  $$T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2}{\mathrm{GM}} r^3$$

  or
  Equation:

  $$\frac{r^3}{T^2} = \frac{G}{4\pi^2} M.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

In what frame(s) of reference are Kepler’s laws valid? Are Kepler’s laws purely descriptive, or do they contain causal information?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A geosynchronous Earth satellite is one that has an orbital period of precisely 1 day. Such orbits are useful for communication and weather observation because the satellite remains above the same point on Earth (provided it orbits in the equatorial plane in the same direction as Earth's rotation). Calculate the radius of such an orbit based on the data for the moon in [link].

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the mass of the Sun based on data for Earth's orbit and compare the value obtained with the Sun's actual mass.

Solution:

1.98×10^{30} kg

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the mass of Jupiter based on data for the orbit of one of its moons, and compare your result with its actual mass.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the ratio of the mass of Jupiter to that of Earth based on data in [link].

Solution:

$\frac{M_J}{M_E} = 316$

Exercise:

Problem:

Astronomical observations of our Milky Way galaxy indicate that it has a mass of about 8.0×10^{11} solar masses. A star orbiting on the galaxy's periphery is about 6.0×10^{4} light years from its center. (a) What should the orbital period of that star be? (b) If its period is 6.0×10^{7} years instead, what is the mass of the galaxy? Such calculations are used to imply the existence of "dark matter" in the universe and have indicated, for example, the existence of very massive black holes at the centers of some galaxies.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Space debris left from old satellites and their launchers is becoming a hazard to other satellites. (a) Calculate the speed of a satellite in an orbit 900 km above Earth's surface. (b) Suppose a loose rivet is in an orbit of the same radius that intersects the satellite's orbit at an angle of 90º relative to Earth. What is the velocity of the rivet relative to the satellite just before striking it? (c) Given the rivet is 3.00 mm in size, how long will its collision with the satellite last? (d) If its mass is 0.500 g, what is the average force it exerts on the satellite? (e) How much energy in joules is generated by the collision? (The satellite's velocity does not change appreciably, because its mass is much greater than the rivet's.)

Solution:

a) $7.4 \times 10^{3}\ \text{m/s}$

b) $1.05 \times 10^{3}\ \text{m/s}$

c) $2.86 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{s}$

d) $1.84 \times 10^{7}\ \text{N}$

e) $2.76 \times 10^{4}\ \text{J}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

(a) Based on Kepler’s laws and information on the orbital characteristics of the Moon, calculate the orbital radius for an Earth satellite having a period of 1.00 h. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What is unreasonable or inconsistent about the premise of a 1.00 h orbit?

Solution:

a) $5.08 \times 10^3 \text{ km}$

b) This radius is unreasonable because it is less than the radius of earth.

c) The premise of a one-hour orbit is inconsistent with the known radius of the earth.

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

On February 14, 2000, the NEAR spacecraft was successfully inserted into orbit around Eros, becoming the first artificial satellite of an asteroid. Construct a problem in which you determine the orbital speed for a satellite near Eros. You will need to find the mass of the asteroid and consider such things as a safe distance for the orbit. Although Eros is not spherical, calculate the acceleration due to gravity on its surface at a point an average distance from its center of mass. Your instructor may also wish to have you calculate the escape velocity from this point on Eros.

# Introduction to Work, Energy, and Energy Resources
class="introduction"

How many forms of energy can you identify in this photograph of a wind farm in Iowa? (credit: Jürgen from Sandesneben, Germany, Wikimedia Commons)

Energy plays an essential role both in everyday events and in scientific phenomena. You can no doubt name many forms of energy, from that provided by our foods, to the energy we use to run our cars, to the sunlight that warms us on the beach. You can also cite examples of what people call energy that may not be scientific, such as someone having an energetic personality. Not only does energy have many interesting forms, it is

involved in almost all phenomena, and is one of the most important concepts of physics. What makes it even more important is that the total amount of energy in the universe is constant. Energy can change forms, but it cannot appear from nothing or disappear without a trace. Energy is thus one of a handful of physical quantities that we say is *conserved*.

Conservation of energy (as physicists like to call the principle that energy can neither be created nor destroyed) is based on experiment. Even as scientists discovered new forms of energy, conservation of energy has always been found to apply. Perhaps the most dramatic example of this was supplied by Einstein when he suggested that mass is equivalent to energy (his famous equation $E = \text{mc}^2$).

From a societal viewpoint, energy is one of the major building blocks of modern civilization. Energy resources are key limiting factors to economic growth. The world use of energy resources, especially oil, continues to grow, with ominous consequences economically, socially, politically, and environmentally. We will briefly examine the world's energy use patterns at the end of this chapter.

There is no simple, yet accurate, scientific definition for energy. Energy is characterized by its many forms and the fact that it is conserved. We can loosely define **energy** as the ability to do work, admitting that in some circumstances not all energy is available to do work. Because of the association of energy with work, we begin the chapter with a discussion of work. Work is intimately related to energy and how energy moves from one system to another or changes form.

Work: The Scientific Definition

- Explain how an object must be displaced for a force on it to do work.
- Explain how relative directions of force and displacement determine whether the work done is positive, negative, or zero.

What It Means to Do Work

The scientific definition of work differs in some ways from its everyday meaning. Certain things we think of as hard work, such as writing an exam or carrying a heavy load on level ground, are not work as defined by a scientist. The scientific definition of work reveals its relationship to energy—whenever work is done, energy is transferred.

For work, in the scientific sense, to be done, a force must be exerted and there must be displacement in the direction of the force.

Formally, the **work** done on a system by a constant force is defined to be *the product of the component of the force in the direction of motion times the distance through which the force acts*. For one-way motion in one dimension, this is expressed in equation form as

Equation:

$$W = |\ \mathbf{F}\ |\ (\cos\theta)\ |\ \mathbf{d}\ |,$$

where W is work, $\mathbf{d}$ is the displacement of the system, and θ is the angle between the force vector $\mathbf{F}$ and the displacement vector $\mathbf{d}$, as in [link]. We can also write this as

Equation:

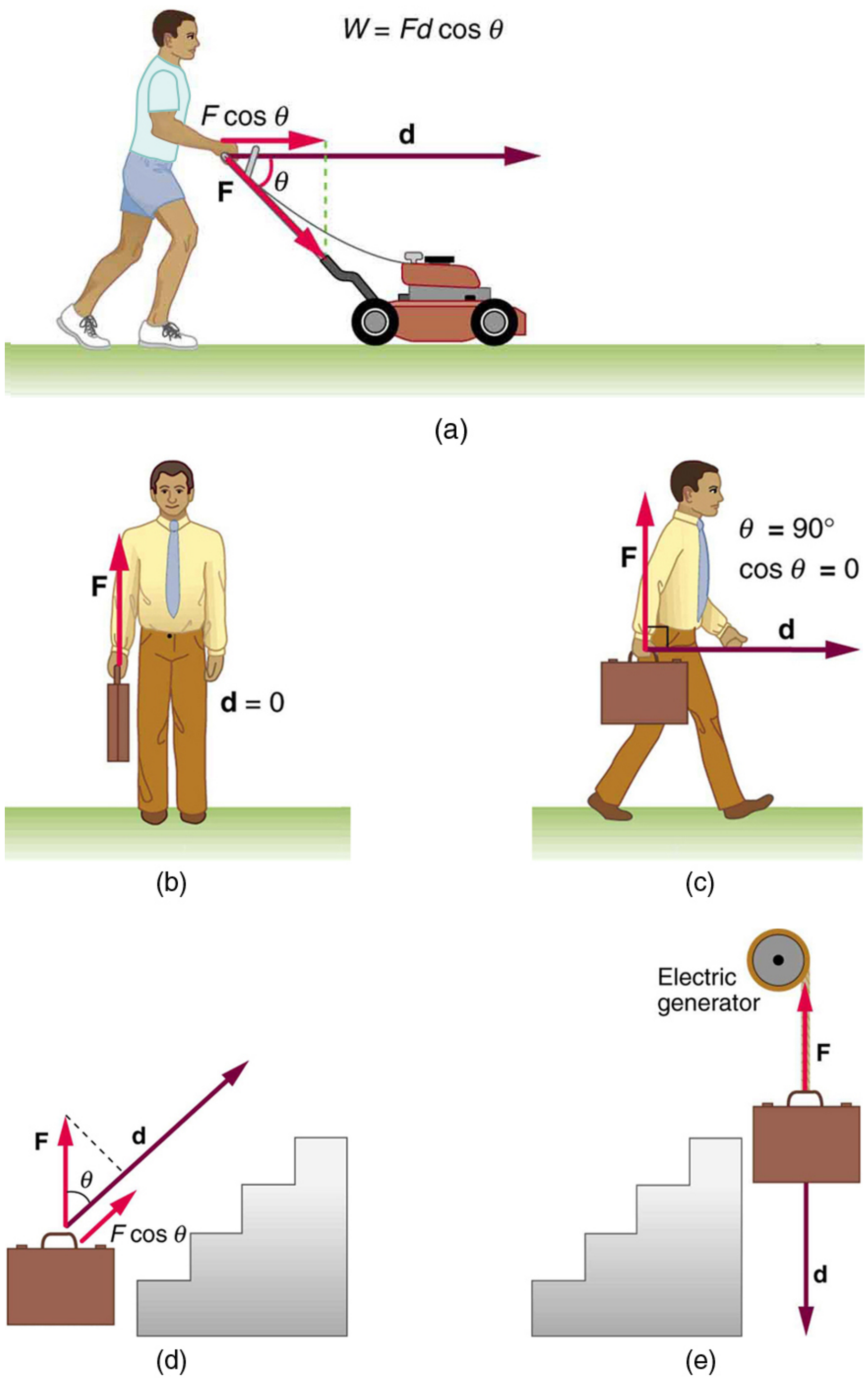
$$W = \text{Fd}\ \cos\ \theta.$$

To find the work done on a system that undergoes motion that is not one-way or that is in two or three dimensions, we divide the motion into one-way one-dimensional segments and add up the work done over each segment.

Note:
What is Work?
The work done on a system by a constant force is *the product of the component of the force in the direction of motion times the distance through which the force acts*. For one-way motion in one dimension, this is expressed in equation form as
Equation:

$$W = \mathrm{Fd}\cos\theta,$$

where W is work, F is the magnitude of the force on the system, d is the magnitude of the displacement of the system, and θ is the angle between the force vector $\mathbf{F}$ and the displacement vector $\mathbf{d}$.



Examples of work. (a) The work done by the force $\mathbf{F}$ on this lawn mower is $\mathrm{Fd}\cos\theta$. Note that $F\cos\theta$ is the component of the force in the direction of motion. (b) A person holding a briefcase does no work on it, because there is no

displacement. No energy is transferred to or from the briefcase. (c) The person moving the briefcase horizontally at a constant speed does no work on it, and transfers no energy to it. (d) Work *is* done on the briefcase by carrying it up stairs at constant speed, because there is necessarily a component of force $\mathbf{F}$ in the direction of the motion. Energy is transferred to the briefcase and could in turn be used to do work. (e) When the briefcase is lowered, energy is transferred out of the briefcase and into an electric generator. Here the work done on the briefcase by the generator is negative, removing energy from the briefcase, because $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{d}$ are in opposite directions.

To examine what the definition of work means, let us consider the other situations shown in [link]. The person holding the briefcase in [link](b) does no work, for example. Here $d = 0$, so $W = 0$. Why is it you get tired just holding a load? The answer is that your muscles are doing work against one another, *but they are doing no work on the system of interest* (the "briefcase-Earth system"—see Gravitational Potential Energy for more details). There must be displacement for work to be done, and there must be a component of the force in the direction of the motion. For example, the person carrying the briefcase on level ground in [link](c) does no work on it, because the force is perpendicular to the motion. That is, $\cos 90^{\circ} = 0$, and so $W = 0$.

In contrast, when a force exerted on the system has a component in the direction of motion, such as in [link](d), work *is* done—energy is transferred to the briefcase. Finally, in [link](e), energy is transferred from the briefcase to a generator. There are two good ways to interpret this energy transfer. One interpretation is that the briefcase's weight does work on the generator, giving it energy. The other interpretation is that the generator does negative work on the briefcase, thus removing energy from it. The drawing shows the latter, with the force from the generator upward

on the briefcase, and the displacement downward. This makes $\theta = 180^{\circ}$, and cos $180^{\circ} = -1$; therefore, W is negative.

Calculating Work

Work and energy have the same units. From the definition of work, we see that those units are force times distance. Thus, in SI units, work and energy are measured in **newton-meters**. A newton-meter is given the special name **joule** (J), and $1\ \text{J} = 1\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m} = 1\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$. One joule is not a large amount of energy; it would lift a small 100-gram apple a distance of about 1 meter.

Example:
Calculating the Work You Do to Push a Lawn Mower Across a Large Lawn
How much work is done on the lawn mower by the person in [link](a) if he exerts a constant force of $75.0\ \text{N}$ at an angle 35° below the horizontal and pushes the mower $25.0\ \text{m}$ on level ground? Convert the amount of work from joules to kilocalories and compare it with this person's average daily intake of $10{,}000\ \text{kJ}$ (about $2400\ \text{kcal}$) of food energy. One *calorie* (1 cal) of heat is the amount required to warm 1 g of water by 1°C, and is equivalent to $4.184\ \text{J}$, while one *food calorie* (1 kcal) is equivalent to $4184\ \text{J}$.
Strategy
We can solve this problem by substituting the given values into the definition of work done on a system, stated in the equation $W = \text{Fd}\cos\theta$. The force, angle, and displacement are given, so that only the work W is unknown.
Solution
The equation for the work is
Equation:

$$W = \text{Fd}\cos\theta.$$

Substituting the known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} W &= (75.0\ \text{N})(25.0\ \text{m})\cos(35.0^\circ) \\ &= 1536\ \text{J} = 1.54 \times 10^3\ \text{J}. \end{aligned}$$

Converting the work in joules to kilocalories yields $W = (1536\ \text{J})(1\ \text{kcal}/4184\ \text{J}) = 0.367\ \text{kcal}$. The ratio of the work done to the daily consumption is

Equation:

$$\frac{W}{2400\ \text{kcal}} = 1.53 \times 10^{-4}.$$

Discussion

This ratio is a tiny fraction of what the person consumes, but it is typical. Very little of the energy released in the consumption of food is used to do work. Even when we "work" all day long, less than 10% of our food energy intake is used to do work and more than 90% is converted to thermal energy or stored as chemical energy in fat.

Section Summary

- Work is the transfer of energy by a force acting on an object as it is displaced.
- The work W that a force $\mathbf{F}$ does on an object is the product of the magnitude F of the force, times the magnitude d of the displacement, times the cosine of the angle θ between them. In symbols,

  Equation:

  $$W = \text{Fd}\cos\theta.$$

- The SI unit for work and energy is the joule (J), where $1\ \text{J} = 1\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m} = 1\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$.
- The work done by a force is zero if the displacement is either zero or perpendicular to the force.

- The work done is positive if the force and displacement have the same direction, and negative if they have opposite direction.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of something we think of as work in everyday circumstances that is not work in the scientific sense. Is energy transferred or changed in form in your example? If so, explain how this is accomplished without doing work.

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a situation in which there is a force and a displacement, but the force does no work. Explain why it does no work.

Exercise:

Problem:

Describe a situation in which a force is exerted for a long time but does no work. Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

How much work does a supermarket checkout attendant do on a can of soup he pushes 0.600 m horizontally with a force of 5.00 N? Express your answer in joules and kilocalories.

Solution:

Equation:

$$3.00 \text{ J} = 7.17 \times 10^{-4} \text{ kcal}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A 75.0-kg person climbs stairs, gaining 2.50 meters in height. Find the work done to accomplish this task.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the work done on a 1500-kg elevator car by its cable to lift it 40.0 m at constant speed, assuming friction averages 100 N. (b) What is the work done on the lift by the gravitational force in this process? (c) What is the total work done on the lift?

Solution:

(a) $5.92 \times 10^{5} \text{ J}$

(b) $-5.88 \times 10^{5} \text{ J}$

(c) The net force is zero.

Exercise:

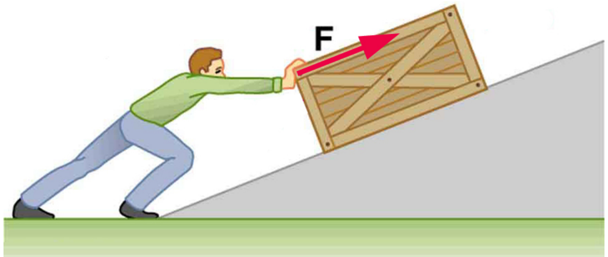
Problem:

Suppose a car travels 108 km at a speed of 30.0 m/s, and uses 2.0 gal of gasoline. Only 30% of the gasoline goes into useful work by the force that keeps the car moving at constant speed despite friction. (See [link] for the energy content of gasoline.) (a) What is the magnitude of the force exerted to keep the car moving at constant speed? (b) If the required force is directly proportional to speed, how many gallons will be used to drive 108 km at a speed of 28.0 m/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the work done by an 85.0-kg man who pushes a crate 4.00 m up along a ramp that makes an angle of 20.0° with the horizontal. (See [link].) He exerts a force of 500 N on the crate parallel to the ramp and moves at a constant speed. Be certain to include the work he does on the crate *and* on his body to get up the ramp.



A man pushes a crate up a ramp.

Solution:

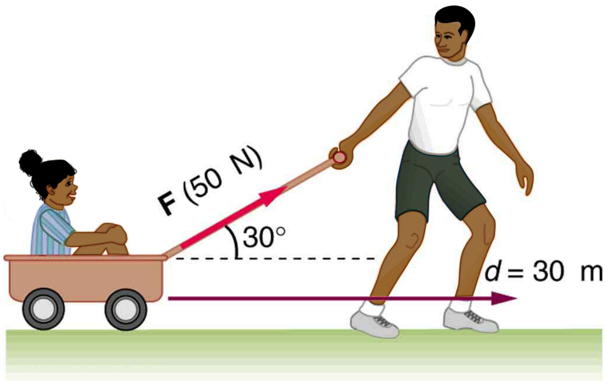
Equation:

$$3.14 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{J}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

How much work is done by the boy pulling his sister 30.0 m in a wagon as shown in [link]? Assume no friction acts on the wagon.



The boy does work on the system of the wagon and the child when he pulls them as shown.

Exercise:

Problem:

A shopper pushes a grocery cart 20.0 m at constant speed on level ground, against a 35.0 N frictional force. He pushes in a direction 25.0° below the horizontal. (a) What is the work done on the cart by friction? (b) What is the work done on the cart by the gravitational force? (c) What is the work done on the cart by the shopper? (d) Find the force the shopper exerts, using energy considerations. (e) What is the total work done on the cart?

Solution:

(a) -700 J

(b) 0

(c) 700 J

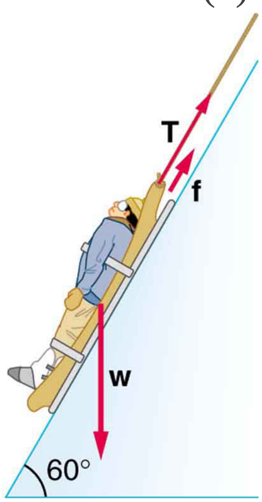
(d) 38.6 N

(e) 0

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the ski patrol lowers a rescue sled and victim, having a total mass of 90.0 kg, down a 60.0º slope at constant speed, as shown in [link]. The coefficient of friction between the sled and the snow is 0.100. (a) How much work is done by friction as the sled moves 30.0 m along the hill? (b) How much work is done by the rope on the sled in this distance? (c) What is the work done by the gravitational force on the sled? (d) What is the total work done?



A rescue sled and victim are lowered down a steep slope.

Glossary

energy

the ability to do work

work
the transfer of energy by a force that causes an object to be displaced; the product of the component of the force in the direction of the displacement and the magnitude of the displacement

joule
SI unit of work and energy, equal to one newton-meter

Kinetic Energy and the Work-Energy Theorem

- Explain work as a transfer of energy and net work as the work done by the net force.
- Explain and apply the work-energy theorem.

Work Transfers Energy

What happens to the work done on a system? Energy is transferred into the system, but in what form? Does it remain in the system or move on? The answers depend on the situation. For example, if the lawn mower in [link](a) is pushed just hard enough to keep it going at a constant speed, then energy put into the mower by the person is removed continuously by friction, and eventually leaves the system in the form of heat transfer. In contrast, work done on the briefcase by the person carrying it up stairs in [link](d) is stored in the briefcase-Earth system and can be recovered at any time, as shown in [link](e). In fact, the building of the pyramids in ancient Egypt is an example of storing energy in a system by doing work on the system. Some of the energy imparted to the stone blocks in lifting them during construction of the pyramids remains in the stone-Earth system and has the potential to do work.

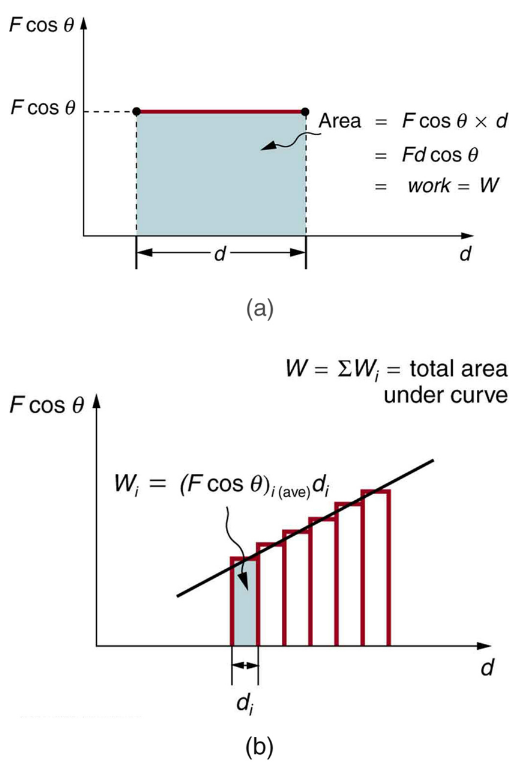
In this section we begin the study of various types of work and forms of energy. We will find that some types of work leave the energy of a system constant, for example, whereas others change the system in some way, such as making it move. We will also develop definitions of important forms of energy, such as the energy of motion.

Net Work and the Work-Energy Theorem

We know from the study of Newton's laws in Dynamics: Force and Newton's Laws of Motion that net force causes acceleration. We will see in this section that work done by the net force gives a system energy of motion, and in the process we will also find an expression for the energy of motion.

Let us start by considering the total, or net, work done on a system. Net work is defined to be the sum of work done by all external forces—that is, **net work** is the work done by the net external force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}$. In equation form, this is $W_{\text{net}} = F_{\text{net}} d \cos \theta$ where θ is the angle between the force vector and the displacement vector.

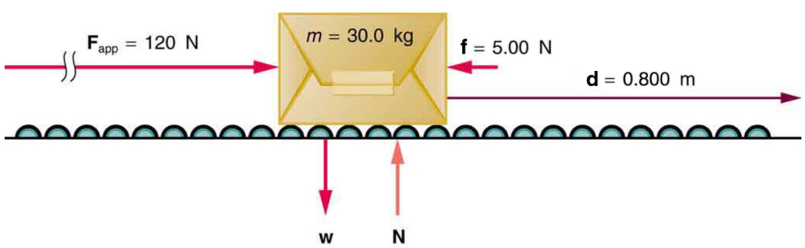
[link](a) shows a graph of force versus displacement for the component of the force in the direction of the displacement—that is, an $F \cos \theta$ vs. d graph. In this case, $F \cos \theta$ is constant. You can see that the area under the graph is $Fd \cos \theta$, or the work done. [link](b) shows a more general process where the force varies. The area under the curve is divided into strips, each having an average force $(F \cos \theta)_{i(\text{ave})}$. The work done is $(F \cos \theta)_{i(\text{ave})} d_i$ for each strip, and the total work done is the sum of the W_i. Thus the total work done is the total area under the curve, a useful property to which we shall refer later.



(a) A graph of $F \cos \theta$ vs. d, when $F \cos \theta$ is

constant. The area under the curve represents the work done by the force. (b) A graph of $F \cos \theta$ vs. d in which the force varies. The work done for each interval is the area of each strip; thus, the total area under the curve equals the total work done.

Net work will be simpler to examine if we consider a one-dimensional situation where a force is used to accelerate an object in a direction parallel to its initial velocity. Such a situation occurs for the package on the roller belt conveyor system shown in [link].



A package on a roller belt is pushed horizontally through a distance $\mathbf{d}$.

The force of gravity and the normal force acting on the package are perpendicular to the displacement and do no work. Moreover, they are also equal in magnitude and opposite in direction so they cancel in calculating the net force. The net force arises solely from the horizontal applied force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{app}}$ and the horizontal friction force $\mathbf{f}$. Thus, as expected, the net force is

parallel to the displacement, so that $\theta = 0^{\text{o}}$ and $\cos\theta = 1$, and the net work is given by

Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = F_{\text{net}}d.$$

The effect of the net force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}$ is to accelerate the package from v_0 to v. The kinetic energy of the package increases, indicating that the net work done on the system is positive. (See [link].) By using Newton's second law, and doing some algebra, we can reach an interesting conclusion. Substituting $F_{\text{net}} = \text{ma}$ from Newton's second law gives

Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = \text{mad}.$$

To get a relationship between net work and the speed given to a system by the net force acting on it, we take $d = x - x_0$ and use the equation studied in Motion Equations for Constant Acceleration in One Dimension for the change in speed over a distance d if the acceleration has the constant value a; namely, $v^2 = {v_0}^2 + 2\text{ad}$ (note that a appears in the expression for the net work). Solving for acceleration gives $a = \frac{v^2 - {v_0}^2}{2d}$. When a is substituted into the preceding expression for W_{net}, we obtain

Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = m\left(\frac{v^2 - {v_0}^2}{2d}\right)d.$$

The d cancels, and we rearrange this to obtain

Equation:

$$W_{\text{ net}} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{1}{2}mv_0^2.$$

This expression is called the **work-energy theorem**, and it actually applies *in general* (even for forces that vary in direction and magnitude), although we have derived it for the special case of a constant force parallel to the displacement. The theorem implies that the net work on a system equals the change in the quantity $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. This quantity is our first example of a form of energy.

Note:
The Work-Energy Theorem
The net work on a system equals the change in the quantity $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$.
Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{1}{2}\text{mv}_0^2$$

The quantity $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ in the work-energy theorem is defined to be the translational **kinetic energy** (KE) of a mass m moving at a speed v. (*Translational* kinetic energy is distinct from *rotational* kinetic energy, which is considered later.) In equation form, the translational kinetic energy,
Equation:

$$\text{KE} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2,$$

is the energy associated with translational motion. Kinetic energy is a form of energy associated with the motion of a particle, single body, or system of objects moving together.

We are aware that it takes energy to get an object, like a car or the package in [link], up to speed, but it may be a bit surprising that kinetic energy is proportional to speed squared. This proportionality means, for example, that a car traveling at 100 km/h has four times the kinetic energy it has at 50

km/h, helping to explain why high-speed collisions are so devastating. We will now consider a series of examples to illustrate various aspects of work and energy.

Example:
Calculating the Kinetic Energy of a Package

Suppose a 30.0-kg package on the roller belt conveyor system in [link] is moving at 0.500 m/s. What is its kinetic energy?

Strategy

Because the mass m and speed v are given, the kinetic energy can be calculated from its definition as given in the equation $\mathrm{KE} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.

Solution

The kinetic energy is given by

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2.$$

Entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE} = 0.5(30.0\ \mathrm{kg})(0.500\ \mathrm{m/s})^2,$$

which yields

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE} = 3.75\ \mathrm{kg}\cdot\mathrm{m}^2/\mathrm{s}^2 = 3.75\ \mathrm{J}.$$

Discussion

Note that the unit of kinetic energy is the joule, the same as the unit of work, as mentioned when work was first defined. It is also interesting that, although this is a fairly massive package, its kinetic energy is not large at this relatively low speed. This fact is consistent with the observation that people can move packages like this without exhausting themselves.

Example:
Determining the Work to Accelerate a Package
Suppose that you push on the 30.0-kg package in [link] with a constant force of 120 N through a distance of 0.800 m, and that the opposing friction force averages 5.00 N.
(a) Calculate the net work done on the package. (b) Solve the same problem as in part (a), this time by finding the work done by each force that contributes to the net force.
Strategy and Concept for (a)
This is a motion in one dimension problem, because the downward force (from the weight of the package) and the normal force have equal magnitude and opposite direction, so that they cancel in calculating the net force, while the applied force, friction, and the displacement are all horizontal. (See [link].) As expected, the net work is the net force times distance.
Solution for (a)
The net force is the push force minus friction, or
$F_{\text{net}} = 120\text{ N} – 5.00\text{ N} = 115\text{ N}$. Thus the net work is
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} W_{\text{net}} &= F_{\text{net}}d = (115\text{ N})(0.800\text{ m}) \\ &= 92.0\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} = 92.0\text{ J}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)
This value is the net work done on the package. The person actually does more work than this, because friction opposes the motion. Friction does negative work and removes some of the energy the person expends and converts it to thermal energy. The net work equals the sum of the work done by each individual force.
Strategy and Concept for (b)
The forces acting on the package are gravity, the normal force, the force of friction, and the applied force. The normal force and force of gravity are each perpendicular to the displacement, and therefore do no work.
Solution for (b)
The applied force does work.
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} W_{\text{app}} &= F_{\text{app}} d \cos(0^{\text{o}}) = F_{\text{app}} d \\ &= (120 \text{ N})(0.800 \text{ m}) \\ &= 96.0 \text{ J} \end{aligned}$$

The friction force and displacement are in opposite directions, so that $\theta = 180^{\text{o}}$, and the work done by friction is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} W_{\text{fr}} &= F_{\text{fr}} d \cos(180^{\text{o}}) = -F_{\text{fr}} d \\ &= -(5.00 \text{ N})(0.800 \text{ m}) \\ &= -4.00 \text{ J}. \end{aligned}$$

So the amounts of work done by gravity, by the normal force, by the applied force, and by friction are, respectively,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} W_{\text{gr}} &= 0, \\ W_{\text{N}} &= 0, \\ W_{\text{app}} &= 96.0 \text{ J}, \\ W_{\text{fr}} &= -4.00 \text{ J}. \end{aligned}$$

The total work done as the sum of the work done by each force is then seen to be

Equation:

$$W_{\text{total}} = W_{\text{gr}} + W_{\text{N}} + W_{\text{app}} + W_{\text{fr}} = 92.0 \text{ J}.$$

Discussion for (b)

The calculated total work W_{total} as the sum of the work by each force agrees, as expected, with the work W_{net} done by the net force. The work done by a collection of forces acting on an object can be calculated by either approach.

Example:

Determining Speed from Work and Energy

Find the speed of the package in [link] at the end of the push, using work and energy concepts.

Strategy

Here the work-energy theorem can be used, because we have just calculated the net work, W_{net}, and the initial kinetic energy, $\frac{1}{2}m{v_0}^2$. These calculations allow us to find the final kinetic energy, $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$, and thus the final speed v.

Solution

The work-energy theorem in equation form is

Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{1}{2}m{v_0}^2.$$

Solving for $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ gives

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\text{mv}^2 = W_{\text{net}} + \frac{1}{2}m{v_0}^2.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = 92.0\text{ J} + 3.75\text{ J} = 95.75\text{ J}.$$

Solving for the final speed as requested and entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \sqrt{\frac{2(95.75\text{ J})}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{191.5\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2}{30.0\text{ kg}}} \\ &= 2.53\text{ m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

Using work and energy, we not only arrive at an answer, we see that the final kinetic energy is the sum of the initial kinetic energy and the net work

done on the package. This means that the work indeed adds to the energy of the package.

Example:

Work and Energy Can Reveal Distance, Too

How far does the package in [link] coast after the push, assuming friction remains constant? Use work and energy considerations.

Strategy

We know that once the person stops pushing, friction will bring the package to rest. In terms of energy, friction does negative work until it has removed all of the package's kinetic energy. The work done by friction is the force of friction times the distance traveled times the cosine of the angle between the friction force and displacement; hence, this gives us a way of finding the distance traveled after the person stops pushing.

Solution

The normal force and force of gravity cancel in calculating the net force. The horizontal friction force is then the net force, and it acts opposite to the displacement, so $\theta = 180^{\circ}$. To reduce the kinetic energy of the package to zero, the work W_{fr} by friction must be minus the kinetic energy that the package started with plus what the package accumulated due to the pushing. Thus $W_{\text{fr}} = -95.75\text{ J}$. Furthermore, $W_{\text{fr}} = fd\prime \cos\theta = -fd\prime$, where $d\prime$ is the distance it takes to stop. Thus,

Equation:

$$d\prime = -\frac{W_{\text{fr}}}{f} = -\frac{-95.75\text{ J}}{5.00\text{ N}},$$

and so

Equation:

$$d\prime = 19.2\text{ m}.$$

Discussion

This is a reasonable distance for a package to coast on a relatively friction-free conveyor system. Note that the work done by friction is negative (the

force is in the opposite direction of motion), so it removes the kinetic energy.

Some of the examples in this section can be solved without considering energy, but at the expense of missing out on gaining insights about what work and energy are doing in this situation. On the whole, solutions involving energy are generally shorter and easier than those using kinematics and dynamics alone.

Section Summary

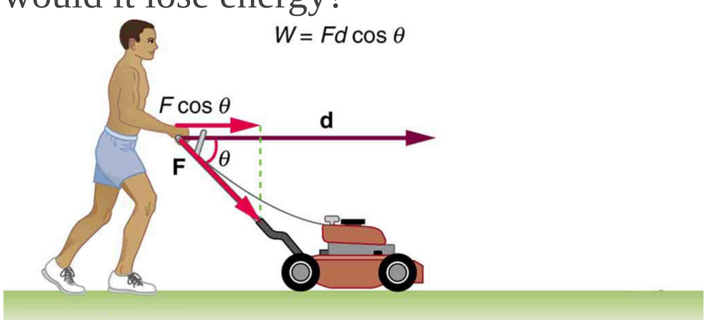
- The net work W_{net} is the work done by the net force acting on an object.
- Work done on an object transfers energy to the object.
- The translational kinetic energy of an object of mass m moving at speed v is $\text{KE} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.
- The work-energy theorem states that the net work W_{net} on a system changes its kinetic energy, $W_{\text{net}} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{1}{2}m{v_0}^2$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

The person in [link] does work on the lawn mower. Under what conditions would the mower gain energy? Under what conditions would it lose energy?



Exercise:

Problem:

Work done on a system puts energy into it. Work done by a system removes energy from it. Give an example for each statement.

Exercise:

Problem:

When solving for speed in [link], we kept only the positive root. Why?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Compare the kinetic energy of a 20,000-kg truck moving at 110 km/h with that of an 80.0-kg astronaut in orbit moving at 27,500 km/h.

Solution:

$1/250$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How fast must a 3000-kg elephant move to have the same kinetic energy as a 65.0-kg sprinter running at 10.0 m/s? (b) Discuss how the larger energies needed for the movement of larger animals would relate to metabolic rates.

Exercise:

Problem:

Confirm the value given for the kinetic energy of an aircraft carrier in [link]. You will need to look up the definition of a nautical mile (1 knot = 1 nautical mile/h).

Solution:

1.1×10^{10} J

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the force needed to bring a 950-kg car to rest from a speed of 90.0 km/h in a distance of 120 m (a fairly typical distance for a non-panic stop). (b) Suppose instead the car hits a concrete abutment at full speed and is brought to a stop in 2.00 m. Calculate the force exerted on the car and compare it with the force found in part (a).

Exercise:

Problem:

A car’s bumper is designed to withstand a 4.0-km/h (1.1-m/s) collision with an immovable object without damage to the body of the car. The bumper cushions the shock by absorbing the force over a distance. Calculate the magnitude of the average force on a bumper that collapses 0.200 m while bringing a 900-kg car to rest from an initial speed of 1.1 m/s.

Solution:

2.8×10^{3} N

Exercise:

Problem:

Boxing gloves are padded to lessen the force of a blow. (a) Calculate the force exerted by a boxing glove on an opponent’s face, if the glove and face compress 7.50 cm during a blow in which the 7.00-kg arm and glove are brought to rest from an initial speed of 10.0 m/s. (b) Calculate the force exerted by an identical blow in the gory old days when no gloves were used and the knuckles and face would compress only 2.00 cm. (c) Discuss the magnitude of the force with glove on. Does it seem high enough to cause damage even though it is lower than the force with no glove?

Exercise:

Problem:

Using energy considerations, calculate the average force a 60.0-kg sprinter exerts backward on the track to accelerate from 2.00 to 8.00 m/s in a distance of 25.0 m, if he encounters a headwind that exerts an average force of 30.0 N against him.

Solution:

102 N

Glossary

net work
: work done by the net force, or vector sum of all the forces, acting on an object

work-energy theorem
: the result, based on Newton’s laws, that the net work done on an object is equal to its change in kinetic energy

kinetic energy

the energy an object has by reason of its motion, equal to $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ for the translational (i.e., non-rotational) motion of an object of mass m moving at speed v

Gravitational Potential Energy

- Explain gravitational potential energy in terms of work done against gravity.
- Show that the gravitational potential energy of an object of mass m at height h on Earth is given by $\mathrm{PE_g} = \mathrm{mgh}$.
- Show how knowledge of the potential energy as a function of position can be used to simplify calculations and explain physical phenomena.

Work Done Against Gravity

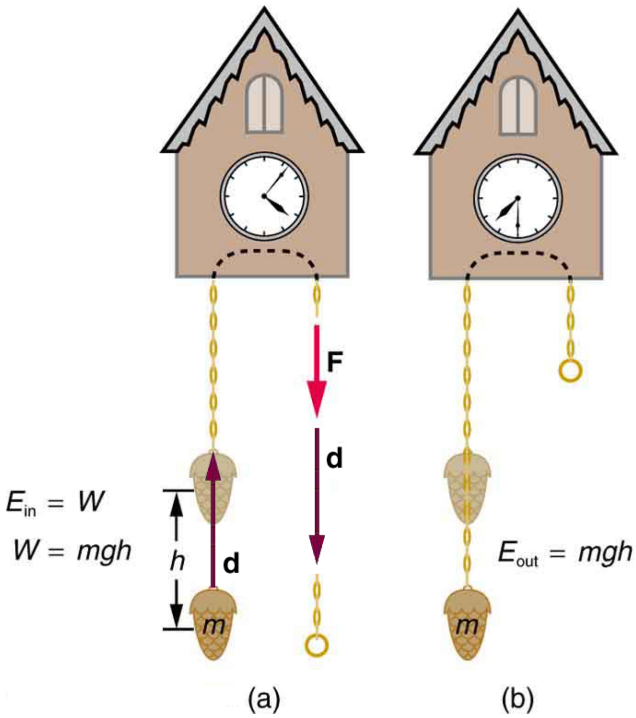
Climbing stairs and lifting objects is work in both the scientific and everyday sense—it is work done against the gravitational force. When there is work, there is a transformation of energy. The work done against the gravitational force goes into an important form of stored energy that we will explore in this section.

Let us calculate the work done in lifting an object of mass m through a height h, such as in [link]. If the object is lifted straight up at constant speed, then the force needed to lift it is equal to its weight mg. The work done on the mass is then $\mathrm{W} = \mathrm{Fd} = \mathrm{mgh}$. We define this to be the **gravitational potential energy** $(\mathrm{PE_g})$ put into (or gained by) the object-Earth system. This energy is associated with the state of separation between two objects that attract each other by the gravitational force. For convenience, we refer to this as the $\mathrm{PE_g}$ gained by the object, recognizing that this is energy stored in the gravitational field of Earth. Why do we use the word "system"? Potential energy is a property of a system rather than of a single object—due to its physical position. An object's gravitational potential is due to its position relative to the surroundings within the Earth-object system. The force applied to the object is an external force, from outside the system. When it does positive work it increases the gravitational potential energy of the system. Because gravitational potential energy depends on relative position, we need a reference level at which to set the potential energy equal to 0. We usually choose this point to be Earth's surface, but this point is arbitrary; what is important is the *difference* in gravitational potential energy, because this difference is what relates to the work done. The difference in gravitational potential energy of an object (in the Earth-object system) between two rungs of a ladder will be the same for the first two rungs as for the last two rungs.

Converting Between Potential Energy and Kinetic Energy

Gravitational potential energy may be converted to other forms of energy, such as kinetic energy. If we release the mass, gravitational force will do an amount of work

equal to mgh on it, thereby increasing its kinetic energy by that same amount (by the work-energy theorem). We will find it more useful to consider just the conversion of $\mathrm{PE_g}$ to KE without explicitly considering the intermediate step of work. (See [link].) This shortcut makes it is easier to solve problems using energy (if possible) rather than explicitly using forces.



(a) The work done to lift the weight is stored in the mass-Earth system as gravitational potential energy. (b) As the weight moves downward, this gravitational potential energy is transferred to the cuckoo clock.

More precisely, we define the *change* in gravitational potential energy $\Delta\mathrm{PE_g}$ to be

Equation:

$$\Delta\mathrm{PE_g} = \mathrm{mgh},$$

where, for simplicity, we denote the change in height by h rather than the usual Δh. Note that h is positive when the final height is greater than the initial height, and vice versa. For example, if a 0.500-kg mass hung from a cuckoo clock is raised 1.00 m, then its change in gravitational potential energy is

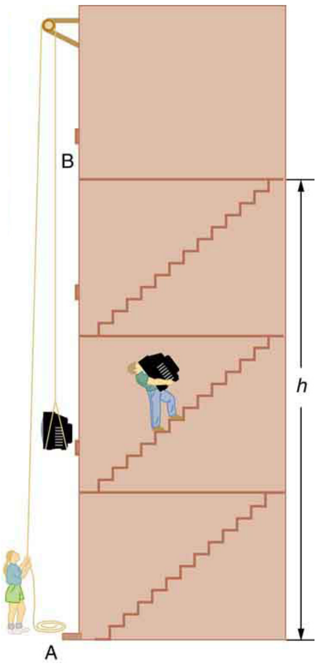
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} mgh &= (0.500\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)(1.00\text{ m}) \\ &= 4.90\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 = 4.90\text{ J}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that the units of gravitational potential energy turn out to be joules, the same as for work and other forms of energy. As the clock runs, the mass is lowered. We can think of the mass as gradually giving up its 4.90 J of gravitational potential energy, *without directly considering the force of gravity that does the work*.

Using Potential Energy to Simplify Calculations

The equation $\Delta\text{PE}_\text{g} = \text{mgh}$ applies for any path that has a change in height of h, not just when the mass is lifted straight up. (See [link].) It is much easier to calculate mgh (a simple multiplication) than it is to calculate the work done along a complicated path. The idea of gravitational potential energy has the double advantage that it is very broadly applicable and it makes calculations easier. From now on, we will consider that any change in vertical position h of a mass m is accompanied by a change in gravitational potential energy mgh, and we will avoid the equivalent but more difficult task of calculating work done by or against the gravitational force.



The change in gravitational potential energy (ΔPE_g) between points A and B is independent of the path. $\Delta PE_g = mgh$ for any path between the two points. Gravity is one of a small class of forces where the work done by or against the force depends only on the starting and ending points, not on the path between them.

Example:
The Force to Stop Falling
A 60.0-kg person jumps onto the floor from a height of 3.00 m. If he lands stiffly (with his knee joints compressing by 0.500 cm), calculate the force on the knee joints.
Strategy
This person's energy is brought to zero in this situation by the work done on him by the floor as he stops. The initial $\mathrm{PE_g}$ is transformed into KE as he falls. The work done by the floor reduces this kinetic energy to zero.
Solution
The work done on the person by the floor as he stops is given by
Equation:

$$W=\mathrm{Fd}\cos\theta=-\mathrm{Fd},$$

with a minus sign because the displacement while stopping and the force from floor are in opposite directions $(\cos\theta=\cos 180^{\mathrm{o}}=-1)$. The floor removes energy from the system, so it does negative work.
The kinetic energy the person has upon reaching the floor is the amount of potential energy lost by falling through height h:
Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE}=-\Delta\mathrm{PE_g}=-\mathrm{mgh},$$

The distance d that the person's knees bend is much smaller than the height h of the fall, so the additional change in gravitational potential energy during the knee bend is ignored.
The work W done by the floor on the person stops the person and brings the person's kinetic energy to zero:
Equation:

$$W=-\mathrm{KE}=\mathrm{mgh}.$$

Combining this equation with the expression for W gives
Equation:

$$-\mathrm{Fd}=\mathrm{mgh}.$$

Recalling that h is negative because the person fell *down*, the force on the knee joints is given by
Equation:

$$F = -\frac{\text{mgh}}{d} = -\frac{(60.0\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)(-3.00\text{ m})}{5.00 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}} = 3.53 \times 10^5\text{ N}.$$

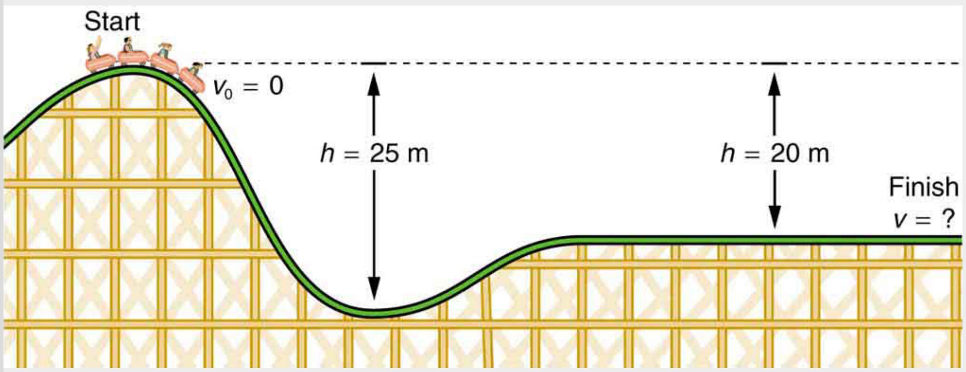
Discussion

Such a large force (500 times more than the person’s weight) over the short impact time is enough to break bones. A much better way to cushion the shock is by bending the legs or rolling on the ground, increasing the time over which the force acts. A bending motion of 0.5 m this way yields a force 100 times smaller than in the example. A kangaroo's hopping shows this method in action. The kangaroo is the only large animal to use hopping for locomotion, but the shock in hopping is cushioned by the bending of its hind legs in each jump.(See [link].)

The work done by the ground upon the kangaroo reduces its kinetic energy to zero as it lands. However, by applying the force of the ground on the hind legs over a longer distance, the impact on the bones is reduced. (credit: Chris Samuel, Flickr)

Example:
Finding the Speed of a Roller Coaster from its Height

(a) What is the final speed of the roller coaster shown in [link] if it starts from rest at the top of the 20.0 m hill and work done by frictional forces is negligible? (b) What is its final speed (again assuming negligible friction) if its initial speed is 5.00 m/s?



The speed of a roller coaster increases as gravity pulls it downhill and is greatest at its lowest point. Viewed in terms of energy, the roller-coaster-Earth system's gravitational potential energy is converted to kinetic energy. If work done by friction is negligible, all $\Delta\mathrm{PE}_\mathrm{g}$ is converted to KE.

Strategy

The roller coaster loses potential energy as it goes downhill. We neglect friction, so that the remaining force exerted by the track is the normal force, which is perpendicular to the direction of motion and does no work. The net work on the roller coaster is then done by gravity alone. The *loss* of gravitational potential energy from moving *downward* through a distance h equals the *gain* in kinetic energy. This can be written in equation form as $-\Delta\mathrm{PE}_\mathrm{g} = \Delta\mathrm{KE}$. Using the equations for PE_g and KE, we can solve for the final speed v, which is the desired quantity.

Solution for (a)

Here the initial kinetic energy is zero, so that $\Delta\mathrm{KE} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$. The equation for change in potential energy states that $\Delta\mathrm{PE}_\mathrm{g} = mgh$. Since h is negative in this case, we will rewrite this as $\Delta\mathrm{PE}_\mathrm{g} = -mg \mid h \mid$ to show the minus sign clearly. Thus,

Equation:

$$-\Delta\mathrm{PE_g} = \Delta\mathrm{KE}$$

becomes

Equation:

$$\mathrm{mg} \mid h \mid = \frac{1}{2}mv^2.$$

Solving for v, we find that mass cancels and that

Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{2g \mid h \mid}.$$

Substituting known values,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \sqrt{2\left(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}\right)(20.0\ \mathrm{m})} \\ &= 19.8\ \mathrm{m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (b)

Again $-\Delta\mathrm{PE_g} = \Delta\mathrm{KE}$. In this case there is initial kinetic energy, so $\Delta\mathrm{KE} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{1}{2}m{v_0}^2$. Thus,

Equation:

$$\mathrm{mg} \mid h \mid = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{1}{2}m{v_0}^2.$$

Rearranging gives

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \mathrm{mg} \mid h \mid + \frac{1}{2}m{v_0}^2.$$

This means that the final kinetic energy is the sum of the initial kinetic energy and the gravitational potential energy. Mass again cancels, and

Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{2g \mid h \mid + {v_0}^2}.$$

This equation is very similar to the kinematics equation $v = \sqrt{{v_0}^2 + 2ad}$, but it is more general—the kinematics equation is valid only for constant acceleration, whereas our equation above is valid for any path regardless of whether the object moves with a constant acceleration. Now, substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \sqrt{2(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(20.0\ \text{m}) + (5.00\ \text{m/s})^2} \\ &= 20.4\ \text{m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion and Implications

First, note that mass cancels. This is quite consistent with observations made in Falling Objects that all objects fall at the same rate if friction is negligible. Second, only the speed of the roller coaster is considered; there is no information about its direction at any point. This reveals another general truth. When friction is negligible, the speed of a falling body depends only on its initial speed and height, and not on its mass or the path taken. For example, the roller coaster will have the same final speed whether it falls 20.0 m straight down or takes a more complicated path like the one in the figure. Third, and perhaps unexpectedly, the final speed in part (b) is greater than in part (a), but by far less than 5.00 m/s. Finally, note that speed can be found at *any* height along the way by simply using the appropriate value of h at the point of interest.

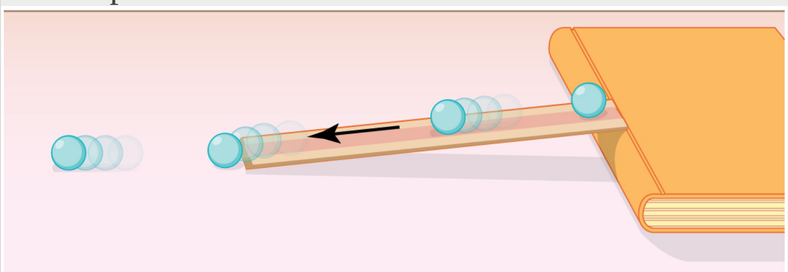
We have seen that work done by or against the gravitational force depends only on the starting and ending points, and not on the path between, allowing us to define the simplifying concept of gravitational potential energy. We can do the same thing for a few other forces, and we will see that this leads to a formal definition of the law of conservation of energy.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Converting Potential to Kinetic Energy

One can study the conversion of gravitational potential energy into kinetic energy in this experiment. On a smooth, level surface, use a ruler of the kind that has a groove running along its length and a book to make an incline (see [link]). Place a marble at the 10-cm position on the ruler and let it roll down the ruler. When it hits the level surface, measure the time it takes to roll one meter. Now place the marble

at the 20-cm and the 30-cm positions and again measure the times it takes to roll 1 m on the level surface. Find the velocity of the marble on the level surface for all three positions. Plot velocity squared versus the distance traveled by the marble. What is the shape of each plot? If the shape is a straight line, the plot shows that the marble's kinetic energy at the bottom is proportional to its potential energy at the release point.



A marble rolls down a ruler, and its speed on the level surface is measured.

Section Summary

- Work done against gravity in lifting an object becomes potential energy of the object-Earth system.
- The change in gravitational potential energy, $\Delta\mathrm{PE_g}$, is $\Delta\mathrm{PE_g} = \mathrm{mgh}$, with h being the increase in height and g the acceleration due to gravity.
- The gravitational potential energy of an object near Earth's surface is due to its position in the mass-Earth system. Only differences in gravitational potential energy, $\Delta\mathrm{PE_g}$, have physical significance.
- As an object descends without friction, its gravitational potential energy changes into kinetic energy corresponding to increasing speed, so that $\Delta\mathrm{KE} = -\Delta\mathrm{PE_g}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

In [link], we calculated the final speed of a roller coaster that descended 20 m in height and had an initial speed of 5 m/s downhill. Suppose the roller coaster had had an initial speed of 5 m/s *uphill* instead, and it coasted uphill, stopped, and then rolled back down to a final point 20 m below the start. We would find in that case that its final speed is the same as its initial speed. Explain in terms of conservation of energy.

Exercise:

Problem:

Does the work you do on a book when you lift it onto a shelf depend on the path taken? On the time taken? On the height of the shelf? On the mass of the book?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A hydroelectric power facility (see [link]) converts the gravitational potential energy of water behind a dam to electric energy. (a) What is the gravitational potential energy relative to the generators of a lake of volume $50.0\ \text{km}^3$ ($\text{mass} = 5.00 \times 10^{13}\ \text{kg}$), given that the lake has an average height of 40.0 m above the generators? (b) Compare this with the energy stored in a 9-megaton fusion bomb.

Hydroelectric facility (credit: Denis

Belevich, Wikimedia Commons)

Solution:

(a) 1.96×10^{16} J

(b) The ratio of gravitational potential energy in the lake to the energy stored in the bomb is 0.52. That is, the energy stored in the lake is approximately half that in a 9-megaton fusion bomb.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How much gravitational potential energy (relative to the ground on which it is built) is stored in the Great Pyramid of Cheops, given that its mass is about 7×10^9 kg and its center of mass is 36.5 m above the surrounding ground? (b) How does this energy compare with the daily food intake of a person?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a 350-g kookaburra (a large kingfisher bird) picks up a 75-g snake and raises it 2.5 m from the ground to a branch. (a) How much work did the bird do on the snake? (b) How much work did it do to raise its own center of mass to the branch?

Solution:

(a) 1.8 J

(b) 8.6 J

Exercise:

Problem:

In [link], we found that the speed of a roller coaster that had descended 20.0 m was only slightly greater when it had an initial speed of 5.00 m/s than when it started from rest. This implies that $\Delta\text{PE} >> \text{KE}_\text{i}$. Confirm this statement by taking the ratio of ΔPE to KE_i. (Note that mass cancels.)

Exercise:

Problem:

A 100-g toy car is propelled by a compressed spring that starts it moving. The car follows the curved track in [link]. Show that the final speed of the toy car is 0.687 m/s if its initial speed is 2.00 m/s and it coasts up the frictionless slope, gaining 0.180 m in altitude.

A toy car moves up a sloped track. (credit: Leszek Leszczynski, Flickr)

Solution:

Equation:

$$v_f = \sqrt{2\mathrm{gh} + {v_0}^2} = \sqrt{2(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2})(-0.180\ \mathrm{m}) + (2.00\ \mathrm{m/s})^2} = 0.687\ \mathrm{m/s}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

In a downhill ski race, surprisingly, little advantage is gained by getting a running start. (This is because the initial kinetic energy is small compared with the gain in gravitational potential energy on even small hills.) To demonstrate this, find the final speed and the time taken for a skier who skies 70.0 m along a 30º slope neglecting friction: (a) Starting from rest. (b) Starting with an initial speed of 2.50 m/s. (c) Does the answer surprise you? Discuss why it is still advantageous to get a running start in very competitive events.

Glossary

gravitational potential energy

the energy an object has due to its position in a gravitational field

Conservative Forces and Potential Energy

- Define conservative force, potential energy, and mechanical energy.
- Explain the potential energy of a spring in terms of its compression when Hooke’s law applies.
- Use the work-energy theorem to show how having only conservative forces implies conservation of mechanical energy.

Potential Energy and Conservative Forces

Work is done by a force, and some forces, such as weight, have special characteristics. A **conservative force** is one, like the gravitational force, for which work done by or against it depends only on the starting and ending points of a motion and not on the path taken. We can define a **potential energy** (PE) for any conservative force, just as we did for the gravitational force. For example, when you wind up a toy, an egg timer, or an old-fashioned watch, you do work against its spring and store energy in it. (We treat these springs as ideal, in that we assume there is no friction and no production of thermal energy.) This stored energy is recoverable as work, and it is useful to think of it as potential energy contained in the spring. Indeed, the reason that the spring has this characteristic is that its force is *conservative*. That is, a conservative force results in stored or potential energy. Gravitational potential energy is one example, as is the energy stored in a spring. We will also see how conservative forces are related to the conservation of energy.

Note:
Potential Energy and Conservative Forces
Potential energy is the energy a system has due to position, shape, or configuration. It is stored energy that is completely recoverable.
A conservative force is one for which work done by or against it depends only on the starting and ending points of a motion and not on the path taken.
We can define a potential energy (PE) for any conservative force. The work done against a conservative force to reach a final configuration

depends on the configuration, not the path followed, and is the potential energy added.

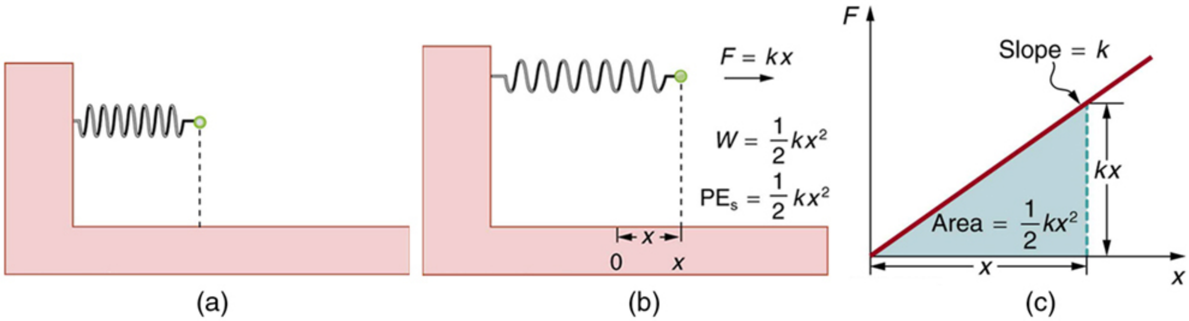
Potential Energy of a Spring

First, let us obtain an expression for the potential energy stored in a spring ($\mathrm{PE_s}$). We calculate the work done to stretch or compress a spring that obeys Hooke's law. (Hooke's law was examined in Elasticity: Stress and Strain, and states that the magnitude of force F on the spring and the resulting deformation ΔL are proportional, $F = k\Delta L$.) (See [link].) For our spring, we will replace ΔL (the amount of deformation produced by a force F) by the distance x that the spring is stretched or compressed along its length. So the force needed to stretch the spring has magnitude $\mathrm{F} = \mathrm{kx}$, where k is the spring's force constant. The force increases linearly from 0 at the start to kx in the fully stretched position. The average force is $kx/2$. Thus the work done in stretching or compressing the spring is $W_{\mathrm{s}} = \mathrm{Fd} = \left(\frac{kx}{2}\right)x = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$. Alternatively, we noted in Kinetic Energy and the Work-Energy Theorem that the area under a graph of F vs. x is the work done by the force. In [link](c) we see that this area is also $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$. We therefore define the **potential energy of a spring**, $\mathrm{PE_s}$, to be

Equation:

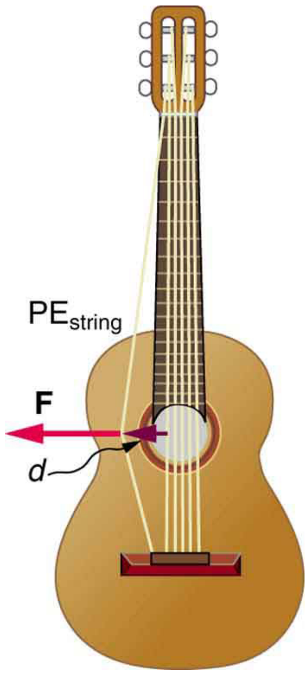
$$\mathrm{PE_s} = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2,$$

where k is the spring's force constant and x is the displacement from its undeformed position. The potential energy represents the work done *on* the spring and the energy stored in it as a result of stretching or compressing it a distance x. The potential energy of the spring $\mathrm{PE_s}$ does not depend on the path taken; it depends only on the stretch or squeeze x in the final configuration.



(a) An undeformed spring has no $\mathrm{PE_s}$ stored in it. (b) The force needed to stretch (or compress) the spring a distance x has a magnitude $F = kx$, and the work done to stretch (or compress) it is $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$. Because the force is conservative, this work is stored as potential energy $(\mathrm{PE_s})$ in the spring, and it can be fully recovered. (c) A graph of F vs. x has a slope of k, and the area under the graph is $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$. Thus the work done or potential energy stored is $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$.

The equation $\mathrm{PE_s} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$ has general validity beyond the special case for which it was derived. Potential energy can be stored in any elastic medium by deforming it. Indeed, the general definition of **potential energy** is energy due to position, shape, or configuration. For shape or position deformations, stored energy is $\mathrm{PE_s} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, where k is the force constant of the particular system and x is its deformation. Another example is seen in [link] for a guitar string.



Work is done to deform the guitar string, giving it potential energy. When released, the potential energy is converted to kinetic energy and back to potential as the string oscillates back and forth. A very small fraction is dissipated as

sound
energy,
slowly
removing
energy from
the string.

Conservation of Mechanical Energy

Let us now consider what form the work-energy theorem takes when only conservative forces are involved. This will lead us to the conservation of energy principle. The work-energy theorem states that the net work done by all forces acting on a system equals its change in kinetic energy. In equation form, this is

Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{1}{2}m{v_0}^2 = \Delta\text{KE}.$$

If only conservative forces act, then

Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = W_{\text{c}},$$

where W_{c} is the total work done by all conservative forces. Thus,

Equation:

$$W_{\text{c}} = \Delta\text{KE}.$$

Now, if the conservative force, such as the gravitational force or a spring force, does work, the system loses potential energy. That is, $W_{\text{c}} = -\Delta\text{PE}$. Therefore,

Equation:

$$-\Delta\mathrm{PE} = \Delta\mathrm{KE}$$

or

Equation:

$$\Delta\mathrm{KE} + \Delta\mathrm{PE} = 0.$$

This equation means that the total kinetic and potential energy is constant for any process involving only conservative forces. That is,

Equation:

$$\left.\begin{array}{c}\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE} = \text{constant} \\ \text{or} \\ \mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}\end{array}\right\} \text{(conservative forces only)},$$

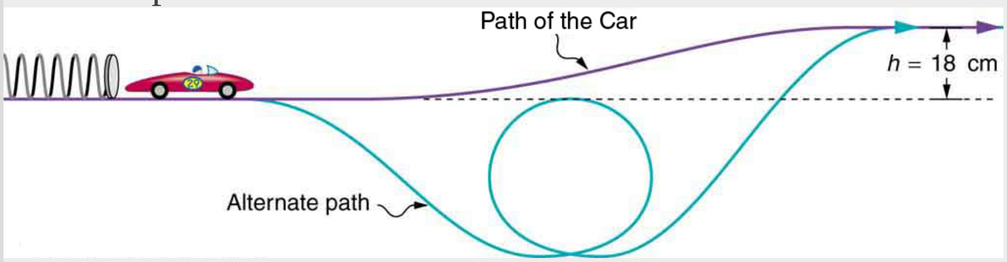
where i and f denote initial and final values. This equation is a form of the work-energy theorem for conservative forces; it is known as the **conservation of mechanical energy** principle. Remember that this applies to the extent that all the forces are conservative, so that friction is negligible. The total kinetic plus potential energy of a system is defined to be its **mechanical energy**, $(\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE})$. In a system that experiences only conservative forces, there is a potential energy associated with each force, and the energy only changes form between KE and the various types of PE, with the total energy remaining constant.

Example:

Using Conservation of Mechanical Energy to Calculate the Speed of a Toy Car

A 0.100-kg toy car is propelled by a compressed spring, as shown in [link]. The car follows a track that rises 0.180 m above the starting point. The spring is compressed 4.00 cm and has a force constant of 250.0 N/m. Assuming work done by friction to be negligible, find (a) how fast the car

is going before it starts up the slope and (b) how fast it is going at the top of the slope.



A toy car is pushed by a compressed spring and coasts up a slope. Assuming negligible friction, the potential energy in the spring is first completely converted to kinetic energy, and then to a combination of kinetic and gravitational potential energy as the car rises. The details of the path are unimportant because all forces are conservative—the car would have the same final speed if it took the alternate path shown.

Strategy

The spring force and the gravitational force are conservative forces, so conservation of mechanical energy can be used. Thus,

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}$$

or

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}m{v_\mathrm{i}}^2 + mgh_\mathrm{i} + \frac{1}{2}k{x_\mathrm{i}}^2 = \frac{1}{2}m{v_\mathrm{f}}^2 + mgh_\mathrm{f} + \frac{1}{2}k{x_\mathrm{f}}^2,$$

where h is the height (vertical position) and x is the compression of the spring. This general statement looks complex but becomes much simpler when we start considering specific situations. First, we must identify the initial and final conditions in a problem; then, we enter them into the last equation to solve for an unknown.

Solution for (a)

This part of the problem is limited to conditions just before the car is released and just after it leaves the spring. Take the initial height to be zero, so that both h_i and h_f are zero. Furthermore, the initial speed v_i is zero and the final compression of the spring x_f is zero, and so several terms in the conservation of mechanical energy equation are zero and it simplifies to

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}k{x_\mathrm{i}}^2 = \frac{1}{2}m{v_\mathrm{f}}^2.$$

In other words, the initial potential energy in the spring is converted completely to kinetic energy in the absence of friction. Solving for the final speed and entering known values yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v_\mathrm{f} &= \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}x_\mathrm{i} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{250.0\ \mathrm{N/m}}{0.100\ \mathrm{kg}}}(0.0400\ \mathrm{m}) \\ &= 2.00\ \mathrm{m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (b)

One method of finding the speed at the top of the slope is to consider conditions just before the car is released and just after it reaches the top of the slope, completely ignoring everything in between. Doing the same type of analysis to find which terms are zero, the conservation of mechanical energy becomes

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{k}{\mathrm{x}_\mathrm{i}}^2 = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{m}{\mathrm{v}_\mathrm{f}}^2 + \mathrm{mgh}_\mathrm{f}.$$

This form of the equation means that the spring’s initial potential energy is converted partly to gravitational potential energy and partly to kinetic energy. The final speed at the top of the slope will be less than at the bottom. Solving for v_f and substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{\mathrm{f}} &= \sqrt{\frac{kx_{\mathrm{i}}{}^{2}}{m} - 2gh_{\mathrm{f}}} \\
&= \sqrt{\left(\frac{250.0\ \mathrm{N/m}}{0.100\ \mathrm{kg}}\right)(0.0400\ \mathrm{m})^{2} - 2(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^{2}})(0.180\ \mathrm{m})} \\
&= 0.687\ \mathrm{m/s}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Discussion

Another way to solve this problem is to realize that the car's kinetic energy before it goes up the slope is converted partly to potential energy—that is, to take the final conditions in part (a) to be the initial conditions in part (b).

Note that, for conservative forces, we do not directly calculate the work they do; rather, we consider their effects through their corresponding potential energies, just as we did in [link]. Note also that we do not consider details of the path taken—only the starting and ending points are important (as long as the path is not impossible). This assumption is usually a tremendous simplification, because the path may be complicated and forces may vary along the way.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Energy Skate Park

Learn about conservation of energy with a skater dude! Build tracks, ramps and jumps for the skater and view the kinetic energy, potential energy and friction as he moves. You can also take the skater to different planets or even space!

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/energy-skate-park-basics/latest/energy-skate-park-basics_en.html

Section Summary

- A conservative force is one for which work depends only on the starting and ending points of a motion, not on the path taken.
- We can define potential energy (PE) for any conservative force, just as we defined $\mathrm{PE_g}$ for the gravitational force.
- The potential energy of a spring is $\mathrm{PE_s} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, where k is the spring's force constant and x is the displacement from its undeformed position.
- Mechanical energy is defined to be $\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE}$ for a conservative force.
- When only conservative forces act on and within a system, the total mechanical energy is constant. In equation form,

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE} = \text{constant}$$

or

$$\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}$$

where i and f denote initial and final values. This is known as the conservation of mechanical energy.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: What is a conservative force?

Exercise:

Problem:

The force exerted by a diving board is conservative, provided the internal friction is negligible. Assuming friction is negligible, describe changes in the potential energy of a diving board as a swimmer dives from it, starting just before the swimmer steps on the board until just after his feet leave it.

Exercise:

Problem:

Define mechanical energy. What is the relationship of mechanical energy to nonconservative forces? What happens to mechanical energy if only conservative forces act?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the relationship of potential energy to conservative force?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A 5.00×10^5-kg subway train is brought to a stop from a speed of 0.500 m/s in 0.400 m by a large spring bumper at the end of its track. What is the force constant k of the spring?

Solution:
Equation:

$$7.81{\times}10^5 \text{ N/m}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A pogo stick has a spring with a force constant of $2.50{\times}10^4 \text{ N/m}$, which can be compressed 12.0 cm. To what maximum height can a child jump on the stick using only the energy in the spring, if the child and stick have a total mass of 40.0 kg? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Energy.

Glossary

conservative force
: a force that does the same work for any given initial and final configuration, regardless of the path followed

potential energy
: energy due to position, shape, or configuration

potential energy of a spring
: the stored energy of a spring as a function of its displacement; when Hooke’s law applies, it is given by the expression $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$ where x is the distance the spring is compressed or extended and k is the spring constant

conservation of mechanical energy
: the rule that the sum of the kinetic energies and potential energies remains constant if only conservative forces act on and within a system

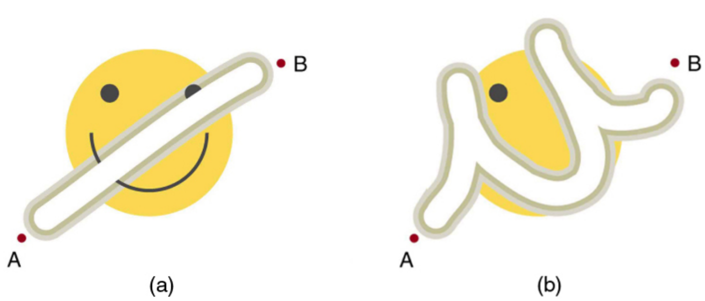
mechanical energy
: the sum of kinetic energy and potential energy

Nonconservative Forces

- Define nonconservative forces and explain how they affect mechanical energy.
- Show how the principle of conservation of energy can be applied by treating the conservative forces in terms of their potential energies and any nonconservative forces in terms of the work they do.

Nonconservative Forces and Friction

Forces are either conservative or nonconservative. Conservative forces were discussed in Conservative Forces and Potential Energy. A **nonconservative force** is one for which work depends on the path taken. Friction is a good example of a nonconservative force. As illustrated in [link], work done against friction depends on the length of the path between the starting and ending points. Because of this dependence on path, there is no potential energy associated with nonconservative forces. An important characteristic is that the work done by a nonconservative force *adds or removes mechanical energy from a system*. **Friction**, for example, creates **thermal energy** that dissipates, removing energy from the system. Furthermore, even if the thermal energy is retained or captured, it cannot be fully converted back to work, so it is lost or not recoverable in that sense as well.

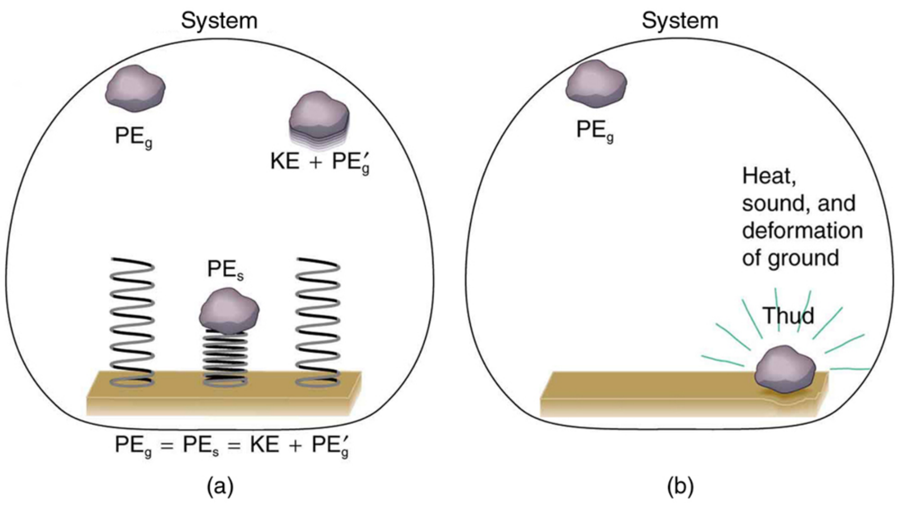


The amount of the happy face erased depends on the path taken by the eraser between points A and B, as does the work done against friction. Less work is done and less of the face

is erased for the path in (a) than for the path in (b). The force here is friction, and most of the work goes into thermal energy that subsequently leaves the system (the happy face plus the eraser). The energy expended cannot be fully recovered.

How Nonconservative Forces Affect Mechanical Energy

Mechanical energy *may* not be conserved when nonconservative forces act. For example, when a car is brought to a stop by friction on level ground, it loses kinetic energy, which is dissipated as thermal energy, reducing its mechanical energy. [link] compares the effects of conservative and nonconservative forces. We often choose to understand simpler systems such as that described in [link](a) first before studying more complicated systems as in [link](b).



Comparison of the effects of conservative and nonconservative forces on the mechanical energy of a system. (a) A system with only conservative

forces. When a rock is dropped onto a spring, its mechanical energy remains constant (neglecting air resistance) because the force in the spring is conservative. The spring can propel the rock back to its original height, where it once again has only potential energy due to gravity. (b) A system with nonconservative forces. When the same rock is dropped onto the ground, it is stopped by nonconservative forces that dissipate its mechanical energy as thermal energy, sound, and surface distortion. The rock has lost mechanical energy.

How the Work-Energy Theorem Applies

Now let us consider what form the work-energy theorem takes when both conservative and nonconservative forces act. We will see that the work done by nonconservative forces equals the change in the mechanical energy of a system. As noted in Kinetic Energy and the Work-Energy Theorem, the work-energy theorem states that the net work on a system equals the change in its kinetic energy, or $W_{\text{net}} = \Delta\text{KE}$. The net work is the sum of the work by nonconservative forces plus the work by conservative forces. That is,

Equation:

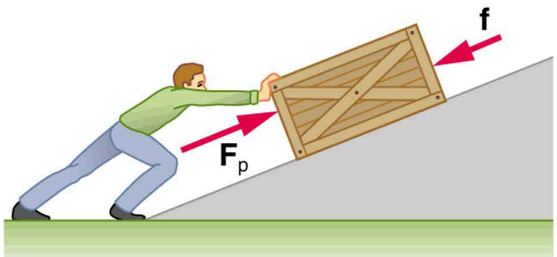
$$W_{\text{net}} = W_{\text{nc}} + W_{\text{c}},$$

so that

Equation:

$$W_{\text{nc}} + W_{\text{c}} = \Delta\text{KE},$$

where W_{nc} is the total work done by all nonconservative forces and W_{c} is the total work done by all conservative forces.



A person pushes a crate up a ramp, doing work on the crate. Friction and gravitational force (not shown) also do work on the crate; both forces oppose the person's push. As the crate is pushed up the ramp, it gains mechanical energy, implying that the work done by the person is greater than the work done by friction.

Consider [link], in which a person pushes a crate up a ramp and is opposed by friction. As in the previous section, we note that work done by a conservative force comes from a loss of gravitational potential energy, so that $W_{\mathrm{c}} = -\Delta\mathrm{PE}$. Substituting this equation into the previous one and solving for W_{nc} gives

Equation:

$$W_{\mathrm{nc}} = \Delta\mathrm{KE} + \Delta\mathrm{PE}.$$

This equation means that the total mechanical energy $(\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE})$ changes by exactly the amount of work done by nonconservative forces. In [link], this is the work done by the person minus the work done by friction. So even if energy is not conserved for the system of interest (such as the crate), we know that an equal amount of work was done to cause the change in total mechanical energy.

We rearrange $W_{\mathrm{nc}} = \Delta\mathrm{KE} + \Delta\mathrm{PE}$ to obtain

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} + W_{\mathrm{nc}} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}.$$

This means that the amount of work done by nonconservative forces adds to the mechanical energy of a system. If W_{nc} is positive, then mechanical energy is increased, such as when the person pushes the crate up the ramp in [link]. If W_{nc} is negative, then mechanical energy is decreased, such as when the rock hits the ground in [link](b). If W_{nc} is zero, then mechanical energy is conserved, and nonconservative forces are balanced. For example, when you push a lawn mower at constant speed on level ground, your work done is removed by the work of friction, and the mower has a constant energy.

Applying Energy Conservation with Nonconservative Forces

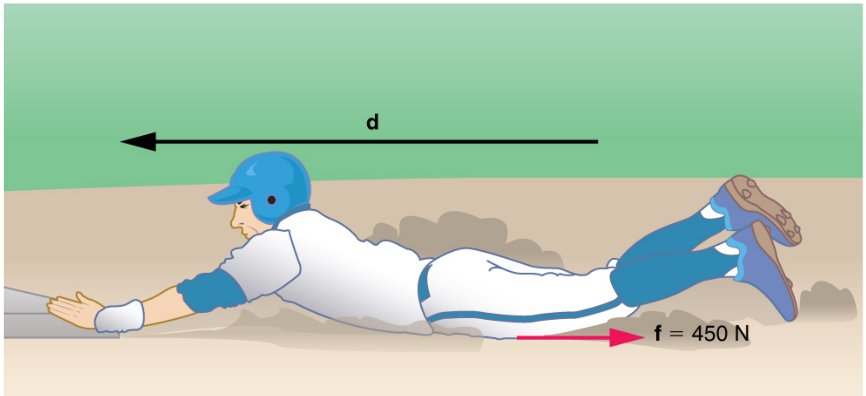
When no change in potential energy occurs, applying $\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} + W_{\mathrm{nc}} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}$ amounts to applying the work-energy theorem by setting the change in kinetic energy to be equal to the net work done on the system, which in the most general case includes both conservative and nonconservative forces. But when seeking instead to find a change in total mechanical energy in situations that involve changes in both potential and kinetic energy, the previous equation $\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} + W_{\mathrm{nc}} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}$ says that you can start by finding the change in mechanical energy that would have resulted from just the conservative forces, including the potential energy changes, and add to it the work done, with the proper sign, by any nonconservative forces involved.

Example:

Calculating Distance Traveled: How Far a Baseball Player Slides

Consider the situation shown in [link], where a baseball player slides to a stop on level ground. Using energy considerations, calculate the distance

the 65.0-kg baseball player slides, given that his initial speed is 6.00 m/s and the force of friction against him is a constant 450 N.



The baseball player slides to a stop in a distance *d*. In the process, friction removes the player's kinetic energy by doing an amount of work fd equal to the initial kinetic energy.

Strategy

Friction stops the player by converting his kinetic energy into other forms, including thermal energy. In terms of the work-energy theorem, the work done by friction, which is negative, is added to the initial kinetic energy to reduce it to zero. The work done by friction is negative, because **f** is in the opposite direction of the motion (that is, $\theta = 180^{\text{o}}$, and so $\cos\theta = -1$). Thus $W_{\text{nc}} = -\text{fd}$. The equation simplifies to

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}m{v_{\text{i}}}^2 - \text{fd} = 0$$

or

Equation:

$$\text{fd} = \frac{1}{2}m{v_{\text{i}}}^2.$$

This equation can now be solved for the distance *d*.

Solution

Solving the previous equation for d and substituting known values yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} d &= \frac{mv_{\mathrm{i}}{}^2}{2f} \\ &= \frac{(65.0\ \mathrm{kg})(6.00\ \mathrm{m/s})^2}{(2)(450\ \mathrm{N})} \\ &= 2.60\ \mathrm{m}. \end{aligned}$$

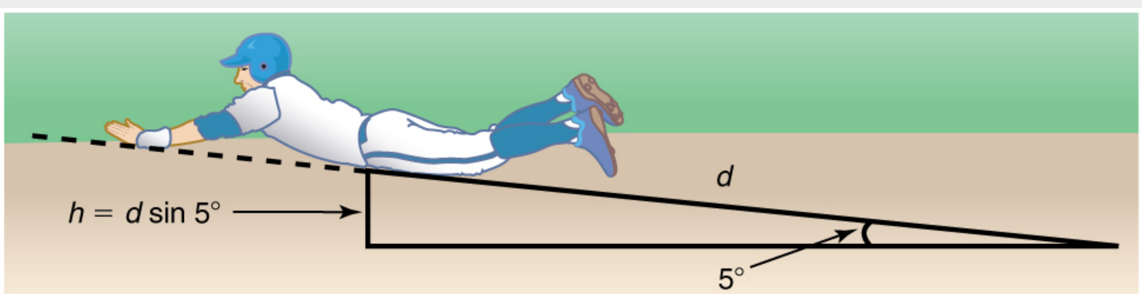
Discussion

The most important point of this example is that the amount of nonconservative work equals the change in mechanical energy. For example, you must work harder to stop a truck, with its large mechanical energy, than to stop a mosquito.

Example:

Calculating Distance Traveled: Sliding Up an Incline

Suppose that the player from [link] is running up a hill having a 5.00º incline upward with a surface similar to that in the baseball stadium. The player slides with the same initial speed, and the frictional force is still 450 N. Determine how far he slides.



The same baseball player slides to a stop on a 5.00º slope.

Strategy

In this case, the work done by the nonconservative friction force on the player reduces the mechanical energy he has from his kinetic energy at zero height, to the final mechanical energy he has by moving through

distance d to reach height h along the hill, with $h = d \sin 5.00º$. This is expressed by the equation

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} + W_{\mathrm{nc}} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}.$$

Solution

The work done by friction is again $W_{\mathrm{nc}} = -\mathrm{fd}$; initially the potential energy is $\mathrm{PE_i} = \mathrm{mg} \cdot 0 = 0$ and the kinetic energy is $\mathrm{KE_i} = \frac{1}{2}mv_{\mathrm{i}}{}^2$; the final energy contributions are $\mathrm{KE_f} = 0$ for the kinetic energy and $\mathrm{PE_f} = \mathrm{mgh} = \mathrm{mgd} \sin \theta$ for the potential energy.

Substituting these values gives

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}mv_{\mathrm{i}}{}^2 + 0 + \left(-fd\right) = 0 + mgd \sin \theta.$$

Solve this for d to obtain

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} d &= \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)mv_{\mathrm{i}}{}^2}{f + mg \sin \theta} \\ &= \frac{(0.5)(65.0\ \mathrm{kg})(6.00\ \mathrm{m/s})^2}{450\ \mathrm{N} + (65.0\ \mathrm{kg})(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2})\ \sin\ (5.00º)} \\ &= 2.31\ \mathrm{m}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

As might have been expected, the player slides a shorter distance by sliding uphill. Note that the problem could also have been solved in terms of the forces directly and the work energy theorem, instead of using the potential energy. This method would have required combining the normal force and force of gravity vectors, which no longer cancel each other because they point in different directions, and friction, to find the net force. You could then use the net force and the net work to find the distance d that reduces the kinetic energy to zero. By applying conservation of energy and using the potential energy instead, we need only consider the gravitational potential energy mgh, without combining and resolving force vectors. This simplifies the solution considerably.

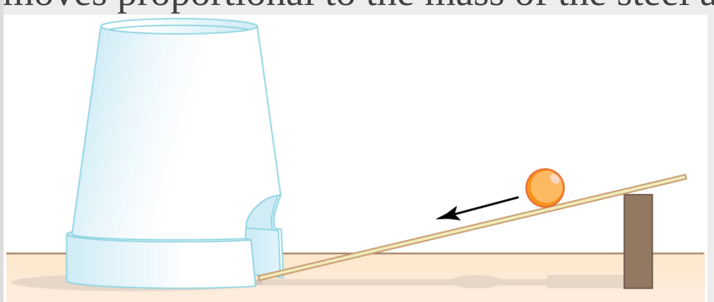
Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Determining Friction from the Stopping Distance

This experiment involves the conversion of gravitational potential energy into thermal energy. Use the ruler, book, and marble from Take-Home Investigation—Converting Potential to Kinetic Energy. In addition, you will need a foam cup with a small hole in the side, as shown in [link]. From the 10-cm position on the ruler, let the marble roll into the cup positioned at the bottom of the ruler. Measure the distance d the cup moves before stopping. What forces caused it to stop? What happened to the kinetic energy of the marble at the bottom of the ruler? Next, place the marble at the 20-cm and the 30-cm positions and again measure the distance the cup moves after the marble enters it. Plot the distance the cup moves versus the initial marble position on the ruler. Is this relationship linear?

With some simple assumptions, you can use these data to find the coefficient of kinetic friction μ_{k} of the cup on the table. The force of friction f on the cup is $\mu_{\text{k}}N$, where the normal force N is just the weight of the cup plus the marble. The normal force and force of gravity do no work because they are perpendicular to the displacement of the cup, which moves horizontally. The work done by friction is fd. You will need the mass of the marble as well to calculate its initial kinetic energy.

It is interesting to do the above experiment also with a steel marble (or ball bearing). Releasing it from the same positions on the ruler as you did with the glass marble, is the velocity of this steel marble the same as the velocity of the marble at the bottom of the ruler? Is the distance the cup moves proportional to the mass of the steel and glass marbles?



Rolling a marble down a ruler into a foam cup.

Note:
PhET Explorations: The Ramp
Explore forces, energy and work as you push household objects up and down a ramp. Lower and raise the ramp to see how the angle of inclination affects the parallel forces acting on the file cabinet. Graphs show forces, energy and work.

The Ramp

Section Summary

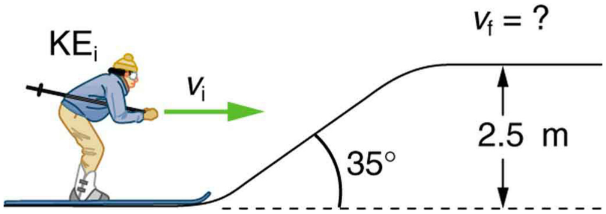
- A nonconservative force is one for which work depends on the path.
- Friction is an example of a nonconservative force that changes mechanical energy into thermal energy.
- Work W_{nc} done by a nonconservative force changes the mechanical energy of a system. In equation form, $W_{\text{nc}} = \Delta\text{KE} + \Delta\text{PE}$ or, equivalently, $\text{KE}_{\text{i}} + \text{PE}_{\text{i}} + W_{\text{nc}} = \text{KE}_{\text{f}} + \text{PE}_{\text{f}}$.
- When both conservative and nonconservative forces act, energy conservation can be applied and used to calculate motion in terms of the known potential energies of the conservative forces and the work done by nonconservative forces, instead of finding the net work from the net force, or having to directly apply Newton’s laws.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A 60.0-kg skier with an initial speed of 12.0 m/s coasts up a 2.50-m-high rise as shown in [link]. Find her final speed at the top, given that the coefficient of friction between her skis and the snow is 0.0800. (Hint: Find the distance traveled up the incline assuming a straight-line path as shown in the figure.)



The skier's initial kinetic energy is partially used in coasting to the top of a rise.

Solution:

9.46 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How high a hill can a car coast up (engine disengaged) if work done by friction is negligible and its initial speed is 110 km/h? (b) If, in actuality, a 750-kg car with an initial speed of 110 km/h is observed to coast up a hill to a height 22.0 m above its starting point, how much thermal energy was generated by friction? (c) What is the average force of friction if the hill has a slope 2.5° above the horizontal?

Glossary

nonconservative force

a force whose work depends on the path followed between the given initial and final configurations

friction
: the force between surfaces that opposes one sliding on the other; friction changes mechanical energy into thermal energy

Conservation of Energy

- Explain the law of the conservation of energy.
- Describe some of the many forms of energy.
- Define efficiency of an energy conversion process as the fraction left as useful energy or work, rather than being transformed, for example, into thermal energy.

Law of Conservation of Energy

Energy, as we have noted, is conserved, making it one of the most important physical quantities in nature. The **law of conservation of energy** can be stated as follows:

Total energy is constant in any process. It may change in form or be transferred from one system to another, but the total remains the same.

We have explored some forms of energy and some ways it can be transferred from one system to another. This exploration led to the definition of two major types of energy—mechanical energy $(\mathrm{KE}+\mathrm{PE})$ and energy transferred via work done by nonconservative forces (W_{nc}). But energy takes *many* other forms, manifesting itself in *many* different ways, and we need to be able to deal with all of these before we can write an equation for the above general statement of the conservation of energy.

Other Forms of Energy than Mechanical Energy

At this point, we deal with all other forms of energy by lumping them into a single group called other energy (OE). Then we can state the conservation of energy in equation form as
Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE_i}+\mathrm{PE_i}+W_{\mathrm{nc}}+\mathrm{OE_i}=\mathrm{KE_f}+\mathrm{PE_f}+\mathrm{OE_f}.$$

All types of energy and work can be included in this very general statement of conservation of energy. Kinetic energy is KE, work done by a conservative force is represented by PE, work done by nonconservative forces is W_{nc}, and

all other energies are included as OE. This equation applies to all previous examples; in those situations OE was constant, and so it subtracted out and was not directly considered.

Note:
Making Connections: Usefulness of the Energy Conservation Principle
The fact that energy is conserved and has many forms makes it very important. You will find that energy is discussed in many contexts, because it is involved in all processes. It will also become apparent that many situations are best understood in terms of energy and that problems are often most easily conceptualized and solved by considering energy.

When does OE play a role? One example occurs when a person eats. Food is oxidized with the release of carbon dioxide, water, and energy. Some of this chemical energy is converted to kinetic energy when the person moves, to potential energy when the person changes altitude, and to thermal energy (another form of OE).

Some of the Many Forms of Energy

What are some other forms of energy? You can probably name a number of forms of energy not yet discussed. Many of these will be covered in later chapters, but let us detail a few here. **Electrical energy** is a common form that is converted to many other forms and does work in a wide range of practical situations. Fuels, such as gasoline and food, carry **chemical energy** that can be transferred to a system through oxidation. Chemical fuel can also produce electrical energy, such as in batteries. Batteries can in turn produce light, which is a very pure form of energy. Most energy sources on Earth are in fact stored energy from the energy we receive from the Sun. We sometimes refer to this as **radiant energy**, or electromagnetic radiation, which includes visible light, infrared, and ultraviolet radiation. **Nuclear energy** comes from processes that convert measurable amounts of mass into energy. Nuclear energy is transformed into the energy of sunlight, into electrical energy in power plants, and into the energy of the heat transfer and blast in weapons.

Atoms and molecules inside all objects are in random motion. This internal mechanical energy from the random motions is called **thermal energy**, because it is related to the temperature of the object. These and all other forms of energy can be converted into one another and can do work.

[link] gives the amount of energy stored, used, or released from various objects and in various phenomena. The range of energies and the variety of types and situations is impressive.

Note:

Problem-Solving Strategies for Energy

You will find the following problem-solving strategies useful whenever you deal with energy. The strategies help in organizing and reinforcing energy concepts. In fact, they are used in the examples presented in this chapter. The familiar general problem-solving strategies presented earlier—involving identifying physical principles, knowns, and unknowns, checking units, and so on—continue to be relevant here.

Step 1. Determine the system of interest and identify what information is given and what quantity is to be calculated. A sketch will help.

Step 2. Examine all the forces involved and determine whether you know or are given the potential energy from the work done by the forces. Then use step 3 or step 4.

Step 3. If you know the potential energies for the forces that enter into the problem, then forces are all conservative, and you can apply conservation of mechanical energy simply in terms of potential and kinetic energy. The equation expressing conservation of energy is

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}.$$

Step 4. If you know the potential energy for only some of the forces, possibly because some of them are nonconservative and do not have a potential energy, or if there are other energies that are not easily treated in terms of force and work, then the conservation of energy law in its most general form must be used.

Equation:

$$KE_i + PE_i + W_{nc} + OE_i = KE_f + PE_f + OE_f.$$

In most problems, one or more of the terms is zero, simplifying its solution. Do not calculate W_c, the work done by conservative forces; it is already incorporated in the PE terms.

Step 5. You have already identified the types of work and energy involved (in step 2). Before solving for the unknown, *eliminate terms wherever possible* to simplify the algebra. For example, choose $h = 0$ at either the initial or final point, so that PE_g is zero there. Then solve for the unknown in the customary manner.

Step 6. *Check the answer to see if it is reasonable*. Once you have solved a problem, reexamine the forms of work and energy to see if you have set up the conservation of energy equation correctly. For example, work done against friction should be negative, potential energy at the bottom of a hill should be less than that at the top, and so on. Also check to see that the numerical value obtained is reasonable. For example, the final speed of a skateboarder who coasts down a 3-m-high ramp could reasonably be 20 km/h, but *not* 80 km/h.

Transformation of Energy

The transformation of energy from one form into others is happening all the time. The chemical energy in food is converted into thermal energy through metabolism; light energy is converted into chemical energy through photosynthesis. In a larger example, the chemical energy contained in coal is converted into thermal energy as it burns to turn water into steam in a boiler. This thermal energy in the steam in turn is converted to mechanical energy as it spins a turbine, which is connected to a generator to produce electrical energy. (In all of these examples, not all of the initial energy is converted into the forms mentioned. This important point is discussed later in this section.)

Another example of energy conversion occurs in a solar cell. Sunlight impinging on a solar cell (see [link]) produces electricity, which in turn can be used to run an electric motor. Energy is converted from the primary source of solar energy into electrical energy and then into mechanical energy.

Solar energy is converted into electrical energy by solar cells, which is used to run a motor in this solar-power aircraft. (credit: NASA)

Object/phenomenon	**Energy in joules**
Big Bang	10^{68}
Energy released in a supernova	10^{44}
Fusion of all the hydrogen in Earth’s oceans	10^{34}
Annual world energy use	4×10^{20}

Object/phenomenon	Energy in joules
Large fusion bomb (9 megaton)	3.8×10^{16}
1 kg hydrogen (fusion to helium)	6.4×10^{14}
1 kg uranium (nuclear fission)	8.0×10^{13}
Hiroshima-size fission bomb (10 kiloton)	4.2×10^{13}
90,000-ton aircraft carrier at 30 knots	1.1×10^{10}
1 barrel crude oil	5.9×10^{9}
1 ton TNT	4.2×10^{9}
1 gallon of gasoline	1.2×10^{8}
Daily home electricity use (developed countries)	7×10^{7}
Daily adult food intake (recommended)	1.2×10^{7}

Object/phenomenon	**Energy in joules**
1000-kg car at 90 km/h	3.1×10^5
1 g fat (9.3 kcal)	3.9×10^4
ATP hydrolysis reaction	3.2×10^4
1 g carbohydrate (4.1 kcal)	1.7×10^4
1 g protein (4.1 kcal)	1.7×10^4
Tennis ball at 100 km/h	22
Mosquito $\left(10^{-2}\text{ g at }0.5\text{ m/s}\right)$	1.3×10^{-6}
Single electron in a TV tube beam	4.0×10^{-15}
Energy to break one DNA strand	10^{-19}

Energy of Various Objects and Phenomena

Efficiency

Even though energy is conserved in an energy conversion process, the output of *useful energy* or work will be less than the energy input. The **efficiency** Eff of an energy conversion process is defined as

Equation:

$$\text{Efficiency}(\text{Eff}) = \frac{\text{useful energy or work output}}{\text{total energy input}} = \frac{W_{\text{out}}}{E_{\text{in}}}.$$

[link] lists some efficiencies of mechanical devices and human activities. In a coal-fired power plant, for example, about 40% of the chemical energy in the coal becomes useful electrical energy. The other 60% transforms into other (perhaps less useful) energy forms, such as thermal energy, which is then released to the environment through combustion gases and cooling towers.

Activity/device	Efficiency (%)[footnote] Representative values
Cycling and climbing	20
Swimming, surface	2
Swimming, submerged	4
Shoveling	3
Weightlifting	9
Steam engine	17
Gasoline engine	30

Activity/device	**Efficiency (%)[footnote]** **Representative values**
Diesel engine	35
Nuclear power plant	35
Coal power plant	42
Electric motor	98
Compact fluorescent light	20
Gas heater (residential)	90
Solar cell	10

Efficiency of the Human Body and Mechanical Devices

Note:
PhET Explorations: Masses and Springs
A realistic mass and spring laboratory. Hang masses from springs and adjust the spring stiffness and damping. You can even slow time. Transport the lab to different planets. A chart shows the kinetic, potential, and thermal energies for each spring.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/mass-spring-lab/mass-spring-lab_en.html

Section Summary

- The law of conservation of energy states that the total energy is constant in any process. Energy may change in form or be transferred from one system to another, but the total remains the same.
- When all forms of energy are considered, conservation of energy is written in equation form as

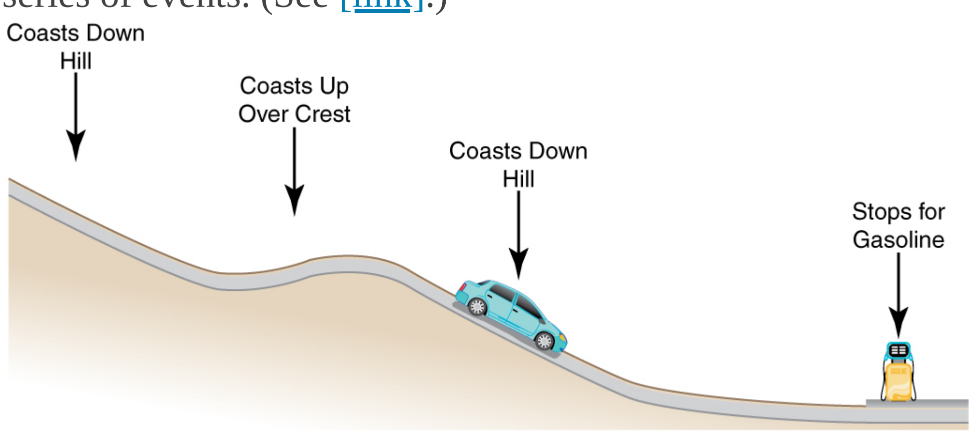
$\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} + W_{\mathrm{nc}} + \mathrm{OE_i} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f} + \mathrm{OE_f}$, where OE is all **other forms of energy** besides mechanical energy.
- Commonly encountered forms of energy include electric energy, chemical energy, radiant energy, nuclear energy, and thermal energy.
- Energy is often utilized to do work, but it is not possible to convert all the energy of a system to work.
- The efficiency Eff of a machine or human is defined to be $\mathrm{Eff} = \frac{W_{\mathrm{out}}}{E_{\mathrm{in}}}$, where W_{out} is useful work output and E_{in} is the energy consumed.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider the following scenario. A car for which friction is *not* negligible accelerates from rest down a hill, running out of gasoline after a short distance. The driver lets the car coast farther down the hill, then up and over a small crest. He then coasts down that hill into a gas station, where he brakes to a stop and fills the tank with gasoline. Identify the forms of energy the car has, and how they are changed and transferred in this series of events. (See [link].)



A car experiencing non-negligible friction coasts down a hill, over a small crest, then downhill again, and comes to a stop at a gas station.

Exercise:

Problem:

Describe the energy transfers and transformations for a javelin, starting from the point at which an athlete picks up the javelin and ending when the javelin is stuck into the ground after being thrown.

Exercise:

Problem:

Do devices with efficiencies of less than one violate the law of conservation of energy? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

List four different forms or types of energy. Give one example of a conversion from each of these forms to another form.

Exercise:

Problem: List the energy conversions that occur when riding a bicycle.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Using values from [link], how many DNA molecules could be broken by the energy carried by a single electron in the beam of an old-fashioned TV tube? (These electrons were not dangerous in themselves, but they did create dangerous x rays. Later model tube TVs had shielding that absorbed x rays before they escaped and exposed viewers.)

Solution:

4×10^4 molecules

Exercise:

Problem:

Using energy considerations and assuming negligible air resistance, show that a rock thrown from a bridge 20.0 m above water with an initial speed of 15.0 m/s strikes the water with a speed of 24.8 m/s independent of the direction thrown.

Solution:

Equating ΔPE_g and ΔKE, we obtain

$$v = \sqrt{2gh + {v_0}^2} = \sqrt{2(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(20.0\ \text{m}) + (15.0\ \text{m/s})^2} = 24.8\ \text{m/s}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

If the energy in fusion bombs were used to supply the energy needs of the world, how many of the 9-megaton variety would be needed for a year's supply of energy (using data from [link])? This is not as far-fetched as it may sound—there are thousands of nuclear bombs, and their energy can be trapped in underground explosions and converted to electricity, as natural geothermal energy is.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Use of hydrogen fusion to supply energy is a dream that may be realized in the next century. Fusion would be a relatively clean and almost limitless supply of energy, as can be seen from [link]. To illustrate this, calculate how many years the present energy needs of the world could be supplied by one millionth of the oceans' hydrogen fusion energy. (b) How does this time compare with historically significant events, such as the duration of stable economic systems?

Solution:

(a) 25×10^6 years

(b) This is much, much longer than human time scales.

Glossary

law of conservation of energy
: the general law that total energy is constant in any process; energy may change in form or be transferred from one system to another, but the total remains the same

electrical energy
: the energy carried by a flow of charge

chemical energy
: the energy in a substance stored in the bonds between atoms and molecules that can be released in a chemical reaction

radiant energy
: the energy carried by electromagnetic waves

nuclear energy
: energy released by changes within atomic nuclei, such as the fusion of two light nuclei or the fission of a heavy nucleus

thermal energy
: the energy within an object due to the random motion of its atoms and molecules that accounts for the object's temperature

efficiency
: a measure of the effectiveness of the input of energy to do work; useful energy or work divided by the total input of energy

Power

- Calculate power by calculating changes in energy over time.
- Examine power consumption and calculations of the cost of energy consumed.

What is Power?

Power—the word conjures up many images: a professional football player muscling aside his opponent, a dragster roaring away from the starting line, a volcano blowing its lava into the atmosphere, or a rocket blasting off, as in [link].

This powerful rocket on the Space Shuttle *Endeavor* did work and consumed energy at a very high rate. (credit: NASA)

These images of power have in common the rapid performance of work, consistent with the scientific definition of **power** (P) as the rate at which work is done.

Note:
Power
Power is the rate at which work is done.
Equation:

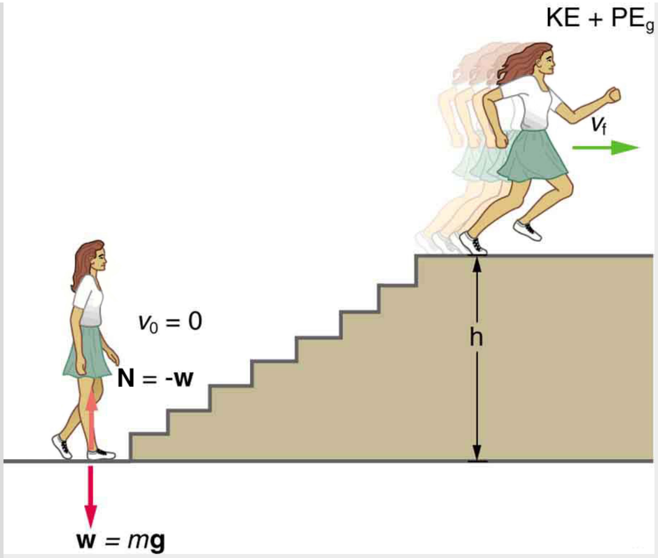
$$P=\frac{W}{t}$$

The SI unit for power is the **watt** (W), where 1 watt equals 1 joule/second $(1\text{ W}=1\text{ J/s})$.

Because work is energy transfer, power is also the rate at which energy is expended. A 60-W light bulb, for example, expends 60 J of energy per second. Great power means a large amount of work or energy developed in a short time. For example, when a powerful car accelerates rapidly, it does a large amount of work and consumes a large amount of fuel in a short time.

Calculating Power from Energy

Example:
Calculating the Power to Climb Stairs
What is the power output for a 60.0-kg woman who runs up a 3.00 m high flight of stairs in 3.50 s, starting from rest but having a final speed of 2.00 m/s? (See [link].)



When this woman runs upstairs starting from rest, she converts the chemical energy originally from food into kinetic energy and gravitational potential energy. Her power output depends on how fast she does this.

Strategy and Concept

The work going into mechanical energy is $W = \mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE}$. At the bottom of the stairs, we take both KE and $\mathrm{PE_g}$ as initially zero; thus, $W = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_g} = \frac{1}{2}m{v_\mathrm{f}}^2 + mgh$, where h is the vertical height of the stairs. Because all terms are given, we can calculate W and then divide it by time to get power.

Solution

Substituting the expression for W into the definition of power given in the previous equation, $P = W/t$ yields

Equation:

$$P = \frac{W}{t} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}m{v_\mathrm{f}}^2 + mgh}{t}.$$

Entering known values yields

Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P &= \frac{0.5(60.0\text{ kg})(2.00\text{ m/s})^2+(60.0\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)(3.00\text{ m})}{3.50\text{ s}} \\
&= \frac{120\text{ J}+1764\text{ J}}{3.50\text{ s}} \\
&= 538\text{ W}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Discussion

The woman does 1764 J of work to move up the stairs compared with only 120 J to increase her kinetic energy; thus, most of her power output is required for climbing rather than accelerating.

It is impressive that this woman's useful power output is slightly less than 1 **horsepower** $(1\text{ hp}=746\text{ W})$! People can generate more than a horsepower with their leg muscles for short periods of time by rapidly converting available blood sugar and oxygen into work output. (A horse can put out 1 hp for hours on end.) Once oxygen is depleted, power output decreases and the person begins to breathe rapidly to obtain oxygen to metabolize more food—this is known as the *aerobic* stage of exercise. If the woman climbed the stairs slowly, then her power output would be much less, although the amount of work done would be the same.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Measure Your Power Rating

Determine your own power rating by measuring the time it takes you to climb a flight of stairs. We will ignore the gain in kinetic energy, as the above example showed that it was a small portion of the energy gain. Don't expect that your output will be more than about 0.5 hp.

Examples of Power

Examples of power are limited only by the imagination, because there are as many types as there are forms of work and energy. (See [link] for some examples.) Sunlight reaching Earth's surface carries a maximum power of about 1.3 kilowatts per square meter $(\mathrm{kW/m^2})$. A tiny fraction of this is retained by Earth over the long term. Our consumption rate of fossil fuels is far greater than the rate at which they are stored, so it is inevitable that they will be depleted. Power implies that energy is transferred, perhaps changing form. It is never possible to change one form completely into another without losing some of it as thermal energy. For example, a 60-W incandescent bulb converts only 5 W of electrical power to light, with 55 W dissipating into thermal energy. Furthermore, the typical electric power plant converts only 35 to 40% of its fuel into electricity. The remainder becomes a huge amount of thermal energy that must be dispersed as heat transfer, as rapidly as it is created. A coal-fired power plant may produce 1000 megawatts; 1 megawatt (MW) is 10^6 W of electric power. But the power plant consumes chemical energy at a rate of about 2500 MW, creating heat transfer to the surroundings at a rate of 1500 MW. (See [link].)

Tremendous amounts of electric power are generated by coal-fired power plants such as this one in China, but an even larger amount of power goes into heat transfer to the surroundings.

The large cooling towers here are needed to transfer heat as rapidly as it is produced. The transfer of heat is not unique to coal plants but is an unavoidable consequence of generating electric power from any fuel—nuclear, coal, oil, natural gas, or the like. (credit: Kleinolive, Wikimedia Commons)

Object or Phenomenon	**Power in Watts**
Supernova (at peak)	5×10^{37}
Milky Way galaxy	10^{37}
Crab Nebula pulsar	10^{28}
The Sun	4×10^{26}

Object or Phenomenon	Power in Watts
Volcanic eruption (maximum)	4×10^{15}
Lightning bolt	2×10^{12}
Nuclear power plant (total electric and heat transfer)	3×10^{9}
Aircraft carrier (total useful and heat transfer)	10^{8}
Dragster (total useful and heat transfer)	2×10^{6}
Car (total useful and heat transfer)	8×10^{4}
Football player (total useful and heat transfer)	5×10^{3}
Clothes dryer	4×10^{3}
Person at rest (all heat transfer)	100

Object or Phenomenon	Power in Watts
Typical incandescent light bulb (total useful and heat transfer)	60
Heart, person at rest (total useful and heat transfer)	8
Electric clock	3
Pocket calculator	10^{-3}

Power Output or Consumption

Power and Energy Consumption

We usually have to pay for the energy we use. It is interesting and easy to estimate the cost of energy for an electrical appliance if its power consumption rate and time used are known. The higher the power consumption rate and the longer the appliance is used, the greater the cost of that appliance. The power consumption rate is $P = W/t = E/t$, where E is the energy supplied by the electricity company. So the energy consumed over a time t is

Equation:

$$E = \text{Pt}.$$

Electricity bills state the energy used in units of **kilowatt-hours** $(\text{kW} \cdot \text{h})$, which is the product of power in kilowatts and time in hours. This unit is convenient because electrical power consumption at the kilowatt level for hours at a time is typical.

Example:
Calculating Energy Costs
What is the cost of running a 0.200-kW computer 6.00 h per day for 30.0 d if the cost of electricity is $0.120 per $\mathrm{kW \cdot h}$?

Strategy

Cost is based on energy consumed; thus, we must find E from $E = \mathrm{Pt}$ and then calculate the cost. Because electrical energy is expressed in $\mathrm{kW \cdot h}$, at the start of a problem such as this it is convenient to convert the units into kW and hours.

Solution

The energy consumed in $\mathrm{kW \cdot h}$ is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \mathrm{Pt} = (0.200\,\mathrm{kW})(6.00\,\mathrm{h/d})(30.0\,\mathrm{d}) \\ &= 36.0\,\mathrm{kW \cdot h}, \end{aligned}$$

and the cost is simply given by

Equation:

$$\text{cost} = (36.0\ \mathrm{kW \cdot h})(\$0.120\ \text{per}\ \mathrm{kW \cdot h}) = \$4.32\ \text{per month.}$$

Discussion

The cost of using the computer in this example is neither exorbitant nor negligible. It is clear that the cost is a combination of power and time. When both are high, such as for an air conditioner in the summer, the cost is high.

The motivation to save energy has become more compelling with its ever-increasing price. Armed with the knowledge that energy consumed is the product of power and time, you can estimate costs for yourself and make the necessary value judgments about where to save energy. Either power or time must be reduced. It is most cost-effective to limit the use of high-power devices that normally operate for long periods of time, such as water heaters and air conditioners. This would not include relatively high power devices like toasters, because they are on only a few minutes per day. It would also not include electric clocks, in spite of their 24-hour-per-day

usage, because they are very low power devices. It is sometimes possible to use devices that have greater efficiencies—that is, devices that consume less power to accomplish the same task. One example is the compact fluorescent light bulb, which produces over four times more light per watt of power consumed than its incandescent cousin.

Modern civilization depends on energy, but current levels of energy consumption and production are not sustainable. The likelihood of a link between global warming and fossil fuel use (with its concomitant production of carbon dioxide), has made reduction in energy use as well as a shift to non-fossil fuels of the utmost importance. Even though energy in an isolated system is a conserved quantity, the final result of most energy transformations is waste heat transfer to the environment, which is no longer useful for doing work. As we will discuss in more detail in Thermodynamics, the potential for energy to produce useful work has been "degraded" in the energy transformation.

Section Summary

- Power is the rate at which work is done, or in equation form, for the average power P for work W done over a time t, $P = W/t$.
- The SI unit for power is the watt (W), where $1\text{ W} = 1\text{ J/s}$.
- The power of many devices such as electric motors is also often expressed in horsepower (hp), where $1\text{ hp} = 746\text{ W}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Most electrical appliances are rated in watts. Does this rating depend on how long the appliance is on? (When off, it is a zero-watt device.) Explain in terms of the definition of power.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain, in terms of the definition of power, why energy consumption is sometimes listed in kilowatt-hours rather than joules. What is the relationship between these two energy units?

Exercise:

Problem:

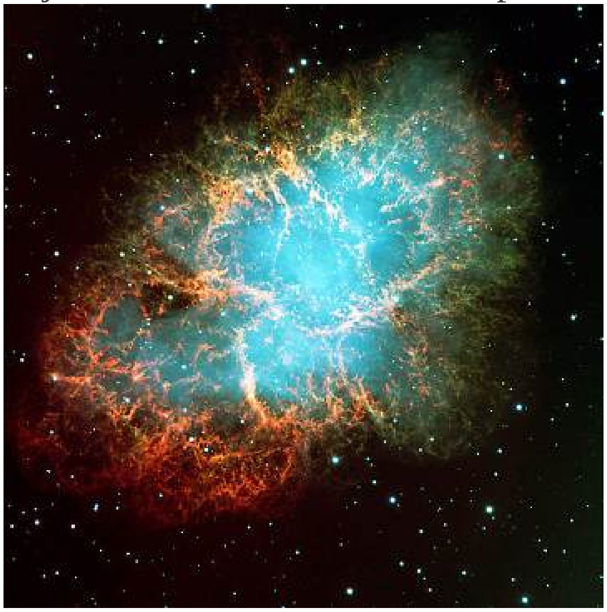
A spark of static electricity, such as that you might receive from a doorknob on a cold dry day, may carry a few hundred watts of power. Explain why you are not injured by such a spark.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The Crab Nebula (see [link]) pulsar is the remnant of a supernova that occurred in A.D. 1054. Using data from [link], calculate the approximate factor by which the power output of this astronomical object has declined since its explosion.



Crab Nebula (credit: ESO, via Wikimedia Commons)

Solution:
Equation:

$$2 \times 10^{-10}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a star 1000 times brighter than our Sun (that is, emitting 1000 times the power) suddenly goes supernova. Using data from [link]: (a) By what factor does its power output increase? (b) How many times brighter than our entire Milky Way galaxy is the supernova? (c) Based on your answers, discuss whether it should be possible to observe supernovas in distant galaxies. Note that there are on the order of 10^{11} observable galaxies, the average brightness of which is somewhat less than our own galaxy.

Exercise:

Problem:

A person in good physical condition can put out 100 W of useful power for several hours at a stretch, perhaps by pedaling a mechanism that drives an electric generator. Neglecting any problems of generator efficiency and practical considerations such as resting time: (a) How many people would it take to run a 4.00-kW electric clothes dryer? (b) How many people would it take to replace a large electric power plant that generates 800 MW?

Solution:

(a) 40

(b) 8 million

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the cost of operating a 3.00-W electric clock for a year if the cost of electricity is \$0.0900 per $\text{kW} \cdot \text{h}$?

Exercise:

Problem:

A large household air conditioner may consume 15.0 kW of power. What is the cost of operating this air conditioner 3.00 h per day for 30.0 d if the cost of electricity is \$0.110 per $\text{kW} \cdot \text{h}$?

Solution:

\$149

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the average power consumption in watts of an appliance that uses $5.00\ \text{kW} \cdot \text{h}$ of energy per day? (b) How many joules of energy does this appliance consume in a year?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the average useful power output of a person who does 6.00×10^{6} J of useful work in 8.00 h? (b) Working at this rate, how long will it take this person to lift 2000 kg of bricks 1.50 m to a platform? (Work done to lift his body can be omitted because it is not considered useful output here.)

Solution:

(a) 208 W

(b) 141 s

Exercise:

Problem:

A 500-kg dragster accelerates from rest to a final speed of 110 m/s in 400 m (about a quarter of a mile) and encounters an average frictional force of 1200 N. What is its average power output in watts and horsepower if this takes 7.30 s?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How long will it take an 850-kg car with a useful power output of 40.0 hp (1 hp = 746 W) to reach a speed of 15.0 m/s, neglecting friction? (b) How long will this acceleration take if the car also climbs a 3.00-m-high hill in the process?

Solution:

(a) 3.20 s

(b) 4.04 s

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the useful power output of an elevator motor that lifts a 2500-kg load a height of 35.0 m in 12.0 s, if it also increases the speed from rest to 4.00 m/s. Note that the total mass of the counterbalanced system is 10,000 kg—so that only 2500 kg is raised in height, but the full 10,000 kg is accelerated. (b) What does it cost, if electricity is $0.0900 per $\text{kW} \cdot \text{h}$?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the available energy content, in joules, of a battery that operates a 2.00-W electric clock for 18 months? (b) How long can a battery that can supply 8.00×10^4 J run a pocket calculator that consumes energy at the rate of 1.00×10^{-3} W?

Solution:

(a) 9.46×10^7 J

(b) 2.54 y

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How long would it take a 1.50×10^5-kg airplane with engines that produce 100 MW of power to reach a speed of 250 m/s and an altitude of 12.0 km if air resistance were negligible? (b) If it actually takes 900 s, what is the power? (c) Given this power, what is the average force of air resistance if the airplane takes 1200 s? (Hint: You must find the distance the plane travels in 1200 s assuming constant acceleration.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the power output needed for a 950-kg car to climb a 2.00^{o} slope at a constant 30.0 m/s while encountering wind resistance and friction totaling 600 N. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Energy.

Solution:

Identify knowns: $m = 950 \text{ kg}$, slope angle $\theta = 2.00^{\mathrm{o}}$, $v = 3.00 \text{ m/s}$, $f = 600 \text{ N}$

Identify unknowns: power P of the car, force F that car applies to road

Solve for unknown:

$$P = \frac{W}{t} = \frac{\text{Fd}}{t} = F\left(\frac{d}{t}\right) = \text{Fv},$$

where F is parallel to the incline and must oppose the resistive forces and the force of gravity:

$$F = f + w = 600\text{ N} + \text{mg sin }\theta$$

Insert this into the expression for power and solve:

$$\begin{aligned} P &= (f + \text{mg sin }\theta)v \\ &= \left[600\text{ N} + (950\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)\text{sin }2^{\text{o}}\right](30.0\text{ m/s}) \\ &= 2.77 \times 10^4\text{ W} \end{aligned}$$

About 28 kW (or about 37 hp) is reasonable for a car to climb a gentle incline.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the power per square meter reaching Earth's upper atmosphere from the Sun. (Take the power output of the Sun to be $4.00 \times 10^{26}\text{ W.}$) (b) Part of this is absorbed and reflected by the atmosphere, so that a maximum of 1.30 kW/m^2 reaches Earth's surface. Calculate the area in km^2 of solar energy collectors needed to replace an electric power plant that generates 750 MW if the collectors convert an average of 2.00% of the maximum power into electricity. (This small conversion efficiency is due to the devices themselves, and the fact that the sun is directly overhead only briefly.) With the same assumptions, what area would be needed to meet the United States' energy needs $(1.05 \times 10^{20}\text{ J})$? Australia's energy needs $(5.4 \times 10^{18}\text{ J})$? China's energy needs $(6.3 \times 10^{19}\text{ J})$? (These energy consumption values are from 2006.)

Glossary

power
: the rate at which work is done

watt
: (W) SI unit of power, with $1\ \mathrm{W} = 1\ \mathrm{J/s}$

horsepower
: an older non-SI unit of power, with $1\ \mathrm{hp} = 746\ \mathrm{W}$

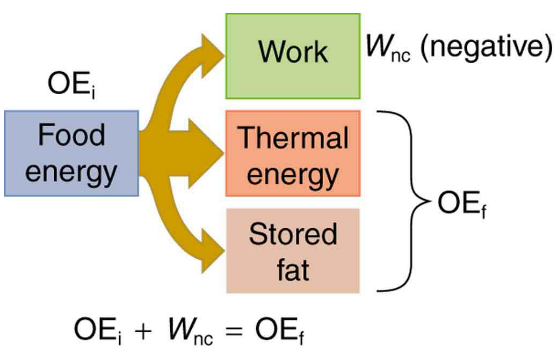
kilowatt-hour
: $(\mathrm{kW} \cdot \mathrm{h})$ unit used primarily for electrical energy provided by electric utility companies

Work, Energy, and Power in Humans

- Explain the human body’s consumption of energy when at rest vs. when engaged in activities that do useful work.
- Calculate the conversion of chemical energy in food into useful work.

Energy Conversion in Humans

Our own bodies, like all living organisms, are energy conversion machines. Conservation of energy implies that the chemical energy stored in food is converted into work, thermal energy, and/or stored as chemical energy in fatty tissue. (See [link].) The fraction going into each form depends both on how much we eat and on our level of physical activity. If we eat more than is needed to do work and stay warm, the remainder goes into body fat.



Energy consumed by humans is converted to work, thermal energy, and stored fat. By far the largest fraction goes to thermal energy, although the fraction varies depending on the type of physical activity.

Power Consumed at Rest

The *rate* at which the body uses food energy to sustain life and to do different activities is called the **metabolic rate**. The total energy conversion rate of a person *at rest* is called the **basal metabolic rate** (BMR) and is divided among various systems in the body, as shown in [link]. The largest fraction goes to the liver and spleen, with the brain coming next. Of course, during vigorous exercise, the energy consumption of the skeletal muscles and heart increase markedly. About 75% of the calories burned in a day go into these basic functions. The BMR is a function of age, gender, total body weight, and amount of muscle mass (which burns more calories than body fat). Athletes have a greater BMR due to this last factor.

Organ	**Power consumed at rest (W)**	**Oxygen consumption (mL/min)**	**Percent of BMR**
Liver & spleen	23	67	27
Brain	16	47	19
Skeletal muscle	15	45	18
Kidney	9	26	10
Heart	6	17	7
Other	16	48	19
Totals	85 W	250 mL/min	100%

Basal Metabolic Rates (BMR)

Energy consumption is directly proportional to oxygen consumption because the digestive process is basically one of oxidizing food. We can measure the energy people use during various activities by measuring their oxygen use. (See [link].) Approximately 20 kJ of energy are produced for each liter of oxygen consumed, independent of the type of food. [link] shows energy and oxygen consumption rates (power expended) for a variety of activities.

Power of Doing Useful Work

Work done by a person is sometimes called **useful work**, which is *work done on the outside world*, such as lifting weights. Useful work requires a force exerted through a distance on the outside world, and so it excludes internal work, such as that done by the heart when pumping blood. Useful work does include that done in climbing stairs or accelerating to a full run, because these are accomplished by exerting forces on the outside world. Forces exerted by the body are nonconservative, so that they can change the mechanical energy ($\text{KE} + \text{PE}$) of the system worked upon, and this is often the goal. A baseball player throwing a ball, for example, increases both the ball's kinetic and potential energy.

If a person needs more energy than they consume, such as when doing vigorous work, the body must draw upon the chemical energy stored in fat. So exercise can be helpful in losing fat. However, the amount of exercise needed to produce a loss in fat, or to burn off extra calories consumed that day, can be large, as [link] illustrates.

Example:
Calculating Weight Loss from Exercising
If a person who normally requires an average of 12,000 kJ (3000 kcal) of food energy per day consumes 13,000 kJ per day, he will steadily gain weight. How much bicycling per day is required to work off this extra 1000 kJ?

Solution

[link] states that 400 W are used when cycling at a moderate speed. The time required to work off 1000 kJ at this rate is then

Equation:

$$\text{Time} = \frac{\text{energy}}{\left(\frac{\text{energy}}{\text{time}}\right)} = \frac{1000 \text{ kJ}}{400 \text{ W}} = 2500 \text{ s} = 42 \text{ min}.$$

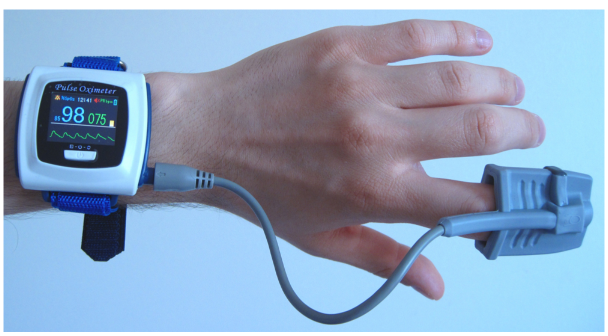
Discussion

If this person uses more energy than he or she consumes, the person's body will obtain the needed energy by metabolizing body fat. If the person uses 13,000 kJ but consumes only 12,000 kJ, then the amount of fat loss will be

Equation:

$$\text{Fat loss} = (1000 \text{ kJ})\left(\frac{1.0 \text{ g fat}}{39 \text{ kJ}}\right) = 26 \text{ g},$$

assuming the energy content of fat to be 39 kJ/g.



A pulse oxymeter is an apparatus that measures the amount of oxygen in blood. Oxymeters can be used to determine a person's metabolic rate, which is the rate at which food energy is converted to another form. Such

measurements can indicate the level of athletic conditioning as well as certain medical problems. (credit: UusiAjaja, Wikimedia Commons)

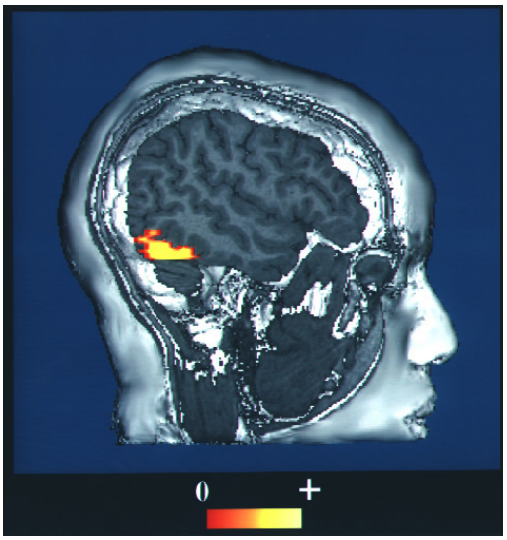
Activity	**Energy consumption in watts**	**Oxygen consumption in liters O_2/min**
Sleeping	83	0.24
Sitting at rest	120	0.34
Standing relaxed	125	0.36
Sitting in class	210	0.60
Walking (5 km/h)	280	0.80
Cycling (13–18 km/h)	400	1.14
Shivering	425	1.21
Playing tennis	440	1.26

Activity	Energy consumption in watts	Oxygen consumption in liters O_2/min
Swimming breaststroke	475	1.36
Ice skating (14.5 km/h)	545	1.56
Climbing stairs (116/min)	685	1.96
Cycling (21 km/h)	700	2.00
Running cross-country	740	2.12
Playing basketball	800	2.28
Cycling, professional racer	1855	5.30
Sprinting	2415	6.90

Energy and Oxygen Consumption Rates[footnote] (Power) for an average 76-kg male

All bodily functions, from thinking to lifting weights, require energy. (See [link].) The many small muscle actions accompanying all quiet activity, from sleeping to head scratching, ultimately become thermal energy, as do less visible muscle actions by the heart, lungs, and digestive tract. Shivering, in fact, is an involuntary response to low body temperature that pits muscles against one another to produce thermal energy in the body (and

do no work). The kidneys and liver consume a surprising amount of energy, but the biggest surprise of all is that a full 25% of all energy consumed by the body is used to maintain electrical potentials in all living cells. (Nerve cells use this electrical potential in nerve impulses.) This bioelectrical energy ultimately becomes mostly thermal energy, but some is utilized to power chemical processes such as in the kidneys and liver, and in fat production.



This fMRI scan shows an increased level of energy consumption in the vision center of the brain. Here, the patient was being asked to recognize faces. (credit: NIH via Wikimedia Commons)

Section Summary

- The human body converts energy stored in food into work, thermal energy, and/or chemical energy that is stored in fatty tissue.
- The *rate* at which the body uses food energy to sustain life and to do different activities is called the metabolic rate, and the corresponding rate when at rest is called the basal metabolic rate (BMR)
- The energy included in the basal metabolic rate is divided among various systems in the body, with the largest fraction going to the liver and spleen, and the brain coming next.
- About 75% of food calories are used to sustain basic body functions included in the basal metabolic rate.
- The energy consumption of people during various activities can be determined by measuring their oxygen use, because the digestive process is basically one of oxidizing food.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why it is easier to climb a mountain on a zigzag path rather than one straight up the side. Is your increase in gravitational potential energy the same in both cases? Is your energy consumption the same in both?

Exercise:

Problem:

Do you do work on the outside world when you rub your hands together to warm them? What is the efficiency of this activity?

Exercise:

Problem:

Shivering is an involuntary response to lowered body temperature. What is the efficiency of the body when shivering, and is this a desirable value?

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss the relative effectiveness of dieting and exercise in losing weight, noting that most athletic activities consume food energy at a rate of 400 to 500 W, while a single cup of yogurt can contain 1360 kJ (325 kcal). Specifically, is it likely that exercise alone will be sufficient to lose weight? You may wish to consider that regular exercise may increase the metabolic rate, whereas protracted dieting may reduce it.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How long can you rapidly climb stairs (116/min) on the 93.0 kcal of energy in a 10.0-g pat of butter? (b) How many flights is this if each flight has 16 stairs?

Solution:

(a) 9.5 min

(b) 69 flights of stairs

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the power output in watts and horsepower of a 70.0-kg sprinter who accelerates from rest to 10.0 m/s in 3.00 s? (b) Considering the amount of power generated, do you think a well-trained athlete could do this repetitively for long periods of time?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the power output in watts and horsepower of a shot-putter who takes 1.20 s to accelerate the 7.27-kg shot from rest to 14.0 m/s, while raising it 0.800 m. (Do not include the power produced to accelerate his body.)

Shot putter at the Dornoch Highland Gathering in 2007. (credit: John Haslam, Flickr)

Solution:

641 W, 0.860 hp

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the efficiency of an out-of-condition professor who does 2.10×10^{5} J of useful work while metabolizing 500 kcal of food energy? (b) How many food calories would a well-conditioned athlete metabolize in doing the same work with an efficiency of 20%?

Exercise:

Problem:

Energy that is not utilized for work or heat transfer is converted to the chemical energy of body fat containing about 39 kJ/g. How many grams of fat will you gain if you eat 10,000 kJ (about 2500 kcal) one day and do nothing but sit relaxed for 16.0 h and sleep for the other 8.00 h? Use data from [link] for the energy consumption rates of these activities.

Solution:

31 g

Exercise:

Problem:

Using data from [link], calculate the daily energy needs of a person who sleeps for 7.00 h, walks for 2.00 h, attends classes for 4.00 h, cycles for 2.00 h, sits relaxed for 3.00 h, and studies for 6.00 h. (Studying consumes energy at the same rate as sitting in class.)

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the efficiency of a subject on a treadmill who puts out work at the rate of 100 W while consuming oxygen at the rate of 2.00 L/min? (Hint: See [link].)

Solution:

14.3%

Exercise:

Problem:

Shoveling snow can be extremely taxing because the arms have such a low efficiency in this activity. Suppose a person shoveling a footpath metabolizes food at the rate of 800 W. (a) What is her useful power output? (b) How long will it take her to lift 3000 kg of snow 1.20 m? (This could be the amount of heavy snow on 20 m of footpath.) (c) How much waste heat transfer in kilojoules will she generate in the process?

Exercise:

Problem:

Very large forces are produced in joints when a person jumps from some height to the ground. (a) Calculate the magnitude of the force produced if an 80.0-kg person jumps from a 0.600–m-high ledge and lands stiffly, compressing joint material 1.50 cm as a result. (Be certain to include the weight of the person.) (b) In practice the knees bend almost involuntarily to help extend the distance over which you stop. Calculate the magnitude of the force produced if the stopping distance is 0.300 m. (c) Compare both forces with the weight of the person.

Solution:

(a) 3.21×10^4 N

(b) 2.35×10^3 N

(c) Ratio of net force to weight of person is 41.0 in part (a); 3.00 in part (b)

Exercise:

Problem:

Jogging on hard surfaces with insufficiently padded shoes produces large forces in the feet and legs. (a) Calculate the magnitude of the force needed to stop the downward motion of a jogger’s leg, if his leg has a mass of 13.0 kg, a speed of 6.00 m/s, and stops in a distance of 1.50 cm. (Be certain to include the weight of the 75.0-kg jogger’s body.) (b) Compare this force with the weight of the jogger.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the energy in kJ used by a 55.0-kg woman who does 50 deep knee bends in which her center of mass is lowered and raised 0.400 m. (She does work in both directions.) You may assume her efficiency is 20%. (b) What is the average power consumption rate in watts if she does this in 3.00 min?

Solution:

(a) 108 kJ

(b) 599 W

Exercise:

Problem:

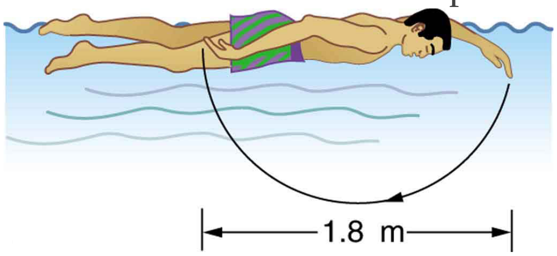
Kanellos Kanellopoulos flew 119 km from Crete to Santorini, Greece, on April 23, 1988, in the *Daedalus 88*, an aircraft powered by a bicycle-type drive mechanism (see [link]). His useful power output for the 234-min trip was about 350 W. Using the efficiency for cycling from [link], calculate the food energy in kilojoules he metabolized during the flight.

The Daedalus 88 in flight. (credit: NASA photo by Beasley)

Exercise:

Problem:

The swimmer shown in [link] exerts an average horizontal backward force of 80.0 N with his arm during each 1.80 m long stroke. (a) What is his work output in each stroke? (b) Calculate the power output of his arms if he does 120 strokes per minute.



Solution:

(a) 144 J

(b) 288 W

Exercise:

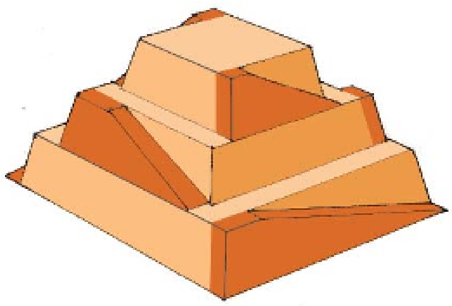
Problem:

Mountain climbers carry bottled oxygen when at very high altitudes. (a) Assuming that a mountain climber uses oxygen at twice the rate for climbing 116 stairs per minute (because of low air temperature and winds), calculate how many liters of oxygen a climber would need for 10.0 h of climbing. (These are liters at sea level.) Note that only 40% of the inhaled oxygen is utilized; the rest is exhaled. (b) How much useful work does the climber do if he and his equipment have a mass of 90.0 kg and he gains 1000 m of altitude? (c) What is his efficiency for the 10.0-h climb?

Exercise:

Problem:

The awe-inspiring Great Pyramid of Cheops was built more than 4500 years ago. Its square base, originally 230 m on a side, covered 13.1 acres, and it was 146 m high, with a mass of about 7×10^9 kg. (The pyramid's dimensions are slightly different today due to quarrying and some sagging.) Historians estimate that 20,000 workers spent 20 years to construct it, working 12-hour days, 330 days per year. (a) Calculate the gravitational potential energy stored in the pyramid, given its center of mass is at one-fourth its height. (b) Only a fraction of the workers lifted blocks; most were involved in support services such as building ramps (see [link]), bringing food and water, and hauling blocks to the site. Calculate the efficiency of the workers who did the lifting, assuming there were 1000 of them and they consumed food energy at the rate of 300 kcal/h. What does your answer imply about how much of their work went into block-lifting, versus how much work went into friction and lifting and lowering their own bodies? (c) Calculate the mass of food that had to be supplied each day, assuming that the average worker required 3600 kcal per day and that their diet was 5% protein, 60% carbohydrate, and 35% fat. (These proportions neglect the mass of bulk and nondigestible materials consumed.)



Ancient pyramids were probably constructed using ramps as simple machines. (credit: Franck Monnier, Wikimedia Commons)

Solution:

(a) 2.50×10^{12} J

(b) 2.52%

(c) 1.4×10^{4} kg (14 metric tons)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How long can you play tennis on the 800 kJ (about 200 kcal) of energy in a candy bar? (b) Does this seem like a long time? Discuss why exercise is necessary but may not be sufficient to cause a person to lose weight.

Glossary

metabolic rate
: the rate at which the body uses food energy to sustain life and to do different activities

basal metabolic rate
: the total energy conversion rate of a person at rest

useful work
: work done on an external system

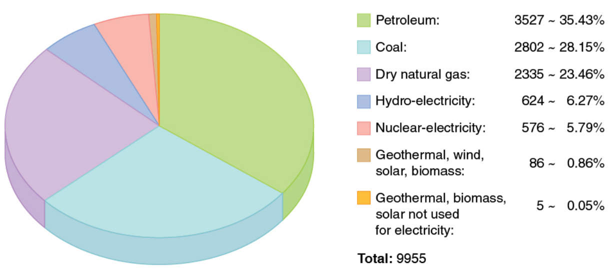
World Energy Use

- Describe the distinction between renewable and nonrenewable energy sources.
- Explain why the inevitable conversion of energy to less useful forms makes it necessary to conserve energy resources.

Energy is an important ingredient in all phases of society. We live in a very interdependent world, and access to adequate and reliable energy resources is crucial for economic growth and for maintaining the quality of our lives. But current levels of energy consumption and production are not sustainable. About 40% of the world's energy comes from oil, and much of that goes to transportation uses. Oil prices are dependent as much upon new (or foreseen) discoveries as they are upon political events and situations around the world. The U.S., with 4.5% of the world's population, consumes 24% of the world's oil production per year; 66% of that oil is imported!

Renewable and Nonrenewable Energy Sources

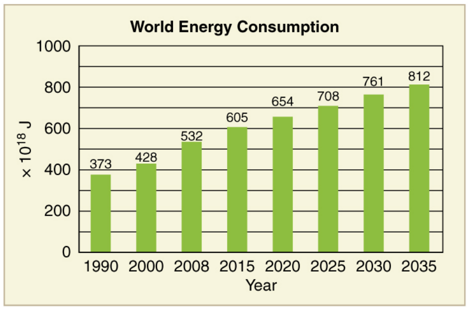
The principal energy resources used in the world are shown in [link]. The fuel mix has changed over the years but now is dominated by oil, although natural gas and solar contributions are increasing. **Renewable forms of energy** are those sources that cannot be used up, such as water, wind, solar, and biomass. About 85% of our energy comes from nonrenewable **fossil fuels**—oil, natural gas, coal. The likelihood of a link between global warming and fossil fuel use, with its production of carbon dioxide through combustion, has made, in the eyes of many scientists, a shift to non-fossil fuels of utmost importance—but it will not be easy.



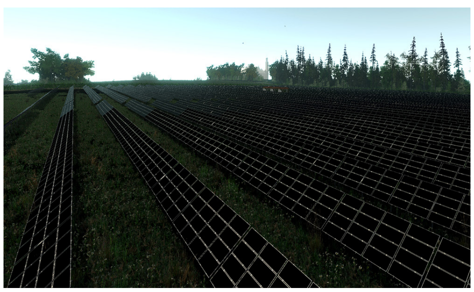
World energy consumption by source, in billions of kilowatt-hours: 2006. (credit: KVDP)

The World's Growing Energy Needs

World energy consumption continues to rise, especially in the developing countries. (See [link].) Global demand for energy has tripled in the past 50 years and might triple again in the next 30 years. While much of this growth will come from the rapidly booming economies of China and India, many of the developed countries, especially those in Europe, are hoping to meet their energy needs by expanding the use of renewable sources. Although presently only a small percentage, renewable energy is growing very fast, especially wind energy. For example, Germany plans to meet 20% of its electricity and 10% of its overall energy needs with renewable resources by the year 2020. (See [link].) Energy is a key constraint in the rapid economic growth of China and India. In 2003, China surpassed Japan as the world's second largest consumer of oil. However, over 1/3 of this is imported. Unlike most Western countries, coal dominates the commercial energy resources of China, accounting for 2/3 of its energy consumption. In 2009 China surpassed the United States as the largest generator of CO_2. In India, the main energy resources are biomass (wood and dung) and coal. Half of India's oil is imported. About 70% of India's electricity is generated by highly polluting coal. Yet there are sizeable strides being made in renewable energy. India has a rapidly growing wind energy base, and it has the largest solar cooking program in the world.



Past and projected world energy use (source: Based on data from U.S. Energy Information Administration, 2011)



Solar cell arrays at a power plant in Steindorf, Germany (credit: Michael Betke, Flickr)

[link] displays the 2006 commercial energy mix by country for some of the prime energy users in the world. While non-renewable sources dominate, some countries get a sizeable percentage of their electricity from renewable resources. For example, about 67% of New Zealand's electricity demand is met by hydroelectric. Only 10% of the U.S. electricity is generated by renewable resources, primarily hydroelectric. It is difficult to determine total contributions of renewable energy in some countries with a large rural population, so these percentages in this table are left blank.

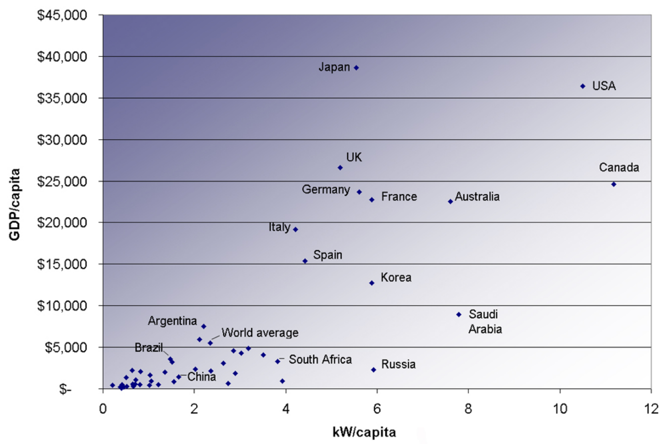
Country	**Consumption, in EJ (10^{18} J)**	**Oil**	**Natural Gas**	**Coal**	**Nuclear**	**Hydro**	**Other Renewables**
Australia	5.4	34%	17%	44%	0%	3%	1%

Country	Consumption, in EJ (10^{18} J)	Oil	Natural Gas	Coal	Nuclear	Hydro	Other Renewables
Brazil	9.6	48%	7%	5%	1%	35%	2%
China	63	22%	3%	69%	1%	6%	
Egypt	2.4	50%	41%	1%	0%	6%	
Germany	16	37%	24%	24%	11%	1%	3%
India	15	34%	7%	52%	1%	5%	
Indonesia	4.9	51%	26%	16%	0%	2%	3%
Japan	24	48%	14%	21%	12%	4%	1%
New Zealand	0.44	32%	26%	6%	0%	11%	19%
Russia	31	19%	53%	16%	5%	6%	
U.S.	105	40%	23%	22%	8%	3%	1%
World	**432**	**39%**	**23%**	**24%**	**6%**	**6%**	**2%**

Energy Consumption—Selected Countries (2006)

Energy and Economic Well-being

The last two columns in this table examine the energy and electricity use per capita. Economic well-being is dependent upon energy use, and in most countries higher standards of living, as measured by GDP (gross domestic product) per capita, are matched by higher levels of energy consumption per capita. This is borne out in [link]. Increased efficiency of energy use will change this dependency. A global problem is balancing energy resource development against the harmful effects upon the environment in its extraction and use.



Power consumption per capita versus GDP per capita for various countries. Note the increase in energy usage with increasing GDP. (2007, credit: Frank van Mierlo, Wikimedia Commons)

Conserving Energy

As we finish this chapter on energy and work, it is relevant to draw some distinctions between two sometimes misunderstood terms in the area of energy use. As has been mentioned elsewhere, the “law of the conservation of energy” is a very useful principle in analyzing physical processes. It is a statement that cannot be proven from basic principles, but is a very good bookkeeping device, and no exceptions have ever been found. It states that the total amount of energy in an isolated system will always remain constant. Related to this principle, but remarkably different from it, is the important philosophy of energy conservation. This concept has to do with seeking to decrease the amount of energy used by an individual or group through (1) reduced activities (e.g., turning down thermostats, driving fewer kilometers) and/or (2) increasing conversion efficiencies in the performance of a particular task—such as developing and using more efficient room heaters, cars that have greater miles-per-gallon ratings, energy-efficient compact fluorescent lights, etc.

Since energy in an isolated system is not destroyed or created or generated, one might wonder why we need to be concerned about our energy resources, since energy is a conserved quantity. The problem is that the final result of most energy transformations is waste heat transfer to the environment and conversion to energy forms no longer useful for doing work. To state it in another way, the potential for energy to produce useful work has been “degraded” in the energy transformation. (This will be discussed in more detail in Thermodynamics.)

Section Summary

- The relative use of different fuels to provide energy has changed over the years, but fuel use is currently dominated by oil, although natural gas and solar contributions are increasing.
- Although non-renewable sources dominate, some countries meet a sizeable percentage of their electricity needs from renewable resources.
- The United States obtains only about 10% of its energy from renewable sources, mostly hydroelectric power.
- Economic well-being is dependent upon energy use, and in most countries higher standards of living, as measured by GDP (Gross Domestic Product) per capita, are matched by higher levels of energy consumption per capita.
- Even though, in accordance with the law of conservation of energy, energy can never be created or destroyed, energy that can be used to do work is always partly converted to less useful forms, such as waste heat to the environment, in all of our uses of energy for practical purposes.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the difference between energy conservation and the law of conservation of energy? Give some examples of each.

Exercise:

Problem:

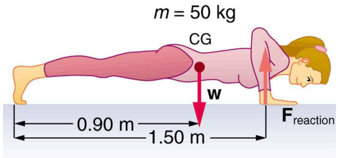
If the efficiency of a coal-fired electrical generating plant is 35%, then what do we mean when we say that energy is a conserved quantity?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) Calculate the force the woman in [link] exerts to do a push-up at constant speed, taking all data to be known to three digits. (b) How much work does she do if her center of mass rises 0.240 m? (c) What is her useful power output if she does 25 push-ups in 1 min? (Should work done lowering her body be included? See the discussion of useful work in Work, Energy, and Power in Humans.



Forces involved in doing push-ups. The woman's weight acts as a force exerted downward on her center of gravity (CG).

Solution:

(a) 294 N

(b) 118 J

(c) 49.0 W

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A 75.0-kg cross-country skier is climbing a 3.0° slope at a constant speed of 2.00 m/s and encounters air resistance of 25.0 N. Find his power output for work done against the gravitational force and air resistance. (b) What average force does he exert backward on the snow to accomplish this? (c) If he continues to exert this force and to experience the same air resistance when he reaches a level area, how long will it take him to reach a velocity of 10.0 m/s?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

The 70.0-kg swimmer in [link] starts a race with an initial velocity of 1.25 m/s and exerts an average force of 80.0 N backward with his arms during each 1.80 m long stroke. (a) What is his initial acceleration if water resistance is 45.0 N? (b) What is the subsequent average resistance force from the water during the 5.00 s it takes him to reach his top velocity of 2.50 m/s? (c) Discuss whether water resistance seems to increase linearly with velocity.

Solution:

(a) $0.500\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$

(b) $62.5\ \mathrm{N}$

(c) Assuming the acceleration of the swimmer decreases linearly with time over the 5.00 s interval, the frictional force must therefore be increasing linearly with time, since $f = F - \mathrm{ma}$. If the acceleration decreases linearly with time, the velocity will contain a term dependent on time squared (t^2). Therefore, the water resistance will not depend linearly on the velocity.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A toy gun uses a spring with a force constant of 300 N/m to propel a 10.0-g steel ball. If the spring is compressed 7.00 cm and friction is negligible: (a) How much force is needed to compress the spring? (b) To what maximum height can the ball be shot? (c) At what angles above the horizontal may a child aim to hit a target 3.00 m away at the same height as the gun? (d) What is the gun's maximum range on level ground?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) What force must be supplied by an elevator cable to produce an acceleration of $0.800\ \mathrm{m/s}^2$ against a 200-N frictional force, if the mass of the loaded elevator is 1500 kg? (b) How much work is done by the cable in lifting the elevator 20.0 m? (c) What is the final speed of the elevator if it starts from rest? (d) How much work went into thermal energy?

Solution:

(a) $16.1 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{N}$

(b) $3.22 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{J}$

(c) 5.66 m/s

(d) 4.00 kJ

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

A car advertisement claims that its 900-kg car accelerated from rest to 30.0 m/s and drove 100 km, gaining 3.00 km in altitude, on 1.0 gal of gasoline. The average force of friction including air resistance was 700 N. Assume all values are known to three significant figures. (a) Calculate the car's efficiency. (b) What is unreasonable about the result? (c) Which premise is unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

Body fat is metabolized, supplying 9.30 kcal/g, when dietary intake is less than needed to fuel metabolism. The manufacturers of an exercise bicycle claim that you can lose 0.500 kg of fat per day by vigorously exercising for 2.00 h per day on their machine. (a) How many kcal are supplied by the metabolization of 0.500 kg of fat? (b) Calculate the kcal/min that you would have to utilize to metabolize fat at the rate of 0.500 kg in 2.00 h. (c) What is unreasonable about the results? (d) Which premise is unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 4.65×10^3 kcal

(b) 38.8 kcal/min

(c) This power output is higher than the highest value on [link], which is about 35 kcal/min (corresponding to 2415 watts) for sprinting.

(d) It would be impossible to maintain this power output for 2 hours (imagine sprinting for 2 hours!).

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider a person climbing and descending stairs. Construct a problem in which you calculate the long-term rate at which stairs can be climbed considering the mass of the person, his ability to generate power with his legs, and the height of a single stair step. Also consider why the same person can descend stairs at a faster rate for a nearly unlimited time in spite of the fact that very similar forces are exerted going down as going up. (This points to a fundamentally different process for descending versus climbing stairs.)

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider humans generating electricity by pedaling a device similar to a stationary bicycle. Construct a problem in which you determine the number of people it would take to replace a large electrical generation facility. Among the things to consider are the power output that is reasonable using the legs, rest time, and the need for electricity 24 hours per day. Discuss the practical implications of your results.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A 105-kg basketball player crouches down 0.400 m while waiting to jump. After exerting a force on the floor through this 0.400 m, his feet leave the floor and his center of gravity rises 0.950 m above its normal standing erect position. (a) Using energy considerations, calculate his velocity when he leaves the floor. (b) What average force did he exert on the floor? (Do not neglect the force to support his weight as well as that to accelerate him.) (c) What was his power output during the acceleration phase?

Solution:

(a) 4.32 m/s

(b) 3.47×10^3 N

(c) 8.93 kW

Glossary

renewable forms of energy
: those sources that cannot be used up, such as water, wind, solar, and biomass

fossil fuels
: oil, natural gas, and coal

Introduction to Linear Momentum and Collisions

class="introduction"

"Each rugby player has great momentum, which will affect the outcome of their collisions with each other and the ground. (credit: vjpaul, Flickr)"

We use the term momentum in various ways in everyday language, and most of these ways are consistent with its precise scientific definition. We speak of sports teams or politicians gaining and maintaining the momentum to win. We also recognize that momentum has something to do with collisions. For example, looking at the rugby players in the photograph colliding and falling to the ground, we expect their momenta to have great effects in the resulting collisions. Generally, momentum implies a tendency to continue on course—to move in the same direction—and is associated with great mass and speed.

Momentum, like energy, is important because it is conserved. Only a few physical quantities are conserved in nature, and studying them yields fundamental insight into how nature works, as we shall see in our study of momentum.

Linear Momentum and Force

- Define linear momentum.
- Explain the relationship between momentum and force.
- State Newton’s second law of motion in terms of momentum.
- Calculate momentum given mass and velocity.

Linear Momentum

The scientific definition of linear momentum is consistent with most people’s intuitive understanding of momentum: a large, fast-moving object has greater momentum than a smaller, slower object. **Linear momentum** is defined as the product of a system’s mass multiplied by its velocity. In symbols, linear momentum is expressed as

Equation:

$$\mathbf{p} = m\mathbf{v}.$$

Momentum is directly proportional to the object’s mass and also its velocity. Thus the greater an object’s mass or the greater its velocity, the greater its momentum. Momentum $\mathbf{p}$ is a vector having the same direction as the velocity $\mathbf{v}$. The SI unit for momentum is $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$.

Note:

Linear Momentum

Linear momentum is defined as the product of a system’s mass multiplied by its velocity:

Equation:

$$\mathbf{p} = m\mathbf{v}.$$

Example:

Calculating Momentum: A Football Player and a Football

(a) Calculate the momentum of a 110-kg football player running at 8.00 m/s. (b) Compare the player's momentum with the momentum of a hard-thrown 0.410-kg football that has a speed of 25.0 m/s.

Strategy

No information is given regarding direction, and so we can calculate only the magnitude of the momentum, p. (As usual, a symbol that is in italics is a magnitude, whereas one that is italicized, boldfaced, and has an arrow is a vector.) In both parts of this example, the magnitude of momentum can be calculated directly from the definition of momentum given in the equation, which becomes

Equation:

$$p=\mathrm{mv}$$

when only magnitudes are considered.

Solution for (a)

To determine the momentum of the player, substitute the known values for the player's mass and speed into the equation.

Equation:

$$p_{\text{player}}=(110\text{ kg})(8.00\text{ m/s})=880\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$$

Solution for (b)

To determine the momentum of the ball, substitute the known values for the ball's mass and speed into the equation.

Equation:

$$p_{\text{ball}}=(0.410\text{ kg})(25.0\text{ m/s})=10.3\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$$

The ratio of the player's momentum to that of the ball is

Equation:

$$\frac{p_{\text{player}}}{p_{\text{ball}}}=\frac{880}{10.3}=85.9.$$

Discussion

Although the ball has greater velocity, the player has a much greater mass. Thus the momentum of the player is much greater than the momentum of the football, as you might guess. As a result, the player's motion is only slightly affected if he catches the ball. We shall quantify what happens in such collisions in terms of momentum in later sections.

Momentum and Newton's Second Law

The importance of momentum, unlike the importance of energy, was recognized early in the development of classical physics. Momentum was deemed so important that it was called the "quantity of motion." Newton actually stated his **second law of motion** in terms of momentum: The net external force equals the change in momentum of a system divided by the time over which it changes. Using symbols, this law is

Equation:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = \frac{\Delta \mathbf{p}}{\Delta t},$$

where $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}$ is the net external force, $\Delta \mathbf{p}$ is the change in momentum, and Δt is the change in time.

Note:

Newton's Second Law of Motion in Terms of Momentum

The net external force equals the change in momentum of a system divided by the time over which it changes.

Equation:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = \frac{\Delta \mathbf{p}}{\Delta t}$$

Note:
Making Connections: Force and Momentum
Force and momentum are intimately related. Force acting over time can change momentum, and Newton's second law of motion, can be stated in its most broadly applicable form in terms of momentum. Momentum continues to be a key concept in the study of atomic and subatomic particles in quantum mechanics.

This statement of Newton's second law of motion includes the more familiar $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}=m\mathbf{a}$ as a special case. We can derive this form as follows. First, note that the change in momentum $\mathbf{\Delta p}$ is given by
Equation:

$$\mathbf{\Delta p} = \mathbf{\Delta}(m\mathbf{v}).$$

If the mass of the system is constant, then
Equation:

$$\mathbf{\Delta}(m\mathbf{v}) = m\mathbf{\Delta v}.$$

So that for constant mass, Newton's second law of motion becomes
Equation:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = \frac{\mathbf{\Delta p}}{\mathbf{\Delta}t} = \frac{m\mathbf{\Delta v}}{\mathbf{\Delta}t}.$$

Because $\frac{\Delta \mathbf{v}}{\Delta t} = \mathbf{a}$, we get the familiar equation
Equation:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}=m\mathbf{a}$$

when the mass of the system is constant.

Newton’s second law of motion stated in terms of momentum is more generally applicable because it can be applied to systems where the mass is changing, such as rockets, as well as to systems of constant mass. We will consider systems with varying mass in some detail**;** however, the relationship between momentum and force remains useful when mass is constant, such as in the following example.

Example:

Calculating Force: Venus Williams’ Racquet

During the 2007 French Open, Venus Williams hit the fastest recorded serve in a premier women’s match, reaching a speed of 58 m/s (209 km/h). What is the average force exerted on the 0.057-kg tennis ball by Venus Williams’ racquet, assuming that the ball’s speed just after impact is 58 m/s, that the initial horizontal component of the velocity before impact is negligible, and that the ball remained in contact with the racquet for 5.0 ms (milliseconds)?

Strategy

This problem involves only one dimension because the ball starts from having no horizontal velocity component before impact. Newton’s second law stated in terms of momentum is then written as

Equation:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = \frac{\Delta \mathbf{p}}{\Delta t}.$$

As noted above, when mass is constant, the change in momentum is given by

Equation:

$$\Delta p = m\Delta v = m(v_{\text{f}} - v_{\text{i}}).$$

In this example, the velocity just after impact and the change in time are given; thus, once Δp is calculated, $F_{\text{net}} = \frac{\Delta p}{\Delta t}$ can be used to find the force.

Solution

To determine the change in momentum, substitute the values for the initial and final velocities into the equation above.
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta p &= m(v_{\mathrm{f}} - v_{\mathrm{i}}) \\ &= (0.057\ \mathrm{kg})(58\ \mathrm{m/s} - 0\ \mathrm{m/s}) \\ &= 3.306\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s} \approx 3.3\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s} \end{aligned}$$

Now the magnitude of the net external force can determined by using $F_{\text{net}} = \frac{\Delta p}{\Delta t}$:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{net}} &= \frac{\Delta p}{\Delta t} = \frac{3.306\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s}}{5.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{s}} \\ &= 661\ \mathrm{N} \approx 660\ \mathrm{N}, \end{aligned}$$

where we have retained only two significant figures in the final step.
Discussion
This quantity was the average force exerted by Venus Williams' racquet on the tennis ball during its brief impact (note that the ball also experienced the 0.56-N force of gravity, but that force was not due to the racquet). This problem could also be solved by first finding the acceleration and then using $F_{\text{net}} = \mathrm{ma}$, but one additional step would be required compared with the strategy used in this example.

Section Summary

- Linear momentum (*momentum* for brevity) is defined as the product of a system's mass multiplied by its velocity.
- In symbols, linear momentum $\mathbf{p}$ is defined to be
  Equation:

  $$\mathbf{p} = m\mathbf{v},$$

  where m is the mass of the system and $\mathbf{v}$ is its velocity.
- The SI unit for momentum is $\mathrm{kg \cdot m/s}$.

- Newton’s second law of motion in terms of momentum states that the net external force equals the change in momentum of a system divided by the time over which it changes.
- In symbols, Newton’s second law of motion is defined to be
  Equation:

  $$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = \frac{\Delta \mathbf{p}}{\Delta t},$$

  $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}$ is the net external force, $\Delta \mathbf{p}$ is the change in momentum, and Δt is the change time.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

An object that has a small mass and an object that has a large mass have the same momentum. Which object has the largest kinetic energy?

Exercise:

Problem:

An object that has a small mass and an object that has a large mass have the same kinetic energy. Which mass has the largest momentum?

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

Football coaches advise players to block, hit, and tackle with their feet on the ground rather than by leaping through the air. Using the concepts of momentum, work, and energy, explain how a football player can be more effective with his feet on the ground.

Exercise:

Problem:

How can a small force impart the same momentum to an object as a large force?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the momentum of a 2000-kg elephant charging a hunter at a speed of $7.50\ \text{m/s}$. (b) Compare the elephant’s momentum with the momentum of a 0.0400-kg tranquilizer dart fired at a speed of $600\ \text{m/s}$. (c) What is the momentum of the 90.0-kg hunter running at $7.40\ \text{m/s}$ after missing the elephant?

Solution:

(a) $1.50 \times 10^4\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$

(b) 625 to 1

(c) $6.66 \times 10^2\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the mass of a large ship that has a momentum of $1.60 \times 10^9\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$, when the ship is moving at a speed of $48.0\ \text{km/h}$? (b) Compare the ship’s momentum to the momentum of a 1100-kg artillery shell fired at a speed of $1200\ \text{m/s}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At what speed would a 2.00×10^4-kg airplane have to fly to have a momentum of $1.60 \times 10^9 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$ (the same as the ship's momentum in the problem above)? (b) What is the plane's momentum when it is taking off at a speed of 60.0 m/s? (c) If the ship is an aircraft carrier that launches these airplanes with a catapult, discuss the implications of your answer to (b) as it relates to recoil effects of the catapult on the ship.

Solution:

(a) $8.00 \times 10^4 \text{ m/s}$

(b) $1.20 \times 10^6 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$

(c) Because the momentum of the airplane is 3 orders of magnitude smaller than of the ship, the ship will not recoil very much. The recoil would be -0.0100 m/s, which is probably not noticeable.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the momentum of a garbage truck that is $1.20 \times 10^4 \text{ kg}$ and is moving at 10.0 m/s? (b) At what speed would an 8.00-kg trash can have the same momentum as the truck?

Exercise:

Problem:

A runaway train car that has a mass of 15,000 kg travels at a speed of 5.4 m/s down a track. Compute the time required for a force of 1500 N to bring the car to rest.

Solution:

54 s

Exercise:

Problem:

The mass of Earth is 5.972×10^{24} kg and its orbital radius is an average of 1.496×10^{11} m. Calculate its linear momentum.

Glossary

linear momentum
: the product of mass and velocity

second law of motion
: physical law that states that the net external force equals the change in momentum of a system divided by the time over which it changes

Impulse

- Define impulse.
- Describe effects of impulses in everyday life.
- Determine the average effective force using graphical representation.
- Calculate average force and impulse given mass, velocity, and time.

The effect of a force on an object depends on how long it acts, as well as how great the force is. In [link], a very large force acting for a short time had a great effect on the momentum of the tennis ball. A small force could cause the same **change in momentum**, but it would have to act for a much longer time. For example, if the ball were thrown upward, the gravitational force (which is much smaller than the tennis racquet's force) would eventually reverse the momentum of the ball. Quantitatively, the effect we are talking about is the change in momentum $\Delta \mathbf{p}$.

By rearranging the equation $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = \frac{\Delta \mathbf{p}}{\Delta t}$ to be
Equation:

$$\Delta \mathbf{p} = \mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} \Delta t,$$

we can see how the change in momentum equals the average net external force multiplied by the time this force acts. The quantity $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} \Delta t$ is given the name **impulse**. Impulse is the same as the change in momentum.

Note:
Impulse: Change in Momentum
Change in momentum equals the average net external force multiplied by the time this force acts.
Equation:

$$\Delta \mathbf{p} = \mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} \Delta t$$

The quantity $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} \Delta t$ is given the name impulse.

There are many ways in which an understanding of impulse can save lives, or at least limbs. The dashboard padding in a car, and certainly the airbags, allow the net force on the occupants in the car to act over a much longer time when there is a sudden stop. The momentum change is the same for an occupant, whether an air bag is deployed or not, but the force (to bring the occupant to a stop) will be much less if it acts over a larger time. Cars today have many plastic components. One advantage of plastics is their lighter weight, which results in better gas mileage. Another advantage is that a car will crumple in a collision, especially in the event of a head-on collision. A longer collision time means the force on the car will be less. Deaths during car races decreased dramatically when the rigid frames of racing cars were replaced with parts that could crumple or collapse in the event of an accident.

Bones in a body will fracture if the force on them is too large. If you jump onto the floor from a table, the force on your legs can be immense if you land stiff-legged on a hard surface. Rolling on the ground after jumping from the table, or landing with a parachute, extends the time over which the force (on you from the ground) acts.

Example:

Calculating Magnitudes of Impulses: Two Billiard Balls Striking a Rigid Wall

Two identical billiard balls strike a rigid wall with the same speed, and are reflected without any change of speed. The first ball strikes perpendicular to the wall. The second ball strikes the wall at an angle of 30° from the perpendicular, and bounces off at an angle of 30° from perpendicular to the wall.

(a) Determine the direction of the force on the wall due to each ball.

(b) Calculate the ratio of the magnitudes of impulses on the two balls by the wall.

Strategy for (a)

In order to determine the force on the wall, consider the force on the ball due to the wall using Newton’s second law and then apply Newton’s third law to determine the direction. Assume the x-axis to be normal to the wall and to be positive in the initial direction of motion. Choose the y-axis to be

along the wall in the plane of the second ball’s motion. The momentum direction and the velocity direction are the same.

Solution for (a)

The first ball bounces directly into the wall and exerts a force on it in the $+x$ direction. Therefore the wall exerts a force on the ball in the $-x$ direction. The second ball continues with the same momentum component in the y direction, but reverses its x-component of momentum, as seen by sketching a diagram of the angles involved and keeping in mind the proportionality between velocity and momentum.

These changes mean the change in momentum for both balls is in the $-x$ direction, so the force of the wall on each ball is along the $-x$ direction.

Strategy for (b)

Calculate the change in momentum for each ball, which is equal to the impulse imparted to the ball.

Solution for (b)

Let u be the speed of each ball before and after collision with the wall, and m the mass of each ball. Choose the x-axis and y-axis as previously described, and consider the change in momentum of the first ball which strikes perpendicular to the wall.

Equation:

$$p_{\text{xi}} = \text{mu}; p_{\text{yi}} = 0$$

Equation:

$$p_{\text{xf}} = -\text{mu}; p_{\text{yf}} = 0$$

Impulse is the change in momentum vector. Therefore the x-component of impulse is equal to -2mu and the y-component of impulse is equal to zero.

Now consider the change in momentum of the second ball.

Equation:

$$p_{\text{xi}} = mu \cos 30^{\text{o}}; p_{\text{yi}} = -mu \sin 30^{\text{o}}$$

Equation:

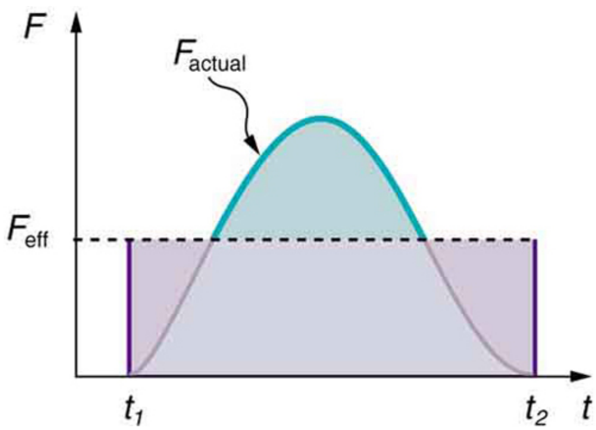
$$p_{\text{xf}} = -mu \cos 30^{\text{o}}; p_{\text{yf}} = -mu \sin 30^{\text{o}}$$

It should be noted here that while p_{x} changes sign after the collision, p_{y} does not. Therefore the x-component of impulse is equal to $-2mu$ cos 30° and the y-component of impulse is equal to zero.
The ratio of the magnitudes of the impulse imparted to the balls is
Equation:

$$\frac{2\text{mu}}{2mu\ \text{cos}\ 30^{\circ}}=\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}=1.155.$$

Discussion
The direction of impulse and force is the same as in the case of (a); it is normal to the wall and along the negative x-direction. Making use of Newton's third law, the force on the wall due to each ball is normal to the wall along the positive x -direction.

Our definition of impulse includes an assumption that the force is constant over the time interval Δt. *Forces are usually not constant*. Forces vary considerably even during the brief time intervals considered. It is, however, possible to find an average effective force F_{eff} that produces the same result as the corresponding time-varying force. [link] shows a graph of what an actual force looks like as a function of time for a ball bouncing off the floor. The area under the curve has units of momentum and is equal to the impulse or change in momentum between times t_1 and t_2. That area is equal to the area inside the rectangle bounded by F_{eff}, t_1, and t_2. Thus the impulses and their effects are the same for both the actual and effective forces.



A graph of force versus time with time along the x-axis and force along the y-axis for an actual force and an equivalent effective force. The areas under the two curves are equal.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Hand Movement and Impulse
Try catching a ball while “giving” with the ball, pulling your hands toward your body. Then, try catching a ball while keeping your hands still. Hit water in a tub with your full palm. After the water has settled, hit the water again by diving your hand with your fingers first into the water. (Your full palm represents a swimmer doing a belly flop and your diving hand represents a swimmer doing a dive.) Explain what happens in each case and why. Which orientations would you advise people to avoid and why?

Note:
Making Connections: Constant Force and Constant Acceleration
The assumption of a constant force in the definition of impulse is analogous to the assumption of a constant acceleration in kinematics. In both cases, nature is adequately described without the use of calculus.

Section Summary

- Impulse, or change in momentum, equals the average net external force multiplied by the time this force acts:
  Equation:

$$\Delta \mathbf{p} = \mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} \Delta t.$$

- Forces are usually not constant over a period of time.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Explain in terms of impulse how padding reduces forces in a collision. State this in terms of a real example, such as the advantages of a carpeted vs. tile floor for a day care center.

Exercise:

Problem:

While jumping on a trampoline, sometimes you land on your back and other times on your feet. In which case can you reach a greater height and why?

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Tennis racquets have “sweet spots.” If the ball hits a sweet spot then the player's arm is not jarred as much as it would be otherwise. Explain why this is the case.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A bullet is accelerated down the barrel of a gun by hot gases produced in the combustion of gun powder. What is the average force exerted on a 0.0300-kg bullet to accelerate it to a speed of 600 m/s in a time of 2.00 ms (milliseconds)?

Solution:

9.00×10^3 N

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

A car moving at 10 m/s crashes into a tree and stops in 0.26 s. Calculate the force the seat belt exerts on a passenger in the car to bring him to a halt. The mass of the passenger is 70 kg.

Exercise:

Problem:

A person slaps her leg with her hand, bringing her hand to rest in 2.50 milliseconds from an initial speed of 4.00 m/s. (a) What is the average force exerted on the leg, taking the effective mass of the hand and forearm to be 1.50 kg? (b) Would the force be any different if the woman clapped her hands together at the same speed and brought them to rest in the same time? Explain why or why not.

Solution:

a) 2.40×10^3 N toward the leg

b) The force on each hand would have the same magnitude as that found in part (a) (but in opposite directions by Newton’s third law) because the change in momentum and the time interval are the same.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

A professional boxer hits his opponent with a 1000-N horizontal blow that lasts for 0.150 s. (a) Calculate the impulse imparted by this blow. (b) What is the opponent's final velocity, if his mass is 105 kg and he is motionless in midair when struck near his center of mass? (c) Calculate the recoil velocity of the opponent's 10.0-kg head if hit in this manner, assuming the head does not initially transfer significant momentum to the boxer's body. (d) Discuss the implications of your answers for parts (b) and (c).

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Suppose a child drives a bumper car head on into the side rail, which exerts a force of 4000 N on the car for 0.200 s. (a) What impulse is imparted by this force? (b) Find the final velocity of the bumper car if its initial velocity was 2.80 m/s and the car plus driver have a mass of 200 kg. You may neglect friction between the car and floor.

Solution:

a) $800\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$ away from the wall

b) 1.20 m/s away from the wall

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

One hazard of space travel is debris left by previous missions. There are several thousand objects orbiting Earth that are large enough to be detected by radar, but there are far greater numbers of very small objects, such as flakes of paint. Calculate the force exerted by a 0.100-mg chip of paint that strikes a spacecraft window at a relative speed of $4.00\times 10^{3}\text{ m/s}$, given the collision lasts $6.00\times 10^{-8}\text{ s}$.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

A 75.0-kg person is riding in a car moving at 20.0 m/s when the car runs into a bridge abutment. (a) Calculate the average force on the person if he is stopped by a padded dashboard that compresses an average of 1.00 cm. (b) Calculate the average force on the person if he is stopped by an air bag that compresses an average of 15.0 cm.

Solution:

(a) 1.50×10^{6} N away from the dashboard

(b) 1.00×10^{5} N away from the dashboard

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Military rifles have a mechanism for reducing the recoil forces of the gun on the person firing it. An internal part recoils over a relatively large distance and is stopped by damping mechanisms in the gun. The larger distance reduces the average force needed to stop the internal part. (a) Calculate the recoil velocity of a 1.00-kg plunger that directly interacts with a 0.0200-kg bullet fired at 600 m/s from the gun. (b) If this part is stopped over a distance of 20.0 cm, what average force is exerted upon it by the gun? (c) Compare this to the force exerted on the gun if the bullet is accelerated to its velocity in 10.0 ms (milliseconds).

Exercise:

Problem:

A cruise ship with a mass of 1.00×10^7 kg strikes a pier at a speed of 0.750 m/s. It comes to rest 6.00 m later, damaging the ship, the pier, and the tugboat captain's finances. Calculate the average force exerted on the pier using the concept of impulse. (Hint: First calculate the time it took to bring the ship to rest.)

Solution:

4.69×10^5 N in the boat's original direction of motion

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the final speed of a 110-kg rugby player who is initially running at 8.00 m/s but collides head-on with a padded goalpost and experiences a backward force of 1.76×10^4 N for 5.50×10^{-2} s.

Exercise:

Problem:

Water from a fire hose is directed horizontally against a wall at a rate of 50.0 kg/s and a speed of 42.0 m/s. Calculate the magnitude of the force exerted on the wall, assuming the water's horizontal momentum is reduced to zero.

Solution:

2.10×10^3 N away from the wall

Exercise:

Problem:

A 0.450-kg hammer is moving horizontally at 7.00 m/s when it strikes a nail and comes to rest after driving the nail 1.00 cm into a board. (a) Calculate the duration of the impact. (b) What was the average force exerted on the nail?

Exercise:

Problem:

Starting with the definitions of momentum and kinetic energy, derive an equation for the kinetic energy of a particle expressed as a function of its momentum.

Solution:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathbf{p}=m\mathbf{v}\Rightarrow p^2=m^2v^2\Rightarrow \tfrac{p^2}{m}=mv^2\\&\Rightarrow \tfrac{p^2}{2m}=\tfrac{1}{2}mv^2=\mathrm{KE}\\&KE=\tfrac{p^2}{2m}\end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A ball with an initial velocity of 10 m/s moves at an angle 60^{o} above the $+x$-direction. The ball hits a vertical wall and bounces off so that it is moving 60^{o} above the $-x$-direction with the same speed. What is the impulse delivered by the wall?

Exercise:

Problem:

When serving a tennis ball, a player hits the ball when its velocity is zero (at the highest point of a vertical toss). The racquet exerts a force of 540 N on the ball for 5.00 ms, giving it a final velocity of 45.0 m/s. Using these data, find the mass of the ball.

Solution:

60.0 g

Exercise:

Problem:

A punter drops a ball from rest vertically 1 meter down onto his foot. The ball leaves the foot with a speed of 18 m/s at an angle 55° above the horizontal. What is the impulse delivered by the foot (magnitude and direction)?

Glossary

change in momentum
: the difference between the final and initial momentum; the mass times the change in velocity

impulse
: the average net external force times the time it acts; equal to the change in momentum

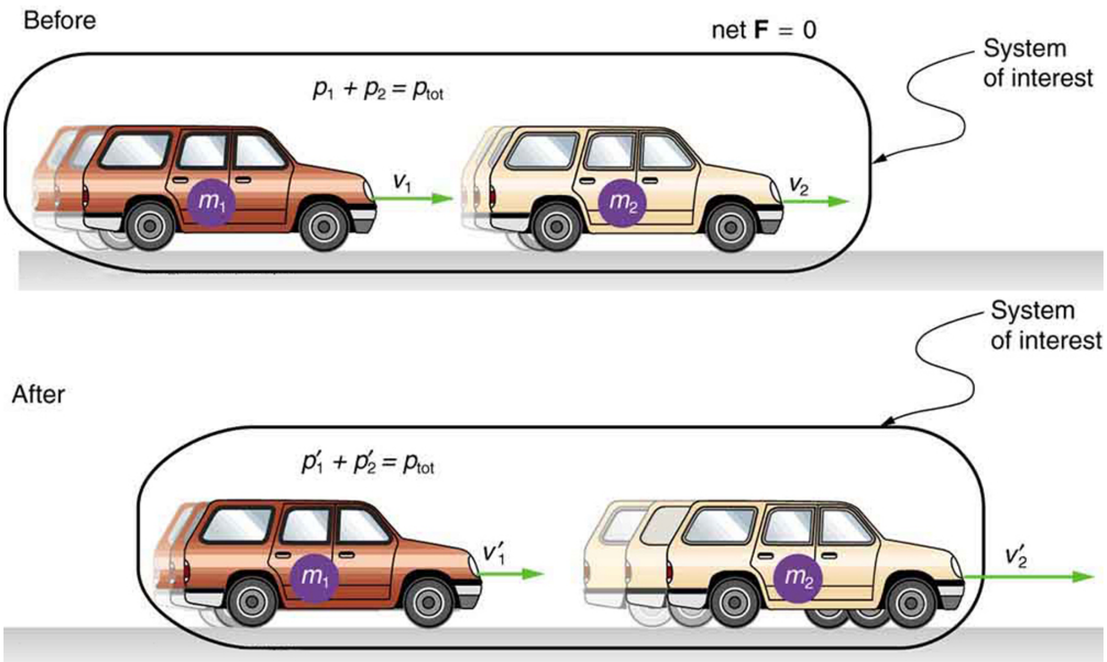
Conservation of Momentum

- Describe the principle of conservation of momentum.
- Derive an expression for the conservation of momentum.
- Explain conservation of momentum with examples.
- Explain the principle of conservation of momentum as it relates to atomic and subatomic particles.

Momentum is an important quantity because it is conserved. Yet it was not conserved in the examples in Impulse and Linear Momentum and Force, where large changes in momentum were produced by forces acting on the system of interest. Under what circumstances is momentum conserved?

The answer to this question entails considering a sufficiently large system. It is always possible to find a larger system in which total momentum is constant, even if momentum changes for components of the system. If a football player runs into the goalpost in the end zone, there will be a force on him that causes him to bounce backward. However, the Earth also recoils —conserving momentum—because of the force applied to it through the goalpost. Because Earth is many orders of magnitude more massive than the player, its recoil is immeasurably small and can be neglected in any practical sense, but it is real nevertheless.

Consider what happens if the masses of two colliding objects are more similar than the masses of a football player and Earth—for example, one car bumping into another, as shown in [link]. Both cars are coasting in the same direction when the lead car (labeled m_2) is bumped by the trailing car (labeled m_1). The only unbalanced force on each car is the force of the collision. (Assume that the effects due to friction are negligible.) Car 1 slows down as a result of the collision, losing some momentum, while car 2 speeds up and gains some momentum. We shall now show that the total momentum of the two-car system remains constant.



A car of mass m_1 moving with a velocity of v_1 bumps into another car of mass m_2 and velocity v_2 that it is following. As a result, the first car slows down to a velocity of v'_1 and the second speeds up to a velocity of v'_2. The momentum of each car is changed, but the total momentum p_{tot} of the two cars is the same before and after the collision (if you assume friction is negligible).

Using the definition of impulse, the change in momentum of car 1 is given by

Equation:

$$\Delta p_1 = F_1 \Delta t,$$

where F_1 is the force on car 1 due to car 2, and Δt is the time the force acts (the duration of the collision). Intuitively, it seems obvious that the collision time is the same for both cars, but it is only true for objects traveling at ordinary speeds. This assumption must be modified for objects travelling

near the speed of light, without affecting the result that momentum is conserved.

Similarly, the change in momentum of car 2 is
Equation:

$$\Delta p_2 = F_2 \Delta t,$$

where F_2 is the force on car 2 due to car 1, and we assume the duration of the collision Δt is the same for both cars. We know from Newton's third law that $F_2 = -F_1$, and so
Equation:

$$\Delta p_2 = -F_1 \Delta t = -\Delta p_1.$$

Thus, the changes in momentum are equal and opposite, and
Equation:

$$\Delta p_1 + \Delta p_2 = 0.$$

Because the changes in momentum add to zero, the total momentum of the two-car system is constant. That is,
Equation:

$$p_1 + p_2 = \text{constant},$$

Equation:

$$p_1 + p_2 = p\prime_1 + p\prime_2,$$

where $p\prime_1$ and $p\prime_2$ are the momenta of cars 1 and 2 after the collision. (We often use primes to denote the final state.)

This result—that momentum is conserved—has validity far beyond the preceding one-dimensional case. It can be similarly shown that total momentum is conserved for any isolated system, with any number of

objects in it. In equation form, the **conservation of momentum principle** for an isolated system is written

Equation:

$$\mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}} = \text{constant},$$

or

Equation:

$$\mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}} = \mathbf{p'}_{\text{tot}},$$

where $\mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}}$ is the total momentum (the sum of the momenta of the individual objects in the system) and $\mathbf{p'}_{\text{tot}}$ is the total momentum some time later. (The total momentum can be shown to be the momentum of the center of mass of the system.) An **isolated system** is defined to be one for which the net external force is zero $(\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = 0)$.

Note:

Conservation of Momentum Principle

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}} & = & \text{constant} \\ \mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}} & = & \mathbf{p'}_{\text{tot}} \quad (\text{isolated system}) \end{array}$$

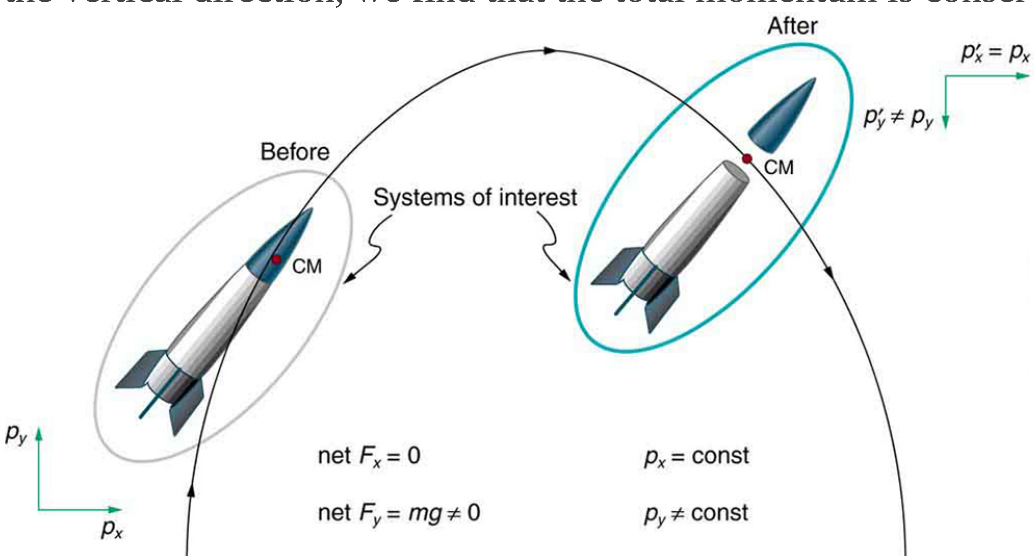
Note:

Isolated System

An isolated system is defined to be one for which the net external force is zero $(\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = 0)$.

Perhaps an easier way to see that momentum is conserved for an isolated system is to consider Newton's second law in terms of momentum, $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = \frac{\Delta \mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}}}{\Delta t}$. For an isolated system, $(\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = 0)$; thus, $\Delta \mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}} = 0$, and $\mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}}$ is constant.

We have noted that the three length dimensions in nature—x, y, and z—are independent, and it is interesting to note that momentum can be conserved in different ways along each dimension. For example, during projectile motion and where air resistance is negligible, momentum is conserved in the horizontal direction because horizontal forces are zero and momentum is unchanged. But along the vertical direction, the net vertical force is not zero and the momentum of the projectile is not conserved. (See [link].) However, if the momentum of the projectile-Earth system is considered in the vertical direction, we find that the total momentum is conserved.



The horizontal component of a projectile's momentum is conserved if air resistance is negligible, even in this case where a space probe separates. The forces causing the separation are internal to the system, so that the net external horizontal force $F_{x\text{–net}}$ is still zero. The vertical component of the momentum is not conserved, because the net vertical force $F_{y\text{–net}}$ is not zero. In the vertical direction, the space probe-Earth system needs to be considered and we find that the total momentum is conserved. The center of mass of the

space probe takes the same path it would if the separation did not occur.

The conservation of momentum principle can be applied to systems as different as a comet striking Earth and a gas containing huge numbers of atoms and molecules. Conservation of momentum is violated only when the net external force is not zero. But another larger system can always be considered in which momentum is conserved by simply including the source of the external force. For example, in the collision of two cars considered above, the two-car system conserves momentum while each one-car system does not.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Drop of Tennis Ball and a Basketball

Hold a tennis ball side by side and in contact with a basketball. Drop the balls together. (Be careful!) What happens? Explain your observations. Now hold the tennis ball above and in contact with the basketball. What happened? Explain your observations. What do you think will happen if the basketball ball is held above and in contact with the tennis ball?

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Two Tennis Balls in a Ballistic Trajectory

Tie two tennis balls together with a string about a foot long. Hold one ball and let the other hang down and throw it in a ballistic trajectory. Explain your observations. Now mark the center of the string with bright ink or attach a brightly colored sticker to it and throw again. What happened? Explain your observations.

Some aquatic animals such as jellyfish move around based on the principles of conservation of momentum. A jellyfish fills its umbrella section with water and then pushes the water out resulting in motion in the opposite direction to that of the jet of water. Squids propel themselves in a

similar manner but, in contrast with jellyfish, are able to control the direction in which they move by aiming their nozzle forward or backward. Typical squids can move at speeds of 8 to 12 km/h.
The ballistocardiograph (BCG) was a diagnostic tool used in the second half of the 20th century to study the strength of the heart. About once a second, your heart beats, forcing blood into the aorta. A force in the opposite direction is exerted on the rest of your body (recall Newton’s third law). A ballistocardiograph is a device that can measure this reaction force. This measurement is done by using a sensor (resting on the person) or by using a moving table suspended from the ceiling. This technique can gather information on the strength of the heart beat and the volume of blood passing from the heart. However, the electrocardiogram (ECG or EKG) and the echocardiogram (cardiac ECHO or ECHO; a technique that uses ultrasound to see an image of the heart) are more widely used in the practice of cardiology.

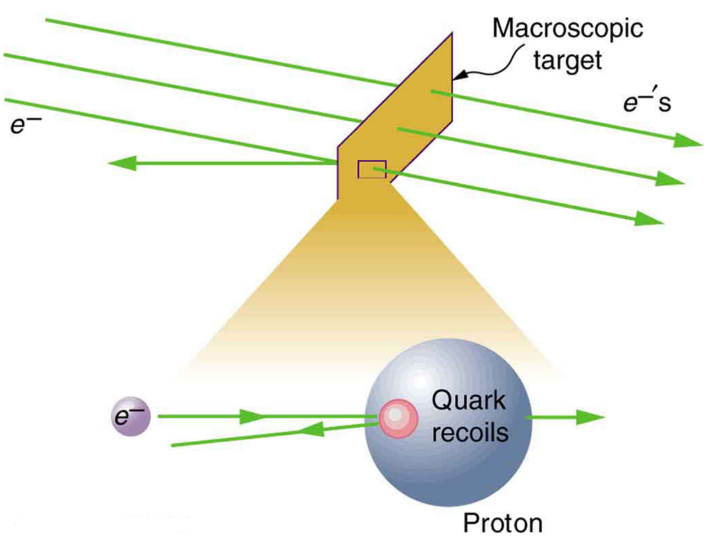
Note:
Making Connections: Conservation of Momentum and Collision
Conservation of momentum is quite useful in describing collisions. Momentum is crucial to our understanding of atomic and subatomic particles because much of what we know about these particles comes from collision experiments.

Subatomic Collisions and Momentum

The conservation of momentum principle not only applies to the macroscopic objects, it is also essential to our explorations of atomic and subatomic particles. Giant machines hurl subatomic particles at one another, and researchers evaluate the results by assuming conservation of momentum (among other things).

On the small scale, we find that particles and their properties are invisible to the naked eye but can be measured with our instruments, and models of these subatomic particles can be constructed to describe the results.

Momentum is found to be a property of all subatomic particles including massless particles such as photons that compose light. Momentum being a property of particles hints that momentum may have an identity beyond the description of an object's mass multiplied by the object's velocity. Indeed, momentum relates to wave properties and plays a fundamental role in what measurements are taken and how we take these measurements. Furthermore, we find that the conservation of momentum principle is valid when considering systems of particles. We use this principle to analyze the masses and other properties of previously undetected particles, such as the nucleus of an atom and the existence of quarks that make up particles of nuclei. [link] below illustrates how a particle scattering backward from another implies that its target is massive and dense. Experiments seeking evidence that **quarks** make up protons (one type of particle that makes up nuclei) scattered high-energy electrons off of protons (nuclei of hydrogen atoms). Electrons occasionally scattered straight backward in a manner that implied a very small and very dense particle makes up the proton—this observation is considered nearly direct evidence of quarks. The analysis was based partly on the same conservation of momentum principle that works so well on the large scale.



A subatomic particle scatters straight backward from a target particle. In experiments seeking evidence for

quarks, electrons were observed to occasionally scatter straight backward from a proton.

Section Summary

- The conservation of momentum principle is written
  Equation:
  $$\mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}} = \text{constant}$$
  or
  Equation:
  $$\mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}} = \mathbf{p'}_{\text{tot}} \;\; (\text{isolated system}),$$
  $\mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}}$ is the initial total momentum and $\mathbf{p'}_{\text{tot}}$ is the total momentum some time later.
- An isolated system is defined to be one for which the net external force is zero $(\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = 0)$.
- During projectile motion and where air resistance is negligible, momentum is conserved in the horizontal direction because horizontal forces are zero.
- Conservation of momentum applies only when the net external force is zero.
- The conservation of momentum principle is valid when considering systems of particles.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

If you dive into water, you reach greater depths than if you do a belly flop. Explain this difference in depth using the concept of conservation of energy. Explain this difference in depth using what you have learned in this chapter.

Exercise:

Problem: Under what circumstances is momentum conserved?

Exercise:

Problem:

Can momentum be conserved for a system if there are external forces acting on the system? If so, under what conditions? If not, why not?

Exercise:

Problem:

Momentum for a system can be conserved in one direction while not being conserved in another. What is the angle between the directions? Give an example.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Explain in terms of momentum and Newton’s laws how a car’s air resistance is due in part to the fact that it pushes air in its direction of motion.

Exercise:

Problem:

Can objects in a system have momentum while the momentum of the system is zero? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Must the total energy of a system be conserved whenever its momentum is conserved? Explain why or why not.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Train cars are coupled together by being bumped into one another. Suppose two loaded train cars are moving toward one another, the first having a mass of 150,000 kg and a velocity of 0.300 m/s, and the second having a mass of 110,000 kg and a velocity of -0.120 m/s. (The minus indicates direction of motion.) What is their final velocity?

Solution:

0.122 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a clay model of a koala bear has a mass of 0.200 kg and slides on ice at a speed of 0.750 m/s. It runs into another clay model, which is initially motionless and has a mass of 0.350 kg. Both being soft clay, they naturally stick together. What is their final velocity?

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Consider the following question: *A car moving at 10 m/s crashes into a tree and stops in 0.26 s. Calculate the force the seatbelt exerts on a passenger in the car to bring him to a halt. The mass of the passenger is 70 kg.* Would the answer to this question be different if the car with

the 70-kg passenger had collided with a car that has a mass equal to and is traveling in the opposite direction and at the same speed? Explain your answer.

Solution:

In a collision with an identical car, momentum is conserved. Afterwards $v_f = 0$ for both cars. The change in momentum will be the same as in the crash with the tree. However, the force on the body is not determined since the time is not known. A padded stop will reduce injurious force on body.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the velocity of a 900-kg car initially moving at 30.0 m/s, just after it hits a 150-kg deer initially running at 12.0 m/s in the same direction? Assume the deer remains on the car.

Exercise:

Problem:

A 1.80-kg falcon catches a 0.650-kg dove from behind in midair. What is their velocity after impact if the falcon's velocity is initially 28.0 m/s and the dove's velocity is 7.00 m/s in the same direction?

Solution:

22.4 m/s in the same direction as the original motion

Glossary

conservation of momentum principle
: when the net external force is zero, the total momentum of the system is conserved or constant

isolated system

a system in which the net external force is zero

quark
fundamental constituent of matter and an elementary particle

Elastic Collisions in One Dimension

- Describe an elastic collision of two objects in one dimension.
- Define internal kinetic energy.
- Derive an expression for conservation of internal kinetic energy in a one dimensional collision.
- Determine the final velocities in an elastic collision given masses and initial velocities.

Let us consider various types of two-object collisions. These collisions are the easiest to analyze, and they illustrate many of the physical principles involved in collisions. The conservation of momentum principle is very useful here, and it can be used whenever the net external force on a system is zero.

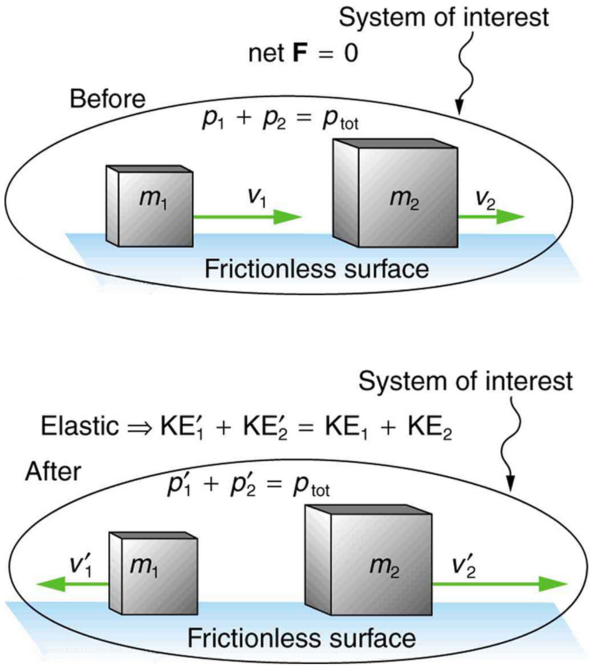
We start with the elastic collision of two objects moving along the same line—a one-dimensional problem. An **elastic collision** is one that also conserves internal kinetic energy. **Internal kinetic energy** is the sum of the kinetic energies of the objects in the system. [link] illustrates an elastic collision in which internal kinetic energy and momentum are conserved.

Truly elastic collisions can only be achieved with subatomic particles, such as electrons striking nuclei. Macroscopic collisions can be very nearly, but not quite, elastic—some kinetic energy is always converted into other forms of energy such as heat transfer due to friction and sound. One macroscopic collision that is nearly elastic is that of two steel blocks on ice. Another nearly elastic collision is that between two carts with spring bumpers on an air track. Icy surfaces and air tracks are nearly frictionless, more readily allowing nearly elastic collisions on them.

Note:
Elastic Collision
An **elastic collision** is one that conserves internal kinetic energy.

Note:
Internal Kinetic Energy

Internal kinetic energy is the sum of the kinetic energies of the objects in the system.



An elastic one-dimensional two-object collision. Momentum and internal kinetic energy are conserved.

Now, to solve problems involving one-dimensional elastic collisions between two objects we can use the equations for conservation of momentum and conservation of internal kinetic energy. First, the equation for conservation of momentum for two objects in a one-dimensional collision is

Equation:

$$p_1 + p_2 = p\prime_1 + p\prime_2 \quad (F_{\text{net}} = 0)$$

or

Equation:

$$m_1 v_1 + m_2 v_2 = m_1 v\prime_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \quad (F_{\text{net}} = 0),$$

where the primes (') indicate values after the collision. By definition, an elastic collision conserves internal kinetic energy, and so the sum of kinetic energies before the collision equals the sum after the collision. Thus,

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}m_1 {v_1}^2 + \frac{1}{2}m_2 {v_2}^2 = \frac{1}{2}m_1 {v\prime_1}^2 + \frac{1}{2}m_2 {v\prime_2}^2 \ \text{(two-object elastic collision)}$$

expresses the equation for conservation of internal kinetic energy in a one-dimensional collision.

Example:

Calculating Velocities Following an Elastic Collision

Calculate the velocities of two objects following an elastic collision, given that

Equation:

$$m_1 = 0.500\text{ kg},\ m_2 = 3.50\text{ kg},\ v_1 = 4.00\text{ m/s, and }\ v_2 = 0.$$

Strategy and Concept

First, visualize what the initial conditions mean—a small object strikes a larger object that is initially at rest. This situation is slightly simpler than the situation shown in [link] where both objects are initially moving. We are asked to find two unknowns (the final velocities $v\prime_1$ and $v\prime_2$). To find two unknowns, we must use two independent equations. Because this collision is elastic, we can use the above two equations. Both can be simplified by the fact that object 2 is initially at rest, and thus $v_2 = 0$. Once we simplify these equations, we combine them algebraically to solve for the unknowns.

Solution

For this problem, note that $v_2 = 0$ and use conservation of momentum. Thus,

Equation:

$$p_1 = p\prime_1 + p\prime_2$$

or

Equation:

$$m_1 v_1 = m_1 v\prime_1 + m_2 v\prime_2.$$

Using conservation of internal kinetic energy and that $v_2 = 0$,

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2} m_1 {v_1}^2 = \frac{1}{2} m_1 {v\prime_1}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m_2 {v\prime_2}^2.$$

Solving the first equation (momentum equation) for $v\prime_2$, we obtain

Equation:

$$v\prime_2 = \frac{m_1}{m_2}(v_1 - v\prime_1).$$

Substituting this expression into the second equation (internal kinetic energy equation) eliminates the variable $v\prime_2$, leaving only $v\prime_1$ as an unknown (the algebra is left as an exercise for the reader). There are two solutions to any quadratic equation; in this example, they are

Equation:

$$v\prime_1 = 4.00\ \text{m/s}$$

and

Equation:

$$v\prime_1 = -3.00\ \text{m/s}.$$

As noted when quadratic equations were encountered in earlier chapters, both solutions may or may not be meaningful. In this case, the first solution is the same as the initial condition. The first solution thus represents the situation before the collision and is discarded. The second solution $(v\prime_1 = -3.00\ \text{m/s})$ is negative, meaning that the first object bounces backward. When this negative value of $v\prime_1$ is used to find the velocity of the second object after the collision, we get

Equation:

$$v'_2 = \frac{m_1}{m_2}(v_1 - v'_1) = \frac{0.500\ \text{kg}}{3.50\ \text{kg}}[4.00 - (-3.00)]\ \text{m/s}$$

or

Equation:

$$v'_2 = 1.00\ \text{m/s}.$$

Discussion

The result of this example is intuitively reasonable. A small object strikes a larger one at rest and bounces backward. The larger one is knocked forward, but with a low speed. (This is like a compact car bouncing backward off a full-size SUV that is initially at rest.) As a check, try calculating the internal kinetic energy before and after the collision. You will see that the internal kinetic energy is unchanged at 4.00 J. Also check the total momentum before and after the collision; you will find it, too, is unchanged.

The equations for conservation of momentum and internal kinetic energy as written above can be used to describe any one-dimensional elastic collision of two objects. These equations can be extended to more objects if needed.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Ice Cubes and Elastic Collision

Find a few ice cubes which are about the same size and a smooth kitchen tabletop or a table with a glass top. Place the ice cubes on the surface several centimeters away from each other. Flick one ice cube toward a stationary ice cube and observe the path and velocities of the ice cubes after the collision. Try to avoid edge-on collisions and collisions with rotating ice cubes. Have you created approximately elastic collisions? Explain the speeds and directions of the ice cubes using momentum.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Collision Lab

Investigate collisions on an air hockey table. Set up your own experiments: vary the number of discs, masses and initial conditions. Is momentum

conserved? Is kinetic energy conserved? Vary the elasticity and see what happens.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/collision-lab/collision-lab_en.html

Section Summary

- An elastic collision is one that conserves internal kinetic energy.
- Conservation of kinetic energy and momentum together allow the final velocities to be calculated in terms of initial velocities and masses in one dimensional two-body collisions.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: What is an elastic collision?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Two identical objects (such as billiard balls) have a one-dimensional collision in which one is initially motionless. After the collision, the moving object is stationary and the other moves with the same speed as the other originally had. Show that both momentum and kinetic energy are conserved.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Two manned satellites approach one another at a relative speed of 0.250 m/s, intending to dock. The first has a mass of 4.00×10^3 kg, and the

second a mass of 7.50×10^3 kg. If the two satellites collide elastically rather than dock, what is their final relative velocity?

Solution:

0.250 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

A 70.0-kg ice hockey goalie, originally at rest, catches a 0.150-kg hockey puck slapped at him at a velocity of 35.0 m/s. Suppose the goalie and the ice puck have an elastic collision and the puck is reflected back in the direction from which it came. What would their final velocities be in this case?

Glossary

elastic collision
: a collision that also conserves internal kinetic energy

internal kinetic energy
: the sum of the kinetic energies of the objects in a system

Inelastic Collisions in One Dimension

- Define inelastic collision.
- Explain perfectly inelastic collision.
- Apply an understanding of collisions to sports.
- Determine recoil velocity and loss in kinetic energy given mass and initial velocity.

We have seen that in an elastic collision, internal kinetic energy is conserved. An **inelastic collision** is one in which the internal kinetic energy changes (it is not conserved). This lack of conservation means that the forces between colliding objects may remove or add internal kinetic energy. Work done by internal forces may change the forms of energy within a system. For inelastic collisions, such as when colliding objects stick together, this internal work may transform some internal kinetic energy into heat transfer. Or it may convert stored energy into internal kinetic energy, such as when exploding bolts separate a satellite from its launch vehicle.

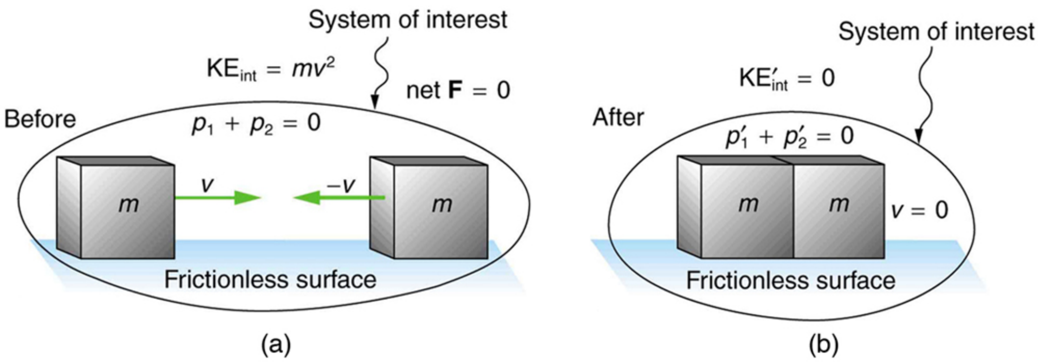
> **Note:**
> Inelastic Collision
> An inelastic collision is one in which the internal kinetic energy changes (it is not conserved).

[link] shows an example of an inelastic collision. Two objects that have equal masses head toward one another at equal speeds and then stick together. Their total internal kinetic energy is initially $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = mv^2$. The two objects come to rest after sticking together, conserving momentum. But the internal kinetic energy is zero after the collision. A collision in which the objects stick together is sometimes called a **perfectly inelastic collision** because it reduces internal kinetic energy more than does any other type of inelastic collision. In fact, such a collision reduces internal kinetic energy to the minimum it can have while still conserving momentum.

Note:

Perfectly Inelastic Collision

A collision in which the objects stick together is sometimes called "perfectly inelastic."

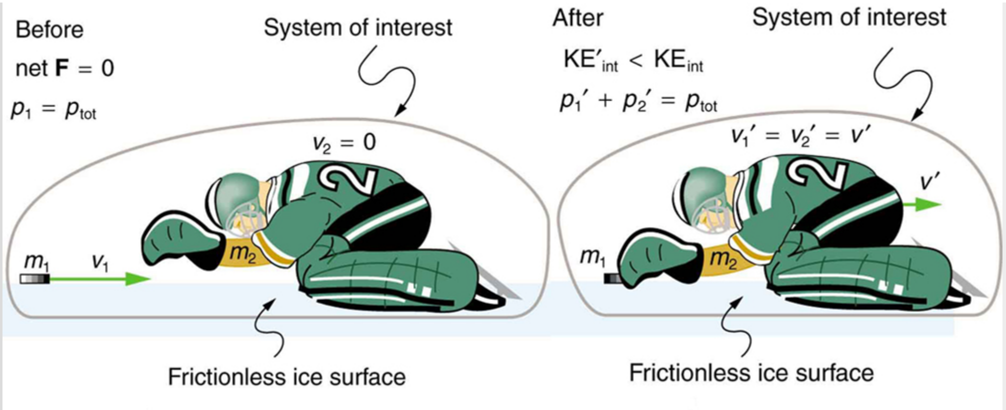


An inelastic one-dimensional two-object collision. Momentum is conserved, but internal kinetic energy is not conserved. (a) Two objects of equal mass initially head directly toward one another at the same speed. (b) The objects stick together (a perfectly inelastic collision), and so their final velocity is zero. The internal kinetic energy of the system changes in any inelastic collision and is reduced to zero in this example.

Example:

Calculating Velocity and Change in Kinetic Energy: Inelastic Collision of a Puck and a Goalie

(a) Find the recoil velocity of a 70.0-kg ice hockey goalie, originally at rest, who catches a 0.150-kg hockey puck slapped at him at a velocity of 35.0 m/s. (b) How much kinetic energy is lost during the collision? Assume friction between the ice and the puck-goalie system is negligible. (See [link])



An ice hockey goalie catches a hockey puck and recoils backward. The initial kinetic energy of the puck is almost entirely converted to thermal energy and sound in this inelastic collision.

Strategy
Momentum is conserved because the net external force on the puck-goalie system is zero. We can thus use conservation of momentum to find the final velocity of the puck and goalie system. Note that the initial velocity of the goalie is zero and that the final velocity of the puck and goalie are the same. Once the final velocity is found, the kinetic energies can be calculated before and after the collision and compared as requested.

Solution for (a)
Momentum is conserved because the net external force on the puck-goalie system is zero.
Conservation of momentum is

Equation:

$$p_1 + p_2 = p\prime_1 + p\prime_2$$

or

Equation:

$$m_1 v_1 + m_2 v_2 = m_1 v\prime_1 + m_2 v\prime_2.$$

Because the goalie is initially at rest, we know $v_2 = 0$. Because the goalie catches the puck, the final velocities are equal, or $v\prime_1 = v\prime_2 = v\prime$. Thus, the

conservation of momentum equation simplifies to

Equation:

$$m_1 v_1 = (m_1 + m_2)v\prime.$$

Solving for $v\prime$ yields

Equation:

$$v\prime = \frac{m_1}{m_1 + m_2} v_1.$$

Entering known values in this equation, we get

Equation:

$$v\prime = \left(\frac{0.150\ \text{kg}}{0.150\ \text{kg} + 70.0\ \text{kg}}\right)(35.0\ \text{m/s}) = 7.48 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m/s}.$$

Discussion for (a)

This recoil velocity is small and in the same direction as the puck's original velocity, as we might expect.

Solution for (b)

Before the collision, the internal kinetic energy KE_{int} of the system is that of the hockey puck, because the goalie is initially at rest. Therefore, KE_{int} is initially

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{KE}_{\text{int}} &= \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.150\ \text{kg})(35.0\ \text{m/s})^2 \\ &= 91.9\ \text{J}. \end{aligned}$$

After the collision, the internal kinetic energy is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{KE}\prime_{\text{int}} &= \tfrac{1}{2}(m + M)v^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(70.15\ \text{kg})\left(7.48 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m/s}\right)^2 \\ &= 0.196\ \text{J}. \end{aligned}$$

The change in internal kinetic energy is thus

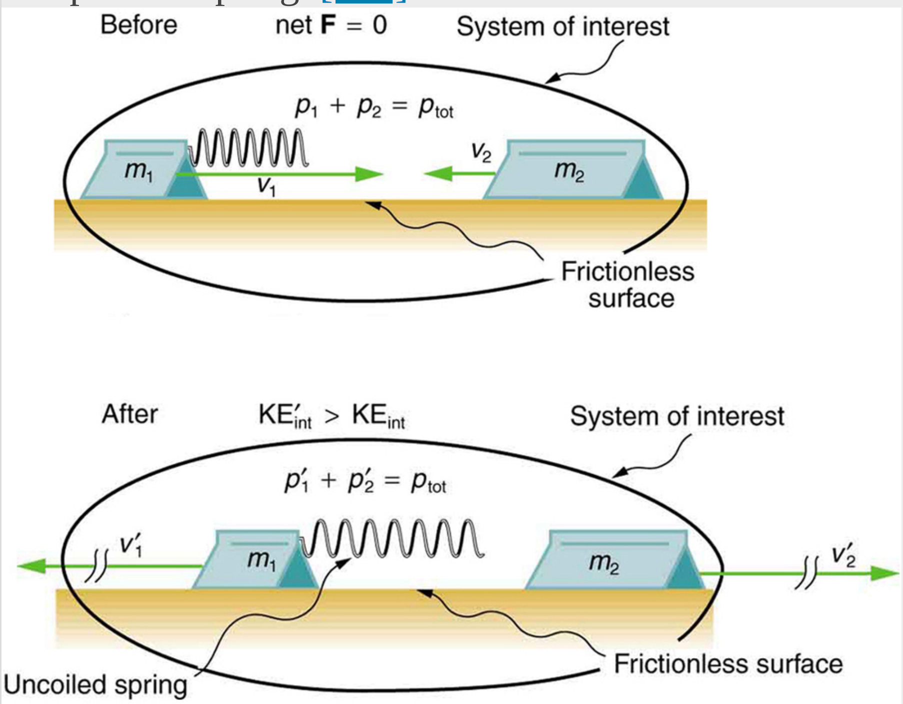
Equation:

$$
\begin{array}{rcl}
\mathrm{KE}'_{\mathrm{int}} - \mathrm{KE}_{\mathrm{int}} & = & 0.196\ \mathrm{J} - 91.9\ \mathrm{J} \\
 & = & -91.7\ \mathrm{J}
\end{array}
$$

where the minus sign indicates that the energy was lost.

Discussion for (b)

Nearly all of the initial internal kinetic energy is lost in this perfectly inelastic collision. $\mathrm{KE}_{\mathrm{int}}$ is mostly converted to thermal energy and sound. During some collisions, the objects do not stick together and less of the internal kinetic energy is removed—such as happens in most automobile accidents. Alternatively, stored energy may be converted into internal kinetic energy during a collision. [link] shows a one-dimensional example in which two carts on an air track collide, releasing potential energy from a compressed spring. [link] deals with data from such a collision.



An air track is nearly frictionless, so that momentum is conserved. Motion is one-dimensional. In this collision, examined in [link], the potential energy of a compressed spring is released during the collision and is converted to internal kinetic energy.

Collisions are particularly important in sports and the sporting and leisure industry utilizes elastic and inelastic collisions. Let us look briefly at tennis. Recall that in a collision, it is momentum and not force that is important. So, a heavier tennis racquet will have the advantage over a lighter one. This conclusion also holds true for other sports—a lightweight bat (such as a softball bat) cannot hit a hardball very far.

The location of the impact of the tennis ball on the racquet is also important, as is the part of the stroke during which the impact occurs. A smooth motion results in the maximizing of the velocity of the ball after impact and reduces sports injuries such as tennis elbow. A tennis player tries to hit the ball on the “sweet spot” on the racquet, where the vibration and impact are minimized and the ball is able to be given more velocity. Sports science and technologies also use physics concepts such as momentum and rotational motion and vibrations.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment—Bouncing of Tennis Ball

1. Find a racquet (a tennis, badminton, or other racquet will do). Place the racquet on the floor and stand on the handle. Drop a tennis ball on the strings from a measured height. Measure how high the ball bounces. Now ask a friend to hold the racquet firmly by the handle and drop a tennis ball from the same measured height above the racquet. Measure how high the ball bounces and observe what happens to your friend’s hand during the collision. Explain your observations and measurements.
2. The coefficient of restitution (c) is a measure of the elasticity of a collision between a ball and an object, and is defined as the ratio of the speeds after and before the collision. A perfectly elastic collision has a c of 1. For a ball bouncing off the floor (or a racquet on the floor), c can be shown to be $c = (h/H)^{1/2}$ where h is the height to which the ball bounces and H is the height from which the ball is dropped. Determine c for the cases in Part 1 and for the case of a tennis ball bouncing off a concrete or wooden floor ($c = 0.85$ for new tennis balls used on a tennis court).

Example:

Calculating Final Velocity and Energy Release: Two Carts Collide

In the collision pictured in [link], two carts collide inelastically. Cart 1 (denoted m_1 carries a spring which is initially compressed. During the collision, the spring releases its potential energy and converts it to internal kinetic energy. The mass of cart 1 and the spring is 0.350 kg, and the cart and the spring together have an initial velocity of 2.00 m/s. Cart 2 (denoted m_2 in [link]) has a mass of 0.500 kg and an initial velocity of -0.500 m/s. After the collision, cart 1 is observed to recoil with a velocity of -4.00 m/s. (a) What is the final velocity of cart 2? (b) How much energy was released by the spring (assuming all of it was converted into internal kinetic energy)?

Strategy

We can use conservation of momentum to find the final velocity of cart 2, because $F_{\text{net}}=0$ (the track is frictionless and the force of the spring is internal). Once this velocity is determined, we can compare the internal kinetic energy before and after the collision to see how much energy was released by the spring.

Solution for (a)

As before, the equation for conservation of momentum in a two-object system is

Equation:

$$m_1v_1+m_2v_2=m_1v'_1+m_2v'_2.$$

The only unknown in this equation is v'_2. Solving for v'_2 and substituting known values into the previous equation yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v'_2 &= \frac{m_1v_1+m_2v_2-m_1v'_1}{m_2} \\ &= \frac{(0.350\text{ kg})(2.00\text{ m/s})+(0.500\text{ kg})(-0.500\text{ m/s})}{0.500\text{ kg}}-\frac{(0.350\text{ kg})(-4.00\text{ m/s})}{0.500\text{ kg}} \\ &= 3.70\text{ m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (b)

The internal kinetic energy before the collision is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{KE}_{\mathrm{int}} &= \tfrac{1}{2}m_1v_1^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}m_2v_2^2 \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(0.350\ \mathrm{kg})(2.00\ \mathrm{m/s})^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}(0.500\ \mathrm{kg})(-0.500\ \mathrm{m/s})^2 \\ &= 0.763\ \mathrm{J}.\end{aligned}$$

After the collision, the internal kinetic energy is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{KE}'_{\mathrm{int}} &= \tfrac{1}{2}m_1v_1'^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}m_2v_2'^2 \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(0.350\ \mathrm{kg})(-4.00\ \mathrm{m/s})^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}(0.500\ \mathrm{kg})(3.70\ \mathrm{m/s})^2 \\ &= 6.22\ \mathrm{J}.\end{aligned}$$

The change in internal kinetic energy is thus

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{KE}'_{\mathrm{int}} - \mathrm{KE}_{\mathrm{int}} &= 6.22\ \mathrm{J} - 0.763\ \mathrm{J} \\ &= 5.46\ \mathrm{J}.\end{aligned}$$

Discussion

The final velocity of cart 2 is large and positive, meaning that it is moving to the right after the collision. The internal kinetic energy in this collision increases by 5.46 J. That energy was released by the spring.

Section Summary

- An inelastic collision is one in which the internal kinetic energy changes (it is not conserved).
- A collision in which the objects stick together is sometimes called perfectly inelastic because it reduces internal kinetic energy more than does any other type of inelastic collision.

- Sports science and technologies also use physics concepts such as momentum and rotational motion and vibrations.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is an inelastic collision? What is a perfectly inelastic collision?

Exercise:

Problem:

Mixed-pair ice skaters performing in a show are standing motionless at arms length just before starting a routine. They reach out, clasp hands, and pull themselves together by only using their arms. Assuming there is no friction between the blades of their skates and the ice, what is their velocity after their bodies meet?

Exercise:

Problem:

A small pickup truck that has a camper shell slowly coasts toward a red light with negligible friction. Two dogs in the back of the truck are moving and making various inelastic collisions with each other and the walls. What is the effect of the dogs on the motion of the center of mass of the system (truck plus entire load)? What is their effect on the motion of the truck?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A 0.240-kg billiard ball that is moving at 3.00 m/s strikes the bumper of a pool table and bounces straight back at 2.40 m/s (80% of its original speed). The collision lasts 0.0150 s. (a) Calculate the average force exerted on the ball by the bumper. (b) How much kinetic energy in joules is lost during the collision? (c) What percent of the original energy is left?

Solution:

(a) 86.4 N perpendicularly away from the bumper

(b) 0.389 J

(c) 64.0%

Exercise:

Problem:

During an ice show, a 60.0-kg skater leaps into the air and is caught by an initially stationary 75.0-kg skater. (a) What is their final velocity assuming negligible friction and that the 60.0-kg skater's original horizontal velocity is 4.00 m/s? (b) How much kinetic energy is lost?

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

Using mass and speed data from [link] and assuming that the football player catches the ball with his feet off the ground with both of them moving horizontally, calculate: (a) the final velocity if the ball and player are going in the same direction and (b) the loss of kinetic energy in this case. (c) Repeat parts (a) and (b) for the situation in which the ball and the player are going in opposite directions. Might the loss of kinetic energy be related to how much it hurts to catch the pass?

Solution:

(a) 8.06 m/s

(b) -56.0 J

(c)(i) 7.88 m/s; (ii) -223 J

Exercise:

Problem:

A battleship that is 6.00×10^7 kg and is originally at rest fires a 1100-kg artillery shell horizontally with a velocity of 575 m/s. (a) If the shell is fired straight aft (toward the rear of the ship), there will be negligible friction opposing the ship's recoil. Calculate its recoil velocity. (b) Calculate the increase in internal kinetic energy (that is, for the ship and the shell). This energy is less than the energy released by the gun powder—significant heat transfer occurs.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Two manned satellites approaching one another, at a relative speed of 0.250 m/s, intending to dock. The first has a mass of 4.00×10^3 kg, and the second a mass of 7.50×10^3 kg. (a) Calculate the final velocity (after docking) by using the frame of reference in which the first satellite was originally at rest. (b) What is the loss of kinetic energy in this inelastic collision? (c) Repeat both parts by using the frame of reference in which the second satellite was originally at rest. Explain why the change in velocity is different in the two frames, whereas the change in kinetic energy is the same in both.

Solution:

(a) 0.163 m/s in the direction of motion of the more massive satellite

(b) 81.6 J

(c) $8.70 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m/s}$ in the direction of motion of the less massive satellite, 81.5 J. Because there are no external forces, the velocity of the center of mass of the two-satellite system is unchanged by the collision. The two velocities calculated above are the velocity of the center of mass in each of the two different individual reference frames. The loss in KE is the same in both reference frames because the KE lost to internal forces (heat, friction, etc.) is the same regardless of the coordinate system chosen.

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

A 30,000-kg freight car is coasting at 0.850 m/s with negligible friction under a hopper that dumps 110,000 kg of scrap metal into it. (a) What is the final velocity of the loaded freight car? (b) How much kinetic energy is lost?

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

Space probes may be separated from their launchers by exploding bolts. (They bolt away from one another.) Suppose a 4800-kg satellite uses this method to separate from the 1500-kg remains of its launcher, and that 5000 J of kinetic energy is supplied to the two parts. What are their subsequent velocities using the frame of reference in which they were at rest before separation?

Solution:

0.704 m/s

–2.25 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

A 0.0250-kg bullet is accelerated from rest to a speed of 550 m/s in a 3.00-kg rifle. The pain of the rifle's kick is much worse if you hold the gun loosely a few centimeters from your shoulder rather than holding it tightly against your shoulder. (a) Calculate the recoil velocity of the rifle if it is held loosely away from the shoulder. (b) How much kinetic energy does the rifle gain? (c) What is the recoil velocity if the rifle is held tightly against the shoulder, making the effective mass 28.0 kg? (d) How much kinetic energy is transferred to the rifle-shoulder combination? The pain is related to the amount of kinetic energy, which is significantly less in this latter situation. (e) Calculate the momentum of a 110-kg football player running at 8.00 m/s. Compare the player's momentum with the momentum of a hard-thrown 0.410-kg football that has a speed of 25.0 m/s. Discuss its relationship to this problem.

Solution:

(a) 4.58 m/s away from the bullet

(b) 31.5 J

(c) –0.491 m/s

(d) 3.38 J

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

One of the waste products of a nuclear reactor is plutonium-239 $\left({}^{239}\text{Pu}\right)$. This nucleus is radioactive and decays by splitting into a helium-4 nucleus and a uranium-235 nucleus $\left({}^{4}\text{He} + {}^{235}\text{U}\right)$, the latter of which is also radioactive and will itself decay some time later. The energy emitted in the plutonium decay is $8.40 \times 10^{-13}\text{ J}$ and is entirely converted to kinetic energy of the helium and uranium nuclei.

The mass of the helium nucleus is 6.68×10^{-27} kg, while that of the uranium is 3.92×10^{-25} kg (note that the ratio of the masses is 4 to 235). (a) Calculate the velocities of the two nuclei, assuming the plutonium nucleus is originally at rest. (b) How much kinetic energy does each nucleus carry away? Note that the data given here are accurate to three digits only.

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

The Moon's craters are remnants of meteorite collisions. Suppose a fairly large asteroid that has a mass of 5.00×10^{12} kg (about a kilometer across) strikes the Moon at a speed of 15.0 km/s. (a) At what speed does the Moon recoil after the perfectly inelastic collision (the mass of the Moon is 7.36×10^{22} kg) ? (b) How much kinetic energy is lost in the collision? Such an event may have been observed by medieval English monks who reported observing a red glow and subsequent haze about the Moon. (c) In October 2009, NASA crashed a rocket into the Moon, and analyzed the plume produced by the impact. (Significant amounts of water were detected.) Answer part (a) and (b) for this real-life experiment. The mass of the rocket was 2000 kg and its speed upon impact was 9000 km/h. How does the plume produced alter these results?

Solution:

(a) $1.02 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m/s}$

(b) 5.63×10^{20} J (almost all KE lost)

(c) Recoil speed is $6.79 \times 10^{-17}\ \mathrm{m/s}$, energy lost is 6.25×10^{9} J. The plume will not affect the momentum result because the plume is still part of the Moon system. The plume may affect the kinetic energy result because a significant part of the initial kinetic energy may be transferred to the kinetic energy of the plume particles.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Two football players collide head-on in midair while trying to catch a thrown football. The first player is 95.0 kg and has an initial velocity of 6.00 m/s, while the second player is 115 kg and has an initial velocity of –3.50 m/s. What is their velocity just after impact if they cling together?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the speed of a garbage truck that is 1.20×10^4 kg and is initially moving at 25.0 m/s just after it hits and adheres to a trash can that is 80.0 kg and is initially at rest?

Solution:

24.8 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

During a circus act, an elderly performer thrills the crowd by catching a cannon ball shot at him. The cannon ball has a mass of 10.0 kg and the horizontal component of its velocity is 8.00 m/s when the 65.0-kg performer catches it. If the performer is on nearly frictionless roller skates, what is his recoil velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) During an ice skating performance, an initially motionless 80.0-kg clown throws a fake barbell away. The clown's ice skates allow her to recoil frictionlessly. If the clown recoils with a velocity of 0.500 m/s and the barbell is thrown with a velocity of 10.0 m/s, what is the mass of the barbell? (b) How much kinetic energy is gained by this maneuver? (c) Where does the kinetic energy come from?

Solution:

(a) 4.00 kg

(b) 210 J

(c) The clown does work to throw the barbell, so the kinetic energy comes from the muscles of the clown. The muscles convert the chemical potential energy of ATP into kinetic energy.

Glossary

inelastic collision
: a collision in which internal kinetic energy is not conserved

perfectly inelastic collision
: a collision in which the colliding objects stick together

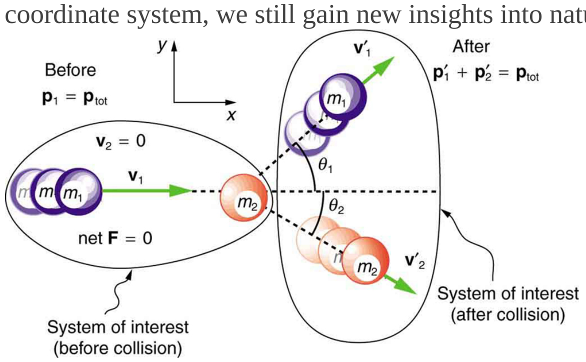
Collisions of Point Masses in Two Dimensions

- Discuss two dimensional collisions as an extension of one dimensional analysis.
- Define point masses.
- Derive an expression for conservation of momentum along x-axis and y-axis.
- Describe elastic collisions of two objects with equal mass.
- Determine the magnitude and direction of the final velocity given initial velocity, and scattering angle.

In the previous two sections, we considered only one-dimensional collisions; during such collisions, the incoming and outgoing velocities are all along the same line. But what about collisions, such as those between billiard balls, in which objects scatter to the side? These are two-dimensional collisions, and we shall see that their study is an extension of the one-dimensional analysis already presented. The approach taken (similar to the approach in discussing two-dimensional kinematics and dynamics) is to choose a convenient coordinate system and resolve the motion into components along perpendicular axes. Resolving the motion yields a pair of one-dimensional problems to be solved simultaneously.

One complication arising in two-dimensional collisions is that the objects might rotate before or after their collision. For example, if two ice skaters hook arms as they pass by one another, they will spin in circles. We will not consider such rotation until later, and so for now we arrange things so that no rotation is possible. To avoid rotation, we consider only the scattering of **point masses**—that is, structureless particles that cannot rotate or spin.

We start by assuming that $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = 0$, so that momentum $\mathbf{p}$ is conserved. The simplest collision is one in which one of the particles is initially at rest. (See [link].) The best choice for a coordinate system is one with an axis parallel to the velocity of the incoming particle, as shown in [link]. Because momentum is conserved, the components of momentum along the x- and y-axes $(p_x \text{ and } p_y)$ will also be conserved, but with the chosen coordinate system, p_y is initially zero and p_x is the momentum of the incoming particle. Both facts simplify the analysis. (Even with the simplifying assumptions of point masses, one particle initially at rest, and a convenient coordinate system, we still gain new insights into nature from the analysis of two-dimensional collisions.)



A two-dimensional collision with the coordinate system chosen so that m_2 is initially at rest and v_1 is parallel to the x -axis. This coordinate system is sometimes called the laboratory coordinate system, because many scattering experiments have a target that is stationary in the laboratory, while particles are scattered from it to determine the particles that make-up the target and how they are bound together. The particles may not be observed directly, but their initial and final velocities are.

Along the x-axis, the equation for conservation of momentum is
Equation:

$$p_{1x} + p_{2x} = p\prime_{1x} + p\prime_{2x}.$$

Where the subscripts denote the particles and axes and the primes denote the situation after the collision. In terms of masses and velocities, this equation is
Equation:

$$m_1 v_{1x} + m_2 v_{2x} = m_1 v\prime_{1x} + m_2 v\prime_{2x}.$$

But because particle 2 is initially at rest, this equation becomes
Equation:

$$m_1 v_{1x} = m_1 v\prime_{1x} + m_2 v\prime_{2x}.$$

The components of the velocities along the x-axis have the form v cos θ. Because particle 1 initially moves along the x-axis, we find $v_{1x} = v_1$.

Conservation of momentum along the x-axis gives the following equation:
Equation:

$$m_1 v_1 = m_1 v\prime_1 \cos \theta_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \cos \theta_2,$$

where θ_1 and θ_2 are as shown in [link].

Note:
Conservation of Momentum along the x-axis
Equation:

$$m_1 v_1 = m_1 v\prime_1 \cos \theta_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \cos \theta_2$$

Along the y-axis, the equation for conservation of momentum is
Equation:

$$p_{1y} + p_{2y} = p\prime_{1y} + p\prime_{2y}$$

or
Equation:

$$m_1 v_{1y} + m_2 v_{2y} = m_1 v\prime_{1y} + m_2 v\prime_{2y}.$$

But v_{1y} is zero, because particle 1 initially moves along the x-axis. Because particle 2 is initially at rest, v_{2y} is also zero. The equation for conservation of momentum along the y-axis becomes
Equation:

$$0 = m_1 v\prime_{1y} + m_2 v\prime_{2y}.$$

The components of the velocities along the y-axis have the form $v \sin \theta$.

Thus, conservation of momentum along the y-axis gives the following equation:
Equation:

$$0 = m_1 v\prime_1 \sin \theta_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \sin \theta_2.$$

Note:
Conservation of Momentum along the y-axis
Equation:

$$0 = m_1 v\prime_1 \sin \theta_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \sin \theta_2$$

The equations of conservation of momentum along the x-axis and y-axis are very useful in analyzing two-dimensional collisions of particles, where one is originally stationary (a common laboratory situation). But two equations can only be used to find two unknowns, and so other data may be necessary when collision experiments are used to explore nature at the subatomic level.

Example:
Determining the Final Velocity of an Unseen Object from the Scattering of Another Object
Suppose the following experiment is performed. A 0.250-kg object (m_1) is slid on a frictionless surface into a dark room, where it strikes an initially stationary object with mass of 0.400 kg (m_2). The 0.250-kg object emerges from the room at an angle of 45.0º with its incoming direction.
The speed of the 0.250-kg object is originally 2.00 m/s and is 1.50 m/s after the collision. Calculate the magnitude and direction of the velocity $(v\prime_2 \text{ and } \theta_2)$ of the 0.400-kg object after the collision.
Strategy
Momentum is conserved because the surface is frictionless. The coordinate system shown in [link] is one in which m_2 is originally at rest and the initial velocity is parallel to the x-axis, so that conservation of momentum along the x- and y-axes is applicable.
Everything is known in these equations except $v\prime_2$ and θ_2, which are precisely the quantities we wish to find. We can find two unknowns because we have two independent equations: the equations describing the conservation of momentum in the x- and y-directions.
Solution
Solving $m_1 v_1 = m_1 v\prime_1 \cos \theta_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \cos \theta_2$ for $v_2' \cos \theta_2$ and $0 = m_1 v\prime_1 \sin \theta_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \sin \theta_2$ for $v\prime_2 \sin \theta_2$ and taking the ratio yields an equation (in which θ_2 is the only unknown quantity. Applying the identity $\left(\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}\right)$, we obtain:
Equation:

$$\tan \theta_2 = \frac{v\prime_1 \sin \theta_1}{v\prime_1 \cos \theta_1 - v_1}.$$

Entering known values into the previous equation gives
Equation:

$$\tan \theta_2 = \frac{(1.50 \text{ m/s})(0.7071)}{(1.50 \text{ m/s})(0.7071) - 2.00 \text{ m/s}} = -1.129.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\theta_2 = \tan^{-1}(-1.129) = 311.5^{\circ} \approx 312^{\circ}.$$

Angles are defined as positive in the counter clockwise direction, so this angle indicates that m_2 is scattered to the right in [link], as expected (this angle is in the fourth quadrant). Either equation for the x- or y-axis can now be used to solve for $v\prime_2$, but the latter equation is easiest because it has fewer terms.

Equation:

$$v\prime_2 = -\frac{m_1}{m_2} v\prime_1 \frac{\sin\theta_1}{\sin\theta_2}$$

Entering known values into this equation gives

Equation:

$$v\prime_2 = -\left(\frac{0.250\text{ kg}}{0.400\text{ kg}}\right)(1.50\text{ m/s})\left(\frac{0.7071}{-0.7485}\right).$$

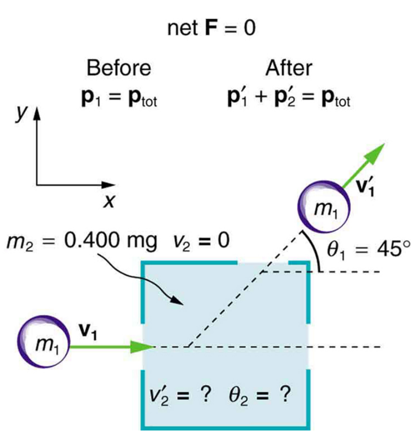
Thus,

Equation:

$$v\prime_2 = 0.886\text{ m/s}.$$

Discussion

It is instructive to calculate the internal kinetic energy of this two-object system before and after the collision. (This calculation is left as an end-of-chapter problem.) If you do this calculation, you will find that the internal kinetic energy is less after the collision, and so the collision is inelastic. This type of result makes a physicist want to explore the system further.



A collision taking place in a dark room is explored in [link]. The incoming object m_1 is scattered by an initially stationary object. Only the stationary object's mass m_2 is known. By measuring the angle and speed at which m_1 emerges from the room, it is possible to calculate the magnitude and

direction of the initially stationary object’s velocity after the collision.

Elastic Collisions of Two Objects with Equal Mass

Some interesting situations arise when the two colliding objects have equal mass and the collision is elastic. This situation is nearly the case with colliding billiard balls, and precisely the case with some subatomic particle collisions. We can thus get a mental image of a collision of subatomic particles by thinking about billiards (or pool). (Refer to [link] for masses and angles.) First, an elastic collision conserves internal kinetic energy. Again, let us assume object 2 (m_2) is initially at rest. Then, the internal kinetic energy before and after the collision of two objects that have equal masses is

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}m{v_1}^2=\frac{1}{2}m{v\prime_1}^2+\frac{1}{2}m{v\prime_2}^2.$$

Because the masses are equal, $m_1=m_2=m$. Algebraic manipulation (left to the reader) of conservation of momentum in the x- and y-directions can show that

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}m{v_1}^2=\frac{1}{2}m{v\prime_1}^2+\frac{1}{2}m{v\prime_2}^2+mv\prime_1v\prime_2\cos(\theta_1-\theta_2).$$

(Remember that θ_2 is negative here.) The two preceding equations can both be true only if

Equation:

$$mv\prime_1v\prime_2\cos(\theta_1-\theta_2)=0.$$

There are three ways that this term can be zero. They are

- $v\prime_1=0$: head-on collision; incoming ball stops
- $v\prime_2=0$: no collision; incoming ball continues unaffected
- $\cos(\theta_1-\theta_2)=0$: angle of separation $(\theta_1-\theta_2)$ is 90º after the collision

All three of these ways are familiar occurrences in billiards and pool, although most of us try to avoid the second. If you play enough pool, you will notice that the angle between the balls is very close to 90º after the collision, although it will vary from this value if a great deal of spin is placed on the ball. (Large spin carries in extra energy and a quantity called *angular momentum*, which must also be conserved.) The assumption that the scattering of billiard balls is elastic is reasonable based on the correctness of the three results it produces. This assumption also implies that, to a good approximation, momentum is conserved for the two-ball system in billiards and pool. The problems below explore these and other characteristics of two-dimensional collisions.

Note:
Connections to Nuclear and Particle Physics
Two-dimensional collision experiments have revealed much of what we know about subatomic particles, as we shall see in Medical Applications of Nuclear Physics and Particle Physics. Ernest Rutherford, for example, discovered the nature of the atomic nucleus from such experiments.

Section Summary

- The approach to two-dimensional collisions is to choose a convenient coordinate system and break the motion into components along perpendicular axes. Choose a coordinate system with the x-axis parallel to the velocity of the incoming particle.
- Two-dimensional collisions of point masses where mass 2 is initially at rest conserve momentum along the initial direction of mass 1 (the x-axis), stated by $m_1 v_1 = m_1 v\prime_1 \cos \theta_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \cos \theta_2$ and along the direction perpendicular to the initial direction (the y-axis) stated by $0 = m_1 v\prime_{1y} + m_2 v\prime_{2y}$.
- The internal kinetic before and after the collision of two objects that have equal masses is
  Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2} m v_1{}^2 = \frac{1}{2} m v\prime_1{}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m v\prime_2{}^2 + m v\prime_1 v\prime_2 \cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2).$$

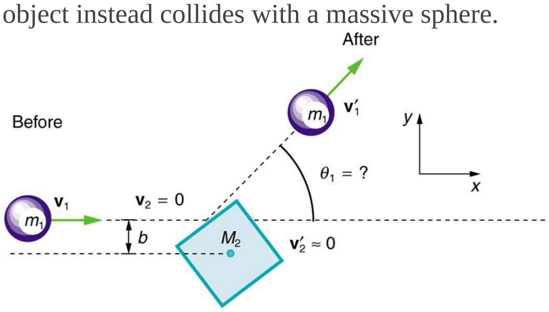
- Point masses are structureless particles that cannot spin.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows a cube at rest and a small object heading toward it. (a) Describe the directions (angle θ_1) at which the small object can emerge after colliding elastically with the cube. How does θ_1 depend on b, the so-called impact parameter? Ignore any effects that might be due to rotation after the collision, and assume that the cube is much more massive than the small object. (b) Answer the same questions if the small object instead collides with a massive sphere.



A small object approaches a collision with a much more massive cube, after which its velocity has the direction θ_1. The angles at which the small object can be scattered are determined by the shape of the object it strikes and the impact parameter b.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Two identical pucks collide on an air hockey table. One puck was originally at rest. (a) If the incoming puck has a speed of 6.00 m/s and scatters to an angle of 30.0^{o},what is the velocity (magnitude and direction) of the second puck? (You may use the result that $\theta_1 - \theta_2 = 90^{\text{o}}$ for elastic collisions of objects that have identical masses.) (b) Confirm that the collision is elastic.

Solution:

(a) 3.00 m/s, 60^{o} below x-axis

(b) Find speed of first puck after collision:
$0 = mv\prime_1 \sin 30^{\text{o}} - mv\prime_2 \sin 60^{\text{o}} \Rightarrow v\prime_1 = v\prime_2 \frac{\sin 60^{\text{o}}}{\sin 30^{\text{o}}} = 5.196 \text{ m/s}$

Verify that ratio of initial to final KE equals one: $\left.\begin{array}{l} \text{KE} = \frac{1}{2}m{v_1}^2 = 18m \text{ J} \\ \text{KE} = \frac{1}{2}m{v\prime_1}^2 + \frac{1}{2}m{v\prime_2}^2 = 18m \text{ J} \end{array}\right\} \frac{\text{KE}}{\text{KE}\prime} = 1.00$

Exercise:

Problem:

Confirm that the results of the example [link] do conserve momentum in both the x- and y-directions.

Exercise:

Problem:

A 3000-kg cannon is mounted so that it can recoil only in the horizontal direction. (a) Calculate its recoil velocity when it fires a 15.0-kg shell at 480 m/s at an angle of 20.0^{o} above the horizontal. (b) What is the kinetic energy of the cannon? This energy is dissipated as heat transfer in shock absorbers that stop its recoil. (c) What happens to the vertical component of momentum that is imparted to the cannon when it is fired?

Solution:

(a) -2.26 m/s

(b) 7.63×10^3 J

(c) The ground will exert a normal force to oppose recoil of the cannon in the vertical direction. The momentum in the vertical direction is transferred to the earth. The energy is transferred into the ground, making a dent where the cannon is. After long barrages, cannon have erratic aim because the ground is full of divots.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

A 5.50-kg bowling ball moving at 9.00 m/s collides with a 0.850-kg bowling pin, which is scattered at an angle of 85.0^{o} to the initial direction of the bowling ball and with a speed of 15.0 m/s. (a) Calculate the final velocity (magnitude and direction) of the bowling ball. (b) Is the collision elastic? (c) Linear kinetic energy is greater after the collision. Discuss how spin on the ball might be converted to linear kinetic energy in the collision.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Ernest Rutherford (the first New Zealander to be awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry) demonstrated that nuclei were very small and dense by scattering helium-4 nuclei $\left({}^{4}\text{He}\right)$ from gold-197 nuclei $\left({}^{197}\text{Au}\right)$. The energy of the incoming helium nucleus was $8.00 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{J}$, and the masses of the helium and gold nuclei were $6.68 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg}$ and $3.29 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{kg}$, respectively (note that their mass ratio is 4 to 197). (a) If a helium nucleus scatters to an angle of 120º during an elastic collision with a gold nucleus, calculate the helium nucleus's final speed and the final velocity (magnitude and direction) of the gold nucleus. (b) What is the final kinetic energy of the helium nucleus?

Solution:

(a) $5.36 \times 10^{5}\ \text{m/s}$ at -29.5^{o}

(b) $7.52 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{J}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

Two cars collide at an icy intersection and stick together afterward. The first car has a mass of 1200 kg and is approaching at $8.00\ \text{m/s}$ due south. The second car has a mass of 850 kg and is approaching at $17.0\ \text{m/s}$ due west. (a) Calculate the final velocity (magnitude and direction) of the cars. (b) How much kinetic energy is lost in the collision? (This energy goes into deformation of the cars.) Note that because both cars have an initial velocity, you cannot use the equations for conservation of momentum along the x-axis and y-axis; instead, you must look for other simplifying aspects.

Exercise:

Problem:

Starting with equations $m_1 v_1 = m_1 v\prime_1 \cos\theta_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \cos\theta_2$ and $0 = m_1 v\prime_1 \sin\theta_1 + m_2 v\prime_2 \sin\theta_2$ for conservation of momentum in the x- and y-directions and assuming that one object is originally stationary, prove that for an elastic collision of two objects of equal masses,

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2} m {v_1}^2 = \frac{1}{2} m {v\prime_1}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m {v\prime_2}^2 + m v\prime_1 v\prime_2 \cos\left(\theta_1 - \theta_2\right)$$

as discussed in the text.

Solution:

We are given that $m_1 = m_2 \equiv m$. The given equations then become:

Equation:

$$v_1 = v_1 \cos\theta_1 + v_2 \cos\theta_2$$

and

Equation:

$$0 = v\prime_1 \sin\theta_1 + v\prime_2 \sin\theta_2.$$

Square each equation to get

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} {v_1}^2 &= {v\prime_1}^2 \cos^2 \theta_1 + {v\prime_2}^2 \cos^2 \theta_2 + 2v\prime_1 v\prime_2 \cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 \\ 0 &= {v\prime_1}^2 \sin^2 \theta_1 + {v\prime_2}^2 \sin^2 \theta_2 + 2v\prime_1 v\prime_2 \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2. \end{aligned}$$

Add these two equations and simplify:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} {v_1}^2 &= {v\prime_1}^2 + {v\prime_2}^2 + 2v\prime_1 v\prime_2 (\cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 + \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2) \\ &= {v\prime_1}^2 + {v\prime_2}^2 + 2v\prime_1 v\prime_2 \left[\tfrac{1}{2} \cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2) + \tfrac{1}{2} \cos(\theta_1 + \theta_2) + \tfrac{1}{2} \cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2) - \tfrac{1}{2} \cos(\theta_1 + \theta_2)\right] \\ &= {v\prime_1}^2 + {v\prime_2}^2 + 2v\prime_1 v\prime_2 \cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2). \end{aligned}$$

Multiply the entire equation by $\frac{1}{2}m$ to recover the kinetic energy:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}m{v_1}^2 = \frac{1}{2}m{v\prime_1}^2 + \frac{1}{2}m{v\prime_2}^2 + mv\prime_1 v\prime_2 \cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2)$$

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A 90.0-kg ice hockey player hits a 0.150-kg puck, giving the puck a velocity of 45.0 m/s. If both are initially at rest and if the ice is frictionless, how far does the player recoil in the time it takes the puck to reach the goal 15.0 m away?

Glossary

point masses
: structureless particles with no rotation or spin

Introduction to Rocket Propulsion

- State Newton’s third law of motion.
- Explain the principle involved in propulsion of rockets and jet engines.
- Derive an expression for the acceleration of the rocket and discuss the factors that affect the acceleration.
- Describe the function of a space shuttle.

Rockets range in size from fireworks so small that ordinary people use them to immense Saturn Vs that once propelled massive payloads toward the Moon. The propulsion of all rockets, jet engines, deflating balloons, and even squids and octopuses is explained by the same physical principle—Newton’s third law of motion. Matter is forcefully ejected from a system, producing an equal and opposite reaction on what remains. Another common example is the recoil of a gun. The gun exerts a force on a bullet to accelerate it and consequently experiences an equal and opposite force, causing the gun’s recoil or kick.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—Propulsion of a Balloon
Hold a balloon and fill it with air. Then, let the balloon go. In which direction does the air come out of the balloon and in which direction does the balloon get propelled? If you fill the balloon with water and then let the balloon go, does the balloon’s direction change? Explain your answer.

[link] shows a rocket accelerating straight up. In part (a), the rocket has a mass m and a velocity v relative to Earth, and hence a momentum mv. In part (b), a time Δt has elapsed in which the rocket has ejected a mass Δm of hot gas at a velocity v_{e} relative to the rocket. The remainder of the mass $(m-\Delta m)$ now has a greater velocity $(v+\Delta v)$. The momentum of the entire system (rocket plus expelled gas) has actually decreased because the force of gravity has acted for a time Δt, producing a negative impulse $\Delta p=-\text{mg}\Delta t$. (Remember that impulse is the net external force on a system multiplied by the time it acts, and it equals the change in momentum

of the system.) So, the center of mass of the system is in free fall but, by rapidly expelling mass, part of the system can accelerate upward. It is a commonly held misconception that the rocket exhaust pushes on the ground. If we consider thrust; that is, the force exerted on the rocket by the exhaust gases, then a rocket’s thrust is greater in outer space than in the atmosphere or on the launch pad. In fact, gases are easier to expel into a vacuum.

By calculating the change in momentum for the entire system over Δt, and equating this change to the impulse, the following expression can be shown to be a good approximation for the acceleration of the rocket.

Equation:

$$a = \frac{v_{\mathrm{e}}}{m}\frac{\Delta m}{\Delta t} - g$$

“The rocket” is that part of the system remaining after the gas is ejected, and g is the acceleration due to gravity.

Note:

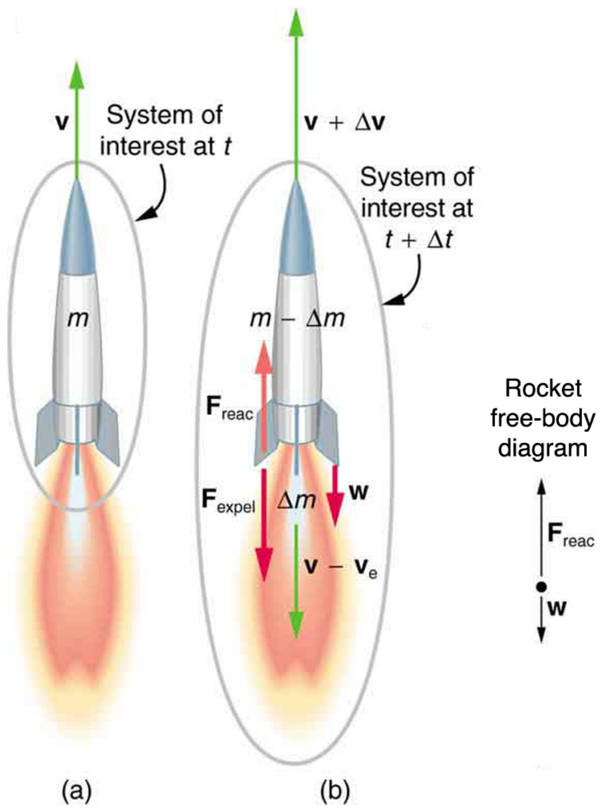
Acceleration of a Rocket

Acceleration of a rocket is

Equation:

$$a = \frac{v_{\mathrm{e}}}{m}\frac{\Delta m}{\Delta t} - g,$$

where a is the acceleration of the rocket, v_{e} is the exhaust velocity, m is the mass of the rocket, Δm is the mass of the ejected gas, and Δt is the time in which the gas is ejected.



(a) This rocket has a mass m and an upward velocity v. The net external force on the system is $-\mathrm{mg}$, if air resistance is neglected. (b) A time Δt later the system has two main parts, the ejected gas and the remainder of the rocket. The reaction force on the rocket is what overcomes the gravitational force and accelerates it upward.

A rocket's acceleration depends on three major factors, consistent with the equation for acceleration of a rocket . First, the greater the exhaust velocity of the gases relative to the rocket, v_{e}, the greater the acceleration is. The

practical limit for v_{e} is about $2.5 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{m/s}$ for conventional (non-nuclear) hot-gas propulsion systems. The second factor is the rate at which mass is ejected from the rocket. This is the factor $\Delta m/\Delta t$ in the equation. The quantity $(\Delta m/\Delta t)v_{\mathrm{e}}$, with units of newtons, is called "thrust." The faster the rocket burns its fuel, the greater its thrust, and the greater its acceleration. The third factor is the mass m of the rocket. The smaller the mass is (all other factors being the same), the greater the acceleration. The rocket mass m decreases dramatically during flight because most of the rocket is fuel to begin with, so that acceleration increases continuously, reaching a maximum just before the fuel is exhausted.

Note:
Factors Affecting a Rocket's Acceleration

- The greater the exhaust velocity v_{e} of the gases relative to the rocket, the greater the acceleration.
- The faster the rocket burns its fuel, the greater its acceleration.
- The smaller the rocket's mass (all other factors being the same), the greater the acceleration.

Example:
Calculating Acceleration: Initial Acceleration of a Moon Launch
A Saturn V's mass at liftoff was $2.80 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{kg}$, its fuel-burn rate was $1.40 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{kg/s}$, and the exhaust velocity was $2.40 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{m/s}$. Calculate its initial acceleration.
Strategy
This problem is a straightforward application of the expression for acceleration because a is the unknown and all of the terms on the right side of the equation are given.
Solution
Substituting the given values into the equation for acceleration yields
Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
a &= \frac{v_e}{m}\frac{\Delta m}{\Delta t} - g \\
&= \frac{2.40 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}}{2.80 \times 10^6\ \text{kg}}\left(1.40 \times 10^4\ \text{kg/s}\right) - 9.80\ \text{m/s}^2 \\
&= 2.20\ \text{m/s}^2.
\end{aligned}
$$

Discussion

This value is fairly small, even for an initial acceleration. The acceleration does increase steadily as the rocket burns fuel, because m decreases while v_e and $\frac{\Delta m}{\Delta t}$ remain constant. Knowing this acceleration and the mass of the rocket, you can show that the thrust of the engines was 3.36×10^7 N.

To achieve the high speeds needed to hop continents, obtain orbit, or escape Earth’s gravity altogether, the mass of the rocket other than fuel must be as small as possible. It can be shown that, in the absence of air resistance and neglecting gravity, the final velocity of a one-stage rocket initially at rest is

Equation:

$$v = v_e \ln \frac{m_0}{m_r},$$

where $\ln(m_0/m_r)$ is the natural logarithm of the ratio of the initial mass of the rocket (m_0) to what is left (m_r) after all of the fuel is exhausted. (Note that v is actually the change in velocity, so the equation can be used for any segment of the flight. If we start from rest, the change in velocity equals the final velocity.) For example, let us calculate the mass ratio needed to escape Earth’s gravity starting from rest, given that the escape velocity from Earth is about 11.2×10^3 m/s, and assuming an exhaust velocity $v_e = 2.5 \times 10^3$ m/s.

Equation:

$$\ln \frac{m_0}{m_r} = \frac{v}{v_e} = \frac{11.2 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}}{2.5 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}} = 4.48$$

Solving for m_0/m_{r} gives
Equation:

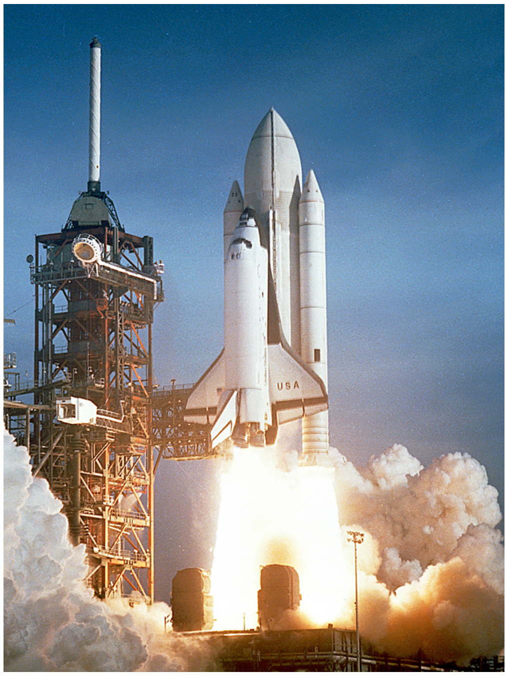
$$\frac{m_0}{m_{\mathrm{r}}} = e^{4.48} = 88.$$

Thus, the mass of the rocket is
Equation:

$$m_{\mathrm{r}} = \frac{m_0}{88}.$$

This result means that only $1/88$ of the mass is left when the fuel is burnt, and $87/88$ of the initial mass was fuel. Expressed as percentages, 98.9% of the rocket is fuel, while payload, engines, fuel tanks, and other components make up only 1.10%. Taking air resistance and gravitational force into account, the mass m_{r} remaining can only be about $m_0/180$. It is difficult to build a rocket in which the fuel has a mass 180 times everything else. The solution is multistage rockets. Each stage only needs to achieve part of the final velocity and is discarded after it burns its fuel. The result is that each successive stage can have smaller engines and more payload relative to its fuel. Once out of the atmosphere, the ratio of payload to fuel becomes more favorable, too.

The space shuttle was an attempt at an economical vehicle with some reusable parts, such as the solid fuel boosters and the craft itself. (See [link]) The shuttle's need to be operated by humans, however, made it at least as costly for launching satellites as expendable, unmanned rockets. Ideally, the shuttle would only have been used when human activities were required for the success of a mission, such as the repair of the Hubble space telescope. Rockets with satellites can also be launched from airplanes. Using airplanes has the double advantage that the initial velocity is significantly above zero and a rocket can avoid most of the atmosphere's resistance.



The space shuttle had a number of reusable parts. Solid fuel boosters on either side were recovered and refueled after each flight, and the entire orbiter returned to Earth for use in subsequent flights. The large liquid fuel tank was expended. The space shuttle was a complex assemblage of technologies, employing both solid and liquid fuel and pioneering ceramic tiles as reentry heat shields. As a result, it permitted multiple launches as opposed to

single-use rockets.
(credit: NASA)

Note:
PhET Explorations: Lunar Lander
Can you avoid the boulder field and land safely, just before your fuel runs out, as Neil Armstrong did in 1969? Our version of this classic video game accurately simulates the real motion of the lunar lander with the correct mass, thrust, fuel consumption rate, and lunar gravity. The real lunar lander is very hard to control.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/lunar-lander/lunar-lander_en.html

Section Summary

- Newton’s third law of motion states that to every action, there is an equal and opposite reaction.
- Acceleration of a rocket is $a = \frac{v_e}{m} \frac{\Delta m}{\Delta t} - g$.
- A rocket’s acceleration depends on three main factors. They are

  1. The greater the exhaust velocity of the gases, the greater the acceleration.
  2. The faster the rocket burns its fuel, the greater its acceleration.
  3. The smaller the rocket's mass, the greater the acceleration.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

Suppose a fireworks shell explodes, breaking into three large pieces for which air resistance is negligible. How is the motion of the center

of mass affected by the explosion? How would it be affected if the pieces experienced significantly more air resistance than the intact shell?

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

During a visit to the International Space Station, an astronaut was positioned motionless in the center of the station, out of reach of any solid object on which he could exert a force. Suggest a method by which he could move himself away from this position, and explain the physics involved.

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

It is possible for the velocity of a rocket to be greater than the exhaust velocity of the gases it ejects. When that is the case, the gas velocity and gas momentum are in the same direction as that of the rocket. How is the rocket still able to obtain thrust by ejecting the gases?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

Antiballistic missiles (ABMs) are designed to have very large accelerations so that they may intercept fast-moving incoming missiles in the short time available. What is the takeoff acceleration of a 10,000-kg ABM that expels 196 kg of gas per second at an exhaust velocity of $2.50 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}$?

Solution:

39.2 m/s^2

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

What is the acceleration of a 5000-kg rocket taking off from the Moon, where the acceleration due to gravity is only 1.6 m/s^2, if the rocket expels 8.00 kg of gas per second at an exhaust velocity of $2.20 \times 10^3 \text{ m/s}$?

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

Calculate the increase in velocity of a 4000-kg space probe that expels 3500 kg of its mass at an exhaust velocity of $2.00 \times 10^3 \text{ m/s}$. You may assume the gravitational force is negligible at the probe's location.

Solution:

$4.16 \times 10^3 \text{ m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem: Professional Application

Ion-propulsion rockets have been proposed for use in space. They employ atomic ionization techniques and nuclear energy sources to produce extremely high exhaust velocities, perhaps as great as $8.00 \times 10^6 \text{ m/s}$. These techniques allow a much more favorable payload-to-fuel ratio. To illustrate this fact: (a) Calculate the increase in velocity of a 20,000-kg space probe that expels only 40.0-kg of its mass at the given exhaust velocity. (b) These engines are usually designed to produce a very small thrust for a very long time—the type of engine that might be useful on a trip to the outer planets, for example. Calculate the acceleration of such an engine if it expels

4.50×10^{-6} kg/s at the given velocity, assuming the acceleration due to gravity is negligible.

Exercise:

Problem: Derive the equation for the vertical acceleration of a rocket.

Solution:

The force needed to give a small mass Δm an acceleration $a_{\Delta m}$ is $F = \Delta m a_{\Delta m}$. To accelerate this mass in the small time interval Δt at a speed v_{e} requires $v_{\mathrm{e}} = a_{\Delta m} \Delta t$, so $F = v_{\mathrm{e}} \frac{\Delta m}{\Delta t}$. By Newton's third law, this force is equal in magnitude to the thrust force acting on the rocket, so $F_{\text{thrust}} = v_{\mathrm{e}} \frac{\Delta m}{\Delta t}$, where all quantities are positive. Applying Newton's second law to the rocket gives $F_{\text{thrust}} - \mathrm{mg} = \mathrm{ma} \Rightarrow a = \frac{v_{\mathrm{e}}}{m} \frac{\Delta m}{\Delta t} - g$, where m is the mass of the rocket and unburnt fuel.

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

(a) Calculate the maximum rate at which a rocket can expel gases if its acceleration cannot exceed seven times that of gravity. The mass of the rocket just as it runs out of fuel is 75,000-kg, and its exhaust velocity is 2.40×10^{3} m/s. Assume that the acceleration of gravity is the same as on Earth's surface $\left(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2\right)$. (b) Why might it be necessary to limit the acceleration of a rocket?

Exercise:

Problem:

Given the following data for a fire extinguisher-toy wagon rocket experiment, calculate the average exhaust velocity of the gases expelled from the extinguisher. Starting from rest, the final velocity is 10.0 m/s. The total mass is initially 75.0 kg and is 70.0 kg after the extinguisher is fired.

Exercise:

Problem:

How much of a single-stage rocket that is 100,000 kg can be anything but fuel if the rocket is to have a final speed of 8.00 km/s, given that it expels gases at an exhaust velocity of $2.20 \times 10^3 \text{ m/s}$?

Solution:

2.63×10^3 kg

Exercise:

Problem: **Professional Application**

(a) A 5.00-kg squid initially at rest ejects 0.250-kg of fluid with a velocity of 10.0 m/s. What is the recoil velocity of the squid if the ejection is done in 0.100 s and there is a 5.00-N frictional force opposing the squid's movement. (b) How much energy is lost to work done against friction?

Solution:

(a) 0.421 m/s away from the ejected fluid.

(b) 0.237 J.

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

Squids have been reported to jump from the ocean and travel 30.0 m (measured horizontally) before re-entering the water. (a) Calculate the initial speed of the squid if it leaves the water at an angle of 20.0°, assuming negligible lift from the air and negligible air resistance. (b) The squid propels itself by squirting water. What fraction of its mass would it have to eject in order to achieve the speed found in the previous part? The water is ejected at 12.0 m/s; gravitational force and friction are neglected. (c) What is unreasonable about the results? (d) Which premise is unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider an astronaut in deep space cut free from her space ship and needing to get back to it. The astronaut has a few packages that she can throw away to move herself toward the ship. Construct a problem in which you calculate the time it takes her to get back by throwing all the packages at one time compared to throwing them one at a time. Among the things to be considered are the masses involved, the force she can exert on the packages through some distance, and the distance to the ship.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider an artillery projectile striking armor plating. Construct a problem in which you find the force exerted by the projectile on the plate. Among the things to be considered are the mass and speed of the projectile and the distance over which its speed is reduced. Your instructor may also wish for you to consider the relative merits of depleted uranium versus lead projectiles based on the greater density of uranium.

Introduction to Statics and Torque
class="introduction"

On a short time scale, rocks like these in Australia's Kings Canyon are static, or motionless relative to the Earth. (credit: freeaussiestock.com)

What might desks, bridges, buildings, trees, and mountains have in common—at least in the eyes of a physicist? The answer is that they are ordinarily motionless relative to the Earth. Furthermore, their acceleration is zero because they remain motionless. That means they also have something in common with a car moving at a constant velocity, because anything with

a constant velocity also has an acceleration of zero. Now, the important part —Newton's second law states that net $F = \mathrm{ma}$, and so the net external force is zero for all stationary objects and for all objects moving at constant velocity. There are forces acting, but they are balanced. That is, they are in *equilibrium*.

Note:
Statics
Statics is the study of forces in equilibrium, a large group of situations that makes up a special case of Newton's second law. We have already considered a few such situations; in this chapter, we cover the topic more thoroughly, including consideration of such possible effects as the rotation and deformation of an object by the forces acting on it.

How can we guarantee that a body is in equilibrium and what can we learn from systems that are in equilibrium? There are actually two conditions that must be satisfied to achieve equilibrium. These conditions are the topics of the first two sections of this chapter.

The First Condition for Equilibrium

- State the first condition of equilibrium.
- Explain static equilibrium.
- Explain dynamic equilibrium.

The first condition necessary to achieve equilibrium is the one already mentioned: the net external force on the system must be zero. Expressed as an equation, this is simply

Equation:

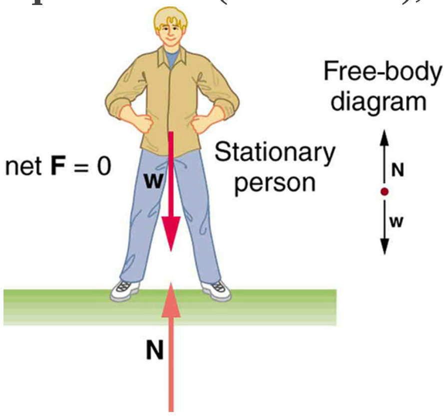
$$\text{net }\mathbf{F} = 0$$

Note that if net F is zero, then the net external force in *any* direction is zero. For example, the net external forces along the typical *x*- and *y*-axes are zero. This is written as

Equation:

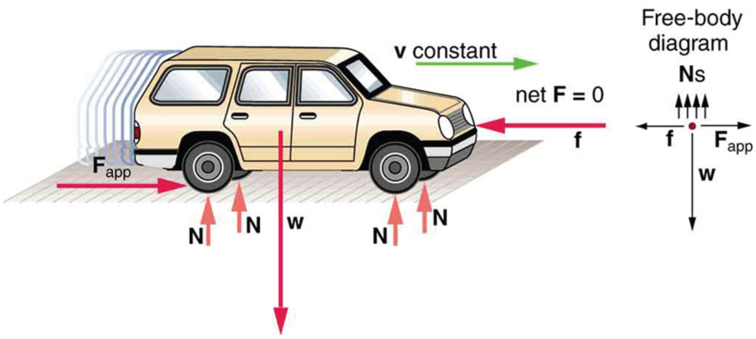
$$\text{net }F_x = 0\ \text{ and }F_y = 0$$

[link] and [link] illustrate situations where net $F = 0$ for both **static equilibrium** (motionless), and **dynamic equilibrium** (constant velocity).



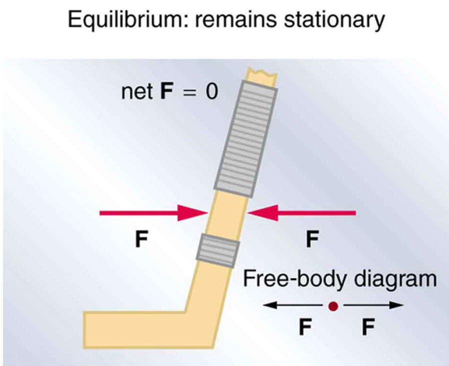
This motionless person is in static equilibrium. The forces acting on him add up to zero. Both

forces are vertical in this case.

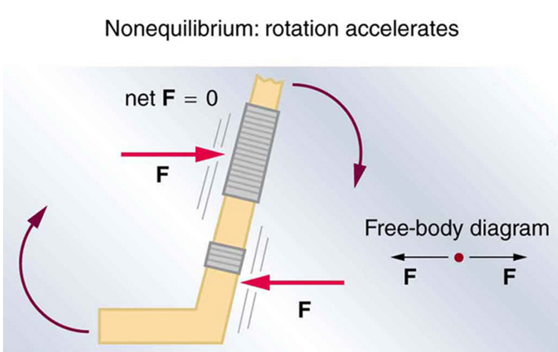


This car is in dynamic equilibrium because it is moving at constant velocity. There are horizontal and vertical forces, but the net external force in any direction is zero. The applied force F_{app} between the tires and the road is balanced by air friction, and the weight of the car is supported by the normal forces, here shown to be equal for all four tires.

However, it is not sufficient for the net external force of a system to be zero for a system to be in equilibrium. Consider the two situations illustrated in [link] and [link] where forces are applied to an ice hockey stick lying flat on ice. The net external force is zero in both situations shown in the figure; but in one case, equilibrium is achieved, whereas in the other, it is not. In [link], the ice hockey stick remains motionless. But in [link], with the same forces applied in different places, the stick experiences accelerated rotation. Therefore, we know that the point at which a force is applied is another factor in determining whether or not equilibrium is achieved. This will be explored further in the next section.



An ice hockey stick lying flat on ice with two equal and opposite horizontal forces applied to it. Friction is negligible, and the gravitational force is balanced by the support of the ice (a normal force). Thus, net $F = 0$. Equilibrium is achieved, which is static equilibrium in this case.



The same forces are applied at other points and the stick

rotates—in fact, it experiences an accelerated rotation. Here net $F = 0$ but the system is *not* at equilibrium. Hence, the net $F = 0$ is a necessary—but not sufficient—condition for achieving equilibrium.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Torque
Investigate how torque causes an object to rotate. Discover the relationships between angular acceleration, moment of inertia, angular momentum and torque.

Torque

Section Summary

- Statics is the study of forces in equilibrium.
- Two conditions must be met to achieve equilibrium, which is defined to be motion without linear or rotational acceleration.
- The first condition necessary to achieve equilibrium is that the net external force on the system must be zero, so that net $\mathbf{F} = 0$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What can you say about the velocity of a moving body that is in dynamic equilibrium? Draw a sketch of such a body using clearly labeled arrows to represent all external forces on the body.

Exercise:

Problem:

Under what conditions can a rotating body be in equilibrium? Give an example.

Glossary

static equilibrium
: a state of equilibrium in which the net external force and torque acting on a system is zero

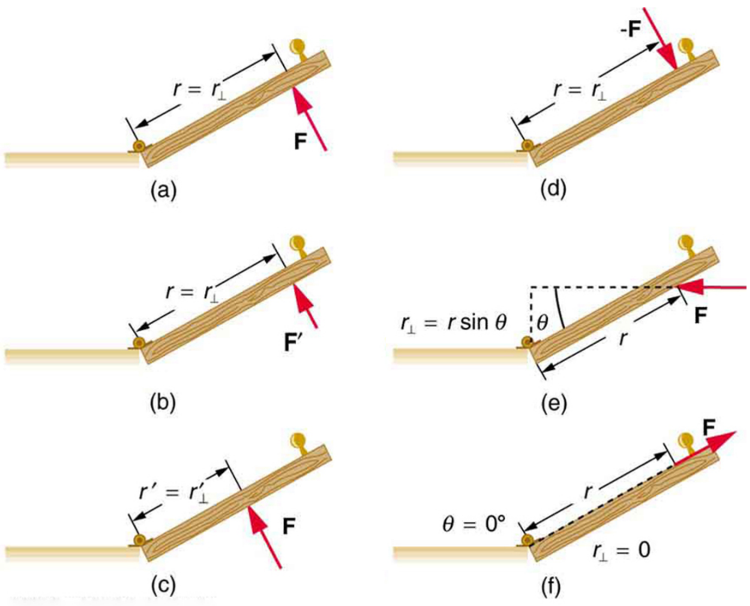
dynamic equilibrium
: a state of equilibrium in which the net external force and torque on a system moving with constant velocity are zero

The Second Condition for Equilibrium

- State the second condition that is necessary to achieve equilibrium.
- Explain torque and the factors on which it depends.
- Describe the role of torque in rotational mechanics.

Note:
Torque
The second condition necessary to achieve equilibrium involves avoiding accelerated rotation (maintaining a constant angular velocity). A rotating body or system can be in equilibrium if its rate of rotation is constant and remains unchanged by the forces acting on it. To understand what factors affect rotation, let us think about what happens when you open an ordinary door by rotating it on its hinges.

Several familiar factors determine how effective you are in opening the door. See [link]. First of all, the larger the force, the more effective it is in opening the door—obviously, the harder you push, the more rapidly the door opens. Also, the point at which you push is crucial. If you apply your force too close to the hinges, the door will open slowly, if at all. Most people have been embarrassed by making this mistake and bumping up against a door when it did not open as quickly as expected. Finally, the direction in which you push is also important. The most effective direction is perpendicular to the door—we push in this direction almost instinctively.



Torque is the turning or twisting effectiveness of a force, illustrated here for door rotation on its hinges (as viewed from overhead). Torque has both magnitude and direction. (a) Counterclockwise torque is produced by this force, which means that the door will rotate in a counterclockwise due to $\mathbf{F}$. Note that $r_{\perp}$ is the perpendicular distance of the pivot from the line of action of the force. (b) A smaller counterclockwise torque is produced by a smaller force $\mathbf{F}\prime$ acting at the same distance from the hinges (the pivot point). (c) The same force as in (a) produces a smaller counterclockwise torque when applied at a smaller distance from the hinges. (d) The same force as in (a), but acting in the opposite direction, produces a clockwise torque. (e) A smaller counterclockwise torque is produced by the same magnitude force acting at the same point

but in a different direction. Here, θ is less than 90º. (f) Torque is zero here since the force just pulls on the hinges, producing no rotation. In this case, $\theta = 0$º.

The magnitude, direction, and point of application of the force are incorporated into the definition of the physical quantity called torque. **Torque** is the rotational equivalent of a force. It is a measure of the effectiveness of a force in changing or accelerating a rotation (changing the angular velocity over a period of time). In equation form, the magnitude of torque is defined to be

Equation:

$$\tau = \text{rF} \sin \theta$$

where τ (the Greek letter tau) is the symbol for torque, r is the distance from the pivot point to the point where the force is applied, F is the magnitude of the force, and θ is the angle between the force and the vector directed from the point of application to the pivot point, as seen in [link] and [link]. An alternative expression for torque is given in terms of the **perpendicular lever arm** $r_{\perp}$ as shown in [link] and [link], which is defined as

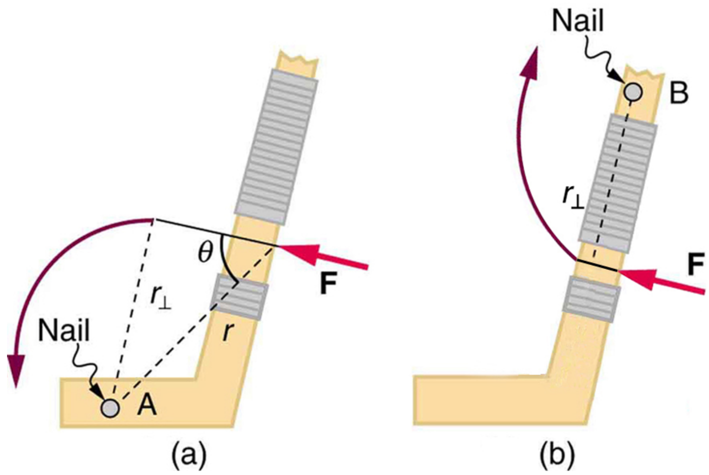
Equation:

$$r_{\perp} = r \sin \theta$$

so that

Equation:

$$\tau = r_{\perp} F.$$



A force applied to an object can produce a torque, which depends on the location of the pivot point. (a) The three factors r, F, and θ for pivot point A on a body are shown here—r is the distance from the chosen pivot point to the point where the force F is applied, and θ is the angle between $\mathbf{F}$ and the vector directed from the point of application to the pivot point. If the object can rotate around point A, it will rotate counterclockwise. This means that torque is counterclockwise relative to pivot A. (b) In this case, point B is the pivot point. The torque from the applied force will cause a clockwise rotation around point B, and so it is a clockwise torque relative to B.

The perpendicular lever arm $r_\perp$ is the shortest distance from the pivot point to the line along which $\mathbf{F}$ acts; it is shown as a dashed line in [link] and [link]. Note that the line segment that defines the distance $r_\perp$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{F}$, as its name implies. It is sometimes easier to find or

visualize $r_\perp$ than to find both r and θ. In such cases, it may be more convenient to use $\tau = r_\perp F$ rather than $\tau = \text{rF sin } \theta$ for torque, but both are equally valid.

The **SI unit of torque** is newtons times meters, usually written as $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}$. For example, if you push perpendicular to the door with a force of 40 N at a distance of 0.800 m from the hinges, you exert a torque of $32 \text{ N}{\cdot}\text{m}(0.800 \text{ m}{\times}40 \text{ N}{\times}\text{sin } 90^\text{o})$ relative to the hinges. If you reduce the force to 20 N, the torque is reduced to $16 \text{ N}{\cdot}\text{m}$, and so on.

The torque is always calculated with reference to some chosen pivot point. For the same applied force, a different choice for the location of the pivot will give you a different value for the torque, since both r and θ depend on the location of the pivot. Any point in any object can be chosen to calculate the torque about that point. The object may not actually pivot about the chosen "pivot point."

Note that for rotation in a plane, torque has two possible directions. Torque is either clockwise or counterclockwise relative to the chosen pivot point, as illustrated for points B and A, respectively, in [link]. If the object can rotate about point A, it will rotate counterclockwise, which means that the torque for the force is shown as counterclockwise relative to A. But if the object can rotate about point B, it will rotate clockwise, which means the torque for the force shown is clockwise relative to B. Also, the magnitude of the torque is greater when the lever arm is longer.

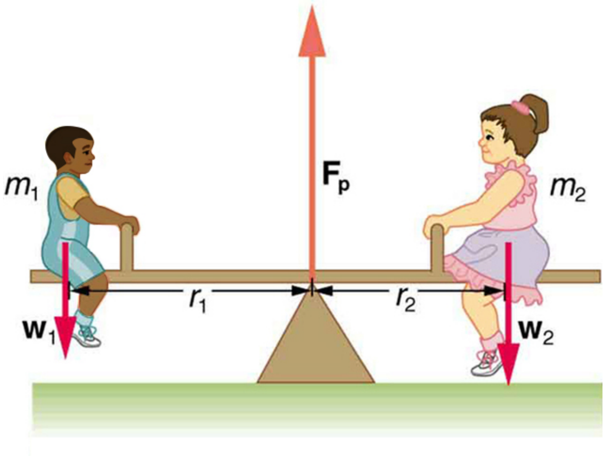
Now, *the second condition necessary to achieve equilibrium* is that *the net external torque on a system must be zero*. An external torque is one that is created by an external force. You can choose the point around which the torque is calculated. The point can be the physical pivot point of a system or any other point in space—but it must be the same point for all torques. If the second condition (net external torque on a system is zero) is satisfied for one choice of pivot point, it will also hold true for any other choice of pivot point in or out of the system of interest. (This is true only in an inertial frame of reference.) The second condition necessary to achieve equilibrium is stated in equation form as

Equation:

$$\text{net } \tau = 0$$

where net means total. Torques, which are in opposite directions are assigned opposite signs. A common convention is to call counterclockwise (ccw) torques positive and clockwise (cw) torques negative.

When two children balance a seesaw as shown in [link], they satisfy the two conditions for equilibrium. Most people have perfect intuition about seesaws, knowing that the lighter child must sit farther from the pivot and that a heavier child can keep a lighter one off the ground indefinitely.



Two children balancing a seesaw satisfy both conditions for equilibrium. The lighter child sits farther from the pivot to create a torque equal in magnitude to that of the heavier child.

Example:
She Saw Torques On A Seesaw
The two children shown in [link] are balanced on a seesaw of negligible mass. (This assumption is made to keep the example simple—more

involved examples will follow.) The first child has a mass of 26.0 kg and sits 1.60 m from the pivot.(a) If the second child has a mass of 32.0 kg, how far is she from the pivot? (b) What is F_{p}, the supporting force exerted by the pivot?

Strategy

Both conditions for equilibrium must be satisfied. In part (a), we are asked for a distance; thus, the second condition (regarding torques) must be used, since the first (regarding only forces) has no distances in it. To apply the second condition for equilibrium, we first identify the system of interest to be the seesaw plus the two children. We take the supporting pivot to be the point about which the torques are calculated. We then identify all external forces acting on the system.

Solution (a)

The three external forces acting on the system are the weights of the two children and the supporting force of the pivot. Let us examine the torque produced by each. Torque is defined to be

Equation:

$$\tau = \text{rF sin}\ \theta.$$

Here $\theta = 90^{\text{o}}$, so that $\sin \theta = 1$ for all three forces. That means $r_{\perp} = r$ for all three. The torques exerted by the three forces are first,

Equation:

$$\tau_1 = r_1 w_1$$

second,

Equation:

$$\tau_2 = -r_2 w_2$$

and third,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \tau_{\text{p}} &= r_{\text{p}} F_{\text{p}} \\ &= 0 \cdot F_{\text{p}} \\ &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Note that a minus sign has been inserted into the second equation because this torque is clockwise and is therefore negative by convention. Since F_{p} acts directly on the pivot point, the distance r_{p} is zero. A force acting on the pivot cannot cause a rotation, just as pushing directly on the hinges of a door will not cause it to rotate. Now, the second condition for equilibrium is that the sum of the torques on both children is zero. Therefore

Equation:

$$\tau_2 = -\tau_1,$$

or

Equation:

$$r_2 w_2 = r_1 w_1.$$

Weight is mass times the acceleration due to gravity. Entering mg for w, we get

Equation:

$$r_2 m_2 g = r_1 m_1 g.$$

Solve this for the unknown r_2:

Equation:

$$r_2 = r_1 \frac{m_1}{m_2}.$$

The quantities on the right side of the equation are known; thus, r_2 is

Equation:

$$r_2 = (1.60 \text{ m}) \frac{26.0 \text{ kg}}{32.0 \text{ kg}} = 1.30 \text{ m}.$$

As expected, the heavier child must sit closer to the pivot (1.30 m versus 1.60 m) to balance the seesaw.

Solution (b)

This part asks for a force F_{p}. The easiest way to find it is to use the first condition for equilibrium, which is

Equation:

$$\text{net } \mathbf{F} = 0.$$

The forces are all vertical, so that we are dealing with a one-dimensional problem along the vertical axis; hence, the condition can be written as

Equation:

$$\text{net } F_y = 0$$

where we again call the vertical axis the *y*-axis. Choosing upward to be the positive direction, and using plus and minus signs to indicate the directions of the forces, we see that

Equation:

$$F_{\text{p}} - w_1 - w_2 = 0.$$

This equation yields what might have been guessed at the beginning:

Equation:

$$F_{\text{p}} = w_1 + w_2.$$

So, the pivot supplies a supporting force equal to the total weight of the system:

Equation:

$$F_{\text{p}} = m_1 g + m_2 g.$$

Entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{p}} &= (26.0\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right) + (32.0\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right) \\ &= 568\text{ N.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

The two results make intuitive sense. The heavier child sits closer to the pivot. The pivot supports the weight of the two children. Part (b) can also be solved using the second condition for equilibrium, since both distances are known, but only if the pivot point is chosen to be somewhere other than the location of the seesaw's actual pivot!

Several aspects of the preceding example have broad implications. First, the choice of the pivot as the point around which torques are calculated simplified the problem. Since F_{p} is exerted on the pivot point, its lever arm is zero. Hence, the torque exerted by the supporting force F_{p} is zero relative to that pivot point. The second condition for equilibrium holds for any choice of pivot point, and so we choose the pivot point to simplify the solution of the problem.

Second, the acceleration due to gravity canceled in this problem, and we were left with a ratio of masses. *This will not always be the case*. Always enter the correct forces—do not jump ahead to enter some ratio of masses.

Third, the weight of each child is distributed over an area of the seesaw, yet we treated the weights as if each force were exerted at a single point. This is not an approximation—the distances r_1 and r_2 are the distances to points directly below the **center of gravity** of each child. As we shall see in the next section, the mass and weight of a system can act as if they are located at a single point.

Finally, note that the concept of torque has an importance beyond static equilibrium. *Torque plays the same role in rotational motion that force plays in linear motion.* We will examine this in the next chapter.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment
Take a piece of modeling clay and put it on a table, then mash a cylinder down into it so that a ruler can balance on the round side of the cylinder while everything remains still. Put a penny 8 cm away from the pivot. Where would you need to put two pennies to balance? Three pennies?

Section Summary

- The second condition assures those torques are also balanced. Torque is the rotational equivalent of a force in producing a rotation and is

defined to be
Equation:

$$\tau = \mathrm{rF}\,\sin\theta$$

where τ is torque, r is the distance from the pivot point to the point where the force is applied, F is the magnitude of the force, and θ is the angle between **F** and the vector directed from the point where the force acts to the pivot point. The perpendicular lever arm $r_\perp$ is defined to be
Equation:

$$r_\perp = r\,\sin\theta$$

so that
Equation:

$$\tau = r_\perp F.$$

- The perpendicular lever arm $r_\perp$ is the shortest distance from the pivot point to the line along which F acts. The SI unit for torque is newton-meter $(\mathrm{N{\cdot}m})$. The second condition necessary to achieve equilibrium is that the net external torque on a system must be zero:
  Equation:

  $$\mathrm{net}\ \tau = 0$$

  By convention, counterclockwise torques are positive, and clockwise torques are negative.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What three factors affect the torque created by a force relative to a specific pivot point?

Exercise:

Problem:

A wrecking ball is being used to knock down a building. One tall unsupported concrete wall remains standing. If the wrecking ball hits the wall near the top, is the wall more likely to fall over by rotating at its base or by falling straight down? Explain your answer. How is it most likely to fall if it is struck with the same force at its base? Note that this depends on how firmly the wall is attached at its base.

Exercise:

Problem:

Mechanics sometimes put a length of pipe over the handle of a wrench when trying to remove a very tight bolt. How does this help? (It is also hazardous since it can break the bolt.)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) When opening a door, you push on it perpendicularly with a force of 55.0 N at a distance of 0.850m from the hinges. What torque are you exerting relative to the hinges? (b) Does it matter if you push at the same height as the hinges?

Solution:

a) 46.8 N·m

b) It does not matter at what height you push. The torque depends on only the magnitude of the force applied and the perpendicular distance of the force's application from the hinges. (Children don't have a tougher time opening a door because they push lower than adults, they have a tougher time because they don't push far enough from the hinges.)

Exercise:

Problem:

When tightening a bolt, you push perpendicularly on a wrench with a force of 165 N at a distance of 0.140 m from the center of the bolt. (a) How much torque are you exerting in newton × meters (relative to the center of the bolt)? (b) Convert this torque to footpounds.

Exercise:

Problem:

Two children push on opposite sides of a door during play. Both push horizontally and perpendicular to the door. One child pushes with a force of 17.5 N at a distance of 0.600 m from the hinges, and the second child pushes at a distance of 0.450 m. What force must the second child exert to keep the door from moving? Assume friction is negligible.

Solution:

23.3 N

Exercise:

Problem:

Use the second condition for equilibrium $(\text{net } \tau = 0)$ to calculate F_{p} in [link], employing any data given or solved for in part (a) of the example.

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat the seesaw problem in [link] with the center of mass of the seesaw 0.160 m to the left of the pivot (on the side of the lighter child) and assuming a mass of 12.0 kg for the seesaw. The other data given in the example remain unchanged. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for static equilibrium.

Solution:

Given:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 &= 26.0\ \text{kg},\ m_2 = 32.0\ \text{kg},\ m_\text{s} = 12.0\ \text{kg}, \\ r_1 &= 1.60\ \text{m},\ r_\text{s} = 0.160\ \text{m},\ \text{find (a)}\ r_{2,}\ \text{(b)}\ F_\text{p} \end{aligned}$$

a) Since children are balancing:
Equation:

$$\begin{gathered} \text{net}\ \tau_\text{cw} = -\text{net}\ \tau_\text{ccw} \\ \Rightarrow w_1 r_1 + m_\text{s} g r_\text{s} = w_2 r_2 \end{gathered}$$

So, solving for r_2 gives:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} r_2 &= \frac{w_1 r_1 + m_\text{s} g r_\text{s}}{w_2} = \frac{m_1 g r_1 + m_\text{s} g r_\text{s}}{m_2 g} = \frac{m_1 r_1 + m_\text{s} r_\text{s}}{m_2} \\ &= \frac{(26.0\ \text{kg})(1.60\ \text{m}) + (12.0\ \text{kg})(0.160\ \text{m})}{32.0\ \text{kg}} \\ &= 1.36\ \text{m} \end{aligned}$$

b) Since the children are not moving:
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{c}\text{net } F = 0 = F_{\mathrm{p}} - w_1 - w_2 - w_{\mathrm{s}} \\ \Rightarrow F_{\mathrm{p}} = w_1 + w_2 + w_{\mathrm{s}}\end{array}$$

So that

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl}F_{\mathrm{p}} & = & (26.0\text{ kg} + 32.0\text{ kg} + 12.0\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2) \\ & = & 686\text{ N}\end{array}$$

Glossary

torque
: turning or twisting effectiveness of a force

perpendicular lever arm
: the shortest distance from the pivot point to the line along which $\mathbf{F}$ lies

SI units of torque
: newton times meters, usually written as N·m

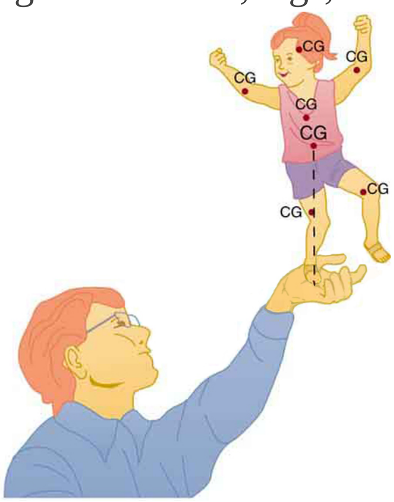
center of gravity
: the point where the total weight of the body is assumed to be concentrated

Stability

- State the types of equilibrium.
- Describe stable and unstable equilibriums.
- Describe neutral equilibrium.

It is one thing to have a system in equilibrium; it is quite another for it to be stable. The toy doll perched on the man’s hand in [link], for example, is not in stable equilibrium. There are *three types of equilibrium*: *stable*, *unstable*, and *neutral*. Figures throughout this module illustrate various examples.

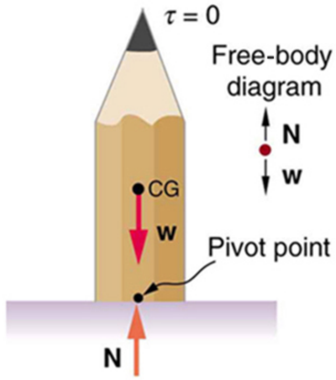
[link] presents a balanced system, such as the toy doll on the man’s hand, which has its center of gravity (cg) directly over the pivot, so that the torque of the total weight is zero. This is equivalent to having the torques of the individual parts balanced about the pivot point, in this case the hand. The cgs of the arms, legs, head, and torso are labeled with smaller type.



A man balances a toy doll on one hand.

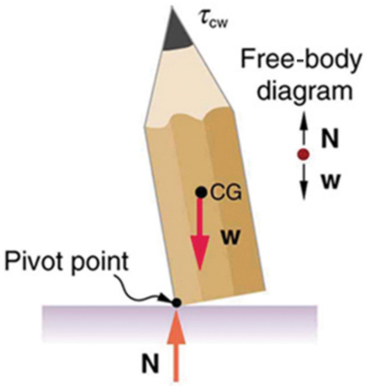
A system is said to be in **stable equilibrium** if, when displaced from equilibrium, it experiences a net force or torque in a direction opposite to the direction of the displacement. For example, a marble at the bottom of a bowl will experience a *restoring* force when displaced from its equilibrium

position. This force moves it back toward the equilibrium position. Most systems are in stable equilibrium, especially for small displacements. For another example of stable equilibrium, see the pencil in [link].

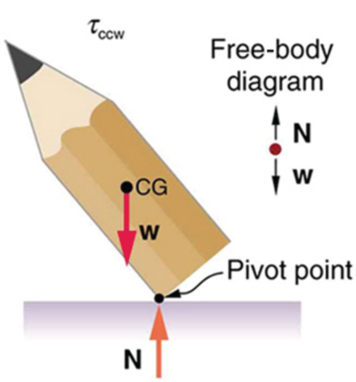


This pencil is in the condition of equilibrium. The net force on the pencil is zero and the total torque about any pivot is zero.

A system is in **unstable equilibrium** if, when displaced, it experiences a net force or torque in the *same* direction as the displacement from equilibrium. A system in unstable equilibrium accelerates away from its equilibrium position if displaced even slightly. An obvious example is a ball resting on top of a hill. Once displaced, it accelerates away from the crest. See the next several figures for examples of unstable equilibrium.

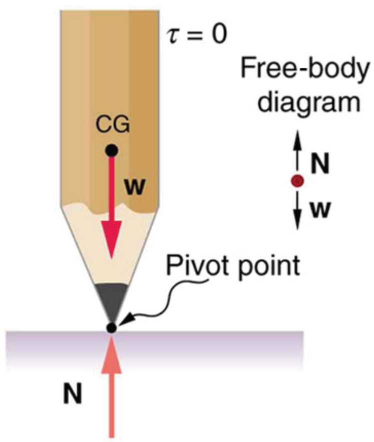


If the pencil is displaced slightly to the side (counterclockwise), it is no longer in equilibrium. Its weight produces a clockwise torque that returns the pencil to its equilibrium position.

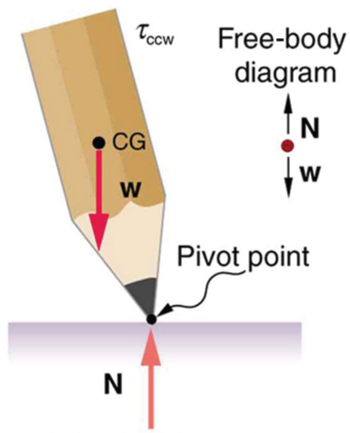


If the pencil is

displaced too far, the torque caused by its weight changes direction to counterclockwise and causes the displacement to increase.

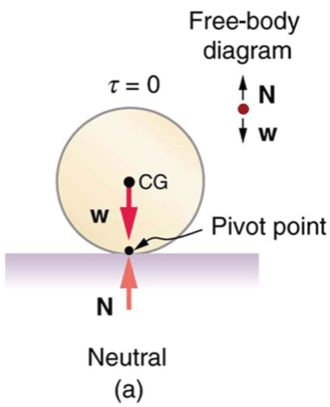


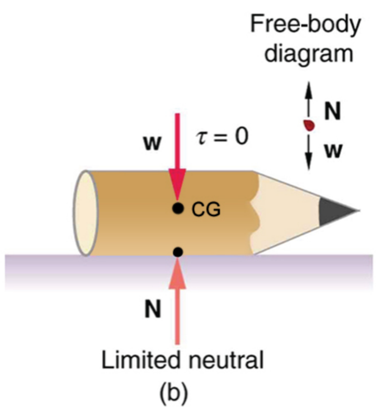
This figure shows unstable equilibrium, although both conditions for equilibrium are satisfied.



If the pencil is displaced even slightly, a torque is created by its weight that is in the same direction as the displacement, causing the displacement to increase.

A system is in **neutral equilibrium** if its equilibrium is independent of displacements from its original position. A marble on a flat horizontal surface is an example. Combinations of these situations are possible. For example, a marble on a saddle is stable for displacements toward the front or back of the saddle and unstable for displacements to the side. [link] shows another example of neutral equilibrium.

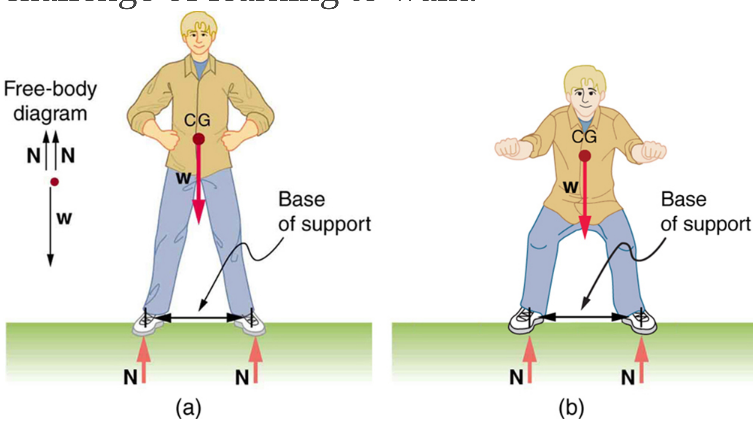




(a) Here we see neutral equilibrium. The cg of a sphere on a flat surface lies directly above the point of support, independent of the position on the surface. The sphere is therefore in equilibrium in any location, and if displaced, it will remain put. (b) Because it has a circular cross section, the pencil

is in neutral equilibrium for displacements perpendicular to its length.

When we consider how far a system in stable equilibrium can be displaced before it becomes unstable, we find that some systems in stable equilibrium are more stable than others. The pencil in [link] and the person in [link](a) are in stable equilibrium, but become unstable for relatively small displacements to the side. The critical point is reached when the cg is no longer *above* the base of support. Additionally, since the cg of a person's body is above the pivots in the hips, displacements must be quickly controlled. This control is a central nervous system function that is developed when we learn to hold our bodies erect as infants. For increased stability while standing, the feet should be spread apart, giving a larger base of support. Stability is also increased by lowering one's center of gravity by bending the knees, as when a football player prepares to receive a ball or braces themselves for a tackle. A cane, a crutch, or a walker increases the stability of the user, even more as the base of support widens. Usually, the cg of a female is lower (closer to the ground) than a male. Young children have their center of gravity between their shoulders, which increases the challenge of learning to walk.

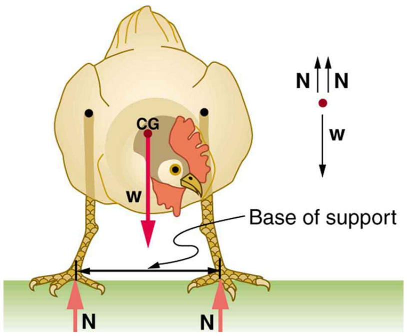


(a) The center of gravity of an adult is above the hip joints (one of the main

pivots in the body) and lies between two narrowly-separated feet. Like a pencil standing on its eraser, this person is in stable equilibrium in relation to sideways displacements, but relatively small displacements take his cg outside the base of support and make him unstable. Humans are less stable relative to forward and backward displacements because the feet are not very long. Muscles are used extensively to balance the body in the front-to-back direction. (b) While bending in the manner shown, stability is increased by lowering the center of gravity. Stability is also increased if the base is expanded by placing the feet farther apart.

Animals such as chickens have easier systems to control. [link] shows that the cg of a chicken lies below its hip joints and between its widely separated and broad feet. Even relatively large displacements of the chicken's cg are stable and result in restoring forces and torques that return the cg to its equilibrium position with little effort on the chicken's part. Not all birds are like chickens, of course. Some birds, such as the flamingo, have balance systems that are almost as sophisticated as that of humans.

[link] shows that the cg of a chicken is below the hip joints and lies above a broad base of support formed by widely-separated and large feet. Hence, the chicken is in very stable equilibrium, since a relatively large displacement is needed to render it unstable. The body of the chicken is supported from above by the hips and acts as a pendulum between the hips. Therefore, the chicken is stable for front-to-back displacements as well as for side-to-side displacements.



The center of gravity of a chicken is below the hip joints. The chicken is in stable equilibrium. The body of the chicken is supported from above by the hips and acts as a pendulum between them.

Engineers and architects strive to achieve extremely stable equilibriums for buildings and other systems that must withstand wind, earthquakes, and other forces that displace them from equilibrium. Although the examples in this section emphasize gravitational forces, the basic conditions for equilibrium are the same for all types of forces. The net external force must be zero, and the net torque must also be zero.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment
Stand straight with your heels, back, and head against a wall. Bend forward from your waist, keeping your heels and bottom against the wall, to touch your toes. Can you do this without toppling over? Explain why and what

you need to do to be able to touch your toes without losing your balance. Is it easier for a woman to do this?

Section Summary

- A system is said to be in stable equilibrium if, when displaced from equilibrium, it experiences a net force or torque in a direction opposite the direction of the displacement.
- A system is in unstable equilibrium if, when displaced from equilibrium, it experiences a net force or torque in the same direction as the displacement from equilibrium.
- A system is in neutral equilibrium if its equilibrium is independent of displacements from its original position.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

A round pencil lying on its side as in [link] is in neutral equilibrium relative to displacements perpendicular to its length. What is its stability relative to displacements parallel to its length?

Exercise:

Problem:

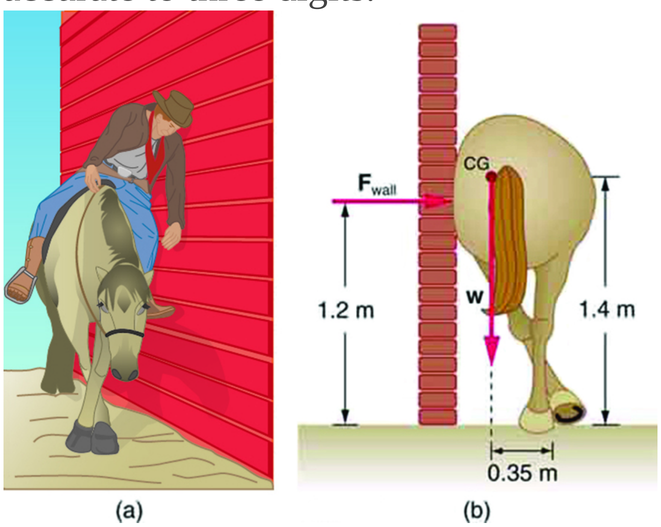
Explain the need for tall towers on a suspension bridge to ensure stable equilibrium.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a horse leans against a wall as in [link]. Calculate the force exerted on the wall assuming that force is horizontal while using the data in the schematic representation of the situation. Note that the force exerted on the wall is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the force exerted on the horse, keeping it in equilibrium. The total mass of the horse and rider is 500 kg. Take the data to be accurate to three digits.



Solution:

$F_{\text{wall}} = 1.43 \times 10^3\ \text{N}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Two children of mass 20.0 kg and 30.0 kg sit balanced on a seesaw with the pivot point located at the center of the seesaw. If the children are separated by a distance of 3.00 m, at what distance from the pivot point is the small child sitting in order to maintain the balance?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the magnitude and direction of the force on each foot of the horse in [link] (two are on the ground), assuming the center of mass of the horse is midway between the feet. The total mass of the horse and rider is 500kg. (b) What is the minimum coefficient of friction between the hooves and ground? Note that the force exerted by the wall is horizontal.

Solution:

a) 2.55×10^3 N, 16.3° to the left of vertical (i.e., toward the wall)

b) 0.292

Exercise:

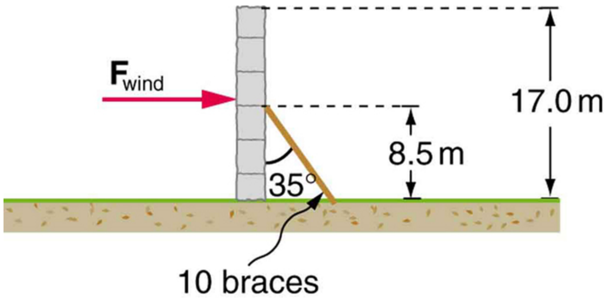
Problem:

A person carries a plank of wood 2.00 m long with one hand pushing down on it at one end with a force F_1 and the other hand holding it up at .500 m from the end of the plank with force F_2. If the plank has a mass of 20.0 kg and its center of gravity is at the middle of the plank, what are the magnitudes of the forces F_1 and F_2?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 17.0-m-high and 11.0-m-long wall under construction and its bracing are shown in [link]. The wall is in stable equilibrium without the bracing but can pivot at its base. Calculate the force exerted by each of the 10 braces if a strong wind exerts a horizontal force of 650 N on each square meter of the wall. Assume that the net force from the wind acts at a height halfway up the wall and that all braces exert equal forces parallel to their lengths. Neglect the thickness of the wall.



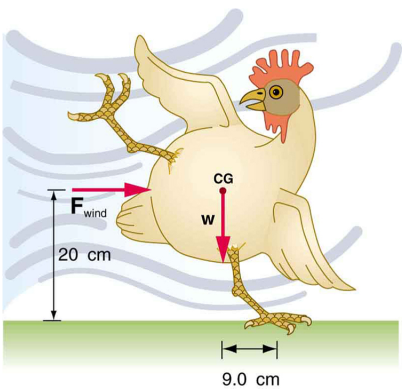
Solution:

$F_B = 2.12 \times 10^4\ \text{N}$

Exercise:

Problem:

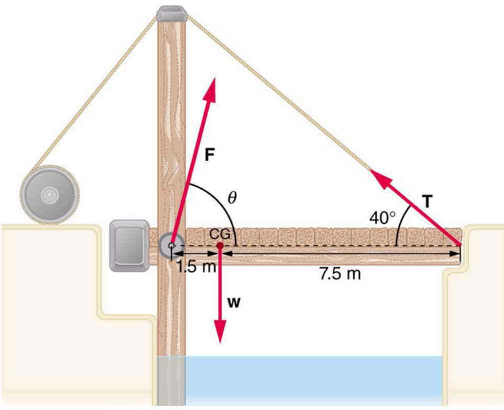
(a) What force must be exerted by the wind to support a 2.50-kg chicken in the position shown in [link]? (b) What is the ratio of this force to the chicken's weight? (c) Does this support the contention that the chicken has a relatively stable construction?



Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the weight of the drawbridge in [link] is supported entirely by its hinges and the opposite shore, so that its cables are slack. (a) What fraction of the weight is supported by the opposite shore if the point of support is directly beneath the cable attachments? (b) What is the direction and magnitude of the force the hinges exert on the bridge under these circumstances? The mass of the bridge is 2500 kg.



A small drawbridge, showing the forces on the hinges ($\mathbf{F}$), its weight ($\mathbf{w}$), and the tension in its wires ($\mathbf{T}$).

Solution:

a) 0.167, or about one-sixth of the weight is supported by the opposite shore.

b) $F = 2.0 \times 10^4$ N, straight up.

Exercise:

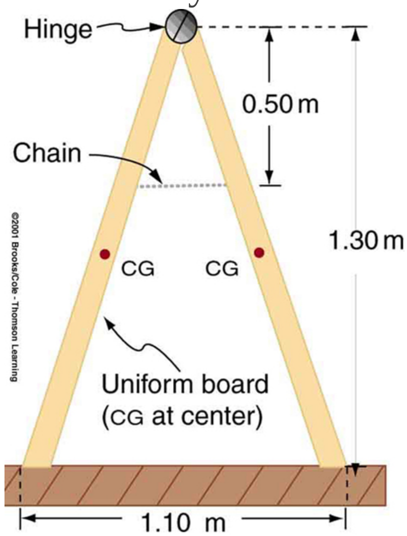
Problem:

Suppose a 900-kg car is on the bridge in [link] with its center of mass halfway between the hinges and the cable attachments. (The bridge is supported by the cables and hinges only.) (a) Find the force in the cables. (b) Find the direction and magnitude of the force exerted by the hinges on the bridge.

Exercise:

Problem:

A sandwich board advertising sign is constructed as shown in [link]. The sign's mass is 8.00 kg. (a) Calculate the tension in the chain assuming no friction between the legs and the sidewalk. (b) What force is exerted by each side on the hinge?



A sandwich board advertising sign demonstrates tension.

Solution:

a) 21.6 N

b) 21.6 N

Exercise:

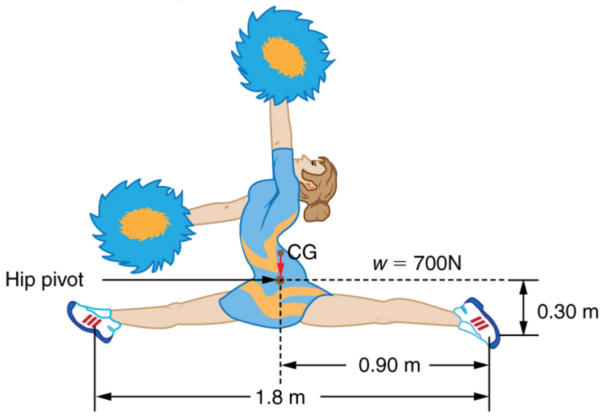
Problem:

(a) What minimum coefficient of friction is needed between the legs and the ground to keep the sign in [link] in the position shown if the chain breaks? (b) What force is exerted by each side on the hinge?

Exercise:

Problem:

A gymnast is attempting to perform splits. From the information given in [link], calculate the magnitude and direction of the force exerted on each foot by the floor.



A gymnast performs full split. The center of gravity and the various distances from it are shown.

Solution:

350 N directly upwards

Glossary

neutral equilibrium
: a state of equilibrium that is independent of a system’s displacements from its original position

stable equilibrium
: a system, when displaced, experiences a net force or torque in a direction opposite to the direction of the displacement

unstable equilibrium

a system, when displaced, experiences a net force or torque in the same direction as the displacement from equilibrium

Applications of Statics, Including Problem-Solving Strategies

- Discuss the applications of Statics in real life.
- State and discuss various problem-solving strategies in Statics.

Statics can be applied to a variety of situations, ranging from raising a drawbridge to bad posture and back strain. We begin with a discussion of problem-solving strategies specifically used for statics. Since statics is a special case of Newton's laws, both the general problem-solving strategies and the special strategies for Newton's laws, discussed in [Problem-Solving Strategies], still apply.

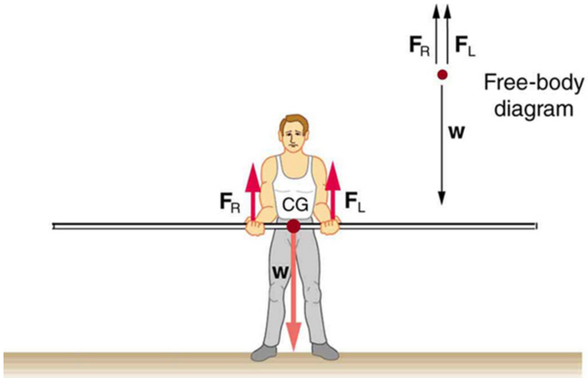
Note:
Problem-Solving Strategy: Static Equilibrium Situations

1. The first step is to determine whether or not the system is in **static equilibrium**. This condition is always the case when the *acceleration of the system is zero and accelerated rotation does not occur*.
2. It is particularly important to *draw a free body diagram for the system of interest*. Carefully label all forces, and note their relative magnitudes, directions, and points of application whenever these are known.
3. Solve the problem by applying either or both of the conditions for equilibrium (represented by the equations net $F=0$ and net $\tau=0$, depending on the list of known and unknown factors. If the second condition is involved, *choose the pivot point to simplify the solution*. Any pivot point can be chosen, but the most useful ones cause torques by unknown forces to be zero. (Torque is zero if the force is applied at the pivot (then $r=0$), or along a line through the pivot point (then $\theta=0$)). Always choose a convenient coordinate system for projecting forces.
4. *Check the solution to see if it is reasonable* by examining the magnitude, direction, and units of the answer. The importance of this last step never diminishes, although in unfamiliar applications, it is usually more difficult to judge reasonableness. These judgments become progressively easier with experience.

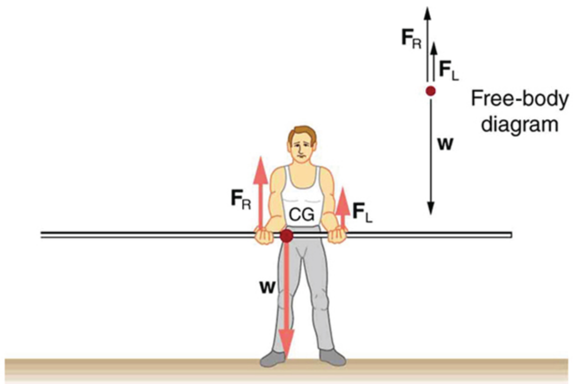
Now let us apply this problem-solving strategy for the pole vaulter shown in the three figures below. The pole is uniform and has a mass of 5.00 kg. In [link], the pole's cg lies halfway between the vaulter's hands. It seems reasonable that the force exerted by each hand is equal to half the weight of the pole, or 24.5 N. This obviously satisfies the first condition for equilibrium $(\text{net } F = 0)$. The second condition $(\text{net } \tau = 0)$ is also satisfied, as we can see by choosing the cg to be the pivot point. The weight exerts no torque about a pivot point located at the cg, since it is applied at that point and its lever arm is zero. The equal forces exerted by the hands are equidistant from the chosen pivot, and so they exert equal and opposite torques. Similar arguments hold for other systems where supporting forces are exerted symmetrically about the cg. For example, the four legs of a uniform table each support one-fourth of its weight.

In [link], a pole vaulter holding a pole with its cg halfway between his hands is shown. Each hand exerts a force equal to half the weight of the pole, $F_R = F_L = w/2$. (b) The pole vaulter moves the pole to his left, and the forces that the hands exert are no longer equal. See [link]. If the pole is held with its cg to the left of the person, then he must push down with his right hand and up with his left. The forces he exerts are larger here because they are in opposite directions and the cg is at a long distance from either hand.

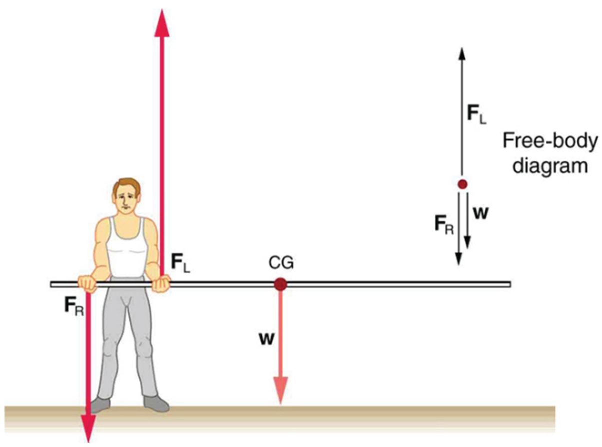
Similar observations can be made using a meter stick held at different locations along its length.



A pole vaulter holds a pole horizontally with both hands.



A pole vaulter is holding a pole horizontally with both hands. The center of gravity is near his right hand.



A pole vaulter is holding a pole horizontally with both hands. The center of gravity is to the left side of the vaulter.

If the pole vaulter holds the pole as shown in [link], the situation is not as simple. The total force he exerts is still equal to the weight of the pole, but it is not evenly divided between his hands. (If $F_L = F_R$, then the torques about the cg would not be equal since the lever arms are different.) Logically, the right hand should support more weight, since it is closer to the cg. In fact, if the right hand is moved directly under the cg, it will support all the weight. This situation is exactly analogous to two people carrying a load; the one closer to the cg carries more of its weight. Finding the forces F_L and F_R is straightforward, as the next example shows.

If the pole vaulter holds the pole from near the end of the pole ([link]), the direction of the force applied by the right hand of the vaulter reverses its direction.

Example:
What Force Is Needed to Support a Weight Held Near Its CG?
For the situation shown in [link], calculate: (a) F_R , the force exerted by the right hand, and (b) F_L, the force exerted by the left hand. The hands are 0.900 m apart, and the cg of the pole is 0.600 m from the left hand.
Strategy
[link] includes a free body diagram for the pole, the system of interest. There is not enough information to use the first condition for equilibrium $(\text{net } F = 0)$, since two of the three forces are unknown and the hand forces cannot be assumed to be equal in this case. There is enough information to use the second condition for equilibrium $(\text{net } \tau = 0)$ if the pivot point is chosen to be at either hand, thereby making the torque from that hand zero. We choose to locate the pivot at the left hand in this part of the problem, to eliminate the torque from the left hand.
Solution for (a)
There are now only two nonzero torques, those from the gravitational force (τ_{w}) and from the push or pull of the right hand (τ_R). Stating the second condition in terms of clockwise and counterclockwise torques,
Equation:

$$\text{net } \tau_{\text{cw}} = -\text{net } \tau_{\text{ccw}}.$$

or the algebraic sum of the torques is zero.
Here this is
Equation:

$$\tau_R = -\tau_{\mathrm{w}}$$

since the weight of the pole creates a counterclockwise torque and the right hand counters with a clockwise torque. Using the definition of torque, $\tau = rF \sin \theta$, noting that $\theta = 90^{\mathrm{o}}$, and substituting known values, we obtain
Equation:

$$(0.900 \text{ m})(F_R) = (0.600 \text{ m})(mg).$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_R &= (0.667)(5.00 \text{ kg})\left(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2\right) \\ &= 32.7 \text{ N}. \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (b)
The first condition for equilibrium is based on the free body diagram in the figure. This implies that by Newton's second law:
Equation:

$$F_L + F_R - \mathrm{mg} = 0$$

From this we can conclude:
Equation:

$$F_L + F_R = w = \mathrm{mg}$$

Solving for F_L, we obtain
Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_L &= mg - F_R \\
&= mg - 32.7\text{ N} \\
&= (5.00\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right) - 32.7\text{ N} \\
&= 16.3\text{ N}
\end{aligned}
$$

Discussion

F_L is seen to be exactly half of F_R, as we might have guessed, since F_L is applied twice as far from the cg as F_R.

If the pole vaulter holds the pole as he might at the start of a run, shown in [link], the forces change again. Both are considerably greater, and one force reverses direction.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment

This is an experiment to perform while standing in a bus or a train. Stand facing sideways. How do you move your body to readjust the distribution of your mass as the bus accelerates and decelerates? Now stand facing forward. How do you move your body to readjust the distribution of your mass as the bus accelerates and decelerates? Why is it easier and safer to stand facing sideways rather than forward? Note: For your safety (and those around you), make sure you are holding onto something while you carry out this activity!

Note:

PhET Explorations: Balancing Act

Play with objects on a teeter totter to learn about balance. Test what you've learned by trying the Balance Challenge game.

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/balancing-act/latest/balancing-act_en.html

Summary

- Statics can be applied to a variety of situations, ranging from raising a drawbridge to bad posture and back strain. We have discussed the problem-solving strategies specifically useful for statics. Statics is a special case of Newton's laws, both the general problem-solving strategies and the special strategies for Newton's laws, discussed in Problem-Solving Strategies, still apply.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

When visiting some countries, you may see a person balancing a load on the head. Explain why the center of mass of the load needs to be directly above the person's neck vertebrae.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

To get up on the roof, a person (mass 70.0 kg) places a 6.00-m aluminum ladder (mass 10.0 kg) against the house on a concrete pad with the base of the ladder 2.00 m from the house. The ladder rests against a plastic rain gutter, which we can assume to be frictionless. The center of mass of the ladder is 2 m from the bottom. The person is standing 3 m from the bottom. What are the magnitudes of the forces on the ladder at the top and bottom?

Exercise:

Problem:

In [link], the cg of the pole held by the pole vaulter is 2.00 m from the left hand, and the hands are 0.700 m apart. Calculate the force exerted by (a) his right hand and (b) his left hand. (c) If each hand supports half the weight of the pole in [link], show that the second condition for equilibrium $(\text{net } \tau = 0)$ is satisfied for a pivot other than the one located at the center of gravity of the pole. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for static equilibrium described above.

Glossary

static equilibrium
: equilibrium in which the acceleration of the system is zero and accelerated rotation does not occur

Simple Machines

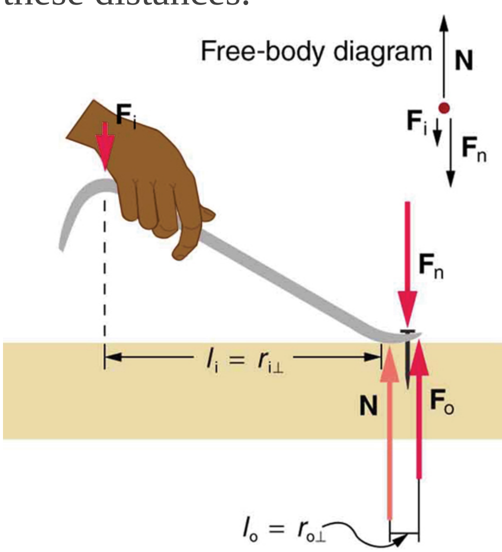
- Describe different simple machines.
- Calculate the mechanical advantage.

Simple machines are devices that can be used to multiply or augment a force that we apply – often at the expense of a distance through which we apply the force. The word for “machine” comes from the Greek word meaning “to help make things easier.” Levers, gears, pulleys, wedges, and screws are some examples of machines. Energy is still conserved for these devices because a machine cannot do more work than the energy put into it. However, machines can reduce the input force that is needed to perform the job. The ratio of output to input force magnitudes for any simple machine is called its **mechanical advantage** (MA).

Equation:

$$\mathrm{MA} = \frac{F_{\mathrm{o}}}{F_{\mathrm{i}}}$$

One of the simplest machines is the lever, which is a rigid bar pivoted at a fixed place called the fulcrum. Torques are involved in levers, since there is rotation about a pivot point. Distances from the physical pivot of the lever are crucial, and we can obtain a useful expression for the MA in terms of these distances.



A nail puller is a lever with a large mechanical advantage. The external forces on the nail puller are represented by solid arrows. The force that the nail puller applies to the nail ($\mathbf{F}_{\text{o}}$) is not a force on the nail puller. The reaction force the nail exerts back on the puller ($\mathbf{F}_{\text{n}}$) is an external force and is equal and opposite to $\mathbf{F}_{\text{o}}$. The perpendicular lever arms of the input and output forces are l_{i} and l_0.

[link] shows a lever type that is used as a nail puller. Crowbars, seesaws, and other such levers are all analogous to this one. $\mathbf{F}_{\text{i}}$ is the input force and $\mathbf{F}_{\text{o}}$ is the output force. There are three vertical forces acting on the nail puller (the system of interest) – these are $\mathbf{F}_{\text{i}}$, $\mathbf{F}_{\text{n}}$, and $\mathbf{N}$. $\mathbf{F}_{\text{n}}$ is the reaction force back on the system, equal and opposite to $\mathbf{F}_{\text{o}}$. (Note that $\mathbf{F}_{\text{o}}$ is not a force on the system.) $\mathbf{N}$ is the normal force upon the lever, and its torque is zero since it is exerted at the pivot. The torques due to $\mathbf{F}_{\text{i}}$ and $\mathbf{F}_{\text{n}}$ must be equal to each other if the nail is not moving, to satisfy the second condition for equilibrium $(\text{net }\tau = 0)$. (In order for the nail to actually move, the torque due to $\mathbf{F}_{\text{i}}$ must be ever-so-slightly greater than torque due to $\mathbf{F}_{\text{n}}$.) Hence,

Equation:

$$l_{\text{i}}F_{\text{i}} = l_{\text{o}}F_{\text{o}}$$

where l_i and l_o are the distances from where the input and output forces are applied to the pivot, as shown in the figure. Rearranging the last equation gives

Equation:

$$\frac{F_\mathrm{o}}{F_\mathrm{i}} = \frac{l_\mathrm{i}}{l_\mathrm{o}}.$$

What interests us most here is that the magnitude of the force exerted by the nail puller, F_o, is much greater than the magnitude of the input force applied to the puller at the other end, F_i. For the nail puller,

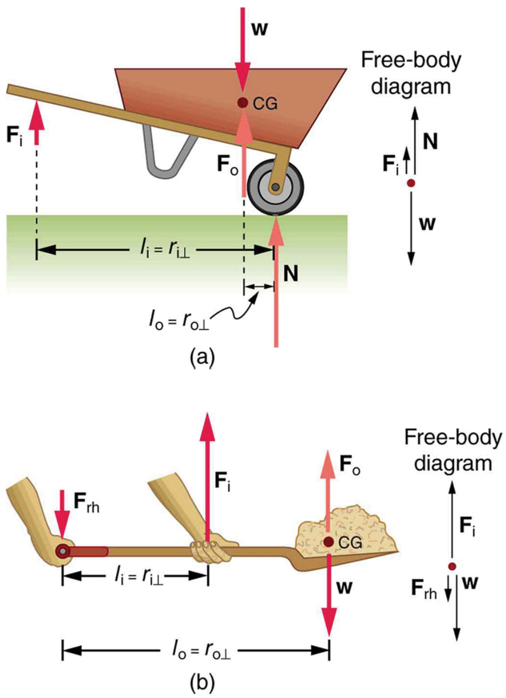
Equation:

$$\mathrm{MA} = \frac{F_\mathrm{o}}{F_\mathrm{i}} = \frac{l_\mathrm{i}}{l_\mathrm{o}}.$$

This equation is true for levers in general. For the nail puller, the MA is certainly greater than one. The longer the handle on the nail puller, the greater the force you can exert with it.

Two other types of levers that differ slightly from the nail puller are a wheelbarrow and a shovel, shown in [link]. All these lever types are similar in that only three forces are involved – the input force, the output force, and the force on the pivot – and thus their MAs are given by $\mathrm{MA} = \frac{F_\mathrm{o}}{F_\mathrm{i}}$ and $\mathrm{MA} = \frac{d_1}{d_2}$, with distances being measured relative to the physical pivot. The wheelbarrow and shovel differ from the nail puller because both the input and output forces are on the same side of the pivot.

In the case of the wheelbarrow, the output force or load is between the pivot (the wheel's axle) and the input or applied force. In the case of the shovel, the input force is between the pivot (at the end of the handle) and the load, but the input lever arm is shorter than the output lever arm. In this case, the MA is less than one.



(a) In the case of the wheelbarrow, the output force or load is between the pivot and the input force. The pivot is the wheel's axle. Here, the output force is greater than the input force. Thus, a wheelbarrow enables you to lift much heavier loads than you could with your body alone. (b) In the case of the shovel, the input force is between the pivot and the load, but the input lever arm is shorter than the output lever arm. The pivot is at the handle held by the right hand. Here, the output force

(supporting the shovel's load) is less than the input force (from the hand nearest the load), because the input is exerted closer to the pivot than is the output.

Example:

What is the Advantage for the Wheelbarrow?

In the wheelbarrow of [link], the load has a perpendicular lever arm of 7.50 cm, while the hands have a perpendicular lever arm of 1.02 m. (a) What upward force must you exert to support the wheelbarrow and its load if their combined mass is 45.0 kg? (b) What force does the wheelbarrow exert on the ground?

Strategy

Here, we use the concept of mechanical advantage.

Solution

(a) In this case, $\frac{F_o}{F_i} = \frac{l_i}{l_o}$ becomes

Equation:

$$F_i = F_o \frac{l_o}{l_i}.$$

Adding values into this equation yields

Equation:

$$F_i = (45.0 \text{ kg})\left(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2\right)\frac{0.075 \text{ m}}{1.02 \text{ m}} = 32.4 \text{ N}.$$

The free-body diagram (see [link]) gives the following normal force: $F_i + N = W$. Therefore, $N = (45.0 \text{ kg})\left(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2\right) - 32.4 \text{ N} = 409 \text{ N}$

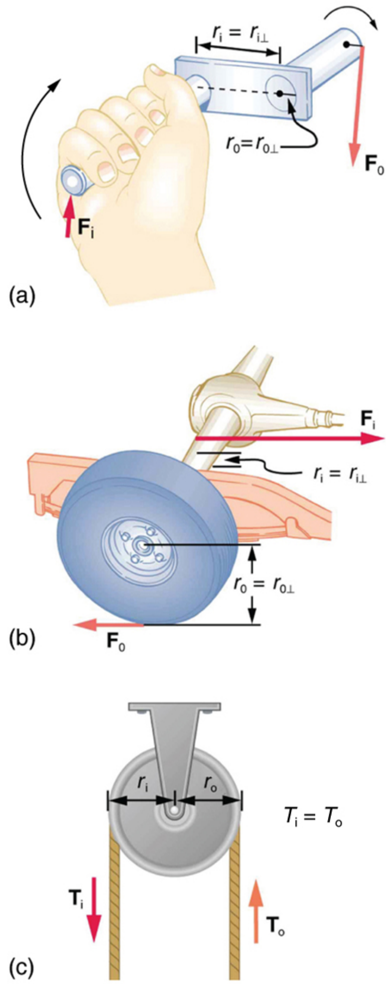
. N is the normal force acting on the wheel; by Newton’s third law, the force the wheel exerts on the ground is 409 N.

Discussion

An even longer handle would reduce the force needed to lift the load. The MA here is $\text{MA} = 1.02/0.0750 = 13.6$.

Another very simple machine is the inclined plane. Pushing a cart up a plane is easier than lifting the same cart straight up to the top using a ladder, because the applied force is less. However, the work done in both cases (assuming the work done by friction is negligible) is the same. Inclined lanes or ramps were probably used during the construction of the Egyptian pyramids to move large blocks of stone to the top.

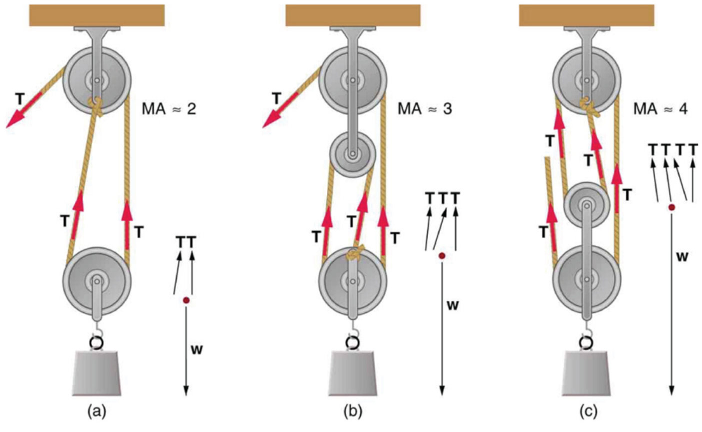
A crank is a lever that can be rotated 360^{o} about its pivot, as shown in [link]. Such a machine may not look like a lever, but the physics of its actions remain the same. The MA for a crank is simply the ratio of the radii r_{i}/r_0. Wheels and gears have this simple expression for their MAs too. The MA can be greater than 1, as it is for the crank, or less than 1, as it is for the simplified car axle driving the wheels, as shown. If the axle’s radius is 2.0 cm and the wheel’s radius is 24.0 cm, then $\text{MA} = 2.0/24.0 = 0.083$ and the axle would have to exert a force of $12{,}000\text{ N}$ on the wheel to enable it to exert a force of 1000 N on the ground.



(a) A crank is a type of lever that can be rotated 360° about its pivot. Cranks are usually designed to have a large MA. (b) A simplified automobile axle drives a wheel, which has a much larger diameter than the axle. The MA is less than 1.

(c) An ordinary pulley is used to lift a heavy load. The pulley changes the direction of the force T exerted by the cord without changing its magnitude. Hence, this machine has an MA of 1.

An ordinary pulley has an MA of 1; it only changes the direction of the force and not its magnitude. Combinations of pulleys, such as those illustrated in [link], are used to multiply force. If the pulleys are friction-free, then the force output is approximately an integral multiple of the tension in the cable. The number of cables pulling directly upward on the system of interest, as illustrated in the figures given below, is approximately the MA of the pulley system. Since each attachment applies an external force in approximately the same direction as the others, they add, producing a total force that is nearly an integral multiple of the input force T.



(a) The combination of pulleys is used to multiply force. The force is an integral multiple of tension if the pulleys are frictionless. This pulley

system has two cables attached to its load, thus applying a force of approximately $2T$. This machine has $\text{MA} \approx 2$. (b) Three pulleys are used to lift a load in such a way that the mechanical advantage is about 3. Effectively, there are three cables attached to the load. (c) This pulley system applies a force of $4T$, so that it has $\text{MA} \approx 4$. Effectively, four cables are pulling on the system of interest.

Section Summary

- Simple machines are devices that can be used to multiply or augment a force that we apply – often at the expense of a distance through which we have to apply the force.
- The ratio of output to input forces for any simple machine is called its mechanical advantage
- A few simple machines are the lever, nail puller, wheelbarrow, crank, etc.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Scissors are like a double-lever system. Which of the simple machines in [link] and [link] is most analogous to scissors?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you pull a nail at a constant rate using a nail puller as shown in [link]. Is the nail puller in equilibrium? What if you pull the nail with some acceleration – is the nail puller in equilibrium then? In which case is the force applied to the nail puller larger and why?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why are the forces exerted on the outside world by the limbs of our bodies usually much smaller than the forces exerted by muscles inside the body?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why the forces in our joints are several times larger than the forces we exert on the outside world with our limbs. Can these forces be even greater than muscle forces (see previous Question)?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the mechanical advantage of a nail puller—similar to the one shown in [link] —where you exert a force $45\ \text{cm}$ from the pivot and the nail is $1.8\ \text{cm}$ on the other side? What minimum force must you exert to apply a force of $1250\ \text{N}$ to the nail?

Solution:

25

50 N

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you needed to raise a 250-kg mower a distance of 6.0 cm above the ground to change a tire. If you had a 2.0-m long lever, where would you place the fulcrum if your force was limited to 300 N?

Exercise:

Problem:

a) What is the mechanical advantage of a wheelbarrow, such as the one in [link], if the center of gravity of the wheelbarrow and its load has a perpendicular lever arm of 5.50 cm, while the hands have a perpendicular lever arm of 1.02 m? (b) What upward force should you exert to support the wheelbarrow and its load if their combined mass is 55.0 kg? (c) What force does the wheel exert on the ground?

Solution:

a) $\text{MA} = 18.5$

b) $F_{\text{i}} = 29.1\text{ N}$

c) 510 N downward

Exercise:

Problem:

A typical car has an axle with 1.10 cm radius driving a tire with a radius of 27.5 cm. What is its mechanical advantage assuming the very simplified model in [link](b)?

Exercise:

Problem:

What force does the nail puller in [link] exert on the supporting surface? The nail puller has a mass of 2.10 kg.

Solution:

$1.3 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$

Exercise:

Problem:

If you used an ideal pulley of the type shown in [link](a) to support a car engine of mass 115 kg, (a) What would be the tension in the rope? (b) What force must the ceiling supply, assuming you pull straight down on the rope? Neglect the pulley system's mass.

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat [link] for the pulley shown in [link](c), assuming you pull straight up on the rope. The pulley system's mass is 7.00 kg.

Solution:

a) $T = 299 \text{ N}$

b) 897 N upward

Glossary

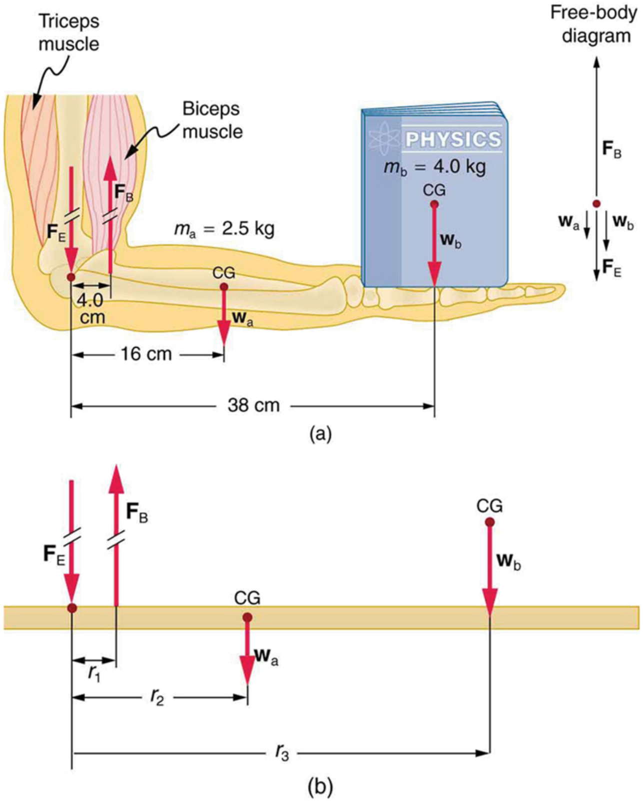
mechanical advantage
: the ratio of output to input forces for any simple machine

Forces and Torques in Muscles and Joints

- Explain the forces exerted by muscles.
- State how a bad posture causes back strain.
- Discuss the benefits of skeletal muscles attached close to joints.
- Discuss various complexities in the real system of muscles, bones, and joints.

Muscles, bones, and joints are some of the most interesting applications of statics. There are some surprises. Muscles, for example, exert far greater forces than we might think. [link] shows a forearm holding a book and a schematic diagram of an analogous lever system. The schematic is a good approximation for the forearm, which looks more complicated than it is, and we can get some insight into the way typical muscle systems function by analyzing it.

Muscles can only contract, so they occur in pairs. In the arm, the biceps muscle is a flexor—that is, it closes the limb. The triceps muscle is an extensor that opens the limb. This configuration is typical of skeletal muscles, bones, and joints in humans and other vertebrates. Most skeletal muscles exert much larger forces within the body than the limbs apply to the outside world. The reason is clear once we realize that most muscles are attached to bones via tendons close to joints, causing these systems to have mechanical advantages much less than one. Viewing them as simple machines, the input force is much greater than the output force, as seen in [link].



(a) The figure shows the forearm of a person holding a book. The biceps exert a force $\mathbf{F}_B$ to support the weight of the forearm and the book. The triceps are assumed to be relaxed.

book. The triceps are assumed to be relaxed. (b) Here, you can view an approximately equivalent mechanical system with the pivot at the elbow joint as seen in [link].

Example:
Muscles Exert Bigger Forces Than You Might Think

Calculate the force the biceps muscle must exert to hold the forearm and its load as shown in [link], and compare this force with the weight of the forearm plus its load. You may take the data in the figure to be accurate to three significant figures.

Strategy

There are four forces acting on the forearm and its load (the system of interest). The magnitude of the force of the biceps is F_{B}; that of the elbow joint is F_{E}; that of the weights of the forearm is w_{a}, and its load is w_{b}. Two of these are unknown (F_{B} and F_{E}), so that the first condition for equilibrium cannot by itself yield F_{B}. But if we use the second condition and choose the pivot to be at the elbow, then the torque due to F_{E} is zero, and the only unknown becomes F_{B}.

Solution

The torques created by the weights are clockwise relative to the pivot, while the torque created by the biceps is counterclockwise; thus, the second condition for equilibrium $(\text{net } \tau = 0)$ becomes

Equation:

$$r_2 w_{\mathrm{a}} + r_3 w_{\mathrm{b}} = r_1 F_{\mathrm{B}}.$$

Note that $\sin \theta = 1$ for all forces, since $\theta = 90^{\circ}$ for all forces. This equation can easily be solved for F_{B} in terms of known quantities, yielding

Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{B}} = \frac{r_2 w_{\mathrm{a}} + r_3 w_{\mathrm{b}}}{r_1}.$$

Entering the known values gives

Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{B}} = \frac{(0.160 \text{ m})(2.50 \text{ kg})\left(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2\right) + (0.380 \text{ m})(4.00 \text{ kg})\left(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2\right)}{0.0400 \text{ m}}$$

which yields

Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{B}} = 470 \text{ N}.$$

Now, the combined weight of the arm and its load is $(6.50 \text{ kg})\left(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2\right) = 63.7 \text{ N}$, so that the ratio of the force exerted by the biceps to the total weight is

Equation:

$$\frac{F_{\text{B}}}{w_{\text{a}} + w_{\text{b}}} = \frac{470}{63.7} = 7.38.$$

Discussion

This means that the biceps muscle is exerting a force 7.38 times the weight supported.

In the above example of the biceps muscle, the angle between the forearm and upper arm is 90°. If this angle changes, the force exerted by the biceps muscle also changes. In addition, the length of the biceps muscle changes. The force the biceps muscle can exert depends upon its length; it is smaller when it is shorter than when it is stretched.

Very large forces are also created in the joints. In the previous example, the downward force F_{E} exerted by the humerus at the elbow joint equals 407 N, or 6.38 times the total weight supported. (The calculation of F_{E} is straightforward and is left as an end-of-chapter problem.) Because muscles can contract, but not expand beyond their resting length, joints and muscles often exert forces that act in opposite directions and thus subtract. (In the above example, the upward force of the muscle minus the downward force of the joint equals the weight supported —that is, $470 \text{ N} - 407 \text{ N} = 63 \text{ N}$, approximately equal to the weight supported.) Forces in muscles and joints are largest when their load is a long distance from the joint, as the book is in the previous example.

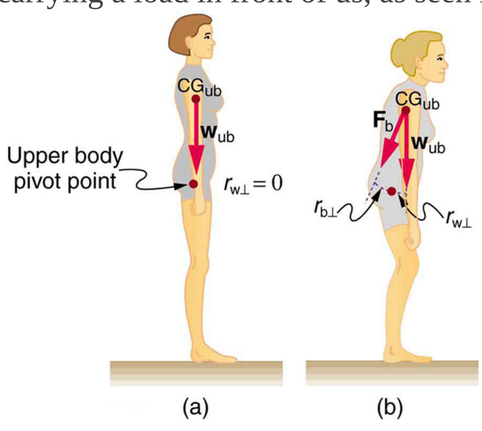
In racquet sports such as tennis the constant extension of the arm during game play creates large forces in this way. The mass times the lever arm of a tennis racquet is an important factor, and many players use the heaviest racquet they can handle. It is no wonder that joint deterioration and damage to the tendons in the elbow, such as “tennis elbow,” can result from repetitive motion, undue torques, and possibly poor racquet selection in such sports. Various tried techniques for holding and using a racquet or bat or stick not only increases sporting prowess but can minimize fatigue and long-term damage to the body. For example, tennis balls correctly hit at the “sweet spot” on the racquet will result in little vibration or impact force being felt in the racquet and the body—less torque as explained in Collisions of Extended Bodies in Two Dimensions. Twisting the hand to provide top spin on the ball or using an extended rigid elbow in a backhand stroke can also aggravate the tendons in the elbow.

Training coaches and physical therapists use the knowledge of relationships between forces and torques in the treatment of muscles and joints. In physical therapy, an exercise routine can apply a particular force and torque which can, over a period of time, revive muscles and joints. Some exercises are designed to be carried out under water, because this requires greater forces to be exerted, further strengthening muscles. However, connecting tissues in the limbs, such as tendons and cartilage as well as joints are sometimes damaged by the large forces they carry.

Often, this is due to accidents, but heavily muscled athletes, such as weightlifters, can tear muscles and connecting tissue through effort alone.

The back is considerably more complicated than the arm or leg, with various muscles and joints between vertebrae, all having mechanical advantages less than 1. Back muscles must, therefore, exert very large forces, which are borne by the spinal column. Discs crushed by mere exertion are very common. The jaw is somewhat exceptional—the masseter muscles that close the jaw have a mechanical advantage greater than 1 for the back teeth, allowing us to exert very large forces with them. A cause of stress headaches is persistent clenching of teeth where the sustained large force translates into fatigue in muscles around the skull.

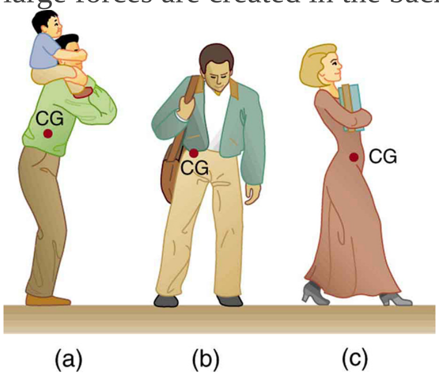
[link] shows how bad posture causes back strain. In part (a), we see a person with good posture. Note that her upper body's cg is directly above the pivot point in the hips, which in turn is directly above the base of support at her feet. Because of this, her upper body's weight exerts no torque about the hips. The only force needed is a vertical force at the hips equal to the weight supported. No muscle action is required, since the bones are rigid and transmit this force from the floor. This is a position of unstable equilibrium, but only small forces are needed to bring the upper body back to vertical if it is slightly displaced. Bad posture is shown in part (b); we see that the upper body's cg is in front of the pivot in the hips. This creates a clockwise torque around the hips that is counteracted by muscles in the lower back. These muscles must exert large forces, since they have typically small mechanical advantages. (In other words, the perpendicular lever arm for the muscles is much smaller than for the cg.) Poor posture can also cause muscle strain for people sitting at their desks using computers. Special chairs are available that allow the body's CG to be more easily situated above the seat, to reduce back pain. Prolonged muscle action produces muscle strain. Note that the cg of the entire body is still directly above the base of support in part (b) of [link]. This is compulsory; otherwise the person would not be in equilibrium. We lean forward for the same reason when carrying a load on our backs, to the side when carrying a load in one arm, and backward when carrying a load in front of us, as seen in [link].



(a) Good posture places the upper body's cg over the pivots in the hips, eliminating the need for muscle action to balance the body. (b) Poor posture requires

exertion by the back muscles to counteract the clockwise torque produced around the pivot by the upper body’s weight. The back muscles have a small effective perpendicular lever arm, $r_{\text{b}\perp}$, and must therefore exert a large force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{b}}$. Note that the legs lean backward to keep the cg of the entire body above the base of support in the feet.

You have probably been warned against lifting objects with your back. This action, even more than bad posture, can cause muscle strain and damage discs and vertebrae, since abnormally large forces are created in the back muscles and spine.



People adjust their stance to maintain balance. (a) A father carrying his son piggyback leans forward to position their overall cg above the base of support at his feet. (b) A student carrying a shoulder bag leans to the side to keep the overall cg over his feet. (c) Another student carrying a load of books in her arms leans backward for the same reason.

Example:
Do Not Lift with Your Back
Consider the person lifting a heavy box with his back, shown in [link]. (a) Calculate the magnitude of the force F_B– in the back muscles that is needed to support the upper body plus the box and compare this with his weight. The mass of the upper body is 55.0 kg and the mass of the box is 30.0 kg. (b) Calculate the magnitude and direction of the force $\mathbf{F}_V$– exerted by the vertebrae on the spine at the indicated pivot point. Again, data in the figure may be taken to be accurate to three significant figures.
Strategy
By now, we sense that the second condition for equilibrium is a good place to start, and inspection of the known values confirms that it can be used to solve for F_B– if the pivot is chosen to be at the hips. The torques created by $\mathbf{w}_{ub}$ and $\mathbf{w}_{box}$– are clockwise, while that created by $\mathbf{F}_B$– is counterclockwise.
Solution for (a)
Using the perpendicular lever arms given in the figure, the second condition for equilibrium $(\text{net } \tau = 0)$ becomes
Equation:

$$(0.350\text{ m})(55.0\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right) + (0.500\text{ m})(30.0\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right) = (0.0800\text{ m})F_B.$$

Solving for F_B yields
Equation:

$$F_B = 4.20 \times 10^3\text{ N}.$$

The ratio of the force the back muscles exert to the weight of the upper body plus its load is
Equation:

$$\frac{F_B}{w_{ub} + w_{box}} = \frac{4200\text{ N}}{833\text{ N}} = 5.04.$$

This force is considerably larger than it would be if the load were not present.
Solution for (b)
More important in terms of its damage potential is the force on the vertebrae $\mathbf{F}_V$. The first condition for equilibrium $(\text{net } \mathbf{F} = 0)$ can be used to find its magnitude and direction. Using y for vertical and x for horizontal, the condition for the net external forces along those axes to be zero
Equation:

$$\text{net } F_y = 0 \text{ and net } F_x = 0.$$

Starting with the vertical (y) components, this yields
Equation:

$$F_{Vy} – w_{ub} – w_{box} – F_B \sin 29.0^\text{o} = 0.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{V}y} &= w_{\text{ub}} + w_{\text{box}} + F_{\text{B}} \sin 29.0^{\text{o}} \\ &= 833\text{ N} + (4200\text{ N}) \sin 29.0^{\text{o}} \end{aligned}$$

yielding
Equation:

$$F_{\text{V}y} = 2.87 \times 10^{3}\text{ N}.$$

Similarly, for the horizontal (x) components,
Equation:

$$F_{\text{V}x} - F_{\text{B}} \cos 29.0^{\text{o}} = 0$$

yielding
Equation:

$$F_{\text{V}x} = 3.67 \times 10^{3}\text{ N}.$$

The magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{V}}$ is given by the Pythagorean theorem:
Equation:

$$F_{\text{V}} = \sqrt{F_{\text{V}x}^{2} + F_{\text{V}y}^{2}} = 4.66 \times 10^{3}\text{ N}.$$

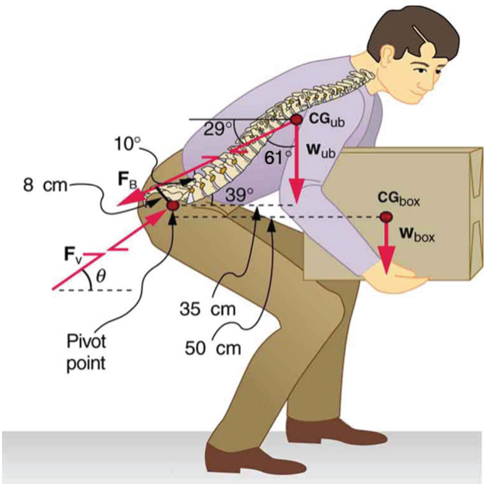
The direction of $\mathbf{F}_{\text{V}}$ is
Equation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{F_{\text{V}y}}{F_{\text{V}x}}\right) = 38.0^{\text{o}}.$$

Note that the ratio of F_{V} to the weight supported is
Equation:

$$\frac{F_{\text{V}}}{w_{\text{ub}} + w_{\text{box}}} = \frac{4660\text{ N}}{833\text{ N}} = 5.59.$$

Discussion
This force is about 5.6 times greater than it would be if the person were standing erect. The trouble with the back is not so much that the forces are large—because similar forces are created in our hips, knees, and ankles—but that our spines are relatively weak. Proper lifting, performed with the back erect and using the legs to raise the body and load, creates much smaller forces in the back—in this case, about 5.6 times smaller.



This figure shows that large forces are exerted by the back muscles and experienced in the vertebrae when a person lifts with their back, since these muscles have small effective perpendicular lever arms. The data shown here are analyzed in the preceding example, [link].

What are the benefits of having most skeletal muscles attached so close to joints? One advantage is speed because small muscle contractions can produce large movements of limbs in a short period of time. Other advantages are flexibility and agility, made possible by the large numbers of joints and the ranges over which they function. For example, it is difficult to imagine a system with biceps muscles attached at the wrist that would be capable of the broad range of movement we vertebrates possess.

There are some interesting complexities in real systems of muscles, bones, and joints. For instance, the pivot point in many joints changes location as the joint is flexed, so that the perpendicular lever arms and the mechanical advantage of the system change, too. Thus the force the biceps muscle must exert to hold up a book varies as the forearm is flexed. Similar mechanisms operate in the legs, which explain, for example, why there is less leg strain when a bicycle seat is set at the proper height. The methods employed in this section give a reasonable description of real systems provided enough is known about the dimensions of the system. There are many other interesting examples of force and torque in the body—a few of these are the subject of end-of-chapter problems.

Section Summary

- Statics plays an important part in understanding everyday strains in our muscles and bones.
- Many lever systems in the body have a mechanical advantage of significantly less than one, as many of our muscles are attached close to joints.
- Someone with good posture stands or sits in such a way that the person's center of gravity lies directly above the pivot point in the hips, thereby avoiding back strain and damage to disks.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why are the forces exerted on the outside world by the limbs of our bodies usually much smaller than the forces exerted by muscles inside the body?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why the forces in our joints are several times larger than the forces we exert on the outside world with our limbs. Can these forces be even greater than muscle forces?

Exercise:

Problem:

Certain types of dinosaurs were bipedal (walked on two legs). What is a good reason that these creatures invariably had long tails if they had long necks?

Exercise:

Problem:

Swimmers and athletes during competition need to go through certain postures at the beginning of the race. Consider the balance of the person and why start-offs are so important for races.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the maximum force the biceps muscle can exert is 1000 N, can we pick up an object that weighs 1000 N? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the biceps muscle was attached through tendons to the upper arm close to the elbow and the forearm near the wrist. What would be the advantages and disadvantages of this type of construction for the motion of the arm?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain one of the reasons why pregnant women often suffer from back strain late in their pregnancy.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: Verify that the force in the elbow joint in [link] is 407 N, as stated in the text.

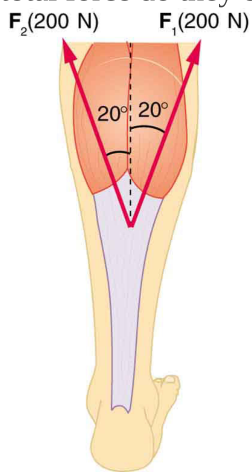
Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{B}} &= 470\text{ N};\ r_1 = 4.00\text{ cm};\ w_{\text{a}} = 2.50\text{ kg};\ r_2 = 16.0\text{ cm};w_{\text{b}} = 4.00\text{ kg};\ r_3 = 38.0\text{ cm} \\ F_{\text{E}} &= w_{\text{a}}\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1} - 1\right) + w_{\text{b}}\left(\frac{r_3}{r_1} - 1\right) \\ &= (2.50\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)\left(\frac{16.0\text{ cm}}{4.0\text{ cm}} - 1\right) \\ &\quad +(4.00\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)\left(\frac{38.0\text{ cm}}{4.00\text{ cm}} - 1\right) \\ &= 407\text{ N} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Two muscles in the back of the leg pull on the Achilles tendon as shown in [link]. What total force do they exert?



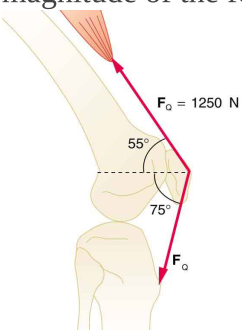
The Achilles tendon of the posterior leg serves to attach

plantaris, gastrocnemius, and soleus muscles to calcaneus bone.

Exercise:

Problem:

The upper leg muscle (quadriceps) exerts a force of 1250 N, which is carried by a tendon over the kneecap (the patella) at the angles shown in [link]. Find the direction and magnitude of the force exerted by the kneecap on the upper leg bone (the femur).



The knee joint works like a hinge to bend and straighten the lower leg. It permits a person to sit, stand, and pivot.

Solution:

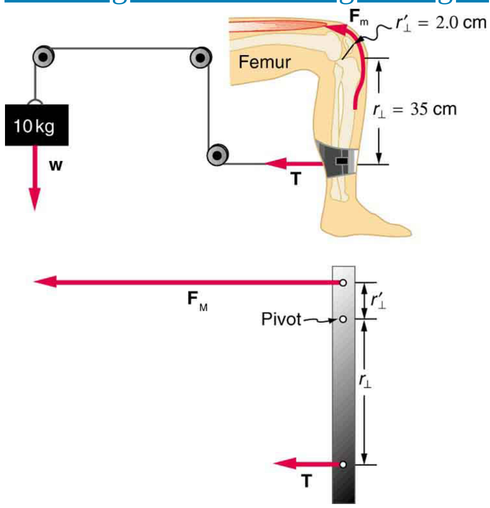
$$1.1 \times 10^3\ \text{N}$$

$\theta = 190^\circ$ ccw from positive x axis

Exercise:

Problem:

A device for exercising the upper leg muscle is shown in [link], together with a schematic representation of an equivalent lever system. Calculate the force exerted by the upper leg muscle to lift the mass at a constant speed. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for static equilibrium in Applications of Statistics, Including Problem-Solving Strategies.

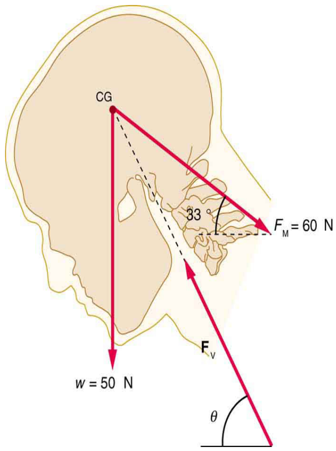


A mass is connected by pulleys and wires to the ankle in this exercise device.

Exercise:

Problem:

A person working at a drafting board may hold her head as shown in [link], requiring muscle action to support the head. The three major acting forces are shown. Calculate the direction and magnitude of the force supplied by the upper vertebrae $\mathbf{F}_V$ to hold the head stationary, assuming that this force acts along a line through the center of mass as do the weight and muscle force.



Solution:

$F_V = 97\ \text{N}, \theta = 59^o$

Exercise:

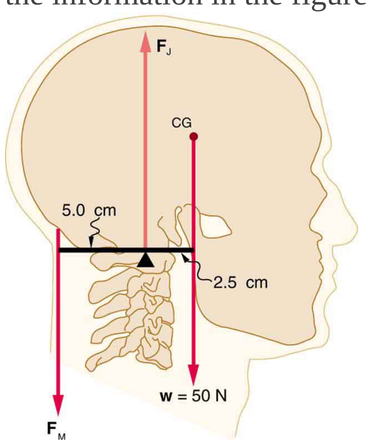
Problem:

We analyzed the biceps muscle example with the angle between forearm and upper arm set at 90º. Using the same numbers as in [link], find the force exerted by the biceps muscle when the angle is 120º and the forearm is in a downward position.

Exercise:

Problem:

Even when the head is held erect, as in [link], its center of mass is not directly over the principal point of support (the atlanto-occipital joint). The muscles at the back of the neck should therefore exert a force to keep the head erect. That is why your head falls forward when you fall asleep in the class. (a) Calculate the force exerted by these muscles using the information in the figure. (b) What is the force exerted by the pivot on the head?



The center of mass of the head lies in front

of its major point of support, requiring muscle action to hold the head erect. A simplified lever system is shown.

Solution:

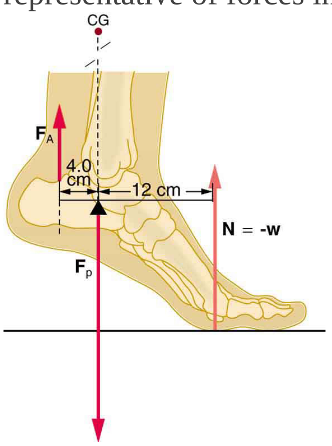
(a) 25 N downward

(b) 75 N upward

Exercise:

Problem:

A 75-kg man stands on his toes by exerting an upward force through the Achilles tendon, as in [link]. (a) What is the force in the Achilles tendon if he stands on one foot? (b) Calculate the force at the pivot of the simplified lever system shown—that force is representative of forces in the ankle joint.



The muscles in the back of the leg pull the Achilles tendon when one stands on one's toes. A simplified lever system is shown.

Solution:

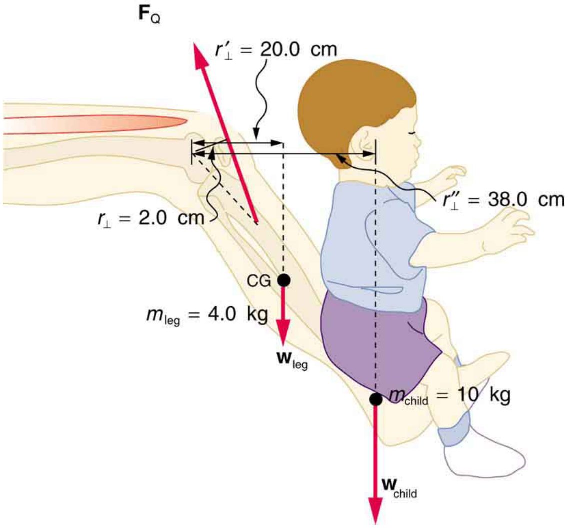
(a) $F_{\mathrm{A}} = 2.21 \times 10^3$ N upward

(b) $F_{\mathrm{B}} = 2.94 \times 10^3$ N downward

Exercise:

Problem:

A father lifts his child as shown in [link]. What force should the upper leg muscle exert to lift the child at a constant speed?

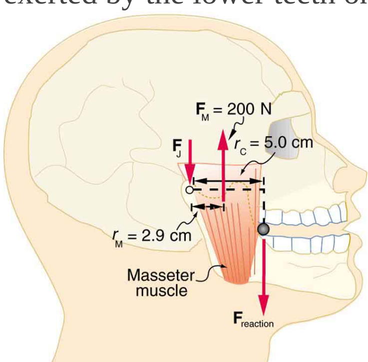


A child being lifted by a father's lower leg.

Exercise:

Problem:

Unlike most of the other muscles in our bodies, the masseter muscle in the jaw, as illustrated in [link], is attached relatively far from the joint, enabling large forces to be exerted by the back teeth. (a) Using the information in the figure, calculate the force exerted by the lower teeth on the bullet. (b) Calculate the force on the joint.



A person clenching a bullet between his teeth.

Solution:

(a) $F_{\text{teeth on bullet}} = 1.2 \times 10^2\ \text{N}$ upward

(b) $F_{\text{J}} = 84\ \text{N}$ downward

Exercise:

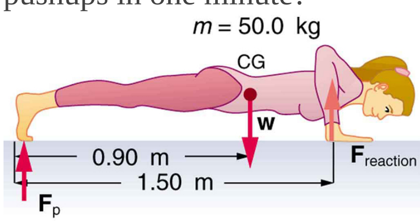
Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Suppose we replace the 4.0-kg book in [link] of the biceps muscle with an elastic exercise rope that obeys Hooke's Law. Assume its force constant $k = 600\ \text{N/m}$. (a) How much is the rope stretched (past equilibrium) to provide the same force F_{B} as in this example? Assume the rope is held in the hand at the same location as the book. (b) What force is on the biceps muscle if the exercise rope is pulled straight up so that the forearm makes an angle of 25º with the horizontal? Assume the biceps muscle is still perpendicular to the forearm.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What force should the woman in [link] exert on the floor with each hand to do a push-up? Assume that she moves up at a constant speed. (b) The triceps muscle at the back of her upper arm has an effective lever arm of 1.75 cm, and she exerts force on the floor at a horizontal distance of 20.0 cm from the elbow joint. Calculate the magnitude of the force in each triceps muscle, and compare it to her weight. (c) How much work does she do if her center of mass rises 0.240 m? (d) What is her useful power output if she does 25 pushups in one minute?



A woman doing pushups.

Solution:

(a) 147 N downward

(b) 1680 N, 3.4 times her weight

(c) 118 J

(d) 49.0 W

Exercise:

Problem:

You have just planted a sturdy 2-m-tall palm tree in your front lawn for your mother's birthday. Your brother kicks a 500 g ball, which hits the top of the tree at a speed of 5 m/s and stays in contact with it for 10 ms. The ball falls to the ground near the base of the tree and the recoil of the tree is minimal. (a) What is the force on the tree? (b) The length of the sturdy section of the root is only 20 cm. Furthermore, the soil around the roots is loose and we can assume that an effective force is applied at the tip of the 20 cm length. What is the effective force exerted by the end of the tip of the root to keep the tree from toppling? Assume the tree will be uprooted rather than bend. (c) What could you have done to ensure that the tree does not uproot easily?

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

Suppose two children are using a uniform seesaw that is 3.00 m long and has its center of mass over the pivot. The first child has a mass of 30.0 kg and sits 1.40 m from the pivot. (a) Calculate where the second 18.0 kg child must sit to balance the seesaw. (b) What is unreasonable about the result? (c) Which premise is unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent?

Solution:

a) $\bar{x}_2 = 2.33 \text{ m}$

b) The seesaw is 3.0 m long, and hence, there is only 1.50 m of board on the other side of the pivot. The second child is off the board.

c) The position of the first child must be shortened, i.e. brought closer to the pivot.

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider a method for measuring the mass of a person's arm in anatomical studies. The subject lies on her back, extends her relaxed arm to the side and two scales are placed below the arm. One is placed under the elbow and the other under the back of her hand. Construct a problem in which you calculate the mass of the arm and find its center of

mass based on the scale readings and the distances of the scales from the shoulder joint. You must include a free body diagram of the arm to direct the analysis. Consider changing the position of the scale under the hand to provide more information, if needed. You may wish to consult references to obtain reasonable mass values.

Introduction to Oscillatory Motion and Waves class="introduction"

There are at least four types of waves in this picture—only the water waves are evident. There are also sound waves, light waves, and waves on the guitar strings. (credit: John Norton)

What do an ocean buoy, a child in a swing, the cone inside a speaker, a guitar, atoms in a crystal, the motion of chest cavities, and the beating of hearts all have in common? They all **oscillate**—-that is, they move back and forth between two points. Many systems oscillate, and they have certain characteristics in common. All oscillations involve force and energy. You push a child in a swing to get the motion started. The energy of atoms vibrating in a crystal can be increased with heat. You put energy into a guitar string when you pluck it.

Some oscillations create **waves**. A guitar creates sound waves. You can make water waves in a swimming pool by slapping the water with your hand. You can no doubt think of other types of waves. Some, such as water waves, are visible. Some, such as sound waves, are not. But *every wave is a disturbance that moves from its source and carries energy*. Other examples of waves include earthquakes and visible light. Even subatomic particles, such as electrons, can behave like waves.

By studying oscillatory motion and waves, we shall find that a small number of underlying principles describe all of them and that wave phenomena are more common than you have ever imagined. We begin by studying the type of force that underlies the simplest oscillations and waves. We will then expand our exploration of oscillatory motion and waves to

include concepts such as simple harmonic motion, uniform circular motion, and damped harmonic motion. Finally, we will explore what happens when two or more waves share the same space, in the phenomena known as superposition and interference.

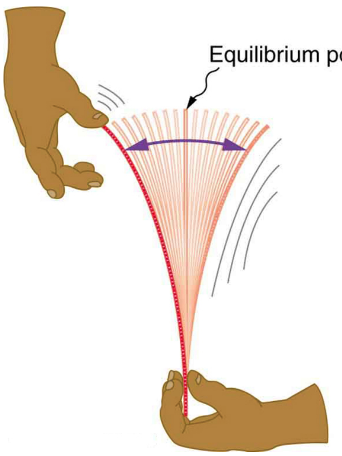
Glossary

oscillate
: moving back and forth regularly between two points

wave
: a disturbance that moves from its source and carries energy

Hooke’s Law: Stress and Strain Revisited

- Explain Newton’s third law of motion with respect to stress and deformation.
- Describe the restoration of force and displacement.
- Calculate the energy in Hooke’s Law of deformation, and the stored energy in a spring.



When displaced from its vertical equilibrium position, this plastic ruler oscillates back and forth because of the restoring force opposing displacement. When the ruler is on the left, there is a force to the right, and vice versa.

Newton’s first law implies that an object oscillating back and forth is experiencing forces. Without force, the object would move in a straight line

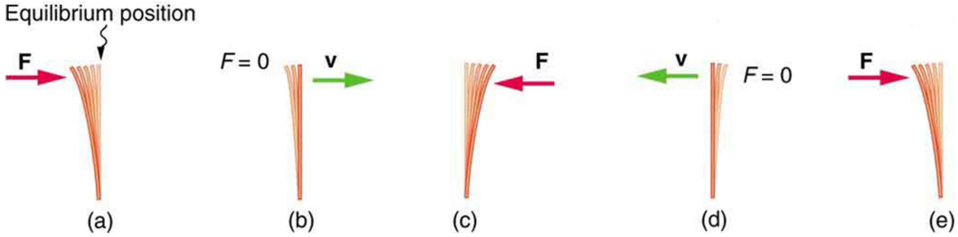
at a constant speed rather than oscillate. Consider, for example, plucking a plastic ruler to the left as shown in [link]. The deformation of the ruler creates a force in the opposite direction, known as a **restoring force**. Once released, the restoring force causes the ruler to move back toward its stable equilibrium position, where the net force on it is zero. However, by the time the ruler gets there, it gains momentum and continues to move to the right, producing the opposite deformation. It is then forced to the left, back through equilibrium, and the process is repeated until dissipative forces dampen the motion. These forces remove mechanical energy from the system, gradually reducing the motion until the ruler comes to rest.

The simplest oscillations occur when the restoring force is directly proportional to displacement. When stress and strain were covered in Newton's Third Law of Motion, the name was given to this relationship between force and displacement was Hooke's law:

Equation:

$$F = -\mathrm{kx}.$$

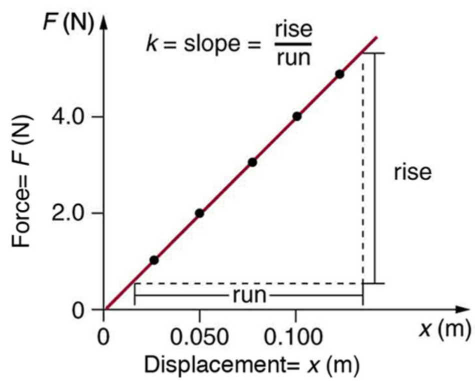
Here, F is the restoring force, x is the displacement from equilibrium or **deformation**, and k is a constant related to the difficulty in deforming the system. The minus sign indicates the restoring force is in the direction opposite to the displacement.



(a) The plastic ruler has been released, and the restoring force is returning the ruler to its equilibrium position. (b) The net force is zero at the equilibrium position, but the ruler has momentum and continues to move to the right. (c) The restoring force is in the opposite direction. It stops the ruler and moves it back toward equilibrium again. (d) Now the ruler has momentum to the left. (e) In the absence of damping

(caused by frictional forces), the ruler reaches its original position. From there, the motion will repeat itself.

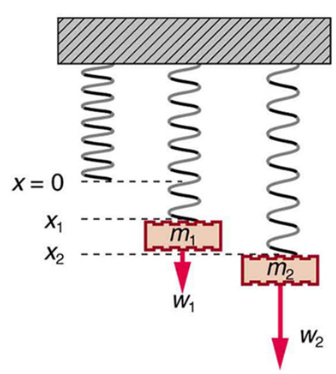
The **force constant** k is related to the rigidity (or stiffness) of a system—the larger the force constant, the greater the restoring force, and the stiffer the system. The units of k are newtons per meter (N/m). For example, k is directly related to Young's modulus when we stretch a string. [link] shows a graph of the absolute value of the restoring force versus the displacement for a system that can be described by Hooke's law—a simple spring in this case. The slope of the graph equals the force constant k in newtons per meter. A common physics laboratory exercise is to measure restoring forces created by springs, determine if they follow Hooke's law, and calculate their force constants if they do.



m (kg)	w (N)	x (m)
0.000	0.00	0.000
0.100	0.98	0.025
0.200	1.96	0.050
0.300	2.94	0.076
0.400	3.92	0.099
0.500	4.90	0.127

b)

m (kg)	w (N)	x (m)
0.000	0.00	0.000
0.100	0.98	0.025
0.200	1.96	0.050
0.300	2.94	0.076
0.400	3.92	0.099
0.500	4.90	0.127



(a) A graph of absolute value of the restoring force versus displacement is

displayed. The fact that the graph is a straight line means that the system obeys Hooke’s law. The slope of the graph is the force constant k. (b) The data in the graph were generated by measuring the displacement of a spring from equilibrium while supporting various weights. The restoring force equals the weight supported, if the mass is stationary.

Example:
How Stiff Are Car Springs?

The mass of a car increases due to the introduction of a passenger. This affects the displacement of

the car on its suspension system. (credit: exfordy on Flickr)

What is the force constant for the suspension system of a car that settles 1.20 cm when an 80.0-kg person gets in?

Strategy

Consider the car to be in its equilibrium position $x=0$ before the person gets in. The car then settles down 1.20 cm, which means it is displaced to a position $x=-1.20\times 10^{-2}$ m. At that point, the springs supply a restoring force F equal to the person's weight $w=\text{mg}=(80.0\text{ kg})\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)=784\text{ N}$. We take this force to be F in Hooke's law. Knowing F and x, we can then solve the force constant k.

Solution

1. Solve Hooke's law, $F=-\text{kx}$, for k:
   Equation:

   $$k=-\frac{F}{x}.$$

   Substitute known values and solve k:
   Equation:

   $$\begin{aligned} k &= -\frac{784\text{ N}}{-1.20\times 10^{-2}\text{ m}} \\ &= 6.53\times 10^{4}\text{ N/m.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

Note that F and x have opposite signs because they are in opposite directions—the restoring force is up, and the displacement is down. Also, note that the car would oscillate up and down when the person got in if it

were not for damping (due to frictional forces) provided by shock absorbers. Bouncing cars are a sure sign of bad shock absorbers.

Energy in Hooke’s Law of Deformation

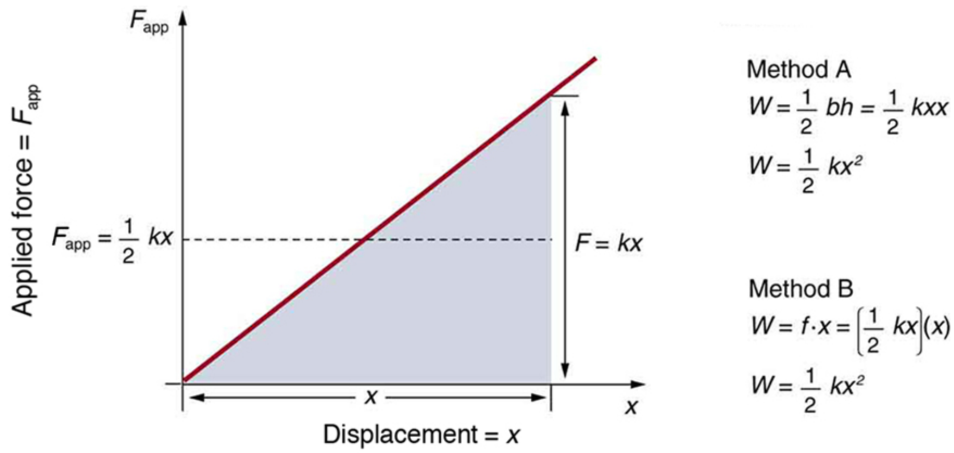
In order to produce a deformation, work must be done. That is, a force must be exerted through a distance, whether you pluck a guitar string or compress a car spring. If the only result is deformation, and no work goes into thermal, sound, or kinetic energy, then all the work is initially stored in the deformed object as some form of potential energy. The potential energy stored in a spring is $\mathrm{PE_{el}} = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2$. Here, we generalize the idea to elastic potential energy for a deformation of any system that can be described by Hooke’s law. Hence,

Equation:

$$\mathrm{PE_{el}} = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2,$$

where $\mathrm{PE_{el}}$ is the **elastic potential energy** stored in any deformed system that obeys Hooke’s law and has a displacement x from equilibrium and a force constant k.

It is possible to find the work done in deforming a system in order to find the energy stored. This work is performed by an applied force F_{app}. The applied force is exactly opposite to the restoring force (action-reaction), and so $F_{\mathrm{app}} = \mathrm{kx}$. [link] shows a graph of the applied force versus deformation x for a system that can be described by Hooke’s law. Work done on the system is force multiplied by distance, which equals the area under the curve or $(1/2)\mathrm{kx}^2$(Method A in the figure). Another way to determine the work is to note that the force increases linearly from 0 to kx, so that the average force is $(1/2)\ \mathrm{kx}$, the distance moved is x, and thus $W = F_{\mathrm{app}}d = [(1/2)\mathrm{kx}](x) = (1/2)\mathrm{kx}^2$ (Method B in the figure).

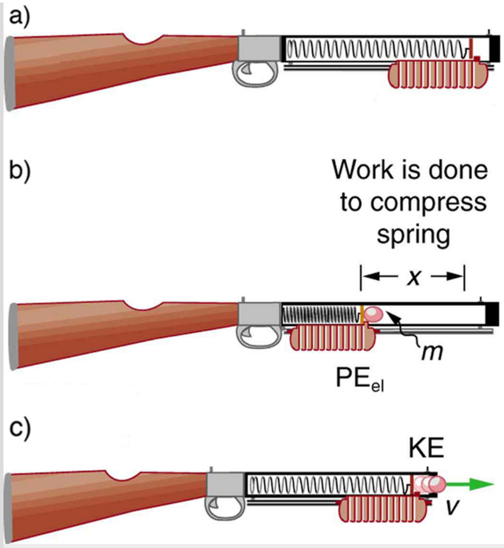


A graph of applied force versus distance for the deformation of a system that can be described by Hooke's law is displayed. The work done on the system equals the area under the graph or the area of the triangle, which is half its base multiplied by its height, or $W = (1/2)\mathrm{kx}^2$.

Example:

Calculating Stored Energy: A Tranquilizer Gun Spring

We can use a toy gun's spring mechanism to ask and answer two simple questions: (a) How much energy is stored in the spring of a tranquilizer gun that has a force constant of 50.0 N/m and is compressed 0.150 m? (b) If you neglect friction and the mass of the spring, at what speed will a 2.00-g projectile be ejected from the gun?



(a) In this image of the gun, the spring is uncompressed before being cocked. (b) The spring has been compressed a distance x, and the projectile is in place. (c) When released, the spring converts elastic potential energy PE_{el} into kinetic energy.

Strategy for a

(a): The energy stored in the spring can be found directly from elastic potential energy equation, because k and x are given.

Solution for a

Entering the given values for k and x yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} PE_{el} &= \frac{1}{2}kx^2 = \frac{1}{2}(50.0\ \text{N/m})(0.150\ \text{m})^2 = 0.563\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m} \\ &= 0.563\ \text{J} \end{aligned}$$

Strategy for b

Because there is no friction, the potential energy is converted entirely into kinetic energy. The expression for kinetic energy can be solved for the projectile's speed.

Solution for b

1. Identify known quantities:
   Equation:
   $$\mathrm{KE_f} = \mathrm{PE_{el}} \;\; \text{or} \;\; 1/2mv^2 = (1/2)kx^2 = \mathrm{PE_{el}} = 0.563 \text{ J}$$
2. Solve for v:
   Equation:
   $$v = \left[\frac{2\mathrm{PE_{el}}}{m}\right]^{1/2} = \left[\frac{2(0.563 \text{ J})}{0.002 \text{ kg}}\right]^{1/2} = 23.7(\text{J}/\text{kg})^{1/2}$$
3. Convert units: $23.7 \text{ m}/\text{s}$

Discussion

(a) and (b): This projectile speed is impressive for a tranquilizer gun (more than 80 km/h). The numbers in this problem seem reasonable. The force needed to compress the spring is small enough for an adult to manage, and the energy imparted to the dart is small enough to limit the damage it might do. Yet, the speed of the dart is great enough for it to travel an acceptable distance.

Exercise:
Check your Understanding

Problem:

Envision holding the end of a ruler with one hand and deforming it with the other. When you let go, you can see the oscillations of the ruler. In what way could you modify this simple experiment to increase the rigidity of the system?

Solution:
Answer

You could hold the ruler at its midpoint so that the part of the ruler that oscillates is half as long as in the original experiment.

Exercise:
Check your Understanding

Problem:

If you apply a deforming force on an object and let it come to equilibrium, what happened to the work you did on the system?

Solution:
Answer

It was stored in the object as potential energy.

Section Summary

- An oscillation is a back and forth motion of an object between two points of deformation.
- An oscillation may create a wave, which is a disturbance that propagates from where it was created.
- The simplest type of oscillations and waves are related to systems that can be described by Hooke's law:
  Equation:
  $$F = -\mathrm{kx},$$
  where F is the restoring force, x is the displacement from equilibrium or deformation, and k is the force constant of the system.
- Elastic potential energy $\mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{el}}$ stored in the deformation of a system that can be described by Hooke's law is given by
  Equation:

$$\text{PE}_{\text{el}} = (1/2)kx^2.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Describe a system in which elastic potential energy is stored.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Fish are hung on a spring scale to determine their mass (most fishermen feel no obligation to truthfully report the mass).

(a) What is the force constant of the spring in such a scale if it the spring stretches 8.00 cm for a 10.0 kg load?

(b) What is the mass of a fish that stretches the spring 5.50 cm?

(c) How far apart are the half-kilogram marks on the scale?

Solution:

(a) $1.23 \times 10^3 \text{ N/m}$

(b) 6.88 kg

(c) 4.00 mm

Exercise:

Problem:

It is weigh-in time for the local under-85-kg rugby team. The bathroom scale used to assess eligibility can be described by Hooke's law and is depressed 0.75 cm by its maximum load of 120 kg. (a) What is the spring's effective spring constant? (b) A player stands on the scales and depresses it by 0.48 cm. Is he eligible to play on this under-85 kg team?

Exercise:

Problem:

One type of BB gun uses a spring-driven plunger to blow the BB from its barrel. (a) Calculate the force constant of its plunger's spring if you must compress it 0.150 m to drive the 0.0500-kg plunger to a top speed of 20.0 m/s. (b) What force must be exerted to compress the spring?

Solution:

(a) 889 N/m

(b) 133 N

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The springs of a pickup truck act like a single spring with a force constant of $1.30 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}$. By how much will the truck be depressed by its maximum load of 1000 kg?

(b) If the pickup truck has four identical springs, what is the force constant of each?

Exercise:

Problem:

When an 80.0-kg man stands on a pogo stick, the spring is compressed 0.120 m.

(a) What is the force constant of the spring? (b) Will the spring be compressed more when he hops down the road?

Solution:

(a) $6.53 \times 10^3\ \text{N/m}$

(b) Yes

Exercise:

Problem:

A spring has a length of 0.200 m when a 0.300-kg mass hangs from it, and a length of 0.750 m when a 1.95-kg mass hangs from it. (a) What is the force constant of the spring? (b) What is the unloaded length of the spring?

Glossary

deformation
: displacement from equilibrium

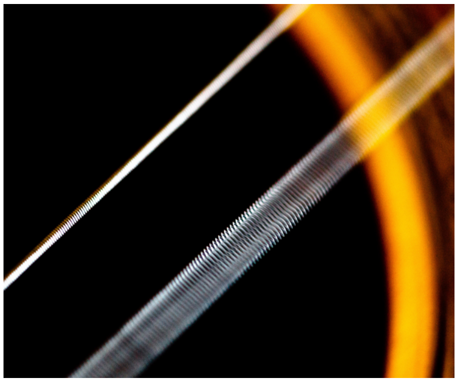
elastic potential energy
: potential energy stored as a result of deformation of an elastic object, such as the stretching of a spring

force constant
: a constant related to the rigidity of a system: the larger the force constant, the more rigid the system; the force constant is represented by *k*

restoring force
: force acting in opposition to the force caused by a deformation

Period and Frequency in Oscillations

- Observe the vibrations of a guitar string.
- Determine the frequency of oscillations.



The strings on this guitar vibrate at regular time intervals. (credit: JAR)

When you pluck a guitar string, the resulting sound has a steady tone and lasts a long time. Each successive vibration of the string takes the same time as the previous one. We define **periodic motion** to be a motion that repeats itself at regular time intervals, such as exhibited by the guitar string or by an object on a spring moving up and down. The time to complete one oscillation remains constant and is called the **period** T. Its units are usually seconds, but may be any convenient unit of time. The word period refers to the time for some event whether repetitive or not; but we shall be primarily interested in periodic motion, which is by definition repetitive. A concept closely related to period is the frequency of an event. For example, if you get a paycheck twice a month, the frequency of payment is two per month and the period between checks is half a month. **Frequency** f is defined to be the number of events per unit time. For periodic motion, frequency is the number of oscillations per unit time. The relationship between frequency and period is

Equation:

$$f = \frac{1}{T}.$$

The SI unit for frequency is the *cycle per second*, which is defined to be a *hertz* (Hz):

Equation:

$$1 \text{ Hz} = 1 \frac{\text{cycle}}{\text{sec}} \text{ or } 1 \text{ Hz} = \frac{1}{\text{s}}$$

A cycle is one complete oscillation. Note that a vibration can be a single or multiple event, whereas oscillations are usually repetitive for a significant number of cycles.

Example:

Determine the Frequency of Two Oscillations: Medical Ultrasound and the Period of Middle C

We can use the formulas presented in this module to determine both the frequency based on known oscillations and the oscillation based on a known frequency. Let's try one example of each. (a) A medical imaging device produces ultrasound by oscillating with a period of 0.400 µs. What is the frequency of this oscillation? (b) The frequency of middle C on a typical musical instrument is 264 Hz. What is the time for one complete oscillation?

Strategy

Both questions (a) and (b) can be answered using the relationship between period and frequency. In question (a), the period T is given and we are asked to find frequency f. In question (b), the frequency f is given and we are asked to find the period T.

Solution a

1. Substitute 0.400 µs for T in $f = \frac{1}{T}$:

   Equation:

$$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{0.400 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}}.$$

Solve to find
Equation:

$$f = 2.50 \times 10^{6}\ \text{Hz}.$$

Discussion a
The frequency of sound found in (a) is much higher than the highest frequency that humans can hear and, therefore, is called ultrasound. Appropriate oscillations at this frequency generate ultrasound used for noninvasive medical diagnoses, such as observations of a fetus in the womb.
Solution b

1. Identify the known values:

   The time for one complete oscillation is the period T:
   Equation:

   $$f = \frac{1}{T}.$$

2. Solve for T:
   Equation:

   $$T = \frac{1}{f}.$$

3. Substitute the given value for the frequency into the resulting expression:
   Equation:

   $$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{264\ \text{Hz}} = \frac{1}{264\ \text{cycles/s}} = 3.79 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{s} = 3.79\ \text{ms}.$$

Discussion
The period found in (b) is the time per cycle, but this value is often quoted as simply the time in convenient units (ms or milliseconds in this case).

Exercise:
Check your Understanding

Problem:

Identify an event in your life (such as receiving a paycheck) that occurs regularly. Identify both the period and frequency of this event.

Solution:

I visit my parents for dinner every other Sunday. The frequency of my visits is 26 per calendar year. The period is two weeks.

Section Summary

- Periodic motion is a repetitious oscillation.
- The time for one oscillation is the period T.
- The number of oscillations per unit time is the frequency f.
- These quantities are related by
  Equation:

$$f = \frac{1}{T}.$$

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: What is the period of 60.0 Hz electrical power?

Solution:

16.7 ms

Exercise:

Problem:

If your heart rate is 150 beats per minute during strenuous exercise, what is the time per beat in units of seconds?

Solution:

0.400 s/beats

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the frequency of a tuning fork that takes 2.50×10^{-3} s to complete one oscillation.

Solution:

400 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

A stroboscope is set to flash every 8.00×10^{-5} s. What is the frequency of the flashes?

Solution:

12,500 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

A tire has a tread pattern with a crevice every 2.00 cm. Each crevice makes a single vibration as the tire moves. What is the frequency of these vibrations if the car moves at 30.0 m/s?

Solution:

1.50 kHz

Exercise:

Problem: **Engineering Application**

Each piston of an engine makes a sharp sound every other revolution of the engine. (a) How fast is a race car going if its eight-cylinder engine emits a sound of frequency 750 Hz, given that the engine makes 2000 revolutions per kilometer? (b) At how many revolutions per minute is the engine rotating?

Solution:

(a) 93.8 m/s

(b) $11.3 \times 10^3 \text{ rev/min}$

Glossary

period
: time it takes to complete one oscillation

periodic motion
: motion that repeats itself at regular time intervals

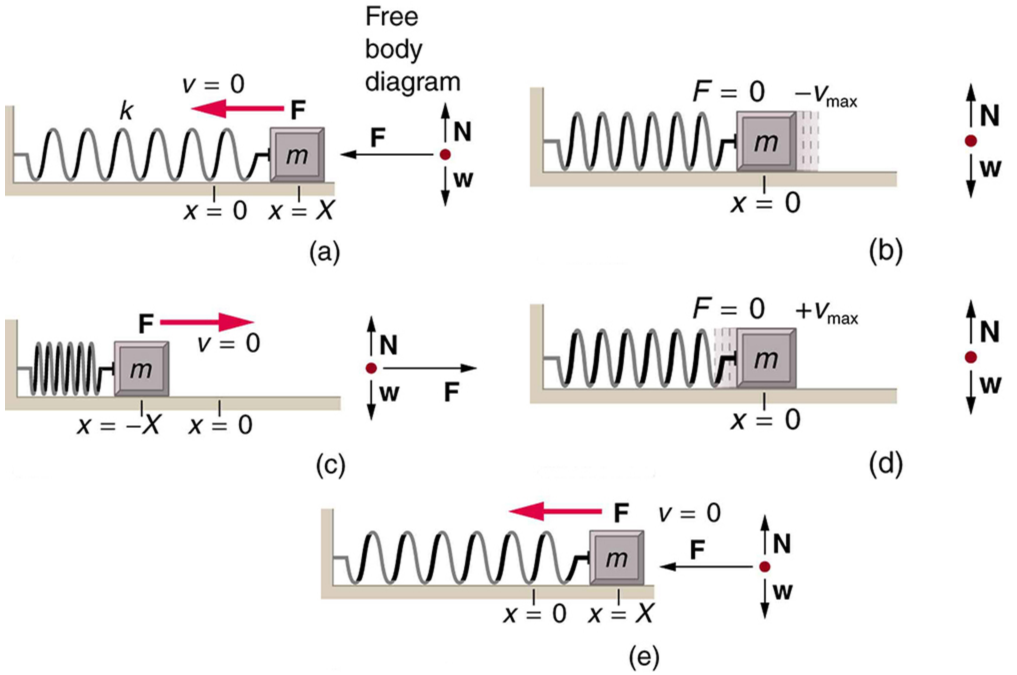
frequency
: number of events per unit of time

Simple Harmonic Motion: A Special Periodic Motion

- Describe a simple harmonic oscillator.
- Explain the link between simple harmonic motion and waves.

The oscillations of a system in which the net force can be described by Hooke’s law are of special importance, because they are very common. They are also the simplest oscillatory systems. **Simple Harmonic Motion** (SHM) is the name given to oscillatory motion for a system where the net force can be described by Hooke’s law, and such a system is called a **simple harmonic oscillator**. If the net force can be described by Hooke’s law and there is no *damping* (by friction or other non-conservative forces), then a simple harmonic oscillator will oscillate with equal displacement on either side of the equilibrium position, as shown for an object on a spring in [link]. The maximum displacement from equilibrium is called the **amplitude** X. The units for amplitude and displacement are the same, but depend on the type of oscillation. For the object on the spring, the units of amplitude and displacement are meters; whereas for sound oscillations, they have units of pressure (and other types of oscillations have yet other units). Because amplitude is the maximum displacement, it is related to the energy in the oscillation.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: SHM and the Marble
Find a bowl or basin that is shaped like a hemisphere on the inside. Place a marble inside the bowl and tilt the bowl periodically so the marble rolls from the bottom of the bowl to equally high points on the sides of the bowl. Get a feel for the force required to maintain this periodic motion. What is the restoring force and what role does the force you apply play in the simple harmonic motion (SHM) of the marble?



An object attached to a spring sliding on a frictionless surface is an uncomplicated simple harmonic oscillator. When displaced from equilibrium, the object performs simple harmonic motion that has an amplitude X and a period T. The object's maximum speed occurs as it passes through equilibrium. The stiffer the spring is, the smaller the period T. The greater the mass of the object is, the greater the period T.

What is so significant about simple harmonic motion? One special thing is that the period T and frequency f of a simple harmonic oscillator are independent of amplitude. The string of a guitar, for example, will oscillate with the same frequency whether plucked gently or hard. Because the period is constant, a simple harmonic oscillator can be used as a clock.

Two important factors do affect the period of a simple harmonic oscillator. The period is related to how stiff the system is. A very stiff object has a large force constant k, which causes the system to have a smaller period. For example, you can adjust a diving board's stiffness—the stiffer it is, the

faster it vibrates, and the shorter its period. Period also depends on the mass of the oscillating system. The more massive the system is, the longer the period. For example, a heavy person on a diving board bounces up and down more slowly than a light one.

In fact, the mass m and the force constant k are the *only* factors that affect the period and frequency of simple harmonic motion.

Note:
Period of Simple Harmonic Oscillator
The *period of a simple harmonic oscillator* is given by
Equation:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$$

and, because $f = 1/T$, the *frequency of a simple harmonic oscillator* is
Equation:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}.$$

Note that neither T nor f has any dependence on amplitude.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Mass and Ruler Oscillations
Find two identical wooden or plastic rulers. Tape one end of each ruler firmly to the edge of a table so that the length of each ruler that protrudes from the table is the same. On the free end of one ruler tape a heavy object such as a few large coins. Pluck the ends of the rulers at the same time and observe which one undergoes more cycles in a time period, and measure the period of oscillation of each of the rulers.

Example:

Calculate the Frequency and Period of Oscillations: Bad Shock Absorbers in a Car

If the shock absorbers in a car go bad, then the car will oscillate at the least provocation, such as when going over bumps in the road and after stopping (See [link]). Calculate the frequency and period of these oscillations for such a car if the car's mass (including its load) is 900 kg and the force constant (k) of the suspension system is $6.53 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}$.

Strategy

The frequency of the car's oscillations will be that of a simple harmonic oscillator as given in the equation $f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$. The mass and the force constant are both given.

Solution

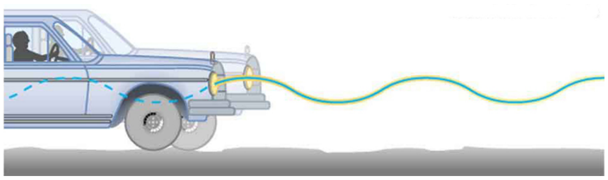
1. Enter the known values of *k* and *m*:
   Equation:
   $$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{6.53 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}}{900 \text{ kg}}}.$$
2. Calculate the frequency:
   Equation:
   $$\frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{72.6/\text{s}^{-2}} = 1.3656/\text{s}^{-1} \approx 1.36/\text{s}^{-1} = 1.36 \text{ Hz}.$$
3. You could use $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$ to calculate the period, but it is simpler to use the relationship $T = 1/f$ and substitute the value just found for f:
   Equation:
   $$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{1.356 \text{ Hz}} = 0.738 \text{ s}.$$

Discussion

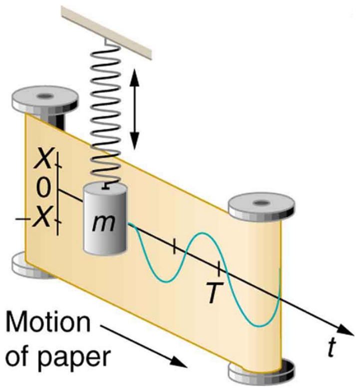
The values of T and f both seem about right for a bouncing car. You can observe these oscillations if you push down hard on the end of a car and let go.

The Link between Simple Harmonic Motion and Waves

If a time-exposure photograph of the bouncing car were taken as it drove by, the headlight would make a wavelike streak, as shown in [link]. Similarly, [link] shows an object bouncing on a spring as it leaves a wavelike "trace of its position on a moving strip of paper. Both waves are sine functions. All simple harmonic motion is intimately related to sine and cosine waves.



The bouncing car makes a wavelike motion. If the restoring force in the suspension system can be described only by Hooke's law, then the wave is a sine function. (The wave is the trace produced by the headlight as the car moves to the right.)



The vertical position of an object bouncing on a spring is recorded on a strip of moving paper, leaving a sine wave.

The displacement as a function of time *t* in any simple harmonic motion—that is, one in which the net restoring force can be described by Hooke's law, is given by

Equation:

$$x(t) = X\cos\frac{2\pi t}{T},$$

where X is amplitude. At $t = 0$, the initial position is $x_0 = X$, and the displacement oscillates back and forth with a period T. (When $t = T$, we get $x = X$ again because $\cos 2\pi = 1$.). Furthermore, from this expression for x, the velocity v as a function of time is given by:

Equation:

$$v(t) = -v_{\text{max}}\sin\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T}\right),$$

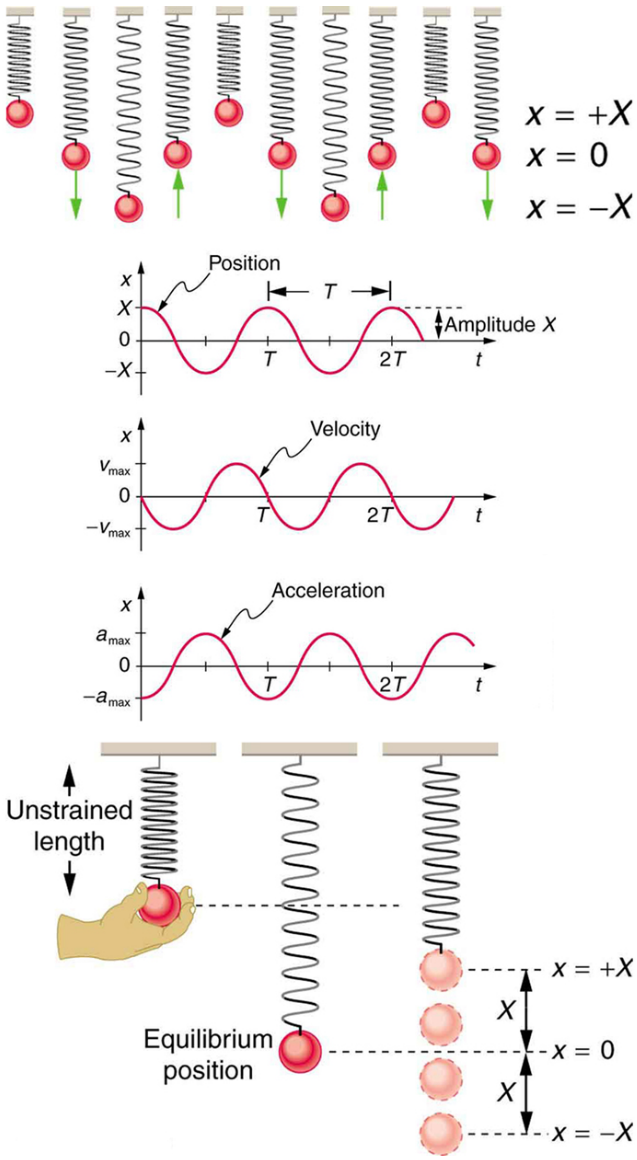
where $v_{\text{max}} = 2\pi X/T = X\sqrt{k/m}$. The object has zero velocity at maximum displacement—for example, $v = 0$ when $t = 0$, and at that time $x = X$. The minus sign in the first equation for $v(t)$ gives the correct direction for the velocity. Just after the start of the motion, for instance, the velocity is negative because the system is moving back toward the equilibrium point. Finally, we can get an expression for acceleration using Newton's second law. [Then we have $x(t)$, $v(t)$, t, and $a(t)$, the quantities needed for kinematics and a description of simple harmonic motion.] According to Newton's second law, the acceleration is $a = F/m = \text{kx}/m$. So, $a(t)$ is also a cosine function:

Equation:

$$a(t) = -\frac{\text{kX}}{m}\cos\frac{2\pi t}{T}.$$

Hence, $a(t)$ is directly proportional to and in the opposite direction to $x(t)$.

[link] shows the simple harmonic motion of an object on a spring and presents graphs of $x(t)$,$v(t\ )$, and $a(t)$ versus time.



Graphs of $x(t)$, $v(t)$, and $a(t)$ versus t for the motion of an object on a spring. The net force on the object can be described by Hooke's law, and so the object undergoes simple harmonic motion. Note that the initial position has the vertical displacement at its maximum value X; v is initially zero and then negative as the object moves down; and the initial acceleration

is negative, back toward the equilibrium position and becomes zero at that point.

The most important point here is that these equations are mathematically straightforward and are valid for all simple harmonic motion. They are very useful in visualizing waves associated with simple harmonic motion, including visualizing how waves add with one another.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Suppose you pluck a banjo string. You hear a single note that starts out loud and slowly quiets over time. Describe what happens to the sound waves in terms of period, frequency and amplitude as the sound decreases in volume.

Solution:

Frequency and period remain essentially unchanged. Only amplitude decreases as volume decreases.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A babysitter is pushing a child on a swing. At the point where the swing reaches x, where would the corresponding point on a wave of this motion be located?

Solution:

x is the maximum deformation, which corresponds to the amplitude of the wave. The point on the wave would either be at the very top or the very bottom of the curve.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Masses and Springs
A realistic mass and spring laboratory. Hang masses from springs and adjust the spring stiffness and damping. You can even slow time. Transport the lab to different planets. A chart shows the kinetic, potential, and thermal energy for each spring.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/mass-spring-lab/mass-spring-lab_en.html

Section Summary

- Simple harmonic motion is oscillatory motion for a system that can be described only by Hooke’s law. Such a system is also called a simple harmonic oscillator.
- Maximum displacement is the amplitude X. The period T and frequency f of a simple harmonic oscillator are given by

  $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$ and $f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$, where m is the mass of the system.
- Displacement in simple harmonic motion as a function of time is given by $x(t) = X \cos \frac{2\pi t}{T}$.
- The velocity is given by $v(t) = -v_{\text{max}}\sin\frac{2\pi t}{T}$, where $v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{k/m}X$.
- The acceleration is found to be $a(t) = -\frac{kX}{m} \cos \frac{2\pi t}{T}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What conditions must be met to produce simple harmonic motion?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If frequency is not constant for some oscillation, can the oscillation be simple harmonic motion?

(b) Can you think of any examples of harmonic motion where the frequency may depend on the amplitude?

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a simple harmonic oscillator, specifically noting how its frequency is independent of amplitude.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why you expect an object made of a stiff material to vibrate at a higher frequency than a similar object made of a spongy material.

Exercise:

Problem:

As you pass a freight truck with a trailer on a highway, you notice that its trailer is bouncing up and down slowly. Is it more likely that the trailer is heavily loaded or nearly empty? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Some people modify cars to be much closer to the ground than when manufactured. Should they install stiffer springs? Explain your answer.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A type of cuckoo clock keeps time by having a mass bouncing on a spring, usually something cute like a cherub in a chair. What force constant is needed to produce a period of 0.500 s for a 0.0150-kg mass?

Solution:

2.37 N/m

Exercise:

Problem:

If the spring constant of a simple harmonic oscillator is doubled, by what factor will the mass of the system need to change in order for the frequency of the motion to remain the same?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 0.500-kg mass suspended from a spring oscillates with a period of 1.50 s. How much mass must be added to the object to change the period to 2.00 s?

Solution:

0.389 kg

Exercise:

Problem:

By how much leeway (both percentage and mass) would you have in the selection of the mass of the object in the previous problem if you did not wish the new period to be greater than 2.01 s or less than 1.99 s?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you attach the object with mass m to a vertical spring originally at rest, and let it bounce up and down. You release the object from rest at the spring's original rest length. (a) Show that the spring exerts an upward force of $2.00\ \text{mg}$ on the object at its lowest point. (b) If the spring has a force constant of $10.0\ \text{N/m}$ and a 0.25-kg-mass object is set in motion as described, find the amplitude of the oscillations. (c) Find the maximum velocity.

Exercise:

Problem:

A diver on a diving board is undergoing simple harmonic motion. Her mass is 55.0 kg and the period of her motion is 0.800 s. The next diver is a male whose period of simple harmonic oscillation is 1.05 s. What is his mass if the mass of the board is negligible?

Solution:

94.7 kg

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a diving board with no one on it bounces up and down in a simple harmonic motion with a frequency of 4.00 Hz. The board has an effective mass of 10.0 kg. What is the frequency of the simple harmonic motion of a 75.0-kg diver on the board?

Exercise:

Problem:

This child's toy relies on springs to keep infants entertained. (credit: By Humboldthead, Flickr)

The device pictured in [link] entertains infants while keeping them from wandering. The child bounces in a harness suspended from a door frame by a spring constant.

(a) If the spring stretches 0.250 m while supporting an 8.0-kg child, what is its spring constant?

(b) What is the time for one complete bounce of this child? (c) What is the child's maximum velocity if the amplitude of her bounce is 0.200 m?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 90.0-kg skydiver hanging from a parachute bounces up and down with a period of 1.50 s. What is the new period of oscillation when a second skydiver, whose mass is 60.0 kg, hangs from the legs of the first, as seen in [link].

The oscillations of one skydiver are about to be affected by a second skydiver. (credit: U.S. Army, www.army.mil)

Solution:

1.94 s

Glossary

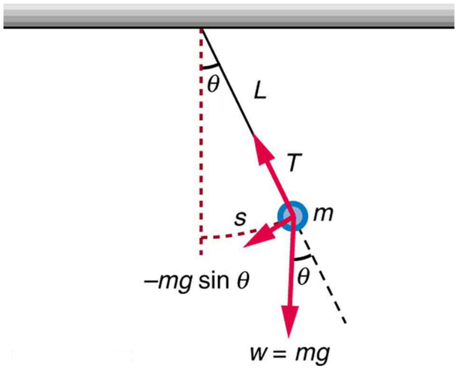
amplitude
: the maximum displacement from the equilibrium position of an object oscillating around the equilibrium position

simple harmonic motion
: the oscillatory motion in a system where the net force can be described by Hooke’s law

simple harmonic oscillator
: a device that implements Hooke’s law, such as a mass that is attached to a spring, with the other end of the spring being connected to a rigid support such as a wall

The Simple Pendulum

- Measure acceleration due to gravity.



A simple pendulum has a small-diameter bob and a string that has a very small mass but is strong enough not to stretch appreciably. The linear displacement from equilibrium is s, the length of the arc. Also shown are the forces on the bob, which result in a net force of $-\text{mg}\ \text{sin}\theta$ toward the equilibrium position—that is, a restoring force.

Pendulums are in common usage. Some have crucial uses, such as in clocks; some are for fun, such as a child’s swing; and some are just there, such as the sinker on a fishing line. For small displacements, a pendulum is a simple harmonic oscillator. A **simple pendulum** is defined to have an

object that has a small mass, also known as the pendulum bob, which is suspended from a light wire or string, such as shown in [link]. Exploring the simple pendulum a bit further, we can discover the conditions under which it performs simple harmonic motion, and we can derive an interesting expression for its period.

We begin by defining the displacement to be the arc length s. We see from [link] that the net force on the bob is tangent to the arc and equals $-\text{mg}\sin\theta$. (The weight mg has components $\text{mg}\cos\theta$ along the string and $\text{mg}\sin\theta$ tangent to the arc.) Tension in the string exactly cancels the component $\text{mg}\cos\theta$ parallel to the string. This leaves a *net* restoring force back toward the equilibrium position at $\theta = 0$.

Now, if we can show that the restoring force is directly proportional to the displacement, then we have a simple harmonic oscillator. In trying to determine if we have a simple harmonic oscillator, we should note that for small angles (less than about 15^{o}), $\sin\theta \approx \theta$ ($\sin\theta$ and θ differ by about 1% or less at smaller angles). Thus, for angles less than about 15^{o}, the restoring force F is

Equation:

$$F \approx -\text{mg}\theta.$$

The displacement s is directly proportional to θ. When θ is expressed in radians, the arc length in a circle is related to its radius (L in this instance) by:

Equation:

$$s = L\theta,$$

so that

Equation:

$$\theta = \frac{s}{L}.$$

For small angles, then, the expression for the restoring force is:
Equation:

$$F \approx -\frac{\text{mg}}{L}s$$

This expression is of the form:
Equation:

$$F = -\text{kx},$$

where the force constant is given by $k = mg/L$ and the displacement is given by $x = s$. For angles less than about $15º$, the restoring force is directly proportional to the displacement, and the simple pendulum is a simple harmonic oscillator.

Using this equation, we can find the period of a pendulum for amplitudes less than about $15º$. For the simple pendulum:
Equation:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{\text{mg}/L}}.$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$$

for the period of a simple pendulum. This result is interesting because of its simplicity. The only things that affect the period of a simple pendulum are its length and the acceleration due to gravity. The period is completely independent of other factors, such as mass. As with simple harmonic oscillators, the period T for a pendulum is nearly independent of amplitude,

especially if θ is less than about 15º. Even simple pendulum clocks can be finely adjusted and accurate.

Note the dependence of T on g. If the length of a pendulum is precisely known, it can actually be used to measure the acceleration due to gravity. Consider the following example.

Example:
Measuring Acceleration due to Gravity: The Period of a Pendulum
What is the acceleration due to gravity in a region where a simple pendulum having a length 75.000 cm has a period of 1.7357 s?
Strategy
We are asked to find g given the period T and the length L of a pendulum. We can solve $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$ for g, assuming only that the angle of deflection is less than 15°.
Solution

1. Square $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$ and solve for g:
   Equation:
   $$g = 4\pi^2 \frac{L}{T^2}.$$
2. Substitute known values into the new equation:
   Equation:
   $$g = 4\pi^2 \frac{0.75000\ \text{m}}{(1.7357\ \text{s})^2}.$$
3. Calculate to find g:
   Equation:
   $$g = 9.8281\ \text{m/s}^2.$$

Discussion

This method for determining *g* can be very accurate. This is why length and period are given to five digits in this example. For the precision of the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$ to be better than the precision of the pendulum length and period, the maximum displacement angle should be kept below about 0.5°.

Note:

Making Career Connections

Knowing *g* can be important in geological exploration; for example, a map of *g* over large geographical regions aids the study of plate tectonics and helps in the search for oil fields and large mineral deposits.

Note:

Take Home Experiment: Determining *g*

Use a simple pendulum to determine the acceleration due to gravity *g* in your own locale. Cut a piece of a string or dental floss so that it is about 1 m long. Attach a small object of high density to the end of the string (for example, a metal nut or a car key). Starting at an angle of less than 10°, allow the pendulum to swing and measure the pendulum's period for 10 oscillations using a stopwatch. Calculate *g*. How accurate is this measurement? How might it be improved?

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

An engineer builds two simple pendula. Both are suspended from small wires secured to the ceiling of a room. Each pendulum hovers 2 cm above the floor. Pendulum 1 has a bob with a mass of 10 kg. Pendulum 2 has a bob with a mass of 100 kg. Describe how the motion of the pendula will differ if the bobs are both displaced by 12^{o}.

Solution:

The movement of the pendula will not differ at all because the mass of the bob has no effect on the motion of a simple pendulum. The pendula are only affected by the period (which is related to the pendulum's length) and by the acceleration due to gravity.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Pendulum Lab
Play with one or two pendulums and discover how the period of a simple pendulum depends on the length of the string, the mass of the pendulum bob, and the amplitude of the swing. It's easy to measure the period using the photogate timer. You can vary friction and the strength of gravity. Use the pendulum to find the value of g on planet X. Notice the anharmonic behavior at large amplitude.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/pendulum-lab/pendulum-lab_en.html

Section Summary

- A mass m suspended by a wire of length L is a simple pendulum and undergoes simple harmonic motion for amplitudes less than about 15^{o}.

  The period of a simple pendulum is
  Equation:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}},$$

where L is the length of the string and g is the acceleration due to gravity.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Pendulum clocks are made to run at the correct rate by adjusting the pendulum's length. Suppose you move from one city to another where the acceleration due to gravity is slightly greater, taking your pendulum clock with you, will you have to lengthen or shorten the pendulum to keep the correct time, other factors remaining constant? Explain your answer.

Problems & Exercises

As usual, the acceleration due to gravity in these problems is taken to be $g = 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2$, unless otherwise specified.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the length of a pendulum that has a period of 0.500 s?

Solution:

6.21 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

Some people think a pendulum with a period of 1.00 s can be driven with “mental energy” or psycho kinetically, because its period is the same as an average heartbeat. True or not, what is the length of such a pendulum?

Exercise:

Problem: What is the period of a 1.00-m-long pendulum?

Solution:

2.01 s

Exercise:

Problem:

How long does it take a child on a swing to complete one swing if her center of gravity is 4.00 m below the pivot?

Exercise:

Problem:

The pendulum on a cuckoo clock is 5.00 cm long. What is its frequency?

Solution:

2.23 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Two parakeets sit on a swing with their combined center of mass 10.0 cm below the pivot. At what frequency do they swing?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A pendulum that has a period of 3.00000 s and that is located where the acceleration due to gravity is $9.79\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ is moved to a location where it the acceleration due to gravity is $9.82\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$. What is its new period? (b) Explain why so many digits are needed in the value for the period, based on the relation between the period and the acceleration due to gravity.

Solution:

(a) 2.99541 s

(b) Since the period is related to the square root of the acceleration of gravity, when the acceleration changes by 1% the period changes by $(0.01)^2 = 0.01\%$ so it is necessary to have at least 4 digits after the decimal to see the changes.

Exercise:

Problem:

A pendulum with a period of 2.00000 s in one location $\left(g = 9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}\right)$ is moved to a new location where the period is now 1.99796 s. What is the acceleration due to gravity at its new location?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the effect on the period of a pendulum if you double its length?

(b) What is the effect on the period of a pendulum if you decrease its length by 5.00%?

Solution:

(a) Period increases by a factor of 1.41 ($\sqrt{2}$)

(b) Period decreases to 97.5% of old period

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the ratio of the new/old periods of a pendulum if the pendulum were transported from Earth to the Moon, where the acceleration due to gravity is 1.63 m/s^2.

Exercise:

Problem:

At what rate will a pendulum clock run on the Moon, where the acceleration due to gravity is 1.63 m/s^2, if it keeps time accurately on Earth? That is, find the time (in hours) it takes the clock's hour hand to make one revolution on the Moon.

Solution:

Slow by a factor of 2.45

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the length of a clock's pendulum is changed by 1.000%, exactly at noon one day. What time will it read 24.00 hours later, assuming it the pendulum has kept perfect time before the change? Note that there are two answers, and perform the calculation to four-digit precision.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a pendulum-driven clock gains 5.00 s/day, what fractional change in pendulum length must be made for it to keep perfect time?

Solution:

length must increase by 0.0116%.

Glossary

simple pendulum
: an object with a small mass suspended from a light wire or string

Energy and the Simple Harmonic Oscillator

- Determine the maximum speed of an oscillating system.

To study the energy of a simple harmonic oscillator, we first consider all the forms of energy it can have We know from Hooke’s Law: Stress and Strain Revisited that the energy stored in the deformation of a simple harmonic oscillator is a form of potential energy given by:

Equation:

$$\mathrm{PE_{el}} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2.$$

Because a simple harmonic oscillator has no dissipative forces, the other important form of energy is kinetic energy KE. Conservation of energy for these two forms is:

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE_{el}} = \mathrm{constant}$$

or

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mv}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2 = \mathrm{constant}.$$

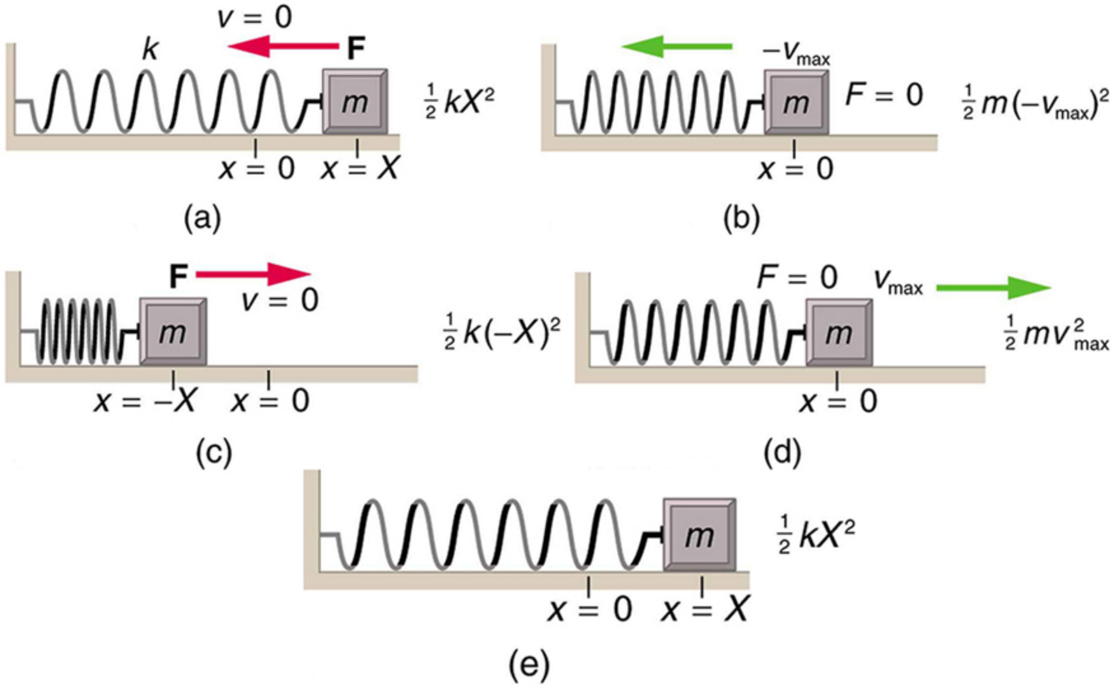
This statement of conservation of energy is valid for *all* simple harmonic oscillators, including ones where the gravitational force plays a role

Namely, for a simple pendulum we replace the velocity with $v = L\omega$, the spring constant with $k = \mathrm{mg}/L$, and the displacement term with $x = L\theta$. Thus

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mL}^2\omega^2 + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mgL}\theta^2 = \mathrm{constant}.$$

In the case of undamped simple harmonic motion, the energy oscillates back and forth between kinetic and potential, going completely from one to the other as the system oscillates. So for the simple example of an object on a frictionless surface attached to a spring, as shown again in [link], the motion starts with all of the energy stored in the spring. As the object starts to move, the elastic potential energy is converted to kinetic energy, becoming entirely kinetic energy at the equilibrium position. It is then converted back into elastic potential energy by the spring, the velocity becomes zero when the kinetic energy is completely converted, and so on. This concept provides extra insight here and in later applications of simple harmonic motion, such as alternating current circuits.



The transformation of energy in simple harmonic motion is illustrated for an object attached to a spring on a frictionless surface.

The conservation of energy principle can be used to derive an expression for velocity v. If we start our simple harmonic motion with zero velocity and maximum displacement ($x = X$), then the total energy is

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kX}^2.$$

This total energy is constant and is shifted back and forth between kinetic energy and potential energy, at most times being shared by each. The conservation of energy for this system in equation form is thus:
Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mv}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2 = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kX}^2.$$

Solving this equation for v yields:
Equation:

$$v = \pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}(X^2 - x^2)}.$$

Manipulating this expression algebraically gives:
Equation:

$$v = \pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X\sqrt{1 - \frac{x^2}{X^2}}$$

and so
Equation:

$$v = \pm v_{\text{max}}\sqrt{1 - \frac{x^2}{X^2}},$$

where
Equation:

$$v_{\max} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X.$$

From this expression, we see that the velocity is a maximum ($v_{\max}$) at $x = 0$, as stated earlier in $v(t) = -v_{\max} \sin \frac{2\pi t}{T}$. Notice that the maximum velocity depends on three factors. Maximum velocity is directly proportional to amplitude. As you might guess, the greater the maximum displacement the greater the maximum velocity. Maximum velocity is also greater for stiffer systems, because they exert greater force for the same displacement. This observation is seen in the expression for $v_{\max}$; it is proportional to the square root of the force constant k. Finally, the maximum velocity is smaller for objects that have larger masses, because the maximum velocity is inversely proportional to the square root of m. For a given force, objects that have large masses accelerate more slowly.

A similar calculation for the simple pendulum produces a similar result, namely:

Equation:

$$\omega_{\max} = \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}}\theta_{\max}.$$

Example:

Determine the Maximum Speed of an Oscillating System: A Bumpy Road

Suppose that a car is 900 kg and has a suspension system that has a force constant $k = 6.53 \times 10^4\ \text{N/m}$. The car hits a bump and bounces with an amplitude of 0.100 m. What is its maximum vertical velocity if you assume no damping occurs?

Strategy

We can use the expression for $v_{\max}$ given in $v_{\max} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X$ to determine the maximum vertical velocity. The variables m and k are given in the

problem statement, and the maximum displacement X is 0.100 m.
Solution

1. Identify known.
2. Substitute known values into $v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X$:

   Equation:

$$v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{6.53 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}}{900 \text{ kg}}}(0.100 \text{ m}).$$

3. Calculate to find v_{max}= 0.852 m/s.

Discussion
This answer seems reasonable for a bouncing car. There are other ways to use conservation of energy to find v_{max}. We could use it directly, as was done in the example featured in Hooke’s Law: Stress and Strain Revisited.
The small vertical displacement y of an oscillating simple pendulum, starting from its equilibrium position, is given as
Equation:

$$y(t) = a \sin \omega t,$$

where a is the amplitude, ω is the angular velocity and t is the time taken. Substituting $\omega = \frac{2\pi}{T}$, we have
Equation:

$$y(t) = a \sin\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T}\right).$$

Thus, the displacement of pendulum is a function of time as shown above.
Also the velocity of the pendulum is given by
Equation:

$$v(t) = \frac{2a\pi}{T} \cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T}\right),$$

so the motion of the pendulum is a function of time.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Why does it hurt more if your hand is snapped with a ruler than with a loose spring, even if the displacement of each system is equal?

Solution:

The ruler is a stiffer system, which carries greater force for the same amount of displacement. The ruler snaps your hand with greater force, which hurts more.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

You are observing a simple harmonic oscillator. Identify one way you could decrease the maximum velocity of the system.

Solution:

You could increase the mass of the object that is oscillating.

Section Summary

- Energy in the simple harmonic oscillator is shared between elastic potential energy and kinetic energy, with the total being constant:
  Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mv}^2+\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2=\mathrm{constant}.$$

- Maximum velocity depends on three factors: it is directly proportional to amplitude, it is greater for stiffer systems, and it is smaller for objects that have larger masses:
  Equation:

$$v_{\mathrm{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain in terms of energy how dissipative forces such as friction reduce the amplitude of a harmonic oscillator. Also explain how a driving mechanism can compensate. (A pendulum clock is such a system.)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The length of nylon rope from which a mountain climber is suspended has a force constant of $1.40 \times 10^4 \ \mathrm{N/m}$.

(a) What is the frequency at which he bounces, given his mass plus and the mass of his equipment are 90.0 kg?

(b) How much would this rope stretch to break the climber’s fall if he free-falls 2.00 m before the rope runs out of slack? Hint: Use conservation of energy.

(c) Repeat both parts of this problem in the situation where twice this length of nylon rope is used.

Solution:

(a) 1.99 Hz

(b) 50.2 cm

(c) 1.41 Hz, 0.710 m

Exercise:

Problem: **Engineering Application**

Near the top of the Citigroup Center building in New York City, there is an object with mass of 4.00×10^5 kg on springs that have adjustable force constants. Its function is to dampen wind-driven oscillations of the building by oscillating at the same frequency as the building is being driven—the driving force is transferred to the object, which oscillates instead of the entire building. (a) What effective force constant should the springs have to make the object oscillate with a period of 2.00 s? (b) What energy is stored in the springs for a 2.00-m displacement from equilibrium?

Solution:

(a) $3.95 \times 10^6 \text{ N/m}$

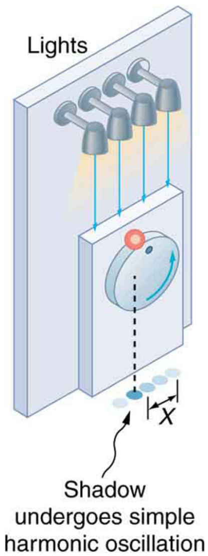
(b) $7.90 \times 10^6 \text{ J}$

Uniform Circular Motion and Simple Harmonic Motion

- Compare simple harmonic motion with uniform circular motion.

The horses on this merry-go-round exhibit uniform circular motion. (credit: Wonderlane, Flickr)

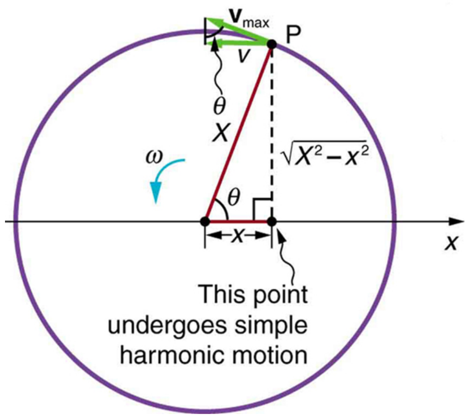
There is an easy way to produce simple harmonic motion by using uniform circular motion. [link] shows one way of using this method. A ball is attached to a uniformly rotating vertical turntable, and its shadow is projected on the floor as shown. The shadow undergoes simple harmonic motion. Hooke’s law usually describes uniform circular motions (ω constant) rather than systems that have large visible displacements. So observing the projection of uniform circular motion, as in [link], is often easier than observing a precise large-scale simple harmonic oscillator. If studied in sufficient depth, simple harmonic motion produced in this manner can give considerable insight into many aspects of oscillations and waves and is very useful mathematically. In our brief treatment, we shall indicate some of the major features of this relationship and how they might be useful.



The shadow of a ball rotating at constant angular velocity ω on a turntable goes back and forth in precise simple harmonic motion.

[link] shows the basic relationship between uniform circular motion and simple harmonic motion. The point P travels around the circle at constant angular velocity ω. The point P is analogous to an object on the merry-go-

round. The projection of the position of P onto a fixed axis undergoes simple harmonic motion and is analogous to the shadow of the object. At the time shown in the figure, the projection has position x and moves to the left with velocity v. The velocity of the point P around the circle equals v .The projection of v on the x-axis is the velocity v of the simple harmonic motion along the x-axis.



A point P moving on a circular path with a constant angular velocity ω is undergoing uniform circular motion. Its projection on the x-axis undergoes simple harmonic motion. Also shown is the velocity of this point around the circle, v , and its projection, which is v. Note that these velocities form a similar triangle to the displacement triangle.

To see that the projection undergoes simple harmonic motion, note that its position x is given by

Equation:

$$x \quad X \quad \theta$$

where $\theta \quad \omega t$, ω is the constant angular velocity, and X is the radius of the circular path. Thus,

Equation:

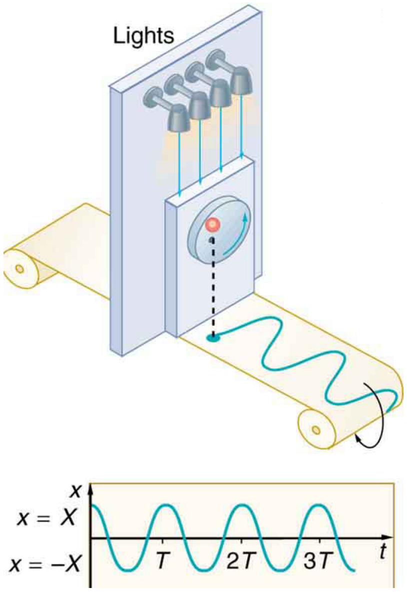
$$x \quad X \quad \omega t$$

The angular velocity ω is in radians per unit time; in this case π radians is the time for one revolution T. That is, $\omega \quad \pi \; T$. Substituting this expression for ω, we see that the position x is given by:

Equation:

$$x \; t \qquad \frac{\pi t}{T}$$

This expression is the same one we had for the position of a simple harmonic oscillator in [Simple Harmonic Motion: A Special Periodic Motion](). If we make a graph of position versus time as in [link], we see again the wavelike character (typical of simple harmonic motion) of the projection of uniform circular motion onto the x-axis.



The position of the projection of uniform circular motion performs simple harmonic motion, as this wavelike graph of x versus t indicates.

Now let us use [link] to do some further analysis of uniform circular motion as it relates to simple harmonic motion. The triangle formed by the velocities in the figure and the triangle formed by the displacements ($X \quad x$ and $\overline{X \qquad x}$) are similar right triangles. Taking ratios of similar sides, we see that

Equation:

$$\frac{v}{v} \qquad \frac{\overline{X \qquad x}}{X} \qquad \overline{\qquad \frac{x}{X}}$$

We can solve this equation for the speed v or

Equation:

$$v \quad v \qquad \sqrt{\qquad \frac{x}{X}}$$

This expression for the speed of a simple harmonic oscillator is exactly the same as the equation obtained from conservation of energy considerations in [Energy and the Simple Harmonic Oscillator](). You can begin to see that it is possible to get all of the characteristics of simple harmonic motion from an analysis of the projection of uniform circular motion.

Finally, let us consider the period T of the motion of the projection. This period is the time it takes the point P to complete one revolution. That time is the circumference of the circle πX divided by the velocity around the circle, v . Thus, the period T is

Equation:

$$T \quad \frac{\pi}{v}$$

We know from conservation of energy considerations that

Equation:

$$v \qquad \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X$$

Solving this equation for X v gives

Equation:

$$\frac{X}{v} \qquad \sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$$

Substituting this expression into the equation for T yields

Equation:

$$T \quad \pi \quad \overline{\frac{m}{k}}$$

Thus, the period of the motion is the same as for a simple harmonic oscillator. We have determined the period for any simple harmonic oscillator using the relationship between uniform circular motion and simple harmonic motion.

Some modules occasionally refer to the connection between uniform circular motion and simple harmonic motion. Moreover, if you carry your study of physics and its applications to greater depths, you will find this relationship useful. It can, for example, help to analyze how waves add when they are superimposed.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Identify an object that undergoes uniform circular motion. Describe how you could trace the simple harmonic motion of this object as a wave.

Solution:

A record player undergoes uniform circular motion. You could attach dowel rod to one point on the outside edge of the turntable and attach a pen to the other end of the dowel. As the record player turns, the pen will move. You can drag a long piece of paper under the pen, capturing its motion as a wave.

Section Summary

A projection of uniform circular motion undergoes simple harmonic oscillation.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a)What is the maximum velocity of an 85.0-kg person bouncing on a bathroom scale having a force constant of , if the amplitude of the bounce is 0.200 cm? (b)What is the maximum energy stored in the spring?

Solution:

a). 0.266 m/s

b). 3.00 J

Exercise:

Problem:

A novelty clock has a 0.0100-kg mass object bouncing on a spring that has a force constant of 1.25 N/m. What is the maximum velocity of the object if the object bounces 3.00 cm above and below its equilibrium position? (b) How many joules of kinetic energy does the object have at its maximum velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what positions is the speed of a simple harmonic oscillator half its maximum? That is, what values of x X give v v , where X is the amplitude of the motion?

Solution:

$\frac{-}{}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A ladybug sits 12.0 cm from the center of a Beatles music album spinning at 33.33 rpm. What is the maximum velocity of its shadow on the wall behind the turntable, if illuminated parallel to the record by the parallel rays of the setting Sun?

Damped Harmonic Motion

- Compare and discuss underdamped and overdamped oscillating systems.
- Explain critically damped system.

In order to counteract dampening forces, this mom needs to keep pushing the swing. (credit: Mohd Fazlin Mohd Effendy Ooi, Flickr)

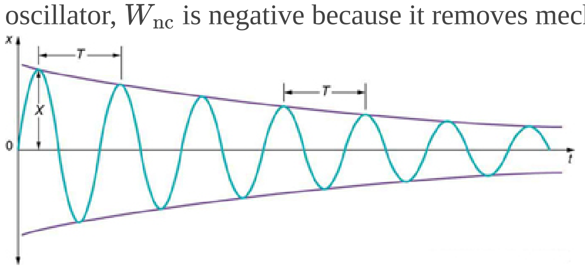
A guitar string stops oscillating a few seconds after being plucked. To keep a child happy on a swing, you must keep pushing. Although we can often make friction and other non-conservative forces negligibly small, completely undamped motion is rare. In fact, we may even want to damp oscillations, such as with car shock absorbers.

For a system that has a small amount of damping, the period and frequency are nearly the same as for simple harmonic motion, but the amplitude gradually decreases as shown in [link]. This occurs because the non-conservative damping force removes energy from the system, usually in the form of thermal energy. In general, energy removal by non-conservative forces is described as

Equation:

$$W_{\text{nc}} = \Delta(\text{KE} + \text{PE}),$$

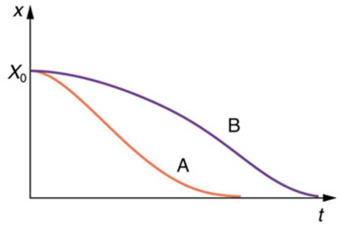
where W_{nc} is work done by a non-conservative force (here the damping force). For a damped harmonic oscillator, W_{nc} is negative because it removes mechanical energy (KE + PE) from the system.



In this graph of displacement versus time for a harmonic oscillator with a small amount of damping, the amplitude slowly decreases, but the period and frequency are nearly the

same as if the system were completely undamped.

If you gradually *increase* the amount of damping in a system, the period and frequency begin to be affected, because damping opposes and hence slows the back and forth motion. (The net force is smaller in both directions.) If there is very large damping, the system does not even oscillate—it slowly moves toward equilibrium. [link] shows the displacement of a harmonic oscillator for different amounts of damping. When we want to damp out oscillations, such as in the suspension of a car, we may want the system to return to equilibrium as quickly as possible **Critical damping** is defined as the condition in which the damping of an oscillator results in it returning as quickly as possible to its equilibrium position The critically damped system may overshoot the equilibrium position, but if it does, it will do so only once. Critical damping is represented by Curve A in [link]. With less-than critical damping, the system will return to equilibrium faster but will overshoot and cross over one or more times. Such a system is **underdamped**; its displacement is represented by the curve in [link]. Curve B in [link] represents an **overdamped** system. As with critical damping, it too may overshoot the equilibrium position, but will reach equilibrium over a longer period of time.



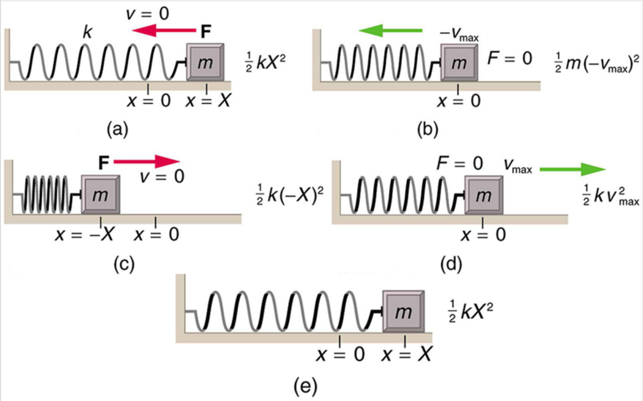
Displacement versus time for a critically damped harmonic oscillator (A) and an overdamped harmonic oscillator (B). The critically damped oscillator returns to equilibrium at $X = 0$ in the smallest time possible without overshooting.

Critical damping is often desired, because such a system returns to equilibrium rapidly and remains at equilibrium as well. In addition, a constant force applied to a critically damped system moves the system to a new equilibrium position in the shortest time possible without overshooting or oscillating about the new position. For example, when you stand on bathroom scales that have a needle gauge, the needle moves to its equilibrium position without oscillating. It would be quite inconvenient if the needle oscillated about the new equilibrium position for a long time before settling. Damping forces can vary greatly in character. Friction, for example, is sometimes independent of velocity (as assumed in most places in this text). But many damping forces depend on velocity—sometimes in complex ways, sometimes simply being proportional to velocity.

Example:

Damping an Oscillatory Motion: Friction on an Object Connected to a Spring

Damping oscillatory motion is important in many systems, and the ability to control the damping is even more so. This is generally attained using non-conservative forces such as the friction between surfaces, and viscosity for objects moving through fluids. The following example considers friction. Suppose a 0.200-kg object is connected to a spring as shown in [link], but there is simple friction between the object and the surface, and the coefficient of friction μ_k is equal to 0.0800. (a) What is the frictional force between the surfaces? (b) What total distance does the object travel if it is released 0.100 m from equilibrium, starting at $v = 0$? The force constant of the spring is $k = 50.0\ \mathrm{N/m}$.



The transformation of energy in simple harmonic motion is illustrated for an object attached to a spring on a frictionless surface.

Strategy

This problem requires you to integrate your knowledge of various concepts regarding waves, oscillations, and damping. To solve an integrated concept problem, you must first identify the physical principles involved. Part (a) is about the frictional force. This is a topic involving the application of Newton's Laws. Part (b) requires an understanding of work and conservation of energy, as well as some understanding of horizontal oscillatory systems.

Now that we have identified the principles we must apply in order to solve the problems, we need to identify the knowns and unknowns for each part of the question, as well as the quantity that is constant in Part (a) and Part (b) of the question.

Solution a

1. Choose the proper equation: Friction is $f = \mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}$.
2. Identify the known values.
3. Enter the known values into the equation:
   Equation:

$$f = (0.0800)(0.200\ \mathrm{kg})(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}).$$

4. Calculate and convert units: $f = 0.157\ \mathrm{N}$.

Discussion a

The force here is small because the system and the coefficients are small.

Solution b

Identify the known:

- The system involves elastic potential energy as the spring compresses and expands, friction that is related to the work done, and the kinetic energy as the body speeds up and slows down.
- Energy is not conserved as the mass oscillates because friction is a non-conservative force.
- The motion is horizontal, so gravitational potential energy does not need to be considered.
- Because the motion starts from rest, the energy in the system is initially $\mathrm{PE_{el,i}} = (1/2)\mathrm{kX}^2$. This energy is removed by work done by friction $W_{\mathrm{nc}} = -\mathrm{fd}$, where d is the total distance traveled and $f = \mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}$ is the force of friction. When the system stops moving, the friction force will balance the force exerted by the spring, so $\mathrm{PE_{e1,f}} = (1/2)kx^2$ where x is the final position and is given by
  Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\mathrm{el}} &= f \\ \mathrm{kx} &= \mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}. \\ x &= \frac{\mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}}{k} \end{aligned}$$

1. By equating the work done to the energy removed, solve for the distance d .
2. The work done by the non-conservative forces equals the initial, stored elastic potential energy. Identify the correct equation to use:
   Equation:

$$\mathrm{W_{nc}} = \mathit{\Delta}(\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE}) = \mathrm{PE_{el,f}} - \mathrm{PE_{el,i}} = \frac{1}{2}k\left(\left(\frac{\mu_{\mathrm{k}}mg}{k}\right)^2 - X^2\right).$$

3. Recall that $W_{\mathrm{nc}} = -\mathrm{fd}$.
4. Enter the friction as $f = \mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}$ into $W_{\mathrm{nc}} = -\mathrm{fd}$, thus
   Equation:

$$W_{\mathrm{nc}} = -\mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mgd}.$$

5. Combine these two equations to find
   Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}k\left(\left(\frac{\mu_k mg}{k}\right)^2 - X^2\right) = -\mu_k mgd.$$

6. Solve the equation for d :
   Equation:

$$d = \frac{\mathrm{k}}{2\mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}}\left(X^2 - \left(\frac{\mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}}{k}\right)^2\right).$$

7. Enter the known values into the resulting equation:
   Equation:

$$d = \frac{50.0\ \mathrm{N/m}}{2(0.0800)(0.200\ \mathrm{kg})\left(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}\right)} \quad (0.100\ \mathrm{m})^2 - \quad \frac{(0.0800)(0.200\ \mathrm{kg})\left(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}\right)}{50.0\ \mathrm{N/m}} \quad ^2 \quad .$$

8. Calculate d and convert units:
   Equation:

$$d = 1.59\ \mathrm{m}.$$

Discussion b

This is the total distance traveled back and forth across $x = 0$, which is the undamped equilibrium position. The number of oscillations about the equilibrium position will be more than $d/X = (1.59\text{ m})/(0.100\text{ m}) = 15.9$ because the amplitude of the oscillations is decreasing with time. At the end of the motion, this system will not return to $x = 0$ for this type of damping force, because static friction will exceed the restoring force. This system is underdamped. In contrast, an overdamped system with a simple constant damping force would not cross the equilibrium position $x = 0$ a single time. For example, if this system had a damping force 20 times greater, it would only move 0.0484 m toward the equilibrium position from its original 0.100-m position.

This worked example illustrates how to apply problem-solving strategies to situations that integrate the different concepts you have learned. The first step is to identify the physical principles involved in the problem. The second step is to solve for the unknowns using familiar problem-solving strategies. These are found throughout the text, and many worked examples show how to use them for single topics. In this integrated concepts example, you can see how to apply them across several topics. You will find these techniques useful in applications of physics outside a physics course, such as in your profession, in other science disciplines, and in everyday life.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem: Why are completely undamped harmonic oscillators so rare?

Solution:

Friction often comes into play whenever an object is moving. Friction causes damping in a harmonic oscillator.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem: Describe the difference between overdamping, underdamping, and critical damping.

Solution:

An overdamped system moves slowly toward equilibrium. An underdamped system moves quickly to equilibrium, but will oscillate about the equilibrium point as it does so. A critically damped system moves as quickly as possible toward equilibrium without oscillating about the equilibrium.

Section Summary

- Damped harmonic oscillators have non-conservative forces that dissipate their energy.
- Critical damping returns the system to equilibrium as fast as possible without overshooting.
- An underdamped system will oscillate through the equilibrium position.
- An overdamped system moves more slowly toward equilibrium than one that is critically damped.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a damped harmonic oscillator. (They are more common than undamped or simple harmonic oscillators.)

Exercise:

Problem: How would a car bounce after a bump under each of these conditions?

- overdamping
- underdamping
- critical damping

Exercise:

Problem:

Most harmonic oscillators are damped and, if undriven, eventually come to a stop. How is this observation related to the second law of thermodynamics?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The amplitude of a lightly damped oscillator decreases by 3.0% during each cycle. What percentage of the mechanical energy of the oscillator is lost in each cycle?

Glossary

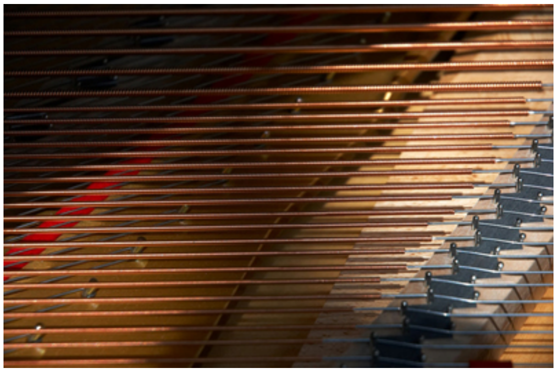
critical damping
: the condition in which the damping of an oscillator causes it to return as quickly as possible to its equilibrium position without oscillating back and forth about this position

over damping
: the condition in which damping of an oscillator causes it to return to equilibrium without oscillating; oscillator moves more slowly toward equilibrium than in the critically damped system

under damping
: the condition in which damping of an oscillator causes it to return to equilibrium with the amplitude gradually decreasing to zero; system returns to equilibrium faster but overshoots and crosses the equilibrium position one or more times

Forced Oscillations and Resonance

- Observe resonance of a paddle ball on a string.
- Observe amplitude of a damped harmonic oscillator.

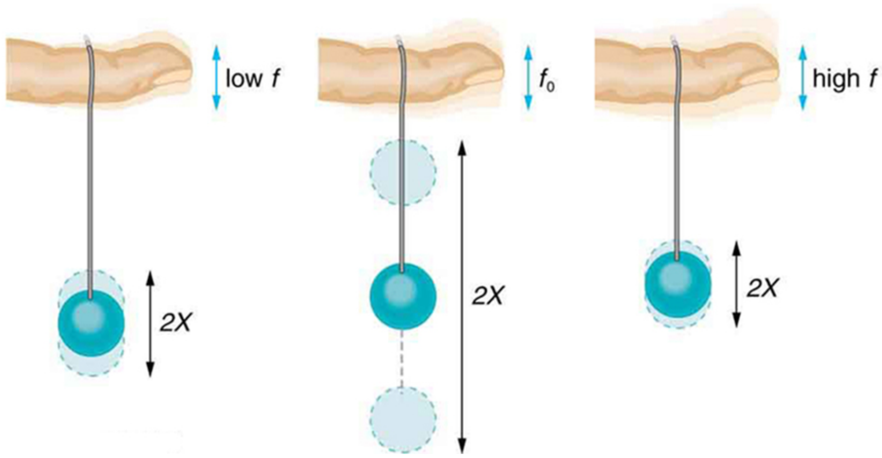


You can cause the strings in a piano to vibrate simply by producing sound waves from your voice. (credit: Matt Billings, Flickr)

Sit in front of a piano sometime and sing a loud brief note at it with the dampers off its strings. It will sing the same note back at you—the strings, having the same frequencies as your voice, are resonating in response to the forces from the sound waves that you sent to them. Your voice and a piano's strings is a good example of the fact that objects—in this case, piano strings—can be forced to oscillate but oscillate best at their natural frequency. In this section, we shall briefly explore applying a *periodic driving force* acting on a simple harmonic oscillator. The driving force puts energy into the system at a certain frequency, not necessarily the same as the natural frequency of the system. The **natural frequency** is the frequency at which a system would oscillate if there were no driving and no damping force.

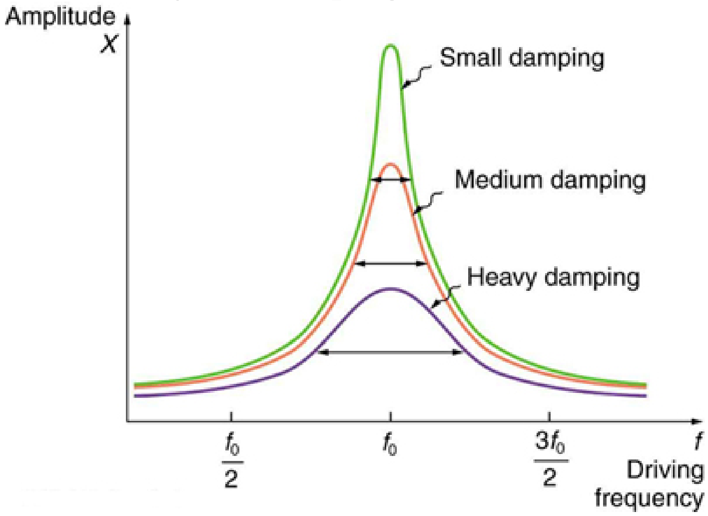
Most of us have played with toys involving an object supported on an elastic band, something like the paddle ball suspended from a finger in [link]. Imagine the finger in the figure is your finger. At first you hold your

finger steady, and the ball bounces up and down with a small amount of damping. If you move your finger up and down slowly, the ball will follow along without bouncing much on its own. As you increase the frequency at which you move your finger up and down, the ball will respond by oscillating with increasing amplitude. When you drive the ball at its natural frequency, the ball's oscillations increase in amplitude with each oscillation for as long as you drive it. The phenomenon of driving a system with a frequency equal to its natural frequency is called **resonance**. A system being driven at its natural frequency is said to **resonate**. As the driving frequency gets progressively higher than the resonant or natural frequency, the amplitude of the oscillations becomes smaller, until the oscillations nearly disappear and your finger simply moves up and down with little effect on the ball.



The paddle ball on its rubber band moves in response to the finger supporting it. If the finger moves with the natural frequency f_0 of the ball on the rubber band, then a resonance is achieved, and the amplitude of the ball's oscillations increases dramatically. At higher and lower driving frequencies, energy is transferred to the ball less efficiently, and it responds with lower-amplitude oscillations.

[link] shows a graph of the amplitude of a damped harmonic oscillator as a function of the frequency of the periodic force driving it. There are three curves on the graph, each representing a different amount of damping. All three curves peak at the point where the frequency of the driving force equals the natural frequency of the harmonic oscillator. The highest peak, or greatest response, is for the least amount of damping, because less energy is removed by the damping force.



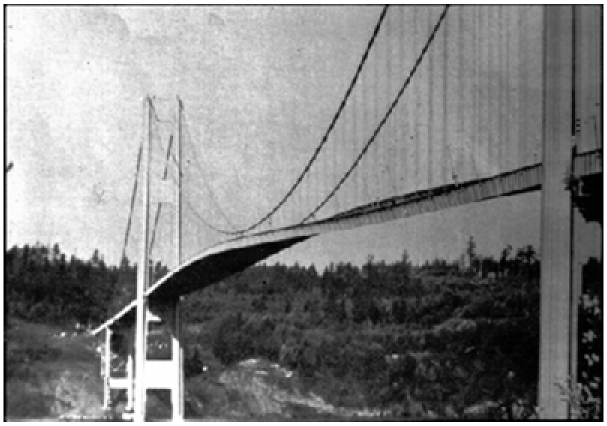
Amplitude of a harmonic oscillator as a function of the frequency of the driving force. The curves represent the same oscillator with the same natural frequency but with different amounts of damping. Resonance occurs when the driving frequency equals the natural frequency, and the greatest response is for the least amount of damping. The narrowest response is also for the least damping.

It is interesting that the widths of the resonance curves shown in [link] depend on damping: the less the damping, the narrower the resonance. The message is that if you want a driven oscillator to resonate at a very specific frequency, you need as little damping as possible. Little damping is the case

for piano strings and many other musical instruments. Conversely, if you want small-amplitude oscillations, such as in a car’s suspension system, then you want heavy damping. Heavy damping reduces the amplitude, but the tradeoff is that the system responds at more frequencies.

These features of driven harmonic oscillators apply to a huge variety of systems. When you tune a radio, for example, you are adjusting its resonant frequency so that it only oscillates to the desired station’s broadcast (driving) frequency. The more selective the radio is in discriminating between stations, the smaller its damping. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is a widely used medical diagnostic tool in which atomic nuclei (mostly hydrogen nuclei) are made to resonate by incoming radio waves (on the order of 100 MHz). A child on a swing is driven by a parent at the swing’s natural frequency to achieve maximum amplitude. In all of these cases, the efficiency of energy transfer from the driving force into the oscillator is best at resonance. Speed bumps and gravel roads prove that even a car’s suspension system is not immune to resonance. In spite of finely engineered shock absorbers, which ordinarily convert mechanical energy to thermal energy almost as fast as it comes in, speed bumps still cause a large-amplitude oscillation. On gravel roads that are corrugated, you may have noticed that if you travel at the “wrong” speed, the bumps are very noticeable whereas at other speeds you may hardly feel the bumps at all. [link] shows a photograph of a famous example (the Tacoma Narrows Bridge) of the destructive effects of a driven harmonic oscillation. The Millennium Bridge in London was closed for a short period of time for the same reason while inspections were carried out.

In our bodies, the chest cavity is a clear example of a system at resonance. The diaphragm and chest wall drive the oscillations of the chest cavity which result in the lungs inflating and deflating. The system is critically damped and the muscular diaphragm oscillates at the resonant value for the system, making it highly efficient.



In 1940, the Tacoma Narrows Bridge in Washington state collapsed. Heavy cross winds drove the bridge into oscillations at its resonant frequency. Damping decreased when support cables broke loose and started to slip over the towers, allowing increasingly greater amplitudes until the structure failed (credit: PRI's *Studio 360*, via Flickr)

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A famous magic trick involves a performer singing a note toward a crystal glass until the glass shatters. Explain why the trick works in terms of resonance and natural frequency.

Solution:

The performer must be singing a note that corresponds to the natural frequency of the glass. As the sound wave is directed at the glass, the glass responds by resonating at the same frequency as the sound wave.

With enough energy introduced into the system, the glass begins to vibrate and eventually shatters.

Section Summary

- A system’s natural frequency is the frequency at which the system will oscillate if not affected by driving or damping forces.
- A periodic force driving a harmonic oscillator at its natural frequency produces resonance. The system is said to resonate.
- The less damping a system has, the higher the amplitude of the forced oscillations near resonance. The more damping a system has, the broader response it has to varying driving frequencies.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why are soldiers in general ordered to “route step” (walk out of step) across a bridge?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

How much energy must the shock absorbers of a 1200-kg car dissipate in order to damp a bounce that initially has a velocity of 0.800 m/s at the equilibrium position? Assume the car returns to its original vertical position.

Solution:

384 J

Exercise:

Problem:

If a car has a suspension system with a force constant of $5.00 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}$, how much energy must the car's shocks remove to dampen an oscillation starting with a maximum displacement of 0.0750 m?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How much will a spring that has a force constant of 40.0 N/m be stretched by an object with a mass of 0.500 kg when hung motionless from the spring? (b) Calculate the decrease in gravitational potential energy of the 0.500-kg object when it descends this distance. (c) Part of this gravitational energy goes into the spring. Calculate the energy stored in the spring by this stretch, and compare it with the gravitational potential energy. Explain where the rest of the energy might go.

Solution:

(a). 0.123 m

(b). −0.600 J

(c). 0.300 J. The rest of the energy may go into heat caused by friction and other damping forces.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a 0.750-kg object on a horizontal surface connected to a spring that has a force constant of 150 N/m. There is simple friction between the object and surface with a static coefficient of friction $\mu_s = 0.100$. (a) How far can the spring be stretched without moving the mass? (b) If the object is set into oscillation with an amplitude twice the distance found in part (a), and the kinetic coefficient of friction is $\mu_k = 0.0850$, what total distance does it travel before stopping? Assume it starts at the maximum amplitude.

Exercise:

Problem:

Engineering Application: A suspension bridge oscillates with an effective force constant of 1.00×10^8 N/m. (a) How much energy is needed to make it oscillate with an amplitude of 0.100 m? (b) If soldiers march across the bridge with a cadence equal to the bridge's natural frequency and impart 1.00×10^4 J of energy each second, how long does it take for the bridge's oscillations to go from 0.100 m to 0.500 m amplitude?

Solution:

(a) 5.00×10^5 J

(b) 1.20×10^3 s

Glossary

natural frequency
: the frequency at which a system would oscillate if there were no driving and no damping forces

resonance

the phenomenon of driving a system with a frequency equal to the system's natural frequency

resonate
: a system being driven at its natural frequency

Waves

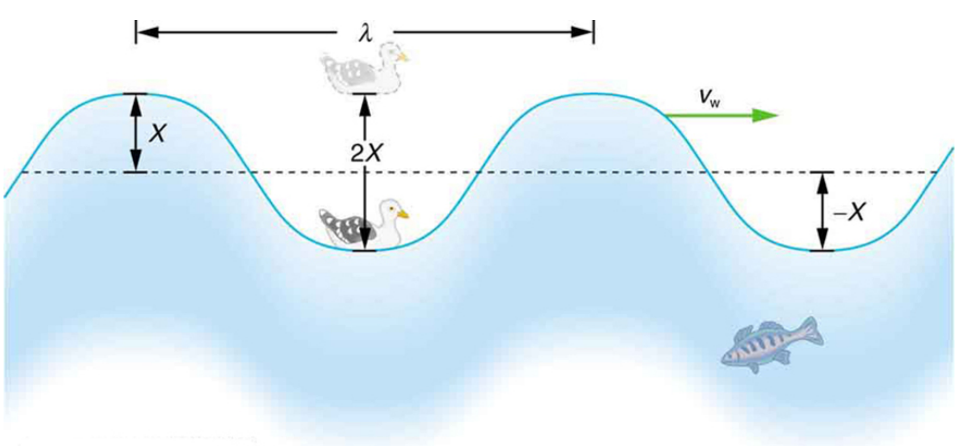
- State the characteristics of a wave.
- Calculate the velocity of wave propagation.

Waves in the ocean behave similarly to all other types of waves. (credit: Steve Jurveston, Flickr)

What do we mean when we say something is a wave? The most intuitive and easiest wave to imagine is the familiar water wave. More precisely, a **wave** is a disturbance that propagates, or moves from the place it was created. For water waves, the disturbance is in the surface of the water, perhaps created by a rock thrown into a pond or by a swimmer splashing the surface repeatedly. For sound waves, the disturbance is a change in air pressure, perhaps created by the oscillating cone inside a speaker. For earthquakes, there are several types of disturbances, including disturbance of Earth's surface and pressure disturbances under the surface. Even radio waves are most easily understood using an analogy with water waves. Visualizing water waves is useful because there is more to it than just a mental image. Water waves exhibit characteristics common to all waves, such as amplitude, period, frequency and energy. All wave characteristics can be described by a small set of underlying principles.

A wave is a disturbance that propagates, or moves from the place it was created. The simplest waves repeat themselves for several cycles and are associated with simple harmonic motion. Let us start by considering the simplified water wave in [link]. The wave is an up and down disturbance of the water surface. It causes a sea gull to move up and down in simple harmonic motion as the wave crests and troughs (peaks and valleys) pass under the bird. The time for one complete up and down motion is the wave's period T. The wave's frequency is $f = 1/T$, as usual. The wave itself moves to the right in the figure. This movement of the wave is actually the disturbance moving to the right, not the water itself (or the bird would move to the right). We define **wave velocity** v_{w} to be the speed at which the disturbance moves. Wave velocity is sometimes also called the *propagation velocity or propagation speed*, because the disturbance propagates from one location to another.

Note:
Misconception Alert
Many people think that water waves push water from one direction to another. In fact, the particles of water tend to stay in one location, save for moving up and down due to the energy in the wave. The energy moves forward through the water, but the water stays in one place. If you feel yourself pushed in an ocean, what you feel is the energy of the wave, not a rush of water.



An idealized ocean wave passes under a sea gull that bobs up and down in simple harmonic motion. The wave has a wavelength λ, which is the distance between adjacent identical parts of the wave. The up and down disturbance of the surface propagates parallel to the surface at a speed v_{w}.

The water wave in the figure also has a length associated with it, called its **wavelength** λ, the distance between adjacent identical parts of a wave. (λ is the distance parallel to the direction of propagation.) The speed of propagation v_{w} is the distance the wave travels in a given time, which is one wavelength in the time of one period. In equation form, that is

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}} = \frac{\lambda}{T}$$

or

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}} = f\lambda.$$

This fundamental relationship holds for all types of waves. For water waves, v_{w} is the speed of a surface wave; for sound, v_{w} is the speed of sound; and for visible light, v_{w} is the speed of light, for example.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Waves in a Bowl
Fill a large bowl or basin with water and wait for the water to settle so there are no ripples. Gently drop a cork into the middle of the bowl. Estimate the wavelength and period of oscillation of the water wave that propagates away from the cork. Remove the cork from the bowl and wait

for the water to settle again. Gently drop the cork at a height that is different from the first drop. Does the wavelength depend upon how high above the water the cork is dropped?

Example:
Calculate the Velocity of Wave Propagation: Gull in the Ocean
Calculate the wave velocity of the ocean wave in [link] if the distance between wave crests is 10.0 m and the time for a sea gull to bob up and down is 5.00 s.
Strategy
We are asked to find v_{w}. The given information tells us that $\lambda = 10.0\text{ m}$ and $T = 5.00\text{ s}$. Therefore, we can use $v_{\text{w}} = \frac{\lambda}{T}$ to find the wave velocity.
Solution

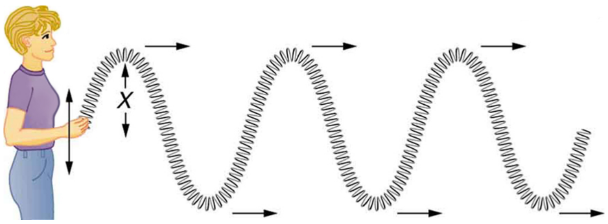
1. Enter the known values into $v_{\text{w}} = \frac{\lambda}{T}$:
   Equation:
   $$v_{\text{w}} = \frac{10.0\text{ m}}{5.00\text{ s}}.$$
2. Solve for v_{w} to find $v_{\text{w}}$$= 2.00\text{ m/s}$.

Discussion
This slow speed seems reasonable for an ocean wave. Note that the wave moves to the right in the figure at this speed, not the varying speed at which the sea gull moves up and down.

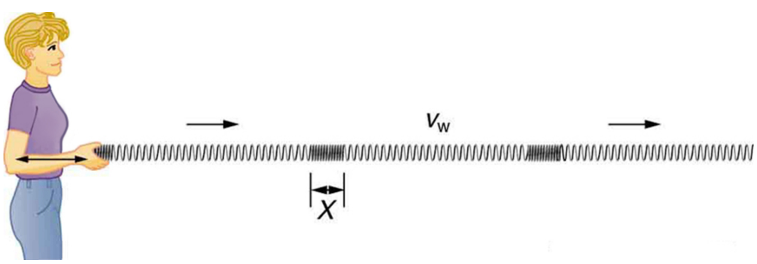
Transverse and Longitudinal Waves

A simple wave consists of a periodic disturbance that propagates from one place to another. The wave in [link] propagates in the horizontal direction while the surface is disturbed in the vertical direction. Such a wave is called a **transverse wave** or shear wave; in such a wave, the disturbance is perpendicular to the direction of propagation. In contrast, in a **longitudinal**

wave or compressional wave, the disturbance is parallel to the direction of propagation. [link] shows an example of a longitudinal wave. The size of the disturbance is its amplitude X and is completely independent of the speed of propagation v_w.



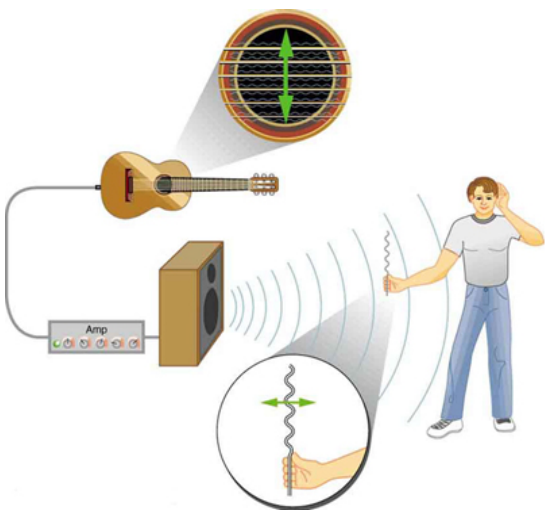
In this example of a transverse wave, the wave propagates horizontally, and the disturbance in the cord is in the vertical direction.



In this example of a longitudinal wave, the wave propagates horizontally, and the disturbance in the cord is also in the horizontal direction.

Waves may be transverse, longitudinal, or *a combination of the two*. (Water waves are actually a combination of transverse and longitudinal. The simplified water wave illustrated in [link] shows no longitudinal motion of the bird.) The waves on the strings of musical instruments are transverse—so are electromagnetic waves, such as visible light.

Sound waves in air and water are longitudinal. Their disturbances are periodic variations in pressure that are transmitted in fluids. Fluids do not have appreciable shear strength, and thus the sound waves in them must be longitudinal or compressional. Sound in solids can be both longitudinal and transverse.



The wave on a guitar string is transverse. The sound wave rattles a sheet of paper in a direction that shows the sound wave is longitudinal.

Earthquake waves under Earth’s surface also have both longitudinal and transverse components (called compressional or P-waves and shear or S-waves, respectively). These components have important individual characteristics—they propagate at different speeds, for example.

Earthquakes also have surface waves that are similar to surface waves on water.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Why is it important to differentiate between longitudinal and transverse waves?

Solution:

In the different types of waves, energy can propagate in a different direction relative to the motion of the wave. This is important to understand how different types of waves affect the materials around them.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Wave on a String

Watch a string vibrate in slow motion. Wiggle the end of the string and make waves, or adjust the frequency and amplitude of an oscillator. Adjust the damping and tension. The end can be fixed, loose, or open.

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/wave-on-a-string/latest/wave-on-a-string_en.html

Section Summary

- A wave is a disturbance that moves from the point of creation with a wave velocity v_{w}.
- A wave has a wavelength λ, which is the distance between adjacent identical parts of the wave.
- Wave velocity and wavelength are related to the wave's frequency and period by $v_{\text{w}} = \frac{\lambda}{T}$ or $v_{\text{w}} = f\lambda$.

- A transverse wave has a disturbance perpendicular to its direction of propagation, whereas a longitudinal wave has a disturbance parallel to its direction of propagation.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Give one example of a transverse wave and another of a longitudinal wave, being careful to note the relative directions of the disturbance and wave propagation in each.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the difference between propagation speed and the frequency of a wave? Does one or both affect wavelength? If so, how?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Storms in the South Pacific can create waves that travel all the way to the California coast, which are 12,000 km away. How long does it take them if they travel at 15.0 m/s?

Solution:
Equation:

$$t = 9.26\text{ d}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Waves on a swimming pool propagate at 0.750 m/s. You splash the water at one end of the pool and observe the wave go to the opposite end, reflect, and return in 30.0 s. How far away is the other end of the pool?

Exercise:

Problem:

Wind gusts create ripples on the ocean that have a wavelength of 5.00 cm and propagate at 2.00 m/s. What is their frequency?

Solution:
Equation:

$$f = 40.0\ \mathrm{Hz}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

How many times a minute does a boat bob up and down on ocean waves that have a wavelength of 40.0 m and a propagation speed of 5.00 m/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

Scouts at a camp shake the rope bridge they have just crossed and observe the wave crests to be 8.00 m apart. If they shake it the bridge twice per second, what is the propagation speed of the waves?

Solution:
Equation:

$$v_{\mathrm{w}} = 16.0\ \mathrm{m/s}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the wavelength of the waves you create in a swimming pool if you splash your hand at a rate of 2.00 Hz and the waves propagate at 0.800 m/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the wavelength of an earthquake that shakes you with a frequency of 10.0 Hz and gets to another city 84.0 km away in 12.0 s?

Solution:
Equation:

$$\lambda = 700 \text{ m}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Radio waves transmitted through space at $3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ by the Voyager spacecraft have a wavelength of 0.120 m. What is their frequency?

Exercise:

Problem:

Your ear is capable of differentiating sounds that arrive at the ear just 1.00 ms apart. What is the minimum distance between two speakers that produce sounds that arrive at noticeably different times on a day when the speed of sound is 340 m/s?

Solution:
Equation:

$$d = 34.0 \text{ cm}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Seismographs measure the arrival times of earthquakes with a precision of 0.100 s. To get the distance to the epicenter of the quake, they compare the arrival times of S- and P-waves, which travel at different speeds. [link]) If S- and P-waves travel at 4.00 and 7.20 km/s, respectively, in the region considered, how precisely can the distance to the source of the earthquake be determined? (b) Seismic waves from underground detonations of nuclear bombs can be used to locate the test site and detect violations of test bans. Discuss whether your answer to (a) implies a serious limit to such detection. (Note also that the uncertainty is greater if there is an uncertainty in the propagation speeds of the S- and P-waves.)

A seismograph as described in above problem.(credit: Oleg Alexandrov)

Glossary

longitudinal wave

a wave in which the disturbance is parallel to the direction of propagation

transverse wave
: a wave in which the disturbance is perpendicular to the direction of propagation

wave velocity
: the speed at which the disturbance moves. Also called the propagation velocity or propagation speed

wavelength
: the distance between adjacent identical parts of a wave

Superposition and Interference

- Explain standing waves.
- Describe the mathematical representation of overtones and beat frequency.

These waves result from the superposition of several waves from different sources, producing a complex pattern. (credit: waterborough, Wikimedia Commons)

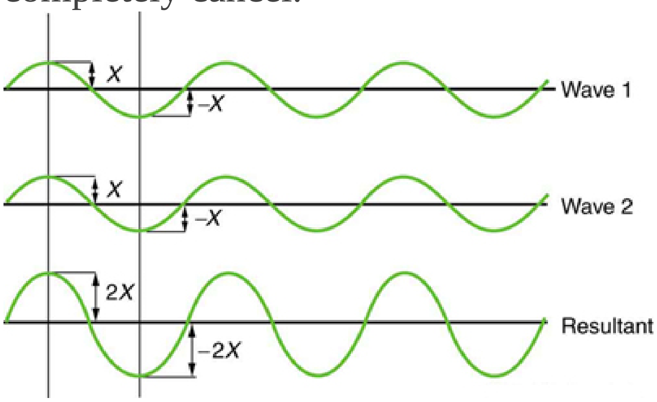
Most waves do not look very simple. They look more like the waves in [link] than like the simple water wave considered in Waves. (Simple waves may be created by a simple harmonic oscillation, and thus have a sinusoidal shape). Complex waves are more interesting, even beautiful, but they look formidable. Most waves appear complex because they result from several simple waves adding together. Luckily, the rules for adding waves are quite simple.

When two or more waves arrive at the same point, they superimpose themselves on one another. More specifically, the disturbances of waves are superimposed when they come together—a phenomenon called **superposition**. Each disturbance corresponds to a force, and forces add. If the disturbances are along the same line, then the resulting wave is a simple

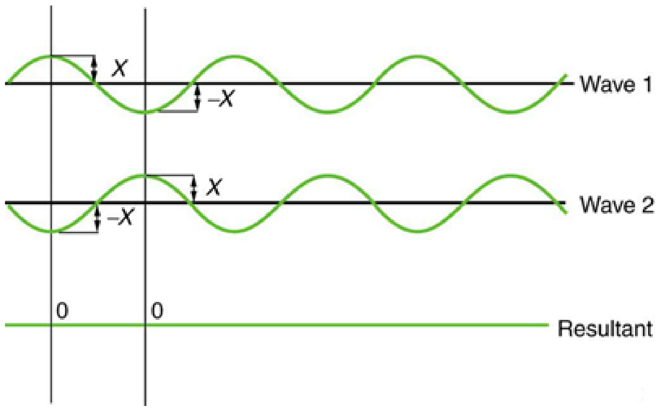
addition of the disturbances of the individual waves—that is, their amplitudes add. [link] and [link] illustrate superposition in two special cases, both of which produce simple results.

[link] shows two identical waves that arrive at the same point exactly in phase. The crests of the two waves are precisely aligned, as are the troughs. This superposition produces pure **constructive interference**. Because the disturbances add, pure constructive interference produces a wave that has twice the amplitude of the individual waves, but has the same wavelength.

[link] shows two identical waves that arrive exactly out of phase—that is, precisely aligned crest to trough—producing pure **destructive interference**. Because the disturbances are in the opposite direction for this superposition, the resulting amplitude is zero for pure destructive interference—the waves completely cancel.



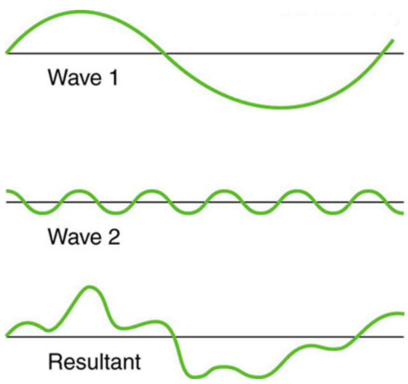
Pure constructive interference of two identical waves produces one with twice the amplitude, but the same wavelength.



Pure destructive interference of two identical waves produces zero amplitude, or complete cancellation.

While pure constructive and pure destructive interference do occur, they require precisely aligned identical waves. The superposition of most waves produces a combination of constructive and destructive interference and can vary from place to place and time to time. Sound from a stereo, for example, can be loud in one spot and quiet in another. Varying loudness means the sound waves add partially constructively and partially destructively at different locations. A stereo has at least two speakers creating sound waves, and waves can reflect from walls. All these waves superimpose. An example of sounds that vary over time from constructive to destructive is found in the combined whine of airplane jets heard by a stationary passenger. The combined sound can fluctuate up and down in volume as the sound from the two engines varies in time from constructive to destructive. These examples are of waves that are similar.

An example of the superposition of two dissimilar waves is shown in [link]. Here again, the disturbances add and subtract, producing a more complicated looking wave.

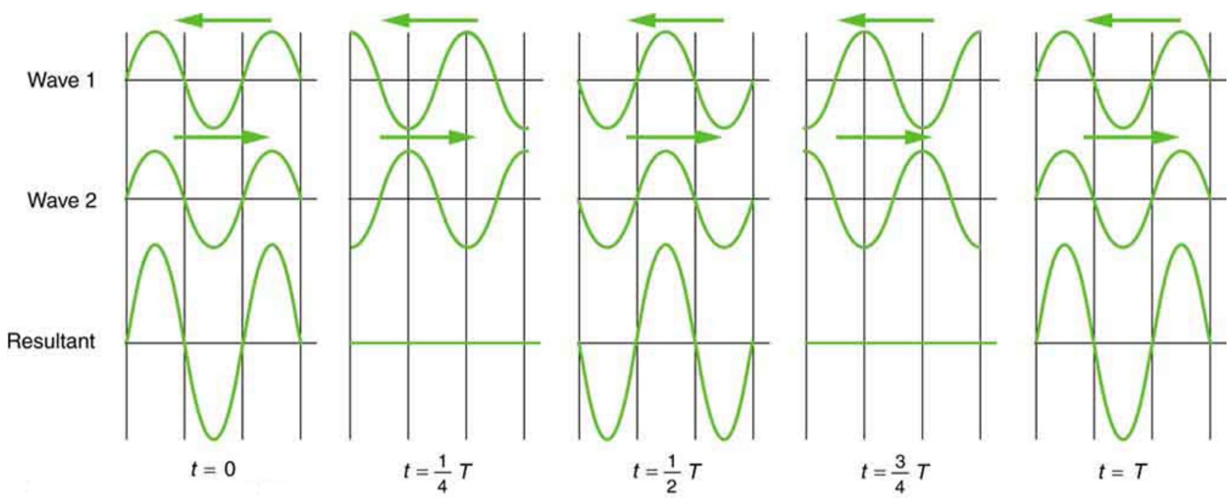


Superposition of non-identical waves exhibits both constructive and destructive interference.

Standing Waves

Sometimes waves do not seem to move; rather, they just vibrate in place. Unmoving waves can be seen on the surface of a glass of milk in a refrigerator, for example. Vibrations from the refrigerator motor create waves on the milk that oscillate up and down but do not seem to move across the surface. These waves are formed by the superposition of two or more moving waves, such as illustrated in [link] for two identical waves moving in opposite directions. The waves move through each other with their disturbances adding as they go by. If the two waves have the same amplitude and wavelength, then they alternate between constructive and destructive interference. The resultant looks like a wave standing in place and, thus, is called a **standing wave**. Waves on the glass of milk are one example of standing waves. There are other standing waves, such as on guitar strings and in organ pipes. With the glass of milk, the two waves that produce standing waves may come from reflections from the side of the glass.

A closer look at earthquakes provides evidence for conditions appropriate for resonance, standing waves, and constructive and destructive interference. A building may be vibrated for several seconds with a driving frequency matching that of the natural frequency of vibration of the building—producing a resonance resulting in one building collapsing while neighboring buildings do not. Often buildings of a certain height are devastated while other taller buildings remain intact. The building height matches the condition for setting up a standing wave for that particular height. As the earthquake waves travel along the surface of Earth and reflect off denser rocks, constructive interference occurs at certain points. Often areas closer to the epicenter are not damaged while areas farther away are damaged.

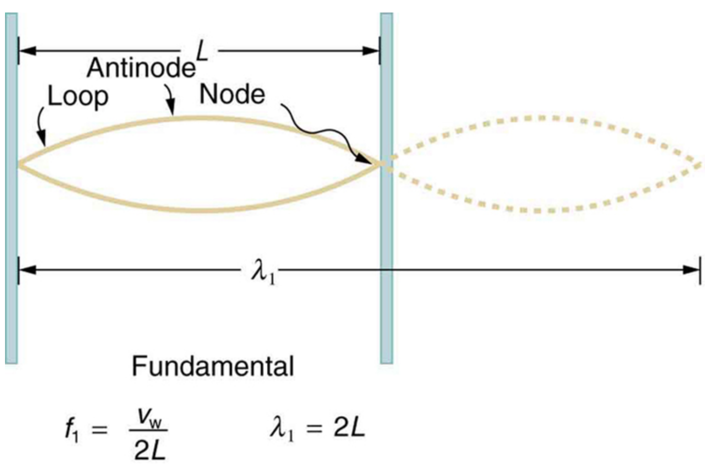


Standing wave created by the superposition of two identical waves moving in opposite directions. The oscillations are at fixed locations in space and result from alternately constructive and destructive interference.

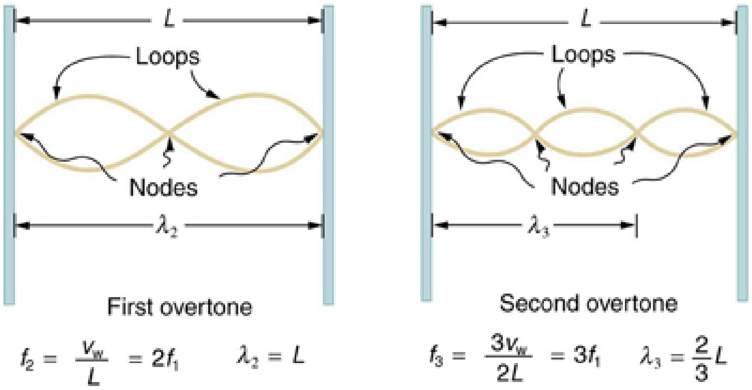
Standing waves are also found on the strings of musical instruments and are due to reflections of waves from the ends of the string. [link] and [link] show three standing waves that can be created on a string that is fixed at both ends. **Nodes** are the points where the string does not move; more

generally, nodes are where the wave disturbance is zero in a standing wave. The fixed ends of strings must be nodes, too, because the string cannot move there. The word **antinode** is used to denote the location of maximum amplitude in standing waves. Standing waves on strings have a frequency that is related to the propagation speed v_{w} of the disturbance on the string. The wavelength λ is determined by the distance between the points where the string is fixed in place.

The lowest frequency, called the **fundamental frequency**, is thus for the longest wavelength, which is seen to be $\lambda_1 = 2L$. Therefore, the fundamental frequency is $f_1 = v_{\text{w}}/\lambda_1 = v_{\text{w}}/2L$. In this case, the **overtones** or harmonics are multiples of the fundamental frequency. As seen in [link], the first harmonic can easily be calculated since $\lambda_2 = L$. Thus, $f_2 = v_{\text{w}}/\lambda_2 = v_{\text{w}}/2L = 2f_1$. Similarly, $f_3 = 3f_1$, and so on. All of these frequencies can be changed by adjusting the tension in the string. The greater the tension, the greater v_{w} is and the higher the frequencies. This observation is familiar to anyone who has ever observed a string instrument being tuned. We will see in later chapters that standing waves are crucial to many resonance phenomena, such as in sounding boxes on string instruments.



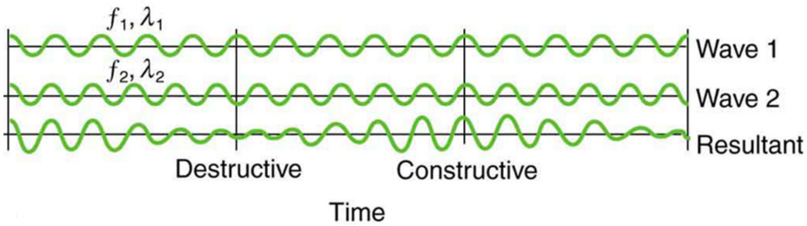
The figure shows a string oscillating at its fundamental frequency.



First and second harmonic frequencies are shown.

Beats

Striking two adjacent keys on a piano produces a warbling combination usually considered to be unpleasant. The superposition of two waves of similar but not identical frequencies is the culprit. Another example is often noticeable in jet aircraft, particularly the two-engine variety, while taxiing. The combined sound of the engines goes up and down in loudness. This varying loudness happens because the sound waves have similar but not identical frequencies. The discordant warbling of the piano and the fluctuating loudness of the jet engine noise are both due to alternately constructive and destructive interference as the two waves go in and out of phase. [link] illustrates this graphically.



Beats are produced by the superposition of two waves of slightly different frequencies but identical amplitudes. The waves alternate in time between constructive interference and destructive interference, giving the resulting wave a time-varying amplitude.

The wave resulting from the superposition of two similar-frequency waves has a frequency that is the average of the two. This wave fluctuates in amplitude, or *beats*, with a frequency called the **beat frequency**. We can determine the beat frequency by adding two waves together mathematically. Note that a wave can be represented at one point in space as

Equation:

$$x = X\cos\left(\frac{2\pi\, t}{T}\right) = X\cos(2\pi\,\mathrm{ft}),$$

where $f = 1/T$ is the frequency of the wave. Adding two waves that have different frequencies but identical amplitudes produces a resultant

Equation:

$$x = x_1 + x_2.$$

More specifically,

Equation:

$$x = X\cos(2\pi\, f_1 t) + X\cos(2\pi\, f_2 t).$$

Using a trigonometric identity, it can be shown that
Equation:

$$x = 2X\cos(\pi f_B t)\cos(2\pi f_{ave} t),$$

where
Equation:

$$f_B = \mid f_1 - f_2 \mid$$

is the beat frequency, and f_{ave} is the average of f_1 and f_2. These results mean that the resultant wave has twice the amplitude and the average frequency of the two superimposed waves, but it also fluctuates in overall amplitude at the beat frequency f_B. The first cosine term in the expression effectively causes the amplitude to go up and down. The second cosine term is the wave with frequency f_{ave}. This result is valid for all types of waves. However, if it is a sound wave, providing the two frequencies are similar, then what we hear is an average frequency that gets louder and softer (or warbles) at the beat frequency.

Note:
Making Career Connections
Piano tuners use beats routinely in their work. When comparing a note with a tuning fork, they listen for beats and adjust the string until the beats go away (to zero frequency). For example, if the tuning fork has a $256\ \text{Hz}$ frequency and two beats per second are heard, then the other frequency is either 254 or $258\ \text{Hz}$. Most keys hit multiple strings, and these strings are actually adjusted until they have nearly the same frequency and give a slow beat for richness. Twelve-string guitars and mandolins are also tuned using beats.

While beats may sometimes be annoying in audible sounds, we will find that beats have many applications. Observing beats is a very useful way to compare similar frequencies. There are applications of beats as apparently disparate as in ultrasonic imaging and radar speed traps.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Imagine you are holding one end of a jump rope, and your friend holds the other. If your friend holds her end still, you can move your end up and down, creating a transverse wave. If your friend then begins to move her end up and down, generating a wave in the opposite direction, what resultant wave forms would you expect to see in the jump rope?

Solution:

The rope would alternate between having waves with amplitudes two times the original amplitude and reaching equilibrium with no amplitude at all. The wavelengths will result in both constructive and destructive interference

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem: Define nodes and antinodes.

Solution:

Nodes are areas of wave interference where there is no motion. Antinodes are areas of wave interference where the motion is at its maximum point.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

You hook up a stereo system. When you test the system, you notice that in one corner of the room, the sounds seem dull. In another area, the sounds seem excessively loud. Describe how the sound moving about the room could result in these effects.

Solution:

With multiple speakers putting out sounds into the room, and these sounds bouncing off walls, there is bound to be some wave interference. In the dull areas, the interference is probably mostly destructive. In the louder areas, the interference is probably mostly constructive.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Wave Interference

Make waves with a dripping faucet, audio speaker, or laser! Add a second source or a pair of slits to create an interference pattern.

Wave Interference

Section Summary

- Superposition is the combination of two waves at the same location.
- Constructive interference occurs when two identical waves are superimposed in phase.

- Destructive interference occurs when two identical waves are superimposed exactly out of phase.
- A standing wave is one in which two waves superimpose to produce a wave that varies in amplitude but does not propagate.
- Nodes are points of no motion in standing waves.
- An antinode is the location of maximum amplitude of a standing wave.
- Waves on a string are resonant standing waves with a fundamental frequency and can occur at higher multiples of the fundamental, called overtones or harmonics.
- Beats occur when waves of similar frequencies f_1 and f_2 are superimposed. The resulting amplitude oscillates with a beat frequency given by

  Equation:

  $$f_\mathrm{B} = \mid f_1 - f_2 \mid .$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Speakers in stereo systems have two color-coded terminals to indicate how to hook up the wires. If the wires are reversed, the speaker moves in a direction opposite that of a properly connected speaker. Explain why it is important to have both speakers connected the same way.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A car has two horns, one emitting a frequency of 199 Hz and the other emitting a frequency of 203 Hz. What beat frequency do they produce?

Solution:

$f = 4 \text{ Hz}$

Exercise:

Problem:

The middle-C hammer of a piano hits two strings, producing beats of 1.50 Hz. One of the strings is tuned to 260.00 Hz. What frequencies could the other string have?

Exercise:

Problem:

Two tuning forks having frequencies of 460 and 464 Hz are struck simultaneously. What average frequency will you hear, and what will the beat frequency be?

Solution:

462 Hz,

4 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Twin jet engines on an airplane are producing an average sound frequency of 4100 Hz with a beat frequency of 0.500 Hz. What are their individual frequencies?

Exercise:

Problem:

A wave traveling on a Slinky® that is stretched to 4 m takes 2.4 s to travel the length of the Slinky and back again. (a) What is the speed of the wave? (b) Using the same Slinky stretched to the same length, a standing wave is created which consists of three antinodes and four nodes. At what frequency must the Slinky be oscillating?

Solution:

(a) 3.33 m/s

(b) 1.25 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Three adjacent keys on a piano (F, F-sharp, and G) are struck simultaneously, producing frequencies of 349, 370, and 392 Hz. What beat frequencies are produced by this discordant combination?

Glossary

antinode
: the location of maximum amplitude in standing waves

beat frequency
: the frequency of the amplitude fluctuations of a wave

constructive interference
: when two waves arrive at the same point exactly in phase; that is, the crests of the two waves are precisely aligned, as are the troughs

destructive interference
: when two identical waves arrive at the same point exactly out of phase; that is, precisely aligned crest to trough

fundamental frequency
: the lowest frequency of a periodic waveform

nodes
: the points where the string does not move; more generally, nodes are where the wave disturbance is zero in a standing wave

overtones

multiples of the fundamental frequency of a sound

superposition

the phenomenon that occurs when two or more waves arrive at the same point

Energy in Waves: Intensity

- Calculate the intensity and the power of rays and waves.

The destructive effect of an earthquake is palpable evidence of the energy carried in these waves. The Richter scale rating of earthquakes is related to both their amplitude and the energy they carry. (credit: Petty Officer 2nd Class Candice Villarreal, U.S. Navy)

All waves carry energy. The energy of some waves can be directly observed. Earthquakes can shake whole cities to the ground, performing the work of thousands of wrecking balls.

Loud sounds pulverize nerve cells in the inner ear, causing permanent hearing loss. Ultrasound is used for deep-heat treatment of muscle strains. A laser beam can burn away a malignancy. Water waves chew up beaches.

The amount of energy in a wave is related to its amplitude. Large-amplitude earthquakes produce large ground displacements. Loud sounds have higher pressure amplitudes and come from larger-amplitude source vibrations than

soft sounds. Large ocean breakers churn up the shore more than small ones. More quantitatively, a wave is a displacement that is resisted by a restoring force. The larger the displacement x, the larger the force $F = \mathrm{kx}$ needed to create it. Because work W is related to force multiplied by distance (Fx) and energy is put into the wave by the work done to create it, the energy in a wave is related to amplitude. In fact, a wave's energy is directly proportional to its amplitude squared because

Equation:

$$W \propto \mathrm{Fx} = \mathrm{kx}^2.$$

The energy effects of a wave depend on time as well as amplitude. For example, the longer deep-heat ultrasound is applied, the more energy it transfers. Waves can also be concentrated or spread out. Sunlight, for example, can be focused to burn wood. Earthquakes spread out, so they do less damage the farther they get from the source. In both cases, changing the area the waves cover has important effects. All these pertinent factors are included in the definition of **intensity** I as power per unit area:

Equation:

$$I = \frac{P}{A}$$

where P is the power carried by the wave through area A. The definition of intensity is valid for any energy in transit, including that carried by waves. The SI unit for intensity is watts per square meter ($\mathrm{W/m^2}$). For example, infrared and visible energy from the Sun impinge on Earth at an intensity of $1300\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$ just above the atmosphere. There are other intensity-related units in use, too. The most common is the decibel. For example, a 90 decibel sound level corresponds to an intensity of $10^{-3}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$. (This quantity is not much power per unit area considering that 90 decibels is a relatively high sound level. Decibels will be discussed in some detail in a later chapter.

Example:
Calculating intensity and power: How much energy is in a ray of sunlight?
The average intensity of sunlight on Earth's surface is about $700\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$.
(a) Calculate the amount of energy that falls on a solar collector having an area of $0.500\ \mathrm{m^2}$ in 4.00 h.
(b) What intensity would such sunlight have if concentrated by a magnifying glass onto an area 200 times smaller than its own?
Strategy a
Because power is energy per unit time or $P = \frac{E}{t}$, the definition of intensity can be written as $I = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{E/t}{A}$, and this equation can be solved for E with the given information.
Solution a

1. Begin with the equation that states the definition of intensity:
   Equation:
   $$I = \frac{P}{A}.$$
2. Replace P with its equivalent E/t:
   Equation:
   $$I = \frac{E/t}{A}.$$
3. Solve for E:
   Equation:
   $$E = \mathrm{IAt}.$$
4. Substitute known values into the equation:
   Equation:
   $$E = \left(700\ \mathrm{W/m^2}\right)\left(0.500\ \mathrm{m^2}\right)\left[(4.00\ \mathrm{h})(3600\ \mathrm{s/h})\right].$$
5. Calculate to find E and convert units:

Equation:

$$5.04 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{J},$$

Discussion a
The energy falling on the solar collector in 4 h in part is enough to be useful—for example, for heating a significant amount of water.
Strategy b
Taking a ratio of new intensity to old intensity and using primes for the new quantities, we will find that it depends on the ratio of the areas. All other quantities will cancel.
Solution b

1. Take the ratio of intensities, which yields:
   Equation:

$$\frac{I\prime}{I} = \frac{P\prime/A\prime}{P/A} = \frac{A}{A\prime}\left(\text{The powers cancel because } P\prime = P\right).$$

2. Identify the knowns:
   Equation:

$$A = 200A\prime,$$

   Equation:

$$\frac{I\prime}{I} = 200.$$

3. Substitute known quantities:
   Equation:

$$I\prime = 200I = 200\left(700\ \mathrm{W/m^{2}}\right).$$

4. Calculate to find $I\prime$:
   Equation:

$$I\prime = 1.40 \times 10^{5}\ \text{W/m}^{2}.$$

Discussion b

Decreasing the area increases the intensity considerably. The intensity of the concentrated sunlight could even start a fire.

Example:

Determine the combined intensity of two waves: Perfect constructive interference

If two identical waves, each having an intensity of $1.00\ \text{W/m}^{2}$, interfere perfectly constructively, what is the intensity of the resulting wave?

Strategy

We know from Superposition and Interference that when two identical waves, which have equal amplitudes X, interfere perfectly constructively, the resulting wave has an amplitude of $2X$. Because a wave's intensity is proportional to amplitude squared, the intensity of the resulting wave is four times as great as in the individual waves.

Solution

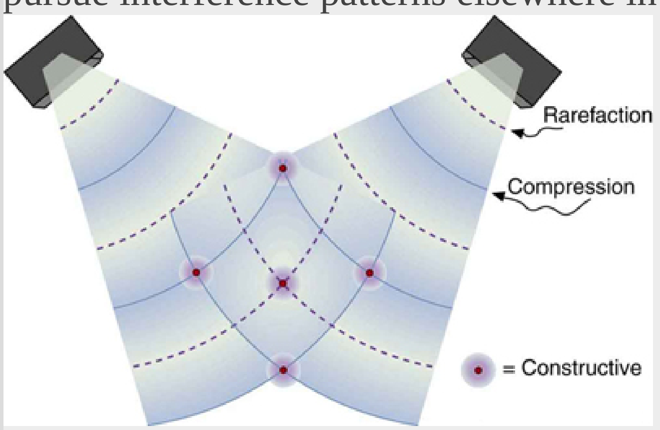
1. Recall that intensity is proportional to amplitude squared.
2. Calculate the new amplitude:
   Equation:
   $$I\prime \propto (X\prime)^{2} = (2X)^{2} = 4X^{2}.$$
3. Recall that the intensity of the old amplitude was:
   Equation:
   $$I \propto X^{2}.$$
4. Take the ratio of new intensity to the old intensity. This gives:
   Equation:
   $$\frac{I\prime}{I} = 4.$$

5. Calculate to find $I\prime$:
   Equation:

$$I\prime = 4I = 4.00\ \text{W/m}^2.$$

Discussion

The intensity goes up by a factor of 4 when the amplitude doubles. This answer is a little disquieting. The two individual waves each have intensities of $1.00\ \text{W/m}^2$, yet their sum has an intensity of $4.00\ \text{W/m}^2$, which may appear to violate conservation of energy. This violation, of course, cannot happen. What does happen is intriguing. The area over which the intensity is $4.00\ \text{W/m}^2$ is much less than the area covered by the two waves before they interfered. There are other areas where the intensity is zero. The addition of waves is not as simple as our first look in Superposition and Interference suggested. We actually get a pattern of both constructive interference and destructive interference whenever two waves are added. For example, if we have two stereo speakers putting out $1.00\ \text{W/m}^2$ each, there will be places in the room where the intensity is $4.00\ \text{W/m}^2$, other places where the intensity is zero, and others in between. [link] shows what this interference might look like. We will pursue interference patterns elsewhere in this text.



These stereo speakers produce both constructive interference and destructive interference in the room, a property common to the

superposition of all types of waves. The shading is proportional to intensity.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Which measurement of a wave is most important when determining the wave's intensity?

Solution:

Amplitude, because a wave’s energy is directly proportional to its amplitude squared.

Section Summary

Intensity is defined to be the power per unit area:

$I = \frac{P}{A}$ and has units of $\mathrm{W/m^2}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Two identical waves undergo pure constructive interference. Is the resultant intensity twice that of the individual waves? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Circular water waves decrease in amplitude as they move away from where a rock is dropped. Explain why.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: **Medical Application**

Ultrasound of intensity $1.50 \times 10^2 \text{ W/m}^2$ is produced by the rectangular head of a medical imaging device measuring 3.00 by 5.00 cm. What is its power output?

Solution:

0.225 W

Exercise:

Problem:

The low-frequency speaker of a stereo set has a surface area of 0.05 m^2 and produces 1W of acoustical power. What is the intensity at the speaker? If the speaker projects sound uniformly in all directions, at what distance from the speaker is the intensity 0.1 W/m^2?

Exercise:

Problem:

To increase intensity of a wave by a factor of 50, by what factor should the amplitude be increased?

Solution:

7.07

Exercise:

Problem: **Engineering Application**

A device called an insolation meter is used to measure the intensity of sunlight has an area of 100 cm^2 and registers 6.50 W. What is the intensity in $\mathrm{W/m^2}$?

Exercise:

Problem: **Astronomy Application**

Energy from the Sun arrives at the top of the Earth's atmosphere with an intensity of $1.30\ \mathrm{kW/m^2}$. How long does it take for $1.8 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{J}$ to arrive on an area of $1.00\ \mathrm{m^2}$?

Solution:

16.0 d

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a device that extracts energy from ocean breakers in direct proportion to their intensity. If the device produces 10.0 kW of power on a day when the breakers are 1.20 m high, how much will it produce when they are 0.600 m high?

Solution:

2.50 kW

Exercise:

Problem: **Engineering Application**

(a) A photovoltaic array of (solar cells) is 10.0% efficient in gathering solar energy and converting it to electricity. If the average intensity of

sunlight on one day is $700\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$, what area should your array have to gather energy at the rate of 100 W? (b) What is the maximum cost of the array if it must pay for itself in two years of operation averaging 10.0 hours per day? Assume that it earns money at the rate of 9.00 ¢ per kilowatt-hour.

Exercise:

Problem:

A microphone receiving a pure sound tone feeds an oscilloscope, producing a wave on its screen. If the sound intensity is originally $2.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$, but is turned up until the amplitude increases by 30.0%, what is the new intensity?

Solution:

$3.38 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Medical Application**

(a) What is the intensity in $\mathrm{W/m^2}$ of a laser beam used to burn away cancerous tissue that, when 90.0% absorbed, puts 500 J of energy into a circular spot 2.00 mm in diameter in 4.00 s? (b) Discuss how this intensity compares to the average intensity of sunlight (about $700\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$) and the implications that would have if the laser beam entered your eye. Note how your answer depends on the time duration of the exposure.

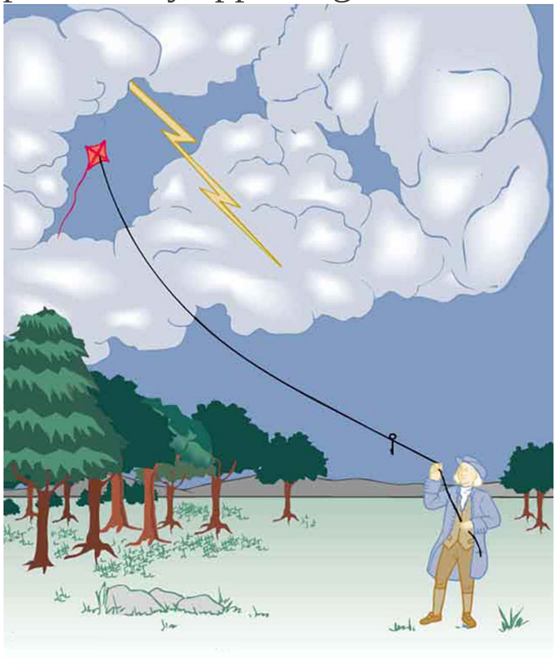
Glossary

intensity
: power per unit area

Introduction to Electric Charge and Electric Field class="introduction"

Static electricity from this plastic slide causes the child’s hair to stand on end. The sliding motion stripped electrons away from the child’s body, leaving an excess of positive charges, which repel each other along each strand of hair. (credit: Ken Bosma/Wikimedia Commons)

The image of American politician and scientist Benjamin Franklin (1706–1790) flying a kite in a thunderstorm is familiar to every schoolchild. (See [link].) In this experiment, Franklin demonstrated a connection between lightning and **static electricity**. Sparks were drawn from a key hung on a kite string during an electrical storm. These sparks were like those produced by static electricity, such as the spark that jumps from your finger to a metal doorknob after you walk across a wool carpet. What Franklin demonstrated in his dangerous experiment was a connection between phenomena on two different scales: one the grand power of an electrical storm, the other an effect of more human proportions. Connections like this one reveal the underlying unity of the laws of nature, an aspect we humans find particularly appealing.



When Benjamin Franklin demonstrated that lightning was related to static electricity, he made a connection that is now part of the evidence that all directly experienced forces except the gravitational force are manifestations of the electromagnetic force.

Much has been written about Franklin. His experiments were only part of the life of a man who was a scientist, inventor, revolutionary, statesman, and writer. Franklin’s experiments were not performed in isolation, nor were they the only ones to reveal connections.

For example, the Italian scientist Luigi Galvani (1737–1798) performed a series of experiments in which static electricity was used to stimulate contractions of leg muscles of dead frogs, an effect already known in humans subjected to static discharges. But Galvani also found that if he joined two metal wires (say copper and zinc) end to end and touched the other ends to muscles, he produced the same effect in frogs as static discharge. Alessandro Volta (1745–1827), partly inspired by Galvani’s work, experimented with various combinations of metals and developed the battery.

During the same era, other scientists made progress in discovering fundamental connections. The periodic table was developed as the systematic properties of the elements were discovered. This influenced the development and refinement of the concept of atoms as the basis of matter. Such submicroscopic descriptions of matter also help explain a great deal more.

Atomic and molecular interactions, such as the forces of friction, cohesion, and adhesion, are now known to be manifestations of the **electromagnetic force**. Static electricity is just one aspect of the electromagnetic force, which also includes moving electricity and magnetism.

All the macroscopic forces that we experience directly, such as the sensations of touch and the tension in a rope, are due to the electromagnetic force, one of the four fundamental forces in nature. The gravitational force, another fundamental force, is actually sensed through the electromagnetic interaction of molecules, such as between those in our feet and those on the top of a bathroom scale. (The other two fundamental forces, the strong nuclear force and the weak nuclear force, cannot be sensed on the human scale.)

This chapter begins the study of electromagnetic phenomena at a fundamental level. The next several chapters will cover static electricity, moving electricity, and magnetism—collectively known as electromagnetism. In this chapter, we begin with the study of electric phenomena due to charges that are at least temporarily stationary, called electrostatics, or static electricity.

Glossary

static electricity
: a buildup of electric charge on the surface of an object

electromagnetic force
: one of the four fundamental forces of nature; the electromagnetic force consists of static electricity, moving electricity and magnetism

Static Electricity and Charge: Conservation of Charge

- Define electric charge, and describe how the two types of charge interact.
- Describe three common situations that generate static electricity.
- State the law of conservation of charge.

Borneo amber was mined in Sabah, Malaysia, from shale-sandstone-mudstone veins. When a piece of amber is rubbed with a piece of silk, the amber gains more electrons, giving it a net negative charge. At the same time, the silk, having lost electrons, becomes positively charged. (credit: Sebakoamber, Wikimedia Commons)

What makes plastic wrap cling? Static electricity. Not only are applications of static electricity common these days, its existence has been known since ancient times. The first record of its effects dates to ancient Greeks who noted more than 500 years B.C. that polishing amber temporarily enabled it

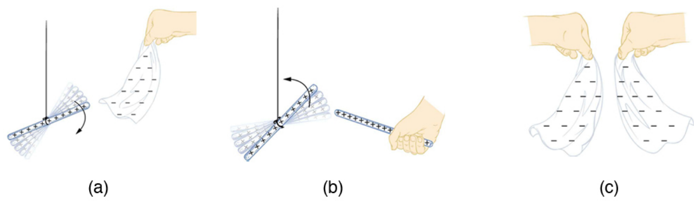
to attract bits of straw (see [link]). The very word *electric* derives from the Greek word for amber (*electron*).

Many of the characteristics of static electricity can be explored by rubbing things together. Rubbing creates the spark you get from walking across a wool carpet, for example. Static cling generated in a clothes dryer and the attraction of straw to recently polished amber also result from rubbing. Similarly, lightning results from air movements under certain weather conditions. You can also rub a balloon on your hair, and the static electricity created can then make the balloon cling to a wall. We also have to be cautious of static electricity, especially in dry climates. When we pump gasoline, we are warned to discharge ourselves (after sliding across the seat) on a metal surface before grabbing the gas nozzle. Attendants in hospital operating rooms must wear booties with aluminum foil on the bottoms to avoid creating sparks which may ignite the oxygen being used.

Some of the most basic characteristics of static electricity include:

- The effects of static electricity are explained by a physical quantity not previously introduced, called electric charge.
- There are only two types of charge, one called positive and the other called negative.
- Like charges repel, whereas unlike charges attract.
- The force between charges decreases with distance.

How do we know there are two types of **electric charge**? When various materials are rubbed together in controlled ways, certain combinations of materials always produce one type of charge on one material and the opposite type on the other. By convention, we call one type of charge “positive”, and the other type “negative.” For example, when glass is rubbed with silk, the glass becomes positively charged and the silk negatively charged. Since the glass and silk have opposite charges, they attract one another like clothes that have rubbed together in a dryer. Two glass rods rubbed with silk in this manner will repel one another, since each rod has positive charge on it. Similarly, two silk cloths so rubbed will repel, since both cloths have negative charge. [link] shows how these simple materials can be used to explore the nature of the force between charges.



A glass rod becomes positively charged when rubbed with silk, while the silk becomes negatively charged. (a) The glass rod is attracted to the silk because their charges are opposite. (b) Two similarly charged glass rods repel. (c) Two similarly charged silk cloths repel.

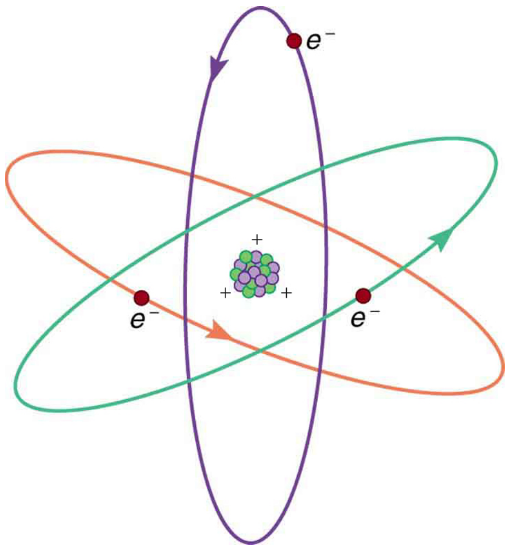
More sophisticated questions arise. Where do these charges come from? Can you create or destroy charge? Is there a smallest unit of charge? Exactly how does the force depend on the amount of charge and the distance between charges? Such questions obviously occurred to Benjamin Franklin and other early researchers, and they interest us even today.

Charge Carried by Electrons and Protons

Franklin wrote in his letters and books that he could see the effects of electric charge but did not understand what caused the phenomenon. Today we have the advantage of knowing that normal matter is made of atoms, and that atoms contain positive and negative charges, usually in equal amounts.

[link] shows a simple model of an atom with negative **electrons** orbiting its positive nucleus. The nucleus is positive due to the presence of positively charged **protons**. Nearly all charge in nature is due to electrons and protons, which are two of the three building blocks of most matter. (The third is the neutron, which is neutral, carrying no charge.) Other charge-carrying particles are observed in cosmic rays and nuclear decay, and are created in

particle accelerators. All but the electron and proton survive only a short time and are quite rare by comparison.



This simplified (and not to scale) view of an atom is called the planetary model of the atom. Negative electrons orbit a much heavier positive nucleus, as the planets orbit the much heavier sun. There the similarity ends, because forces in the atom are electromagnetic, whereas those in the planetary system are gravitational. Normal macroscopic amounts of matter contain immense numbers of atoms and molecules and, hence, even greater numbers of individual

negative and positive
charges.

The charges of electrons and protons are identical in magnitude but opposite in sign. Furthermore, all charged objects in nature are integral multiples of this basic quantity of charge, meaning that all charges are made of combinations of a basic unit of charge. Usually, charges are formed by combinations of electrons and protons. The magnitude of this basic charge is

Equation:

$$\mid q_e \mid = 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}.$$

The symbol q is commonly used for charge and the subscript e indicates the charge of a single electron (or proton).

The SI unit of charge is the coulomb (C). The number of protons needed to make a charge of 1.00 C is

Equation:

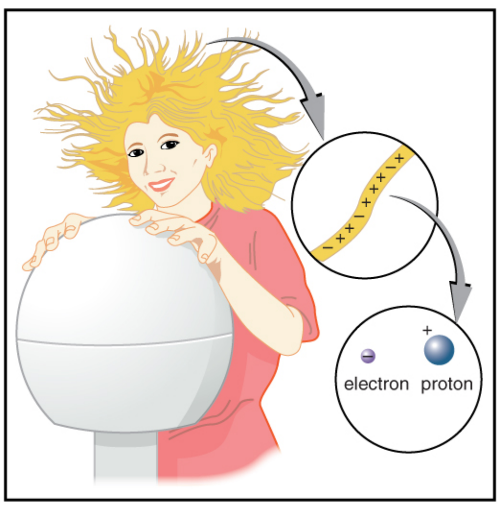
$$1.00\ \text{C} \times \frac{1\ \text{proton}}{1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}} = 6.25 \times 10^{18}\ \text{protons}.$$

Similarly, 6.25×10^{18} electrons have a combined charge of −1.00 coulomb. Just as there is a smallest bit of an element (an atom), there is a smallest bit of charge. There is no directly observed charge smaller than $\mid q_e \mid$ (see Things Great and Small: The Submicroscopic Origin of Charge), and all observed charges are integral multiples of $\mid q_e \mid$.

Note:
Things Great and Small: The Submicroscopic Origin of Charge

With the exception of exotic, short-lived particles, all charge in nature is carried by electrons and protons. Electrons carry the charge we have named negative. Protons carry an equal-magnitude charge that we call positive. (See [link].) Electron and proton charges are considered fundamental building blocks, since all other charges are integral multiples of those carried by electrons and protons. Electrons and protons are also two of the three fundamental building blocks of ordinary matter. The neutron is the third and has zero total charge.

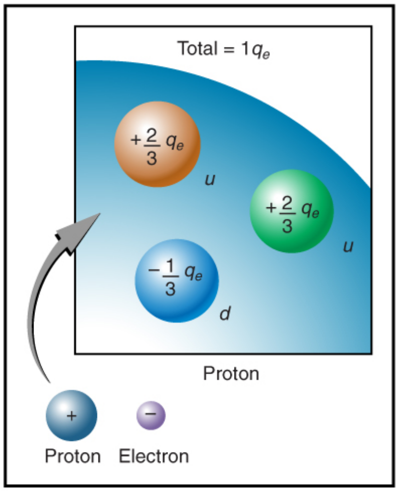
[link] shows a person touching a Van de Graaff generator and receiving excess positive charge. The expanded view of a hair shows the existence of both types of charges but an excess of positive. The repulsion of these positive like charges causes the strands of hair to repel other strands of hair and to stand up. The further blowup shows an artist's conception of an electron and a proton perhaps found in an atom in a strand of hair.



When this person touches a Van de Graaff generator, she receives an excess of positive charge, causing her hair to stand on end. The charges in

one hair are shown. An artist's conception of an electron and a proton illustrate the particles carrying the negative and positive charges. We cannot really see these particles with visible light because they are so small (the electron seems to be an infinitesimal point), but we know a great deal about their measurable properties, such as the charges they carry.

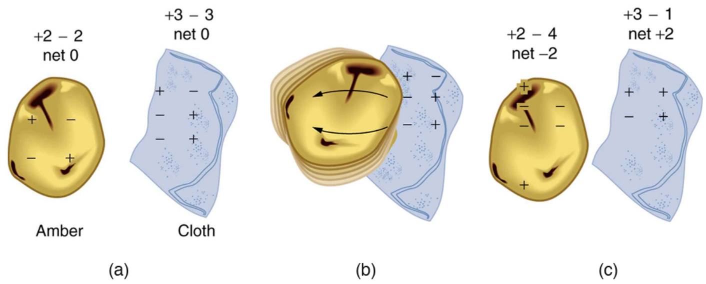
The electron seems to have no substructure; in contrast, when the substructure of protons is explored by scattering extremely energetic electrons from them, it appears that there are point-like particles inside the proton. These sub-particles, named quarks, have never been directly observed, but they are believed to carry fractional charges as seen in [link]. Charges on electrons and protons and all other directly observable particles are unitary, but these quark substructures carry charges of either $-\frac{1}{3}$ or $+\frac{2}{3}$. There are continuing attempts to observe fractional charge directly and to learn of the properties of quarks, which are perhaps the ultimate substructure of matter.



Artist's conception of fractional quark charges inside a proton. A group of three quark charges add up to the single positive charge on the proton: $-\frac{1}{3}q_e + \frac{2}{3}q_e + \frac{2}{3}q_e = +1q_e$.

Separation of Charge in Atoms

Charges in atoms and molecules can be separated—for example, by rubbing materials together. Some atoms and molecules have a greater affinity for electrons than others and will become negatively charged by close contact in rubbing, leaving the other material positively charged. (See [link].) Positive charge can similarly be induced by rubbing. Methods other than rubbing can also separate charges. Batteries, for example, use combinations of substances that interact in such a way as to separate charges. Chemical interactions may transfer negative charge from one substance to the other, making one battery terminal negative and leaving the first one positive.



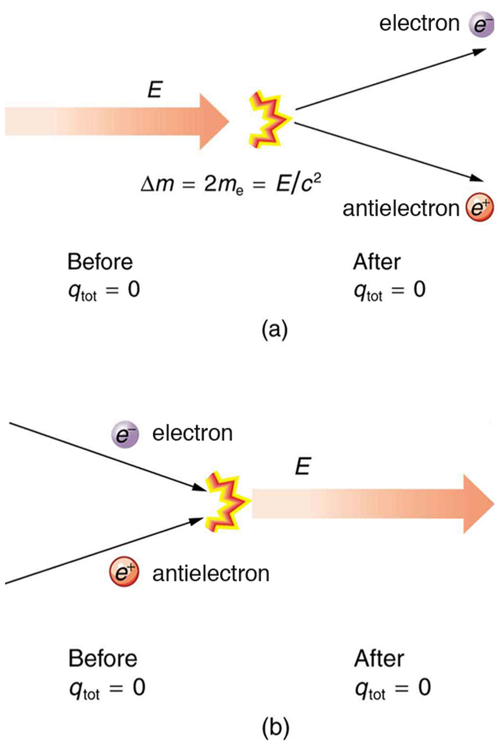
When materials are rubbed together, charges can be separated, particularly if one material has a greater affinity for electrons than another. (a) Both the amber and cloth are originally neutral, with equal positive and negative charges. Only a tiny fraction of the charges are involved, and only a few of them are shown here. (b) When rubbed together, some negative charge is transferred to the amber, leaving the cloth with a net positive charge. (c) When separated, the amber and cloth now have net charges, but the absolute value of the net positive and negative charges will be equal.

No charge is actually created or destroyed when charges are separated as we have been discussing. Rather, existing charges are moved about. In fact, in all situations the total amount of charge is always constant. This universally obeyed law of nature is called the **law of conservation of charge**.

Note:
Law of Conservation of Charge
Total charge is constant in any process.

In more exotic situations, such as in particle accelerators, mass, Δm, can be created from energy in the amount $\Delta m = \frac{E}{c^2}$. Sometimes, the created mass is charged, such as when an electron is created. Whenever a charged particle is created, another having an opposite charge is always created along with it, so that the total charge created is zero. Usually, the two particles are “matter-antimatter” counterparts. For example, an antielectron would usually be created at the same time as an electron. The antielectron has a positive charge (it is called a positron), and so the total charge created is zero. (See [link].) All particles have antimatter counterparts with opposite signs. When matter and antimatter counterparts are brought together, they completely annihilate one another. By annihilate, we mean that the mass of the two particles is converted to energy E, again obeying the relationship $\Delta m = \frac{E}{c^2}$. Since the two particles have equal and opposite charge, the total charge is zero before and after the annihilation; thus, total charge is conserved.

Note:
Making Connections: Conservation Laws
Only a limited number of physical quantities are universally conserved. Charge is one—energy, momentum, and angular momentum are others. Because they are conserved, these physical quantities are used to explain more phenomena and form more connections than other, less basic quantities. We find that conserved quantities give us great insight into the rules followed by nature and hints to the organization of nature. Discoveries of conservation laws have led to further discoveries, such as the weak nuclear force and the quark substructure of protons and other particles.



(a) When enough energy is present, it can be converted into matter. Here the matter created is an electron–antielectron pair. (m_e is the electron's mass.) The total charge before and after this event is zero. (b) When matter and antimatter collide, they annihilate each other; the total charge is conserved at zero before and after the annihilation.

The law of conservation of charge is absolute—it has never been observed to be violated. Charge, then, is a special physical quantity, joining a very

short list of other quantities in nature that are always conserved. Other conserved quantities include energy, momentum, and angular momentum.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Balloons and Static Electricity
Why does a balloon stick to your sweater? Rub a balloon on a sweater, then let go of the balloon and it flies over and sticks to the sweater. View the charges in the sweater, balloons, and the wall.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/balloons-and-static-electricity/latest/balloons-and-static-electricity_en.html

Section Summary

- There are only two types of charge, which we call positive and negative.
- Like charges repel, unlike charges attract, and the force between charges decreases with the square of the distance.
- The vast majority of positive charge in nature is carried by protons, while the vast majority of negative charge is carried by electrons.
- The electric charge of one electron is equal in magnitude and opposite in sign to the charge of one proton.
- An ion is an atom or molecule that has nonzero total charge due to having unequal numbers of electrons and protons.
- The SI unit for charge is the coulomb (C), with protons and electrons having charges of opposite sign but equal magnitude; the magnitude of this basic charge $\mid q_e \mid$ is
  Equation:
  $$\mid q_e \mid = 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}.$$
- Whenever charge is created or destroyed, equal amounts of positive and negative are involved.
- Most often, existing charges are separated from neutral objects to obtain some net charge.

- Both positive and negative charges exist in neutral objects and can be separated by rubbing one object with another. For macroscopic objects, negatively charged means an excess of electrons and positively charged means a depletion of electrons.
- The law of conservation of charge ensures that whenever a charge is created, an equal charge of the opposite sign is created at the same time.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

There are very large numbers of charged particles in most objects. Why, then, don't most objects exhibit static electricity?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why do most objects tend to contain nearly equal numbers of positive and negative charges?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Common static electricity involves charges ranging from nanocoulombs to microcoulombs. (a) How many electrons are needed to form a charge of -2.00 nC (b) How many electrons must be removed from a neutral object to leave a net charge of $0.500\ \mu\text{C}$?

Solution:

(a) 1.25×10^{10}

(b) 3.13×10^{12}

Exercise:

Problem:

If 1.80×10^{20} electrons move through a pocket calculator during a full day’s operation, how many coulombs of charge moved through it?

Exercise:

Problem:

To start a car engine, the car battery moves 3.75×10^{21} electrons through the starter motor. How many coulombs of charge were moved?

Solution:

-600 C

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain lightning bolt moves 40.0 C of charge. How many fundamental units of charge $\mid q_e \mid$ is this?

Glossary

electric charge
: a physical property of an object that causes it to be attracted toward or repelled from another charged object; each charged object generates and is influenced by a force called an electromagnetic force

law of conservation of charge
: states that whenever a charge is created, an equal amount of charge with the opposite sign is created simultaneously

electron

a particle orbiting the nucleus of an atom and carrying the smallest unit of negative charge

proton

a particle in the nucleus of an atom and carrying a positive charge equal in magnitude and opposite in sign to the amount of negative charge carried by an electron

Conductors and Insulators

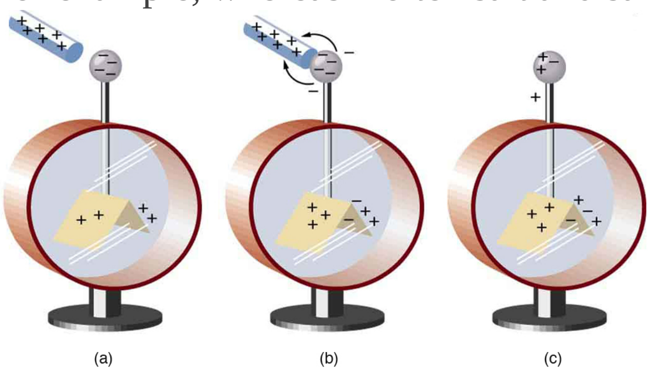
- Define conductor and insulator, explain the difference, and give examples of each.
- Describe three methods for charging an object.
- Explain what happens to an electric force as you move farther from the source.
- Define polarization.

This power adapter uses metal wires and connectors to conduct electricity from the wall socket to a laptop computer. The conducting wires allow electrons to move freely through the cables, which are shielded by rubber and plastic. These materials act as insulators that don't allow electric charge to escape outward. (credit: Evan-Amos, Wikimedia Commons)

Some substances, such as metals and salty water, allow charges to move through them with relative ease. Some of the electrons in metals and similar conductors are not bound to individual atoms or sites in the material. These **free electrons** can move through the material much as air moves through loose sand. Any substance that has free electrons and allows charge to move

relatively freely through it is called a **conductor**. The moving electrons may collide with fixed atoms and molecules, losing some energy, but they can move in a conductor. Superconductors allow the movement of charge without any loss of energy. Salty water and other similar conducting materials contain free ions that can move through them. An ion is an atom or molecule having a positive or negative (nonzero) total charge. In other words, the total number of electrons is not equal to the total number of protons.

Other substances, such as glass, do not allow charges to move through them. These are called **insulators**. Electrons and ions in insulators are bound in the structure and cannot move easily—as much as 10^{23} times more slowly than in conductors. Pure water and dry table salt are insulators, for example, whereas molten salt and salty water are conductors.



An electroscope is a favorite instrument in physics demonstrations and student laboratories. It is typically made with gold foil leaves hung from a (conducting) metal stem and is insulated from the room air in a glass-walled container. (a) A positively charged glass rod is brought near the tip of the electroscope, attracting electrons to the top and leaving a net positive charge on the leaves. Like charges in the light flexible gold leaves

repel, separating them. (b) When the rod is touched against the ball, electrons are attracted and transferred, reducing the net charge on the glass rod but leaving the electroscope positively charged. (c) The excess charges are evenly distributed in the stem and leaves of the electroscope once the glass rod is removed.

Charging by Contact

[link] shows an electroscope being charged by touching it with a positively charged glass rod. Because the glass rod is an insulator, it must actually touch the electroscope to transfer charge to or from it. (Note that the extra positive charges reside on the surface of the glass rod as a result of rubbing it with silk before starting the experiment.) Since only electrons move in metals, we see that they are attracted to the top of the electroscope. There, some are transferred to the positive rod by touch, leaving the electroscope with a net positive charge.

Electrostatic repulsion in the leaves of the charged electroscope separates them. The electrostatic force has a horizontal component that results in the leaves moving apart as well as a vertical component that is balanced by the gravitational force. Similarly, the electroscope can be negatively charged by contact with a negatively charged object.

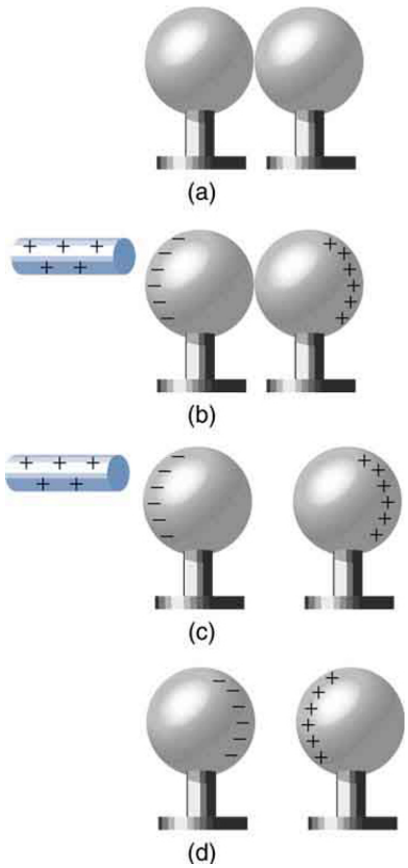
Charging by Induction

It is not necessary to transfer excess charge directly to an object in order to charge it. [link] shows a method of **induction** wherein a charge is created in a nearby object, without direct contact. Here we see two neutral metal spheres in contact with one another but insulated from the rest of the world.

A positively charged rod is brought near one of them, attracting negative charge to that side, leaving the other sphere positively charged.

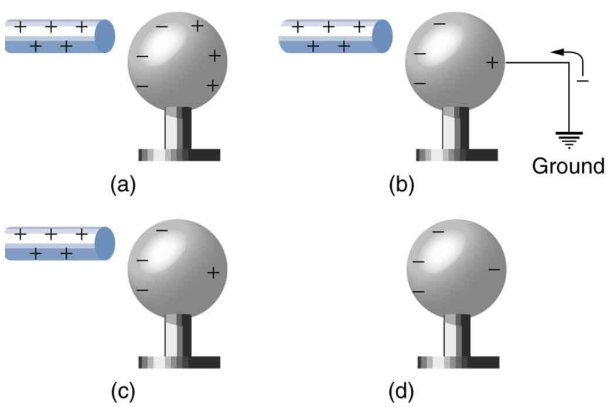
This is an example of induced **polarization** of neutral objects. Polarization is the separation of charges in an object that remains neutral. If the spheres are now separated (before the rod is pulled away), each sphere will have a net charge. Note that the object closest to the charged rod receives an opposite charge when charged by induction. Note also that no charge is removed from the charged rod, so that this process can be repeated without depleting the supply of excess charge.

Another method of charging by induction is shown in [link]. The neutral metal sphere is polarized when a charged rod is brought near it. The sphere is then grounded, meaning that a conducting wire is run from the sphere to the ground. Since the earth is large and most ground is a good conductor, it can supply or accept excess charge easily. In this case, electrons are attracted to the sphere through a wire called the ground wire, because it supplies a conducting path to the ground. The ground connection is broken before the charged rod is removed, leaving the sphere with an excess charge opposite to that of the rod. Again, an opposite charge is achieved when charging by induction and the charged rod loses none of its excess charge.



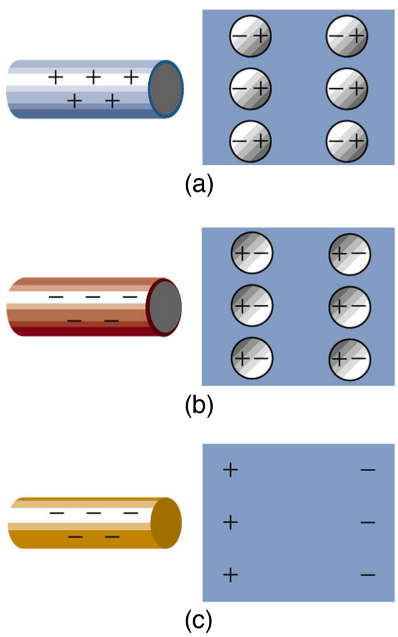
Charging by induction. (a) Two uncharged or neutral metal spheres are in contact with each other but insulated from the rest of the world. (b) A positively charged glass rod is brought near the sphere on the left, attracting negative charge and leaving the other sphere positively charged. (c) The

spheres are separated before the rod is removed, thus separating negative and positive charge. (d) The spheres retain net charges after the inducing rod is removed—without ever having been touched by a charged object.



Charging by induction, using a ground connection. (a) A positively charged rod is brought near a neutral metal sphere, polarizing it. (b) The sphere is grounded, allowing electrons to be attracted from the earth’s ample supply. (c) The ground connection is broken. (d) The positive rod is

removed, leaving the sphere with an induced negative charge.



Both positive and negative objects attract a neutral object by polarizing its molecules. (a) A positive object brought near a neutral insulator polarizes its molecules. There is a slight shift in the distribution of the electrons orbiting the molecule, with

unlike charges being brought nearer and like charges moved away. Since the electrostatic force decreases with distance, there is a net attraction. (b) A negative object produces the opposite polarization, but again attracts the neutral object. (c) The same effect occurs for a conductor; since the unlike charges are closer, there is a net attraction.

Neutral objects can be attracted to any charged object. The pieces of straw attracted to polished amber are neutral, for example. If you run a plastic comb through your hair, the charged comb can pick up neutral pieces of paper. [link] shows how the polarization of atoms and molecules in neutral objects results in their attraction to a charged object.

When a charged rod is brought near a neutral substance, an insulator in this case, the distribution of charge in atoms and molecules is shifted slightly. Opposite charge is attracted nearer the external charged rod, while like charge is repelled. Since the electrostatic force decreases with distance, the repulsion of like charges is weaker than the attraction of unlike charges, and so there is a net attraction. Thus a positively charged glass rod attracts neutral pieces of paper, as will a negatively charged rubber rod. Some

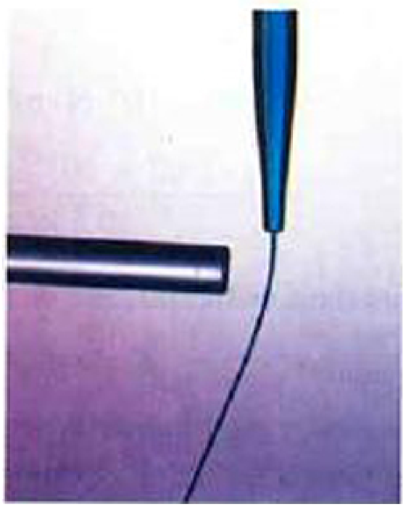
molecules, like water, are polar molecules. Polar molecules have a natural or inherent separation of charge, although they are neutral overall. Polar molecules are particularly affected by other charged objects and show greater polarization effects than molecules with naturally uniform charge distributions.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Can you explain the attraction of water to the charged rod in the figure below?



Solution:
Answer

Water molecules are polarized, giving them slightly positive and slightly negative sides. This makes water even more susceptible to a charged rod's attraction. As the water flows downward, due to the force of gravity, the charged conductor exerts a net attraction to the opposite charges in the stream of water, pulling it closer.

Note:
PhET Explorations: John Travoltage

Make sparks fly with John Travoltage. Wiggle Johnnie's foot and he picks up charges from the carpet. Bring his hand close to the door knob and get rid of the excess charge.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/john-travoltage/latest/john-travoltage_en.html

Section Summary

- Polarization is the separation of positive and negative charges in a neutral object.
- A conductor is a substance that allows charge to flow freely through its atomic structure.
- An insulator holds charge within its atomic structure.
- Objects with like charges repel each other, while those with unlike charges attract each other.
- A conducting object is said to be grounded if it is connected to the Earth through a conductor. Grounding allows transfer of charge to and from the earth's large reservoir.
- Objects can be charged by contact with another charged object and obtain the same sign charge.
- If an object is temporarily grounded, it can be charged by induction, and obtains the opposite sign charge.
- Polarized objects have their positive and negative charges concentrated in different areas, giving them a non-symmetrical charge.
- Polar molecules have an inherent separation of charge.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

An eccentric inventor attempts to levitate by first placing a large negative charge on himself and then putting a large positive charge on the ceiling of his workshop. Instead, while attempting to place a large negative charge on himself, his clothes fly off. Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

If you have charged an electroscope by contact with a positively charged object, describe how you could use it to determine the charge of other objects. Specifically, what would the leaves of the electroscope do if other charged objects were brought near its knob?

Exercise:

Problem:

When a glass rod is rubbed with silk, it becomes positive and the silk becomes negative—yet both attract dust. Does the dust have a third type of charge that is attracted to both positive and negative? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why does a car always attract dust right after it is polished? (Note that car wax and car tires are insulators.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Describe how a positively charged object can be used to give another object a negative charge. What is the name of this process?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is grounding? What effect does it have on a charged conductor? On a charged insulator?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a speck of dust in an electrostatic precipitator has 1.0000×10^{12} protons in it and has a net charge of –5.00 nC (a very large charge for a small speck). How many electrons does it have?

Solution:

1.03×10^{12}

Exercise:

Problem:

An amoeba has 1.00×10^{16} protons and a net charge of 0.300 pC. (a) How many fewer electrons are there than protons? (b) If you paired them up, what fraction of the protons would have no electrons?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 50.0 g ball of copper has a net charge of $2.00\ \mu\text{C}$. What fraction of the copper's electrons has been removed? (Each copper atom has 29 protons, and copper has an atomic mass of 63.5.)

Solution:

9.09×10^{-13}

Exercise:

Problem:

What net charge would you place on a 100 g piece of sulfur if you put an extra electron on 1 in 10^{12} of its atoms? (Sulfur has an atomic mass of 32.1.)

Exercise:

Problem:

How many coulombs of positive charge are there in 4.00 kg of plutonium, given its atomic mass is 244 and that each plutonium atom has 94 protons?

Solution:

1.48×10^8 C

Glossary

free electron
: an electron that is free to move away from its atomic orbit

conductor
: a material that allows electrons to move separately from their atomic orbits

insulator
: a material that holds electrons securely within their atomic orbits

grounded
: when a conductor is connected to the Earth, allowing charge to freely flow to and from Earth's unlimited reservoir

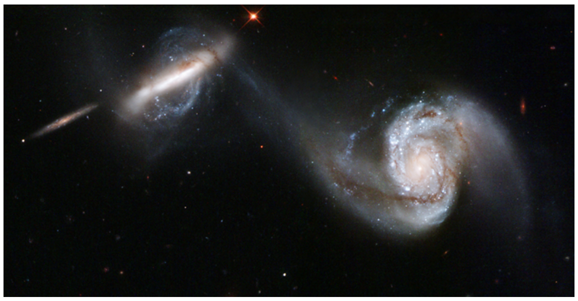
induction
: the process by which an electrically charged object brought near a neutral object creates a charge in that object

polarization
: slight shifting of positive and negative charges to opposite sides of an atom or molecule

electrostatic repulsion
: the phenomenon of two objects with like charges repelling each other

Coulomb’s Law

- State Coulomb’s law in terms of how the electrostatic force changes with the distance between two objects.
- Calculate the electrostatic force between two charged point forces, such as electrons or protons.
- Compare the electrostatic force to the gravitational attraction for a proton and an electron; for a human and the Earth.



This NASA image of Arp 87 shows the result of a strong gravitational attraction between two galaxies. In contrast, at the subatomic level, the electrostatic attraction between two objects, such as an electron and a proton, is far greater than their mutual attraction due to gravity. (credit: NASA/HST)

Through the work of scientists in the late 18th century, the main features of the **electrostatic force**—the existence of two types of charge, the observation that like charges repel, unlike charges attract, and the decrease of force with distance—were eventually refined, and expressed as a mathematical formula. The mathematical formula for the electrostatic force is called **Coulomb’s law** after the French physicist Charles Coulomb (1736–1806), who performed experiments and first proposed a formula to calculate it.

Note:
Coulomb’s Law
Equation:

$$F = k\frac{|q_1 q_2|}{r^2}.$$

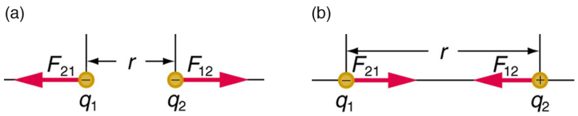
Coulomb's law calculates the magnitude of the force F between two point charges, q_1 and q_2, separated by a distance r. In SI units, the constant k is equal to

Equation:

$$k = 8.988 \times 10^9 \frac{\mathrm{N \cdot m^2}}{\mathrm{C^2}} \approx 8.99 \times 10^9 \frac{\mathrm{N \cdot m^2}}{\mathrm{C^2}}.$$

The electrostatic force is a vector quantity and is expressed in units of newtons. The force is understood to be along the line joining the two charges. (See [link].)

Although the formula for Coulomb's law is simple, it was no mean task to prove it. The experiments Coulomb did, with the primitive equipment then available, were difficult. Modern experiments have verified Coulomb's law to great precision. For example, it has been shown that the force is inversely proportional to distance between two objects squared $\left(F \propto 1/r^2\right)$ to an accuracy of 1 part in 10^{16}. No exceptions have ever been found, even at the small distances within the atom.



The magnitude of the electrostatic force F between point charges q_1 and q_2 separated by a distance r is given by Coulomb's law. Note that Newton's third law (every force exerted creates an equal and opposite force) applies as usual—the force on q_1 is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the force it exerts on q_2. (a) Like charges. (b) Unlike charges.

Example:

How Strong is the Coulomb Force Relative to the Gravitational Force?

Compare the electrostatic force between an electron and proton separated by 0.530×10^{-10} m with the gravitational force between them. This distance is their average separation in a hydrogen atom.

Strategy

To compare the two forces, we first compute the electrostatic force using Coulomb's law, $F = k\frac{|q_1 q_2|}{r^2}$. We then calculate the gravitational force using Newton's universal law of

gravitation. Finally, we take a ratio to see how the forces compare in magnitude.
Solution
Entering the given and known information about the charges and separation of the electron and proton into the expression of Coulomb's law yields
Equation:

$$F = k\frac{|q_1 q_2|}{r^2}$$

Equation:

$$= \left(8.99 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2}\right) \times \frac{(1.60\times10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C})(1.60\times10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C})}{(0.530\times10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m})^2}$$

Thus the Coulomb force is
Equation:

$$F = 8.19 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{N}.$$

The charges are opposite in sign, so this is an attractive force. This is a very large force for an electron—it would cause an acceleration of $8.99 \times 10^{22}\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$(verification is left as an end-of-section problem).The gravitational force is given by Newton's law of gravitation as:
Equation:

$$F_G = G\frac{mM}{r^2},$$

where $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2}$. Here m and M represent the electron and proton masses, which can be found in the appendices. Entering values for the knowns yields
Equation:

$$F_G = (6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2}) \times \frac{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \mathrm{kg})(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \mathrm{kg})}{(0.530 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m})^2} = 3.61 \times 10^{-47}\ \mathrm{N}$$

This is also an attractive force, although it is traditionally shown as positive since gravitational force is always attractive. The ratio of the magnitude of the electrostatic force to gravitational force in this case is, thus,
Equation:

$$\frac{F}{F_G} = 2.27 \times 10^{39}.$$

Discussion
This is a remarkably large ratio! Note that this will be the ratio of electrostatic force to gravitational force for an electron and a proton at any distance (taking the ratio before entering numerical values shows that the distance cancels). This ratio gives some indication

of just how much larger the Coulomb force is than the gravitational force between two of the most common particles in nature.

As the example implies, gravitational force is completely negligible on a small scale, where the interactions of individual charged particles are important. On a large scale, such as between the Earth and a person, the reverse is true. Most objects are nearly electrically neutral, and so attractive and repulsive **Coulomb forces** nearly cancel. Gravitational force on a large scale dominates interactions between large objects because it is always attractive, while Coulomb forces tend to cancel.

Section Summary

- Frenchman Charles Coulomb was the first to publish the mathematical equation that describes the electrostatic force between two objects.
- Coulomb's law gives the magnitude of the force between point charges. It is
  Equation:

  $$F = k\frac{|q_1 q_2|}{r^2},$$

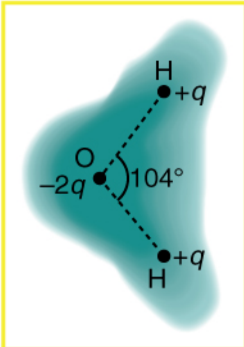
  where q_1 and q_2 are two point charges separated by a distance r, and $k \approx 8.99 \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$
- This Coulomb force is extremely basic, since most charges are due to point-like particles. It is responsible for all electrostatic effects and underlies most macroscopic forces.
- The Coulomb force is extraordinarily strong compared with the gravitational force, another basic force—but unlike gravitational force it can cancel, since it can be either attractive or repulsive.
- The electrostatic force between two subatomic particles is far greater than the gravitational force between the same two particles.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows the charge distribution in a water molecule, which is called a polar molecule because it has an inherent separation of charge. Given water's polar character, explain what effect humidity has on removing excess charge from objects.



Schematic representation of the outer electron cloud of a neutral water molecule. The electrons spend more time near the oxygen than the hydrogens, giving a permanent charge separation as shown. Water is thus a *polar molecule*. It is more easily affected by electrostatic forces than molecules with uniform charge distributions.

Exercise:

Problem:

Using [link], explain, in terms of Coulomb's law, why a polar molecule (such as in [link]) is attracted by both positive and negative charges.

Exercise:

Problem:

Given the polar character of water molecules, explain how ions in the air form nucleation centers for rain droplets.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the repulsive force between two pith balls that are 8.00 cm apart and have equal charges of – 30.0 nC?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How strong is the attractive force between a glass rod with a $0.700\ \mu\text{C}$ charge and a silk cloth with a $-0.600\ \mu\text{C}$ charge, which are 12.0 cm apart, using the approximation that they act like point charges? (b) Discuss how the answer to this problem might be affected if the charges are distributed over some area and do not act like point charges.

Solution:

(a) 0.263 N

(b) If the charges are distributed over some area, there will be a concentration of charge along the side closest to the oppositely charged object. This effect will increase the net force.

Exercise:

Problem:

Two point charges exert a 5.00 N force on each other. What will the force become if the distance between them is increased by a factor of three?

Exercise:

Problem:

Two point charges are brought closer together, increasing the force between them by a factor of 25. By what factor was their separation decreased?

Solution:

The separation decreased by a factor of 5.

Exercise:

Problem:

How far apart must two point charges of 75.0 nC (typical of static electricity) be to have a force of 1.00 N between them?

Exercise:

Problem:

If two equal charges each of 1 C each are separated in air by a distance of 1 km, what is the magnitude of the force acting between them? You will see that even at a distance as large as 1 km, the repulsive force is substantial because 1 C is a very significant amount of charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

A test charge of $+2\ \mu\text{C}$ is placed halfway between a charge of $+6\ \mu\text{C}$ and another of $+4\ \mu\text{C}$ separated by 10 cm. (a) What is the magnitude of the force on the test charge? (b) What is the direction of this force (away from or toward the $+6\ \mu\text{C}$ charge)?

Exercise:

Problem:

Bare free charges do not remain stationary when close together. To illustrate this, calculate the acceleration of two isolated protons separated by 2.00 nm (a typical distance between gas atoms). Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for electrostatics.

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned}
F &= k\frac{|q_1q_2|}{r^2} = ma \Rightarrow a = \frac{kq^2}{mr^2} \\
&= \frac{\left(9.00\times10^{9}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2\right)\left(1.60\times10^{-19}\ \text{m}\right)^2}{\left(1.67\times10^{-27}\ \text{kg}\right)\left(2.00\times10^{-9}\ \text{m}\right)^2} \\
&= 3.45\times10^{16}\ \text{m/s}^2
\end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) By what factor must you change the distance between two point charges to change the force between them by a factor of 10? (b) Explain how the distance can either increase or decrease by this factor and still cause a factor of 10 change in the force.

Solution:

(a) 3.2

(b) If the distance increases by 3.2, then the force will decrease by a factor of 10 ; if the distance decreases by 3.2, then the force will increase by a factor of 10. Either way, the force changes by a factor of 10.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a total charge q_{tot} that you can split in any manner. Once split, the separation distance is fixed. How do you split the charge to achieve the greatest force?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Common transparent tape becomes charged when pulled from a dispenser. If one piece is placed above another, the repulsive force can be great enough to support the top piece's weight. Assuming equal point charges (only an approximation), calculate the magnitude of the charge if electrostatic force is great enough to support the weight of a 10.0 mg piece of tape held 1.00 cm above another. (b) Discuss whether the magnitude of this charge is consistent with what is typical of static electricity.

Solution:

(a) 1.04×10^{-9} C

(b) This charge is approximately 1 nC, which is consistent with the magnitude of charge typical for static electricity

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the ratio of the electrostatic to gravitational force between two electrons. (b) What is this ratio for two protons? (c) Why is the ratio different for electrons and protons?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what distance is the electrostatic force between two protons equal to the weight of one proton?

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain five cent coin contains 5.00 g of nickel. What fraction of the nickel atoms' electrons, removed and placed 1.00 m above it, would support the weight of this coin? The atomic mass of nickel is 58.7, and each nickel atom contains 28 electrons and 28 protons.

Solution:

1.02×10^{-11}

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Two point charges totaling $8.00\ \mu\text{C}$ exert a repulsive force of 0.150 N on one another when separated by 0.500 m. What is the charge on each? (b) What is the charge on each if the force is attractive?

Exercise:

Problem:

Point charges of $5.00\ \mu\text{C}$ and $-3.00\ \mu\text{C}$ are placed 0.250 m apart. (a) Where can a third charge be placed so that the net force on it is zero? (b) What if both charges are positive?

Solution:

a. 0.859 m beyond negative charge on line connecting two charges
b. 0.109 m from lesser charge on line connecting two charges

Exercise:

Problem:

Two point charges q_1 and q_2 are $3.00\ \text{m}$ apart, and their total charge is $20\ \mu\text{C}$. (a) If the force of repulsion between them is 0.075N, what are magnitudes of the two charges? (b) If one charge attracts the other with a force of 0.525N, what are the magnitudes of the two charges? Note that you may need to solve a quadratic equation to reach your answer.

Glossary

Coulomb's law
: the mathematical equation calculating the electrostatic force vector between two charged particles

Coulomb force
: another term for the electrostatic force

electrostatic force
the amount and direction of attraction or repulsion between two charged bodies

Electric Field: Concept of a Field Revisited

- Describe a force field and calculate the strength of an electric field due to a point charge.
- Calculate the force exerted on a test charge by an electric field.
- Explain the relationship between electrical force (F) on a test charge and electrical field strength (E).

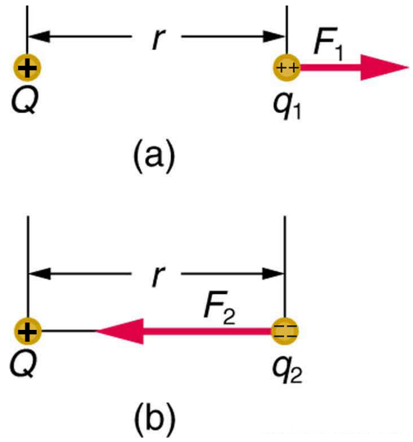
Contact forces, such as between a baseball and a bat, are explained on the small scale by the interaction of the charges in atoms and molecules in close proximity. They interact through forces that include the **Coulomb force**. Action at a distance is a force between objects that are not close enough for their atoms to “touch.” That is, they are separated by more than a few atomic diameters.

For example, a charged rubber comb attracts neutral bits of paper from a distance via the Coulomb force. It is very useful to think of an object being surrounded in space by a **force field**. The force field carries the force to another object (called a test object) some distance away.

Concept of a Field

A field is a way of conceptualizing and mapping the force that surrounds any object and acts on another object at a distance without apparent physical connection. For example, the gravitational field surrounding the earth (and all other masses) represents the gravitational force that would be experienced if another mass were placed at a given point within the field.

In the same way, the Coulomb force field surrounding any charge extends throughout space. Using Coulomb’s law, $F = k|q_1 q_2|/r^2$, its magnitude is given by the equation $F = k|\,qQ\,|/r^2$, for a **point charge** (a particle having a charge Q) acting on a **test charge** q at a distance r (see [link]). Both the magnitude and direction of the Coulomb force field depend on Q and the test charge q.



The Coulomb force field due to a positive charge Q is shown acting on two different charges. Both charges are the same distance from Q. (a) Since q_1 is positive, the force F_1 acting on it is repulsive. (b) The charge q_2 is negative and greater in magnitude than q_1, and so the force F_2 acting on it is attractive and stronger than F_1. The Coulomb force field is thus not unique at any point in space, because it depends on the test charges q_1 and q_2

as well as the
charge Q.

To simplify things, we would prefer to have a field that depends only on Q and not on the test charge q. The electric field is defined in such a manner that it represents only the charge creating it and is unique at every point in space. Specifically, the electric field E is defined to be the ratio of the Coulomb force to the test charge:

Equation:

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{\mathbf{F}}{q},$$

where $\mathbf{F}$ is the electrostatic force (or Coulomb force) exerted on a positive test charge q. It is understood that $\mathbf{E}$ is in the same direction as $\mathbf{F}$. It is also assumed that q is so small that it does not alter the charge distribution creating the electric field. The units of electric field are newtons per coulomb (N/C). If the electric field is known, then the electrostatic force on any charge q is simply obtained by multiplying charge times electric field, or $\mathbf{F} = q\mathbf{E}$. Consider the electric field due to a point charge Q. According to Coulomb's law, the force it exerts on a test charge q is $F = k| qQ |/r^2$. Thus the magnitude of the electric field, E, for a point charge is

Equation:

$$E = \left|\frac{F}{q}\right| = k\left|\frac{\mathrm{qQ}}{qr^2}\right| = k\frac{|Q|}{r^2}.$$

Since the test charge cancels, we see that

Equation:

$$E = k\frac{|Q|}{r^2}.$$

The electric field is thus seen to depend only on the charge Q and the distance r; it is completely independent of the test charge q.

Example:
Calculating the Electric Field of a Point Charge
Calculate the strength and direction of the electric field E due to a point charge of 2.00 nC (nano-Coulombs) at a distance of 5.00 mm from the charge.
Strategy
We can find the electric field created by a point charge by using the equation $E = \mathrm{kQ}/r^2$.
Solution
Here $Q = 2.00 \times 10^{-9}$ C and $r = 5.00 \times 10^{-3}$ m. Entering those values into the above equation gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= k\frac{Q}{r^2} \\ &= (8.99 \times 10^9 \ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2}) \times \frac{(2.00 \times 10^{-9} \ \mathrm{C})}{(5.00 \times 10^{-3} \ \mathrm{m})^2} \\ &= 7.19 \times 10^5 \ \mathrm{N/C}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This **electric field strength** is the same at any point 5.00 mm away from the charge Q that creates the field. It is positive, meaning that it has a direction pointing away from the charge Q.

Example:
Calculating the Force Exerted on a Point Charge by an Electric Field
What force does the electric field found in the previous example exert on a point charge of –0.250 μC?
Strategy
Since we know the electric field strength and the charge in the field, the force on that charge can be calculated using the definition of electric field

$\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{F}/q$ rearranged to $\mathbf{F} = q\mathbf{E}$.

Solution

The magnitude of the force on a charge $q = -0.250\ \mu\text{C}$ exerted by a field of strength $E = 7.20 \times 10^5$ N/C is thus,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F &= -qE \\ &= (0.250 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{C})(7.20 \times 10^5\ \text{N/C}) \\ &= 0.180\ \text{N}. \end{aligned}$$

Because q is negative, the force is directed opposite to the direction of the field.

Discussion

The force is attractive, as expected for unlike charges. (The field was created by a positive charge and here acts on a negative charge.) The charges in this example are typical of common static electricity, and the modest attractive force obtained is similar to forces experienced in static cling and similar situations.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Electric Field of Dreams

Play ball! Add charges to the Field of Dreams and see how they react to the electric field. Turn on a background electric field and adjust the direction and magnitude.

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/ca9a78b4-06a7-11e6-b638-3bb71d1f0b42/electric-field-of-dreams/#sim-electric-field-of-dreams

Section Summary

- The electrostatic force field surrounding a charged object extends out into space in all directions.
- The electrostatic force exerted by a point charge on a test charge at a distance r depends on the charge of both charges, as well as the

distance between the two.

- The electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is defined to be
  Equation:

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{\mathbf{F}}{q},$$

  where $\mathbf{F}$ is the Coulomb or electrostatic force exerted on a small positive test charge q. $\mathbf{E}$ has units of N/C.
- The magnitude of the electric field $\mathbf{E}$ created by a point charge Q is
  Equation:

$$\mathbf{E} = k\frac{|Q|}{r^2}.$$

  where r is the distance from Q. The electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is a vector and fields due to multiple charges add like vectors.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why must the test charge q in the definition of the electric field be vanishingly small?

Exercise:

Problem:

Are the direction and magnitude of the Coulomb force unique at a given point in space? What about the electric field?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the magnitude and direction of an electric field that exerts a 2.00×10^{-5} N upward force on a –$1.75\ \mu$C charge?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the magnitude and direction of the force exerted on a $3.50\ \mu$C charge by a 250 N/C electric field that points due east?

Solution:

8.75×10^{-4} N

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the magnitude of the electric field 2.00 m from a point charge of 5.00 mC (such as found on the terminal of a Van de Graaff).

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What magnitude point charge creates a 10,000 N/C electric field at a distance of 0.250 m? (b) How large is the field at 10.0 m?

Solution:

(a) 6.94×10^{-8} C

(b) $6.25\ \text{N/C}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the initial (from rest) acceleration of a proton in a $5.00 \times 10^6\ \text{N/C}$ electric field (such as created by a research Van de Graaff). Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for electrostatics.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the magnitude and direction of an electric field that exerts a $4.80 \times 10^{-17}\ \text{N}$ westward force on an electron. (b) What magnitude and direction force does this field exert on a proton?

Solution:

(a) $300\ \text{N/C (east)}$

(b) $4.80 \times 10^{-17}\ \text{N (east)}$

Glossary

field
: a map of the amount and direction of a force acting on other objects, extending out into space

point charge
: A charged particle, designated Q, generating an electric field

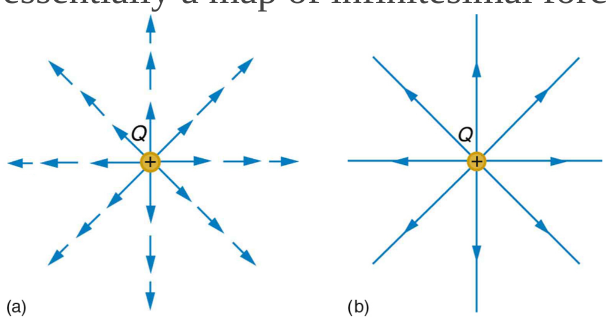
test charge
: A particle (designated q) with either a positive or negative charge set down within an electric field generated by a point charge

Electric Field Lines: Multiple Charges

- Calculate the total force (magnitude and direction) exerted on a test charge from more than one charge
- Describe an electric field diagram of a positive point charge; of a negative point charge with twice the magnitude of positive charge
- Draw the electric field lines between two points of the same charge; between two points of opposite charge.

Drawings using lines to represent **electric fields** around charged objects are very useful in visualizing field strength and direction. Since the electric field has both magnitude and direction, it is a vector. Like all **vectors**, the electric field can be represented by an arrow that has length proportional to its magnitude and that points in the correct direction. (We have used arrows extensively to represent force vectors, for example.)

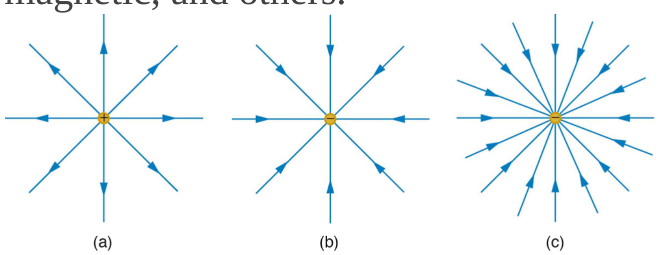
[link] shows two pictorial representations of the same electric field created by a positive point charge Q. [link] (b) shows the standard representation using continuous lines. [link] (a) shows numerous individual arrows with each arrow representing the force on a test charge q. Field lines are essentially a map of infinitesimal force vectors.



Two equivalent representations of the electric field due to a positive charge Q. (a) Arrows representing the electric field's magnitude and direction. (b) In the standard representation, the arrows are replaced by continuous field lines having the same direction at any point

as the electric field. The closeness of the lines is directly related to the strength of the electric field. A test charge placed anywhere will feel a force in the direction of the field line; this force will have a strength proportional to the density of the lines (being greater near the charge, for example).

Note that the electric field is defined for a positive test charge q, so that the field lines point away from a positive charge and toward a negative charge. (See [link].) The electric field strength is exactly proportional to the number of field lines per unit area, since the magnitude of the electric field for a point charge is $E = k|Q|/r^2$ and area is proportional to r^2. This pictorial representation, in which field lines represent the direction and their closeness (that is, their areal density or the number of lines crossing a unit area) represents strength, is used for all fields: electrostatic, gravitational, magnetic, and others.

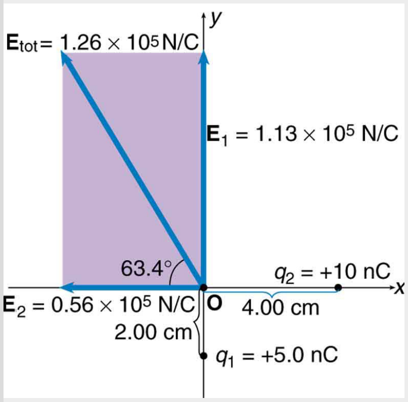


The electric field surrounding three different point charges. (a) A positive charge. (b) A negative charge of equal magnitude. (c) A larger negative charge.

In many situations, there are multiple charges. The total electric field created by multiple charges is the vector sum of the individual fields created by each charge. The following example shows how to add electric field vectors.

Example:
Adding Electric Fields

Find the magnitude and direction of the total electric field due to the two point charges, q_1 and q_2, at the origin of the coordinate system as shown in [link].



The electric fields $\mathbf{E}_1$ and $\mathbf{E}_2$ at the origin O add to $\mathbf{E}_{\text{tot}}$.

Strategy

Since the electric field is a vector (having magnitude and direction), we add electric fields with the same vector techniques used for other types of vectors. We first must find the electric field due to each charge at the point of interest, which is the origin of the coordinate system (O) in this instance. We pretend that there is a positive test charge, q, at point O, which allows us to determine the direction of the fields $\mathbf{E}_1$ and $\mathbf{E}_2$. Once those fields are found, the total field can be determined using **vector addition**.

Solution

The electric field strength at the origin due to q_1 is labeled E_1 and is calculated:

Equation:

$$E_1 = k\frac{q_1}{r_1^2} = \left(8.99 \times 10^9 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2\right)\frac{\left(5.00{\times}10^{-9}\text{ C}\right)}{\left(2.00{\times}10^{-2}\text{ m}\right)^2}$$
$$E_1 = 1.124 \times 10^5 \text{ N/C.}$$

Similarly, E_2 is

Equation:

$$E_2 = k\frac{q_2}{r_2^2} = \left(8.99 \times 10^9 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2\right)\frac{\left(10.0{\times}10^{-9}\text{ C}\right)}{\left(4.00{\times}10^{-2}\text{ m}\right)^2}$$
$$E_2 = 0.5619 \times 10^5 \text{ N/C.}$$

Four digits have been retained in this solution to illustrate that E_1 is exactly twice the magnitude of E_2. Now arrows are drawn to represent the magnitudes and directions of $\mathbf{E}_1$ and $\mathbf{E}_2$. (See [link].) The direction of the electric field is that of the force on a positive charge so both arrows point directly away from the positive charges that create them. The arrow for $\mathbf{E}_1$ is exactly twice the length of that for $\mathbf{E}_2$. The arrows form a right triangle in this case and can be added using the Pythagorean theorem. The magnitude of the total field E_{tot} is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{tot}} &= (E_1^2 + E_2^2)^{1/2} \\ &= \left\{(1.124 \times 10^5 \text{ N/C})^2 + (0.5619 \times 10^5 \text{ N/C})^2\right\}^{1/2} \\ &= 1.26 \times 10^5 \text{ N/C.} \end{aligned}$$

The direction is

Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\theta &= \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{E_1}{E_2}\right) \\
&= \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1.124\times10^5\ \mathrm{N/C}}{0.5619\times10^5\ \mathrm{N/C}}\right) \\
&= 63.4^{\mathrm{o}},
\end{aligned}
$$

or 63.4^{o} above the *x*-axis.

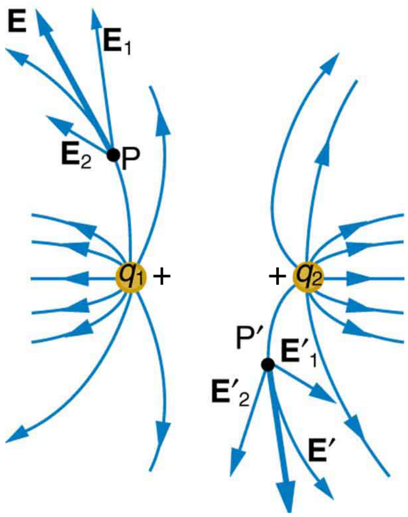
Discussion

In cases where the electric field vectors to be added are not perpendicular, vector components or graphical techniques can be used. The total electric field found in this example is the total electric field at only one point in space. To find the total electric field due to these two charges over an entire region, the same technique must be repeated for each point in the region. This impossibly lengthy task (there are an infinite number of points in space) can be avoided by calculating the total field at representative points and using some of the unifying features noted next.

[link] shows how the electric field from two point charges can be drawn by finding the total field at representative points and drawing electric field lines consistent with those points. While the electric fields from multiple charges are more complex than those of single charges, some simple features are easily noticed.

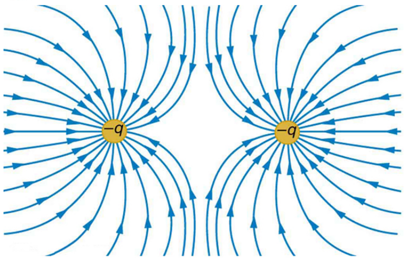
For example, the field is weaker between like charges, as shown by the lines being farther apart in that region. (This is because the fields from each charge exert opposing forces on any charge placed between them.) (See [link] and [link](a).) Furthermore, at a great distance from two like charges, the field becomes identical to the field from a single, larger charge.

[link](b) shows the electric field of two unlike charges. The field is stronger between the charges. In that region, the fields from each charge are in the same direction, and so their strengths add. The field of two unlike charges is weak at large distances, because the fields of the individual charges are in opposite directions and so their strengths subtract. At very large distances, the field of two unlike charges looks like that of a smaller single charge.

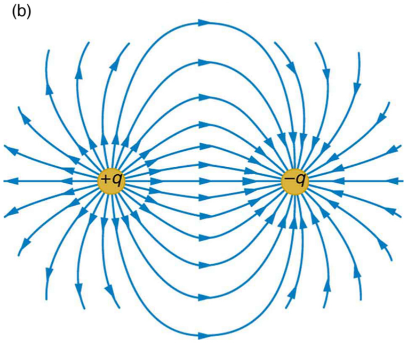


Two positive point charges q_1 and q_2 produce the resultant electric field shown. The field is calculated at representative points and then smooth field lines drawn following the rules outlined in the text.

(a)



(b)



(a) Two negative charges produce the fields shown. It is very similar to the field produced by two positive charges, except that the directions are reversed. The field is clearly weaker between the charges. The individual forces on a test charge in that region are in opposite directions. (b) Two opposite charges produce the field shown, which is stronger in the region between the charges.

We use electric field lines to visualize and analyze electric fields (the lines are a pictorial tool, not a physical entity in themselves). The properties of electric field lines for any charge distribution can be summarized as follows:

1. Field lines must begin on positive charges and terminate on negative charges, or at infinity in the hypothetical case of isolated charges.
2. The number of field lines leaving a positive charge or entering a negative charge is proportional to the magnitude of the charge.
3. The strength of the field is proportional to the closeness of the field lines—more precisely, it is proportional to the number of lines per unit area perpendicular to the lines.
4. The direction of the electric field is tangent to the field line at any point in space.
5. Field lines can never cross.

The last property means that the field is unique at any point. The field line represents the direction of the field; so if they crossed, the field would have two directions at that location (an impossibility if the field is unique).

Note:
PhET Explorations: Charges and Fields
Move point charges around on the playing field and then view the electric field, voltages, equipotential lines, and more. It's colorful, it's dynamic, it's free.

Click here for the simulation.

Section Summary

- Drawings of electric field lines are useful visual tools. The properties of electric field lines for any charge distribution are that:
- Field lines must begin on positive charges and terminate on negative charges, or at infinity in the hypothetical case of isolated charges.
- The number of field lines leaving a positive charge or entering a negative charge is proportional to the magnitude of the charge.
- The strength of the field is proportional to the closeness of the field lines—more precisely, it is proportional to the number of lines per unit area perpendicular to the lines.
- The direction of the electric field is tangent to the field line at any point in space.
- Field lines can never cross.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

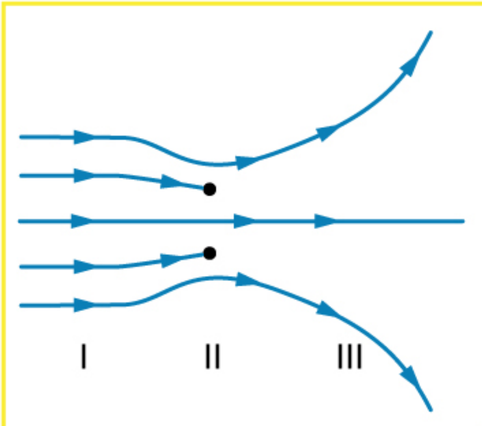
Problem:

Compare and contrast the Coulomb force field and the electric field. To do this, make a list of five properties for the Coulomb force field analogous to the five properties listed for electric field lines. Compare each item in your list of Coulomb force field properties with those of the electric field—are they the same or different? (For example, electric field lines cannot cross. Is the same true for Coulomb field lines?)

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows an electric field extending over three regions, labeled I, II, and III. Answer the following questions. (a) Are there any isolated charges? If so, in what region and what are their signs? (b) Where is the field strongest? (c) Where is it weakest? (d) Where is the field the most uniform?



Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Sketch the electric field lines near a point charge $+q$. (b) Do the same for a point charge $-3.00q$.

Exercise:

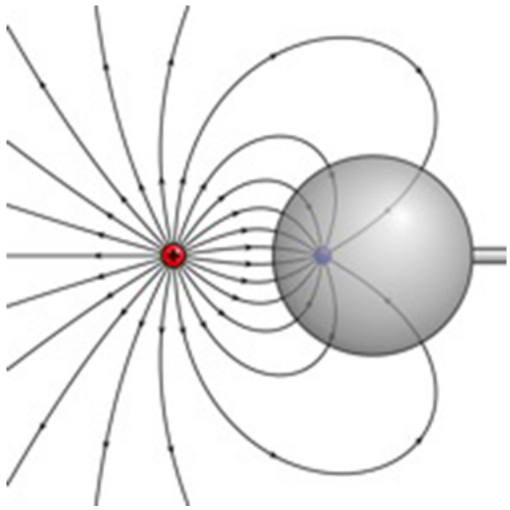
Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines a long distance from the charge distributions shown in [link] (a) and (b)

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows the electric field lines near two charges q_1 and q_2. What is the ratio of their magnitudes? (b) Sketch the electric field lines a long distance from the charges shown in the figure.



The electric field near two charges.

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of two opposite charges, where the negative charge is three times greater in magnitude than the positive. (See [link] for a similar situation).

Glossary

electric field
: a three-dimensional map of the electric force extended out into space from a point charge

electric field lines
: a series of lines drawn from a point charge representing the magnitude and direction of force exerted by that charge

vector
: a quantity with both magnitude and direction

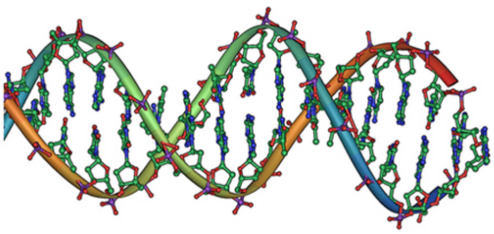
vector addition

mathematical combination of two or more vectors, including their magnitudes, directions, and positions

Electric Forces in Biology

- Describe how a water molecule is polar.
- Explain electrostatic screening by a water molecule within a living cell.

Classical electrostatics has an important role to play in modern molecular biology. Large molecules such as proteins, nucleic acids, and so on—so important to life—are usually electrically charged. DNA itself is highly charged; it is the electrostatic force that not only holds the molecule together but gives the molecule structure and strength. [link] is a schematic of the DNA double helix.



DNA is a highly charged molecule. The DNA double helix shows the two coiled strands each containing a row of nitrogenous bases, which "code" the genetic information needed by a living organism. The strands are connected by bonds between pairs of bases. While pairing combinations between certain bases are fixed (C-G and A-T), the sequence of nucleotides in the strand varies. (credit: Jerome Walker)

The four nucleotide bases are given the symbols A (adenine), C (cytosine), G (guanine), and T (thymine). The order of the four bases varies in each strand, but the pairing between bases is always the same. C and G are always paired and A and T are always paired, which helps to preserve the order of bases in cell division (mitosis) so as to pass on the correct genetic information. Since the Coulomb force drops with distance ($F \propto 1/r^2$), the distances between the base pairs must be small enough that the electrostatic force is sufficient to hold them together.

DNA is a highly charged molecule, with about $2q_{\text{e}}$ (fundamental charge) per 0.3×10^{-9} m. The distance separating the two strands that make up the DNA structure is about 1 nm, while the distance separating the individual atoms within each base is about 0.3 nm.

One might wonder why electrostatic forces do not play a larger role in biology than they do if we have so many charged molecules. The reason is that the electrostatic force is “diluted” due to **screening** between molecules. This is due to the presence of other charges in the cell.

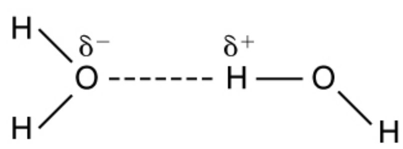
Polarity of Water Molecules

The best example of this charge screening is the water molecule, represented as H_2O. Water is a strongly **polar molecule**. Its 10 electrons (8 from the oxygen atom and 2 from the two hydrogen atoms) tend to remain closer to the oxygen nucleus than the hydrogen nuclei. This creates two centers of equal and opposite charges—what is called a **dipole**, as illustrated in [link]. The magnitude of the dipole is called the dipole moment.

These two centers of charge will terminate some of the electric field lines coming from a free charge, as on a DNA molecule. This results in a reduction in the strength of the **Coulomb interaction**. One might say that screening makes the Coulomb force a short range force rather than long range.

Other ions of importance in biology that can reduce or screen Coulomb interactions are Na^+, and K^+, and Cl^-. These ions are located both inside and outside of living cells. The movement of these ions through cell membranes is crucial to the motion of nerve impulses through nerve axons.

Recent studies of electrostatics in biology seem to show that electric fields in cells can be extended over larger distances, in spite of screening, by “microtubules” within the cell. These microtubules are hollow tubes composed of proteins that guide the movement of chromosomes when cells divide, the motion of other organisms within the cell, and provide mechanisms for motion of some cells (as motors).



This schematic shows water (H_2O) as a polar molecule. Unequal sharing of electrons between the oxygen (O) and hydrogen (H) atoms leads to a net separation of positive and negative charge—forming a dipole. The symbols δ^- and δ^+ indicate that the oxygen side of the H_2O molecule tends to be more negative, while the hydrogen ends tend

to be more positive. This leads to an attraction of opposite charges between molecules.

Section Summary

- Many molecules in living organisms, such as DNA, carry a charge.
- An uneven distribution of the positive and negative charges within a polar molecule produces a dipole.
- The effect of a Coulomb field generated by a charged object may be reduced or blocked by other nearby charged objects.
- Biological systems contain water, and because water molecules are polar, they have a strong effect on other molecules in living systems.

Conceptual Question

Exercise:

Problem:

A cell membrane is a thin layer enveloping a cell. The thickness of the membrane is much less than the size of the cell. In a static situation the membrane has a charge distribution of -2.5×10^{-6}C/m ^{2} on its inner surface and $+2.5 \times 10^{-6}$ C/m^2 on its outer surface. Draw a diagram of the cell and the surrounding cell membrane. Include on this diagram the charge distribution and the corresponding electric field. Is there any electric field inside the cell? Is there any electric field outside the cell?

Glossary

dipole

a molecule’s lack of symmetrical charge distribution, causing one side to be more positive and another to be more negative

polar molecule
: a molecule with an asymmetrical distribution of positive and negative charge

screening
: the dilution or blocking of an electrostatic force on a charged object by the presence of other charges nearby

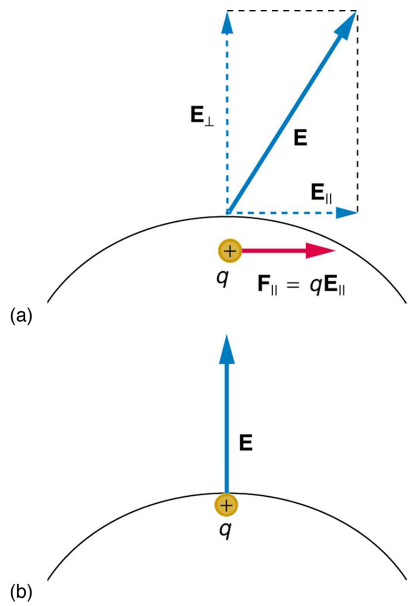
Coulomb interaction
: the interaction between two charged particles generated by the Coulomb forces they exert on one another

Conductors and Electric Fields in Static Equilibrium

- List the three properties of a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium.
- Explain the effect of an electric field on free charges in a conductor.
- Explain why no electric field may exist inside a conductor.
- Describe the electric field surrounding Earth.
- Explain what happens to an electric field applied to an irregular conductor.
- Describe how a lightning rod works.
- Explain how a metal car may protect passengers inside from the dangerous electric fields caused by a downed line touching the car.

Conductors contain **free charges** that move easily. When excess charge is placed on a conductor or the conductor is put into a static electric field, charges in the conductor quickly respond to reach a steady state called **electrostatic equilibrium**.

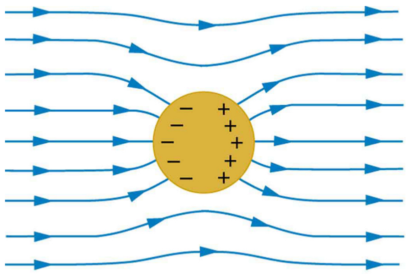
[link] shows the effect of an electric field on free charges in a conductor. The free charges move until the field is perpendicular to the conductor's surface. There can be no component of the field parallel to the surface in electrostatic equilibrium, since, if there were, it would produce further movement of charge. A positive free charge is shown, but free charges can be either positive or negative and are, in fact, negative in metals. The motion of a positive charge is equivalent to the motion of a negative charge in the opposite direction.



When an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is applied to a conductor, free charges inside the conductor move until the field is perpendicular to the surface. (a) The electric field is a vector quantity, with both parallel and perpendicular components. The parallel component $(\mathbf{E}_{||})$ exerts a force $(\mathbf{F}_{||})$ on the free charge q, which moves the charge until $\mathbf{F}_{||} = 0$. (b) The resulting field is perpendicular to the surface. The free charge has

been brought to the conductor's surface, leaving electrostatic forces in equilibrium.

A conductor placed in an **electric field** will be **polarized**. [link] shows the result of placing a neutral conductor in an originally uniform electric field. The field becomes stronger near the conductor but entirely disappears inside it.



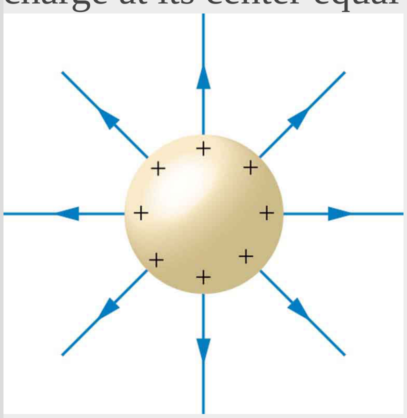
This illustration shows a spherical conductor in static equilibrium with an originally uniform electric field. Free charges move within the conductor, polarizing it, until the electric field lines are perpendicular to the surface. The field lines end on excess negative charge on one section of the surface and begin

again on excess positive charge on the opposite side. No electric field exists inside the conductor, since free charges in the conductor would continue moving in response to any field until it was neutralized.

Note:

Misconception Alert: Electric Field inside a Conductor

Excess charges placed on a spherical conductor repel and move until they are evenly distributed, as shown in [link]. Excess charge is forced to the surface until the field inside the conductor is zero. Outside the conductor, the field is exactly the same as if the conductor were replaced by a point charge at its center equal to the excess charge.



The mutual repulsion of excess positive charges on

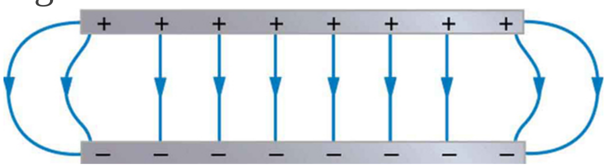
a spherical conductor distributes them uniformly on its surface. The resulting electric field is perpendicular to the surface and zero inside. Outside the conductor, the field is identical to that of a point charge at the center equal to the excess charge.

Note:
Properties of a Conductor in Electrostatic Equilibrium

1. The electric field is zero inside a conductor.
2. Just outside a conductor, the electric field lines are perpendicular to its surface, ending or beginning on charges on the surface.
3. Any excess charge resides entirely on the surface or surfaces of a conductor.

The properties of a conductor are consistent with the situations already discussed and can be used to analyze any conductor in electrostatic equilibrium. This can lead to some interesting new insights, such as described below.

How can a very uniform electric field be created? Consider a system of two metal plates with opposite charges on them, as shown in [link]. The properties of conductors in electrostatic equilibrium indicate that the electric field between the plates will be uniform in strength and direction. Except near the edges, the excess charges distribute themselves uniformly, producing field lines that are uniformly spaced (hence uniform in strength) and perpendicular to the surfaces (hence uniform in direction, since the plates are flat). The edge effects are less important when the plates are close together.



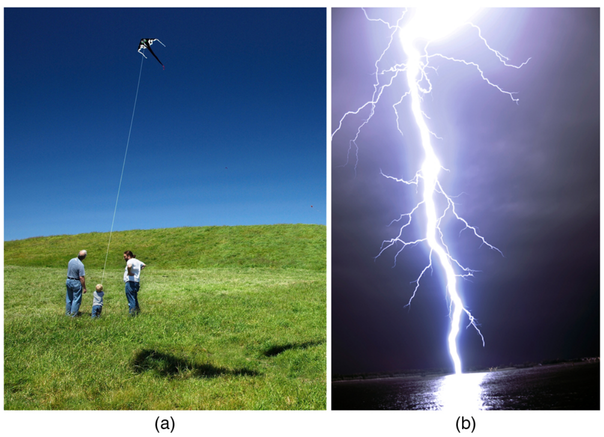
Two metal plates with equal, but opposite, excess charges. The field between them is uniform in strength and direction except near the edges. One use of such a field is to produce uniform acceleration of charges between the plates, such as in the electron gun of a TV tube.

Earth’s Electric Field

A near uniform electric field of approximately 150 N/C, directed downward, surrounds Earth, with the magnitude increasing slightly as we get closer to the surface. What causes the electric field? At around 100 km above the surface of Earth we have a layer of charged particles, called the **ionosphere**. The ionosphere is responsible for a range of phenomena including the electric field surrounding Earth. In fair weather the ionosphere is positive and the Earth largely negative, maintaining the electric field ([link](a)).

In storm conditions clouds form and localized electric fields can be larger and reversed in direction ([link](b)). The exact charge distributions depend on the local conditions, and variations of [link](b) are possible.

If the electric field is sufficiently large, the insulating properties of the surrounding material break down and it becomes conducting. For air this occurs at around 3×10^6 N/C. Air ionizes ions and electrons recombine, and we get discharge in the form of lightning sparks and corona discharge.



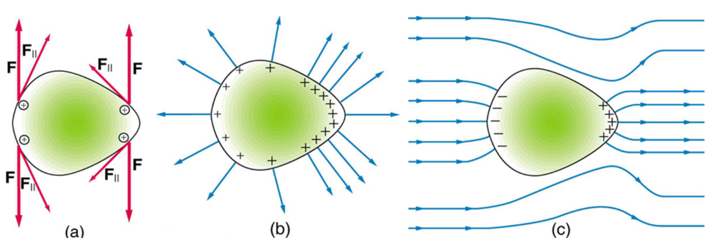
Earth’s electric field. (a) Fair weather field. Earth and the ionosphere (a layer of charged particles) are both conductors. They produce a uniform electric field of about 150 N/C. (credit: D. H. Parks) (b) Storm fields. In the presence of storm clouds, the local electric fields can be larger. At very high fields, the insulating properties of the air break down and lightning can occur. (credit: Jan-Joost Verhoef)

Electric Fields on Uneven Surfaces

So far we have considered excess charges on a smooth, symmetrical conductor surface. What happens if a conductor has sharp corners or is pointed? Excess charges on a nonuniform conductor become concentrated at the sharpest points. Additionally, excess charge may move on or off the conductor at the sharpest points.

To see how and why this happens, consider the charged conductor in [link]. The electrostatic repulsion of like charges is most effective in moving them apart on the flattest surface, and so they become least concentrated there. This is because the forces between identical pairs of charges at either end of the conductor are identical, but the components of the forces parallel to the surfaces are different. The component parallel to the surface is greatest on the flattest surface and, hence, more effective in moving the charge.

The same effect is produced on a conductor by an externally applied electric field, as seen in [link] (c). Since the field lines must be perpendicular to the surface, more of them are concentrated on the most curved parts.



Excess charge on a nonuniform conductor becomes most concentrated at the location of greatest curvature. (a) The forces between identical pairs of charges at either end of the conductor are identical, but the components of the forces parallel to the surface are different. It is $\mathbf{F}_{||}$ that moves the charges apart once they

have reached the surface. (b) $\mathbf{F}_{||}$ is smallest at the more pointed end, the charges are left closer together, producing the electric field shown. (c) An uncharged conductor in an originally uniform electric field is polarized, with the most concentrated charge at its most pointed end.

Applications of Conductors

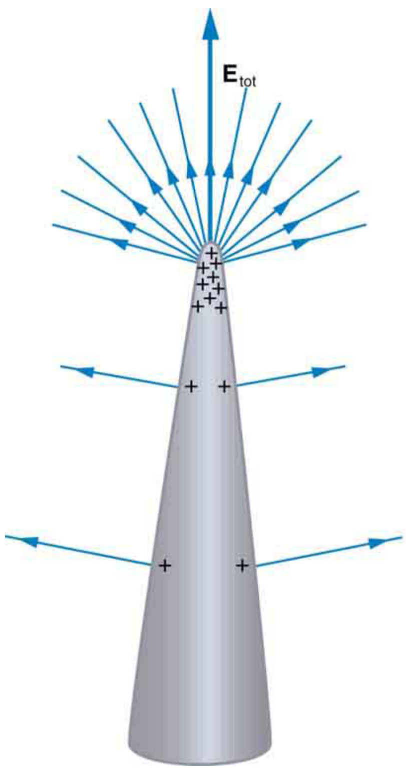
On a very sharply curved surface, such as shown in [link], the charges are so concentrated at the point that the resulting electric field can be great enough to remove them from the surface. This can be useful.

Lightning rods work best when they are most pointed. The large charges created in storm clouds induce an opposite charge on a building that can result in a lightning bolt hitting the building. The induced charge is bled away continually by a lightning rod, preventing the more dramatic lightning strike.

Of course, we sometimes wish to prevent the transfer of charge rather than to facilitate it. In that case, the conductor should be very smooth and have as large a radius of curvature as possible. (See [link].) Smooth surfaces are used on high-voltage transmission lines, for example, to avoid leakage of charge into the air.

Another device that makes use of some of these principles is a **Faraday cage**. This is a metal shield that encloses a volume. All electrical charges will reside on the outside surface of this shield, and there will be no electrical field inside. A Faraday cage is used to prohibit stray electrical fields in the environment from interfering with sensitive measurements, such as the electrical signals inside a nerve cell.

During electrical storms if you are driving a car, it is best to stay inside the car as its metal body acts as a Faraday cage with zero electrical field inside. If in the vicinity of a lightning strike, its effect is felt on the outside of the car and the inside is unaffected, provided you remain totally inside. This is also true if an active (“hot”) electrical wire was broken (in a storm or an accident) and fell on your car.



A very pointed conductor has a large charge concentration at the point. The electric field is very strong at the point and can exert a force large enough to transfer charge on or off the conductor.

Lightning rods are used to prevent the buildup of large excess charges on structures and, thus, are pointed.

(a) A lightning rod is pointed to facilitate the transfer of charge. (credit: Romaine, Wikimedia Commons) (b) This Van de Graaff generator has a smooth surface with a large radius of curvature to prevent the transfer of charge and allow a large voltage to be generated. The mutual repulsion of like charges is evident in the person’s hair while touching the metal sphere. (credit: Jon ‘ShakataGaNai’ Davis/Wikimedia Commons).

Section Summary

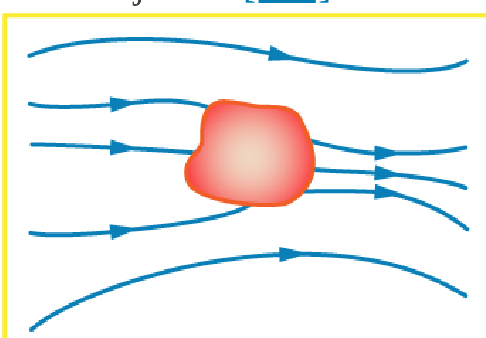
- A conductor allows free charges to move about within it.
- The electrical forces around a conductor will cause free charges to move around inside the conductor until static equilibrium is reached.
- Any excess charge will collect along the surface of a conductor.
- Conductors with sharp corners or points will collect more charge at those points.
- A lightning rod is a conductor with sharply pointed ends that collect excess charge on the building caused by an electrical storm and allow it to dissipate back into the air.
- Electrical storms result when the electrical field of Earth's surface in certain locations becomes more strongly charged, due to changes in the insulating effect of the air.
- A Faraday cage acts like a shield around an object, preventing electric charge from penetrating inside.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the object in [link] a conductor or an insulator? Justify your answer.



Exercise:

Problem:

If the electric field lines in the figure above were perpendicular to the object, would it necessarily be a conductor? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

The discussion of the electric field between two parallel conducting plates, in this module states that edge effects are less important if the plates are close together. What does close mean? That is, is the actual plate separation crucial, or is the ratio of plate separation to plate area crucial?

Exercise:

Problem:

Would the self-created electric field at the end of a pointed conductor, such as a lightning rod, remove positive or negative charge from the conductor? Would the same sign charge be removed from a neutral pointed conductor by the application of a similar externally created electric field? (The answers to both questions have implications for charge transfer utilizing points.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is a golfer with a metal club over her shoulder vulnerable to lightning in an open fairway? Would she be any safer under a tree?

Exercise:

Problem:

Can the belt of a Van de Graaff accelerator be a conductor? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Are you relatively safe from lightning inside an automobile? Give two reasons.

Exercise:

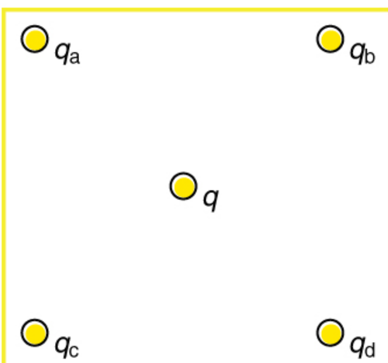
Problem:

Discuss pros and cons of a lightning rod being grounded versus simply being attached to a building.

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the symmetry of the arrangement, show that the net Coulomb force on the charge q at the center of the square below ([link]) is zero if the charges on the four corners are exactly equal.



Four point charges q_a, q_b, q_c, and q_d lie on the corners of a square and q is located at its center.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using the symmetry of the arrangement, show that the electric field at the center of the square in [link] is zero if the charges on the four corners are exactly equal. (b) Show that this is also true for any combination of charges in which $q_a = q_d$ and $q_b = q_c$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the direction of the total Coulomb force on q in [link] if q is negative, $q_a = q_c$ and both are negative, and $q_b = q_c$ and both are positive? (b) What is the direction of the electric field at the center of the square in this situation?

Exercise:

Problem:

Considering [link], suppose that $q_a = q_d$ and $q_b = q_c$. First show that q is in static equilibrium. (You may neglect the gravitational force.) Then discuss whether the equilibrium is stable or unstable, noting that this may depend on the signs of the charges and the direction of displacement of q from the center of the square.

Exercise:

Problem:

If $q_a = 0$ in [link], under what conditions will there be no net Coulomb force on q?

Exercise:

Problem:

In regions of low humidity, one develops a special “grip” when opening car doors, or touching metal door knobs. This involves placing as much of the hand on the device as possible, not just the ends of one’s fingers. Discuss the induced charge and explain why this is done.

Exercise:

Problem:

Tollbooth stations on roadways and bridges usually have a piece of wire stuck in the pavement before them that will touch a car as it approaches. Why is this done?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a woman carries an excess charge. To maintain her charged status can she be standing on ground wearing just any pair of shoes? How would you discharge her? What are the consequences if she simply walks away?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of the conductor in [link] given the field was originally uniform and parallel to the object's long axis. Is the resulting field small near the long side of the object?

Exercise:

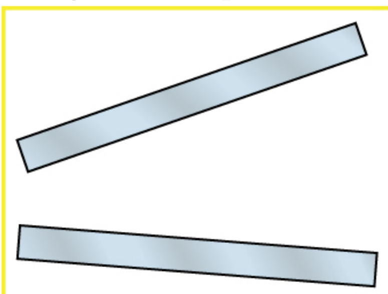
Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of the conductor in [link] given the field was originally uniform and parallel to the object's long axis. Is the resulting field small near the long side of the object?

Exercise:

Problem:

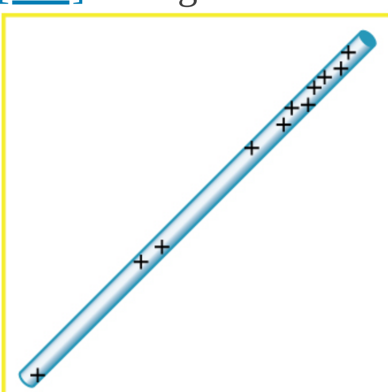
Sketch the electric field between the two conducting plates shown in [link], given the top plate is positive and an equal amount of negative charge is on the bottom plate. Be certain to indicate the distribution of charge on the plates.



Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of the charged insulator in [link] noting its nonuniform charge distribution.



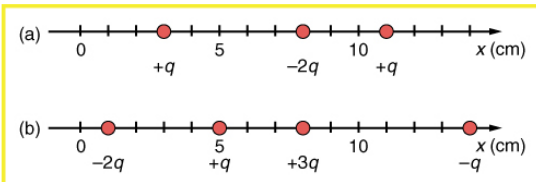
A charged insulating rod such as might be used in

a classroom demonstration.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the force on the charge located at $x = 8.00\text{ cm}$ in [link](a) given that $q = 1.00\ \mu\text{C}$?



(a) Point charges located at 3.00, 8.00, and 11.0 cm along the *x*-axis. (b) Point charges located at 1.00, 5.00, 8.00, and 14.0 cm along the *x*-axis.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the total electric field at $x = 1.00\text{ cm}$ in [link](b) given that $q = 5.00\text{ nC}$. (b) Find the total electric field at $x = 11.00\text{ cm}$ in [link](b). (c) If the charges are allowed to move and eventually be brought to rest by friction, what will the final charge configuration be? (That is, will there be a single charge, double charge, etc., and what will its value(s) be?)

Solution:

(a) $E_{x=1.00\text{ cm}} = -\infty$

(b) $2.12 \times 10^5 \text{ N/C}$

(c) one charge of $+q$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the electric field at $x = 5.00 \text{ cm}$ in [link](a), given that $q = 1.00 \text{ µC}$. (b) At what position between 3.00 and 8.00 cm is the total electric field the same as that for $–2q$ alone? (c) Can the electric field be zero anywhere between 0.00 and 8.00 cm? (d) At very large positive or negative values of *x*, the electric field approaches zero in both (a) and (b). In which does it most rapidly approach zero and why? (e) At what position to the right of 11.0 cm is the total electric field zero, other than at infinity? (Hint: A graphing calculator can yield considerable insight in this problem.)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the total Coulomb force on a charge of 2.00 nC located at $x = 4.00 \text{ cm}$ in [link] (b), given that $q = 1.00 \text{ µC}$. (b) Find the *x*-position at which the electric field is zero in [link] (b).

Solution:

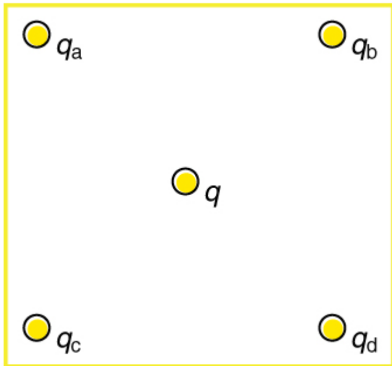
(a) 0.252 N to the left

(b) $x = 6.07 \text{ cm}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the symmetry of the arrangement, determine the direction of the force on q in the figure below, given that $q_a = q_b$=$+7.50 \text{ µC}$ and $q_c = q_d = -7.50 \text{ µC}$. (b) Calculate the magnitude of the force on the charge q, given that the square is 10.0 cm on a side and $q = 2.00 \text{ µC}$.



Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using the symmetry of the arrangement, determine the direction of the electric field at the center of the square in [link], given that $q_a = q_b = -1.00\ \mu\text{C}$ and $q_c = q_d$=$+1.00\ \mu\text{C}$. (b) Calculate the magnitude of the electric field at the location of q, given that the square is 5.00 cm on a side.

Solution:

(a)The electric field at the center of the square will be straight up, since q_a and q_b are positive and q_c and q_d are negative and all have the same magnitude.

(b) $2.04 \times 10^7\ \text{N/C (upward)}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the electric field at the location of q_a in [link] given that $q_b = q_c = q_d$=$+2.00\ \text{nC}$, $q = -1.00\ \text{nC}$, and the square is 20.0 cm on a side.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the total Coulomb force on the charge q in [link], given that $q = 1.00\ \mu C$, $q_a = 2.00\ \mu C$, $q_b = -3.00\ \mu C$, $q_c = -4.00\ \mu C$, and q_d=$+1.00\ \mu C$. The square is 50.0 cm on a side.

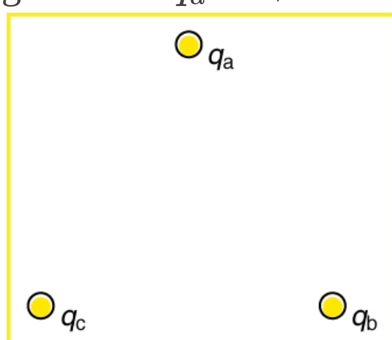
Solution:

$0.102\ N$, in the $-y$ direction

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the electric field at the location of q_a in [link], given that $q_b = +10.00\ \mu C$ and $q_c = -5.00\ \mu C$. (b) What is the force on q_a, given that $q_a = +1.50\ nC$?



Point charges located at the corners of an equilateral triangle 25.0 cm on a side.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the electric field at the center of the triangular configuration of charges in [link], given that q_a=$+2.50\text{ nC}$, $q_b = -8.00\text{ nC}$, and q_c=$+1.50\text{ nC}$. (b) Is there any combination of charges, other than $q_a = q_b = q_c$, that will produce a zero strength electric field at the center of the triangular configuration?

Solution:

(a) $E = 4.36 \times 10^3\text{ N/C}, 35.0$º, below the horizontal.

(b) No

Glossary

conductor
: an object with properties that allow charges to move about freely within it

free charge
: an electrical charge (either positive or negative) which can move about separately from its base molecule

electrostatic equilibrium
: an electrostatically balanced state in which all free electrical charges have stopped moving about

polarized
: a state in which the positive and negative charges within an object have collected in separate locations

ionosphere
: a layer of charged particles located around 100 km above the surface of Earth, which is responsible for a range of phenomena including the electric field surrounding Earth

Faraday cage

a metal shield which prevents electric charge from penetrating its surface

Applications of Electrostatics

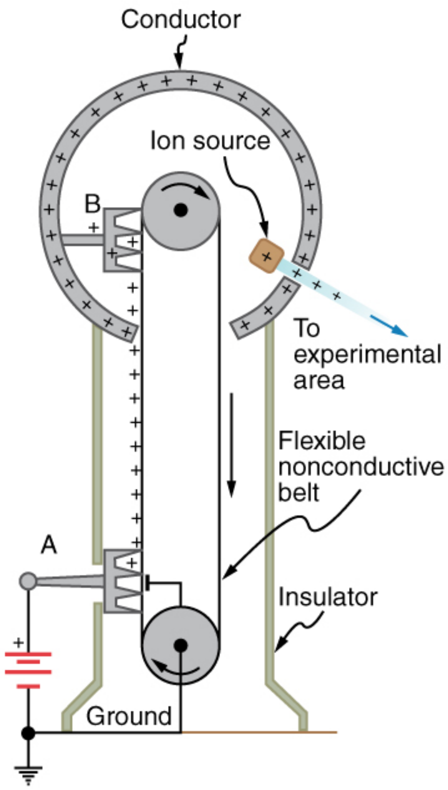
- Name several real-world applications of the study of electrostatics.

The study of **electrostatics** has proven useful in many areas. This module covers just a few of the many applications of electrostatics.

The Van de Graaff Generator

Van de Graaff generators (or Van de Graaffs) are not only spectacular devices used to demonstrate high voltage due to static electricity—they are also used for serious research. The first was built by Robert Van de Graaff in 1931 (based on original suggestions by Lord Kelvin) for use in nuclear physics research. [link] shows a schematic of a large research version. Van de Graaffs utilize both smooth and pointed surfaces, and conductors and insulators to generate large static charges and, hence, large voltages.

A very large excess charge can be deposited on the sphere, because it moves quickly to the outer surface. Practical limits arise because the large electric fields polarize and eventually ionize surrounding materials, creating free charges that neutralize excess charge or allow it to escape. Nevertheless, voltages of 15 million volts are well within practical limits.



Schematic of Van de Graaff generator. A battery (A) supplies excess positive charge to a pointed conductor, the points of which spray the charge onto a moving insulating belt near the bottom. The pointed conductor (B) on top in the large sphere picks up the charge. (The induced electric field at the points is so large that it removes the charge from the belt.) This can be done because the charge does not

remain inside the conducting sphere but moves to its outside surface. An ion source inside the sphere produces positive ions, which are accelerated away from the positive sphere to high velocities.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Electrostatics and Humidity
Rub a comb through your hair and use it to lift pieces of paper. It may help to tear the pieces of paper rather than cut them neatly. Repeat the exercise in your bathroom after you have had a long shower and the air in the bathroom is moist. Is it easier to get electrostatic effects in dry or moist air? Why would torn paper be more attractive to the comb than cut paper? Explain your observations.

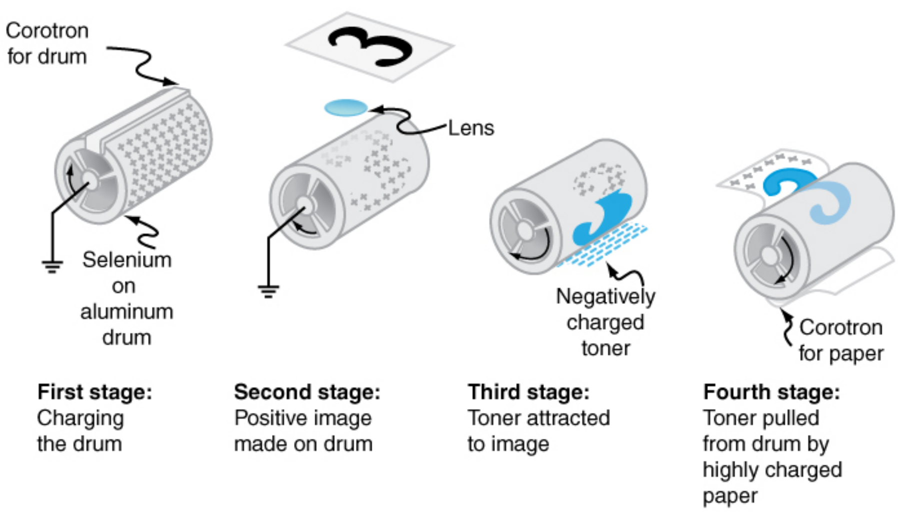
Xerography

Most copy machines use an electrostatic process called **xerography**—a word coined from the Greek words *xeros* for dry and *graphos* for writing. The heart of the process is shown in simplified form in [link].

A selenium-coated aluminum drum is sprayed with positive charge from points on a device called a corotron. Selenium is a substance with an interesting property—it is a **photoconductor**. That is, selenium is an insulator when in the dark and a conductor when exposed to light.

In the first stage of the xerography process, the conducting aluminum drum is **grounded** so that a negative charge is induced under the thin layer of uniformly positively charged selenium. In the second stage, the surface of the drum is exposed to the image of whatever is to be copied. Where the image is light, the selenium becomes conducting, and the positive charge is neutralized. In dark areas, the positive charge remains, and so the image has been transferred to the drum.

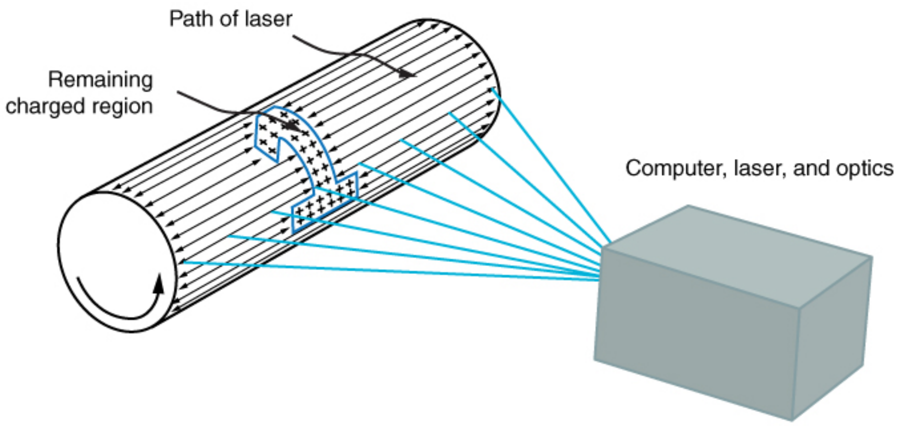
The third stage takes a dry black powder, called toner, and sprays it with a negative charge so that it will be attracted to the positive regions of the drum. Next, a blank piece of paper is given a greater positive charge than on the drum so that it will pull the toner from the drum. Finally, the paper and electrostatically held toner are passed through heated pressure rollers, which melt and permanently adhere the toner within the fibers of the paper.



Xerography is a dry copying process based on electrostatics. The major steps in the process are the charging of the photoconducting drum, transfer of an image creating a positive charge duplicate, attraction of toner to the charged parts of the drum, and transfer of toner to the paper. Not shown are heat treatment of the paper and cleansing of the drum for the next copy.

Laser Printers

Laser printers use the xerographic process to make high-quality images on paper, employing a laser to produce an image on the photoconducting drum as shown in [link]. In its most common application, the laser printer receives output from a computer, and it can achieve high-quality output because of the precision with which laser light can be controlled. Many laser printers do significant information processing, such as making sophisticated letters or fonts, and may contain a computer more powerful than the one giving them the raw data to be printed.

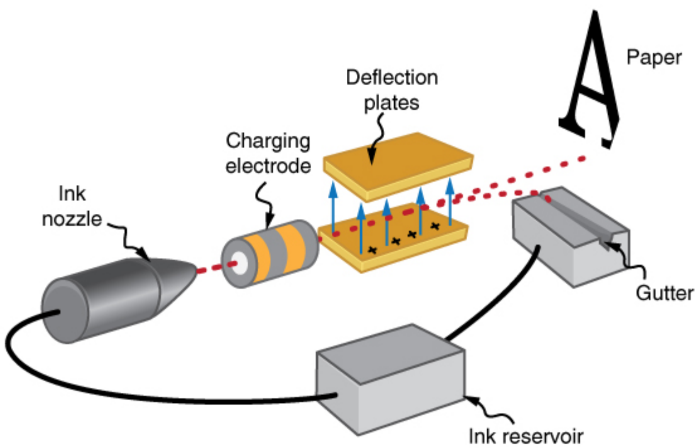


In a laser printer, a laser beam is scanned across a photoconducting drum, leaving a positive charge image. The other steps for charging the drum and transferring the image to paper are the same as in xerography. Laser light can be very precisely controlled, enabling laser printers to produce high-quality images.

Ink Jet Printers and Electrostatic Painting

The **ink jet printer**, commonly used to print computer-generated text and graphics, also employs electrostatics. A nozzle makes a fine spray of tiny ink droplets, which are then given an electrostatic charge. (See [link].)

Once charged, the droplets can be directed, using pairs of charged plates, with great precision to form letters and images on paper. Ink jet printers can produce color images by using a black jet and three other jets with primary colors, usually cyan, magenta, and yellow, much as a color television produces color. (This is more difficult with xerography, requiring multiple drums and toners.)



The nozzle of an ink-jet printer produces small ink droplets, which are sprayed with electrostatic charge. Various computer-driven devices are then used to direct the droplets to the correct positions on a page.

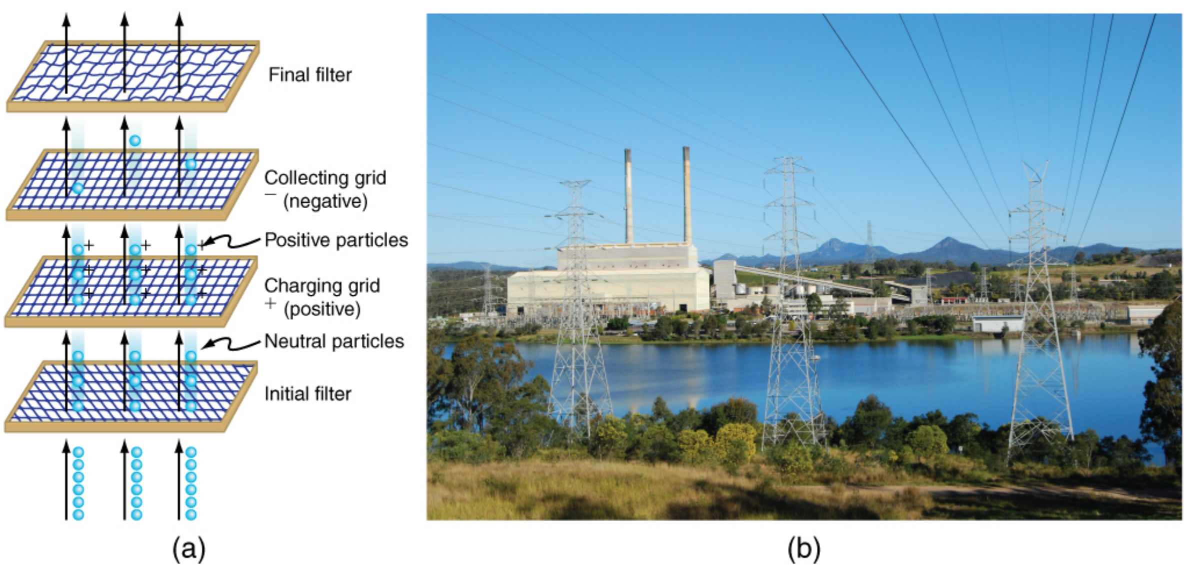
Electrostatic painting employs electrostatic charge to spray paint onto odd-shaped surfaces. Mutual repulsion of like charges causes the paint to fly away from its source. Surface tension forms drops, which are then attracted by unlike charges to the surface to be painted. Electrostatic painting can reach those hard-to-get at places, applying an even coat in a controlled

manner. If the object is a conductor, the electric field is perpendicular to the surface, tending to bring the drops in perpendicularly. Corners and points on conductors will receive extra paint. Felt can similarly be applied.

Smoke Precipitators and Electrostatic Air Cleaning

Another important application of electrostatics is found in air cleaners, both large and small. The electrostatic part of the process places excess (usually positive) charge on smoke, dust, pollen, and other particles in the air and then passes the air through an oppositely charged grid that attracts and retains the charged particles. (See [link].)

Large **electrostatic precipitators** are used industrially to remove over 99% of the particles from stack gas emissions associated with the burning of coal and oil. Home precipitators, often in conjunction with the home heating and air conditioning system, are very effective in removing polluting particles, irritants, and allergens.



(a) Schematic of an electrostatic precipitator. Air is passed through grids of opposite charge. The first grid charges airborne particles, while the second attracts and collects them. (b) The dramatic effect of

electrostatic precipitators is seen by the absence of smoke from this power plant. (credit: Cmdalgleish, Wikimedia Commons)

Note:
Problem-Solving Strategies for Electrostatics

1. Examine the situation to determine if static electricity is involved. This may concern separated stationary charges, the forces among them, and the electric fields they create.
2. Identify the system of interest. This includes noting the number, locations, and types of charges involved.
3. Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns). A written list is useful. Determine whether the Coulomb force is to be considered directly—if so, it may be useful to draw a free-body diagram, using electric field lines.
4. Make a list of what is given or can be inferred from the problem as stated (identify the knowns). It is important to distinguish the Coulomb force F from the electric field E, for example.
5. Solve the appropriate equation for the quantity to be determined (the unknown) or draw the field lines as requested.
6. Examine the answer to see if it is reasonable: Does it make sense? Are units correct and the numbers involved reasonable?

Integrated Concepts

The Integrated Concepts exercises for this module involve concepts such as electric charges, electric fields, and several other topics. Physics is most interesting when applied to general situations involving more than a narrow set of physical principles. The electric field exerts force on charges, for example, and hence the relevance of Dynamics: Force and Newton’s Laws of Motion. The following topics are involved in some or all of the problems labeled “Integrated Concepts”:

- Kinematics
- Two-Dimensional Kinematics
- Dynamics: Force and Newton's Laws of Motion
- Uniform Circular Motion and Gravitation
- Statics and Torque
- Fluid Statics

The following worked example illustrates how this strategy is applied to an Integrated Concept problem:

Example:
Acceleration of a Charged Drop of Gasoline
If steps are not taken to ground a gasoline pump, static electricity can be placed on gasoline when filling your car's tank. Suppose a tiny drop of gasoline has a mass of 4.00×10^{-15} kg and is given a positive charge of 3.20×10^{-19} C. (a) Find the weight of the drop. (b) Calculate the electric force on the drop if there is an upward electric field of strength 3.00×10^{5} N/C due to other static electricity in the vicinity. (c) Calculate the drop's acceleration.

Strategy
To solve an integrated concept problem, we must first identify the physical principles involved and identify the chapters in which they are found. Part (a) of this example asks for weight. This is a topic of dynamics and is defined in Dynamics: Force and Newton's Laws of Motion. Part (b) deals with electric force on a charge, a topic of Electric Charge and Electric Field. Part (c) asks for acceleration, knowing forces and mass. These are part of Newton's laws, also found in Dynamics: Force and Newton's Laws of Motion.

The following solutions to each part of the example illustrate how the specific problem-solving strategies are applied. These involve identifying knowns and unknowns, checking to see if the answer is reasonable, and so on.

Solution for (a)
Weight is mass times the acceleration due to gravity, as first expressed in

Equation:

$$w = \mathrm{mg}.$$

Entering the given mass and the average acceleration due to gravity yields
Equation:

$$w = (4.00 \times 10^{-15}\ \mathrm{kg})(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}) = 3.92 \times 10^{-14}\ \mathrm{N}.$$

Discussion for (a)
This is a small weight, consistent with the small mass of the drop.
Solution for (b)
The force an electric field exerts on a charge is given by rearranging the following equation:
Equation:

$$F = \mathrm{qE}.$$

Here we are given the charge (3.20×10^{-19} C is twice the fundamental unit of charge) and the electric field strength, and so the electric force is found to be
Equation:

$$F = (3.20 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C})(3.00 \times 10^{5}\ \mathrm{N/C}) = 9.60 \times 10^{-14}\ \mathrm{N}.$$

Discussion for (b)
While this is a small force, it is greater than the weight of the drop.
Solution for (c)
The acceleration can be found using Newton's second law, provided we can identify all of the external forces acting on the drop. We assume only the drop's weight and the electric force are significant. Since the drop has a positive charge and the electric field is given to be upward, the electric force is upward. We thus have a one-dimensional (vertical direction) problem, and we can state Newton's second law as
Equation:

$$a = \frac{F_{\mathrm{net}}}{m}.$$

where $F_{\text{net}} = F - w$. Entering this and the known values into the expression for Newton’s second law yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} a &= \frac{F-w}{m} \\ &= \frac{9.60\times10^{-14}\ \text{N}-3.92\times10^{-14}\ \text{N}}{4.00\times10^{-15}\ \text{kg}} \\ &= 14.2\ \text{m/s}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (c)

This is an upward acceleration great enough to carry the drop to places where you might not wish to have gasoline.

This worked example illustrates how to apply problem-solving strategies to situations that include topics in different chapters. The first step is to identify the physical principles involved in the problem. The second step is to solve for the unknown using familiar problem-solving strategies. These are found throughout the text, and many worked examples show how to use them for single topics. In this integrated concepts example, you can see how to apply them across several topics. You will find these techniques useful in applications of physics outside a physics course, such as in your profession, in other science disciplines, and in everyday life. The following problems will build your skills in the broad application of physical principles.

Note:

Unreasonable Results

The Unreasonable Results exercises for this module have results that are unreasonable because some premise is unreasonable or because certain of the premises are inconsistent with one another. Physical principles applied correctly then produce unreasonable results. The purpose of these problems is to give practice in assessing whether nature is being accurately described, and if it is not to trace the source of difficulty.

Note:
Problem-Solving Strategy
To determine if an answer is reasonable, and to determine the cause if it is not, do the following.

1. Solve the problem using strategies as outlined above. Use the format followed in the worked examples in the text to solve the problem as usual.
2. Check to see if the answer is reasonable. Is it too large or too small, or does it have the wrong sign, improper units, and so on?
3. If the answer is unreasonable, look for what specifically could cause the identified difficulty. Usually, the manner in which the answer is unreasonable is an indication of the difficulty. For example, an extremely large Coulomb force could be due to the assumption of an excessively large separated charge.

Section Summary

- Electrostatics is the study of electric fields in static equilibrium.
- In addition to research using equipment such as a Van de Graaff generator, many practical applications of electrostatics exist, including photocopiers, laser printers, ink-jet printers and electrostatic air filters.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the electric field 5.00 m from the center of the terminal of a Van de Graaff with a 3.00 mC charge, noting that the field is equivalent to that of a point charge at the center of the terminal? (b) At this distance, what force does the field exert on a $2.00\ \mu\text{C}$ charge on the Van de Graaff's belt?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the direction and magnitude of an electric field that supports the weight of a free electron near the surface of Earth? (b) Discuss what the small value for this field implies regarding the relative strength of the gravitational and electrostatic forces.

Solution:

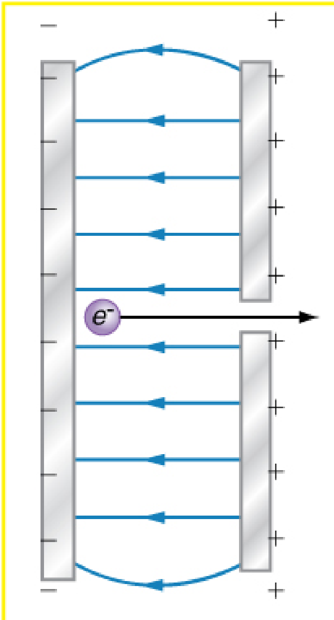
(a) $5.58 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N/C}$

(b)the coulomb force is extraordinarily stronger than gravity

Exercise:

Problem:

A simple and common technique for accelerating electrons is shown in [link], where there is a uniform electric field between two plates. Electrons are released, usually from a hot filament, near the negative plate, and there is a small hole in the positive plate that allows the electrons to continue moving. (a) Calculate the acceleration of the electron if the field strength is $2.50 \times 10^{4}\ \text{N/C}$. (b) Explain why the electron will not be pulled back to the positive plate once it moves through the hole.



Parallel conducting plates with opposite charges on them create a relatively uniform electric field used to accelerate electrons to the right. Those that go through the hole can be used to make a TV or computer screen glow or to produce X-rays.

Exercise:

Problem:

Earth has a net charge that produces an electric field of approximately 150 N/C downward at its surface. (a) What is the magnitude and sign of the excess charge, noting the electric field of a conducting sphere is equivalent to a point charge at its center? (b) What acceleration will the field produce on a free electron near Earth's surface? (c) What mass object with a single extra electron will have its weight supported by this field?

Solution:

(a) -6.76×10^5 C

(b) 2.63×10^{13} m/s^2 (upward)

(c) 2.45×10^{-18} kg

Exercise:

Problem:

Point charges of $25.0\ \mu$C and $45.0\ \mu$C are placed 0.500 m apart. (a) At what point along the line between them is the electric field zero? (b) What is the electric field halfway between them?

Exercise:

Problem:

What can you say about two charges q_1 and q_2, if the electric field one-fourth of the way from q_1 to q_2 is zero?

Solution:

The charge q_2 is 9 times greater than q_1.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Calculate the angular velocity ω of an electron orbiting a proton in the hydrogen atom, given the radius of the orbit is 0.530×10^{-10} m. You may assume that the proton is stationary and the centripetal force is supplied by Coulomb attraction.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

An electron has an initial velocity of $5.00 \times 10^{6}\ \text{m/s}$ in a uniform $2.00 \times 10^{5}\ \text{N/C}$ strength electric field. The field accelerates the electron in the direction opposite to its initial velocity. (a) What is the direction of the electric field? (b) How far does the electron travel before coming to rest? (c) How long does it take the electron to come to rest? (d) What is the electron's velocity when it returns to its starting point?

Exercise:

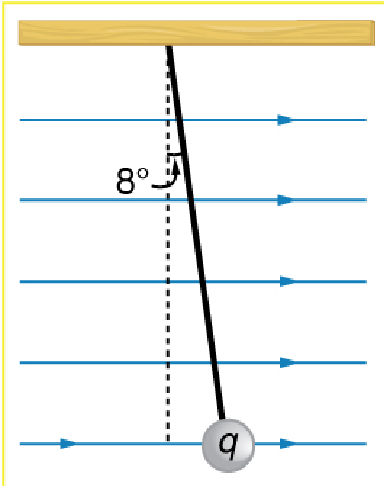
Problem: Integrated Concepts

The practical limit to an electric field in air is about $3.00 \times 10^{6}\ \text{N/C}$. Above this strength, sparking takes place because air begins to ionize and charges flow, reducing the field. (a) Calculate the distance a free proton must travel in this field to reach 3.00% of the speed of light, starting from rest. (b) Is this practical in air, or must it occur in a vacuum?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A 5.00 g charged insulating ball hangs on a 30.0 cm long string in a uniform horizontal electric field as shown in [link]. Given the charge on the ball is $1.00\ \mu\text{C}$, find the strength of the field.

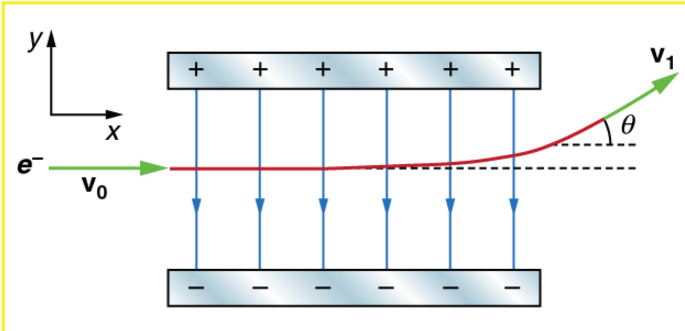


A horizontal electric field causes the charged ball to hang at an angle of 8.00º.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

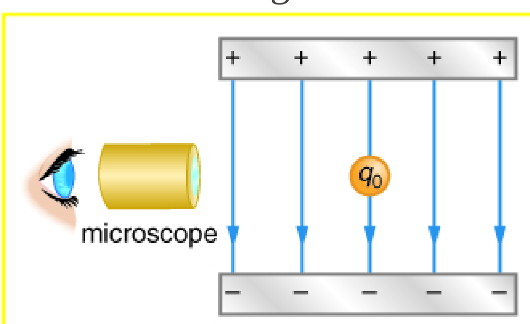
[link] shows an electron passing between two charged metal plates that create an 100 N/C vertical electric field perpendicular to the electron's original horizontal velocity. (These can be used to change the electron's direction, such as in an oscilloscope.) The initial speed of the electron is $3.00 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{m/s}$, and the horizontal distance it travels in the uniform field is 4.00 cm. (a) What is its vertical deflection? (b) What is the vertical component of its final velocity? (c) At what angle does it exit? Neglect any edge effects.



Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The classic Millikan oil drop experiment was the first to obtain an accurate measurement of the charge on an electron. In it, oil drops were suspended against the gravitational force by a vertical electric field. (See [link].) Given the oil drop to be $1.00\ \mu\text{m}$ in radius and have a density of $920\ \text{kg/m}^3$: (a) Find the weight of the drop. (b) If the drop has a single excess electron, find the electric field strength needed to balance its weight.



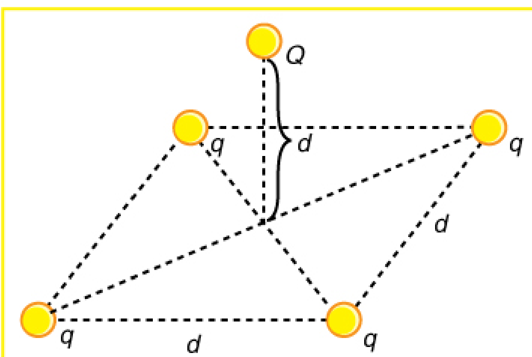
In the Millikan oil drop experiment, small drops can be suspended in an electric field by the force exerted on a single excess electron. Classically, this experiment was used to determine the electron charge q_e by

measuring the electric field and mass of the drop.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) In [link], four equal charges q lie on the corners of a square. A fifth charge Q is on a mass m directly above the center of the square, at a height equal to the length d of one side of the square. Determine the magnitude of q in terms of Q, m, and d, if the Coulomb force is to equal the weight of m. (b) Is this equilibrium stable or unstable? Discuss.



Four equal charges on the corners of a horizontal square support the weight of a fifth charge located directly above the center of the square.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Calculate the electric field strength near a 10.0 cm diameter conducting sphere that has 1.00 C of excess charge on it. (b) What is

unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Two 0.500 g raindrops in a thunderhead are 1.00 cm apart when they each acquire 1.00 mC charges. Find their acceleration. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which premise or assumption is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A wrecking yard inventor wants to pick up cars by charging a 0.400 m diameter ball and inducing an equal and opposite charge on the car. If a car has a 1000 kg mass and the ball is to be able to lift it from a distance of 1.00 m: (a) What minimum charge must be used? (b) What is the electric field near the surface of the ball? (c) Why are these results unreasonable? (d) Which premise or assumption is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider two insulating balls with evenly distributed equal and opposite charges on their surfaces, held with a certain distance between the centers of the balls. Construct a problem in which you calculate the electric field (magnitude and direction) due to the balls at various points along a line running through the centers of the balls and extending to infinity on either side. Choose interesting points and comment on the meaning of the field at those points. For example, at what points might the field be just that due to one ball and where does the field become negligibly small? Among the things to be considered are the magnitudes of the charges and the distance between the centers of the balls. Your instructor may wish for you to consider the electric

field off axis or for a more complex array of charges, such as those in a water molecule.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider identical spherical conducting space ships in deep space where gravitational fields from other bodies are negligible compared to the gravitational attraction between the ships. Construct a problem in which you place identical excess charges on the space ships to exactly counter their gravitational attraction. Calculate the amount of excess charge needed. Examine whether that charge depends on the distance between the centers of the ships, the masses of the ships, or any other factors. Discuss whether this would be an easy, difficult, or even impossible thing to do in practice.

Glossary

Van de Graaff generator
: a machine that produces a large amount of excess charge, used for experiments with high voltage

electrostatics
: the study of electric forces that are static or slow-moving

photoconductor
: a substance that is an insulator until it is exposed to light, when it becomes a conductor

xerography
: a dry copying process based on electrostatics

grounded
: connected to the ground with a conductor, so that charge flows freely to and from the Earth to the grounded object

laser printer

uses a laser to create a photoconductive image on a drum, which attracts dry ink particles that are then rolled onto a sheet of paper to print a high-quality copy of the image

ink-jet printer

small ink droplets sprayed with an electric charge are controlled by electrostatic plates to create images on paper

electrostatic precipitators

filters that apply charges to particles in the air, then attract those charges to a filter, removing them from the airstream

Introduction to Electric Potential and Electric Energy class="introduction"

Automated external defibrillator unit (AED) (credit: U.S. Defense Department photo/Tech. Sgt. Suzanne M. Day)

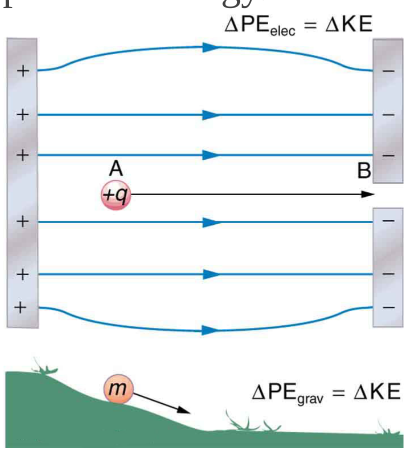
In Electric Charge and Electric Field, we just scratched the surface (or at least rubbed it) of electrical phenomena. Two of the most familiar aspects of

electricity are its energy and *voltage*. We know, for example, that great amounts of electrical energy can be stored in batteries, are transmitted cross-country through power lines, and may jump from clouds to explode the sap of trees. In a similar manner, at molecular levels, *ions* cross cell membranes and transfer information. We also know about voltages associated with electricity. Batteries are typically a few volts, the outlets in your home produce 120 volts, and power lines can be as high as hundreds of thousands of volts. But energy and voltage are not the same thing. A motorcycle battery, for example, is small and would not be very successful in replacing the much larger car battery, yet each has the same voltage. In this chapter, we shall examine the relationship between voltage and electrical energy and begin to explore some of the many applications of electricity.

Electric Potential Energy: Potential Difference

- Define electric potential and electric potential energy.
- Describe the relationship between potential difference and electrical potential energy.
- Explain electron volt and its usage in submicroscopic process.
- Determine electric potential energy given potential difference and amount of charge.

When a free positive charge *q* is accelerated by an electric field, such as shown in [link], it is given kinetic energy. The process is analogous to an object being accelerated by a gravitational field. It is as if the charge is going down an electrical hill where its electric potential energy is converted to kinetic energy. Let us explore the work done on a charge *q* by the electric field in this process, so that we may develop a definition of electric potential energy.



A charge accelerated by an electric field is analogous to a mass going down a hill. In both cases potential energy is converted to another form. Work is done by a force, but since this force

is conservative, we can write $W = -\Delta\text{PE}$.

The electrostatic or Coulomb force is conservative, which means that the work done on q is independent of the path taken. This is exactly analogous to the gravitational force in the absence of dissipative forces such as friction. When a force is conservative, it is possible to define a potential energy associated with the force, and it is usually easier to deal with the potential energy (because it depends only on position) than to calculate the work directly.

We use the letters PE to denote electric potential energy, which has units of joules (J). The change in potential energy, ΔPE, is crucial, since the work done by a conservative force is the negative of the change in potential energy; that is, $W = -\Delta\text{PE}$. For example, work W done to accelerate a positive charge from rest is positive and results from a loss in PE, or a negative ΔPE. There must be a minus sign in front of ΔPE to make W positive. PE can be found at any point by taking one point as a reference and calculating the work needed to move a charge to the other point.

Note:
Potential Energy
$W = -\Delta\text{PE}$. For example, work W done to accelerate a positive charge from rest is positive and results from a loss in PE, or a negative ΔPE. There must be a minus sign in front of ΔPE to make W positive. PE can be found at any point by taking one point as a reference and calculating the work needed to move a charge to the other point.

Gravitational potential energy and electric potential energy are quite analogous. Potential energy accounts for work done by a conservative force and gives added insight regarding energy and energy transformation

without the necessity of dealing with the force directly. It is much more common, for example, to use the concept of voltage (related to electric potential energy) than to deal with the Coulomb force directly.

Calculating the work directly is generally difficult, since $W = \text{Fd}\cos\theta$ and the direction and magnitude of F can be complex for multiple charges, for odd-shaped objects, and along arbitrary paths. But we do know that, since $F = \text{qE}$, the work, and hence ΔPE, is proportional to the test charge q. To have a physical quantity that is independent of test charge, we define **electric potential** V (or simply potential, since electric is understood) to be the potential energy per unit charge:

Equation:

$$V = \frac{\text{PE}}{q}.$$

Note:

Electric Potential

This is the electric potential energy per unit charge.

Equation:

$$V = \frac{\text{PE}}{q}$$

Since PE is proportional to q , the dependence on q cancels. Thus V does not depend on q. The change in potential energy ΔPE is crucial, and so we are concerned with the difference in potential or potential difference ΔV between two points, where

Equation:

$$\Delta V = V_{\text{B}} - V_{\text{A}} = \frac{\Delta\text{PE}}{q}.$$

The **potential difference** between points A and B, $V_{\text{B}} - V_{\text{A}}$, is thus defined to be the change in potential energy of a charge q moved from A to B, divided by the charge. Units of potential difference are joules per coulomb, given the name volt (V) after Alessandro Volta.

Equation:

$$1\ \text{V} = 1\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{C}}$$

Note:

Potential Difference

The potential difference between points A and B, $V_{\text{B}} - V_{\text{A}}$, is defined to be the change in potential energy of a charge q moved from A to B, divided by the charge. Units of potential difference are joules per coulomb, given the name volt (V) after Alessandro Volta.

Equation:

$$1\ \text{V} = 1\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{C}}$$

The familiar term **voltage** is the common name for potential difference. Keep in mind that whenever a voltage is quoted, it is understood to be the potential difference between two points. For example, every battery has two terminals, and its voltage is the potential difference between them. More fundamentally, the point you choose to be zero volts is arbitrary. This is analogous to the fact that gravitational potential energy has an arbitrary zero, such as sea level or perhaps a lecture hall floor.

In summary, the relationship between potential difference (or voltage) and electrical potential energy is given by

Equation:

$$\Delta V = \frac{\Delta \mathrm{PE}}{q} \text{ and } \Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V.$$

Note:
Potential Difference and Electrical Potential Energy
The relationship between potential difference (or voltage) and electrical potential energy is given by
Equation:

$$\Delta V = \frac{\Delta \mathrm{PE}}{q} \text{ and } \Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V.$$

The second equation is equivalent to the first.

Voltage is not the same as energy. Voltage is the energy per unit charge. Thus a motorcycle battery and a car battery can both have the same voltage (more precisely, the same potential difference between battery terminals), yet one stores much more energy than the other since $\Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V$. The car battery can move more charge than the motorcycle battery, although both are 12 V batteries.

Example:
Calculating Energy
Suppose you have a 12.0 V motorcycle battery that can move 5000 C of charge, and a 12.0 V car battery that can move 60,000 C of charge. How much energy does each deliver? (Assume that the numerical value of each charge is accurate to three significant figures.)
Strategy
To say we have a 12.0 V battery means that its terminals have a 12.0 V potential difference. When such a battery moves charge, it puts the charge

through a potential difference of 12.0 V, and the charge is given a change in potential energy equal to $\Delta\text{PE} = q\Delta V$.
So to find the energy output, we multiply the charge moved by the potential difference.
Solution
For the motorcycle battery, $q = 5000\ \text{C}$ and $\Delta V = 12.0\ \text{V}$. The total energy delivered by the motorcycle battery is
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll}\Delta\text{PE}_{\text{cycle}} & = & (5000\ \text{C})(12.0\ \text{V}) \\ & = & (5000\ \text{C})(12.0\ \text{J/C}) \\ & = & 6.00 \times 10^{4}\ \text{J.}\end{array}$$

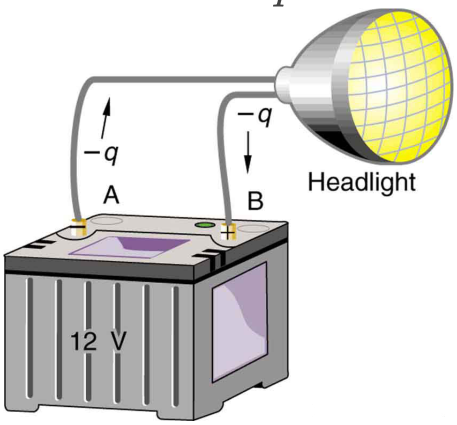
Similarly, for the car battery, $q = 60{,}000\ \text{C}$ and
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll}\Delta\text{PE}_{\text{car}} & = & (60{,}000\ \text{C})(12.0\ \text{V}) \\ & = & 7.20 \times 10^{5}\ \text{J.}\end{array}$$

Discussion
While voltage and energy are related, they are not the same thing. The voltages of the batteries are identical, but the energy supplied by each is quite different. Note also that as a battery is discharged, some of its energy is used internally and its terminal voltage drops, such as when headlights dim because of a low car battery. The energy supplied by the battery is still calculated as in this example, but not all of the energy is available for external use.

Note that the energies calculated in the previous example are absolute values. The change in potential energy for the battery is negative, since it loses energy. These batteries, like many electrical systems, actually move negative charge—electrons in particular. The batteries repel electrons from their negative terminals (A) through whatever circuitry is involved and attract them to their positive terminals (B) as shown in [link]. The change in potential is $\Delta V = V_{\text{B}} - V_{\text{A}} = +12\ \text{V}$ and the charge q is negative, so that

$\Delta\text{PE} = q\Delta V$ is negative, meaning the potential energy of the battery has decreased when q has moved from A to B.



A battery moves negative charge from its negative terminal through a headlight to its positive terminal. Appropriate combinations of chemicals in the battery separate charges so that the negative terminal has an excess of negative charge, which is repelled by it and attracted to the excess positive charge on the other terminal. In terms of potential, the positive terminal is at a higher voltage than the negative. Inside the battery, both positive and negative charges move.

Example:
How Many Electrons Move through a Headlight Each Second?
When a 12.0 V car battery runs a single 30.0 W headlight, how many electrons pass through it each second?
Strategy
To find the number of electrons, we must first find the charge that moved in 1.00 s. The charge moved is related to voltage and energy through the equation $\Delta \text{PE} = q\Delta V$. A 30.0 W lamp uses 30.0 joules per second. Since the battery loses energy, we have $\Delta \text{PE} = –30.0 \text{ J}$ and, since the electrons are going from the negative terminal to the positive, we see that $\Delta V = +12.0 \text{ V}$.
Solution
To find the charge q moved, we solve the equation $\Delta \text{PE} = q\Delta V$:
Equation:

$$q = \frac{\Delta \text{PE}}{\Delta V}.$$

Entering the values for ΔPE and ΔV, we get
Equation:

$$q = \frac{–30.0 \text{ J}}{+12.0 \text{ V}} = \frac{–30.0 \text{ J}}{+12.0 \text{ J/C}} = –2.50 \text{ C}.$$

The number of electrons n_e is the total charge divided by the charge per electron. That is,
Equation:

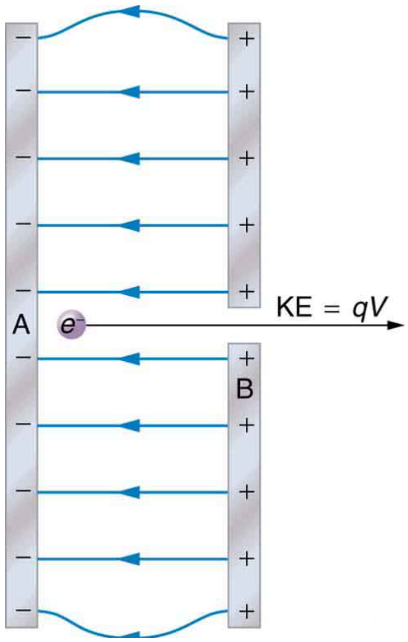
$$\text{n}_\text{e} = \frac{–2.50 \text{ C}}{–1.60 \times 10^{–19} \text{ C/e}^{–}} = 1.56 \times 10^{19} \text{ electrons}.$$

Discussion
This is a very large number. It is no wonder that we do not ordinarily observe individual electrons with so many being present in ordinary

systems. In fact, electricity had been in use for many decades before it was determined that the moving charges in many circumstances were negative. Positive charge moving in the opposite direction of negative charge often produces identical effects; this makes it difficult to determine which is moving or whether both are moving.

The Electron Volt

The energy per electron is very small in macroscopic situations like that in the previous example—a tiny fraction of a joule. But on a submicroscopic scale, such energy per particle (electron, proton, or ion) can be of great importance. For example, even a tiny fraction of a joule can be great enough for these particles to destroy organic molecules and harm living tissue. The particle may do its damage by direct collision, or it may create harmful x rays, which can also inflict damage. It is useful to have an energy unit related to submicroscopic effects. [link] shows a situation related to the definition of such an energy unit. An electron is accelerated between two charged metal plates as it might be in an old-model television tube or oscilloscope. The electron is given kinetic energy that is later converted to another form—light in the television tube, for example. (Note that downhill for the electron is uphill for a positive charge.) Since energy is related to voltage by $\Delta\mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V$, we can think of the joule as a coulomb-volt.



A typical electron gun accelerates electrons using a potential difference between two metal plates. The energy of the electron in electron volts is numerically the same as the voltage between the plates. For example, a 5000 V potential difference produces 5000 eV electrons.

On the submicroscopic scale, it is more convenient to define an energy unit called the **electron volt** (eV), which is the energy given to a fundamental charge accelerated through a potential difference of 1 V. In equation form,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ eV} &= \left(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C}\right)(1 \text{ V}) = \left(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C}\right)(1 \text{ J/C}) \\ &= 1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J.} \end{aligned}$$

Note:
Electron Volt
On the submicroscopic scale, it is more convenient to define an energy unit called the electron volt (eV), which is the energy given to a fundamental charge accelerated through a potential difference of 1 V. In equation form,
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ eV} &= \left(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C}\right)(1 \text{ V}) = \left(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C}\right)(1 \text{ J/C}) \\ &= 1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J.} \end{aligned}$$

An electron accelerated through a potential difference of 1 V is given an energy of 1 eV. It follows that an electron accelerated through 50 V is given 50 eV. A potential difference of 100,000 V (100 kV) will give an electron an energy of 100,000 eV (100 keV), and so on. Similarly, an ion with a double positive charge accelerated through 100 V will be given 200 eV of energy. These simple relationships between accelerating voltage and particle charges make the electron volt a simple and convenient energy unit in such circumstances.

Note:
Connections: Energy Units
The electron volt (eV) is the most common energy unit for submicroscopic processes. This will be particularly noticeable in the chapters on modern physics. Energy is so important to so many subjects that there is a tendency to define a special energy unit for each major topic. There are, for example,

calories for food energy, kilowatt-hours for electrical energy, and therms for natural gas energy.

The electron volt is commonly employed in submicroscopic processes—chemical valence energies and molecular and nuclear binding energies are among the quantities often expressed in electron volts. For example, about 5 eV of energy is required to break up certain organic molecules. If a proton is accelerated from rest through a potential difference of 30 kV, it is given an energy of 30 keV (30,000 eV) and it can break up as many as 6000 of these molecules ($30{,}000\text{ eV} \div 5\text{ eV per molecule} = 6000\text{ molecules}$). Nuclear decay energies are on the order of 1 MeV (1,000,000 eV) per event and can, thus, produce significant biological damage.

Conservation of Energy

The total energy of a system is conserved if there is no net addition (or subtraction) of work or heat transfer. For conservative forces, such as the electrostatic force, conservation of energy states that mechanical energy is a constant.

Mechanical energy is the sum of the kinetic energy and potential energy of a system; that is, $\text{KE} + \text{PE} = \text{constant}$. A loss of PE of a charged particle becomes an increase in its KE. Here PE is the electric potential energy. Conservation of energy is stated in equation form as

Equation:

$$\text{KE} + \text{PE} = \text{constant}$$

or

Equation:

$$\text{KE}_\text{i} + \text{PE}_\text{i} = \text{KE}_\text{f} + \text{PE}_\text{f},$$

where i and f stand for initial and final conditions. As we have found many times before, considering energy can give us insights and facilitate problem solving.

Example:
Electrical Potential Energy Converted to Kinetic Energy
Calculate the final speed of a free electron accelerated from rest through a potential difference of 100 V. (Assume that this numerical value is accurate to three significant figures.)
Strategy
We have a system with only conservative forces. Assuming the electron is accelerated in a vacuum, and neglecting the gravitational force (we will check on this assumption later), all of the electrical potential energy is converted into kinetic energy. We can identify the initial and final forms of energy to be $\mathrm{KE_i} = 0$, $\mathrm{KE_f} = ½\, mv^2$, $\mathrm{PE_i} = qV$, and $\mathrm{PE_f} = 0$.
Solution
Conservation of energy states that
Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}.$$

Entering the forms identified above, we obtain
Equation:

$$qV = \frac{mv^2}{2}.$$

We solve this for *v:*
Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2\mathrm{qV}}{m}}.$$

Entering values for q, V, and m gives
Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
v &= \sqrt{\frac{2\left(-1.60\times10^{-19}\ \text{C}\right)\left(-100\ \text{J/C}\right)}{9.11\times10^{-31}\ \text{kg}}} \\
&= 5.93 \times 10^{6}\ \text{m/s}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Discussion
Note that both the charge and the initial voltage are negative, as in [link]. From the discussions in Electric Charge and Electric Field, we know that electrostatic forces on small particles are generally very large compared with the gravitational force. The large final speed confirms that the gravitational force is indeed negligible here. The large speed also indicates how easy it is to accelerate electrons with small voltages because of their very small mass. Voltages much higher than the 100 V in this problem are typically used in electron guns. Those higher voltages produce electron speeds so great that relativistic effects must be taken into account. That is why a low voltage is considered (accurately) in this example.

Section Summary

- Electric potential is potential energy per unit charge.
- The potential difference between points A and B, $V_B - V_A$, defined to be the change in potential energy of a charge q moved from A to B, is equal to the change in potential energy divided by the charge, Potential difference is commonly called voltage, represented by the symbol ΔV.
  Equation:

$$\Delta V = \frac{\Delta \text{PE}}{q} \text{ and } \Delta \text{PE} = q\Delta V.$$

- An electron volt is the energy given to a fundamental charge accelerated through a potential difference of 1 V. In equation form,
  Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
1\ \text{eV} &= \left(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}\right)\left(1\ \text{V}\right) = \left(1.60\times10^{-19}\ \text{C}\right)\left(1\ \text{J/C}\right) \\
&= 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}.
\end{aligned}
$$

- Mechanical energy is the sum of the kinetic energy and potential energy of a system, that is, $\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE}$. This sum is a constant.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Voltage is the common word for potential difference. Which term is more descriptive, voltage or potential difference?

Exercise:

Problem:

If the voltage between two points is zero, can a test charge be moved between them with zero net work being done? Can this necessarily be done without exerting a force? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the relationship between voltage and energy? More precisely, what is the relationship between potential difference and electric potential energy?

Exercise:

Problem: Voltages are always measured between two points. Why?

Exercise:

Problem:

How are units of volts and electron volts related? How do they differ?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the ratio of speeds of an electron and a negative hydrogen ion (one having an extra electron) accelerated through the same voltage, assuming non-relativistic final speeds. Take the mass of the hydrogen ion to be 1.67×10^{-27} kg.

Solution:

42.8

Exercise:

Problem:

An evacuated tube uses an accelerating voltage of 40 kV to accelerate electrons to hit a copper plate and produce x rays. Non-relativistically, what would be the maximum speed of these electrons?

Exercise:

Problem:

A bare helium nucleus has two positive charges and a mass of 6.64×10^{-27} kg. (a) Calculate its kinetic energy in joules at 2.00% of the speed of light. (b) What is this in electron volts? (c) What voltage would be needed to obtain this energy?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Singly charged gas ions are accelerated from rest through a voltage of 13.0 V. At what temperature will the average kinetic energy of gas molecules be the same as that given these ions?

Solution:

1.00×10^{5} K

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The temperature near the center of the Sun is thought to be 15 million degrees Celsius $\left(1.5\times10^{7}\ {}^{\mathrm{o}}\mathrm{C}\right)$. Through what voltage must a singly charged ion be accelerated to have the same energy as the average kinetic energy of ions at this temperature?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) What is the average power output of a heart defibrillator that dissipates 400 J of energy in 10.0 ms? (b) Considering the high-power output, why doesn't the defibrillator produce serious burns?

Solution:

(a) $4\times10^{4}\ \mathrm{W}$

(b) A defibrillator does not cause serious burns because the skin conducts electricity well at high voltages, like those used in defibrillators. The gel used aids in the transfer of energy to the body, and the skin doesn't absorb the energy, but rather lets it pass through to the heart.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A lightning bolt strikes a tree, moving 20.0 C of charge through a potential difference of $1.00 \times 10^{2}\ \mathrm{MV}$. (a) What energy was dissipated? (b) What mass of water could be raised from $15^{\mathrm{o}}\mathrm{C}$ to the boiling point and then boiled by this energy? (c) Discuss the damage that could be caused to the tree by the expansion of the boiling steam.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A 12.0 V battery-operated bottle warmer heats 50.0 g of glass, 2.50×10^2 g of baby formula, and 2.00×10^2 g of aluminum from $20.0^{\circ}C$ to $90.0^{\circ}C$. (a) How much charge is moved by the battery? (b) How many electrons per second flow if it takes 5.00 min to warm the formula? (Hint: Assume that the specific heat of baby formula is about the same as the specific heat of water.)

Solution:

(a) $7.40{\times}10^3\ \text{C}$

(b) $1.54{\times}10^{20}$ electrons per second

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A battery-operated car utilizes a 12.0 V system. Find the charge the batteries must be able to move in order to accelerate the 750 kg car from rest to 25.0 m/s, make it climb a 2.00×10^2 m high hill, and then cause it to travel at a constant 25.0 m/s by exerting a 5.00×10^2 N force for an hour.

Solution:

$3.89{\times}10^6\ \text{C}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Fusion probability is greatly enhanced when appropriate nuclei are brought close together, but mutual Coulomb repulsion must be overcome. This can be done using the kinetic energy of high-temperature gas ions or by accelerating the nuclei toward one another.

(a) Calculate the potential energy of two singly charged nuclei separated by 1.00×10^{-12} m by finding the voltage of one at that distance and multiplying by the charge of the other. (b) At what temperature will atoms of a gas have an average kinetic energy equal to this needed electrical potential energy?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Find the voltage near a 10.0 cm diameter metal sphere that has 8.00 C of excess positive charge on it. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Solution:

(a) 1.44×10^{12} V

(b) This voltage is very high. A 10.0 cm diameter sphere could never maintain this voltage; it would discharge.

(c) An 8.00 C charge is more charge than can reasonably be accumulated on a sphere of that size.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a battery used to supply energy to a cellular phone. Construct a problem in which you determine the energy that must be supplied by the battery, and then calculate the amount of charge it must be able to move in order to supply this energy. Among the things to be considered are the energy needs and battery voltage. You may need to look ahead to interpret manufacturer’s battery ratings in ampere-hours as energy in joules.

Glossary

electric potential
potential energy per unit charge

potential difference (or voltage)
change in potential energy of a charge moved from one point to another, divided by the charge; units of potential difference are joules per coulomb, known as volt

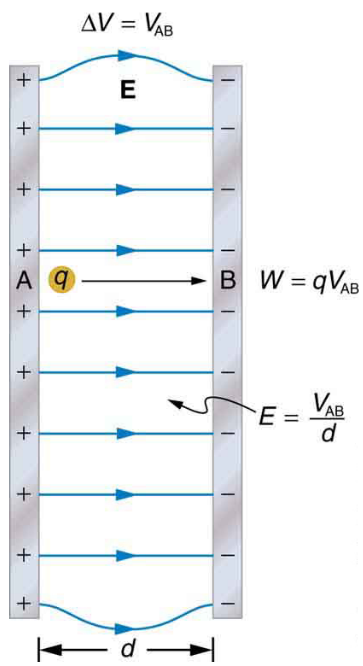
electron volt
the energy given to a fundamental charge accelerated through a potential difference of one volt

mechanical energy
sum of the kinetic energy and potential energy of a system; this sum is a constant

Electric Potential in a Uniform Electric Field

- Describe the relationship between voltage and electric field.
- Derive an expression for the electric potential and electric field.
- Calculate electric field strength given distance and voltage.

In the previous section, we explored the relationship between voltage and energy. In this section, we will explore the relationship between voltage and electric field. For example, a uniform electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is produced by placing a potential difference (or voltage) ΔV across two parallel metal plates, labeled A and B. (See [link].) Examining this will tell us what voltage is needed to produce a certain electric field strength; it will also reveal a more fundamental relationship between electric potential and electric field. From a physicist's point of view, either ΔV or $\mathbf{E}$ can be used to describe any charge distribution. ΔV is most closely tied to energy, whereas $\mathbf{E}$ is most closely related to force. ΔV is a **scalar** quantity and has no direction, while $\mathbf{E}$ is a **vector** quantity, having both magnitude and direction. (Note that the magnitude of the electric field strength, a scalar quantity, is represented by E below.) The relationship between ΔV and $\mathbf{E}$ is revealed by calculating the work done by the force in moving a charge from point A to point B. But, as noted in Electric Potential Energy: Potential Difference, this is complex for arbitrary charge distributions, requiring calculus. We therefore look at a uniform electric field as an interesting special case.



The relationship between V and E for parallel conducting plates is $E = V/d$. (Note that $\Delta V = V_{\text{AB}}$ in magnitude. For a charge that is moved from plate A at higher potential to plate B at lower potential, a minus sign needs to be included as follows: $-\Delta\, V = V_{\text{A}} - V_{\text{B}} = V_{\text{AB}}$. See the text for details.)

The work done by the electric field in [link] to move a positive charge q from A, the positive plate, higher potential, to B, the negative plate, lower potential, is

Equation:

$$W = -\Delta \text{PE} = -q\Delta V.$$

The potential difference between points A and B is
Equation:

$$-\Delta V = -(V_{\text{B}} - V_{\text{A}}) = V_{\text{A}} - V_{\text{B}} = V_{\text{AB}}.$$

Entering this into the expression for work yields
Equation:

$$W = qV_{\text{AB}}.$$

Work is $W = Fd \cos \theta$; here $\cos \theta = 1$, since the path is parallel to the field, and so $W = Fd$. Since $F = qE$, we see that $W = qEd$. Substituting this expression for work into the previous equation gives
Equation:

$$qEd = qV_{\text{AB}}.$$

The charge cancels, and so the voltage between points A and B is seen to be
Equation:

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} V_{\text{AB}} = Ed \\ E = \frac{V_{\text{AB}}}{d} \end{array}\right\} (\text{uniform } E \text{ - field only}),$$

where d is the distance from A to B, or the distance between the plates in [link]. Note that the above equation implies the units for electric field are volts per meter. We already know the units for electric field are newtons per coulomb; thus the following relation among units is valid:
Equation:

$$1 \text{ N/C} = 1 \text{ V/m}.$$

Note:
Voltage between Points A and B
Equation:

$$\left.\begin{array}{c} V_{\mathrm{AB}} = Ed \\ E = \frac{V_{\mathrm{AB}}}{d} \end{array}\right\}(\text{uniform } E \text{ - field only}),$$

where d is the distance from A to B, or the distance between the plates.

Example:
What Is the Highest Voltage Possible between Two Plates?
Dry air will support a maximum electric field strength of about $3.0 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{V/m}$. Above that value, the field creates enough ionization in the air to make the air a conductor. This allows a discharge or spark that reduces the field. What, then, is the maximum voltage between two parallel conducting plates separated by 2.5 cm of dry air?
Strategy
We are given the maximum electric field E between the plates and the distance d between them. The equation $V_{\mathrm{AB}} = Ed$ can thus be used to calculate the maximum voltage.
Solution
The potential difference or voltage between the plates is
Equation:

$$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{AB}} = Ed.$$

Entering the given values for E and d gives
Equation:

$$V_{\mathrm{AB}} = (3.0 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{V/m})(0.025\ \mathrm{m}) = 7.5 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{V}$$

or
Equation:

$$V_{\mathrm{AB}} = 75\ \mathrm{kV}.$$

(The answer is quoted to only two digits, since the maximum field strength is approximate.)

Discussion

One of the implications of this result is that it takes about 75 kV to make a spark jump across a 2.5 cm (1 in.) gap, or 150 kV for a 5 cm spark. This limits the voltages that can exist between conductors, perhaps on a power transmission line. A smaller voltage will cause a spark if there are points on the surface, since points create greater fields than smooth surfaces. Humid air breaks down at a lower field strength, meaning that a smaller voltage will make a spark jump through humid air. The largest voltages can be built up, say with static electricity, on dry days.

A spark chamber is used to trace the paths of high-energy particles. Ionization created by the particles as they pass through the gas between the plates allows a spark to jump. The sparks are

perpendicular to the plates, following electric field lines between them. The potential difference between adjacent plates is not high enough to cause sparks without the ionization produced by particles from accelerator experiments (or cosmic rays). (credit: Daderot, Wikimedia Commons)

Example:
Field and Force inside an Electron Gun
(a) An electron gun has parallel plates separated by 4.00 cm and gives electrons 25.0 keV of energy. What is the electric field strength between the plates? (b) What force would this field exert on a piece of plastic with a $0.500\ \mu\text{C}$ charge that gets between the plates?
Strategy
Since the voltage and plate separation are given, the electric field strength can be calculated directly from the expression $E = \frac{V_{\text{AB}}}{d}$. Once the electric field strength is known, the force on a charge is found using $\mathbf{F} = q\,\mathbf{E}$. Since the electric field is in only one direction, we can write this equation in terms of the magnitudes, $F = q\,E$.
Solution for (a)
The expression for the magnitude of the electric field between two uniform metal plates is

Equation:

$$E = \frac{V_{\text{AB}}}{d}.$$

Since the electron is a single charge and is given 25.0 keV of energy, the potential difference must be 25.0 kV. Entering this value for V_{AB} and the plate separation of 0.0400 m, we obtain

Equation:

$$E = \frac{25.0\text{ kV}}{0.0400\text{ m}} = 6.25 \times 10^{5}\text{ V/m}.$$

Solution for (b)

The magnitude of the force on a charge in an electric field is obtained from the equation

Equation:

$$F = qE.$$

Substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$F = (0.500 \times 10^{-6}\text{ C})(6.25 \times 10^{5}\text{ V/m}) = 0.313\text{ N}.$$

Discussion

Note that the units are newtons, since $1\text{ V/m} = 1\text{ N/C}$. The force on the charge is the same no matter where the charge is located between the plates. This is because the electric field is uniform between the plates.

In more general situations, regardless of whether the electric field is uniform, it points in the direction of decreasing potential, because the force on a positive charge is in the direction of $\mathbf{E}$ and also in the direction of lower potential V. Furthermore, the magnitude of $\mathbf{E}$ equals the rate of decrease of V with distance. The faster V decreases over distance, the

greater the electric field. In equation form, the general relationship between voltage and electric field is

Equation:

$$E = -\frac{\Delta V}{\Delta s},$$

where Δs is the distance over which the change in potential, ΔV, takes place. The minus sign tells us that $\mathbf{E}$ points in the direction of decreasing potential. The electric field is said to be the *gradient* (as in grade or slope) of the electric potential.

Note:

Relationship between Voltage and Electric Field

In equation form, the general relationship between voltage and electric field is

Equation:

$$E = -\frac{\Delta V}{\Delta s},$$

where Δs is the distance over which the change in potential, ΔV, takes place. The minus sign tells us that $\mathbf{E}$ points in the direction of decreasing potential. The electric field is said to be the *gradient* (as in grade or slope) of the electric potential.

For continually changing potentials, ΔV and Δs become infinitesimals and differential calculus must be employed to determine the electric field.

Section Summary

- The voltage between points A and B is
  Equation:

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} V_{\mathrm{AB}} = Ed \\ E = \frac{V_{\mathrm{AB}}}{d} \end{array}\right\} (\text{uniform } E \text{ - field only}),$$

where d is the distance from A to B, or the distance between the plates.

- In equation form, the general relationship between voltage and electric field is
  Equation:

$$E = -\frac{\Delta V}{\Delta s},$$

where Δs is the distance over which the change in potential, ΔV, takes place. The minus sign tells us that $\mathbf{E}$ points in the direction of decreasing potential.) The electric field is said to be the *gradient* (as in grade or slope) of the electric potential.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss how potential difference and electric field strength are related. Give an example.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the strength of the electric field in a region where the electric potential is constant?

Exercise:

Problem:

Will a negative charge, initially at rest, move toward higher or lower potential? Explain why.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that units of V/m and N/C for electric field strength are indeed equivalent.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the strength of the electric field between two parallel conducting plates separated by 1.00 cm and having a potential difference (voltage) between them of 1.50×10^4 V?

Exercise:

Problem:

The electric field strength between two parallel conducting plates separated by 4.00 cm is $7.50 \times 10^4\ \text{V/m}$. (a) What is the potential difference between the plates? (b) The plate with the lowest potential is taken to be at zero volts. What is the potential 1.00 cm from that plate (and 3.00 cm from the other)?

Solution:

(a) $3.00\ \text{kV}$

(b) $750\ \text{V}$

Exercise:

Problem:

How far apart are two conducting plates that have an electric field strength of $4.50 \times 10^3\ \text{V/m}$ between them, if their potential difference is 15.0 kV?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Will the electric field strength between two parallel conducting plates exceed the breakdown strength for air ($3.0 \times 10^6 \text{ V/m}$) if the plates are separated by 2.00 mm and a potential difference of $5.0 \times 10^3 \text{ V}$ is applied? (b) How close together can the plates be with this applied voltage?

Solution:

(a) No. The electric field strength between the plates is $2.5 \times 10^6 \text{ V/m}$, which is lower than the breakdown strength for air ($3.0 \times 10^6 \text{ V/m}$).

(b) 1.7 mm

Exercise:

Problem:

The voltage across a membrane forming a cell wall is 80.0 mV and the membrane is 9.00 nm thick. What is the electric field strength? (The value is surprisingly large, but correct. Membranes are discussed in Capacitors and Dielectrics and Nerve Conduction—Electrocardiograms.) You may assume a uniform electric field.

Exercise:

Problem:

Membrane walls of living cells have surprisingly large electric fields across them due to separation of ions. (Membranes are discussed in some detail in Nerve Conduction—Electrocardiograms.) What is the voltage across an 8.00 nm–thick membrane if the electric field strength across it is 5.50 MV/m? You may assume a uniform electric field.

Solution:

44.0 mV

Exercise:

Problem:

Two parallel conducting plates are separated by 10.0 cm, and one of them is taken to be at zero volts. (a) What is the electric field strength between them, if the potential 8.00 cm from the zero volt plate (and 2.00 cm from the other) is 450 V? (b) What is the voltage between the plates?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the maximum potential difference between two parallel conducting plates separated by 0.500 cm of air, given the maximum sustainable electric field strength in air to be $3.0 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{V/m}$.

Solution:

$15\ \mathrm{kV}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A doubly charged ion is accelerated to an energy of 32.0 keV by the electric field between two parallel conducting plates separated by 2.00 cm. What is the electric field strength between the plates?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electron is to be accelerated in a uniform electric field having a strength of $2.00 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{V/m}$. (a) What energy in keV is given to the electron if it is accelerated through 0.400 m? (b) Over what distance would it have to be accelerated to increase its energy by 50.0 GeV?

Solution:

(a) 800 KeV

(b) 25.0 km

Glossary

scalar
: physical quantity with magnitude but no direction

vector
: physical quantity with both magnitude and direction

Electrical Potential Due to a Point Charge

- Explain point charges and express the equation for electric potential of a point charge.
- Distinguish between electric potential and electric field.
- Determine the electric potential of a point charge given charge and distance.

Point charges, such as electrons, are among the fundamental building blocks of matter. Furthermore, spherical charge distributions (like on a metal sphere) create external electric fields exactly like a point charge. The electric potential due to a point charge is, thus, a case we need to consider. Using calculus to find the work needed to move a test charge q from a large distance away to a distance of r from a point charge Q, and noting the connection between work and potential $(W = -q\Delta V)$, it can be shown that the *electric potential V of a point charge* is

Equation:

$$V = \frac{kQ}{r} \text{ (Point Charge)},$$

where *k* is a constant equal to $9.0 \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$.

Note:

Electric Potential V of a Point Charge

The electric potential V of a point charge is given by

Equation:

$$V = \frac{kQ}{r} \text{ (Point Charge)}.$$

The potential at infinity is chosen to be zero. Thus V for a point charge decreases with distance, whereas $\mathbf{E}$ for a point charge decreases with distance squared:

Equation:

$$E = \frac{F}{q} = \frac{kQ}{r^2}.$$

Recall that the electric potential V is a scalar and has no direction, whereas the electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is a vector. To find the voltage due to a combination of point charges, you add the individual voltages as numbers. To find the total electric field, you must add the individual fields as *vectors*, taking magnitude and direction into account. This is consistent with the fact that V is closely associated with energy, a scalar, whereas $\mathbf{E}$ is closely associated with force, a vector.

Example:

What Voltage Is Produced by a Small Charge on a Metal Sphere?

Charges in static electricity are typically in the nanocoulomb (nC) to microcoulomb $(\mu\mathrm{C})$ range. What is the voltage 5.00 cm away from the center of a 1-cm diameter metal sphere that has a $-3.00\ \mathrm{nC}$ static charge?

Strategy

As we have discussed in Electric Charge and Electric Field, charge on a metal sphere spreads out uniformly and produces a field like that of a point charge located at its center. Thus we can find the voltage using the equation $V = \mathrm{kQ}/r$.

Solution

Entering known values into the expression for the potential of a point charge, we obtain

Equation:

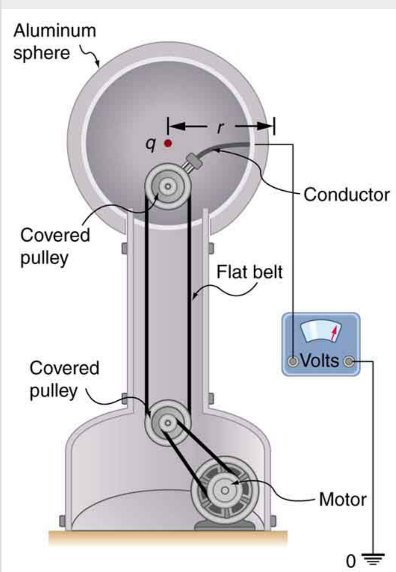
$$\begin{aligned} V &= k\frac{Q}{r} \\ &= \left(8.99 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2}\right)\left(\frac{-3.00\times10^{-9}\ \mathrm{C}}{5.00\times10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}}\right) \\ &= -539\ \mathrm{V}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

The negative value for voltage means a positive charge would be attracted from a larger distance, since the potential is lower (more negative) than at larger distances. Conversely, a negative charge would be repelled, as expected.

Example:
What Is the Excess Charge on a Van de Graaff Generator

A demonstration Van de Graaff generator has a 25.0 cm diameter metal sphere that produces a voltage of 100 kV near its surface. (See [link].) What excess charge resides on the sphere? (Assume that each numerical value here is shown with three significant figures.)



The voltage of this demonstration Van de Graaff generator is measured

between the charged sphere and ground. Earth's potential is taken to be zero as a reference. The potential of the charged conducting sphere is the same as that of an equal point charge at its center.

Strategy
The potential on the surface will be the same as that of a point charge at the center of the sphere, 12.5 cm away. (The radius of the sphere is 12.5 cm.) We can thus determine the excess charge using the equation
Equation:

$$V = \frac{\mathrm{kQ}}{r}.$$

Solution
Solving for Q and entering known values gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \frac{\mathrm{rV}}{k} \\ &= \frac{(0.125\ \mathrm{m})\left(100 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{V}\right)}{8.99 \times 10^{9}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2}} \\ &= 1.39 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{C} = 1.39\ \mu\mathrm{C}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This is a relatively small charge, but it produces a rather large voltage. We have another indication here that it is difficult to store isolated charges.

The voltages in both of these examples could be measured with a meter that compares the measured potential with ground potential. Ground potential is often taken to be zero (instead of taking the potential at infinity to be zero). It is the potential difference between two points that is of importance, and very often there is a tacit assumption that some reference point, such as Earth or a very distant point, is at zero potential. As noted in Electric Potential Energy: Potential Difference, this is analogous to taking sea level as $h = 0$ when considering gravitational potential energy, $\mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{g}} = \mathrm{mgh}$.

Section Summary

- Electric potential of a point charge is $V = \mathrm{kQ}/r$.
- Electric potential is a scalar, and electric field is a vector. Addition of voltages as numbers gives the voltage due to a combination of point charges, whereas addition of individual fields as vectors gives the total electric field.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

In what region of space is the potential due to a uniformly charged sphere the same as that of a point charge? In what region does it differ from that of a point charge?

Exercise:

Problem:

Can the potential of a non-uniformly charged sphere be the same as that of a point charge? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A 0.500 cm diameter plastic sphere, used in a static electricity demonstration, has a uniformly distributed 40.0 pC charge on its surface. What is the potential near its surface?

Solution:

144 V

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the potential 0.530×10^{-10} m from a proton (the average distance between the proton and electron in a hydrogen atom)?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A sphere has a surface uniformly charged with 1.00 C. At what distance from its center is the potential 5.00 MV? (b) What does your answer imply about the practical aspect of isolating such a large charge?

Solution:

(a) 1.80 km

(b) A charge of 1 C is a very large amount of charge; a sphere of radius 1.80 km is not practical.

Exercise:

Problem:

How far from a $1.00\ \mu\text{C}$ point charge will the potential be 100 V? At what distance will it be 2.00×10^{2} V?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the sign and magnitude of a point charge that produces a potential of $-2.00\ \text{V}$ at a distance of 1.00 mm?

Solution:

$-2.22 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{C}$

Exercise:

Problem:

If the potential due to a point charge is $5.00 \times 10^{2}\ \text{V}$ at a distance of 15.0 m, what are the sign and magnitude of the charge?

Exercise:

Problem:

In nuclear fission, a nucleus splits roughly in half. (a) What is the potential $2.00 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{m}$ from a fragment that has 46 protons in it? (b) What is the potential energy in MeV of a similarly charged fragment at this distance?

Solution:

(a) $3.31 \times 10^{6}\ \text{V}$

(b) 152 MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

A research Van de Graaff generator has a 2.00-m-diameter metal sphere with a charge of 5.00 mC on it. (a) What is the potential near its surface? (b) At what distance from its center is the potential 1.00 MV? (c) An oxygen atom with three missing electrons is released near the Van de Graaff generator. What is its energy in MeV at this distance?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electrostatic paint sprayer has a 0.200-m-diameter metal sphere at a potential of 25.0 kV that repels paint droplets onto a grounded object. (a) What charge is on the sphere? (b) What charge must a 0.100-mg drop of paint have to arrive at the object with a speed of 10.0 m/s?

Solution:

(a) 2.78×10^{-7} C

(b) 2.00×10^{-10} C

Exercise:

Problem:

In one of the classic nuclear physics experiments at the beginning of the 20th century, an alpha particle was accelerated toward a gold nucleus, and its path was substantially deflected by the Coulomb interaction. If the energy of the doubly charged alpha nucleus was 5.00 MeV, how close to the gold nucleus (79 protons) could it come before being deflected?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the potential between two points situated 10 cm and 20 cm from a $3.0\ \mu\text{C}$ point charge? (b) To what location should the point at 20 cm be moved to increase this potential difference by a factor of two?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) What is the final speed of an electron accelerated from rest through a voltage of 25.0 MV by a negatively charged Van de Graaff terminal?

(b) What is unreasonable about this result?

(c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Solution:

(a) $2.96 \times 10^9 \text{ m/s}$

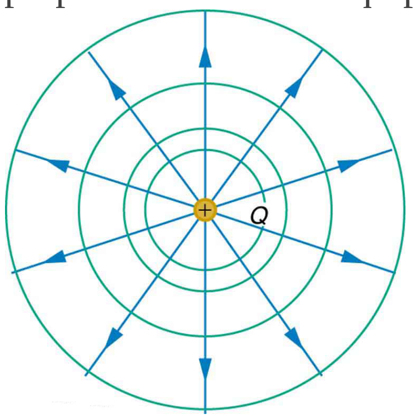
(b) This velocity is far too great. It is faster than the speed of light.

(c) The assumption that the speed of the electron is far less than that of light and that the problem does not require a relativistic treatment produces an answer greater than the speed of light.

Equipotential Lines

- Explain equipotential lines and equipotential surfaces.
- Describe the action of grounding an electrical appliance.
- Compare electric field and equipotential lines.

We can represent electric potentials (voltages) pictorially, just as we drew pictures to illustrate electric fields. Of course, the two are related. Consider [link], which shows an isolated positive point charge and its electric field lines. Electric field lines radiate out from a positive charge and terminate on negative charges. While we use blue arrows to represent the magnitude and direction of the electric field, we use green lines to represent places where the electric potential is constant. These are called **equipotential lines** in two dimensions, or *equipotential surfaces* in three dimensions. The term *equipotential* is also used as a noun, referring to an equipotential line or surface. The potential for a point charge is the same anywhere on an imaginary sphere of radius r surrounding the charge. This is true since the potential for a point charge is given by $V=\mathrm{k}Q/r$ and, thus, has the same value at any point that is a given distance r from the charge. An equipotential sphere is a circle in the two-dimensional view of [link]. Since the electric field lines point radially away from the charge, they are perpendicular to the equipotential lines.



An isolated point charge Q with its electric field lines in blue and equipotential lines

in green. The potential is the same along each equipotential line, meaning that no work is required to move a charge anywhere along one of those lines. Work is needed to move a charge from one equipotential line to another. Equipotential lines are perpendicular to electric field lines in every case.

It is important to note that *equipotential lines are always perpendicular to electric field lines*. No work is required to move a charge along an equipotential, since $\Delta V = 0$. Thus the work is

Equation:

$$W = -\Delta \text{ PE} = -q\Delta V = 0.$$

Work is zero if force is perpendicular to motion. Force is in the same direction as $\mathbf{E}$, so that motion along an equipotential must be perpendicular to $\mathbf{E}$. More precisely, work is related to the electric field by

Equation:

$$W = Fd \cos \theta = qEd \cos \theta = 0.$$

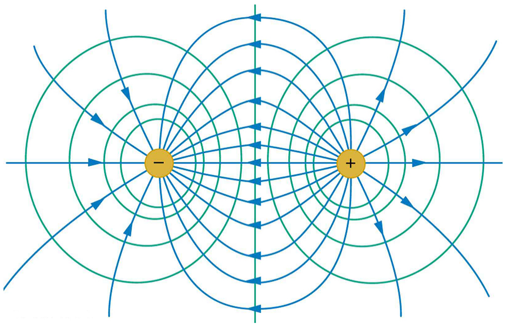
Note that in the above equation, E and F symbolize the magnitudes of the electric field strength and force, respectively. Neither q nor $\mathbf{E}$ nor d is zero, and so $\cos \theta$ must be 0, meaning θ must be 90°. In other words, motion along an equipotential is perpendicular to $\mathbf{E}$.

One of the rules for static electric fields and conductors is that the electric field must be perpendicular to the surface of any conductor. This implies that a *conductor is an equipotential surface in static situations*. There can be no voltage difference across the surface of a conductor, or charges will flow. One of the uses of this fact is that a conductor can be fixed at zero volts by connecting it to the earth with a good conductor—a process called **grounding**. Grounding can be a useful safety tool. For example, grounding the metal case of an electrical appliance ensures that it is at zero volts relative to the earth.

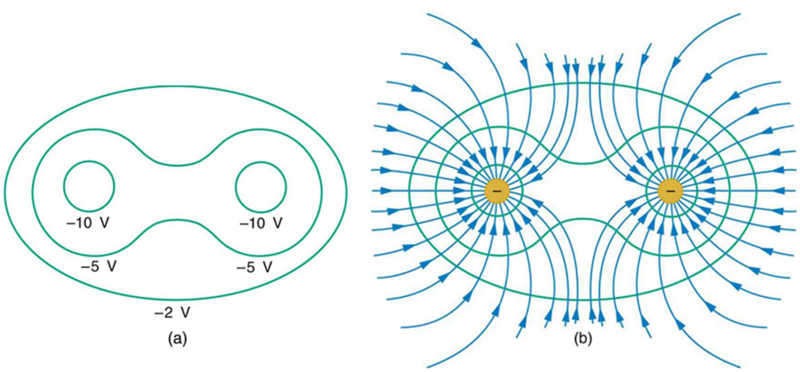
Note:
Grounding
A conductor can be fixed at zero volts by connecting it to the earth with a good conductor—a process called grounding.

Because a conductor is an equipotential, it can replace any equipotential surface. For example, in [link] a charged spherical conductor can replace the point charge, and the electric field and potential surfaces outside of it will be unchanged, confirming the contention that a spherical charge distribution is equivalent to a point charge at its center.

[link] shows the electric field and equipotential lines for two equal and opposite charges. Given the electric field lines, the equipotential lines can be drawn simply by making them perpendicular to the electric field lines. Conversely, given the equipotential lines, as in [link](a), the electric field lines can be drawn by making them perpendicular to the equipotentials, as in [link](b).



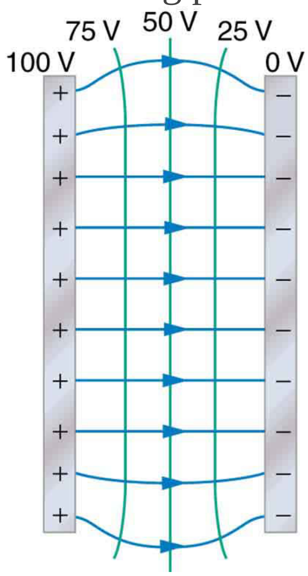
The electric field lines and equipotential lines for two equal but opposite charges. The equipotential lines can be drawn by making them perpendicular to the electric field lines, if those are known. Note that the potential is greatest (most positive) near the positive charge and least (most negative) near the negative charge.



(a) These equipotential lines might be measured with a voltmeter in a laboratory experiment. (b) The corresponding electric field lines are found by drawing them

perpendicular to the equipotentials. Note that these fields are consistent with two equal negative charges.

One of the most important cases is that of the familiar parallel conducting plates shown in [link]. Between the plates, the equipotentials are evenly spaced and parallel. The same field could be maintained by placing conducting plates at the equipotential lines at the potentials shown.



The electric field and equipotential lines between two metal plates.

An important application of electric fields and equipotential lines involves the heart. The heart relies on electrical signals to maintain its rhythm. The movement of electrical signals causes the chambers of the heart to contract and relax. When a person has a heart attack, the movement of these electrical signals may be disturbed. An artificial pacemaker and a

defibrillator can be used to initiate the rhythm of electrical signals. The equipotential lines around the heart, the thoracic region, and the axis of the heart are useful ways of monitoring the structure and functions of the heart. An electrocardiogram (ECG) measures the small electric signals being generated during the activity of the heart. More about the relationship between electric fields and the heart is discussed in Energy Stored in Capacitors.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Charges and Fields
Move point charges around on the playing field and then view the electric field, voltages, equipotential lines, and more. It's colorful, it's dynamic, it's free.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/charges-and-fields/latest/charges-and-fields_en.html

Section Summary

- An equipotential line is a line along which the electric potential is constant.
- An equipotential surface is a three-dimensional version of equipotential lines.
- Equipotential lines are always perpendicular to electric field lines.
- The process by which a conductor can be fixed at zero volts by connecting it to the earth with a good conductor is called grounding.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is an equipotential line? What is an equipotential surface?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain in your own words why equipotential lines and surfaces must be perpendicular to electric field lines.

Exercise:

Problem: Can different equipotential lines cross? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

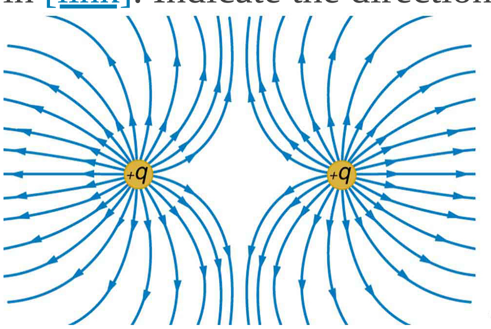
Problem:

(a) Sketch the equipotential lines near a point charge $+ q$. Indicate the direction of increasing potential. (b) Do the same for a point charge $-3\ q$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the equipotential lines for the two equal positive charges shown in [link]. Indicate the direction of increasing potential.



The electric field near two equal positive charges is directed away from each of the charges.

Exercise:

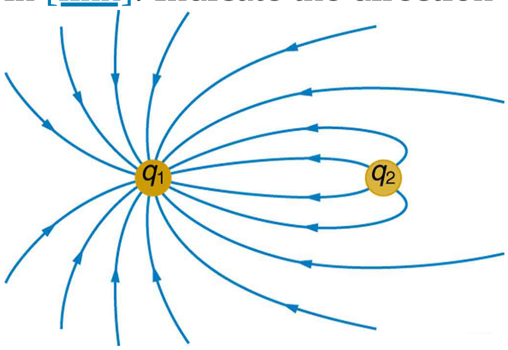
Problem:

[link] shows the electric field lines near two charges q_1 and q_2, the first having a magnitude four times that of the second. Sketch the equipotential lines for these two charges, and indicate the direction of increasing potential.

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the equipotential lines a long distance from the charges shown in [link]. Indicate the direction of increasing potential.



The electric field near two charges.

Exercise:

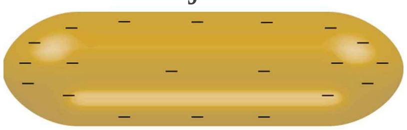
Problem:

Sketch the equipotential lines in the vicinity of two opposite charges, where the negative charge is three times as great in magnitude as the positive. See [link] for a similar situation. Indicate the direction of increasing potential.

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the equipotential lines in the vicinity of the negatively charged conductor in [link]. How will these equipotentials look a long distance from the object?

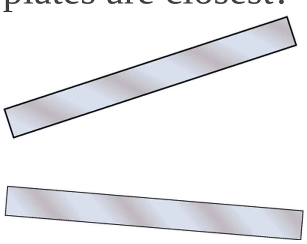


A negatively charged conductor.

Exercise:

Problem:

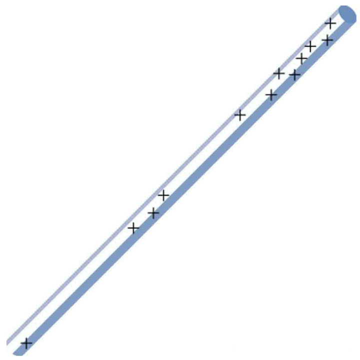
Sketch the equipotential lines surrounding the two conducting plates shown in [link], given the top plate is positive and the bottom plate has an equal amount of negative charge. Be certain to indicate the distribution of charge on the plates. Is the field strongest where the plates are closest? Why should it be?



Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of the charged insulator in [link]. Note its non-uniform charge distribution. (b) Sketch equipotential lines surrounding the insulator. Indicate the direction of increasing potential.



A charged insulating rod such as might be used in a classroom demonstration.

Exercise:

Problem:

The naturally occurring charge on the ground on a fine day out in the open country is $-1.00\ \mathrm{nC/m^2}$. (a) What is the electric field relative to ground at a height of 3.00 m? (b) Calculate the electric potential at this height. (c) Sketch electric field and equipotential lines for this scenario.

Exercise:

Problem:

The lesser electric ray (*Narcine bancroftii*) maintains an incredible charge on its head and a charge equal in magnitude but opposite in sign on its tail ([link]). (a) Sketch the equipotential lines surrounding the ray. (b) Sketch the equipotentials when the ray is near a ship with a conducting surface. (c) How could this charge distribution be of use to the ray?

Lesser electric ray (*Narcine bancroftii*) (credit: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, NOAA's Fisheries Collection).

Glossary

equipotential line
: a line along which the electric potential is constant

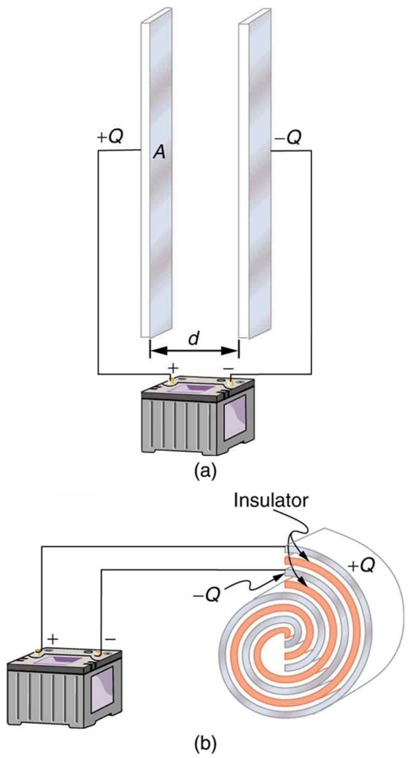
grounding
: fixing a conductor at zero volts by connecting it to the earth or ground

Capacitors and Dielectrics

- Describe the action of a capacitor and define capacitance.
- Explain parallel plate capacitors and their capacitances.
- Discuss the process of increasing the capacitance of a dielectric.
- Determine capacitance given charge and voltage.

A **capacitor** is a device used to store electric charge. Capacitors have applications ranging from filtering static out of radio reception to energy storage in heart defibrillators. Typically, commercial capacitors have two conducting parts close to one another, but not touching, such as those in [link]. (Most of the time an insulator is used between the two plates to provide separation—see the discussion on dielectrics below.) When battery terminals are connected to an initially uncharged capacitor, equal amounts of positive and negative charge, $+Q$ and $-Q$, are separated into its two plates. The capacitor remains neutral overall, but we refer to it as storing a charge Q in this circumstance.

Note:
Capacitor
A capacitor is a device used to store electric charge.

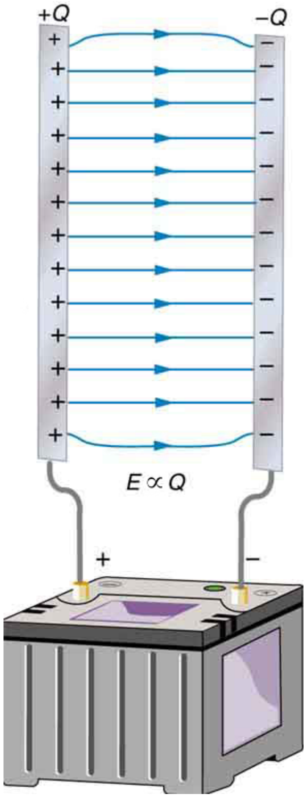


Both capacitors shown here were initially uncharged before being connected to a battery. They now have separated charges of $+Q$ and $-Q$ on their two halves. (a) A parallel plate capacitor. (b) A rolled capacitor with an insulating material between its two conducting sheets.

The amount of charge Q a *capacitor* can store depends on two major factors—the voltage applied and the capacitor’s physical characteristics, such as its size.

Note:
The Amount of Charge Q a Capacitor Can Store
The amount of charge Q a *capacitor* can store depends on two major factors—the voltage applied and the capacitor’s physical characteristics, such as its size.

A system composed of two identical, parallel conducting plates separated by a distance, as in [link], is called a **parallel plate capacitor**. It is easy to see the relationship between the voltage and the stored charge for a parallel plate capacitor, as shown in [link]. Each electric field line starts on an individual positive charge and ends on a negative one, so that there will be more field lines if there is more charge. (Drawing a single field line per charge is a convenience, only. We can draw many field lines for each charge, but the total number is proportional to the number of charges.) The electric field strength is, thus, directly proportional to Q.



Electric field lines in this parallel plate capacitor, as always, start on positive charges and end on negative charges. Since the electric field strength is proportional to the density of field lines, it is also proportional to the amount

of charge on
the capacitor.

The field is proportional to the charge:

Equation:

$$E \propto Q,$$

where the symbol $\propto$ means “proportional to.” From the discussion in Electric Potential in a Uniform Electric Field, we know that the voltage across parallel plates is $V = \text{Ed}$. Thus,

Equation:

$$V \propto E.$$

It follows, then, that $V \propto Q$, and conversely,

Equation:

$$Q \propto V.$$

This is true in general: The greater the voltage applied to any capacitor, the greater the charge stored in it.

Different capacitors will store different amounts of charge for the same applied voltage, depending on their physical characteristics. We define their **capacitance** C to be such that the charge Q stored in a capacitor is proportional to C. The charge stored in a capacitor is given by

Equation:

$$Q = \text{CV}.$$

This equation expresses the two major factors affecting the amount of charge stored. Those factors are the physical characteristics of the capacitor,

C, and the voltage, V. Rearranging the equation, we see that *capacitance* C *is the amount of charge stored per volt*, or
Equation:

$$C = \frac{Q}{V}.$$

Note:
Capacitance
Capacitance C is the amount of charge stored per volt, or
Equation:

$$C = \frac{Q}{V}.$$

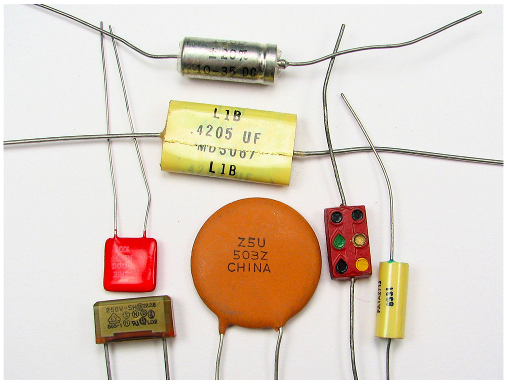
The unit of capacitance is the farad (F), named for Michael Faraday (1791–1867), an English scientist who contributed to the fields of electromagnetism and electrochemistry. Since capacitance is charge per unit voltage, we see that a farad is a coulomb per volt, or
Equation:

$$1\text{ F} = \frac{1\text{ C}}{1\text{ V}}.$$

A 1-farad capacitor would be able to store 1 coulomb (a very large amount of charge) with the application of only 1 volt. One farad is, thus, a very large capacitance. Typical capacitors range from fractions of a picofarad $\left(1\text{ pF} = 10^{-12}\text{ F}\right)$ to millifarads $\left(1\text{ mF} = 10^{-3}\text{ F}\right)$.

[link] shows some common capacitors. Capacitors are primarily made of ceramic, glass, or plastic, depending upon purpose and size. Insulating

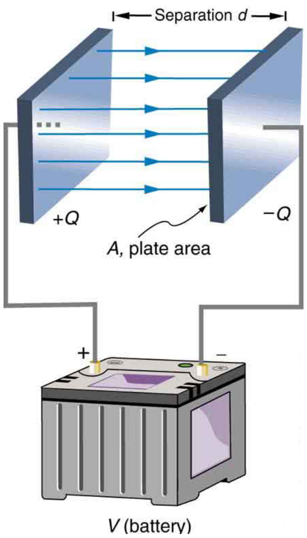
materials, called dielectrics, are commonly used in their construction, as discussed below.



Some typical capacitors. Size and value of capacitance are not necessarily related. (credit: Windell Oskay)

Parallel Plate Capacitor

The parallel plate capacitor shown in [link] has two identical conducting plates, each having a surface area A, separated by a distance d (with no material between the plates). When a voltage V is applied to the capacitor, it stores a charge Q, as shown. We can see how its capacitance depends on A and d by considering the characteristics of the Coulomb force. We know that like charges repel, unlike charges attract, and the force between charges decreases with distance. So it seems quite reasonable that the bigger the plates are, the more charge they can store—because the charges can spread out more. Thus C should be greater for larger A. Similarly, the closer the plates are together, the greater the attraction of the opposite charges on them. So C should be greater for smaller d.



Parallel plate capacitor with plates separated by a distance d. Each plate has an area A.

It can be shown that for a parallel plate capacitor there are only two factors (A and d) that affect its capacitance C. The capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor in equation form is given by

Equation:

$$C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}.$$

Note:

Capacitance of a Parallel Plate Capacitor

Equation:

$$C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}$$

A is the area of one plate in square meters, and d is the distance between the plates in meters. The constant ε_0 is the permittivity of free space; its numerical value in SI units is $\varepsilon_0 = 8.85 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{F/m}$. The units of F/m are equivalent to $\mathrm{C^2/N \cdot m^2}$. The small numerical value of ε_0 is related to the large size of the farad. A parallel plate capacitor must have a large area to have a capacitance approaching a farad. (Note that the above equation is valid when the parallel plates are separated by air or free space. When another material is placed between the plates, the equation is modified, as discussed below.)

Example:

Capacitance and Charge Stored in a Parallel Plate Capacitor

(a) What is the capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor with metal plates, each of area $1.00\ \mathrm{m}^2$, separated by 1.00 mm? (b) What charge is stored in this capacitor if a voltage of 3.00×10^3 V is applied to it?

Strategy

Finding the capacitance C is a straightforward application of the equation $C = \varepsilon_0 A/d$. Once C is found, the charge stored can be found using the equation $Q = \mathrm{CV}$.

Solution for (a)

Entering the given values into the equation for the capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} C &= \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d} = \left(8.85 \times 10^{-12} \frac{\mathrm{F}}{\mathrm{m}}\right) \frac{1.00\ \mathrm{m}^2}{1.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m}} \\ &= 8.85 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{F} = 8.85\ \mathrm{nF}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)

This small value for the capacitance indicates how difficult it is to make a device with a large capacitance. Special techniques help, such as using very large area thin foils placed close together.

Solution for (b)

The charge stored in any capacitor is given by the equation $Q = \text{CV}$. Entering the known values into this equation gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= CV = \left(8.85 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{F}\right)\left(3.00 \times 10^{3}\ \text{V}\right) \\ &= 26.6\ \mu\text{C}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (b)

This charge is only slightly greater than those found in typical static electricity. Since air breaks down at about $3.00 \times 10^{6}\ \text{V/m}$, more charge cannot be stored on this capacitor by increasing the voltage.

Another interesting biological example dealing with electric potential is found in the cell's plasma membrane. The membrane sets a cell off from its surroundings and also allows ions to selectively pass in and out of the cell. There is a potential difference across the membrane of about $–70\ \text{mV}$. This is due to the mainly negatively charged ions in the cell and the predominance of positively charged sodium (Na^{+}) ions outside. Things change when a nerve cell is stimulated. Na^{+} ions are allowed to pass through the membrane into the cell, producing a positive membrane potential—the nerve signal. The cell membrane is about 7 to 10 nm thick. An approximate value of the electric field across it is given by

Equation:

$$E = \frac{V}{d} = \frac{–70 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{V}}{8 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}} = –9 \times 10^{6}\ \text{V/m}.$$

This electric field is enough to cause a breakdown in air.

Dielectric

The previous example highlights the difficulty of storing a large amount of charge in capacitors. If d is made smaller to produce a larger capacitance, then the maximum voltage must be reduced proportionally to avoid breakdown (since $E = V/d$). An important solution to this difficulty is to put an insulating material, called a **dielectric**, between the plates of a capacitor and allow d to be as small as possible. Not only does the smaller d make the capacitance greater, but many insulators can withstand greater electric fields than air before breaking down.

There is another benefit to using a dielectric in a capacitor. Depending on the material used, the capacitance is greater than that given by the equation $C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}$ by a factor κ, called the *dielectric constant*. A parallel plate capacitor with a dielectric between its plates has a capacitance given by

Equation:

$$C = \kappa\varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d} \text{ (parallel plate capacitor with dielectric).}$$

Values of the dielectric constant κ for various materials are given in [link]. Note that κ for vacuum is exactly 1, and so the above equation is valid in that case, too. If a dielectric is used, perhaps by placing Teflon between the plates of the capacitor in [link], then the capacitance is greater by the factor κ, which for Teflon is 2.1.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment: Building a Capacitor

How large a capacitor can you make using a chewing gum wrapper? The plates will be the aluminum foil, and the separation (dielectric) in between will be the paper.

Material	Dielectric constant κ	Dielectric strength (V/m)
Vacuum	1.00000	—
Air	1.00059	3×10^6
Bakelite	4.9	24×10^6
Fused quartz	3.78	8×10^6
Neoprene rubber	6.7	12×10^6
Nylon	3.4	14×10^6
Paper	3.7	16×10^6
Polystyrene	2.56	24×10^6
Pyrex glass	5.6	14×10^6
Silicon oil	2.5	15×10^6
Strontium titanate	233	8×10^6
Teflon	2.1	60×10^6
Water	80	—

Dielectric Constants and Dielectric Strengths for Various Materials at 20ºC

Note also that the dielectric constant for air is very close to 1, so that air-filled capacitors act much like those with vacuum between their plates *except* that the air can become conductive if the electric field strength

becomes too great. (Recall that $E = V/d$ for a parallel plate capacitor.) Also shown in [link] are maximum electric field strengths in V/m, called **dielectric strengths**, for several materials. These are the fields above which the material begins to break down and conduct. The dielectric strength imposes a limit on the voltage that can be applied for a given plate separation. For instance, in [link], the separation is 1.00 mm, and so the voltage limit for air is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= E \cdot d \\ &= (3 \times 10^6 \text{ V/m})(1.00 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}) \\ &= 3000 \text{ V.} \end{aligned}$$

However, the limit for a 1.00 mm separation filled with Teflon is 60,000 V, since the dielectric strength of Teflon is 60×10^6 V/m. So the same capacitor filled with Teflon has a greater capacitance and can be subjected to a much greater voltage. Using the capacitance we calculated in the above example for the air-filled parallel plate capacitor, we find that the Teflon-filled capacitor can store a maximum charge of

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= CV \\ &= \kappa C_{\text{air}} V \\ &= (2.1)(8.85 \text{ nF})(6.0 \times 10^4 \text{ V}) \\ &= 1.1 \text{ mC.} \end{aligned}$$

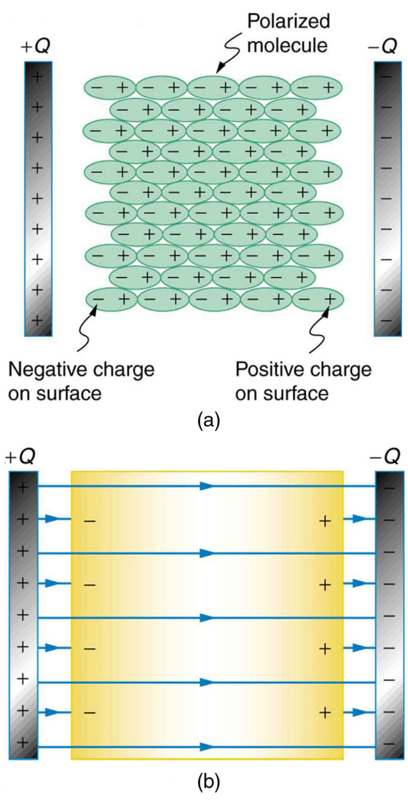
This is 42 times the charge of the same air-filled capacitor.

Note:

Dielectric Strength

The maximum electric field strength above which an insulating material begins to break down and conduct is called its dielectric strength.

Microscopically, how does a dielectric increase capacitance? Polarization of the insulator is responsible. The more easily it is polarized, the greater its dielectric constant κ. Water, for example, is a **polar molecule** because one end of the molecule has a slight positive charge and the other end has a slight negative charge. The polarity of water causes it to have a relatively large dielectric constant of 80. The effect of polarization can be best explained in terms of the characteristics of the Coulomb force. [link] shows the separation of charge schematically in the molecules of a dielectric material placed between the charged plates of a capacitor. The Coulomb force between the closest ends of the molecules and the charge on the plates is attractive and very strong, since they are very close together. This attracts more charge onto the plates than if the space were empty and the opposite charges were a distance d away.



(a) The molecules in the insulating material between

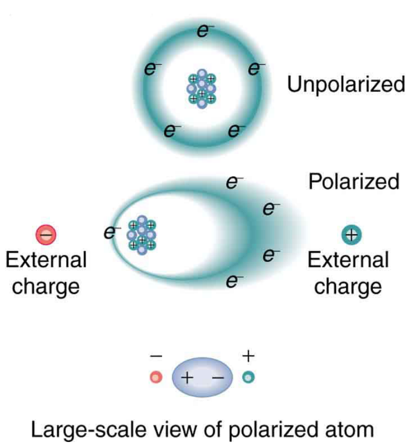
the plates of a capacitor are polarized by the charged plates. This produces a layer of opposite charge on the surface of the dielectric that attracts more charge onto the plate, increasing its capacitance. (b) The dielectric reduces the electric field strength inside the capacitor, resulting in a smaller voltage between the plates for the same charge. The capacitor stores the same charge for a smaller voltage, implying that it has a larger capacitance because of the dielectric.

Another way to understand how a dielectric increases capacitance is to consider its effect on the electric field inside the capacitor. [link](b) shows the electric field lines with a dielectric in place. Since the field lines end on charges in the dielectric, there are fewer of them going from one side of the capacitor to the other. So the electric field strength is less than if there were

a vacuum between the plates, even though the same charge is on the plates. The voltage between the plates is $V = \mathrm{E}\mathrm{d}$, so it too is reduced by the dielectric. Thus there is a smaller voltage V for the same charge Q; since $C = Q/V$, the capacitance C is greater.

The dielectric constant is generally defined to be $\kappa = E_0/E$, or the ratio of the electric field in a vacuum to that in the dielectric material, and is intimately related to the polarizability of the material.

Note:
Things Great and Small
The Submicroscopic Origin of Polarization
Polarization is a separation of charge within an atom or molecule. As has been noted, the planetary model of the atom pictures it as having a positive nucleus orbited by negative electrons, analogous to the planets orbiting the Sun. Although this model is not completely accurate, it is very helpful in explaining a vast range of phenomena and will be refined elsewhere, such as in Atomic Physics. The submicroscopic origin of polarization can be modeled as shown in [link].



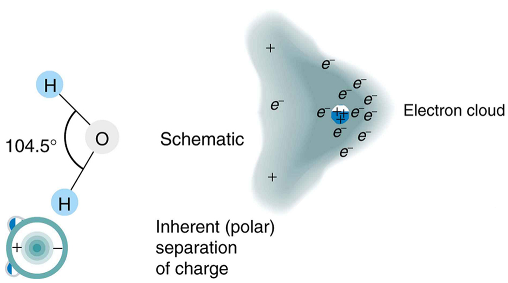
Artist’s conception of a polarized atom. The orbits of

electrons around the nucleus are shifted slightly by the external charges (shown exaggerated). The resulting separation of charge within the atom means that it is polarized. Note that the unlike charge is now closer to the external charges, causing the polarization.

We will find in Atomic Physics that the orbits of electrons are more properly viewed as electron clouds with the density of the cloud related to the probability of finding an electron in that location (as opposed to the definite locations and paths of planets in their orbits around the Sun). This cloud is shifted by the Coulomb force so that the atom on average has a separation of charge. Although the atom remains neutral, it can now be the source of a Coulomb force, since a charge brought near the atom will be closer to one type of charge than the other.

Some molecules, such as those of water, have an inherent separation of charge and are thus called polar molecules. [link] illustrates the separation of charge in a water molecule, which has two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom (H_2O). The water molecule is not symmetric—the hydrogen atoms are repelled to one side, giving the molecule a boomerang shape. The electrons in a water molecule are more concentrated around the more highly charged oxygen nucleus than around the hydrogen nuclei. This makes the oxygen end of the molecule slightly negative and leaves the hydrogen ends slightly positive. The inherent separation of charge in polar molecules

makes it easier to align them with external fields and charges. Polar molecules therefore exhibit greater polarization effects and have greater dielectric constants. Those who study chemistry will find that the polar nature of water has many effects. For example, water molecules gather ions much more effectively because they have an electric field and a separation of charge to attract charges of both signs. Also, as brought out in the previous chapter, polar water provides a shield or screening of the electric fields in the highly charged molecules of interest in biological systems.



Artist’s conception of a water molecule. There is an inherent separation of charge, and so water is a polar molecule. Electrons in the molecule are attracted to the oxygen nucleus and leave an excess of positive charge near the two hydrogen nuclei. (Note that the schematic on the right is a rough illustration of the distribution of electrons in the water molecule. It does not show the actual numbers of protons and electrons involved in the structure.)

Note:
PhET Explorations: Capacitor Lab
Explore how a capacitor works! Change the size of the plates and add a dielectric to see the effect on capacitance. Change the voltage and see charges built up on the plates. Observe the electric field in the capacitor. Measure the voltage and the electric field.

Capacitor Lab

Section Summary

- A capacitor is a device used to store charge.
- The amount of charge Q a capacitor can store depends on two major factors—the voltage applied and the capacitor's physical characteristics, such as its size.
- The capacitance C is the amount of charge stored per volt, or
  Equation:
  $$C = \frac{Q}{V}.$$
- The capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor is $C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}$, when the plates are separated by air or free space. ε_0 is called the permittivity of free space.
- A parallel plate capacitor with a dielectric between its plates has a capacitance given by
  Equation:

$$C = \kappa\varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d},$$

where κ is the dielectric constant of the material.

- The maximum electric field strength above which an insulating material begins to break down and conduct is called dielectric strength.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Does the capacitance of a device depend on the applied voltage? What about the charge stored in it?

Exercise:

Problem:

Use the characteristics of the Coulomb force to explain why capacitance should be proportional to the plate area of a capacitor. Similarly, explain why capacitance should be inversely proportional to the separation between plates.

Exercise:

Problem:

Give the reason why a dielectric material increases capacitance compared with what it would be with air between the plates of a capacitor. What is the independent reason that a dielectric material also allows a greater voltage to be applied to a capacitor? (The dielectric thus increases C and permits a greater V.)

Exercise:

Problem:

How does the polar character of water molecules help to explain water’s relatively large dielectric constant? ([link])

Exercise:

Problem:

Sparks will occur between the plates of an air-filled capacitor at lower voltage when the air is humid than when dry. Explain why, considering the polar character of water molecules.

Exercise:

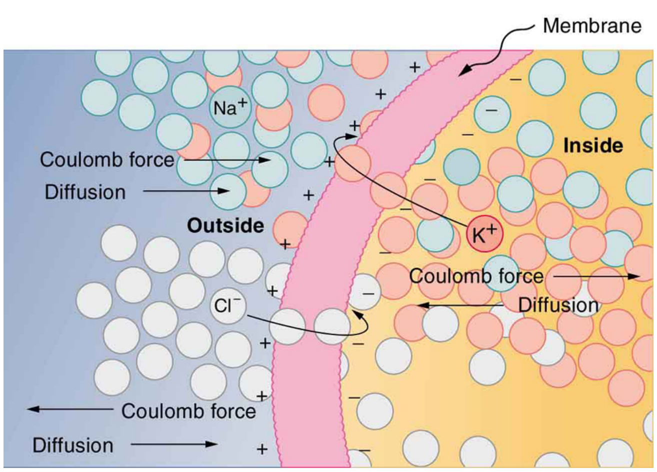
Problem:

Water has a large dielectric constant, but it is rarely used in capacitors. Explain why.

Exercise:

Problem:

Membranes in living cells, including those in humans, are characterized by a separation of charge across the membrane. Effectively, the membranes are thus charged capacitors with important functions related to the potential difference across the membrane. Is energy required to separate these charges in living membranes and, if so, is its source the metabolization of food energy or some other source?



The semipermeable membrane of a cell has different concentrations of ions inside and out. Diffusion moves the K^+ (potassium) and Cl^- (chloride) ions in the directions shown, until the Coulomb force halts further transfer. This results in a layer of positive charge on the outside, a layer of negative charge on the inside, and thus a voltage across the cell membrane. The membrane is normally impermeable to Na^+ (sodium ions).

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What charge is stored in a $180\ \mu F$ capacitor when 120 V is applied to it?

Solution:

$21.6\ mC$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the charge stored when 5.50 V is applied to an 8.00 pF capacitor.

Exercise:

Problem: What charge is stored in the capacitor in [link]?

Solution:

$80.0\ \text{mC}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the voltage applied to a $2.00\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor when it holds $3.10\ \mu\text{C}$ of charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

What voltage must be applied to an 8.00 nF capacitor to store 0.160 mC of charge?

Solution:

20.0 kV

Exercise:

Problem:

What capacitance is needed to store $3.00\ \mu\text{C}$ of charge at a voltage of 120 V?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the capacitance of a large Van de Graaff generator's terminal, given that it stores 8.00 mC of charge at a voltage of 12.0 MV?

Solution:

$667\ \text{pF}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor having plates of area $5.00\ \mathrm{m}^2$ that are separated by 0.100 mm of Teflon.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a)What is the capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor having plates of area $1.50\ \mathrm{m}^2$ that are separated by 0.0200 mm of neoprene rubber? (b) What charge does it hold when 9.00 V is applied to it?

Solution:

(a) $4.4\ \mu\mathrm{F}$

(b) $4.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{C}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A prankster applies 450 V to an $80.0\ \mu\mathrm{F}$ capacitor and then tosses it to an unsuspecting victim. The victim's finger is burned by the discharge of the capacitor through 0.200 g of flesh. What is the temperature increase of the flesh? Is it reasonable to assume no phase change?

Exercise:

Problem:Unreasonable Results

(a) A certain parallel plate capacitor has plates of area $4.00\ \mathrm{m}^2$, separated by 0.0100 mm of nylon, and stores 0.170 C of charge. What is the applied voltage? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 14.2 kV

(b) The voltage is unreasonably large, more than 100 times the breakdown voltage of nylon.

(c) The assumed charge is unreasonably large and cannot be stored in a capacitor of these dimensions.

Glossary

capacitor
: a device that stores electric charge

capacitance
: amount of charge stored per unit volt

dielectric
: an insulating material

dielectric strength
: the maximum electric field above which an insulating material begins to break down and conduct

parallel plate capacitor
: two identical conducting plates separated by a distance

polar molecule
: a molecule with inherent separation of charge

Capacitors in Series and Parallel

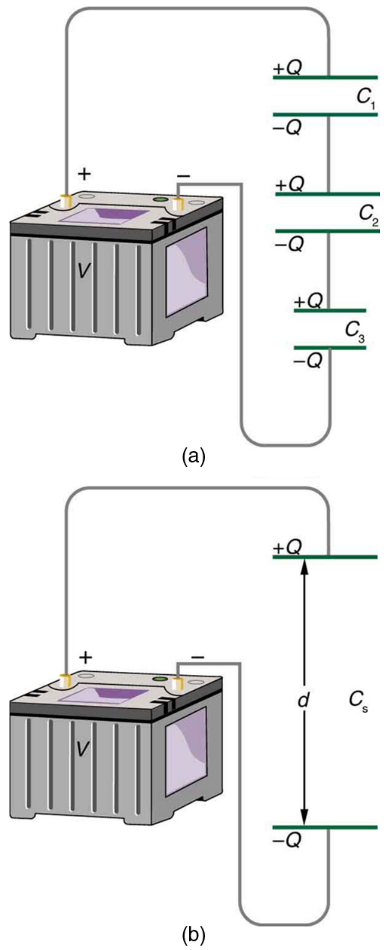
- Derive expressions for total capacitance in series and in parallel.
- Identify series and parallel parts in the combination of connection of capacitors.
- Calculate the effective capacitance in series and parallel given individual capacitances.

Several capacitors may be connected together in a variety of applications. Multiple connections of capacitors act like a single equivalent capacitor. The total capacitance of this equivalent single capacitor depends both on the individual capacitors and how they are connected. There are two simple and common types of connections, called *series* and *parallel*, for which we can easily calculate the total capacitance. Certain more complicated connections can also be related to combinations of series and parallel.

Capacitance in Series

[link](a) shows a series connection of three capacitors with a voltage applied. As for any capacitor, the capacitance of the combination is related to charge and voltage by $C=\frac{Q}{V}$.

Note in [link] that opposite charges of magnitude Q flow to either side of the originally uncharged combination of capacitors when the voltage V is applied. Conservation of charge requires that equal-magnitude charges be created on the plates of the individual capacitors, since charge is only being separated in these originally neutral devices. The end result is that the combination resembles a single capacitor with an effective plate separation greater than that of the individual capacitors alone. (See [link](b).) Larger plate separation means smaller capacitance. It is a general feature of series connections of capacitors that the total capacitance is less than any of the individual capacitances.



(a) Capacitors connected in series. The magnitude of the charge on each plate is Q. (b) An equivalent capacitor has a larger plate separation d. Series connections produce a total capacitance that is less than that of

any of the
individual
capacitors.

We can find an expression for the total capacitance by considering the voltage across the individual capacitors shown in [link]. Solving $C=\frac{Q}{V}$ for V gives $V=\frac{Q}{C}$. The voltages across the individual capacitors are thus $V_1=\frac{Q}{C_1}$, $V_2=\frac{Q}{C_2}$, and $V_3=\frac{Q}{C_3}$. The total voltage is the sum of the individual voltages:

Equation:

$$V=V_1+V_2+V_3.$$

Now, calling the total capacitance C_{S} for series capacitance, consider that

Equation:

$$V=\frac{Q}{C_{\text{S}}}=V_1+V_2+V_3.$$

Entering the expressions for V_1, V_2, and V_3, we get

Equation:

$$\frac{Q}{C_{\text{S}}}=\frac{Q}{C_1}+\frac{Q}{C_2}+\frac{Q}{C_3}.$$

Canceling the Qs, we obtain the equation for the total capacitance in series C_{S} to be

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{C_{\text{S}}}=\frac{1}{C_1}+\frac{1}{C_2}+\frac{1}{C_3}+...,$$

where “...” indicates that the expression is valid for any number of capacitors connected in series. An expression of this form always results in a total capacitance C_S that is less than any of the individual capacitances C_1, C_2, ..., as the next example illustrates.

Note:

Total Capacitance in Series, C_s

Total capacitance in series: $\frac{1}{C_\mathrm{S}} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3} + \ldots$

Example:

What Is the Series Capacitance?

Find the total capacitance for three capacitors connected in series, given their individual capacitances are 1.000, 5.000, and 8.000 µF.

Strategy

With the given information, the total capacitance can be found using the equation for capacitance in series.

Solution

Entering the given capacitances into the expression for $\frac{1}{C_\mathrm{S}}$ gives $\frac{1}{C_S} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3}$.

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{C_\mathrm{S}} = \frac{1}{1.000\ \mu\mathrm{F}} + \frac{1}{5.000\ \mu\mathrm{F}} + \frac{1}{8.000\ \mu\mathrm{F}} = \frac{1.325}{\mu\mathrm{F}}$$

Inverting to find C_S yields $C_\mathrm{S} = \frac{\mu\mathrm{F}}{1.325} = 0.755\ \mu\mathrm{F}$.

Discussion

The total series capacitance C_s is less than the smallest individual capacitance, as promised. In series connections of capacitors, the sum is less than the parts. In fact, it is less than any individual. Note that it is sometimes possible, and more convenient, to solve an equation like the above by finding the least common denominator, which in this case (showing only whole-number calculations) is 40. Thus,

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{C_\mathrm{S}} = \frac{40}{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}} + \frac{8}{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}} + \frac{5}{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}} = \frac{53}{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}},$$

so that

Equation:

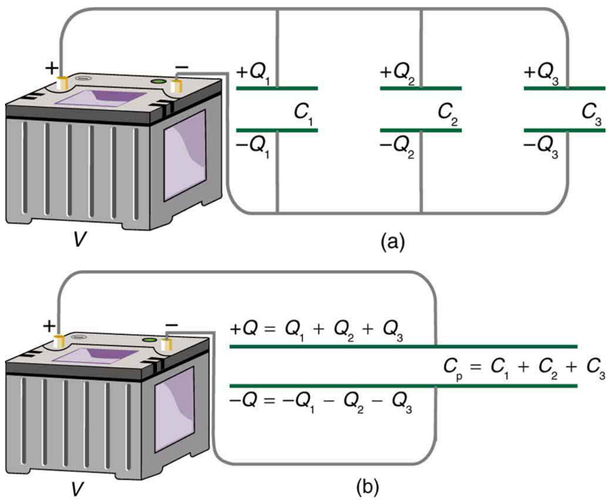
$$C_\mathrm{S} = \frac{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}}{53} = 0.755\ \mu\mathrm{F}.$$

Capacitors in Parallel

[link](a) shows a parallel connection of three capacitors with a voltage applied. Here the total capacitance is easier to find than in the series case. To find the equivalent total capacitance C_p, we first note that the voltage across each capacitor is V, the same as that of the source, since they are connected directly to it through a conductor. (Conductors are equipotentials, and so the voltage across the capacitors is the same as that across the voltage source.) Thus the capacitors have the same charges on them as they would have if connected individually to the voltage source. The total charge Q is the sum of the individual charges:

Equation:

$$Q = Q_1 + Q_2 + Q_3.$$



(a) Capacitors in parallel. Each is connected directly to the voltage source just as if it were all alone, and so the total capacitance in parallel is just the sum of the individual capacitances. (b) The equivalent capacitor has a larger plate area and can therefore hold more charge than the individual capacitors.

Using the relationship $Q = \text{CV}$, we see that the total charge is $Q = C_{\text{p}}V$, and the individual charges are $Q_1 = C_1V$, $Q_2 = C_2V$, and $Q_3 = C_3V$. Entering these into the previous equation gives

Equation:

$$C_{\text{p}}V = C_1V + C_2V + C_3V.$$

Canceling V from the equation, we obtain the equation for the total capacitance in parallel C_{p}:

Equation:

$$C_{\mathrm{p}} = C_1 + C_2 + C_3 + \ldots.$$

Total capacitance in parallel is simply the sum of the individual capacitances. (Again the “...” indicates the expression is valid for any number of capacitors connected in parallel.) So, for example, if the capacitors in the example above were connected in parallel, their capacitance would be

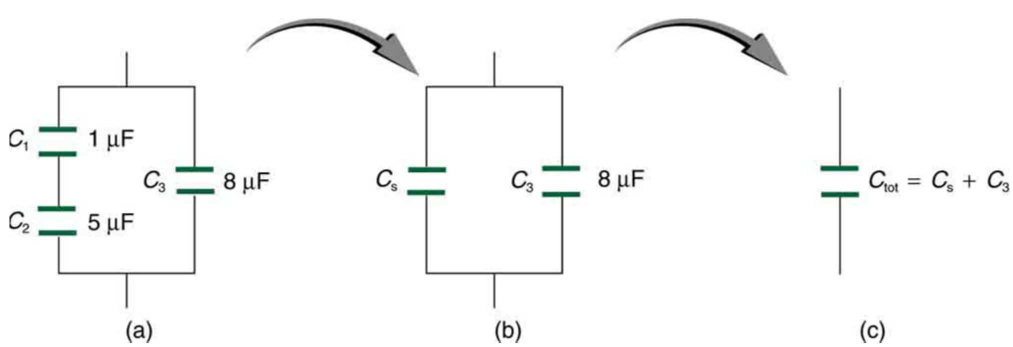
Equation:

$$C_{\mathrm{p}} = 1.000\ \mu\mathrm{F} + 5.000\ \mu\mathrm{F} + 8.000\ \mu\mathrm{F} = 14.000\ \mu\mathrm{F}.$$

The equivalent capacitor for a parallel connection has an effectively larger plate area and, thus, a larger capacitance, as illustrated in [link](b).

Note:
Total Capacitance in Parallel, C_{p}
Total capacitance in parallel $C_{\mathrm{p}} = C_1 + C_2 + C_3 + \ldots$

More complicated connections of capacitors can sometimes be combinations of series and parallel. (See [link].) To find the total capacitance of such combinations, we identify series and parallel parts, compute their capacitances, and then find the total.



(a) This circuit contains both series and parallel connections of capacitors. See [link] for the calculation of the overall capacitance of the circuit. (b) C_1 and C_2 are in series; their equivalent capacitance C_S is less than either of them. (c) Note that C_S is in parallel with C_3. The total capacitance is, thus, the sum of C_S and C_3.

Example:

A Mixture of Series and Parallel Capacitance

Find the total capacitance of the combination of capacitors shown in [link]. Assume the capacitances in [link] are known to three decimal places ($C_1 = 1.000\ \mu F$, $C_2 = 5.000\ \mu F$, and $C_3 = 8.000\ \mu F$), and round your answer to three decimal places.

Strategy

To find the total capacitance, we first identify which capacitors are in series and which are in parallel. Capacitors C_1 and C_2 are in series. Their combination, labeled C_S in the figure, is in parallel with C_3.

Solution

Since C_1 and C_2 are in series, their total capacitance is given by $\frac{1}{C_S} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3}$. Entering their values into the equation gives

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{C_S} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} = \frac{1}{1.000\ \mu F} + \frac{1}{5.000\ \mu F} = \frac{1.200}{\mu F}.$$

Inverting gives

Equation:

$$C_S = 0.833\ \mu F.$$

This equivalent series capacitance is in parallel with the third capacitor; thus, the total is the sum

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} C_{\text{tot}} &= C_{\text{S}} + C_{\text{S}} \\ &= 0.833\ \mu\text{F} + 8.000\ \mu\text{F} \\ &= 8.833\ \mu\text{F}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This technique of analyzing the combinations of capacitors piece by piece until a total is obtained can be applied to larger combinations of capacitors.

Section Summary

- Total capacitance in series $\frac{1}{C_{\text{S}}} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3} + ...$
- Total capacitance in parallel $C_{\text{p}} = C_1 + C_2 + C_3 + ...$
- If a circuit contains a combination of capacitors in series and parallel, identify series and parallel parts, compute their capacitances, and then find the total.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

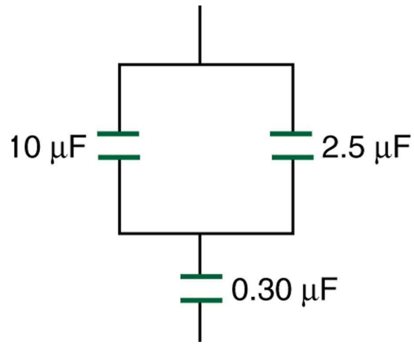
If you wish to store a large amount of energy in a capacitor bank, would you connect capacitors in series or parallel? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the total capacitance of the combination of capacitors in [link].



A combination of series and parallel connections of capacitors.

Solution:

$0.293\ \mu F$

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you want a capacitor bank with a total capacitance of 0.750 F and you possess numerous 1.50 mF capacitors. What is the smallest number you could hook together to achieve your goal, and how would you connect them?

Exercise:

Problem:

What total capacitances can you make by connecting a $5.00\ \mu F$ and an $8.00\ \mu F$ capacitor together?

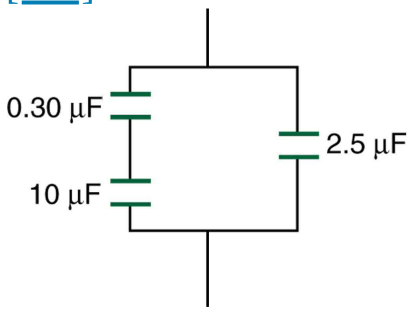
Solution:

$3.08\ \mu F$ in series combination, $13.0\ \mu F$ in parallel combination

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the total capacitance of the combination of capacitors shown in [link].



A combination of series and parallel connections of capacitors.

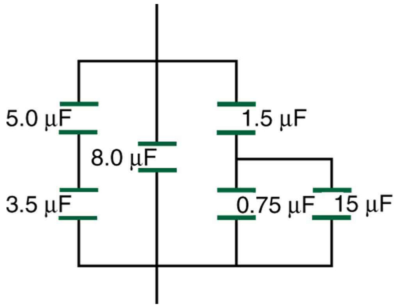
Solution:

$2.79\ \mu F$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the total capacitance of the combination of capacitors shown in [link].



A combination of series and parallel

connections of
capacitors.

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

(a) An $8.00\ \mu F$ capacitor is connected in parallel to another capacitor, producing a total capacitance of $5.00\ \mu F$. What is the capacitance of the second capacitor? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) $-3.00\ \mu F$

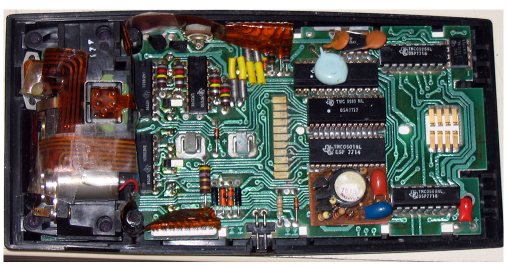
(b) You cannot have a negative value of capacitance.

(c) The assumption that the capacitors were hooked up in parallel, rather than in series, was incorrect. A parallel connection always produces a greater capacitance, while here a smaller capacitance was assumed. This could happen only if the capacitors are connected in series.

Energy Stored in Capacitors

- List some uses of capacitors.
- Express in equation form the energy stored in a capacitor.
- Explain the function of a defibrillator.

Most of us have seen dramatizations in which medical personnel use a **defibrillator** to pass an electric current through a patient's heart to get it to beat normally. (Review [link].) Often realistic in detail, the person applying the shock directs another person to "make it 400 joules this time." The energy delivered by the defibrillator is stored in a capacitor and can be adjusted to fit the situation. SI units of joules are often employed. Less dramatic is the use of capacitors in microelectronics, such as certain handheld calculators, to supply energy when batteries are charged. (See [link].) Capacitors are also used to supply energy for flash lamps on cameras.



Energy stored in the large capacitor is used to preserve the memory of an electronic calculator when its batteries are charged. (credit: Kucharek, Wikimedia Commons)

Energy stored in a capacitor is electrical potential energy, and it is thus related to the charge Q and voltage V on the capacitor. We must be careful when applying the equation for electrical potential energy $\Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V$ to a capacitor. Remember that $\Delta \mathrm{PE}$ is the potential energy of a charge q going through a voltage ΔV. But the capacitor starts with zero voltage and gradually comes up to its full voltage as it is charged. The first charge placed on a capacitor experiences a change in voltage $\Delta V = 0$, since the capacitor has zero voltage when uncharged. The final charge placed on a capacitor experiences $\Delta V = V$, since the capacitor now has its full voltage V on it. The average voltage on the capacitor during the charging process is $V/2$, and so the average voltage experienced by the full charge q is $V/2$. Thus the energy stored in a capacitor, E_{cap}, is

Equation:

$$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{QV}{2},$$

where Q is the charge on a capacitor with a voltage V applied. (Note that the energy is not QV, but $\mathrm{QV}/2$.) Charge and voltage are related to the capacitance C of a capacitor by $Q = \mathrm{CV}$, and so the expression for E_{cap} can be algebraically manipulated into three equivalent expressions:

Equation:

$$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{QV}{2} = \frac{CV^2}{2} = \frac{Q^2}{2C},$$

where Q is the charge and V the voltage on a capacitor C. The energy is in joules for a charge in coulombs, voltage in volts, and capacitance in farads.

Note:

Energy Stored in Capacitors

The energy stored in a capacitor can be expressed in three ways:

Equation:

$$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{QV}{2} = \frac{CV^2}{2} = \frac{Q^2}{2C},$$

where Q is the charge, V is the voltage, and C is the capacitance of the capacitor. The energy is in joules for a charge in coulombs, voltage in volts, and capacitance in farads.

In a defibrillator, the delivery of a large charge in a short burst to a set of paddles across a person’s chest can be a lifesaver. The person’s heart attack might have arisen from the onset of fast, irregular beating of the heart—cardiac or ventricular fibrillation. The application of a large shock of electrical energy can terminate the arrhythmia and allow the body’s pacemaker to resume normal patterns. Today it is common for ambulances to carry a defibrillator, which also uses an electrocardiogram to analyze the patient’s heartbeat pattern. Automated external defibrillators (AED) are found in many public places ([link]). These are designed to be used by lay persons. The device automatically diagnoses the patient’s heart condition and then applies the shock with appropriate energy and waveform. CPR is recommended in many cases before use of an AED.

Automated external defibrillators are found in many public places. These portable units provide verbal instructions for use in the important first few minutes for a person suffering a cardiac attack. (credit: Owain Davies, Wikimedia Commons)

Example:

Capacitance in a Heart Defibrillator

A heart defibrillator delivers 4.00×10^2 J of energy by discharging a capacitor initially at 1.00×10^4 V. What is its capacitance?

Strategy

We are given E_{cap} and V, and we are asked to find the capacitance C. Of the three expressions in the equation for E_{cap}, the most convenient relationship is

Equation:

$$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{CV^2}{2}.$$

Solution

Solving this expression for C and entering the given values yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} C &= \frac{2E_{\text{cap}}}{V^2} = \frac{2(4.00\times10^2\text{ J})}{(1.00\times10^4\text{ V})^2} = 8.00\times10^{-6}\text{ F} \\ &= 8.00\ \mu\text{F}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This is a fairly large, but manageable, capacitance at 1.00×10^4 V.

Section Summary

- Capacitors are used in a variety of devices, including defibrillators, microelectronics such as calculators, and flash lamps, to supply energy.
- The energy stored in a capacitor can be expressed in three ways:
  Equation:
  $$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{\text{QV}}{2} = \frac{CV^2}{2} = \frac{Q^2}{2C},$$
  where Q is the charge, V is the voltage, and C is the capacitance of the capacitor. The energy is in joules when the charge is in coulombs, voltage is in volts, and capacitance is in farads.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How does the energy contained in a charged capacitor change when a dielectric is inserted, assuming the capacitor is isolated and its charge is constant? Does this imply that work was done?

Exercise:

Problem:

What happens to the energy stored in a capacitor connected to a battery when a dielectric is inserted? Was work done in the process?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the energy stored in the $10.0\ \mu F$ capacitor of a heart defibrillator charged to $9.00 \times 10^3\ V$? (b) Find the amount of stored charge.

Solution:

(a) $405\ J$

(b) $90.0\ mC$

Exercise:

Problem:

In open heart surgery, a much smaller amount of energy will defibrillate the heart. (a) What voltage is applied to the $8.00\ \mu F$ capacitor of a heart defibrillator that stores 40.0 J of energy? (b) Find the amount of stored charge.

Solution:

(a) 3.16 kV

(b) 25.3 mC

Exercise:

Problem:

A $165\ \mu F$ capacitor is used in conjunction with a motor. How much energy is stored in it when 119 V is applied?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a 9.00 V battery, a $2.00\ \mu F$ capacitor, and a $7.40\ \mu F$ capacitor. (a) Find the charge and energy stored if the capacitors are connected to the battery in series. (b) Do the same for a parallel connection.

Solution:

(a) 1.42×10^{-5} C, 6.38×10^{-5} J

(b) 8.46×10^{-5} C, 3.81×10^{-4} J

Exercise:

Problem:

A nervous physicist worries that the two metal shelves of his wood frame bookcase might obtain a high voltage if charged by static electricity, perhaps produced by friction. (a) What is the capacitance of the empty shelves if they have area $1.00 \times 10^2\ m^2$ and are 0.200 m apart? (b) What is the voltage between them if opposite charges of magnitude 2.00 nC are placed on them? (c) To show that this voltage poses a small hazard, calculate the energy stored.

Solution:

(a) 4.43×10^{-12} F

(b) 452 V

(c) 4.52×10^{-7} J

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that for a given dielectric material the maximum energy a parallel plate capacitor can store is directly proportional to the volume of dielectric ($\text{Volume} = A \cdot d$). Note that the applied voltage is limited by the dielectric strength.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a heart defibrillator similar to that discussed in [link]. Construct a problem in which you examine the charge stored in the capacitor of a defibrillator as a function of stored energy. Among the things to be considered are the applied voltage and whether it should vary with energy to be delivered, the range of energies involved, and the capacitance of the defibrillator. You may also wish to consider the much smaller energy needed for defibrillation during open-heart surgery as a variation on this problem.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) On a particular day, it takes $9.60 \times 10^3 \text{ J}$ of electric energy to start a truck's engine. Calculate the capacitance of a capacitor that could store that amount of energy at 12.0 V. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Solution:

(a) 133 F

(b) Such a capacitor would be too large to carry with a truck. The size of the capacitor would be enormous.

(c) It is unreasonable to assume that a capacitor can store the amount of energy needed.

Glossary

defibrillator
: a machine used to provide an electrical shock to a heart attack victim's heart in order to restore the heart's normal rhythmic pattern

Introduction to Circuits and DC Instruments
class="introduction"

Electric circuits in a computer allow large amounts of data to be quickly and accurately analyzed.. (credit: Airman 1st Class Mike Meares, United States Air Force)

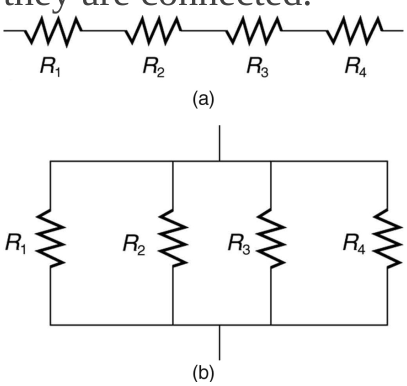
Electric circuits are commonplace. Some are simple, such as those in flashlights. Others, such as those used in supercomputers, are extremely complex.

This collection of modules takes the topic of electric circuits a step beyond simple circuits. When the circuit is purely resistive, everything in this module applies to both DC and AC. Matters become more complex when capacitance is involved. We do consider what happens when capacitors are connected to DC voltage sources, but the interaction of capacitors and other nonresistive devices with AC is left for a later chapter. Finally, a number of important DC instruments, such as meters that measure voltage and current, are covered in this chapter.

Resistors in Series and Parallel

- Draw a circuit with resistors in parallel and in series.
- Calculate the voltage drop of a current across a resistor using Ohm's law.
- Contrast the way total resistance is calculated for resistors in series and in parallel.
- Explain why total resistance of a parallel circuit is less than the smallest resistance of any of the resistors in that circuit.
- Calculate total resistance of a circuit that contains a mixture of resistors connected in series and in parallel.

Most circuits have more than one component, called a **resistor** that limits the flow of charge in the circuit. A measure of this limit on charge flow is called **resistance**. The simplest combinations of resistors are the series and parallel connections illustrated in [link]. The total resistance of a combination of resistors depends on both their individual values and how they are connected.

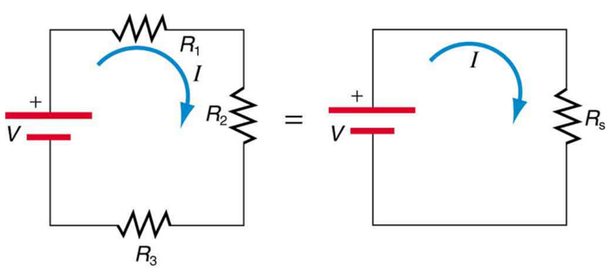


(a) A series connection of resistors. (b) A parallel connection of resistors.

Resistors in Series

When are resistors in **series**? Resistors are in series whenever the flow of charge, called the **current**, must flow through devices sequentially. For example, if current flows through a person holding a screwdriver and into the Earth, then R_1 in [link](a) could be the resistance of the screwdriver's shaft, R_2 the resistance of its handle, R_3 the person's body resistance, and R_4 the resistance of her shoes.

[link] shows resistors in series connected to a **voltage** source. It seems reasonable that the total resistance is the sum of the individual resistances, considering that the current has to pass through each resistor in sequence. (This fact would be an advantage to a person wishing to avoid an electrical shock, who could reduce the current by wearing high-resistance rubber-soled shoes. It could be a disadvantage if one of the resistances were a faulty high-resistance cord to an appliance that would reduce the operating current.)



Three resistors connected in series to a battery (left) and the equivalent single or series resistance (right).

To verify that resistances in series do indeed add, let us consider the loss of electrical power, called a **voltage drop**, in each resistor in [link].

According to **Ohm's law**, the voltage drop, V, across a resistor when a current flows through it is calculated using the equation $V = \text{IR}$, where I equals the current in amps (A) and R is the resistance in ohms (Ω). Another

way to think of this is that V is the voltage necessary to make a current I flow through a resistance R.

So the voltage drop across R_1 is $V_1 = IR_1$, that across R_2 is $V_2 = IR_2$, and that across R_3 is $V_3 = IR_3$. The sum of these voltages equals the voltage output of the source; that is,
Equation:

$$V = V_1 + V_2 + V_3.$$

This equation is based on the conservation of energy and conservation of charge. Electrical potential energy can be described by the equation $\mathrm{PE} = \mathrm{qV}$, where q is the electric charge and V is the voltage. Thus the energy supplied by the source is qV, while that dissipated by the resistors is
Equation:

$$qV_1 + qV_2 + qV_3.$$

Note:
Connections: Conservation Laws
The derivations of the expressions for series and parallel resistance are based on the laws of conservation of energy and conservation of charge, which state that total charge and total energy are constant in any process. These two laws are directly involved in all electrical phenomena and will be invoked repeatedly to explain both specific effects and the general behavior of electricity.

These energies must be equal, because there is no other source and no other destination for energy in the circuit. Thus, $qV = qV_1 + qV_2 + qV_3$. The charge q cancels, yielding $V = V_1 + V_2 + V_3$, as stated. (Note that the same amount of charge passes through the battery and each resistor in a given amount of time, since there is no capacitance to store charge, there is no place for charge to leak, and charge is conserved.)

Now substituting the values for the individual voltages gives
Equation:

$$V = IR_1 + IR_2 + IR_3 = I(R_1 + R_2 + R_3).$$

Note that for the equivalent single series resistance R_s, we have
Equation:

$$V = IR_s.$$

This implies that the total or equivalent series resistance R_s of three resistors is $R_s = R_1 + R_2 + R_3$.

This logic is valid in general for any number of resistors in series; thus, the total resistance R_s of a series connection is
Equation:

$$R_s = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + ...,$$

as proposed. Since all of the current must pass through each resistor, it experiences the resistance of each, and resistances in series simply add up.

Example:
Calculating Resistance, Current, Voltage Drop, and Power Dissipation: Analysis of a Series Circuit
Suppose the voltage output of the battery in [link] is $12.0\ \text{V}$, and the resistances are $R_1 = 1.00\ \Omega$, $R_2 = 6.00\ \Omega$, and $R_3 = 13.0\ \Omega$. (a) What is the total resistance? (b) Find the current. (c) Calculate the voltage drop in each resistor, and show these add to equal the voltage output of the source. (d) Calculate the power dissipated by each resistor. (e) Find the power output of the source, and show that it equals the total power dissipated by the resistors.
Strategy and Solution for (a)

The total resistance is simply the sum of the individual resistances, as given by this equation:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} R_{\mathrm{s}} &= R_1 + R_2 + R_3 \\ &= 1.00\ \Omega + 6.00\ \Omega + 13.0\ \Omega \\ &= 20.0\ \Omega. \end{aligned}$$

Strategy and Solution for (b)

The current is found using Ohm's law, $V = \mathrm{IR}$. Entering the value of the applied voltage and the total resistance yields the current for the circuit:

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_{\mathrm{s}}} = \frac{12.0\ \mathrm{V}}{20.0\ \Omega} = 0.600\ \mathrm{A}.$$

Strategy and Solution for (c)

The voltage—or IR drop—in a resistor is given by Ohm's law. Entering the current and the value of the first resistance yields

Equation:

$$V_1 = IR_1 = (0.600\ \mathrm{A})(1.0\ \Omega) = 0.600\ \mathrm{V}.$$

Similarly,

Equation:

$$V_2 = IR_2 = (0.600\ \mathrm{A})(6.0\ \Omega) = 3.60\ \mathrm{V}$$

and

Equation:

$$V_3 = IR_3 = (0.600\ \mathrm{A})(13.0\ \Omega) = 7.80\ \mathrm{V}.$$

Discussion for (c)

The three IR drops add to 12.0 V, as predicted:

Equation:

$$V_1 + V_2 + V_3 = (0.600 + 3.60 + 7.80)\ \mathrm{V} = 12.0\ \mathrm{V}.$$

Strategy and Solution for (d)

The easiest way to calculate power in watts (W) dissipated by a resistor in a DC circuit is to use **Joule's law**, $P = \text{IV}$, where P is electric power. In this case, each resistor has the same full current flowing through it. By substituting Ohm's law $V = \text{IR}$ into Joule's law, we get the power dissipated by the first resistor as

Equation:

$$P_1 = I^2 R_1 = (0.600\ \text{A})^2 (1.00\ \Omega) = 0.360\ \text{W}.$$

Similarly,

Equation:

$$P_2 = I^2 R_2 = (0.600\ \text{A})^2 (6.00\ \Omega) = 2.16\ \text{W}$$

and

Equation:

$$P_3 = I^2 R_3 = (0.600\ \text{A})^2 (13.0\ \Omega) = 4.68\ \text{W}.$$

Discussion for (d)

Power can also be calculated using either $P = \text{IV}$ or $P = \frac{V^2}{R}$, where V is the voltage drop across the resistor (not the full voltage of the source). The same values will be obtained.

Strategy and Solution for (e)

The easiest way to calculate power output of the source is to use $P = \text{IV}$, where V is the source voltage. This gives

Equation:

$$P = (0.600\ \text{A})(12.0\ \text{V}) = 7.20\ \text{W}.$$

Discussion for (e)

Note, coincidentally, that the total power dissipated by the resistors is also 7.20 W, the same as the power put out by the source. That is,

Equation:

$$P_1 + P_2 + P_3 = (0.360 + 2.16 + 4.68)\ \text{W} = 7.20\ \text{W}.$$

Power is energy per unit time (watts), and so conservation of energy requires the power output of the source to be equal to the total power dissipated by the resistors.

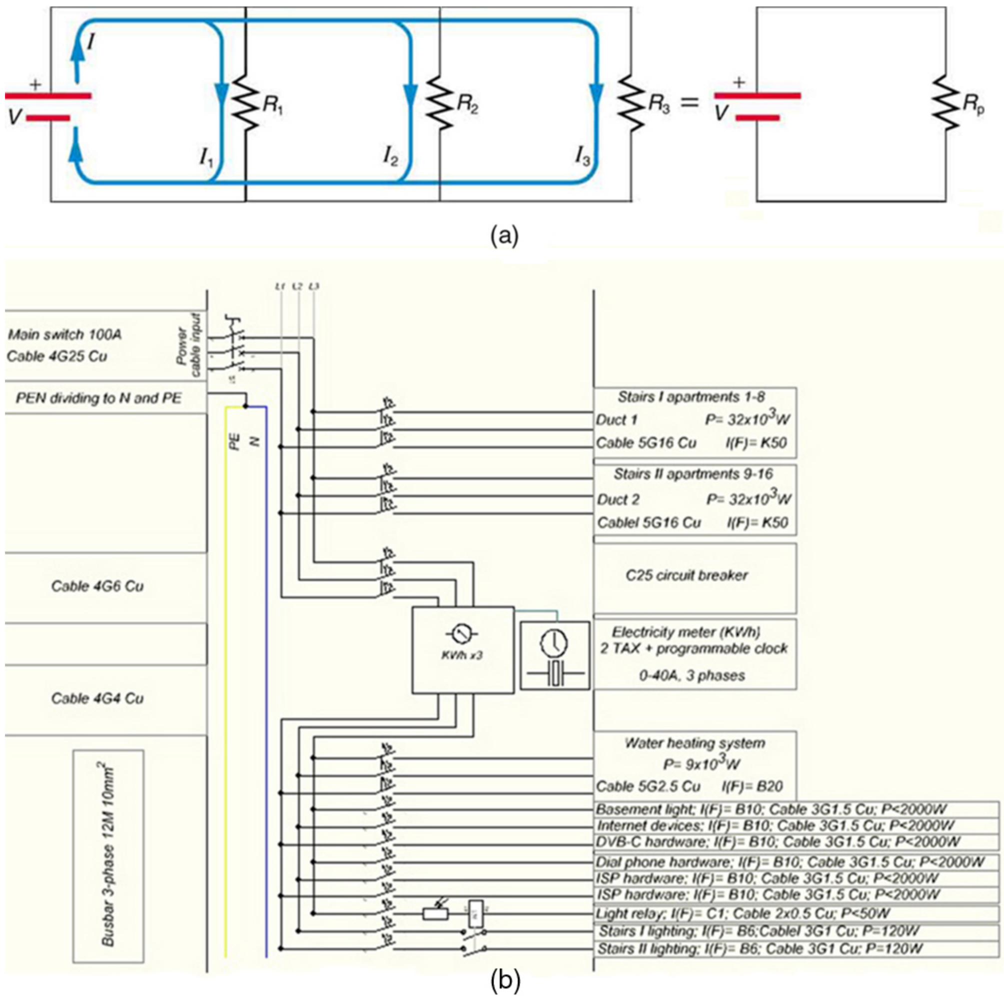
Note:
Major Features of Resistors in Series

1. Series resistances add: $R_s = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + ...$
2. The same current flows through each resistor in series.
3. Individual resistors in series do not get the total source voltage, but divide it.

Resistors in Parallel

[link] shows resistors in **parallel**, wired to a voltage source. Resistors are in parallel when each resistor is connected directly to the voltage source by connecting wires having negligible resistance. Each resistor thus has the full voltage of the source applied to it.

Each resistor draws the same current it would if it alone were connected to the voltage source (provided the voltage source is not overloaded). For example, an automobile’s headlights, radio, and so on, are wired in parallel, so that they utilize the full voltage of the source and can operate completely independently. The same is true in your house, or any building. (See [link] (b).)



(a) Three resistors connected in parallel to a battery and the equivalent single or parallel resistance. (b) Electrical power setup in a house. (credit: Dmitry G, Wikimedia Commons)

To find an expression for the equivalent parallel resistance R_{p}, let us consider the currents that flow and how they are related to resistance. Since each resistor in the circuit has the full voltage, the currents flowing through the individual resistors are $I_1 = \frac{V}{R_1}$, $I_2 = \frac{V}{R_2}$, and $I_3 = \frac{V}{R_3}$. Conservation of charge implies that the total current I produced by the source is the sum of these currents:

Equation:

$$I = I_1 + I_2 + I_3.$$

Substituting the expressions for the individual currents gives

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_1} + \frac{V}{R_2} + \frac{V}{R_3} = V\left(\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}\right).$$

Note that Ohm's law for the equivalent single resistance gives

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_\mathrm{p}} = V\left(\frac{1}{R_\mathrm{p}}\right).$$

The terms inside the parentheses in the last two equations must be equal. Generalizing to any number of resistors, the total resistance R_p of a parallel connection is related to the individual resistances by

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{R_\mathrm{p}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_{.3}} + ...$$

This relationship results in a total resistance R_p that is less than the smallest of the individual resistances. (This is seen in the next example.) When resistors are connected in parallel, more current flows from the source than would flow for any of them individually, and so the total resistance is lower.

Example:

Calculating Resistance, Current, Power Dissipation, and Power Output: Analysis of a Parallel Circuit

Let the voltage output of the battery and resistances in the parallel connection in [link] be the same as the previously considered series

connection: $V = 12.0\text{ V}$, $R_1 = 1.00\ \Omega$, $R_2 = 6.00\ \Omega$, and $R_3 = 13.0\ \Omega$. (a) What is the total resistance? (b) Find the total current. (c) Calculate the currents in each resistor, and show these add to equal the total current output of the source. (d) Calculate the power dissipated by each resistor. (e) Find the power output of the source, and show that it equals the total power dissipated by the resistors.

Strategy and Solution for (a)

The total resistance for a parallel combination of resistors is found using the equation below. Entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{R_\mathrm{p}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} = \frac{1}{1.00\ \Omega} + \frac{1}{6.00\ \Omega} + \frac{1}{13.0\ \Omega}.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{R_\mathrm{p}} = \frac{1.00}{\Omega} + \frac{0.1667}{\Omega} + \frac{0.07692}{\Omega} = \frac{1.2436}{\Omega}.$$

(Note that in these calculations, each intermediate answer is shown with an extra digit.)

We must invert this to find the total resistance R_p. This yields

Equation:

$$R_\mathrm{p} = \frac{1}{1.2436}\Omega = 0.8041\ \Omega.$$

The total resistance with the correct number of significant digits is $R_\mathrm{p} = 0.804\ \Omega$.

Discussion for (a)

R_p is, as predicted, less than the smallest individual resistance.

Strategy and Solution for (b)

The total current can be found from Ohm's law, substituting R_p for the total resistance. This gives

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_{\text{p}}} = \frac{12.0\text{ V}}{0.8041\ \Omega} = 14.92\text{ A}.$$

Discussion for (b)

Current I for each device is much larger than for the same devices connected in series (see the previous example). A circuit with parallel connections has a smaller total resistance than the resistors connected in series.

Strategy and Solution for (c)

The individual currents are easily calculated from Ohm’s law, since each resistor gets the full voltage. Thus,

Equation:

$$I_1 = \frac{V}{R_1} = \frac{12.0\text{ V}}{1.00\,\Omega} = 12.0\text{ A}.$$

Similarly,

Equation:

$$I_2 = \frac{V}{R_2} = \frac{12.0\text{ V}}{6.00\,\Omega} = 2.00\text{ A}$$

and

Equation:

$$I_3 = \frac{V}{R_3} = \frac{12.0\text{ V}}{13.0\,\Omega} = 0.92\text{ A}.$$

Discussion for (c)

The total current is the sum of the individual currents:

Equation:

$$I_1 + I_2 + I_3 = 14.92\text{ A}.$$

This is consistent with conservation of charge.

Strategy and Solution for (d)

The power dissipated by each resistor can be found using any of the equations relating power to current, voltage, and resistance, since all three

are known. Let us use $P = \frac{V^2}{R}$, since each resistor gets full voltage. Thus,
Equation:

$$P_1 = \frac{V^2}{R_1} = \frac{(12.0\text{ V})^2}{1.00\ \Omega} = 144\text{ W}.$$

Similarly,
Equation:

$$P_2 = \frac{V^2}{R_2} = \frac{(12.0\text{ V})^2}{6.00\ \Omega} = 24.0\text{ W}$$

and
Equation:

$$P_3 = \frac{V^2}{R_3} = \frac{(12.0\text{ V})^2}{13.0\ \Omega} = 11.1\text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (d)
The power dissipated by each resistor is considerably higher in parallel than when connected in series to the same voltage source.
Strategy and Solution for (e)
The total power can also be calculated in several ways. Choosing $P = \text{IV}$, and entering the total current, yields
Equation:

$$P = \text{IV} = (14.92\text{ A})(12.0\text{ V}) = 179\text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (e)
Total power dissipated by the resistors is also 179 W:
Equation:

$$P_1 + P_2 + P_3 = 144\text{ W} + 24.0\text{ W} + 11.1\text{ W} = 179\text{ W}.$$

This is consistent with the law of conservation of energy.
Overall Discussion
Note that both the currents and powers in parallel connections are greater than for the same devices in series.

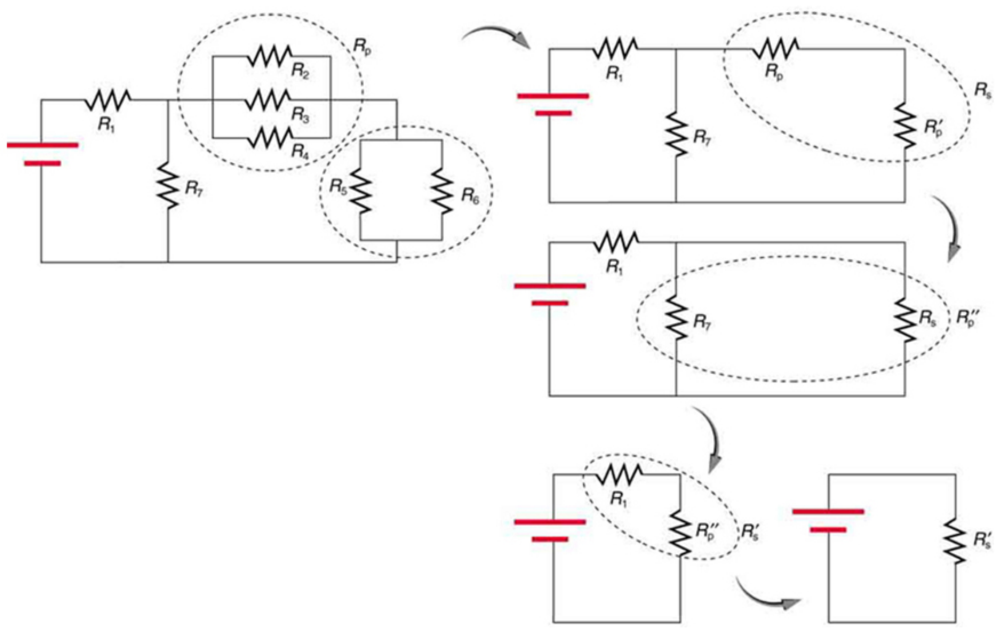
Note:
Major Features of Resistors in Parallel

1. Parallel resistance is found from $\frac{1}{R_\mathrm{p}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + ...$, and it is smaller than any individual resistance in the combination.
2. Each resistor in parallel has the same full voltage of the source applied to it. (Power distribution systems most often use parallel connections to supply the myriad devices served with the same voltage and to allow them to operate independently.)
3. Parallel resistors do not each get the total current; they divide it.

Combinations of Series and Parallel

More complex connections of resistors are sometimes just combinations of series and parallel. These are commonly encountered, especially when wire resistance is considered. In that case, wire resistance is in series with other resistances that are in parallel.

Combinations of series and parallel can be reduced to a single equivalent resistance using the technique illustrated in [link]. Various parts are identified as either series or parallel, reduced to their equivalents, and further reduced until a single resistance is left. The process is more time consuming than difficult.



This combination of seven resistors has both series and parallel parts. Each is identified and reduced to an equivalent resistance, and these are further reduced until a single equivalent resistance is reached.

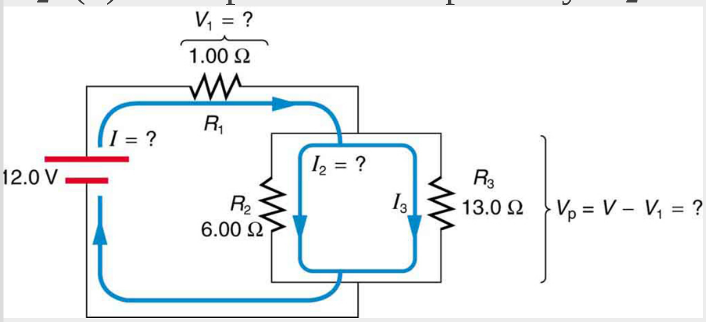
The simplest combination of series and parallel resistance, shown in [link], is also the most instructive, since it is found in many applications. For example, R_1 could be the resistance of wires from a car battery to its electrical devices, which are in parallel. R_2 and R_3 could be the starter motor and a passenger compartment light. We have previously assumed that wire resistance is negligible, but, when it is not, it has important effects, as the next example indicates.

Example:

Calculating Resistance, IR Drop, Current, and Power Dissipation: Combining Series and Parallel Circuits

[link] shows the resistors from the previous two examples wired in a different way—a combination of series and parallel. We can consider R_1 to be the resistance of wires leading to R_2 and R_3. (a) Find the total

resistance. (b) What is the IR drop in R_1? (c) Find the current I_2 through R_2. (d) What power is dissipated by R_2?



These three resistors are connected to a voltage source so that R_2 and R_3 are in parallel with one another and that combination is in series with R_1.

Strategy and Solution for (a)

To find the total resistance, we note that R_2 and R_3 are in parallel and their combination R_p is in series with R_1. Thus the total (equivalent) resistance of this combination is

Equation:

$$R_\mathrm{tot} = R_1 + R_\mathrm{p}.$$

First, we find R_p using the equation for resistors in parallel and entering known values:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{R_\mathrm{p}} = \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} = \frac{1}{6.00\ \Omega} + \frac{1}{13.0\ \Omega} = \frac{0.2436}{\Omega}.$$

Inverting gives

Equation:

$$R_\mathrm{p} = \frac{1}{0.2436}\Omega = 4.11\ \Omega.$$

So the total resistance is

Equation:

$$R_{\text{tot}} = R_1 + R_{\text{p}} = 1.00\ \Omega + 4.11\ \Omega = 5.11\ \Omega.$$

Discussion for (a)

The total resistance of this combination is intermediate between the pure series and pure parallel values (20.0 Ω and 0.804 Ω, respectively) found for the same resistors in the two previous examples.

Strategy and Solution for (b)

To find the IR drop in R_1, we note that the full current I flows through R_1. Thus its IR drop is

Equation:

$$V_1 = \text{IR}_1.$$

We must find I before we can calculate V_1. The total current I is found using Ohm's law for the circuit. That is,

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_{\text{tot}}} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{5.11\ \Omega} = 2.35\ \text{A}.$$

Entering this into the expression above, we get

Equation:

$$V_1 = \text{IR}_1 = (2.35\ \text{A})(1.00\ \Omega) = 2.35\ \text{V}.$$

Discussion for (b)

The voltage applied to R_2 and R_3 is less than the total voltage by an amount V_1. When wire resistance is large, it can significantly affect the operation of the devices represented by R_2 and R_3.

Strategy and Solution for (c)

To find the current through R_2, we must first find the voltage applied to it. We call this voltage V_{p}, because it is applied to a parallel combination of resistors. The voltage applied to both R_2 and R_3 is reduced by the amount V_1, and so it is

Equation:

$$V_{\text{p}} = V - V_1 = 12.0\text{ V} - 2.35\text{ V} = 9.65\text{ V}.$$

Now the current I_2 through resistance R_2 is found using Ohm's law:
Equation:

$$I_2 = \frac{V_{\text{p}}}{R_2} = \frac{9.65\text{ V}}{6.00\ \Omega} = 1.61\text{ A}.$$

Discussion for (c)
The current is less than the 2.00 A that flowed through R_2 when it was connected in parallel to the battery in the previous parallel circuit example.
Strategy and Solution for (d)
The power dissipated by R_2 is given by
Equation:

$$P_2 = (I_2)^2 R_2 = (1.61\text{ A})^2(6.00\ \Omega) = 15.5\text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (d)
The power is less than the 24.0 W this resistor dissipated when connected in parallel to the 12.0-V source.

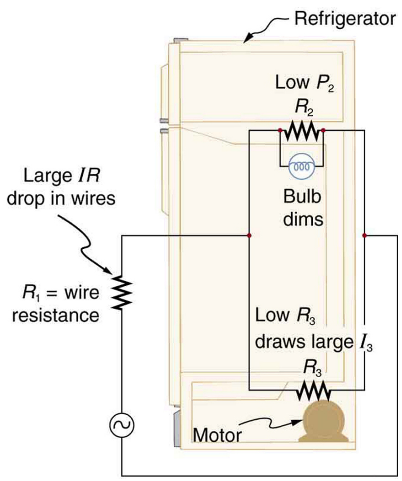
Practical Implications

One implication of this last example is that resistance in wires reduces the current and power delivered to a resistor. If wire resistance is relatively large, as in a worn (or a very long) extension cord, then this loss can be significant. If a large current is drawn, the IR drop in the wires can also be significant.

For example, when you are rummaging in the refrigerator and the motor comes on, the refrigerator light dims momentarily. Similarly, you can see the passenger compartment light dim when you start the engine of your car (although this may be due to resistance inside the battery itself).

What is happening in these high-current situations is illustrated in [link]. The device represented by R_3 has a very low resistance, and so when it is

switched on, a large current flows. This increased current causes a larger IR drop in the wires represented by R_1, reducing the voltage across the light bulb (which is R_2), which then dims noticeably.



Why do lights dim when a large appliance is switched on? The answer is that the large current the appliance motor draws causes a significant IR drop in the wires and reduces the voltage across the light.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Can any arbitrary combination of resistors be broken down into series and parallel combinations? See if you can draw a circuit diagram of resistors that cannot be broken down into combinations of series and parallel.

Solution:

No, there are many ways to connect resistors that are not combinations of series and parallel, including loops and junctions. In such cases Kirchhoff's rules, to be introduced in Kirchhoff's Rules, will allow you to analyze the circuit.

Note:
Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors

1. Draw a clear circuit diagram, labeling all resistors and voltage sources. This step includes a list of the knowns for the problem, since they are labeled in your circuit diagram.
2. Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns). A written list is useful.
3. Determine whether resistors are in series, parallel, or a combination of both series and parallel. Examine the circuit diagram to make this assessment. Resistors are in series if the same current must pass sequentially through them.
4. Use the appropriate list of major features for series or parallel connections to solve for the unknowns. There is one list for series and another for parallel. If your problem has a combination of series and parallel, reduce it in steps by considering individual groups of series or parallel connections, as done in this module and the examples. Special note: When finding R_{p}, the reciprocal must be taken with care.
5. Check to see whether the answers are reasonable and consistent. Units and numerical results must be reasonable. Total series resistance

should be greater, whereas total parallel resistance should be smaller, for example. Power should be greater for the same devices in parallel compared with series, and so on.

Section Summary

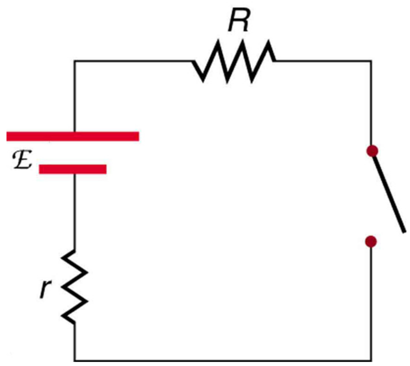
- The total resistance of an electrical circuit with resistors wired in a series is the sum of the individual resistances: $R_{\text{s}} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + \ldots.$
- Each resistor in a series circuit has the same amount of current flowing through it.
- The voltage drop, or power dissipation, across each individual resistor in a series is different, and their combined total adds up to the power source input.
- The total resistance of an electrical circuit with resistors wired in parallel is less than the lowest resistance of any of the components and can be determined using the formula:
  Equation:
  $$\frac{1}{R_{\text{p}}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \ldots.$$
- Each resistor in a parallel circuit has the same full voltage of the source applied to it.
- The current flowing through each resistor in a parallel circuit is different, depending on the resistance.
- If a more complex connection of resistors is a combination of series and parallel, it can be reduced to a single equivalent resistance by identifying its various parts as series or parallel, reducing each to its equivalent, and continuing until a single resistance is eventually reached.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

A switch has a variable resistance that is nearly zero when closed and extremely large when open, and it is placed in series with the device it controls. Explain the effect the switch in [link] has on current when open and when closed.



A switch is ordinarily in series with a resistance and voltage source. Ideally, the switch has nearly zero resistance when closed but has an extremely large resistance when open. (Note that in this diagram, the script E represents the voltage (or electromotive force) of the battery.)

Exercise:

Problem: What is the voltage across the open switch in [link]?

Exercise:

Problem:

There is a voltage across an open switch, such as in [link]. Why, then, is the power dissipated by the open switch small?

Exercise:

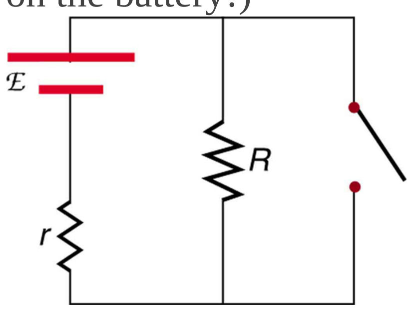
Problem:

Why is the power dissipated by a closed switch, such as in [link], small?

Exercise:

Problem:

A student in a physics lab mistakenly wired a light bulb, battery, and switch as shown in [link]. Explain why the bulb is on when the switch is open, and off when the switch is closed. (Do not try this—it is hard on the battery!)



A wiring mistake put this switch in parallel with the device represented by R. (Note that in this diagram, the script E represents the voltage (or

electromotive
force) of the
battery.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Knowing that the severity of a shock depends on the magnitude of the current through your body, would you prefer to be in series or parallel with a resistance, such as the heating element of a toaster, if shocked by it? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Would your headlights dim when you start your car’s engine if the wires in your automobile were superconductors? (Do not neglect the battery’s internal resistance.) Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Some strings of holiday lights are wired in series to save wiring costs. An old version utilized bulbs that break the electrical connection, like an open switch, when they burn out. If one such bulb burns out, what happens to the others? If such a string operates on 120 V and has 40 identical bulbs, what is the normal operating voltage of each? Newer versions use bulbs that short circuit, like a closed switch, when they burn out. If one such bulb burns out, what happens to the others? If such a string operates on 120 V and has 39 remaining identical bulbs, what is then the operating voltage of each?

Exercise:

Problem:

If two household lightbulbs rated 60 W and 100 W are connected in series to household power, which will be brighter? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you are doing a physics lab that asks you to put a resistor into a circuit, but all the resistors supplied have a larger resistance than the requested value. How would you connect the available resistances to attempt to get the smaller value asked for?

Exercise:

Problem:

Before World War II, some radios got power through a “resistance cord” that had a significant resistance. Such a resistance cord reduces the voltage to a desired level for the radio’s tubes and the like, and it saves the expense of a transformer. Explain why resistance cords become warm and waste energy when the radio is on.

Exercise:

Problem:

Some light bulbs have three power settings (not including zero), obtained from multiple filaments that are individually switched and wired in parallel. What is the minimum number of filaments needed for three power settings?

Problem Exercises

Note: Data taken from figures can be assumed to be accurate to three significant digits.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the resistance of ten $275\text{-}\Omega$ resistors connected in series? (b) In parallel?

Solution:

(a) $2.75\ \text{k}\Omega$

(b) $27.5\ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the resistance of a 1.00×10^2 $\text{-}\Omega$, a $2.50\text{-k}\Omega$, and a $4.00\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor connected in series? (b) In parallel?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the largest and smallest resistances you can obtain by connecting a $36.0\text{-}\Omega$, a $50.0\text{-}\Omega$, and a $700\text{-}\Omega$ resistor together?

Solution:

(a) $786\ \Omega$

(b) $20.3\ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

An 1800-W toaster, a 1400-W electric frying pan, and a 75-W lamp are plugged into the same outlet in a 15-A, 120-V circuit. (The three devices are in parallel when plugged into the same socket.). (a) What current is drawn by each device? (b) Will this combination blow the 15-A fuse?

Exercise:

Problem:

Your car's 30.0-W headlight and 2.40-kW starter are ordinarily connected in parallel in a 12.0-V system. What power would one headlight and the starter consume if connected in series to a 12.0-V battery? (Neglect any other resistance in the circuit and any change in resistance in the two devices.)

Solution:

29.6 W

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Given a 48.0-V battery and $24.0\text{-}\Omega$ and $96.0\text{-}\Omega$ resistors, find the current and power for each when connected in series. (b) Repeat when the resistances are in parallel.

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to the example combining series and parallel circuits and [link], calculate I_3 in the following two different ways: (a) from the known values of I and I_2; (b) using Ohm's law for R_3. In both parts explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors.

Solution:

(a) 0.74 A

(b) 0.742 A

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to [link]: (a) Calculate P_3 and note how it compares with P_3 found in the first two example problems in this module. (b) Find the total power supplied by the source and compare it with the sum of the powers dissipated by the resistors.

Exercise:

Problem:

Refer to [link] and the discussion of lights dimming when a heavy appliance comes on. (a) Given the voltage source is 120 V, the wire resistance is $0.400\ \Omega$, and the bulb is nominally 75.0 W, what power will the bulb dissipate if a total of 15.0 A passes through the wires when the motor comes on? Assume negligible change in bulb resistance. (b) What power is consumed by the motor?

Solution:

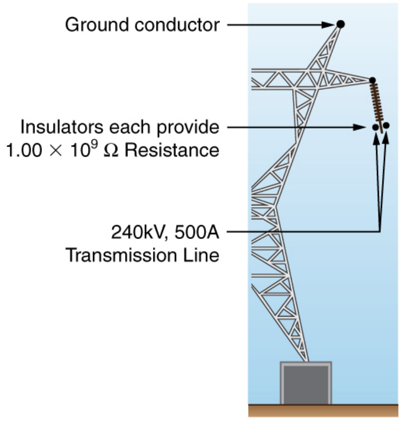
(a) 60.8 W

(b) 3.18 kW

Exercise:

Problem:

A 240-kV power transmission line carrying 5.00×10^2 A is hung from grounded metal towers by ceramic insulators, each having a 1.00×10^9 -Ω resistance. [link]. (a) What is the resistance to ground of 100 of these insulators? (b) Calculate the power dissipated by 100 of them. (c) What fraction of the power carried by the line is this? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors.



High-voltage (240-kV) transmission line carrying 5.00×10^2 A is hung from a grounded metal transmission tower. The row of ceramic insulators provide $1.00 \times 10^9 \Omega$ of resistance each.

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that if two resistors R_1 and R_2 are combined and one is much greater than the other ($R_1 >> R_2$): (a) Their series resistance is very nearly equal to the greater resistance R_1. (b) Their parallel resistance is very nearly equal to smaller resistance R_2.

Solution:

(a)
$$R_s = R_1 + R_2$$
$$\Rightarrow R_s \approx R_1 (R_1 >> R_2)$$

(b) $\frac{1}{R_\text{p}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} = \frac{R_1 + R_2}{R_1 R_2}$,

so that

$$R_\text{p} = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \approx \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1} = R_2 (R_1 >> R_2).$$

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Two resistors, one having a resistance of $145\ \Omega$, are connected in parallel to produce a total resistance of $150\ \Omega$. (a) What is the value of the second resistance? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Two resistors, one having a resistance of $900\ \text{k}\Omega$, are connected in series to produce a total resistance of $0.500\ \text{M}\Omega$. (a) What is the value of the second resistance? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) $-400\ \text{k}\Omega$

(b) Resistance cannot be negative.

(c) Series resistance is said to be less than one of the resistors, but it must be greater than any of the resistors.

Glossary

series

a sequence of resistors or other components wired into a circuit one after the other

resistor
: a component that provides resistance to the current flowing through an electrical circuit

resistance
: causing a loss of electrical power in a circuit

Ohm's law
: the relationship between current, voltage, and resistance within an electrical circuit: $V = \text{IR}$

voltage
: the electrical potential energy per unit charge; electric pressure created by a power source, such as a battery

voltage drop
: the loss of electrical power as a current travels through a resistor, wire or other component

current
: the flow of charge through an electric circuit past a given point of measurement

Joule's law
: the relationship between potential electrical power, voltage, and resistance in an electrical circuit, given by: $P_e = \text{IV}$

parallel
: the wiring of resistors or other components in an electrical circuit such that each component receives an equal voltage from the power source; often pictured in a ladder-shaped diagram, with each component on a rung of the ladder

Electromotive Force: Terminal Voltage

- Compare and contrast the voltage and the electromagnetic force of an electric power source.
- Describe what happens to the terminal voltage, current, and power delivered to a load as internal resistance of the voltage source increases (due to aging of batteries, for example).
- Explain why it is beneficial to use more than one voltage source connected in parallel.

When you forget to turn off your car lights, they slowly dim as the battery runs down. Why don’t they simply blink off when the battery’s energy is gone? Their gradual dimming implies that battery output voltage decreases as the battery is depleted.

Furthermore, if you connect an excessive number of 12-V lights in parallel to a car battery, they will be dim even when the battery is fresh and even if the wires to the lights have very low resistance. This implies that the battery’s output voltage is reduced by the overload.

The reason for the decrease in output voltage for depleted or overloaded batteries is that all voltage sources have two fundamental parts—a source of electrical energy and an **internal resistance**. Let us examine both.

Electromotive Force

You can think of many different types of voltage sources. Batteries themselves come in many varieties. There are many types of mechanical/electrical generators, driven by many different energy sources, ranging from nuclear to wind. Solar cells create voltages directly from light, while thermoelectric devices create voltage from temperature differences.

A few voltage sources are shown in [link]. All such devices create a **potential difference** and can supply current if connected to a resistance. On the small scale, the potential difference creates an electric field that exerts force on charges, causing current. We thus use the name **electromotive force**, abbreviated emf.

Emf is not a force at all; it is a special type of potential difference. To be precise, the electromotive force (emf) is the potential difference of a source when no current is flowing. Units of emf are volts.

A variety of voltage sources (clockwise from top left): the Brazos Wind Farm in Fluvanna, Texas (credit: Leaflet, Wikimedia Commons); the Krasnoyarsk Dam in Russia (credit: Alex Polezhaev); a solar farm (credit: U.S. Department of Energy); and a group of nickel metal hydride batteries (credit: Tiaa Monto). The voltage output of each depends on its construction and load, and equals emf only if there is no load.

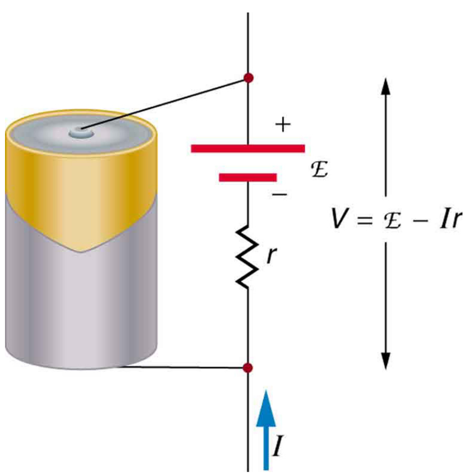
Electromotive force is directly related to the source of potential difference, such as the particular combination of chemicals in a battery. However, emf

differs from the voltage output of the device when current flows. The voltage across the terminals of a battery, for example, is less than the emf when the battery supplies current, and it declines further as the battery is depleted or loaded down. However, if the device's output voltage can be measured without drawing current, then output voltage will equal emf (even for a very depleted battery).

Internal Resistance

As noted before, a 12-V truck battery is physically larger, contains more charge and energy, and can deliver a larger current than a 12-V motorcycle battery. Both are lead-acid batteries with identical emf, but, because of its size, the truck battery has a smaller internal resistance r. Internal resistance is the inherent resistance to the flow of current within the source itself.

[link] is a schematic representation of the two fundamental parts of any voltage source. The emf (represented by a script E in the figure) and internal resistance r are in series. The smaller the internal resistance for a given emf, the more current and the more power the source can supply.

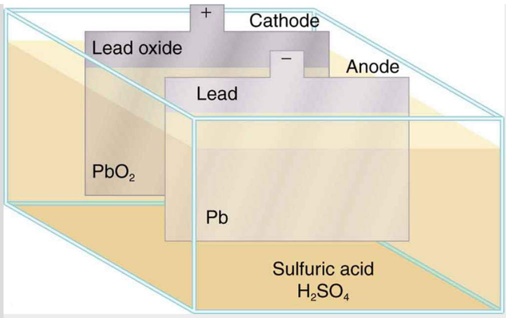


Any voltage source (in this case, a carbon-zinc dry cell) has an emf related to its source of

potential difference, and an internal resistance r related to its construction. (Note that the script E stands for emf.). Also shown are the output terminals across which the terminal voltage V is measured. Since $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$, terminal voltage equals emf only if there is no current flowing.

The internal resistance r can behave in complex ways. As noted, r increases as a battery is depleted. But internal resistance may also depend on the magnitude and direction of the current through a voltage source, its temperature, and even its history. The internal resistance of rechargeable nickel-cadmium cells, for example, depends on how many times and how deeply they have been depleted.

Note:
Things Great and Small: The Submicroscopic Origin of Battery Potential
Various types of batteries are available, with emfs determined by the combination of chemicals involved. We can view this as a molecular reaction (what much of chemistry is about) that separates charge.
The lead-acid battery used in cars and other vehicles is one of the most common types. A single cell (one of six) of this battery is seen in [link]. The cathode (positive) terminal of the cell is connected to a lead oxide plate, while the anode (negative) terminal is connected to a lead plate. Both plates are immersed in sulfuric acid, the electrolyte for the system.

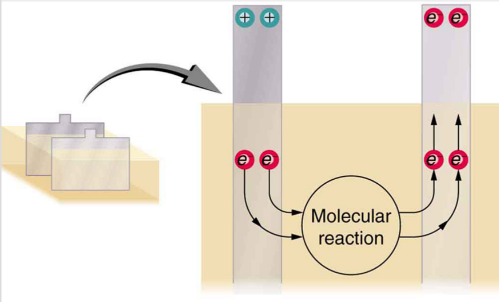


Artist's conception of a lead-acid cell. Chemical reactions in a lead-acid cell separate charge, sending negative charge to the anode, which is connected to the lead plates. The lead oxide plates are connected to the positive or cathode terminal of the cell. Sulfuric acid conducts the charge as well as participating in the chemical reaction.

The details of the chemical reaction are left to the reader to pursue in a chemistry text, but their results at the molecular level help explain the potential created by the battery. [link] shows the result of a single chemical reaction. Two electrons are placed on the anode, making it negative, provided that the cathode supplied two electrons. This leaves the cathode positively charged, because it has lost two electrons. In short, a separation of charge has been driven by a chemical reaction.

Note that the reaction will not take place unless there is a complete circuit to allow two electrons to be supplied to the cathode. Under many circumstances, these electrons come from the anode, flow through a resistance, and return to the cathode. Note also that since the chemical

reactions involve substances with resistance, it is not possible to create the emf without an internal resistance.



Artist’s conception of two electrons being forced onto the anode of a cell and two electrons being removed from the cathode of the cell. The chemical reaction in a lead-acid battery places two electrons on the anode and removes two from the cathode. It requires a closed circuit to proceed, since the two electrons must be supplied to the cathode.

Why are the chemicals able to produce a unique potential difference? Quantum mechanical descriptions of molecules, which take into account the types of atoms and numbers of electrons in them, are able to predict the energy states they can have and the energies of reactions between them.

In the case of a lead-acid battery, an energy of 2 eV is given to each electron sent to the anode. Voltage is defined as the electrical potential

energy divided by charge: $V = \frac{P_{\text{E}}}{q}$. An electron volt is the energy given to a single electron by a voltage of 1 V. So the voltage here is 2 V, since 2 eV is given to each electron. It is the energy produced in each molecular reaction that produces the voltage. A different reaction produces a different energy and, hence, a different voltage.

Terminal Voltage

The voltage output of a device is measured across its terminals and, thus, is called its **terminal voltage** V. Terminal voltage is given by

Equation:

$$V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir},$$

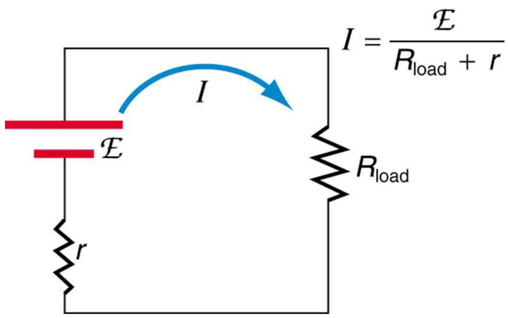
where r is the internal resistance and I is the current flowing at the time of the measurement.

I is positive if current flows away from the positive terminal, as shown in [link]. You can see that the larger the current, the smaller the terminal voltage. And it is likewise true that the larger the internal resistance, the smaller the terminal voltage.

Suppose a load resistance R_{load} is connected to a voltage source, as in [link]. Since the resistances are in series, the total resistance in the circuit is $R_{\text{load}} + r$. Thus the current is given by Ohm's law to be

Equation:

$$I = \frac{\text{emf}}{R_{\text{load}} + r}.$$



Schematic of a voltage source and its load R_{load}. Since the internal resistance r is in series with the load, it can significantly affect the terminal voltage and current delivered to the load. (Note that the script E stands for emf.)

We see from this expression that the smaller the internal resistance r, the greater the current the voltage source supplies to its load R_{load}. As batteries are depleted, r increases. If r becomes a significant fraction of the load resistance, then the current is significantly reduced, as the following example illustrates.

Example:
Calculating Terminal Voltage, Power Dissipation, Current, and Resistance: Terminal Voltage and Load

A certain battery has a 12.0-V emf and an internal resistance of $0.100\ \Omega$. (a) Calculate its terminal voltage when connected to a $10.0\text{-}\Omega$ load. (b) What is the terminal voltage when connected to a $0.500\text{-}\Omega$ load? (c) What power does the $0.500\text{-}\Omega$ load dissipate? (d) If the internal resistance grows

to 0.500 Ω, find the current, terminal voltage, and power dissipated by a 0.500-Ω load.

Strategy

The analysis above gave an expression for current when internal resistance is taken into account. Once the current is found, the terminal voltage can be calculated using the equation $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$. Once current is found, the power dissipated by a resistor can also be found.

Solution for (a)

Entering the given values for the emf, load resistance, and internal resistance into the expression above yields

Equation:

$$I = \frac{\text{emf}}{R_{\text{load}} + r} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{10.1\,\Omega} = 1.188\ \text{A}.$$

Enter the known values into the equation $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$ to get the terminal voltage:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \text{emf} - Ir = 12.0\ \text{V} - (1.188\ \text{A})(0.100\ \Omega) \\ &= 11.9\ \text{V}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)

The terminal voltage here is only slightly lower than the emf, implying that 10.0 Ω is a light load for this particular battery.

Solution for (b)

Similarly, with $R_{\text{load}} = 0.500\,\Omega$, the current is

Equation:

$$I = \frac{\text{emf}}{R_{\text{load}} + r} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{0.600\,\Omega} = 20.0\ \text{A}.$$

The terminal voltage is now

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \text{emf} - Ir = 12.0\ \text{V} - (20.0\ \text{A})(0.100\ \Omega) \\ &= 10.0\ \text{V}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (b)

This terminal voltage exhibits a more significant reduction compared with emf, implying $0.500\,\Omega$ is a heavy load for this battery.

Solution for (c)

The power dissipated by the 0.500 - Ω load can be found using the formula $P = I^2R$. Entering the known values gives

Equation:

$$P_{\text{load}} = I^2R_{\text{load}} = (20.0\text{ A})^2(0.500\ \Omega) = 2.00 \times 10^2\text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (c)

Note that this power can also be obtained using the expressions $\frac{V^2}{R}$ or IV, where V is the terminal voltage (10.0 V in this case).

Solution for (d)

Here the internal resistance has increased, perhaps due to the depletion of the battery, to the point where it is as great as the load resistance. As before, we first find the current by entering the known values into the expression, yielding

Equation:

$$I = \frac{\text{emf}}{R_{\text{load}} + r} = \frac{12.0\text{ V}}{1.00\ \Omega} = 12.0\text{ A}.$$

Now the terminal voltage is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \text{emf} - Ir = 12.0\text{ V} - (12.0\text{ A})(0.500\ \Omega) \\ &= 6.00\text{ V}, \end{aligned}$$

and the power dissipated by the load is

Equation:

$$P_{\text{load}} = I^2R_{\text{load}} = (12.0\text{ A})^2(0.500\ \Omega) = 72.0\text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (d)

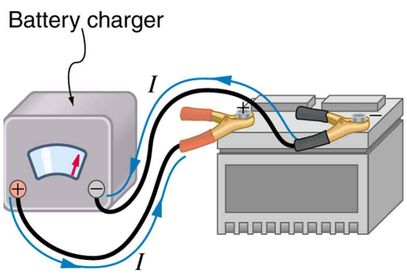
We see that the increased internal resistance has significantly decreased terminal voltage, current, and power delivered to a load.

Battery testers, such as those in [link], use small load resistors to intentionally draw current to determine whether the terminal voltage drops below an acceptable level. They really test the internal resistance of the battery. If internal resistance is high, the battery is weak, as evidenced by its low terminal voltage.

These two battery testers measure terminal voltage under a load to determine the condition of a battery. The large device is being used by a U.S. Navy electronics technician to test large batteries aboard the aircraft carrier USS *Nimitz* and has a small resistance that can dissipate large amounts of power. (credit: U.S. Navy photo by Photographer’s Mate Airman Jason A. Johnston) The small device is used on small batteries and has a digital display to indicate the acceptability of their terminal voltage. (credit: Keith Williamson)

Some batteries can be recharged by passing a current through them in the direction opposite to the current they supply to a resistance. This is done routinely in cars and batteries for small electrical appliances and electronic devices, and is represented pictorially in [link]. The voltage output of the battery charger must be greater than the emf of the battery to reverse current

through it. This will cause the terminal voltage of the battery to be greater than the emf, since $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$, and I is now negative.



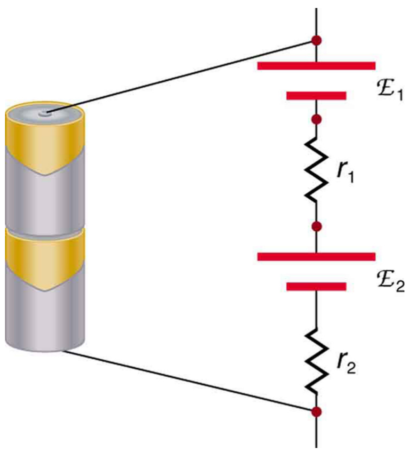
A car battery charger reverses the normal direction of current through a battery, reversing its chemical reaction and replenishing its chemical potential.

Multiple Voltage Sources

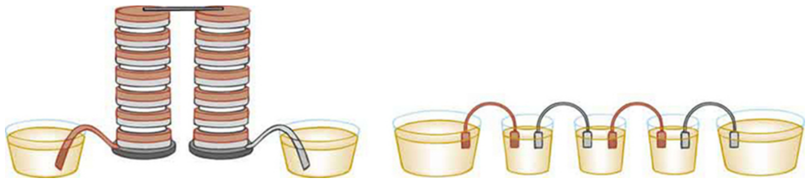
There are two voltage sources when a battery charger is used. Voltage sources connected in series are relatively simple. When voltage sources are in series, their internal resistances add and their emfs add algebraically. (See [link].) Series connections of voltage sources are common—for example, in flashlights, toys, and other appliances. Usually, the cells are in series in order to produce a larger total emf.

But if the cells oppose one another, such as when one is put into an appliance backward, the total emf is less, since it is the algebraic sum of the individual emfs.

A battery is a multiple connection of voltaic cells, as shown in [link]. The disadvantage of series connections of cells is that their internal resistances add. One of the authors once owned a 1957 MGA that had two 6-V batteries in series, rather than a single 12-V battery. This arrangement produced a large internal resistance that caused him many problems in starting the engine.

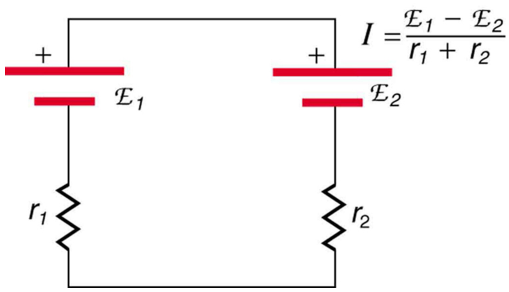


A series connection of two voltage sources. The emfs (each labeled with a script E) and internal resistances add, giving a total emf of $\text{emf}_1 + \text{emf}_2$ and a total internal resistance of $r_1 + r_2$.



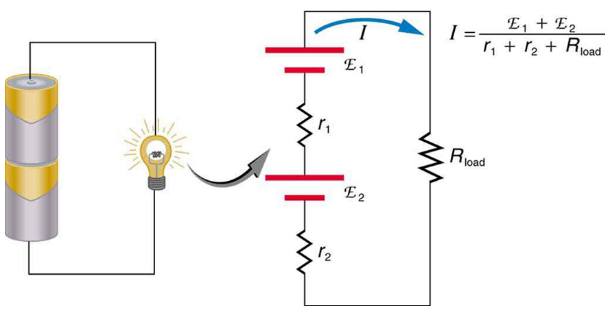
Batteries are multiple connections of individual cells, as shown in this modern rendition of an old print. Single cells, such as AA or C cells, are commonly called batteries, although this is technically incorrect.

If the *series* connection of two voltage sources is made into a complete circuit with the emfs in opposition, then a current of magnitude $I = \frac{(\text{emf}_1 - \text{emf}_2)}{r_1 + r_2}$ flows. See [link], for example, which shows a circuit exactly analogous to the battery charger discussed above. If two voltage sources in series with emfs in the same sense are connected to a load R_{load}, as in [link], then $I = \frac{(\text{emf}_1 + \text{emf}_2)}{r_1 + r_2 + R_{\text{load}}}$ flows.



These two voltage sources are connected in series with their emfs in opposition. Current flows in the direction of the greater emf and is limited

to $I = \frac{(\text{emf}_1 - \text{emf}_2)}{r_1 + r_2}$ by the sum of the internal resistances. (Note that each emf is represented by script E in the figure.) A battery charger connected to a battery is an example of such a connection. The charger must have a larger emf than the battery to reverse current through it.

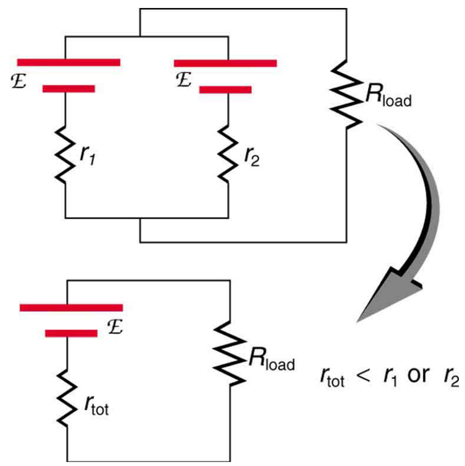


This schematic represents a flashlight with two cells (voltage sources) and a single bulb (load resistance) in series. The current that flows is $I = \frac{(\text{emf}_1 + \text{emf}_2)}{r_1 + r_2 + R_{\text{load}}}$. (Note that each emf is represented by script E in the figure.)

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Flashlight Batteries
Find a flashlight that uses several batteries and find new and old batteries. Based on the discussions in this module, predict the brightness of the flashlight when different combinations of batteries are used. Do your predictions match what you observe? Now place new batteries in the flashlight and leave the flashlight switched on for several hours. Is the flashlight still quite bright? Do the same with the old batteries. Is the flashlight as bright when left on for the same length of time with old and new batteries? What does this say for the case when you are limited in the number of available new batteries?

[link] shows two voltage sources with identical emfs in parallel and connected to a load resistance. In this simple case, the total emf is the same as the individual emfs. But the total internal resistance is reduced, since the internal resistances are in parallel. The parallel connection thus can produce a larger current.

Here, $I = \frac{\text{emf}}{(r_{\text{tot}} + R_{\text{load}})}$ flows through the load, and r_{tot} is less than those of the individual batteries. For example, some diesel-powered cars use two 12-V batteries in parallel; they produce a total emf of 12 V but can deliver the larger current needed to start a diesel engine.



Two voltage sources with identical emfs (each labeled by script E) connected in parallel produce the same emf but have a smaller total internal resistance than the individual sources. Parallel combinations are often used to deliver more current. Here $I = \frac{\text{emf}}{(r_{\text{tot}} + R_{\text{load}})}$ flows through the load.

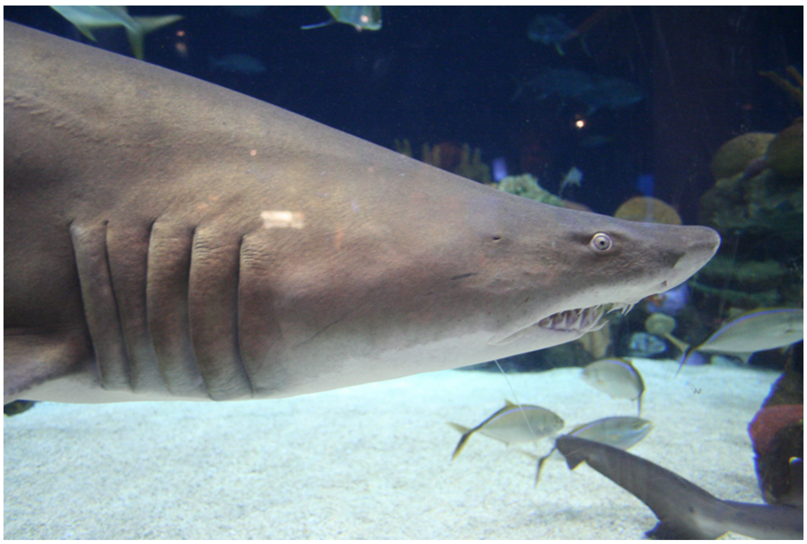
Animals as Electrical Detectors

A number of animals both produce and detect electrical signals. Fish, sharks, platypuses, and echidnas (spiny anteaters) all detect electric fields generated by nerve activity in prey. Electric eels produce their own emf through biological cells (electric organs) called electroplaques, which are arranged in both series and parallel as a set of batteries.

Electroplaques are flat, disk-like cells; those of the electric eel have a voltage of 0.15 V across each one. These cells are usually located toward the head or tail of the animal, although in the case of the electric eel, they are found along the entire body. The electroplaques in the South American eel are arranged in 140 rows, with each row stretching horizontally along the body and containing 5,000 electroplaques. This can yield an emf of approximately 600 V, and a current of 1 A—deadly.

The mechanism for detection of external electric fields is similar to that for producing nerve signals in the cell through depolarization and

repolarization—the movement of ions across the cell membrane. Within the fish, weak electric fields in the water produce a current in a gel-filled canal that runs from the skin to sensing cells, producing a nerve signal. The Australian platypus, one of the very few mammals that lay eggs, can detect fields of 30 $\frac{\text{mV}}{\text{m}}$, while sharks have been found to be able to sense a field in their snouts as small as 100 $\frac{\text{mV}}{\text{m}}$ ([link]). Electric eels use their own electric fields produced by the electroplaques to stun their prey or enemies.



Sand tiger sharks (*Carcharias taurus*), like this one at the Minnesota Zoo, use electroreceptors in their snouts to locate prey. (credit: Jim Winstead, Flickr)

Solar Cell Arrays

Another example dealing with multiple voltage sources is that of combinations of solar cells—wired in both series and parallel combinations to yield a desired voltage and current. Photovoltaic generation (PV), the conversion of sunlight directly into electricity, is based upon the

photoelectric effect, in which photons hitting the surface of a solar cell create an electric current in the cell.

Most solar cells are made from pure silicon—either as single-crystal silicon, or as a thin film of silicon deposited upon a glass or metal backing. Most single cells have a voltage output of about 0.5 V, while the current output is a function of the amount of sunlight upon the cell (the incident solar radiation—the insolation). Under bright noon sunlight, a current of about $100\ \text{mA/cm}^2$ of cell surface area is produced by typical single-crystal cells.

Individual solar cells are connected electrically in modules to meet electrical-energy needs. They can be wired together in series or in parallel —connected like the batteries discussed earlier. A solar-cell array or module usually consists of between 36 and 72 cells, with a power output of 50 W to 140 W.

The output of the solar cells is direct current. For most uses in a home, AC is required, so a device called an inverter must be used to convert the DC to AC. Any extra output can then be passed on to the outside electrical grid for sale to the utility.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Virtual Solar Cells
One can assemble a "virtual" solar cell array by using playing cards, or business or index cards, to represent a solar cell. Combinations of these cards in series and/or parallel can model the required array output. Assume each card has an output of 0.5 V and a current (under bright light) of 2 A. Using your cards, how would you arrange them to produce an output of 6 A at 3 V (18 W)?
Suppose you were told that you needed only 18 W (but no required voltage). Would you need more cards to make this arrangement?

Section Summary

- All voltage sources have two fundamental parts—a source of electrical energy that has a characteristic electromotive force (emf), and an internal resistance r.
- The emf is the potential difference of a source when no current is flowing.
- The numerical value of the emf depends on the source of potential difference.
- The internal resistance r of a voltage source affects the output voltage when a current flows.
- The voltage output of a device is called its terminal voltage V and is given by $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$, where I is the electric current and is positive when flowing away from the positive terminal of the voltage source.
- When multiple voltage sources are in series, their internal resistances add and their emfs add algebraically.
- Solar cells can be wired in series or parallel to provide increased voltage or current, respectively.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

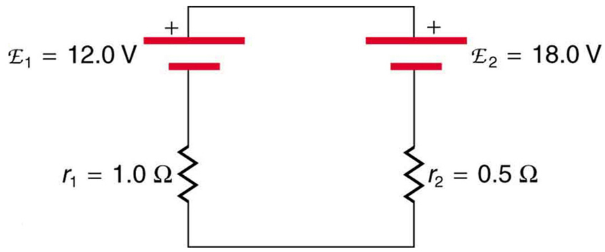
Problem:

Is every emf a potential difference? Is every potential difference an emf? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain which battery is doing the charging and which is being charged in [link].



Exercise:

Problem:

Given a battery, an assortment of resistors, and a variety of voltage and current measuring devices, describe how you would determine the internal resistance of the battery.

Exercise:

Problem:

Two different 12-V automobile batteries on a store shelf are rated at 600 and 850 "cold cranking amps." Which has the smallest internal resistance?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the advantages and disadvantages of connecting batteries in series? In parallel?

Exercise:

Problem:

Semitractor trucks use four large 12-V batteries. The starter system requires 24 V, while normal operation of the truck's other electrical components utilizes 12 V. How could the four batteries be connected to produce 24 V? To produce 12 V? Why is 24 V better than 12 V for starting the truck's engine (a very heavy load)?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Standard automobile batteries have six lead-acid cells in series, creating a total emf of 12.0 V. What is the emf of an individual lead-acid cell?

Solution:

2.00 V

Exercise:

Problem:

Carbon-zinc dry cells (sometimes referred to as non-alkaline cells) have an emf of 1.54 V, and they are produced as single cells or in various combinations to form other voltages. (a) How many 1.54-V cells are needed to make the common 9-V battery used in many small electronic devices? (b) What is the actual emf of the approximately 9-V battery? (c) Discuss how internal resistance in the series connection of cells will affect the terminal voltage of this approximately 9-V battery.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the output voltage of a 3.0000-V lithium cell in a digital wristwatch that draws 0.300 mA, if the cell's internal resistance is $2.00\ \Omega$?

Solution:

2.9994 V

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the terminal voltage of a large 1.54-V carbon-zinc dry cell used in a physics lab to supply 2.00 A to a circuit, if the cell's internal resistance is $0.100\ \Omega$? (b) How much electrical power does the cell produce? (c) What power goes to its load?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the internal resistance of an automobile battery that has an emf of 12.0 V and a terminal voltage of 15.0 V while a current of 8.00 A is charging it?

Solution:

$0.375\ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the terminal voltage of a 12.0-V motorcycle battery having a $0.600\text{-}\Omega$ internal resistance, if it is being charged by a current of 10.0 A. (b) What is the output voltage of the battery charger?

Exercise:

Problem:

A car battery with a 12-V emf and an internal resistance of $0.050\,\Omega$ is being charged with a current of 60 A. Note that in this process the battery is being charged. (a) What is the potential difference across its terminals? (b) At what rate is thermal energy being dissipated in the battery? (c) At what rate is electric energy being converted to chemical energy? (d) What are the answers to (a) and (b) when the battery is used to supply 60 A to the starter motor?

Exercise:

Problem:

The hot resistance of a flashlight bulb is $2.30\,\Omega$, and it is run by a 1.58-V alkaline cell having a 0.100-Ω internal resistance. (a) What current flows? (b) Calculate the power supplied to the bulb using I^2R_{bulb}. (c) Is this power the same as calculated using $\frac{V^2}{R_{\text{bulb}}}$?

Solution:

(a) 0.658 A

(b) 0.997 W

(c) 0.997 W; yes

Exercise:

Problem:

The label on a portable radio recommends the use of rechargeable nickel-cadmium cells (nicads), although they have a 1.25-V emf while alkaline cells have a 1.58-V emf. The radio has a 3.20-Ω resistance. (a) Draw a circuit diagram of the radio and its batteries. Now, calculate the power delivered to the radio. (b) When using Nicad cells each having an internal resistance of $0.0400\ \Omega$. (c) When using alkaline cells each having an internal resistance of $0.200\ \Omega$. (d) Does this difference seem significant, considering that the radio's effective resistance is lowered when its volume is turned up?

Exercise:

Problem:

An automobile starter motor has an equivalent resistance of $0.0500\,\Omega$ and is supplied by a 12.0-V battery with a 0.0100-Ω internal resistance. (a) What is the current to the motor? (b) What voltage is applied to it? (c) What power is supplied to the motor? (d) Repeat these calculations for when the battery connections are corroded and add $0.0900\,\Omega$ to the circuit. (Significant problems are caused by even small amounts of unwanted resistance in low-voltage, high-current applications.)

Solution:

(a) 200 A

(b) 10.0 V

(c) 2.00 kW

(d) $0.1000\ \Omega$; $80.0\ \text{A}$, $4.0\ \text{V}$, $320\ \text{W}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A child's electronic toy is supplied by three 1.58-V alkaline cells having internal resistances of $0.0200\,\Omega$ in series with a 1.53-V carbon-zinc dry cell having a 0.100-Ω internal resistance. The load resistance is $10.0\,\Omega$. (a) Draw a circuit diagram of the toy and its batteries. (b) What current flows? (c) How much power is supplied to the load? (d) What is the internal resistance of the dry cell if it goes bad, resulting in only 0.500 W being supplied to the load?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the internal resistance of a voltage source if its terminal voltage drops by 2.00 V when the current supplied increases by 5.00 A? (b) Can the emf of the voltage source be found with the information supplied?

Solution:

(a) $0.400\ \Omega$

(b) No, there is only one independent equation, so only r can be found.

Exercise:

Problem:

A person with body resistance between his hands of $10.0\ \text{k}\Omega$ accidentally grasps the terminals of a 20.0-kV power supply. (Do NOT do this!) (a) Draw a circuit diagram to represent the situation. (b) If the internal resistance of the power supply is $2000\ \Omega$, what is the current through his body? (c) What is the power dissipated in his body? (d) If the power supply is to be made safe by increasing its internal resistance, what should the internal resistance be for the maximum current in this situation to be 1.00 mA or less? (e) Will this modification compromise the effectiveness of the power supply for driving low-resistance devices? Explain your reasoning.

Exercise:

Problem:

Electric fish generate current with biological cells called electroplaques, which are physiological emf devices. The electroplaques in the South American eel are arranged in 140 rows, each row stretching horizontally along the body and each containing 5000 electroplaques. Each electroplaque has an emf of 0.15 V and internal resistance of $0.25\ \Omega$. If the water surrounding the fish has resistance of $800\ \Omega$, how much current can the eel produce in water from near its head to near its tail?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A 12.0-V emf automobile battery has a terminal voltage of 16.0 V when being charged by a current of 10.0 A. (a) What is the battery’s internal resistance? (b) What power is dissipated inside the battery? (c) At what rate (in $^{\circ}\mathrm{C/min}$) will its temperature increase if its mass is 20.0 kg and it has a specific heat of $0.300\ \mathrm{kcal/kg}\cdot{}^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$, assuming no heat escapes?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A 1.58-V alkaline cell with a $0.200\text{-}\Omega$ internal resistance is supplying 8.50 A to a load. (a) What is its terminal voltage? (b) What is the value of the load resistance? (c) What is unreasonable about these results? (d) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) –0.120 V

(b) $-1.41\times10^{-2}\ \Omega$

(c) Negative terminal voltage; negative load resistance.

(d) The assumption that such a cell could provide 8.50 A is inconsistent with its internal resistance.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) What is the internal resistance of a 1.54-V dry cell that supplies 1.00 W of power to a $15.0\text{-}\Omega$ bulb? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Glossary

electromotive force (emf)
: the potential difference of a source of electricity when no current is flowing; measured in volts

internal resistance
: the amount of resistance within the voltage source

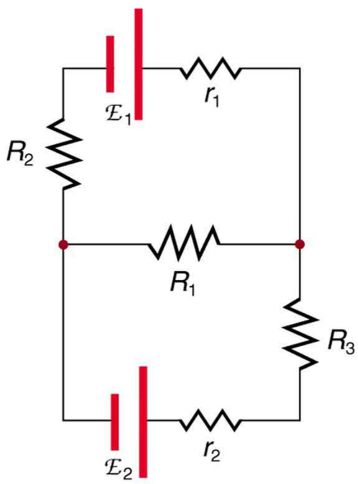
potential difference
: the difference in electric potential between two points in an electric circuit, measured in volts

terminal voltage
: the voltage measured across the terminals of a source of potential difference

Kirchhoff’s Rules

- Analyze a complex circuit using Kirchhoff’s rules, using the conventions for determining the correct signs of various terms.

Many complex circuits, such as the one in [link], cannot be analyzed with the series-parallel techniques developed in Resistors in Series and Parallel and Electromotive Force: Terminal Voltage. There are, however, two circuit analysis rules that can be used to analyze any circuit, simple or complex. These rules are special cases of the laws of conservation of charge and conservation of energy. The rules are known as **Kirchhoff’s rules**, after their inventor Gustav Kirchhoff (1824–1887).



This circuit cannot be reduced to a combination of series and parallel connections. Kirchhoff’s rules, special applications of the laws of conservation of charge and energy, can be

used to analyze
it. (Note: The
script E in the
figure represents
electromotive
force, emf.)

Note:
Kirchhoff's Rules

- Kirchhoff's first rule—the junction rule. The sum of all currents entering a junction must equal the sum of all currents leaving the junction.
- Kirchhoff's second rule—the loop rule. The algebraic sum of changes in potential around any closed circuit path (loop) must be zero.

Explanations of the two rules will now be given, followed by problem-solving hints for applying Kirchhoff's rules, and a worked example that uses them.

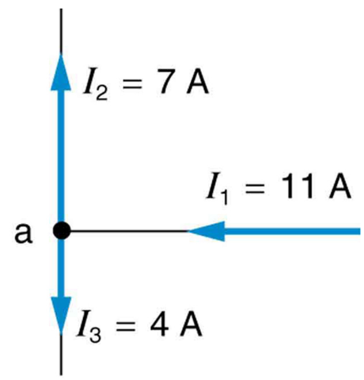
Kirchhoff's First Rule

Kirchhoff's first rule (the **junction rule**) is an application of the conservation of charge to a junction; it is illustrated in [link]. Current is the flow of charge, and charge is conserved; thus, whatever charge flows into the junction must flow out. Kirchhoff's first rule requires that $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$ (see figure). Equations like this can and will be used to analyze circuits and to solve circuit problems.

Note:

Making Connections: Conservation Laws

Kirchhoff’s rules for circuit analysis are applications of **conservation laws** to circuits. The first rule is the application of conservation of charge, while the second rule is the application of conservation of energy. Conservation laws, even used in a specific application, such as circuit analysis, are so basic as to form the foundation of that application.



$$I_1 = I_2 + I_3$$

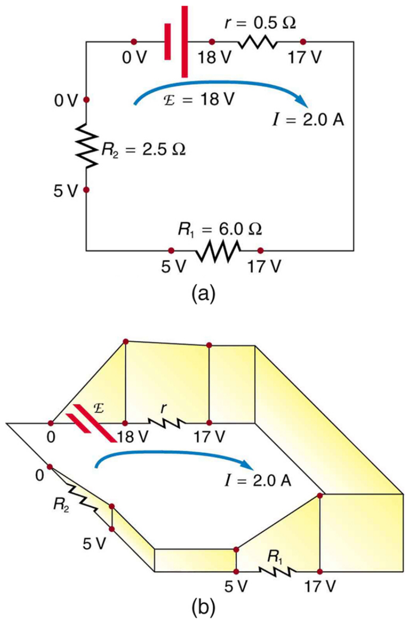
The junction rule. The diagram shows an example of Kirchhoff’s first rule where the sum of the currents into a junction equals the sum of the currents out of a junction. In this case, the current going into the junction splits and comes out as

two currents, so that $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$. Here I_1 must be 11 A, since I_2 is 7 A and I_3 is 4 A.

Kirchhoff's Second Rule

Kirchhoff's second rule (the **loop rule**) is an application of conservation of energy. The loop rule is stated in terms of potential, V, rather than potential energy, but the two are related since $\mathrm{PE_{elec}} = \mathrm{qV}$. Recall that **emf** is the potential difference of a source when no current is flowing. In a closed loop, whatever energy is supplied by emf must be transferred into other forms by devices in the loop, since there are no other ways in which energy can be transferred into or out of the circuit. [link] illustrates the changes in potential in a simple series circuit loop.

Kirchhoff's second rule requires $\mathrm{emf} - \mathrm{Ir} - \mathrm{IR}_1 - \mathrm{IR}_2 = 0$. Rearranged, this is $\mathrm{emf} = \mathrm{Ir} + IR_1 + IR_2$, which means the emf equals the sum of the IR (voltage) drops in the loop.



The loop rule. An example of Kirchhoff's second rule where the sum of the changes in potential around a closed loop must be zero. (a) In this standard schematic of a simple series circuit, the emf supplies 18 V, which is reduced to zero by the resistances, with 1 V across the internal resistance, and 12 V and 5 V across the two load resistances, for a total of 18 V. (b) This perspective view represents the

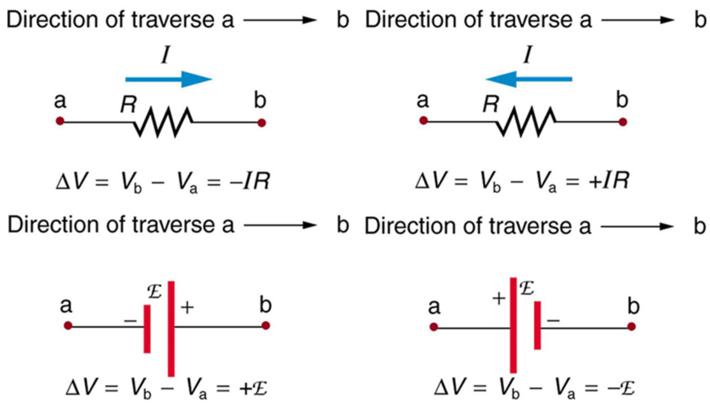
potential as something like a roller coaster, where charge is raised in potential by the emf and lowered by the resistances. (Note that the script E stands for emf.)

Applying Kirchhoff’s Rules

By applying Kirchhoff’s rules, we generate equations that allow us to find the unknowns in circuits. The unknowns may be currents, emfs, or resistances. Each time a rule is applied, an equation is produced. If there are as many independent equations as unknowns, then the problem can be solved. There are two decisions you must make when applying Kirchhoff’s rules. These decisions determine the signs of various quantities in the equations you obtain from applying the rules.

1. When applying Kirchhoff’s first rule, the junction rule, you must label the current in each branch and decide in what direction it is going. For example, in [link], [link], and [link], currents are labeled I_1, I_2, I_3, and I, and arrows indicate their directions. There is no risk here, for if you choose the wrong direction, the current will be of the correct magnitude but negative.
2. When applying Kirchhoff’s second rule, the loop rule, you must identify a closed loop and decide in which direction to go around it, clockwise or counterclockwise. For example, in [link] the loop was traversed in the same direction as the current (clockwise). Again, there is no risk; going around the circuit in the opposite direction reverses the sign of every term in the equation, which is like multiplying both sides of the equation by –1.

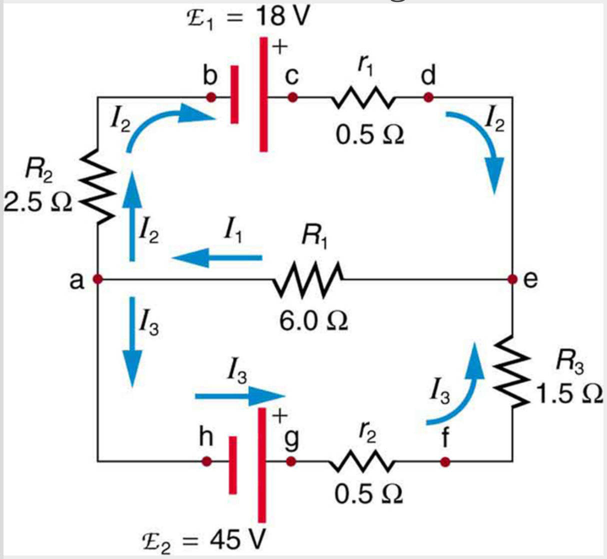
[link] and the following points will help you get the plus or minus signs right when applying the loop rule. Note that the resistors and emfs are traversed by going from a to b. In many circuits, it will be necessary to construct more than one loop. In traversing each loop, one needs to be consistent for the sign of the change in potential. (See [link].)



Each of these resistors and voltage sources is traversed from a to b. The potential changes are shown beneath each element and are explained in the text. (Note that the script E stands for emf.)

- When a resistor is traversed in the same direction as the current, the change in potential is $-\text{IR}$. (See [link].)
- When a resistor is traversed in the direction opposite to the current, the change in potential is $+\text{IR}$. (See [link].)
- When an emf is traversed from – to + (the same direction it moves positive charge), the change in potential is +emf. (See [link].)
- When an emf is traversed from + to – (opposite to the direction it moves positive charge), the change in potential is $-$emf. (See [link].)

Example:
Calculating Current: Using Kirchhoff’s Rules
Find the currents flowing in the circuit in [link].



This circuit is similar to that in [link], but the resistances and emfs are specified. (Each emf is denoted by script E.) The currents in each branch are labeled and assumed to move in the directions shown. This example uses Kirchhoff’s rules to find the currents.

Strategy
This circuit is sufficiently complex that the currents cannot be found using Ohm’s law and the series-parallel techniques—it is necessary to use Kirchhoff’s rules. Currents have been labeled I_1, I_2, and I_3 in the figure and assumptions have been made about their directions. Locations on the diagram have been labeled with letters a through h. In the solution we will apply the junction and loop rules, seeking three independent equations to allow us to solve for the three unknown currents.
Solution

We begin by applying Kirchhoff’s first or junction rule at point a. This gives
Equation:

$$I_1 = I_2 + I_3,$$

since I_1 flows into the junction, while I_2 and I_3 flow out. Applying the junction rule at e produces exactly the same equation, so that no new information is obtained. This is a single equation with three unknowns—three independent equations are needed, and so the loop rule must be applied.
Now we consider the loop abcdea. Going from a to b, we traverse R_2 in the same (assumed) direction of the current I_2, and so the change in potential is $-I_2R_2$. Then going from b to c, we go from – to +, so that the change in potential is $+\text{emf}_1$. Traversing the internal resistance r_1 from c to d gives $-I_2r_1$. Completing the loop by going from d to a again traverses a resistor in the same direction as its current, giving a change in potential of $-I_1R_1$.
The loop rule states that the changes in potential sum to zero. Thus,
Equation:

$$-I_2R_2 + \text{emf}_1 - I_2r_1 - I_1R_1 = -I_2(R_2 + r_1) + \text{emf}_1 - I_1R_1 = 0.$$

Substituting values from the circuit diagram for the resistances and emf, and canceling the ampere unit gives
Equation:

$$-3I_2 + 18 - 6I_1 = 0.$$

Now applying the loop rule to aefgha (we could have chosen abcdefgha as well) similarly gives
Equation:

$$+ I_1R_1 + I_3R_3 + I_3r_2 - \text{emf}_2 = +I_1R_1 + I_3(R_3 + r_2) - \text{emf}_2 = 0.$$

Note that the signs are reversed compared with the other loop, because elements are traversed in the opposite direction. With values entered, this becomes
Equation:

$$+ 6I_1 + 2I_3 - 45 = 0.$$

These three equations are sufficient to solve for the three unknown currents. First, solve the second equation for I_2:

Equation:

$$I_2 = 6 - 2I_1.$$

Now solve the third equation for I_3:

Equation:

$$I_3 = 22.5 - 3I_1.$$

Substituting these two new equations into the first one allows us to find a value for I_1:

Equation:

$$I_1 = I_2 + I_3 = (6 - 2I_1) + (22.5 - 3I_1) = 28.5 - 5I_1.$$

Combining terms gives

Equation:

$$6I_1 = 28.5, \text{ and}$$

Equation:

$$I_1 = 4.75 \text{ A}.$$

Substituting this value for I_1 back into the fourth equation gives

Equation:

$$I_2 = 6 - 2I_1 = 6 - 9.50$$

Equation:

$$I_2 = -3.50 \text{ A}.$$

The minus sign means I_2 flows in the direction opposite to that assumed in [link].

Finally, substituting the value for I_1 into the fifth equation gives

Equation:

$$I_3 = 22.5 - 3I_1 = 22.5 - 14.25$$

Equation:

$$I_3 = 8.25\text{ A}.$$

Discussion

Just as a check, we note that indeed $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$. The results could also have been checked by entering all of the values into the equation for the abcdefgha loop.

Note:

Problem-Solving Strategies for Kirchhoff's Rules

1. Make certain there is a clear circuit diagram on which you can label all known and unknown resistances, emfs, and currents. If a current is unknown, you must assign it a direction. This is necessary for determining the signs of potential changes. If you assign the direction incorrectly, the current will be found to have a negative value—no harm done.
2. Apply the junction rule to any junction in the circuit. Each time the junction rule is applied, you should get an equation with a current that does not appear in a previous application—if not, then the equation is redundant.
3. Apply the loop rule to as many loops as needed to solve for the unknowns in the problem. (There must be as many independent equations as unknowns.) To apply the loop rule, you must choose a direction to go around the loop. Then carefully and consistently determine the signs of the potential changes for each element using the four bulleted points discussed above in conjunction with [link].
4. Solve the simultaneous equations for the unknowns. This may involve many algebraic steps, requiring careful checking and rechecking.
5. Check to see whether the answers are reasonable and consistent. The numbers should be of the correct order of magnitude, neither

exceedingly large nor vanishingly small. The signs should be reasonable—for example, no resistance should be negative. Check to see that the values obtained satisfy the various equations obtained from applying the rules. The currents should satisfy the junction rule, for example.

The material in this section is correct in theory. We should be able to verify it by making measurements of current and voltage. In fact, some of the devices used to make such measurements are straightforward applications of the principles covered so far and are explored in the next modules. As we shall see, a very basic, even profound, fact results—making a measurement alters the quantity being measured.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Can Kirchhoff’s rules be applied to simple series and parallel circuits or are they restricted for use in more complicated circuits that are not combinations of series and parallel?

Solution:

Kirchhoff's rules can be applied to any circuit since they are applications to circuits of two conservation laws. Conservation laws are the most broadly applicable principles in physics. It is usually mathematically simpler to use the rules for series and parallel in simpler circuits so we emphasize Kirchhoff’s rules for use in more complicated situations. But the rules for series and parallel can be derived from Kirchhoff’s rules. Moreover, Kirchhoff’s rules can be expanded to devices other than resistors and emfs, such as capacitors, and are one of the basic analysis devices in circuit analysis.

Section Summary

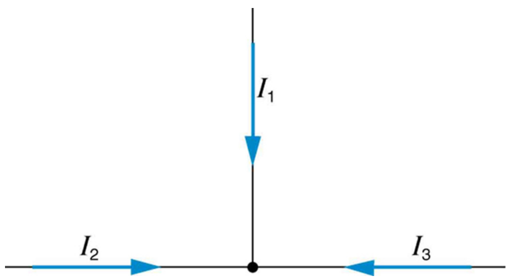
- Kirchhoff’s rules can be used to analyze any circuit, simple or complex.
- Kirchhoff’s first rule—the junction rule: The sum of all currents entering a junction must equal the sum of all currents leaving the junction.
- Kirchhoff’s second rule—the loop rule: The algebraic sum of changes in potential around any closed circuit path (loop) must be zero.
- The two rules are based, respectively, on the laws of conservation of charge and energy.
- When calculating potential and current using Kirchhoff’s rules, a set of conventions must be followed for determining the correct signs of various terms.
- The simpler series and parallel rules are special cases of Kirchhoff’s rules.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

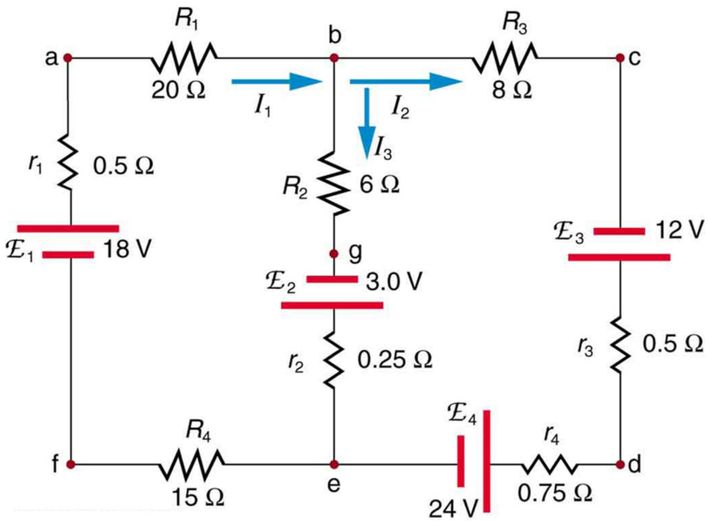
Can all of the currents going into the junction in [link] be positive? Explain.



Exercise:

Problem:

Apply the junction rule to junction b in [link]. Is any new information gained by applying the junction rule at e? (In the figure, each emf is represented by script E.)



Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the potential difference going from point a to point b in [link]? (b) What is the potential difference going from c to b? (c) From e to g? (d) From e to d?

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop afedcba in [link].

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loops abgefa and cbgedc in [link].

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop abcdefgha in [link].

Solution:
Equation:

$$-I_2R_2 + \text{emf}_1 - \mathrm{I}_2r_1 + \mathrm{I}_3R_3 + \mathrm{I}_3r_2 - \text{emf}_2 = 0$$

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop aedcba in [link].

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the second equation in [link] by substituting the values found for the currents I_1 and I_2.

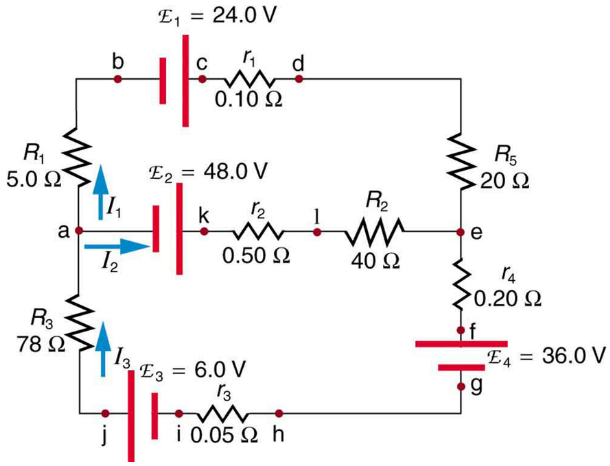
Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the third equation in [link] by substituting the values found for the currents I_1 and I_3.

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the junction rule at point a in [link].



Solution:
Equation:

$$I_3 = I_1 + I_2$$

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop abcdefghija in [link].

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop akledcba in [link].

Solution:
Equation:

$$\text{emf}_2 - I_2 r_2 - I_2 R_2 + I_1 R_5 + I_1 r_1 - \text{emf}_1 + I_1 R_1 = 0$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the currents flowing in the circuit in [link]. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors.

Exercise:

Problem:

Solve [link], but use loop abcdefgha instead of loop akledcba. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors.

Solution:

(a) $\mathrm{I}_1 = 4.75\ \mathrm{A}$

(b) $\mathrm{I}_2 = -3.5\ \mathrm{A}$

(c) $\mathrm{I}_3 = 8.25\ \mathrm{A}$

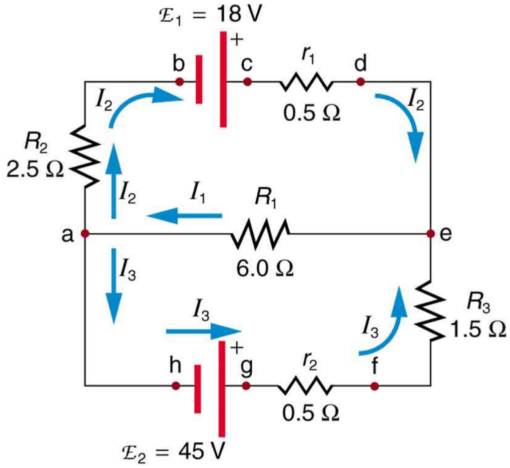
Exercise:

Problem: Find the currents flowing in the circuit in [link].

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Consider the circuit in [link], and suppose that the emfs are unknown and the currents are given to be $I_1 = 5.00\ \mathrm{A}$, $I_2 = 3.0\ \mathrm{A}$, and $I_3 = -2.00\ \mathrm{A}$. (a) Could you find the emfs? (b) What is wrong with the assumptions?



Solution:

(a) No, you would get inconsistent equations to solve.

(b) $I_1 \neq I_2 + I_3$. The assumed currents violate the junction rule.

Glossary

Kirchhoff’s rules
: a set of two rules, based on conservation of charge and energy, governing current and changes in potential in an electric circuit

junction rule
: Kirchhoff’s first rule, which applies the conservation of charge to a junction; current is the flow of charge; thus, whatever charge flows into the junction must flow out; the rule can be stated $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$

loop rule
: Kirchhoff’s second rule, which states that in a closed loop, whatever energy is supplied by emf must be transferred into other forms by devices in the loop, since there are no other ways in which energy can be transferred into or out of the circuit. Thus, the emf equals the sum of the IR (voltage) drops in the loop and can be stated: $\text{emf} = Ir + IR_1 + IR_2$

conservation laws
: require that energy and charge be conserved in a system

DC Voltmeters and Ammeters

- Explain why a voltmeter must be connected in parallel with the circuit.
- Draw a diagram showing an ammeter correctly connected in a circuit.
- Describe how a galvanometer can be used as either a voltmeter or an ammeter.
- Find the resistance that must be placed in series with a galvanometer to allow it to be used as a voltmeter with a given reading.
- Explain why measuring the voltage or current in a circuit can never be exact.

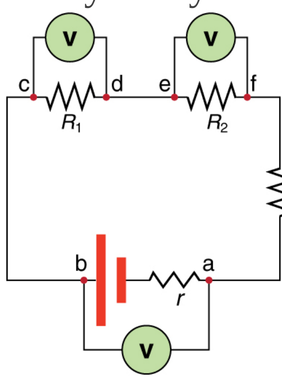
Voltmeters measure voltage, whereas **ammeters** measure current. Some of the meters in automobile dashboards, digital cameras, cell phones, and tuner-amplifiers are voltmeters or ammeters. (See [link].) The internal construction of the simplest of these meters and how they are connected to the system they monitor give further insight into applications of series and parallel connections.

The fuel and temperature gauges (far right and far left, respectively) in this 1996 Volkswagen are voltmeters that register the voltage output of “sender” units, which are hopefully proportional to the amount of gasoline in the tank and the engine

temperature. (credit: Christian Giersing)

Voltmeters are connected in parallel with whatever device's voltage is to be measured. A parallel connection is used because objects in parallel experience the same potential difference. (See [link], where the voltmeter is represented by the symbol V.)

Ammeters are connected in series with whatever device's current is to be measured. A series connection is used because objects in series have the same current passing through them. (See [link], where the ammeter is represented by the symbol A.)

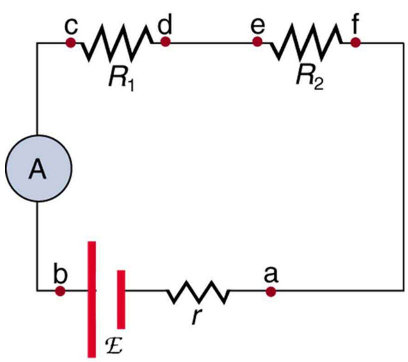


(a)

(b)

(a) To measure potential differences in this series circuit, the voltmeter (V) is placed in parallel with the

voltage source or either of the resistors. Note that terminal voltage is measured between points a and b. It is not possible to connect the voltmeter directly across the emf without including its internal resistance, r. (b) A digital voltmeter in use. (credit: Messtechniker, Wikimedia Commons)



An ammeter (A) is placed in series to measure current. All of the current in this circuit flows through the meter. The ammeter would have the same reading if located between points d and e or between points f and a as it does in the position shown. (Note that the script

capital E stands for emf, and r stands for the internal resistance of the source of potential difference.)

Analog Meters: Galvanometers

Analog meters have a needle that swivels to point at numbers on a scale, as opposed to **digital meters**, which have numerical readouts similar to a hand-held calculator. The heart of most analog meters is a device called a **galvanometer**, denoted by G. Current flow through a galvanometer, I_{G}, produces a proportional needle deflection. (This deflection is due to the force of a magnetic field upon a current-carrying wire.)

The two crucial characteristics of a given galvanometer are its resistance and current sensitivity. **Current sensitivity** is the current that gives a **full-scale deflection** of the galvanometer's needle, the maximum current that the instrument can measure. For example, a galvanometer with a current sensitivity of $50\ \mu\text{A}$ has a maximum deflection of its needle when $50\ \mu\text{A}$ flows through it, reads half-scale when $25\ \mu\text{A}$ flows through it, and so on.

If such a galvanometer has a $25\text{-}\Omega$ resistance, then a voltage of only $V = \text{IR} = (50\ \mu\text{A})(25\ \Omega) = 1.25\ \text{mV}$ produces a full-scale reading. By connecting resistors to this galvanometer in different ways, you can use it as either a voltmeter or ammeter that can measure a broad range of voltages or currents.

Galvanometer as Voltmeter

[link] shows how a galvanometer can be used as a voltmeter by connecting it in series with a large resistance, R. The value of the resistance R is

determined by the maximum voltage to be measured. Suppose you want 10 V to produce a full-scale deflection of a voltmeter containing a $25\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer with a $50\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity. Then 10 V applied to the meter must produce a current of $50\ \mu\text{A}$. The total resistance must be

Equation:

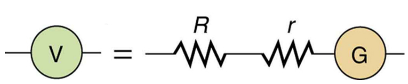
$$R_{\text{tot}} = R + r = \frac{V}{I} = \frac{10\text{ V}}{50\ \mu\text{A}} = 200\text{ k }\Omega\text{, or}$$

Equation:

$$R = R_{\text{tot}} - r = 200\text{ k}\Omega - 25\ \Omega \approx 200\text{ k}\Omega.$$

(R is so large that the galvanometer resistance, r, is nearly negligible.) Note that 5 V applied to this voltmeter produces a half-scale deflection by producing a $25\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ current through the meter, and so the voltmeter's reading is proportional to voltage as desired.

This voltmeter would not be useful for voltages less than about half a volt, because the meter deflection would be small and difficult to read accurately. For other voltage ranges, other resistances are placed in series with the galvanometer. Many meters have a choice of scales. That choice involves switching an appropriate resistance into series with the galvanometer.



A large resistance R placed in series with a galvanometer G produces a voltmeter, the full-scale deflection of which depends on the choice of R.

The larger the voltage to be measured, the larger R must be. (Note that r represents the internal resistance of the galvanometer.)

Galvanometer as Ammeter

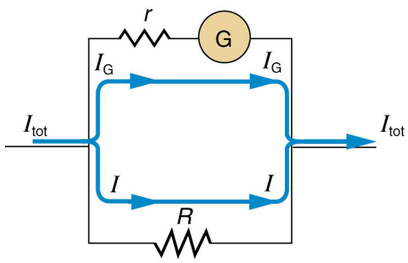
The same galvanometer can also be made into an ammeter by placing it in parallel with a small resistance R, often called the **shunt resistance**, as shown in [link]. Since the shunt resistance is small, most of the current passes through it, allowing an ammeter to measure currents much greater than those producing a full-scale deflection of the galvanometer.

Suppose, for example, an ammeter is needed that gives a full-scale deflection for 1.0 A, and contains the same $25\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer with its $50\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity. Since R and r are in parallel, the voltage across them is the same.

These IR drops are $\text{IR} = I_{\text{G}}r$ so that $\text{IR} = \frac{I_{\text{G}}}{I} = \frac{R}{r}$. Solving for R, and noting that I_{G} is 50 µA and I is 0.999950 A, we have

Equation:

$$R = r\frac{I_{\text{G}}}{I} = (25\,\Omega)\frac{50\ \mu\text{A}}{0.999950\ \text{A}} = 1.25\times10^{-3}\,\Omega.$$



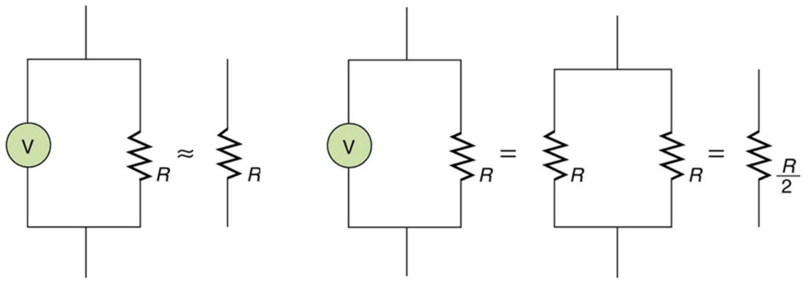
A small shunt resistance R placed in parallel with a galvanometer G produces an ammeter, the full-scale deflection of which depends on the choice of R. The larger the current to be measured, the smaller R must be. Most of the current (I) flowing through the meter is shunted through R to protect the galvanometer. (Note that r represents the internal resistance of the galvanometer.) Ammeters may also have multiple scales for greater flexibility in application. The various scales are

achieved by switching various shunt resistances in parallel with the galvanometer—the greater the maximum current to be measured, the smaller the shunt resistance must be.

Taking Measurements Alters the Circuit

When you use a voltmeter or ammeter, you are connecting another resistor to an existing circuit and, thus, altering the circuit. Ideally, voltmeters and ammeters do not appreciably affect the circuit, but it is instructive to examine the circumstances under which they do or do not interfere.

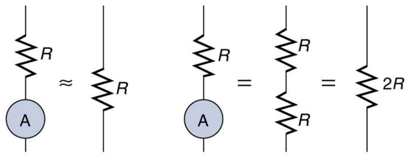
First, consider the voltmeter, which is always placed in parallel with the device being measured. Very little current flows through the voltmeter if its resistance is a few orders of magnitude greater than the device, and so the circuit is not appreciably affected. (See [link](a).) (A large resistance in parallel with a small one has a combined resistance essentially equal to the small one.) If, however, the voltmeter's resistance is comparable to that of the device being measured, then the two in parallel have a smaller resistance, appreciably affecting the circuit. (See [link](b).) The voltage across the device is not the same as when the voltmeter is out of the circuit.



(a) A voltmeter having a resistance much larger than the device ($R_{\text{Voltmeter}} >> R$) with which it is in parallel produces a parallel resistance essentially the same as the device and does not appreciably affect the circuit being measured. (b) Here the voltmeter has the same resistance as the device ($R_{\text{Voltmeter}} \cong R$), so that the parallel resistance is half of what it is when the voltmeter is not connected. This is an example of a significant alteration of the circuit and is to be avoided.

An ammeter is placed in series in the branch of the circuit being measured, so that its resistance adds to that branch. Normally, the ammeter's resistance is very small compared with the resistances of the devices in the circuit, and so the extra resistance is negligible. (See [link](a).) However, if very small load resistances are involved, or if the ammeter is not as low in resistance as it should be, then the total series resistance is significantly greater, and the current in the branch being measured is reduced. (See [link](b).)

A practical problem can occur if the ammeter is connected incorrectly. If it was put in parallel with the resistor to measure the current in it, you could possibly damage the meter; the low resistance of the ammeter would allow most of the current in the circuit to go through the galvanometer, and this current would be larger since the effective resistance is smaller.



(a) An ammeter normally has such a small resistance that the total series resistance in the branch being measured is not appreciably increased. The circuit is essentially unaltered compared with when the ammeter is absent. (b) Here the ammeter's resistance is the same as that of the branch, so that the total resistance is doubled and the current is half what it is without the ammeter. This significant alteration of the circuit is to be avoided.

One solution to the problem of voltmeters and ammeters interfering with the circuits being measured is to use galvanometers with greater sensitivity.

This allows construction of voltmeters with greater resistance and ammeters with smaller resistance than when less sensitive galvanometers are used.

There are practical limits to galvanometer sensitivity, but it is possible to get analog meters that make measurements accurate to a few percent. Note that the inaccuracy comes from altering the circuit, not from a fault in the meter.

Note:
Connections: Limits to Knowledge
Making a measurement alters the system being measured in a manner that produces uncertainty in the measurement. For macroscopic systems, such as the circuits discussed in this module, the alteration can usually be made negligibly small, but it cannot be eliminated entirely. For submicroscopic systems, such as atoms, nuclei, and smaller particles, measurement alters the system in a manner that cannot be made arbitrarily small. This actually limits knowledge of the system—even limiting what nature can know about itself. We shall see profound implications of this when the Heisenberg uncertainty principle is discussed in the modules on quantum mechanics.
There is another measurement technique based on drawing no current at all and, hence, not altering the circuit at all. These are called null measurements and are the topic of Null Measurements. Digital meters that employ solid-state electronics and null measurements can attain accuracies of one part in 10^6.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Digital meters are able to detect smaller currents than analog meters employing galvanometers. How does this explain their ability to measure voltage and current more accurately than analog meters?

Solution:

Since digital meters require less current than analog meters, they alter the circuit less than analog meters. Their resistance as a voltmeter can be far greater than an analog meter, and their resistance as an ammeter can be far less than an analog meter. Consult [link] and [link] and their discussion in the text.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Circuit Construction Kit (DC Only), Virtual Lab
Stimulate a neuron and monitor what happens. Pause, rewind, and move forward in time in order to observe the ions as they move across the neuron membrane.

Circuit Construction Kit (DC Only), Virtual Lab

Section Summary

- Voltmeters measure voltage, and ammeters measure current.
- A voltmeter is placed in parallel with the voltage source to receive full voltage and must have a large resistance to limit its effect on the circuit.
- An ammeter is placed in series to get the full current flowing through a branch and must have a small resistance to limit its effect on the circuit.

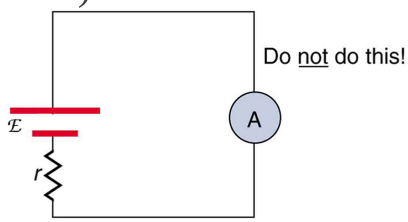
- Both can be based on the combination of a resistor and a galvanometer, a device that gives an analog reading of current.
- Standard voltmeters and ammeters alter the circuit being measured and are thus limited in accuracy.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why should you not connect an ammeter directly across a voltage source as shown in [link]? (Note that script E in the figure stands for emf.)



Exercise:

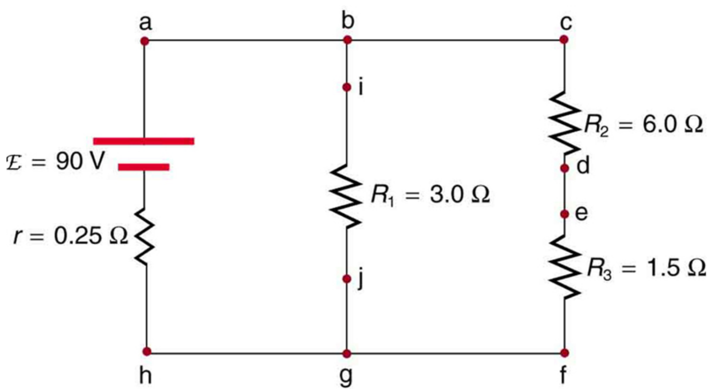
Problem:

Suppose you are using a multimeter (one designed to measure a range of voltages, currents, and resistances) to measure current in a circuit and you inadvertently leave it in a voltmeter mode. What effect will the meter have on the circuit? What would happen if you were measuring voltage but accidentally put the meter in the ammeter mode?

Exercise:

Problem:

Specify the points to which you could connect a voltmeter to measure the following potential differences in [link]: (a) the potential difference of the voltage source; (b) the potential difference across R_1; (c) across R_2; (d) across R_3; (e) across R_2 and R_3. Note that there may be more than one answer to each part.



Exercise:

Problem:

To measure currents in [link], you would replace a wire between two points with an ammeter. Specify the points between which you would place an ammeter to measure the following: (a) the total current; (b) the current flowing through R_1; (c) through R_2; (d) through R_3. Note that there may be more than one answer to each part.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the sensitivity of the galvanometer (that is, what current gives a full-scale deflection) inside a voltmeter that has a $1.00\text{-M}\Omega$ resistance on its 30.0-V scale?

Solution:

$30\ \mu A$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the sensitivity of the galvanometer (that is, what current gives a full-scale deflection) inside a voltmeter that has a $25.0\text{-k}\Omega$ resistance on its 100-V scale?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in series with a $25.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $50.0-\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity (the same as the one discussed in the text) to allow it to be used as a voltmeter with a 0.100-V full-scale reading.

Solution:

1.98 kΩ

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in series with a $25.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $50.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity (the same as the one discussed in the text) to allow it to be used as a voltmeter with a 3000-V full-scale reading. Include a circuit diagram with your solution.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in parallel with a $25.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $50.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity (the same as the one discussed in the text) to allow it to be used as an ammeter with a 10.0-A full-scale reading. Include a circuit diagram with your solution.

Solution:
Equation:

$$1.25\times10^{-4}\ \Omega$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in parallel with a $25.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $50.0\text{-}\mu A$ sensitivity (the same as the one discussed in the text) to allow it to be used as an ammeter with a 300-mA full-scale reading.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in series with a $10.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $100\text{-}\mu A$ sensitivity to allow it to be used as a voltmeter with: (a) a 300-V full-scale reading, and (b) a 0.300-V full-scale reading.

Solution:

(a) $3.00\ M\Omega$

(b) $2.99\ k\Omega$

Exercise:

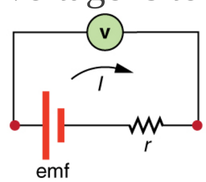
Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in parallel with a $10.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $100\text{-}\mu A$ sensitivity to allow it to be used as an ammeter with: (a) a 20.0-A full-scale reading, and (b) a 100-mA full-scale reading.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you measure the terminal voltage of a 1.585-V alkaline cell having an internal resistance of $0.100\,\Omega$ by placing a $1.00\text{-k}\Omega$ voltmeter across its terminals. (See [link].) (a) What current flows? (b) Find the terminal voltage. (c) To see how close the measured terminal voltage is to the emf, calculate their ratio.



Solution:

(a) 1.58 mA

(b) 1.5848 V (need four digits to see the difference)

(c) 0.99990 (need five digits to see the difference from unity)

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you measure the terminal voltage of a 3.200-V lithium cell having an internal resistance of $5.00\,\Omega$ by placing a $1.00\text{-k}\Omega$ voltmeter across its terminals. (a) What current flows? (b) Find the terminal voltage. (c) To see how close the measured terminal voltage is to the emf, calculate their ratio.

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain ammeter has a resistance of $5.00\times10^{-5}\ \Omega$ on its 3.00-A scale and contains a $10.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer. What is the sensitivity of the galvanometer?

Solution:

15.0 μA

Exercise:

Problem:

A 1.00-MΩ voltmeter is placed in parallel with a $75.0\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor in a circuit. (a) Draw a circuit diagram of the connection. (b) What is the resistance of the combination? (c) If the voltage across the combination is kept the same as it was across the $75.0\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor alone, what is the percent increase in current? (d) If the current through the combination is kept the same as it was through the $75.0\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor alone, what is the percentage decrease in voltage? (e) Are the changes found in parts (c) and (d) significant? Discuss.

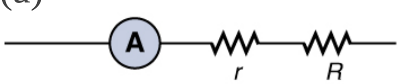
Exercise:

Problem:

A 0.0200-Ω ammeter is placed in series with a $10.00\text{-}\Omega$ resistor in a circuit. (a) Draw a circuit diagram of the connection. (b) Calculate the resistance of the combination. (c) If the voltage is kept the same across the combination as it was through the $10.00\text{-}\Omega$ resistor alone, what is the percent decrease in current? (d) If the current is kept the same through the combination as it was through the $10.00\text{-}\Omega$ resistor alone, what is the percent increase in voltage? (e) Are the changes found in parts (c) and (d) significant? Discuss.

Solution:

(a)



(b) 10.02 Ω

(c) 0.9980, or a 2.0×10^{-1} percent decrease

(d) 1.002, or a 2.0×10^{-1} percent increase

(e) Not significant.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Suppose you have a $40.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer with a $25.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity. (a) What resistance would you put in series with it to allow it to be used as a voltmeter that has a full-scale deflection for 0.500 mV? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) What resistance would you put in parallel with a $40.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $25.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity to allow it to be used as an ammeter that has a full-scale deflection for $10.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Solution:

(a) $-66.7\ \Omega$

(b) You can't have negative resistance.

(c) It is unreasonable that I_G is greater than I_tot (see [link]). You cannot achieve a full-scale deflection using a current less than the sensitivity of the galvanometer.

Glossary

voltmeter
: an instrument that measures voltage

ammeter

an instrument that measures current

analog meter
a measuring instrument that gives a readout in the form of a needle movement over a marked gauge

digital meter
a measuring instrument that gives a readout in a digital form

galvanometer
an analog measuring device, denoted by G, that measures current flow using a needle deflection caused by a magnetic field force acting upon a current-carrying wire

current sensitivity
the maximum current that a galvanometer can read

full-scale deflection
the maximum deflection of a galvanometer needle, also known as current sensitivity; a galvanometer with a full-scale deflection of $50\ \mu\text{A}$ has a maximum deflection of its needle when $50\ \mu\text{A}$ flows through it

shunt resistance
a small resistance R placed in parallel with a galvanometer G to produce an ammeter; the larger the current to be measured, the smaller R must be; most of the current flowing through the meter is shunted through R to protect the galvanometer

Null Measurements

- Explain why a null measurement device is more accurate than a standard voltmeter or ammeter.
- Demonstrate how a Wheatstone bridge can be used to accurately calculate the resistance in a circuit.

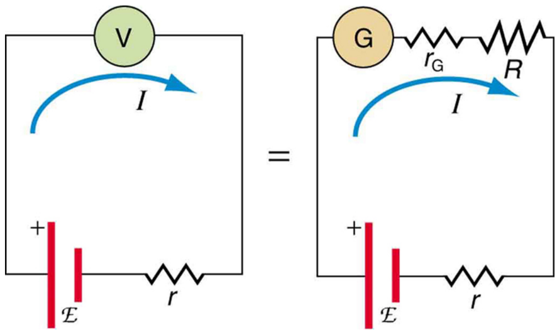
Standard measurements of voltage and current alter the circuit being measured, introducing uncertainties in the measurements. Voltmeters draw some extra current, whereas ammeters reduce current flow. **Null measurements** balance voltages so that there is no current flowing through the measuring device and, therefore, no alteration of the circuit being measured.

Null measurements are generally more accurate but are also more complex than the use of standard voltmeters and ammeters, and they still have limits to their precision. In this module, we shall consider a few specific types of null measurements, because they are common and interesting, and they further illuminate principles of electric circuits.

The Potentiometer

Suppose you wish to measure the emf of a battery. Consider what happens if you connect the battery directly to a standard voltmeter as shown in [link]. (Once we note the problems with this measurement, we will examine a null measurement that improves accuracy.) As discussed before, the actual quantity measured is the terminal voltage V, which is related to the emf of the battery by $V=\text{emf}-\text{Ir}$, where I is the current that flows and r is the internal resistance of the battery.

The emf could be accurately calculated if r were very accurately known, but it is usually not. If the current I could be made zero, then $V=\text{emf}$, and so emf could be directly measured. However, standard voltmeters need a current to operate; thus, another technique is needed.



An analog voltmeter attached to a battery draws a small but nonzero current and measures a terminal voltage that differs from the emf of the battery. (Note that the script capital E symbolizes electromotive force, or emf.) Since the internal resistance of the battery is not known precisely, it is not possible to calculate the emf precisely.

A **potentiometer** is a null measurement device for measuring potentials (voltages). (See [link].) A voltage source is connected to a resistor R, say, a long wire, and passes a constant current through it. There is a steady drop in potential (an IR drop) along the wire, so that a variable potential can be obtained by making contact at varying locations along the wire.

[link](b) shows an unknown $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{x}}$ (represented by script E_{x} in the figure) connected in series with a galvanometer. Note that $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{x}}$ opposes the other voltage source. The location of the contact point (see the arrow on the drawing) is adjusted until the galvanometer reads zero. When the galvanometer reads zero, $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{x}} = IR_{\mathrm{x}}$, where R_{x} is the resistance of the section of wire up to the contact point. Since no current flows through the

galvanometer, none flows through the unknown emf, and so $\mathrm{emf_x}$ is directly sensed.

Now, a very precisely known standard $\mathrm{emf_s}$ is substituted for $\mathrm{emf_x}$, and the contact point is adjusted until the galvanometer again reads zero, so that $\mathrm{emf_s} = IR_\mathrm{s}$. In both cases, no current passes through the galvanometer, and so the current I through the long wire is the same. Upon taking the ratio $\frac{\mathrm{emf_x}}{\mathrm{emf_s}}$, I cancels, giving

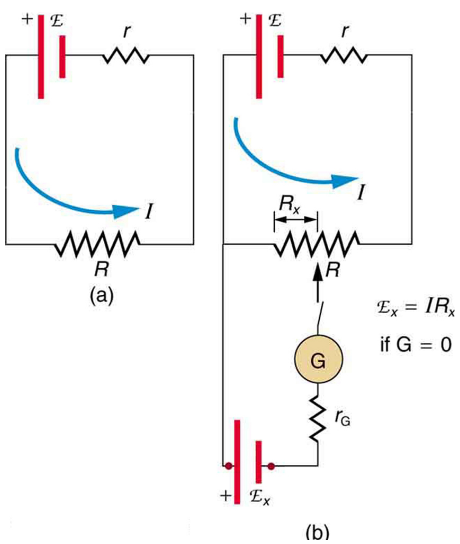
Equation:

$$\frac{\mathrm{emf_x}}{\mathrm{emf_s}} = \frac{IR_\mathrm{x}}{IR_\mathrm{s}} = \frac{R_\mathrm{x}}{R_\mathrm{s}}.$$

Solving for $\mathrm{emf_x}$ gives

Equation:

$$\mathrm{emf_x} = \mathrm{emf_s}\frac{R_\mathrm{x}}{R_\mathrm{s}}.$$



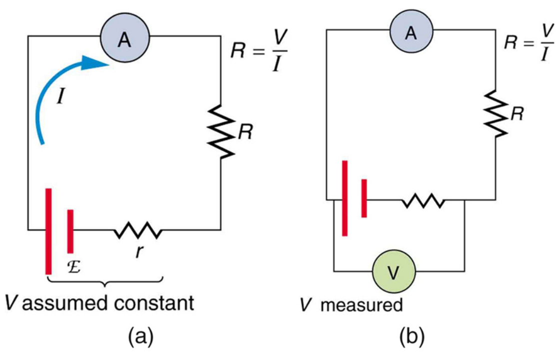
The potentiometer, a null measurement

device. (a) A voltage source connected to a long wire resistor passes a constant current I through it. (b) An unknown emf (labeled script E_{x} in the figure) is connected as shown, and the point of contact along R is adjusted until the galvanometer reads zero. The segment of wire has a resistance R_{x} and script $E_{\mathrm{x}} = IR_{\mathrm{x}}$, where I is unaffected by the connection since no current flows through the galvanometer. The unknown emf is thus proportional to the resistance of the wire segment.

Because a long uniform wire is used for R, the ratio of resistances $R_{\mathrm{x}}/R_{\mathrm{s}}$ is the same as the ratio of the lengths of wire that zero the galvanometer for each emf. The three quantities on the right-hand side of the equation are now known or measured, and $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{x}}$ can be calculated. The uncertainty in this calculation can be considerably smaller than when using a voltmeter directly, but it is not zero. There is always some uncertainty in the ratio of resistances $R_{\mathrm{x}}/R_{\mathrm{s}}$ and in the standard $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{s}}$. Furthermore, it is not possible to tell when the galvanometer reads exactly zero, which introduces error into both R_{x} and R_{s}, and may also affect the current I.

Resistance Measurements and the Wheatstone Bridge

There is a variety of so-called **ohmmeters** that purport to measure resistance. What the most common ohmmeters actually do is to apply a voltage to a resistance, measure the current, and calculate the resistance using Ohm's law. Their readout is this calculated resistance. Two configurations for ohmmeters using standard voltmeters and ammeters are shown in [link]. Such configurations are limited in accuracy, because the meters alter both the voltage applied to the resistor and the current that flows through it.



Two methods for measuring resistance with standard meters. (a) Assuming a known voltage for the source, an ammeter measures current, and resistance is calculated as $R = \frac{V}{I}$. (b) Since the terminal voltage V varies with current, it is better to measure it. V is most accurately known when I is small, but I itself is most accurately known when it is large.

The **Wheatstone bridge** is a null measurement device for calculating resistance by balancing potential drops in a circuit. (See [link].) The device is called a bridge because the galvanometer forms a bridge between two branches. A variety of **bridge devices** are used to make null measurements in circuits.

Resistors R_1 and R_2 are precisely known, while the arrow through R_3 indicates that it is a variable resistance. The value of R_3 can be precisely read. With the unknown resistance R_x in the circuit, R_3 is adjusted until the galvanometer reads zero. The potential difference between points b and d is then zero, meaning that b and d are at the same potential. With no current running through the galvanometer, it has no effect on the rest of the circuit. So the branches abc and adc are in parallel, and each branch has the full voltage of the source. That is, the IR drops along abc and adc are the same. Since b and d are at the same potential, the IR drop along ad must equal the IR drop along ab. Thus,
Equation:

$$I_1R_1 = I_2R_3.$$

Again, since b and d are at the same potential, the IR drop along dc must equal the IR drop along bc. Thus,
Equation:

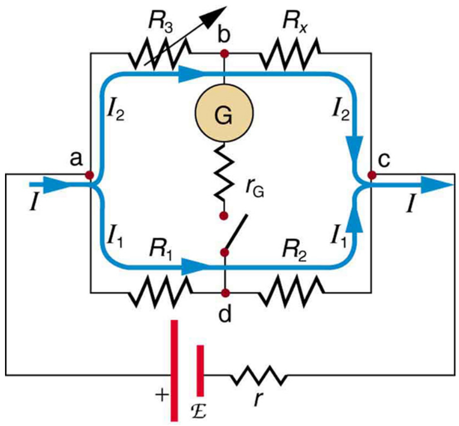
$$I_1R_2 = I_2R_\mathrm{x}.$$

Taking the ratio of these last two expressions gives
Equation:

$$\frac{I_1R_1}{I_1R_2} = \frac{I_2R_3}{I_2R_\mathrm{x}}.$$

Canceling the currents and solving for R_x yields
Equation:

$$R_x = R_3 \frac{R_2}{R_1}.$$



The Wheatstone bridge is used to calculate unknown resistances. The variable resistance R_3 is adjusted until the galvanometer reads zero with the switch closed. This simplifies the circuit, allowing R_x to be calculated based on the IR drops as discussed in the text.

This equation is used to calculate the unknown resistance when current through the galvanometer is zero. This method can be very accurate (often to four significant digits), but it is limited by two factors. First, it is not possible to get the current through the galvanometer to be exactly zero.

Second, there are always uncertainties in R_1, R_2, and R_3, which contribute to the uncertainty in R_x.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Identify other factors that might limit the accuracy of null measurements. Would the use of a digital device that is more sensitive than a galvanometer improve the accuracy of null measurements?

Solution:

One factor would be resistance in the wires and connections in a null measurement. These are impossible to make zero, and they can change over time. Another factor would be temperature variations in resistance, which can be reduced but not completely eliminated by choice of material. Digital devices sensitive to smaller currents than analog devices do improve the accuracy of null measurements because they allow you to get the current closer to zero.

Section Summary

- Null measurement techniques achieve greater accuracy by balancing a circuit so that no current flows through the measuring device.
- One such device, for determining voltage, is a potentiometer.
- Another null measurement device, for determining resistance, is the Wheatstone bridge.
- Other physical quantities can also be measured with null measurement techniques.

Conceptual questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why can a null measurement be more accurate than one using standard voltmeters and ammeters? What factors limit the accuracy of null measurements?

Exercise:

Problem:

If a potentiometer is used to measure cell emfs on the order of a few volts, why is it most accurate for the standard emf_s to be the same order of magnitude and the resistances to be in the range of a few ohms?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the emf_x of a cell being measured in a potentiometer, if the standard cell's emf is 12.0 V and the potentiometer balances for $R_\text{x} = 5.000\,\Omega$ and $R_\text{s} = 2.500\,\Omega$?

Solution:

24.0 V

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the emf_x of a dry cell for which a potentiometer is balanced when $R_\text{x} = 1.200\ \Omega$, while an alkaline standard cell with an emf of 1.600 V requires $R_\text{s} = 1.247\ \Omega$ to balance the potentiometer.

Exercise:

Problem:

When an unknown resistance R_x is placed in a Wheatstone bridge, it is possible to balance the bridge by adjusting R_3 to be $2500\ \Omega$. What is R_x if $\frac{R_2}{R_1} = 0.625$?

Solution:

$1.56\ \mathrm{k}\Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

To what value must you adjust R_3 to balance a Wheatstone bridge, if the unknown resistance R_x is $100\,\Omega$, R_1 is $50.0\,\Omega$, and R_2 is $175\,\Omega$?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the unknown emf_x in a potentiometer that balances when R_x is $10.0\,\Omega$, and balances when R_s is $15.0\,\Omega$ for a standard 3.000-V emf? (b) The same emf_x is placed in the same potentiometer, which now balances when R_s is $15.0\,\Omega$ for a standard emf of 3.100 V. At what resistance R_x will the potentiometer balance?

Solution:

(a) 2.00 V

(b) 9.68 Ω

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you want to measure resistances in the range from $10.0\ \Omega$ to $10.0\ \mathrm{k}\Omega$ using a Wheatstone bridge that has $\frac{R_2}{R_1} = 2.000$. Over what range should R_3 be adjustable?

Solution:
Equation:

$$\text{Range} = 5.00\ \Omega \text{ to } 5.00\ \text{k}\Omega$$

Glossary

null measurements
: methods of measuring current and voltage more accurately by balancing the circuit so that no current flows through the measurement device

potentiometer
: a null measurement device for measuring potentials (voltages)

ohmmeter
: an instrument that applies a voltage to a resistance, measures the current, calculates the resistance using Ohm's law, and provides a readout of this calculated resistance

bridge device
: a device that forms a bridge between two branches of a circuit; some bridge devices are used to make null measurements in circuits

Wheatstone bridge
: a null measurement device for calculating resistance by balancing potential drops in a circuit

DC Circuits Containing Resistors and Capacitors

- Explain the importance of the time constant, τ , and calculate the time constant for a given resistance and capacitance.
- Explain why batteries in a flashlight gradually lose power and the light dims over time.
- Describe what happens to a graph of the voltage across a capacitor over time as it charges.
- Explain how a timing circuit works and list some applications.
- Calculate the necessary speed of a strobe flash needed to “stop” the movement of an object over a particular length.

When you use a flash camera, it takes a few seconds to charge the capacitor that powers the flash. The light flash discharges the capacitor in a tiny fraction of a second. Why does charging take longer than discharging? This question and a number of other phenomena that involve charging and discharging capacitors are discussed in this module.

RC Circuits

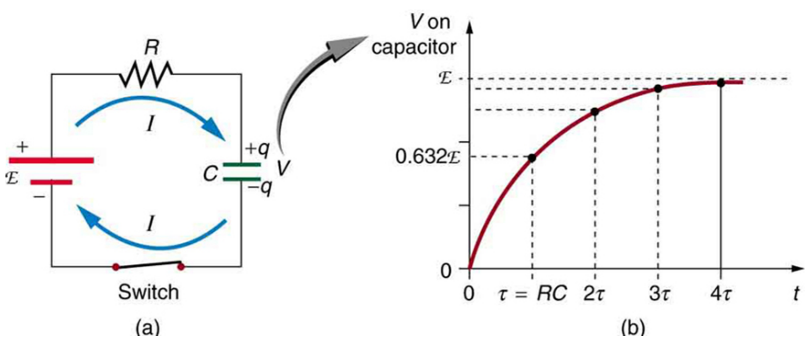
An $\mathbf{RC}$ **circuit** is one containing a **resistor** R and a **capacitor** C. The capacitor is an electrical component that stores electric charge.

[link] shows a simple RC circuit that employs a DC (direct current) voltage source. The capacitor is initially uncharged. As soon as the switch is closed, current flows to and from the initially uncharged capacitor. As charge increases on the capacitor plates, there is increasing opposition to the flow of charge by the repulsion of like charges on each plate.

In terms of voltage, this is because voltage across the capacitor is given by $V_{\text{c}} = Q/C$, where Q is the amount of charge stored on each plate and C is the **capacitance**. This voltage opposes the battery, growing from zero to the maximum emf when fully charged. The current thus decreases from its initial value of $I_0 = \frac{\text{emf}}{R}$ to zero as the voltage on the capacitor reaches the same value as the emf. When there is no current, there is no IR drop, and so the voltage on the capacitor must then equal the emf of the voltage source. This can also be explained with Kirchhoff’s second rule (the loop rule),

discussed in Kirchhoff’s Rules, which says that the algebraic sum of changes in potential around any closed loop must be zero.

The initial current is $I_0 = \frac{\text{emf}}{R}$, because all of the IR drop is in the resistance. Therefore, the smaller the resistance, the faster a given capacitor will be charged. Note that the internal resistance of the voltage source is included in R, as are the resistances of the capacitor and the connecting wires. In the flash camera scenario above, when the batteries powering the camera begin to wear out, their internal resistance rises, reducing the current and lengthening the time it takes to get ready for the next flash.



(a) An RC circuit with an initially uncharged capacitor. Current flows in the direction shown (opposite of electron flow) as soon as the switch is closed. Mutual repulsion of like charges in the capacitor progressively slows the flow as the capacitor is charged, stopping the current when the capacitor is fully charged and $Q = C \cdot \text{emf}$. (b) A graph of voltage across the capacitor versus time, with the switch closing at time $t = 0$. (Note that in the two parts of the figure, the capital script E stands for emf, q stands for the charge stored on the capacitor, and τ is the RC time constant.)

Voltage on the capacitor is initially zero and rises rapidly at first, since the initial current is a maximum. [link](b) shows a graph of capacitor voltage versus time (t) starting when the switch is closed at $t = 0$. The voltage approaches emf asymptotically, since the closer it gets to emf the less current flows. The equation for voltage versus time when charging a capacitor C through a resistor R, derived using calculus, is

Equation:

$$V = \text{emf}(1 - e^{-t/\text{RC}}) \text{ (charging)},$$

where V is the voltage across the capacitor, emf is equal to the emf of the DC voltage source, and the exponential e = 2.718 … is the base of the natural logarithm. Note that the units of RC are seconds. We define

Equation:

$$\tau = \text{RC},$$

where τ (the Greek letter tau) is called the time constant for an RC circuit. As noted before, a small resistance R allows the capacitor to charge faster. This is reasonable, since a larger current flows through a smaller resistance. It is also reasonable that the smaller the capacitor C, the less time needed to charge it. Both factors are contained in $\tau = \text{RC}$.

More quantitatively, consider what happens when $t = \tau = \text{RC}$. Then the voltage on the capacitor is

Equation:

$$V = \text{emf}\left(1 - e^{-1}\right) = \text{emf}(1 - 0.368) = 0.632 \cdot \text{emf}.$$

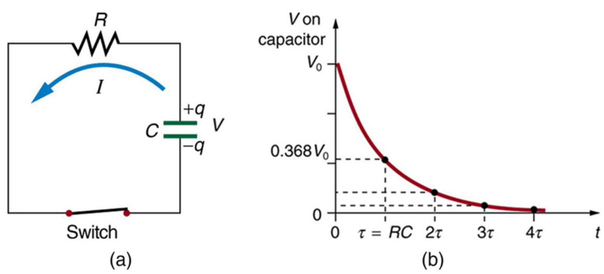
This means that in the time $\tau = \text{RC}$, the voltage rises to 0.632 of its final value. The voltage will rise 0.632 of the remainder in the next time τ. It is a characteristic of the exponential function that the final value is never reached, but 0.632 of the remainder to that value is achieved in every time, τ. In just a few multiples of the time constant τ, then, the final value is very nearly achieved, as the graph in [link](b) illustrates.

Discharging a Capacitor

Discharging a capacitor through a resistor proceeds in a similar fashion, as [link] illustrates. Initially, the current is $I_0 = \frac{V_0}{R}$, driven by the initial voltage V_0 on the capacitor. As the voltage decreases, the current and hence the rate of discharge decreases, implying another exponential formula for V. Using calculus, the voltage V on a capacitor C being discharged through a resistor R is found to be

Equation:

$$V = V_0 \, e^{-t/\text{RC}} (\text{discharging}).$$



(a) Closing the switch discharges the capacitor C through the resistor R. Mutual repulsion of like charges on each plate drives the current. (b) A graph of voltage across the capacitor versus time, with $V = V_0$ at $t = 0$. The voltage decreases exponentially, falling a fixed fraction of the way to zero in each subsequent time constant τ.

The graph in [link](b) is an example of this exponential decay. Again, the time constant is $\tau = \text{RC}$. A small resistance R allows the capacitor to discharge in a small time, since the current is larger. Similarly, a small capacitance requires less time to discharge, since less charge is stored. In the first time interval $\tau = \text{RC}$ after the switch is closed, the voltage falls to 0.368 of its initial value, since $V = V_0 \cdot e^{-1} = 0.368V_0$.

During each successive time τ, the voltage falls to 0.368 of its preceding value. In a few multiples of τ, the voltage becomes very close to zero, as indicated by the graph in [link](b).

Now we can explain why the flash camera in our scenario takes so much longer to charge than discharge; the resistance while charging is significantly greater than while discharging. The internal resistance of the battery accounts for most of the resistance while charging. As the battery ages, the increasing internal resistance makes the charging process even slower. (You may have noticed this.)

The flash discharge is through a low-resistance ionized gas in the flash tube and proceeds very rapidly. Flash photographs, such as in [link], can capture a brief instant of a rapid motion because the flash can be less than a microsecond in duration. Such flashes can be made extremely intense.

During World War II, nighttime reconnaissance photographs were made from the air with a single flash illuminating more than a square kilometer of enemy territory. The brevity of the flash eliminated blurring due to the surveillance aircraft’s motion. Today, an important use of intense flash lamps is to pump energy into a laser. The short intense flash can rapidly energize a laser and allow it to reemit the energy in another form.

This stop-motion photograph of a rufous hummingbird (*Selasphorus rufus*) feeding on a flower was obtained with an extremely brief and intense flash of light powered by the discharge of a capacitor through a gas. (credit: Dean E. Biggins, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service)

Example:
Integrated Concept Problem: Calculating Capacitor Size—Strobe Lights

High-speed flash photography was pioneered by Doc Edgerton in the 1930s, while he was a professor of electrical engineering at MIT. You might have seen examples of his work in the amazing shots of hummingbirds in motion, a drop of milk splattering on a table, or a bullet penetrating an apple (see [link]). To stop the motion and capture these pictures, one needs a high-intensity, very short pulsed flash, as mentioned earlier in this module.

Suppose one wished to capture the picture of a bullet (moving at $5.0\times 10^{2}\ \mathrm{m/s}$) that was passing through an apple. The duration of the flash is related to the RC time constant, τ. What size capacitor would one

need in the RC circuit to succeed, if the resistance of the flash tube was $10.0\ \Omega$? Assume the apple is a sphere with a diameter of $8.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}$.

Strategy

We begin by identifying the physical principles involved. This example deals with the strobe light, as discussed above. [link] shows the circuit for this probe. The characteristic time τ of the strobe is given as $\tau = \text{RC}$.

Solution

We wish to find C, but we don't know τ. We want the flash to be on only while the bullet traverses the apple. So we need to use the kinematic equations that describe the relationship between distance x, velocity v, and time t:

Equation:

$$x = \text{vt or } t = \frac{x}{v}.$$

The bullet's velocity is given as $5.0 \times 10^{2}\ \text{m/s}$, and the distance x is $8.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}$. The traverse time, then, is

Equation:

$$t = \frac{x}{v} = \frac{8.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}}{5.0 \times 10^{2}\ \text{m/s}} = 1.6 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{s}.$$

We set this value for the crossing time t equal to τ. Therefore,

Equation:

$$C = \frac{t}{R} = \frac{1.6{\times}10^{-4}\ \text{s}}{10.0\ \Omega} = 16\ \mu\text{F}.$$

(Note: Capacitance C is typically measured in farads, F, defined as Coulombs per volt. From the equation, we see that C can also be stated in units of seconds per ohm.)

Discussion

The flash interval of 160 μs (the traverse time of the bullet) is relatively easy to obtain today. Strobe lights have opened up new worlds from science to entertainment. The information from the picture of the apple and bullet was used in the Warren Commission Report on the assassination of

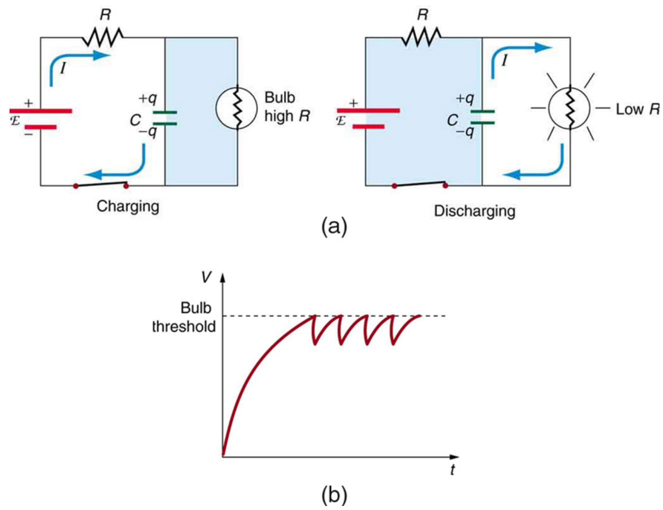
President John F. Kennedy in 1963 to confirm that only one bullet was fired.

RC Circuits for Timing

RC circuits are commonly used for timing purposes. A mundane example of this is found in the ubiquitous intermittent wiper systems of modern cars. The time between wipes is varied by adjusting the resistance in an RC circuit. Another example of an RC circuit is found in novelty jewelry, Halloween costumes, and various toys that have battery-powered flashing lights. (See [link] for a timing circuit.)

A more crucial use of RC circuits for timing purposes is in the artificial pacemaker, used to control heart rate. The heart rate is normally controlled by electrical signals generated by the sino-atrial (SA) node, which is on the wall of the right atrium chamber. This causes the muscles to contract and pump blood. Sometimes the heart rhythm is abnormal and the heartbeat is too high or too low.

The artificial pacemaker is inserted near the heart to provide electrical signals to the heart when needed with the appropriate time constant. Pacemakers have sensors that detect body motion and breathing to increase the heart rate during exercise to meet the body’s increased needs for blood and oxygen.



(a) The lamp in this RC circuit ordinarily has a very high resistance, so that the battery charges the capacitor as if the lamp were not there. When the voltage reaches a threshold value, a current flows through the lamp that dramatically reduces its resistance, and the capacitor discharges through the lamp as if the battery and charging resistor were not there. Once discharged, the process starts again, with the flash period determined by the RC constant τ. (b) A graph of voltage versus time for this circuit.

Example:
Calculating Time: *RC* Circuit in a Heart Defibrillator
A heart defibrillator is used to resuscitate an accident victim by discharging a capacitor through the trunk of her body. A simplified version of the

circuit is seen in [link]. (a) What is the time constant if an 8.00-μF capacitor is used and the path resistance through her body is $1.00 \times 10^3\ \Omega$? (b) If the initial voltage is 10.0 kV, how long does it take to decline to 5.00×10^2 V?

Strategy

Since the resistance and capacitance are given, it is straightforward to multiply them to give the time constant asked for in part (a). To find the time for the voltage to decline to 5.00×10^2 V, we repeatedly multiply the initial voltage by 0.368 until a voltage less than or equal to 5.00×10^2 V is obtained. Each multiplication corresponds to a time of τ seconds.

Solution for (a)

The time constant τ is given by the equation $\tau = \text{RC}$. Entering the given values for resistance and capacitance (and remembering that units for a farad can be expressed as s/Ω) gives

Equation:

$$\tau = \text{RC} = (1.00 \times 10^3\ \Omega)(8.00\ \mu F) = 8.00\ \text{ms}.$$

Solution for (b)

In the first 8.00 ms, the voltage (10.0 kV) declines to 0.368 of its initial value. That is:

Equation:

$$V = 0.368 V_0 = 3.680 \times 10^3\ \text{V at } t = 8.00\ \text{ms}.$$

(Notice that we carry an extra digit for each intermediate calculation.) After another 8.00 ms, we multiply by 0.368 again, and the voltage is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V\prime &= 0.368V \\ &= (0.368)\left(3.680 \times 10^3\ \text{V}\right) \\ &= 1.354 \times 10^3\ \text{V at } t = 16.0\ \text{ms}. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, after another 8.00 ms, the voltage is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V'' &= 0.368V' = (0.368)(1.354 \times 10^3\text{ V}) \\ &= 498\text{ V at } t = 24.0\text{ ms.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

So after only 24.0 ms, the voltage is down to 498 V, or 4.98% of its original value.Such brief times are useful in heart defibrillation, because the brief but intense current causes a brief but effective contraction of the heart. The actual circuit in a heart defibrillator is slightly more complex than the one in [link], to compensate for magnetic and AC effects that will be covered in Magnetism.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem: When is the potential difference across a capacitor an emf?

Solution:

Only when the current being drawn from or put into the capacitor is zero. Capacitors, like batteries, have internal resistance, so their output voltage is not an emf unless current is zero. This is difficult to measure in practice so we refer to a capacitor's voltage rather than its emf. But the source of potential difference in a capacitor is fundamental and it is an emf.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Circuit Construction Kit (DC only)
An electronics kit in your computer! Build circuits with resistors, light bulbs, batteries, and switches. Take measurements with the realistic ammeter and voltmeter. View the circuit as a schematic diagram, or switch to a life-like view.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/f23ce496-c9d1-11e5-bdc8-bb04dc1eecb6/circuit-construction-kit-dc-only/#sim-cck

Section Summary

- An RC circuit is one that has both a resistor and a capacitor.
- The time constant τ for an RC circuit is $\tau = \mathrm{RC}$.
- When an initially uncharged ($V_0 = 0$ at $t = 0$) capacitor in series with a resistor is charged by a DC voltage source, the voltage rises, asymptotically approaching the emf of the voltage source; as a function of time,
  Equation:

$$V = \mathrm{emf}(1 - e^{-t/\mathrm{RC}})(\mathrm{charging}).$$

- Within the span of each time constant τ, the voltage rises by 0.632 of the remaining value, approaching the final voltage asymptotically.
- If a capacitor with an initial voltage V_0 is discharged through a resistor starting at $t = 0$, then its voltage decreases exponentially as given by
  Equation:

$$V = V_0 e^{-t/\mathrm{RC}}(\mathrm{discharging}).$$

- In each time constant τ, the voltage falls by 0.368 of its remaining initial value, approaching zero asymptotically.

Conceptual questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Regarding the units involved in the relationship $\tau = \mathrm{RC}$, verify that the units of resistance times capacitance are time, that is, $\Omega \cdot \mathrm{F} = \mathrm{s}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

The RC time constant in heart defibrillation is crucial to limiting the time the current flows. If the capacitance in the defibrillation unit is fixed, how would you manipulate resistance in the circuit to adjust the RC constant τ? Would an adjustment of the applied voltage also be needed to ensure that the current delivered has an appropriate value?

Exercise:

Problem:

When making an ECG measurement, it is important to measure voltage variations over small time intervals. The time is limited by the RC constant of the circuit—it is not possible to measure time variations shorter than RC. How would you manipulate R and C in the circuit to allow the necessary measurements?

Exercise:

Problem:

Draw two graphs of charge versus time on a capacitor. Draw one for charging an initially uncharged capacitor in series with a resistor, as in the circuit in [link], starting from $\text{t} = 0$. Draw the other for discharging a capacitor through a resistor, as in the circuit in [link], starting at $\text{t} = 0$, with an initial charge Q_0. Show at least two intervals of τ.

Exercise:

Problem:

When charging a capacitor, as discussed in conjunction with [link], how long does it take for the voltage on the capacitor to reach emf? Is this a problem?

Exercise:

Problem:

When discharging a capacitor, as discussed in conjunction with [link], how long does it take for the voltage on the capacitor to reach zero? Is this a problem?

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to [link], draw a graph of potential difference across the resistor versus time, showing at least two intervals of τ. Also draw a graph of current versus time for this situation.

Exercise:

Problem:

A long, inexpensive extension cord is connected from inside the house to a refrigerator outside. The refrigerator doesn't run as it should. What might be the problem?

Exercise:

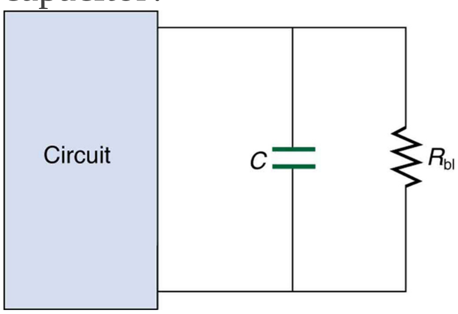
Problem:

In [link], does the graph indicate the time constant is shorter for discharging than for charging? Would you expect ionized gas to have low resistance? How would you adjust R to get a longer time between flashes? Would adjusting R affect the discharge time?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electronic apparatus may have large capacitors at high voltage in the power supply section, presenting a shock hazard even when the apparatus is switched off. A "bleeder resistor" is therefore placed across such a capacitor, as shown schematically in [link], to bleed the charge from it after the apparatus is off. Why must the bleeder resistance be much greater than the effective resistance of the rest of the circuit? How does this affect the time constant for discharging the capacitor?



A bleeder resistor R_{bl} discharges the capacitor in this electronic device once it is switched off.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The timing device in an automobile's intermittent wiper system is based on an RC time constant and utilizes a $0.500\text{-}\mu\mathrm{F}$ capacitor and a variable resistor. Over what range must R be made to vary to achieve time constants from 2.00 to 15.0 s?

Solution:

range 4.00 to $30.0\ \text{M}\Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

A heart pacemaker fires 72 times a minute, each time a 25.0-nF capacitor is charged (by a battery in series with a resistor) to 0.632 of its full voltage. What is the value of the resistance?

Exercise:

Problem:

The duration of a photographic flash is related to an RC time constant, which is $0.100\ \mu\text{s}$ for a certain camera. (a) If the resistance of the flash lamp is $0.0400\ \Omega$ during discharge, what is the size of the capacitor supplying its energy? (b) What is the time constant for charging the capacitor, if the charging resistance is $800\ \text{k}\Omega$?

Solution:

(a) $2.50\ \mu\text{F}$

(b) 2.00 s

Exercise:

Problem:

A 2.00- and a $7.50\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor can be connected in series or parallel, as can a 25.0- and a $100\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor. Calculate the four RC time constants possible from connecting the resulting capacitance and resistance in series.

Exercise:

Problem:

After two time constants, what percentage of the final voltage, emf, is on an initially uncharged capacitor C, charged through a resistance R?

Solution:

86.5%

Exercise:

Problem:

A $500\text{-}\Omega$ resistor, an uncharged $1.50\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor, and a 6.16-V emf are connected in series. (a) What is the initial current? (b) What is the RC time constant? (c) What is the current after one time constant? (d) What is the voltage on the capacitor after one time constant?

Exercise:

Problem:

A heart defibrillator being used on a patient has an RC time constant of 10.0 ms due to the resistance of the patient and the capacitance of the defibrillator. (a) If the defibrillator has an $8.00\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitance, what is the resistance of the path through the patient? (You may neglect the capacitance of the patient and the resistance of the defibrillator.) (b) If the initial voltage is 12.0 kV, how long does it take to decline to 6.00×10^2 V?

Solution:

(a) $1.25\ \text{k}\Omega$

(b) 30.0 ms

Exercise:

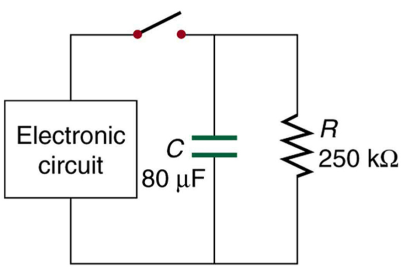
Problem:

An ECG monitor must have an RC time constant less than 1.00×10^{2} μs to be able to measure variations in voltage over small time intervals. (a) If the resistance of the circuit (due mostly to that of the patient's chest) is $1.00\text{ k}\Omega$, what is the maximum capacitance of the circuit? (b) Would it be difficult in practice to limit the capacitance to less than the value found in (a)?

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows how a bleeder resistor is used to discharge a capacitor after an electronic device is shut off, allowing a person to work on the electronics with less risk of shock. (a) What is the time constant? (b) How long will it take to reduce the voltage on the capacitor to 0.250% (5% of 5%) of its full value once discharge begins? (c) If the capacitor is charged to a voltage V_0 through a $100\text{-}\Omega$ resistance, calculate the time it takes to rise to $0.865V_0$ (This is about two time constants.)



Solution:

(a) 20.0 s

(b) 120 s

(c) 16.0 ms

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the exact exponential treatment, find how much time is required to discharge a $250\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor through a $500\text{-}\Omega$ resistor down to 1.00% of its original voltage.

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the exact exponential treatment, find how much time is required to charge an initially uncharged 100-pF capacitor through a $75.0\text{-M}\Omega$ resistor to 90.0% of its final voltage.

Solution:

1.73×10^{-2} s

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

If you wish to take a picture of a bullet traveling at 500 m/s, then a very brief flash of light produced by an RC discharge through a flash tube can limit blurring. Assuming 1.00 mm of motion during one RC constant is acceptable, and given that the flash is driven by a $600\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor, what is the resistance in the flash tube?

Solution:

$3.33 \times 10^{-3}\ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A flashing lamp in a Christmas earring is based on an RC discharge of a capacitor through its resistance. The effective duration of the flash is 0.250 s, during which it produces an average 0.500 W from an average

3.00 V. (a) What energy does it dissipate? (b) How much charge moves through the lamp? (c) Find the capacitance. (d) What is the resistance of the lamp?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A $160\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor charged to 450 V is discharged through a $31.2\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor. (a) Find the time constant. (b) Calculate the temperature increase of the resistor, given that its mass is 2.50 g and its specific heat is $1.67\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}\cdot{}^{\circ}\text{C}}$, noting that most of the thermal energy is retained in the short time of the discharge. (c) Calculate the new resistance, assuming it is pure carbon. (d) Does this change in resistance seem significant?

Solution:

(a) 4.99 s

(b) 3.87°C

(c) $31.1\ \text{k}\Omega$

(d) No

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Calculate the capacitance needed to get an RC time constant of 1.00×10^{3} s with a $0.100\text{-}\Omega$ resistor. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a camera's flash unit. Construct a problem in which you calculate the size of the capacitor that stores energy for the flash lamp. Among the things to be considered are the voltage applied to the capacitor, the energy needed in the flash and the associated charge needed on the capacitor, the resistance of the flash lamp during discharge, and the desired RC time constant.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a rechargeable lithium cell that is to be used to power a camcorder. Construct a problem in which you calculate the internal resistance of the cell during normal operation. Also, calculate the minimum voltage output of a battery charger to be used to recharge your lithium cell. Among the things to be considered are the emf and useful terminal voltage of a lithium cell and the current it should be able to supply to a camcorder.

Glossary

RC circuit
: a circuit that contains both a resistor and a capacitor

capacitor
: an electrical component used to store energy by separating electric charge on two opposing plates

capacitance
: the maximum amount of electric potential energy that can be stored (or separated) for a given electric potential

Introduction to Magnetism
class="introduction"

The magnificent spectacle of the Aurora Borealis, or northern lights, glows in the northern sky above Bear Lake near Eielson Air Force Base, Alaska. Shaped by the Earth’s magnetic field, this light is produced by radiation spewed from solar storms. (credit: Senior Airman Joshua Strang, via Flickr)

One evening, an Alaskan sticks a note to his refrigerator with a small magnet. Through the kitchen window, the Aurora Borealis glows in the night sky. This grand spectacle is shaped by the same force that holds the note to the refrigerator.

People have been aware of magnets and magnetism for thousands of years. The earliest records date to well before the time of Christ, particularly in a region of Asia Minor called Magnesia (the name of this region is the source of words like *magnetic*). Magnetic rocks found in Magnesia, which is now part of western Turkey, stimulated interest during ancient times. A practical application for magnets was found later, when they were employed as navigational compasses. The use of magnets in compasses resulted not only in improved long-distance sailing, but also in the names of “north” and “south” being given to the two types of magnetic poles.

Today magnetism plays many important roles in our lives. Physicists’ understanding of magnetism has enabled the development of technologies that affect our everyday lives. The iPod in your purse or backpack, for example, wouldn’t have been possible without the applications of magnetism and electricity on a small scale.

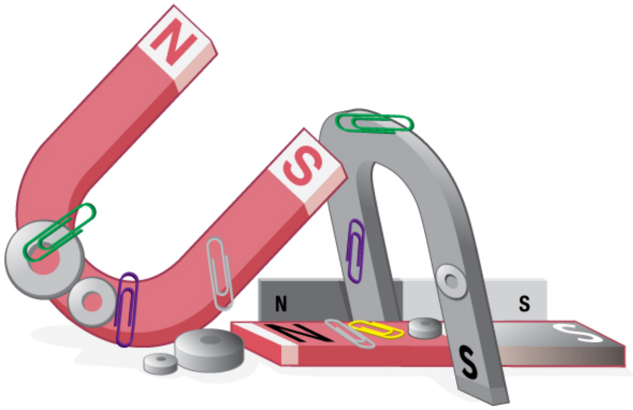
The discovery that weak changes in a magnetic field in a thin film of iron and chromium could bring about much larger changes in electrical resistance was one of the first large successes of nanotechnology. The 2007 Nobel Prize in Physics went to Albert Fert from France and Peter Grunberg from Germany for this discovery of *giant magnetoresistance* and its applications to computer memory.

All electric motors, with uses as diverse as powering refrigerators, starting cars, and moving elevators, contain magnets. Generators, whether producing hydroelectric power or running bicycle lights, use magnetic fields. Recycling facilities employ magnets to separate iron from other refuse. Hundreds of millions of dollars are spent annually on magnetic containment of fusion as a future energy source. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) has become an important diagnostic tool in the field of medicine, and the use of magnetism to explore brain activity is a subject of contemporary research and development. The list of applications also includes computer hard drives, tape recording, detection of inhaled asbestos, and levitation of high-speed trains. Magnetism is used to explain atomic energy levels, cosmic rays, and charged particles trapped in the Van Allen belts. Once again, we will find all these disparate phenomena are linked by a small number of underlying physical principles.

Engineering of technology like iPods would not be possible without a deep understanding magnetism. (credit: Jesse! S?, Flickr)

Magnets

- Describe the difference between the north and south poles of a magnet.
- Describe how magnetic poles interact with each other.

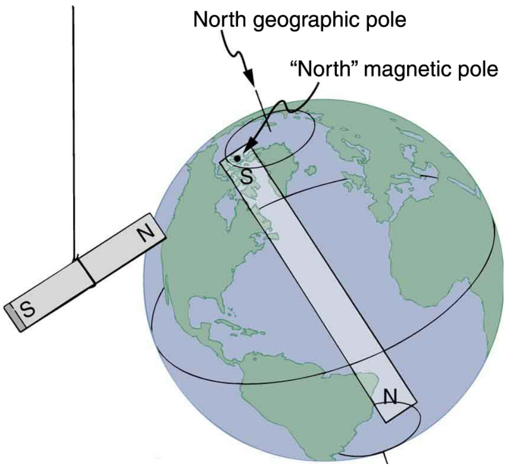


Magnets come in various shapes, sizes, and strengths. All have both a north pole and a south pole. There is never an isolated pole (a monopole).

All magnets attract iron, such as that in a refrigerator door. However, magnets may attract or repel other magnets. Experimentation shows that all magnets have two poles. If freely suspended, one pole will point toward the north. The two poles are thus named the **north magnetic pole** and the **south magnetic pole** (or more properly, north-seeking and south-seeking poles, for the attractions in those directions).

Note:
Universal Characteristics of Magnets and Magnetic Poles
It is a universal characteristic of all magnets that *like poles repel and unlike poles attract*. (Note the similarity with electrostatics: unlike charges attract and like charges repel.)

Further experimentation shows that it is *impossible to separate north and south poles* in the manner that + and − charges can be separated.



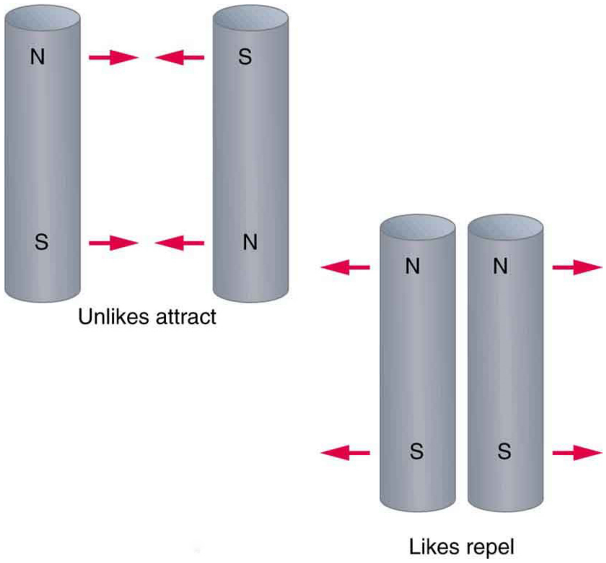
One end of a bar magnet is suspended from a thread that points toward north. The magnet's two poles are labeled N and S for north-seeking and south-seeking poles, respectively.

Note:

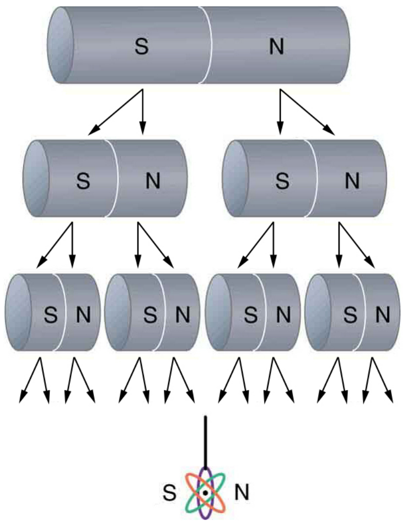
Misconception Alert: Earth's Geographic North Pole Hides an S

The Earth acts like a very large bar magnet with its south-seeking pole near the geographic North Pole. That is why the north pole of your compass is attracted toward the geographic north pole of the Earth—because the magnetic pole that is near the geographic North Pole is actually a south magnetic pole! Confusion arises because the geographic term "North Pole" has come to be used (incorrectly) for the magnetic pole that is near the

North Pole. Thus, “North magnetic pole” is actually a misnomer—it should be called the South magnetic pole.



Unlike poles attract, whereas like poles repel.



North and south poles always occur in pairs. Attempts

to separate them result in more pairs of poles. If we continue to split the magnet, we will eventually get down to an iron atom with a north pole and a south pole—these, too, cannot be separated.

The fact that magnetic poles always occur in pairs of north and south is true from the very large scale—for example, sunspots always occur in pairs that are north and south magnetic poles—all the way down to the very small scale. Magnetic atoms have both a north pole and a south pole, as do many types of subatomic particles, such as electrons, protons, and neutrons.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—Refrigerator Magnets
We know that like magnetic poles repel and unlike poles attract. See if you can show this for two refrigerator magnets. Will the magnets stick if you turn them over? Why do they stick to the door anyway? What can you say about the magnetic properties of the door next to the magnet? Do refrigerator magnets stick to metal or plastic spoons? Do they stick to all types of metal?

Section Summary

- Magnetism is a subject that includes the properties of magnets, the effect of the magnetic force on moving charges and currents, and the

creation of magnetic fields by currents.

- There are two types of magnetic poles, called the north magnetic pole and south magnetic pole.
- North magnetic poles are those that are attracted toward the Earth's geographic north pole.
- Like poles repel and unlike poles attract.
- Magnetic poles always occur in pairs of north and south—it is not possible to isolate north and south poles.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Volcanic and other such activity at the mid-Atlantic ridge extrudes material to fill the gap between separating tectonic plates associated with continental drift. The magnetization of rocks is found to reverse in a coordinated manner with distance from the ridge. What does this imply about the Earth's magnetic field and how could the knowledge of the spreading rate be used to give its historical record?

Glossary

north magnetic pole
: the end or the side of a magnet that is attracted toward Earth's geographic north pole

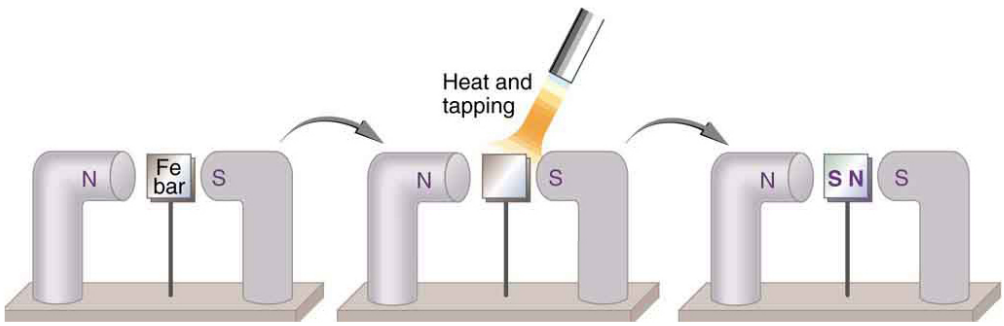
south magnetic pole
: the end or the side of a magnet that is attracted toward Earth's geographic south pole

Ferromagnets and Electromagnets

- Define ferromagnet.
- Describe the role of magnetic domains in magnetization.
- Explain the significance of the Curie temperature.
- Describe the relationship between electricity and magnetism.

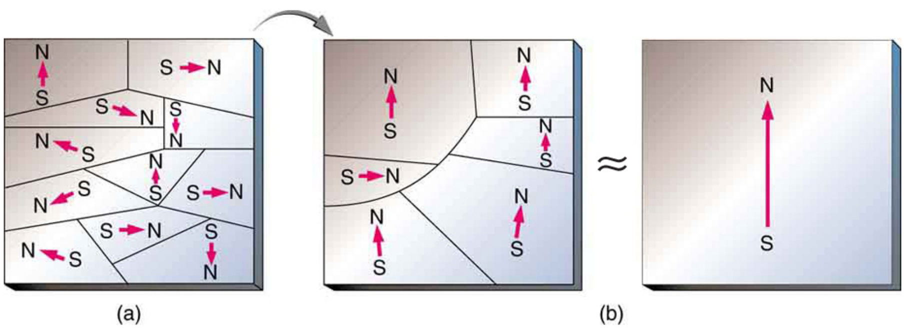
Ferromagnets

Only certain materials, such as iron, cobalt, nickel, and gadolinium, exhibit strong magnetic effects. Such materials are called **ferromagnetic**, after the Latin word for iron, *ferrum*. A group of materials made from the alloys of the rare earth elements are also used as strong and permanent magnets; a popular one is neodymium. Other materials exhibit weak magnetic effects, which are detectable only with sensitive instruments. Not only do ferromagnetic materials respond strongly to magnets (the way iron is attracted to magnets), they can also be **magnetized** themselves—that is, they can be induced to be magnetic or made into permanent magnets.



An unmagnetized piece of iron is placed between two magnets, heated, and then cooled, or simply tapped when cold. The iron becomes a permanent magnet with the poles aligned as shown: its south pole is adjacent to the north pole of the original magnet, and its north pole is adjacent to the south pole of the original magnet. Note that there are attractive forces between the magnets.

When a magnet is brought near a previously unmagnetized ferromagnetic material, it causes local magnetization of the material with unlike poles closest, as in [link]. (This results in the attraction of the previously unmagnetized material to the magnet.) What happens on a microscopic scale is illustrated in [link]. The regions within the material called **domains** act like small bar magnets. Within domains, the poles of individual atoms are aligned. Each atom acts like a tiny bar magnet. Domains are small and randomly oriented in an unmagnetized ferromagnetic object. In response to an external magnetic field, the domains may grow to millimeter size, aligning themselves as shown in [link](b). This induced magnetization can be made permanent if the material is heated and then cooled, or simply tapped in the presence of other magnets.



(a) An unmagnetized piece of iron (or other ferromagnetic material) has randomly oriented domains. (b) When magnetized by an external field, the domains show greater alignment, and some grow at the expense of others. Individual atoms are aligned within domains; each atom acts like a tiny bar magnet.

Conversely, a permanent magnet can be demagnetized by hard blows or by heating it in the absence of another magnet. Increased thermal motion at higher temperature can disrupt and randomize the orientation and the size of

the domains. There is a well-defined temperature for ferromagnetic materials, which is called the **Curie temperature**, above which they cannot be magnetized. The Curie temperature for iron is 1043 K $(770^{\circ}C)$, which is well above room temperature. There are several elements and alloys that have Curie temperatures much lower than room temperature and are ferromagnetic only below those temperatures.

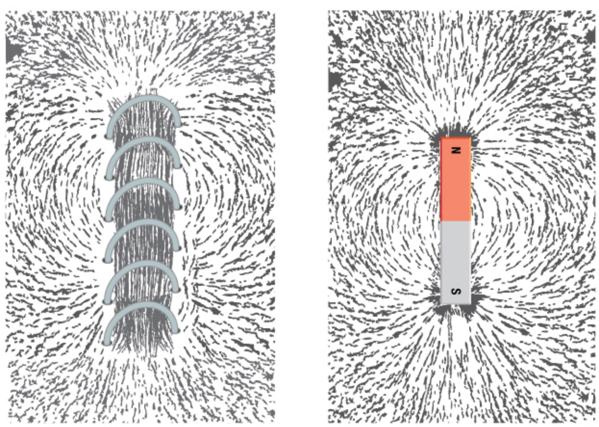
Electromagnets

Early in the 19th century, it was discovered that electrical currents cause magnetic effects. The first significant observation was by the Danish scientist Hans Christian Oersted (1777–1851), who found that a compass needle was deflected by a current-carrying wire. This was the first significant evidence that the movement of charges had any connection with magnets. **Electromagnetism** is the use of electric current to make magnets. These temporarily induced magnets are called **electromagnets**. Electromagnets are employed for everything from a wrecking yard crane that lifts scrapped cars to controlling the beam of a 90-km-circumference particle accelerator to the magnets in medical imaging machines (See [link]).

Instrument for magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). The device uses a superconducting

cylindrical coil for the main magnetic field. The patient goes into this “tunnel” on the gurney. (credit: Bill McChesney, Flickr)

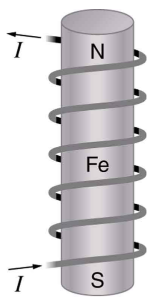
[link] shows that the response of iron filings to a current-carrying coil and to a permanent bar magnet. The patterns are similar. In fact, electromagnets and ferromagnets have the same basic characteristics—for example, they have north and south poles that cannot be separated and for which like poles repel and unlike poles attract.



(a) (b)

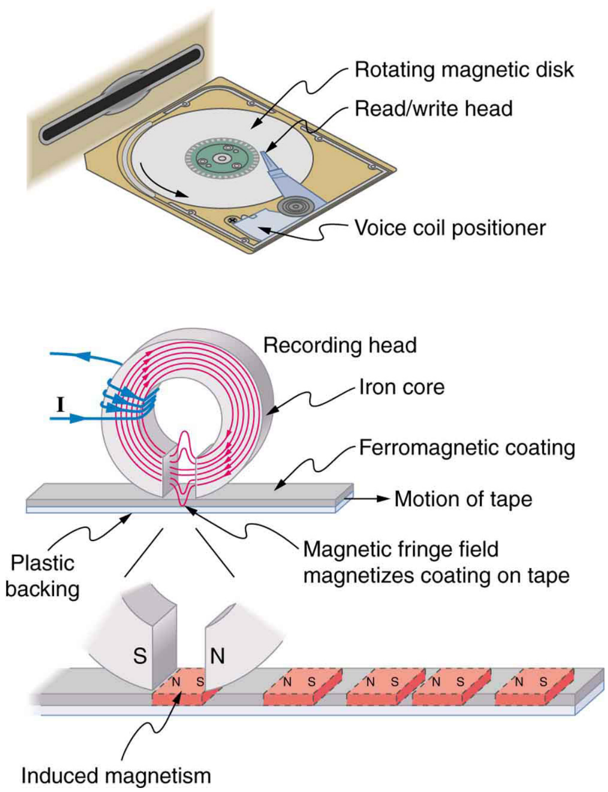
Iron filings near (a) a current-carrying coil and (b) a magnet act like tiny compass needles, showing the shape of their fields. Their response to a current-carrying coil and a permanent magnet is seen to be very similar, especially near the ends of the coil and the magnet.

Combining a ferromagnet with an electromagnet can produce particularly strong magnetic effects. (See [link].) Whenever strong magnetic effects are needed, such as lifting scrap metal, or in particle accelerators, electromagnets are enhanced by ferromagnetic materials. Limits to how strong the magnets can be made are imposed by coil resistance (it will overheat and melt at sufficiently high current), and so superconducting magnets may be employed. These are still limited, because superconducting properties are destroyed by too great a magnetic field.



An electromagnet with a ferromagnetic core can produce very strong magnetic effects. Alignment of domains in the core produces a magnet, the poles of which are aligned with the electromagnet.

[link] shows a few uses of combinations of electromagnets and ferromagnets. Ferromagnetic materials can act as memory devices, because the orientation of the magnetic fields of small domains can be reversed or erased. Magnetic information storage on videotapes and computer hard drives are among the most common applications. This property is vital in our digital world.



An electromagnet induces regions of permanent magnetism on a floppy disk coated with a ferromagnetic material. The information stored here is digital (a region is either magnetic or not); in other applications, it can be analog

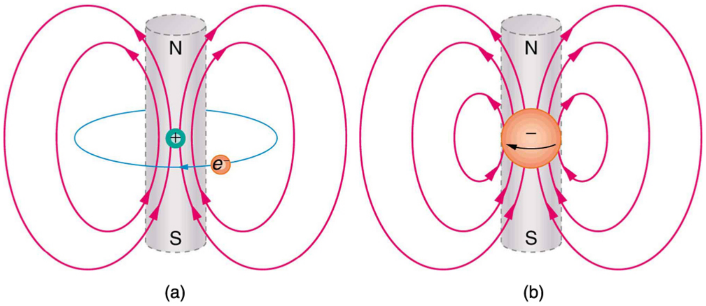
(with a varying strength), such as on audiotapes.

Current: The Source of All Magnetism

An electromagnet creates magnetism with an electric current. In later sections we explore this more quantitatively, finding the strength and direction of magnetic fields created by various currents. But what about ferromagnets? [link] shows models of how electric currents create magnetism at the submicroscopic level. (Note that we cannot directly observe the paths of individual electrons about atoms, and so a model or visual image, consistent with all direct observations, is made. We can directly observe the electron’s orbital angular momentum, its spin momentum, and subsequent magnetic moments, all of which are explained with electric-current-creating subatomic magnetism.) Currents, including those associated with other submicroscopic particles like protons, allow us to explain ferromagnetism and all other magnetic effects. Ferromagnetism, for example, results from an internal cooperative alignment of electron spins, possible in some materials but not in others.

Crucial to the statement that electric current is the source of all magnetism is the fact that it is impossible to separate north and south magnetic poles. (This is far different from the case of positive and negative charges, which are easily separated.) A current loop always produces a magnetic dipole—that is, a magnetic field that acts like a north pole and south pole pair. Since isolated north and south magnetic poles, called **magnetic monopoles**, are not observed, currents are used to explain all magnetic effects. If magnetic monopoles did exist, then we would have to modify this underlying connection that all magnetism is due to electrical current. There is no known reason that magnetic monopoles should not exist—they are simply never observed—and so searches at the subnuclear level continue. If they do *not* exist, we would like to find out why not. If they *do* exist, we would like to see evidence of them.

Note:
Electric Currents and Magnetism
Electric current is the source of all magnetism.



(a) In the planetary model of the atom, an electron orbits a nucleus, forming a closed-current loop and producing a magnetic field with a north pole and a south pole. (b) Electrons have spin and can be crudely pictured as rotating charge, forming a current that produces a magnetic field with a north pole and a south pole. Neither the planetary model nor the image of a spinning electron is completely consistent with modern physics. However, they do provide a useful way of understanding phenomena.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Magnets and Electromagnets
Explore the interactions between a compass and bar magnet. Discover how you can use a battery and wire to make a magnet! Can you make it a stronger magnet? Can you make the magnetic field reverse?

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/92176000-ae74-11e5-baad-cfab91c15075/magnets-and-electromagnets/#sim-bar-magnet

Section Summary

- Magnetic poles always occur in pairs of north and south—it is not possible to isolate north and south poles.
- All magnetism is created by electric current.
- Ferromagnetic materials, such as iron, are those that exhibit strong magnetic effects.
- The atoms in ferromagnetic materials act like small magnets (due to currents within the atoms) and can be aligned, usually in millimeter-sized regions called domains.
- Domains can grow and align on a larger scale, producing permanent magnets. Such a material is magnetized, or induced to be magnetic.
- Above a material's Curie temperature, thermal agitation destroys the alignment of atoms, and ferromagnetism disappears.
- Electromagnets employ electric currents to make magnetic fields, often aided by induced fields in ferromagnetic materials.

Glossary

ferromagnetic
: materials, such as iron, cobalt, nickel, and gadolinium, that exhibit strong magnetic effects

magnetized
: to be turned into a magnet; to be induced to be magnetic

domains
: regions within a material that behave like small bar magnets

Curie temperature
: the temperature above which a ferromagnetic material cannot be magnetized

electromagnetism

the use of electrical currents to induce magnetism

electromagnet

an object that is temporarily magnetic when an electrical current is passed through it

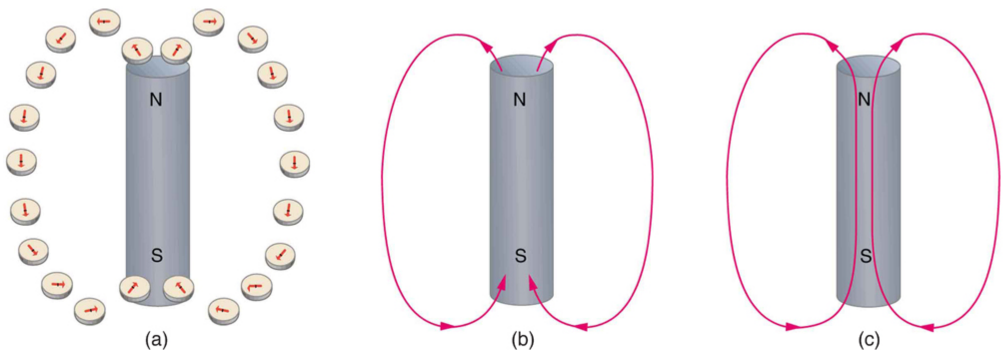
magnetic monopoles

an isolated magnetic pole; a south pole without a north pole, or vice versa (no magnetic monopole has ever been observed)

Magnetic Fields and Magnetic Field Lines

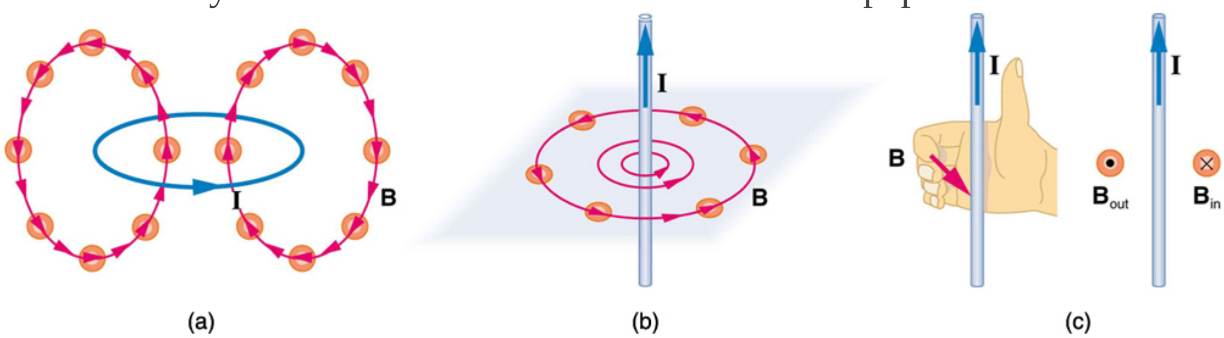
- Define magnetic field and describe the magnetic field lines of various magnetic fields.

Einstein is said to have been fascinated by a compass as a child, perhaps musing on how the needle felt a force without direct physical contact. His ability to think deeply and clearly about action at a distance, particularly for gravitational, electric, and magnetic forces, later enabled him to create his revolutionary theory of relativity. Since magnetic forces act at a distance, we define a **magnetic field** to represent magnetic forces. The pictorial representation of **magnetic field lines** is very useful in visualizing the strength and direction of the magnetic field. As shown in [link], the **direction of magnetic field lines** is defined to be the direction in which the north end of a compass needle points. The magnetic field is traditionally called the ***B*-field**.



Magnetic field lines are defined to have the direction that a small compass points when placed at a location. (a) If small compasses are used to map the magnetic field around a bar magnet, they will point in the directions shown: away from the north pole of the magnet, toward the south pole of the magnet. (Recall that the Earth's north magnetic pole is really a south pole in terms of definitions of poles on a bar magnet.) (b) Connecting the arrows gives continuous magnetic field lines. The strength of the field is proportional to the closeness (or density) of the lines. (c) If the interior of the magnet could be probed, the field lines would be found to form continuous closed loops.

Small compasses used to test a magnetic field will not disturb it. (This is analogous to the way we tested electric fields with a small test charge. In both cases, the fields represent only the object creating them and not the probe testing them.) [link] shows how the magnetic field appears for a current loop and a long straight wire, as could be explored with small compasses. A small compass placed in these fields will align itself parallel to the field line at its location, with its north pole pointing in the direction of *B*. Note the symbols used for field into and out of the paper.



Small compasses could be used to map the fields shown here. (a) The magnetic field of a circular current loop is similar to that of a bar magnet. (b) A long and straight wire creates a field with magnetic field lines forming circular loops. (c) When the wire is in the plane of the paper, the field is perpendicular to the paper. Note that the symbols used for the field pointing inward (like the tail of an arrow) and the field pointing outward (like the tip of an arrow).

Note:

Making Connections: Concept of a Field

A field is a way of mapping forces surrounding any object that can act on another object at a distance without apparent physical connection. The field represents the object generating it. Gravitational fields map

gravitational forces, electric fields map electrical forces, and magnetic fields map magnetic forces.

Extensive exploration of magnetic fields has revealed a number of hard-and-fast rules. We use magnetic field lines to represent the field (the lines are a pictorial tool, not a physical entity in and of themselves). The properties of magnetic field lines can be summarized by these rules:

1. The direction of the magnetic field is tangent to the field line at any point in space. A small compass will point in the direction of the field line.
2. The strength of the field is proportional to the closeness of the lines. It is exactly proportional to the number of lines per unit area perpendicular to the lines (called the areal density).
3. Magnetic field lines can never cross, meaning that the field is unique at any point in space.
4. Magnetic field lines are continuous, forming closed loops without beginning or end. They go from the north pole to the south pole.

The last property is related to the fact that the north and south poles cannot be separated. It is a distinct difference from electric field lines, which begin and end on the positive and negative charges. If magnetic monopoles existed, then magnetic field lines would begin and end on them.

Section Summary

- Magnetic fields can be pictorially represented by magnetic field lines, the properties of which are as follows:

1. The field is tangent to the magnetic field line.
2. Field strength is proportional to the line density.
3. Field lines cannot cross.
4. Field lines are continuous loops.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why the magnetic field would not be unique (that is, not have a single value) at a point in space where magnetic field lines might cross. (Consider the direction of the field at such a point.)

Exercise:

Problem:

List the ways in which magnetic field lines and electric field lines are similar. For example, the field direction is tangent to the line at any point in space. Also list the ways in which they differ. For example, electric force is parallel to electric field lines, whereas magnetic force on moving charges is perpendicular to magnetic field lines.

Exercise:

Problem:

Noting that the magnetic field lines of a bar magnet resemble the electric field lines of a pair of equal and opposite charges, do you expect the magnetic field to rapidly decrease in strength with distance from the magnet? Is this consistent with your experience with magnets?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the Earth's magnetic field parallel to the ground at all locations? If not, where is it parallel to the surface? Is its strength the same at all locations? If not, where is it greatest?

Glossary

magnetic field
: the representation of magnetic forces

B-field
another term for magnetic field

magnetic field lines
the pictorial representation of the strength and the direction of a magnetic field

direction of magnetic field lines
the direction that the north end of a compass needle points

Magnetic Field Strength: Force on a Moving Charge in a Magnetic Field

- Describe the effects of magnetic fields on moving charges.
- Use the right hand rule 1 to determine the velocity of a charge, the direction of the magnetic field, and the direction of the magnetic force on a moving charge.
- Calculate the magnetic force on a moving charge.

What is the mechanism by which one magnet exerts a force on another? The answer is related to the fact that all magnetism is caused by current, the flow of charge. *Magnetic fields exert forces on moving charges*, and so they exert forces on other magnets, all of which have moving charges.

Right Hand Rule 1

The magnetic force on a moving charge is one of the most fundamental known. Magnetic force is as important as the electrostatic or Coulomb force. Yet the magnetic force is more complex, in both the number of factors that affects it and in its direction, than the relatively simple Coulomb force. The magnitude of the **magnetic force** F on a charge q moving at a speed v in a magnetic field of strength B is given by
Equation:

$$F = \text{qvB} \sin \theta,$$

where θ is the angle between the directions of $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{B}$. This force is often called the **Lorentz force**. In fact, this is how we define the magnetic field strength B—in terms of the force on a charged particle moving in a magnetic field. The SI unit for magnetic field strength B is called the **tesla** (T) after the eccentric but brilliant inventor Nikola Tesla (1856–1943). To determine how the tesla relates to other SI units, we solve $F = \text{qvB} \sin \theta$ for B.
Equation:

$$B = \frac{F}{\text{qv} \sin \theta}$$

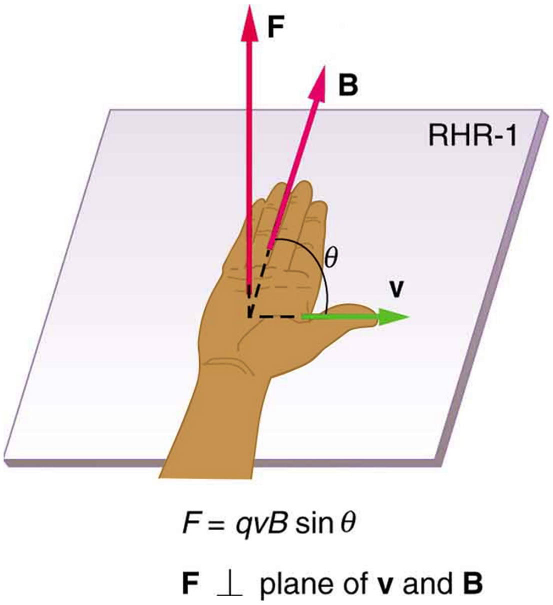
Because sin θ is unitless, the tesla is
Equation:

$$1\text{ T}=\frac{1\text{ N}}{\text{C}\cdot\text{m/s}}=\frac{1\text{ N}}{\text{A}\cdot\text{m}}$$

(note that C/s = A).

Another smaller unit, called the **gauss** (G), where $1\text{ G}=10^{-4}\text{ T}$, is sometimes used. The strongest permanent magnets have fields near 2 T; superconducting electromagnets may attain 10 T or more. The Earth's magnetic field on its surface is only about $5\times10^{-5}\text{ T}$, or 0.5 G.

The *direction* of the magnetic force $\mathbf{F}$ is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, as determined by the **right hand rule 1** (or RHR-1), which is illustrated in [link]. RHR-1 states that, to determine the direction of the magnetic force on a positive moving charge, you point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of $\mathbf{v}$, the fingers in the direction of $\mathbf{B}$, and a perpendicular to the palm points in the direction of $\mathbf{F}$. One way to remember this is that there is one velocity, and so the thumb represents it. There are many field lines, and so the fingers represent them. The force is in the direction you would push with your palm. The force on a negative charge is in exactly the opposite direction to that on a positive charge.



Magnetic fields exert forces on moving charges. This force is one of the most basic known. The direction of the magnetic force on a moving charge is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ and follows right hand rule–1 (RHR-1) as shown. The magnitude of the force is proportional to q, v, B, and the sine of the angle between $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{B}$.

Note:

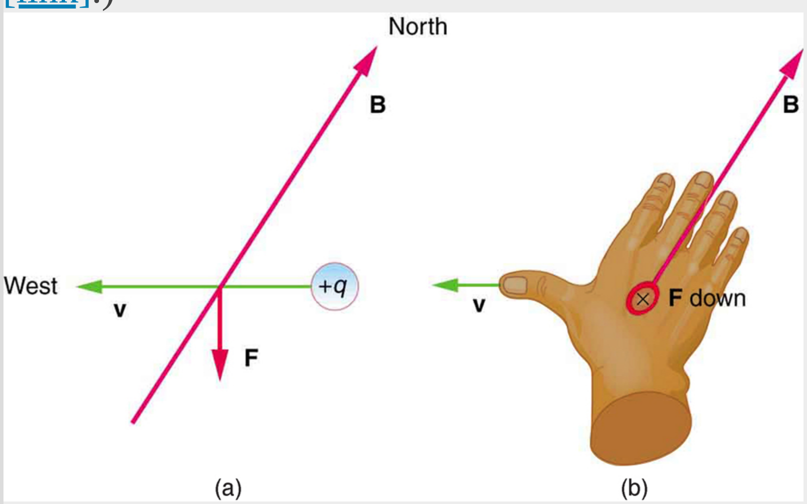
Making Connections: Charges and Magnets

There is no magnetic force on static charges. However, there is a magnetic force on moving charges. When charges are stationary, their electric fields do not affect magnets. But, when charges move, they produce magnetic

fields that exert forces on other magnets. When there is relative motion, a connection between electric and magnetic fields emerges—each affects the other.

Example:
Calculating Magnetic Force: Earth's Magnetic Field on a Charged Glass Rod

With the exception of compasses, you seldom see or personally experience forces due to the Earth's small magnetic field. To illustrate this, suppose that in a physics lab you rub a glass rod with silk, placing a 20-nC positive charge on it. Calculate the force on the rod due to the Earth's magnetic field, if you throw it with a horizontal velocity of 10 m/s due west in a place where the Earth's field is due north parallel to the ground. (The direction of the force is determined with right hand rule 1 as shown in [link].)



A positively charged object moving due west in a region where the Earth's magnetic field is due north experiences a force that is straight down as shown. A negative charge moving in the same direction would feel a force straight up.

Strategy

We are given the charge, its velocity, and the magnetic field strength and direction. We can thus use the equation $F = \text{qvB}\ \text{sin}\ \theta$ to find the force.

Solution

The magnetic force is

Equation:

$$F = \text{qvb}\ \text{sin}\ \theta.$$

We see that $\text{sin}\ \theta = 1$, since the angle between the velocity and the direction of the field is 90º. Entering the other given quantities yields

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} F & = & \left(20 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{C}\right)\left(10\ \text{m/s}\right)\left(5 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}\right) \\ & = & 1 \times 10^{-11}\ \left(\text{C} \cdot \text{m/s}\right)\left(\frac{\text{N}}{\text{C} \cdot \text{m/s}}\right) = 1 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}. \end{array}$$

Discussion

This force is completely negligible on any macroscopic object, consistent with experience. (It is calculated to only one digit, since the Earth's field varies with location and is given to only one digit.) The Earth's magnetic field, however, does produce very important effects, particularly on submicroscopic particles. Some of these are explored in Force on a Moving Charge in a Magnetic Field: Examples and Applications.

Section Summary

- Magnetic fields exert a force on a moving charge q, the magnitude of which is

  Equation:

  $$F = \text{qvB}\ \text{sin}\ \theta,$$

  where θ is the angle between the directions of v and B.
- The SI unit for magnetic field strength B is the tesla (T), which is related to other units by

Equation:

$$1\text{ T}=\frac{1\text{ N}}{\text{C}\cdot\text{m/s}}=\frac{1\text{ N}}{\text{A}\cdot\text{m}}.$$

- The *direction* of the force on a moving charge is given by right hand rule 1 (RHR-1): Point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of v, the fingers in the direction of B, and a perpendicular to the palm points in the direction of F.
- The force is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{B}$. Since the force is zero if $\mathbf{v}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{B}$, charged particles often follow magnetic field lines rather than cross them.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

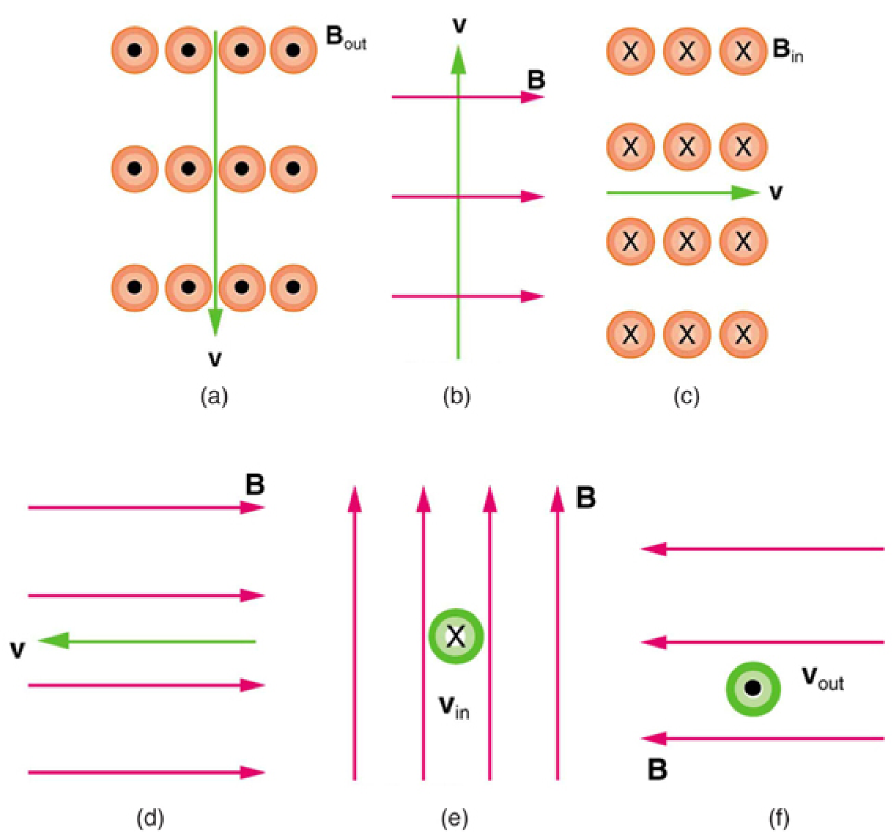
If a charged particle moves in a straight line through some region of space, can you say that the magnetic field in that region is necessarily zero?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the magnetic force on a positive charge that moves as shown in each of the six cases shown in [link]?



Solution:

(a) Left (West)

(b) Into the page

(c) Up (North)

(d) No force

(e) Right (East)

(f) Down (South)

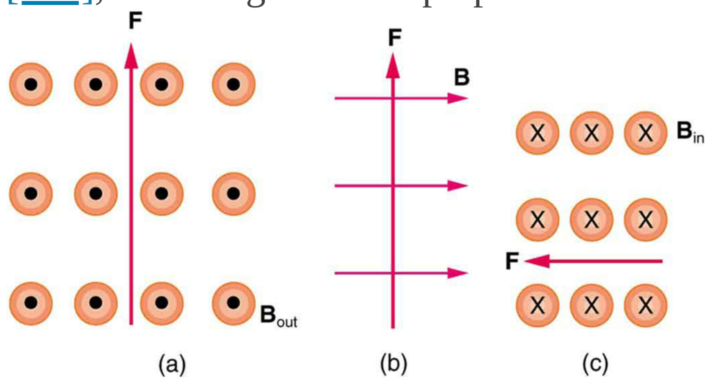
Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link] for a negative charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the velocity of a negative charge that experiences the magnetic force shown in each of the three cases in [link], assuming it moves perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}$?



Solution:

(a) East (right)

(b) Into page

(c) South (down)

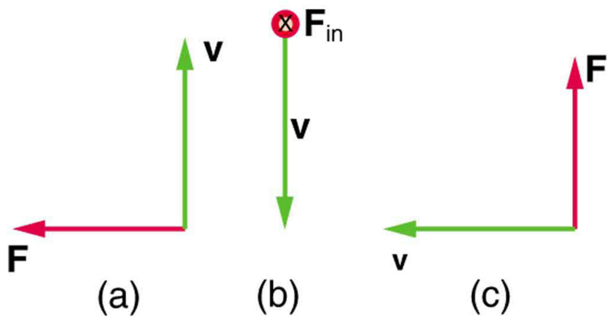
Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link] for a positive charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the magnetic field that produces the magnetic force on a positive charge as shown in each of the three cases in the figure below, assuming $\mathbf{B}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{v}$?



Solution:

(a) Into page

(b) West (left)

(c) Out of page

Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link] for a negative charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the maximum magnitude of the force on an aluminum rod with a $0.100\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge that you pass between the poles of a 1.50-T permanent magnet at a speed of 5.00 m/s? In what direction is the force?

Solution:

7.50×10^{-7} N perpendicular to both the magnetic field lines and the velocity

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Aircraft sometimes acquire small static charges. Suppose a supersonic jet has a $0.500\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge and flies due west at a speed of 660 m/s over the Earth's magnetic south pole (near Earth's geographic north pole), where the $8.00 \times 10^{-5}\text{-T}$ magnetic field points straight down. What are the direction and the magnitude of the magnetic force on the plane? (b) Discuss whether the value obtained in part (a) implies this is a significant or negligible effect.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A cosmic ray proton moving toward the Earth at $5.00 \times 10^{7}\ \text{m/s}$ experiences a magnetic force of $1.70 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{N}$. What is the strength of the magnetic field if there is a 45° angle between it and the proton's velocity? (b) Is the value obtained in part (a) consistent with the known strength of the Earth's magnetic field on its surface? Discuss.

Solution:

(a) $3.01 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$

(b) This is slightly less then the magnetic field strength of $5 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$ at the surface of the Earth, so it is consistent.

Exercise:

Problem:

An electron moving at $4.00 \times 10^{3}\ \text{m/s}$ in a 1.25-T magnetic field experiences a magnetic force of $1.40 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{N}$. What angle does the velocity of the electron make with the magnetic field? There are two answers.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A physicist performing a sensitive measurement wants to limit the magnetic force on a moving charge in her equipment to less than 1.00×10^{-12} N. What is the greatest the charge can be if it moves at a maximum speed of 30.0 m/s in the Earth's field? (b) Discuss whether it would be difficult to limit the charge to less than the value found in (a) by comparing it with typical static electricity and noting that static is often absent.

Solution:

(a) 6.67×10^{-10} C (taking the Earth's field to be 5.00×10^{-5} T)

(b) Less than typical static, therefore difficult

Glossary

right hand rule 1 (RHR-1)
: the rule to determine the direction of the magnetic force on a positive moving charge: when the thumb of the right hand points in the direction of the charge's velocity **v** and the fingers point in the direction of the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$, then the force on the charge is perpendicular and away from the palm; the force on a negative charge is perpendicular and into the palm

Lorentz force
: the force on a charge moving in a magnetic field

tesla
: T, the SI unit of the magnetic field strength; $1\ \text{T} = \frac{1\ \text{N}}{\text{A} \cdot \text{m}}$

magnetic force
: the force on a charge produced by its motion through a magnetic field; the Lorentz force

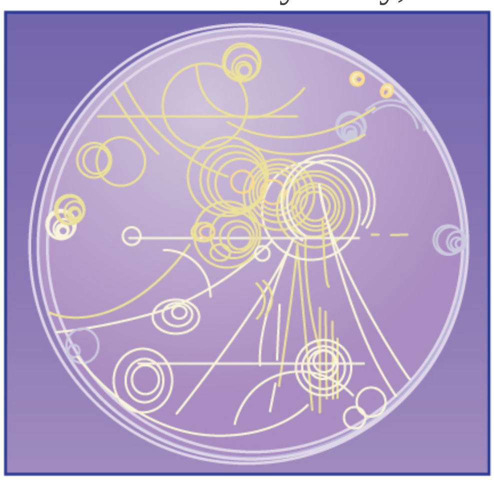
gauss

G, the unit of the magnetic field strength; $1\ \mathrm{G} = 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{T}$

Force on a Moving Charge in a Magnetic Field: Examples and Applications

- Describe the effects of a magnetic field on a moving charge.
- Calculate the radius of curvature of the path of a charge that is moving in a magnetic field.

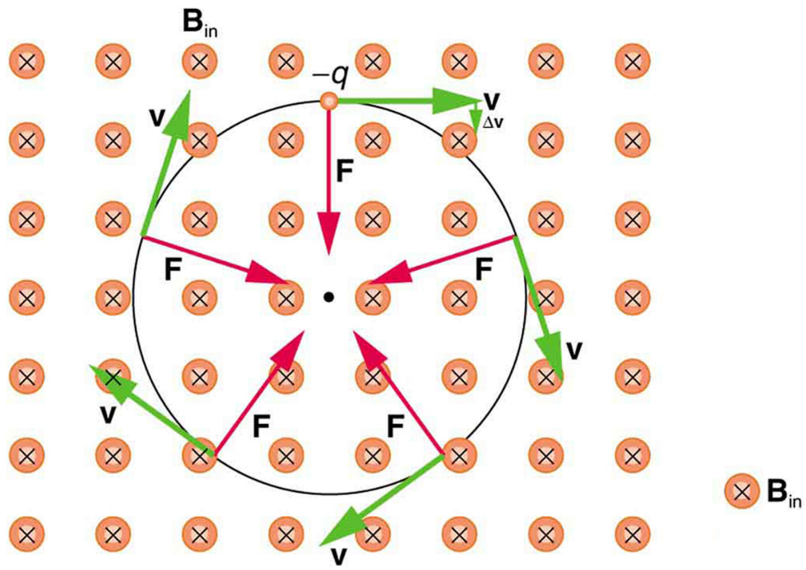
Magnetic force can cause a charged particle to move in a circular or spiral path. Cosmic rays are energetic charged particles in outer space, some of which approach the Earth. They can be forced into spiral paths by the Earth's magnetic field. Protons in giant accelerators are kept in a circular path by magnetic force. The bubble chamber photograph in [link] shows charged particles moving in such curved paths. The curved paths of charged particles in magnetic fields are the basis of a number of phenomena and can even be used analytically, such as in a mass spectrometer.



Trails of bubbles are produced by high-energy charged particles moving through the superheated liquid hydrogen in this artist's rendition of a bubble chamber. There is a strong magnetic field perpendicular to the page that causes the curved paths of the particles. The radius of the path can be

used to find the mass, charge, and energy of the particle.

So does the magnetic force cause circular motion? Magnetic force is always perpendicular to velocity, so that it does no work on the charged particle. The particle’s kinetic energy and speed thus remain constant. The direction of motion is affected, but not the speed. This is typical of uniform circular motion. The simplest case occurs when a charged particle moves perpendicular to a uniform B-field, such as shown in [link]. (If this takes place in a vacuum, the magnetic field is the dominant factor determining the motion.) Here, the magnetic force supplies the centripetal force $F_{\text{c}} = mv^2/r$. Noting that $\sin\theta = 1$, we see that $F = \text{qvB}$.



A negatively charged particle moves in the plane of the page in a region where the magnetic field is perpendicular into the page (represented by the small circles with x’s—like the tails of arrows). The magnetic force is perpendicular to the velocity, and so velocity changes in direction but not magnitude. Uniform circular motion results.

Because the magnetic force F supplies the centripetal force F_{c}, we have
Equation:

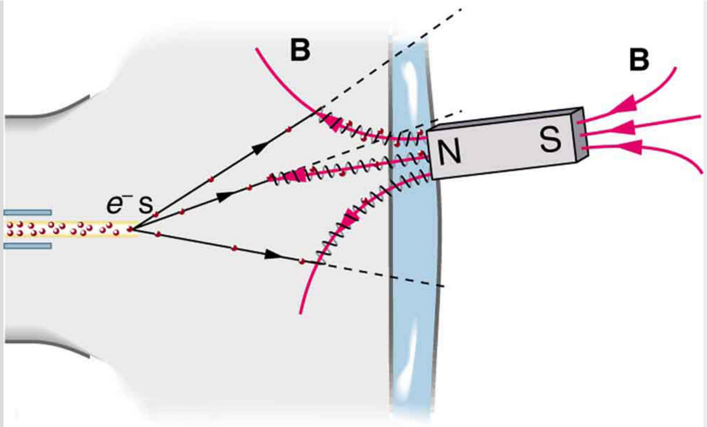
$$\text{qvB} = \frac{mv^2}{r}.$$

Solving for r yields
Equation:

$$r = \frac{\text{mv}}{\text{qB}}.$$

Here, r is the radius of curvature of the path of a charged particle with mass m and charge q, moving at a speed v perpendicular to a magnetic field of strength B. If the velocity is not perpendicular to the magnetic field, then v is the component of the velocity perpendicular to the field. The component of the velocity parallel to the field is unaffected, since the magnetic force is zero for motion parallel to the field. This produces a spiral motion rather than a circular one.

Example:
Calculating the Curvature of the Path of an Electron Moving in a Magnetic Field: A Magnet on a TV Screen
A magnet brought near an old-fashioned TV screen such as in [link] (TV sets with cathode ray tubes instead of LCD screens) severely distorts its picture by altering the path of the electrons that make its phosphors glow. ***(Don't try this at home, as it will permanently magnetize and ruin the TV.)*** To illustrate this, calculate the radius of curvature of the path of an electron having a velocity of $6.00 \times 10^7\ \text{m/s}$ (corresponding to the accelerating voltage of about 10.0 kV used in some TVs) perpendicular to a magnetic field of strength $B = 0.500\ \text{T}$ (obtainable with permanent magnets).



Side view showing what happens when a magnet comes in contact with a computer monitor or TV screen. Electrons moving toward the screen spiral about magnetic field lines, maintaining the component of their velocity parallel to the field lines. This distorts the image on the screen.

Strategy

We can find the radius of curvature r directly from the equation $r = \frac{mv}{qB}$, since all other quantities in it are given or known.

Solution

Using known values for the mass and charge of an electron, along with the given values of v and B gives us

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} r = \frac{\text{mv}}{\text{qB}} &= \frac{\left(9.11\times10^{-31}\text{ kg}\right)\left(6.00\times10^{7}\text{ m/s}\right)}{\left(1.60\times10^{-19}\text{ C}\right)\left(0.500\text{ T}\right)} \\ &= 6.83\times10^{-4}\text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

or

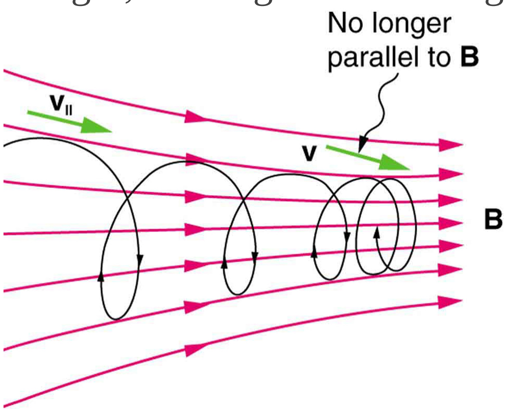
Equation:

$$r = 0.683\text{ mm}.$$

Discussion

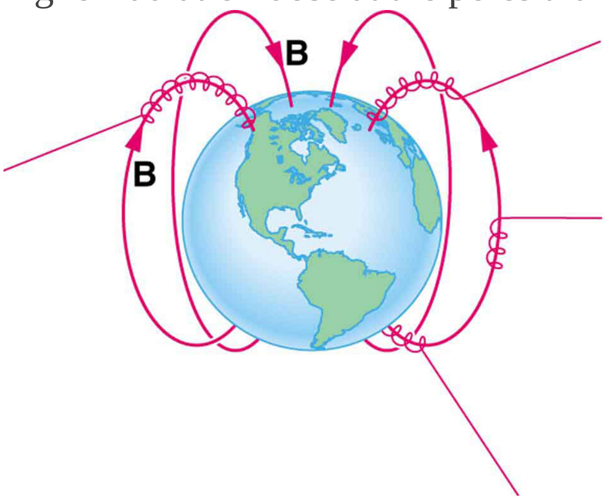
The small radius indicates a large effect. The electrons in the TV picture tube are made to move in very tight circles, greatly altering their paths and distorting the image.

[link] shows how electrons not moving perpendicular to magnetic field lines follow the field lines. The component of velocity parallel to the lines is unaffected, and so the charges spiral along the field lines. If field strength increases in the direction of motion, the field will exert a force to slow the charges, forming a kind of magnetic mirror, as shown below.



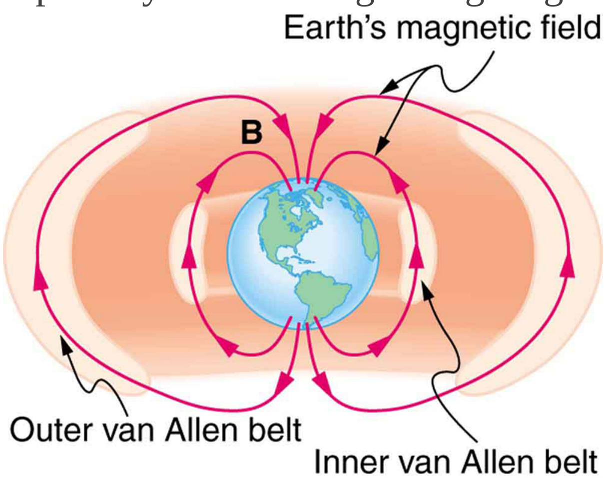
When a charged particle moves along a magnetic field line into a region where the field becomes stronger, the particle experiences a force that reduces the component of velocity parallel to the field. This force slows the motion along the field line and here reverses it, forming a “magnetic mirror.”

The properties of charged particles in magnetic fields are related to such different things as the Aurora Australis or Aurora Borealis and particle accelerators. *Charged particles approaching magnetic field lines may get trapped in spiral orbits about the lines rather than crossing them*, as seen above. Some cosmic rays, for example, follow the Earth's magnetic field lines, entering the atmosphere near the magnetic poles and causing the southern or northern lights through their ionization of molecules in the atmosphere. This glow of energized atoms and molecules is seen in [link]. Those particles that approach middle latitudes must cross magnetic field lines, and many are prevented from penetrating the atmosphere. Cosmic rays are a component of background radiation; consequently, they give a higher radiation dose at the poles than at the equator.



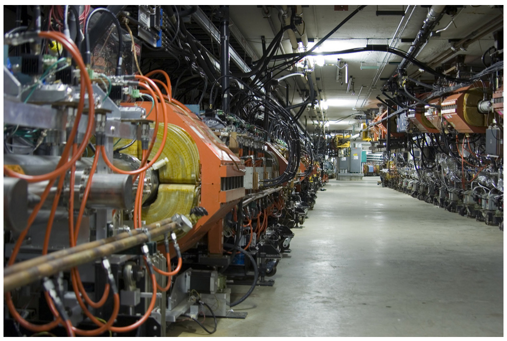
Energetic electrons and protons, components of cosmic rays, from the Sun and deep outer space often follow the Earth's magnetic field lines rather than cross them. (Recall that the Earth's north magnetic pole is really a south pole in terms of a bar magnet.)

Some incoming charged particles become trapped in the Earth’s magnetic field, forming two belts above the atmosphere known as the Van Allen radiation belts after the discoverer James A. Van Allen, an American astrophysicist. (See [link].) Particles trapped in these belts form radiation fields (similar to nuclear radiation) so intense that manned space flights avoid them and satellites with sensitive electronics are kept out of them. In the few minutes it took lunar missions to cross the Van Allen radiation belts, astronauts received radiation doses more than twice the allowed annual exposure for radiation workers. Other planets have similar belts, especially those having strong magnetic fields like Jupiter.



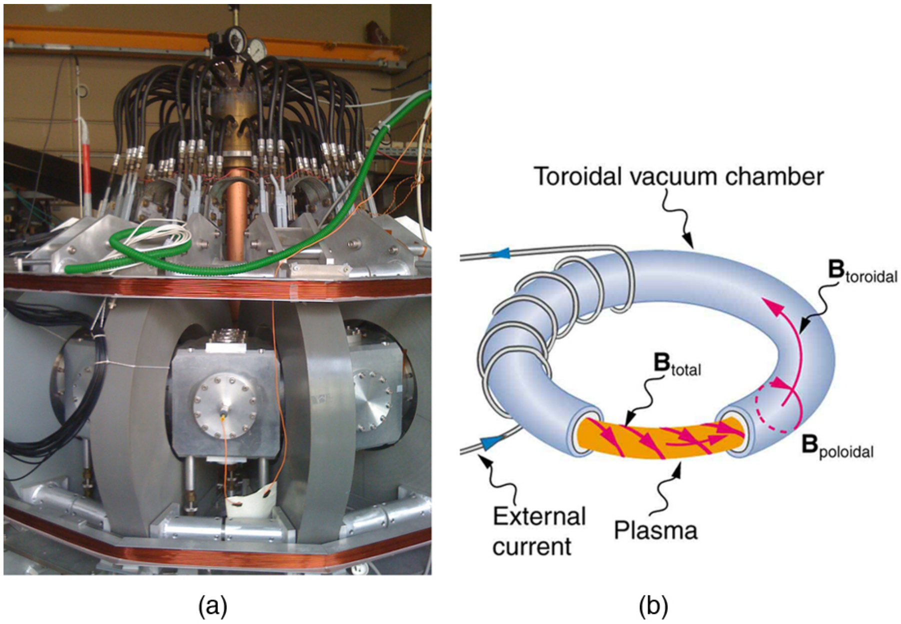
The Van Allen radiation belts are two regions in which energetic charged particles are trapped in the Earth’s magnetic field. One belt lies about 300 km above the Earth’s surface, the other about 16,000 km. Charged particles in these belts migrate along magnetic field lines and are partially reflected away from the poles by the stronger fields there. The charged particles that enter the atmosphere are replenished by the Sun and sources in deep outer space.

Back on Earth, we have devices that employ magnetic fields to contain charged particles. Among them are the giant particle accelerators that have been used to explore the substructure of matter. (See [link].) Magnetic fields not only control the direction of the charged particles, they also are used to focus particles into beams and overcome the repulsion of like charges in these beams.



The Fermilab facility in Illinois has a large particle accelerator (the most powerful in the world until 2008) that employs magnetic fields (magnets seen here in orange) to contain and direct its beam. This and other accelerators have been in use for several decades and have allowed us to discover some of the laws underlying all matter. (credit: ammcrim, Flickr)

Thermonuclear fusion (like that occurring in the Sun) is a hope for a future clean energy source. One of the most promising devices is the *tokamak*, which uses magnetic fields to contain (or trap) and direct the reactive charged particles. (See [link].) Less exotic, but more immediately practical, amplifiers in microwave ovens use a magnetic field to contain oscillating electrons. These oscillating electrons generate the microwaves sent into the oven.



Tokamaks such as the one shown in the figure are being studied with the goal of economical production of energy by nuclear fusion. Magnetic fields in the doughnut-shaped device contain and direct the reactive charged particles. (credit: David Mellis, Flickr)

Mass spectrometers have a variety of designs, and many use magnetic fields to measure mass. The curvature of a charged particle's path in the field is related to its mass and is measured to obtain mass information. (See More Applications of Magnetism.) Historically, such techniques were employed in the first direct observations of electron charge and mass. Today, mass

spectrometers (sometimes coupled with gas chromatographs) are used to determine the make-up and sequencing of large biological molecules.

Section Summary

- Magnetic force can supply centripetal force and cause a charged particle to move in a circular path of radius
  Equation:
  $$r = \frac{\mathrm{mv}}{\mathrm{qB}},$$
  where v is the component of the velocity perpendicular to B for a charged particle with mass m and charge q.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How can the motion of a charged particle be used to distinguish between a magnetic and an electric field?

Exercise:

Problem:

High-velocity charged particles can damage biological cells and are a component of radiation exposure in a variety of locations ranging from research facilities to natural background. Describe how you could use a magnetic field to shield yourself.

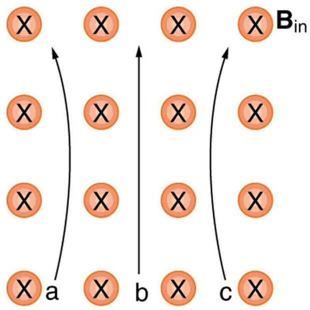
Exercise:

Problem:

If a cosmic ray proton approaches the Earth from outer space along a line toward the center of the Earth that lies in the plane of the equator, in what direction will it be deflected by the Earth's magnetic field? What about an electron? A neutron?

Exercise:

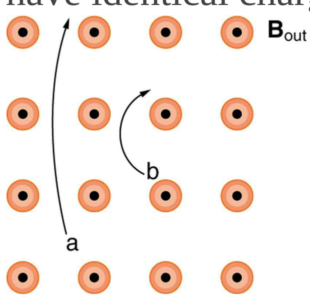
Problem: What are the signs of the charges on the particles in [link]?



Exercise:

Problem:

Which of the particles in [link] has the greatest velocity, assuming they have identical charges and masses?



Exercise:

Problem:

Which of the particles in [link] has the greatest mass, assuming all have identical charges and velocities?

Exercise:

Problem:

While operating, a high-precision TV monitor is placed on its side during maintenance. The image on the monitor changes color and blurs slightly. Discuss the possible relation of these effects to the Earth's magnetic field.

Problems & Exercises

If you need additional support for these problems, see More Applications of Magnetism.

Exercise:

Problem:

A cosmic ray electron moves at $7.50 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{m/s}$ perpendicular to the Earth's magnetic field at an altitude where field strength is $1.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$. What is the radius of the circular path the electron follows?

Solution:

4.27 m

Exercise:

Problem:

A proton moves at $7.50 \times 10^{7}\ \mathrm{m/s}$ perpendicular to a magnetic field. The field causes the proton to travel in a circular path of radius 0.800 m. What is the field strength?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Viewers of *Star Trek* hear of an antimatter drive on the Starship *Enterprise*. One possibility for such a futuristic energy source is to store antimatter charged particles in a vacuum chamber, circulating in a magnetic field, and then extract them as needed. Antimatter annihilates with normal matter, producing pure energy. What strength magnetic field is needed to hold antiprotons, moving at $5.00 \times 10^{7}\ \text{m/s}$ in a circular path 2.00 m in radius? Antiprotons have the same mass as protons but the opposite (negative) charge. (b) Is this field strength obtainable with today's technology or is it a futuristic possibility?

Solution:

(a) 0.261 T

(b) This strength is definitely obtainable with today's technology. Magnetic field strengths of 0.500 T are obtainable with permanent magnets.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) An oxygen-16 ion with a mass of $2.66 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{kg}$ travels at $5.00 \times 10^{6}\ \text{m/s}$ perpendicular to a 1.20-T magnetic field, which makes it move in a circular arc with a 0.231-m radius. What positive charge is on the ion? (b) What is the ratio of this charge to the charge of an electron? (c) Discuss why the ratio found in (b) should be an integer.

Exercise:

Problem:

What radius circular path does an electron travel if it moves at the same speed and in the same magnetic field as the proton in [link]?

Solution:

$4.36 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A velocity selector in a mass spectrometer uses a 0.100-T magnetic field. (a) What electric field strength is needed to select a speed of $4.00 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{m/s}$? (b) What is the voltage between the plates if they are separated by 1.00 cm?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electron in a TV CRT moves with a speed of $6.00 \times 10^{7}\ \mathrm{m/s}$, in a direction perpendicular to the Earth’s field, which has a strength of $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$. (a) What strength electric field must be applied perpendicular to the Earth’s field to make the electron moves in a straight line? (b) If this is done between plates separated by 1.00 cm, what is the voltage applied? (Note that TVs are usually surrounded by a ferromagnetic material to shield against external magnetic fields and avoid the need for such a correction.)

Solution:

(a) 3.00 kV/m

(b) 30.0 V

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At what speed will a proton move in a circular path of the same radius as the electron in [link]? (b) What would the radius of the path be if the proton had the same speed as the electron? (c) What would the radius be if the proton had the same kinetic energy as the electron? (d) The same momentum?

Exercise:

Problem:

A mass spectrometer is being used to separate common oxygen-16 from the much rarer oxygen-18, taken from a sample of old glacial ice. (The relative abundance of these oxygen isotopes is related to climatic temperature at the time the ice was deposited.) The ratio of the masses of these two ions is 16 to 18, the mass of oxygen-16 is $2.66 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{kg}$, and they are singly charged and travel at $5.00 \times 10^{6}\ \text{m/s}$ in a 1.20-T magnetic field. What is the separation between their paths when they hit a target after traversing a semicircle?

Solution:

0.173 m

Exercise:

Problem:

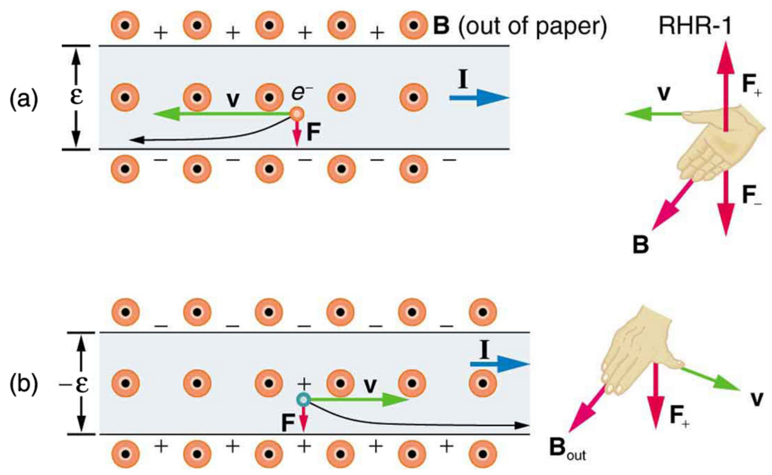
(a) Triply charged uranium-235 and uranium-238 ions are being separated in a mass spectrometer. (The much rarer uranium-235 is used as reactor fuel.) The masses of the ions are $3.90 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{kg}$ and $3.95 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{kg}$, respectively, and they travel at $3.00 \times 10^{5}\ \text{m/s}$ in a 0.250-T field. What is the separation between their paths when they hit a target after traversing a semicircle? (b) Discuss whether this distance between their paths seems to be big enough to be practical in the separation of uranium-235 from uranium-238.

The Hall Effect

- Describe the Hall effect.
- Calculate the Hall emf across a current-carrying conductor.

We have seen effects of a magnetic field on free-moving charges. The magnetic field also affects charges moving in a conductor. One result is the Hall effect, which has important implications and applications.

[link] shows what happens to charges moving through a conductor in a magnetic field. The field is perpendicular to the electron drift velocity and to the width of the conductor. Note that conventional current is to the right in both parts of the figure. In part (a), electrons carry the current and move to the left. In part (b), positive charges carry the current and move to the right. Moving electrons feel a magnetic force toward one side of the conductor, leaving a net positive charge on the other side. This separation of charge *creates a voltage* ε, known as the **Hall emf**, *across* the conductor. The creation of a voltage *across* a current-carrying conductor by a magnetic field is known as the **Hall effect**, after Edwin Hall, the American physicist who discovered it in 1879.



The Hall effect. (a) Electrons move to the left in this flat conductor (conventional current to the right). The magnetic field is directly out of the page, represented by circled dots; it exerts a force on the moving charges, causing a voltage ε, the

Hall emf, across the conductor. (b) Positive charges moving to the right (conventional current also to the right) are moved to the side, producing a Hall emf of the opposite sign, –ε. Thus, if the direction of the field and current are known, the sign of the charge carriers can be determined from the Hall effect.

One very important use of the Hall effect is to determine whether positive or negative charges carries the current. Note that in [link](b), where positive charges carry the current, the Hall emf has the sign opposite to when negative charges carry the current. Historically, the Hall effect was used to show that electrons carry current in metals and it also shows that positive charges carry current in some semiconductors. The Hall effect is used today as a research tool to probe the movement of charges, their drift velocities and densities, and so on, in materials. In 1980, it was discovered that the Hall effect is quantized, an example of quantum behavior in a macroscopic object.

The Hall effect has other uses that range from the determination of blood flow rate to precision measurement of magnetic field strength. To examine these quantitatively, we need an expression for the Hall emf, ε, across a conductor. Consider the balance of forces on a moving charge in a situation where B, v, and l are mutually perpendicular, such as shown in [link]. Although the magnetic force moves negative charges to one side, they cannot build up without limit. The electric field caused by their separation opposes the magnetic force, $F = \text{qvB}$, and the electric force, $F_{\text{e}} = \text{qE}$, eventually grows to equal it. That is,

Equation:

$$\text{qE} = \text{qvB}$$

or

Equation:

$$E = \text{vB}.$$

Note that the electric field E is uniform across the conductor because the magnetic field B is uniform, as is the conductor. For a uniform electric field, the relationship between electric field and voltage is $E = \varepsilon / l$, where l is the width of the conductor and ε is the Hall emf. Entering this into the last expression gives

Equation:

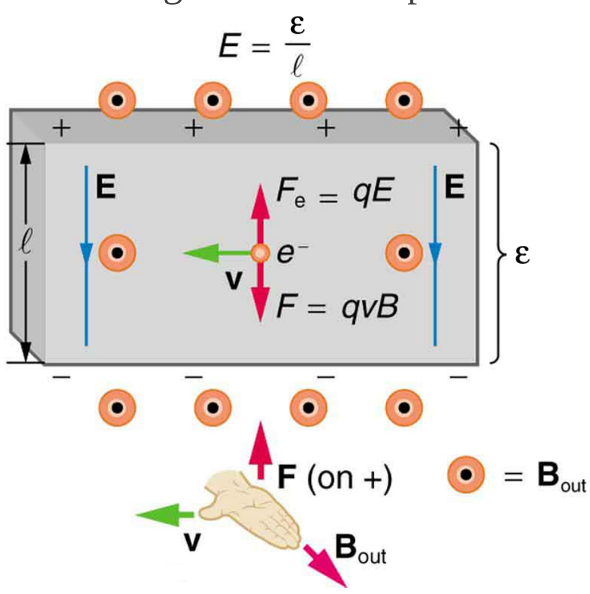
$$\frac{\varepsilon}{l} = \text{vB}.$$

Solving this for the Hall emf yields

Equation:

$$\varepsilon = Blv \;(B,\, v,\, \text{and } l,\, \text{mutually perpendicular}),$$

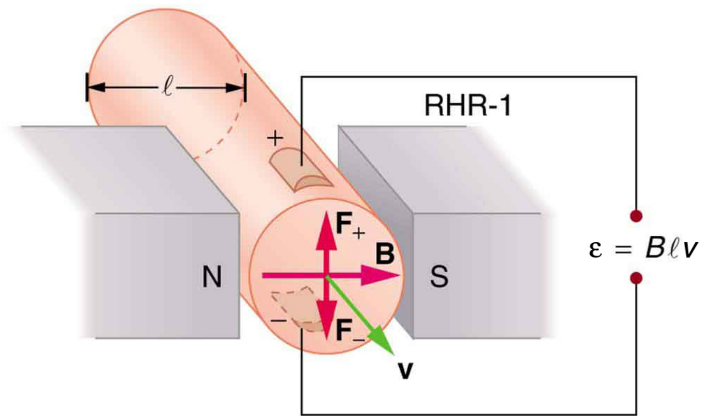
where ε is the Hall effect voltage across a conductor of width l through which charges move at a speed v.



The Hall emf ε produces an electric force that balances the magnetic force on the moving

charges. The magnetic force produces charge separation, which builds up until it is balanced by the electric force, an equilibrium that is quickly reached.

One of the most common uses of the Hall effect is in the measurement of magnetic field strength B. Such devices, called *Hall probes*, can be made very small, allowing fine position mapping. Hall probes can also be made very accurate, usually accomplished by careful calibration. Another application of the Hall effect is to measure fluid flow in any fluid that has free charges (most do). (See [link].) A magnetic field applied perpendicular to the flow direction produces a Hall emf ε as shown. Note that the sign of ε depends not on the sign of the charges, but only on the directions of B and v. The magnitude of the Hall emf is $\varepsilon = \mathrm{Blv}$, where l is the pipe diameter, so that the average velocity v can be determined from ε providing the other factors are known.



The Hall effect can be used to measure fluid flow in any fluid having free charges, such as blood. The Hall emf ε is measured across the tube perpendicular to the applied magnetic field and is proportional to the average velocity v.

Example:
Calculating the Hall emf: Hall Effect for Blood Flow
A Hall effect flow probe is placed on an artery, applying a 0.100-T magnetic field across it, in a setup similar to that in [link]. What is the Hall emf, given the vessel's inside diameter is 4.00 mm and the average blood velocity is 20.0 cm/s?
Strategy
Because B, v, and l are mutually perpendicular, the equation $\varepsilon = \mathrm{Blv}$ can be used to find ε.
Solution
Entering the given values for B, v, and l gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon &= Blv = (0.100\ \mathrm{T})\left(4.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m}\right)(0.200\ \mathrm{m/s}) \\ &= 80.0\ \mu\mathrm{V} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This is the average voltage output. Instantaneous voltage varies with pulsating blood flow. The voltage is small in this type of measurement. ε is particularly difficult to measure, because there are voltages associated with heart action (ECG voltages) that are on the order of millivolts. In practice, this difficulty is overcome by applying an AC magnetic field, so that the Hall emf is AC with the same frequency. An amplifier can be very selective in picking out only the appropriate frequency, eliminating signals and noise at other frequencies.

Section Summary

- The Hall effect is the creation of voltage ε, known as the Hall emf, across a current-carrying conductor by a magnetic field.
- The Hall emf is given by

Equation:

$$\varepsilon = Blv \; (B, v, \text{ and } l, \text{ mutually perpendicular})$$

for a conductor of width l through which charges move at a speed v.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss how the Hall effect could be used to obtain information on free charge density in a conductor. (Hint: Consider how drift velocity and current are related.)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A large water main is 2.50 m in diameter and the average water velocity is 6.00 m/s. Find the Hall voltage produced if the pipe runs perpendicular to the Earth's $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\text{-T}$ field.

Solution:

$7.50 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{V}$

Exercise:

Problem:

What Hall voltage is produced by a 0.200-T field applied across a 2.60-cm-diameter aorta when blood velocity is 60.0 cm/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the speed of a supersonic aircraft with a 17.0-m wingspan, if it experiences a 1.60-V Hall voltage between its wing tips when in level flight over the north magnetic pole, where the Earth's field strength is 8.00×10^{-5} T? (b) Explain why very little current flows as a result of this Hall voltage.

Solution:

(a) 1.18×10^{3} m/s

(b) Once established, the Hall emf pushes charges one direction and the magnetic force acts in the opposite direction resulting in no net force on the charges. Therefore, no current flows in the direction of the Hall emf. This is the same as in a current-carrying conductor—current does not flow in the direction of the Hall emf.

Exercise:

Problem:

A nonmechanical water meter could utilize the Hall effect by applying a magnetic field across a metal pipe and measuring the Hall voltage produced. What is the average fluid velocity in a 3.00-cm-diameter pipe, if a 0.500-T field across it creates a 60.0-mV Hall voltage?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the Hall voltage induced on a patient's heart while being scanned by an MRI unit. Approximate the conducting path on the heart wall by a wire 7.50 cm long that moves at 10.0 cm/s perpendicular to a 1.50-T magnetic field.

Solution:

11.3 mV

Exercise:

Problem:

A Hall probe calibrated to read 1.00 μV when placed in a 2.00-T field is placed in a 0.150-T field. What is its output voltage?

Exercise:

Problem:

Using information in [link], what would the Hall voltage be if a 2.00-T field is applied across a 10-gauge copper wire (2.588 mm in diameter) carrying a 20.0-A current?

Solution:

1.16 μV

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the Hall voltage across wires made of the same material, carrying identical currents, and subjected to the same magnetic field is inversely proportional to their diameters. (Hint: Consider how drift velocity depends on wire diameter.)

Exercise:

Problem:

A patient with a pacemaker is mistakenly being scanned for an MRI image. A 10.0-cm-long section of pacemaker wire moves at a speed of 10.0 cm/s perpendicular to the MRI unit's magnetic field and a 20.0-mV Hall voltage is induced. What is the magnetic field strength?

Solution:

2.00 T

Glossary

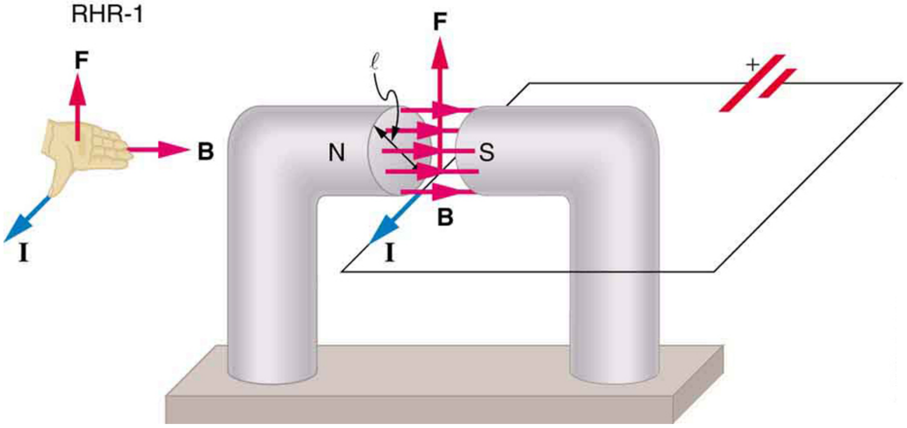
Hall effect
: the creation of voltage across a current-carrying conductor by a magnetic field

Hall emf
: the electromotive force created by a current-carrying conductor by a magnetic field, $\varepsilon = \mathrm{B}lv$

Magnetic Force on a Current-Carrying Conductor

- Describe the effects of a magnetic force on a current-carrying conductor.
- Calculate the magnetic force on a current-carrying conductor.

Because charges ordinarily cannot escape a conductor, the magnetic force on charges moving in a conductor is transmitted to the conductor itself.



The magnetic field exerts a force on a current-carrying wire in a direction given by the right hand rule 1 (the same direction as that on the individual moving charges). This force can easily be large enough to move the wire, since typical currents consist of very large numbers of moving charges.

We can derive an expression for the magnetic force on a current by taking a sum of the magnetic forces on individual charges. (The forces add because they are in the same direction.) The force on an individual charge moving at the drift velocity v_{d} is given by $F = qv_{\mathrm{d}}B \sin \theta$. Taking B to be uniform over a length of wire l and zero elsewhere, the total magnetic force on the wire is then $F = (qv_{\mathrm{d}}B \sin \theta)(N)$, where N is the number of charge carriers in the section of wire of length l. Now, $N = \mathrm{nV}$, where n is the number of charge carriers per unit volume and V is the volume of wire in the field. Noting that $V = \mathrm{Al}$, where A is the cross-sectional area of the

wire, then the force on the wire is $F = (qv_\text{d}B\sin\theta)(\text{nAl})$. Gathering terms,

Equation:

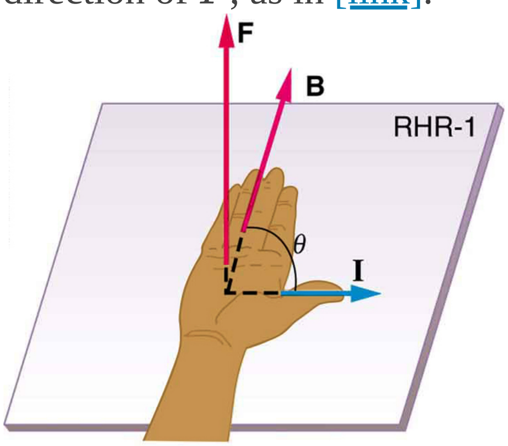
$$F = (nqAv_\text{d})lB\sin\theta.$$

Because $nqAv_\text{d} = I$ (see Current),

Equation:

$$F = \text{IlB}\sin\theta$$

is the equation for *magnetic force on a length l of wire carrying a current I in a uniform magnetic field B*, as shown in [link]. If we divide both sides of this expression by l, we find that the magnetic force per unit length of wire in a uniform field is $\frac{F}{l} = \text{IB}\sin\theta$. The direction of this force is given by RHR-1, with the thumb in the direction of the current I. Then, with the fingers in the direction of B, a perpendicular to the palm points in the direction of F, as in [link].



The force on a current-carrying wire in a magnetic field is $F = \text{IlB}\sin\theta$. Its

direction is given by
RHR-1.

Example:
Calculating Magnetic Force on a Current-Carrying Wire: A Strong Magnetic Field

Calculate the force on the wire shown in [link], given $B = 1.50\text{ T}$, $l = 5.00\text{ cm}$, and $I = 20.0\text{ A}$.

Strategy

The force can be found with the given information by using $F = \text{IlB sin }\theta$ and noting that the angle θ between I and B is 90^{o}, so that $\text{sin }\theta = 1$.

Solution

Entering the given values into $F = \text{IlB sin }\theta$ yields

Equation:

$$F = \text{IlB sin }\theta = (20.0\text{ A})(0.0500\text{ m})(1.50\text{ T})(1).$$

The units for tesla are $1\text{ T} = \frac{\text{N}}{\text{A}\cdot\text{m}}$; thus,

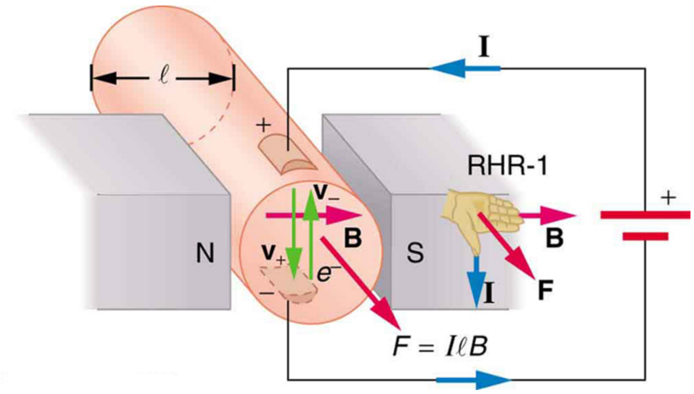
Equation:

$$F = 1.50\text{ N}.$$

Discussion

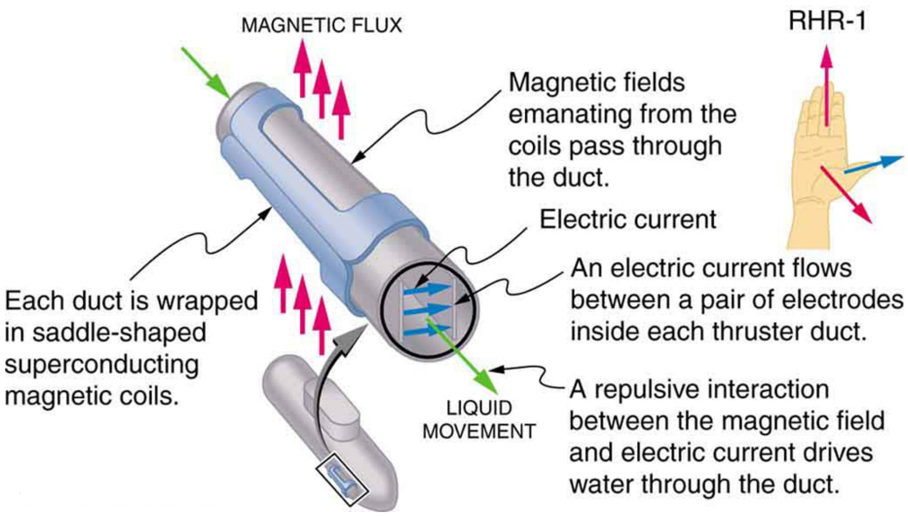
This large magnetic field creates a significant force on a small length of wire.

Magnetic force on current-carrying conductors is used to convert electric energy to work. (Motors are a prime example—they employ loops of wire and are considered in the next section.) Magnetohydrodynamics (MHD) is the technical name given to a clever application where magnetic force pumps fluids without moving mechanical parts. (See [link].)



Magnetohydrodynamics. The magnetic force on the current passed through this fluid can be used as a nonmechanical pump.

A strong magnetic field is applied across a tube and a current is passed through the fluid at right angles to the field, resulting in a force on the fluid parallel to the tube axis as shown. The absence of moving parts makes this attractive for moving a hot, chemically active substance, such as the liquid sodium employed in some nuclear reactors. Experimental artificial hearts are testing with this technique for pumping blood, perhaps circumventing the adverse effects of mechanical pumps. (Cell membranes, however, are affected by the large fields needed in MHD, delaying its practical application in humans.) MHD propulsion for nuclear submarines has been proposed, because it could be considerably quieter than conventional propeller drives. The deterrent value of nuclear submarines is based on their ability to hide and survive a first or second nuclear strike. As we slowly disassemble our nuclear weapons arsenals, the submarine branch will be the last to be decommissioned because of this ability (See [link].) Existing MHD drives are heavy and inefficient—much development work is needed.



An MHD propulsion system in a nuclear submarine could produce significantly less turbulence than propellers and allow it to run more silently. The development of a silent drive submarine was dramatized in the book and the film *The Hunt for Red October*.

Section Summary

- The magnetic force on current-carrying conductors is given by **Equation:**

  $$F = \text{IlB} \sin \theta,$$

  where I is the current, l is the length of a straight conductor in a uniform magnetic field B, and θ is the angle between I and B. The force follows RHR-1 with the thumb in the direction of I.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Draw a sketch of the situation in [link] showing the direction of electrons carrying the current, and use RHR-1 to verify the direction of the force on the wire.

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the direction of the force in an MHD drive, such as that in [link], does not depend on the sign of the charges carrying the current across the fluid.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why would a magnetohydrodynamic drive work better in ocean water than in fresh water? Also, why would superconducting magnets be desirable?

Exercise:

Problem:

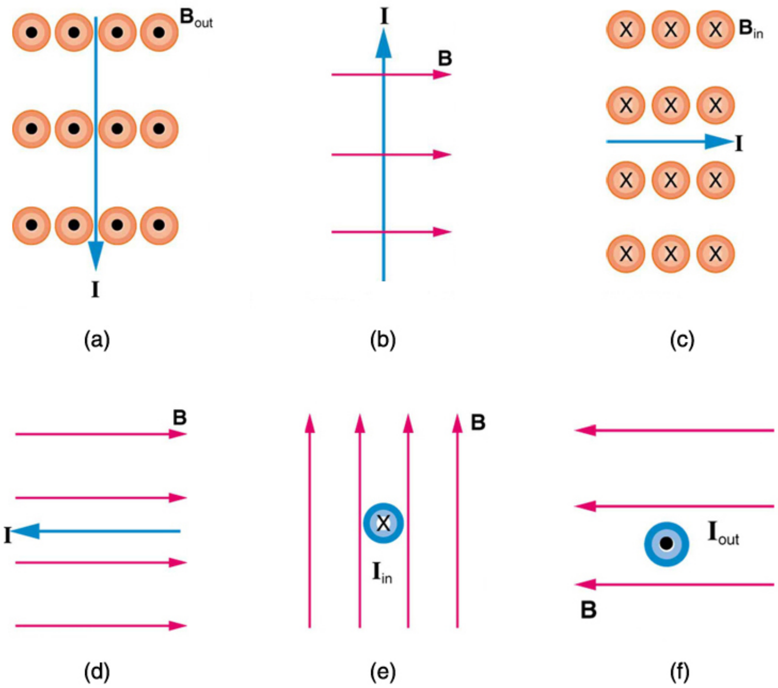
Which is more likely to interfere with compass readings, AC current in your refrigerator or DC current when you start your car? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the magnetic force on the current in each of the six cases in [link]?



Solution:

(a) west (left)

(b) into page

(c) north (up)

(d) no force

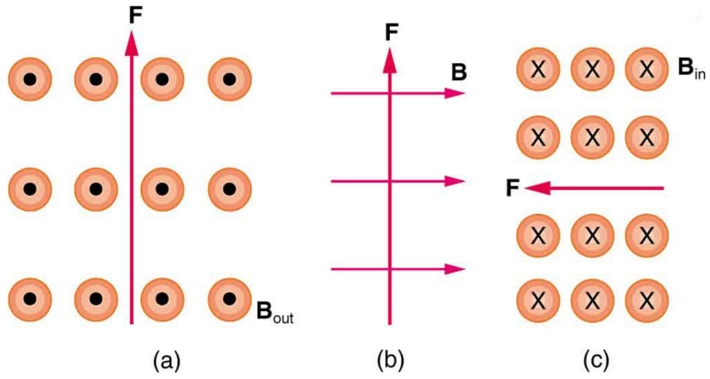
(e) east (right)

(f) south (down)

Exercise:

Problem:

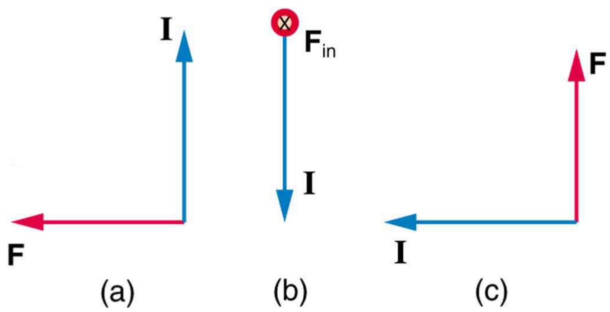
What is the direction of a current that experiences the magnetic force shown in each of the three cases in [link], assuming the current runs perpendicular to B?



Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the magnetic field that produces the magnetic force shown on the currents in each of the three cases in [link], assuming $\mathbf{B}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{I}$?



Solution:

(a) into page

(b) west (left)

(c) out of page

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the force per meter on a lightning bolt at the equator that carries 20,000 A perpendicular to the Earth's $3.00 \times 10^{-5}\text{-T}$ field? (b) What is the direction of the force if the current is straight up and the Earth's field direction is due north, parallel to the ground?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A DC power line for a light-rail system carries 1000 A at an angle of 30.0^{o} to the Earth's 5.00×10^{-5} -T field. What is the force on a 100-m section of this line? (b) Discuss practical concerns this presents, if any.

Solution:

(a) 2.50 N

(b) This is about half a pound of force per 100 m of wire, which is much less than the weight of the wire itself. Therefore, it does not cause any special concerns.

Exercise:

Problem:

What force is exerted on the water in an MHD drive utilizing a 25.0-cm-diameter tube, if 100-A current is passed across the tube that is perpendicular to a 2.00-T magnetic field? (The relatively small size of this force indicates the need for very large currents and magnetic fields to make practical MHD drives.)

Exercise:

Problem:

A wire carrying a 30.0-A current passes between the poles of a strong magnet that is perpendicular to its field and experiences a 2.16-N force on the 4.00 cm of wire in the field. What is the average field strength?

Solution:

1.80 T

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A 0.750-m-long section of cable carrying current to a car starter motor makes an angle of 60° with the Earth's 5.50×10^{-5} T field. What is the current when the wire experiences a force of 7.00×10^{-3} N? (b) If you run the wire between the poles of a strong horseshoe magnet, subjecting 5.00 cm of it to a 1.75-T field, what force is exerted on this segment of wire?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the angle between a wire carrying an 8.00-A current and the 1.20-T field it is in if 50.0 cm of the wire experiences a magnetic force of 2.40 N? (b) What is the force on the wire if it is rotated to make an angle of 90° with the field?

Solution:

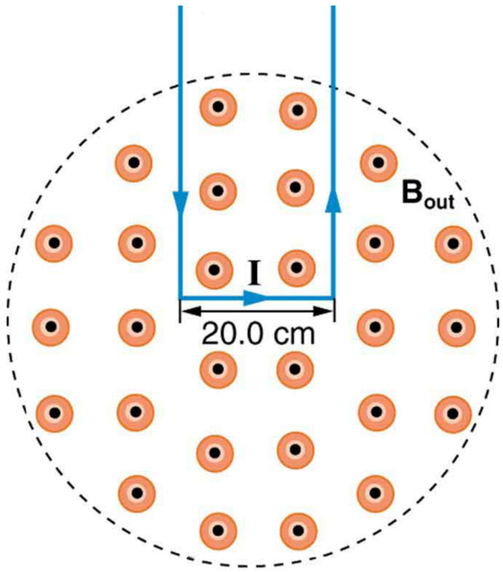
(a) 30°

(b) 4.80 N

Exercise:

Problem:

The force on the rectangular loop of wire in the magnetic field in [link] can be used to measure field strength. The field is uniform, and the plane of the loop is perpendicular to the field. (a) What is the direction of the magnetic force on the loop? Justify the claim that the forces on the sides of the loop are equal and opposite, independent of how much of the loop is in the field and do not affect the net force on the loop. (b) If a current of 5.00 A is used, what is the force per tesla on the 20.0-cm-wide loop?

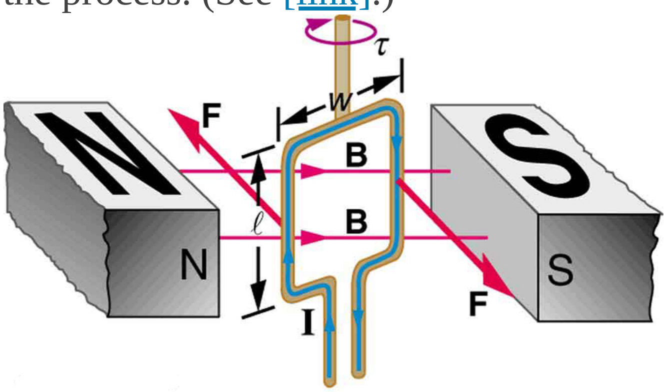


A rectangular loop of wire carrying a current is perpendicular to a magnetic field. The field is uniform in the region shown and is zero outside that region.

Torque on a Current Loop: Motors and Meters

- Describe how motors and meters work in terms of torque on a current loop.
- Calculate the torque on a current-carrying loop in a magnetic field.

Motors are the most common application of magnetic force on current-carrying wires. Motors have loops of wire in a magnetic field. When current is passed through the loops, the magnetic field exerts torque on the loops, which rotates a shaft. Electrical energy is converted to mechanical work in the process. (See [link].)



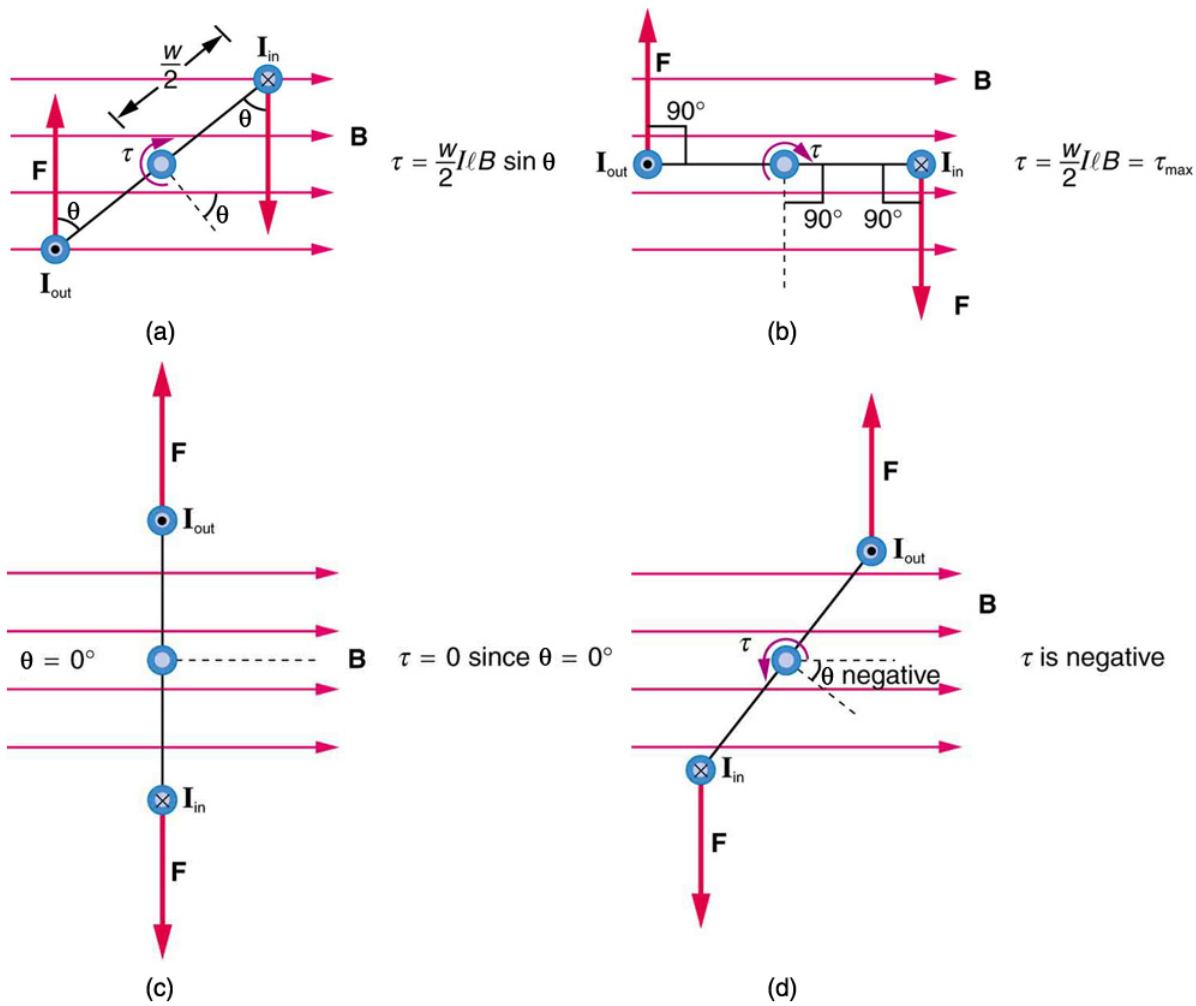
Torque on a current loop. A current-carrying loop of wire attached to a vertically rotating shaft feels magnetic forces that produce a clockwise torque as viewed from above.

Let us examine the force on each segment of the loop in [link] to find the torques produced about the axis of the vertical shaft. (This will lead to a useful equation for the torque on the loop.) We take the magnetic field to be uniform over the rectangular loop, which has width w and height l. First, we note that the forces on the top and bottom segments are vertical and, therefore, parallel to the shaft, producing no torque. Those vertical forces are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction, so that they also produce no net force on the loop. [link] shows views of the loop from above. Torque

is defined as $\tau = \mathrm{rF}\sin\theta$, where F is the force, r is the distance from the pivot that the force is applied, and θ is the angle between r and F. As seen in [link](a), right hand rule 1 gives the forces on the sides to be equal in magnitude and opposite in direction, so that the net force is again zero. However, each force produces a clockwise torque. Since $r = w/2$, the torque on each vertical segment is $(w/2)F\sin\theta$, and the two add to give a total torque.

Equation:

$$\tau = \frac{w}{2}F\sin\theta + \frac{w}{2}F\sin\theta = \mathrm{wF}\sin\theta$$



Top views of a current-carrying loop in a magnetic field. (a) The equation for torque is derived using this view. Note that the perpendicular to the loop makes an angle θ with the field that is the

same as the angle between $w/2$ and $\mathbf{F}$. (b) The maximum torque occurs when θ is a right angle and $\sin\theta = 1$. (c) Zero (minimum) torque occurs when θ is zero and $\sin\theta = 0$. (d) The torque reverses once the loop rotates past $\theta = 0$.

Now, each vertical segment has a length l that is perpendicular to B, so that the force on each is $F = \text{IlB}$. Entering F into the expression for torque yields

Equation:

$$\tau = \text{wIlB}\sin\theta.$$

If we have a multiple loop of N turns, we get N times the torque of one loop. Finally, note that the area of the loop is $A = \text{wl}$; the expression for the torque becomes

Equation:

$$\tau = \text{NIAB}\sin\theta.$$

This is the torque on a current-carrying loop in a uniform magnetic field. This equation can be shown to be valid for a loop of any shape. The loop carries a current I, has N turns, each of area A, and the perpendicular to the loop makes an angle θ with the field B. The net force on the loop is zero.

Example:

Calculating Torque on a Current-Carrying Loop in a Strong Magnetic Field

Find the maximum torque on a 100-turn square loop of a wire of 10.0 cm on a side that carries 15.0 A of current in a 2.00-T field.

Strategy

Torque on the loop can be found using $\tau = \text{NIAB}\sin\theta$. Maximum torque occurs when $\theta = 90^{\text{o}}$ and $\sin\theta = 1$.

Solution
For $\sin\theta = 1$, the maximum torque is
Equation:

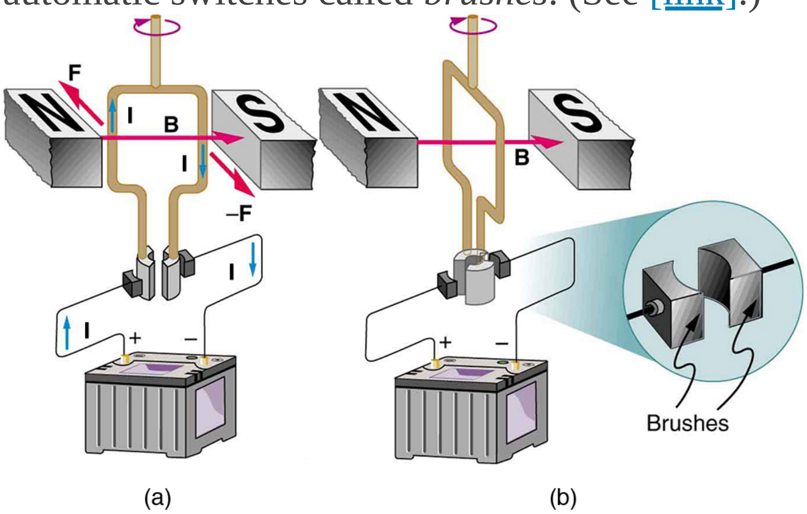
$$\tau_{\text{max}} = \text{NIAB}.$$

Entering known values yields
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_{\text{max}} &= (100)(15.0\text{ A})\left(0.100\text{ m}^2\right)(2.00\text{ T}) \\ &= 30.0\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}.\end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This torque is large enough to be useful in a motor.

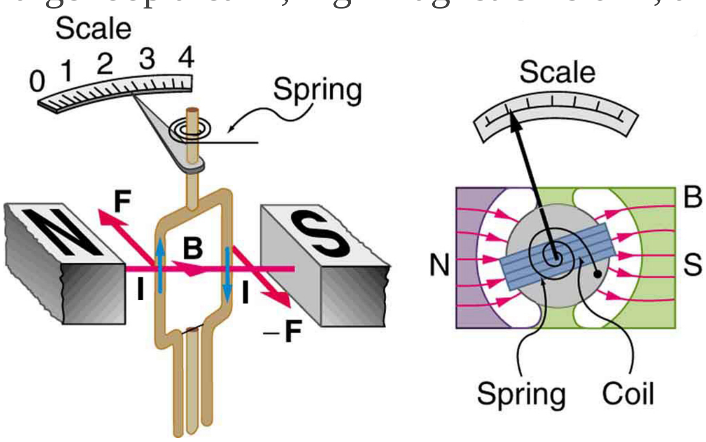
The torque found in the preceding example is the maximum. As the coil rotates, the torque decreases to zero at $\theta = 0$. The torque then *reverses* its direction once the coil rotates past $\theta = 0$. (See [link](d).) This means that, unless we do something, the coil will oscillate back and forth about equilibrium at $\theta = 0$. To get the coil to continue rotating in the same direction, we can reverse the current as it passes through $\theta = 0$ with automatic switches called *brushes*. (See [link].)



(a) As the angular momentum of the coil carries it through $\theta = 0$, the brushes reverse

the current to keep the torque clockwise. (b) The coil will rotate continuously in the clockwise direction, with the current reversing each half revolution to maintain the clockwise torque.

Meters, such as those in analog fuel gauges on a car, are another common application of magnetic torque on a current-carrying loop. [link] shows that a meter is very similar in construction to a motor. The meter in the figure has its magnets shaped to limit the effect of θ by making B perpendicular to the loop over a large angular range. Thus the torque is proportional to I and not θ. A linear spring exerts a counter-torque that balances the current-produced torque. This makes the needle deflection proportional to I. If an exact proportionality cannot be achieved, the gauge reading can be calibrated. To produce a galvanometer for use in analog voltmeters and ammeters that have a low resistance and respond to small currents, we use a large loop area A, high magnetic field B, and low-resistance coils.



Meters are very similar to motors but only rotate through a part of a revolution. The magnetic poles of this meter are shaped to keep the component of B perpendicular to the loop constant, so that the torque does not depend on θ and the deflection

against the return spring is proportional only to the current I.

Section Summary

- The torque τ on a current-carrying loop of any shape in a uniform magnetic field. is
  Equation:

  $$\tau = \text{NIAB}\sin\theta,$$

  where N is the number of turns, I is the current, A is the area of the loop, B is the magnetic field strength, and θ is the angle between the perpendicular to the loop and the magnetic field.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Draw a diagram and use RHR-1 to show that the forces on the top and bottom segments of the motor's current loop in [link] are vertical and produce no torque about the axis of rotation.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) By how many percent is the torque of a motor decreased if its permanent magnets lose 5.0% of their strength? (b) How many percent would the current need to be increased to return the torque to original values?

Solution:

(a) τ decreases by 5.00% if B decreases by 5.00%

(b) 5.26% increase

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the maximum torque on a 150-turn square loop of wire 18.0 cm on a side that carries a 50.0-A current in a 1.60-T field? (b) What is the torque when θ is 10.9º?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the current through a loop needed to create a maximum torque of $9.00 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$. The loop has 50 square turns that are 15.0 cm on a side and is in a uniform 0.800-T magnetic field.

Solution:

10.0 A

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the magnetic field strength needed on a 200-turn square loop 20.0 cm on a side to create a maximum torque of $300 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ if the loop is carrying 25.0 A.

Exercise:

Problem:

Since the equation for torque on a current-carrying loop is $\tau = \text{NIAB} \sin \theta$, the units of $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}$ must equal units of $\text{A} \cdot \text{m}^2 \text{ T}$. Verify this.

Solution:

$$A \cdot m^2 \cdot T = A \cdot m^2 \left(\frac{N}{A \cdot m}\right) = N \cdot m.$$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At what angle θ is the torque on a current loop 90.0% of maximum? (b) 50.0% of maximum? (c) 10.0% of maximum?

Exercise:

Problem:

A proton has a magnetic field due to its spin on its axis. The field is similar to that created by a circular current loop $0.650 \times 10^{-15}\ \mathrm{m}$ in radius with a current of $1.05 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{A}$ (no kidding). Find the maximum torque on a proton in a 2.50-T field. (This is a significant torque on a small particle.)

Solution:

$3.48 \times 10^{-26}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A 200-turn circular loop of radius 50.0 cm is vertical, with its axis on an east-west line. A current of 100 A circulates clockwise in the loop when viewed from the east. The Earth's field here is due north, parallel to the ground, with a strength of $3.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$. What are the direction and magnitude of the torque on the loop? (b) Does this device have any practical applications as a motor?

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat [link], but with the loop lying flat on the ground with its current circulating counterclockwise (when viewed from above) in a location where the Earth's field is north, but at an angle 45.0^{o} below the horizontal and with a strength of $6.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$.

Solution:

(a) $0.666\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}$ west

(b) This is not a very significant torque, so practical use would be limited. Also, the current would need to be alternated to make the loop rotate (otherwise it would oscillate).

Glossary

motor
: loop of wire in a magnetic field; when current is passed through the loops, the magnetic field exerts torque on the loops, which rotates a shaft; electrical energy is converted to mechanical work in the process

meter
: common application of magnetic torque on a current-carrying loop that is very similar in construction to a motor; by design, the torque is proportional to I and not θ, so the needle deflection is proportional to the current

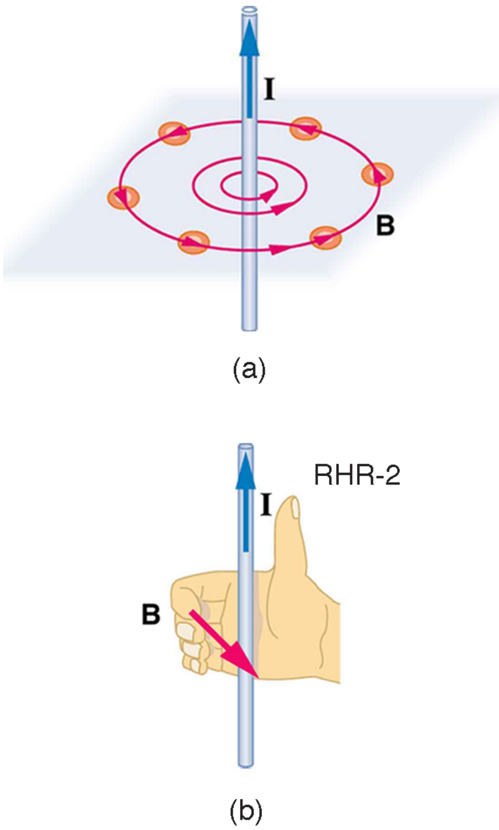
Magnetic Fields Produced by Currents: Ampere's Law

- Calculate current that produces a magnetic field.
- Use the right hand rule 2 to determine the direction of current or the direction of magnetic field loops.

How much current is needed to produce a significant magnetic field, perhaps as strong as the Earth's field? Surveyors will tell you that overhead electric power lines create magnetic fields that interfere with their compass readings. Indeed, when Oersted discovered in 1820 that a current in a wire affected a compass needle, he was not dealing with extremely large currents. How does the shape of wires carrying current affect the shape of the magnetic field created? We noted earlier that a current loop created a magnetic field similar to that of a bar magnet, but what about a straight wire or a toroid (doughnut)? How is the direction of a current-created field related to the direction of the current? Answers to these questions are explored in this section, together with a brief discussion of the law governing the fields created by currents.

Magnetic Field Created by a Long Straight Current-Carrying Wire: Right Hand Rule 2

Magnetic fields have both direction and magnitude. As noted before, one way to explore the direction of a magnetic field is with compasses, as shown for a long straight current-carrying wire in [link]. Hall probes can determine the magnitude of the field. The field around a long straight wire is found to be in circular loops. The **right hand rule 2** (RHR-2) emerges from this exploration and is valid for any current segment—*point the thumb in the direction of the current, and the fingers curl in the direction of the magnetic field loops* created by it.



(a) Compasses placed near a long straight current-carrying wire indicate that field lines form circular loops centered on the wire. (b) Right hand rule 2 states that, if the right hand thumb points in the direction of the current, the fingers curl in the direction of the field. This rule is consistent with the field mapped for the long straight wire and is valid for any current segment.

The **magnetic field strength (magnitude) produced by a long straight current-carrying wire** is found by experiment to be
Equation:

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}\ (\text{long straight wire}),$$

where I is the current, r is the shortest distance to the wire, and the constant $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T} \cdot \text{m/A}$ is the **permeability of free space**. (μ_0 is one of the basic constants in nature. We will see later that μ_0 is related to the speed of light.) Since the wire is very long, the magnitude of the field depends only on distance from the wire r, not on position along the wire.

Example:
Calculating Current that Produces a Magnetic Field
Find the current in a long straight wire that would produce a magnetic field twice the strength of the Earth's at a distance of 5.0 cm from the wire.
Strategy
The Earth's field is about $5.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$, and so here B due to the wire is taken to be $1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{T}$. The equation $B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}$ can be used to find I, since all other quantities are known.
Solution
Solving for I and entering known values gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \frac{2\pi r B}{\mu_0} = \frac{2\pi\left(5.0\times10^{-2}\ \text{m}\right)\left(1.0\times10^{-4}\ \text{T}\right)}{4\pi\times10^{-7}\ \text{T}\cdot\text{m/A}} \\ &= 25\ \text{A}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
So a moderately large current produces a significant magnetic field at a distance of 5.0 cm from a long straight wire. Note that the answer is stated to only two digits, since the Earth's field is specified to only two digits in this example.

Ampere’s Law and Others

The magnetic field of a long straight wire has more implications than you might at first suspect. *Each segment of current produces a magnetic field like that of a long straight wire, and the total field of any shape current is the vector sum of the fields due to each segment.* The formal statement of the direction and magnitude of the field due to each segment is called the **Biot-Savart law**. Integral calculus is needed to sum the field for an arbitrary shape current. This results in a more complete law, called **Ampere’s law**, which relates magnetic field and current in a general way. Ampere’s law in turn is a part of **Maxwell’s equations**, which give a complete theory of all electromagnetic phenomena. Considerations of how Maxwell’s equations appear to different observers led to the modern theory of relativity, and the realization that electric and magnetic fields are different manifestations of the same thing. Most of this is beyond the scope of this text in both mathematical level, requiring calculus, and in the amount of space that can be devoted to it. But for the interested student, and particularly for those who continue in physics, engineering, or similar pursuits, delving into these matters further will reveal descriptions of nature that are elegant as well as profound. In this text, we shall keep the general features in mind, such as RHR-2 and the rules for magnetic field lines listed in Magnetic Fields and Magnetic Field Lines, while concentrating on the fields created in certain important situations.

Note:
Making Connections: Relativity
Hearing all we do about Einstein, we sometimes get the impression that he invented relativity out of nothing. On the contrary, one of Einstein’s motivations was to solve difficulties in knowing how different observers see magnetic and electric fields.

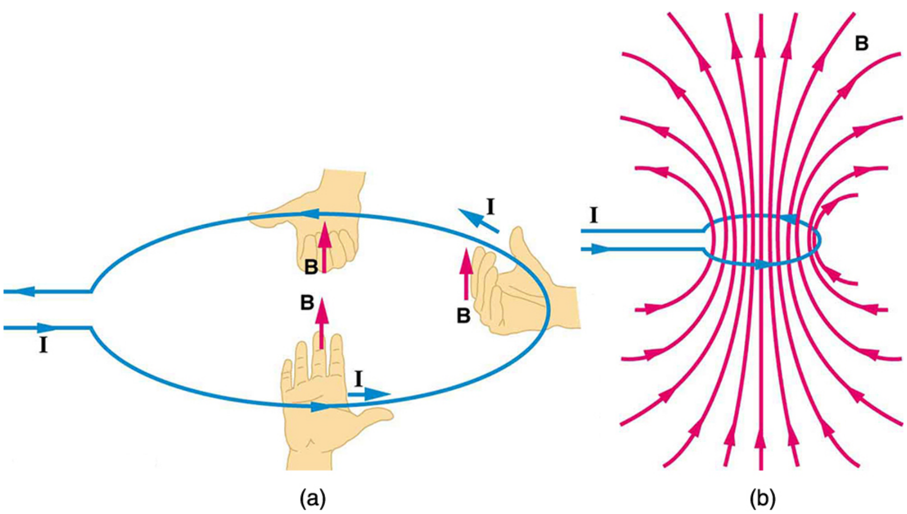
Magnetic Field Produced by a Current-Carrying Circular Loop

The magnetic field near a current-carrying loop of wire is shown in [link]. Both the direction and the magnitude of the magnetic field produced by a current-carrying loop are complex. RHR-2 can be used to give the direction of the field near the loop, but mapping with compasses and the rules about field lines given in Magnetic Fields and Magnetic Field Lines are needed for more detail. There is a simple formula for the **magnetic field strength at the center of a circular loop**. It is

Equation:

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2R} \text{ (at center of loop)},$$

where R is the radius of the loop. This equation is very similar to that for a straight wire, but it is valid *only* at the center of a circular loop of wire. The similarity of the equations does indicate that similar field strength can be obtained at the center of a loop. One way to get a larger field is to have N loops; then, the field is $B = N\mu_0 I/(2R)$. Note that the larger the loop, the smaller the field at its center, because the current is farther away.

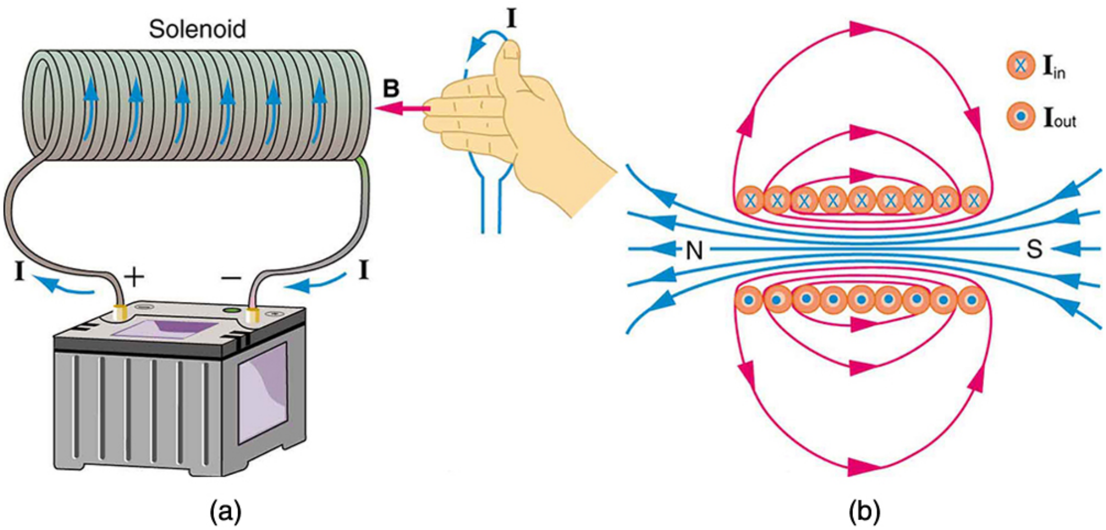


(a) RHR-2 gives the direction of the magnetic field inside and outside a current-carrying loop. (b) More detailed mapping with compasses or with a

Hall probe completes the picture. The field is similar to that of a bar magnet.

Magnetic Field Produced by a Current-Carrying Solenoid

A **solenoid** is a long coil of wire (with many turns or loops, as opposed to a flat loop). Because of its shape, the field inside a solenoid can be very uniform, and also very strong. The field just outside the coils is nearly zero. [link] shows how the field looks and how its direction is given by RHR-2.



(a) Because of its shape, the field inside a solenoid of length l is remarkably uniform in magnitude and direction, as indicated by the straight and uniformly spaced field lines. The field outside the coils is nearly zero. (b) This cutaway shows the magnetic field generated by the current in the solenoid.

The magnetic field inside of a current-carrying solenoid is very uniform in direction and magnitude. Only near the ends does it begin to weaken and change direction. The field outside has similar complexities to flat loops

and bar magnets, but the **magnetic field strength inside a solenoid** is simply

Equation:

$$B = \mu_0 \text{nI} \ \ (\text{inside a solenoid}),$$

where n is the number of loops per unit length of the solenoid $(n = N/l$, with N being the number of loops and l the length). Note that B is the field strength anywhere in the uniform region of the interior and not just at the center. Large uniform fields spread over a large volume are possible with solenoids, as [link] implies.

Example:

Calculating Field Strength inside a Solenoid

What is the field inside a 2.00-m-long solenoid that has 2000 loops and carries a 1600-A current?

Strategy

To find the field strength inside a solenoid, we use $B = \mu_0 \text{nI}$. First, we note the number of loops per unit length is

Equation:

$$n = \frac{N}{l} = \frac{2000}{2.00 \text{ m}} = 1000 \text{ m}^{-1} = 10 \text{ cm}^{-1}.$$

Solution

Substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} B & = & \mu_0 \text{nI} = \left(4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ T} \cdot \text{m/A}\right)\left(1000 \text{ m}^{-1}\right)(1600 \text{ A}) \\ & = & 2.01 \text{ T}. \end{array}$$

Discussion

This is a large field strength that could be established over a large-diameter solenoid, such as in medical uses of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). The very large current is an indication that the fields of this strength are not

easily achieved, however. Such a large current through 1000 loops squeezed into a meter’s length would produce significant heating. Higher currents can be achieved by using superconducting wires, although this is expensive. There is an upper limit to the current, since the superconducting state is disrupted by very large magnetic fields.

There are interesting variations of the flat coil and solenoid. For example, the toroidal coil used to confine the reactive particles in tokamaks is much like a solenoid bent into a circle. The field inside a toroid is very strong but circular. Charged particles travel in circles, following the field lines, and collide with one another, perhaps inducing fusion. But the charged particles do not cross field lines and escape the toroid. A whole range of coil shapes are used to produce all sorts of magnetic field shapes. Adding ferromagnetic materials produces greater field strengths and can have a significant effect on the shape of the field. Ferromagnetic materials tend to trap magnetic fields (the field lines bend into the ferromagnetic material, leaving weaker fields outside it) and are used as shields for devices that are adversely affected by magnetic fields, including the Earth’s magnetic field.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Generator
Generate electricity with a bar magnet! Discover the physics behind the phenomena by exploring magnets and how you can use them to make a bulb light.

Generator

Section Summary

- The strength of the magnetic field created by current in a long straight wire is given by
  Equation:

  $$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r} (\text{long straight wire}),$$

  where I is the current, r is the shortest distance to the wire, and the constant $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T} \cdot \text{m/A}$ is the permeability of free space.
- The direction of the magnetic field created by a long straight wire is given by right hand rule 2 (RHR-2): *Point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of current, and the fingers curl in the direction of the magnetic field loops* created by it.
- The magnetic field created by current following any path is the sum (or integral) of the fields due to segments along the path (magnitude and direction as for a straight wire), resulting in a general relationship between current and field known as Ampere's law.
- The magnetic field strength at the center of a circular loop is given by
  Equation:

  $$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2R} (\text{at center of loop}),$$

  where R is the radius of the loop. This equation becomes $B = \mu_0 \text{nI}/(2R)$ for a flat coil of N loops. RHR-2 gives the direction of the field about the loop. A long coil is called a solenoid.
- The magnetic field strength inside a solenoid is
  Equation:

  $$B = \mu_0 \text{nI} \ \ (\text{inside a solenoid}),$$

  where n is the number of loops per unit length of the solenoid. The field inside is very uniform in magnitude and direction.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Make a drawing and use RHR-2 to find the direction of the magnetic field of a current loop in a motor (such as in [link]). Then show that the direction of the torque on the loop is the same as produced by like poles repelling and unlike poles attracting.

Glossary

right hand rule 2 (RHR-2)
: a rule to determine the direction of the magnetic field induced by a current-carrying wire: Point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of current, and the fingers curl in the direction of the magnetic field loops

magnetic field strength (magnitude) produced by a long straight current-carrying wire
: defined as $B=\frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}$, where I is the current, r is the shortest distance to the wire, and μ_0 is the permeability of free space

permeability of free space
: the measure of the ability of a material, in this case free space, to support a magnetic field; the constant $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{T\cdot m/A}$

magnetic field strength at the center of a circular loop
: defined as $B=\frac{\mu_0 I}{2R}$ where R is the radius of the loop

solenoid
: a thin wire wound into a coil that produces a magnetic field when an electric current is passed through it

magnetic field strength inside a solenoid
: defined as $B=\mu_0 nI$ where n is the number of loops per unit length of the solenoid ($n=N/l$, with N being the number of loops and l the length)

Biot-Savart law

a physical law that describes the magnetic field generated by an electric current in terms of a specific equation

Ampere’s law

the physical law that states that the magnetic field around an electric current is proportional to the current; each segment of current produces a magnetic field like that of a long straight wire, and the total field of any shape current is the vector sum of the fields due to each segment

Maxwell’s equations

a set of four equations that describe electromagnetic phenomena

Magnetic Force between Two Parallel Conductors

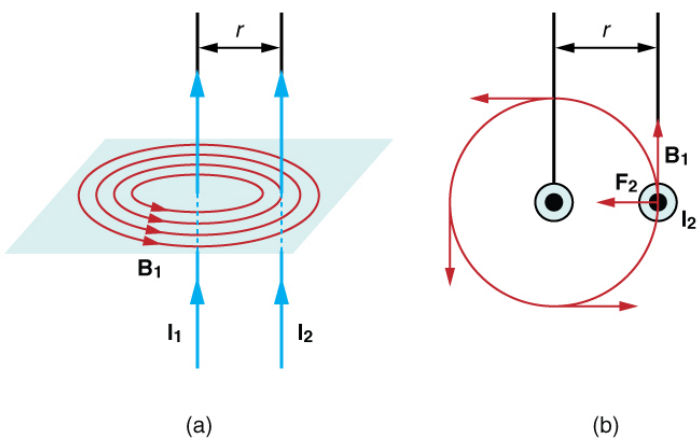
- Describe the effects of the magnetic force between two conductors.
- Calculate the force between two parallel conductors.

You might expect that there are significant forces between current-carrying wires, since ordinary currents produce significant magnetic fields and these fields exert significant forces on ordinary currents. But you might not expect that the force between wires is used to *define* the ampere. It might also surprise you to learn that this force has something to do with why large circuit breakers burn up when they attempt to interrupt large currents.

The force between two long straight and parallel conductors separated by a distance r can be found by applying what we have developed in preceding sections. [link] shows the wires, their currents, the fields they create, and the subsequent forces they exert on one another. Let us consider the field produced by wire 1 and the force it exerts on wire 2 (call the force F_2). The field due to I_1 at a distance r is given to be

Equation:

$$B_1 = \frac{\mu_0 I_1}{2\pi r}.$$



(a) The magnetic field produced by a long straight conductor is perpendicular to a parallel conductor, as indicated by RHR-2. (b) A view

from above of the two wires shown in (a), with one magnetic field line shown for each wire. RHR-1 shows that the force between the parallel conductors is attractive when the currents are in the same direction. A similar analysis shows that the force is repulsive between currents in opposite directions.

This field is uniform along wire 2 and perpendicular to it, and so the force F_2 it exerts on wire 2 is given by $F = \text{IlB} \sin \theta$ with $\sin \theta = 1$:

Equation:

$$F_2 = I_2 l B_1.$$

By Newton's third law, the forces on the wires are equal in magnitude, and so we just write F for the magnitude of F_2. (Note that $F_1 = -F_2$.) Since the wires are very long, it is convenient to think in terms of F/l, the force per unit length. Substituting the expression for B_1 into the last equation and rearranging terms gives

Equation:

$$\frac{F}{l} = \frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{2\pi r}.$$

F/l is the force per unit length between two parallel currents I_1 and I_2 separated by a distance r. The force is attractive if the currents are in the same direction and repulsive if they are in opposite directions.

This force is responsible for the *pinch effect* in electric arcs and plasmas. The force exists whether the currents are in wires or not. In an electric arc, where currents are moving parallel to one another, there is an attraction that squeezes currents into a smaller tube. In large circuit breakers, like those

used in neighborhood power distribution systems, the pinch effect can concentrate an arc between plates of a switch trying to break a large current, burn holes, and even ignite the equipment. Another example of the pinch effect is found in the solar plasma, where jets of ionized material, such as solar flares, are shaped by magnetic forces.

The *operational definition of the ampere* is based on the force between current-carrying wires. Note that for parallel wires separated by 1 meter with each carrying 1 ampere, the force per meter is

Equation:

$$\frac{F}{l} = \frac{\left(4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{T \cdot m/A}\right)(1\ \mathrm{A})^2}{(2\pi)(1\ \mathrm{m})} = 2 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{N/m}.$$

Since μ_0 is exactly $4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{T \cdot m/A}$ by definition, and because $1\ \mathrm{T} = 1\ \mathrm{N/(A \cdot m)}$, the force per meter is exactly $2 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{N/m}$. This is the basis of the operational definition of the ampere.

Note:

The Ampere

The official definition of the ampere is:

One ampere of current through each of two parallel conductors of infinite length, separated by one meter in empty space free of other magnetic fields, causes a force of exactly $2 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{N/m}$ on each conductor.

Infinite-length straight wires are impractical and so, in practice, a current balance is constructed with coils of wire separated by a few centimeters. Force is measured to determine current. This also provides us with a method for measuring the coulomb. We measure the charge that flows for a current of one ampere in one second. That is, $1\ \mathrm{C} = 1\ \mathrm{A \cdot s}$. For both the ampere and the coulomb, the method of measuring force between conductors is the most accurate in practice.

Section Summary

- The force between two parallel currents I_1 and I_2, separated by a distance r, has a magnitude per unit length given by
  Equation:
  $$\frac{F}{l} = \frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{2\pi r}.$$
- The force is attractive if the currents are in the same direction, repulsive if they are in opposite directions.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

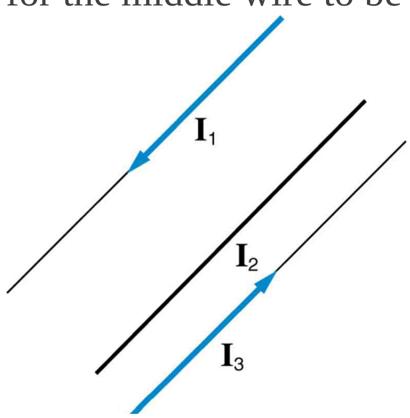
Problem:

Is the force attractive or repulsive between the hot and neutral lines hung from power poles? Why?

Exercise:

Problem:

If you have three parallel wires in the same plane, as in [link], with currents in the outer two running in opposite directions, is it possible for the middle wire to be repelled by both? Attracted by both? Explain.



Three parallel

coplanar wires with currents in the outer two in opposite directions.

Exercise:

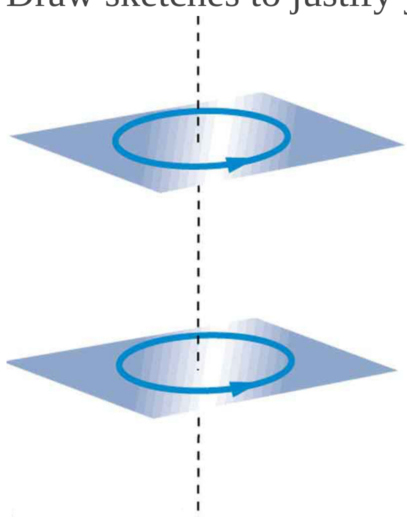
Problem:

Suppose two long straight wires run perpendicular to one another without touching. Does one exert a net force on the other? If so, what is its direction? Does one exert a net torque on the other? If so, what is its direction? Justify your responses by using the right hand rules.

Exercise:

Problem:

Use the right hand rules to show that the force between the two loops in [link] is attractive if the currents are in the same direction and repulsive if they are in opposite directions. Is this consistent with like poles of the loops repelling and unlike poles of the loops attracting? Draw sketches to justify your answers.



Two loops of wire carrying currents

can exert forces and torques on one another.

Exercise:

Problem:

If one of the loops in [link] is tilted slightly relative to the other and their currents are in the same direction, what are the directions of the torques they exert on each other? Does this imply that the poles of the bar magnet-like fields they create will line up with each other if the loops are allowed to rotate?

Exercise:

Problem:

Electric field lines can be shielded by the Faraday cage effect. Can we have magnetic shielding? Can we have gravitational shielding?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The hot and neutral wires supplying DC power to a light-rail commuter train carry 800 A and are separated by 75.0 cm. What is the magnitude and direction of the force between 50.0 m of these wires? (b) Discuss the practical consequences of this force, if any.

Solution:

(a) 8.53 N, repulsive

(b) This force is repulsive and therefore there is never a risk that the two wires will touch and short circuit.

Exercise:

Problem:

The force per meter between the two wires of a jumper cable being used to start a stalled car is 0.225 N/m. (a) What is the current in the wires, given they are separated by 2.00 cm? (b) Is the force attractive or repulsive?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 2.50-m segment of wire supplying current to the motor of a submerged submarine carries 1000 A and feels a 4.00-N repulsive force from a parallel wire 5.00 cm away. What is the direction and magnitude of the current in the other wire?

Solution:

400 A in the opposite direction

Exercise:

Problem:

The wire carrying 400 A to the motor of a commuter train feels an attractive force of $4.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{N/m}$ due to a parallel wire carrying 5.00 A to a headlight. (a) How far apart are the wires? (b) Are the currents in the same direction?

Exercise:

Problem:

An AC appliance cord has its hot and neutral wires separated by 3.00 mm and carries a 5.00-A current. (a) What is the average force per meter between the wires in the cord? (b) What is the maximum force per meter between the wires? (c) Are the forces attractive or repulsive? (d) Do appliance cords need any special design features to compensate for these forces?

Solution:

(a) $1.67 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{N/m}$

(b) $3.33 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{N/m}$

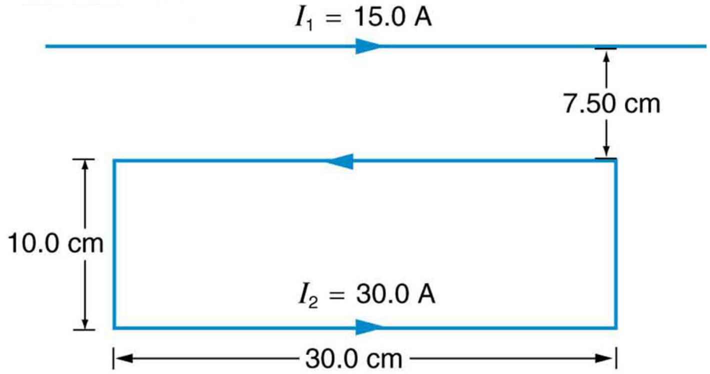
(c) Repulsive

(d) No, these are very small forces

Exercise:

Problem:

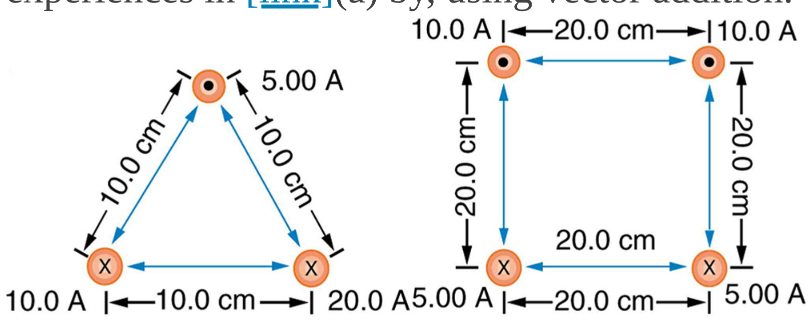
[link] shows a long straight wire near a rectangular current loop. What is the direction and magnitude of the total force on the loop?



Exercise:

Problem:

Find the direction and magnitude of the force that each wire experiences in [link](a) by, using vector addition.



Solution:

(a) Top wire: $2.65 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{N/m}$ s, 10.9^{o} to left of up

(b) Lower left wire: $3.61 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{N/m}$, 13.9^{o} down from right

(c) Lower right wire: $3.46 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{N/m}$, 30.0^{o} down from left

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the direction and magnitude of the force that each wire experiences in [link](b), using vector addition.

More Applications of Magnetism

- Describe some applications of magnetism.

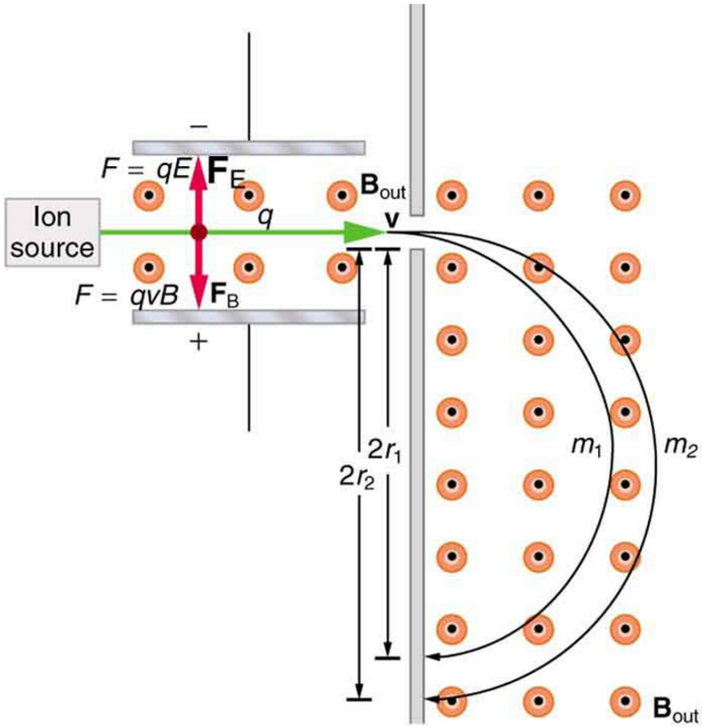
Mass Spectrometry

The curved paths followed by charged particles in magnetic fields can be put to use. A charged particle moving perpendicular to a magnetic field travels in a circular path having a radius r.

Equation:

$$r=\frac{\text{mv}}{\text{qB}}$$

It was noted that this relationship could be used to measure the mass of charged particles such as ions. A mass spectrometer is a device that measures such masses. Most mass spectrometers use magnetic fields for this purpose, although some of them have extremely sophisticated designs. Since there are five variables in the relationship, there are many possibilities. However, if v, q, and B can be fixed, then the radius of the path r is simply proportional to the mass m of the charged particle. Let us examine one such mass spectrometer that has a relatively simple design. (See [link].) The process begins with an ion source, a device like an electron gun. The ion source gives ions their charge, accelerates them to some velocity v, and directs a beam of them into the next stage of the spectrometer. This next region is a *velocity selector* that only allows particles with a particular value of v to get through.



This mass spectrometer uses a velocity selector to fix v so that the radius of the path is proportional to mass.

The velocity selector has both an electric field and a magnetic field, perpendicular to one another, producing forces in opposite directions on the ions. Only those ions for which the forces balance travel in a straight line into the next region. If the forces balance, then the electric force $F = \text{qE}$ equals the magnetic force $F = \text{qvB}$, so that $\text{qE} = \text{qvB}$. Noting that q cancels, we see that

Equation:

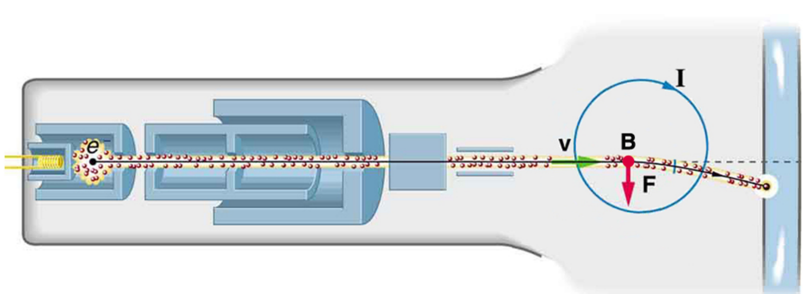
$$v = \frac{E}{B}$$

is the velocity particles must have to make it through the velocity selector, and further, that v can be selected by varying E and B. In the final region, there is only a uniform magnetic field, and so the charged particles move in circular arcs with radii proportional to particle mass. The paths also depend on charge q, but since q is in multiples of electron charges, it is easy to determine and to discriminate between ions in different charge states.

Mass spectrometry today is used extensively in chemistry and biology laboratories to identify chemical and biological substances according to their mass-to-charge ratios. In medicine, mass spectrometers are used to measure the concentration of isotopes used as tracers. Usually, biological molecules such as proteins are very large, so they are broken down into smaller fragments before analyzing. Recently, large virus particles have been analyzed as a whole on mass spectrometers. Sometimes a gas chromatograph or high-performance liquid chromatograph provides an initial separation of the large molecules, which are then input into the mass spectrometer.

Cathode Ray Tubes—CRTs—and the Like

What do non-flat-screen TVs, old computer monitors, x-ray machines, and the 2-mile-long Stanford Linear Accelerator have in common? All of them accelerate electrons, making them different versions of the electron gun. Many of these devices use magnetic fields to steer the accelerated electrons. [link] shows the construction of the type of cathode ray tube (CRT) found in some TVs, oscilloscopes, and old computer monitors. Two pairs of coils are used to steer the electrons, one vertically and the other horizontally, to their desired destination.



The cathode ray tube (CRT) is so named because rays of electrons originate at the cathode in the electron gun. Magnetic coils are used to steer the beam in many CRTs. In this case, the beam is moved down. Another pair of horizontal coils would steer the beam horizontally.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is one of the most useful and rapidly growing medical imaging tools. It non-invasively produces two-dimensional and three-dimensional images of the body that provide important medical information with none of the hazards of x-rays. MRI is based on an effect called **nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR)** in which an externally applied magnetic field interacts with the nuclei of certain atoms, particularly those of hydrogen (protons). These nuclei possess their own small magnetic fields, similar to those of electrons and the current loops discussed earlier in this chapter.

When placed in an external magnetic field, such nuclei experience a torque that pushes or aligns the nuclei into one of two new energy states—depending on the orientation of its spin (analogous to the N pole and S pole in a bar magnet). Transitions from the lower to higher energy state can be achieved by using an external radio frequency signal to “flip” the orientation of the small magnets. (This is actually a quantum mechanical process. The direction of the nuclear magnetic field is quantized as is energy in the radio waves. We will return to these topics in later chapters.) The specific frequency of the radio waves that are absorbed and reemitted depends sensitively on the type of nucleus, the chemical environment, and the external magnetic field strength. Therefore, this is a *resonance* phenomenon in which *nuclei* in a *magnetic* field act like resonators (analogous to those discussed in the treatment of sound in Oscillatory

Motion and Waves) that absorb and reemit only certain frequencies. Hence, the phenomenon is named *nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR).*

NMR has been used for more than 50 years as an analytical tool. It was formulated in 1946 by F. Bloch and E. Purcell, with the 1952 Nobel Prize in Physics going to them for their work. Over the past two decades, NMR has been developed to produce detailed images in a process now called magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), a name coined to avoid the use of the word “nuclear” and the concomitant implication that nuclear radiation is involved. (It is not.) The 2003 Nobel Prize in Medicine went to P. Lauterbur and P. Mansfield for their work with MRI applications.

The largest part of the MRI unit is a superconducting magnet that creates a magnetic field, typically between 1 and 2 T in strength, over a relatively large volume. MRI images can be both highly detailed and informative about structures and organ functions. It is helpful that normal and non-normal tissues respond differently for slight changes in the magnetic field. In most medical images, the protons that are hydrogen nuclei are imaged. (About 2/3 of the atoms in the body are hydrogen.) Their location and density give a variety of medically useful information, such as organ function, the condition of tissue (as in the brain), and the shape of structures, such as vertebral disks and knee-joint surfaces. MRI can also be used to follow the movement of certain ions across membranes, yielding information on active transport, osmosis, dialysis, and other phenomena. With excellent spatial resolution, MRI can provide information about tumors, strokes, shoulder injuries, infections, etc.

An image requires position information as well as the density of a nuclear type (usually protons). By varying the magnetic field slightly over the volume to be imaged, the resonant frequency of the protons is made to vary with position. Broadcast radio frequencies are swept over an appropriate range and nuclei absorb and reemit them only if the nuclei are in a magnetic field with the correct strength. The imaging receiver gathers information through the body almost point by point, building up a tissue map. The reception of reemitted radio waves as a function of frequency thus gives position information. These “slices” or cross sections through the body are only several mm thick. The intensity of the reemitted radio waves is

proportional to the concentration of the nuclear type being flipped, as well as information on the chemical environment in that area of the body. Various techniques are available for enhancing contrast in images and for obtaining more information. Scans called T1, T2, or proton density scans rely on different relaxation mechanisms of nuclei. Relaxation refers to the time it takes for the protons to return to equilibrium after the external field is turned off. This time depends upon tissue type and status (such as inflammation).

While MRI images are superior to x rays for certain types of tissue and have none of the hazards of x rays, they do not completely supplant x-ray images. MRI is less effective than x rays for detecting breaks in bone, for example, and in imaging breast tissue, so the two diagnostic tools complement each other. MRI images are also expensive compared to simple x-ray images and tend to be used most often where they supply information not readily obtained from x rays. Another disadvantage of MRI is that the patient is totally enclosed with detectors close to the body for about 30 minutes or more, leading to claustrophobia. It is also difficult for the obese patient to be in the magnet tunnel. New “open-MRI” machines are now available in which the magnet does not completely surround the patient.

Over the last decade, the development of much faster scans, called “functional MRI” (fMRI), has allowed us to map the functioning of various regions in the brain responsible for thought and motor control. This technique measures the change in blood flow for activities (thought, experiences, action) in the brain. The nerve cells increase their consumption of oxygen when active. Blood hemoglobin releases oxygen to active nerve cells and has somewhat different magnetic properties when oxygenated than when deoxygenated. With MRI, we can measure this and detect a blood oxygen-dependent signal. Most of the brain scans today use fMRI.

Other Medical Uses of Magnetic Fields

Currents in nerve cells and the heart create magnetic fields like any other currents. These can be measured but with some difficulty since their strengths are about 10^{-6} to 10^{-8} *less* than the Earth’s magnetic field. Recording of the heart’s magnetic field as it beats is called a

magnetocardiogram (MCG), while measurements of the brain's magnetic field is called a **magnetoencephalogram (MEG)**. Both give information that differs from that obtained by measuring the electric fields of these organs (ECGs and EEGs), but they are not yet of sufficient importance to make these difficult measurements common.

In both of these techniques, the sensors do not touch the body. MCG can be used in fetal studies, and is probably more sensitive than echocardiography. MCG also looks at the heart's electrical activity whose voltage output is too small to be recorded by surface electrodes as in EKG. It has the potential of being a rapid scan for early diagnosis of cardiac ischemia (obstruction of blood flow to the heart) or problems with the fetus.

MEG can be used to identify abnormal electrical discharges in the brain that produce weak magnetic signals. Therefore, it looks at brain activity, not just brain structure. It has been used for studies of Alzheimer's disease and epilepsy. Advances in instrumentation to measure very small magnetic fields have allowed these two techniques to be used more in recent years. What is used is a sensor called a SQUID, for superconducting quantum interference device. This operates at liquid helium temperatures and can measure magnetic fields thousands of times smaller than the Earth's.

Finally, there is a burgeoning market for magnetic cures in which magnets are applied in a variety of ways to the body, from magnetic bracelets to magnetic mattresses. The best that can be said for such practices is that they are apparently harmless, unless the magnets get close to the patient's computer or magnetic storage disks. Claims are made for a broad spectrum of benefits from cleansing the blood to giving the patient more energy, but clinical studies have not verified these claims, nor is there an identifiable mechanism by which such benefits might occur.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Magnet and Compass
Ever wonder how a compass worked to point you to the Arctic? Explore the interactions between a compass and bar magnet, and then add the Earth and find the surprising answer! Vary the magnet's strength, and see how

things change both inside and outside. Use the field meter to measure how the magnetic field changes.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/5ca3e2cc-ae74-11e5-b6d3-f3c228f04b5c/magnet-and-compass/#sim-bar-magnet

Section Summary

- Crossed (perpendicular) electric and magnetic fields act as a velocity filter, giving equal and opposite forces on any charge with velocity perpendicular to the fields and of magnitude
  Equation:

$$v = \frac{E}{B}.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Measurements of the weak and fluctuating magnetic fields associated with brain activity are called magnetoencephalograms (MEGs). Do the brain's magnetic fields imply coordinated or uncoordinated nerve impulses? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss the possibility that a Hall voltage would be generated on the moving heart of a patient during MRI imaging. Also discuss the same effect on the wires of a pacemaker. (The fact that patients with pacemakers are not given MRIs is significant.)

Exercise:

Problem:

A patient in an MRI unit turns his head quickly to one side and experiences momentary dizziness and a strange taste in his mouth. Discuss the possible causes.

Exercise:

Problem:

You are told that in a certain region there is either a uniform electric or magnetic field. What measurement or observation could you make to determine the type? (Ignore the Earth's magnetic field.)

Exercise:

Problem:

An example of magnetohydrodynamics (MHD) comes from the flow of a river (salty water). This fluid interacts with the Earth's magnetic field to produce a potential difference between the two river banks. How would you go about calculating the potential difference?

Exercise:

Problem:

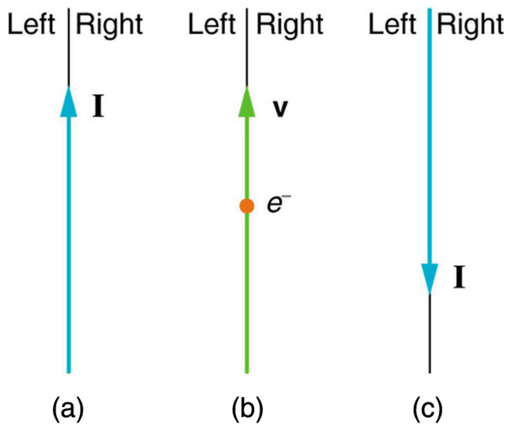
Draw gravitational field lines between 2 masses, electric field lines between a positive and a negative charge, electric field lines between 2 positive charges and magnetic field lines around a magnet. Qualitatively describe the differences between the fields and the entities responsible for the field lines.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Indicate whether the magnetic field created in each of the three situations shown in [link] is into or out of the page on the left and right of the current.



Solution:

(a) right-into page, left-out of page

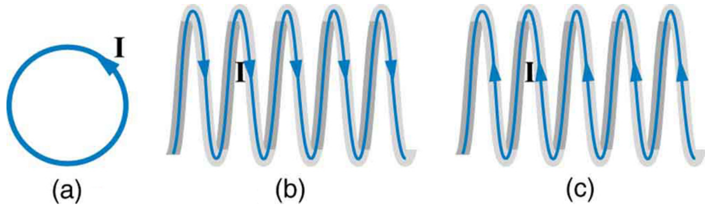
(b) right-out of page, left-into page

(c) right-out of page, left-into page

Exercise:

Problem:

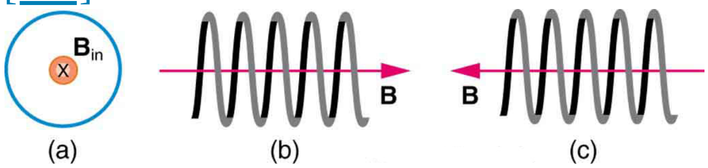
What are the directions of the fields in the center of the loop and coils shown in [link]?



Exercise:

Problem:

What are the directions of the currents in the loop and coils shown in [link]?



Solution:

(a) clockwise

(b) clockwise as seen from the left

(c) clockwise as seen from the right

Exercise:

Problem:

To see why an MRI utilizes iron to increase the magnetic field created by a coil, calculate the current needed in a 400-loop-per-meter circular coil 0.660 m in radius to create a 1.20-T field (typical of an MRI instrument) at its center with no iron present. The magnetic field of a proton is approximately like that of a circular current loop 0.650×10^{-15} m in radius carrying 1.05×10^{4} A. What is the field at the center of such a loop?

Solution:

1.01×10^{13} T

Exercise:

Problem:

Inside a motor, 30.0 A passes through a 250-turn circular loop that is 10.0 cm in radius. What is the magnetic field strength created at its center?

Exercise:

Problem:

Nonnuclear submarines use batteries for power when submerged. (a) Find the magnetic field 50.0 cm from a straight wire carrying 1200 A from the batteries to the drive mechanism of a submarine. (b) What is the field if the wires to and from the drive mechanism are side by side? (c) Discuss the effects this could have for a compass on the submarine that is not shielded.

Solution:

(a) $4.80 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{T}$

(b) Zero

(c) If the wires are not paired, the field is about 10 times stronger than Earth's magnetic field and so could severely disrupt the use of a compass.

Exercise:

Problem:

How strong is the magnetic field inside a solenoid with 10,000 turns per meter that carries 20.0 A?

Exercise:

Problem:

What current is needed in the solenoid described in [link] to produce a magnetic field 10^4 times the Earth's magnetic field of $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$?

Solution:

39.8 A

Exercise:

Problem:

How far from the starter cable of a car, carrying 150 A, must you be to experience a field less than the Earth's $(5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T})$? Assume a long straight wire carries the current. (In practice, the body of your car shields the dashboard compass.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Measurements affect the system being measured, such as the current loop in [link]. (a) Estimate the field the loop creates by calculating the field at the center of a circular loop 20.0 cm in diameter carrying 5.00 A. (b) What is the smallest field strength this loop can be used to measure, if its field must alter the measured field by less than 0.0100%?

Solution:

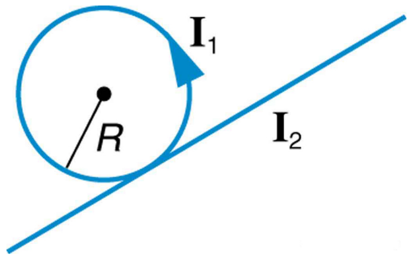
(a) $3.14 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$

(b) 0.314 T

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows a long straight wire just touching a loop carrying a current I_1. Both lie in the same plane. (a) What direction must the current I_2 in the straight wire have to create a field at the center of the loop in the direction opposite to that created by the loop? (b) What is the ratio of I_1/I_2 that gives zero field strength at the center of the loop? (c) What is the direction of the field directly above the loop under this circumstance?



Exercise:

Problem:

Find the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at the point equidistant from the wires in [link](a), using the rules of vector addition to sum the contributions from each wire.

Solution:

7.55×10^{-5} T, 23.4º

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at the point equidistant from the wires in [link](b), using the rules of vector addition to sum the contributions from each wire.

Exercise:

Problem:

What current is needed in the top wire in [link](a) to produce a field of zero at the point equidistant from the wires, if the currents in the bottom two wires are both 10.0 A into the page?

Solution:

10.0 A

Exercise:

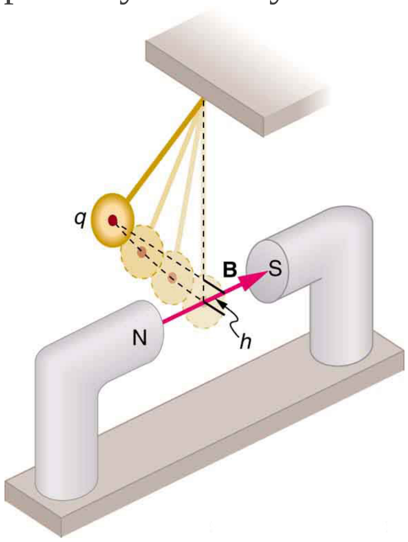
Problem:

Calculate the size of the magnetic field 20 m below a high voltage power line. The line carries 450 MW at a voltage of 300,000 V.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) A pendulum is set up so that its bob (a thin copper disk) swings between the poles of a permanent magnet as shown in [link]. What is the magnitude and direction of the magnetic force on the bob at the lowest point in its path, if it has a positive $0.250\ \mu\text{C}$ charge and is released from a height of 30.0 cm above its lowest point? The magnetic field strength is 1.50 T. (b) What is the acceleration of the bob at the bottom of its swing if its mass is 30.0 grams and it is hung from a flexible string? Be certain to include a free-body diagram as part of your analysis.



Solution:

(a) $9.09 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{N}$ upward

(b) $3.03 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m/s}^2$

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) What voltage will accelerate electrons to a speed of $6.00 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m/s}$? (b) Find the radius of curvature of the path of a *proton* accelerated through this potential in a 0.500-T field and compare this with the radius of curvature of an electron accelerated through the same potential.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Find the radius of curvature of the path of a 25.0-MeV proton moving perpendicularly to the 1.20-T field of a cyclotron.

Solution:

60.2 cm

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

To construct a nonmechanical water meter, a 0.500-T magnetic field is placed across the supply water pipe to a home and the Hall voltage is recorded. (a) Find the flow rate in liters per second through a 3.00-cm-diameter pipe if the Hall voltage is 60.0 mV. (b) What would the Hall voltage be for the same flow rate through a 10.0-cm-diameter pipe with the same field applied?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) Using the values given for an MHD drive in [link], and assuming the force is uniformly applied to the fluid, calculate the pressure created in N/m^2. (b) Is this a significant fraction of an atmosphere?

Solution:

(a) $1.02 \times 10^3 \text{ N/m}^2$

(b) Not a significant fraction of an atmosphere

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) Calculate the maximum torque on a 50-turn, 1.50 cm radius circular current loop carrying 50 μA in a 0.500-T field. (b) If this coil is to be used in a galvanometer that reads 50 μA full scale, what force constant spring must be used, if it is attached 1.00 cm from the axis of rotation and is stretched by the 60^o arc moved?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A current balance used to define the ampere is designed so that the current through it is constant, as is the distance between wires. Even so, if the wires change length with temperature, the force between them will change. What percent change in force per degree will occur if the wires are copper?

Solution:

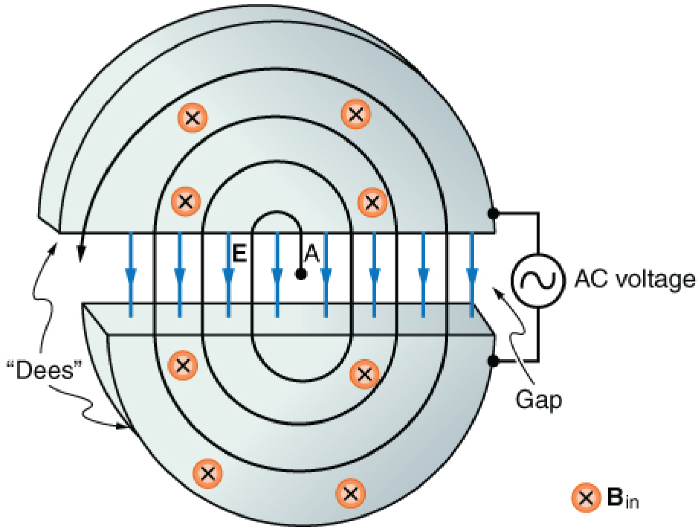
$17.0 \times 10^{-4}\%/^\text{o}\text{C}$

Exercise:

Problem:**Integrated Concepts**

(a) Show that the period of the circular orbit of a charged particle moving perpendicularly to a uniform magnetic field is $T = 2\pi m/(\text{qB})$. (b) What is the frequency f? (c) What is the angular

velocity ω? Note that these results are independent of the velocity and radius of the orbit and, hence, of the energy of the particle. ([link].)



Cyclotrons accelerate charged particles orbiting in a magnetic field by placing an AC voltage on the metal Dees, between which the particles move, so that energy is added twice each orbit. The frequency is constant, since it is independent of the particle energy—the radius of the orbit simply increases with energy until the particles approach the edge and are extracted for various experiments and applications.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A cyclotron accelerates charged particles as shown in [link]. Using the results of the previous problem, calculate the frequency of the accelerating voltage needed for a proton in a 1.20-T field.

Solution:

18.3 MHz

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) A 0.140-kg baseball, pitched at 40.0 m/s horizontally and perpendicular to the Earth's horizontal $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ field, has a 100-nC charge on it. What distance is it deflected from its path by the magnetic force, after traveling 30.0 m horizontally? (b) Would you suggest this as a secret technique for a pitcher to throw curve balls?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) What is the direction of the force on a wire carrying a current due east in a location where the Earth's field is due north? Both are parallel to the ground. (b) Calculate the force per meter if the wire carries 20.0 A and the field strength is $3.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$. (c) What diameter copper wire would have its weight supported by this force? (d) Calculate the resistance per meter and the voltage per meter needed.

Solution:

(a) Straight up

(b) $6.00 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{N/m}$

(c) 94.1 μm

(d)2.47 Ω/m, 49.4 V/m

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

One long straight wire is to be held directly above another by repulsion between their currents. The lower wire carries 100 A and the wire 7.50 cm above it is 10-gauge (2.588 mm diameter) copper wire. (a) What current must flow in the upper wire, neglecting the Earth's field? (b) What is the smallest current if the Earth's $3.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ field is parallel to the ground and is not neglected? (c) Is the supported wire in a stable or unstable equilibrium if displaced vertically? If displaced horizontally?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Find the charge on a baseball, thrown at 35.0 m/s perpendicular to the Earth's $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ field, that experiences a 1.00-N magnetic force. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption or premise is responsible?

Solution:

(a) 571 C

(b) Impossible to have such a large separated charge on such a small object.

(c) The 1.00-N force is much too great to be realistic in the Earth's field.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A charged particle having mass $6.64 \times 10^{-27}\ \mathrm{kg}$ (that of a helium atom) moving at $8.70 \times 10^{5}\ \mathrm{m/s}$ perpendicular to a 1.50-T magnetic field travels in a circular path of radius 16.0 mm. (a) What is the charge of the particle? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Exercise:

Problem:**Unreasonable Results**

An inventor wants to generate 120-V power by moving a 1.00-m-long wire perpendicular to the Earth’s $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ field. (a) Find the speed with which the wire must move. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption is responsible?

Solution:

(a) $2.40 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{m/s}$

(b) The speed is too high to be practical $\leq$ 1% speed of light

(c) The assumption that you could reasonably generate such a voltage with a single wire in the Earth’s field is unreasonable

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

Frustrated by the small Hall voltage obtained in blood flow measurements, a medical physicist decides to increase the applied magnetic field strength to get a 0.500-V output for blood moving at 30.0 cm/s in a 1.50-cm-diameter vessel. (a) What magnetic field strength is needed? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which premise is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem:**Unreasonable Results**

A surveyor 100 m from a long straight 200-kV DC power line suspects that its magnetic field may equal that of the Earth and affect compass readings. (a) Calculate the current in the wire needed to create a $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ field at this distance. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption or premise is responsible?

Solution:

(a) 25.0 kA

(b) This current is unreasonably high. It implies a total power delivery in the line of 50.0x10^9 W, which is much too high for standard transmission lines.

(c)100 meters is a long distance to obtain the required field strength. Also coaxial cables are used for transmission lines so that there is virtually no field for DC power lines, because of cancellation from opposing currents. The surveyor's concerns are not a problem for his magnetic field measurements.

Exercise:

Problem:Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a mass separator that applies a magnetic field perpendicular to the velocity of ions and separates the ions based on the radius of curvature of their paths in the field. Construct a problem in which you calculate the magnetic field strength needed to separate two ions that differ in mass, but not charge, and have the same initial velocity. Among the things to consider are the types of ions, the velocities they can be given before entering the magnetic field, and a reasonable value for the radius of curvature of the paths they follow. In addition, calculate the separation distance between the ions at the point where they are detected.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider using the torque on a current-carrying coil in a magnetic field to detect relatively small magnetic fields (less than the field of the Earth, for example). Construct a problem in which you calculate the maximum torque on a current-carrying loop in a magnetic field. Among the things to be considered are the size of the coil, the number

of loops it has, the current you pass through the coil, and the size of the field you wish to detect. Discuss whether the torque produced is large enough to be effectively measured. Your instructor may also wish for you to consider the effects, if any, of the field produced by the coil on the surroundings that could affect detection of the small field.

Glossary

magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
: a medical imaging technique that uses magnetic fields create detailed images of internal tissues and organs

nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR)
: a phenomenon in which an externally applied magnetic field interacts with the nuclei of certain atoms

magnetocardiogram (MCG)
: a recording of the heart's magnetic field as it beats

magnetoencephalogram (MEG)
: a measurement of the brain's magnetic field

Introduction to Electromagnetic Induction, AC Circuits and Electrical Technologies

class="introduction"

These wind turbines in the Thames Estuary in the UK are an example of induction at work. Wind pushes the blades of the turbine, spinning a shaft attached to magnets. The magnets spin around a conductive coil, inducing an electric current in the coil, and eventually feeding the electrical grid. (credit: modification of work by Petr Kratochvil)

Nature’s displays of symmetry are beautiful and alluring. A butterfly’s wings exhibit an appealing symmetry in a complex system. (See [link].) The laws of physics display symmetries at the most basic level—these symmetries are a source of wonder and imply deeper meaning. Since we place a high value on symmetry, we look for it when we explore nature. The remarkable thing is that we find it.

Physics, like this butterfly, has inherent symmetries. (credit: Thomas Bresson)

The hint of symmetry between electricity and magnetism found in the preceding chapter will be elaborated upon in this chapter. Specifically, we know that a current creates a magnetic field. If nature is symmetric here, then perhaps a magnetic field can create a current. The Hall effect is a voltage caused by a magnetic force. That voltage could drive a current. Historically, it was very shortly after Oersted discovered currents cause magnetic fields that other scientists asked the following question: Can magnetic fields cause currents? The answer was soon found by experiment to be yes. In 1831, some 12 years after Oersted's discovery, the English scientist Michael Faraday (1791–1862) and the American scientist Joseph Henry (1797–1878) independently demonstrated that magnetic fields can produce currents. The basic process of generating emfs (electromotive force) and, hence, currents with magnetic fields is known as **induction**; this process is also called magnetic induction to distinguish it from charging by induction, which utilizes the Coulomb force.

Today, currents induced by magnetic fields are essential to our technological society. The ubiquitous generator—found in automobiles, on bicycles, in nuclear power plants, and so on—uses magnetism to generate current. Other devices that use magnetism to induce currents include pickup coils in electric guitars, transformers of every size, certain microphones, airport security gates, and damping mechanisms on sensitive chemical balances. Not so familiar perhaps, but important nevertheless, is that the behavior of AC circuits depends strongly on the effect of magnetic fields on currents.

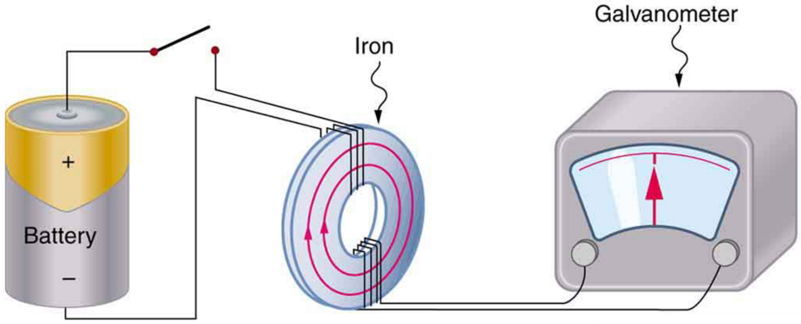
Glossary

induction
: (magnetic induction) the creation of emfs and hence currents by magnetic fields

Induced Emf and Magnetic Flux

- Calculate the flux of a uniform magnetic field through a loop of arbitrary orientation.
- Describe methods to produce an electromotive force (emf) with a magnetic field or magnet and a loop of wire.

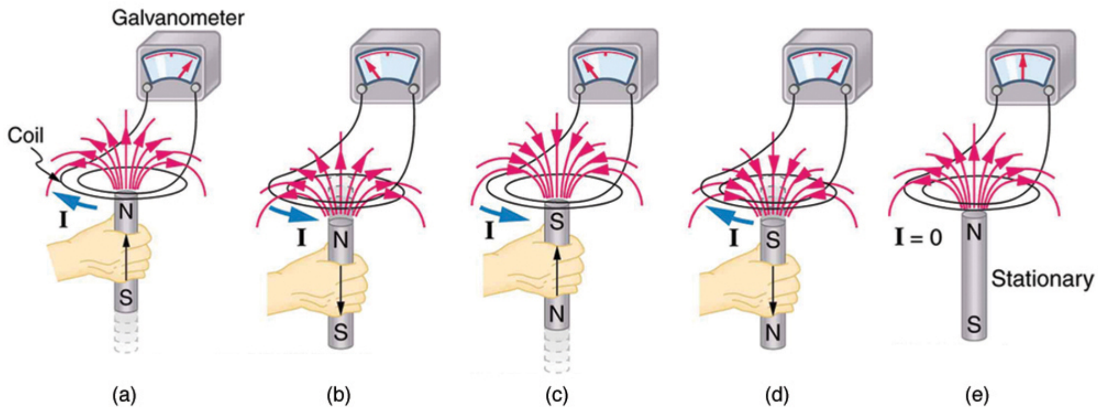
The apparatus used by Faraday to demonstrate that magnetic fields can create currents is illustrated in [link]. When the switch is closed, a magnetic field is produced in the coil on the top part of the iron ring and transmitted to the coil on the bottom part of the ring. The galvanometer is used to detect any current induced in the coil on the bottom. It was found that each time the switch is closed, the galvanometer detects a current in one direction in the coil on the bottom. (You can also observe this in a physics lab.) Each time the switch is opened, the galvanometer detects a current in the opposite direction. Interestingly, if the switch remains closed or open for any length of time, there is no current through the galvanometer. *Closing and opening the switch* induces the current. It is the *change* in magnetic field that creates the current. More basic than the current that flows is the emfthat causes it. The current is a result of an *emf induced by a changing magnetic field*, whether or not there is a path for current to flow.



Faraday’s apparatus for demonstrating that a magnetic field can produce a current. A change in the field produced by the top coil induces an emf and, hence, a current in the bottom coil. When the switch is opened and closed, the galvanometer registers currents in opposite directions. No current flows

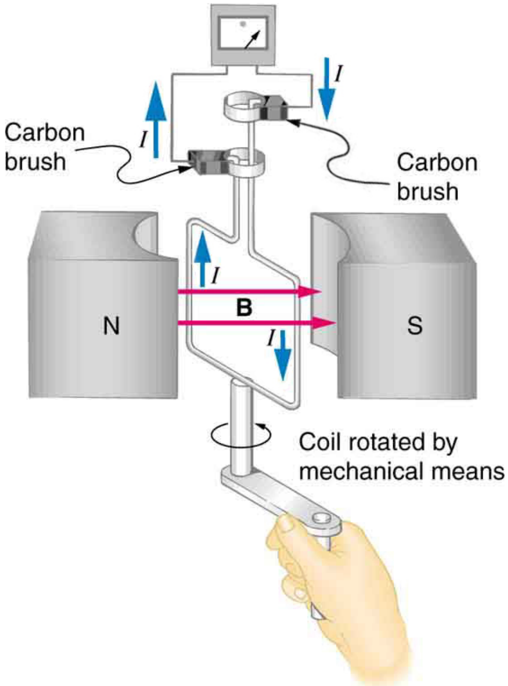
through the galvanometer when the switch remains closed or open.

An experiment easily performed and often done in physics labs is illustrated in [link]. An emf is induced in the coil when a bar magnet is pushed in and out of it. Emfs of opposite signs are produced by motion in opposite directions, and the emfs are also reversed by reversing poles. The same results are produced if the coil is moved rather than the magnet—it is the relative motion that is important. The faster the motion, the greater the emf, and there is no emf when the magnet is stationary relative to the coil.



Movement of a magnet relative to a coil produces emfs as shown. The same emfs are produced if the coil is moved relative to the magnet. The greater the speed, the greater the magnitude of the emf, and the emf is zero when there is no motion.

The method of inducing an emf used in most electric generators is shown in [link]. A coil is rotated in a magnetic field, producing an alternating current emf, which depends on rotation rate and other factors that will be explored in later sections. Note that the generator is remarkably similar in construction to a motor (another symmetry).



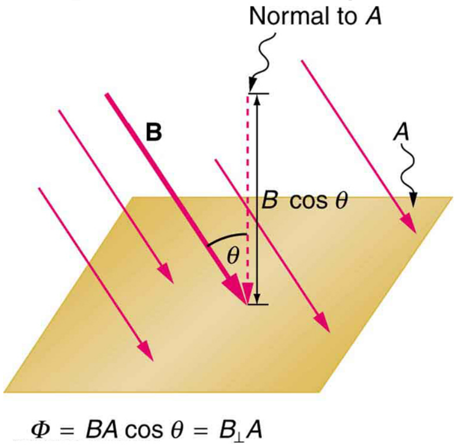
Rotation of a coil in a magnetic field produces an emf. This is the basic construction of a generator, where work done to turn the coil is converted to electric energy. Note the generator is very similar in construction to a motor.

So we see that changing the magnitude or direction of a magnetic field produces an emf. Experiments revealed that there is a crucial quantity called the **magnetic flux**, Φ , given by

Equation:

$$\Phi = \text{BA} \cos \theta,$$

where B is the magnetic field strength over an area A, at an angle θ with the perpendicular to the area as shown in [link]. **Any change in magnetic flux Φ induces an emf.** This process is defined to be **electromagnetic induction**. Units of magnetic flux Φ are $\mathrm{T} \cdot \mathrm{m}^2$. As seen in [link], $B\ \text{cos}\ \theta = B_{\perp}$, which is the component of B perpendicular to the area A. Thus magnetic flux is $\Phi = B_{\perp}A$, the product of the area and the component of the magnetic field perpendicular to it.



Magnetic flux Φ is related to the magnetic field and the area over which it exists. The flux $\Phi = \text{BA}\ \text{cos}\ \theta$ is related to induction; any change in Φ induces an emf.

All induction, including the examples given so far, arises from some change in magnetic flux Φ. For example, Faraday changed B and hence Φ when opening and closing the switch in his apparatus (shown in [link]). This is also true for the bar magnet and coil shown in [link]. When rotating the coil of a generator, the angle θ and, hence, Φ is changed. Just how great an emf and what direction it takes depend on the change in Φ and how rapidly the change is made, as examined in the next section.

Section Summary

- The crucial quantity in induction is magnetic flux Φ, defined to be $\Phi = \text{BA}\cos\theta$, where B is the magnetic field strength over an area A at an angle θ with the perpendicular to the area.
- Units of magnetic flux Φ are $\text{T}\cdot\text{m}^2$.
- Any change in magnetic flux Φ induces an emf—the process is defined to be electromagnetic induction.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How do the multiple-loop coils and iron ring in the version of Faraday’s apparatus shown in [link] enhance the observation of induced emf?

Exercise:

Problem:

When a magnet is thrust into a coil as in [link](a), what is the direction of the force exerted by the coil on the magnet? Draw a diagram showing the direction of the current induced in the coil and the magnetic field it produces, to justify your response. How does the magnitude of the force depend on the resistance of the galvanometer?

Exercise:

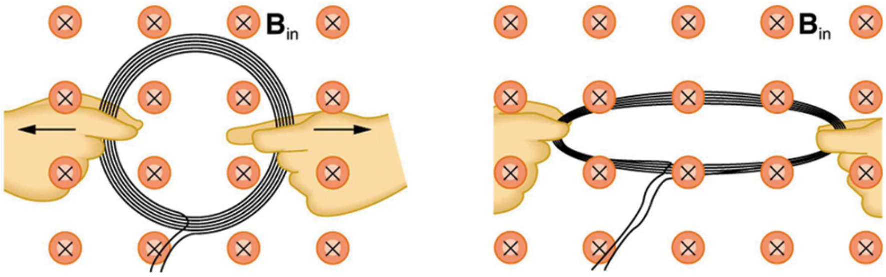
Problem:

Explain how magnetic flux can be zero when the magnetic field is not zero.

Exercise:

Problem:

Is an emf induced in the coil in [link] when it is stretched? If so, state why and give the direction of the induced current.



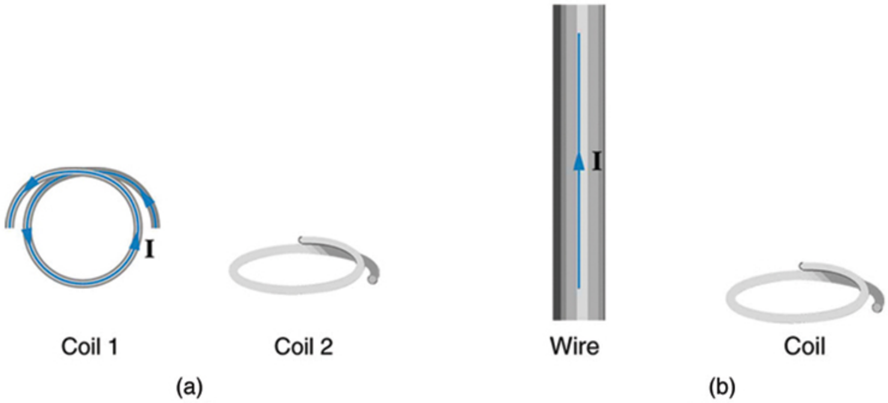
A circular coil of wire is stretched in a magnetic field.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the value of the magnetic flux at coil 2 in [link] due to coil 1?



(a) The planes of the two coils are perpendicular. (b) The wire is perpendicular to the plane of the coil.

Solution:

Zero

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the value of the magnetic flux through the coil in [link](b) due to the wire?

Glossary

magnetic flux
: the amount of magnetic field going through a particular area, calculated with $\Phi = \mathrm{BA}\cos\theta$ where B is the magnetic field strength over an area A at an angle θ with the perpendicular to the area

electromagnetic induction
: the process of inducing an emf (voltage) with a change in magnetic flux

Faraday’s Law of Induction: Lenz’s Law

- Calculate emf, current, and magnetic fields using Faraday’s Law.
- Explain the physical results of Lenz’s Law

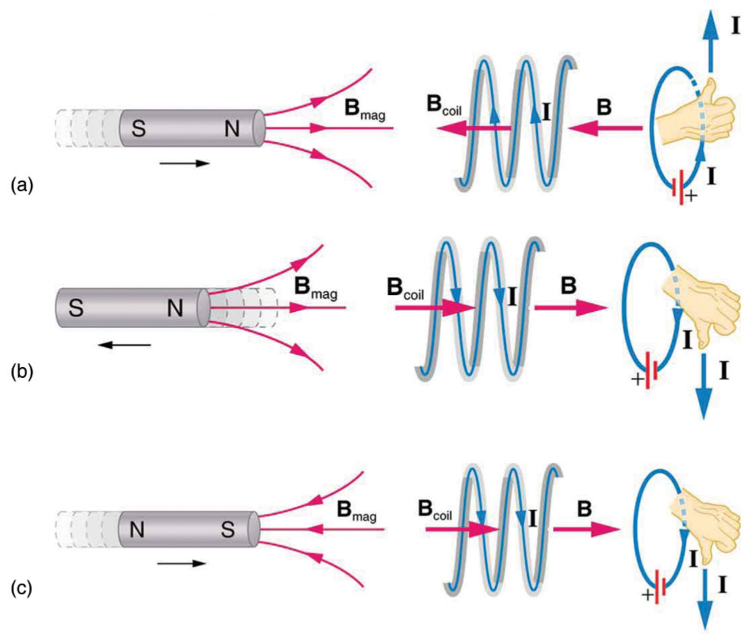
Faraday’s and Lenz’s Law

Faraday’s experiments showed that the emf induced by a change in magnetic flux depends on only a few factors. First, emf is directly proportional to the change in flux $\Delta \Phi$. Second, emf is greatest when the change in time Δt is smallest—that is, emf is inversely proportional to Δt. Finally, if a coil has N turns, an emf will be produced that is N times greater than for a single coil, so that emf is directly proportional to N. The equation for the emf induced by a change in magnetic flux is
Equation:

$$\text{emf} = -N\frac{\Delta \Phi}{\Delta t}.$$

This relationship is known as **Faraday’s law of induction**. The units for emf are volts, as is usual.

The minus sign in Faraday’s law of induction is very important. The minus means that *the emf creates a current I and magnetic field B that oppose the change in flux* $\Delta \Phi$*—this is known as Lenz’s law*. The direction (given by the minus sign) of the emfis so important that it is called **Lenz’s law** after the Russian Heinrich Lenz (1804–1865), who, like Faraday and Henry,independently investigated aspects of induction. Faraday was aware of the direction, but Lenz stated it so clearly that he is credited for its discovery. (See [link].)



(a) When this bar magnet is thrust into the coil, the strength of the magnetic field increases in the coil. The current induced in the coil creates another field, in the opposite direction of the bar magnet's to oppose the increase. This is one aspect of *Lenz's law—induction opposes any change in flux*. (b) and (c) are two other situations. Verify for yourself that the direction of the induced B_{coil} shown indeed opposes the change in flux and that the current direction shown is consistent with RHR-2.

Note:

Problem-Solving Strategy for Lenz's Law

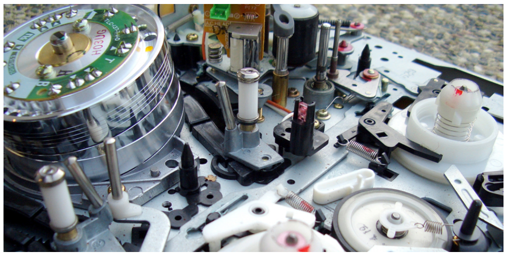
To use Lenz's law to determine the directions of the induced magnetic fields, currents, and emfs:

1. Make a sketch of the situation for use in visualizing and recording directions.
2. Determine the direction of the magnetic field B.
3. Determine whether the flux is increasing or decreasing.
4. Now determine the direction of the induced magnetic field B. It opposes the *change* in flux by adding or subtracting from the original field.
5. Use RHR-2 to determine the direction of the induced current I that is responsible for the induced magnetic field B.
6. The direction (or polarity) of the induced emf will now drive a current in this direction and can be represented as current emerging from the positive terminal of the emf and returning to its negative terminal.

For practice, apply these steps to the situations shown in [link] and to others that are part of the following text material.

Applications of Electromagnetic Induction

There are many applications of Faraday's Law of induction, as we will explore in this chapter and others. At this juncture, let us mention several that have to do with data storage and magnetic fields. A very important application has to do with audio and video *recording tapes*. A plastic tape, coated with iron oxide, moves past a recording head. This recording head is basically a round iron ring about which is wrapped a coil of wire—an electromagnet ([link]). A signal in the form of a varying input current from a microphone or camera goes to the recording head. These signals (which are a function of the signal amplitude and frequency) produce varying magnetic fields at the recording head. As the tape moves past the recording head, the magnetic field orientations of the iron oxide molecules on the tape are changed thus recording the signal. In the playback mode, the magnetized tape is run past another head, similar in structure to the recording head. The different magnetic field orientations of the iron oxide molecules on the tape induces an emf in the coil of wire in the playback head. This signal then is sent to a loudspeaker or video player.



Recording and playback heads used with audio and video magnetic tapes. (credit: Steve Jurvetson)

Similar principles apply to computer hard drives, except at a much faster rate. Here recordings are on a coated, spinning disk. Read heads historically were made to work on the principle of induction. However, the input information is carried in digital rather than analog form – a series of 0's or 1's are written upon the spinning hard drive. Today, most hard drive readout devices do not work on the principle of induction, but use a technique known as *giant magnetoresistance*. (The discovery that weak changes in a magnetic field in a thin film of iron and chromium could bring about much larger changes in electrical resistance was one of the first large successes of nanotechnology.) Another application of induction is found on the magnetic stripe on the back of your personal credit card as used at the grocery store or the ATM machine. This works on the same principle as the audio or video tape mentioned in the last paragraph in which a head reads personal information from your card.

Another application of electromagnetic induction is when electrical signals need to be transmitted across a barrier. Consider the *cochlear implant* shown below. Sound is picked up by a microphone on the outside of the skull and is used to set up a varying magnetic field. A current is induced in a receiver secured in the bone beneath the skin and transmitted to electrodes in the inner ear. Electromagnetic induction can be used in other instances where electric signals need to be conveyed across various media.

Electromagnetic induction used in transmitting electric currents across mediums. The device on the baby’s head induces an electrical current in a receiver secured in the bone beneath the skin. (credit: Bjorn Knetsch)

Another contemporary area of research in which electromagnetic induction is being successfully implemented (and with substantial potential) is transcranial magnetic simulation. A host of disorders, including depression and hallucinations can be traced to irregular localized electrical activity in the brain. In *transcranial magnetic stimulation*, a rapidly varying and very localized magnetic field is placed close to certain sites identified in the brain. Weak electric currents are induced in the identified sites and can result in recovery of electrical functioning in the brain tissue.

Sleep apnea (“the cessation of breath”) affects both adults and infants (especially premature babies and it may be a cause of sudden infant deaths [SID]). In such individuals, breath can stop repeatedly during their sleep. A cessation of more than 20 seconds can be very dangerous. Stroke, heart failure, and tiredness are just some of the possible consequences for a

person having sleep apnea. The concern in infants is the stopping of breath for these longer times. One type of monitor to alert parents when a child is not breathing uses electromagnetic induction. A wire wrapped around the infant's chest has an alternating current running through it. The expansion and contraction of the infant's chest as the infant breathes changes the area through the coil. A pickup coil located nearby has an alternating current induced in it due to the changing magnetic field of the initial wire. If the child stops breathing, there will be a change in the induced current, and so a parent can be alerted.

Note:
Making Connections: Conservation of Energy
Lenz's law is a manifestation of the conservation of energy. The induced emf produces a current that opposes the change in flux, because a change in flux means a change in energy. Energy can enter or leave, but not instantaneously. Lenz's law is a consequence. As the change begins, the law says induction opposes and, thus, slows the change. In fact, if the induced emf were in the same direction as the change in flux, there would be a positive feedback that would give us free energy from no apparent source—conservation of energy would be violated.

Example:
Calculating Emf: How Great Is the Induced Emf?
Calculate the magnitude of the induced emf when the magnet in [link](a) is thrust into the coil, given the following information: the single loop coil has a radius of 6.00 cm and the average value of $B \cos \theta$ (this is given, since the bar magnet's field is complex) increases from 0.0500 T to 0.250 T in 0.100 s.
Strategy
To find the *magnitude* of emf, we use Faraday's law of induction as stated by $\text{emf} = -N\frac{\Delta \Phi}{\Delta t}$, but without the minus sign that indicates direction:
Equation:

$$\text{emf} = N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}.$$

Solution

We are given that $N = 1$ and $\Delta t = 0.100$ s, but we must determine the change in flux $\Delta\Phi$ before we can find emf. Since the area of the loop is fixed, we see that

Equation:

$$\Delta\Phi = \Delta(BA\ \cos\theta) = A\Delta(B\cos\theta\ ).$$

Now $\Delta(B\cos\theta) = 0.200\ \text{T}$, since it was given that $B\cos\theta$ changes from 0.0500 to 0.250 T. The area of the loop is $A = \pi r^2 = (3.14...)(0.060\ \text{m})^2 = 1.13\times10^{-2}\ \text{m}^2$. Thus,

Equation:

$$\Delta\Phi = (1.13\times10^{-2}\ \text{m}^2)(0.200\ \text{T}\ ).$$

Entering the determined values into the expression for emf gives

Equation:

$$\text{Emf} = N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t} = \frac{(1.13\times10^{-2}\ \text{m}^2)(0.200\ \text{T})}{0.100\ \text{s}} = 22.6\ \text{mV}.$$

Discussion

While this is an easily measured voltage, it is certainly not large enough for most practical applications. More loops in the coil, a stronger magnet, and faster movement make induction the practical source of voltages that it is.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Faraday's Electromagnetic Lab

Play with a bar magnet and coils to learn about Faraday's law. Move a bar magnet near one or two coils to make a light bulb glow. View the magnetic field lines. A meter shows the direction and magnitude of the current. View the magnetic field lines or use a meter to show the direction and magnitude of the current. You can also play with electromagnets, generators and

transformers!

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/70b14c10-ae73-11e5-8eb2-b7fbe0c5c7a4/faraday/#sim-bar-magnet

Section Summary

- Faraday’s law of induction states that the emfinduced by a change in magnetic flux is
  Equation:
  $$\text{emf} = -N\frac{\Delta \Phi}{\Delta t}$$
  when flux changes by $\Delta \Phi$ in a time Δt.
- If emf is induced in a coil, N is its number of turns.
- The minus sign means that the emf creates a current I and magnetic field B that *oppose the change in flux* $\Delta \Phi$ —this opposition is known as Lenz’s law.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

A person who works with large magnets sometimes places her head inside a strong field. She reports feeling dizzy as she quickly turns her head. How might this be associated with induction?

Exercise:

Problem:

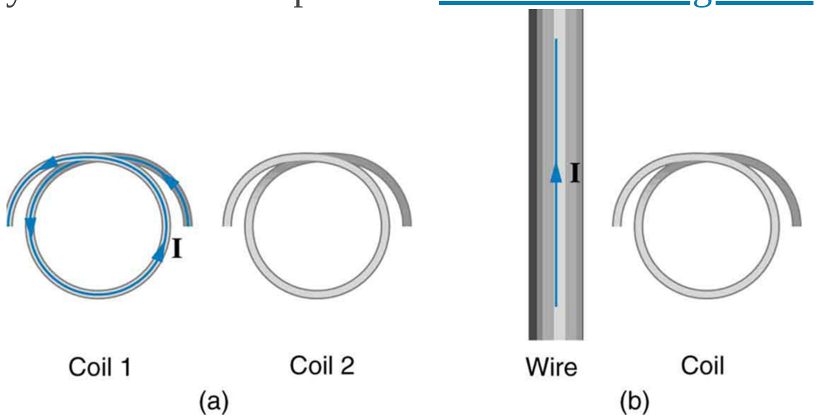
A particle accelerator sends high-velocity charged particles down an evacuated pipe. Explain how a coil of wire wrapped around the pipe could detect the passage of individual particles. Sketch a graph of the voltage output of the coil as a single particle passes through it.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to [link](a), what is the direction of the current induced in coil 2: (a) If the current in coil 1 increases? (b) If the current in coil 1 decreases? (c) If the current in coil 1 is constant? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Lenz's Law.



(a) The coils lie in the same plane. (b) The wire is in the plane of the coil

---

Solution:

(a) CCW

(b) CW

(c) No current induced

Exercise:

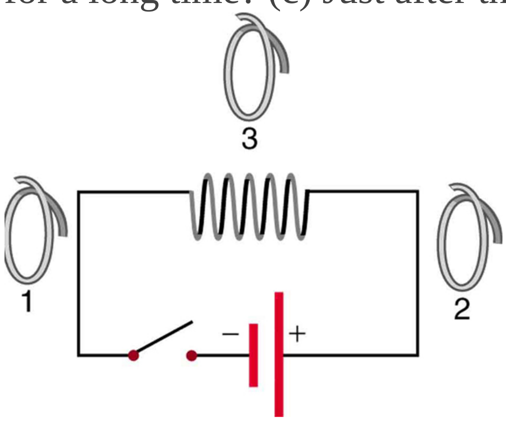
Problem:

Referring to [link](b), what is the direction of the current induced in the coil: (a) If the current in the wire increases? (b) If the current in the wire decreases? (c) If the current in the wire suddenly changes direction? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Lenz's Law.

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to [link], what are the directions of the currents in coils 1, 2, and 3 (assume that the coils are lying in the plane of the circuit): (a) When the switch is first closed? (b) When the switch has been closed for a long time? (c) Just after the switch is opened?



Solution:

(a) 1 CCW, 2 CCW, 3 CW

(b) 1, 2, and 3 no current induced

(c) 1 CW, 2 CW, 3 CCW

Exercise:

Problem: Repeat the previous problem with the battery reversed.

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the units of $\Delta\Phi/\ \Delta t$ are volts. That is, show that $1\ \text{T} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s} = 1\ \text{V}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a 50-turn coil lies in the plane of the page in a uniform magnetic field that is directed into the page. The coil originally has an area of $0.250\ \text{m}^2$. It is stretched to have no area in 0.100 s. What is the direction and magnitude of the induced emf if the uniform magnetic field has a strength of 1.50 T?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) An MRI technician moves his hand from a region of very low magnetic field strength into an MRI scanner's 2.00 T field with his fingers pointing in the direction of the field. Find the average emf induced in his wedding ring, given its diameter is 2.20 cm and assuming it takes 0.250 s to move it into the field. (b) Discuss whether this current would significantly change the temperature of the ring.

Solution:

(a) 3.04 mV
(b) As a lower limit on the ring, estimate R = 1.00 mΩ. The heat transferred will be 2.31 mJ. This is not a significant amount of heat.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Referring to the situation in the previous problem: (a) What current is induced in the ring if its resistance is 0.0100 Ω? (b) What average power is dissipated? (c) What magnetic field is induced at the center of the ring? (d) What is the direction of the induced magnetic field relative to the MRI's field?

Exercise:

Problem:

An emf is induced by rotating a 1000-turn, 20.0 cm diameter coil in the Earth's 5.00×10^{-5} T magnetic field. What average emf is induced, given the plane of the coil is originally perpendicular to the Earth's field and is rotated to be parallel to the field in 10.0 ms?

Solution:

0.157 V

Exercise:

Problem:

A 0.250 m radius, 500-turn coil is rotated one-fourth of a revolution in 4.17 ms, originally having its plane perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field. (This is 60 rev/s.) Find the magnetic field strength needed to induce an average emf of 10,000 V.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Approximately how does the emf induced in the loop in [link](b) depend on the distance of the center of the loop from the wire?

Solution:

proportional to $\frac{1}{r}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) A lightning bolt produces a rapidly varying magnetic field. If the bolt strikes the earth vertically and acts like a current in a long straight wire, it will induce a voltage in a loop aligned like that in [link](b). What voltage is induced in a 1.00 m diameter loop 50.0 m from a 2.00×10^6 A lightning strike, if the current falls to zero in $25.0\ \mu s$? (b) Discuss circumstances under which such a voltage would produce noticeable consequences.

Glossary

Faraday’s law of induction
: the means of calculating the emf in a coil due to changing magnetic flux, given by $\text{emf} = -N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}$

Lenz’s law
: the minus sign in Faraday’s law, signifying that the emf induced in a coil opposes the change in magnetic flux

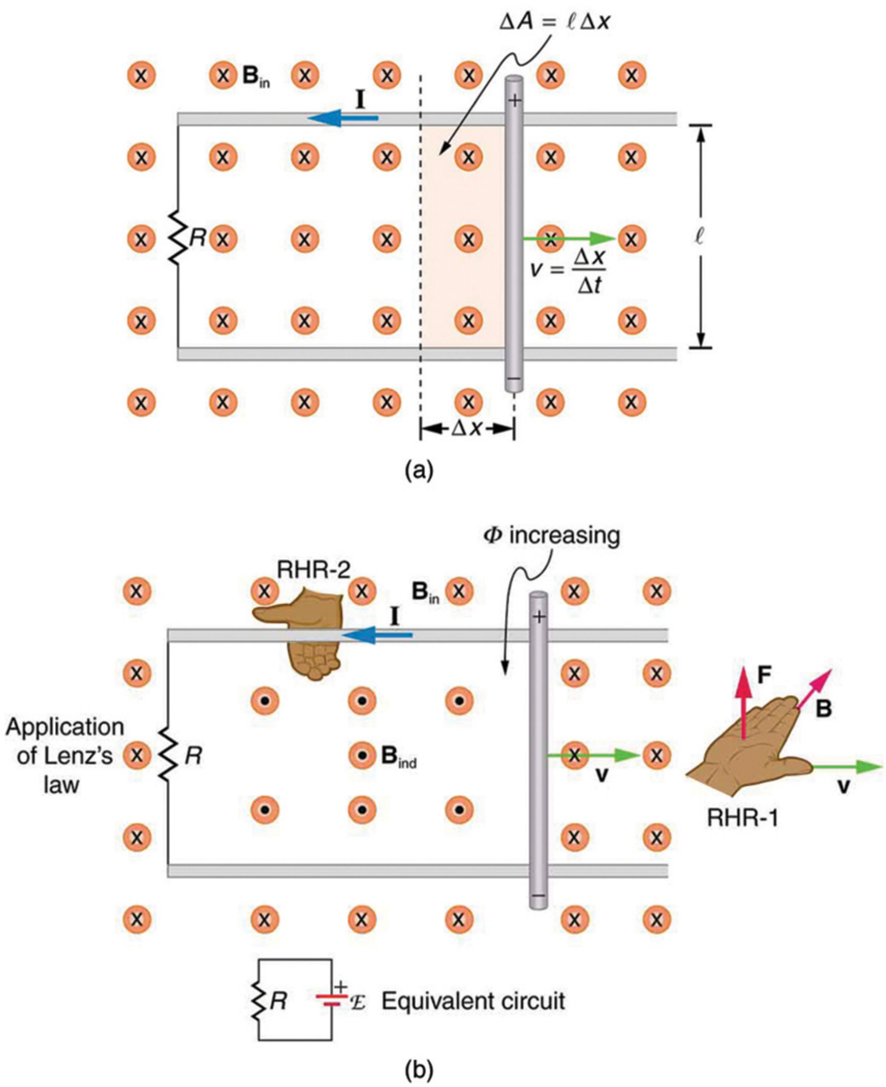
Motional Emf

- Calculate emf, force, magnetic field, and work due to the motion of an object in a magnetic field.

As we have seen, any change in magnetic flux induces an emf opposing that change—a process known as induction. Motion is one of the major causes of induction. For example, a magnet moved toward a coil induces an emf, and a coil moved toward a magnet produces a similar emf. In this section, we concentrate on motion in a magnetic field that is stationary relative to the Earth, producing what is loosely called *motional emf*.

One situation where motional emf occurs is known as the Hall effect and has already been examined. Charges moving in a magnetic field experience the magnetic force $F = \text{qvB sin } \theta$, which moves opposite charges in opposite directions and produces an $\text{emf} = B\ell v$. We saw that the Hall effect has applications, including measurements of B and v. We will now see that the Hall effect is one aspect of the broader phenomenon of induction, and we will find that motional emf can be used as a power source.

Consider the situation shown in [link]. A rod is moved at a speed v along a pair of conducting rails separated by a distance ℓ in a uniform magnetic field B. The rails are stationary relative to B and are connected to a stationary resistor R. The resistor could be anything from a light bulb to a voltmeter. Consider the area enclosed by the moving rod, rails, and resistor. B is perpendicular to this area, and the area is increasing as the rod moves. Thus the magnetic flux enclosed by the rails, rod, and resistor is increasing. When flux changes, an emf is induced according to Faraday's law of induction.



(a) A motional emf $= B\ell v$ is induced between the rails when this rod moves to the right in the uniform magnetic field. The magnetic field B is into the page, perpendicular to the moving rod and rails and, hence, to the area enclosed by them. (b) Lenz's law gives the directions of the induced field and current, and the polarity of the induced emf. Since the flux is increasing, the induced field is in the opposite direction, or out of the page. RHR-2 gives the current direction shown, and the polarity of the rod will drive such a current. RHR-1 also indicates the same polarity for the rod. (Note that

the script E symbol used in the equivalent circuit at the bottom of part (b) represents emf.)

To find the magnitude of emf induced along the moving rod, we use Faraday's law of induction without the sign:

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}.$$

Here and below, "emf" implies the magnitude of the emf. In this equation, $N = 1$ and the flux $\Phi = \text{BA} \cos \theta$. We have $\theta = 0$º and $\cos \theta = 1$, since B is perpendicular to A. Now $\Delta\Phi = \Delta(\text{BA}) = B\Delta A$, since B is uniform. Note that the area swept out by the rod is $\Delta A = \ell\Delta x$. Entering these quantities into the expression for emf yields

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = \frac{B\Delta A}{\Delta t} = B\frac{\ell\Delta x}{\Delta t}.$$

Finally, note that $\Delta x/\Delta t = v$, the velocity of the rod. Entering this into the last expression shows that

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = B\ell v \qquad (B,\ \ell,\ \text{and}\ v\ \text{perpendicular})$$

is the motional emf. This is the same expression given for the Hall effect previously.

Note:

Making Connections: Unification of Forces

There are many connections between the electric force and the magnetic force. The fact that a moving electric field produces a magnetic field and, conversely, a moving magnetic field produces an electric field is part of why electric and magnetic forces are now considered to be different manifestations of the same force. This classic unification of electric and magnetic forces into what is called the electromagnetic force is the inspiration for contemporary efforts to unify other basic forces.

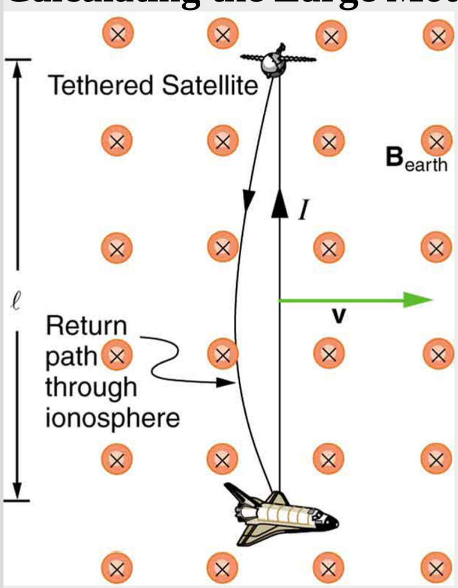
To find the direction of the induced field, the direction of the current, and the polarity of the induced emf, we apply Lenz’s law as explained in Faraday's Law of Induction: Lenz's Law. (See [link](b).) Flux is increasing, since the area enclosed is increasing. Thus the induced field must oppose the existing one and be out of the page. And so the RHR-2 requires that *I* be counterclockwise, which in turn means the top of the rod is positive as shown.

Motional emf also occurs if the magnetic field moves and the rod (or other object) is stationary relative to the Earth (or some observer). We have seen an example of this in the situation where a moving magnet induces an emf in a stationary coil. It is the relative motion that is important. What is emerging in these observations is a connection between magnetic and electric fields. A moving magnetic field produces an electric field through its induced emf. We already have seen that a moving electric field produces a magnetic field—moving charge implies moving electric field and moving charge produces a magnetic field.

Motional emfs in the Earth’s weak magnetic field are not ordinarily very large, or we would notice voltage along metal rods, such as a screwdriver, during ordinary motions. For example, a simple calculation of the motional emf of a 1 m rod moving at 3.0 m/s perpendicular to the Earth’s field gives $\text{emf} = B\ell v = (5.0\times10^{-5}\ \text{T})(1.0\ \text{m})(3.0\ \text{m/s}) = 150\ \mu\text{V}$. This small value is consistent with experience. There is a spectacular exception, however. In 1992 and 1996, attempts were made with the space shuttle to create large motional emfs. The Tethered Satellite was to be let out on a 20 km length of wire as shown in [link], to create a 5 kV emf by moving at

orbital speed through the Earth’s field. This emf could be used to convert some of the shuttle’s kinetic and potential energy into electrical energy if a complete circuit could be made. To complete the circuit, the stationary ionosphere was to supply a return path for the current to flow. (The ionosphere is the rarefied and partially ionized atmosphere at orbital altitudes. It conducts because of the ionization. The ionosphere serves the same function as the stationary rails and connecting resistor in [link], without which there would not be a complete circuit.) Drag on the current in the cable due to the magnetic force $F = I\ell B \sin \theta$ does the work that reduces the shuttle’s kinetic and potential energy and allows it to be converted to electrical energy. The tests were both unsuccessful. In the first, the cable hung up and could only be extended a couple of hundred meters; in the second, the cable broke when almost fully extended. [link] indicates feasibility in principle.

Example:
Calculating the Large Motional Emf of an Object in Orbit



Motional emf as electrical power conversion for the space shuttle is the motivation for the

Tethered Satellite experiment. A 5 kV emf was predicted to be induced in the 20 km long tether while moving at orbital speed in the Earth’s magnetic field. The circuit is completed by a return path through the stationary ionosphere.

Calculate the motional emf induced along a 20.0 km long conductor moving at an orbital speed of 7.80 km/s perpendicular to the Earth’s 5.00×10^{-5} T magnetic field.

Strategy

This is a straightforward application of the expression for motional emf—emf $= B\ell v$.

Solution

Entering the given values into emf $= B\ell v$ gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{emf} &= B\ell v \\ &= (5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T})(2.0 \times 10^{4}\ \text{m})(7.80 \times 10^{3}\ \text{m/s}) \\ &= 7.80 \times 10^{3}\ \text{V}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

The value obtained is greater than the 5 kV measured voltage for the shuttle experiment, since the actual orbital motion of the tether is not perpendicular to the Earth’s field. The 7.80 kV value is the maximum emf obtained when $\theta = 90º$ and $\sin \theta = 1$.

Section Summary

- An emf induced by motion relative to a magnetic field B is called a *motional emf* and is given by
  Equation:
  $$\text{emf} = B\ell v \qquad (B,\ \ell,\ \text{and}\ v\ \text{perpendicular}),$$
  where ℓ is the length of the object moving at speed v relative to the field.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why must part of the circuit be moving relative to other parts, to have usable motional emf? Consider, for example, that the rails in [link] are stationary relative to the magnetic field, while the rod moves.

Exercise:

Problem:

A powerful induction cannon can be made by placing a metal cylinder inside a solenoid coil. The cylinder is forcefully expelled when solenoid current is turned on rapidly. Use Faraday's and Lenz's laws to explain how this works. Why might the cylinder get live/hot when the cannon is fired?

Exercise:

Problem:

An induction stove heats a pot with a coil carrying an alternating current located beneath the pot (and without a hot surface). Can the stove surface be a conductor? Why won't a coil carrying a direct current work?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how you could thaw out a frozen water pipe by wrapping a coil carrying an alternating current around it. Does it matter whether or not the pipe is a conductor? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Use Faraday's law, Lenz's law, and RHR-1 to show that the magnetic force on the current in the moving rod in [link] is in the opposite direction of its velocity.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a current flows in the Satellite Tether shown in [link], use Faraday's law, Lenz's law, and RHR-1 to show that there is a magnetic force on the tether in the direction opposite to its velocity.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A jet airplane with a 75.0 m wingspan is flying at 280 m/s. What emf is induced between wing tips if the vertical component of the Earth's field is $3.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$? (b) Is an emf of this magnitude likely to have any consequences? Explain.

Solution:

(a) 0.630 V

(b) No, this is a very small emf.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A nonferrous screwdriver is being used in a 2.00 T magnetic field. What maximum emf can be induced along its 12.0 cm length when it moves at 6.00 m/s? (b) Is it likely that this emf will have any consequences or even be noticed?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what speed must the sliding rod in [link] move to produce an emf of 1.00 V in a 1.50 T field, given the rod’s length is 30.0 cm?

Solution:

2.22 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

The 12.0 cm long rod in [link] moves at 4.00 m/s. What is the strength of the magnetic field if a 95.0 V emf is induced?

Exercise:

Problem:

Prove that when B, ℓ, and v are not mutually perpendicular, motional emf is given by emf $= B\ell v\sin\theta$. If v is perpendicular to B, then θ is the angle between ℓ and B. If ℓ is perpendicular to B, then θ is the angle between v and B.

Exercise:

Problem:

In the August 1992 space shuttle flight, only 250 m of the conducting tether considered in [link] could be let out. A 40.0 V motional emf was generated in the Earth's $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ field, while moving at $7.80 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{m/s}$. What was the angle between the shuttle's velocity and the Earth's field, assuming the conductor was perpendicular to the field?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Derive an expression for the current in a system like that in [link], under the following conditions. The resistance between the rails is R, the rails and the moving rod are identical in cross section A and have the same resistivity ρ. The distance between the rails is l, and the rod moves at constant speed v perpendicular to the uniform field B. At time zero, the moving rod is next to the resistance R.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The Tethered Satellite in [link] has a mass of 525 kg and is at the end of a 20.0 km long, 2.50 mm diameter cable with the tensile strength of steel. (a) How much does the cable stretch if a 100 N force is exerted to pull the satellite in? (Assume the satellite and shuttle are at the same altitude above the Earth.) (b) What is the effective force constant of the cable? (c) How much energy is stored in it when stretched by the 100 N force?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The Tethered Satellite discussed in this module is producing 5.00 kV, and a current of 10.0 A flows. (a) What magnetic drag force does this

produce if the system is moving at 7.80 km/s? (b) How much kinetic energy is removed from the system in 1.00 h, neglecting any change in altitude or velocity during that time? (c) What is the change in velocity if the mass of the system is 100,000 kg? (d) Discuss the long term consequences (say, a week-long mission) on the space shuttle's orbit, noting what effect a decrease in velocity has and assessing the magnitude of the effect.

Solution:

(a) 10.0 N

(b) 2.81×10^8 J

(c) 0.36 m/s

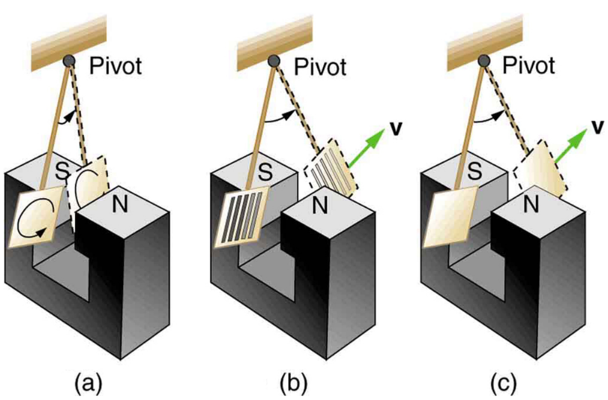
(d) For a week-long mission (168 hours), the change in velocity will be 60 m/s, or approximately 1%. In general, a decrease in velocity would cause the orbit to start spiraling inward because the velocity would no longer be sufficient to keep the circular orbit. The long-term consequences are that the shuttle would require a little more fuel to maintain the desired speed, otherwise the orbit would spiral slightly inward.

Eddy Currents and Magnetic Damping

- Explain the magnitude and direction of an induced eddy current, and the effect this will have on the object it is induced in.
- Describe several applications of magnetic damping.

Eddy Currents and Magnetic Damping

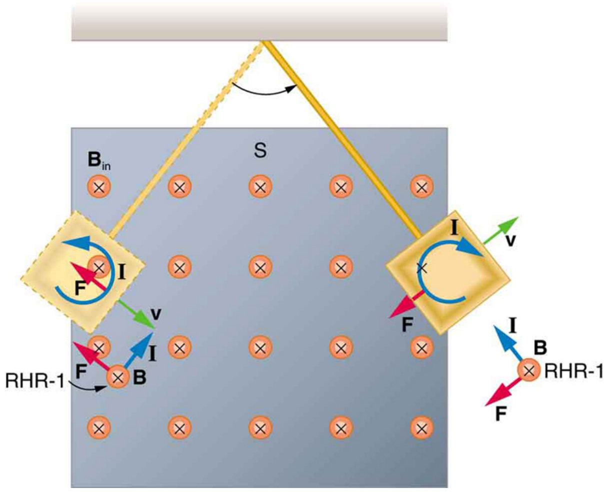
As discussed in Motional Emf, motional emf is induced when a conductor moves in a magnetic field or when a magnetic field moves relative to a conductor. If motional emf can cause a current loop in the conductor, we refer to that current as an **eddy current**. Eddy currents can produce significant drag, called **magnetic damping**, on the motion involved. Consider the apparatus shown in [link], which swings a pendulum bob between the poles of a strong magnet. (This is another favorite physics lab activity.) If the bob is metal, there is significant drag on the bob as it enters and leaves the field, quickly damping the motion. If, however, the bob is a slotted metal plate, as shown in [link](b), there is a much smaller effect due to the magnet. There is no discernible effect on a bob made of an insulator. Why is there drag in both directions, and are there any uses for magnetic drag?



A common physics demonstration device for exploring eddy currents and magnetic damping. (a) The

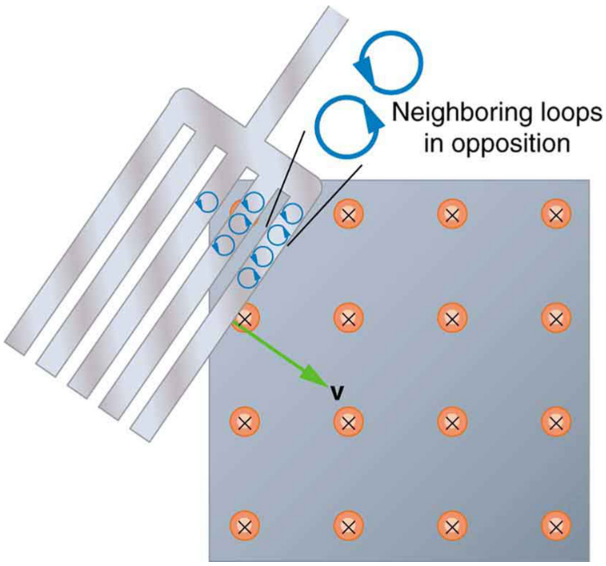
motion of a metal pendulum bob swinging between the poles of a magnet is quickly damped by the action of eddy currents. (b) There is little effect on the motion of a slotted metal bob, implying that eddy currents are made less effective. (c) There is also no magnetic damping on a nonconducting bob, since the eddy currents are extremely small.

[link] shows what happens to the metal plate as it enters and leaves the magnetic field. In both cases, it experiences a force opposing its motion. As it enters from the left, flux increases, and so an eddy current is set up (Faraday's law) in the counterclockwise direction (Lenz's law), as shown. Only the right-hand side of the current loop is in the field, so that there is an unopposed force on it to the left (RHR-1). When the metal plate is completely inside the field, there is no eddy current if the field is uniform, since the flux remains constant in this region. But when the plate leaves the field on the right, flux decreases, causing an eddy current in the clockwise direction that, again, experiences a force to the left, further slowing the motion. A similar analysis of what happens when the plate swings from the right toward the left shows that its motion is also damped when entering and leaving the field.



A more detailed look at the conducting plate passing between the poles of a magnet. As it enters and leaves the field, the change in flux produces an eddy current. Magnetic force on the current loop opposes the motion. There is no current and no magnetic drag when the plate is completely inside the uniform field.

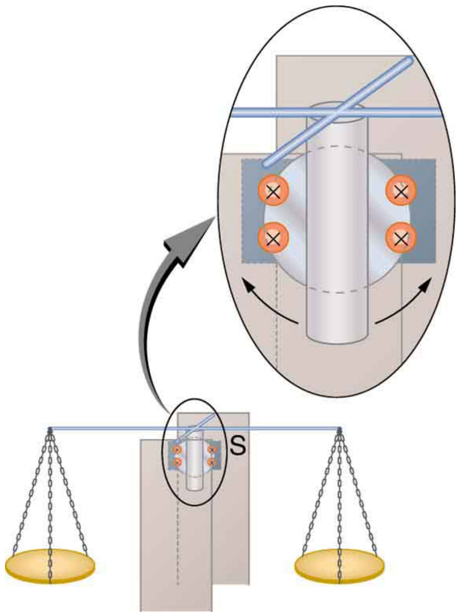
When a slotted metal plate enters the field, as shown in [link], an emf is induced by the change in flux, but it is less effective because the slots limit the size of the current loops. Moreover, adjacent loops have currents in opposite directions, and their effects cancel. When an insulating material is used, the eddy current is extremely small, and so magnetic damping on insulators is negligible. If eddy currents are to be avoided in conductors, then they can be slotted or constructed of thin layers of conducting material separated by insulating sheets.



Eddy currents induced in a slotted metal plate entering a magnetic field form small loops, and the forces on them tend to cancel, thereby making magnetic drag almost zero.

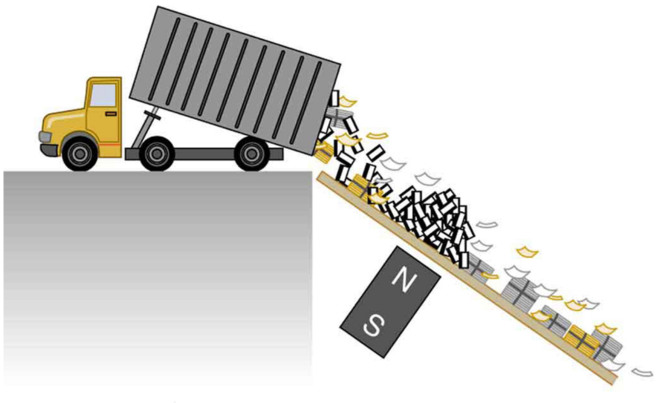
Applications of Magnetic Damping

One use of magnetic damping is found in sensitive laboratory balances. To have maximum sensitivity and accuracy, the balance must be as friction-free as possible. But if it is friction-free, then it will oscillate for a very long time. Magnetic damping is a simple and ideal solution. With magnetic damping, drag is proportional to speed and becomes zero at zero velocity. Thus the oscillations are quickly damped, after which the damping force disappears, allowing the balance to be very sensitive. (See [link].) In most balances, magnetic damping is accomplished with a conducting disc that rotates in a fixed field.



Magnetic damping of this sensitive balance slows its oscillations. Since Faraday’s law of induction gives the greatest effect for the most rapid change, damping is greatest for large oscillations and goes to zero as the motion stops.

Since eddy currents and magnetic damping occur only in conductors, recycling centers can use magnets to separate metals from other materials. Trash is dumped in batches down a ramp, beneath which lies a powerful magnet. Conductors in the trash are slowed by magnetic damping while nonmetals in the trash move on, separating from the metals. (See [link].) This works for all metals, not just ferromagnetic ones. A magnet can separate out the ferromagnetic materials alone by acting on stationary trash.



Metals can be separated from other trash by magnetic drag. Eddy currents and magnetic drag are created in the metals sent down this ramp by the powerful magnet beneath it. Nonmetals move on.

Other major applications of eddy currents are in metal detectors and braking systems in trains and roller coasters. Portable metal detectors ([link]) consist of a primary coil carrying an alternating current and a secondary coil in which a current is induced. An eddy current will be induced in a piece of metal close to the detector which will cause a change in the induced current within the secondary coil, leading to some sort of signal like a shrill noise. Braking using eddy currents is safer because factors such as rain do not affect the braking and the braking is smoother. However, eddy currents cannot bring the motion to a complete stop, since the force produced decreases with speed. Thus, speed can be reduced from say 20 m/s to 5 m/s, but another form of braking is needed to completely stop the vehicle. Generally, powerful rare earth magnets such as neodymium magnets are used in roller coasters. [link] shows rows of magnets in such an application. The vehicle has metal fins (normally containing copper) which pass through the magnetic field slowing the vehicle down in much the same way as with the pendulum bob shown in [link].

A soldier in Iraq uses a metal detector to search for explosives and weapons. (credit: U.S. Army)

The rows of rare earth magnets (protruding horizontally) are used for magnetic braking in roller coasters. (credit: Stefan Scheer, Wikimedia Commons)

Induction cooktops have electromagnets under their surface. The magnetic field is varied rapidly producing eddy currents in the base of the pot, causing the pot and its contents to increase in temperature. Induction cooktops have high efficiencies and good response times but the base of the pot needs to be ferromagnetic, iron or steel for induction to work.

Section Summary

- Current loops induced in moving conductors are called eddy currents.
- They can create significant drag, called magnetic damping.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why magnetic damping might not be effective on an object made of several thin conducting layers separated by insulation.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how electromagnetic induction can be used to detect metals? This technique is particularly important in detecting buried landmines for disposal, geophysical prospecting and at airports.

Problems & Exercises

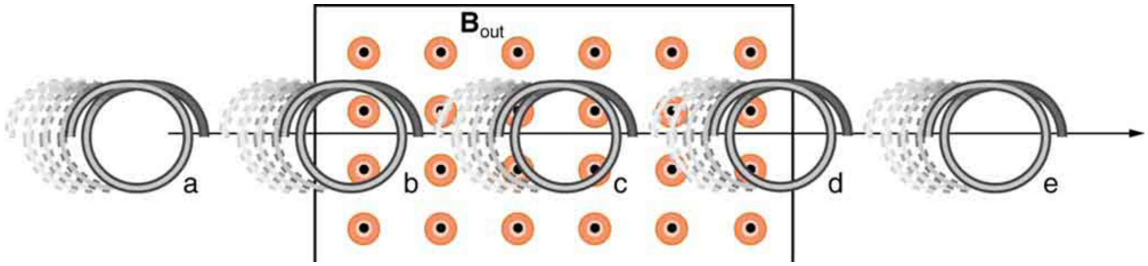
Exercise:

Problem:

Make a drawing similar to [link], but with the pendulum moving in the opposite direction. Then use Faraday’s law, Lenz’s law, and RHR-1 to show that magnetic force opposes motion.

Exercise:

Problem:



A coil is moved into and out of a region of uniform magnetic field.

A coil is moved through a magnetic field as shown in [link]. The field is uniform inside the rectangle and zero outside. What is the direction of the induced current and what is the direction of the magnetic force on the coil at each position shown?

Glossary

eddy current
: a current loop in a conductor caused by motional emf

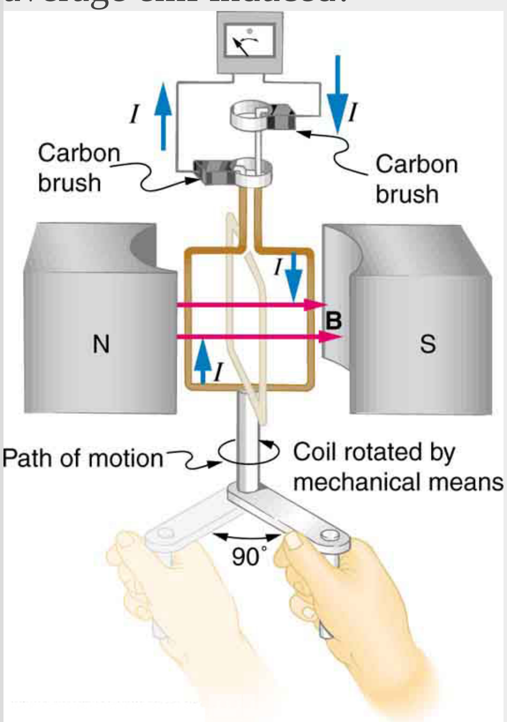
magnetic damping
: the drag produced by eddy currents

Electric Generators

- Calculate the emf induced in a generator.
- Calculate the peak emf which can be induced in a particular generator system.

Electric generators induce an emf by rotating a coil in a magnetic field, as briefly discussed in Induced Emf and Magnetic Flux. We will now explore generators in more detail. Consider the following example.

Example:
Calculating the Emf Induced in a Generator Coil
The generator coil shown in [link] is rotated through one-fourth of a revolution (from $\theta = 0^\circ$ to $\theta = 90^\circ$) in 15.0 ms. The 200-turn circular coil has a 5.00 cm radius and is in a uniform 1.25 T magnetic field. What is the average emf induced?



When this generator coil is rotated through one-fourth of a revolution, the

magnetic flux Φ changes from its maximum to zero, inducing an emf.

Strategy

We use Faraday's law of induction to find the average emf induced over a time Δt:

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = -N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}.$$

We know that $N = 200$ and $\Delta t = 15.0$ ms, and so we must determine the change in flux $\Delta\Phi$ to find emf.

Solution

Since the area of the loop and the magnetic field strength are constant, we see that

Equation:

$$\Delta\Phi = \Delta(BA\text{ cos }\theta) = AB\Delta(\text{cos }\theta).$$

Now, $\Delta(\text{cos }\theta) = -1.0$, since it was given that θ goes from 0º to 90º . Thus $\Delta\Phi = -\text{AB}$, and

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = N\frac{\text{AB}}{\Delta t}.$$

The area of the loop is $A = \pi r^2 = (3.14...)(0.0500\text{ m})^2 = 7.85 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}^2$. Entering this value gives

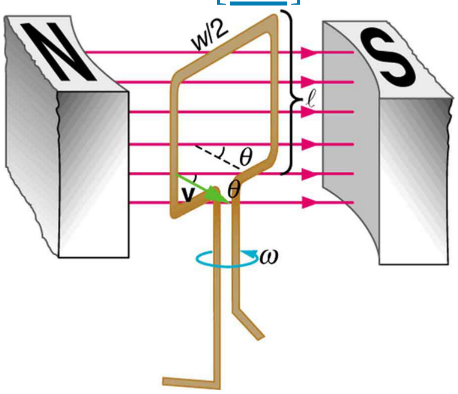
Equation:

$$\text{emf} = 200\frac{(7.85 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}^2)(1.25\text{ T})}{15.0 \times 10^{-3}\text{ s}} = 131\text{ V}.$$

Discussion

This is a practical average value, similar to the 120 V used in household power.

The emf calculated in [link] is the average over one-fourth of a revolution. What is the emf at any given instant? It varies with the angle between the magnetic field and a perpendicular to the coil. We can get an expression for emf as a function of time by considering the motional emf on a rotating rectangular coil of width w and height ℓ in a uniform magnetic field, as illustrated in [link].



A generator with a single rectangular coil rotated at constant angular velocity in a uniform magnetic field produces an emf that varies sinusoidally in time. Note the generator is similar to a motor, except the shaft is rotated to produce a current rather than the other way around.

Charges in the wires of the loop experience the magnetic force, because they are moving in a magnetic field. Charges in the vertical wires experience forces parallel to the wire, causing currents. But those in the top and bottom segments feel a force perpendicular to the wire, which does not cause a current. We can thus find the induced emf by considering only the side wires. Motional emf is given to be $\text{emf} = B\ell v$, where the velocity v is perpendicular to the magnetic field B. Here the velocity is at an angle θ with B, so that its component perpendicular to B is v sin θ (see [link]). Thus in this case the emf induced on each side is $\text{emf} = B\ell v$ sin θ, and they are in the same direction. The total emf around the loop is then

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = 2B\ell v \sin \theta.$$

This expression is valid, but it does not give emf as a function of time. To find the time dependence of emf, we assume the coil rotates at a constant angular velocity ω. The angle θ is related to angular velocity by $\theta = \omega t$, so that

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = 2B\ell v \sin \omega t.$$

Now, linear velocity v is related to angular velocity ω by $v = r\omega$. Here $r = w/2$, so that $v = (w/2)\omega$, and

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = 2B\ell \frac{w}{2}\omega \sin \omega t = (\ell w)B\omega \sin \omega t.$$

Noting that the area of the loop is $A = \ell w$, and allowing for N loops, we find that

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = \text{NAB}\omega \sin \omega t$$

is the **emf induced in a generator coil** of N turns and area A rotating at a constant angular velocity ω in a uniform magnetic field B. This can also be expressed as

Equation:

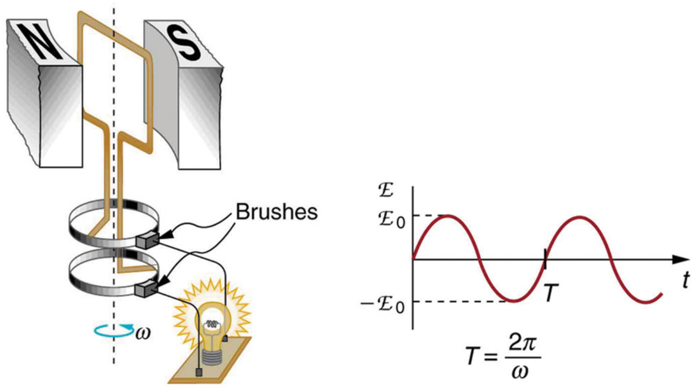
$$\text{emf} = \text{emf}_0 \sin \omega t,$$

where

Equation:

$$\text{emf}_0 = \text{NAB}\omega$$

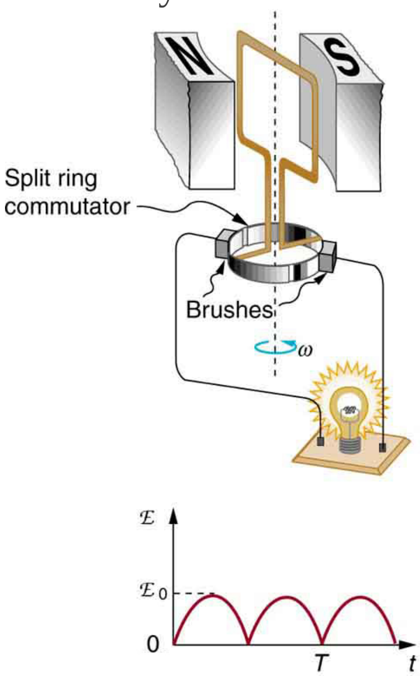
is the maximum **(peak) emf**. Note that the frequency of the oscillation is $f = \omega/2\pi$, and the period is $T = 1/f = 2\pi/\omega$. [link] shows a graph of emf as a function of time, and it now seems reasonable that AC voltage is sinusoidal.



The emf of a generator is sent to a light bulb with the system of rings and brushes shown. The graph gives the emf of the generator as a function of time. emf_0 is the peak emf. The period is $T = 1/f = 2\pi/\omega$, where f is the frequency. Note that the script E stands for emf.

The fact that the peak emf, $\mathrm{emf}_0 = \mathrm{NAB}\omega$, makes good sense. The greater the number of coils, the larger their area, and the stronger the field, the greater the output voltage. It is interesting that the faster the generator is spun (greater ω), the greater the emf. This is noticeable on bicycle generators—at least the cheaper varieties. One of the authors as a juvenile found it amusing to ride his bicycle fast enough to burn out his lights, until he had to ride home lightless one dark night.

[link] shows a scheme by which a generator can be made to produce pulsed DC. More elaborate arrangements of multiple coils and split rings can produce smoother DC, although electronic rather than mechanical means are usually used to make ripple-free DC.



Split rings, called commutators, produce a pulsed DC emf output in this configuration.

Example:

Calculating the Maximum Emf of a Generator

Calculate the maximum emf, emf_0, of the generator that was the subject of [link].

Strategy

Once ω, the angular velocity, is determined, $\text{emf}_0 = \text{NAB}\omega$ can be used to find emf_0. All other quantities are known.

Solution

Angular velocity is defined to be the change in angle per unit time:

Equation:

$$\omega = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t}.$$

One-fourth of a revolution is $\pi/2$ radians, and the time is 0.0150 s; thus,

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \omega & = & \frac{\pi/2\text{ rad}}{0.0150\text{ s}} \\ & = & 104.7\text{ rad/s.} \end{array}$$

104.7 rad/s is exactly 1000 rpm. We substitute this value for ω and the information from the previous example into $\text{emf}_0 = \text{NAB}\omega$, yielding

Equation:

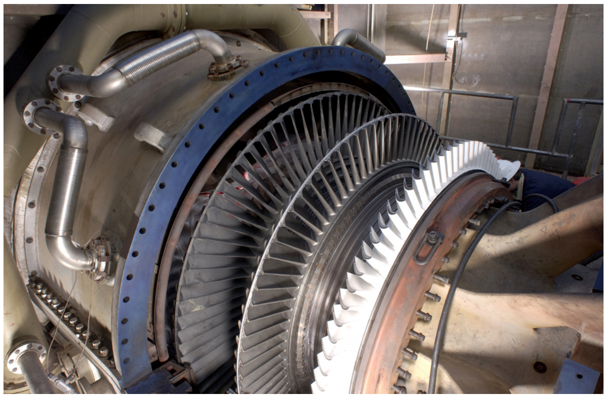
$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{emf}_0 & = & NAB\omega \\ & = & 200(7.85 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}^2)(1.25\text{ T})(104.7\text{ rad/s}). \\ & = & 206\text{ V} \end{array}$$

Discussion

The maximum emf is greater than the average emf of 131 V found in the previous example, as it should be.

In real life, electric generators look a lot different than the figures in this section, but the principles are the same. The source of mechanical energy that turns the coil can be falling water (hydropower), steam produced by the

burning of fossil fuels, or the kinetic energy of wind. [link] shows a cutaway view of a steam turbine; steam moves over the blades connected to the shaft, which rotates the coil within the generator.



Steam turbine/generator. The steam produced by burning coal impacts the turbine blades, turning the shaft which is connected to the generator. (credit: Nabonaco, Wikimedia Commons)

Generators illustrated in this section look very much like the motors illustrated previously. This is not coincidental. In fact, a motor becomes a generator when its shaft rotates. Certain early automobiles used their starter motor as a generator. In Back Emf, we shall further explore the action of a motor as a generator.

Section Summary

- An electric generator rotates a coil in a magnetic field, inducing an emfgiven as a function of time by
  Equation:

$$\text{emf} = \text{NAB}\omega \sin \omega t,$$

where A is the area of an N-turn coil rotated at a constant angular velocity ω in a uniform magnetic field B.

- The peak emf emf_0 of a generator is
  Equation:

$$\text{emf}_0 = \text{NAB}\omega.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Using RHR-1, show that the emfs in the sides of the generator loop in [link] are in the same sense and thus add.

Exercise:

Problem:

The source of a generator's electrical energy output is the work done to turn its coils. How is the work needed to turn the generator related to Lenz's law?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the peak voltage of a generator that rotates its 200-turn, 0.100 m diameter coil at 3600 rpm in a 0.800 T field.

Solution:

474 V

Exercise:

Problem:

At what angular velocity in rpm will the peak voltage of a generator be 480 V, if its 500-turn, 8.00 cm diameter coil rotates in a 0.250 T field?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the peak emf generated by rotating a 1000-turn, 20.0 cm diameter coil in the Earth's 5.00×10^{-5} T magnetic field, given the plane of the coil is originally perpendicular to the Earth's field and is rotated to be parallel to the field in 10.0 ms?

Solution:

0.247 V

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the peak emf generated by a 0.250 m radius, 500-turn coil is rotated one-fourth of a revolution in 4.17 ms, originally having its plane perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field. (This is 60 rev/s.)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A bicycle generator rotates at 1875 rad/s, producing an 18.0 V peak emf. It has a 1.00 by 3.00 cm rectangular coil in a 0.640 T field. How many turns are in the coil? (b) Is this number of turns of wire practical for a 1.00 by 3.00 cm coil?

Solution:

(a) 50

(b) yes

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

This problem refers to the bicycle generator considered in the previous problem. It is driven by a 1.60 cm diameter wheel that rolls on the outside rim of the bicycle tire. (a) What is the velocity of the bicycle if the generator's angular velocity is 1875 rad/s? (b) What is the maximum emf of the generator when the bicycle moves at 10.0 m/s, noting that it was 18.0 V under the original conditions? (c) If the sophisticated generator can vary its own magnetic field, what field strength will it need at 5.00 m/s to produce a 9.00 V maximum emf?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A car generator turns at 400 rpm when the engine is idling. Its 300-turn, 5.00 by 8.00 cm rectangular coil rotates in an adjustable magnetic field so that it can produce sufficient voltage even at low rpms. What is the field strength needed to produce a 24.0 V peak emf? (b) Discuss how this required field strength compares to those available in permanent and electromagnets.

Solution:

(a) 0.477 T

(b) This field strength is small enough that it can be obtained using either a permanent magnet or an electromagnet.

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that if a coil rotates at an angular velocity ω, the period of its AC output is $2\pi/\omega$.

Exercise:

Problem:

A 75-turn, 10.0 cm diameter coil rotates at an angular velocity of 8.00 rad/s in a 1.25 T field, starting with the plane of the coil parallel to the field. (a) What is the peak emf? (b) At what time is the peak emf first reached? (c) At what time is the emf first at its most negative? (d) What is the period of the AC voltage output?

Solution:

(a) 5.89 V

(b) At t=0

(c) 0.393 s

(d) 0.785 s

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If the emf of a coil rotating in a magnetic field is zero at $t = 0$, and increases to its first peak at $t = 0.100\ \text{ms}$, what is the angular velocity of the coil? (b) At what time will its next maximum occur? (c) What is the period of the output? (d) When is the output first one-fourth of its maximum? (e) When is it next one-fourth of its maximum?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A 500-turn coil with a $0.250\ \text{m}^2$ area is spun in the Earth's $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$ field, producing a 12.0 kV maximum emf. (a) At what angular velocity must the coil be spun? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption or premise is responsible?

Solution:

(a) $1.92 \times 10^6 \text{ rad/s}$

(b) This angular velocity is unreasonably high, higher than can be obtained for any mechanical system.

(c) The assumption that a voltage as great as 12.0 kV could be obtained is unreasonable.

Glossary

electric generator
: a device for converting mechanical work into electric energy; it induces an emf by rotating a coil in a magnetic field

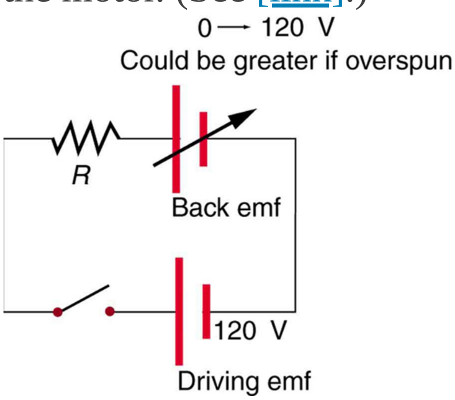
emf induced in a generator coil
: $\text{emf} = \text{NAB}\omega \sin \omega t$, where A is the area of an N-turn coil rotated at a constant angular velocity ω in a uniform magnetic field B, over a period of time t

peak emf
: $\text{emf}_0 = \text{NAB}\omega$

Back Emf

- Explain what back emf is and how it is induced.

It has been noted that motors and generators are very similar. Generators convert mechanical energy into electrical energy, whereas motors convert electrical energy into mechanical energy. Furthermore, motors and generators have the same construction. When the coil of a motor is turned, magnetic flux changes, and an emf (consistent with Faraday's law of induction) is induced. The motor thus acts as a generator whenever its coil rotates. This will happen whether the shaft is turned by an external input, like a belt drive, or by the action of the motor itself. That is, when a motor is doing work and its shaft is turning, an emf is generated. Lenz's law tells us the emf opposes any change, so that the input emf that powers the motor will be opposed by the motor's self-generated emf, called the **back emf** of the motor. (See [link].)



The coil of a DC motor is represented as a resistor in this schematic. The back emf is represented as a variable emf that opposes the one driving the motor. Back emf is zero when the motor is not turning, and it increases

proportionally to the motor’s angular velocity.

Back emf is the generator output of a motor, and so it is proportional to the motor’s angular velocity ω. It is zero when the motor is first turned on, meaning that the coil receives the full driving voltage and the motor draws maximum current when it is on but not turning. As the motor turns faster and faster, the back emf grows, always opposing the driving emf, and reduces the voltage across the coil and the amount of current it draws. This effect is noticeable in a number of situations. When a vacuum cleaner, refrigerator, or washing machine is first turned on, lights in the same circuit dim briefly due to the IR drop produced in feeder lines by the large current drawn by the motor. When a motor first comes on, it draws more current than when it runs at its normal operating speed. When a mechanical load is placed on the motor, like an electric wheelchair going up a hill, the motor slows, the back emf drops, more current flows, and more work can be done. If the motor runs at too low a speed, the larger current can overheat it (via resistive power in the coil, $P = I^2R$), perhaps even burning it out. On the other hand, if there is no mechanical load on the motor, it will increase its angular velocity ω until the back emf is nearly equal to the driving emf. Then the motor uses only enough energy to overcome friction.

Consider, for example, the motor coils represented in [link]. The coils have a $0.400\ \Omega$ equivalent resistance and are driven by a 48.0 V emf. Shortly after being turned on, they draw a current $I = \text{V/R} = (48.0\ \text{V}\ )/\ (0.400\ \Omega) = 120\ \text{A}$ and, thus, dissipate $P = I^2R = 5.76\ \text{kW}$ of energy as heat transfer. Under normal operating conditions for this motor, suppose the back emf is 40.0 V. Then at operating speed, the total voltage across the coils is 8.0 V (48.0 V minus the 40.0 V back emf), and the current drawn is $I = \text{V/R} = (8.0\ \text{V})\ /(\ 0.400\ \Omega) = 20\ \text{A}$. Under normal load, then, the power dissipated is $P = \text{IV} = (20\ \text{A})/(8.0\ \text{V}) = 160\ \text{W}$. The latter will not cause a problem for this motor, whereas the former 5.76 kW would burn out the coils if sustained.

Section Summary

- Any rotating coil will have an induced emf—in motors, this is called back emf, since it opposes the emf input to the motor.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you find that the belt drive connecting a powerful motor to an air conditioning unit is broken and the motor is running freely. Should you be worried that the motor is consuming a great deal of energy for no useful purpose? Explain why or why not.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a motor connected to a 120 V source draws 10.0 A when it first starts. (a) What is its resistance? (b) What current does it draw at its normal operating speed when it develops a 100 V back emf?

Solution:

(a) $12.00\ \Omega$

(b) 1.67 A

Exercise:

Problem:

A motor operating on 240 V electricity has a 180 V back emf at operating speed and draws a 12.0 A current. (a) What is its resistance? (b) What current does it draw when it is first started?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the back emf of a 120 V motor that draws 8.00 A at its normal speed and 20.0 A when first starting?

Solution:

72.0 V

Exercise:

Problem:

The motor in a toy car operates on 6.00 V, developing a 4.50 V back emf at normal speed. If it draws 3.00 A at normal speed, what current does it draw when starting?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

The motor in a toy car is powered by four batteries in series, which produce a total emf of 6.00 V. The motor draws 3.00 A and develops a 4.50 V back emf at normal speed. Each battery has a $0.100\ \Omega$ internal resistance. What is the resistance of the motor?

Solution:

$0.100\ \Omega$

Glossary

back emf
: the emf generated by a running motor, because it consists of a coil turning in a magnetic field; it opposes the voltage powering the motor

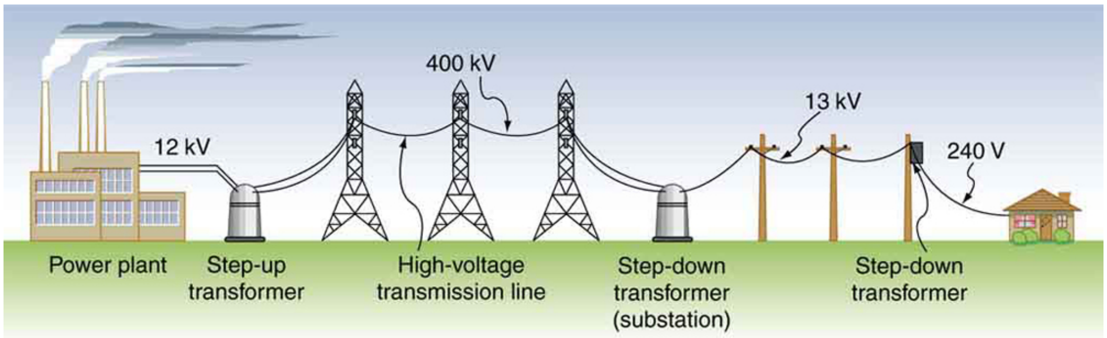
Transformers

- Explain how a transformer works.
- Calculate voltage, current, and/or number of turns given the other quantities.

Transformers do what their name implies—they transform voltages from one value to another (The term voltage is used rather than emf, because transformers have internal resistance). For example, many cell phones, laptops, video games, and power tools and small appliances have a transformer built into their plug-in unit (like that in [link]) that changes 120 V or 240 V AC into whatever voltage the device uses. Transformers are also used at several points in the power distribution systems, such as illustrated in [link]. Power is sent long distances at high voltages, because less current is required for a given amount of power, and this means less line loss, as was discussed previously. But high voltages pose greater hazards, so that transformers are employed to produce lower voltage at the user's location.

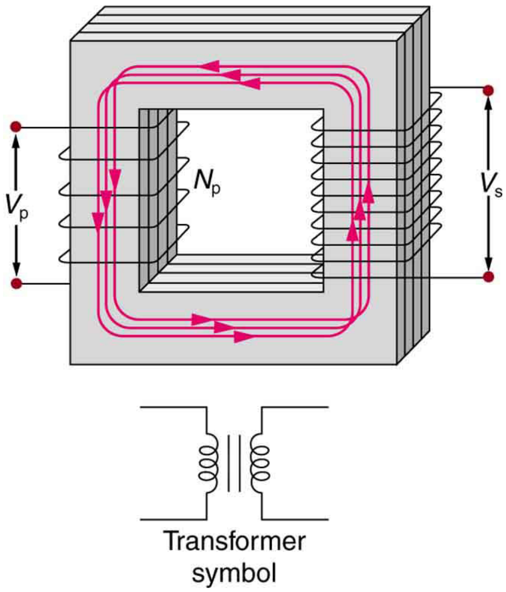
The plug-in transformer has become increasingly familiar with the proliferation of electronic devices that operate on voltages other than common 120 V

AC. Most are in the 3 to 12 V range. (credit: Shop Xtreme)



Transformers change voltages at several points in a power distribution system. Electric power is usually generated at greater than 10 kV, and transmitted long distances at voltages over 200 kV—sometimes as great as 700 kV—to limit energy losses. Local power distribution to neighborhoods or industries goes through a substation and is sent short distances at voltages ranging from 5 to 13 kV. This is reduced to 120, 240, or 480 V for safety at the individual user site.

The type of transformer considered in this text—see [link]—is based on Faraday's law of induction and is very similar in construction to the apparatus Faraday used to demonstrate magnetic fields could cause currents. The two coils are called the *primary* and *secondary coils*. In normal use, the input voltage is placed on the primary, and the secondary produces the transformed output voltage. Not only does the iron core trap the magnetic field created by the primary coil, its magnetization increases the field strength. Since the input voltage is AC, a time-varying magnetic flux is sent to the secondary, inducing its AC output voltage.



A typical construction of a simple transformer has two coils wound on a ferromagnetic core that is laminated to minimize eddy currents. The magnetic field created by the primary is mostly confined to and increased by the core, which transmits it to the secondary coil. Any change in current in the primary induces a current in the secondary.

For the simple transformer shown in [link], the output voltage V_s depends almost entirely on the input voltage V_p and the ratio of the number of loops in the primary and secondary coils. Faraday's law of induction for the secondary coil gives its induced output voltage V_s to be

Equation:

$$V_{\mathrm{s}} = -N_{\mathrm{s}}\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t},$$

where N_{s} is the number of loops in the secondary coil and $\Delta\Phi/\ \Delta t$ is the rate of change of magnetic flux. Note that the output voltage equals the induced emf ($V_{\mathrm{s}} = \mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{s}}$), provided coil resistance is small (a reasonable assumption for transformers). The cross-sectional area of the coils is the same on either side, as is the magnetic field strength, and so $\Delta\Phi/\Delta t$ is the same on either side. The input primary voltage V_{p} is also related to changing flux by

Equation:

$$V_p = -N_{\mathrm{p}}\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}.$$

The reason for this is a little more subtle. Lenz's law tells us that the primary coil opposes the change in flux caused by the input voltage V_{p}, hence the minus sign (This is an example of *self-inductance*, a topic to be explored in some detail in later sections). Assuming negligible coil resistance, Kirchhoff's loop rule tells us that the induced emf exactly equals the input voltage. Taking the ratio of these last two equations yields a useful relationship:

Equation:

$$\frac{V_{\mathrm{s}}}{V_{\mathrm{p}}} = \frac{N_{\mathrm{s}}}{N_{\mathrm{p}}}.$$

This is known as the **transformer equation**, and it simply states that the ratio of the secondary to primary voltages in a transformer equals the ratio of the number of loops in their coils.

The output voltage of a transformer can be less than, greater than, or equal to the input voltage, depending on the ratio of the number of loops in their coils. Some transformers even provide a variable output by allowing connection to be made at different points on the secondary coil. A **step-up**

transformer is one that increases voltage, whereas a **step-down transformer** decreases voltage. Assuming, as we have, that resistance is negligible, the electrical power output of a transformer equals its input. This is nearly true in practice—transformer efficiency often exceeds 99%. Equating the power input and output,

Equation:

$$P_{\text{p}} = I_{\text{p}} V_{\text{p}} = I_{\text{s}} V_{\text{s}} = P_{\text{s}}.$$

Rearranging terms gives

Equation:

$$\frac{V_{\text{s}}}{V_{\text{p}}} = \frac{I_{\text{p}}}{I_{\text{s}}}.$$

Combining this with $\frac{V_{\text{s}}}{V_{\text{p}}} = \frac{N_{\text{s}}}{N_{\text{p}}}$, we find that

Equation:

$$\frac{I_{\text{s}}}{I_{\text{p}}} = \frac{N_{\text{p}}}{N_{\text{s}}}$$

is the relationship between the output and input currents of a transformer. So if voltage increases, current decreases. Conversely, if voltage decreases, current increases.

Example:

Calculating Characteristics of a Step-Up Transformer

A portable x-ray unit has a step-up transformer, the 120 V input of which is transformed to the 100 kV output needed by the x-ray tube. The primary has 50 loops and draws a current of 10.00 A when in use. (a) What is the number of loops in the secondary? (b) Find the current output of the secondary.

Strategy and Solution for (a)

We solve $\frac{V_s}{V_p} = \frac{N_s}{N_p}$ for N_s, the number of loops in the secondary, and enter the known values. This gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} N_s &= N_p \frac{V_s}{V_p} \\ &= (50)\frac{100{,}000\ \text{V}}{120\ \text{V}} = 4.17 \times 10^4. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)

A large number of loops in the secondary (compared with the primary) is required to produce such a large voltage. This would be true for neon sign transformers and those supplying high voltage inside TVs and CRTs.

Strategy and Solution for (b)

We can similarly find the output current of the secondary by solving $\frac{I_s}{I_p} = \frac{N_p}{N_s}$ for I_s and entering known values. This gives

Equation:

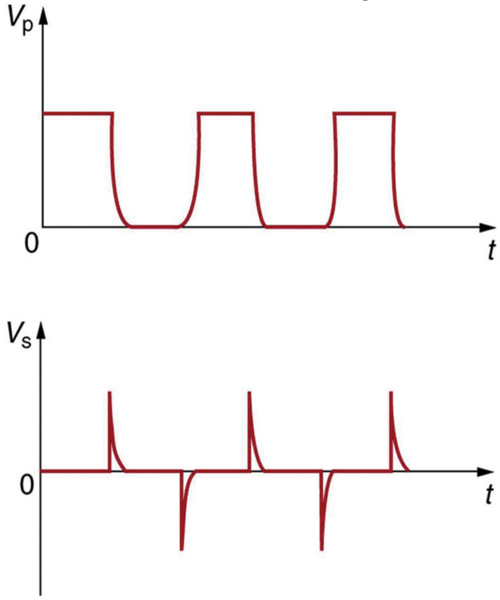
$$\begin{aligned} I_s &= I_p \frac{N_p}{N_s} \\ &= (10.00\ \text{A})\ \frac{50}{4.17 \times 10^4} = 12.0\ \text{mA}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (b)

As expected, the current output is significantly less than the input. In certain spectacular demonstrations, very large voltages are used to produce long arcs, but they are relatively safe because the transformer output does not supply a large current. Note that the power input here is $P_p = I_p V_p = (10.00\ \text{A})(120\ \text{V}) = 1.20\ \text{kW}$. This equals the power output $P_p = I_s V_s = (12.0\ \text{mA})(100\ \text{kV}) = 1.20\ \text{kW}$, as we assumed in the derivation of the equations used.

The fact that transformers are based on Faraday's law of induction makes it clear why we cannot use transformers to change DC voltages. If there is no change in primary voltage, there is no voltage induced in the secondary. One possibility is to connect DC to the primary coil through a switch. As the switch is opened and closed, the secondary produces a voltage like that

in [link]. This is not really a practical alternative, and AC is in common use wherever it is necessary to increase or decrease voltages.



Transformers do not work for pure DC voltage input, but if it is switched on and off as on the top graph, the output will look something like that on the bottom graph. This is not the sinusoidal AC most AC appliances need.

Example:
Calculating Characteristics of a Step-Down Transformer
A battery charger meant for a series connection of ten nickel-cadmium batteries (total emf of 12.5 V DC) needs to have a 15.0 V output to charge the batteries. It uses a step-down transformer with a 200-loop primary and a 120 V input. (a) How many loops should there be in the secondary coil? (b) If the charging current is 16.0 A, what is the input current?

Strategy and Solution for (a)

You would expect the secondary to have a small number of loops. Solving $\frac{V_\mathrm{s}}{V_\mathrm{p}} = \frac{N_\mathrm{s}}{N_\mathrm{p}}$ for N_s and entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} N_\mathrm{s} &= N_\mathrm{p}\frac{V_\mathrm{s}}{V_\mathrm{p}} \\ &= (200)\frac{15.0\ \mathrm{V}}{120\ \mathrm{V}} = 25. \end{aligned}$$

Strategy and Solution for (b)

The current input can be obtained by solving $\frac{I_\mathrm{s}}{I_\mathrm{p}} = \frac{N_\mathrm{p}}{N_\mathrm{s}}$ for I_p and entering known values. This gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} I_\mathrm{p} &= I_\mathrm{s}\frac{N_\mathrm{s}}{N_\mathrm{p}} \\ &= (16.0\ \mathrm{A})\frac{25}{200} = 2.00\ \mathrm{A}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

The number of loops in the secondary is small, as expected for a step-down transformer. We also see that a small input current produces a larger output current in a step-down transformer. When transformers are used to operate large magnets, they sometimes have a small number of very heavy loops in the secondary. This allows the secondary to have low internal resistance and produce large currents. Note again that this solution is based on the assumption of 100% efficiency—or power out equals power in ($P_\mathrm{p} = P_\mathrm{s}$)—reasonable for good transformers. In this case the primary and secondary power is 240 W. (Verify this for yourself as a consistency check.) Note that the Ni-Cd batteries need to be charged from a DC power source (as would a 12 V battery). So the AC output of the secondary coil needs to be converted into DC. This is done using something called a rectifier, which uses devices called diodes that allow only a one-way flow of current.

Transformers have many applications in electrical safety systems, which are discussed in Electrical Safety: Systems and Devices.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Generator
Generate electricity with a bar magnet! Discover the physics behind the phenomena by exploring magnets and how you can use them to make a bulb light.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/1e9b7292-ae74-11e5-a9dc-c7c8521ba8e6/generator/#sim-generator

Section Summary

- Transformers use induction to transform voltages from one value to another.
- For a transformer, the voltages across the primary and secondary coils are related by
  Equation:
  $$\frac{V_s}{V_p}=\frac{N_s}{N_p},$$
  where V_p and V_s are the voltages across primary and secondary coils having N_p and N_s turns.
- The currents I_p and I_s in the primary and secondary coils are related by $\frac{I_s}{I_p}=\frac{N_p}{N_s}$.
- A step-up transformer increases voltage and decreases current, whereas a step-down transformer decreases voltage and increases current.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain what causes physical vibrations in transformers at twice the frequency of the AC power involved.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A plug-in transformer, like that in [link], supplies 9.00 V to a video game system. (a) How many turns are in its secondary coil, if its input voltage is 120 V and the primary coil has 400 turns? (b) What is its input current when its output is 1.30 A?

Solution:

(a) 30.0

(b) 9.75×10^{-2} A

Exercise:

Problem:

An American traveler in New Zealand carries a transformer to convert New Zealand's standard 240 V to 120 V so that she can use some small appliances on her trip. (a) What is the ratio of turns in the primary and secondary coils of her transformer? (b) What is the ratio of input to output current? (c) How could a New Zealander traveling in the United States use this same transformer to power her 240 V appliances from 120 V?

Exercise:

Problem:

A cassette recorder uses a plug-in transformer to convert 120 V to 12.0 V, with a maximum current output of 200 mA. (a) What is the current input? (b) What is the power input? (c) Is this amount of power reasonable for a small appliance?

Solution:

(a) 20.0 mA

(b) 2.40 W

(c) Yes, this amount of power is quite reasonable for a small appliance.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the voltage output of a transformer used for rechargeable flashlight batteries, if its primary has 500 turns, its secondary 4 turns, and the input voltage is 120 V? (b) What input current is required to produce a 4.00 A output? (c) What is the power input?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The plug-in transformer for a laptop computer puts out 7.50 V and can supply a maximum current of 2.00 A. What is the maximum input current if the input voltage is 240 V? Assume 100% efficiency. (b) If the actual efficiency is less than 100%, would the input current need to be greater or smaller? Explain.

Solution:

(a) 0.063 A

(b) Greater input current needed.

Exercise:

Problem:

A multipurpose transformer has a secondary coil with several points at which a voltage can be extracted, giving outputs of 5.60, 12.0, and 480 V. (a) The input voltage is 240 V to a primary coil of 280 turns. What are the numbers of turns in the parts of the secondary used to produce the output voltages? (b) If the maximum input current is 5.00 A, what are the maximum output currents (each used alone)?

Exercise:

Problem:

A large power plant generates electricity at 12.0 kV. Its old transformer once converted the voltage to 335 kV. The secondary of this transformer is being replaced so that its output can be 750 kV for more efficient cross-country transmission on upgraded transmission lines. (a) What is the ratio of turns in the new secondary compared with the old secondary? (b) What is the ratio of new current output to old output (at 335 kV) for the same power? (c) If the upgraded transmission lines have the same resistance, what is the ratio of new line power loss to old?

Solution:

(a) 2.2

(b) 0.45

(c) 0.20, or 20.0%

Exercise:

Problem:

If the power output in the previous problem is 1000 MW and line resistance is $2.00\ \Omega$, what were the old and new line losses?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

The 335 kV AC electricity from a power transmission line is fed into the primary coil of a transformer. The ratio of the number of turns in the secondary to the number in the primary is $N_{\text{s}}/N_{\text{p}} = 1000$. (a) What voltage is induced in the secondary? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption or premise is responsible?

Solution:

(a) 335 MV

(b) way too high, well beyond the breakdown voltage of air over reasonable distances

(c) input voltage is too high

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a double transformer to be used to create very large voltages. The device consists of two stages. The first is a transformer that produces a much larger output voltage than its input. The output of the first transformer is used as input to a second transformer that further increases the voltage. Construct a problem in which you calculate the output voltage of the final stage based on the input voltage of the first stage and the number of turns or loops in both parts of both transformers (four coils in all). Also calculate the maximum output current of the final stage based on the input current. Discuss the possibility of power losses in the devices and the effect on the output current and power.

Glossary

transformer
: a device that transforms voltages from one value to another using induction

transformer equation
: the equation showing that the ratio of the secondary to primary voltages in a transformer equals the ratio of the number of loops in their coils; $\frac{V_{\text{s}}}{V_{\text{p}}} = \frac{N_{\text{s}}}{N_{\text{p}}}$

step-up transformer
: a transformer that increases voltage

step-down transformer

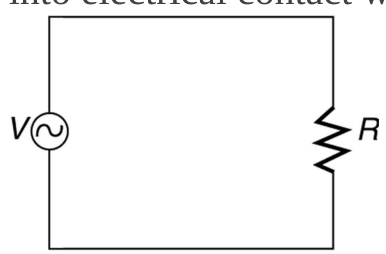
a transformer that decreases voltage

Electrical Safety: Systems and Devices

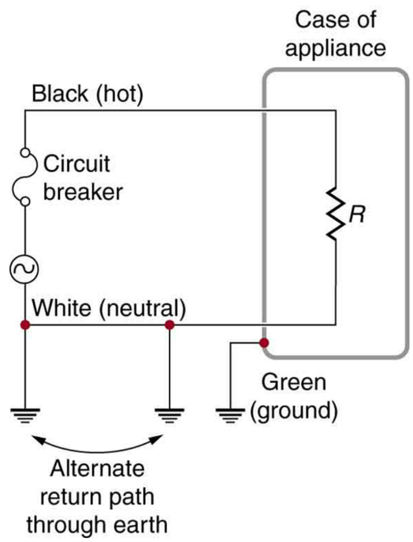
- Explain how various modern safety features in electric circuits work, with an emphasis on how induction is employed.

Electricity has two hazards. A **thermal hazard** occurs when there is electrical overheating. A **shock hazard** occurs when electric current passes through a person. Both hazards have already been discussed. Here we will concentrate on systems and devices that prevent electrical hazards.

[link] shows the schematic for a simple AC circuit with no safety features. This is not how power is distributed in practice. Modern household and industrial wiring requires the **three-wire system**, shown schematically in [link], which has several safety features. First is the familiar *circuit breaker* (or *fuse*) to prevent thermal overload. Second, there is a protective *case* around the appliance, such as a toaster or refrigerator. The case's safety feature is that it prevents a person from touching exposed wires and coming into electrical contact with the circuit, helping prevent shocks.



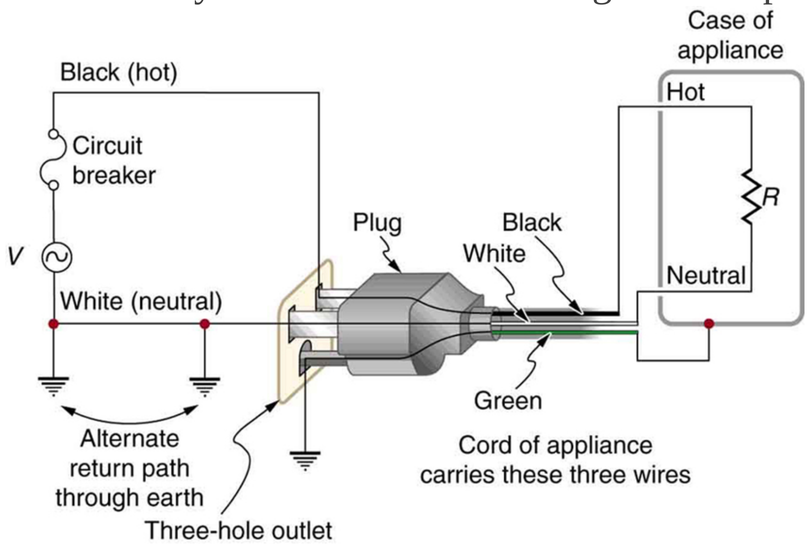
Schematic of a simple AC circuit with a voltage source and a single appliance represented by the resistance R. There are no safety features in this circuit.



The three-wire system connects the neutral wire to the earth at the voltage source and user location, forcing it to be at zero volts and supplying an alternative return path for the current through the earth. Also grounded to zero volts is the case of the appliance. A circuit breaker or fuse protects against thermal overload and is in series on the active (live/hot) wire. Note that wire insulation colors vary with region and it is essential to

check locally to determine which color codes are in use (and even if they were followed in the particular installation).

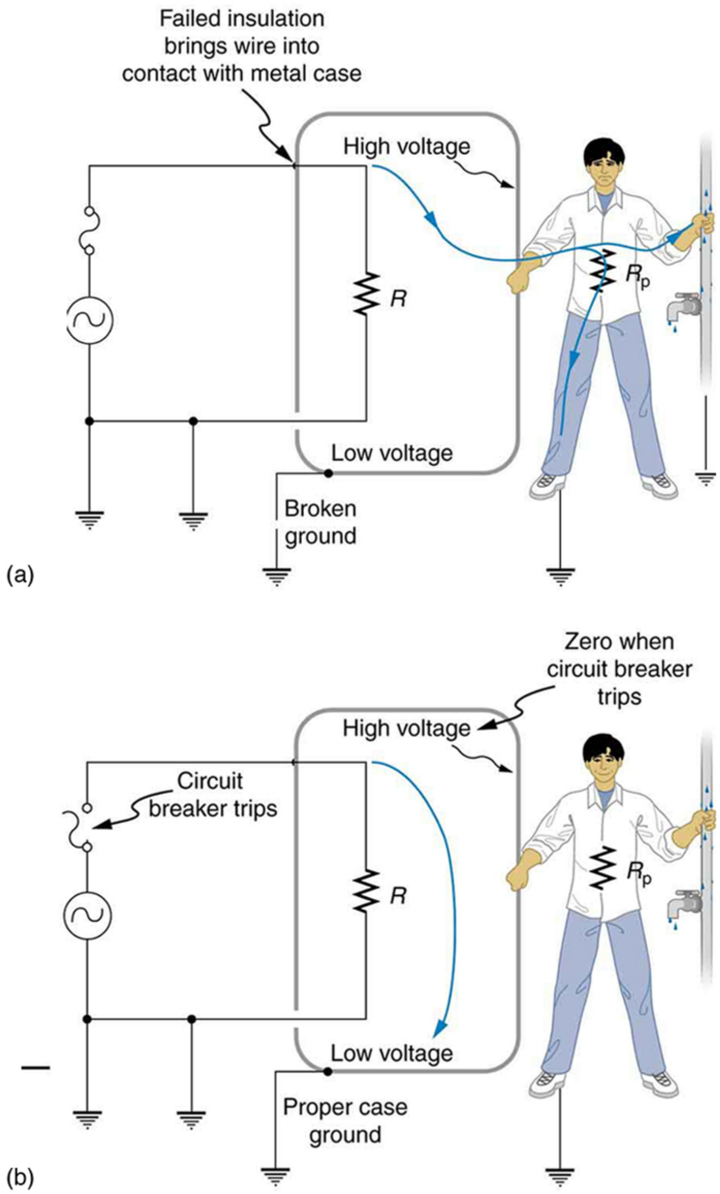
There are *three connections to earth or ground* (hereafter referred to as "earth/ground") shown in [link]. Recall that an earth/ground connection is a low-resistance path directly to the earth. The two earth/ground connections on the *neutral wire* force it to be at zero volts relative to the earth, giving the wire its name. This wire is therefore safe to touch even if its insulation, usually white, is missing. The neutral wire is the return path for the current to follow to complete the circuit. Furthermore, the two earth/ground connections supply an alternative path through the earth, a good conductor, to complete the circuit. The earth/ground connection closest to the power source could be at the generating plant, while the other is at the user's location. The third earth/ground is to the case of the appliance, through the green *earth/ground wire*, forcing the case, too, to be at zero volts. The *live* or *hot wire* (hereafter referred to as "live/hot") supplies voltage and current to operate the appliance. [link] shows a more pictorial version of how the three-wire system is connected through a three-prong plug to an appliance.



The standard three-prong plug can only be inserted in one way, to assure proper function of the three-wire system.

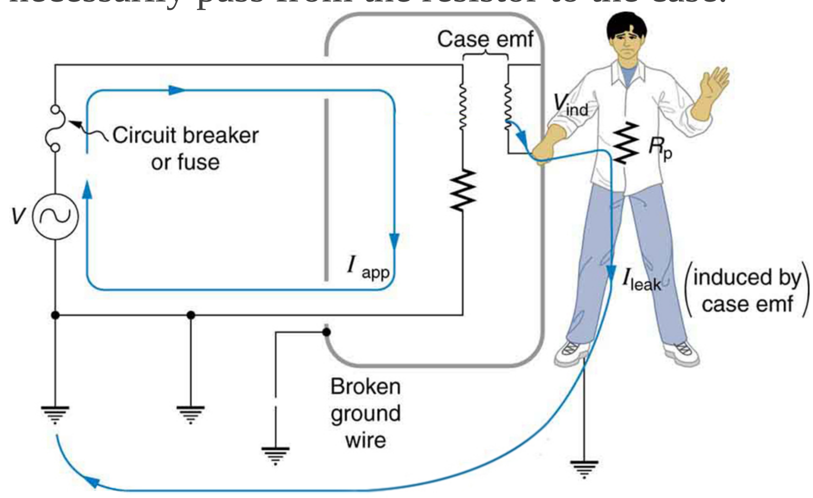
A note on insulation color-coding: Insulating plastic is color-coded to identify live/hot, neutral and ground wires but these codes vary around the world. Live/hot wires may be brown, red, black, blue or grey. Neutral wire may be blue, black or white. Since the same color may be used for live/hot or neutral in different parts of the world, it is essential to determine the color code in your region. The only exception is the earth/ground wire which is often green but may be yellow or just bare wire. Striped coatings are sometimes used for the benefit of those who are colorblind.

The three-wire system replaced the older two-wire system, which lacks an earth/ground wire. Under ordinary circumstances, insulation on the live/hot and neutral wires prevents the case from being directly in the circuit, so that the earth/ground wire may seem like double protection. Grounding the case solves more than one problem, however. The simplest problem is worn insulation on the live/hot wire that allows it to contact the case, as shown in [link]. Lacking an earth/ground connection (some people cut the third prong off the plug because they only have outdated two hole receptacles), a severe shock is possible. This is particularly dangerous in the kitchen, where a good connection to earth/ground is available through water on the floor or a water faucet. With the earth/ground connection intact, the circuit breaker will trip, forcing repair of the appliance. Why are some appliances still sold with two-prong plugs? These have nonconducting cases, such as power tools with impact resistant plastic cases, and are called *doubly insulated*. Modern two-prong plugs can be inserted into the asymmetric standard outlet in only one way, to ensure proper connection of live/hot and neutral wires.



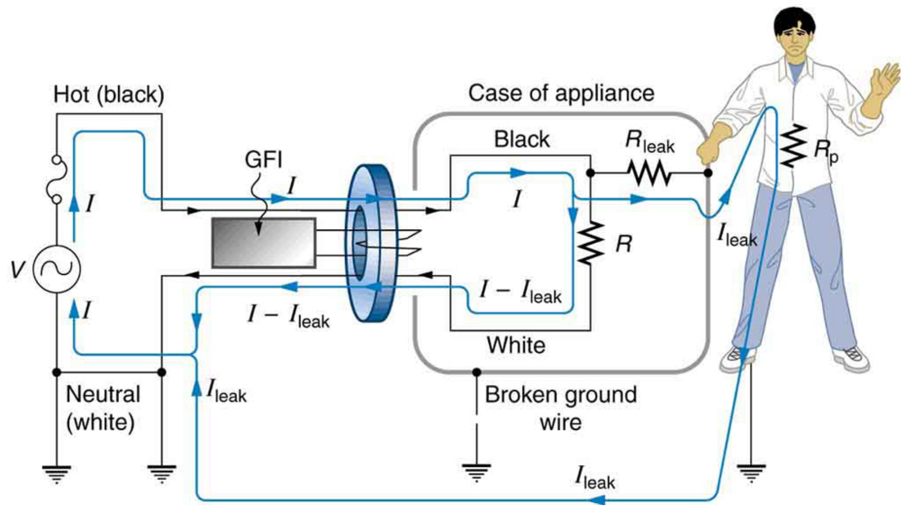
Worn insulation allows the live/hot wire to come into direct contact with the metal case of this appliance. (a) The earth/ground connection being broken, the person is severely shocked. The appliance may operate normally in this situation. (b) With a proper earth/ground, the circuit breaker trips, forcing repair of the appliance.

Electromagnetic induction causes a more subtle problem that is solved by grounding the case. The AC current in appliances can induce an emf on the case. If grounded, the case voltage is kept near zero, but if the case is not grounded, a shock can occur as pictured in [link]. Current driven by the induced case emf is called a *leakage current*, although current does not necessarily pass from the resistor to the case.



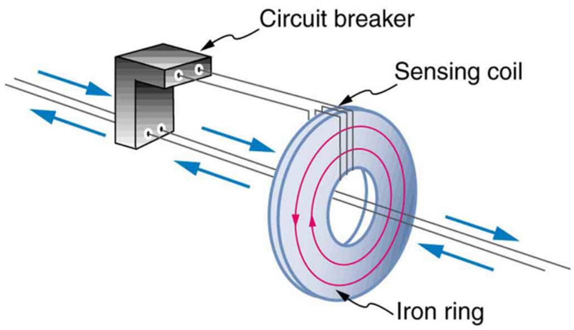
AC currents can induce an emf on the case of an appliance. The voltage can be large enough to cause a shock. If the case is grounded, the induced emf is kept near zero.

A *ground fault interrupter* (GFI) is a safety device found in updated kitchen and bathroom wiring that works based on electromagnetic induction. GFIs compare the currents in the live/hot and neutral wires. When live/hot and neutral currents are not equal, it is almost always because current in the neutral is less than in the live/hot wire. Then some of the current, again called a leakage current, is returning to the voltage source by a path other than through the neutral wire. It is assumed that this path presents a hazard, such as shown in [link]. GFIs are usually set to interrupt the circuit if the leakage current is greater than 5 mA, the accepted maximum harmless shock. Even if the leakage current goes safely to earth/ground through an intact earth/ground wire, the GFI will trip, forcing repair of the leakage.



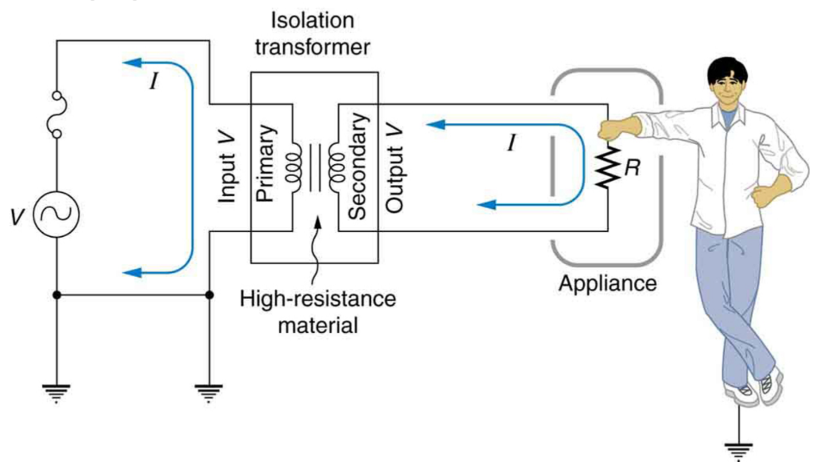
A ground fault interrupter (GFI) compares the currents in the live/hot and neutral wires and will trip if their difference exceeds a safe value. The leakage current here follows a hazardous path that could have been prevented by an intact earth/ground wire.

[link] shows how a GFI works. If the currents in the live/hot and neutral wires are equal, then they induce equal and opposite emfs in the coil. If not, then the circuit breaker will trip.



A GFI compares currents by using both to induce an emf in the same coil. If the currents are equal, they will induce equal but opposite emfs.

Another induction-based safety device is the *isolation transformer*, shown in [link]. Most isolation transformers have equal input and output voltages. Their function is to put a large resistance between the original voltage source and the device being operated. This prevents a complete circuit between them, even in the circumstance shown. There is a complete circuit through the appliance. But there is not a complete circuit for current to flow through the person in the figure, who is touching only one of the transformer's output wires, and neither output wire is grounded. The appliance is isolated from the original voltage source by the high resistance of the material between the transformer coils, hence the name isolation transformer. For current to flow through the person, it must pass through the high-resistance material between the coils, through the wire, the person, and back through the earth—a path with such a large resistance that the current is negligible.



An isolation transformer puts a large resistance between the original voltage source and the device, preventing a complete circuit between them.

The basics of electrical safety presented here help prevent many electrical hazards. Electrical safety can be pursued to greater depths. There are, for

example, problems related to different earth/ground connections for appliances in close proximity. Many other examples are found in hospitals. Microshock-sensitive patients, for instance, require special protection. For these people, currents as low as 0.1 mA may cause ventricular fibrillation. The interested reader can use the material presented here as a basis for further study.

Section Summary

- Electrical safety systems and devices are employed to prevent thermal and shock hazards.
- Circuit breakers and fuses interrupt excessive currents to prevent thermal hazards.
- The three-wire system guards against thermal and shock hazards, utilizing live/hot, neutral, and earth/ground wires, and grounding the neutral wire and case of the appliance.
- A ground fault interrupter (GFI) prevents shock by detecting the loss of current to unintentional paths.
- An isolation transformer insulates the device being powered from the original source, also to prevent shock.
- Many of these devices use induction to perform their basic function.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Does plastic insulation on live/hot wires prevent shock hazards, thermal hazards, or both?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why are ordinary circuit breakers and fuses ineffective in preventing shocks?

Exercise:

Problem:

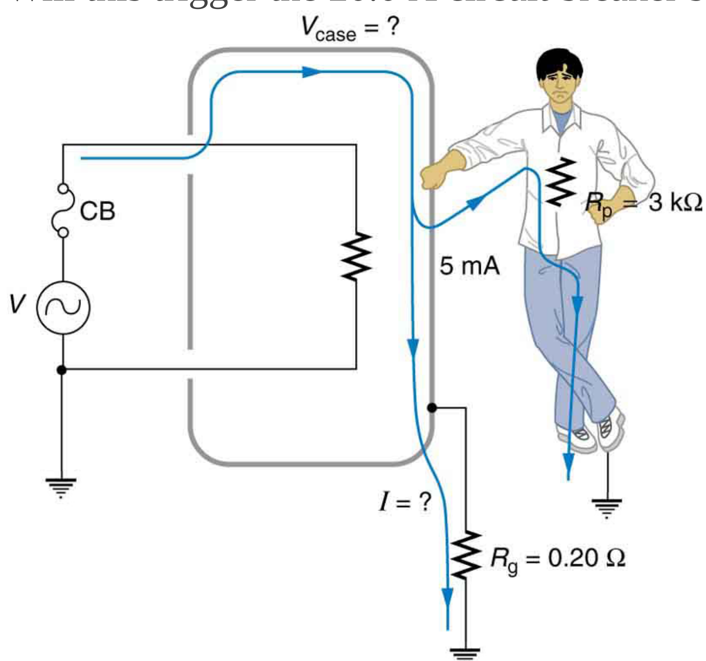
A GFI may trip just because the live/hot and neutral wires connected to it are significantly different in length. Explain why.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A short circuit to the grounded metal case of an appliance occurs as shown in [link]. The person touching the case is wet and only has a resistance to earth/ground. (a) What is the voltage on the case if 5.00 mA flows through the person? (b) What is the current in the short circuit if the resistance of the earth/ground wire is ? (c) Will this trigger the 20.0 A circuit breaker supplying the appliance?



A person can be shocked even when the case of an appliance is grounded. The large short circuit current

produces a voltage on the case of the appliance, since the resistance of the earth/ground wire is not zero.

Solution:

(a) 15.0 V

(b) 75.0 A

(c) yes

Glossary

thermal hazard
: the term for electrical hazards due to overheating

shock hazard
: the term for electrical hazards due to current passing through a human

three-wire system
: the wiring system used at present for safety reasons, with live, neutral, and ground wires

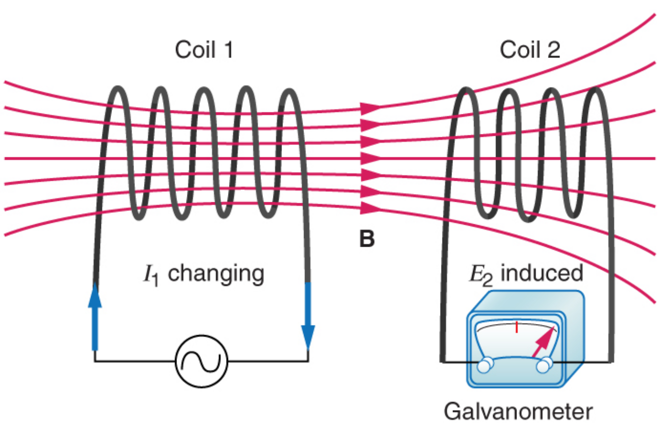
Inductance

- Calculate the inductance of an inductor.
- Calculate the energy stored in an inductor.
- Calculate the emf generated in an inductor.

Inductors

Induction is the process in which an emf is induced by changing magnetic flux. Many examples have been discussed so far, some more effective than others. Transformers, for example, are designed to be particularly effective at inducing a desired voltage and current with very little loss of energy to other forms. Is there a useful physical quantity related to how “effective” a given device is? The answer is yes, and that physical quantity is called **inductance**.

Mutual inductance is the effect of Faraday’s law of induction for one device upon another, such as the primary coil in transmitting energy to the secondary in a transformer. See [link], where simple coils induce emfs in one another.



These coils can induce emfs in one another like an inefficient transformer. Their mutual inductance M indicates the

effectiveness of the coupling between them. Here a change in current in coil 1 is seen to induce an emf in coil 2. (Note that "E_2 induced" represents the induced emf in coil 2.)

In the many cases where the geometry of the devices is fixed, flux is changed by varying current. We therefore concentrate on the rate of change of current, $\Delta I/\Delta t$, as the cause of induction. A change in the current I_1 in one device, coil 1 in the figure, induces an emf_2 in the other. We express this in equation form as

Equation:

$$\text{emf}_2 = -M\frac{\Delta I_1}{\Delta t},$$

where M is defined to be the mutual inductance between the two devices. The minus sign is an expression of Lenz's law. The larger the mutual inductance M, the more effective the coupling. For example, the coils in [link] have a small M compared with the transformer coils in [link]. Units for M are $(\text{V}\cdot\text{s})/\text{A} = \Omega\cdot\text{s}$, which is named a **henry** (H), after Joseph Henry. That is, $1\ \text{H} = 1\ \Omega\cdot\text{s}$.

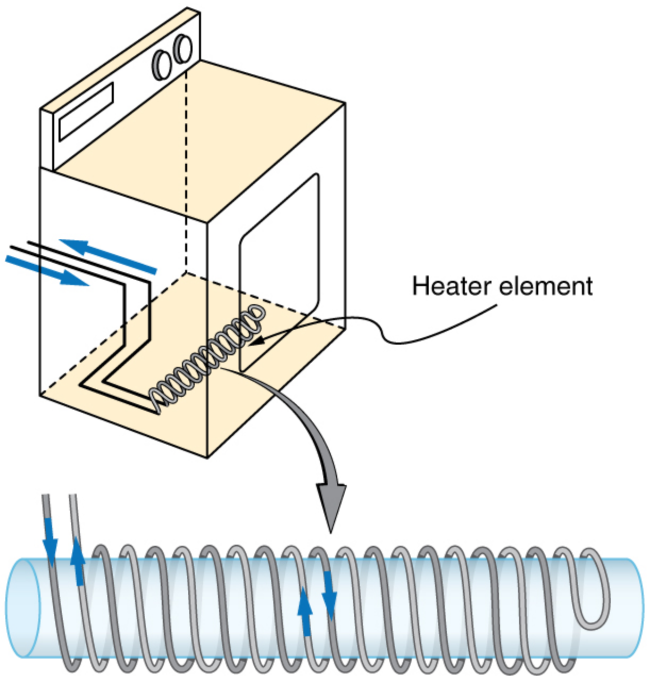
Nature is symmetric here. If we change the current I_2 in coil 2, we induce an emf_1 in coil 1, which is given by

Equation:

$$\text{emf}_1 = -M\frac{\Delta I_2}{\Delta t},$$

where M is the same as for the reverse process. Transformers run backward with the same effectiveness, or mutual inductance M.

A large mutual inductance M may or may not be desirable. We want a transformer to have a large mutual inductance. But an appliance, such as an electric clothes dryer, can induce a dangerous emf on its case if the mutual inductance between its coils and the case is large. One way to reduce mutual inductance M is to counterwind coils to cancel the magnetic field produced. (See [link].)



The heating coils of an electric clothes dryer can be counter-wound so that their magnetic fields cancel one another, greatly reducing the mutual inductance with the case of the dryer.

Self-inductance, the effect of Faraday’s law of induction of a device on itself, also exists. When, for example, current through a coil is increased, the magnetic field and flux also increase, inducing a counter emf, as

required by Lenz’s law. Conversely, if the current is decreased, an emf is induced that opposes the decrease. Most devices have a fixed geometry, and so the change in flux is due entirely to the change in current ΔI through the device. The induced emf is related to the physical geometry of the device and the rate of change of current. It is given by

Equation:

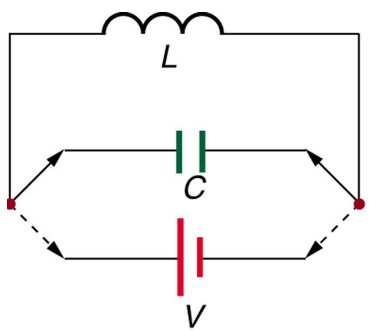
$$\text{emf} = -L\frac{\Delta I}{\Delta t},$$

where L is the self-inductance of the device. A device that exhibits significant self-inductance is called an **inductor**, and given the symbol in [link].

The minus sign is an expression of Lenz’s law, indicating that emf opposes the change in current. Units of self-inductance are henries (H) just as for mutual inductance. The larger the self-inductance L of a device, the greater its opposition to any change in current through it. For example, a large coil with many turns and an iron core has a large L and will not allow current to change quickly. To avoid this effect, a small L must be achieved, such as by counterwinding coils as in [link].

A 1 H inductor is a large inductor. To illustrate this, consider a device with $L = 1.0\text{ H}$ that has a 10 A current flowing through it. What happens if we try to shut off the current rapidly, perhaps in only 1.0 ms? An emf, given by $\text{emf} = -L(\Delta I/\Delta t)$, will oppose the change. Thus an emf will be induced given by $\text{emf} = -L(\Delta I/\Delta t) = (1.0\text{ H})[(10\text{ A})/(1.0\text{ ms})] = 10{,}000\text{ V}$. The positive sign means this large voltage is in the same direction as the current, opposing its decrease. Such large emfs can cause arcs, damaging switching equipment, and so it may be necessary to change current more slowly.

There are uses for such a large induced voltage. Camera flashes use a battery, two inductors that function as a transformer, and a switching system or oscillator to induce large voltages. (Remember that we need a changing magnetic field, brought about by a changing current, to induce a voltage in another coil.) The oscillator system will do this many times as the battery voltage is boosted to over one thousand volts. (You may hear the high pitched whine from the transformer as the capacitor is being charged.) A capacitor stores the high voltage for later use in powering the flash. (See [link].)



Through rapid switching of an inductor, 1.5 V batteries can be used to induce emfs of several thousand volts. This voltage can be used to store charge in a capacitor for later use, such as in a camera flash attachment.

It is possible to calculate L for an inductor given its geometry (size and shape) and knowing the magnetic field that it produces. This is difficult in most cases, because of the complexity of the field created. So in this text the inductance L is usually a given quantity. One exception is the solenoid, because it has a very uniform field inside, a nearly zero field outside, and a simple shape. It is instructive to derive an equation for its inductance. We start by noting that the induced emf is given by Faraday’s law of induction as $\text{emf} = -N(\Delta\Phi/\Delta t)$ and, by the definition of self-inductance, as $\text{emf} = -L(\Delta I/\Delta t)$. Equating these yields

Equation:

$$\text{emf} = -N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t} = -L\frac{\Delta I}{\Delta t}.$$

Solving for L gives

Equation:

$$L = N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta I}.$$

This equation for the self-inductance L of a device is always valid. It means that self-inductance L depends on how effective the current is in creating flux; the more effective, the greater $\Delta\Phi/\ \Delta I$ is.

Let us use this last equation to find an expression for the inductance of a solenoid. Since the area A of a solenoid is fixed, the change in flux is $\Delta\Phi = \Delta(BA) = A\Delta B$. To find ΔB, we note that the magnetic field of a solenoid is given by $B = \mu_0\text{nI} = \mu_0\frac{\text{NI}}{\ell}$. (Here $n = N/\ell$, where N is the number of coils and ℓ is the solenoid’s length.) Only the current changes, so that $\Delta\Phi = A\Delta B = \mu_0\text{NA}\frac{\Delta I}{\ell}$. Substituting $\Delta\Phi$ into $L = N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta I}$ gives

Equation:

$$L = N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta I} = N\frac{\mu_0\text{NA}\frac{\Delta I}{\ell}}{\Delta I}.$$

This simplifies to
Equation:

$$L = \frac{\mu_0 N^2 A}{\ell} \text{(solenoid)}.$$

This is the self-inductance of a solenoid of cross-sectional area A and length ℓ. Note that the inductance depends only on the physical characteristics of the solenoid, consistent with its definition.

Example:
Calculating the Self-inductance of a Moderate Size Solenoid
Calculate the self-inductance of a 10.0 cm long, 4.00 cm diameter solenoid that has 200 coils.
Strategy
This is a straightforward application of $L = \frac{\mu_0 N^2 A}{\ell}$, since all quantities in the equation except L are known.
Solution
Use the following expression for the self-inductance of a solenoid:
Equation:

$$L = \frac{\mu_0 N^2 A}{\ell}.$$

The cross-sectional area in this example is $A = \pi r^2 = (3.14...)(0.0200 \text{ m})^2 = 1.26 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^2$, N is given to be 200, and the length ℓ is 0.100 m. We know the permeability of free space is $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ T} \cdot \text{m/A}$. Substituting these into the expression for L gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} L &= \frac{(4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ T}\cdot\text{m/A})(200)^2(1.26 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^2)}{0.100 \text{ m}} \\ &= 0.632 \text{ mH}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This solenoid is moderate in size. Its inductance of nearly a millihenry is also considered moderate.

One common application of inductance is used in traffic lights that can tell when vehicles are waiting at the intersection. An electrical circuit with an inductor is placed in the road under the place a waiting car will stop over. The body of the car increases the inductance and the circuit changes sending a signal to the traffic lights to change colors. Similarly, metal detectors used for airport security employ the same technique. A coil or inductor in the metal detector frame acts as both a transmitter and a receiver. The pulsed signal in the transmitter coil induces a signal in the receiver. The self-inductance of the circuit is affected by any metal object in the path. Such detectors can be adjusted for sensitivity and also can indicate the approximate location of metal found on a person. (But they will not be able to detect any plastic explosive such as that found on the "underwear bomber.") See [link].

The familiar security gate at an airport can not only detect metals but also indicate their approximate height above the floor.

(credit: Alexbuirds, Wikimedia Commons)

Energy Stored in an Inductor

We know from Lenz's law that inductances oppose changes in current. There is an alternative way to look at this opposition that is based on energy. Energy is stored in a magnetic field. It takes time to build up energy, and it also takes time to deplete energy; hence, there is an opposition to rapid change. In an inductor, the magnetic field is directly proportional to current and to the inductance of the device. It can be shown that the **energy stored in an inductor** E_{ind} is given by
Equation:

$$E_{\text{ind}} = \frac{1}{2}LI^2.$$

This expression is similar to that for the energy stored in a capacitor.

Example:
Calculating the Energy Stored in the Field of a Solenoid
How much energy is stored in the 0.632 mH inductor of the preceding example when a 30.0 A current flows through it?
Strategy
The energy is given by the equation $E_{\text{ind}} = \frac{1}{2}LI^2$, and all quantities except E_{ind} are known.
Solution
Substituting the value for L found in the previous example and the given current into $E_{\text{ind}} = \frac{1}{2}LI^2$ gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{ind}} &= \frac{1}{2}LI^2 \\ &= 0.5(0.632 \times 10^{-3}\text{ H})(30.0\text{ A})^2 = 0.284\text{ J}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This amount of energy is certainly enough to cause a spark if the current is suddenly switched off. It cannot be built up instantaneously unless the power input is infinite.

Section Summary

- Inductance is the property of a device that tells how effectively it induces an emf in another device.
- Mutual inductance is the effect of two devices in inducing emfs in each other.
- A change in current $\Delta I_1/\Delta t$ in one induces an emf emf_2 in the second:
  Equation:
  $$\mathrm{emf}_2 = -M\frac{\Delta I_1}{\Delta t},$$
  where M is defined to be the mutual inductance between the two devices, and the minus sign is due to Lenz's law.
- Symmetrically, a change in current $\Delta I_2/\Delta t$ through the second device induces an emf emf_1 in the first:
  Equation:
  $$\mathrm{emf}_1 = -M\frac{\Delta I_2}{\Delta t},$$
  where M is the same mutual inductance as in the reverse process.
- Current changes in a device induce an emf in the device itself.
- Self-inductance is the effect of the device inducing emf in itself.
- The device is called an inductor, and the emf induced in it by a change in current through it is
  Equation:
  $$\mathrm{emf} = -L\frac{\Delta I}{\Delta t},$$

where L is the self-inductance of the inductor, and $\Delta I/\Delta t$ is the rate of change of current through it. The minus sign indicates that emf opposes the change in current, as required by Lenz's law.

- The unit of self- and mutual inductance is the henry (H), where $1\ \text{H} = 1\ \Omega\cdot\text{s}$.
- The self-inductance L of an inductor is proportional to how much flux changes with current. For an N-turn inductor,
  Equation:
  $$L = N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta I}.$$
- The self-inductance of a solenoid is
  Equation:
  $$L = \frac{\mu_0 N^2 A}{\ell}\,(\text{solenoid}),$$
  where N is its number of turns in the solenoid, A is its cross-sectional area, ℓ is its length, and $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T}\cdot\text{m/A}$ is the permeability of free space.
- The energy stored in an inductor E_{ind} is
  Equation:
  $$E_{\text{ind}} = \frac{1}{2}LI^2.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How would you place two identical flat coils in contact so that they had the greatest mutual inductance? The least?

Exercise:

Problem:

How would you shape a given length of wire to give it the greatest self-inductance? The least?

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify, as was concluded without proof in [link], that units of $\mathrm{T \cdot m^2 / \mathit{A} = \Omega \cdot s = H}$.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Two coils are placed close together in a physics lab to demonstrate Faraday’s law of induction. A current of 5.00 A in one is switched off in 1.00 ms, inducing a 9.00 V emf in the other. What is their mutual inductance?

Solution:

1.80 mH

Exercise:

Problem:

If two coils placed next to one another have a mutual inductance of 5.00 mH, what voltage is induced in one when the 2.00 A current in the other is switched off in 30.0 ms?

Exercise:

Problem:

The 4.00 A current through a 7.50 mH inductor is switched off in 8.33 ms. What is the emf induced opposing this?

Solution:

3.60 V

Exercise:

Problem:

A device is turned on and 3.00 A flows through it 0.100 ms later. What is the self-inductance of the device if an induced 150 V emf opposes this?

Exercise:

Problem:

Starting with $\text{emf}_2 = -M\frac{\Delta I_1}{\Delta t}$, show that the units of inductance are $(\text{V}\cdot\text{s})/\text{A} = \Omega\cdot\text{s}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Camera flashes charge a capacitor to high voltage by switching the current through an inductor on and off rapidly. In what time must the 0.100 A current through a 2.00 mH inductor be switched on or off to induce a 500 V emf?

Exercise:

Problem:

A large research solenoid has a self-inductance of 25.0 H. (a) What induced emf opposes shutting it off when 100 A of current through it is switched off in 80.0 ms? (b) How much energy is stored in the inductor at full current? (c) At what rate in watts must energy be dissipated to switch the current off in 80.0 ms? (d) In view of the answer to the last part, is it surprising that shutting it down this quickly is difficult?

Solution:

(a) 31.3 kV

(b) 125 kJ

(c) 1.56 MW

(d) No, it is not surprising since this power is very high.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the self-inductance of a 50.0 cm long, 10.0 cm diameter solenoid having 1000 loops. (b) How much energy is stored in this inductor when 20.0 A of current flows through it? (c) How fast can it be turned off if the induced emf cannot exceed 3.00 V?

Exercise:

Problem:

A precision laboratory resistor is made of a coil of wire 1.50 cm in diameter and 4.00 cm long, and it has 500 turns. (a) What is its self-inductance? (b) What average emf is induced if the 12.0 A current through it is turned on in 5.00 ms (one-fourth of a cycle for 50 Hz AC)? (c) What is its inductance if it is shortened to half its length and counter-wound (two layers of 250 turns in opposite directions)?

Solution:

(a) 1.39 mH

(b) 3.33 V

(c) Zero

Exercise:

Problem:

The heating coils in a hair dryer are 0.800 cm in diameter, have a combined length of 1.00 m, and a total of 400 turns. (a) What is their total self-inductance assuming they act like a single solenoid? (b) How much energy is stored in them when 6.00 A flows? (c) What average emf opposes shutting them off if this is done in 5.00 ms (one-fourth of a cycle for 50 Hz AC)?

Exercise:

Problem:

When the 20.0 A current through an inductor is turned off in 1.50 ms, an 800 V emf is induced, opposing the change. What is the value of the self-inductance?

Solution:

60.0 mH

Exercise:

Problem:

How fast can the 150 A current through a 0.250 H inductor be shut off if the induced emf cannot exceed 75.0 V?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A very large, superconducting solenoid such as one used in MRI scans, stores 1.00 MJ of energy in its magnetic field when 100 A flows. (a) Find its self-inductance. (b) If the coils "go normal," they gain resistance and start to dissipate thermal energy. What temperature increase is produced if all the stored energy goes into heating the 1000 kg magnet, given its average specific heat is $200\ \text{J/kg}\cdot{}^{\text{o}}\text{C}$?

Solution:

(a) 200 H

(b) 5.00°C

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A 25.0 H inductor has 100 A of current turned off in 1.00 ms. (a) What voltage is induced to oppose this? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption or premise is responsible?

Glossary

inductance
: a property of a device describing how efficient it is at inducing emf in another device

mutual inductance
: how effective a pair of devices are at inducing emfs in each other

henry
: the unit of inductance; $1\text{ H}=1\ \Omega\cdot\text{s}$

self-inductance
: how effective a device is at inducing emf in itself

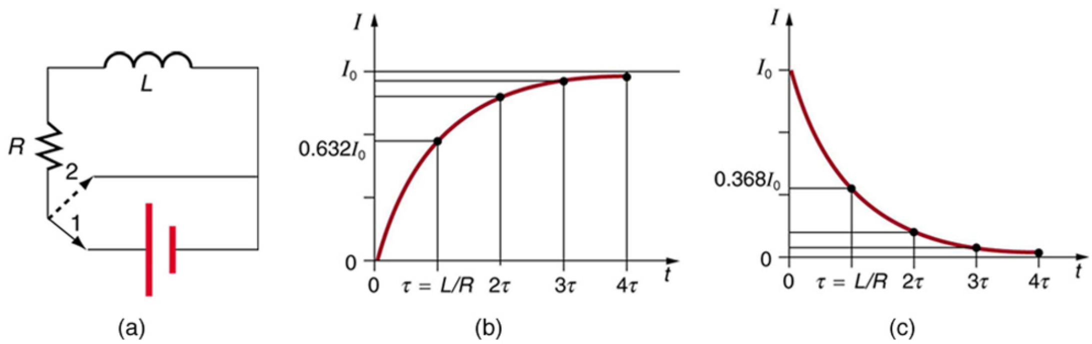
inductor
: a device that exhibits significant self-inductance

energy stored in an inductor
: self-explanatory; calculated by $E_{\text{ind}}=\frac{1}{2}LI^{2}$

RL Circuits

- Calculate the current in an RL circuit after a specified number of characteristic time steps.
- Calculate the characteristic time of an RL circuit.
- Sketch the current in an RL circuit over time.

We know that the current through an inductor L cannot be turned on or off instantaneously. The change in current changes flux, inducing an emf opposing the change (Lenz's law). How long does the opposition last? Current *will* flow and *can* be turned off, but how long does it take? [link] shows a switching circuit that can be used to examine current through an inductor as a function of time.



(a) An *RL* circuit with a switch to turn current on and off. When in position 1, the battery, resistor, and inductor are in series and a current is established. In position 2, the battery is removed and the current eventually stops because of energy loss in the resistor. (b) A graph of current growth versus time when the switch is moved to position 1. (c) A graph of current decay when the switch is moved to position 2.

When the switch is first moved to position 1 (at $t = 0$), the current is zero and it eventually rises to $I_0 = \mathrm{V/R}$, where R is the total resistance of the circuit. The opposition of the inductor L is greatest at the beginning, because the amount of change is greatest. The opposition it poses is in the form of an induced emf, which decreases to zero as the current approaches its final value. The opposing emf is proportional to the amount of change

left. This is the hallmark of an exponential behavior, and it can be shown with calculus that

Equation:

$$I = I_0(1 - e^{-t/\tau}) \quad \text{(turning on)},$$

is the current in an *RL* circuit when switched on (Note the similarity to the exponential behavior of the voltage on a charging capacitor). The initial current is zero and approaches $I_0 = \mathrm{V/R}$ with a **characteristic time constant** τ for an *RL* circuit, given by

Equation:

$$\tau = \frac{L}{R},$$

where τ has units of seconds, since $1\ \mathrm{H{=}1\ \Omega{\cdot}s}$. In the first period of time τ, the current rises from zero to $0.632I_0$, since $I = I_0(1 - e^{-1}) = I_0(1 - 0.368) = 0.632I_0$. The current will go 0.632 of the remainder in the next time τ. A well-known property of the exponential is that the final value is never exactly reached, but 0.632 of the remainder to that value is achieved in every characteristic time τ. In just a few multiples of the time τ, the final value is very nearly achieved, as the graph in [link](b) illustrates.

The characteristic time τ depends on only two factors, the inductance L and the resistance R. The greater the inductance L, the greater τ is, which makes sense since a large inductance is very effective in opposing change. The smaller the resistance R, the greater τ is. Again this makes sense, since a small resistance means a large final current and a greater change to get there. In both cases—large L and small R —more energy is stored in the inductor and more time is required to get it in and out.

When the switch in [link](a) is moved to position 2 and cuts the battery out of the circuit, the current drops because of energy dissipation by the resistor. But this is also not instantaneous, since the inductor opposes the decrease in current by inducing an emf in the same direction as the battery that drove

the current. Furthermore, there is a certain amount of energy, $(1/2)LI_0^2$, stored in the inductor, and it is dissipated at a finite rate. As the current approaches zero, the rate of decrease slows, since the energy dissipation rate is I^2R. Once again the behavior is exponential, and I is found to be

Equation:

$$I = I_0 e^{-t/\tau} \quad \text{(turning off)}.$$

(See [link](c).) In the first period of time $\tau = L/R$ after the switch is closed, the current falls to 0.368 of its initial value, since $I = I_0 e^{-1} = 0.368I_0$. In each successive time τ, the current falls to 0.368 of the preceding value, and in a few multiples of τ, the current becomes very close to zero, as seen in the graph in [link](c).

Example:

Calculating Characteristic Time and Current in an *RL* Circuit

(a) What is the characteristic time constant for a 7.50 mH inductor in series with a $3.00\ \Omega$ resistor? (b) Find the current 5.00 ms after the switch is moved to position 2 to disconnect the battery, if it is initially 10.0 A.

Strategy for (a)

The time constant for an *RL* circuit is defined by $\tau = L/R$.

Solution for (a)

Entering known values into the expression for τ given in $\tau = L/R$ yields

Equation:

$$\tau = \frac{L}{R} = \frac{7.50\ \text{mH}}{3.00\ \Omega} = 2.50\ \text{ms}.$$

Discussion for (a)

This is a small but definitely finite time. The coil will be very close to its full current in about ten time constants, or about 25 ms.

Strategy for (b)

We can find the current by using $I = I_0 e^{-t/\tau}$, or by considering the decline in steps. Since the time is twice the characteristic time, we consider the process in steps.

Solution for (b)
In the first 2.50 ms, the current declines to 0.368 of its initial value, which is
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} I &= 0.368 I_0 = (0.368)(10.0 \text{ A}) \\ &= 3.68 \text{ A at } t = 2.50 \text{ ms.} \end{aligned}$$

After another 2.50 ms, or a total of 5.00 ms, the current declines to 0.368 of the value just found. That is,
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} I\prime &= 0.368 I = (0.368)(3.68 \text{ A}) \\ &= 1.35 \text{ A at } t = 5.00 \text{ ms.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (b)
After another 5.00 ms has passed, the current will be 0.183 A (see [link]); so, although it does die out, the current certainly does not go to zero instantaneously.

In summary, when the voltage applied to an inductor is changed, the current also changes, *but the change in current lags the change in voltage in an RL circuit*. In Reactance, Inductive and Capacitive, we explore how an *RL* circuit behaves when a sinusoidal AC voltage is applied.

Section Summary

- When a series connection of a resistor and an inductor—an *RL* circuit—is connected to a voltage source, the time variation of the current is
  Equation:

  $$I = I_0(1 - e^{-t/\tau}) \quad \text{(turning on).}$$

  where $I_0 = V/R$ is the final current.

- The characteristic time constant τ is $\tau = \frac{L}{R}$, where L is the inductance and R is the resistance.
- In the first time constant τ, the current rises from zero to $0.632I_0$, and 0.632 of the remainder in every subsequent time interval τ.
- When the inductor is shorted through a resistor, current decreases as **Equation:**

$$I = I_0 e^{-t/\tau} \quad \text{(turning off)}.$$

  Here I_0 is the initial current.
- Current falls to $0.368I_0$ in the first time interval τ, and 0.368 of the remainder toward zero in each subsequent time τ.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

If you want a characteristic *RL* time constant of 1.00 s, and you have a $500\ \Omega$ resistor, what value of self-inductance is needed?

Solution:

500 H

Exercise:

Problem:

Your *RL* circuit has a characteristic time constant of 20.0 ns, and a resistance of $5.00\ \text{M}\Omega$. (a) What is the inductance of the circuit? (b) What resistance would give you a 1.00 ns time constant, perhaps needed for quick response in an oscilloscope?

Exercise:

Problem:

A large superconducting magnet, used for magnetic resonance imaging, has a 50.0 H inductance. If you want current through it to be adjustable with a 1.00 s characteristic time constant, what is the minimum resistance of system?

Solution:

50.0 Ω

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that after a time of 10.0 ms, the current for the situation considered in [link] will be 0.183 A as stated.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a supply of inductors ranging from 1.00 nH to 10.0 H, and resistors ranging from 0.100 Ω to 1.00 MΩ. What is the range of characteristic *RL* time constants you can produce by connecting a single resistor to a single inductor?

Solution:

1.00×10^{-18} s to 0.100 s

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the characteristic time constant of a 25.0 mH inductor that has a resistance of 4.00 Ω? (b) If it is connected to a 12.0 V battery, what is the current after 12.5 ms?

Exercise:

Problem:

What percentage of the final current I_0 flows through an inductor L in series with a resistor R, three time constants after the circuit is completed?

Solution:

95.0%

Exercise:

Problem:

The 5.00 A current through a 1.50 H inductor is dissipated by a $2.00\ \Omega$ resistor in a circuit like that in [link] with the switch in position 2. (a) What is the initial energy in the inductor? (b) How long will it take the current to decline to 5.00% of its initial value? (c) Calculate the average power dissipated, and compare it with the initial power dissipated by the resistor.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Use the exact exponential treatment to find how much time is required to bring the current through an 80.0 mH inductor in series with a $15.0\ \Omega$ resistor to 99.0% of its final value, starting from zero. (b) Compare your answer to the approximate treatment using integral numbers of τ. (c) Discuss how significant the difference is.

Solution:

(a) 24.6 ms

(b) 26.7 ms

(c) 9% difference, which is greater than the inherent uncertainty in the given parameters.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using the exact exponential treatment, find the time required for the current through a 2.00 H inductor in series with a $0.500\ \Omega$ resistor to be reduced to 0.100% of its original value. (b) Compare your answer to the approximate treatment using integral numbers of τ. (c) Discuss how significant the difference is.

Glossary

characteristic time constant
: denoted by τ, of a particular series *RL* circuit is calculated by $\tau = \frac{L}{R}$, where L is the inductance and R is the resistance

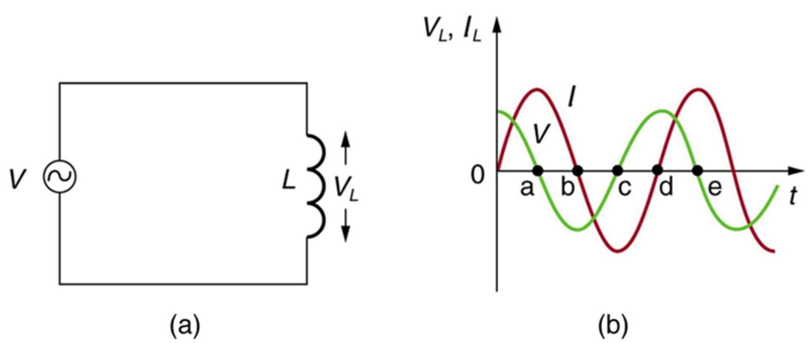
Reactance, Inductive and Capacitive

- Sketch voltage and current versus time in simple inductive, capacitive, and resistive circuits.
- Calculate inductive and capacitive reactance.
- Calculate current and/or voltage in simple inductive, capacitive, and resistive circuits.

Many circuits also contain capacitors and inductors, in addition to resistors and an AC voltage source. We have seen how capacitors and inductors respond to DC voltage when it is switched on and off. We will now explore how inductors and capacitors react to sinusoidal AC voltage.

Inductors and Inductive Reactance

Suppose an inductor is connected directly to an AC voltage source, as shown in [link]. It is reasonable to assume negligible resistance, since in practice we can make the resistance of an inductor so small that it has a negligible effect on the circuit. Also shown is a graph of voltage and current as functions of time.



(a) An AC voltage source in series with an inductor having negligible resistance. (b) Graph of current and voltage across the inductor as functions of time.

The graph in [link](b) starts with voltage at a maximum. Note that the current starts at zero and rises to its peak *after* the voltage that drives it, just as was the case when DC voltage was switched on in the preceding section. When the voltage becomes negative at point a, the current begins to decrease; it becomes zero at point b, where voltage is its most negative. The current then becomes negative, again following the voltage. The voltage becomes positive at point c and begins to make the current less negative. At point d, the current goes through zero just as the voltage reaches its positive peak to start another cycle. This behavior is summarized as follows:

Note:
AC Voltage in an Inductor
When a sinusoidal voltage is applied to an inductor, the voltage leads the current by one-fourth of a cycle, or by a 90º phase angle.

Current lags behind voltage, since inductors oppose change in current. Changing current induces a back emf $V = -L(\Delta I/\Delta t)$. This is considered to be an effective resistance of the inductor to AC. The rms current I through an inductor L is given by a version of Ohm's law:
Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{X_L},$$

where V is the rms voltage across the inductor and X_L is defined to be
Equation:

$$X_L = 2\pi fL,$$

with f the frequency of the AC voltage source in hertz (An analysis of the circuit using Kirchhoff's loop rule and calculus actually produces this expression). X_L is called the **inductive reactance**, because the inductor

reacts to impede the current. X_L has units of ohms ($1\ \text{H} = 1\ \Omega \cdot \text{s}$, so that frequency times inductance has units of $(\text{cycles/s})(\Omega \cdot \text{s}) = \Omega$), consistent with its role as an effective resistance. It makes sense that X_L is proportional to L, since the greater the induction the greater its resistance to change. It is also reasonable that X_L is proportional to frequency f, since greater frequency means greater change in current. That is, $\Delta I/\Delta t$ is large for large frequencies (large f, small Δt). The greater the change, the greater the opposition of an inductor.

Example:

Calculating Inductive Reactance and then Current

(a) Calculate the inductive reactance of a 3.00 mH inductor when 60.0 Hz and 10.0 kHz AC voltages are applied. (b) What is the rms current at each frequency if the applied rms voltage is 120 V?

Strategy

The inductive reactance is found directly from the expression $X_L = 2\pi\text{fL}$. Once X_L has been found at each frequency, Ohm's law as stated in the Equation $I = V/X_L$ can be used to find the current at each frequency.

Solution for (a)

Entering the frequency and inductance into Equation $X_L = 2\pi\text{fL}$ gives

Equation:

$$X_L = 2\pi\text{fL} = 6.28(60.0/\text{s})(3.00\ \text{mH}) = 1.13\ \Omega\ \text{at}\ 60\ \text{Hz}.$$

Similarly, at 10 kHz,

Equation:

$$X_L = 2\pi\text{fL} = 6.28(1.00 \times 10^4/\text{s})(3.00\ \text{mH}) = 188\ \Omega\ \text{at}\ 10\ \text{kHz}.$$

Solution for (b)

The rms current is now found using the version of Ohm's law in Equation $I = V/X_L$, given the applied rms voltage is 120 V. For the first frequency, this yields

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{X_L} = \frac{120\text{ V}}{1.13\ \Omega} = 106\text{ A at }60\text{ Hz}.$$

Similarly, at 10 kHz,

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{X_L} = \frac{120\text{ V}}{188\ \Omega} = 0.637\text{ A at }10\text{ kHz}.$$

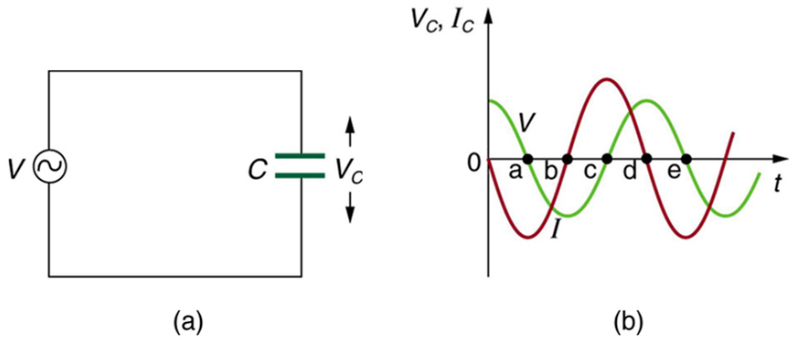
Discussion

The inductor reacts very differently at the two different frequencies. At the higher frequency, its reactance is large and the current is small, consistent with how an inductor impedes rapid change. Thus high frequencies are impeded the most. Inductors can be used to filter out high frequencies; for example, a large inductor can be put in series with a sound reproduction system or in series with your home computer to reduce high-frequency sound output from your speakers or high-frequency power spikes into your computer.

Note that although the resistance in the circuit considered is negligible, the AC current is not extremely large because inductive reactance impedes its flow. With AC, there is no time for the current to become extremely large.

Capacitors and Capacitive Reactance

Consider the capacitor connected directly to an AC voltage source as shown in [link]. The resistance of a circuit like this can be made so small that it has a negligible effect compared with the capacitor, and so we can assume negligible resistance. Voltage across the capacitor and current are graphed as functions of time in the figure.



(a) An AC voltage source in series with a capacitor C having negligible resistance. (b) Graph of current and voltage across the capacitor as functions of time.

The graph in [link] starts with voltage across the capacitor at a maximum. The current is zero at this point, because the capacitor is fully charged and halts the flow. Then voltage drops and the current becomes negative as the capacitor discharges. At point a, the capacitor has fully discharged ($Q = 0$ on it) and the voltage across it is zero. The current remains negative between points a and b, causing the voltage on the capacitor to reverse. This is complete at point b, where the current is zero and the voltage has its most negative value. The current becomes positive after point b, neutralizing the charge on the capacitor and bringing the voltage to zero at point c, which allows the current to reach its maximum. Between points c and d, the current drops to zero as the voltage rises to its peak, and the process starts to repeat. Throughout the cycle, the voltage follows what the current is doing by one-fourth of a cycle:

Note:
AC Voltage in a Capacitor
When a sinusoidal voltage is applied to a capacitor, the voltage follows the current by one-fourth of a cycle, or by a 90° phase angle.

The capacitor is affecting the current, having the ability to stop it altogether when fully charged. Since an AC voltage is applied, there is an rms current, but it is limited by the capacitor. This is considered to be an effective resistance of the capacitor to AC, and so the rms current I in the circuit containing only a capacitor C is given by another version of Ohm's law to be

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{X_C},$$

where V is the rms voltage and X_C is defined (As with X_L, this expression for X_C results from an analysis of the circuit using Kirchhoff's rules and calculus) to be

Equation:

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC},$$

where X_C is called the **capacitive reactance**, because the capacitor reacts to impede the current. X_C has units of ohms (verification left as an exercise for the reader). X_C is inversely proportional to the capacitance C; the larger the capacitor, the greater the charge it can store and the greater the current that can flow. It is also inversely proportional to the frequency f; the greater the frequency, the less time there is to fully charge the capacitor, and so it impedes current less.

Example:

Calculating Capacitive Reactance and then Current

(a) Calculate the capacitive reactance of a 5.00 mF capacitor when 60.0 Hz and 10.0 kHz AC voltages are applied. (b) What is the rms current if the applied rms voltage is 120 V?

Strategy

The capacitive reactance is found directly from the expression in $X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$. Once X_C has been found at each frequency, Ohm's law stated as $I = V/X_C$ can be used to find the current at each frequency.

Solution for (a)

Entering the frequency and capacitance into $X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$ gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} X_C &= \frac{1}{2\pi fC} \\ &= \frac{1}{6.28(60.0/\mathrm{s})(5.00\ \mu\mathrm{F})} = 531\ \Omega \text{ at } 60\text{ Hz.} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, at 10 kHz,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} X_C &= \frac{1}{2\pi fC} = \frac{1}{6.28(1.00\times10^4/\mathrm{s})(5.00\ \mu\mathrm{F})} \\ &= 3.18\ \Omega \text{ at } 10\text{ kHz} \end{aligned}.$$

Solution for (b)

The rms current is now found using the version of Ohm's law in $I = V/X_C$, given the applied rms voltage is 120 V. For the first frequency, this yields

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{X_C} = \frac{120\text{ V}}{531\ \Omega} = 0.226\text{ A at } 60\text{ Hz.}$$

Similarly, at 10 kHz,

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{X_C} = \frac{120\text{ V}}{3.18\ \Omega} = 37.7\text{ A at } 10\text{ kHz.}$$

Discussion

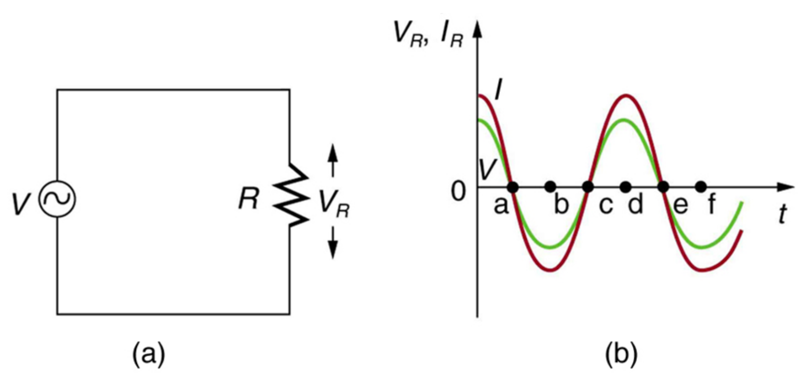
The capacitor reacts very differently at the two different frequencies, and in exactly the opposite way an inductor reacts. At the higher frequency, its reactance is small and the current is large. Capacitors favor change,

whereas inductors oppose change. Capacitors impede low frequencies the most, since low frequency allows them time to become charged and stop the current. Capacitors can be used to filter out low frequencies. For example, a capacitor in series with a sound reproduction system rids it of the 60 Hz hum.

Although a capacitor is basically an open circuit, there is an rms current in a circuit with an AC voltage applied to a capacitor. This is because the voltage is continually reversing, charging and discharging the capacitor. If the frequency goes to zero (DC), X_C tends to infinity, and the current is zero once the capacitor is charged. At very high frequencies, the capacitor's reactance tends to zero—it has a negligible reactance and does not impede the current (it acts like a simple wire). *Capacitors have the opposite effect on AC circuits that inductors have*.

Resistors in an AC Circuit

Just as a reminder, consider [link], which shows an AC voltage applied to a resistor and a graph of voltage and current versus time. The voltage and current are exactly *in phase* in a resistor. There is no frequency dependence to the behavior of plain resistance in a circuit:



(a) An AC voltage source in series with a resistor. (b) Graph of current and voltage

across the resistor as functions of time, showing them to be exactly in phase.

Note:
AC Voltage in a Resistor
When a sinusoidal voltage is applied to a resistor, the voltage is exactly in phase with the current—they have a 0º phase angle.

Section Summary

- For inductors in AC circuits, we find that when a sinusoidal voltage is applied to an inductor, the voltage leads the current by one-fourth of a cycle, or by a 90º phase angle.
- The opposition of an inductor to a change in current is expressed as a type of AC resistance.
- Ohm’s law for an inductor is
  Equation:
  $$I = \frac{V}{X_L},$$
  where V is the rms voltage across the inductor.
- X_L is defined to be the inductive reactance, given by
  Equation:
  $$X_L = 2\pi fL,$$
  with f the frequency of the AC voltage source in hertz.
- Inductive reactance X_L has units of ohms and is greatest at high frequencies.
- For capacitors, we find that when a sinusoidal voltage is applied to a capacitor, the voltage follows the current by one-fourth of a cycle, or

by a 90^o phase angle.

- Since a capacitor can stop current when fully charged, it limits current and offers another form of AC resistance; Ohm's law for a capacitor is **Equation:**

$$I = \frac{V}{X_C},$$

where V is the rms voltage across the capacitor.

- X_C is defined to be the capacitive reactance, given by **Equation:**

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}.$$

- X_C has units of ohms and is greatest at low frequencies.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Presbycusis is a hearing loss due to age that progressively affects higher frequencies. A hearing aid amplifier is designed to amplify all frequencies equally. To adjust its output for presbycusis, would you put a capacitor in series or parallel with the hearing aid's speaker? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Would you use a large inductance or a large capacitance in series with a system to filter out low frequencies, such as the 100 Hz hum in a sound system? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

High-frequency noise in AC power can damage computers. Does the plug-in unit designed to prevent this damage use a large inductance or a large capacitance (in series with the computer) to filter out such high frequencies? Explain.

Exercise:

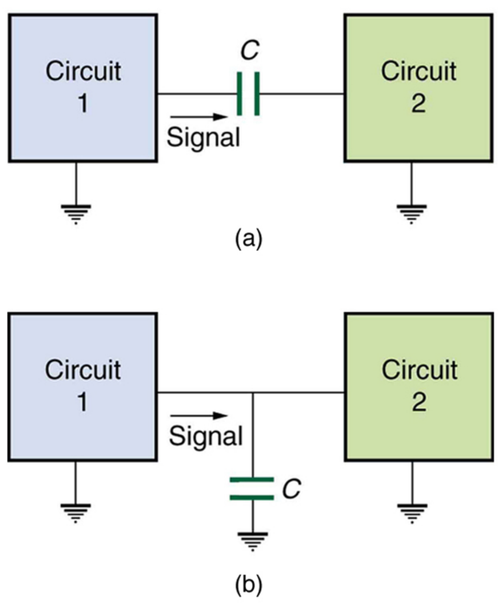
Problem:

Does inductance depend on current, frequency, or both? What about inductive reactance?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why the capacitor in [link](a) acts as a low-frequency filter between the two circuits, whereas that in [link](b) acts as a high-frequency filter.



Capacitors and inductors.

Capacitor with high frequency and low frequency.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the capacitors in [link] are replaced by inductors, which acts as a low-frequency filter and which as a high-frequency filter?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

At what frequency will a 30.0 mH inductor have a reactance of $100\ \Omega$?

Solution:

531 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

What value of inductance should be used if a $20.0\ \mathrm{k}\Omega$ reactance is needed at a frequency of 500 Hz?

Exercise:

Problem:

What capacitance should be used to produce a $2.00\ \mathrm{M}\Omega$ reactance at 60.0 Hz?

Solution:

1.33 nF

Exercise:

Problem:

At what frequency will an 80.0 mF capacitor have a reactance of $0.250\ \Omega$?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the current through a 0.500 H inductor connected to a 60.0 Hz, 480 V AC source. (b) What would the current be at 100 kHz?

Solution:

(a) 2.55 A

(b) 1.53 mA

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What current flows when a 60.0 Hz, 480 V AC source is connected to a $0.250\ \mu F$ capacitor? (b) What would the current be at 25.0 kHz?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 20.0 kHz, 16.0 V source connected to an inductor produces a 2.00 A current. What is the inductance?

Solution:

63.7 μH

Exercise:

Problem:

A 20.0 Hz, 16.0 V source produces a 2.00 mA current when connected to a capacitor. What is the capacitance?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) An inductor designed to filter high-frequency noise from power supplied to a personal computer is placed in series with the computer. What minimum inductance should it have to produce a $2.00\ \text{k}\Omega$ reactance for 15.0 kHz noise? (b) What is its reactance at 60.0 Hz?

Solution:

(a) 21.2 mH

(b) $8.00\ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

The capacitor in [link](a) is designed to filter low-frequency signals, impeding their transmission between circuits. (a) What capacitance is needed to produce a $100\ \text{k}\Omega$ reactance at a frequency of 120 Hz? (b) What would its reactance be at 1.00 MHz? (c) Discuss the implications of your answers to (a) and (b).

Exercise:

Problem:

The capacitor in [link](b) will filter high-frequency signals by shorting them to earth/ground. (a) What capacitance is needed to produce a reactance of $10.0\ \text{m}\Omega$ for a 5.00 kHz signal? (b) What would its reactance be at 3.00 Hz? (c) Discuss the implications of your answers to (a) and (b).

Solution:

(a) 3.18 mF

(b) 16.7 Ω

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

In a recording of voltages due to brain activity (an EEG), a 10.0 mV signal with a 0.500 Hz frequency is applied to a capacitor, producing a current of 100 mA. Resistance is negligible. (a) What is the capacitance? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption or premise is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider the use of an inductor in series with a computer operating on 60 Hz electricity. Construct a problem in which you calculate the relative reduction in voltage of incoming high frequency noise compared to 60 Hz voltage. Among the things to consider are the acceptable series reactance of the inductor for 60 Hz power and the likely frequencies of noise coming through the power lines.

Glossary

inductive reactance
: the opposition of an inductor to a change in current; calculated by $X_L = 2\pi fL$

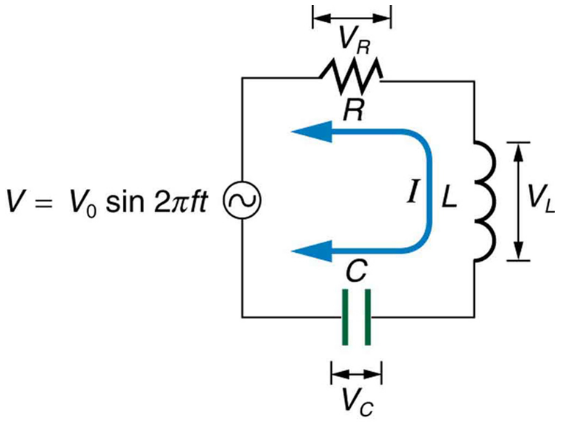
capacitive reactance
: the opposition of a capacitor to a change in current; calculated by $X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$

RLC Series AC Circuits

- Calculate the impedance, phase angle, resonant frequency, power, power factor, voltage, and/or current in a RLC series circuit.
- Draw the circuit diagram for an RLC series circuit.
- Explain the significance of the resonant frequency.

Impedance

When alone in an AC circuit, inductors, capacitors, and resistors all impede current. How do they behave when all three occur together? Interestingly, their individual resistances in ohms do not simply add. Because inductors and capacitors behave in opposite ways, they partially to totally cancel each other's effect. [link] shows an *RLC* series circuit with an AC voltage source, the behavior of which is the subject of this section. The crux of the analysis of an *RLC* circuit is the frequency dependence of X_L and X_C, and the effect they have on the phase of voltage versus current (established in the preceding section). These give rise to the frequency dependence of the circuit, with important "resonance" features that are the basis of many applications, such as radio tuners.



An *RLC* series circuit with an AC voltage source.

The combined effect of resistance R, inductive reactance X_L, and capacitive reactance X_C is defined to be **impedance**, an AC analogue to resistance in a DC circuit. Current, voltage, and impedance in an *RLC* circuit are related by an AC version of Ohm’s law:

Equation:

$$I_0 = \frac{V_0}{Z} \text{ or } I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}}{Z}.$$

Here I_0 is the peak current, V_0 the peak source voltage, and Z is the impedance of the circuit. The units of impedance are ohms, and its effect on the circuit is as you might expect: the greater the impedance, the smaller the current. To get an expression for Z in terms of R, X_L, and X_C, we will now examine how the voltages across the various components are related to the source voltage. Those voltages are labeled V_R, V_L, and V_C in [link].

Conservation of charge requires current to be the same in each part of the circuit at all times, so that we can say the currents in R, L, and C are equal and in phase. But we know from the preceding section that the voltage across the inductor V_L leads the current by one-fourth of a cycle, the voltage across the capacitor V_C follows the current by one-fourth of a cycle, and the voltage across the resistor V_R is exactly in phase with the current. [link] shows these relationships in one graph, as well as showing the total voltage around the circuit $V = V_R + V_L + V_C$, where all four voltages are the instantaneous values. According to Kirchhoff’s loop rule, the total voltage around the circuit V is also the voltage of the source.

You can see from [link] that while V_R is in phase with the current, V_L leads by 90º, and V_C follows by 90º. Thus V_L and V_C are 180º out of phase (crest to trough) and tend to cancel, although not completely unless they have the same magnitude. Since the peak voltages are not aligned (not in phase), the peak voltage V_0 of the source does *not* equal the sum of the peak voltages across R, L, and C. The actual relationship is

Equation:

$$V_0 = \sqrt{{V_{0R}}^2 + (V_{0L} - V_{0C})^2},$$

where V_{0R}, V_{0L}, and V_{0C} are the peak voltages across R, L, and C, respectively. Now, using Ohm's law and definitions from Reactance, Inductive and Capacitive, we substitute $V_0 = I_0 Z$ into the above, as well as $V_{0R} = I_0 R$, $V_{0L} = I_0 X_L$, and $V_{0C} = I_0 X_C$, yielding

Equation:

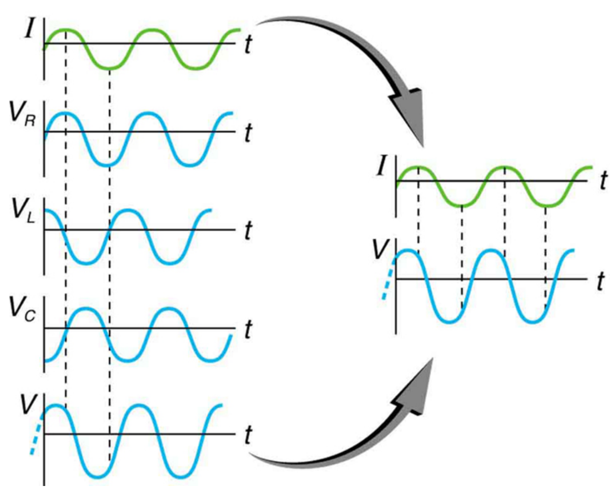
$$I_0 Z = \sqrt{{I_0}^2 R^2 + (I_0 X_L - I_0 X_C)^2} = I_0 \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}.$$

I_0 cancels to yield an expression for Z:

Equation:

$$Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2},$$

which is the impedance of an *RLC* series AC circuit. For circuits without a resistor, take $R = 0$; for those without an inductor, take $X_L = 0$; and for those without a capacitor, take $X_C = 0$.



This graph shows the relationships of the voltages in an *RLC* circuit to the current.

The voltages across the circuit elements add to equal the voltage of the source, which is seen to be out of phase with the current.

Example:
Calculating Impedance and Current
An *RLC* series circuit has a 40.0 Ω resistor, a 3.00 mH inductor, and a 5.00 μF capacitor. (a) Find the circuit's impedance at 60.0 Hz and 10.0 kHz, noting that these frequencies and the values for L and C are the same as in [link] and [link]. (b) If the voltage source has $V_{\text{rms}} = 120\text{ V}$, what is I_{rms} at each frequency?
Strategy
For each frequency, we use $Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$ to find the impedance and then Ohm's law to find current. We can take advantage of the results of the previous two examples rather than calculate the reactances again.
Solution for (a)
At 60.0 Hz, the values of the reactances were found in [link] to be $X_L = 1.13\ \Omega$ and in [link] to be $X_C = 531\ \Omega$. Entering these and the given 40.0 Ω for resistance into $Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$ yields
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} Z &= \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{(40.0\ \Omega)^2 + (1.13\ \Omega - 531\ \Omega)^2} \\ &= 531\ \Omega \text{ at } 60.0\text{ Hz.} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, at 10.0 kHz, $X_L = 188\ \Omega$ and $X_C = 3.18\ \Omega$, so that
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} Z &= \sqrt{(40.0\ \Omega)^2 + (188\ \Omega - 3.18\ \Omega)^2} \\ &= 190\ \Omega \text{ at } 10.0\ \text{kHz}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)
In both cases, the result is nearly the same as the largest value, and the impedance is definitely not the sum of the individual values. It is clear that X_L dominates at high frequency and X_C dominates at low frequency.
Solution for (b)
The current I_{rms} can be found using the AC version of Ohm's law in Equation $I_{\text{rms}} = V_{\text{rms}}/Z$:
$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}}{Z} = \frac{120\ \text{V}}{531\ \Omega} = 0.226\ \text{A}$ at 60.0 Hz
Finally, at 10.0 kHz, we find
$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}}{Z} = \frac{120\ \text{V}}{190\ \Omega} = 0.633\ \text{A}$ at 10.0 kHz
Discussion for (a)
The current at 60.0 Hz is the same (to three digits) as found for the capacitor alone in [link]. The capacitor dominates at low frequency. The current at 10.0 kHz is only slightly different from that found for the inductor alone in [link]. The inductor dominates at high frequency.

Resonance in *RLC* Series AC Circuits

How does an *RLC* circuit behave as a function of the frequency of the driving voltage source? Combining Ohm's law, $I_{\text{rms}} = V_{\text{rms}}/Z$, and the expression for impedance Z from $Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$ gives
Equation:

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}}{\sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}}.$$

The reactances vary with frequency, with X_L large at high frequencies and X_C large at low frequencies, as we have seen in three previous examples. At some intermediate frequency f_0, the reactances will be equal and cancel,

giving $Z = R$—this is a minimum value for impedance, and a maximum value for I_{rms} results. We can get an expression for f_0 by taking
Equation:

$$X_L = X_C.$$

Substituting the definitions of X_L and X_C,
Equation:

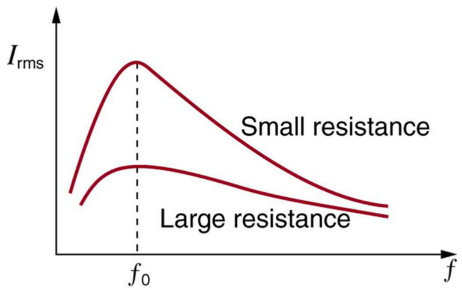
$$2\pi f_0 L = \frac{1}{2\pi f_0 C}.$$

Solving this expression for f_0 yields
Equation:

$$f_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{\text{LC}}},$$

where f_0 is the **resonant frequency** of an *RLC* series circuit. This is also the *natural frequency* at which the circuit would oscillate if not driven by the voltage source. At f_0, the effects of the inductor and capacitor cancel, so that $Z = R$, and I_{rms} is a maximum.

Resonance in AC circuits is analogous to mechanical resonance, where resonance is defined to be a forced oscillation—in this case, forced by the voltage source—at the natural frequency of the system. The receiver in a radio is an *RLC* circuit that oscillates best at its f_0. A variable capacitor is often used to adjust f_0 to receive a desired frequency and to reject others. [link] is a graph of current as a function of frequency, illustrating a resonant peak in I_{rms} at f_0. The two curves are for two different circuits, which differ only in the amount of resistance in them. The peak is lower and broader for the higher-resistance circuit. Thus the higher-resistance circuit does not resonate as strongly and would not be as selective in a radio receiver, for example.



A graph of current versus frequency for two *RLC* series circuits differing only in the amount of resistance. Both have a resonance at f_0, but that for the higher resistance is lower and broader. The driving AC voltage source has a fixed amplitude V_0.

Example:
Calculating Resonant Frequency and Current
For the same *RLC* series circuit having a $40.0\ \Omega$ resistor, a 3.00 mH inductor, and a $5.00\ \mu F$ capacitor: (a) Find the resonant frequency. (b) Calculate I_{rms} at resonance if V_{rms} is 120 V.

Strategy
The resonant frequency is found by using the expression in $f_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$.
The current at that frequency is the same as if the resistor alone were in the circuit.

Solution for (a)
Entering the given values for L and C into the expression given for f_0 in $f_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$ yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} f_0 &= \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{(3.00\times10^{-3}\ \text{H})(5.00\times10^{-6}\ \text{F})}} = 1.30\ \text{kHz}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)
We see that the resonant frequency is between 60.0 Hz and 10.0 kHz, the two frequencies chosen in earlier examples. This was to be expected, since the capacitor dominated at the low frequency and the inductor dominated at the high frequency. Their effects are the same at this intermediate frequency.
Solution for (b)
The current is given by Ohm’s law. At resonance, the two reactances are equal and cancel, so that the impedance equals the resistance alone. Thus,
Equation:

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}}{Z} = \frac{120\ \text{V}}{40.0\ \Omega} = 3.00\ \text{A}.$$

Discussion for (b)
At resonance, the current is greater than at the higher and lower frequencies considered for the same circuit in the preceding example.

Power in *RLC* Series AC Circuits

If current varies with frequency in an *RLC* circuit, then the power delivered to it also varies with frequency. But the average power is not simply current times voltage, as it is in purely resistive circuits. As was seen in [link], voltage and current are out of phase in an *RLC* circuit. There is a **phase angle** ϕ between the source voltage V and the current I, which can be found from
Equation:

$$\cos \phi = \frac{R}{Z}.$$

For example, at the resonant frequency or in a purely resistive circuit $Z = R$, so that $\cos \phi = 1$. This implies that $\phi = 0^{\text{o}}$ and that voltage and current are in phase, as expected for resistors. At other frequencies, average power is less than at resonance. This is both because voltage and current are out of phase and because I_{rms} is lower. The fact that source voltage and current are out of phase affects the power delivered to the circuit. It can be shown that the *average power* is

Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}} V_{\text{rms}} \cos \phi,$$

Thus $\cos \phi$ is called the **power factor**, which can range from 0 to 1. Power factors near 1 are desirable when designing an efficient motor, for example. At the resonant frequency, $\cos \phi = 1$.

Example:

Calculating the Power Factor and Power

For the same *RLC* series circuit having a 40.0 Ω resistor, a 3.00 mH inductor, a 5.00 μF capacitor, and a voltage source with a V_{rms} of 120 V: (a) Calculate the power factor and phase angle for $f = 60.0 \text{Hz}$. (b) What is the average power at 50.0 Hz? (c) Find the average power at the circuit's resonant frequency.

Strategy and Solution for (a)

The power factor at 60.0 Hz is found from

Equation:

$$\cos \phi = \frac{R}{Z}.$$

We know Z= 531 Ω from [link], so that

Equation:

$$\cos \phi = \frac{40.0\ \Omega}{531\ \Omega} = 0.0753 \text{ at } 60.0 \text{ Hz.}$$

This small value indicates the voltage and current are significantly out of phase. In fact, the phase angle is

Equation:

$$\phi = \cos^{-1} 0.0753 = 85.7^{\circ} \text{ at } 60.0 \text{ Hz.}$$

Discussion for (a)

The phase angle is close to 90º, consistent with the fact that the capacitor dominates the circuit at this low frequency (a pure *RC* circuit has its voltage and current 90º out of phase).

Strategy and Solution for (b)

The average power at 60.0 Hz is

Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}} V_{\text{rms}} \cos \phi.$$

I_{rms} was found to be 0.226 A in [link]. Entering the known values gives

Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = (0.226 \text{ A})(120 \text{ V})(0.0753) = 2.04 \text{ W at } 60.0 \text{ Hz.}$$

Strategy and Solution for (c)

At the resonant frequency, we know $\cos \phi = 1$, and I_{rms} was found to be 6.00 A in [link]. Thus,

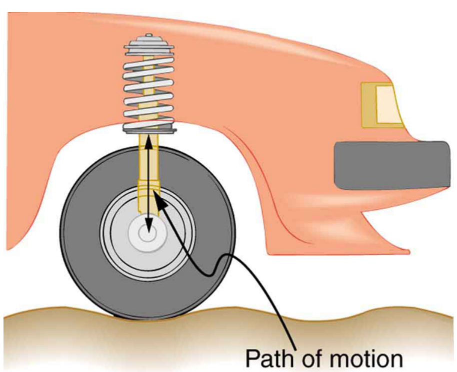
$P_{\text{ave}} = (3.00 \text{ A})(120 \text{ V})(1) = 360 \text{ W}$ at resonance (1.30 kHz)

Discussion

Both the current and the power factor are greater at resonance, producing significantly greater power than at higher and lower frequencies.

Power delivered to an *RLC* series AC circuit is dissipated by the resistance alone. The inductor and capacitor have energy input and output but do not dissipate it out of the circuit. Rather they transfer energy back and forth to one another, with the resistor dissipating exactly what the voltage source

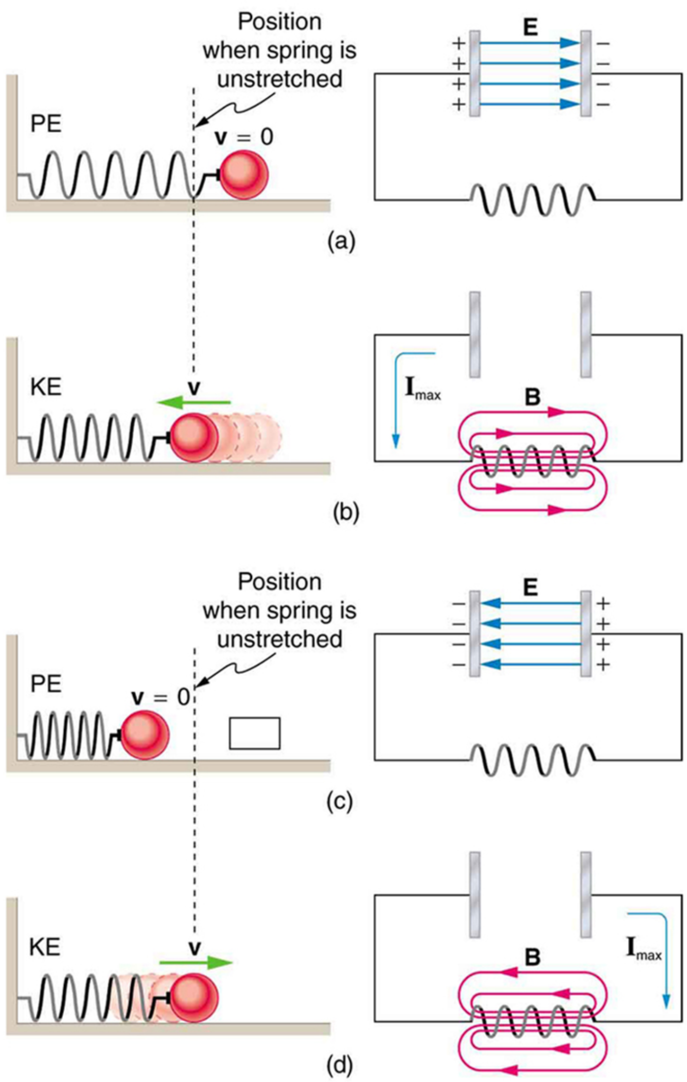
puts into the circuit. This assumes no significant electromagnetic radiation from the inductor and capacitor, such as radio waves. Such radiation can happen and may even be desired, as we will see in the next chapter on electromagnetic radiation, but it can also be suppressed as is the case in this chapter. The circuit is analogous to the wheel of a car driven over a corrugated road as shown in [link]. The regularly spaced bumps in the road are analogous to the voltage source, driving the wheel up and down. The shock absorber is analogous to the resistance damping and limiting the amplitude of the oscillation. Energy within the system goes back and forth between kinetic (analogous to maximum current, and energy stored in an inductor) and potential energy stored in the car spring (analogous to no current, and energy stored in the electric field of a capacitor). The amplitude of the wheels' motion is a maximum if the bumps in the road are hit at the resonant frequency.



The forced but damped motion of the wheel on the car spring is analogous to an *RLC* series AC circuit. The shock absorber damps the motion and dissipates energy, analogous to the resistance in an *RLC* circuit. The mass

and spring determine the resonant frequency.

A pure *LC* circuit with negligible resistance oscillates at f_0, the same resonant frequency as an *RLC* circuit. It can serve as a frequency standard or clock circuit—for example, in a digital wristwatch. With a very small resistance, only a very small energy input is necessary to maintain the oscillations. The circuit is analogous to a car with no shock absorbers. Once it starts oscillating, it continues at its natural frequency for some time. [link] shows the analogy between an *LC* circuit and a mass on a spring.



An *LC* circuit is analogous to a mass oscillating on a spring with no friction and no driving force. Energy moves back and forth between the inductor and capacitor, just as it moves from kinetic to potential in the mass-spring system.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Circuit Construction Kit (AC+DC), Virtual Lab
Build circuits with capacitors, inductors, resistors and AC or DC voltage sources, and inspect them using lab instruments such as voltmeters and ammeters.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/circuit-construction-kit-dc/latest/circuit-construction-kit-dc_en.html

Section Summary

- The AC analogy to resistance is impedance Z, the combined effect of resistors, inductors, and capacitors, defined by the AC version of Ohm's law:
  Equation:
  $$I_0 = \frac{V_0}{Z} \text{ or } I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}}{Z},$$
  where I_0 is the peak current and V_0 is the peak source voltage.
- Impedance has units of ohms and is given by $Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$.
- The resonant frequency f_0, at which $X_L = X_C$, is
  Equation:
  $$f_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}.$$
- In an AC circuit, there is a phase angle ϕ between source voltage V and the current I, which can be found from
  Equation:
  $$\cos\phi = \frac{R}{Z},$$
- $\phi = 0°$ for a purely resistive circuit or an *RLC* circuit at resonance.

- The average power delivered to an *RLC* circuit is affected by the phase angle and is given by
  Equation:
  $$P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}} V_{\text{rms}} \cos \phi,$$
  $\cos \phi$ is called the power factor, which ranges from 0 to 1.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Does the resonant frequency of an AC circuit depend on the peak voltage of the AC source? Explain why or why not.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a motor with a power factor significantly less than 1. Explain why it would be better to improve the power factor as a method of improving the motor's output, rather than to increase the voltage input.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

An *RL* circuit consists of a 40.0 Ω resistor and a 3.00 mH inductor. (a) Find its impedance Z at 60.0 Hz and 10.0 kHz. (b) Compare these values of Z with those found in [link] in which there was also a capacitor.

Solution:

(a) $40.02\ \Omega$ at 60.0 Hz, $193\ \Omega$ at 10.0 kHz

(b) At 60 Hz, with a capacitor, $\mathrm{Z}{=}531\ \Omega$, over 13 times as high as without the capacitor. The capacitor makes a large difference at low frequencies. At 10 kHz, with a capacitor $\mathrm{Z}{=}190\ \Omega$, about the same as without the capacitor. The capacitor has a smaller effect at high frequencies.

Exercise:

Problem:

An *RC* circuit consists of a $40.0\ \Omega$ resistor and a $5.00\ \mu\mathrm{F}$ capacitor. (a) Find its impedance at 60.0 Hz and 10.0 kHz. (b) Compare these values of Z with those found in [link], in which there was also an inductor.

Exercise:

Problem:

An *LC* circuit consists of a $3.00\ \mathrm{mH}$ inductor and a $5.00\ \mu F$ capacitor. (a) Find its impedance at 60.0 Hz and 10.0 kHz. (b) Compare these values of Z with those found in [link] in which there was also a resistor.

Solution:

(a) $529\ \Omega$ at 60.0 Hz, $185\ \Omega$ at 10.0 kHz

(b) These values are close to those obtained in [link] because at low frequency the capacitor dominates and at high frequency the inductor dominates. So in both cases the resistor makes little contribution to the total impedance.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the resonant frequency of a 0.500 mH inductor connected to a 40.0 μF capacitor?

Exercise:

Problem:

To receive AM radio, you want an *RLC* circuit that can be made to resonate at any frequency between 500 and 1650 kHz. This is accomplished with a fixed 1.00 μH inductor connected to a variable capacitor. What range of capacitance is needed?

Solution:

9.30 nF to 101 nF

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a supply of inductors ranging from 1.00 nH to 10.0 H, and capacitors ranging from 1.00 pF to 0.100 F. What is the range of resonant frequencies that can be achieved from combinations of a single inductor and a single capacitor?

Exercise:

Problem:

What capacitance do you need to produce a resonant frequency of 1.00 GHz, when using an 8.00 nH inductor?

Solution:

3.17 pF

Exercise:

Problem:

What inductance do you need to produce a resonant frequency of 60.0 Hz, when using a 2.00 μF capacitor?

Exercise:

Problem:

The lowest frequency in the FM radio band is 88.0 MHz. (a) What inductance is needed to produce this resonant frequency if it is connected to a 2.50 pF capacitor? (b) The capacitor is variable, to allow the resonant frequency to be adjusted to as high as 108 MHz. What must the capacitance be at this frequency?

Solution:

(a) 1.31 μH

(b) 1.66 pF

Exercise:

Problem:

An *RLC* series circuit has a $2.50\ \Omega$ resistor, a $100\ \mu\text{H}$ inductor, and an $80.0\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor.(a) Find the circuit's impedance at 120 Hz. (b) Find the circuit's impedance at 5.00 kHz. (c) If the voltage source has $V_{\text{rms}} = 5.60\ \text{V}$, what is I_{rms} at each frequency? (d) What is the resonant frequency of the circuit? (e) What is I_{rms} at resonance?

Exercise:

Problem:

An *RLC* series circuit has a $1.00\ \text{k}\Omega$ resistor, a $150\ \mu\text{H}$ inductor, and a 25.0 nF capacitor. (a) Find the circuit's impedance at 500 Hz. (b) Find the circuit's impedance at 7.50 kHz. (c) If the voltage source has $V_{\text{rms}} = 408\ \text{V}$, what is I_{rms} at each frequency? (d) What is the resonant frequency of the circuit? (e) What is I_{rms} at resonance?

Solution:

(a) 12.8 kΩ

(b) 1.31 kΩ

(c) 31.9 mA at 500 Hz, 312 mA at 7.50 kHz

(d) 82.2 kHz

(e) 0.408 A

Exercise:

Problem:

An *RLC* series circuit has a $2.50\ \Omega$ resistor, a $100\ \mu\text{H}$ inductor, and an $80.0\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor. (a) Find the power factor at $f = 120\ \text{Hz}$. (b) What is the phase angle at 120 Hz? (c) What is the average power at 120 Hz? (d) Find the average power at the circuit's resonant frequency.

Exercise:

Problem:

An *RLC* series circuit has a $1.00\ \text{k}\Omega$ resistor, a $150\ \mu\text{H}$ inductor, and a 25.0 nF capacitor. (a) Find the power factor at $f = 7.50\ \text{Hz}$. (b) What is the phase angle at this frequency? (c) What is the average power at this frequency? (d) Find the average power at the circuit's resonant frequency.

Solution:

(a) 0.159

(b) 80.9º

(c) 26.4 W

(d) 166 W

Exercise:

Problem:

An *RLC* series circuit has a $200\ \Omega$ resistor and a 25.0 mH inductor. At 8000 Hz, the phase angle is 45.0^{o}. (a) What is the impedance? (b) Find the circuit's capacitance. (c) If $V_{\text{rms}} = 408\ \text{V}$ is applied, what is the average power supplied?

Exercise:

Problem: Referring to [link], find the average power at 10.0 kHz.

Solution:

16.0 W

Glossary

impedance
: the AC analogue to resistance in a DC circuit; it is the combined effect of resistance, inductive reactance, and capacitive reactance in the form $Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$

resonant frequency
: the frequency at which the impedance in a circuit is at a minimum, and also the frequency at which the circuit would oscillate if not driven by a voltage source; calculated by $f_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{\text{LC}}}$

phase angle
: denoted by ϕ, the amount by which the voltage and current are out of phase with each other in a circuit

power factor
: the amount by which the power delivered in the circuit is less than the theoretical maximum of the circuit due to voltage and current being out of phase; calculated by $\cos\,\phi$

# Introduction to Electromagnetic Waves
class="introduction"

Human eyes detect these orange “sea goldie” fish swimming over a coral reef in the blue waters of the Gulf of Eilat (Red Sea) using visible light. (credit: Daviddarom, Wikimedia Commons)

The beauty of a coral reef, the warm radiance of sunshine, the sting of sunburn, the X-ray revealing a broken bone, even microwave popcorn—all are brought to us by **electromagnetic waves**. The list of the various types of electromagnetic waves, ranging from radio transmission waves to nuclear gamma-ray (γ-ray) emissions, is interesting in itself.

Even more intriguing is that all of these widely varied phenomena are different manifestations of the same thing—electromagnetic waves. (See [link].) What are electromagnetic waves? How are they created, and how do they travel? How can we understand and organize their widely varying properties? What is their relationship to electric and magnetic effects? These and other questions will be explored.

Note:
Misconception Alert: Sound Waves vs. Radio Waves
Many people confuse sound waves with **radio waves**, one type of electromagnetic (EM) wave. However, sound and radio waves are

completely different phenomena. Sound creates pressure variations (waves) in matter, such as air or water, or your eardrum. Conversely, radio waves are *electromagnetic waves*, like visible light, infrared, ultraviolet, X-rays, and gamma rays. EM waves don’t need a medium in which to propagate; they can travel through a vacuum, such as outer space.
A radio works because sound waves played by the D.J. at the radio station are converted into electromagnetic waves, then encoded and transmitted in the radio-frequency range. The radio in your car receives the radio waves, decodes the information, and uses a speaker to change it back into a sound wave, bringing sweet music to your ears.

Discovering a New Phenomenon

It is worth noting at the outset that the general phenomenon of electromagnetic waves was predicted by theory before it was realized that light is a form of electromagnetic wave. The prediction was made by James Clerk Maxwell in the mid-19th century when he formulated a single theory combining all the electric and magnetic effects known by scientists at that time. “Electromagnetic waves” was the name he gave to the phenomena his theory predicted.

Such a theoretical prediction followed by experimental verification is an indication of the power of science in general, and physics in particular. The underlying connections and unity of physics allow certain great minds to solve puzzles without having all the pieces. The prediction of electromagnetic waves is one of the most spectacular examples of this power. Certain others, such as the prediction of antimatter, will be discussed in later modules.

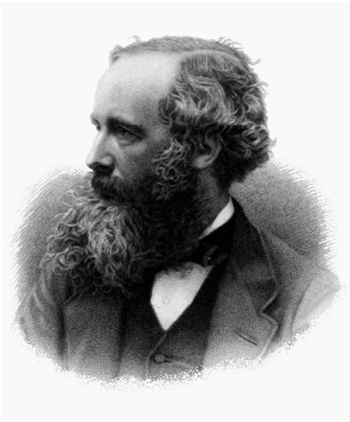
The electromagnetic waves sent and received by this 50-foot radar dish antenna at Kennedy Space Center in Florida are not visible, but help track expendable launch vehicles with high-definition imagery. The first use of this C-band radar dish was for the launch of the Atlas V rocket sending the New Horizons probe

toward Pluto.
(credit: NASA)

Maxwell’s Equations: Electromagnetic Waves Predicted and Observed

- Restate Maxwell’s equations.

The Scotsman James Clerk Maxwell (1831–1879) is regarded as the greatest theoretical physicist of the 19th century. (See [link].) Although he died young, Maxwell not only formulated a complete electromagnetic theory, represented by **Maxwell’s equations**, he also developed the kinetic theory of gases and made significant contributions to the understanding of color vision and the nature of Saturn’s rings.



James Clerk Maxwell, a 19th-century physicist, developed a theory that explained the relationship between electricity and magnetism and correctly predicted that visible light is caused by electromagnetic

waves. (credit:
G. J. Stodart)

Maxwell brought together all the work that had been done by brilliant physicists such as Oersted, Coulomb, Gauss, and Faraday, and added his own insights to develop the overarching theory of electromagnetism. Maxwell’s equations are paraphrased here in words because their mathematical statement is beyond the level of this text. However, the equations illustrate how apparently simple mathematical statements can elegantly unite and express a multitude of concepts—why mathematics is the language of science.

Note:
Maxwell’s Equations

1. **Electric field lines** originate on positive charges and terminate on negative charges. The electric field is defined as the force per unit charge on a test charge, and the strength of the force is related to the electric constant ε_0, also known as the permittivity of free space. From Maxwell’s first equation we obtain a special form of Coulomb’s law known as Gauss’s law for electricity.
2. **Magnetic field lines** are continuous, having no beginning or end. No magnetic monopoles are known to exist. The strength of the magnetic force is related to the magnetic constant μ_0, also known as the permeability of free space. This second of Maxwell’s equations is known as Gauss’s law for magnetism.
3. A changing magnetic field induces an electromotive force (emf) and, hence, an electric field. The direction of the emf opposes the change. This third of Maxwell’s equations is Faraday’s law of induction, and includes Lenz’s law.
4. Magnetic fields are generated by moving charges or by changing electric fields. This fourth of Maxwell’s equations encompasses Ampere’s law and adds another source of magnetism—changing electric fields.

Maxwell’s equations encompass the major laws of electricity and magnetism. What is not so apparent is the symmetry that Maxwell introduced in his mathematical framework. Especially important is his addition of the hypothesis that changing electric fields create magnetic fields. This is exactly analogous (and symmetric) to Faraday’s law of induction and had been suspected for some time, but fits beautifully into Maxwell’s equations.

Symmetry is apparent in nature in a wide range of situations. In contemporary research, symmetry plays a major part in the search for sub-atomic particles using massive multinational particle accelerators such as the new Large Hadron Collider at CERN.

Note:

Making Connections: Unification of Forces

Maxwell’s complete and symmetric theory showed that electric and magnetic forces are not separate, but different manifestations of the same thing—the electromagnetic force. This classical unification of forces is one motivation for current attempts to unify the four basic forces in nature—the gravitational, electrical, strong, and weak nuclear forces.

Since changing electric fields create relatively weak magnetic fields, they could not be easily detected at the time of Maxwell’s hypothesis. Maxwell realized, however, that oscillating charges, like those in AC circuits, produce changing electric fields. He predicted that these changing fields would propagate from the source like waves generated on a lake by a jumping fish.

The waves predicted by Maxwell would consist of oscillating electric and magnetic fields—defined to be an electromagnetic wave (EM wave). Electromagnetic waves would be capable of exerting forces on charges great distances from their source, and they might thus be detectable. Maxwell calculated that electromagnetic waves would propagate at a speed given by the equation

Equation:

$$c=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0\varepsilon_0}}.$$

When the values for μ_0 and ε_0 are entered into the equation for c, we find that

Equation:

$$c=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\left(8.85\times10^{-12}\ \frac{\text{C}^2}{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}\right)\left(4\pi\times10^{-7}\ \frac{\text{T}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{A}}\right)}}=3.00\times10^8\ \text{m/s},$$

which is the speed of light. In fact, Maxwell concluded that light is an electromagnetic wave having such wavelengths that it can be detected by the eye.

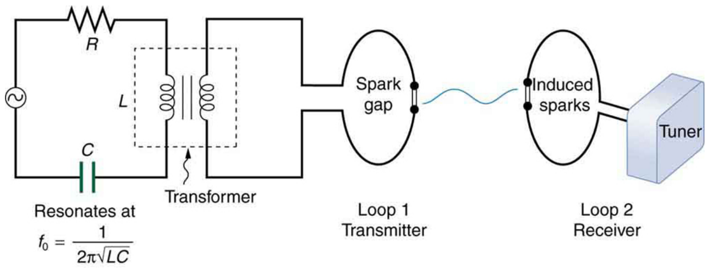
Other wavelengths should exist—it remained to be seen if they did. If so, Maxwell's theory and remarkable predictions would be verified, the greatest triumph of physics since Newton. Experimental verification came within a few years, but not before Maxwell's death.

Hertz's Observations

The German physicist Heinrich Hertz (1857–1894) was the first to generate and detect certain types of electromagnetic waves in the laboratory. Starting in 1887, he performed a series of experiments that not only confirmed the existence of electromagnetic waves, but also verified that they travel at the speed of light.

Hertz used an AC RLC (resistor-inductor-capacitor) circuit that resonates at a known frequency $f_0=\frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{\text{LC}}}$ and connected it to a loop of wire as shown in [link]. High voltages induced across the gap in the loop produced sparks that were visible evidence of the current in the circuit and that helped generate electromagnetic waves.

Across the laboratory, Hertz had another loop attached to another RLC circuit, which could be tuned (as the dial on a radio) to the same resonant frequency as the first and could, thus, be made to receive electromagnetic waves. This loop also had a gap across which sparks were generated, giving solid evidence that electromagnetic waves had been received.



The apparatus used by Hertz in 1887 to generate and detect electromagnetic waves. An RLC circuit connected to the first loop caused sparks across a gap in the wire loop and generated electromagnetic waves. Sparks across a gap in the second loop located across the laboratory gave evidence that the waves had been received.

Hertz also studied the reflection, refraction, and interference patterns of the electromagnetic waves he generated, verifying their wave character. He was able to determine wavelength from the interference patterns, and knowing their frequency, he could calculate the propagation speed using the equation $v = f\lambda$ (velocity—or speed—equals frequency times wavelength). Hertz was thus able to prove that electromagnetic waves travel at the speed of light. The SI unit for frequency, the hertz ($1\ \mathrm{Hz} = 1\ \mathrm{cycle/sec}$), is named in his honor.

Section Summary

- Electromagnetic waves consist of oscillating electric and magnetic fields and propagate at the speed of light c. They were predicted by Maxwell, who also showed that
  Equation:
  $$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0 \varepsilon_0}},$$
  where μ_0 is the permeability of free space and ε_0 is the permittivity of free space.
- Maxwell's prediction of electromagnetic waves resulted from his formulation of a complete and symmetric theory of electricity and magnetism, known as Maxwell's equations.
- These four equations are paraphrased in this text, rather than presented numerically, and encompass the major laws of electricity and magnetism. First is Gauss's law for electricity, second is Gauss's law for magnetism, third is Faraday's law of induction, including Lenz's law, and fourth is Ampere's law in a symmetric formulation that adds another source of magnetism—changing electric fields.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the correct value for the speed of light c is obtained when numerical values for the permeability and permittivity of free space (μ_0 and ε_0) are entered into the equation $c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0 \varepsilon_0}}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that, when SI units for μ_0 and ε_0 are entered, the units given by the right-hand side of the equation in the problem above are m/s.

Glossary

electromagnetic waves
radiation in the form of waves of electric and magnetic energy

Maxwell’s equations
a set of four equations that comprise a complete, overarching theory of electromagnetism

RLC circuit
an electric circuit that includes a resistor, capacitor and inductor

hertz
an SI unit denoting the frequency of an electromagnetic wave, in cycles per second

speed of light
in a vacuum, such as space, the speed of light is a constant 3×10^8 m/s

electromotive force (emf)
energy produced per unit charge, drawn from a source that produces an electrical current

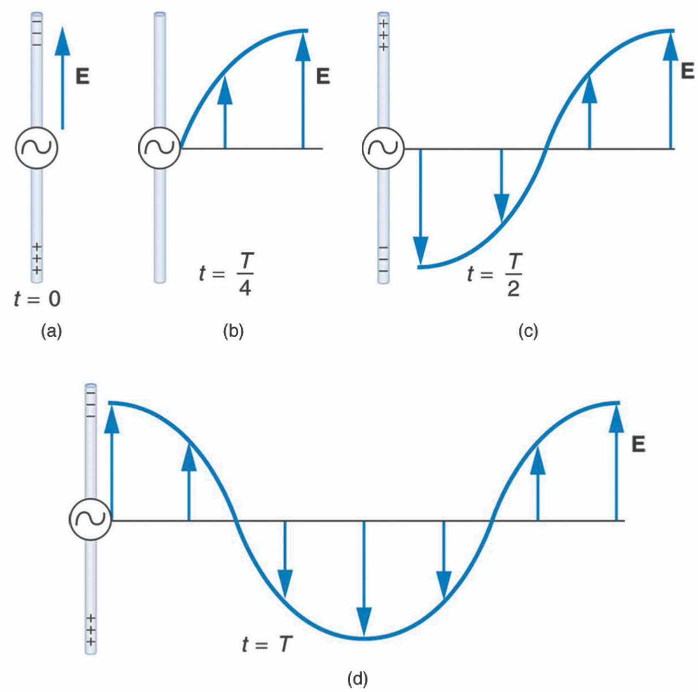
electric field lines
a pattern of imaginary lines that extend between an electric source and charged objects in the surrounding area, with arrows pointed away from positively charged objects and toward negatively charged objects. The more lines in the pattern, the stronger the electric field in that region

magnetic field lines
a pattern of continuous, imaginary lines that emerge from and enter into opposite magnetic poles. The density of the lines indicates the magnitude of the magnetic field

Production of Electromagnetic Waves

- Describe the electric and magnetic waves as they move out from a source, such as an AC generator.
- Explain the mathematical relationship between the magnetic field strength and the electrical field strength.
- Calculate the maximum strength of the magnetic field in an electromagnetic wave, given the maximum electric field strength.

We can get a good understanding of **electromagnetic waves** (EM) by considering how they are produced. Whenever a current varies, associated electric and magnetic fields vary, moving out from the source like waves. Perhaps the easiest situation to visualize is a varying current in a long straight wire, produced by an AC generator at its center, as illustrated in [link].



This long straight gray wire with an AC generator at its center becomes a broadcast antenna for electromagnetic waves. Shown here are the charge distributions at four different times. The electric field ($\mathbf{E}$) propagates away

from the antenna at the speed of light, forming part of an electromagnetic wave.

The **electric field** ($\mathbf{E}$) shown surrounding the wire is produced by the charge distribution on the wire. Both the $\mathbf{E}$ and the charge distribution vary as the current changes. The changing field propagates outward at the speed of light.

There is an associated **magnetic field** ($\mathbf{B}$) which propagates outward as well (see [link]). The electric and magnetic fields are closely related and propagate as an electromagnetic wave. This is what happens in broadcast antennae such as those in radio and TV stations.

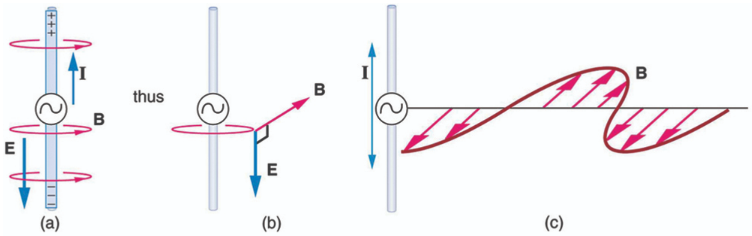
Closer examination of the one complete cycle shown in [link] reveals the periodic nature of the generator-driven charges oscillating up and down in the antenna and the electric field produced. At time $t = 0$, there is the maximum separation of charge, with negative charges at the top and positive charges at the bottom, producing the maximum magnitude of the electric field (or E-field) in the upward direction. One-fourth of a cycle later, there is no charge separation and the field next to the antenna is zero, while the maximum E-field has moved away at speed c.

As the process continues, the charge separation reverses and the field reaches its maximum downward value, returns to zero, and rises to its maximum upward value at the end of one complete cycle. The outgoing wave has an **amplitude** proportional to the maximum separation of charge. Its **wavelength**(λ) is proportional to the period of the oscillation and, hence, is smaller for short periods or high frequencies. (As usual, wavelength and **frequency**(f) are inversely proportional.)

Electric and Magnetic Waves: Moving Together

Following Ampere's law, current in the antenna produces a magnetic field, as shown in [link]. The relationship between $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ is shown at one

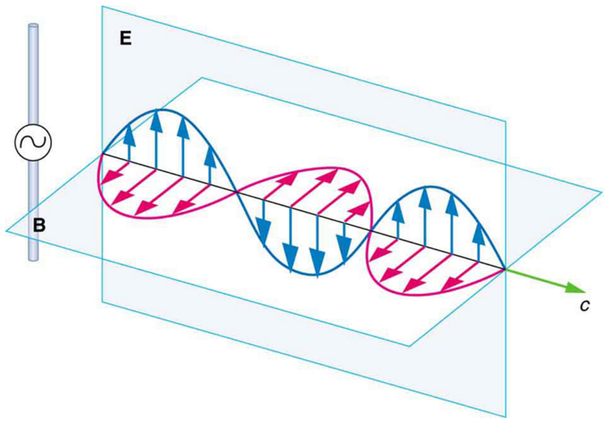
instant in [link] (a). As the current varies, the magnetic field varies in magnitude and direction.



(a) The current in the antenna produces the circular magnetic field lines. The current ($\mathbf{I}$) produces the separation of charge along the wire, which in turn creates the electric field as shown. (b) The electric and magnetic fields ($\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$) near the wire are perpendicular; they are shown here for one point in space. (c) The magnetic field varies with current and propagates away from the antenna at the speed of light.

The magnetic field lines also propagate away from the antenna at the speed of light, forming the other part of the electromagnetic wave, as seen in [link] (b). The magnetic part of the wave has the same period and wavelength as the electric part, since they are both produced by the same movement and separation of charges in the antenna.

The electric and magnetic waves are shown together at one instant in time in [link]. The electric and magnetic fields produced by a long straight wire antenna are exactly in phase. Note that they are perpendicular to one another and to the direction of propagation, making this a **transverse wave**.



A part of the electromagnetic wave sent out from the antenna at one instant in time. The electric and magnetic fields ($\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$) are in phase, and they are perpendicular to one another and the direction of propagation. For clarity, the waves are shown only along one direction, but they propagate out in other directions too.

Electromagnetic waves generally propagate out from a source in all directions, sometimes forming a complex radiation pattern. A linear antenna like this one will not radiate parallel to its length, for example. The wave is shown in one direction from the antenna in [link] to illustrate its basic characteristics.

Instead of the AC generator, the antenna can also be driven by an AC circuit. In fact, charges radiate whenever they are accelerated. But while a current in a circuit needs a complete path, an antenna has a varying charge distribution forming a **standing wave**, driven by the AC. The dimensions of the antenna are critical for determining the frequency of the radiated electromagnetic waves. This is a **resonant** phenomenon and when we tune

radios or TV, we vary electrical properties to achieve appropriate resonant conditions in the antenna.

Receiving Electromagnetic Waves

Electromagnetic waves carry energy away from their source, similar to a sound wave carrying energy away from a standing wave on a guitar string. An antenna for receiving EM signals works in reverse. And like antennas that produce EM waves, receiver antennas are specially designed to resonate at particular frequencies.

An incoming electromagnetic wave accelerates electrons in the antenna, setting up a standing wave. If the radio or TV is switched on, electrical components pick up and amplify the signal formed by the accelerating electrons. The signal is then converted to audio and/or video format. Sometimes big receiver dishes are used to focus the signal onto an antenna.

In fact, charges radiate whenever they are accelerated. When designing circuits, we often assume that energy does not quickly escape AC circuits, and mostly this is true. A broadcast antenna is specially designed to enhance the rate of electromagnetic radiation, and shielding is necessary to keep the radiation close to zero. Some familiar phenomena are based on the production of electromagnetic waves by varying currents. Your microwave oven, for example, sends electromagnetic waves, called microwaves, from a concealed antenna that has an oscillating current imposed on it.

Relating E-Field and B-Field Strengths

There is a relationship between the E- and B-field strengths in an electromagnetic wave. This can be understood by again considering the antenna just described. The stronger the E-field created by a separation of charge, the greater the current and, hence, the greater the B-field created.

Since current is directly proportional to voltage (Ohm’s law) and voltage is directly proportional to E-field strength, the two should be directly proportional. It can be shown that the magnitudes of the fields do have a constant ratio, equal to the speed of light. That is,

Equation:

$$\frac{E}{B} = c$$

is the ratio of E-field strength to B-field strength in any electromagnetic wave. This is true at all times and at all locations in space. A simple and elegant result.

Example:

Calculating B-Field Strength in an Electromagnetic Wave

What is the maximum strength of the B-field in an electromagnetic wave that has a maximum E-field strength of $1000\ \text{V/m}$?

Strategy

To find the B-field strength, we rearrange the above equation to solve for B, yielding

Equation:

$$B = \frac{E}{c}.$$

Solution

We are given E, and c is the speed of light. Entering these into the expression for B yields

Equation:

$$B = \frac{1000\ \text{V/m}}{3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}} = 3.33 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{T},$$

Where T stands for Tesla, a measure of magnetic field strength.

Discussion

The B-field strength is less than a tenth of the Earth's admittedly weak magnetic field. This means that a relatively strong electric field of 1000 V/m is accompanied by a relatively weak magnetic field. Note that as this

wave spreads out, say with distance from an antenna, its field strengths become progressively weaker.

The result of this example is consistent with the statement made in the module Maxwell's Equations: Electromagnetic Waves Predicted and Observed that changing electric fields create relatively weak magnetic fields. They can be detected in electromagnetic waves, however, by taking advantage of the phenomenon of resonance, as Hertz did. A system with the same natural frequency as the electromagnetic wave can be made to oscillate. All radio and TV receivers use this principle to pick up and then amplify weak electromagnetic waves, while rejecting all others not at their resonant frequency.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Antennas
For your TV or radio at home, identify the antenna, and sketch its shape. If you don't have cable, you might have an outdoor or indoor TV antenna. Estimate its size. If the TV signal is between 60 and 216 MHz for basic channels, then what is the wavelength of those EM waves?
Try tuning the radio and note the small range of frequencies at which a reasonable signal for that station is received. (This is easier with digital readout.) If you have a car with a radio and extendable antenna, note the quality of reception as the length of the antenna is changed.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Radio Waves and Electromagnetic Fields
Broadcast radio waves from KPhET. Wiggle the transmitter electron manually or have it oscillate automatically. Display the field as a curve or vectors. The strip chart shows the electron positions at the transmitter and at the receiver.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/c8dd764c-ae74-11e5-af4c-3375261fa183/radio-waves/#sim-radio-waves

Section Summary

- Electromagnetic waves are created by oscillating charges (which radiate whenever accelerated) and have the same frequency as the oscillation.
- Since the electric and magnetic fields in most electromagnetic waves are perpendicular to the direction in which the wave moves, it is ordinarily a transverse wave.
- The strengths of the electric and magnetic parts of the wave are related by
  Equation:

  $$\frac{E}{B} = \text{c},$$

  which implies that the magnetic field B is very weak relative to the electric field E.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

The direction of the electric field shown in each part of [link] is that produced by the charge distribution in the wire. Justify the direction shown in each part, using the Coulomb force law and the definition of $\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{F}/q$, where q is a positive test charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the direction of the magnetic field shown in [link] (a) consistent with the right-hand rule for current (RHR-2) in the direction shown in the figure?

Exercise:

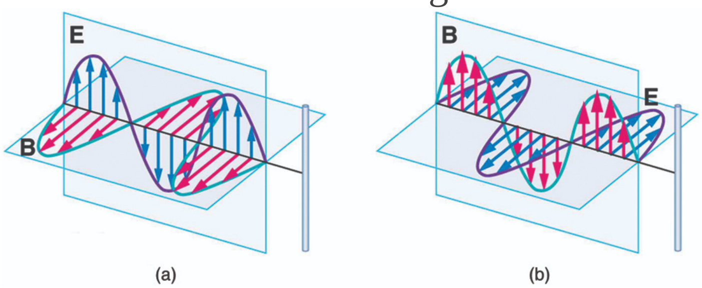
Problem:

Why is the direction of the current shown in each part of [link] opposite to the electric field produced by the wire’s charge separation?

Exercise:

Problem:

In which situation shown in [link] will the electromagnetic wave be more successful in inducing a current in the wire? Explain.

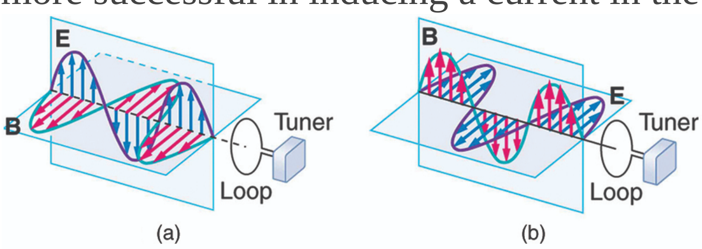


Electromagnetic waves approaching long straight wires.

Exercise:

Problem:

In which situation shown in [link] will the electromagnetic wave be more successful in inducing a current in the loop? Explain.



Electromagnetic waves approaching a wire loop.

Exercise:

Problem:

Should the straight wire antenna of a radio be vertical or horizontal to best receive radio waves broadcast by a vertical transmitter antenna? How should a loop antenna be aligned to best receive the signals? (Note that the direction of the loop that produces the best reception can be used to determine the location of the source. It is used for that purpose in tracking tagged animals in nature studies, for example.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Under what conditions might wires in a DC circuit emit electromagnetic waves?

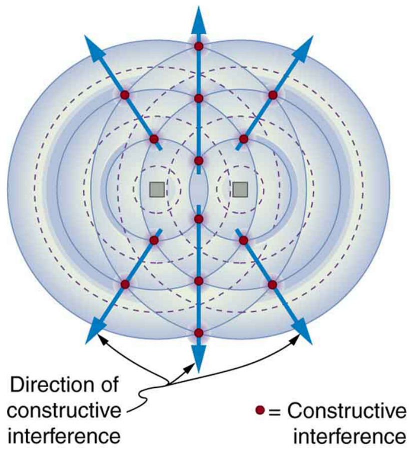
Exercise:

Problem: Give an example of interference of electromagnetic waves.

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows the interference pattern of two radio antennas broadcasting the same signal. Explain how this is analogous to the interference pattern for sound produced by two speakers. Could this be used to make a directional antenna system that broadcasts preferentially in certain directions? Explain.



An overhead view of two radio broadcast antennas sending the same signal, and the interference pattern they produce.

Exercise:

Problem: Can an antenna be any length? Explain your answer.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the maximum electric field strength in an electromagnetic wave that has a maximum magnetic field strength of $5.00 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{T}$ (about 10 times the Earth's)?

Solution:

150 kV/m

Exercise:

Problem:

The maximum magnetic field strength of an electromagnetic field is $5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{T}$. Calculate the maximum electric field strength if the wave is traveling in a medium in which the speed of the wave is $0.75c$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the units obtained for magnetic field strength B in [link] (using the equation $B = \frac{E}{c}$) are in fact teslas (T).

Glossary

electric field
: a vector quantity (**E**); the lines of electric force per unit charge, moving radially outward from a positive charge and in toward a negative charge

electric field strength
: the magnitude of the electric field, denoted *E*-field

magnetic field
: a vector quantity (**B**); can be used to determine the magnetic force on a moving charged particle

magnetic field strength
: the magnitude of the magnetic field, denoted *B*-field

transverse wave
: a wave, such as an electromagnetic wave, which oscillates perpendicular to the axis along the line of travel

standing wave

a wave that oscillates in place, with nodes where no motion happens

wavelength
the distance from one peak to the next in a wave

amplitude
the height, or magnitude, of an electromagnetic wave

frequency
the number of complete wave cycles (up-down-up) passing a given point within one second (cycles/second)

resonant
a system that displays enhanced oscillation when subjected to a periodic disturbance of the same frequency as its natural frequency

oscillate
to fluctuate back and forth in a steady beat

The Electromagnetic Spectrum

- List three “rules of thumb” that apply to the different frequencies along the electromagnetic spectrum.
- Explain why the higher the frequency, the shorter the wavelength of an electromagnetic wave.
- Draw a simplified electromagnetic spectrum, indicating the relative positions, frequencies, and spacing of the different types of radiation bands.
- List and explain the different methods by which electromagnetic waves are produced across the spectrum.

In this module we examine how electromagnetic waves are classified into categories such as radio, infrared, ultraviolet, and so on, so that we can understand some of their similarities as well as some of their differences. We will also find that there are many connections with previously discussed topics, such as wavelength and resonance. A brief overview of the production and utilization of electromagnetic waves is found in [link].

Type of EM wave	**Production**	**Applications**	**Life sciences aspect**	**Issues**
Radio & TV	Accelerating charges	Communications Remote controls	MRI	Requires controls for band use
Microwaves	Accelerating charges & thermal agitation	Communications Ovens Radar	Deep heating	Cell phone use
Infrared	Thermal agitations & electronic transitions	Thermal imaging Heating	Absorbed by atmosphere	Greenhouse effect
Visible light	Thermal agitations & electronic transitions	All pervasive	Photosynthesis Human vision	

Type of EM wave	Production	Applications	Life sciences aspect	Issues
Ultraviolet	Thermal agitations & electronic transitions	Sterilization Cancer control	Vitamin D production	Ozone depletion Cancer causing
X-rays	Inner electronic transitions and fast collisions	Medical Security	Medical diagnosis Cancer therapy	Cancer causing
Gamma rays	Nuclear decay	Nuclear medicineSecurity	Medical diagnosis Cancer therapy	Cancer causing Radiation damage

Electromagnetic Waves

Note:
Connections: Waves
There are many types of waves, such as water waves and even earthquakes. Among the many shared attributes of waves are propagation speed, frequency, and wavelength. These are always related by the expression $v_{\text{W}} = f\lambda$. This module concentrates on EM waves, but other modules contain examples of all of these characteristics for sound waves and submicroscopic particles.

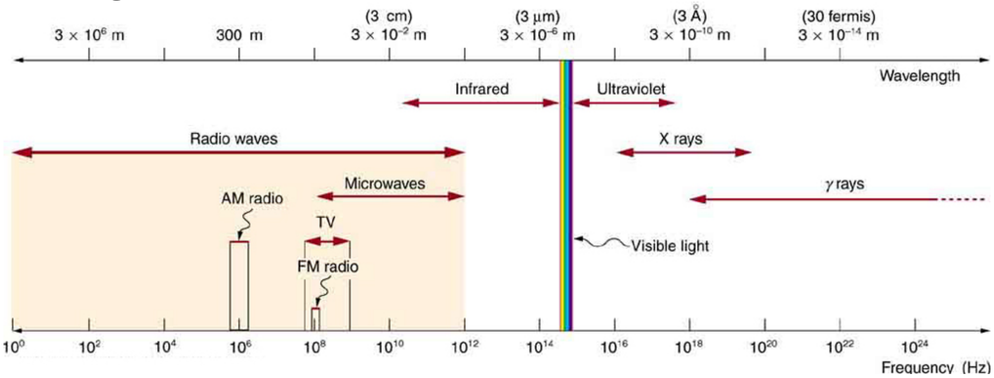
As noted before, an electromagnetic wave has a frequency and a wavelength associated with it and travels at the speed of light, or c. The relationship among these wave characteristics can be described by $v_{\text{W}} = f\lambda$, where v_{W} is the propagation speed of the wave, f is the frequency, and λ is the wavelength. Here $v_{\text{W}} = c$, so that for all electromagnetic waves,
Equation:

$$c = f\lambda.$$

Thus, for all electromagnetic waves, the greater the frequency, the smaller the wavelength.

[link] shows how the various types of electromagnetic waves are categorized according to their wavelengths and frequencies—that is, it shows the electromagnetic spectrum. Many of the

characteristics of the various types of electromagnetic waves are related to their frequencies and wavelengths, as we shall see.



The electromagnetic spectrum, showing the major categories of electromagnetic waves. The range of frequencies and wavelengths is remarkable. The dividing line between some categories is distinct, whereas other categories overlap.

Note:

Electromagnetic Spectrum: Rules of Thumb

Three rules that apply to electromagnetic waves in general are as follows:

- High-frequency electromagnetic waves are more energetic and are more able to penetrate than low-frequency waves.
- High-frequency electromagnetic waves can carry more information per unit time than low-frequency waves.
- The shorter the wavelength of any electromagnetic wave probing a material, the smaller the detail it is possible to resolve.

Note that there are exceptions to these rules of thumb.

Transmission, Reflection, and Absorption

What happens when an electromagnetic wave impinges on a material? If the material is transparent to the particular frequency, then the wave can largely be transmitted. If the material is opaque to the frequency, then the wave can be totally reflected. The wave can also be absorbed by the material, indicating that there is some interaction between the wave and the material, such as the thermal agitation of molecules.

Of course it is possible to have partial transmission, reflection, and absorption. We normally associate these properties with visible light, but they do apply to all electromagnetic waves.

What is not obvious is that something that is transparent to light may be opaque at other frequencies. For example, ordinary glass is transparent to visible light but largely opaque to ultraviolet radiation. Human skin is opaque to visible light—we cannot see through people—but transparent to X-rays.

Radio and TV Waves

The broad category of **radio waves** is defined to contain any electromagnetic wave produced by currents in wires and circuits. Its name derives from their most common use as a carrier of audio information (i.e., radio). The name is applied to electromagnetic waves of similar frequencies regardless of source. Radio waves from outer space, for example, do not come from alien radio stations. They are created by many astronomical phenomena, and their study has revealed much about nature on the largest scales.

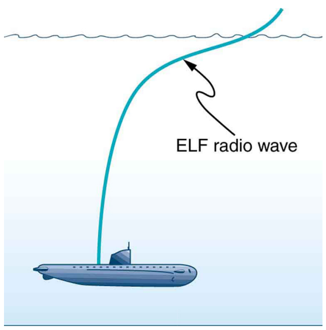
There are many uses for radio waves, and so the category is divided into many subcategories, including microwaves and those electromagnetic waves used for AM and FM radio, cellular telephones, and TV.

The lowest commonly encountered radio frequencies are produced by high-voltage AC power transmission lines at frequencies of 50 or 60 Hz. (See [link].) These extremely long wavelength electromagnetic waves (about 6000 km!) are one means of energy loss in long-distance power transmission.

This high-voltage traction power line running to Eutingen Railway Substation in Germany radiates electromagnetic waves with very long wavelengths. (credit: Zonk43, Wikimedia Commons)

There is an ongoing controversy regarding potential health hazards associated with exposure to these electromagnetic fields (E-fields). Some people suspect that living near such transmission lines may cause a variety of illnesses, including cancer. But demographic data are either inconclusive or simply do not support the hazard theory. Recent reports that have looked at many European and American epidemiological studies have found no increase in risk for cancer due to exposure to E-fields.

Extremely low frequency (ELF) radio waves of about 1 kHz are used to communicate with submerged submarines. The ability of radio waves to penetrate salt water is related to their wavelength (much like ultrasound penetrating tissue)—the longer the wavelength, the farther they penetrate. Since salt water is a good conductor, radio waves are strongly absorbed by it, and very long wavelengths are needed to reach a submarine under the surface. (See [link].)

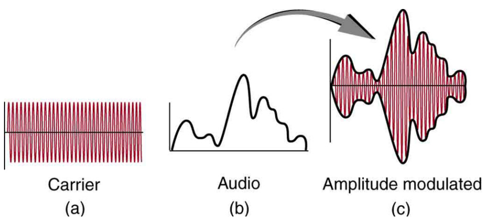


Very long wavelength radio waves are needed to reach this submarine, requiring extremely low frequency signals (ELF). Shorter wavelengths do not penetrate to any significant depth.

AM radio waves are used to carry commercial radio signals in the frequency range from 540 to 1600 kHz. The abbreviation AM stands for **amplitude modulation**, which is the method for placing information on these waves. (See [link].) A **carrier wave** having the basic frequency of the radio station, say 1530 kHz, is varied or modulated in amplitude by an audio signal. The resulting wave has a constant frequency, but a varying amplitude.

A radio receiver tuned to have the same resonant frequency as the carrier wave can pick up the signal, while rejecting the many other frequencies impinging on its antenna. The receiver’s

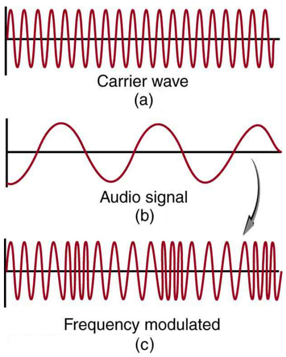
circuitry is designed to respond to variations in amplitude of the carrier wave to replicate the original audio signal. That audio signal is amplified to drive a speaker or perhaps to be recorded.



Amplitude modulation for AM radio. (a) A carrier wave at the station's basic frequency. (b) An audio signal at much lower audible frequencies. (c) The amplitude of the carrier is modulated by the audio signal without changing its basic frequency.

FM Radio Waves

FM radio waves are also used for commercial radio transmission, but in the frequency range of 88 to 108 MHz. FM stands for **frequency modulation**, another method of carrying information. (See [link].) Here a carrier wave having the basic frequency of the radio station, perhaps 105.1 MHz, is modulated in frequency by the audio signal, producing a wave of constant amplitude but varying frequency.



Frequency modulation for

FM radio. (a) A carrier wave at the station’s basic frequency. (b) An audio signal at much lower audible frequencies. (c) The frequency of the carrier is modulated by the audio signal without changing its amplitude.

Since audible frequencies range up to 20 kHz (or 0.020 MHz) at most, the frequency of the FM radio wave can vary from the carrier by as much as 0.020 MHz. Thus the carrier frequencies of two different radio stations cannot be closer than 0.020 MHz. An FM receiver is tuned to resonate at the carrier frequency and has circuitry that responds to variations in frequency, reproducing the audio information.

FM radio is inherently less subject to noise from stray radio sources than AM radio. The reason is that amplitudes of waves add. So an AM receiver would interpret noise added onto the amplitude of its carrier wave as part of the information. An FM receiver can be made to reject amplitudes other than that of the basic carrier wave and only look for variations in frequency. It is thus easier to reject noise from FM, since noise produces a variation in amplitude.

Television is also broadcast on electromagnetic waves. Since the waves must carry a great deal of visual as well as audio information, each channel requires a larger range of frequencies than simple radio transmission. TV channels utilize frequencies in the range of 54 to 88 MHz and 174 to 222 MHz. (The entire FM radio band lies between channels 88 MHz and 174 MHz.) These TV channels are called VHF (for **very high frequency**). Other channels called UHF (for **ultra high frequency**) utilize an even higher frequency range of 470 to 1000 MHz.

The TV video signal is AM, while the TV audio is FM. Note that these frequencies are those of free transmission with the user utilizing an old-fashioned roof antenna. Satellite dishes and cable transmission of TV occurs at significantly higher frequencies and is rapidly evolving with the use of the high-definition or HD format.

Example:
Calculating Wavelengths of Radio Waves

Calculate the wavelengths of a 1530-kHz AM radio signal, a 105.1-MHz FM radio signal, and a 1.90-GHz cell phone signal.

Strategy

The relationship between wavelength and frequency is $c = f\lambda$, where $c = 3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}$ is the speed of light (the speed of light is only very slightly smaller in air than it is in a vacuum). We can rearrange this equation to find the wavelength for all three frequencies.

Solution

Rearranging gives

Equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f}.$$

(a) For the $f = 1530\ \text{kHz}$ AM radio signal, then,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}{1530 \times 10^3\ \text{cycles/s}} \\ &= 196\ \text{m}. \end{aligned}$$

(b) For the $f = 105.1\ \text{MHz}$ FM radio signal,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}{105.1 \times 10^6\ \text{cycles/s}} \\ &= 2.85\ \text{m}. \end{aligned}$$

(c) And for the $f = 1.90\ \text{GHz}$ cell phone,

Equation:

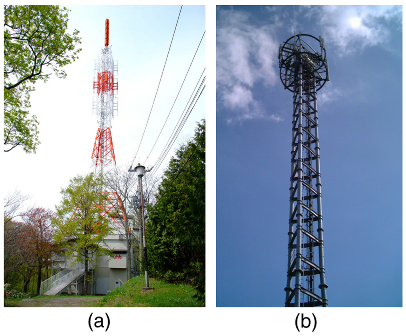
$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}{1.90 \times 10^9\ \text{cycles/s}} \\ &= 0.158\ \text{m}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

These wavelengths are consistent with the spectrum in [link]. The wavelengths are also related to other properties of these electromagnetic waves, as we shall see.

The wavelengths found in the preceding example are representative of AM, FM, and cell phones, and account for some of the differences in how they are broadcast and how well they travel. The most efficient length for a linear antenna, such as discussed in Production of Electromagnetic Waves, is $\lambda/2$, half the wavelength of the electromagnetic wave. Thus a very large antenna is needed to efficiently broadcast typical AM radio with its carrier wavelengths on the order of hundreds of meters.

One benefit to these long AM wavelengths is that they can go over and around rather large obstacles (like buildings and hills), just as ocean waves can go around large rocks. FM and TV are best received when there is a line of sight between the broadcast antenna and receiver, and they are often sent from very tall structures. FM, TV, and mobile phone antennas themselves are much smaller than those used for AM, but they are elevated to achieve an unobstructed line of sight. (See [link].)



(a) A large tower is used to broadcast TV signals. The actual antennas are small structures on top of the tower—they are placed at great heights to have a clear line of sight over a large broadcast area. (credit: Ozizo, Wikimedia Commons) (b) The NTT Dokomo mobile phone tower at Tokorozawa City, Japan. (credit: tokoroten, Wikimedia Commons)

Radio Wave Interference

Astronomers and astrophysicists collect signals from outer space using electromagnetic waves. A common problem for astrophysicists is the “pollution” from electromagnetic radiation pervading our surroundings from communication systems in general. Even everyday gadgets like our car keys having the facility to lock car doors remotely and being able to turn TVs on and off using remotes involve radio-wave frequencies. In order to prevent interference between all these electromagnetic signals, strict regulations are drawn up for different organizations to utilize different radio frequency bands.

One reason why we are sometimes asked to switch off our mobile phones (operating in the range of 1.9 GHz) on airplanes and in hospitals is that important communications or medical equipment often uses similar radio frequencies and their operation can be affected by frequencies used in the communication devices.

For example, radio waves used in magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) have frequencies on the order of 100 MHz, although this varies significantly depending on the strength of the magnetic field used and the nuclear type being scanned. MRI is an important medical imaging and research tool, producing highly detailed two- and three-dimensional images. Radio waves are broadcast, absorbed, and reemitted in a resonance process that is sensitive to the density of nuclei (usually protons or hydrogen nuclei).

The wavelength of 100-MHz radio waves is 3 m, yet using the sensitivity of the resonant frequency to the magnetic field strength, details smaller than a millimeter can be imaged. This is a good example of an exception to a rule of thumb (in this case, the rubric that details much smaller than the probe's wavelength cannot be detected). The intensity of the radio waves used in MRI presents little or no hazard to human health.

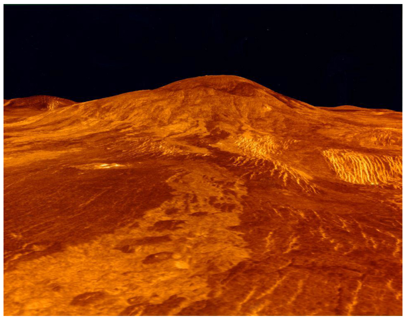
Microwaves

Microwaves are the highest-frequency electromagnetic waves that can be produced by currents in macroscopic circuits and devices. Microwave frequencies range from about $10^9\ \text{Hz}$ to the highest practical LC resonance at nearly $10^{12}\ \text{Hz}$. Since they have high frequencies, their wavelengths are short compared with those of other radio waves—hence the name "microwave."

Microwaves can also be produced by atoms and molecules. They are, for example, a component of electromagnetic radiation generated by **thermal agitation**. The thermal motion of atoms and molecules in any object at a temperature above absolute zero causes them to emit and absorb radiation.

Since it is possible to carry more information per unit time on high frequencies, microwaves are quite suitable for communications. Most satellite-transmitted information is carried on microwaves, as are land-based long-distance transmissions. A clear line of sight between transmitter and receiver is needed because of the short wavelengths involved.

Radar is a common application of microwaves that was first developed in World War II. By detecting and timing microwave echoes, radar systems can determine the distance to objects as diverse as clouds and aircraft. A Doppler shift in the radar echo can be used to determine the speed of a car or the intensity of a rainstorm. Sophisticated radar systems are used to map the Earth and other planets, with a resolution limited by wavelength. (See [link].) The shorter the wavelength of any probe, the smaller the detail it is possible to observe.



An image of Sif Mons with lava flows on Venus, based on Magellan synthetic aperture radar data combined with radar altimetry to produce a three-dimensional map of the surface. The Venusian atmosphere is opaque to visible light, but not to the microwaves that were used to create this image. (credit: NSSDC, NASA/JPL)

Heating with Microwaves

How does the ubiquitous microwave oven produce microwaves electronically, and why does food absorb them preferentially? Microwaves at a frequency of 2.45 GHz are produced by accelerating electrons. The microwaves are then used to induce an alternating electric field in the oven.

Water and some other constituents of food have a slightly negative charge at one end and a slightly positive charge at one end (called polar molecules). The range of microwave frequencies is specially selected so that the polar molecules, in trying to keep orienting themselves with the electric field, absorb these energies and increase their temperatures—called dielectric heating.

The energy thereby absorbed results in thermal agitation heating food and not the plate, which does not contain water. Hot spots in the food are related to constructive and destructive interference patterns. Rotating antennas and food turntables help spread out the hot spots.

Another use of microwaves for heating is within the human body. Microwaves will penetrate more than shorter wavelengths into tissue and so can accomplish “deep heating” (called

microwave diathermy). This is used for treating muscular pains, spasms, tendonitis, and rheumatoid arthritis.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—Microwave Ovens

1. Look at the door of a microwave oven. Describe the structure of the door. Why is there a metal grid on the door? How does the size of the holes in the grid compare with the wavelengths of microwaves used in microwave ovens? What is this wavelength?
2. Place a glass of water (about 250 ml) in the microwave and heat it for 30 seconds. Measure the temperature gain (the ΔT). Assuming that the power output of the oven is 1000 W, calculate the efficiency of the heat-transfer process.
3. Remove the rotating turntable or moving plate and place a cup of water in several places along a line parallel with the opening. Heat for 30 seconds and measure the ΔT for each position. Do you see cases of destructive interference?

Microwaves generated by atoms and molecules far away in time and space can be received and detected by electronic circuits. Deep space acts like a blackbody with a 2.7 K temperature, radiating most of its energy in the microwave frequency range. In 1964, Penzias and Wilson detected this radiation and eventually recognized that it was the radiation of the Big Bang's cooled remnants.

Infrared Radiation

The microwave and infrared regions of the electromagnetic spectrum overlap (see [link]). **Infrared radiation** is generally produced by thermal motion and the vibration and rotation of atoms and molecules. Electronic transitions in atoms and molecules can also produce infrared radiation.

The range of infrared frequencies extends up to the lower limit of visible light, just below red. In fact, infrared means "below red." Frequencies at its upper limit are too high to be produced by accelerating electrons in circuits, but small systems, such as atoms and molecules, can vibrate fast enough to produce these waves.

Water molecules rotate and vibrate particularly well at infrared frequencies, emitting and absorbing them so efficiently that the emissivity for skin is $e = 0.97$ in the infrared. Night-vision scopes can detect the infrared emitted by various warm objects, including humans, and convert it to visible light.

We can examine radiant heat transfer from a house by using a camera capable of detecting infrared radiation. Reconnaissance satellites can detect buildings, vehicles, and even individual humans by their infrared emissions, whose power radiation is proportional to the fourth power of the absolute temperature. More mundanely, we use infrared lamps, some of which are called

quartz heaters, to preferentially warm us because we absorb infrared better than our surroundings.

The Sun radiates like a nearly perfect blackbody (that is, it has $e = 1$), with a 6000 K surface temperature. About half of the solar energy arriving at the Earth is in the infrared region, with most of the rest in the visible part of the spectrum, and a relatively small amount in the ultraviolet. On average, 50 percent of the incident solar energy is absorbed by the Earth.

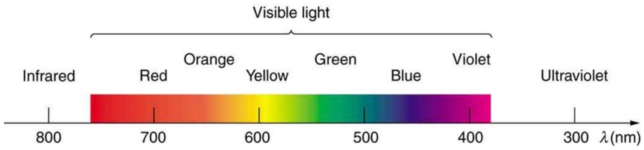
The relatively constant temperature of the Earth is a result of the energy balance between the incoming solar radiation and the energy radiated from the Earth. Most of the infrared radiation emitted from the Earth is absorbed by CO_2 and H_2O in the atmosphere and then radiated back to Earth or into outer space. This radiation back to Earth is known as the greenhouse effect, and it maintains the surface temperature of the Earth about $40^{\circ}C$ higher than it would be if there is no absorption. Some scientists think that the increased concentration of CO_2 and other greenhouse gases in the atmosphere, resulting from increases in fossil fuel burning, has increased global average temperatures.

Visible Light

Visible light is the narrow segment of the electromagnetic spectrum to which the normal human eye responds. Visible light is produced by vibrations and rotations of atoms and molecules, as well as by electronic transitions within atoms and molecules. The receivers or detectors of light largely utilize electronic transitions. We say the atoms and molecules are excited when they absorb and relax when they emit through electronic transitions.

[link] shows this part of the spectrum, together with the colors associated with particular pure wavelengths. We usually refer to visible light as having wavelengths of between 400 nm and 750 nm. (The retina of the eye actually responds to the lowest ultraviolet frequencies, but these do not normally reach the retina because they are absorbed by the cornea and lens of the eye.)

Red light has the lowest frequencies and longest wavelengths, while violet has the highest frequencies and shortest wavelengths. Blackbody radiation from the Sun peaks in the visible part of the spectrum but is more intense in the red than in the violet, making the Sun yellowish in appearance.



A small part of the electromagnetic spectrum that includes its visible components. The divisions between infrared, visible, and ultraviolet are not perfectly

distinct, nor are those between the seven rainbow colors.

Living things—plants and animals—have evolved to utilize and respond to parts of the electromagnetic spectrum they are embedded in. Visible light is the most predominant and we enjoy the beauty of nature through visible light. Plants are more selective. Photosynthesis makes use of parts of the visible spectrum to make sugars.

Example:
Integrated Concept Problem: Correcting Vision with Lasers
During laser vision correction, a brief burst of 193-nm ultraviolet light is projected onto the cornea of a patient. It makes a spot 0.80 mm in diameter and evaporates a layer of cornea $0.30\ \mu\text{m}$ thick. Calculate the energy absorbed, assuming the corneal tissue has the same properties as water; it is initially at 34^{o}C. Assume the evaporated tissue leaves at a temperature of 100^{o}C.
Strategy
The energy from the laser light goes toward raising the temperature of the tissue and also toward evaporating it. Thus we have two amounts of heat to add together. Also, we need to find the mass of corneal tissue involved.
Solution
To figure out the heat required to raise the temperature of the tissue to 100^{o}C, we can apply concepts of thermal energy. We know that
Equation:

$$\text{Q} = \text{mc}\Delta T,$$

where Q is the heat required to raise the temperature, ΔT is the desired change in temperature, m is the mass of tissue to be heated, and c is the specific heat of water equal to 4186 J/kg/K. Without knowing the mass m at this point, we have
Equation:

$$Q = m(4186\ \text{J/kg/K})(100^{\text{o}}\text{C}–34^{\text{o}}\text{C}) = m(276{,}276\ \text{J/kg}) = m(276\ \text{kJ/kg}\ ).$$

The latent heat of vaporization of water is 2256 kJ/kg, so that the energy needed to evaporate mass m is
Equation:

$$Q_{\text{v}} = mL_{\text{v}} = m(2256\ \text{kJ/kg}).$$

To find the mass m, we use the equation $\rho = m/\text{V}$, where ρ is the density of the tissue and V is its volume. For this case,
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} m &= \rho \mathrm{V} \\ &= (1000\ \mathrm{kg/m^3})(\mathrm{area}\times\mathrm{thickness}(\mathrm{m^3})) \\ &= (1000\ \mathrm{kg/m^3})(\pi(0.80\times10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})^2/4)(0.30\times10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m}) \\ &= 0.151\times10^{-9}\ \mathrm{kg.} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the total energy absorbed by the tissue in the eye is the sum of Q and $\mathrm{Q_v}$:
Equation:

$$\mathrm{Q_{tot}} = m(c\Delta\mathrm{T} + \mathrm{L_v}) = (0.151\times10^{-9}\ \mathrm{kg})(276\ \mathrm{kJ/kg} + 2256\ \mathrm{kJ/kg}) = 382\times10^{-9}\ \mathrm{kJ.}$$

Discussion
The lasers used for this eye surgery are excimer lasers, whose light is well absorbed by biological tissue. They evaporate rather than burn the tissue, and can be used for precision work. Most lasers used for this type of eye surgery have an average power rating of about one watt. For our example, if we assume that each laser burst from this pulsed laser lasts for 10 ns, and there are 400 bursts per second, then the average power is $\mathrm{Q_{tot}}\times400 = 150\ \mathrm{mW}$.

Optics is the study of the behavior of visible light and other forms of electromagnetic waves. Optics falls into two distinct categories. When electromagnetic radiation, such as visible light, interacts with objects that are large compared with its wavelength, its motion can be represented by straight lines like rays. Ray optics is the study of such situations and includes lenses and mirrors.

When electromagnetic radiation interacts with objects about the same size as the wavelength or smaller, its wave nature becomes apparent. For example, observable detail is limited by the wavelength, and so visible light can never detect individual atoms, because they are so much smaller than its wavelength. Physical or wave optics is the study of such situations and includes all wave characteristics.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Colors That Match
When you light a match you see largely orange light; when you light a gas stove you see blue light. Why are the colors different? What other colors are present in these?

Ultraviolet Radiation

Ultraviolet means “above violet.” The electromagnetic frequencies of **ultraviolet radiation (UV)** extend upward from violet, the highest-frequency visible light. Ultraviolet is also produced by atomic and molecular motions and electronic transitions. The wavelengths of ultraviolet extend from 400 nm down to about 10 nm at its highest frequencies, which overlap

with the lowest X-ray frequencies. It was recognized as early as 1801 by Johann Ritter that the solar spectrum had an invisible component beyond the violet range.

Solar UV radiation is broadly subdivided into three regions: UV-A (320–400 nm), UV-B (290–320 nm), and UV-C (220–290 nm), ranked from long to shorter wavelengths (from smaller to larger energies). Most UV-B and all UV-C is absorbed by ozone (O_3) molecules in the upper atmosphere. Consequently, 99% of the solar UV radiation reaching the Earth's surface is UV-A.

Human Exposure to UV Radiation

It is largely exposure to UV-B that causes skin cancer. It is estimated that as many as 20% of adults will develop skin cancer over the course of their lifetime. Again, treatment is often successful if caught early. Despite very little UV-B reaching the Earth's surface, there are substantial increases in skin-cancer rates in countries such as Australia, indicating how important it is that UV-B and UV-C continue to be absorbed by the upper atmosphere.

All UV radiation can damage collagen fibers, resulting in an acceleration of the aging process of skin and the formation of wrinkles. Because there is so little UV-B and UV-C reaching the Earth's surface, sunburn is caused by large exposures, and skin cancer from repeated exposure. Some studies indicate a link between overexposure to the Sun when young and melanoma later in life.

The tanning response is a defense mechanism in which the body produces pigments to absorb future exposures in inert skin layers above living cells. Basically UV-B radiation excites DNA molecules, distorting the DNA helix, leading to mutations and the possible formation of cancerous cells.

Repeated exposure to UV-B may also lead to the formation of cataracts in the eyes—a cause of blindness among people living in the equatorial belt where medical treatment is limited. Cataracts, clouding in the eye's lens and a loss of vision, are age related; 60% of those between the ages of 65 and 74 will develop cataracts. However, treatment is easy and successful, as one replaces the lens of the eye with a plastic lens. Prevention is important. Eye protection from UV is more effective with plastic sunglasses than those made of glass.

A major acute effect of extreme UV exposure is the suppression of the immune system, both locally and throughout the body.

Low-intensity ultraviolet is used to sterilize haircutting implements, implying that the energy associated with ultraviolet is deposited in a manner different from lower-frequency electromagnetic waves. (Actually this is true for all electromagnetic waves with frequencies greater than visible light.)

Flash photography is generally not allowed of precious artworks and colored prints because the UV radiation from the flash can cause photo-degradation in the artworks. Often artworks will have an extra-thick layer of glass in front of them, which is especially designed to absorb UV radiation.

UV Light and the Ozone Layer

If all of the Sun's ultraviolet radiation reached the Earth's surface, there would be extremely grave effects on the biosphere from the severe cell damage it causes. However, the layer of ozone (O_3) in our upper atmosphere (10 to 50 km above the Earth) protects life by absorbing most of the dangerous UV radiation.

Unfortunately, today we are observing a depletion in ozone concentrations in the upper atmosphere. This depletion has led to the formation of an "ozone hole" in the upper atmosphere. The hole is more centered over the southern hemisphere, and changes with the seasons, being largest in the spring. This depletion is attributed to the breakdown of ozone molecules by refrigerant gases called chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs).

The UV radiation helps dissociate the CFC's, releasing highly reactive chlorine (Cl) atoms, which catalyze the destruction of the ozone layer. For example, the reaction of $CFCl_3$ with a photon of light (hv) can be written as:

Equation:

$$CFCl_3 + hv \rightarrow CFCl_2 + Cl.$$

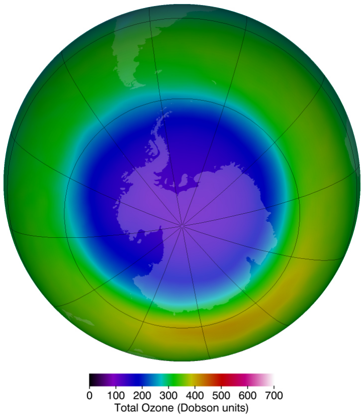
The Cl atom then catalyzes the breakdown of ozone as follows:

Equation:

$$Cl + O_3 \rightarrow ClO + O_2 \text{ and } ClO + O_3 \rightarrow Cl + 2O_2.$$

A single chlorine atom could destroy ozone molecules for up to two years before being transported down to the surface. The CFCs are relatively stable and will contribute to ozone depletion for years to come. CFCs are found in refrigerants, air conditioning systems, foams, and aerosols.

International concern over this problem led to the establishment of the "Montreal Protocol" agreement (1987) to phase out CFC production in most countries. However, developing-country participation is needed if worldwide production and elimination of CFCs is to be achieved. Probably the largest contributor to CFC emissions today is India. But the protocol seems to be working, as there are signs of an ozone recovery. (See [link].)



This map of ozone concentration over Antarctica in October 2011 shows severe depletion suspected to be caused by CFCs. Less dramatic but more general depletion has been observed over northern latitudes, suggesting the effect is global. With less ozone, more ultraviolet radiation from the Sun reaches the surface, causing more damage. (credit: NASA Ozone Watch)

Benefits of UV Light

Besides the adverse effects of ultraviolet radiation, there are also benefits of exposure in nature and uses in technology. Vitamin D production in the skin (epidermis) results from exposure to UVB radiation, generally from sunlight. A number of studies indicate lack of vitamin D can result in the development of a range of cancers (prostate, breast, colon), so a certain amount of UV exposure is helpful. Lack of vitamin D is also linked to osteoporosis. Exposures (with no sunscreen) of 10 minutes a day to arms, face, and legs might be sufficient to provide the accepted dietary level. However, in the winter time north of about 37^{o} latitude, most UVB gets blocked by the atmosphere.

UV radiation is used in the treatment of infantile jaundice and in some skin conditions. It is also used in sterilizing workspaces and tools, and killing germs in a wide range of applications. It is

also used as an analytical tool to identify substances.

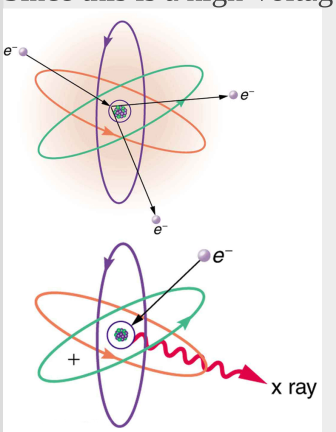
When exposed to ultraviolet, some substances, such as minerals, glow in characteristic visible wavelengths, a process called fluorescence. So-called black lights emit ultraviolet to cause posters and clothing to fluoresce in the visible. Ultraviolet is also used in special microscopes to detect details smaller than those observable with longer-wavelength visible-light microscopes.

Note:

Things Great and Small: A Submicroscopic View of X-Ray Production

X-rays can be created in a high-voltage discharge. They are emitted in the material struck by electrons in the discharge current. There are two mechanisms by which the electrons create X-rays.

The first method is illustrated in [link]. An electron is accelerated in an evacuated tube by a high positive voltage. The electron strikes a metal plate (e.g., copper) and produces X-rays. Since this is a high-voltage discharge, the electron gains sufficient energy to ionize the atom.

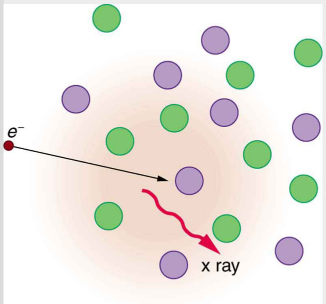


Artist’s conception of an electron ionizing an atom followed by the recapture of an electron and emission of an X-ray. An energetic electron strikes an atom and knocks an electron out of one of the orbits closest to the nucleus. Later, the atom captures another electron, and the energy released by

its fall into a low orbit generates a high-energy EM wave called an X-ray.

In the case shown, an inner-shell electron (one in an orbit relatively close to and tightly bound to the nucleus) is ejected. A short time later, another electron is captured and falls into the orbit in a single great plunge. The energy released by this fall is given to an EM wave known as an X-ray. Since the orbits of the atom are unique to the type of atom, the energy of the X-ray is characteristic of the atom, hence the name characteristic X-ray.

The second method by which an energetic electron creates an X-ray when it strikes a material is illustrated in [link]. The electron interacts with charges in the material as it penetrates. These collisions transfer kinetic energy from the electron to the electrons and atoms in the material.



Artist's conception of an electron being slowed by collisions in a material and emitting X-ray radiation. This energetic electron makes numerous collisions with electrons and atoms in a material it penetrates. An accelerated charge radiates EM waves, a second method by which X-rays are created.

A loss of kinetic energy implies an acceleration, in this case decreasing the electron's velocity. Whenever a charge is accelerated, it radiates EM waves. Given the high energy of the electron,

these EM waves can have high energy. We call them X-rays. Since the process is random, a broad spectrum of X-ray energy is emitted that is more characteristic of the electron energy than the type of material the electron encounters. Such EM radiation is called “bremsstrahlung” (German for “braking radiation”).

X-Rays

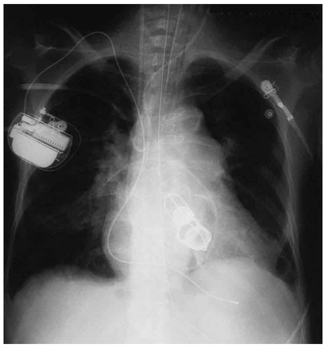
In the 1850s, scientists (such as Faraday) began experimenting with high-voltage electrical discharges in tubes filled with rarefied gases. It was later found that these discharges created an invisible, penetrating form of very high frequency electromagnetic radiation. This radiation was called an **X-ray**, because its identity and nature were unknown.

As described in Things Great and Small, there are two methods by which X-rays are created—both are submicroscopic processes and can be caused by high-voltage discharges. While the low-frequency end of the X-ray range overlaps with the ultraviolet, X-rays extend to much higher frequencies (and energies).

X-rays have adverse effects on living cells similar to those of ultraviolet radiation, and they have the additional liability of being more penetrating, affecting more than the surface layers of cells. Cancer and genetic defects can be induced by exposure to X-rays. Because of their effect on rapidly dividing cells, X-rays can also be used to treat and even cure cancer.

The widest use of X-rays is for imaging objects that are opaque to visible light, such as the human body or aircraft parts. In humans, the risk of cell damage is weighed carefully against the benefit of the diagnostic information obtained. However, questions have risen in recent years as to accidental overexposure of some people during CT scans—a mistake at least in part due to poor monitoring of radiation dose.

The ability of X-rays to penetrate matter depends on density, and so an X-ray image can reveal very detailed density information. [link] shows an example of the simplest type of X-ray image, an X-ray shadow on film. The amount of information in a simple X-ray image is impressive, but more sophisticated techniques, such as CT scans, can reveal three-dimensional information with details smaller than a millimeter.



This shadow X-ray image shows many interesting features, such as artificial heart valves, a pacemaker, and the wires used to close the sternum. (credit: P. P. Urone)

The use of X-ray technology in medicine is called radiology—an established and relatively cheap tool in comparison to more sophisticated technologies. Consequently, X-rays are widely available and used extensively in medical diagnostics. During World War I, mobile X-ray units, advocated by Madame Marie Curie, were used to diagnose soldiers.

Because they can have wavelengths less than 0.01 nm, X-rays can be scattered (a process called X-ray diffraction) to detect the shape of molecules and the structure of crystals. X-ray diffraction was crucial to Crick, Watson, and Wilkins in the determination of the shape of the double-helix DNA molecule.

X-rays are also used as a precise tool for trace-metal analysis in X-ray induced fluorescence, in which the energy of the X-ray emissions are related to the specific types of elements and amounts of materials present.

Gamma Rays

Soon after nuclear radioactivity was first detected in 1896, it was found that at least three distinct types of radiation were being emitted. The most penetrating nuclear radiation was called a **gamma ray (γ ray)** (again a name given because its identity and character were unknown), and it was later found to be an extremely high frequency electromagnetic wave.

In fact, γ rays are any electromagnetic radiation emitted by a nucleus. This can be from natural nuclear decay or induced nuclear processes in nuclear reactors and weapons. The lower end of the $\gamma\text{-ray}$ frequency range overlaps the upper end of the X-ray range, but γ rays can have the highest frequency of any electromagnetic radiation.

Gamma rays have characteristics identical to X-rays of the same frequency—they differ only in source. At higher frequencies, γ rays are more penetrating and more damaging to living tissue. They have many of the same uses as X-rays, including cancer therapy. Gamma radiation from radioactive materials is used in nuclear medicine.

[link] shows a medical image based on γ rays. Food spoilage can be greatly inhibited by exposing it to large doses of γ radiation, thereby obliterating responsible microorganisms. Damage to food cells through irradiation occurs as well, and the long-term hazards of

consuming radiation-preserved food are unknown and controversial for some groups. Both X-ray and γ-ray technologies are also used in scanning luggage at airports.

This is an image of the γ rays emitted by nuclei in a compound that is concentrated in the bones and eliminated through the kidneys. Bone cancer is evidenced by nonuniform concentration in similar

structures. For example, some ribs are darker than others. (credit: P. P. Urone)

Detecting Electromagnetic Waves from Space

A final note on star gazing. The entire electromagnetic spectrum is used by researchers for investigating stars, space, and time. As noted earlier, Penzias and Wilson detected microwaves to identify the background radiation originating from the Big Bang. Radio telescopes such as the Arecibo Radio Telescope in Puerto Rico and Parkes Observatory in Australia were designed to detect radio waves.

Infrared telescopes need to have their detectors cooled by liquid nitrogen to be able to gather useful signals. Since infrared radiation is predominantly from thermal agitation, if the detectors were not cooled, the vibrations of the molecules in the antenna would be stronger than the signal being collected.

The most famous of these infrared sensitive telescopes is the James Clerk Maxwell Telescope in Hawaii. The earliest telescopes, developed in the seventeenth century, were optical telescopes, collecting visible light. Telescopes in the ultraviolet, X-ray, and γ-ray regions are placed outside the atmosphere on satellites orbiting the Earth.

The Hubble Space Telescope (launched in 1990) gathers ultraviolet radiation as well as visible light. In the X-ray region, there is the Chandra X-ray Observatory (launched in 1999), and in the γ-ray region, there is the new Fermi Gamma-ray Space Telescope (launched in 2008—taking the place of the Compton Gamma Ray Observatory, 1991–2000.).

Note:
PhET Explorations: Color Vision
Make a whole rainbow by mixing red, green, and blue light. Change the wavelength of a monochromatic beam or filter white light. View the light as a solid beam, or see the individual photons.

Color Vision

Section Summary

- The relationship among the speed of propagation, wavelength, and frequency for any wave is given by $v_{\text{W}} = f\lambda$, so that for electromagnetic waves,
  Equation:
  $$c = f\lambda,$$
  where f is the frequency, λ is the wavelength, and c is the speed of light.
- The electromagnetic spectrum is separated into many categories and subcategories, based on the frequency and wavelength, source, and uses of the electromagnetic waves.
- Any electromagnetic wave produced by currents in wires is classified as a radio wave, the lowest frequency electromagnetic waves. Radio waves are divided into many types, depending on their applications, ranging up to microwaves at their highest frequencies.
- Infrared radiation lies below visible light in frequency and is produced by thermal motion and the vibration and rotation of atoms and molecules. Infrared's lower frequencies overlap with the highest-frequency microwaves.
- Visible light is largely produced by electronic transitions in atoms and molecules, and is defined as being detectable by the human eye. Its colors vary with frequency, from red at the lowest to violet at the highest.
- Ultraviolet radiation starts with frequencies just above violet in the visible range and is produced primarily by electronic transitions in atoms and molecules.
- X-rays are created in high-voltage discharges and by electron bombardment of metal targets. Their lowest frequencies overlap the ultraviolet range but extend to much higher values, overlapping at the high end with gamma rays.
- Gamma rays are nuclear in origin and are defined to include the highest-frequency electromagnetic radiation of any type.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

If you live in a region that has a particular TV station, you can sometimes pick up some of its audio portion on your FM radio receiver. Explain how this is possible. Does it imply that TV audio is broadcast as FM?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why people who have the lens of their eye removed because of cataracts are able to see low-frequency ultraviolet.

Exercise:

Problem:

How do fluorescent soap residues make clothing look “brighter and whiter” in outdoor light? Would this be effective in candlelight?

Exercise:

Problem: Give an example of resonance in the reception of electromagnetic waves.

Exercise:

Problem:

Illustrate that the size of details of an object that can be detected with electromagnetic waves is related to their wavelength, by comparing details observable with two different types (for example, radar and visible light or infrared and X-rays).

Exercise:

Problem: Why don’t buildings block radio waves as completely as they do visible light?

Exercise:

Problem:

Make a list of some everyday objects and decide whether they are transparent or opaque to each of the types of electromagnetic waves.

Exercise:

Problem:

Your friend says that more patterns and colors can be seen on the wings of birds if viewed in ultraviolet light. Would you agree with your friend? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

The rate at which information can be transmitted on an electromagnetic wave is proportional to the frequency of the wave. Is this consistent with the fact that laser telephone transmission at visible frequencies carries far more conversations per optical fiber than conventional electronic transmission in a wire? What is the implication for ELF radio communication with submarines?

Exercise:

Problem: Give an example of energy carried by an electromagnetic wave.

Exercise:

Problem:

In an MRI scan, a higher magnetic field requires higher frequency radio waves to resonate with the nuclear type whose density and location is being imaged. What effect does going to a larger magnetic field have on the most efficient antenna to broadcast those radio waves? Does it favor a smaller or larger antenna?

Exercise:

Problem:

Laser vision correction often uses an excimer laser that produces 193-nm electromagnetic radiation. This wavelength is extremely strongly absorbed by the cornea and ablates it in a manner that reshapes the cornea to correct vision defects. Explain how the strong absorption helps concentrate the energy in a thin layer and thus give greater accuracy in shaping the cornea. Also explain how this strong absorption limits damage to the lens and retina of the eye.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Two microwave frequencies are authorized for use in microwave ovens: 900 and 2560 MHz. Calculate the wavelength of each. (b) Which frequency would produce smaller hot spots in foods due to interference effects?

Solution:

(a) 33.3 cm (900 MHz) 11.7 cm (2560 MHz)

(b) The microwave oven with the smaller wavelength would produce smaller hot spots in foods, corresponding to the one with the frequency 2560 MHz.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the range of wavelengths for AM radio given its frequency range is 540 to 1600 kHz. (b) Do the same for the FM frequency range of 88.0 to 108 MHz.

Exercise:

Problem:

A radio station utilizes frequencies between commercial AM and FM. What is the frequency of a 11.12-m-wavelength channel?

Solution:

26.96 MHz

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the frequency range of visible light, given that it encompasses wavelengths from 380 to 760 nm.

Exercise:

Problem:

Combing your hair leads to excess electrons on the comb. How fast would you have to move the comb up and down to produce red light?

Solution:

5.0×10^{14} Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Electromagnetic radiation having a $15.0 - \mu\text{m}$ wavelength is classified as infrared radiation. What is its frequency?

Exercise:

Problem:

Approximately what is the smallest detail observable with a microscope that uses ultraviolet light of frequency 1.20×10^{15} Hz?

Solution:
Equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}}{1.20 \times 10^{15}\ \text{Hz}} = 2.50 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A radar used to detect the presence of aircraft receives a pulse that has reflected off an object 6×10^{-5} s after it was transmitted. What is the distance from the radar station to the reflecting object?

Exercise:

Problem:

Some radar systems detect the size and shape of objects such as aircraft and geological terrain. Approximately what is the smallest observable detail utilizing 500-MHz radar?

Solution:

0.600 m

Exercise:

Problem:

Determine the amount of time it takes for X-rays of frequency $3\times10^{18}\ \text{Hz}$ to travel (a) 1 mm and (b) 1 cm.

Exercise:

Problem:

If you wish to detect details of the size of atoms (about $1\times10^{-10}\ \text{m}$) with electromagnetic radiation, it must have a wavelength of about this size. (a) What is its frequency? (b) What type of electromagnetic radiation might this be?

Solution:

(a) $f=\frac{c}{\lambda}=\frac{3.00\times10^{8}\ \text{m/s}}{1\times10^{-10}\ \text{m}}=3\times10^{18}\ \text{Hz}$

(b) X-rays

Exercise:

Problem:

If the Sun suddenly turned off, we would not know it until its light stopped coming. How long would that be, given that the Sun is $1.50\times10^{11}\ \text{m}$ away?

Exercise:

Problem:

Distances in space are often quoted in units of light years, the distance light travels in one year. (a) How many meters is a light year? (b) How many meters is it to Andromeda, the nearest large galaxy, given that it is 2.00×10^{6} light years away? (c) The most distant galaxy yet discovered is 12.0×10^{9} light years away. How far is this in meters?

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain 50.0-Hz AC power line radiates an electromagnetic wave having a maximum electric field strength of 13.0 kV/m. (a) What is the wavelength of this very low frequency electromagnetic wave? (b) What is its maximum magnetic field strength?

Solution:

(a) $6.00 \times 10^6 \text{ m}$

(b) $4.33 \times 10^{-5} \text{ T}$

Exercise:

Problem:

During normal beating, the heart creates a maximum 4.00-mV potential across 0.300 m of a person's chest, creating a 1.00-Hz electromagnetic wave. (a) What is the maximum electric field strength created? (b) What is the corresponding maximum magnetic field strength in the electromagnetic wave? (c) What is the wavelength of the electromagnetic wave?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The ideal size (most efficient) for a broadcast antenna with one end on the ground is one-fourth the wavelength ($\lambda/4$) of the electromagnetic radiation being sent out. If a new radio station has such an antenna that is 50.0 m high, what frequency does it broadcast most efficiently? Is this in the AM or FM band? (b) Discuss the analogy of the fundamental resonant mode of an air column closed at one end to the resonance of currents on an antenna that is one-fourth their wavelength.

Solution:

(a) 1.50×10^{6} Hz, AM band
(b) The resonance of currents on an antenna that is 1/4 their wavelength is analogous to the fundamental resonant mode of an air column closed at one end, since the tube also has a length equal to 1/4 the wavelength of the fundamental oscillation.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the wavelength of 100-MHz radio waves used in an MRI unit? (b) If the frequencies are swept over a ± 1.00 range centered on 100 MHz, what is the range of wavelengths broadcast?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the frequency of the 193-nm ultraviolet radiation used in laser eye surgery? (b) Assuming the accuracy with which this EM radiation can ablate the cornea is directly proportional to wavelength, how much more accurate can this UV be than the shortest visible wavelength of light?

Solution:

(a) 1.55×10^{15} Hz

(b) The shortest wavelength of visible light is 380 nm, so that

Equation:

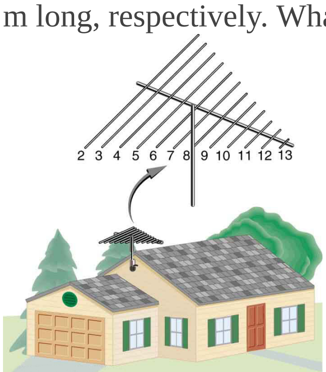
$$\frac{\lambda_{\text{visible}}}{\lambda_{\text{UV}}} = \frac{380\text{ nm}}{193\text{ nm}} = 1.97.$$

In other words, the UV radiation is 97% more accurate than the shortest wavelength of visible light, or almost twice as accurate!

Exercise:

Problem:

TV-reception antennas for VHF are constructed with cross wires supported at their centers, as shown in [link]. The ideal length for the cross wires is one-half the wavelength to be received, with the more expensive antennas having one for each channel. Suppose you measure the lengths of the wires for particular channels and find them to be 1.94 and 0.753 m long, respectively. What are the frequencies for these channels?



A television reception antenna has cross wires of various lengths to most efficiently

receive different
wavelengths.

Exercise:

Problem:

Conversations with astronauts on lunar walks had an echo that was used to estimate the distance to the Moon. The sound spoken by the person on Earth was transformed into a radio signal sent to the Moon, and transformed back into sound on a speaker inside the astronaut's space suit. This sound was picked up by the microphone in the space suit (intended for the astronaut's voice) and sent back to Earth as a radio echo of sorts. If the round-trip time was 2.60 s, what was the approximate distance to the Moon, neglecting any delays in the electronics?

Solution:

$3.90 \times 10^8 \text{ m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Lunar astronauts placed a reflector on the Moon's surface, off which a laser beam is periodically reflected. The distance to the Moon is calculated from the round-trip time. (a) To what accuracy in meters can the distance to the Moon be determined, if this time can be measured to 0.100 ns? (b) What percent accuracy is this, given the average distance to the Moon is 3.84×10^8 m?

Exercise:

Problem:

Radar is used to determine distances to various objects by measuring the round-trip time for an echo from the object. (a) How far away is the planet Venus if the echo time is 1000 s? (b) What is the echo time for a car 75.0 m from a Highway Police radar unit? (c) How accurately (in nanoseconds) must you be able to measure the echo time to an airplane 12.0 km away to determine its distance within 10.0 m?

Solution:

(a) $1.50 \times 10^{11} \text{ m}$

(b) 0.500 μs

(c) 66.7 ns

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) Calculate the ratio of the highest to lowest frequencies of electromagnetic waves the eye can see, given the wavelength range of visible light is from 380 to 760 nm. (b) Compare this with the ratio of highest to lowest frequencies the ear can hear.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) Calculate the rate in watts at which heat transfer through radiation occurs (almost entirely in the infrared) from $1.0\ \text{m}^2$ of the Earth's surface at night. Assume the emissivity is 0.90, the temperature of the Earth is 15^{o}C, and that of outer space is 2.7 K. (b) Compare the intensity of this radiation with that coming to the Earth from the Sun during the day, which averages about $800\ \text{W}/\text{m}^2$, only half of which is absorbed. (c) What is the maximum magnetic field strength in the outgoing radiation, assuming it is a continuous wave?

Solution:

(a) $-3.5\times10^2\ \text{W}/\text{m}^2$

(b) 88%

(c) $1.7\ \mu\text{T}$

Glossary

electromagnetic spectrum
: the full range of wavelengths or frequencies of electromagnetic radiation

radio waves
: electromagnetic waves with wavelengths in the range from 1 mm to 100 km; they are produced by currents in wires and circuits and by astronomical phenomena

microwaves
: electromagnetic waves with wavelengths in the range from 1 mm to 1 m; they can be produced by currents in macroscopic circuits and devices

thermal agitation
: the thermal motion of atoms and molecules in any object at a temperature above absolute zero, which causes them to emit and absorb radiation

radar
: a common application of microwaves. Radar can determine the distance to objects as diverse as clouds and aircraft, as well as determine the speed of a car or the intensity of a

rainstorm

infrared radiation (IR)
: a region of the electromagnetic spectrum with a frequency range that extends from just below the red region of the visible light spectrum up to the microwave region, or from $0.74\ \mu m$ to $300\ \mu m$

ultraviolet radiation (UV)
: electromagnetic radiation in the range extending upward in frequency from violet light and overlapping with the lowest X-ray frequencies, with wavelengths from 400 nm down to about 10 nm

visible light
: the narrow segment of the electromagnetic spectrum to which the normal human eye responds

amplitude modulation (AM)
: a method for placing information on electromagnetic waves by modulating the amplitude of a carrier wave with an audio signal, resulting in a wave with constant frequency but varying amplitude

extremely low frequency (ELF)
: electromagnetic radiation with wavelengths usually in the range of 0 to 300 Hz, but also about 1kHz

carrier wave
: an electromagnetic wave that carries a signal by modulation of its amplitude or frequency

frequency modulation (FM)
: a method of placing information on electromagnetic waves by modulating the frequency of a carrier wave with an audio signal, producing a wave of constant amplitude but varying frequency

TV
: video and audio signals broadcast on electromagnetic waves

very high frequency (VHF)
: TV channels utilizing frequencies in the two ranges of 54 to 88 MHz and 174 to 222 MHz

ultra-high frequency (UHF)
: TV channels in an even higher frequency range than VHF, of 470 to 1000 MHz

X-ray
: invisible, penetrating form of very high frequency electromagnetic radiation, overlapping both the ultraviolet range and the γ-ray range

gamma ray

(γ ray); extremely high frequency electromagnetic radiation emitted by the nucleus of an atom, either from natural nuclear decay or induced nuclear processes in nuclear reactors and weapons. The lower end of the γ-ray frequency range overlaps the upper end of the X-ray range, but γ rays can have the highest frequency of any electromagnetic radiation

Energy in Electromagnetic Waves

- Explain how the energy and amplitude of an electromagnetic wave are related.
- Given its power output and the heating area, calculate the intensity of a microwave oven’s electromagnetic field, as well as its peak electric and magnetic field strengths

Anyone who has used a microwave oven knows there is energy in **electromagnetic waves**. Sometimes this energy is obvious, such as in the warmth of the summer sun. Other times it is subtle, such as the unfelt energy of gamma rays, which can destroy living cells.

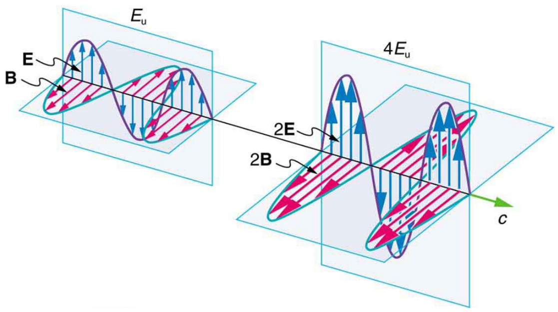
Electromagnetic waves can bring energy into a system by virtue of their **electric and magnetic fields**. These fields can exert forces and move charges in the system and, thus, do work on them. If the frequency of the electromagnetic wave is the same as the natural frequencies of the system (such as microwaves at the resonant frequency of water molecules), the transfer of energy is much more efficient.

Note:

Connections: Waves and Particles

The behavior of electromagnetic radiation clearly exhibits wave characteristics. But we shall find in later modules that at high frequencies, electromagnetic radiation also exhibits particle characteristics. These particle characteristics will be used to explain more of the properties of the electromagnetic spectrum and to introduce the formal study of modern physics.

Another startling discovery of modern physics is that particles, such as electrons and protons, exhibit wave characteristics. This simultaneous sharing of wave and particle properties for all submicroscopic entities is one of the great symmetries in nature.



Energy carried by a wave is proportional to its amplitude squared. With electromagnetic waves, larger E-fields and B-fields exert larger forces and can do more work.

But there is energy in an electromagnetic wave, whether it is absorbed or not. Once created, the fields carry energy away from a source. If absorbed, the field strengths are diminished and anything left travels on. Clearly, the larger the strength of the electric and magnetic fields, the more work they can do and the greater the energy the electromagnetic wave carries.

A wave's energy is proportional to its **amplitude** squared (E^2 or B^2). This is true for waves on guitar strings, for water waves, and for sound waves, where amplitude is proportional to pressure. In electromagnetic waves, the amplitude is the **maximum field strength** of the electric and magnetic fields. (See [link].)

Thus the energy carried and the **intensity** I of an electromagnetic wave is proportional to E^2 and B^2. In fact, for a continuous sinusoidal electromagnetic wave, the average intensity I_{ave} is given by
Equation:

$$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{c\varepsilon_0 E_0^2}{2},$$

where c is the speed of light, ε_0 is the permittivity of free space, and E_0 is the maximum electric field strength; intensity, as always, is power per unit area (here in $\mathrm{W/m^2}$).

The average intensity of an electromagnetic wave I_{ave} can also be expressed in terms of the magnetic field strength by using the relationship $B = E/c$, and the fact that $\varepsilon_0 = 1/\mu_0 c^2$, where μ_0 is the permeability of free space. Algebraic manipulation produces the relationship
Equation:

$$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{\mathrm{cB_0^2}}{2\mu_0},$$

where B_0 is the maximum magnetic field strength.

One more expression for I_{ave} in terms of both electric and magnetic field strengths is useful. Substituting the fact that $c \cdot B_0 = E_0$, the previous expression becomes
Equation:

$$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{E_0 B_0}{2\mu_0}.$$

Whichever of the three preceding equations is most convenient can be used, since they are really just different versions of the same principle: Energy in a wave is related to amplitude squared. Furthermore, since these equations are based on the assumption that the electromagnetic waves are sinusoidal, peak intensity is twice the average; that is, $I_0 = 2I_{\text{ave}}$.

Example:
Calculate Microwave Intensities and Fields
On its highest power setting, a certain microwave oven projects 1.00 kW of microwaves onto a 30.0 by 40.0 cm area. (a) What is the intensity in

$\mathrm{W/m^2}$? (b) Calculate the peak electric field strength E_0 in these waves. (c) What is the peak magnetic field strength B_0?

Strategy

In part (a), we can find intensity from its definition as power per unit area. Once the intensity is known, we can use the equations below to find the field strengths asked for in parts (b) and (c).

Solution for (a)

Entering the given power into the definition of intensity, and noting the area is 0.300 by 0.400 m, yields

Equation:

$$I = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{1.00\ \mathrm{kW}}{0.300\ \mathrm{m}\ \times\ 0.400\ \mathrm{m}}.$$

Here $I = I_{\mathrm{ave}}$, so that

Equation:

$$I_{\mathrm{ave}} = \frac{1000\ \mathrm{W}}{0.120\ \mathrm{m}^2} = 8.33 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{W/m^2}.$$

Note that the peak intensity is twice the average:

Equation:

$$I_0 = 2I_{\mathrm{ave}} = 1.67 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{W/m^2}.$$

Solution for (b)

To find E_0, we can rearrange the first equation given above for I_{ave} to give

Equation:

$$E_0 = \left(\frac{2I_{\mathrm{ave}}}{c\varepsilon_0}\right)^{1/2}.$$

Entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E_0 &= \sqrt{\frac{2(8.33\times10^3 \text{ W/m}^2)}{(3.00\times10^8 \text{ m/s})(8.85\times10^{-12} \text{ C}^2/\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2)}} \\ &= 2.51 \times 10^3 \text{ V/m.} \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (c)
Perhaps the easiest way to find magnetic field strength, now that the electric field strength is known, is to use the relationship given by
Equation:

$$B_0 = \frac{E_0}{c}.$$

Entering known values gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} B_0 &= \frac{2.51\times10^3 \text{ V/m}}{3.0\times10^8 \text{ m/s}} \\ &= 8.35 \times 10^{-6} \text{ T.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
As before, a relatively strong electric field is accompanied by a relatively weak magnetic field in an electromagnetic wave, since $B = E/c$, and c is a large number.

Section Summary

- The energy carried by any wave is proportional to its amplitude squared. For electromagnetic waves, this means intensity can be expressed as
  Equation:

  $$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{c\varepsilon_0 E_0^2}{2},$$

where I_{ave} is the average intensity in W/m^2, and E_0 is the maximum electric field strength of a continuous sinusoidal wave.

- This can also be expressed in terms of the maximum magnetic field strength B_0 as
  Equation:

$$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{\text{cB}_0^2}{2\mu_0}$$

  and in terms of both electric and magnetic fields as
  Equation:

$$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{E_0 B_0}{2\mu_0}.$$

- The three expressions for I_{ave} are all equivalent.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the intensity of an electromagnetic wave with a peak electric field strength of 125 V/m?

Solution:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \frac{c\varepsilon_0 E_0^2}{2} \\ &= \frac{\left(3.00\times10^8\text{ m/s}\right)\left(8.85\times10^{-12}\text{C}^2/\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2\right)(125\text{ V/m})^2}{2} \\ &= 20.7\text{ W/m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the intensity of an electromagnetic wave having a peak magnetic field strength of 4.00×10^{-9} T.

Exercise:

Problem:

Assume the helium-neon lasers commonly used in student physics laboratories have power outputs of 0.250 mW. (a) If such a laser beam is projected onto a circular spot 1.00 mm in diameter, what is its intensity? (b) Find the peak magnetic field strength. (c) Find the peak electric field strength.

Solution:

(a) $I = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{P}{\pi r^2} = \frac{0.250 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{W}}{\pi\left(0.500 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\right)^2} = 318\ \text{W/m}^2$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned} I_{\text{ave}} &= \frac{\text{cB}_0^2}{2\text{μ}_0} \Rightarrow B_0 = \left(\frac{2\text{μ}_0 I}{c}\right)^{1/2} \\ &= \left(\frac{2\left(4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T·m/A}\right)\left(318.3\ \text{W/m}^2\right)}{3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}\right)^{1/2} \\ &= 1.63 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{T} \end{aligned}$$

(c)
$$\begin{aligned} E_0 &= \text{cB}_0 = \left(3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}\right)\left(1.633 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{T}\right) \\ &= 4.90 \times 10^2\ \text{V/m} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

An AM radio transmitter broadcasts 50.0 kW of power uniformly in all directions. (a) Assuming all of the radio waves that strike the ground are completely absorbed, and that there is no absorption by the atmosphere or other objects, what is the intensity 30.0 km away? (Hint: Half the power will be spread over the area of a hemisphere.) (b) What is the maximum electric field strength at this distance?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the maximum safe intensity of microwaves for human exposure is taken to be $1.00\ \text{W/m}^2$. (a) If a radar unit leaks 10.0 W of microwaves (other than those sent by its antenna) uniformly in all directions, how far away must you be to be exposed to an intensity considered to be safe? Assume that the power spreads uniformly over the area of a sphere with no complications from absorption or reflection. (b) What is the maximum electric field strength at the safe intensity? (Note that early radar units leaked more than modern ones do. This caused identifiable health problems, such as cataracts, for people who worked near them.)

Solution:

(a) 89.2 cm

(b) 27.4 V/m

Exercise:

Problem:

A 2.50-m-diameter university communications satellite dish receives TV signals that have a maximum electric field strength (for one channel) of $7.50\ \mu\text{V/m}$. (See [link].) (a) What is the intensity of this wave? (b) What is the power received by the antenna? (c) If the orbiting satellite broadcasts uniformly over an area of $1.50\times10^{13}\ \text{m}^2$ (a large fraction of North America), how much power does it radiate?

Satellite dishes receive TV signals sent from orbit. Although the signals are quite weak, the receiver can detect them by being tuned to resonate at their frequency.

Exercise:

Problem:

Lasers can be constructed that produce an extremely high intensity electromagnetic wave for a brief time—called pulsed lasers. They are used to ignite nuclear fusion, for example. Such a laser may produce an electromagnetic wave with a maximum electric field strength of $1.00\times10^{11}\ \text{V/m}$ for a time of 1.00 ns. (a) What is the maximum magnetic field strength in the wave? (b) What is the intensity of the beam? (c) What energy does it deliver on a 1.00-mm^2 area?

Solution:

(a) 333 T

(b) $1.33\times10^{19}\ \text{W/m}^2$

(c) 13.3 kJ

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that for a continuous sinusoidal electromagnetic wave, the peak intensity is twice the average intensity ($I_0 = 2I_{\text{ave}}$), using either the fact that $E_0 = \sqrt{2}E_{\text{rms}}$, or $B_0 = \sqrt{2}B_{\text{rms}}$, where rms means average (actually root mean square, a type of average).

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a source of electromagnetic waves radiates uniformly in all directions in empty space where there are no absorption or interference effects. (a) Show that the intensity is inversely proportional to r^2, the distance from the source squared. (b) Show that the magnitudes of the electric and magnetic fields are inversely proportional to r.

Solution:

(a) $I = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{P}{4\pi r^2} \propto \frac{1}{r^2}$

(b) $I \propto E_0^2, B_0^2 \Rightarrow E_0^2, B_0^2 \propto \frac{1}{r^2} \Rightarrow E_0, B_0 \propto \frac{1}{r}$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

An LC circuit with a 5.00-pF capacitor oscillates in such a manner as to radiate at a wavelength of 3.30 m. (a) What is the resonant frequency? (b) What inductance is in series with the capacitor?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

What capacitance is needed in series with an $800 - \mu\mathrm{H}$ inductor to form a circuit that radiates a wavelength of 196 m?

Solution:

13.5 pF

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Police radar determines the speed of motor vehicles using the same Doppler-shift technique employed for ultrasound in medical diagnostics. Beats are produced by mixing the double Doppler-shifted echo with the original frequency. If 1.50×10^9-Hz microwaves are used and a beat frequency of 150 Hz is produced, what is the speed of the vehicle? (Assume the same Doppler-shift formulas are valid with the speed of sound replaced by the speed of light.)

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Assume the mostly infrared radiation from a heat lamp acts like a continuous wave with wavelength $1.50\ \mu\text{m}$. (a) If the lamp's 200-W output is focused on a person's shoulder, over a circular area 25.0 cm in diameter, what is the intensity in W/m^2? (b) What is the peak electric field strength? (c) Find the peak magnetic field strength. (d) How long will it take to increase the temperature of the 4.00-kg shoulder by $2.00^\circ\ \text{C}$, assuming no other heat transfer and given that its specific heat is $3.47\times10^3\ \text{J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C}$?

Solution:

(a) $4.07\ \text{kW/m}^2$

(b) 1.75 kV/m

(c) $5.84\ \mu\text{T}$

(d) 2 min 19 s

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

On its highest power setting, a microwave oven increases the temperature of 0.400 kg of spaghetti by 45.0°C in 120 s. (a) What was the rate of power absorption by the spaghetti, given that its specific heat is $3.76\times10^3\ \text{J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C}$? (b) Find the average intensity of the microwaves, given that they are absorbed over a circular area 20.0 cm in diameter. (c) What is the peak electric field strength of the microwave? (d) What is its peak magnetic field strength?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Electromagnetic radiation from a 5.00-mW laser is concentrated on a 1.00-mm^2 area. (a) What is the intensity in W/m^2? (b) Suppose a 2.00-nC static charge is in the beam. What is the maximum electric

force it experiences? (c) If the static charge moves at 400 m/s, what maximum magnetic force can it feel?

Solution:

(a) $5.00{\times}10^3\ \text{W/m}^2$

(b) $3.88\times10^{-6}\ \text{N}$

(c) $5.18\times10^{-12}\ \text{N}$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A 200-turn flat coil of wire 30.0 cm in diameter acts as an antenna for FM radio at a frequency of 100 MHz. The magnetic field of the incoming electromagnetic wave is perpendicular to the coil and has a maximum strength of $1.00{\times}10^{-12}\ \text{T}$. (a) What power is incident on the coil? (b) What average emf is induced in the coil over one-fourth of a cycle? (c) If the radio receiver has an inductance of $2.50\ \mu\text{H}$, what capacitance must it have to resonate at 100 MHz?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

If electric and magnetic field strengths vary sinusoidally in time, being zero at $t=0$, then $E=E_0\ \sin\ 2\pi\text{ft}$ and $B=B_0\ \sin\ 2\pi\text{ft}$. Let $f=1.00\ \text{GHz}$ here. (a) When are the field strengths first zero? (b) When do they reach their most negative value? (c) How much time is needed for them to complete one cycle?

Solution:

(a) $t=0$

(b) $7.50\times10^{-10}\ \text{s}$

(c) 1.00×10^{-9} s

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A researcher measures the wavelength of a 1.20-GHz electromagnetic wave to be 0.500 m. (a) Calculate the speed at which this wave propagates. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

The peak magnetic field strength in a residential microwave oven is 9.20×10^{-5} T. (a) What is the intensity of the microwave? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What is wrong about the premise?

Solution:

(a) 1.01×10^{6} $\mathrm{W/m^2}$

(b) Much too great for an oven.

(c) The assumed magnetic field is unreasonably large.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

An LC circuit containing a 2.00-H inductor oscillates at such a frequency that it radiates at a 1.00-m wavelength. (a) What is the capacitance of the circuit? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

An LC circuit containing a 1.00-pF capacitor oscillates at such a frequency that it radiates at a 300-nm wavelength. (a) What is the inductance of the circuit? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 2.53×10^{-20} H

(b) L is much too small.

(c) The wavelength is unreasonably small.

Exercise:

Problem: Create Your Own Problem

Consider electromagnetic fields produced by high voltage power lines. Construct a problem in which you calculate the intensity of this electromagnetic radiation in $\mathrm{W/m^2}$ based on the measured magnetic field strength of the radiation in a home near the power lines. Assume these magnetic field strengths are known to average less than a $\mu\mathrm{T}$. The intensity is small enough that it is difficult to imagine mechanisms for biological damage due to it. Discuss how much energy may be radiating from a section of power line several hundred meters long and compare this to the power likely to be carried by the lines. An idea of how much power this is can be obtained by calculating the approximate current responsible for $\mu\mathrm{T}$ fields at distances of tens of meters.

Exercise:

Problem: Create Your Own Problem

Consider the most recent generation of residential satellite dishes that are a little less than half a meter in diameter. Construct a problem in which you calculate the power received by the dish and the maximum electric field strength of the microwave signals for a single channel

received by the dish. Among the things to be considered are the power broadcast by the satellite and the area over which the power is spread, as well as the area of the receiving dish.

Glossary

maximum field strength
: the maximum amplitude an electromagnetic wave can reach, representing the maximum amount of electric force and/or magnetic flux that the wave can exert

intensity
: the power of an electric or magnetic field per unit area, for example, Watts per square meter

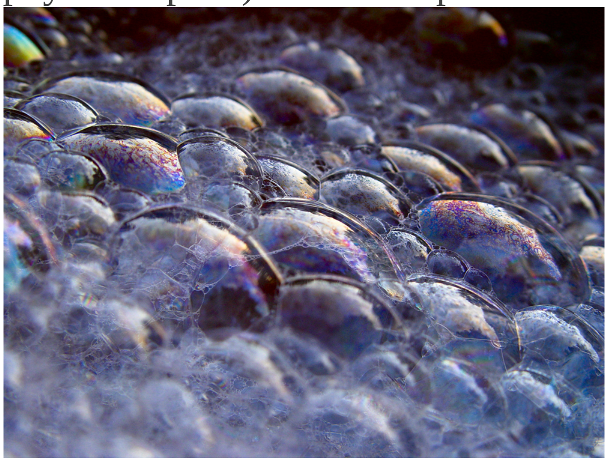
# Introduction to Wave Optics
class="introduction"

The colors reflected by this compact disc vary with angle and are not caused by pigments. Colors such as these are direct evidence of the wave character of light. (credit: Infopro, Wikimedia Commons)

Examine a compact disc under white light, noting the colors observed and locations of the colors. Determine if the spectra are formed by diffraction from circular lines centered at the middle of the disc and, if so, what is their spacing. If not, determine the type of spacing. Also with the CD, explore the spectra of a few light sources, such as a candle flame, incandescent bulb, halogen light, and fluorescent light. Knowing the spacing of the rows of pits in the compact disc, estimate the maximum spacing that will allow the given number of megabytes of information to be stored.

If you have ever looked at the reds, blues, and greens in a sunlit soap bubble and wondered how straw-colored soapy water could produce them, you have hit upon one of the many phenomena that can only be explained by the wave character of light (see [link]). The same is true for the colors seen in an oil slick or in the light reflected from a compact disc. These and other interesting phenomena, such as the dispersion of white light into a rainbow of colors when passed through a narrow slit, cannot be explained fully by geometric optics. In these cases, light interacts with small objects and exhibits its wave characteristics. The branch of optics that considers the

behavior of light when it exhibits wave characteristics (particularly when it interacts with small objects) is called wave optics (sometimes called physical optics). It is the topic of this chapter.



These soap bubbles exhibit brilliant colors when exposed to sunlight. How are the colors produced if they are not pigments in the soap? (credit: Scott Robinson, Flickr)

The Wave Aspect of Light: Interference

- Discuss the wave character of light.
- Identify the changes when light enters a medium.

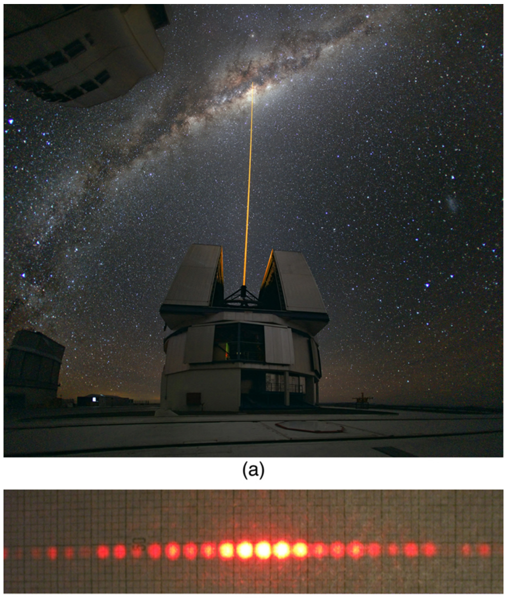
We know that visible light is the type of electromagnetic wave to which our eyes respond. Like all other electromagnetic waves, it obeys the equation

Equation:

$$c = f\lambda,$$

where $c = 3 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ is the speed of light in vacuum, f is the frequency of the electromagnetic waves, and λ is its wavelength. The range of visible wavelengths is approximately 380 to 760 nm. As is true for all waves, light travels in straight lines and acts like a ray when it interacts with objects several times as large as its wavelength. However, when it interacts with smaller objects, it displays its wave characteristics prominently. Interference is the hallmark of a wave, and in [link] both the ray and wave characteristics of light can be seen. The laser beam emitted by the observatory epitomizes a ray, traveling in a straight line. However, passing a pure-wavelength beam through vertical slits with a size close to the wavelength of the beam reveals the wave character of light, as the beam spreads out horizontally into a pattern of bright and dark regions caused by systematic constructive and destructive interference. Rather than spreading out, a ray would continue traveling straight ahead after passing through slits.

Note:
Making Connections: Waves
The most certain indication of a wave is interference. This wave characteristic is most prominent when the wave interacts with an object that is not large compared with the wavelength. Interference is observed for water waves, sound waves, light waves, and (as we will see in Special Relativity) for matter waves, such as electrons scattered from a crystal.



(a)

(b)

(a) The laser beam emitted by an observatory acts like a ray, traveling in a straight line. This laser beam is from the Paranal Observatory of the European Southern Observatory. (credit: Yuri Beletsky, European Southern Observatory) (b) A laser beam passing through a grid of vertical slits produces an interference pattern—characteristic of a wave. (credit: Shim'on and Slava Rybka, Wikimedia Commons)

Light has wave characteristics in various media as well as in a vacuum. When light goes from a vacuum to some medium, like water, its speed and

wavelength change, but its frequency f remains the same. (We can think of light as a forced oscillation that must have the frequency of the original source.) The speed of light in a medium is $v = c/n$, where n is its index of refraction. If we divide both sides of equation $c = f\lambda$ by n, we get $c/n = v = f\lambda/n$. This implies that $v = f\lambda_{\text{n}}$, where λ_{n} is the **wavelength in a medium** and that

Equation:

$$\lambda_{\text{n}} = \frac{\lambda}{n},$$

where λ is the wavelength in vacuum and n is the medium's index of refraction. Therefore, the wavelength of light is smaller in any medium than it is in vacuum. In water, for example, which has $n = 1.333$, the range of visible wavelengths is $(380\text{ nm})/1.333$ to $(760\text{ nm})/1.333$, or $\lambda_{\text{n}} = 285\text{ to }570\text{ nm}$. Although wavelengths change while traveling from one medium to another, colors do not, since colors are associated with frequency.

Section Summary

- Wave optics is the branch of optics that must be used when light interacts with small objects or whenever the wave characteristics of light are considered.
- Wave characteristics are those associated with interference and diffraction.
- Visible light is the type of electromagnetic wave to which our eyes respond and has a wavelength in the range of 380 to 760 nm.
- Like all EM waves, the following relationship is valid in vacuum: $c = f\lambda$, where $c = 3 \times 10^8\text{ m/s}$ is the speed of light, f is the frequency of the electromagnetic wave, and λ is its wavelength in vacuum.
- The wavelength λ_{n} of light in a medium with index of refraction n is $\lambda_{\text{n}} = \lambda/n$. Its frequency is the same as in vacuum.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What type of experimental evidence indicates that light is a wave?

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a wave characteristic of light that is easily observed outside the laboratory.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that when light passes from air to water, its wavelength decreases to 0.750 times its original value.

Solution:

$1/1.333 = 0.750$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the range of visible wavelengths of light in crown glass.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the index of refraction of a material for which the wavelength of light is 0.671 times its value in a vacuum? Identify the likely substance.

Solution:

1.49, Polystyrene

Exercise:

Problem:

Analysis of an interference effect in a clear solid shows that the wavelength of light in the solid is 329 nm. Knowing this light comes from a He-Ne laser and has a wavelength of 633 nm in air, is the substance zircon or diamond?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the ratio of thicknesses of crown glass and water that would contain the same number of wavelengths of light?

Solution:

0.877 glass to water

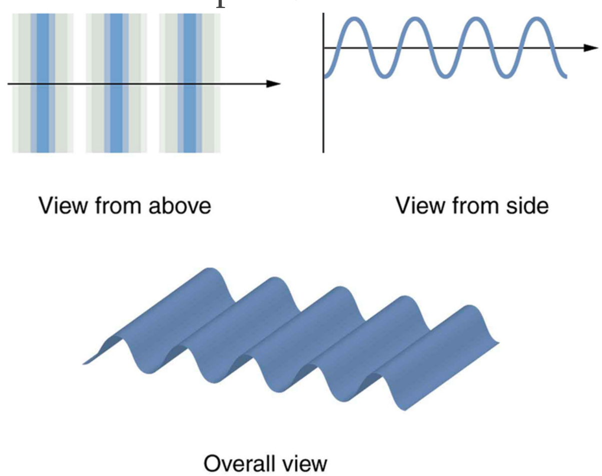
Glossary

wavelength in a medium
: $\lambda_{\text{n}} = \lambda / n$, where λ is the wavelength in vacuum, and n is the index of refraction of the medium

Huygens's Principle: Diffraction

- Discuss the propagation of transverse waves.
- Discuss Huygens’s principle.
- Explain the bending of light.

[link] shows how a transverse wave looks as viewed from above and from the side. A light wave can be imagined to propagate like this, although we do not actually see it wiggling through space. From above, we view the wavefronts (or wave crests) as we would by looking down on the ocean waves. The side view would be a graph of the electric or magnetic field. The view from above is perhaps the most useful in developing concepts about wave optics.



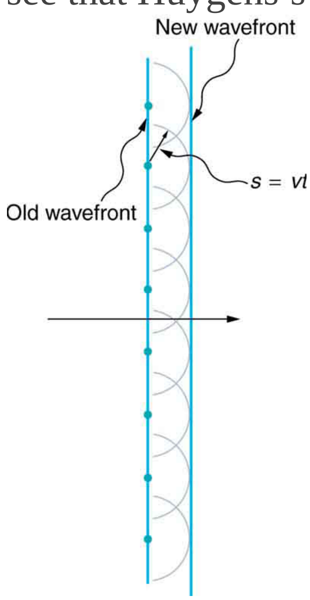
A transverse wave, such as an electromagnetic wave like light, as viewed from above and from the side. The direction of propagation is perpendicular to the wavefronts (or wave crests) and is represented by an arrow like a ray.

The Dutch scientist Christiaan Huygens (1629–1695) developed a useful technique for determining in detail how and where waves propagate.

Starting from some known position, **Huygens's principle** states that:

Every point on a wavefront is a source of wavelets that spread out in the forward direction at the same speed as the wave itself. The new wavefront is a line tangent to all of the wavelets.

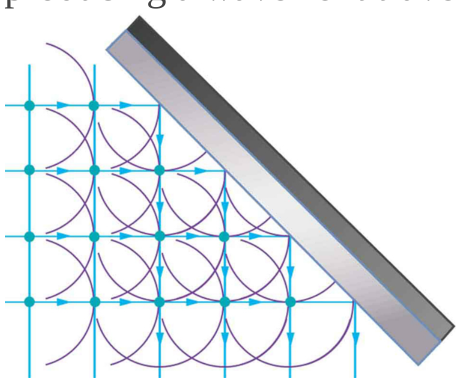
[link] shows how Huygens's principle is applied. A wavefront is the long edge that moves, for example, the crest or the trough. Each point on the wavefront emits a semicircular wave that moves at the propagation speed v. These are drawn at a time t later, so that they have moved a distance $s = \text{vt}$. The new wavefront is a line tangent to the wavelets and is where we would expect the wave to be a time t later. Huygens's principle works for all types of waves, including water waves, sound waves, and light waves. We will find it useful not only in describing how light waves propagate, but also in explaining the laws of reflection and refraction. In addition, we will see that Huygens's principle tells us how and where light rays interfere.



Huygens's principle applied to a straight wavefront. Each point on the wavefront

emits a semicircular wavelet that moves a distance $s = vt$. The new wavefront is a line tangent to the wavelets.

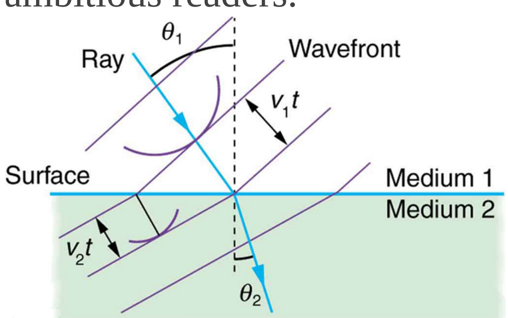
[link] shows how a mirror reflects an incoming wave at an angle equal to the incident angle, verifying the law of reflection. As the wavefront strikes the mirror, wavelets are first emitted from the left part of the mirror and then the right. The wavelets closer to the left have had time to travel farther, producing a wavefront traveling in the direction shown.



Huygens’s principle applied to a straight wavefront striking a mirror. The wavelets shown were emitted as each point on the wavefront struck the mirror. The tangent to these wavelets shows

that the new wavefront has been reflected at an angle equal to the incident angle. The direction of propagation is perpendicular to the wavefront, as shown by the downward-pointing arrows.

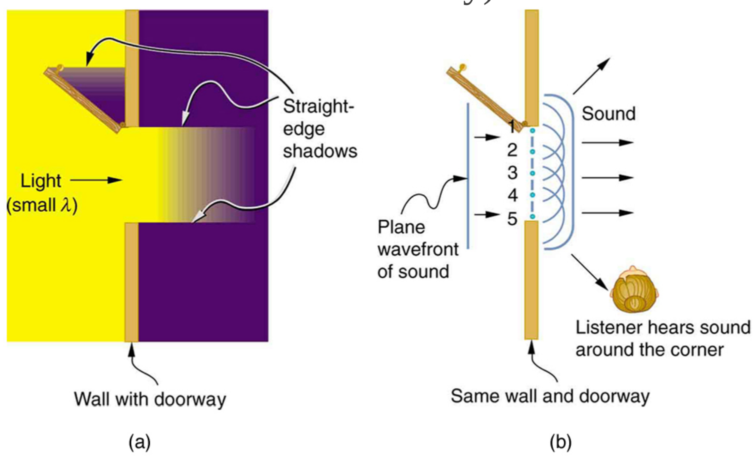
The law of refraction can be explained by applying Huygens’s principle to a wavefront passing from one medium to another (see [link]). Each wavelet in the figure was emitted when the wavefront crossed the interface between the media. Since the speed of light is smaller in the second medium, the waves do not travel as far in a given time, and the new wavefront changes direction as shown. This explains why a ray changes direction to become closer to the perpendicular when light slows down. Snell’s law can be derived from the geometry in [link], but this is left as an exercise for ambitious readers.



Huygens’s principle applied to a straight wavefront traveling from one medium to another where its speed is less. The ray bends toward the perpendicular, since the

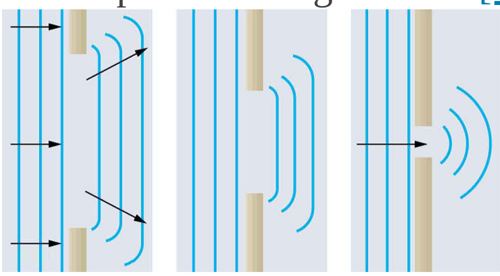
wavelets have a lower speed in the second medium.

What happens when a wave passes through an opening, such as light shining through an open door into a dark room? For light, we expect to see a sharp shadow of the doorway on the floor of the room, and we expect no light to bend around corners into other parts of the room. When sound passes through a door, we expect to hear it everywhere in the room and, thus, expect that sound spreads out when passing through such an opening (see [link]). What is the difference between the behavior of sound waves and light waves in this case? The answer is that light has very short wavelengths and acts like a ray. Sound has wavelengths on the order of the size of the door and bends around corners (for frequency of 1000 Hz, $\lambda = c/f = (330\text{ m/s})/(1000\text{ s}^{-1}) = 0.33\text{ m}$, about three times smaller than the width of the doorway).



(a) Light passing through a doorway makes a sharp outline on the floor. Since light’s wavelength is very small compared with the size of the door, it acts like a ray. (b) Sound waves bend into all parts of the room, a wave effect, because their wavelength is similar to the size of the door.

If we pass light through smaller openings, often called slits, we can use Huygens's principle to see that light bends as sound does (see [link]). The bending of a wave around the edges of an opening or an obstacle is called **diffraction**. Diffraction is a wave characteristic and occurs for all types of waves. If diffraction is observed for some phenomenon, it is evidence that the phenomenon is a wave. Thus the horizontal diffraction of the laser beam after it passes through slits in [link] is evidence that light is a wave.



Huygens's principle applied to a straight wavefront striking an opening. The edges of the wavefront bend after passing through the opening, a process called diffraction. The amount of bending is more extreme for a small opening, consistent with the fact that wave characteristics are most noticeable for interactions with objects about the same size as the wavelength.

Section Summary

- An accurate technique for determining how and where waves propagate is given by Huygens's principle: Every point on a wavefront is a source of wavelets that spread out in the forward direction at the same speed as the wave itself. The new wavefront is a line tangent to all of the wavelets.
- Diffraction is the bending of a wave around the edges of an opening or other obstacle.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How do wave effects depend on the size of the object with which the wave interacts? For example, why does sound bend around the corner of a building while light does not?

Exercise:

Problem:

Under what conditions can light be modeled like a ray? Like a wave?

Exercise:

Problem:

Go outside in the sunlight and observe your shadow. It has fuzzy edges even if you do not. Is this a diffraction effect? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why does the wavelength of light decrease when it passes from vacuum into a medium? State which attributes change and which stay the same and, thus, require the wavelength to decrease.

Exercise:

Problem: Does Huygens's principle apply to all types of waves?

Glossary

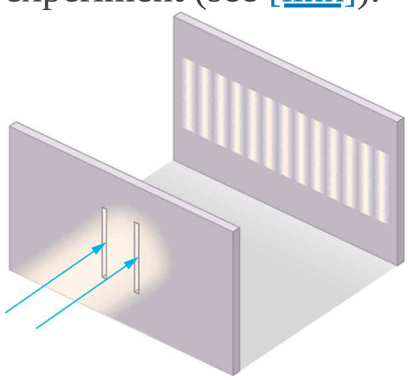
diffraction
: the bending of a wave around the edges of an opening or an obstacle

Huygens's principle
: every point on a wavefront is a source of wavelets that spread out in the forward direction at the same speed as the wave itself. The new wavefront is a line tangent to all of the wavelets

Young’s Double Slit Experiment

- Explain the phenomena of interference.
- Define constructive interference for a double slit and destructive interference for a double slit.

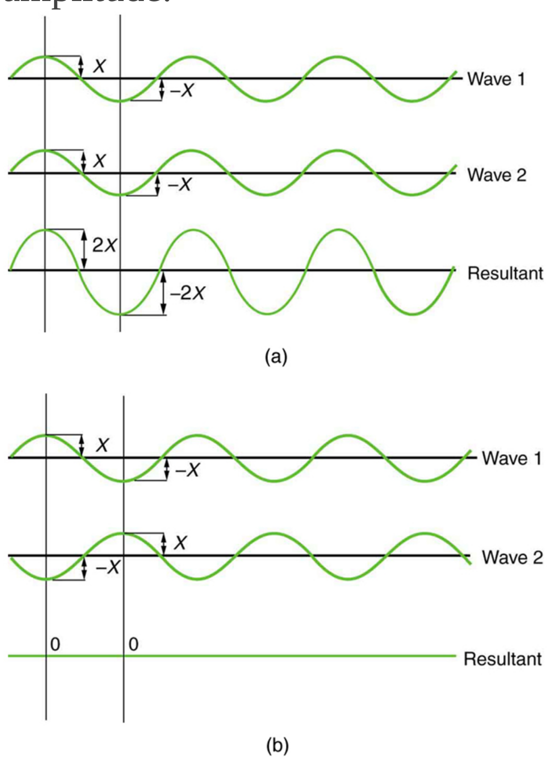
Although Christiaan Huygens thought that light was a wave, Isaac Newton did not. Newton felt that there were other explanations for color, and for the interference and diffraction effects that were observable at the time. Owing to Newton’s tremendous stature, his view generally prevailed. The fact that Huygens’s principle worked was not considered evidence that was direct enough to prove that light is a wave. The acceptance of the wave character of light came many years later when, in 1801, the English physicist and physician Thomas Young (1773–1829) did his now-classic double slit experiment (see [link]).



Young’s double slit experiment. Here pure-wavelength light sent through a pair of vertical slits is diffracted into a pattern on the screen of numerous vertical lines spread out horizontally. Without diffraction and interference, the light would

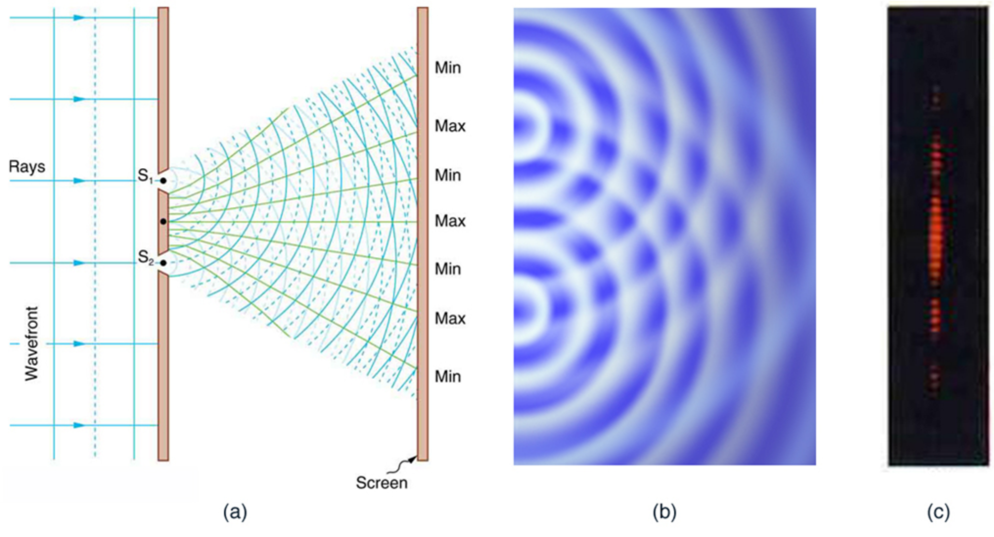
simply make two
lines on the screen.

Why do we not ordinarily observe wave behavior for light, such as observed in Young’s double slit experiment? First, light must interact with something small, such as the closely spaced slits used by Young, to show pronounced wave effects. Furthermore, Young first passed light from a single source (the Sun) through a single slit to make the light somewhat coherent. By **coherent**, we mean waves are in phase or have a definite phase relationship. **Incoherent** means the waves have random phase relationships. Why did Young then pass the light through a double slit? The answer to this question is that two slits provide two coherent light sources that then interfere constructively or destructively. Young used sunlight, where each wavelength forms its own pattern, making the effect more difficult to see. We illustrate the double slit experiment with monochromatic (single λ) light to clarify the effect. [link] shows the pure constructive and destructive interference of two waves having the same wavelength and amplitude.



The amplitudes of waves add. (a) Pure constructive interference is obtained when identical waves are in phase. (b) Pure destructive interference occurs when identical waves are exactly out of phase, or shifted by half a wavelength.

When light passes through narrow slits, it is diffracted into semicircular waves, as shown in [link](a). Pure constructive interference occurs where the waves are crest to crest or trough to trough. Pure destructive interference occurs where they are crest to trough. The light must fall on a screen and be scattered into our eyes for us to see the pattern. An analogous pattern for water waves is shown in [link](b). Note that regions of constructive and destructive interference move out from the slits at well-defined angles to the original beam. These angles depend on wavelength and the distance between the slits, as we shall see below.

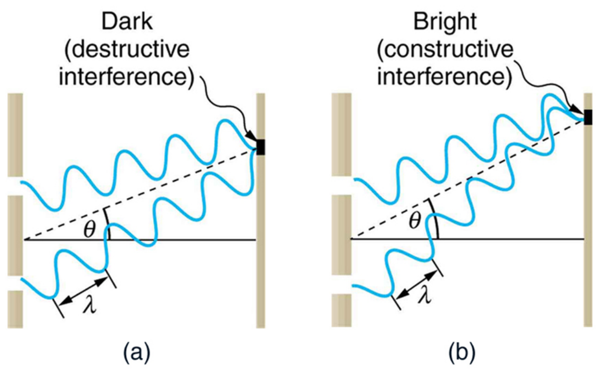


Double slits produce two coherent sources of waves that interfere. (a) Light spreads out (diffracts) from each slit, because the slits are narrow. These waves overlap and

interfere constructively (bright lines) and destructively (dark regions). We can only see this if the light falls onto a screen and is scattered into our eyes. (b) Double slit interference pattern for water waves are nearly identical to that for light. Wave action is greatest in regions of constructive interference and least in regions of destructive interference. (c) When light that has passed through double slits falls on a screen, we see a pattern such as this. (credit: PASCO)

To understand the double slit interference pattern, we consider how two waves travel from the slits to the screen, as illustrated in [link]. Each slit is a different distance from a given point on the screen. Thus different numbers of wavelengths fit into each path. Waves start out from the slits in phase (crest to crest), but they may end up out of phase (crest to trough) at the screen if the paths differ in length by half a wavelength, interfering destructively as shown in [link](a). If the paths differ by a whole wavelength, then the waves arrive in phase (crest to crest) at the screen, interfering constructively as shown in [link](b). More generally, if the paths taken by the two waves differ by any half-integral number of wavelengths [$(1/2)\lambda$, $(3/2)\lambda$, $(5/2)\lambda$, etc.], then destructive interference occurs. Similarly, if the paths taken by the two waves differ by any integral number of wavelengths (λ, 2λ, 3λ, etc.), then constructive interference occurs.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Using Fingers as Slits
Look at a light, such as a street lamp or incandescent bulb, through the narrow gap between two fingers held close together. What type of pattern do you see? How does it change when you allow the fingers to move a little farther apart? Is it more distinct for a monochromatic source, such as the yellow light from a sodium vapor lamp, than for an incandescent bulb?



Waves follow different paths from the slits to a common point on a screen. (a) Destructive interference occurs here, because one path is a half wavelength longer than the other. The waves start in phase but arrive out of phase. (b) Constructive interference occurs here because one path is a whole wavelength longer than the other. The waves start out and arrive in phase.

[link] shows how to determine the path length difference for waves traveling from two slits to a common point on a screen. If the screen is a large distance away compared with the distance between the slits, then the angle θ between the path and a line from the slits to the screen (see the figure) is nearly the same for each path. The difference between the paths is shown in the figure; simple trigonometry shows it to be $d \sin \theta$, where d is the distance between the slits. To obtain **constructive interference for a double slit**, the path length difference must be an integral multiple of the wavelength, or

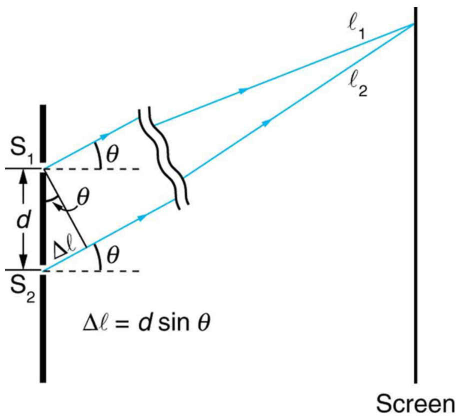
Equation:

$$d \sin \theta = m\lambda, \text{ for } m = 0, 1, -1, 2, -2, \ldots \text{ (constructive).}$$

Similarly, to obtain **destructive interference for a double slit**, the path length difference must be a half-integral multiple of the wavelength, or
Equation:

$$d \ \sin\theta = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)\lambda, \text{ for } m = 0, 1, \ -1, 2, \ -2, \ \ldots \ \ (\text{destructive}),$$

where λ is the wavelength of the light, d is the distance between slits, and θ is the angle from the original direction of the beam as discussed above. We call m the **order** of the interference. For example, $m = 4$ is fourth-order interference.



The paths from each slit to a common point on the screen differ by an amount d sin θ, assuming the distance to the screen is much greater than the distance between slits (not to scale here).

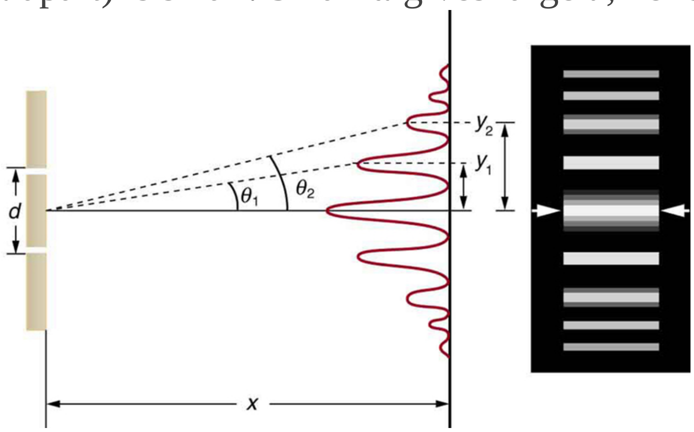
The equations for double slit interference imply that a series of bright and dark lines are formed. For vertical slits, the light spreads out horizontally on

either side of the incident beam into a pattern called interference fringes, illustrated in [link]. The intensity of the bright fringes falls off on either side, being brightest at the center. The closer the slits are, the more is the spreading of the bright fringes. We can see this by examining the equation

Equation:

$$d\ \sin\theta = m\lambda,\ \text{for}\ m = 0,\ 1,\ -1,\ 2,\ -2,\ \ldots.$$

For fixed λ and m, the smaller d is, the larger θ must be, since $\sin\theta = m\lambda/\ d$. This is consistent with our contention that wave effects are most noticeable when the object the wave encounters (here, slits a distance d apart) is small. Small d gives large θ, hence a large effect.



The interference pattern for a double slit has an intensity that falls off with angle. The photograph shows multiple bright and dark lines, or fringes, formed by light passing through a double slit.

Example:
Finding a Wavelength from an Interference Pattern

Suppose you pass light from a He-Ne laser through two slits separated by 0.0100 mm and find that the third bright line on a screen is formed at an angle of 10.95^{o} relative to the incident beam. What is the wavelength of the light?

Strategy

The third bright line is due to third-order constructive interference, which means that $m = 3$. We are given $d = 0.0100 \text{ mm}$ and $\theta = 10.95^{\text{o}}$. The wavelength can thus be found using the equation $d \ \sin \theta = m\lambda$ for constructive interference.

Solution

The equation is $d \ \sin \theta = m\lambda$. Solving for the wavelength λ gives

Equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{d \ \sin \theta}{m}.$$

Substituting known values yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda & = \frac{(0.0100 \text{ mm})(\sin 10.95^{\text{o}})}{3} \\ & = 6.33 \times 10^{-4} \text{ mm} = 633 \text{ nm}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

To three digits, this is the wavelength of light emitted by the common He-Ne laser. Not by coincidence, this red color is similar to that emitted by neon lights. More important, however, is the fact that interference patterns can be used to measure wavelength. Young did this for visible wavelengths. This analytical technique is still widely used to measure electromagnetic spectra. For a given order, the angle for constructive interference increases with λ, so that spectra (measurements of intensity versus wavelength) can be obtained.

Example:

Calculating Highest Order Possible

Interference patterns do not have an infinite number of lines, since there is a limit to how big m can be. What is the highest-order constructive interference possible with the system described in the preceding example?

Strategy and Concept

The equation $d\ \sin\theta = m\lambda$ (for $m = 0, 1, -1, 2, -2, \ldots$) describes constructive interference. For fixed values of d and λ, the larger m is, the larger $\sin\theta$ is. However, the maximum value that $\sin\theta$ can have is 1, for an angle of 90º. (Larger angles imply that light goes backward and does not reach the screen at all.) Let us find which m corresponds to this maximum diffraction angle.

Solution

Solving the equation $d\sin\theta = m\lambda$ for m gives

Equation:

$$m = \frac{d\sin\theta}{\lambda}.$$

Taking $\sin\theta = 1$ and substituting the values of d and λ from the preceding example gives

Equation:

$$m = \frac{(0.0100\text{ mm})(1)}{633\text{ nm}} \approx 15.8.$$

Therefore, the largest integer m can be is 15, or

Equation:

$$m = 15.$$

Discussion

The number of fringes depends on the wavelength and slit separation. The number of fringes will be very large for large slit separations. However, if the slit separation becomes much greater than the wavelength, the intensity of the interference pattern changes so that the screen has two bright lines cast by the slits, as expected when light behaves like a ray. We also note that the fringes get fainter further away from the center. Consequently, not all 15 fringes may be observable.

Section Summary

- Young’s double slit experiment gave definitive proof of the wave character of light.
- An interference pattern is obtained by the superposition of light from two slits.
- There is constructive interference when $d \sin \theta = m\lambda \text{ (for } m = 0, 1, -1, 2, -2, \ldots)$, where d is the distance between the slits, θ is the angle relative to the incident direction, and m is the order of the interference.
- There is destructive interference when $d \ \sin \theta = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)\lambda \text{ (for } \ m = 0, 1, -1, 2, -2, \ldots)$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Young’s double slit experiment breaks a single light beam into two sources. Would the same pattern be obtained for two independent sources of light, such as the headlights of a distant car? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you use the same double slit to perform Young’s double slit experiment in air and then repeat the experiment in water. Do the angles to the same parts of the interference pattern get larger or smaller? Does the color of the light change? Explain.

Exercise:

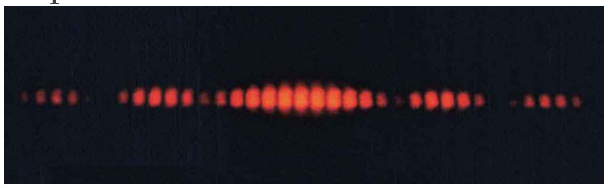
Problem:

Is it possible to create a situation in which there is only destructive interference? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows the central part of the interference pattern for a pure wavelength of red light projected onto a double slit. The pattern is actually a combination of single slit and double slit interference. Note that the bright spots are evenly spaced. Is this a double slit or single slit characteristic? Note that some of the bright spots are dim on either side of the center. Is this a single slit or double slit characteristic? Which is smaller, the slit width or the separation between slits? Explain your responses.



This double slit interference pattern also shows signs of single slit interference. (credit: PASCO)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

At what angle is the first-order maximum for 450-nm wavelength blue light falling on double slits separated by 0.0500 mm?

Solution:

0.516°

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the angle for the third-order maximum of 580-nm wavelength yellow light falling on double slits separated by 0.100 mm.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the separation between two slits for which 610-nm orange light has its first maximum at an angle of 30.0°?

Solution:

$1.22 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the distance between two slits that produces the first minimum for 410-nm violet light at an angle of 45.0°.

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the wavelength of light that has its third minimum at an angle of 30.0° when falling on double slits separated by $3.00\ \mu\text{m}$. Explicitly, show how you follow the steps in Problem-Solving Strategies for Wave Optics.

Solution:

600 nm

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the wavelength of light falling on double slits separated by $2.00\ \mu\text{m}$ if the third-order maximum is at an angle of 60.0°?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what angle is the fourth-order maximum for the situation in [link]?

Solution:

2.06°

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the highest-order maximum for 400-nm light falling on double slits separated by 25.0 µm?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the largest wavelength of light falling on double slits separated by 1.20 µm for which there is a first-order maximum. Is this in the visible part of the spectrum?

Solution:

1200 nm (not visible)

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the smallest separation between two slits that will produce a second-order maximum for 720-nm red light?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the smallest separation between two slits that will produce a second-order maximum for any visible light? (b) For all visible light?

Solution:

(a) 760 nm

(b) 1520 nm

Exercise:

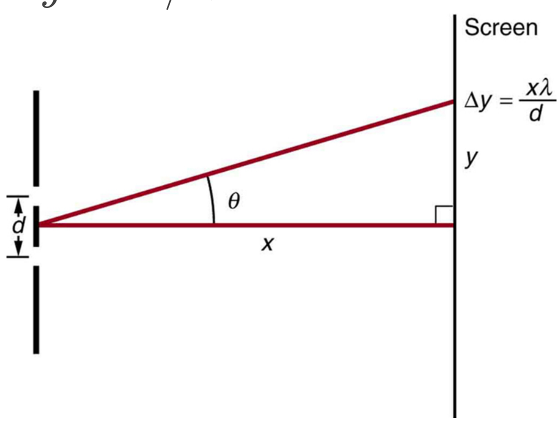
Problem:

(a) If the first-order maximum for pure-wavelength light falling on a double slit is at an angle of 10.0^{o}, at what angle is the second-order maximum? (b) What is the angle of the first minimum? (c) What is the highest-order maximum possible here?

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows a double slit located a distance x from a screen, with the distance from the center of the screen given by y. When the distance d between the slits is relatively large, there will be numerous bright spots, called fringes. Show that, for small angles (where $\sin\theta \approx \theta$, with θ in radians), the distance between fringes is given by $\Delta y = x\lambda/d$.



The distance between adjacent fringes is $\Delta y = x\lambda/d$, assuming the

slit separation d is large compared with λ.

Solution:

For small angles $\sin\theta - \tan\theta \approx \theta$ (in radians).

For two adjacent fringes we have,
Equation:

$$d\ \ \sin\theta_{\mathrm{m}} = m\lambda$$

and
Equation:

$$d\ \ \sin\theta_{\mathrm{m}+1} = (m+1)\lambda$$

Subtracting these equations gives
Equation:

$$\begin{gathered} d(\sin\theta_{\mathrm{m}+1} - \sin\theta_{\mathrm{m}}) = [(m+1) - m]\lambda \\ d(\theta_{\mathrm{m}+1} - \theta_{\mathrm{m}}) = \lambda \\ \tan\theta_{\mathrm{m}} = \frac{y_{\mathrm{m}}}{x} \approx \theta_{\mathrm{m}} \Rightarrow d\left(\frac{y_{\mathrm{m}+1}}{x} - \frac{y_{\mathrm{m}}}{x}\right) = \lambda \\ d\frac{\Delta y}{x} = \lambda \Rightarrow \Delta y = \frac{x\lambda}{d} \end{gathered}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the result of the problem above, calculate the distance between fringes for 633-nm light falling on double slits separated by 0.0800 mm, located 3.00 m from a screen as in [link].

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the result of the problem two problems prior, find the wavelength of light that produces fringes 7.50 mm apart on a screen 2.00 m from double slits separated by 0.120 mm (see [link]).

Solution:

450 nm

Glossary

coherent
: waves are in phase or have a definite phase relationship

constructive interference for a double slit
: the path length difference must be an integral multiple of the wavelength

destructive interference for a double slit
: the path length difference must be a half-integral multiple of the wavelength

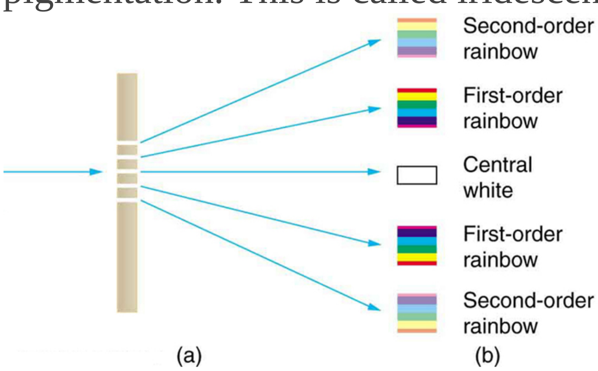
incoherent
: waves have random phase relationships

order
: the integer m used in the equations for constructive and destructive interference for a double slit

Multiple Slit Diffraction

- Discuss the pattern obtained from diffraction grating.
- Explain diffraction grating effects.

An interesting thing happens if you pass light through a large number of evenly spaced parallel slits, called a **diffraction grating**. An interference pattern is created that is very similar to the one formed by a double slit (see [link]). A diffraction grating can be manufactured by scratching glass with a sharp tool in a number of precisely positioned parallel lines, with the untouched regions acting like slits. These can be photographically mass produced rather cheaply. Diffraction gratings work both for transmission of light, as in [link], and for reflection of light, as on butterfly wings and the Australian opal in [link] or the CD pictured in the opening photograph of this chapter, [link]. In addition to their use as novelty items, diffraction gratings are commonly used for spectroscopic dispersion and analysis of light. What makes them particularly useful is the fact that they form a sharper pattern than double slits do. That is, their bright regions are narrower and brighter, while their dark regions are darker. [link] shows idealized graphs demonstrating the sharper pattern. Natural diffraction gratings occur in the feathers of certain birds. Tiny, finger-like structures in regular patterns act as reflection gratings, producing constructive interference that gives the feathers colors not solely due to their pigmentation. This is called iridescence.

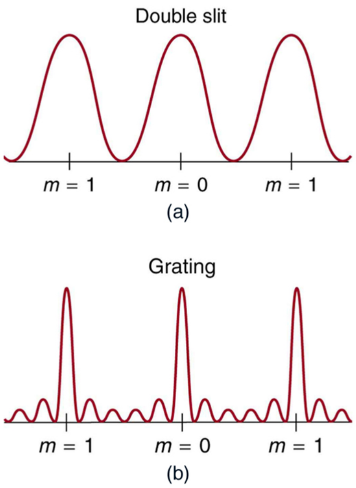


A diffraction grating is a large number of evenly spaced parallel slits. (a) Light passing through is diffracted in a pattern similar to a double slit, with

bright regions at various angles. (b) The pattern obtained for white light incident on a grating. The central maximum is white, and the higher-order maxima disperse white light into a rainbow of colors.

(a) (b)

(a) This Australian opal and (b) the butterfly wings have rows of reflectors that act like reflection gratings, reflecting different colors at different angles. (credits: (a) Opals-On-Black.com, via Flickr (b) whologwhy, Flickr)



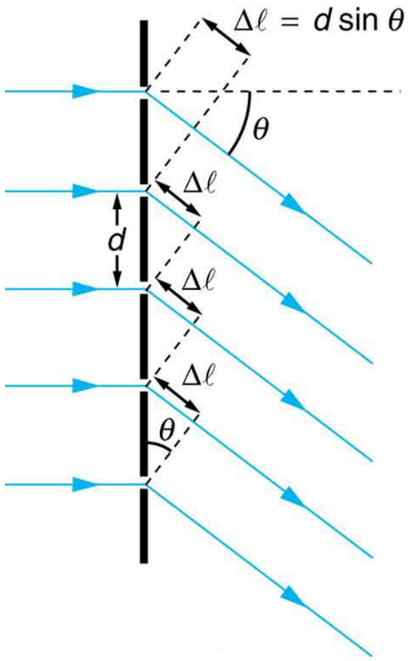
Idealized graphs of the intensity of light passing through a double slit (a) and a diffraction grating (b) for monochromatic light. Maxima can be produced at the same angles, but those for the diffraction grating are narrower and hence sharper. The maxima become narrower and the regions between darker as the number of slits is increased.

The analysis of a diffraction grating is very similar to that for a double slit (see [link]). As we know from our discussion of double slits in Young's Double Slit Experiment, light is diffracted by each slit and spreads out after passing through. Rays traveling in the same direction (at an angle θ relative to the incident direction) are shown in the figure. Each of these rays travels a different distance to a common point on a screen far away. The rays start in phase, and they can be in or out of phase when they reach a screen, depending on the difference in the path lengths traveled. As seen in the figure, each ray travels a distance $d \sin \theta$ different from that of its neighbor, where d is the distance between slits. If this distance equals an integral number of wavelengths, the rays all arrive in phase, and constructive interference (a maximum) is obtained. Thus, the condition necessary to obtain **constructive interference for a diffraction grating** is

Equation:

$$d \;\sin \theta = m\lambda, \;\text{for}\; m = 0,\, 1,\, –1,\, 2,\, –2, \ldots \;(\text{constructive}),$$

where d is the distance between slits in the grating, λ is the wavelength of light, and m is the order of the maximum. Note that this is exactly the same equation as for double slits separated by d. However, the slits are usually closer in diffraction gratings than in double slits, producing fewer maxima at larger angles.

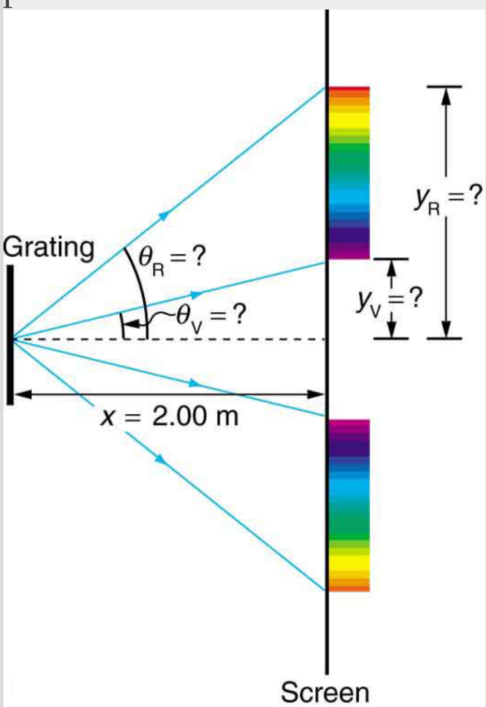


Diffraction grating showing light rays from each slit traveling in the same direction. Each ray travels a different distance to reach a common point on a screen (not shown). Each ray travels a distance $d \sin \theta$ different from that of its neighbor.

Where are diffraction gratings used? Diffraction gratings are key components of monochromators used, for example, in optical imaging of particular wavelengths from biological or medical samples. A diffraction grating can be chosen to specifically analyze a wavelength emitted by molecules in diseased cells in a biopsy sample or to help excite strategic molecules in the sample with a selected frequency of light. Another vital use is in optical fiber technologies where fibers are designed to provide optimum performance at specific wavelengths. A range of diffraction gratings are available for selecting specific wavelengths for such use.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Rainbows on a CD
The spacing d of the grooves in a CD or DVD can be well determined by using a laser and the equation $d \sin \theta = m\lambda, \text{ for } m = 0, 1, –1, 2, –2, \ldots$. However, we can still make a good estimate of this spacing by using white light and the rainbow of colors that comes from the interference. Reflect sunlight from a CD onto a wall and use your best judgment of the location of a strongly diffracted color to find the separation d.

Example:
Calculating Typical Diffraction Grating Effects
Diffraction gratings with 10,000 lines per centimeter are readily available. Suppose you have one, and you send a beam of white light through it to a screen 2.00 m away. (a) Find the angles for the first-order diffraction of the shortest and longest wavelengths of visible light (380 and 760 nm). (b) What is the distance between the ends of the rainbow of visible light produced on the screen for first-order interference? (See [link].)



The diffraction grating considered in this example produces a rainbow of colors on a screen a distance $x = 2.00\ \text{m}$ from the grating. The distances along the screen are measured perpendicular to the x-direction. In other words, the rainbow pattern extends out of the page.

Strategy

The angles can be found using the equation

Equation:

$$d \ \sin \theta = m\lambda \text{ (for } m = 0, 1, –1, 2, –2, \ \ldots)$$

once a value for the slit spacing d has been determined. Since there are 10,000 lines per centimeter, each line is separated by $1/10{,}000$ of a centimeter. Once the angles are found, the distances along the screen can be found using simple trigonometry.

Solution for (a)

The distance between slits is $d = (1 \text{ cm})/10{,}000 = 1.00 \times 10^{-4}$ cm or 1.00×10^{-6} m. Let us call the two angles θ_{V} for violet (380 nm) and θ_{R} for red (760 nm). Solving the equation d sin $\theta_{\text{V}} = m\lambda$ for sin θ_{V},

Equation:

$$\sin \theta_{\text{V}} = \frac{m\lambda_{\text{V}}}{d},$$

where $m = 1$ for first order and $\lambda_{\text{V}} = 380 \text{ nm} = 3.80 \times 10^{-7}$ m. Substituting these values gives

Equation:

$$\sin \theta_{\text{V}} = \frac{3.80 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m}}{1.00 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}} = 0.380.$$

Thus the angle θ_{V} is

Equation:

$$\theta_{\text{V}} = \sin^{-1} 0.380 = 22.33^{\text{o}}.$$

Similarly,

Equation:

$$\sin \theta_{\text{R}} = \frac{7.60 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m}}{1.00 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}}.$$

Thus the angle θ_R is
Equation:

$$\theta_R = \sin^{-1} 0.760 = 49.46^{\text{o}}.$$

Notice that in both equations, we reported the results of these intermediate calculations to four significant figures to use with the calculation in part (b).
Solution for (b)
The distances on the screen are labeled y_V and y_R in [link]. Noting that $\tan \theta = y/x$, we can solve for y_V and y_R. That is,
Equation:

$$y_V = x \tan \theta_V = (2.00 \text{ m})(\tan 22.33^{\text{o}}) = 0.815 \text{ m}$$

and
Equation:

$$y_R = x \tan \theta_R = (2.00 \text{ m})(\tan 49.46^{\text{o}}) = 2.338 \text{ m}.$$

The distance between them is therefore
Equation:

$$y_R - y_V = 1.52 \text{ m}.$$

Discussion
The large distance between the red and violet ends of the rainbow produced from the white light indicates the potential this diffraction grating has as a spectroscopic tool. The more it can spread out the wavelengths (greater dispersion), the more detail can be seen in a spectrum. This depends on the quality of the diffraction grating—it must be very precisely made in addition to having closely spaced lines.

Section Summary

- A diffraction grating is a large collection of evenly spaced parallel slits that produces an interference pattern similar to but sharper than that of a double slit.
- There is constructive interference for a diffraction grating when $d\ \sin\theta = m\lambda$ (for $m = 0, 1, –1, 2, –2,\ \dots$), where d is the distance between slits in the grating, λ is the wavelength of light, and m is the order of the maximum.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the advantage of a diffraction grating over a double slit in dispersing light into a spectrum?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the advantages of a diffraction grating over a prism in dispersing light for spectral analysis?

Exercise:

Problem:

Can the lines in a diffraction grating be too close together to be useful as a spectroscopic tool for visible light? If so, what type of EM radiation would the grating be suitable for? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a beam of white light passes through a diffraction grating with vertical lines, the light is dispersed into rainbow colors on the right and left. If a glass prism disperses white light to the right into a rainbow, how does the sequence of colors compare with that produced on the right by a diffraction grating?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose pure-wavelength light falls on a diffraction grating. What happens to the interference pattern if the same light falls on a grating that has more lines per centimeter? What happens to the interference pattern if a longer-wavelength light falls on the same grating? Explain how these two effects are consistent in terms of the relationship of wavelength to the distance between slits.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a feather appears green but has no green pigment. Explain in terms of diffraction.

Exercise:

Problem:

It is possible that there is no minimum in the interference pattern of a single slit. Explain why. Is the same true of double slits and diffraction gratings?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A diffraction grating has 2000 lines per centimeter. At what angle will the first-order maximum be for 520-nm-wavelength green light?

Solution:

5.97°

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the angle for the third-order maximum for 580-nm-wavelength yellow light falling on a diffraction grating having 1500 lines per centimeter.

Exercise:

Problem:

How many lines per centimeter are there on a diffraction grating that gives a first-order maximum for 470-nm blue light at an angle of 25.0° ?

Solution:

8.99×10^3

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the distance between lines on a diffraction grating that produces a second-order maximum for 760-nm red light at an angle of 60.0°?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the wavelength of light that has its second-order maximum at 45.0° when falling on a diffraction grating that has 5000 lines per centimeter.

Solution:

707 nm

Exercise:

Problem:

An electric current through hydrogen gas produces several distinct wavelengths of visible light. What are the wavelengths of the hydrogen spectrum, if they form first-order maxima at angles of 24.2°, 25.7°, 29.1°, and 41.0° when projected on a diffraction grating having 10,000 lines per centimeter? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in Problem-Solving Strategies for Wave Optics

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What do the four angles in the above problem become if a 5000-line-per-centimeter diffraction grating is used? (b) Using this grating, what would the angles be for the second-order maxima? (c) Discuss the relationship between integral reductions in lines per centimeter and the new angles of various order maxima.

Solution:

$(\text{a})\ \ 11.8^{\circ},\ 12.5^{\circ},\ 14.1^{\circ},\ 19.2^{\circ}$

$(\text{b})\ \ 24.2^{\circ},\ 25.7^{\circ},\ 29.1^{\circ},\ 41.0^{\circ}$

(c) Decreasing the number of lines per centimeter by a factor of x means that the angle for the x-order maximum is the same as the original angle for the first- order maximum.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the maximum number of lines per centimeter a diffraction grating can have and produce a complete first-order spectrum for visible light?

Exercise:

Problem:

The yellow light from a sodium vapor lamp *seems* to be of pure wavelength, but it produces two first-order maxima at 36.093^{o} and 36.129^{o} when projected on a 10,000 line per centimeter diffraction grating. What are the two wavelengths to an accuracy of 0.1 nm?

Solution:

589.1 nm and 589.6 nm

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the spacing between structures in a feather that acts as a reflection grating, given that they produce a first-order maximum for 525-nm light at a 30.0^{o} angle?

Exercise:

Problem:

Structures on a bird feather act like a reflection grating having 8000 lines per centimeter. What is the angle of the first-order maximum for 600-nm light?

Solution:

28.7^{o}

Exercise:

Problem:

An opal such as that shown in [link] acts like a reflection grating with rows separated by about $8\ \mu\text{m}$. If the opal is illuminated normally, (a) at what angle will red light be seen and (b) at what angle will blue light be seen?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what angle does a diffraction grating produces a second-order maximum for light having a first-order maximum at 20.0^{o}?

Solution:

43.2^{o}

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that a diffraction grating cannot produce a second-order maximum for a given wavelength of light unless the first-order maximum is at an angle less than 30.0^{o}.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a diffraction grating produces a first-order maximum for the shortest wavelength of visible light at 30.0^{o}, at what angle will the first-order maximum be for the longest wavelength of visible light?

Solution:

90.0^{o}

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the maximum number of lines per centimeter a diffraction grating can have and produce a maximum for the smallest wavelength of visible light. (b) Would such a grating be useful for ultraviolet spectra? (c) For infrared spectra?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Show that a 30,000-line-per-centimeter grating will not produce a maximum for visible light. (b) What is the longest wavelength for which it does produce a first-order maximum? (c) What is the greatest number of lines per centimeter a diffraction grating can have and produce a complete second-order spectrum for visible light?

Solution:

(a) The longest wavelength is 333.3 nm, which is not visible.

(b) 333 nm (UV)

(c) 6.58×10^3 cm

Exercise:

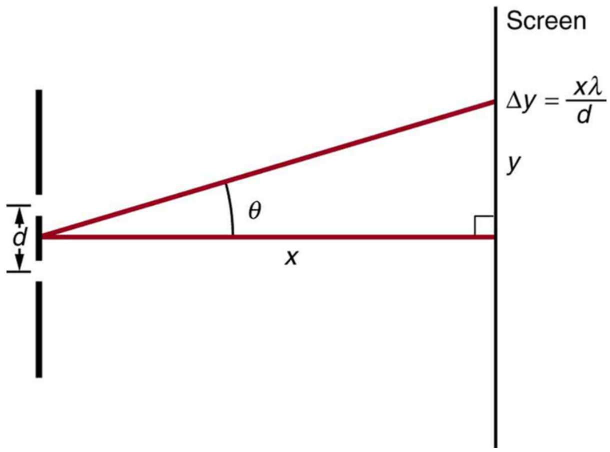
Problem:

A He–Ne laser beam is reflected from the surface of a CD onto a wall. The brightest spot is the reflected beam at an angle equal to the angle of incidence. However, fringes are also observed. If the wall is 1.50 m from the CD, and the first fringe is 0.600 m from the central maximum, what is the spacing of grooves on the CD?

Exercise:

Problem:

The analysis shown in the figure below also applies to diffraction gratings with lines separated by a distance d. What is the distance between fringes produced by a diffraction grating having 125 lines per centimeter for 600-nm light, if the screen is 1.50 m away?



The distance between adjacent fringes is $\Delta y = x\lambda/d$, assuming the slit separation d is large compared with λ.

Solution:

$1.13 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}$

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Red light of wavelength of 700 nm falls on a double slit separated by 400 nm. (a) At what angle is the first-order maximum in the diffraction pattern? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) What visible wavelength has its fourth-order maximum at an angle of 25.0° when projected on a 25,000-line-per-centimeter diffraction

grating? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 42.3 nm

(b) Not a visible wavelength

The number of slits in this diffraction grating is too large. Etching in integrated circuits can be done to a resolution of 50 nm, so slit separations of 400 nm are at the limit of what we can do today. This line spacing is too small to produce diffraction of light.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a spectrometer based on a diffraction grating. Construct a problem in which you calculate the distance between two wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation in your spectrometer. Among the things to be considered are the wavelengths you wish to be able to distinguish, the number of lines per meter on the diffraction grating, and the distance from the grating to the screen or detector. Discuss the practicality of the device in terms of being able to discern between wavelengths of interest.

Glossary

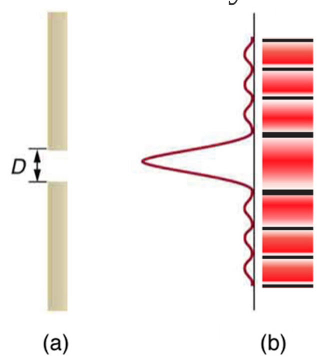
constructive interference for a diffraction grating
: occurs when the condition $d\ \sin\theta = m\lambda\ (\text{for } m = 0, 1, –1, 2, –2,\ \ldots)$ is satisfied, where d is the distance between slits in the grating, λ is the wavelength of light, and m is the order of the maximum

diffraction grating
: a large number of evenly spaced parallel slits

Single Slit Diffraction

- Discuss the single slit diffraction pattern.

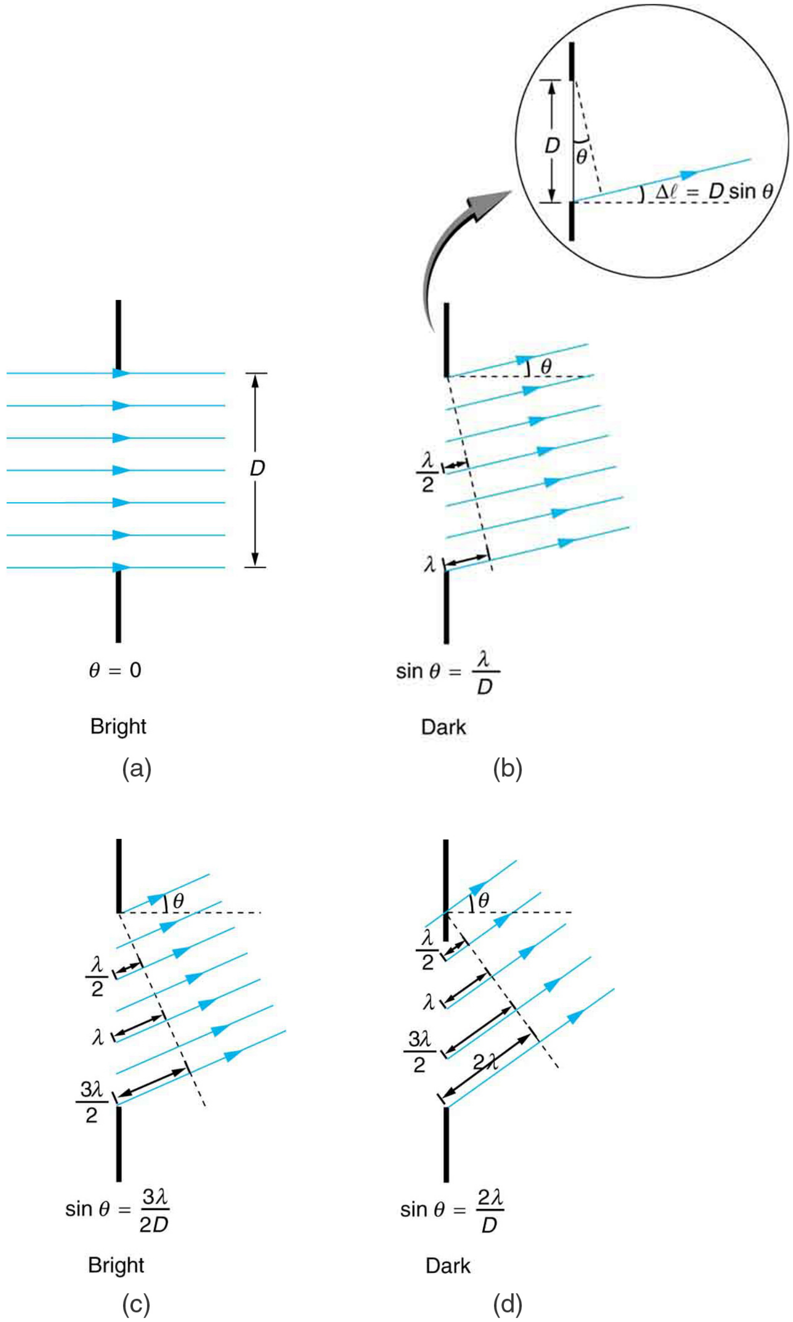
Light passing through a single slit forms a diffraction pattern somewhat different from those formed by double slits or diffraction gratings. [link] shows a single slit diffraction pattern. Note that the central maximum is larger than those on either side, and that the intensity decreases rapidly on either side. In contrast, a diffraction grating produces evenly spaced lines that dim slowly on either side of center.



(a) Single slit diffraction pattern. Monochromatic light passing through a single slit has a central maximum and many smaller and dimmer maxima on either side. The central maximum is six times higher than shown. (b) The drawing shows

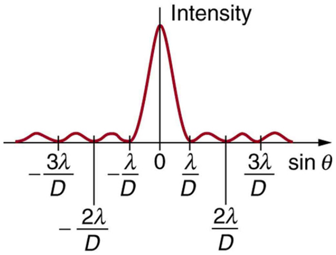
the bright central maximum and dimmer and thinner maxima on either side.

The analysis of single slit diffraction is illustrated in [link]. Here we consider light coming from different parts of the *same* slit. According to Huygens's principle, every part of the wavefront in the slit emits wavelets. These are like rays that start out in phase and head in all directions. (Each ray is perpendicular to the wavefront of a wavelet.) Assuming the screen is very far away compared with the size of the slit, rays heading toward a common destination are nearly parallel. When they travel straight ahead, as in [link](a), they remain in phase, and a central maximum is obtained. However, when rays travel at an angle θ relative to the original direction of the beam, each travels a different distance to a common location, and they can arrive in or out of phase. In [link](b), the ray from the bottom travels a distance of one wavelength λ farther than the ray from the top. Thus a ray from the center travels a distance $\lambda/2$ farther than the one on the left, arrives out of phase, and interferes destructively. A ray from slightly above the center and one from slightly above the bottom will also cancel one another. In fact, each ray from the slit will have another to interfere destructively, and a minimum in intensity will occur at this angle. There will be another minimum at the same angle to the right of the incident direction of the light.



Light passing through a single slit is diffracted in all directions and may interfere constructively or destructively, depending on the angle. The difference in path length for rays from either side of the slit is seen to be $D \sin \theta$.

At the larger angle shown in [link](c), the path lengths differ by $3\lambda/2$ for rays from the top and bottom of the slit. One ray travels a distance λ different from the ray from the bottom and arrives in phase, interfering constructively. Two rays, each from slightly above those two, will also add constructively. Most rays from the slit will have another to interfere with constructively, and a maximum in intensity will occur at this angle. However, all rays do not interfere constructively for this situation, and so the maximum is not as intense as the central maximum. Finally, in [link](d), the angle shown is large enough to produce a second minimum. As seen in the figure, the difference in path length for rays from either side of the slit is $D \sin \theta$, and we see that a destructive minimum is obtained when this distance is an integral multiple of the wavelength.



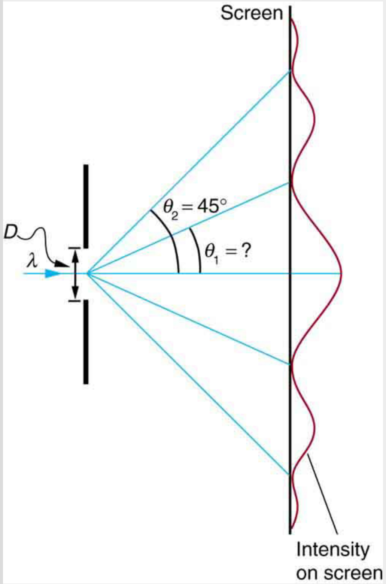
A graph of single slit diffraction intensity showing the central maximum to be wider and much more intense than those to the sides. In fact the central maximum is six times higher than shown here.

Thus, to obtain **destructive interference for a single slit**,
Equation:

$$D\sin\theta = m\lambda,\ \text{for}\ m = 1, –1, 2, –2, 3,\ \ldots\ \text{(destructive)},$$

where D is the slit width, λ is the light's wavelength, θ is the angle relative to the original direction of the light, and m is the order of the minimum. [link] shows a graph of intensity for single slit interference, and it is apparent that the maxima on either side of the central maximum are much less intense and not as wide. This is consistent with the illustration in [link] (b).

Example:
Calculating Single Slit Diffraction
Visible light of wavelength 550 nm falls on a single slit and produces its second diffraction minimum at an angle of 45.0^{o} relative to the incident direction of the light. (a) What is the width of the slit? (b) At what angle is the first minimum produced?



A graph of the

single slit diffraction pattern is analyzed in this example.

Strategy
From the given information, and assuming the screen is far away from the slit, we can use the equation $D \sin \theta = \mathrm{m}\lambda$ first to find D, and again to find the angle for the first minimum θ_1.
Solution for (a)
We are given that $\lambda = 550$ nm, $m = 2$, and $\theta_2 = 45.0^{\circ}$. Solving the equation $D\ \sin \theta = \mathrm{m}\lambda$ for D and substituting known values gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} D &= \frac{m\lambda}{\sin \theta_2} = \frac{2(550 \text{ nm})}{\sin 45.0^{\circ}} \\ &= \frac{1100 \times 10^{-9}}{0.707} \\ &= 1.56 \times 10^{-6}. \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (b)
Solving the equation $D\ \sin \theta = m\lambda$ for $\sin \theta_1$ and substituting the known values gives
Equation:

$$\sin \theta_1 = \frac{m\lambda}{D} = \frac{1\left(550 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m}\right)}{1.56 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}}.$$

Thus the angle θ_1 is
Equation:

$$\theta_1 = \sin^{-1} 0.354 = 20.7^{\circ}.$$

Discussion
We see that the slit is narrow (it is only a few times greater than the wavelength of light). This is consistent with the fact that light must interact with an object comparable in size to its wavelength in order to exhibit

significant wave effects such as this single slit diffraction pattern. We also see that the central maximum extends 20.7^{o} on either side of the original beam, for a width of about 41^{o} . The angle between the first and second minima is only about 24^{o} $(45.0^{\text{o}} - 20.7^{\text{o}})$. Thus the second maximum is only about half as wide as the central maximum.

Section Summary

- A single slit produces an interference pattern characterized by a broad central maximum with narrower and dimmer maxima to the sides.
- There is destructive interference for a single slit when $D\ \sin\theta = m\lambda, \text{(for } m = 1, –1, 2, –2, 3,\ \ldots)$, where D is the slit width, λ is the light's wavelength, θ is the angle relative to the original direction of the light, and m is the order of the minimum. Note that there is no $m = 0$ minimum.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

As the width of the slit producing a single-slit diffraction pattern is reduced, how will the diffraction pattern produced change?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At what angle is the first minimum for 550-nm light falling on a single slit of width 1.00 μm? (b) Will there be a second minimum?

Solution:

(a) 33.4^{o}

(b) No

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the angle at which a 2.00-μm-wide slit produces its first minimum for 410-nm violet light. (b) Where is the first minimum for 700-nm red light?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How wide is a single slit that produces its first minimum for 633-nm light at an angle of 28.0^{o}? (b) At what angle will the second minimum be?

Solution:

(a) 1.35×10^{-6} m

(b) 69.9^{o}

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the width of a single slit that produces its first minimum at 60.0^{o} for 600-nm light? (b) Find the wavelength of light that has its first minimum at 62.0^{o}.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the wavelength of light that has its third minimum at an angle of 48.6^{o} when it falls on a single slit of width 3.00 μm.

Solution:

750 nm

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the wavelength of light that produces its first minimum at an angle of 36.9° when falling on a single slit of width $1.00\ \mu m$.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Sodium vapor light averaging 589 nm in wavelength falls on a single slit of width $7.50\ \mu m$. At what angle does it produces its second minimum? (b) What is the highest-order minimum produced?

Solution:

(a) 9.04°

(b) 12

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the angle of the third diffraction minimum for 633-nm light falling on a slit of width $20.0\ \mu m$. (b) What slit width would place this minimum at 85.0°? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in Problem-Solving Strategies for Wave Optics

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the angle between the first minima for the two sodium vapor lines, which have wavelengths of 589.1 and 589.6 nm, when they fall upon a single slit of width $2.00\ \mu m$. (b) What is the distance between these minima if the diffraction pattern falls on a screen 1.00 m from the slit? (c) Discuss the ease or difficulty of measuring such a distance.

Solution:

(a) 0.0150^{o}

(b) 0.262 mm

(c) This distance is not easily measured by human eye, but under a microscope or magnifying glass it is quite easily measurable.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the minimum width of a single slit (in multiples of λ) that will produce a first minimum for a wavelength λ? (b) What is its minimum width if it produces 50 minima? (c) 1000 minima?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If a single slit produces a first minimum at 14.5^{o}, at what angle is the second-order minimum? (b) What is the angle of the third-order minimum? (c) Is there a fourth-order minimum? (d) Use your answers to illustrate how the angular width of the central maximum is about twice the angular width of the next maximum (which is the angle between the first and second minima).

Solution:

(a) 30.1^{o}

(b) 48.7^{o}

(c) No

(d) $2\text{θ}_1 = (2)(14.5^{\text{o}}) = 29^{\text{o}}$, $\theta_2 - \theta_1 = 30.05^{\text{o}} - 14.5^{\text{o}}$=$15.56^{\text{o}}$. Thus, $29^{\text{o}} \approx (2)(15.56^{\text{o}}) = 31.1^{\text{o}}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

A double slit produces a diffraction pattern that is a combination of single and double slit interference. Find the ratio of the width of the slits to the separation between them, if the first minimum of the single slit pattern falls on the fifth maximum of the double slit pattern. (This will greatly reduce the intensity of the fifth maximum.)

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A water break at the entrance to a harbor consists of a rock barrier with a 50.0-m-wide opening. Ocean waves of 20.0-m wavelength approach the opening straight on. At what angle to the incident direction are the boats inside the harbor most protected against wave action?

Solution:

23.6^{o} and 53.1^{o}

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

An aircraft maintenance technician walks past a tall hangar door that acts like a single slit for sound entering the hangar. Outside the door, on a line perpendicular to the opening in the door, a jet engine makes a 600-Hz sound. At what angle with the door will the technician observe the first minimum in sound intensity if the vertical opening is 0.800 m wide and the speed of sound is 340 m/s?

Glossary

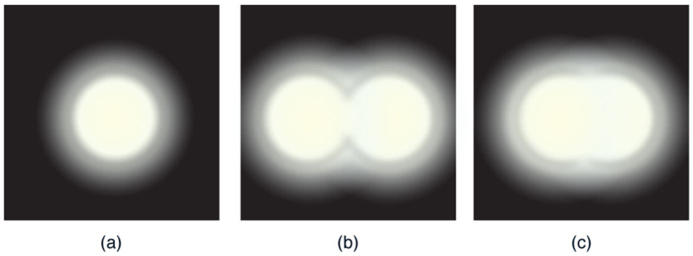
destructive interference for a single slit
: occurs when $D\ \sin\theta = \text{m}\lambda,$ (for $m = 1, –1, 2, –2, 3,\ \ldots$), where D is the slit width, λ is the light’s wavelength, θ is the angle relative to

the original direction of the light, and m is the order of the minimum

Limits of Resolution: The Rayleigh Criterion

- Discuss the Rayleigh criterion.

Light diffracts as it moves through space, bending around obstacles, interfering constructively and destructively. While this can be used as a spectroscopic tool—a diffraction grating disperses light according to wavelength, for example, and is used to produce spectra—diffraction also limits the detail we can obtain in images. [link](a) shows the effect of passing light through a small circular aperture. Instead of a bright spot with sharp edges, a spot with a fuzzy edge surrounded by circles of light is obtained. This pattern is caused by diffraction similar to that produced by a single slit. Light from different parts of the circular aperture interferes constructively and destructively. The effect is most noticeable when the aperture is small, but the effect is there for large apertures, too.



(a) Monochromatic light passed through a small circular aperture produces this diffraction pattern. (b) Two point light sources that are close to one another produce overlapping images because of diffraction. (c) If they are closer together, they cannot be resolved or distinguished.

How does diffraction affect the detail that can be observed when light passes through an aperture? [link](b) shows the diffraction pattern produced by two point light sources that are close to one another. The pattern is similar to that for a single point source, and it is just barely possible to tell that there are two light sources rather than one. If they were closer together,

as in [link](c), we could not distinguish them, thus limiting the detail or resolution we can obtain. This limit is an inescapable consequence of the wave nature of light.

There are many situations in which diffraction limits the resolution. The acuity of our vision is limited because light passes through the pupil, the circular aperture of our eye. Be aware that the diffraction-like spreading of light is due to the limited diameter of a light beam, not the interaction with an aperture. Thus light passing through a lens with a diameter D shows this effect and spreads, blurring the image, just as light passing through an aperture of diameter D does. So diffraction limits the resolution of any system having a lens or mirror. Telescopes are also limited by diffraction, because of the finite diameter D of their primary mirror.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Resolution of the Eye
Draw two lines on a white sheet of paper (several mm apart). How far away can you be and still distinguish the two lines? What does this tell you about the size of the eye's pupil? Can you be quantitative? (The size of an adult's pupil is discussed in Physics of the Eye.)

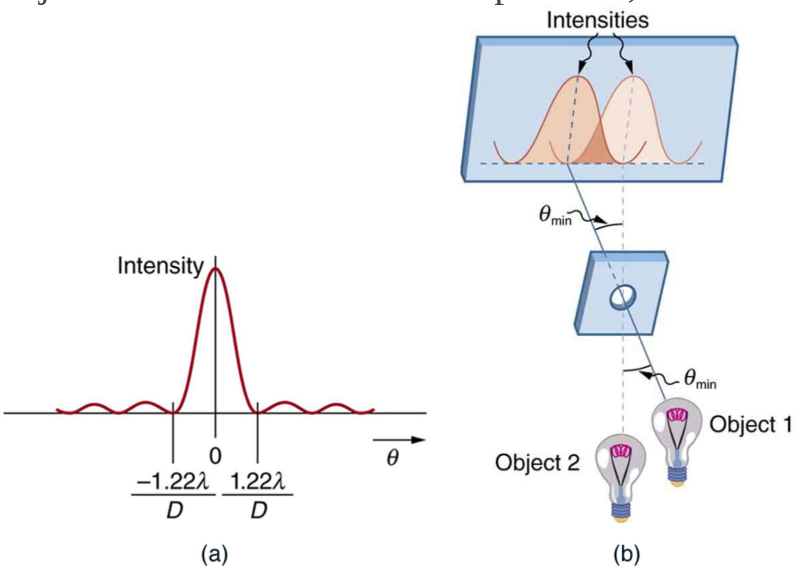
Just what is the limit? To answer that question, consider the diffraction pattern for a circular aperture, which has a central maximum that is wider and brighter than the maxima surrounding it (similar to a slit) [see [link](a)]. It can be shown that, for a circular aperture of diameter D, the first minimum in the diffraction pattern occurs at $\theta = 1.22\ \lambda/D$ (providing the aperture is large compared with the wavelength of light, which is the case for most optical instruments). The accepted criterion for determining the diffraction limit to resolution based on this angle was developed by Lord Rayleigh in the 19th century. The **Rayleigh criterion** for the diffraction limit to resolution states that *two images are just resolvable when the center of the diffraction pattern of one is directly over the first minimum of the diffraction pattern of the other*. See [link](b). The first minimum is at an

angle of $\theta = 1.22\ \lambda/D$, so that two point objects are just resolvable if they are separated by the angle

Equation:

$$\theta = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{D},$$

where λ is the wavelength of light (or other electromagnetic radiation) and D is the diameter of the aperture, lens, mirror, etc., with which the two objects are observed. In this expression, θ has units of radians.



(a) Graph of intensity of the diffraction pattern for a circular aperture. Note that, similar to a single slit, the central maximum is wider and brighter than those to the sides. (b) Two point objects produce overlapping diffraction patterns. Shown here is the Rayleigh criterion for being just resolvable. The central maximum of one pattern lies on the first minimum of the other.

Note:
Connections: Limits to Knowledge
All attempts to observe the size and shape of objects are limited by the wavelength of the probe. Even the small wavelength of light prohibits exact precision. When extremely small wavelength probes as with an electron microscope are used, the system is disturbed, still limiting our knowledge, much as making an electrical measurement alters a circuit. Heisenberg's uncertainty principle asserts that this limit is fundamental and inescapable, as we shall see in quantum mechanics.

Example:
Calculating Diffraction Limits of the Hubble Space Telescope
The primary mirror of the orbiting Hubble Space Telescope has a diameter of 2.40 m. Being in orbit, this telescope avoids the degrading effects of atmospheric distortion on its resolution. (a) What is the angle between two just-resolvable point light sources (perhaps two stars)? Assume an average light wavelength of 550 nm. (b) If these two stars are at the 2 million light year distance of the Andromeda galaxy, how close together can they be and still be resolved? (A light year, or ly, is the distance light travels in 1 year.)
Strategy
The Rayleigh criterion stated in the equation $\theta = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{D}$ gives the smallest possible angle θ between point sources, or the best obtainable resolution. Once this angle is found, the distance between stars can be calculated, since we are given how far away they are.
Solution for (a)
The Rayleigh criterion for the minimum resolvable angle is
Equation:

$$\theta = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{D}.$$

Entering known values gives
Equation:

$$\theta = 1.22\,\frac{550\times10^{-9}\text{ m}}{2.40\text{ m}}$$
$$= 2.80\times10^{-7}\text{ rad.}$$

Solution for (b)

The distance s between two objects a distance r away and separated by an angle θ is $s = r\theta$.

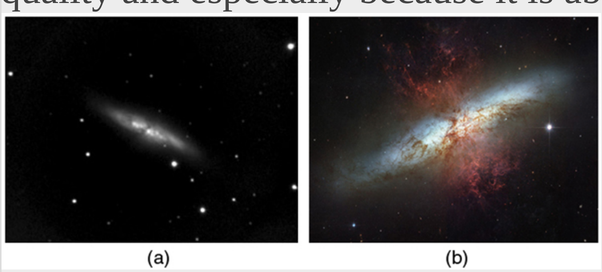
Substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} s &= (2.0\times10^{6}\text{ ly})(2.80\times10^{-7}\text{ rad}) \\ &= 0.56\text{ ly.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

The angle found in part (a) is extraordinarily small (less than 1/50,000 of a degree), because the primary mirror is so large compared with the wavelength of light. As noticed, diffraction effects are most noticeable when light interacts with objects having sizes on the order of the wavelength of light. However, the effect is still there, and there is a diffraction limit to what is observable. The actual resolution of the Hubble Telescope is not quite as good as that found here. As with all instruments, there are other effects, such as non-uniformities in mirrors or aberrations in lenses that further limit resolution. However, [link] gives an indication of the extent of the detail observable with the Hubble because of its size and quality and especially because it is above the Earth’s atmosphere.



These two photographs of the M82 galaxy give an idea of the observable detail using the Hubble Space Telescope compared with that using a ground-based telescope. (a) On

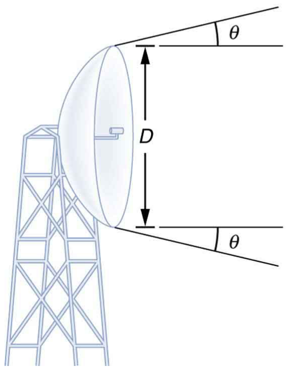
the left is a ground-based image. (credit: Ricnun, Wikimedia Commons) (b) The photo on the right was captured by Hubble. (credit: NASA, ESA, and the Hubble Heritage Team (STScI/AURA))

The answer in part (b) indicates that two stars separated by about half a light year can be resolved. The average distance between stars in a galaxy is on the order of 5 light years in the outer parts and about 1 light year near the galactic center. Therefore, the Hubble can resolve most of the individual stars in Andromeda galaxy, even though it lies at such a huge distance that its light takes 2 million years for its light to reach us. [link] shows another mirror used to observe radio waves from outer space.

A 305-m-diameter natural bowl at Arecibo in Puerto Rico is lined with reflective material, making it into a radio telescope. It is the largest curved focusing dish in the world. Although D for Arecibo is much larger than for the

Hubble Telescope, it detects much longer wavelength radiation and its diffraction limit is significantly poorer than Hubble's. Arecibo is still very useful, because important information is carried by radio waves that is not carried by visible light. (credit: Tatyana Temirbulatova, Flickr)

Diffraction is not only a problem for optical instruments but also for the electromagnetic radiation itself. Any beam of light having a finite diameter D and a wavelength λ exhibits diffraction spreading. The beam spreads out with an angle θ given by the equation $\theta = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{D}$. Take, for example, a laser beam made of rays as parallel as possible (angles between rays as close to $\theta = 0^{\text{o}}$ as possible) instead spreads out at an angle $\theta = 1.22\ \lambda/D$, where D is the diameter of the beam and λ is its wavelength. This spreading is impossible to observe for a flashlight, because its beam is not very parallel to start with. However, for long-distance transmission of laser beams or microwave signals, diffraction spreading can be significant (see [link]). To avoid this, we can increase D. This is done for laser light sent to the Moon to measure its distance from the Earth. The laser beam is expanded through a telescope to make D much larger and θ smaller.



The beam produced by this microwave transmission antenna will spread out at a minimum angle $\theta = 1.22\ \lambda/D$ due to diffraction. It is impossible to produce a near-parallel beam, because the beam has a limited diameter.

In most biology laboratories, resolution is presented when the use of the microscope is introduced. The ability of a lens to produce sharp images of two closely spaced point objects is called resolution. The smaller the distance x by which two objects can be separated and still be seen as distinct, the greater the resolution. The resolving power of a lens is defined as that distance x. An expression for resolving power is obtained from the

Rayleigh criterion. In [link](a) we have two point objects separated by a distance x. According to the Rayleigh criterion, resolution is possible when the minimum angular separation is

Equation:

$$\theta = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{D} = \frac{x}{d},$$

where d is the distance between the specimen and the objective lens, and we have used the small angle approximation (i.e., we have assumed that x is much smaller than d), so that $\tan\theta \approx \sin\theta \approx \theta$.

Therefore, the resolving power is

Equation:

$$x = 1.22\frac{\lambda d}{D}.$$

Another way to look at this is by re-examining the concept of Numerical Aperture (NA) discussed in Microscopes. There, NA is a measure of the maximum acceptance angle at which the fiber will take light and still contain it within the fiber. [link](b) shows a lens and an object at point P. The NA here is a measure of the ability of the lens to gather light and resolve fine detail. The angle subtended by the lens at its focus is defined to be $\theta = 2\alpha$. From the figure and again using the small angle approximation, we can write

Equation:

$$\sin\alpha = \frac{D/2}{d} = \frac{D}{2d}.$$

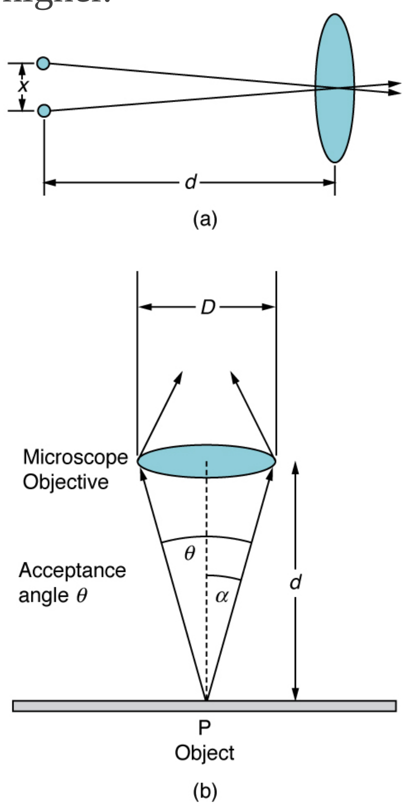
The NA for a lens is $NA = n\sin\alpha$, where n is the index of refraction of the medium between the objective lens and the object at point P.

From this definition for NA, we can see that

Equation:

$$x = 1.22\frac{\lambda d}{D} = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{2\ \sin\ \alpha} = 0.61\frac{\lambda n}{\text{NA}}.$$

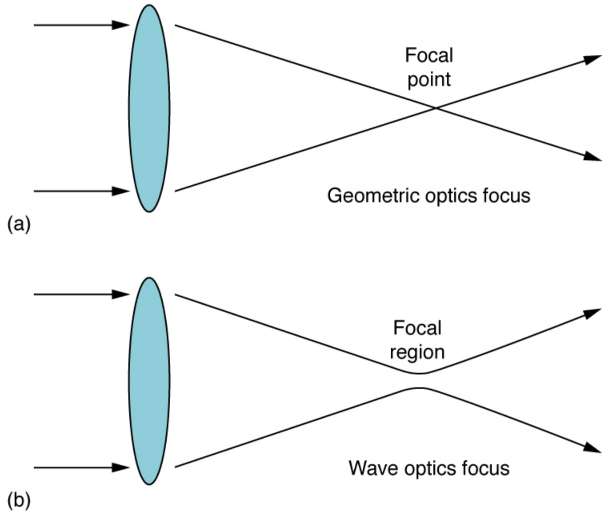
In a microscope, NA is important because it relates to the resolving power of a lens. A lens with a large NA will be able to resolve finer details. Lenses with larger NA will also be able to collect more light and so give a brighter image. Another way to describe this situation is that the larger the NA, the larger the cone of light that can be brought into the lens, and so more of the diffraction modes will be collected. Thus the microscope has more information to form a clear image, and so its resolving power will be higher.



(a) Two points separated by at distance x and a positioned a distance d away from the objective. (credit: Infopro,

Wikimedia Commons) (b) Terms and symbols used in discussion of resolving power for a lens and an object at point P. (credit: Infopro, Wikimedia Commons)

One of the consequences of diffraction is that the focal point of a beam has a finite width and intensity distribution. Consider focusing when only considering geometric optics, shown in [link](a). The focal point is infinitely small with a huge intensity and the capacity to incinerate most samples irrespective of the NA of the objective lens. For wave optics, due to diffraction, the focal point spreads to become a focal spot (see [link](b)) with the size of the spot decreasing with increasing NA. Consequently, the intensity in the focal spot increases with increasing NA. The higher the NA, the greater the chances of photodegrading the specimen. However, the spot never becomes a true point.



(a) In geometric optics, the focus is a point, but it is not

physically possible to produce such a point because it implies infinite intensity. (b) In wave optics, the focus is an extended region.

Section Summary

- Diffraction limits resolution.
- For a circular aperture, lens, or mirror, the Rayleigh criterion states that two images are just resolvable when the center of the diffraction pattern of one is directly over the first minimum of the diffraction pattern of the other.
- This occurs for two point objects separated by the angle $\theta = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{D}$, where λ is the wavelength of light (or other electromagnetic radiation) and D is the diameter of the aperture, lens, mirror, etc. This equation also gives the angular spreading of a source of light having a diameter D.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

A beam of light always spreads out. Why can a beam not be created with parallel rays to prevent spreading? Why can lenses, mirrors, or apertures not be used to correct the spreading?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The 300-m-diameter Arecibo radio telescope pictured in [link] detects radio waves with a 4.00 cm average wavelength.

(a) What is the angle between two just-resolvable point sources for this telescope?

(b) How close together could these point sources be at the 2 million light year distance of the Andromeda galaxy?

Solution:

(a) 1.63×10^{-4} rad

(b) 326 ly

Exercise:

Problem:

Assuming the angular resolution found for the Hubble Telescope in [link], what is the smallest detail that could be observed on the Moon?

Exercise:

Problem:

Diffraction spreading for a flashlight is insignificant compared with other limitations in its optics, such as spherical aberrations in its mirror. To show this, calculate the minimum angular spreading of a flashlight beam that is originally 5.00 cm in diameter with an average wavelength of 600 nm.

Solution:

1.46×10^{-5} rad

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the minimum angular spread of a 633-nm wavelength He-Ne laser beam that is originally 1.00 mm in diameter?

(b) If this laser is aimed at a mountain cliff 15.0 km away, how big will the illuminated spot be?

(c) How big a spot would be illuminated on the Moon, neglecting atmospheric effects? (This might be done to hit a corner reflector to measure the round-trip time and, hence, distance.) Explicitly show how you follow the steps in Problem-Solving Strategies for Wave Optics.

Exercise:

Problem:

A telescope can be used to enlarge the diameter of a laser beam and limit diffraction spreading. The laser beam is sent through the telescope in opposite the normal direction and can then be projected onto a satellite or the Moon.

(a) If this is done with the Mount Wilson telescope, producing a 2.54-m-diameter beam of 633-nm light, what is the minimum angular spread of the beam?

(b) Neglecting atmospheric effects, what is the size of the spot this beam would make on the Moon, assuming a lunar distance of $3.84 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m}$?

Solution:

(a) $3.04 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{rad}$

(b) Diameter of $235\ \text{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

The limit to the eye’s acuity is actually related to diffraction by the pupil.

(a) What is the angle between two just-resolvable points of light for a 3.00-mm-diameter pupil, assuming an average wavelength of 550 nm?

(b) Take your result to be the practical limit for the eye. What is the greatest possible distance a car can be from you if you can resolve its two headlights, given they are 1.30 m apart?

(c) What is the distance between two just-resolvable points held at an arm’s length (0.800 m) from your eye?

(d) How does your answer to (c) compare to details you normally observe in everyday circumstances?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the minimum diameter mirror on a telescope that would allow you to see details as small as 5.00 km on the Moon some 384,000 km away? Assume an average wavelength of 550 nm for the light received.

Solution:

5.15 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

You are told not to shoot until you see the whites of their eyes. If the eyes are separated by 6.5 cm and the diameter of your pupil is 5.0 mm, at what distance can you resolve the two eyes using light of wavelength 555 nm?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The planet Pluto and its Moon Charon are separated by 19,600 km. Neglecting atmospheric effects, should the 5.08-m-diameter Mount Palomar telescope be able to resolve these bodies when they are 4.50×10^9 km from Earth? Assume an average wavelength of 550 nm.

(b) In actuality, it is just barely possible to discern that Pluto and Charon are separate bodies using an Earth-based telescope. What are the reasons for this?

Solution:

(a) Yes. Should easily be able to discern.

(b) The fact that it is just barely possible to discern that these are separate bodies indicates the severity of atmospheric aberrations.

Exercise:

Problem:

The headlights of a car are 1.3 m apart. What is the maximum distance at which the eye can resolve these two headlights? Take the pupil diameter to be 0.40 cm.

Exercise:

Problem:

When dots are placed on a page from a laser printer, they must be close enough so that you do not see the individual dots of ink. To do this, the separation of the dots must be less than Raleigh’s criterion. Take the pupil of the eye to be 3.0 mm and the distance from the paper to the eye of 35 cm; find the minimum separation of two dots such that they cannot be resolved. How many dots per inch (dpi) does this correspond to?

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

An amateur astronomer wants to build a telescope with a diffraction limit that will allow him to see if there are people on the moons of Jupiter.

(a) What diameter mirror is needed to be able to see 1.00 m detail on a Jovian Moon at a distance of $7.50 \times 10^8 \text{ km}$ from Earth? The wavelength of light averages 600 nm.

(b) What is unreasonable about this result?

(c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider diffraction limits for an electromagnetic wave interacting with a circular object. Construct a problem in which you calculate the limit of angular resolution with a device, using this circular object (such as a lens, mirror, or antenna) to make observations. Also calculate the limit to spatial resolution (such as the size of features observable on the Moon) for observations at a specific distance from the device. Among the things to be considered are the wavelength of electromagnetic radiation used, the size of the circular object, and the distance to the system or phenomenon being observed.

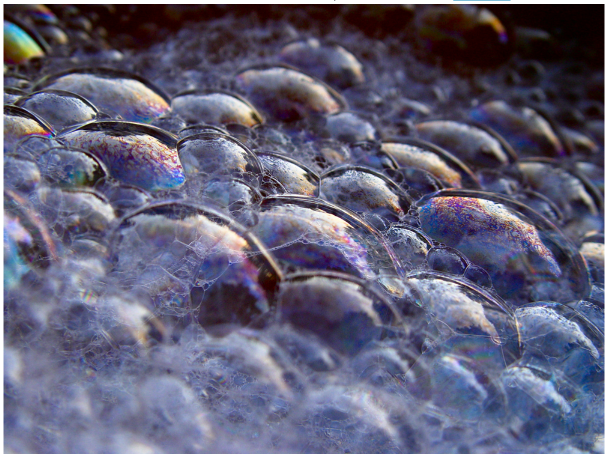
Glossary

Rayleigh criterion
: two images are just resolvable when the center of the diffraction pattern of one is directly over the first minimum of the diffraction pattern of the other

Thin Film Interference

- Discuss the rainbow formation by thin films.

The bright colors seen in an oil slick floating on water or in a sunlit soap bubble are caused by interference. The brightest colors are those that interfere constructively. This interference is between light reflected from different surfaces of a thin film; thus, the effect is known as **thin film interference**. As noticed before, interference effects are most prominent when light interacts with something having a size similar to its wavelength. A thin film is one having a thickness t smaller than a few times the wavelength of light, λ. Since color is associated indirectly with λ and since all interference depends in some way on the ratio of λ to the size of the object involved, we should expect to see different colors for different thicknesses of a film, as in [link].

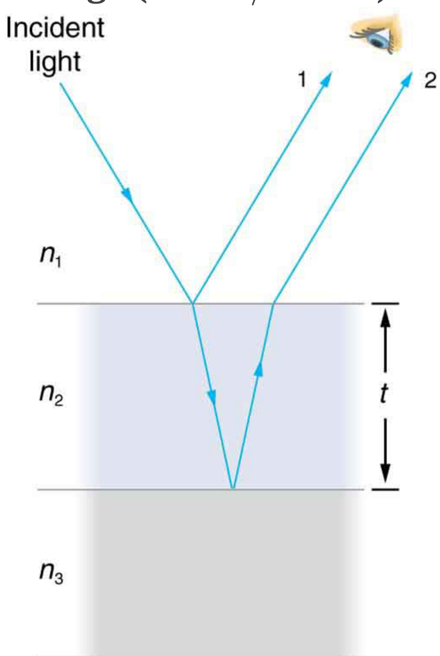


These soap bubbles exhibit brilliant colors when exposed to sunlight. (credit: Scott Robinson, Flickr)

What causes thin film interference? [link] shows how light reflected from the top and bottom surfaces of a film can interfere. Incident light is only partially reflected from the top surface of the film (ray 1). The remainder enters the film and is itself partially reflected from the bottom surface. Part

of the light reflected from the bottom surface can emerge from the top of the film (ray 2) and interfere with light reflected from the top (ray 1). Since the ray that enters the film travels a greater distance, it may be in or out of phase with the ray reflected from the top. However, consider for a moment, again, the bubbles in [link]. The bubbles are darkest where they are thinnest. Furthermore, if you observe a soap bubble carefully, you will note it gets dark at the point where it breaks. For very thin films, the difference in path lengths of ray 1 and ray 2 in [link] is negligible; so why should they interfere destructively and not constructively? The answer is that a phase change can occur upon reflection. The rule is as follows:

When light reflects from a medium having an index of refraction greater than that of the medium in which it is traveling, a 180° phase change (or a $\lambda/2$ shift) occurs.



Light striking a thin film is partially reflected (ray 1) and partially refracted at the top surface. The refracted ray is partially reflected at the bottom surface

and emerges as ray 2. These rays will interfere in a way that depends on the thickness of the film and the indices of refraction of the various media.

If the film in [link] is a soap bubble (essentially water with air on both sides), then there is a $\lambda/2$ shift for ray 1 and none for ray 2. Thus, when the film is very thin, the path length difference between the two rays is negligible, they are exactly out of phase, and destructive interference will occur at all wavelengths and so the soap bubble will be dark here.

The thickness of the film relative to the wavelength of light is the other crucial factor in thin film interference. Ray 2 in [link] travels a greater distance than ray 1. For light incident perpendicular to the surface, ray 2 travels a distance approximately $2t$ farther than ray 1. When this distance is an integral or half-integral multiple of the wavelength in the medium ($\lambda_n = \lambda/n$, where λ is the wavelength in vacuum and n is the index of refraction), constructive or destructive interference occurs, depending also on whether there is a phase change in either ray.

Example:
Calculating Non-reflective Lens Coating Using Thin Film Interference
Sophisticated cameras use a series of several lenses. Light can reflect from the surfaces of these various lenses and degrade image clarity. To limit these reflections, lenses are coated with a thin layer of magnesium fluoride that causes destructive thin film interference. What is the thinnest this film can be, if its index of refraction is 1.38 and it is designed to limit the reflection of 550-nm light, normally the most intense visible wavelength? The index of refraction of glass is 1.52.

Strategy

Refer to [link] and use $n_1 = 100$ for air, $n_2 = 1.38$, and $n_3 = 1.52$. Both ray 1 and ray 2 will have a $\lambda/2$ shift upon reflection. Thus, to obtain destructive interference, ray 2 will need to travel a half wavelength farther than ray 1. For rays incident perpendicularly, the path length difference is $2t$.

Solution

To obtain destructive interference here,

Equation:

$$2t = \frac{\lambda_{n_2}}{2},$$

where λ_{n_2} is the wavelength in the film and is given by $\lambda_{n_2} = \frac{\lambda}{n_2}$.

Thus,

Equation:

$$2t = \frac{\lambda/n_2}{2}.$$

Solving for t and entering known values yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \frac{\lambda/n_2}{4} = \frac{(550\ \text{nm})/1.38}{4} \\ &= 99.6\ \text{nm}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

Films such as the one in this example are most effective in producing destructive interference when the thinnest layer is used, since light over a broader range of incident angles will be reduced in intensity. These films are called non-reflective coatings; this is only an approximately correct description, though, since other wavelengths will only be partially cancelled. Non-reflective coatings are used in car windows and sunglasses.

Thin film interference is most constructive or most destructive when the path length difference for the two rays is an integral or half-integral wavelength, respectively. That is, for rays incident perpendicularly, $2t = \lambda_n, 2\lambda_n, 3\lambda_n, \ldots$ or $2t = \lambda_n/2, 3\lambda_n/2, 5\lambda_n/2, \ldots$. To know whether interference is constructive or destructive, you must also determine if there is a phase change upon reflection. Thin film interference thus depends on film thickness, the wavelength of light, and the refractive indices. For white light incident on a film that varies in thickness, you will observe rainbow colors of constructive interference for various wavelengths as the thickness varies.

Example:

Soap Bubbles: More Than One Thickness can be Constructive

(a) What are the three smallest thicknesses of a soap bubble that produce constructive interference for red light with a wavelength of 650 nm? The index of refraction of soap is taken to be the same as that of water. (b) What three smallest thicknesses will give destructive interference?

Strategy and Concept

Use [link] to visualize the bubble. Note that $n_1 = n_3 = 1.00$ for air, and $n_2 = 1.333$ for soap (equivalent to water). There is a $\lambda/2$ shift for ray 1 reflected from the top surface of the bubble, and no shift for ray 2 reflected from the bottom surface. To get constructive interference, then, the path length difference ($2t$) must be a half-integral multiple of the wavelength—the first three being $\lambda_n/2$, $3\lambda_n/2$, and $5\lambda_n/2$. To get destructive interference, the path length difference must be an integral multiple of the wavelength—the first three being 0, λ_n, and $2\lambda_n$.

Solution for (a)

Constructive interference occurs here when

Equation:

$$2t_{\mathrm{c}} = \frac{\lambda_n}{2}, \frac{3\lambda_n}{2}, \frac{5\lambda_n}{2}, \ldots .$$

The smallest constructive thickness t_{c} thus is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} t_{\text{c}} &= \frac{\lambda_n}{4} = \frac{\lambda/n}{4} = \frac{(650\text{ nm})/1.333}{4} \\ &= 122\text{ nm.} \end{aligned}$$

The next thickness that gives constructive interference is $t\prime_{\text{c}} = 3\lambda_n/4$, so that

Equation:

$$t\prime_{\text{c}} = 366\text{ nm.}$$

Finally, the third thickness producing constructive interference is $t\prime\prime_{\text{c}} \le 5\lambda_n/4$, so that

Equation:

$$t\prime\prime_{\text{c}} = 610\text{ nm.}$$

Solution for (b)

For *destructive interference*, the path length difference here is an integral multiple of the wavelength. The first occurs for zero thickness, since there is a phase change at the top surface. That is,

Equation:

$$t_{\text{d}} = 0.$$

The first non-zero thickness producing destructive interference is

Equation:

$$2t\prime_{\text{d}} = \lambda_n.$$

Substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} t\prime_{\text{d}} &= \frac{\lambda_n}{2} = \frac{\lambda/n}{2} = \frac{(650\text{ nm})/1.333}{2} \\ &= 244\text{ nm.} \end{aligned}$$

Finally, the third destructive thickness is $2t\prime\prime_{\text{d}} = 2\lambda_n$, so that

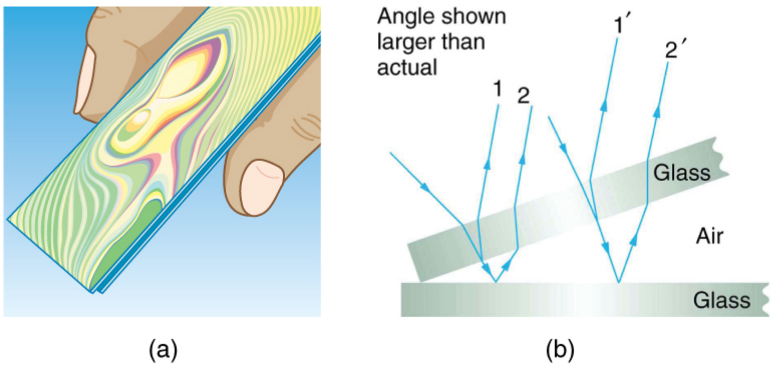
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} t''_{\mathrm{d}} &= \lambda_n = \frac{\lambda}{n} = \frac{650\ \mathrm{nm}}{1.333} \\ &= 488\ \mathrm{nm}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

If the bubble was illuminated with pure red light, we would see bright and dark bands at very uniform increases in thickness. First would be a dark band at 0 thickness, then bright at 122 nm thickness, then dark at 244 nm, bright at 366 nm, dark at 488 nm, and bright at 610 nm. If the bubble varied smoothly in thickness, like a smooth wedge, then the bands would be evenly spaced.

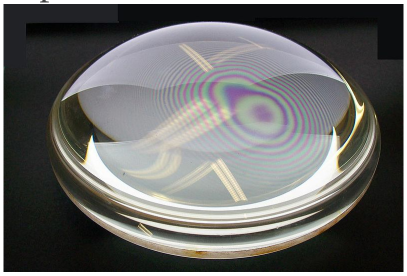
Another example of thin film interference can be seen when microscope slides are separated (see [link]). The slides are very flat, so that the wedge of air between them increases in thickness very uniformly. A phase change occurs at the second surface but not the first, and so there is a dark band where the slides touch. The rainbow colors of constructive interference repeat, going from violet to red again and again as the distance between the slides increases. As the layer of air increases, the bands become more difficult to see, because slight changes in incident angle have greater effects on path length differences. If pure-wavelength light instead of white light is used, then bright and dark bands are obtained rather than repeating rainbow colors.



(a) The rainbow color bands are produced by thin film interference in the air between the two glass slides. (b) Schematic of the

paths taken by rays in the wedge of air between the slides.

An important application of thin film interference is found in the manufacturing of optical instruments. A lens or mirror can be compared with a master as it is being ground, allowing it to be shaped to an accuracy of less than a wavelength over its entire surface. [link] illustrates the phenomenon called Newton’s rings, which occurs when the plane surfaces of two lenses are placed together. (The circular bands are called Newton’s rings because Isaac Newton described them and their use in detail. Newton did not discover them; Robert Hooke did, and Newton did not believe they were due to the wave character of light.) Each successive ring of a given color indicates an increase of only one wavelength in the distance between the lens and the blank, so that great precision can be obtained. Once the lens is perfect, there will be no rings.



“Newton's rings” interference fringes are produced when two plano-convex lenses are placed together with their plane surfaces in contact. The rings are created by interference between the light reflected off the two surfaces as a result of a slight

gap between them, indicating that these surfaces are not precisely plane but are slightly convex. (credit: Ulf Seifert, Wikimedia Commons)

The wings of certain moths and butterflies have nearly iridescent colors due to thin film interference. In addition to pigmentation, the wing's color is affected greatly by constructive interference of certain wavelengths reflected from its film-coated surface. Car manufacturers are offering special paint jobs that use thin film interference to produce colors that change with angle. This expensive option is based on variation of thin film path length differences with angle. Security features on credit cards, banknotes, driving licenses and similar items prone to forgery use thin film interference, diffraction gratings, or holograms. Australia led the way with dollar bills printed on polymer with a diffraction grating security feature making the currency difficult to forge. Other countries such as New Zealand and Taiwan are using similar technologies, while the United States currency includes a thin film interference effect.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—Thin Film Interference

One feature of thin film interference and diffraction gratings is that the pattern shifts as you change the angle at which you look or move your head. Find examples of thin film interference and gratings around you. Explain how the patterns change for each specific example. Find examples where the thickness changes giving rise to changing colors. If you can find two microscope slides, then try observing the effect shown in [link]. Try separating one end of the two slides with a hair or maybe a thin piece of paper and observe the effect.

Problem-Solving Strategies for Wave Optics

Step 1. *Examine the situation to determine that interference is involved*. Identify whether slits or thin film interference are considered in the problem.

Step 2. *If slits are involved*, note that diffraction gratings and double slits produce very similar interference patterns, but that gratings have narrower (sharper) maxima. Single slit patterns are characterized by a large central maximum and smaller maxima to the sides.

Step 3. *If thin film interference is involved, take note of the path length difference between the two rays that interfere*. Be certain to use the wavelength in the medium involved, since it differs from the wavelength in vacuum. Note also that there is an additional $\lambda/2$ phase shift when light reflects from a medium with a greater index of refraction.

Step 4. *Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns)*. A written list is useful. Draw a diagram of the situation. Labeling the diagram is useful.

Step 5. *Make a list of what is given or can be inferred from the problem as stated (identify the knowns)*.

Step 6. *Solve the appropriate equation for the quantity to be determined (the unknown), and enter the knowns*. Slits, gratings, and the Rayleigh limit involve equations.

Step 7. *For thin film interference, you will have constructive interference for a total shift that is an integral number of wavelengths. You will have destructive interference for a total shift of a half-integral number of wavelengths*. Always keep in mind that crest to crest is constructive whereas crest to trough is destructive.

Step 8. *Check to see if the answer is reasonable: Does it make sense?* Angles in interference patterns cannot be greater than 90º, for example.

Section Summary

- Thin film interference occurs between the light reflected from the top and bottom surfaces of a film. In addition to the path length difference, there can be a phase change.
- When light reflects from a medium having an index of refraction greater than that of the medium in which it is traveling, a 180° phase change (or a $\lambda/2$ shift) occurs.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What effect does increasing the wedge angle have on the spacing of interference fringes? If the wedge angle is too large, fringes are not observed. Why?

Exercise:

Problem:

How is the difference in paths taken by two originally in-phase light waves related to whether they interfere constructively or destructively? How can this be affected by reflection? By refraction?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is there a phase change in the light reflected from either surface of a contact lens floating on a person's tear layer? The index of refraction of the lens is about 1.5, and its top surface is dry.

Exercise:

Problem:

In placing a sample on a microscope slide, a glass cover is placed over a water drop on the glass slide. Light incident from above can reflect from the top and bottom of the glass cover and from the glass slide below the water drop. At which surfaces will there be a phase change in the reflected light?

Exercise:

Problem:

Answer the above question if the fluid between the two pieces of crown glass is carbon disulfide.

Exercise:

Problem:

While contemplating the food value of a slice of ham, you notice a rainbow of color reflected from its moist surface. Explain its origin.

Exercise:

Problem:

An inventor notices that a soap bubble is dark at its thinnest and realizes that destructive interference is taking place for all wavelengths. How could she use this knowledge to make a non-reflective coating for lenses that is effective at all wavelengths? That is, what limits would there be on the index of refraction and thickness of the coating? How might this be impractical?

Exercise:

Problem:

A non-reflective coating like the one described in [link] works ideally for a single wavelength and for perpendicular incidence. What happens for other wavelengths and other incident directions? Be specific.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is it much more difficult to see interference fringes for light reflected from a thick piece of glass than from a thin film? Would it be easier if monochromatic light were used?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A soap bubble is 100 nm thick and illuminated by white light incident perpendicular to its surface. What wavelength and color of visible light is most constructively reflected, assuming the same index of refraction as water?

Solution:

532 nm (green)

Exercise:

Problem:

An oil slick on water is 120 nm thick and illuminated by white light incident perpendicular to its surface. What color does the oil appear (what is the most constructively reflected wavelength), given its index of refraction is 1.40?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the minimum thickness of an oil slick on water that appears blue when illuminated by white light perpendicular to its surface. Take the blue wavelength to be 470 nm and the index of refraction of oil to be 1.40.

Solution:

83.9 nm

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the minimum thickness of a soap bubble that appears red when illuminated by white light perpendicular to its surface. Take the wavelength to be 680 nm, and assume the same index of refraction as water.

Exercise:

Problem:

A film of soapy water ($n = 1.33$) on top of a plastic cutting board has a thickness of 233 nm. What color is most strongly reflected if it is illuminated perpendicular to its surface?

Solution:

620 nm (orange)

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the three smallest non-zero thicknesses of soapy water ($n = 1.33$) on Plexiglas if it appears green (constructively reflecting 520-nm light) when illuminated perpendicularly by white light? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in Problem Solving Strategies for Wave Optics.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a lens system that is to be used primarily for 700-nm red light. What is the second thinnest coating of fluorite (magnesium fluoride) that would be non-reflective for this wavelength?

Solution:

380 nm

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) As a soap bubble thins it becomes dark, because the path length difference becomes small compared with the wavelength of light and there is a phase shift at the top surface. If it becomes dark when the path length difference is less than one-fourth the wavelength, what is the thickest the bubble can be and appear dark at all visible wavelengths? Assume the same index of refraction as water. (b) Discuss the fragility of the film considering the thickness found.

Exercise:

Problem:

A film of oil on water will appear dark when it is very thin, because the path length difference becomes small compared with the wavelength of light and there is a phase shift at the top surface. If it becomes dark when the path length difference is less than one-fourth the wavelength, what is the thickest the oil can be and appear dark at all visible wavelengths? Oil has an index of refraction of 1.40.

Solution:

33.9 nm

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows two glass slides illuminated by pure-wavelength light incident perpendicularly. The top slide touches the bottom slide at one end and rests on a 0.100-mm-diameter hair at the other end, forming a wedge of air. (a) How far apart are the dark bands, if the slides are 7.50 cm long and 589-nm light is used? (b) Is there any difference if the slides are made from crown or flint glass? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows two 7.50-cm-long glass slides illuminated by pure 589-nm wavelength light incident perpendicularly. The top slide touches the bottom slide at one end and rests on some debris at the other end, forming a wedge of air. How thick is the debris, if the dark bands are 1.00 mm apart?

Solution:

4.42×10^{-5} m

Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link], but take the light to be incident at a 45^{o} angle.

Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link], but take the light to be incident at a 45^{o} angle.

Solution:

The oil film will appear black, since the reflected light is not in the visible part of the spectrum.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

To save money on making military aircraft invisible to radar, an inventor decides to coat them with a non-reflective material having an index of refraction of 1.20, which is between that of air and the surface of the plane. This, he reasons, should be much cheaper than designing Stealth bombers. (a) What thickness should the coating be to inhibit the reflection of 4.00-cm wavelength radar? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Glossary

thin film interference
: interference between light reflected from different surfaces of a thin film

Polarization

- Discuss the meaning of polarization.
- Discuss the property of optical activity of certain materials.

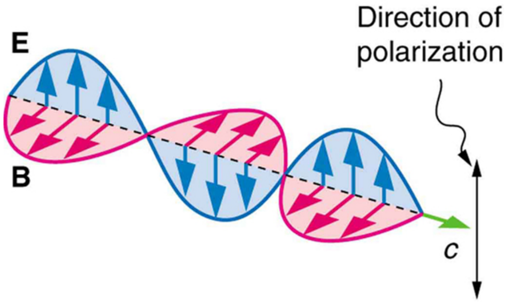
Polaroid sunglasses are familiar to most of us. They have a special ability to cut the glare of light reflected from water or glass (see [link]). Polaroids have this ability because of a wave characteristic of light called polarization. What is polarization? How is it produced? What are some of its uses? The answers to these questions are related to the wave character of light.

(a) (b)

These two photographs of a river show the effect of a polarizing filter in reducing glare in light reflected from the surface of water. Part (b) of this figure was taken with a polarizing filter and part (a) was not. As a result, the reflection of clouds and sky observed in part (a) is not observed in part (b). Polarizing sunglasses are particularly useful on snow and water. (credit: Amithshs, Wikimedia Commons)

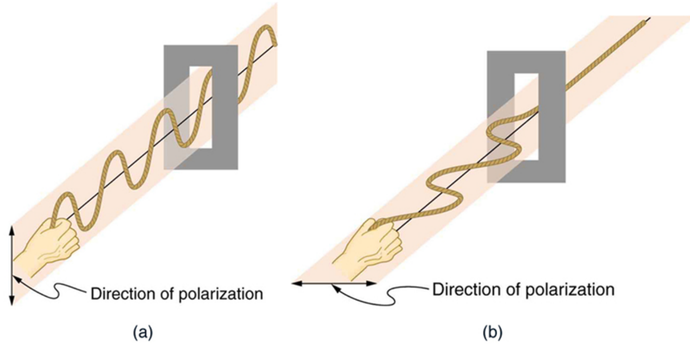
Light is one type of electromagnetic (EM) wave. As noted earlier, EM waves are *transverse waves* consisting of varying electric and magnetic fields that oscillate perpendicular to the direction of propagation (see [link]). There are specific directions for the oscillations of the electric and magnetic fields. **Polarization** is the attribute that a wave's oscillations have

a definite direction relative to the direction of propagation of the wave. (This is not the same type of polarization as that discussed for the separation of charges.) Waves having such a direction are said to be **polarized**. For an EM wave, we define the **direction of polarization** to be the direction parallel to the electric field. Thus we can think of the electric field arrows as showing the direction of polarization, as in [link].



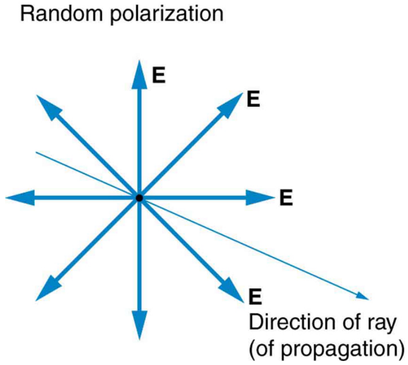
An EM wave, such as light, is a transverse wave. The electric and magnetic fields are perpendicular to the direction of propagation.

To examine this further, consider the transverse waves in the ropes shown in [link]. The oscillations in one rope are in a vertical plane and are said to be **vertically polarized**. Those in the other rope are in a horizontal plane and are **horizontally polarized**. If a vertical slit is placed on the first rope, the waves pass through. However, a vertical slit blocks the horizontally polarized waves. For EM waves, the direction of the electric field is analogous to the disturbances on the ropes.

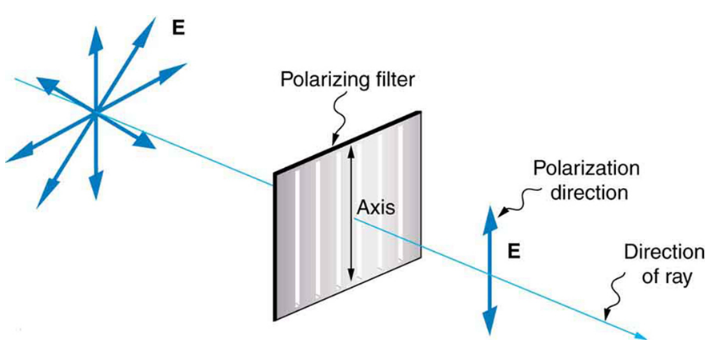


The transverse oscillations in one rope are in a vertical plane, and those in the other rope are in a horizontal plane. The first is said to be vertically polarized, and the other is said to be horizontally polarized. Vertical slits pass vertically polarized waves and block horizontally polarized waves.

The Sun and many other light sources produce waves that are randomly polarized (see [link]). Such light is said to be **unpolarized** because it is composed of many waves with all possible directions of polarization. Polaroid materials, invented by the founder of Polaroid Corporation, Edwin Land, act as a *polarizing* slit for light, allowing only polarization in one direction to pass through. Polarizing filters are composed of long molecules aligned in one direction. Thinking of the molecules as many slits, analogous to those for the oscillating ropes, we can understand why only light with a specific polarization can get through. The **axis of a polarizing filter** is the direction along which the filter passes the electric field of an EM wave (see [link]).



The slender arrow represents a ray of unpolarized light. The bold arrows represent the direction of polarization of the individual waves composing the ray. Since the light is unpolarized, the arrows point in all directions.



A polarizing filter has a polarization axis that acts as a slit passing through electric fields parallel to its direction. The direction of polarization of an EM

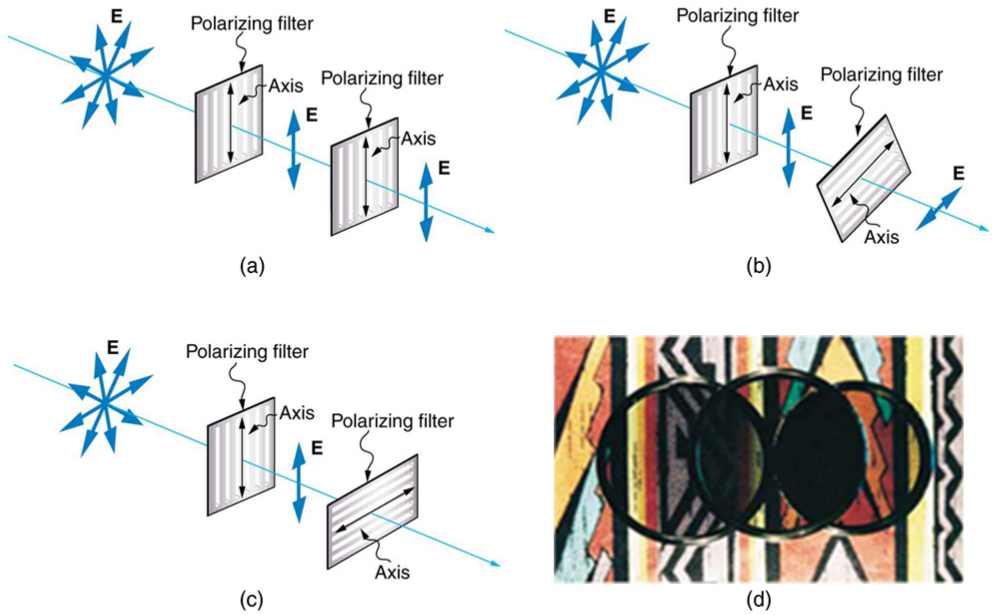
wave is defined to be the direction of
its electric field.

[link] shows the effect of two polarizing filters on originally unpolarized light. The first filter polarizes the light along its axis. When the axes of the first and second filters are aligned (parallel), then all of the polarized light passed by the first filter is also passed by the second. If the second polarizing filter is rotated, only the component of the light parallel to the second filter's axis is passed. When the axes are perpendicular, no light is passed by the second.

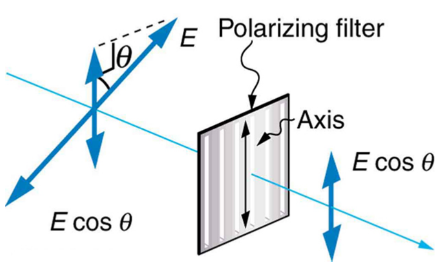
Only the component of the EM wave parallel to the axis of a filter is passed. Let us call the angle between the direction of polarization and the axis of a filter θ. If the electric field has an amplitude E, then the transmitted part of the wave has an amplitude $E \cos \theta$ (see [link]). Since the intensity of a wave is proportional to its amplitude squared, the intensity I of the transmitted wave is related to the incident wave by
Equation:

$$I = I_0 \cos^2 \theta,$$

where I_0 is the intensity of the polarized wave before passing through the filter. (The above equation is known as Malus's law.)



The effect of rotating two polarizing filters, where the first polarizes the light. (a) All of the polarized light is passed by the second polarizing filter, because its axis is parallel to the first. (b) As the second is rotated, only part of the light is passed. (c) When the second is perpendicular to the first, no light is passed. (d) In this photograph, a polarizing filter is placed above two others. Its axis is perpendicular to the filter on the right (dark area) and parallel to the filter on the left (lighter area). (credit: P.P. Urone)



A polarizing filter transmits only the component of the wave parallel to its

axis, $E \cos \theta$, reducing the intensity of any light not polarized parallel to its axis.

Example:

Calculating Intensity Reduction by a Polarizing Filter

What angle is needed between the direction of polarized light and the axis of a polarizing filter to reduce its intensity by 90.0%?

Strategy

When the intensity is reduced by 90.0%, it is 10.0% or 0.100 times its original value. That is, $I = 0.100 I_0$. Using this information, the equation $I = I_0 \cos^2 \theta$ can be used to solve for the needed angle.

Solution

Solving the equation $I = I_0 \cos^2 \theta$ for $\cos \theta$ and substituting with the relationship between I and I_0 gives

Equation:

$$\cos \theta = \sqrt{\frac{I}{I_0}} = \sqrt{\frac{0.100 I_0}{I_0}} = 0.3162.$$

Solving for θ yields

Equation:

$$\theta = \cos^{-1} 0.3162 = 71.6^{\circ}.$$

Discussion

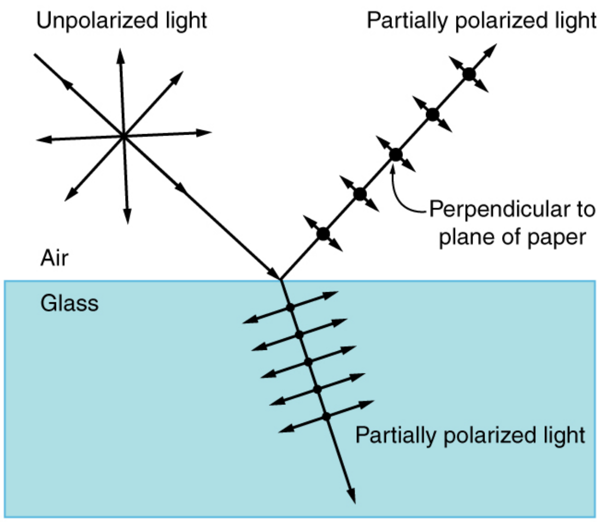
A fairly large angle between the direction of polarization and the filter axis is needed to reduce the intensity to 10.0% of its original value. This seems reasonable based on experimenting with polarizing films. It is interesting that, at an angle of 45°, the intensity is reduced to 50% of its original value (as you will show in this section's Problems & Exercises). Note that 71.6°

is 18.4º from reducing the intensity to zero, and that at an angle of 18.4º the intensity is reduced to 90.0% of its original value (as you will also show in Problems & Exercises), giving evidence of symmetry.

Polarization by Reflection

By now you can probably guess that Polaroid sunglasses cut the glare in reflected light because that light is polarized. You can check this for yourself by holding Polaroid sunglasses in front of you and rotating them while looking at light reflected from water or glass. As you rotate the sunglasses, you will notice the light gets bright and dim, but not completely black. This implies the reflected light is partially polarized and cannot be completely blocked by a polarizing filter.

[link] illustrates what happens when unpolarized light is reflected from a surface. Vertically polarized light is preferentially refracted at the surface, so that *the reflected light is left more horizontally polarized*. The reasons for this phenomenon are beyond the scope of this text, but a convenient mnemonic for remembering this is to imagine the polarization direction to be like an arrow. Vertical polarization would be like an arrow perpendicular to the surface and would be more likely to stick and not be reflected. Horizontal polarization is like an arrow bouncing on its side and would be more likely to be reflected. Sunglasses with vertical axes would then block more reflected light than unpolarized light from other sources.



Polarization by reflection. Unpolarized light has equal amounts of vertical and horizontal polarization. After interaction with a surface, the vertical components are preferentially absorbed or refracted, leaving the reflected light more horizontally polarized. This is akin to arrows striking on their sides bouncing off, whereas arrows striking on their tips go into the surface.

Since the part of the light that is not reflected is refracted, the amount of polarization depends on the indices of refraction of the media involved. It can be shown that **reflected light is completely polarized** at a angle of reflection θ_{b}, given by

Equation:

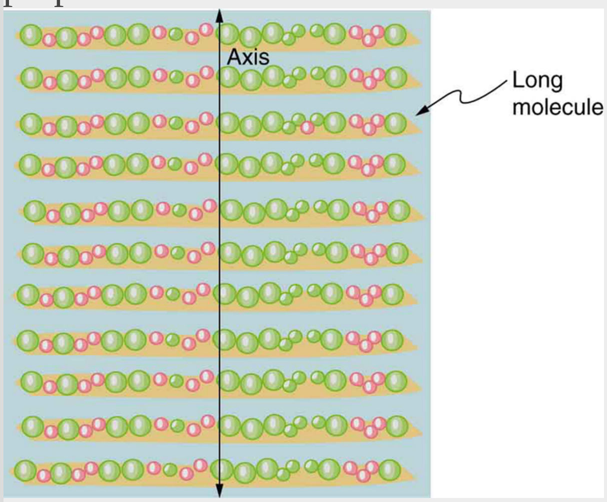
$$\tan \theta_{\mathrm{b}} = \frac{n_2}{n_1},$$

where n_1 is the medium in which the incident and reflected light travel and n_2 is the index of refraction of the medium that forms the interface that reflects the light. This equation is known as **Brewster's law**, and θ_b is known as **Brewster's angle**, named after the 19th-century Scottish physicist who discovered them.

Note:

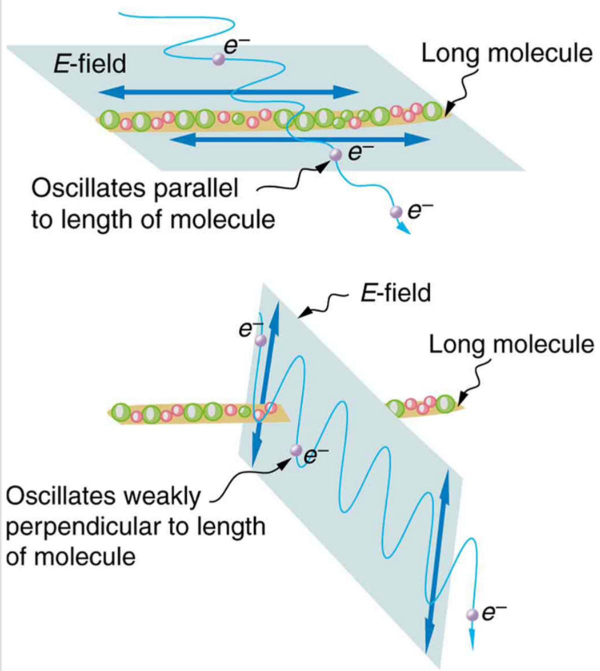
Things Great and Small: Atomic Explanation of Polarizing Filters

Polarizing filters have a polarization axis that acts as a slit. This slit passes electromagnetic waves (often visible light) that have an electric field parallel to the axis. This is accomplished with long molecules aligned perpendicular to the axis as shown in [link].



Long molecules are aligned perpendicular to the axis of a polarizing filter. The component of the electric field in an EM wave perpendicular to these molecules passes through the filter, while the component parallel to the molecules is absorbed.

[link] illustrates how the component of the electric field parallel to the long molecules is absorbed. An electromagnetic wave is composed of oscillating electric and magnetic fields. The electric field is strong compared with the magnetic field and is more effective in exerting force on charges in the molecules. The most affected charged particles are the electrons in the molecules, since electron masses are small. If the electron is forced to oscillate, it can absorb energy from the EM wave. This reduces the fields in the wave and, hence, reduces its intensity. In long molecules, electrons can more easily oscillate parallel to the molecule than in the perpendicular direction. The electrons are bound to the molecule and are more restricted in their movement perpendicular to the molecule. Thus, the electrons can absorb EM waves that have a component of their electric field parallel to the molecule. The electrons are much less responsive to electric fields perpendicular to the molecule and will allow those fields to pass. Thus the axis of the polarizing filter is perpendicular to the length of the molecule.



Artist’s conception of an electron in a long molecule oscillating parallel to the molecule. The oscillation of the electron absorbs energy and

reduces the intensity of the component of the EM wave that is parallel to the molecule.

Example:
Calculating Polarization by Reflection
(a) At what angle will light traveling in air be completely polarized horizontally when reflected from water? (b) From glass?
Strategy
All we need to solve these problems are the indices of refraction. Air has $n_1 = 1.00$, water has $n_2 = 1.333$, and crown glass has $n\prime_2 = 1.520$. The equation $\tan\theta_\text{b} = \frac{n_2}{n_1}$ can be directly applied to find θ_b in each case.
Solution for (a)
Putting the known quantities into the equation
Equation:

$$\tan\theta_\text{b} = \frac{n_2}{n_1}$$

gives
Equation:

$$\tan\theta_\text{b} = \frac{n_2}{n_1} = \frac{1.333}{1.00} = 1.333.$$

Solving for the angle θ_b yields
Equation:

$$\theta_\text{b} = \tan^{-1} 1.333 = 53.1^\text{o}.$$

Solution for (b)
Similarly, for crown glass and air,
Equation:

$$\tan \theta\prime_b = \frac{n\prime_2}{n_1} = \frac{1.520}{1.00} = 1.52.$$

Thus,

Equation:

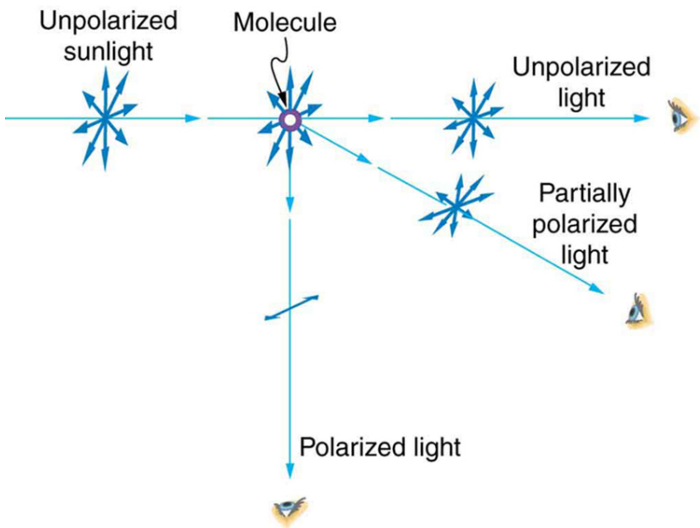
$$\theta\prime_b = \tan^{-1} 1.52 = 56.7^o.$$

Discussion

Light reflected at these angles could be completely blocked by a good polarizing filter held with its *axis vertical*. Brewster’s angle for water and air are similar to those for glass and air, so that sunglasses are equally effective for light reflected from either water or glass under similar circumstances. Light not reflected is refracted into these media. So at an incident angle equal to Brewster’s angle, the refracted light will be slightly polarized vertically. It will not be completely polarized vertically, because only a small fraction of the incident light is reflected, and so a significant amount of horizontally polarized light is refracted.

Polarization by Scattering

If you hold your Polaroid sunglasses in front of you and rotate them while looking at blue sky, you will see the sky get bright and dim. This is a clear indication that light scattered by air is partially polarized. [link] helps illustrate how this happens. Since light is a transverse EM wave, it vibrates the electrons of air molecules perpendicular to the direction it is traveling. The electrons then radiate like small antennae. Since they are oscillating perpendicular to the direction of the light ray, they produce EM radiation that is polarized perpendicular to the direction of the ray. When viewing the light along a line perpendicular to the original ray, as in [link], there can be no polarization in the scattered light parallel to the original ray, because that would require the original ray to be a longitudinal wave. Along other directions, a component of the other polarization can be projected along the line of sight, and the scattered light will only be partially polarized. Furthermore, multiple scattering can bring light to your eyes from other directions and can contain different polarizations.



Polarization by scattering. Unpolarized light scattering from air molecules shakes their electrons perpendicular to the direction of the original ray. The scattered light therefore has a polarization perpendicular to the original direction and none parallel to the original direction.

Photographs of the sky can be darkened by polarizing filters, a trick used by many photographers to make clouds brighter by contrast. Scattering from other particles, such as smoke or dust, can also polarize light. Detecting polarization in scattered EM waves can be a useful analytical tool in determining the scattering source.

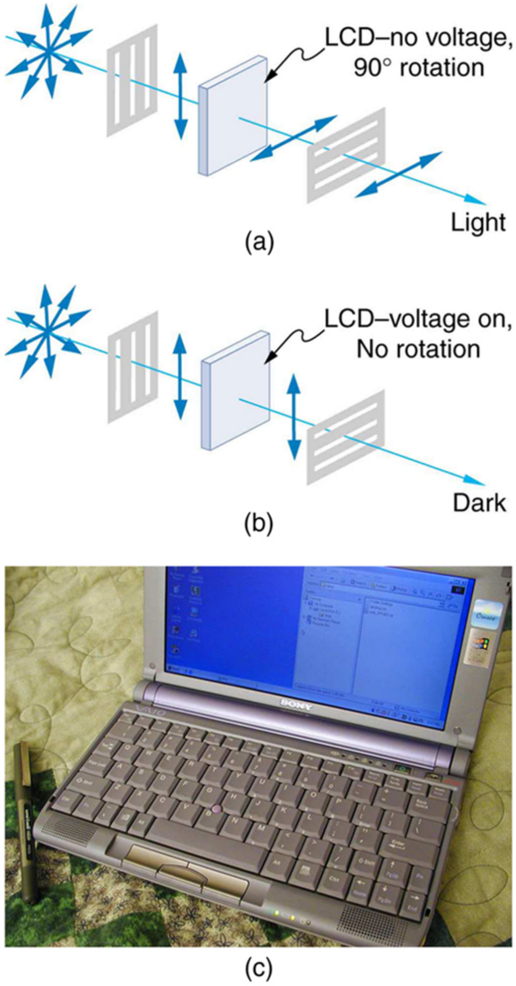
There is a range of optical effects used in sunglasses. Besides being Polaroid, other sunglasses have colored pigments embedded in them, while others use non-reflective or even reflective coatings. A recent development is photochromic lenses, which darken in the sunlight and become clear indoors. Photochromic lenses are embedded with organic microcrystalline molecules that change their properties when exposed to UV in sunlight, but become clear in artificial lighting with no UV.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Polarization
Find Polaroid sunglasses and rotate one while holding the other still and look at different surfaces and objects. Explain your observations. What is the difference in angle from when you see a maximum intensity to when you see a minimum intensity? Find a reflective glass surface and do the same. At what angle does the glass need to be oriented to give minimum glare?

Liquid Crystals and Other Polarization Effects in Materials

While you are undoubtedly aware of liquid crystal displays (LCDs) found in watches, calculators, computer screens, cellphones, flat screen televisions, and other myriad places, you may not be aware that they are based on polarization. Liquid crystals are so named because their molecules can be aligned even though they are in a liquid. Liquid crystals have the property that they can rotate the polarization of light passing through them by 90°. Furthermore, this property can be turned off by the application of a voltage, as illustrated in [link]. It is possible to manipulate this characteristic quickly and in small well-defined regions to create the contrast patterns we see in so many LCD devices.

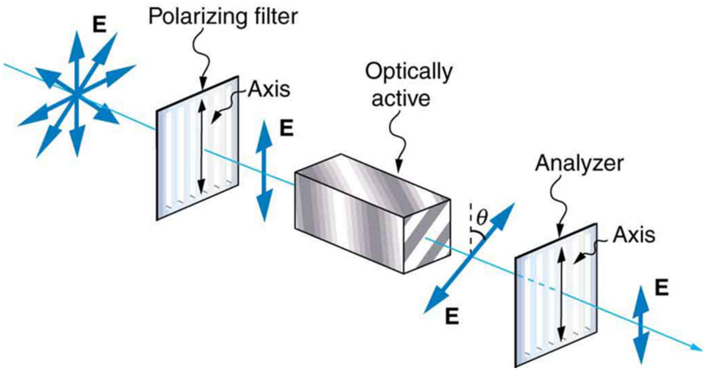
In flat screen LCD televisions, there is a large light at the back of the TV. The light travels to the front screen through millions of tiny units called pixels (picture elements). One of these is shown in [link] (a) and (b). Each unit has three cells, with red, blue, or green filters, each controlled independently. When the voltage across a liquid crystal is switched off, the liquid crystal passes the light through the particular filter. One can vary the picture contrast by varying the strength of the voltage applied to the liquid crystal.



(a) Polarized light is rotated 90º by a liquid crystal and then passed by a polarizing filter that has its axis perpendicular to the original polarization direction. (b) When a voltage is applied to the liquid crystal, the polarized light is not rotated and is blocked by the filter, making the region dark in comparison with its surroundings. (c) LCDs

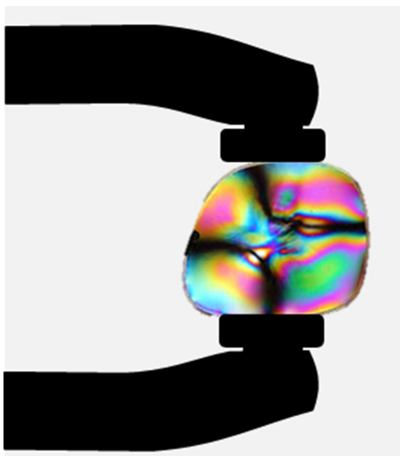
can be made color specific, small, and fast enough to use in laptop computers and TVs. (credit: Jon Sullivan)

Many crystals and solutions rotate the plane of polarization of light passing through them. Such substances are said to be **optically active**. Examples include sugar water, insulin, and collagen (see [link]). In addition to depending on the type of substance, the amount and direction of rotation depends on a number of factors. Among these is the concentration of the substance, the distance the light travels through it, and the wavelength of light. Optical activity is due to the asymmetric shape of molecules in the substance, such as being helical. Measurements of the rotation of polarized light passing through substances can thus be used to measure concentrations, a standard technique for sugars. It can also give information on the shapes of molecules, such as proteins, and factors that affect their shapes, such as temperature and pH.



Optical activity is the ability of some substances to rotate the plane of polarization of light passing through them. The rotation is detected with a polarizing filter or analyzer.

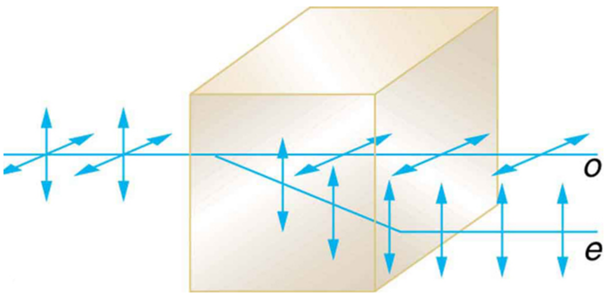
Glass and plastic become optically active when stressed; the greater the stress, the greater the effect. Optical stress analysis on complicated shapes can be performed by making plastic models of them and observing them through crossed filters, as seen in [link]. It is apparent that the effect depends on wavelength as well as stress. The wavelength dependence is sometimes also used for artistic purposes.



Optical stress analysis of a plastic lens placed between crossed polarizers. (credit: Infopro, Wikimedia Commons)

Another interesting phenomenon associated with polarized light is the ability of some crystals to split an unpolarized beam of light into two. Such crystals are said to be **birefringent** (see [link]). Each of the separated rays has a specific polarization. One behaves normally and is called the ordinary ray, whereas the other does not obey Snell’s law and is called the

extraordinary ray. Birefringent crystals can be used to produce polarized beams from unpolarized light. Some birefringent materials preferentially absorb one of the polarizations. These materials are called dichroic and can produce polarization by this preferential absorption. This is fundamentally how polarizing filters and other polarizers work. The interested reader is invited to further pursue the numerous properties of materials related to polarization.



Birefringent materials, such as the common mineral calcite, split unpolarized beams of light into two. The ordinary ray behaves as expected, but the extraordinary ray does not obey Snell’s law.

Section Summary

- Polarization is the attribute that wave oscillations have a definite direction relative to the direction of propagation of the wave.
- EM waves are transverse waves that may be polarized.
- The direction of polarization is defined to be the direction parallel to the electric field of the EM wave.
- Unpolarized light is composed of many rays having random polarization directions.

- Light can be polarized by passing it through a polarizing filter or other polarizing material. The intensity I of polarized light after passing through a polarizing filter is $I=I_0 \cos^2 \theta$, where I_0 is the original intensity and θ is the angle between the direction of polarization and the axis of the filter.
- Polarization is also produced by reflection.
- Brewster's law states that reflected light will be completely polarized at the angle of reflection θ_{b}, known as Brewster's angle, given by a statement known as Brewster's law: $\tan \theta_{\mathrm{b}} = \frac{n_2}{n_1}$, where n_1 is the medium in which the incident and reflected light travel and n_2 is the index of refraction of the medium that forms the interface that reflects the light.
- Polarization can also be produced by scattering.
- There are a number of types of optically active substances that rotate the direction of polarization of light passing through them.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Under what circumstances is the phase of light changed by reflection? Is the phase related to polarization?

Exercise:

Problem: Can a sound wave in air be polarized? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

No light passes through two perfect polarizing filters with perpendicular axes. However, if a third polarizing filter is placed between the original two, some light can pass. Why is this? Under what circumstances does most of the light pass?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain what happens to the energy carried by light that it is dimmed by passing it through two crossed polarizing filters.

Exercise:

Problem:

When particles scattering light are much smaller than its wavelength, the amount of scattering is proportional to $1/\lambda^4$. Does this mean there is more scattering for small λ than large λ? How does this relate to the fact that the sky is blue?

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the information given in the preceding question, explain why sunsets are red.

Exercise:

Problem:

When light is reflected at Brewster's angle from a smooth surface, it is 100% polarized parallel to the surface. Part of the light will be refracted into the surface. Describe how you would do an experiment to determine the polarization of the refracted light. What direction would you expect the polarization to have and would you expect it to be 100%?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What angle is needed between the direction of polarized light and the axis of a polarizing filter to cut its intensity in half?

Solution:

45.0°

Exercise:

Problem:

The angle between the axes of two polarizing filters is 45.0°. By how much does the second filter reduce the intensity of the light coming through the first?

Exercise:

Problem:

If you have completely polarized light of intensity $150\ \text{W/m}^2$, what will its intensity be after passing through a polarizing filter with its axis at an 89.0° angle to the light's polarization direction?

Solution:

$45.7\ \text{mW/m}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

What angle would the axis of a polarizing filter need to make with the direction of polarized light of intensity $1.00\ \text{kW/m}^2$ to reduce the intensity to $10.0\ \text{W/m}^2$?

Exercise:

Problem:

At the end of [link], it was stated that the intensity of polarized light is reduced to 90.0% of its original value by passing through a polarizing filter with its axis at an angle of 18.4° to the direction of polarization. Verify this statement.

Solution:

90.0%

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that if you have three polarizing filters, with the second at an angle of 45° to the first and the third at an angle of 90.0° to the first, the intensity of light passed by the first will be reduced to 25.0% of its value. (This is in contrast to having only the first and third, which reduces the intensity to zero, so that placing the second between them increases the intensity of the transmitted light.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Prove that, if I is the intensity of light transmitted by two polarizing filters with axes at an angle θ and $I\prime$ is the intensity when the axes are at an angle $90.0^{\circ} - \theta$, then $I + I\prime = I_0$, the original intensity. (Hint: Use the trigonometric identities $\cos\left(90.0^{\circ} - \theta\right) = \sin\theta$ and $\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = 1$.)

Solution:

I_0

Exercise:

Problem:

At what angle will light reflected from diamond be completely polarized?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is Brewster's angle for light traveling in water that is reflected from crown glass?

Solution:

48.8^{o}

Exercise:

Problem:

A scuba diver sees light reflected from the water’s surface. At what angle will this light be completely polarized?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what angle is light inside crown glass completely polarized when reflected from water, as in a fish tank?

Solution:

41.2^{o}

Exercise:

Problem:

Light reflected at 55.6^{o} from a window is completely polarized. What is the window’s index of refraction and the likely substance of which it is made?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Light reflected at 62.5^{o} from a gemstone in a ring is completely polarized. Can the gem be a diamond? (b) At what angle would the light be completely polarized if the gem was in water?

Solution:

(a) 1.92, not diamond (Zircon)

(b) 55.2^{o}

Exercise:

Problem:

If θ_{b} is Brewster's angle for light reflected from the top of an interface between two substances, and $\theta\prime_{\text{b}}$ is Brewster's angle for light reflected from below, prove that $\theta_{\text{b}} + \theta\prime_{\text{b}} = 90.0^{\text{o}}$.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

If a polarizing filter reduces the intensity of polarized light to 50.0% of its original value, by how much are the electric and magnetic fields reduced?

Solution:

$B_2 = 0.707\ B_1$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Suppose you put on two pairs of Polaroid sunglasses with their axes at an angle of 15.0^{o}. How much longer will it take the light to deposit a given amount of energy in your eye compared with a single pair of sunglasses? Assume the lenses are clear except for their polarizing characteristics.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) On a day when the intensity of sunlight is $1.00\ \text{kW/m}^2$, a circular lens 0.200 m in diameter focuses light onto water in a black beaker. Two polarizing sheets of plastic are placed in front of the lens with their axes at an angle of 20.0^{o}. Assuming the sunlight is unpolarized and the polarizers are 100% efficient, what is the initial rate of heating of the water in $^{\text{o}}\text{C/s}$, assuming it is 80.0% absorbed? The aluminum

beaker has a mass of 30.0 grams and contains 250 grams of water. (b) Do the polarizing filters get hot? Explain.

Solution:

(a) 2.07×10^{-2} °C/s

(b) Yes, the polarizing filters get hot because they absorb some of the lost energy from the sunlight.

Glossary

axis of a polarizing filter
: the direction along which the filter passes the electric field of an EM wave

birefringent
: crystals that split an unpolarized beam of light into two beams

Brewster's angle
: $\theta_\mathrm{b} = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{n_2}{n_1}\right)$, where n_2 is the index of refraction of the medium from which the light is reflected and n_1 is the index of refraction of the medium in which the reflected light travels

Brewster's law
: $\tan \theta_\mathrm{b} = \frac{n_2}{n_1}$, where n_1 is the medium in which the incident and reflected light travel and n_2 is the index of refraction of the medium that forms the interface that reflects the light

direction of polarization
: the direction parallel to the electric field for EM waves

horizontally polarized
: the oscillations are in a horizontal plane

optically active

substances that rotate the plane of polarization of light passing through them

polarization
: the attribute that wave oscillations have a definite direction relative to the direction of propagation of the wave

polarized
: waves having the electric and magnetic field oscillations in a definite direction

reflected light that is completely polarized
: light reflected at the angle of reflection θ_b, known as Brewster's angle

unpolarized
: waves that are randomly polarized

vertically polarized
: the oscillations are in a vertical plane

Extended Topic Microscopy Enhanced by the Wave Characteristics of Light

- Discuss the different types of microscopes.

Physics research underpins the advancement of developments in microscopy. As we gain knowledge of the wave nature of electromagnetic waves and methods to analyze and interpret signals, new microscopes that enable us to “see” more are being developed. It is the evolution and newer generation of microscopes that are described in this section.

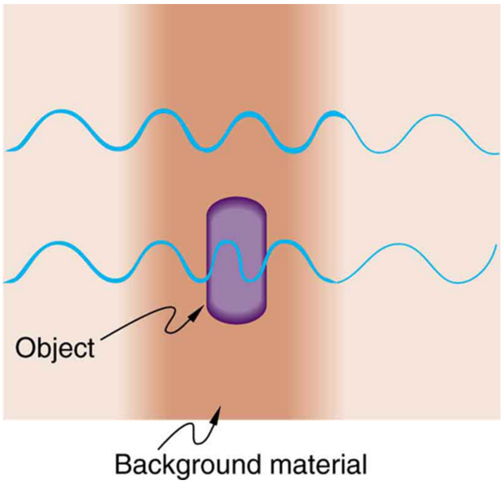
The use of microscopes (microscopy) to observe small details is limited by the wave nature of light. Owing to the fact that light diffracts significantly around small objects, it becomes impossible to observe details significantly smaller than the wavelength of light. One rule of thumb has it that all details smaller than about λ are difficult to observe. Radar, for example, can detect the size of an aircraft, but not its individual rivets, since the wavelength of most radar is several centimeters or greater. Similarly, visible light cannot detect individual atoms, since atoms are about 0.1 nm in size and visible wavelengths range from 380 to 760 nm. Ironically, special techniques used to obtain the best possible resolution with microscopes take advantage of the same wave characteristics of light that ultimately limit the detail.

Note:
Making Connections: Waves
All attempts to observe the size and shape of objects are limited by the wavelength of the probe. Sonar and medical ultrasound are limited by the wavelength of sound they employ. We shall see that this is also true in electron microscopy, since electrons have a wavelength. Heisenberg’s uncertainty principle asserts that this limit is fundamental and inescapable, as we shall see in quantum mechanics.

The most obvious method of obtaining better detail is to utilize shorter wavelengths. **Ultraviolet (UV) microscopes** have been constructed with

special lenses that transmit UV rays and utilize photographic or electronic techniques to record images. The shorter UV wavelengths allow somewhat greater detail to be observed, but drawbacks, such as the hazard of UV to living tissue and the need for special detection devices and lenses (which tend to be dispersive in the UV), severely limit the use of UV microscopes. Elsewhere, we will explore practical uses of very short wavelength EM waves, such as x rays, and other short-wavelength probes, such as electrons in electron microscopes, to detect small details.

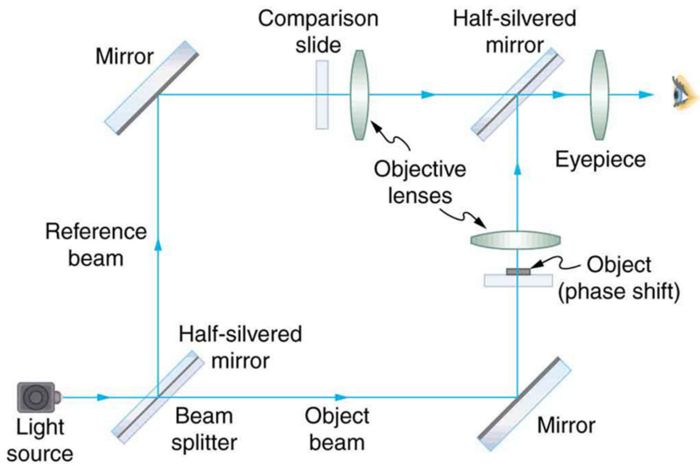
Another difficulty in microscopy is the fact that many microscopic objects do not absorb much of the light passing through them. The lack of contrast makes image interpretation very difficult. **Contrast** is the difference in intensity between objects and the background on which they are observed. Stains (such as dyes, fluorophores, etc.) are commonly employed to enhance contrast, but these tend to be application specific. More general wave interference techniques can be used to produce contrast. [link] shows the passage of light through a sample. Since the indices of refraction differ, the number of wavelengths in the paths differs. Light emerging from the object is thus out of phase with light from the background and will interfere differently, producing enhanced contrast, especially if the light is coherent and monochromatic—as in laser light.



Light rays passing through a sample under a microscope will emerge with different phases depending on their paths.

The object shown has a greater index of refraction than the background, and so the wavelength decreases as the ray passes through it. Superimposing these rays produces interference that varies with path, enhancing contrast between the object and background.

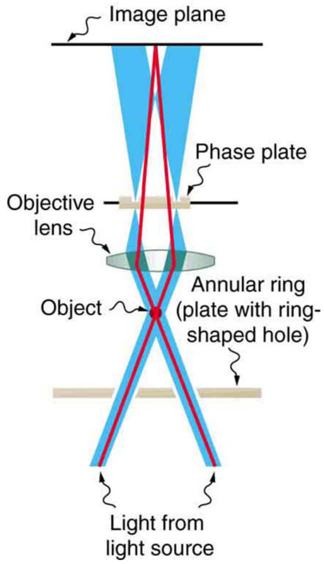
Interference microscopes enhance contrast between objects and background by superimposing a reference beam of light upon the light emerging from the sample. Since light from the background and objects differ in phase, there will be different amounts of constructive and destructive interference, producing the desired contrast in final intensity. [link] shows schematically how this is done. Parallel rays of light from a source are split into two beams by a half-silvered mirror. These beams are called the object and reference beams. Each beam passes through identical optical elements, except that the object beam passes through the object we wish to observe microscopically. The light beams are recombined by another half-silvered mirror and interfere. Since the light rays passing through different parts of the object have different phases, interference will be significantly different and, hence, have greater contrast between them.



An interference microscope utilizes interference between the reference and object beam to enhance contrast. The two beams are split by a half-silvered mirror; the object beam is sent through the object, and the reference beam is sent through otherwise identical optical elements. The beams are recombined by another half-silvered mirror, and the interference depends on the various phases emerging from different parts of the object, enhancing contrast.

Another type of microscope utilizing wave interference and differences in phases to enhance contrast is called the **phase-contrast microscope**. While its principle is the same as the interference microscope, the phase-contrast microscope is simpler to use and construct. Its impact (and the principle upon which it is based) was so important that its developer, the Dutch physicist Frits Zernike (1888–1966), was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1953. [link] shows the basic construction of a phase-contrast microscope. Phase differences between light passing through the object and background are produced by passing the rays through different parts of a phase plate (so called because it shifts the phase of the light passing through it). These two

light rays are superimposed in the image plane, producing contrast due to their interference.



Simplified construction of a phase-contrast microscope. Phase differences between light passing through the object and background are produced by passing the rays through different parts of a phase plate. The light rays are superimposed in the image plane,

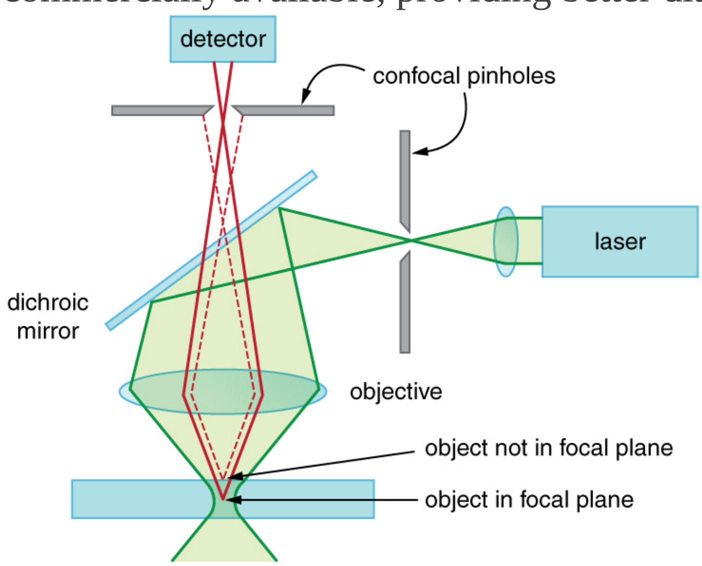
producing contrast due to their interference.

A **polarization microscope** also enhances contrast by utilizing a wave characteristic of light. Polarization microscopes are useful for objects that are optically active or birefringent, particularly if those characteristics vary from place to place in the object. Polarized light is sent through the object and then observed through a polarizing filter that is perpendicular to the original polarization direction. Nearly transparent objects can then appear with strong color and in high contrast. Many polarization effects are wavelength dependent, producing color in the processed image. Contrast results from the action of the polarizing filter in passing only components parallel to its axis.

Apart from the UV microscope, the variations of microscopy discussed so far in this section are available as attachments to fairly standard microscopes or as slight variations. The next level of sophistication is provided by commercial **confocal microscopes**, which use the extended focal region shown in [link](b) to obtain three-dimensional images rather than two-dimensional images. Here, only a single plane or region of focus is identified; out-of-focus regions above and below this plane are subtracted out by a computer so the image quality is much better. This type of microscope makes use of fluorescence, where a laser provides the excitation light. Laser light passing through a tiny aperture called a pinhole forms an extended focal region within the specimen. The reflected light passes through the objective lens to a second pinhole and the photomultiplier detector, see [link]. The second pinhole is the key here and serves to block much of the light from points that are not at the focal point of the objective lens. The pinhole is conjugate (coupled) to the focal point of the lens. The second pinhole and detector are scanned, allowing reflected light from a small region or section of the extended focal region to be imaged at any one time. The out-of-focus light is excluded. Each image is stored in a computer, and a full scanned image is generated in a short time. Live cell

processes can also be imaged at adequate scanning speeds allowing the imaging of three-dimensional microscopic movement. Confocal microscopy enhances images over conventional optical microscopy, especially for thicker specimens, and so has become quite popular.

The next level of sophistication is provided by microscopes attached to instruments that isolate and detect only a small wavelength band of light—monochromators and spectral analyzers. Here, the monochromatic light from a laser is scattered from the specimen. This scattered light shifts up or down as it excites particular energy levels in the sample. The uniqueness of the observed scattered light can give detailed information about the chemical composition of a given spot on the sample with high contrast—like molecular fingerprints. Applications are in materials science, nanotechnology, and the biomedical field. Fine details in biochemical processes over time can even be detected. The ultimate in microscopy is the electron microscope—to be discussed later. Research is being conducted into the development of new prototype microscopes that can become commercially available, providing better diagnostic and research capacities.



A confocal microscope provides three-dimensional images using pinholes and the extended depth of focus as described by wave optics. The right pinhole illuminates a tiny region of the sample in the focal

plane. In-focus light rays from this tiny region pass through the dichroic mirror and the second pinhole to a detector and a computer. Out-of-focus light rays are blocked. The pinhole is scanned sideways to form an image of the entire focal plane. The pinhole can then be scanned up and down to gather images from different focal planes. The result is a three-dimensional image of the specimen.

Section Summary

- To improve microscope images, various techniques utilizing the wave characteristics of light have been developed. Many of these enhance contrast with interference effects.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how microscopes can use wave optics to improve contrast and why this is important.

Exercise:

Problem:

A bright white light under water is collimated and directed upon a prism. What range of colors does one see emerging?

Glossary

confocal microscopes
: microscopes that use the extended focal region to obtain three-dimensional images rather than two-dimensional images

contrast
: the difference in intensity between objects and the background on which they are observed

interference microscopes
: microscopes that enhance contrast between objects and background by superimposing a reference beam of light upon the light emerging from the sample

phase-contrast microscope
: microscope utilizing wave interference and differences in phases to enhance contrast

polarization microscope
: microscope that enhances contrast by utilizing a wave characteristic of light, useful for objects that are optically active

ultraviolet (UV) microscopes
: microscopes constructed with special lenses that transmit UV rays and utilize photographic or electronic techniques to record images

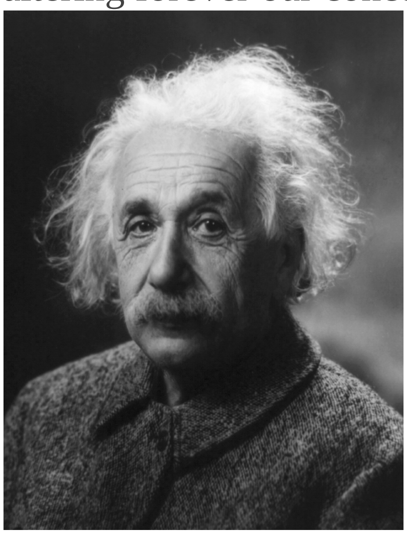
Introduction to Special Relativity class="introduction"

Special relativity explains why traveling to other star systems, such as these in the Orion Nebula, is unreasonable using our current level of technology. (credit: s58y, Flickr)

Have you ever looked up at the night sky and dreamed of traveling to other planets in faraway star systems? Would there be other life forms? What would other worlds look like? You might imagine that such an amazing trip

would be possible if we could just travel fast enough, but you will read in this chapter why this is not true. In 1905 Albert Einstein developed the theory of special relativity. This theory explains the limit on an object’s speed and describes the consequences.

Relativity. The word *relativity* might conjure an image of Einstein, but the idea did not begin with him. People have been exploring relativity for many centuries. Relativity is the study of how different observers measure the same event. Galileo and Newton developed the first correct version of classical relativity. Einstein developed the modern theory of relativity. Modern relativity is divided into two parts. *Special relativity* deals with observers who are moving at constant velocity. *General relativity* deals with observers who are undergoing acceleration. Einstein is famous because his theories of relativity made revolutionary predictions. Most importantly, his theories have been verified to great precision in a vast range of experiments, altering forever our concept of space and time.



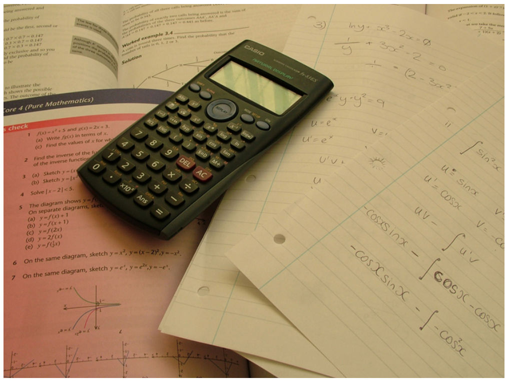
Many people think that Albert Einstein (1879–1955) was the greatest physicist of the 20th century. Not only did he develop modern relativity, thus

revolutionizing our concept of the universe, he also made fundamental contributions to the foundations of quantum mechanics. (credit: The Library of Congress)

It is important to note that although classical mechanics, in general, and classical relativity, in particular, are limited, they are extremely good approximations for large, slow-moving objects. Otherwise, we could not use classical physics to launch satellites or build bridges. In the classical limit (objects larger than submicroscopic and moving slower than about 1% of the speed of light), relativistic mechanics becomes the same as classical mechanics. This fact will be noted at appropriate places throughout this chapter.

Einstein’s Postulates

- State and explain both of Einstein’s postulates.
- Explain what an inertial frame of reference is.
- Describe one way the speed of light can be changed.



Special relativity resembles trigonometry in that both are reliable because they are based on postulates that flow one from another in a logical way. (credit: Jon Oakley, Flickr)

Have you ever used the Pythagorean Theorem and gotten a wrong answer? Probably not, unless you made a mistake in either your algebra or your arithmetic. Each time you perform the same calculation, you know that the answer will be the same. Trigonometry is reliable because of the certainty that one part always flows from another in a logical way. Each part is based on a set of postulates, and you can always connect the parts by applying those postulates. Physics is the same way with the exception that *all* parts must describe nature. If we are careful to choose the correct postulates, then our theory will follow and will be verified by experiment.

Einstein essentially did the theoretical aspect of this method for **relativity**. With two deceptively simple postulates and a careful consideration of how measurements are made, he produced the theory of **special relativity.**

Einstein’s First Postulate

The first postulate upon which Einstein based the theory of special relativity relates to reference frames. All velocities are measured relative to some frame of reference. For example, a car’s motion is measured relative to its starting point or the road it is moving over, a projectile’s motion is measured relative to the surface it was launched from, and a planet’s orbit is measured relative to the star it is orbiting around. The simplest frames of reference are those that are not accelerated and are not rotating. Newton’s first law, the law of inertia, holds exactly in such a frame.

Note:
Inertial Reference Frame
An **inertial frame of reference** is a reference frame in which a body at rest remains at rest and a body in motion moves at a constant speed in a straight line unless acted on by an outside force.

The laws of physics seem to be simplest in inertial frames. For example, when you are in a plane flying at a constant altitude and speed, physics seems to work exactly the same as if you were standing on the surface of the Earth. However, in a plane that is taking off, matters are somewhat more complicated. In these cases, the net force on an object, F, is not equal to the product of mass and acceleration, ma. Instead, F is equal to ma plus a fictitious force. This situation is not as simple as in an inertial frame. Not only are laws of physics simplest in inertial frames, but they should be the same in all inertial frames, since there is no preferred frame and no absolute motion. Einstein incorporated these ideas into his **first postulate of special relativity**.

Note:
First Postulate of Special Relativity
The laws of physics are the same and can be stated in their simplest form in all inertial frames of reference.

As with many fundamental statements, there is more to this postulate than meets the eye. The laws of physics include only those that satisfy this postulate. We shall find that the definitions of relativistic momentum and energy must be altered to fit. Another outcome of this postulate is the famous equation $E = mc^2$.

Einstein’s Second Postulate

The second postulate upon which Einstein based his theory of special relativity deals with the speed of light. Late in the 19th century, the major tenets of classical physics were well established. Two of the most important were the laws of electricity and magnetism and Newton’s laws. In particular, the laws of electricity and magnetism predict that light travels at $c = 3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ in a vacuum, but they do not specify the frame of reference in which light has this speed.

There was a contradiction between this prediction and Newton’s laws, in which velocities add like simple vectors. If the latter were true, then two observers moving at different speeds would see light traveling at different speeds. Imagine what a light wave would look like to a person traveling along with it at a speed c. If such a motion were possible then the wave would be stationary relative to the observer. It would have electric and magnetic fields that varied in strength at various distances from the observer but were constant in time. This is not allowed by Maxwell’s equations. So either Maxwell’s equations are wrong, or an object with mass cannot travel at speed c. Einstein concluded that the latter is true. An object with mass cannot travel at speed c. This conclusion implies that light in a vacuum must always travel at speed c relative to any observer. Maxwell’s equations are correct, and Newton’s addition of velocities is not correct for light.

Investigations such as Young's double slit experiment in the early-1800s had convincingly demonstrated that light is a wave. Many types of waves were known, and all travelled in some medium. Scientists therefore assumed that a medium carried light, even in a vacuum, and light travelled at a speed c relative to that medium. Starting in the mid-1880s, the American physicist A. A. Michelson, later aided by E. W. Morley, made a series of direct measurements of the speed of light. The results of their measurements were startling.

Note:
Michelson-Morley Experiment
The **Michelson-Morley experiment** demonstrated that the speed of light in a vacuum is independent of the motion of the Earth about the Sun.

The eventual conclusion derived from this result is that light, unlike mechanical waves such as sound, does not need a medium to carry it. Furthermore, the Michelson-Morley results implied that the speed of light c is independent of the motion of the source relative to the observer. That is, everyone observes light to move at speed c regardless of how they move relative to the source or one another. For a number of years, many scientists tried unsuccessfully to explain these results and still retain the general applicability of Newton's laws.

It was not until 1905, when Einstein published his first paper on special relativity, that the currently accepted conclusion was reached. Based mostly on his analysis that the laws of electricity and magnetism would not allow another speed for light, and only slightly aware of the Michelson-Morley experiment, Einstein detailed his **second postulate of special relativity**.

Note:
Second Postulate of Special Relativity

The speed of light c is a constant, independent of the relative motion of the source.

Deceptively simple and counterintuitive, this and the first postulate leave all else open for change. Some fundamental concepts do change. Among the changes are the loss of agreement on the elapsed time for an event, the variation of distance with speed, and the realization that matter and energy can be converted into one another. You will read about these concepts in the following sections.

Note:
Misconception Alert: Constancy of the Speed of Light
The speed of light is a constant $c = 3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ *in a vacuum*. If you remember the effect of the index of refraction from The Law of Refraction, the speed of light is lower in matter.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem: Explain how special relativity differs from general relativity.

Solution:
Answer

Special relativity applies only to unaccelerated motion, but general relativity applies to accelerated motion.

Section Summary

- Relativity is the study of how different observers measure the same event.

- Modern relativity is divided into two parts. Special relativity deals with observers who are in uniform (unaccelerated) motion, whereas general relativity includes accelerated relative motion and gravity. Modern relativity is correct in all circumstances and, in the limit of low velocity and weak gravitation, gives the same predictions as classical relativity.
- An inertial frame of reference is a reference frame in which a body at rest remains at rest and a body in motion moves at a constant speed in a straight line unless acted on by an outside force.
- Modern relativity is based on Einstein’s two postulates. The first postulate of special relativity is the idea that the laws of physics are the same and can be stated in their simplest form in all inertial frames of reference. The second postulate of special relativity is the idea that the speed of light c is a constant, independent of the relative motion of the source.
- The Michelson-Morley experiment demonstrated that the speed of light in a vacuum is independent of the motion of the Earth about the Sun.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Which of Einstein’s postulates of special relativity includes a concept that does not fit with the ideas of classical physics? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Is Earth an inertial frame of reference? Is the Sun? Justify your response.

Exercise:

Problem:

When you are flying in a commercial jet, it may appear to you that the airplane is stationary and the Earth is moving beneath you. Is this point of view valid? Discuss briefly.

Glossary

relativity
: the study of how different observers measure the same event

special relativity
: the theory that, in an inertial frame of reference, the motion of an object is relative to the frame from which it is viewed or measured

inertial frame of reference
: a reference frame in which a body at rest remains at rest and a body in motion moves at a constant speed in a straight line unless acted on by an outside force

first postulate of special relativity
: the idea that the laws of physics are the same and can be stated in their simplest form in all inertial frames of reference

second postulate of special relativity
: the idea that the speed of light c is a constant, independent of the source

Michelson-Morley experiment
: an investigation performed in 1887 that proved that the speed of light in a vacuum is the same in all frames of reference from which it is viewed

Simultaneity And Time Dilation

- Describe simultaneity.
- Describe time dilation.
- Calculate γ.
- Compare proper time and the observer’s measured time.
- Explain why the twin paradox is a false paradox.

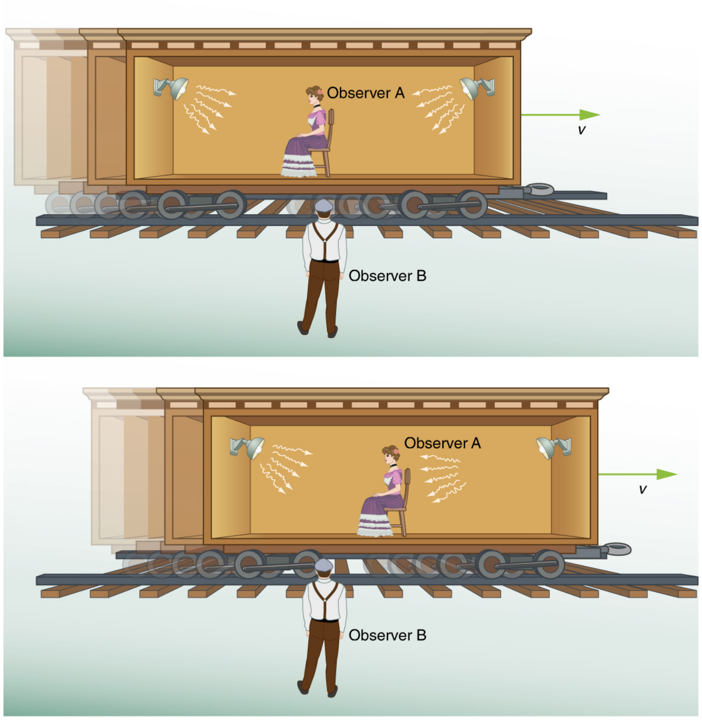
Elapsed time for a foot race is the same for all observers, but at relativistic speeds, elapsed time depends on the relative motion of the observer and the event that is observed. (credit: Jason Edward Scott Bain, Flickr)

Do time intervals depend on who observes them? Intuitively, we expect the time for a process, such as the elapsed time for a foot race, to be the same for all observers. Our experience has been that disagreements over elapsed time have to do with the accuracy of measuring time. When we carefully consider just how time is measured, however, we will find that elapsed time depends on the relative motion of an observer with respect to the process being measured.

Simultaneity

Consider how we measure elapsed time. If we use a stopwatch, for example, how do we know when to start and stop the watch? One method is to use the arrival of light from the event, such as observing a light turning green to start a drag race. The timing will be more accurate if some sort of electronic detection is used, avoiding human reaction times and other complications.

Now suppose we use this method to measure the time interval between two flashes of light produced by flash lamps. (See [link].) Two flash lamps with observer A midway between them are on a rail car that moves to the right relative to observer B. Observer B arranges for the light flashes to be emitted just as A passes B, so that both A and B are equidistant from the lamps when the light is emitted. Observer B measures the time interval between the arrival of the light flashes. According to postulate 2, the speed of light is not affected by the motion of the lamps relative to B. Therefore, light travels equal distances to him at equal speeds. Thus observer B measures the flashes to be simultaneous.



Observer B measures the elapsed time between the arrival of light flashes as described in the text. Observer A moves with the lamps on a rail car. Observer B perceives that the light flashes occurred simultaneously. Observer A perceives that the light on the right flashes before the light on the left.

Now consider what observer B sees happen to observer A. Observer B perceives light from the right reaching observer A before light from the left, because she has moved towards that flash lamp, lessening the distance the light must travel and reducing the time it takes to get to her. Light travels at speed *c* relative to both observers, but observer B remains equidistant between the points where the flashes were emitted, while A gets closer to the emission point on the right. From observer B’s point of view, then, there is a time interval between the arrival of the flashes to observer A. In observer A's frame of reference, the flashes occur at different times. Observer B measures the flashes to arrive simultaneously relative to him but not relative to A.

Now consider what observer A sees happening. She sees the light from the right arriving before light from the left. Since both lamps are the same distance from her in her reference frame, from her perspective, the right flash occurred before the left flash. Here a relative velocity between observers affects whether two events are observed to be simultaneous. *Simultaneity is not absolute*

This illustrates the power of clear thinking. We might have guessed incorrectly that if light is emitted simultaneously, then two observers halfway between the sources would see the flashes simultaneously. But careful analysis shows this not to be the case. Einstein was brilliant at this type of *thought experiment* (in German, “Gedankenexperiment”). He very carefully considered how an observation is made and disregarded what

might seem obvious. The validity of thought experiments, of course, is determined by actual observation. The genius of Einstein is evidenced by the fact that experiments have repeatedly confirmed his theory of relativity.

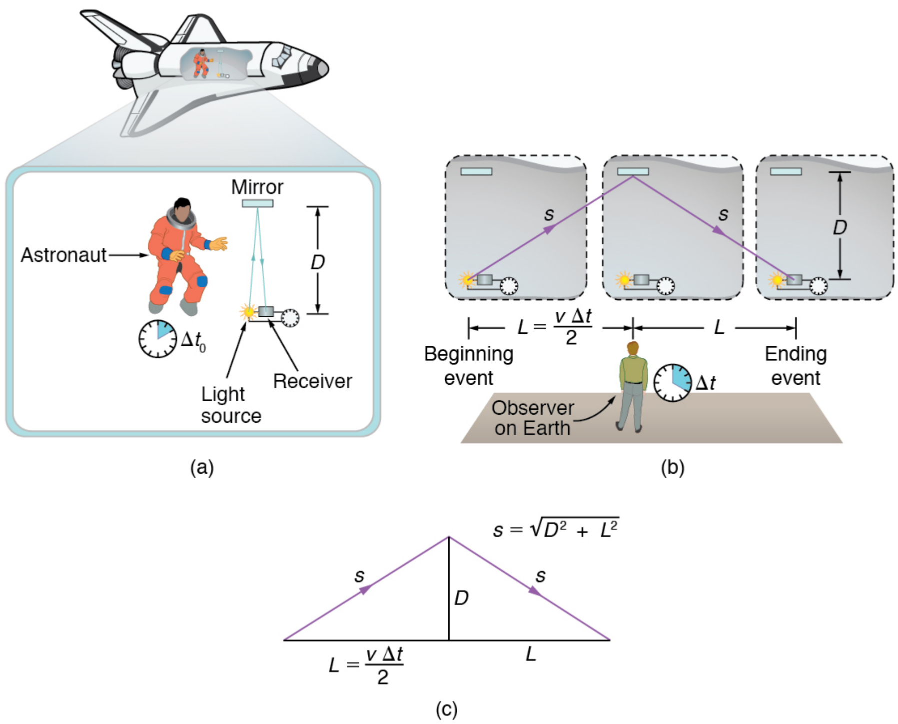
In summary: Two events are defined to be simultaneous if an observer measures them as occurring at the same time (such as by receiving light from the events). Two events are not necessarily simultaneous to all observers.

Time Dilation

The consideration of the measurement of elapsed time and simultaneity leads to an important relativistic effect.

Note:
Time dilation
Time dilation is the phenomenon of time passing slower for an observer who is moving relative to another observer.

Suppose, for example, an astronaut measures the time it takes for light to cross her ship, bounce off a mirror, and return. (See [link].) How does the elapsed time the astronaut measures compare with the elapsed time measured for the same event by a person on the Earth? Asking this question (another thought experiment) produces a profound result. We find that the elapsed time for a process depends on who is measuring it. In this case, the time measured by the astronaut is smaller than the time measured by the Earth-bound observer. The passage of time is different for the observers because the distance the light travels in the astronaut's frame is smaller than in the Earth-bound frame. Light travels at the same speed in each frame, and so it will take longer to travel the greater distance in the Earth-bound frame.



(a) An astronaut measures the time Δt_0 for light to cross her ship using an electronic timer. Light travels a distance $2D$ in the astronaut's frame. (b) A person on the Earth sees the light follow the longer path $2s$ and take a longer time Δt. (c) These triangles are used to find the relationship between the two distances $2D$ and $2s$.

To quantitatively verify that time depends on the observer, consider the paths followed by light as seen by each observer. (See [link](c).) The astronaut sees the light travel straight across and back for a total distance of $2D$, twice the width of her ship. The Earth-bound observer sees the light travel a total distance $2s$. Since the ship is moving at speed v to the right relative to the Earth, light moving to the right hits the mirror in this frame. Light travels at a speed c in both frames, and because time is the distance divided by speed, the time measured by the astronaut is

Equation:

$$\Delta t_0 = \frac{2D}{c}.$$

This time has a separate name to distinguish it from the time measured by the Earth-bound observer.

Note:
Proper Time
Proper time Δt_0 is the time measured by an observer at rest relative to the event being observed.

In the case of the astronaut observe the reflecting light, the astronaut measures proper time. The time measured by the Earth-bound observer is
Equation:

$$\Delta t = \frac{2s}{c}.$$

To find the relationship between Δt_0 and Δt, consider the triangles formed by D and s. (See [link](c).) The third side of these similar triangles is L, the distance the astronaut moves as the light goes across her ship. In the frame of the Earth-bound observer,
Equation:

$$L = \frac{v\Delta t}{2}.$$

Using the Pythagorean Theorem, the distance s is found to be
Equation:

$$s = \sqrt{D^2 + \left(\frac{v\Delta t}{2}\right)^2}.$$

Substituting s into the expression for the time interval Δt gives
Equation:

$$\Delta t = \frac{2s}{c} = \frac{2\sqrt{D^2 + \left(\frac{v\Delta t}{2}\right)^2}}{c}.$$

We square this equation, which yields
Equation:

$$(\Delta t)^2 = \frac{4\left(D^2 + \frac{v^2(\Delta t)^2}{4}\right)}{c^2} = \frac{4D^2}{c^2} + \frac{v^2}{c^2}(\Delta t)^2.$$

Note that if we square the first expression we had for Δt_0, we get $(\Delta t_0)^2 = \frac{4D^2}{c^2}$. This term appears in the preceding equation, giving us a means to relate the two time intervals. Thus,
Equation:

$$(\Delta t)^2 = (\Delta t_0)^2 + \frac{v^2}{c^2}(\Delta t)^2.$$

Gathering terms, we solve for Δt:
Equation:

$$(\Delta t)^2\left(1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}\right) = (\Delta t_0)^2.$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$(\Delta t)^2 = \frac{(\Delta t_0)^2}{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}.$$

Taking the square root yields an important relationship between elapsed times:

Equation:

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma \Delta t_0,$$

where

Equation:

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}}.$$

This equation for Δt is truly remarkable. First, as contended, elapsed time is not the same for different observers moving relative to one another, even though both are in inertial frames. Proper time Δt_0 measured by an observer, like the astronaut moving with the apparatus, is smaller than time measured by other observers. Since those other observers measure a longer time Δt, the effect is called time dilation. The Earth-bound observer sees time dilate (get longer) for a system moving relative to the Earth. Alternatively, according to the Earth-bound observer, time slows in the moving frame, since less time passes there. All clocks moving relative to an observer, including biological clocks such as aging, are observed to run slow compared with a clock stationary relative to the observer.

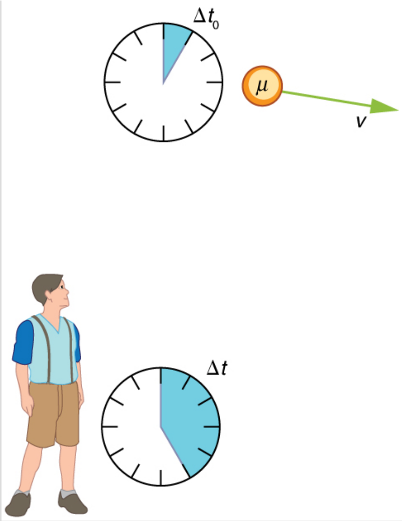
Note that if the relative velocity is much less than the speed of light ($v << c$), then $\frac{v^2}{c^2}$ is extremely small, and the elapsed times Δt and Δt_0 are nearly equal. At low velocities, modern relativity approaches classical physics—our everyday experiences have very small relativistic effects.

The equation $\Delta t = \gamma \Delta t_0$ also implies that relative velocity cannot exceed the speed of light. As v approaches c, Δt approaches infinity. This would imply that time in the astronaut's frame stops at the speed of light. If v exceeded c, then we would be taking the square root of a negative number, producing an imaginary value for Δt.

There is considerable experimental evidence that the equation $\Delta t = \gamma \Delta t_0$ is correct. One example is found in cosmic ray particles that continuously rain down on the Earth from deep space. Some collisions of these particles with nuclei in the upper atmosphere result in short-lived particles called muons. The half-life (amount of time for half of a material to decay) of a muon is $1.52\ \mu$s when it is at rest relative to the observer who measures the half-life. This is the proper time Δt_0. Muons produced by cosmic ray particles have a range of velocities, with some moving near the speed of light. It has been found that the muon's half-life as measured by an Earth-bound observer (Δt) varies with velocity exactly as predicted by the equation $\Delta t = \gamma \Delta t_0$. The faster the muon moves, the longer it lives. We on the Earth see the muon's half-life time dilated—as viewed from our frame, the muon decays more slowly than it does when at rest relative to us.

Example:
Calculating Δt for a Relativistic Event: How Long Does a Speedy Muon Live?

Suppose a cosmic ray colliding with a nucleus in the Earth's upper atmosphere produces a muon that has a velocity $v = 0.950c$. The muon then travels at constant velocity and lives $1.52\ \mu$s as measured in the muon's frame of reference. (You can imagine this as the muon's internal clock.) How long does the muon live as measured by an Earth-bound observer? (See [link].)



A muon in the Earth's atmosphere lives longer as measured by an Earth-bound observer than measured by the muon's internal clock.

Strategy
A clock moving with the system being measured observes the proper time, so the time we are given is $\Delta t_0 = 1.52\ \mu$s. The Earth-bound observer measures Δt as given by the equation $\Delta t = \gamma \Delta t_0$. Since we know the velocity, the calculation is straightforward.
Solution
1) Identify the knowns. $v = 0.950c$, $\Delta t_0 = 1.52\ \mu$s
2) Identify the unknown. Δt
3) Choose the appropriate equation.
Use,
Equation:

$$\Delta t = \gamma \Delta t_0,$$

where
Equation:

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}}.$$

4) Plug the knowns into the equation.
First find γ.
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{(0.950c)^2}{c^2}}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(0.950)^2}} \\ &= 3.20. \end{aligned}$$

Use the calculated value of γ to determine Δt.
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta t &= \gamma \Delta t_0 \\ &= (3.20)(1.52\ \mu\text{s}) \\ &= 4.87\ \mu\text{s} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
One implication of this example is that since $\gamma = 3.20$ at 95.0% of the speed of light ($v = 0.950c$), the relativistic effects are significant. The two time intervals differ by this factor of 3.20, where classically they would be the same. Something moving at $0.950c$ is said to be highly relativistic.

Another implication of the preceding example is that everything an astronaut does when moving at 95.0% of the speed of light relative to the Earth takes 3.20 times longer when observed from the Earth. Does the

astronaut sense this? Only if she looks outside her spaceship. All methods of measuring time in her frame will be affected by the same factor of 3.20. This includes her wristwatch, heart rate, cell metabolism rate, nerve impulse rate, and so on. She will have no way of telling, since all of her clocks will agree with one another because their relative velocities are zero. Motion is relative, not absolute. But what if she does look out the window?

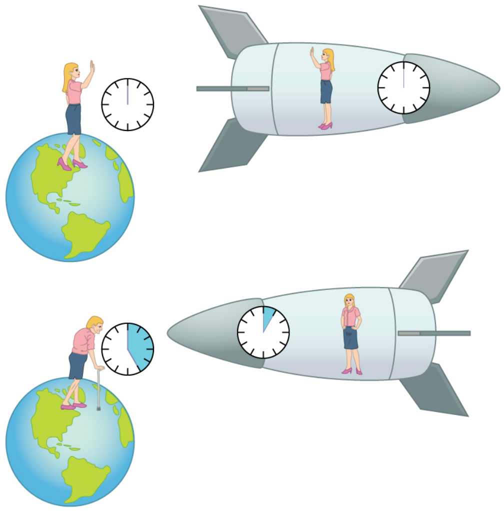
Note:
Real-World Connections
It may seem that special relativity has little effect on your life, but it is probably more important than you realize. One of the most common effects is through the Global Positioning System (GPS). Emergency vehicles, package delivery services, electronic maps, and communications devices are just a few of the common uses of GPS, and the GPS system could not work without taking into account relativistic effects. GPS satellites rely on precise time measurements to communicate. The signals travel at relativistic speeds. Without corrections for time dilation, the satellites could not communicate, and the GPS system would fail within minutes.

The Twin Paradox

An intriguing consequence of time dilation is that a space traveler moving at a high velocity relative to the Earth would age less than her Earth-bound twin. Imagine the astronaut moving at such a velocity that $\gamma = 30.0$, as in [link]. A trip that takes 2.00 years in her frame would take 60.0 years in her Earth-bound twin's frame. Suppose the astronaut traveled 1.00 year to another star system. She briefly explored the area, and then traveled 1.00 year back. If the astronaut was 40 years old when she left, she would be 42 upon her return. Everything on the Earth, however, would have aged 60.0 years. Her twin, if still alive, would be 100 years old.

The situation would seem different to the astronaut. Because motion is relative, the spaceship would seem to be stationary and the Earth would appear to move. (This is the sensation you have when flying in a jet.) If the

astronaut looks out the window of the spaceship, she will see time slow down on the Earth by a factor of $\gamma = 30.0$. To her, the Earth-bound sister will have aged only 2/30 (1/15) of a year, while she aged 2.00 years. The two sisters cannot both be correct.



The twin paradox asks why the traveling twin ages less than the Earth-bound twin. That is the prediction we obtain if we consider the Earth-bound twin's frame. In the astronaut's frame, however, the Earth is moving and time runs slower there. Who is correct?

As with all paradoxes, the premise is faulty and leads to contradictory conclusions. In fact, the astronaut's motion is significantly different from that of the Earth-bound twin. The astronaut accelerates to a high velocity

and then decelerates to view the star system. To return to the Earth, she again accelerates and decelerates. The Earth-bound twin does not experience these accelerations. So the situation is not symmetric, and it is not correct to claim that the astronaut will observe the same effects as her Earth-bound twin. If you use special relativity to examine the twin paradox, you must keep in mind that the theory is expressly based on inertial frames, which by definition are not accelerated or rotating. Einstein developed general relativity to deal with accelerated frames and with gravity, a prime source of acceleration. You can also use general relativity to address the twin paradox and, according to general relativity, the astronaut will age less. Some important conceptual aspects of general relativity are discussed in General Relativity and Quantum Gravity of this course.

In 1971, American physicists Joseph Hafele and Richard Keating verified time dilation at low relative velocities by flying extremely accurate atomic clocks around the Earth on commercial aircraft. They measured elapsed time to an accuracy of a few nanoseconds and compared it with the time measured by clocks left behind. Hafele and Keating's results were within experimental uncertainties of the predictions of relativity. Both special and general relativity had to be taken into account, since gravity and accelerations were involved as well as relative motion.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:1. What is γ if $v = 0.650c$?

Solution

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{(0.650c)^2}{c^2}}} = 1.32$$

2. A particle travels at $1.90 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m/s}$ and lives 2.10×10^{-8} s when at rest relative to an observer. How long does the particle live as viewed in the laboratory?

Solution:

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta_t^0}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \frac{2.10\times 10^{-8}\text{ s}}{\sqrt{1-\frac{(1.90\times 10^8\text{ m/s})^2}{(3.00\times 10^8\text{ m/s})^2}}} = 2.71 \times 10^{-8}\text{ s}$$

Section Summary

- Two events are defined to be simultaneous if an observer measures them as occurring at the same time. They are not necessarily simultaneous to all observers—simultaneity is not absolute.
- Time dilation is the phenomenon of time passing slower for an observer who is moving relative to another observer.
- Observers moving at a relative velocity v do not measure the same elapsed time for an event. Proper time Δt_0 is the time measured by an observer at rest relative to the event being observed. Proper time is related to the time Δt measured by an Earth-bound observer by the equation
  Equation:

  $$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma \Delta t_0,$$

  where
  Equation:

  $$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}}.$$

- The equation relating proper time and time measured by an Earth-bound observer implies that relative velocity cannot exceed the speed of light.
- The twin paradox asks why a twin traveling at a relativistic speed away and then back towards the Earth ages less than the Earth-bound twin. The premise to the paradox is faulty because the traveling twin is accelerating. Special relativity does not apply to accelerating frames of reference.

- Time dilation is usually negligible at low relative velocities, but it does occur, and it has been verified by experiment.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Does motion affect the rate of a clock as measured by an observer moving with it? Does motion affect how an observer moving relative to a clock measures its rate?

Exercise:

Problem:

To whom does the elapsed time for a process seem to be longer, an observer moving relative to the process or an observer moving with the process? Which observer measures proper time?

Exercise:

Problem:

How could you travel far into the future without aging significantly? Could this method also allow you to travel into the past?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: (a) What is γ if $v = 0.250c$? (b) If $v = 0.500c$?

Solution:

(a) 1.0328

(b) 1.15

Exercise:

Problem: (a) What is γ if $v = 0.100c$? (b) If $v = 0.900c$?

Exercise:

Problem:

Particles called π-mesons are produced by accelerator beams. If these particles travel at $2.70 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ and live 2.60×10^{-8} s when at rest relative to an observer, how long do they live as viewed in the laboratory?

Solution:

5.96×10^{-8} s

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a particle called a kaon is created by cosmic radiation striking the atmosphere. It moves by you at $0.980c$, and it lives 1.24×10^{-8} s when at rest relative to an observer. How long does it live as you observe it?

Exercise:

Problem:

A neutral π-meson is a particle that can be created by accelerator beams. If one such particle lives 1.40×10^{-16} s as measured in the laboratory, and 0.840×10^{-16} s when at rest relative to an observer, what is its velocity relative to the laboratory?

Solution:

$0.800c$

Exercise:

Problem:

A neutron lives 900 s when at rest relative to an observer. How fast is the neutron moving relative to an observer who measures its life span to be 2065 s?

Exercise:

Problem:

If relativistic effects are to be less than 1%, then γ must be less than 1.01. At what relative velocity is $\gamma = 1.01$?

Solution:

$0.140c$

Exercise:

Problem:

If relativistic effects are to be less than 3%, then γ must be less than 1.03. At what relative velocity is $\gamma = 1.03$?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At what relative velocity is $\gamma = 1.50$? (b) At what relative velocity is $\gamma = 100$?

Solution:

(a) $0.745c$

(b) $0.99995c$ (to five digits to show effect)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At what relative velocity is $\gamma = 2.00$? (b) At what relative velocity is $\gamma = 10.0$?

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

(a) Find the value of γ for the following situation. An Earth-bound observer measures 23.9 h to have passed while signals from a high-velocity space probe indicate that $24.0\ \mathrm{h}$ have passed on board. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 0.996

(b) γ cannot be less than 1.

(c) Assumption that time is longer in moving ship is unreasonable.

Glossary

time dilation
: the phenomenon of time passing slower to an observer who is moving relative to another observer

proper time
: Δt_0. the time measured by an observer at rest relative to the event being observed: $\Delta t = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma \Delta t_0$, where $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$

twin paradox
: this asks why a twin traveling at a relativistic speed away and then back towards the Earth ages less than the Earth-bound twin. The

premise to the paradox is faulty because the traveling twin is accelerating, and special relativity does not apply to accelerating frames of reference

Length Contraction

- Describe proper length.
- Calculate length contraction.
- Explain why we don't notice these effects at everyday scales.

People might describe distances differently, but at relativistic speeds, the distances really are different. (credit: Corey Leopold, Flickr)

Have you ever driven on a road that seems like it goes on forever? If you look ahead, you might say you have about 10 km left to go. Another traveler might say the road ahead looks like it's about 15 km long. If you both measured the road, however, you would agree. Traveling at everyday speeds, the distance you both measure would be the same. You will read in this section, however, that this is not true at relativistic speeds. Close to the speed of light, distances measured are not the same when measured by different observers.

Proper Length

One thing all observers agree upon is relative speed. Even though clocks measure different elapsed times for the same process, they still agree that relative speed, which is distance divided by elapsed time, is the same. This

implies that distance, too, depends on the observer's relative motion. If two observers see different times, then they must also see different distances for relative speed to be the same to each of them.

The muon discussed in [link] illustrates this concept. To an observer on the Earth, the muon travels at $0.950c$ for $7.05\ \mu\text{s}$ from the time it is produced until it decays. Thus it travels a distance

Equation:

$$L_0 = v\Delta t = (0.950)(3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s})(7.05 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}) = 2.01\ \text{km}$$

relative to the Earth. In the muon's frame of reference, its lifetime is only $2.20\ \mu\text{s}$. It has enough time to travel only

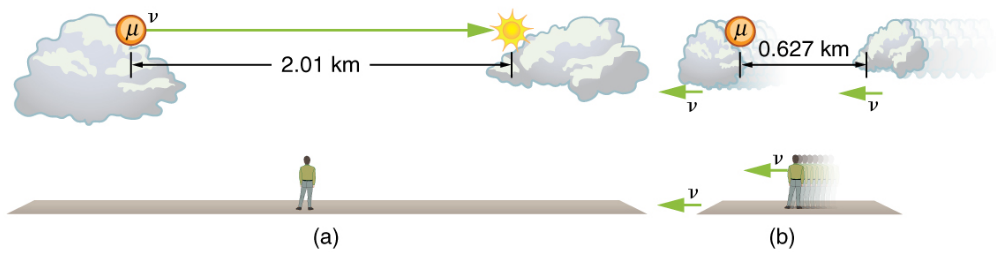
Equation:

$$L = v\Delta t_0 = (0.950)(3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s})(2.20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}) = 0.627\ \text{km}.$$

The distance between the same two events (production and decay of a muon) depends on who measures it and how they are moving relative to it.

Note:
Proper Length
Proper length L_0 is the distance between two points measured by an observer who is at rest relative to both of the points.

The Earth-bound observer measures the proper length L_0, because the points at which the muon is produced and decays are stationary relative to the Earth. To the muon, the Earth, air, and clouds are moving, and so the distance L it sees is not the proper length.



(a) The Earth-bound observer sees the muon travel 2.01 km between clouds. (b) The muon sees itself travel the same path, but only a distance of 0.627 km. The Earth, air, and clouds are moving relative to the muon in its frame, and all appear to have smaller lengths along the direction of travel.

Length Contraction

To develop an equation relating distances measured by different observers, we note that the velocity relative to the Earth-bound observer in our muon example is given by

Equation:

$$v = \frac{L_0}{\Delta t}.$$

The time relative to the Earth-bound observer is Δt, since the object being timed is moving relative to this observer. The velocity relative to the moving observer is given by

Equation:

$$v = \frac{L}{\Delta t_0}.$$

The moving observer travels with the muon and therefore observes the proper time Δt_0. The two velocities are identical; thus,

Equation:

$$\frac{L_0}{\Delta t} = \frac{L}{\Delta t_0}.$$

We know that $\Delta t = \gamma \Delta t_0$. Substituting this equation into the relationship above gives

Equation:

$$L = \frac{L_0}{\gamma}.$$

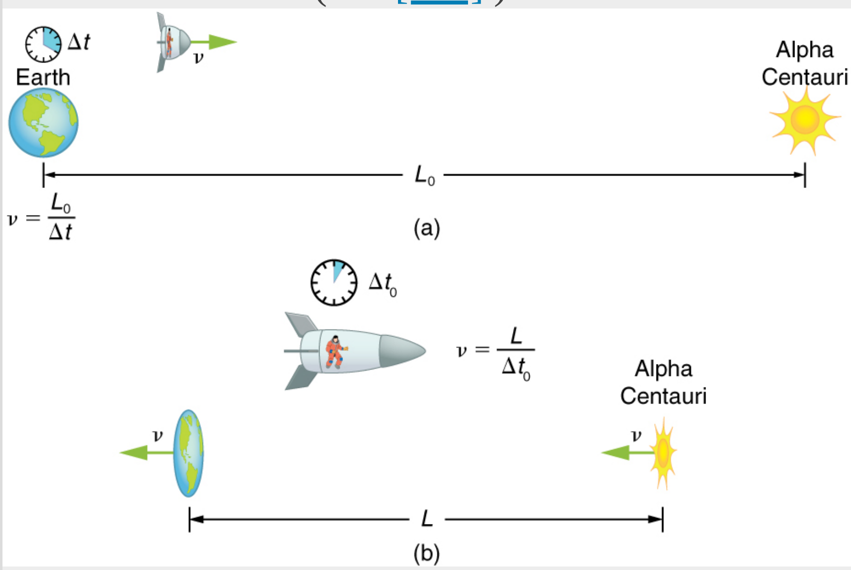
Substituting for γ gives an equation relating the distances measured by different observers.

> **Note:**
> **Length Contraction**
> **Length contraction** L is the shortening of the measured length of an object moving relative to the observer's frame.
> **Equation:**
>
> $$L = L_0 \sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}.$$

If we measure the length of anything moving relative to our frame, we find its length L to be smaller than the proper length L_0 that would be measured if the object were stationary. For example, in the muon's reference frame, the distance between the points where it was produced and where it decayed is shorter. Those points are fixed relative to the Earth but moving relative to the muon. Clouds and other objects are also contracted along the direction of motion in the muon's reference frame.

Example:
Calculating Length Contraction: The Distance between Stars Contracts when You Travel at High Velocity

Suppose an astronaut, such as the twin discussed in Simultaneity and Time Dilation, travels so fast that $\gamma = 30.00$. (a) She travels from the Earth to the nearest star system, Alpha Centauri, 4.300 light years (ly) away as measured by an Earth-bound observer. How far apart are the Earth and Alpha Centauri as measured by the astronaut? (b) In terms of c, what is her velocity relative to the Earth? You may neglect the motion of the Earth relative to the Sun. (See [link].)



(a) The Earth-bound observer measures the proper distance between the Earth and the Alpha Centauri. (b) The astronaut observes a length contraction, since the Earth and the Alpha Centauri move relative to her ship. She can travel this shorter distance in a smaller time (her proper time) without exceeding the speed of light.

Strategy

First note that a light year (ly) is a convenient unit of distance on an astronomical scale—it is the distance light travels in a year. For part (a), note that the 4.300 ly distance between the Alpha Centauri and the Earth is

the proper distance L_0, because it is measured by an Earth-bound observer to whom both stars are (approximately) stationary. To the astronaut, the Earth and the Alpha Centauri are moving by at the same velocity, and so the distance between them is the contracted length L. In part (b), we are given γ, and so we can find v by rearranging the definition of γ to express v in terms of c.

Solution for (a)

1. Identify the knowns. $L_0 - 4.300\text{ ly}; \gamma = 30.00$
2. Identify the unknown. L
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $L = \frac{L_0}{\gamma}$
4. Rearrange the equation to solve for the unknown.
   Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} L &= \frac{L_0}{\gamma} \\ &= \frac{4.300\text{ ly}}{30.00} \\ &= 0.1433\text{ ly} \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (b)

1. Identify the known. $\gamma = 30.00$
2. Identify the unknown. v in terms of c
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$
4. Rearrange the equation to solve for the unknown.
   Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} \\ 30.00 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} \end{aligned}$$

   Squaring both sides of the equation and rearranging terms gives
   Equation:

$$900.0 = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}$$

so that
Equation:

$$1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2} = \frac{1}{900.0}$$

and
Equation:

$$\frac{v^2}{c^2} = 1 - \frac{1}{900.0} = 0.99888....$$

Taking the square root, we find
Equation:

$$\frac{v}{c} = 0.99944,$$

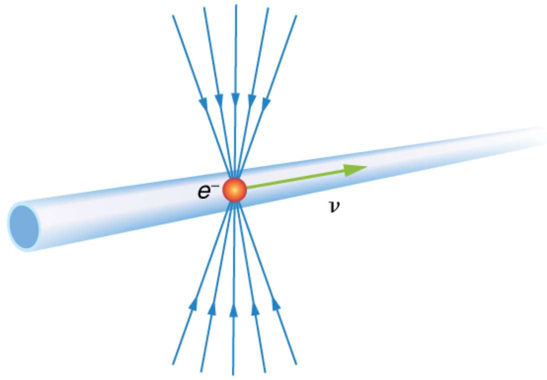
which is rearranged to produce a value for the velocity
Equation:

$$\text{v}= 0.9994c.$$

Discussion
First, remember that you should not round off calculations until the final result is obtained, or you could get erroneous results. This is especially true for special relativity calculations, where the differences might only be revealed after several decimal places. The relativistic effect is large here (γ=30.00), and we see that v is approaching (not equaling) the speed of light. Since the distance as measured by the astronaut is so much smaller, the astronaut can travel it in much less time in her frame.

People could be sent very large distances (thousands or even millions of light years) and age only a few years on the way if they traveled at extremely high velocities. But, like emigrants of centuries past, they would leave the Earth they know forever. Even if they returned, thousands to millions of years would have passed on the Earth, obliterating most of what now exists. There is also a more serious practical obstacle to traveling at such velocities; immensely greater energies than classical physics predicts would be needed to achieve such high velocities. This will be discussed in Relatavistic Energy.

Why don’t we notice length contraction in everyday life? The distance to the grocery shop does not seem to depend on whether we are moving or not. Examining the equation $L = L_0\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}$, we see that at low velocities ($v<<c$) the lengths are nearly equal, the classical expectation. But length contraction is real, if not commonly experienced. For example, a charged particle, like an electron, traveling at relativistic velocity has electric field lines that are compressed along the direction of motion as seen by a stationary observer. (See [link].) As the electron passes a detector, such as a coil of wire, its field interacts much more briefly, an effect observed at particle accelerators such as the 3 km long Stanford Linear Accelerator (SLAC). In fact, to an electron traveling down the beam pipe at SLAC, the accelerator and the Earth are all moving by and are length contracted. The relativistic effect is so great than the accelerator is only 0.5 m long to the electron. It is actually easier to get the electron beam down the pipe, since the beam does not have to be as precisely aimed to get down a short pipe as it would down one 3 km long. This, again, is an experimental verification of the Special Theory of Relativity.



The electric field lines of a high-velocity charged particle are compressed along the direction of motion by length contraction. This produces a different signal when the particle goes through a coil, an experimentally verified effect of length contraction.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A particle is traveling through the Earth's atmosphere at a speed of $0.750c$. To an Earth-bound observer, the distance it travels is 2.50 km. How far does the particle travel in the particle's frame of reference?

Solution:
Answer
Equation:

$$L{=}L_0\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}=(2.50\text{ km})\sqrt{1-\frac{(0.750c)^2}{c^2}}=1.65\text{ km}$$

Summary

- All observers agree upon relative speed.
- Distance depends on an observer's motion. Proper length L_0 is the distance between two points measured by an observer who is at rest relative to both of the points. Earth-bound observers measure proper length when measuring the distance between two points that are stationary relative to the Earth.
- Length contraction L is the shortening of the measured length of an object moving relative to the observer's frame:
  Equation:

$$L=L_0\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}=\frac{L_0}{\gamma}.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

To whom does an object seem greater in length, an observer moving with the object or an observer moving relative to the object? Which observer measures the object's proper length?

Exercise:

Problem:

Relativistic effects such as time dilation and length contraction are present for cars and airplanes. Why do these effects seem strange to us?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose an astronaut is moving relative to the Earth at a significant fraction of the speed of light. (a) Does he observe the rate of his clocks to have slowed? (b) What change in the rate of Earth-bound clocks does he see? (c) Does his ship seem to him to shorten? (d) What about the distance between stars that lie on lines parallel to his motion? (e) Do he and an Earth-bound observer agree on his velocity relative to the Earth?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A spaceship, 200 m long as seen on board, moves by the Earth at $0.970c$. What is its length as measured by an Earth-bound observer?

Solution:

48.6 m

Exercise:

Problem:

How fast would a 6.0 m-long sports car have to be going past you in order for it to appear only 5.5 m long?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How far does the muon in [link] travel according to the Earth-bound observer? (b) How far does it travel as viewed by an observer moving with it? Base your calculation on its velocity relative to the Earth and the time it lives (proper time). (c) Verify that these two distances are related through length contraction $\gamma=3.20$.

Solution:

(a) 1.387 km = 1.39 km

(b) 0.433 km

(c) $$\begin{aligned} L &= \frac{L_0}{\gamma} &= \frac{1.387\times10^3\text{ m}}{3.20} \\ &= 433.4\text{ m} &= 0.433\text{ km} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the distances in parts (a) and (b) are related when $\gamma = 3.20$.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How long would the muon in [link] have lived as observed on the Earth if its velocity was $0.0500c$? (b) How far would it have traveled as observed on the Earth? (c) What distance is this in the muon's frame?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How long does it take the astronaut in [link] to travel 4.30 ly at $0.99944c$ (as measured by the Earth-bound observer)? (b) How long does it take according to the astronaut? (c) Verify that these two times are related through time dilation with $\gamma=30.00$ as given.

Solution:

(a) 4.303 y (to four digits to show any effect)

(b) 0.1434 y

(c) $\Delta t = \gamma \Delta t_0 \Rightarrow \gamma = \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta t_0} = \frac{4.303\text{ y}}{0.1434\text{ y}} = 30.0$

Thus, the two times are related when γ 30.00.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How fast would an athlete need to be running for a 100-m race to look 100 yd long? (b) Is the answer consistent with the fact that relativistic effects are difficult to observe in ordinary circumstances? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Find the value of γ for the following situation. An astronaut measures the length of her spaceship to be 25.0 m, while an Earth-bound observer measures it to be 100 m. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 0.250

(b) γ must be ≥1

(c) The Earth-bound observer must measure a shorter length, so it is unreasonable to assume a longer length.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A spaceship is heading directly toward the Earth at a velocity of $0.800c$. The astronaut on board claims that he can send a canister toward the Earth at $1.20c$ relative to the Earth. (a) Calculate the velocity the canister must have relative to the spaceship. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Glossary

proper length
: L_0; the distance between two points measured by an observer who is at rest relative to both of the points; Earth-bound observers measure proper length when measuring the distance between two points that are stationary relative to the Earth

length contraction
: L, the shortening of the measured length of an object moving relative to the observer's frame: $L = L_0\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}} = \frac{L_0}{\gamma}$

Relativistic Addition of Velocities

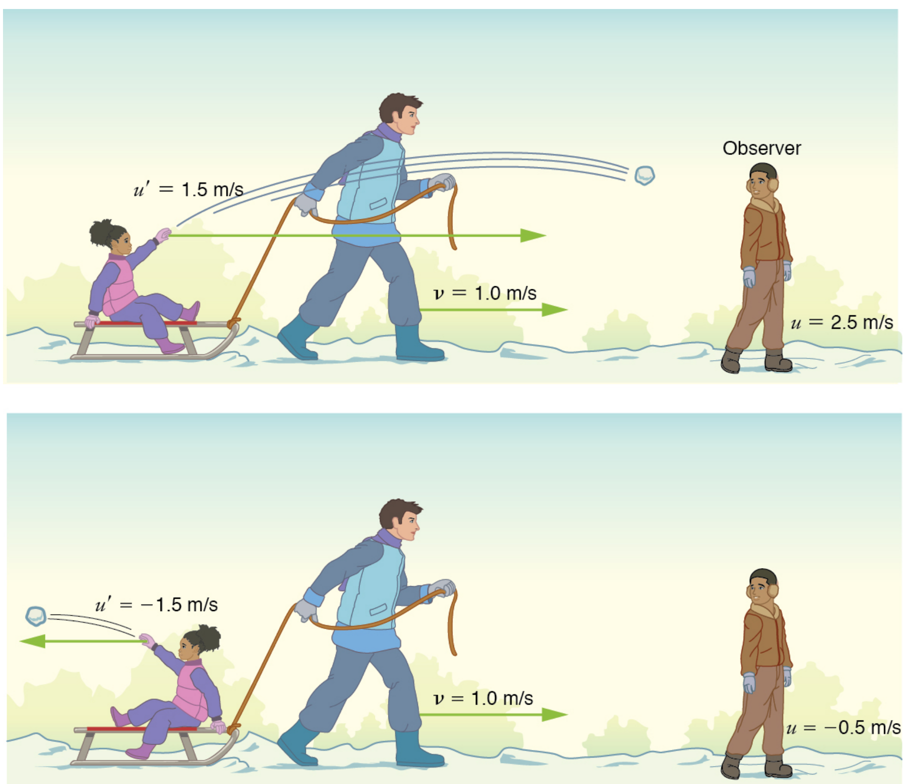
- Calculate relativistic velocity addition.
- Explain when relativistic velocity addition should be used instead of classical addition of velocities.
- Calculate relativistic Doppler shift.

The total velocity of a kayak, like this one on the Deerfield River in Massachusetts, is its velocity relative to the water as well as the water’s velocity relative to the riverbank. (credit: abkfenris, Flickr)

If you’ve ever seen a kayak move down a fast-moving river, you know that remaining in the same place would be hard. The river current pulls the kayak along. Pushing the oars back against the water can move the kayak forward in the water, but that only accounts for part of the velocity. The kayak’s motion is an example of classical addition of velocities. In classical physics, velocities add as vectors. The kayak’s velocity is the vector sum of its velocity relative to the water and the water’s velocity relative to the riverbank.

Classical Velocity Addition

For simplicity, we restrict our consideration of velocity addition to one-dimensional motion. Classically, velocities add like regular numbers in one-dimensional motion. (See [link].) Suppose, for example, a girl is riding in a sled at a speed 1.0 m/s relative to an observer. She throws a snowball first forward, then backward at a speed of 1.5 m/s relative to the sled. We denote direction with plus and minus signs in one dimension; in this example, forward is positive. Let v be the velocity of the sled relative to the Earth, u the velocity of the snowball relative to the Earth-bound observer, and $u\prime$ the velocity of the snowball relative to the sled.



Classically, velocities add like ordinary numbers in one-dimensional motion. Here the girl throws a snowball forward and then backward from a sled. The velocity of the sled relative to the Earth is $v = 1.0\ \text{m/s}$. The velocity of the snowball relative

to the sled is $u\prime$, while its velocity relative to the Earth is u. Classically, $\text{u}=\text{v}+\text{u}\prime$.

Note:
Classical Velocity Addition
Equation:

$$\text{u}=\text{v}+\text{u}\prime$$

Thus, when the girl throws the snowball forward, $u = 1.0\text{ m/s} + 1.5\text{ m/s} = 2.5\text{ m/s}$. It makes good intuitive sense that the snowball will head towards the Earth-bound observer faster, because it is thrown forward from a moving vehicle. When the girl throws the snowball backward, $u = 1.0\text{ m/s} + (-1.5\text{ m/s}) = -0.5\text{ m/s}$. The minus sign means the snowball moves away from the Earth-bound observer.

Relativistic Velocity Addition

The second postulate of relativity (verified by extensive experimental observation) says that classical velocity addition does not apply to light. Imagine a car traveling at night along a straight road, as in [link]. If classical velocity addition applied to light, then the light from the car's headlights would approach the observer on the sidewalk at a speed $\text{u}=\text{v}+\text{c}$. But we know that light will move away from the car at speed c relative to the driver of the car, and light will move towards the observer on the sidewalk at speed c, too.

According to experiment and the second postulate of relativity, light from the car's headlights moves away from the car at speed c and towards the observer on the sidewalk at speed c. Classical velocity addition is not valid.

Note:
Relativistic Velocity Addition
Either light is an exception, or the classical velocity addition formula only works at low velocities. The latter is the case. The correct formula for one-dimensional **relativistic velocity addition** is
Equation:

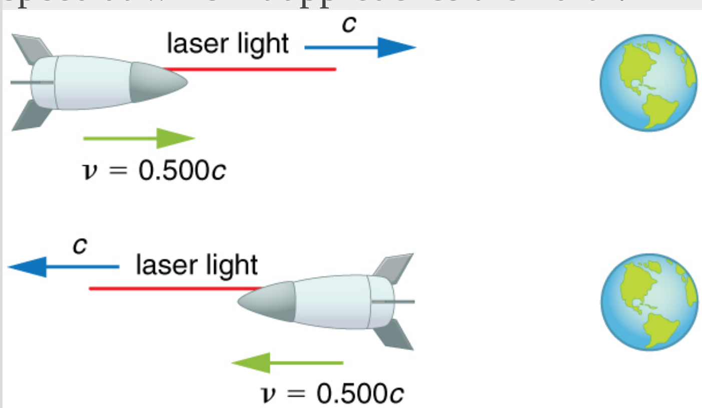
$$u=\frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}},$$

where v is the relative velocity between two observers, u is the velocity of an object relative to one observer, and $u\prime$ is the velocity relative to the other observer. (For ease of visualization, we often choose to measure u in our reference frame, while someone moving at v relative to us measures $u\prime$.) Note that the term $\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}$ becomes very small at low velocities, and $u=\frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}}$ gives a result very close to classical velocity addition. As

before, we see that classical velocity addition is an excellent approximation to the correct relativistic formula for small velocities. No wonder that it seems correct in our experience.

Example:
Showing that the Speed of Light towards an Observer is Constant (in a Vacuum): The Speed of Light is the Speed of Light

Suppose a spaceship heading directly towards the Earth at half the speed of light sends a signal to us on a laser-produced beam of light. Given that the light leaves the ship at speed c as observed from the ship, calculate the speed at which it approaches the Earth.



Strategy

Because the light and the spaceship are moving at relativistic speeds, we cannot use simple velocity addition. Instead, we can determine the speed at which the light approaches the Earth using relativistic velocity addition.

Solution

1. Identify the knowns. $\text{v}=0.500c$; $u\prime = c$
2. Identify the unknown. u
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $u = \frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}}$
4. Plug the knowns into the equation.
   Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
u &= \frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}} \\
&= \frac{0.500c+c}{1+\frac{(0.500c)(c)}{c^2}} \\
&= \frac{(0.500+1)c}{1+\frac{0.500c^2}{c^2}} \\
&= \frac{1.500c}{1+0.500} \\
&= \frac{1.500c}{1.500} \\
&= c
\end{aligned}
$$

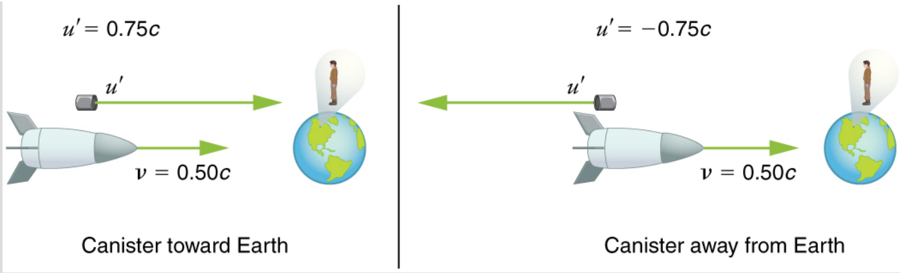
Discussion

Relativistic velocity addition gives the correct result. Light leaves the ship at speed c and approaches the Earth at speed c. The speed of light is independent of the relative motion of source and observer, whether the observer is on the ship or Earth-bound.

Velocities cannot add to greater than the speed of light, provided that v is less than c and $u\prime$ does not exceed c. The following example illustrates that relativistic velocity addition is not as symmetric as classical velocity addition.

Example:
Comparing the Speed of Light towards and away from an Observer: Relativistic Package Delivery

Suppose the spaceship in the previous example is approaching the Earth at half the speed of light and shoots a canister at a speed of $0.750c$. (a) At what velocity will an Earth-bound observer see the canister if it is shot directly towards the Earth? (b) If it is shot directly away from the Earth? (See [link].)



Strategy

Because the canister and the spaceship are moving at relativistic speeds, we must determine the speed of the canister by an Earth-bound observer using relativistic velocity addition instead of simple velocity addition.

Solution for (a)

1. Identify the knowns. v=0.500c; $u\prime = 0.750c$
2. Identify the unknown. u
3. Choose the appropriate equation. u=$\frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}}$
4. Plug the knowns into the equation.

   Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} u &= \frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}} \\ &= \frac{0.500\text{c} + 0.750c}{1+\frac{(0.500c)(0.750c)}{c^2}} \\ &= \frac{1.250c}{1+0.375} \\ &= 0.909c \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (b)

1. Identify the knowns. $v = 0.500c$; $u\prime = -0.750c$
2. Identify the unknown. u
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $u = \frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}}$
4. Plug the knowns into the equation.

   Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
u &= \frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}} \\
&= \frac{0.500c+(-0.750c)}{1+\frac{(0.500c)(-0.750c)}{c^2}} \\
&= \frac{-0.250c}{1-0.375} \\
&= -0.400c
\end{aligned}
$$

Discussion
The minus sign indicates velocity away from the Earth (in the opposite direction from v), which means the canister is heading towards the Earth in part (a) and away in part (b), as expected. But relativistic velocities do not add as simply as they do classically. In part (a), the canister does approach the Earth faster, but not at the simple sum of $1.250c$. The total velocity is less than you would get classically. And in part (b), the canister moves away from the Earth at a velocity of $-0.400c$, which is *faster* than the $-0.250c$ you would expect classically. The velocities are not even symmetric. In part (a) the canister moves $0.409c$ faster than the ship relative to the Earth, whereas in part (b) it moves $0.900c$ slower than the ship.

Doppler Shift

Although the speed of light does not change with relative velocity, the frequencies and wavelengths of light do. First discussed for sound waves, a Doppler shift occurs in any wave when there is relative motion between source and observer.

Note:
Relativistic Doppler Effects
The observed wavelength of electromagnetic radiation is longer (called a red shift) than that emitted by the source when the source moves away

from the observer and shorter (called a blue shift) when the source moves towards the observer.

Equation:

$$=\lambda_{\text{obs}}=\lambda_s\sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{u}{c}}{1-\frac{u}{c}}}.$$

In the Doppler equation, λ_{obs} is the observed wavelength, λ_s is the source wavelength, and u is the relative velocity of the source to the observer. The velocity u is positive for motion away from an observer and negative for motion toward an observer. In terms of source frequency and observed frequency, this equation can be written

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}}=\mathrm{f}_s\sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{u}{c}}{1+\frac{u}{c}}}.$$

Notice that the – and + signs are different than in the wavelength equation.

Note:

Career Connection: Astronomer

If you are interested in a career that requires a knowledge of special relativity, there’s probably no better connection than astronomy. Astronomers must take into account relativistic effects when they calculate distances, times, and speeds of black holes, galaxies, quasars, and all other astronomical objects. To have a career in astronomy, you need at least an undergraduate degree in either physics or astronomy, but a Master’s or doctoral degree is often required. You also need a good background in high-level mathematics.

Example:
Calculating a Doppler Shift: Radio Waves from a Receding Galaxy
Suppose a galaxy is moving away from the Earth at a speed $0.825c$. It emits radio waves with a wavelength of 0.525 m. What wavelength would we detect on the Earth?
Strategy
Because the galaxy is moving at a relativistic speed, we must determine the Doppler shift of the radio waves using the relativistic Doppler shift instead of the classical Doppler shift.
Solution

1. Identify the knowns. u=$0.825c$; $\lambda_s = 0.525\ m$
2. Identify the unknown. λ_{obs}
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $\lambda_{\text{obs}}=\lambda_s\sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{u}{c}}{1-\frac{u}{c}}}$
4. Plug the knowns into the equation.
   Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda_{\text{obs}} &= \lambda_s\sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{u}{c}}{1-\frac{u}{c}}}\\ &= (0.525\text{ m})\sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{0.825\text{c}}{c}}{1-\frac{0.825\text{c}}{c}}}\\ &= 1.70\text{ m.}\end{aligned}$$

Discussion
Because the galaxy is moving away from the Earth, we expect the wavelengths of radiation it emits to be redshifted. The wavelength we calculated is 1.70 m, which is redshifted from the original wavelength of 0.525 m.

The relativistic Doppler shift is easy to observe. This equation has everyday applications ranging from Doppler-shifted radar velocity measurements of transportation to Doppler-radar storm monitoring. In astronomical

observations, the relativistic Doppler shift provides velocity information such as the motion and distance of stars.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Suppose a space probe moves away from the Earth at a speed $0.350c$. It sends a radio wave message back to the Earth at a frequency of 1.50 GHz. At what frequency is the message received on the Earth?

Solution:

Answer

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}}=\text{f}_s\sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{u}{c}}{1+\frac{u}{c}}}=(1.50\text{ GHz})\sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{0.350\text{c}}{c}}{1+\frac{0.350\text{c}}{c}}}=1.04\text{ GHz}$$

Section Summary

- With classical velocity addition, velocities add like regular numbers in one-dimensional motion: $u=v+u\prime$, where v is the velocity between two observers, u is the velocity of an object relative to one observer, and $u\prime$ is the velocity relative to the other observer.
- Velocities cannot add to be greater than the speed of light. Relativistic velocity addition describes the velocities of an object moving at a relativistic speed:

  Equation:

$$\text{u}=\frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}}$$

- An observer of electromagnetic radiation sees **relativistic Doppler effects** if the source of the radiation is moving relative to the observer. The wavelength of the radiation is longer (called a red shift) than that

emitted by the source when the source moves away from the observer and shorter (called a blue shift) when the source moves toward the observer. The shifted wavelength is described by the equation

Equation:

$$\lambda_{\text{obs}}=\lambda_s\sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{u}{c}}{1-\frac{u}{c}}}$$

λ_{obs} is the observed wavelength, λ_s is the source wavelength, and u is the relative velocity of the source to the observer.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain the meaning of the terms “red shift” and “blue shift” as they relate to the relativistic Doppler effect.

Exercise:

Problem:

What happens to the relativistic Doppler effect when relative velocity is zero? Is this the expected result?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the relativistic Doppler effect consistent with the classical Doppler effect in the respect that λ_{obs} is larger for motion away?

Exercise:

Problem:

All galaxies farther away than about 50×10^6 ly exhibit a red shift in their emitted light that is proportional to distance, with those farther and farther away having progressively greater red shifts. What does this imply, assuming that the only source of red shift is relative motion? (Hint: At these large distances, it is space itself that is expanding, but the effect on light is the same.)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a spaceship heading straight towards the Earth at $0.750c$ can shoot a canister at $0.500c$ relative to the ship. (a) What is the velocity of the canister relative to the Earth, if it is shot directly at the Earth? (b) If it is shot directly away from the Earth?

Solution:

(a) $0.909c$

(b) $0.400c$

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat the previous problem with the ship heading directly away from the Earth.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a spaceship is approaching the Earth at $0.100c$ and a message capsule is sent toward it at $0.100c$ relative to the Earth, what is the speed of the capsule relative to the ship?

Solution:

$0.198c$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Suppose the speed of light were only 3000 m/s. A jet fighter moving toward a target on the ground at 800 m/s shoots bullets, each having a muzzle velocity of 1000 m/s. What are the bullets' velocity relative to the target? (b) If the speed of light was this small, would you observe relativistic effects in everyday life? Discuss.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a galaxy moving away from the Earth has a speed of 1000 km/s and emits 656 nm light characteristic of hydrogen (the most common element in the universe). (a) What wavelength would we observe on the Earth? (b) What type of electromagnetic radiation is this? (c) Why is the speed of the Earth in its orbit negligible here?

Solution:

a) 658 nm

b) red

c) $v/\text{c} = 9.92 \times 10^{-5}$ (negligible)

Exercise:

Problem:

A space probe speeding towards the nearest star moves at $0.250c$ and sends radio information at a broadcast frequency of 1.00 GHz. What frequency is received on the Earth?

Exercise:

Problem:

If two spaceships are heading directly towards each other at $0.800c$, at what speed must a canister be shot from the first ship to approach the other at $0.999c$ as seen by the second ship?

Solution:

$0.991c$

Exercise:

Problem:

Two planets are on a collision course, heading directly towards each other at $0.250c$. A spaceship sent from one planet approaches the second at $0.750c$ as seen by the second planet. What is the velocity of the ship relative to the first planet?

Exercise:

Problem:

When a missile is shot from one spaceship towards another, it leaves the first at $0.950c$ and approaches the other at $0.750c$. What is the relative velocity of the two ships?

Solution:

$-0.696c$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the relative velocity of two spaceships if one fires a missile at the other at $0.750c$ and the other observes it to approach at $0.950c$?

Exercise:

Problem:

Near the center of our galaxy, hydrogen gas is moving directly away from us in its orbit about a black hole. We receive 1900 nm electromagnetic radiation and know that it was 1875 nm when emitted by the hydrogen gas. What is the speed of the gas?

Solution:

$0.01324c$

Exercise:

Problem:

A highway patrol officer uses a device that measures the speed of vehicles by bouncing radar off them and measuring the Doppler shift. The outgoing radar has a frequency of 100 GHz and the returning echo has a frequency 15.0 kHz higher. What is the velocity of the vehicle? Note that there are two Doppler shifts in echoes. Be certain not to round off until the end of the problem, because the effect is small.

Exercise:

Problem:

Prove that for any relative velocity v between two observers, a beam of light sent from one to the other will approach at speed c (provided that v is less than c, of course).

Solution:

$u\prime = c$, so

$$\begin{aligned} u &= \frac{\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{u}\prime}{1+(\mathrm{vu}\prime/c^2)} = \frac{\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{c}}{1+(\mathrm{vc}/c^2)} = \frac{\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{c}}{1+(v/c)} \\ &= \frac{c(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{c})}{\mathrm{c}+\mathrm{v}} = c \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that for any relative velocity v between two observers, a beam of light projected by one directly away from the other will move away at the speed of light (provided that v is less than c, of course).

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) All but the closest galaxies are receding from our own Milky Way Galaxy. If a galaxy 12.0×10^9 ly ly away is receding from us at 0. $0.900c$, at what velocity relative to us must we send an exploratory probe to approach the other galaxy at $0.990c$, as measured from that galaxy? (b) How long will it take the probe to reach the other galaxy as measured from the Earth? You may assume that the velocity of the other galaxy remains constant. (c) How long will it then take for a radio signal to be beamed back? (All of this is possible in principle, but not practical.)

Solution:

a) $0.99947c$

b) 1.2064×10^{11} y

c) 1.2058×10^{11} y (all to sufficient digits to show effects)

Glossary

classical velocity addition
: the method of adding velocities when $v{<<}c$; velocities add like regular numbers in one-dimensional motion: $u = v{+}u\prime$, where v is the

velocity between two observers, u is the velocity of an object relative to one observer, and $u\prime$ is the velocity relative to the other observer

relativistic velocity addition

the method of adding velocities of an object moving at a relativistic speed: $\text{u}=\frac{v+u\prime}{1+\frac{vu\prime}{c^2}}$, where v is the relative velocity between two observers, u is the velocity of an object relative to one observer, and $u\prime$ is the velocity relative to the other observer

relativistic Doppler effects

a change in wavelength of radiation that is moving relative to the observer; the wavelength of the radiation is longer (called a red shift) than that emitted by the source when the source moves away from the observer and shorter (called a blue shift) when the source moves toward the observer; the shifted wavelength is described by the equation

Equation:

$$\lambda_{\text{obs}}=\lambda_s\sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{u}{c}}{1-\frac{u}{c}}}$$

where λ_{obs} is the observed wavelength, λ_s is the source wavelength, and u is the velocity of the source to the observer

Relativistic Momentum

- Calculate relativistic momentum.
- Explain why the only mass it makes sense to talk about is rest mass.

Momentum is an important concept for these football players from the University of California at Berkeley and the University of California at Davis. Players with more mass often have a larger impact because their momentum is larger. For objects moving at relativistic speeds, the effect is even greater. (credit: John Martinez Pavliga)

In classical physics, momentum is a simple product of mass and velocity. However, we saw in the last section that when special relativity is taken into account, massive objects have a speed limit. What effect do you think mass and velocity have on the momentum of objects moving at relativistic speeds?

Momentum is one of the most important concepts in physics. The broadest form of Newton's second law is stated in terms of momentum. Momentum is conserved whenever the net external force on a system is zero. This makes momentum conservation a fundamental tool for analyzing collisions. All of Work, Energy, and Energy Resources is devoted to momentum, and momentum has been important for many other topics as well, particularly where collisions were involved. We will see that momentum has the same importance in modern physics. Relativistic momentum is conserved, and much of what we know about subatomic structure comes from the analysis of collisions of accelerator-produced relativistic particles.

The first postulate of relativity states that the laws of physics are the same in all inertial frames. Does the law of conservation of momentum survive this requirement at high velocities? The answer is yes, provided that the momentum is defined as follows.

Note:

Relativistic Momentum
Relativistic momentum p is classical momentum multiplied by the relativistic factor γ.
Equation:

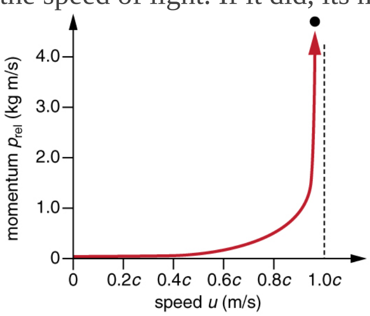
$$p = \gamma mu,$$

where m is the **rest mass** of the object, u is its velocity relative to an observer, and the relativistic factor
Equation:

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{u^2}{c^2}}}.$$

Note that we use u for velocity here to distinguish it from relative velocity v between observers. Only one observer is being considered here. With p defined in this way, total momentum p_{tot} is conserved whenever the net external force is zero, just as in classical physics. Again we see that the relativistic quantity becomes virtually the same as the classical at low velocities. That is, relativistic momentum γmu becomes the classical mu at low velocities, because γ is very nearly equal to 1 at low velocities.

Relativistic momentum has the same intuitive feel as classical momentum. It is greatest for large masses moving at high velocities, but, because of the factor γ, relativistic momentum approaches infinity as u approaches c. (See [link].) This is another indication that an object with mass cannot reach the speed of light. If it did, its momentum would become infinite, an unreasonable value.



Relativistic momentum approaches infinity as the velocity of an object approaches the speed of light.

Note:
Misconception Alert: Relativistic Mass and Momentum
The relativistically correct definition of momentum as $p = \gamma mu$ is sometimes taken to imply that mass varies with velocity: $m_{\text{var}} = \gamma m$, particularly in older textbooks. However, note that m is the mass of

the object as measured by a person at rest relative to the object. Thus, m is defined to be the rest mass, which could be measured at rest, perhaps using gravity. When a mass is moving relative to an observer, the only way that its mass can be determined is through collisions or other means in which momentum is involved. Since the mass of a moving object cannot be determined independently of momentum, the only meaningful mass is rest mass. Thus, when we use the term mass, assume it to be identical to rest mass.

Relativistic momentum is defined in such a way that the conservation of momentum will hold in all inertial frames. Whenever the net external force on a system is zero, relativistic momentum is conserved, just as is the case for classical momentum. This has been verified in numerous experiments.

In Relativistic Energy, the relationship of relativistic momentum to energy is explored. That subject will produce our first inkling that objects without mass may also have momentum.
Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

What is the momentum of an electron traveling at a speed $0.985c$? The rest mass of the electron is 9.11×10^{-31} kg.

Solution:
Answer
Equation:

$$p = \gamma \text{mu} = \frac{\text{mu}}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{u^2}{c^2}}} = \frac{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(0.985)(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s})}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{(0.985c)^2}{c^2}}} = 1.56 \times 10^{-21}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$$

Section Summary

- The law of conservation of momentum is valid whenever the net external force is zero and for relativistic momentum. Relativistic momentum p is classical momentum multiplied by the relativistic factor γ.
- $p = \gamma\text{mu}$, where m is the rest mass of the object, u is its velocity relative to an observer, and the relativistic factor $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{u^2}{c^2}}}$.
- At low velocities, relativistic momentum is equivalent to classical momentum.
- Relativistic momentum approaches infinity as u approaches c. This implies that an object with mass cannot reach the speed of light.
- Relativistic momentum is conserved, just as classical momentum is conserved.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: How does modern relativity modify the law of conservation of momentum?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is it possible for an external force to be acting on a system and relativistic momentum to be conserved? Explain.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the momentum of a helium nucleus having a mass of 6.68×10^{-27} kg that is moving at $0.200c$.

Solution:

$4.09 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem: What is the momentum of an electron traveling at $0.980c$?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the momentum of a 1.00×10^{9} kg asteroid heading towards the Earth at $30.0\ \text{km/s}$. (b) Find the ratio of this momentum to the classical momentum. (Hint: Use the approximation that $\gamma = 1 + (1/2)v^2/c^2$ at low velocities.)

Solution:

(a) $3.000000015 \times 10^{13}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$.

(b) Ratio of relativistic to classical momenta equals 1.000000005 (extra digits to show small effects)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the momentum of a 2000 kg satellite orbiting at 4.00 km/s? (b) Find the ratio of this momentum to the classical momentum. (Hint: Use the approximation that $\gamma = 1 + (1/2)v^2/c^2$ at low velocities.)

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the velocity of an electron that has a momentum of 3.04×10^{-21} kg·m/s? Note that you must calculate the velocity to at least four digits to see the difference from c.

Solution:

$2.9957 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem: Find the velocity of a proton that has a momentum of $4.48 \times -10^{-19}\ \mathrm{kg{\cdot}m/s}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the speed of a 1.00-μg particle of dust that has the same momentum as a proton moving at $0.999c$. (b) What does the small speed tell us about the mass of a proton compared to even a tiny amount of macroscopic matter?

Solution:

(a) $1.121 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{m/s}$

(b) The small speed tells us that the mass of a proton is substantially smaller than that of even a tiny amount of macroscopic matter!

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate γ for a proton that has a momentum of $1.00\ \mathrm{kg{\cdot}m/s}$. (b) What is its speed? Such protons form a rare component of cosmic radiation with uncertain origins.

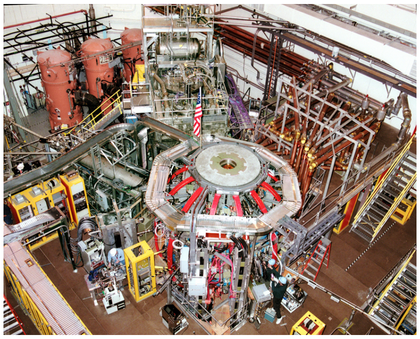
Glossary

relativistic momentum
: p, the momentum of an object moving at relativistic velocity; $p = \gamma mu$, where m is the rest mass of the object, u is its velocity relative to an observer, and the relativistic factor $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{u^2}{c^2}}}$

rest mass
: the mass of an object as measured by a person at rest relative to the object

Relativistic Energy

- Compute total energy of a relativistic object.
- Compute the kinetic energy of a relativistic object.
- Describe rest energy, and explain how it can be converted to other forms.
- Explain why massive particles cannot reach C.



The National Spherical Torus Experiment (NSTX) has a fusion reactor in which hydrogen isotopes undergo fusion to produce helium. In this process, a relatively small mass of fuel is converted into a large amount of energy. (credit: Princeton Plasma Physics Laboratory)

A tokamak is a form of experimental fusion reactor, which can change mass to energy. Accomplishing this requires an understanding of relativistic energy. Nuclear reactors are proof of the conservation of relativistic energy.

Conservation of energy is one of the most important laws in physics. Not only does energy have many important forms, but each form can be converted to any other. We know that classically the total amount of energy in a system remains constant. Relativistically, energy is still conserved, provided its definition is altered to include the possibility of mass changing to energy, as in the reactions that occur within a nuclear reactor. Relativistic energy is intentionally defined so that it will be conserved in all inertial frames, just as is the case for relativistic momentum. As a consequence, we learn that several fundamental quantities are related in ways not known in classical physics. All of these relationships are verified by experiment and have fundamental consequences. The altered definition of energy

contains some of the most fundamental and spectacular new insights into nature found in recent history.

Total Energy and Rest Energy

The first postulate of relativity states that the laws of physics are the same in all inertial frames. Einstein showed that the law of conservation of energy is valid relativistically, if we define energy to include a relativistic factor.

Note:
Total Energy
Total energy E is defined to be
Equation:

$$E = \gamma mc^2,$$

where m is mass, c is the speed of light, $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$, and v is the velocity of the mass relative to an observer. There are many aspects of the total energy E that we will discuss—among them are how kinetic and potential energies are included in E, and how E is related to relativistic momentum. But first, note that at rest, total energy is not zero. Rather, when $v = 0$, we have $\gamma = 1$, and an object has rest energy.

Note:
Rest Energy
Rest energy is
Equation:

$$E_0 = mc^2.$$

This is the correct form of Einstein's most famous equation, which for the first time showed that energy is related to the mass of an object at rest. For example, if energy is stored in the object, its rest mass increases. This also implies that mass can be destroyed to release energy. The implications of these first two equations regarding relativistic energy are so broad that they were not completely recognized for some years after Einstein published them in 1907, nor was the experimental proof that they are correct widely recognized at first. Einstein, it should be noted, did understand and describe the meanings and implications of his theory.

Example:
Calculating Rest Energy: Rest Energy is Very Large
Calculate the rest energy of a 1.00-g mass.
Strategy
One gram is a small mass—less than half the mass of a penny. We can multiply this mass, in SI units, by the speed of light squared to find the equivalent rest energy.
Solution

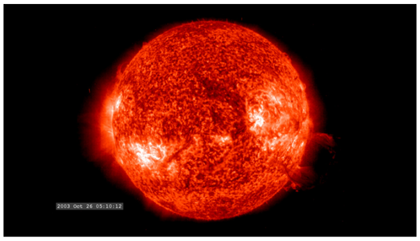
1. Identify the knowns. $m = 1.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg}$; $c = 3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}$
2. Identify the unknown. E_0
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $E_0 = mc^2$
4. Plug the knowns into the equation.
   Equation:
   $$\begin{aligned} E_0 &= mc^2 = (1.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg})(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s})^2 \\ &= 9.00 \times 10^{13}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 \end{aligned}$$
5. Convert units.

   Noting that $1\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 = 1\ \text{J}$, we see the rest mass energy is
   Equation:
   $$E_0 = 9.00 \times 10^{13}\ \text{J}.$$

Discussion
This is an enormous amount of energy for a 1.00-g mass. We do not notice this energy, because it is generally not available. Rest energy is large because the speed of light c is a large number and c^2 is a very large number, so that mc^2 is huge for any macroscopic mass. The 9.00×10^{13} J rest mass energy for 1.00 g is about twice the energy released by the Hiroshima atomic bomb and about 10,000 times the kinetic energy of a large aircraft carrier. If a way can be found to convert rest mass energy into some other form (and all forms of energy can be converted into one another), then huge amounts of energy can be obtained from the destruction of mass.

Today, the practical applications of *the conversion of mass into another form of energy*, such as in nuclear weapons and nuclear power plants, are well known. But examples also existed when Einstein first proposed the correct form of relativistic energy, and he did describe some of them. Nuclear radiation had been discovered in the previous decade, and it had been a mystery as to where its energy originated. The explanation was that, in certain nuclear processes, a small amount of mass is destroyed and energy is released and carried by nuclear radiation. But the amount of mass destroyed is so small that it is difficult to detect that any is missing. Although Einstein proposed this as the source of energy in the radioactive salts

then being studied, it was many years before there was broad recognition that mass could be and, in fact, commonly is converted to energy. (See [link].)



(a)

(b)

The Sun (a) and the Susquehanna Steam Electric Station (b) both convert mass into energy—the Sun via nuclear fusion, the electric station via nuclear fission. (credits: (a) NASA/Goddard Space Flight Center, Scientific Visualization Studio; (b) U.S. government)

Because of the relationship of rest energy to mass, we now consider mass to be a form of energy rather than something separate. There had not even been a hint of this prior to Einstein's work. Such conversion is now known to be the source of the Sun's energy, the energy of nuclear decay, and even the source of energy keeping Earth's interior hot.

Stored Energy and Potential Energy

What happens to energy stored in an object at rest, such as the energy put into a battery by charging it, or the energy stored in a toy gun's compressed spring? The energy input becomes part of the total energy of the object and, thus, increases its rest mass. All stored and potential energy becomes mass in a system. Why is it we don't ordinarily notice this? In fact, conservation of mass (meaning total mass is constant) was one of the great laws verified by 19th-century science. Why was it not noticed to be incorrect? The following example helps answer these questions.

Example:
Calculating Rest Mass: A Small Mass Increase due to Energy Input
A car battery is rated to be able to move 600 ampere-hours $(\mathrm{A{\cdot}h})$ of charge at 12.0 V. (a) Calculate the increase in rest mass of such a battery when it is taken from being fully depleted to being fully charged. (b) What percent increase is this, given the battery's mass is 20.0 kg?
Strategy
In part (a), we first must find the energy stored in the battery, which equals what the battery can supply in the form of electrical potential energy. Since $\mathrm{PE_{elec}} = \mathrm{qV}$, we have to calculate the charge q in $600\ \mathrm{A{\cdot}h}$, which is the product of the current I and the time t. We then multiply the result by 12.0 V. We can then calculate the battery's increase in mass using $\Delta E = \mathrm{PE_{elec}} = (\Delta m)c^2$. Part (b) is a simple ratio converted to a percentage.
Solution for (a)

1. Identify the knowns. $I \cdot t = 600\ \mathrm{A \cdot h}$; $V = 12.0\ \mathrm{V}$; $c = 3.00 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m/s}$
2. Identify the unknown. Δm
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $\mathrm{PE_{elec}} = (\Delta m)c^2$
4. Rearrange the equation to solve for the unknown. $\Delta m = \frac{\mathrm{PE_{elec}}}{c^2}$
5. Plug the knowns into the equation.
   Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta m &= \frac{\mathrm{PE_{elec}}}{c^2} \\ &= \frac{\mathrm{qV}}{c^2} \\ &= \frac{(It)V}{c^2} \\ &= \frac{(600\ \mathrm{A{\cdot}h})(12.0\ \mathrm{V})}{(3.00\times10^8)^2}.\end{aligned}$$

   Write amperes A as coulombs per second (C/s), and convert hours to seconds.
   Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta m &= \frac{(600\ \mathrm{C/s{\cdot}h}\left(\frac{3600\ \mathrm{s}}{1\ \mathrm{h}}\right)(12.0\ \mathrm{J/C})}{(3.00\times10^{8}\ \mathrm{m/s})^2}\\ &= \frac{(2.16\times10^{6}\ \mathrm{C})(12.0\ \mathrm{J/C})}{(3.00\times10^{8}\ \mathrm{m/s})^2}\end{aligned}$$

Using the conversion $1\ \mathrm{kg}\cdot\mathrm{m}^2/\mathrm{s}^2 = 1\ \mathrm{J}$, we can write the mass as

$\Delta m = 2.88\times10^{-10}\ \mathrm{kg}.$

Solution for (b)

1. Identify the knowns. $\Delta m = 2.88\times10^{-10}\ \mathrm{kg}$; $m = 20.0\ \mathrm{kg}$
2. Identify the unknown. % change
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $\%\ \text{increase} = \frac{\Delta m}{m}\times100\%$
4. Plug the knowns into the equation.
   Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\%\ \text{increase} &= \frac{\Delta m}{m}\times100\%\\ &= \frac{2.88\times10^{-10}\ \mathrm{kg}}{20.0\ \mathrm{kg}}\times100\%\\ &= 1.44\times10^{-9}\%.\end{aligned}$$

Discussion
Both the actual increase in mass and the percent increase are very small, since energy is divided by c^2, a very large number. We would have to be able to measure the mass of the battery to a precision of a billionth of a percent, or 1 part in 10^{11}, to notice this increase. It is no wonder that the mass variation is not readily observed. In fact, this change in mass is so small that we may question how you could verify it is real. The answer is found in nuclear processes in which the percentage of mass destroyed is large enough to be measured. The mass of the fuel of a nuclear reactor, for example, is measurably smaller when its energy has been used. In that case, stored energy has been released (converted mostly to heat and electricity) and the rest mass has decreased. This is also the case when you use the energy stored in a battery, except that the stored energy is much greater in nuclear processes, making the change in mass measurable in practice as well as in theory.

Kinetic Energy and the Ultimate Speed Limit

Kinetic energy is energy of motion. Classically, kinetic energy has the familiar expression $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. The relativistic expression for kinetic energy is obtained from the work-energy theorem. This theorem states that the net work on a system goes into kinetic energy. If our system starts from rest, then the work-energy theorem is
Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = \text{KE}.$$

Relativistically, at rest we have rest energy $E_0 = mc^2$. The work increases this to the total energy $E = \gamma mc^2$. Thus,
Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = E - E_0 = \gamma mc^2 - mc^2 = (\gamma - 1)\, mc^2.$$

Relativistically, we have $W_{\text{net}} = \text{KE}_{\text{rel}}$.

Note:
Relativistic Kinetic Energy
Relativistic kinetic energy is
Equation:

$$\text{KE}_{\text{rel}} = (\gamma - 1)\, mc^2.$$

When motionless, we have $v = 0$ and
Equation:

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = 1,$$

so that $\text{KE}_{\text{rel}} = 0$ at rest, as expected. But the expression for relativistic kinetic energy (such as total energy and rest energy) does not look much like the classical $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. To show that the classical expression for kinetic energy is obtained at low velocities, we note that the binomial expansion for γ at low velocities gives
Equation:

$$\gamma = 1 + \frac{1}{2}\frac{v^2}{c^2}.$$

A binomial expansion is a way of expressing an algebraic quantity as a sum of an infinite series of terms. In some cases, as in the limit of small velocity here, most terms are very small. Thus the expression derived for γ here is not exact, but it is a very accurate approximation. Thus, at low velocities,
Equation:

$$\gamma - 1 = \frac{1}{2}\frac{v^2}{c^2}.$$

Entering this into the expression for relativistic kinetic energy gives

Equation:

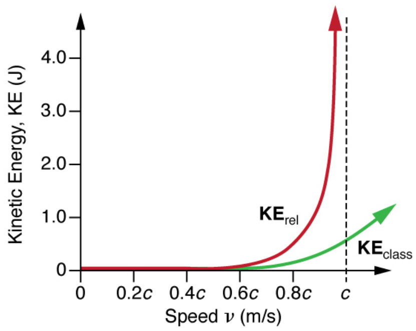
$$\text{KE}_{\text{rel}} = \left[\frac{1}{2}\frac{v^2}{c^2}\right]mc^2 = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \text{KE}_{\text{class}}.$$

So, in fact, relativistic kinetic energy does become the same as classical kinetic energy when $v << c$.

It is even more interesting to investigate what happens to kinetic energy when the velocity of an object approaches the speed of light. We know that γ becomes infinite as v approaches c, so that KE_{rel} also becomes infinite as the velocity approaches the speed of light. (See [link].) An infinite amount of work (and, hence, an infinite amount of energy input) is required to accelerate a mass to the speed of light.

Note:
The Speed of Light
No object with mass can attain the speed of light.

So the speed of light is the ultimate speed limit for any particle having mass. All of this is consistent with the fact that velocities less than c always add to less than c. Both the relativistic form for kinetic energy and the ultimate speed limit being c have been confirmed in detail in numerous experiments. No matter how much energy is put into accelerating a mass, its velocity can only approach—not reach—the speed of light.



This graph of KE_{rel}

versus velocity shows how kinetic energy approaches infinity as velocity approaches the speed of light. It is thus not possible for an object having mass to reach the speed of light. Also shown is $\mathrm{KE_{class}}$, the classical kinetic energy, which is similar to relativistic kinetic energy at low velocities. Note that much more energy is required to reach high velocities than predicted classically.

Example:
Comparing Kinetic Energy: Relativistic Energy Versus Classical Kinetic Energy
An electron has a velocity $v = 0.990c$. (a) Calculate the kinetic energy in MeV of the electron. (b) Compare this with the classical value for kinetic energy at this velocity. (The mass of an electron is $9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \mathrm{kg}$.)

Strategy

The expression for relativistic kinetic energy is always correct, but for (a) it must be used since the velocity is highly relativistic (close to c). First, we will calculate the relativistic factor γ, and then use it to determine the relativistic kinetic energy. For (b), we will calculate the classical kinetic energy (which would be close to the relativistic value if v were less than a few percent of c) and see that it is not the same.

Solution for (a)

1. Identify the knowns. $v = 0.990c$; $m = 9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \mathrm{kg}$
2. Identify the unknown. $\mathrm{KE_{rel}}$
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $\mathrm{KE_{rel}} = (\gamma - 1)\, mc^2$
4. Plug the knowns into the equation.

   First calculate γ. We will carry extra digits because this is an intermediate calculation.
   Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{(0.990c)^2}{c^2}}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(0.990)^2}} \\ &= 7.0888\end{aligned}$$

Next, we use this value to calculate the kinetic energy.
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{KE}_{\text{rel}} &= (\gamma-1)\,mc^2 \\ &= (7.0888-1)(9.11\times10^{-31}\text{ kg})(3.00\times10^{8}\text{ m/s})^2 \\ &= 4.99\times10^{-13}\text{ J}\end{aligned}$$

5. Convert units.
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{KE}_{\text{rel}} &= (4.99\times10^{-13}\text{ J})\left(\frac{1\text{ MeV}}{1.60\times10^{-13}\text{ J}}\right) \\ &= 3.12\text{ MeV}\end{aligned}$$

Solution for (b)

1. List the knowns. $v=0.990c$; $m=9.11\times10^{-31}$ kg
2. List the unknown. KE_{class}
3. Choose the appropriate equation. $\text{KE}_{\text{class}}=\frac{1}{2}mv^2$
4. Plug the knowns into the equation.
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{KE}_{\text{class}} &= \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(9.00\times10^{-31}\text{ kg})(0.990)^2(3.00\times10^{8}\text{ m/s})^2 \\ &= 4.02\times10^{-14}\text{ J}\end{aligned}$$

5. Convert units.
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{KE}_{\text{class}} &= 4.02\times10^{-14}\text{ J}\left(\frac{1\text{ MeV}}{1.60\times10^{-13}\text{ J}}\right) \\ &= 0.251\text{ MeV}\end{aligned}$$

Discussion

As might be expected, since the velocity is 99.0% of the speed of light, the classical kinetic energy is significantly off from the correct relativistic value. Note also that the classical value is much smaller than the relativistic value. In fact, $\text{KE}_{\text{rel}}/\text{KE}_{\text{class}} = 12.4$ here. This is some indication of how difficult it is to get a mass moving close to the speed of light. Much more energy is required than predicted classically. Some people interpret this extra energy as going into increasing the mass of the system, but, as discussed in Relativistic Momentum, this cannot be verified unambiguously. What is certain is that ever-increasing amounts of energy are needed to get the velocity of a mass a little closer to that of light. An energy of 3 MeV is a very small amount for an electron, and it can be achieved with present-day particle accelerators. SLAC, for example, can accelerate electrons to over $50 \times 10^9 \text{ eV} = 50{,}000 \text{ MeV}$.

Is there any point in getting v a little closer to c than 99.0% or 99.9%? The answer is yes. We learn a great deal by doing this. The energy that goes into a high-velocity mass can be converted to any other form, including into entirely new masses. (See [link].) Most of what we know about the substructure of matter and the collection of exotic short-lived particles in nature has been learned this way. Particles are accelerated to extremely relativistic energies and made to collide with other particles, producing totally new species of particles. Patterns in the characteristics of these previously unknown particles hint at a basic substructure for all matter. These particles and some of their characteristics will be covered in Particle Physics.

The Fermi National Accelerator Laboratory, near Batavia, Illinois, was a subatomic particle collider that accelerated protons and antiprotons to attain energies up to 1 Tev (a trillion electronvolts). The circular ponds near the rings were built to dissipate waste heat. This accelerator was shut down in September 2011. (credit: Fermilab, Reidar Hahn)

Relativistic Energy and Momentum

We know classically that kinetic energy and momentum are related to each other, since
Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE}_{\text{class}} = \frac{p^2}{2m} = \frac{(mv)^2}{2m} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2.$$

Relativistically, we can obtain a relationship between energy and momentum by algebraically manipulating their definitions. This produces
Equation:

$$E^2 = (\mathrm{pc})^2 + (\mathrm{mc}^2)^2,$$

where E is the relativistic total energy and p is the relativistic momentum. This relationship between relativistic energy and relativistic momentum is more complicated than the classical, but we can gain some interesting new insights by examining it. First, total energy is related to momentum and rest mass. At rest, momentum is zero, and the equation gives the total energy to be the rest energy mc^2 (so this equation is consistent with the discussion of rest energy above). However, as the mass is accelerated, its momentum p increases, thus increasing the total energy. At sufficiently high velocities, the rest energy term $(mc^2)^2$ becomes negligible compared with the momentum term $(pc)^2$; thus, $E = pc$ at extremely relativistic velocities.

If we consider momentum p to be distinct from mass, we can determine the implications of the equation $E^2 = (\mathrm{pc})^2 + (\mathrm{mc}^2)^2$, for a particle that has no mass. If we take m to be zero in this equation, then $E = \mathrm{pc}$, or $p = E/c$. Massless particles have this momentum. There are several massless particles found in nature, including photons (these are quanta of electromagnetic radiation). Another implication is that a massless particle must travel at speed c and only at speed c. While it is beyond the scope of this text to examine the relationship in the equation $E^2 = (\mathrm{pc})^2 + (\mathrm{mc}^2)^2$, in detail, we can see that the relationship has important implications in special relativity.

Note:
Problem-Solving Strategies for Relativity

Examine the situation to	. Relativistic	$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$	, the quantitative	γ is very close to 1, then relativistic effects are small and differ very

determine that it is necessary to use relativity	effects are related to relativistic factor. If little from the usually easier classical calculations.
Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns).	
Make a list of what is given or can be inferred from the problem as stated (identify the knowns).	Look in particular for information on relative velocity v.
Make certain you understand the conceptual aspects of the problem before making any calculations.	Decide, for example, which observer sees time dilated or length contracted before plugging into equations. If you have thought about who sees what, who is moving with the event being observed, who sees proper time, and so on, you will find it much easier to determine if your calculation is reasonable.
Determine the primary type of calculation to be done to find the unknowns identified above.	You will find the section summary helpful in determining whether a length contraction, relativistic kinetic energy, or some other concept is involved.
Do not round off during the calculation.	As noted in the text, you must often perform your calculations to many digits to see the desired effect. You may round off at the very end of the problem, but do not use a rounded number in a subsequent calculation.
Check the answer to see if it is reasonable: Does it make sense?	This may be more difficult for relativity, since we do not encounter it directly. But you can look for velocities greater than c or relativistic effects that are in the wrong direction (such as a time contraction where a dilation was expected).

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A photon decays into an electron-positron pair. What is the kinetic energy of the electron if its speed is $0.992c$?

Solution:
Answer
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{KE}_{\text{rel}} &= (\gamma - 1)\, mc^2 = \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} - 1 \right) mc^2 \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{(0.992c)^2}{c^2}}} - 1 \right) (9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s})^2 = 5.67 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{J}
\end{aligned}$$

Section Summary

- Relativistic energy is conserved as long as we define it to include the possibility of mass changing to energy.
- Total Energy is defined as: $E = \gamma mc^2$, where $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$.
- Rest energy is $E_0 = mc^2$, meaning that mass is a form of energy. If energy is stored in an object, its mass increases. Mass can be destroyed to release energy.
- We do not ordinarily notice the increase or decrease in mass of an object because the change in mass is so small for a large increase in energy.
- The relativistic work-energy theorem is $W_{\text{net}} = E - E_0 = \gamma mc^2 - mc^2 = (\gamma - 1) mc^2$.
- Relativistically, $W_{\text{net}} = \text{KE}_{\text{rel}}$, where KE_{rel} is the relativistic kinetic energy.
- Relativistic kinetic energy is $\text{KE}_{\text{rel}} = (\gamma - 1) mc^2$, where $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$. At low velocities, relativistic kinetic energy reduces to classical kinetic energy.
- **No object with mass can attain the speed of light** because an infinite amount of work and an infinite amount of energy input is required to accelerate a mass to the speed of light.
- The equation $E^2 = (pc)^2 + (mc^2)^2$ relates the relativistic total energy E and the relativistic momentum p. At extremely high velocities, the rest energy mc^2 becomes negligible, and $E = pc$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How are the classical laws of conservation of energy and conservation of mass modified by modern relativity?

Exercise:

Problem:

What happens to the mass of water in a pot when it cools, assuming no molecules escape or are added? Is this observable in practice? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider a thought experiment. You place an expanded balloon of air on weighing scales outside in the early morning. The balloon stays on the scales and you are able to measure changes in its mass. Does the mass of the balloon change as the day progresses? Discuss the difficulties in carrying out this experiment.

Exercise:

Problem:

The mass of the fuel in a nuclear reactor decreases by an observable amount as it puts out energy. Is the same true for the coal and oxygen combined in a conventional power plant? If so, is this observable in practice for the coal and oxygen? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

We know that the velocity of an object with mass has an upper limit of c. Is there an upper limit on its momentum? Its energy? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem: Given the fact that light travels at c, can it have mass? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

If you use an Earth-based telescope to project a laser beam onto the Moon, you can move the spot across the Moon's surface at a velocity greater than the speed of light. Does this violate modern relativity? (Note that light is being sent from the Earth to the Moon, not across the surface of the Moon.)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the rest energy of an electron, given its mass is 9.11×10^{-31} kg? Give your answer in joules and MeV.

Solution:

8.20×10^{-14} J

0.512 MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the rest energy in joules and MeV of a proton, given its mass is 1.67×10^{-27} kg.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the rest energies of a proton and a neutron (the two constituents of nuclei) are 938.3 and 939.6 MeV respectively, what is the difference in their masses in kilograms?

Solution:

2.3×10^{-30} kg

Exercise:

Problem:

The Big Bang that began the universe is estimated to have released 10^{68} J of energy. How many stars could half this energy create, assuming the average star's mass is 4.00×10^{30} kg?

Exercise:

Problem:

A supernova explosion of a 2.00×10^{31} kg star produces 1.00×10^{44} J of energy. (a) How many kilograms of mass are converted to energy in the explosion? (b) What is the ratio $\Delta m/m$ of mass destroyed to the original mass of the star?

Solution:

(a) 1.11×10^{27} kg

(b) 5.56×10^{-5}

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using data from [link], calculate the mass converted to energy by the fission of 1.00 kg of uranium. (b) What is the ratio of mass destroyed to the original mass, $\Delta m/m$?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using data from [link], calculate the amount of mass converted to energy by the fusion of 1.00 kg of hydrogen. (b) What is the ratio of mass destroyed to the original mass, $\Delta m/m$? (c) How does this compare with $\Delta m/m$ for the fission of 1.00 kg of uranium?

Solution:

7.1×10^{-3} kg

7.1×10^{-3}

The ratio is greater for hydrogen.

Exercise:

Problem:

There is approximately 10^{34} J of energy available from fusion of hydrogen in the world's oceans. (a) If 10^{33} J of this energy were utilized, what would be the decrease in mass of the oceans? Assume that 0.08% of the mass of a water molecule is converted to energy during the fusion of hydrogen. (b) How great a volume of water does this correspond to? (c) Comment on whether this is a significant fraction of the total mass of the oceans.

Exercise:

Problem:

A muon has a rest mass energy of 105.7 MeV, and it decays into an electron and a massless particle. (a) If all the lost mass is converted into the electron's kinetic energy, find γ for the electron. (b) What is the electron's velocity?

Solution:

208

$0.999988c$

Exercise:

Problem:

A π-meson is a particle that decays into a muon and a massless particle. The π-meson has a rest mass energy of 139.6 MeV, and the muon has a rest mass energy of 105.7 MeV. Suppose the π-meson is at rest and all of the missing mass goes into the muon's kinetic energy. How fast will the muon move?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the relativistic kinetic energy of a 1000-kg car moving at 30.0 m/s if the speed of light were only 45.0 m/s. (b) Find the ratio of the relativistic kinetic energy to classical.

Solution:

6.92×10^{5} J

1.54

Exercise:

Problem:

Alpha decay is nuclear decay in which a helium nucleus is emitted. If the helium nucleus has a mass of 6.80×10^{-27} kg and is given 5.00 MeV of kinetic energy, what is its velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Beta decay is nuclear decay in which an electron is emitted. If the electron is given 0.750 MeV of kinetic energy, what is its velocity? (b) Comment on how the high velocity is consistent with the kinetic energy as it compares to the rest mass energy of the electron.

Solution:

(a) $0.914c$

(b) The rest mass energy of an electron is 0.511 MeV, so the kinetic energy is approximately 150% of the rest mass energy. The electron should be traveling close to the speed of light.

Exercise:

Problem:

A positron is an antimatter version of the electron, having exactly the same mass. When a positron and an electron meet, they annihilate, converting all of their mass into energy. (a) Find the energy released, assuming negligible kinetic energy before the annihilation. (b) If this energy is given to a proton in the form of kinetic energy, what is its velocity? (c) If this energy is given to another electron in the form of kinetic energy, what is its velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the kinetic energy in MeV of a π-meson that lives 1.40×10^{-16} s as measured in the laboratory, and 0.840×10^{-16} s when at rest relative to an observer, given that its rest energy is 135 MeV?

Solution:

90.0 MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the kinetic energy in MeV of a neutron with a measured life span of 2065 s, given its rest energy is 939.6 MeV, and rest life span is 900s.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Show that $(pc)^2/(mc^2)^2 = \gamma^2 - 1$. This means that at large velocities $pc >> mc^2$. (b) Is $E \approx$ pc when $\gamma = 30.0$, as for the astronaut discussed in the twin paradox?

Solution:

(a) $E^2 = p^2c^2 + m^2c^4 = \gamma^2 m^2 c^4$, so that
$p^2c^2 = \left(\gamma^2 - 1\right)m^2c^4$, and therefore
$\frac{(pc)^2}{(mc^2)^2} = \gamma^2 - 1$

(b) yes

Exercise:

Problem:

One cosmic ray neutron has a velocity of $0.250c$ relative to the Earth. (a) What is the neutron's total energy in MeV? (b) Find its momentum. (c) Is $E \approx$ pc in this situation? Discuss in terms of the equation given in part (a) of the previous problem.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is γ for a proton having a mass energy of 938.3 MeV accelerated through an effective potential of 1.0 TV (teravolt) at Fermilab outside Chicago?

Solution:

1.07×10^3

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the effective accelerating potential for electrons at the Stanford Linear Accelerator, if $\gamma = 1.00 \times 10^5$ for them? (b) What is their total energy (nearly the same as kinetic in this case) in GeV?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using data from [link], find the mass destroyed when the energy in a barrel of crude oil is released. (b) Given these barrels contain 200 liters and assuming the density of crude oil is $750\ \text{kg/m}^3$, what is the ratio of mass destroyed to original mass, $\Delta m/m$?

Solution:

$6.56 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{kg}$

4.37×10^{-10}

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the energy released by the destruction of 1.00 kg of mass. (b) How many kilograms could be lifted to a 10.0 km height by this amount of energy?

Exercise:

Problem:

A Van de Graaff accelerator utilizes a 50.0 MV potential difference to accelerate charged particles such as protons. (a) What is the velocity of a proton accelerated by such a potential? (b) An electron?

Solution:

$0.314c$

$0.99995c$

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you use an average of $500\ \text{kW}\cdot\text{h}$ of electric energy per month in your home. (a) How long would 1.00 g of mass converted to electric energy with an efficiency of 38.0% last you? (b) How many homes could be supplied at the $500\ \text{kW}\cdot\text{h}$ per month rate for one year by the energy from the described mass conversion?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A nuclear power plant converts energy from nuclear fission into electricity with an efficiency of 35.0%. How much mass is destroyed in one year to produce a continuous 1000 MW of electric power? (b) Do you think it would be possible to observe this mass loss if the total mass of the fuel is 10^4 kg?

Solution:

(a) 1.00 kg

(b) This much mass would be measurable, but probably not observable just by looking because it is 0.01% of the total mass.

Exercise:

Problem:

Nuclear-powered rockets were researched for some years before safety concerns became paramount. (a) What fraction of a rocket's mass would have to be destroyed to get it into a low Earth orbit, neglecting the decrease in gravity? (Assume an orbital altitude of 250 km, and calculate both the kinetic energy (classical) and the gravitational potential energy needed.) (b) If the ship has a mass of 1.00×10^5 kg (100 tons), what total yield nuclear explosion in tons of TNT is needed?

Exercise:

Problem:

The Sun produces energy at a rate of 4.00×10^{26} W by the fusion of hydrogen. (a) How many kilograms of hydrogen undergo fusion each second? (b) If the Sun is 90.0% hydrogen and half of this can undergo fusion before the Sun changes character, how long could it produce energy at its current rate? (c) How many kilograms of mass is the Sun losing per second? (d) What fraction of its mass will it have lost in the time found in part (b)?

Solution:

(a) $6.3 \times 10^{11}\ \mathrm{kg/s}$

(b) $4.5 \times 10^{10}\ \mathrm{y}$

(c) $4.44 \times 10^{9}\ \mathrm{kg}$

(d) 0.32%

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

A proton has a mass of 1.67×10^{-27} kg. A physicist measures the proton's total energy to be 50.0 MeV. (a) What is the proton's kinetic energy? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider a highly relativistic particle. Discuss what is meant by the term “highly relativistic.” (Note that, in part, it means that the particle cannot be massless.) Construct a problem in which you calculate the wavelength of such a particle and show that it is very nearly the same as the wavelength of a massless particle, such as a photon, with the same energy. Among the things to be considered are the rest energy of the particle (it should be a known particle) and its total energy, which should be large compared to its rest energy.

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider an astronaut traveling to another star at a relativistic velocity. Construct a problem in which you calculate the time for the trip as observed on the Earth and as observed by the astronaut. Also calculate the amount of mass that must be converted to energy to get the astronaut and ship to the velocity travelled. Among the things to be considered are the distance to the star, the velocity, and the mass of the astronaut and ship. Unless your instructor directs you otherwise, do not include any energy given to other masses, such as rocket propellants.

Glossary

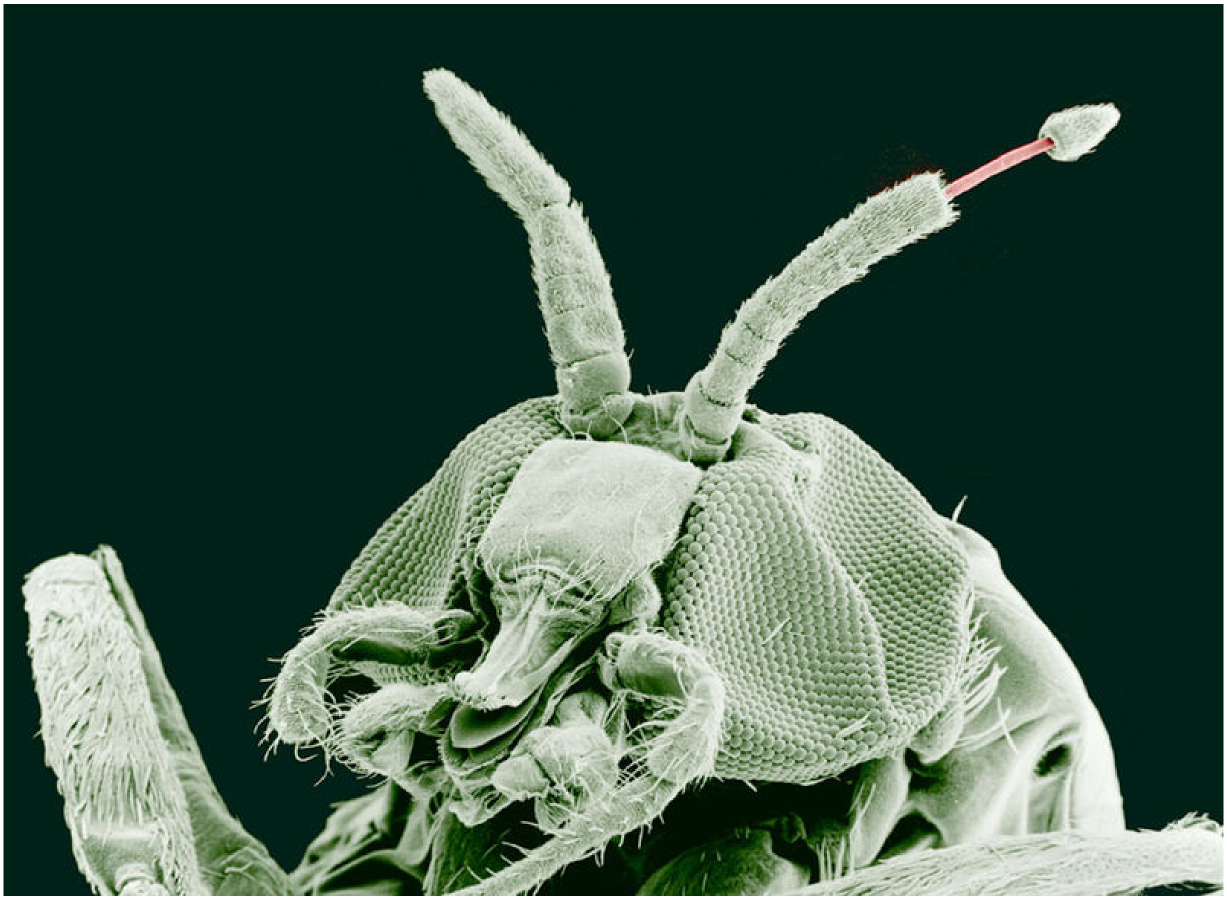
total energy
: defined as $E=\gamma mc^2$, where $\gamma =\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$

rest energy
: the energy stored in an object at rest: $E_0=mc^2$

relativistic kinetic energy
: the kinetic energy of an object moving at relativistic speeds: $\text{KE}_{\text{rel}}=(\gamma -1)mc^2$, where $\gamma =\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$

# Introduction to Quantum Physics
class="introduction"

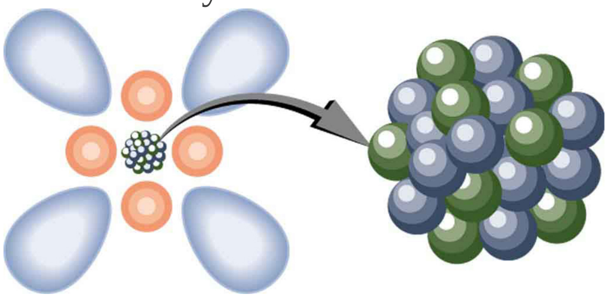
A black fly imaged by an electron microscope is as monstrous as any science-fiction creature. (credit: U.S. Department of Agriculture via Wikimedia Commons)



Quantum mechanics is the branch of physics needed to deal with submicroscopic objects. Because these objects are smaller than we can observe directly with our senses and generally must be observed with the aid of instruments, parts of quantum mechanics seem as foreign and bizarre as parts of relativity. But, like relativity, quantum mechanics has been shown to be valid—truth is often stranger than fiction.

Certain aspects of quantum mechanics are familiar to us. We accept as fact that matter is composed of atoms, the smallest unit of an element, and that these atoms combine to form molecules, the smallest unit of a compound. (See [link].) While we cannot see the individual water molecules in a stream, for example, we are aware that this is because molecules are so small and so numerous in that stream. When introducing atoms, we commonly say that electrons orbit atoms in discrete shells around a tiny nucleus, itself composed of smaller particles called protons and neutrons. We are also aware that electric charge comes in tiny units carried almost entirely by electrons and protons. As with water molecules in a stream, we

do not notice individual charges in the current through a lightbulb, because the charges are so small and so numerous in the macroscopic situations we sense directly.



Atoms and their substructure are familiar examples of objects that require quantum mechanics to be fully explained. Certain of their characteristics, such as the discrete electron shells, are classical physics explanations. In quantum mechanics we conceptualize discrete “electron clouds” around the nucleus.

Note:
Making Connections: Realms of Physics
Classical physics is a good approximation of modern physics under conditions first discussed in the The Nature of Science and Physics. Quantum mechanics is valid in general, and it must be used rather than classical physics to describe small objects, such as atoms.

Atoms, molecules, and fundamental electron and proton charges are all examples of physical entities that are **quantized**—that is, they appear only in certain discrete values and do not have every conceivable value.

Quantized is the opposite of continuous. We cannot have a fraction of an atom, or part of an electron's charge, or 14-1/3 cents, for example. Rather, everything is built of integral multiples of these substructures. Quantum physics is the branch of physics that deals with small objects and the quantization of various entities, including energy and angular momentum. Just as with classical physics, quantum physics has several subfields, such as mechanics and the study of electromagnetic forces. The **correspondence principle** states that in the classical limit (large, slow-moving objects), **quantum mechanics** becomes the same as classical physics. In this chapter, we begin the development of quantum mechanics and its description of the strange submicroscopic world. In later chapters, we will examine many areas, such as atomic and nuclear physics, in which quantum mechanics is crucial.

Glossary

quantized
: the fact that certain physical entities exist only with particular discrete values and not every conceivable value

correspondence principle
: in the classical limit (large, slow-moving objects), quantum mechanics becomes the same as classical physics

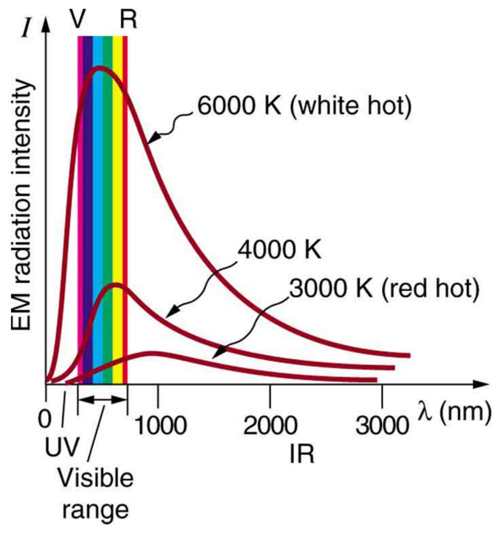
quantum mechanics
: the branch of physics that deals with small objects and with the quantization of various entities, especially energy

Quantization of Energy

- Explain Max Planck's contribution to the development of quantum mechanics.
- Explain why atomic spectra indicate quantization.

Planck's Contribution

Energy is quantized in some systems, meaning that the system can have only certain energies and not a continuum of energies, unlike the classical case. This would be like having only certain speeds at which a car can travel because its kinetic energy can have only certain values. We also find that some forms of energy transfer take place with discrete lumps of energy. While most of us are familiar with the quantization of matter into lumps called atoms, molecules, and the like, we are less aware that energy, too, can be quantized. Some of the earliest clues about the necessity of quantum mechanics over classical physics came from the quantization of energy.



Graphs of blackbody radiation (from an ideal radiator) at three different radiator temperatures. The intensity or rate of

radiation emission increases dramatically with temperature, and the peak of the spectrum shifts toward the visible and ultraviolet parts of the spectrum. The shape of the spectrum cannot be described with classical physics.

Where is the quantization of energy observed? Let us begin by considering the emission and absorption of electromagnetic (EM) radiation. The EM spectrum radiated by a hot solid is linked directly to the solid's temperature. (See [link].) An ideal radiator is one that has an emissivity of 1 at all wavelengths and, thus, is jet black. Ideal radiators are therefore called **blackbodies**, and their EM radiation is called **blackbody radiation**. It was discussed that the total intensity of the radiation varies as T^4, the fourth power of the absolute temperature of the body, and that the peak of the spectrum shifts to shorter wavelengths at higher temperatures. All of this seems quite continuous, but it was the curve of the spectrum of intensity versus wavelength that gave a clue that the energies of the atoms in the solid are quantized. In fact, providing a theoretical explanation for the experimentally measured shape of the spectrum was a mystery at the turn of the century. When this "ultraviolet catastrophe" was eventually solved, the answers led to new technologies such as computers and the sophisticated imaging techniques described in earlier chapters. Once again, physics as an enabling science changed the way we live.

The German physicist Max Planck (1858–1947) used the idea that atoms and molecules in a body act like oscillators to absorb and emit radiation. The energies of the oscillating atoms and molecules had to be quantized to correctly describe the shape of the blackbody spectrum. Planck deduced that the energy of an oscillator having a frequency f is given by

Equation:

$$E = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\text{hf}.$$

Here n is any nonnegative integer (0, 1, 2, 3, …). The symbol h stands for **Planck's constant**, given by

Equation:

$$h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}.$$

The equation $E = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\text{hf}$ means that an oscillator having a frequency f (emitting and absorbing EM radiation of frequency f) can have its energy increase or decrease only in *discrete* steps of size

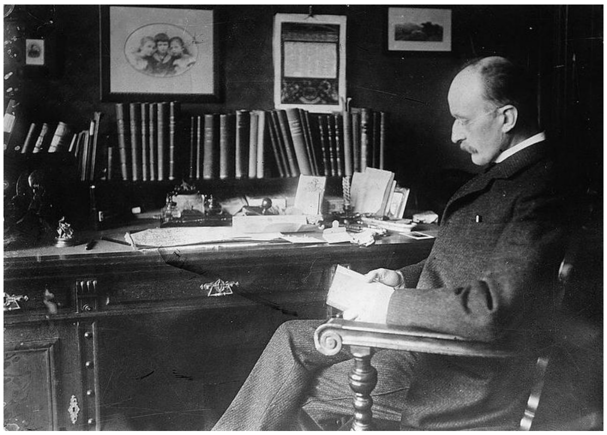
Equation:

$$\Delta E = \text{hf}.$$

It might be helpful to mention some macroscopic analogies of this quantization of energy phenomena. This is like a pendulum that has a characteristic oscillation frequency but can swing with only certain amplitudes. Quantization of energy also resembles a standing wave on a string that allows only particular harmonics described by integers. It is also similar to going up and down a hill using discrete stair steps rather than being able to move up and down a continuous slope. Your potential energy takes on discrete values as you move from step to step.

Using the quantization of oscillators, Planck was able to correctly describe the experimentally known shape of the blackbody spectrum. This was the first indication that energy is sometimes quantized on a small scale and earned him the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1918. Although Planck's theory comes from observations of a macroscopic object, its analysis is based on atoms and molecules. It was such a revolutionary departure from classical physics that Planck himself was reluctant to accept his own idea that energy states are not continuous. The general acceptance of Planck's energy quantization was greatly enhanced by Einstein's explanation of the photoelectric effect (discussed in the next section), which took energy

quantization a step further. Planck was fully involved in the development of both early quantum mechanics and relativity. He quickly embraced Einstein's special relativity, published in 1905, and in 1906 Planck was the first to suggest the correct formula for relativistic momentum, $p = \gamma mu$.



The German physicist Max Planck had a major influence on the early development of quantum mechanics, being the first to recognize that energy is sometimes quantized. Planck also made important contributions to special relativity and classical physics. (credit: Library of Congress, Prints and Photographs Division via Wikimedia Commons)

Note that Planck's constant h is a very small number. So for an infrared frequency of 10^{14} Hz being emitted by a blackbody, for example, the difference between energy levels is only $\Delta E = \text{hf}=(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\text{ J·s})(10^{14}\text{ Hz})= 6.63 \times 10^{-20}\text{ J}$, or about 0.4 eV. This 0.4 eV of energy is significant compared with typical atomic

energies, which are on the order of an electron volt, or thermal energies, which are typically fractions of an electron volt. But on a macroscopic or classical scale, energies are typically on the order of joules. Even if macroscopic energies are quantized, the quantum steps are too small to be noticed. This is an example of the correspondence principle. For a large object, quantum mechanics produces results indistinguishable from those of classical physics.

Atomic Spectra

Now let us turn our attention to the *emission and absorption of EM radiation by gases*. The Sun is the most common example of a body containing gases emitting an EM spectrum that includes visible light. We also see examples in neon signs and candle flames. Studies of emissions of hot gases began more than two centuries ago, and it was soon recognized that these emission spectra contained huge amounts of information. The type of gas and its temperature, for example, could be determined. We now know that these EM emissions come from electrons transitioning between energy levels in individual atoms and molecules; thus, they are called **atomic spectra**. Atomic spectra remain an important analytical tool today. [link] shows an example of an emission spectrum obtained by passing an electric discharge through a material. One of the most important characteristics of these spectra is that they are discrete. By this we mean that only certain wavelengths, and hence frequencies, are emitted. This is called a line spectrum. If frequency and energy are associated as $\Delta E = \mathrm{hf}$, the energies of the electrons in the emitting atoms and molecules are quantized. This is discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

Emission spectrum of oxygen. When an electrical discharge is passed through a substance, its atoms and molecules absorb energy, which is reemitted as EM radiation. The discrete nature of these emissions implies that the energy states of the atoms

and molecules are quantized. Such atomic spectra were used as analytical tools for many decades before it was understood why they are quantized. (credit: Teravolt, Wikimedia Commons)

It was a major puzzle that atomic spectra are quantized. Some of the best minds of 19th-century science failed to explain why this might be. Not until the second decade of the 20th century did an answer based on quantum mechanics begin to emerge. Again a macroscopic or classical body of gas was involved in the studies, but the effect, as we shall see, is due to individual atoms and molecules.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Models of the Hydrogen Atom
How did scientists figure out the structure of atoms without looking at them? Try out different models by shooting light at the atom. Check how the prediction of the model matches the experimental results.

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/d77cc1d0-33e4-11e6-b016-6726afecd2be/hydrogen-atom/#sim-hydrogen-atom

Section Summary

- The first indication that energy is sometimes quantized came from blackbody radiation, which is the emission of EM radiation by an object with an emissivity of 1.
- Planck recognized that the energy levels of the emitting atoms and molecules were quantized, with only the allowed values of $E = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\text{hf}$, where n is any non-negative integer (0, 1, 2, 3, …).
- h is Planck's constant, whose value is $h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}$.
- Thus, the oscillatory absorption and emission energies of atoms and molecules in a blackbody could increase or decrease only in steps of

size $\Delta E = \mathrm{hf}$ where f is the frequency of the oscillatory nature of the absorption and emission of EM radiation.

- Another indication of energy levels being quantized in atoms and molecules comes from the lines in atomic spectra, which are the EM emissions of individual atoms and molecules.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a physical entity that is quantized. State specifically what the entity is and what the limits are on its values.

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a physical entity that is not quantized, in that it is continuous and may have a continuous range of values.

Exercise:

Problem:

What aspect of the blackbody spectrum forced Planck to propose quantization of energy levels in its atoms and molecules?

Exercise:

Problem:

If Planck's constant were large, say 10^{34} times greater than it is, we would observe macroscopic entities to be quantized. Describe the motions of a child's swing under such circumstances.

Exercise:

Problem: Why don't we notice quantization in everyday events?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A LiBr molecule oscillates with a frequency of 1.7×10^{13} Hz. (a) What is the difference in energy in eV between allowed oscillator states? (b) What is the approximate value of n for a state having an energy of 1.0 eV?

Solution:

(a) 0.070 eV

(b) 14

Exercise:

Problem:

The difference in energy between allowed oscillator states in HBr molecules is 0.330 eV. What is the oscillation frequency of this molecule?

Exercise:

Problem:

A physicist is watching a 15-kg orangutan at a zoo swing lazily in a tire at the end of a rope. He (the physicist) notices that each oscillation takes 3.00 s and hypothesizes that the energy is quantized. (a) What is the difference in energy in joules between allowed oscillator states? (b) What is the value of n for a state where the energy is 5.00 J? (c) Can the quantization be observed?

Solution:

(a) 2.21×10^{34} J

(b) 2.26×10^{34}

(c) No

Glossary

blackbody
: an ideal radiator, which can radiate equally well at all wavelengths

blackbody radiation
: the electromagnetic radiation from a blackbody

Planck's constant
: $h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}$

atomic spectra
: the electromagnetic emission from atoms and molecules

The Photoelectric Effect

- Describe a typical photoelectric-effect experiment.
- Determine the maximum kinetic energy of photoelectrons ejected by photons of one energy or wavelength, when given the maximum kinetic energy of photoelectrons for a different photon energy or wavelength.

When light strikes materials, it can eject electrons from them. This is called the **photoelectric effect**, meaning that light (*photo*) produces electricity. One common use of the photoelectric effect is in light meters, such as those that adjust the automatic iris on various types of cameras. In a similar way, another use is in solar cells, as you probably have in your calculator or have seen on a roof top or a roadside sign. These make use of the photoelectric effect to convert light into electricity for running different devices.

The photoelectric effect can be observed by allowing light to fall on the metal plate in this evacuated tube. Electrons ejected by the light are collected on the collector wire and

measured as a current. A retarding voltage between the collector wire and plate can then be adjusted so as to determine the energy of the ejected electrons. For example, if it is sufficiently negative, no electrons will reach the wire. (credit: P.P. Urone)

This effect has been known for more than a century and can be studied using a device such as that shown in [link]. This figure shows an evacuated tube with a metal plate and a collector wire that are connected by a variable voltage source, with the collector more negative than the plate. When light (or other EM radiation) strikes the plate in the evacuated tube, it may eject electrons. If the electrons have energy in electron volts (eV) greater than the potential difference between the plate and the wire in volts, some electrons will be collected on the wire. Since the electron energy in eV is qV, where q is the electron charge and V is the potential difference, the electron energy can be measured by adjusting the retarding voltage between the wire and the plate. The voltage that stops the electrons from reaching the wire equals the energy in eV. For example, if $–3.00\text{ V}$ barely stops the electrons,

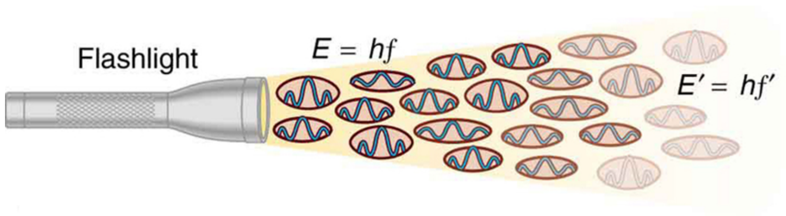
their energy is 3.00 eV. The number of electrons ejected can be determined by measuring the current between the wire and plate. The more light, the more electrons; a little circuitry allows this device to be used as a light meter.

What is really important about the photoelectric effect is what Albert Einstein deduced from it. Einstein realized that there were several characteristics of the photoelectric effect that could be explained only if *EM radiation is itself quantized*: the apparently continuous stream of energy in an EM wave is actually composed of energy quanta called photons. In his explanation of the photoelectric effect, Einstein defined a quantized unit or quantum of EM energy, which we now call a **photon**, with an energy proportional to the frequency of EM radiation. In equation form, the **photon energy** is

Equation:

$$E=\text{hf},$$

where E is the energy of a photon of frequency f and h is Planck's constant. This revolutionary idea looks similar to Planck's quantization of energy states in blackbody oscillators, but it is quite different. It is the quantization of EM radiation itself. EM waves are composed of photons and are not continuous smooth waves as described in previous chapters on optics. Their energy is absorbed and emitted in lumps, not continuously. This is exactly consistent with Planck's quantization of energy levels in blackbody oscillators, since these oscillators increase and decrease their energy in steps of hf by absorbing and emitting photons having $E=\text{hf}$. We do not observe this with our eyes, because there are so many photons in common light sources that individual photons go unnoticed. (See [link].) The next section of the text (Photon Energies and the Electromagnetic Spectrum) is devoted to a discussion of photons and some of their characteristics and implications. For now, we will use the photon concept to explain the photoelectric effect, much as Einstein did.



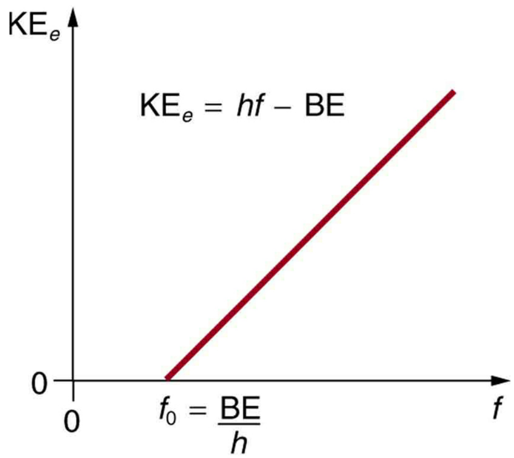
An EM wave of frequency f is composed of photons, or individual quanta of EM radiation. The energy of each photon is $E = \text{hf}$, where h is Planck's constant and f is the frequency of the EM radiation. Higher intensity means more photons per unit area. The flashlight emits large numbers of photons of many different frequencies, hence others have energy $E\prime = \text{hf}\prime$, and so on.

The photoelectric effect has the properties discussed below. All these properties are consistent with the idea that individual photons of EM radiation are absorbed by individual electrons in a material, with the electron gaining the photon's energy. Some of these properties are inconsistent with the idea that EM radiation is a simple wave. For simplicity, let us consider what happens with monochromatic EM radiation in which all photons have the same energy hf.

1. If we vary the frequency of the EM radiation falling on a material, we find the following: For a given material, there is a threshold frequency f_0 for the EM radiation below which no electrons are ejected, regardless of intensity. Individual photons interact with individual electrons. Thus if the photon energy is too small to break an electron away, no electrons will be ejected. If EM radiation was a simple wave, sufficient energy could be obtained by increasing the intensity.
2. *Once EM radiation falls on a material, electrons are ejected without delay*. As soon as an individual photon of a sufficiently high frequency is absorbed by an individual electron, the electron is ejected. If the EM

radiation were a simple wave, several minutes would be required for sufficient energy to be deposited to the metal surface to eject an electron.

3. The number of electrons ejected per unit time is proportional to the intensity of the EM radiation and to no other characteristic. High-intensity EM radiation consists of large numbers of photons per unit area, with all photons having the same characteristic energy hf.
4. If we vary the intensity of the EM radiation and measure the energy of ejected electrons, we find the following: *The maximum kinetic energy of ejected electrons is independent of the intensity of the EM radiation*. Since there are so many electrons in a material, it is extremely unlikely that two photons will interact with the same electron at the same time, thereby increasing the energy given it. Instead (as noted in 3 above), increased intensity results in more electrons of the same energy being ejected. If EM radiation were a simple wave, a higher intensity could give more energy, and higher-energy electrons would be ejected.
5. The kinetic energy of an ejected electron equals the photon energy minus the binding energy of the electron in the specific material. An individual photon can give all of its energy to an electron. The photon’s energy is partly used to break the electron away from the material. The remainder goes into the ejected electron’s kinetic energy. In equation form, this is given by
   Equation:
   $$\mathrm{KE}_e = \mathrm{hf} - \mathrm{BE},$$
   where KE_e is the maximum kinetic energy of the ejected electron, hf is the photon’s energy, and BE is the **binding energy** of the electron to the particular material. (BE is sometimes called the *work function* of the material.) This equation, due to Einstein in 1905, explains the properties of the photoelectric effect quantitatively. An individual photon of EM radiation (it does not come any other way) interacts with an individual electron, supplying enough energy, BE, to break it away, with the remainder going to kinetic energy. The binding energy is $\mathrm{BE} = hf_0$, where f_0 is the threshold frequency for the particular material. [link] shows a graph of maximum KE_e versus the frequency of incident EM radiation falling on a particular material.



Photoelectric effect. A graph of the kinetic energy of an ejected electron, KE_e, versus the frequency of EM radiation impinging on a certain material. There is a threshold frequency below which no electrons are ejected, because the individual photon interacting with an individual electron has insufficient energy to break it away. Above the threshold energy, KE_e increases linearly with f, consistent with $\mathrm{KE}_e = \mathrm{hf} - \mathrm{BE}$. The slope of this line is h — the data can be used to determine Planck’s constant experimentally. Einstein gave the first successful explanation of such data by proposing

the idea of photons—
quanta of EM radiation.

Einstein’s idea that EM radiation is quantized was crucial to the beginnings of quantum mechanics. It is a far more general concept than its explanation of the photoelectric effect might imply. All EM radiation can also be modeled in the form of photons, and the characteristics of EM radiation are entirely consistent with this fact. (As we will see in the next section, many aspects of EM radiation, such as the hazards of ultraviolet (UV) radiation, can be explained *only* by photon properties.) More famous for modern relativity, Einstein planted an important seed for quantum mechanics in 1905, the same year he published his first paper on special relativity. His explanation of the photoelectric effect was the basis for the Nobel Prize awarded to him in 1921. Although his other contributions to theoretical physics were also noted in that award, special and general relativity were not fully recognized in spite of having been partially verified by experiment by 1921. Although hero-worshipped, this great man never received Nobel recognition for his most famous work—relativity.

Example:
Calculating Photon Energy and the Photoelectric Effect: A Violet Light

(a) What is the energy in joules and electron volts of a photon of 420-nm violet light? (b) What is the maximum kinetic energy of electrons ejected from calcium by 420-nm violet light, given that the binding energy (or work function) of electrons for calcium metal is 2.71 eV?

Strategy

To solve part (a), note that the energy of a photon is given by $E=\text{hf}$. For part (b), once the energy of the photon is calculated, it is a straightforward application of $\text{KE}_e=\text{hf}–\text{BE}$ to find the ejected electron’s maximum kinetic energy, since BE is given.

Solution for (a)

Photon energy is given by

Equation:

$$E = \text{hf}$$

Since we are given the wavelength rather than the frequency, we solve the familiar relationship $c = f\lambda$ for the frequency, yielding

Equation:

$$f = \frac{c}{\lambda}.$$

Combining these two equations gives the useful relationship

Equation:

$$E = \frac{\text{hc}}{\lambda}.$$

Now substituting known values yields

Equation:

$$E = \frac{\left(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}\right)\left(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}\right)}{420 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}} = 4.74 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}.$$

Converting to eV, the energy of the photon is

Equation:

$$E = \left(4.74 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}\right)\frac{1\ \text{eV}}{1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}} = 2.96\ \text{eV}.$$

Solution for (b)

Finding the kinetic energy of the ejected electron is now a simple application of the equation $\text{KE}_e = \text{hf–BE}$. Substituting the photon energy and binding energy yields

Equation:

$$\text{KE}_e = \text{hf}- \text{BE} = 2.96\ \text{eV} - 2.71\ \text{eV} = 0.246\ \text{eV}.$$

Discussion

The energy of this 420-nm photon of violet light is a tiny fraction of a joule, and so it is no wonder that a single photon would be difficult for us to sense directly—humans are more attuned to energies on the order of joules. But looking at the energy in electron volts, we can see that this photon has enough energy to affect atoms and molecules. A DNA molecule can be broken with about 1 eV of energy, for example, and typical atomic and molecular energies are on the order of eV, so that the UV photon in this example could have biological effects. The ejected electron (called a *photoelectron*) has a rather low energy, and it would not travel far, except in a vacuum. The electron would be stopped by a retarding potential of but 0.26 eV. In fact, if the photon wavelength were longer and its energy less than 2.71 eV, then the formula would give a negative kinetic energy, an impossibility. This simply means that the 420-nm photons with their 2.96-eV energy are not much above the frequency threshold. You can show for yourself that the threshold wavelength is 459 nm (blue light). This means that if calcium metal is used in a light meter, the meter will be insensitive to wavelengths longer than those of blue light. Such a light meter would be completely insensitive to red light, for example.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Photoelectric Effect
See how light knocks electrons off a metal target, and recreate the experiment that spawned the field of quantum mechanics.

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/cf1152da-eae8-11e5-b874-f779884a9994/photoelectric-effect/#sim-photoelectric-effect

Section Summary

- The photoelectric effect is the process in which EM radiation ejects electrons from a material.
- Einstein proposed photons to be quanta of EM radiation having energy $E = \text{hf}$, where f is the frequency of the radiation.

- All EM radiation is composed of photons. As Einstein explained, all characteristics of the photoelectric effect are due to the interaction of individual photons with individual electrons.
- The maximum kinetic energy KE_e of ejected electrons (photoelectrons) is given by $\mathrm{KE}_e = \mathrm{hf} - \mathrm{BE}$, where hf is the photon energy and BE is the binding energy (or work function) of the electron to the particular material.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Is visible light the only type of EM radiation that can cause the photoelectric effect?

Exercise:

Problem:

Which aspects of the photoelectric effect cannot be explained without photons? Which can be explained without photons? Are the latter inconsistent with the existence of photons?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the photoelectric effect a direct consequence of the wave character of EM radiation or of the particle character of EM radiation? Explain briefly.

Exercise:

Problem:

Insulators (nonmetals) have a higher BE than metals, and it is more difficult for photons to eject electrons from insulators. Discuss how this relates to the free charges in metals that make them good conductors.

Exercise:

Problem:

If you pick up and shake a piece of metal that has electrons in it free to move as a current, no electrons fall out. Yet if you heat the metal, electrons can be boiled off. Explain both of these facts as they relate to the amount and distribution of energy involved with shaking the object as compared with heating it.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the longest-wavelength EM radiation that can eject a photoelectron from silver, given that the binding energy is 4.73 eV? Is this in the visible range?

Solution:

263 nm

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the longest-wavelength photon that can eject an electron from potassium, given that the binding energy is 2.24 eV. Is this visible EM radiation?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the binding energy in eV of electrons in magnesium, if the longest-wavelength photon that can eject electrons is 337 nm?

Solution:

3.69 eV

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the binding energy in eV of electrons in aluminum, if the longest-wavelength photon that can eject them is 304 nm.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the maximum kinetic energy in eV of electrons ejected from sodium metal by 450-nm EM radiation, given that the binding energy is 2.28 eV?

Solution:

0.483 eV

Exercise:

Problem:

UV radiation having a wavelength of 120 nm falls on gold metal, to which electrons are bound by 4.82 eV. What is the maximum kinetic energy of the ejected photoelectrons?

Exercise:

Problem:

Violet light of wavelength 400 nm ejects electrons with a maximum kinetic energy of 0.860 eV from sodium metal. What is the binding energy of electrons to sodium metal?

Solution:

2.25 eV

Exercise:

Problem:

UV radiation having a 300-nm wavelength falls on uranium metal, ejecting 0.500-eV electrons. What is the binding energy of electrons to uranium metal?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the wavelength of EM radiation that ejects 2.00-eV electrons from calcium metal, given that the binding energy is 2.71 eV? What type of EM radiation is this?

Solution:

(a) 264 nm

(b) Ultraviolet

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the wavelength of photons that eject 0.100-eV electrons from potassium, given that the binding energy is 2.24 eV. Are these photons visible?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the maximum velocity of electrons ejected from a material by 80-nm photons, if they are bound to the material by 4.73 eV?

Solution:

$1.95 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Photoelectrons from a material with a binding energy of 2.71 eV are ejected by 420-nm photons. Once ejected, how long does it take these electrons to travel 2.50 cm to a detection device?

Exercise:

Problem:

A laser with a power output of 2.00 mW at a wavelength of 400 nm is projected onto calcium metal. (a) How many electrons per second are ejected? (b) What power is carried away by the electrons, given that the binding energy is 2.71 eV?

Solution:

(a) $4.02 \times 10^{15}\ /\mathrm{s}$

(b) 0.256 mW

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the number of photoelectrons per second ejected from a 1.00-mm ^{2} area of sodium metal by 500-nm EM radiation having an intensity of $1.30\ \mathrm{kW/m}^2$ (the intensity of sunlight above the Earth's atmosphere). (b) Given that the binding energy is 2.28 eV, what power is carried away by the electrons? (c) The electrons carry away less power than brought in by the photons. Where does the other power go? How can it be recovered?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Red light having a wavelength of 700 nm is projected onto magnesium metal to which electrons are bound by 3.68 eV. (a) Use $\mathrm{KE}_e = \mathrm{hf} - \mathrm{BE}$ to calculate the kinetic energy of the ejected electrons.

(b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) –1.90 eV

(b) Negative kinetic energy

(c) That the electrons would be knocked free.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) What is the binding energy of electrons to a material from which 4.00-eV electrons are ejected by 400-nm EM radiation? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Glossary

photoelectric effect
: the phenomenon whereby some materials eject electrons when light is shined on them

photon
: a quantum, or particle, of electromagnetic radiation

photon energy
: the amount of energy a photon has; $E = \text{hf}$

binding energy
: also called the *work function*; the amount of energy necessary to eject an electron from a material

Photon Energies and the Electromagnetic Spectrum

- Explain the relationship between the energy of a photon in joules or electron volts and its wavelength or frequency.
- Calculate the number of photons per second emitted by a monochromatic source of specific wavelength and power.

Ionizing Radiation

A photon is a quantum of EM radiation. Its energy is given by $E = \text{hf}$ and is related to the frequency f and wavelength λ of the radiation by

Equation:

$$E = \text{hf} = \frac{\text{hc}}{\lambda}(\text{energy of a photon}),$$

where E is the energy of a single photon and c is the speed of light. When working with small systems, energy in eV is often useful. Note that Planck's constant in these units is

Equation:

$$h = 4.14 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{s}.$$

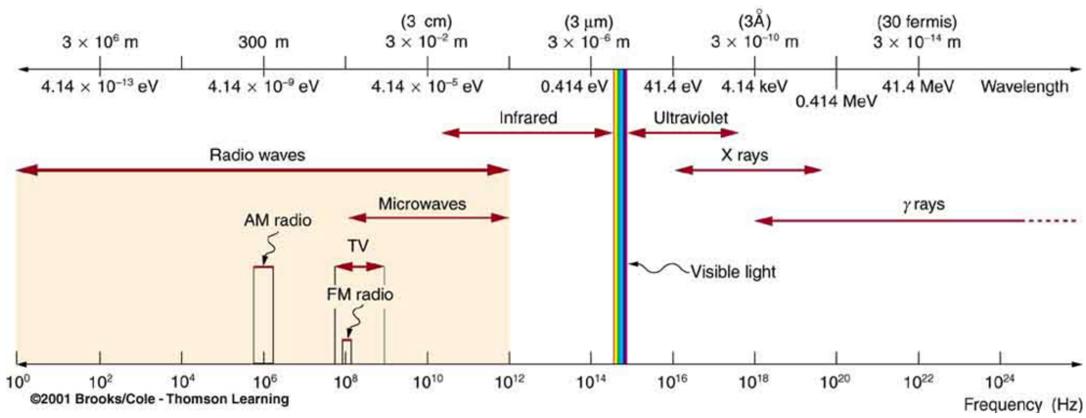
Since many wavelengths are stated in nanometers (nm), it is also useful to know that

Equation:

$$\text{hc} = 1240\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{nm}.$$

These will make many calculations a little easier.

All EM radiation is composed of photons. [link] shows various divisions of the EM spectrum plotted against wavelength, frequency, and photon energy. Previously in this book, photon characteristics were alluded to in the discussion of some of the characteristics of UV, x rays, and γ rays, the first of which start with frequencies just above violet in the visible spectrum. It was noted that these types of EM radiation have characteristics much different than visible light. We can now see that such properties arise because photon energy is larger at high frequencies.



The EM spectrum, showing major categories as a function of photon energy in eV, as well as wavelength and frequency. Certain characteristics of EM radiation are directly attributable to photon energy alone.

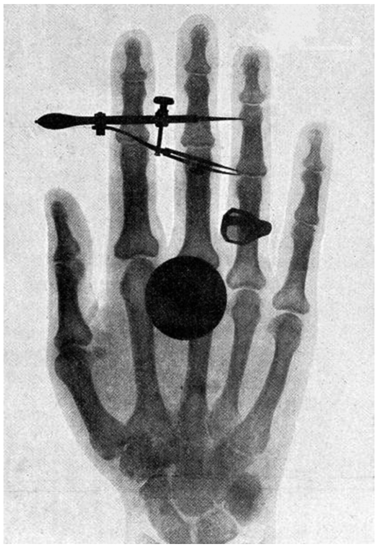
Rotational energies of molecules	10^{-5} eV
Vibrational energies of molecules	0.1 eV
Energy between outer electron shells in atoms	1 eV
Binding energy of a weakly bound molecule	1 eV
Energy of red light	2 eV
Binding energy of a tightly bound molecule	10 eV
Energy to ionize atom or molecule	10 to 1000 eV

Representative Energies for Submicroscopic Effects (Order of Magnitude Only)

Photons act as individual quanta and interact with individual electrons, atoms, molecules, and so on. The energy a photon carries is, thus, crucial to the effects it has. [link] lists representative submicroscopic energies in eV. When we compare photon energies from the EM spectrum in [link] with energies in the table, we can see how effects vary with the type of EM radiation.

Gamma rays, a form of nuclear and cosmic EM radiation, can have the highest frequencies and, hence, the highest photon energies in the EM spectrum. For example, a γ-ray photon with $f = 10^{21}$ Hz has an energy $E = \text{hf} = 6.63 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{J} = 4.14\ \text{MeV}$. This is sufficient energy to ionize thousands of atoms and molecules, since only 10 to 1000 eV are needed per ionization. In fact, γ rays are one type of **ionizing radiation**, as are x rays and UV, because they produce ionization in materials that absorb

them. Because so much ionization can be produced, a single γ-ray photon can cause significant damage to biological tissue, killing cells or damaging their ability to properly reproduce. When cell reproduction is disrupted, the result can be cancer, one of the known effects of exposure to ionizing radiation. Since cancer cells are rapidly reproducing, they are exceptionally sensitive to the disruption produced by ionizing radiation. This means that ionizing radiation has positive uses in cancer treatment as well as risks in producing cancer.



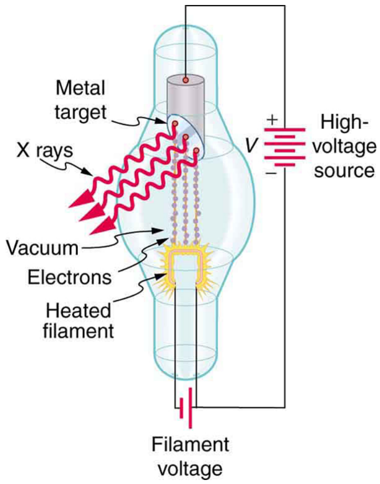
One of the first x-ray images, taken by Röentgen himself. The hand belongs to Bertha Röentgen, his wife. (credit: Wilhelm Conrad Röntgen, via Wikimedia Commons)

High photon energy also enables γ rays to penetrate materials, since a collision with a single atom or molecule is unlikely to absorb all the γ ray's energy. This can make γ rays useful as a probe, and they are sometimes used in medical imaging. **x rays**, as you can see in [link], overlap with the low-frequency end of the γ ray range. Since x rays have energies of keV and up, individual x-ray photons also can produce large amounts of ionization. At lower photon energies, x rays are not as penetrating as γ rays and are slightly less hazardous. X rays are ideal for medical imaging, their most common use, and a fact that was recognized immediately upon their discovery in 1895 by the German physicist W. C. Roentgen (1845–1923). (See [link].) Within one year of their discovery, x rays (for a time called Roentgen rays) were used for medical diagnostics. Roentgen received the 1901 Nobel Prize for the discovery of x rays.

Note:

Connections: Conservation of Energy

Once again, we find that conservation of energy allows us to consider the initial and final forms that energy takes, without having to make detailed calculations of the intermediate steps. [link] is solved by considering only the initial and final forms of energy.



X rays are produced when energetic electrons strike the copper anode of this cathode ray tube (CRT). Electrons (shown here as separate particles) interact individually with the material they strike, sometimes producing photons of EM radiation.

While γ rays originate in nuclear decay, x rays are produced by the process shown in [link]. Electrons ejected by thermal agitation from a hot filament in a vacuum tube are accelerated through a high voltage, gaining kinetic energy from the electrical potential energy. When they strike the anode, the electrons convert their kinetic energy to a variety of forms, including thermal energy. But since an accelerated charge radiates EM waves, and since the electrons act individually, photons are also produced. Some of these x-ray photons obtain the kinetic energy of the electron. The accelerated electrons originate at the cathode, so such a tube is called a cathode ray tube (CRT), and various versions of them are found in older TV and computer screens as well as in x-ray machines.

Example:
X-ray Photon Energy and X-ray Tube Voltage

Find the maximum energy in eV of an x-ray photon produced by electrons accelerated through a potential difference of 50.0 kV in a CRT like the one in [link].

Strategy

Electrons can give all of their kinetic energy to a single photon when they strike the anode of a CRT. (This is something like the photoelectric effect in reverse.) The kinetic energy of the electron comes from electrical potential energy. Thus we can simply equate the maximum photon energy to the electrical potential energy—that is, $hf = qV$. (We do not have to calculate each step from beginning to end if we know that all of the starting energy qV is converted to the final form hf.)

Solution

The maximum photon energy is $\mathrm{hf} = \mathrm{qV}$, where q is the charge of the electron and V is the accelerating voltage. Thus,

Equation:

$$\mathrm{hf} = (1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C})(50.0 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{V}).$$

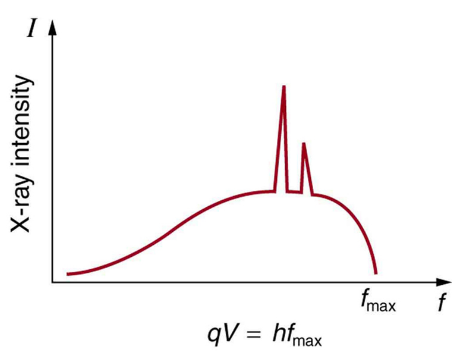
From the definition of the electron volt, we know $1\ \mathrm{eV} = 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{J}$, where $1\ \mathrm{J} = 1\ \mathrm{C} \cdot \mathrm{V}$. Gathering factors and converting energy to eV yields

Equation:

$$\mathrm{hf} = (50.0 \times 10^{3})(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C} \cdot \mathrm{V})\left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{eV}}{1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C} \cdot \mathrm{V}}\right) = (50.0 \times 10^{3})(1\ \mathrm{eV}) = 50.0\ \mathrm{keV}.$$

Discussion

This example produces a result that can be applied to many similar situations. If you accelerate a single elementary charge, like that of an electron, through a potential given in volts, then its energy in eV has the same numerical value. Thus a 50.0-kV potential generates 50.0 keV electrons, which in turn can produce photons with a maximum energy of 50 keV. Similarly, a 100-kV potential in an x-ray tube can generate up to 100-keV x-ray photons. Many x-ray tubes have adjustable voltages so that various energy x rays with differing energies, and therefore differing abilities to penetrate, can be generated.



X-ray spectrum obtained when energetic electrons strike a material. The smooth part of the spectrum is bremsstrahlung, while the peaks are characteristic of the anode material. Both are atomic processes that produce energetic

photons known as x-ray
photons.

[link] shows the spectrum of x rays obtained from an x-ray tube. There are two distinct features to the spectrum. First, the smooth distribution results from electrons being decelerated in the anode material. A curve like this is obtained by detecting many photons, and it is apparent that the maximum energy is unlikely. This decelerating process produces radiation that is called **bremsstrahlung** (German for *braking radiation*). The second feature is the existence of sharp peaks in the spectrum; these are called **characteristic x rays**, since they are characteristic of the anode material. Characteristic x rays come from atomic excitations unique to a given type of anode material. They are akin to lines in atomic spectra, implying the energy levels of atoms are quantized. Phenomena such as discrete atomic spectra and characteristic x rays are explored further in Atomic Physics.

Ultraviolet radiation (approximately 4 eV to 300 eV) overlaps with the low end of the energy range of x rays, but UV is typically lower in energy. UV comes from the de-excitation of atoms that may be part of a hot solid or gas. These atoms can be given energy that they later release as UV by numerous processes, including electric discharge, nuclear explosion, thermal agitation, and exposure to x rays. A UV photon has sufficient energy to ionize atoms and molecules, which makes its effects different from those of visible light. UV thus has some of the same biological effects as γ rays and x rays. For example, it can cause skin cancer and is used as a sterilizer. The major difference is that several UV photons are required to disrupt cell reproduction or kill a bacterium, whereas single γ-ray and X-ray photons can do the same damage. But since UV does have the energy to alter molecules, it can do what visible light cannot. One of the beneficial aspects of UV is that it triggers the production of vitamin D in the skin, whereas visible light has insufficient energy per photon to alter the molecules that trigger this production. Infantile jaundice is treated by exposing the baby to UV (with eye protection), called phototherapy, the beneficial effects of which are thought to be related to its ability to help prevent the buildup of potentially toxic bilirubin in the blood.

Example:
Photon Energy and Effects for UV
Short-wavelength UV is sometimes called vacuum UV, because it is strongly absorbed by air and must be studied in a vacuum. Calculate the photon energy in eV for 100-nm vacuum UV, and estimate the number of molecules it could ionize or break apart.
Strategy
Using the equation $E = \text{hf}$ and appropriate constants, we can find the photon energy and compare it with energy information in [link].
Solution
The energy of a photon is given by
Equation:

$$E = \text{hf} = \frac{\text{hc}}{\lambda}.$$

Using $\text{hc} = 1240\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{nm}$, we find that
Equation:

$$E = \frac{\text{hc}}{\lambda} = \frac{1240 \text{ eV} \cdot \text{nm}}{100 \text{ nm}} = 12.4 \text{ eV}.$$

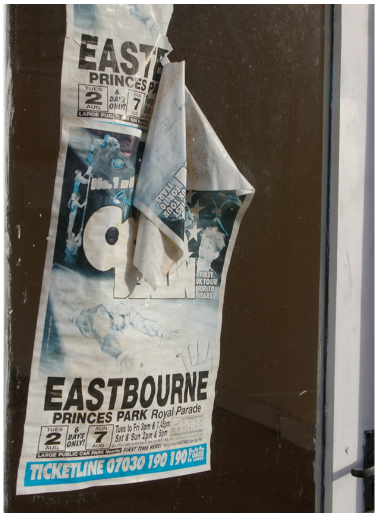
Discussion

According to [link], this photon energy might be able to ionize an atom or molecule, and it is about what is needed to break up a tightly bound molecule, since they are bound by approximately 10 eV. This photon energy could destroy about a dozen weakly bound molecules. Because of its high photon energy, UV disrupts atoms and molecules it interacts with. One good consequence is that all but the longest-wavelength UV is strongly absorbed and is easily blocked by sunglasses. In fact, most of the Sun's UV is absorbed by a thin layer of ozone in the upper atmosphere, protecting sensitive organisms on Earth. Damage to our ozone layer by the addition of such chemicals as CFC's has reduced this protection for us.

Visible Light

The range of photon energies for **visible light** from red to violet is 1.63 to 3.26 eV, respectively (left for this chapter's Problems and Exercises to verify). These energies are on the order of those between outer electron shells in atoms and molecules. This means that these photons can be absorbed by atoms and molecules. A *single* photon can actually stimulate the retina, for example, by altering a receptor molecule that then triggers a nerve impulse. Photons can be absorbed or emitted only by atoms and molecules that have precisely the correct quantized energy step to do so. For example, if a red photon of frequency f encounters a molecule that has an energy step, ΔE, equal to hf, then the photon can be absorbed. Violet flowers absorb red and reflect violet; this implies there is no energy step between levels in the receptor molecule equal to the violet photon's energy, but there is an energy step for the red.

There are some noticeable differences in the characteristics of light between the two ends of the visible spectrum that are due to photon energies. Red light has insufficient photon energy to expose most black-and-white film, and it is thus used to illuminate darkrooms where such film is developed. Since violet light has a higher photon energy, dyes that absorb violet tend to fade more quickly than those that do not. (See [link].) Take a look at some faded color posters in a storefront some time, and you will notice that the blues and violets are the last to fade. This is because other dyes, such as red and green dyes, absorb blue and violet photons, the higher energies of which break up their weakly bound molecules. (Complex molecules such as those in dyes and DNA tend to be weakly bound.) Blue and violet dyes reflect those colors and, therefore, do not absorb these more energetic photons, thus suffering less molecular damage.



Why do the reds, yellows, and greens fade before the blues and violets when exposed to the Sun, as with this poster? The answer is related to photon energy. (credit: Deb Collins, Flickr)

Transparent materials, such as some glasses, do not absorb any visible light, because there is no energy step in the atoms or molecules that could absorb the light. Since individual photons interact with individual atoms, it is nearly impossible to have two photons absorbed simultaneously to reach a large energy step. Because of its lower photon energy, visible light can sometimes pass through many kilometers of a substance, while higher frequencies like UV, x ray, and γ rays are absorbed, because they have sufficient photon energy to ionize the material.

Example:
How Many Photons per Second Does a Typical Light Bulb Produce?
Assuming that 10.0% of a 100-W light bulb's energy output is in the visible range (typical for incandescent bulbs) with an average wavelength of 580 nm, calculate the number of visible photons emitted per second.
Strategy
Power is energy per unit time, and so if we can find the energy per photon, we can determine the number of photons per second. This will best be done in joules, since power is given in watts, which are joules per second.
Solution
The power in visible light production is 10.0% of 100 W, or 10.0 J/s. The energy of the average visible photon is found by substituting the given average wavelength into the formula
Equation:

$$E = \frac{\text{hc}}{\lambda}.$$

This produces

Equation:

$$E = \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\text{ J}\cdot\text{s})(3.00 \times 10^{8}\text{ m/s})}{580 \times 10^{-9}\text{ m}} = 3.43 \times 10^{-19}\text{ J}.$$

The number of visible photons per second is thus

Equation:

$$\text{photon/s} = \frac{10.0\text{ J/s}}{3.43 \times 10^{-19}\text{ J/photon}} = 2.92 \times 10^{19}\text{ photon/s}.$$

Discussion

This incredible number of photons per second is verification that individual photons are insignificant in ordinary human experience. It is also a verification of the correspondence principle—on the macroscopic scale, quantization becomes essentially continuous or classical. Finally, there are so many photons emitted by a 100-W lightbulb that it can be seen by the unaided eye many kilometers away.

Lower-Energy Photons

Infrared radiation (IR) has even lower photon energies than visible light and cannot significantly alter atoms and molecules. IR can be absorbed and emitted by atoms and molecules, particularly between closely spaced states. IR is extremely strongly absorbed by water, for example, because water molecules have many states separated by energies on the order of 10^{-5} eV to 10^{-2} eV, well within the IR and microwave energy ranges. This is why in the IR range, skin is almost jet black, with an emissivity near 1—there are many states in water molecules in the skin that can absorb a large range of IR photon energies. Not all molecules have this property. Air, for example, is nearly transparent to many IR frequencies.

Microwaves are the highest frequencies that can be produced by electronic circuits, although they are also produced naturally. Thus microwaves are similar to IR but do not extend to as high frequencies. There are states in water and other molecules that have the same frequency and energy as microwaves, typically about 10^{-5} eV. This is one reason why food absorbs microwaves more strongly than many other materials, making microwave ovens an efficient way of putting energy directly into food.

Photon energies for both IR and microwaves are so low that huge numbers of photons are involved in any significant energy transfer by IR or microwaves (such as warming yourself with a heat lamp or cooking pizza in the microwave). Visible light, IR, microwaves, and all lower frequencies cannot produce ionization with single photons and do not ordinarily have the hazards of higher frequencies. When visible, IR, or microwave radiation *is* hazardous, such as the inducement of cataracts by microwaves, the hazard is due to huge numbers of photons acting together (not to an accumulation of photons, such as sterilization by weak UV). The negative effects of visible, IR, or microwave radiation can be thermal effects, which could be produced by any heat source. But one difference is that at very high intensity, strong electric and magnetic fields can be produced by photons acting together. Such electromagnetic fields (EMF) can actually ionize materials.

Note:
Misconception Alert: High-Voltage Power Lines
Although some people think that living near high-voltage power lines is hazardous to one's health, ongoing studies of the transient field effects produced by these lines show their strengths to be insufficient to cause damage. Demographic studies also fail to show significant correlation of ill effects with high-voltage power lines. The American Physical Society issued a report over 10 years ago on power-line fields, which concluded that the scientific literature and reviews of panels show no consistent, significant link between cancer and power-line fields. They also felt that the "diversion of resources to eliminate a threat which has no persuasive scientific basis is disturbing."

It is virtually impossible to detect individual photons having frequencies below microwave frequencies, because of their low photon energy. But the photons are there. A continuous EM wave can be modeled as photons. At low frequencies, EM waves are generally treated as time- and position-varying electric and magnetic fields with no discernible quantization. This is another example of the correspondence principle in situations involving huge numbers of photons.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Color Vision
Make a whole rainbow by mixing red, green, and blue light. Change the wavelength of a monochromatic beam or filter white light. View the light as a solid beam, or see the individual photons.

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/color-vision/latest/color-vision_en.html

Section Summary

- Photon energy is responsible for many characteristics of EM radiation, being particularly noticeable at high frequencies.
- Photons have both wave and particle characteristics.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: Why are UV, x rays, and γ rays called ionizing radiation?

Exercise:

Problem:

How can treating food with ionizing radiation help keep it from spoiling? UV is not very penetrating. What else could be used?

Exercise:

Problem:

Some television tubes are CRTs. They use an approximately 30-kV accelerating potential to send electrons to the screen, where the electrons stimulate phosphors to emit the light that forms the pictures we watch. Would you expect x rays also to be created?

Exercise:

Problem:

Tanning salons use "safe" UV with a longer wavelength than some of the UV in sunlight. This "safe" UV has enough photon energy to trigger the tanning mechanism. Is it likely to be able to cause cell damage and induce cancer with prolonged exposure?

Exercise:

Problem:

Your pupils dilate when visible light intensity is reduced. Does wearing sunglasses that lack UV blockers increase or decrease the UV hazard to your eyes? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

One could feel heat transfer in the form of infrared radiation from a large nuclear bomb detonated in the atmosphere 75 km from you. However, none of the profusely emitted x rays or γ rays reaches you. Explain.

Exercise:

Problem: Can a single microwave photon cause cell damage? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

In an x-ray tube, the maximum photon energy is given by $\mathrm{hf} = \mathrm{qV}$. Would it be technically more correct to say $\mathrm{hf} = \mathrm{qV} + \mathrm{BE}$, where BE is the binding energy of electrons in the target anode? Why isn't the energy stated the latter way?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the energy in joules and eV of a photon in a radio wave from an AM station that has a 1530-kHz broadcast frequency?

Solution:

6.34×10^{-9} eV, 1.01×10^{-27} J

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the energy in joules and eV of photons in radio waves from an FM station that has a 90.0-MHz broadcast frequency. (b) What does this imply about the number of photons per second that the radio station must broadcast?

Exercise:

Problem: Calculate the frequency in hertz of a 1.00-MeV γ-ray photon.

Solution:

2.42×10^{20} Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the wavelength of a 1.00-eV photon? (b) Find its frequency in hertz. (c) Identify the type of EM radiation.

Exercise:

Problem:

Do the unit conversions necessary to show that $\text{hc} = 1240\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{nm}$, as stated in the text.

Solution:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{hc} &= \left(6.62607 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}\right)\left(2.99792 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}\right)\left(\frac{10^9\ \text{nm}}{1\ \text{m}}\right)\left(\frac{1.00000\ \text{eV}}{1.60218 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}}\right) \\ &= 1239.84\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{nm} \\ &\approx 1240\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{nm} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Confirm the statement in the text that the range of photon energies for visible light is 1.63 to 3.26 eV, given that the range of visible wavelengths is 380 to 760 nm.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the energy in eV of an IR photon of frequency 2.00×10^{13} Hz. (b) How many of these photons would need to be absorbed simultaneously by a tightly bound molecule to break it apart? (c) What is the energy in eV of a γ ray of frequency 3.00×10^{20} Hz? (d) How many tightly bound molecules could a single such γ ray break apart?

Solution:

(a) 0.0829 eV

(b) 121

(c) 1.24 MeV

(d) 1.24×10^5

Exercise:

Problem: Prove that, to three-digit accuracy, $h = 4.14 \times 10^{-15}\text{ eV} \cdot \text{s}$, as stated in the text.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the maximum energy in eV of photons produced in a CRT using a 25.0-kV accelerating potential, such as a color TV? (b) What is their frequency?

Solution:

(a) $25.0 \times 10^3\text{ eV}$

(b) $6.04 \times 10^{18}\text{ Hz}$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the accelerating voltage of an x-ray tube that produces x rays with a shortest wavelength of 0.0103 nm?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the ratio of power outputs by two microwave ovens having frequencies of 950 and 2560 MHz, if they emit the same number of photons per second? (b) What is the ratio of photons per second if they have the same power output?

Solution:

(a) 2.69

(b) 0.371

Exercise:

Problem:

How many photons per second are emitted by the antenna of a microwave oven, if its power output is 1.00 kW at a frequency of 2560 MHz?

Exercise:

Problem:

Some satellites use nuclear power. (a) If such a satellite emits a 1.00-W flux of γ rays having an average energy of 0.500 MeV, how many are emitted per second? (b) These γ rays affect other satellites. How far away must another satellite be to only receive one γ ray per second per square meter?

Solution:

(a) $1.25 \times 10^{13}\ \text{photons/s}$

(b) 997 km

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If the power output of a 650-kHz radio station is 50.0 kW, how many photons per second are produced? (b) If the radio waves are broadcast uniformly in all directions, find the number of photons per second per square meter at a distance of 100 km. Assume no reflection from the ground or absorption by the air.

Exercise:

Problem:

How many x-ray photons per second are created by an x-ray tube that produces a flux of x rays having a power of 1.00 W? Assume the average energy per photon is 75.0 keV.

Solution:

$8.33 \times 10^{13}\ \text{photons/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How far away must you be from a 650-kHz radio station with power 50.0 kW for there to be only one photon per second per square meter? Assume no reflections or absorption, as if you were in deep outer space. (b) Discuss the implications for detecting intelligent life in other solar systems by detecting their radio broadcasts.

Exercise:

Problem:

Assuming that 10.0% of a 100-W light bulb's energy output is in the visible range (typical for incandescent bulbs) with an average wavelength of 580 nm, and that the photons spread out uniformly and are not absorbed by the atmosphere, how far away would you be if 500 photons per second enter the 3.00-mm diameter pupil of your eye? (This number easily stimulates the retina.)

Solution:

181 km

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider a laser pen. Construct a problem in which you calculate the number of photons per second emitted by the pen. Among the things to be considered are the laser pen's wavelength and power output. Your instructor may also wish for you to determine the minimum diffraction spreading in the beam and the number of photons per square centimeter the pen can project at some large distance. In this latter case, you will also need to consider the output size of the laser beam, the distance to the object being illuminated, and any absorption or scattering along the way.

Glossary

gamma ray
: also γ-ray; highest-energy photon in the EM spectrum

ionizing radiation
: radiation that ionizes materials that absorb it

x ray
: EM photon between γ-ray and UV in energy

bremsstrahlung
: German for *braking radiation*; produced when electrons are decelerated

characteristic x rays
: x rays whose energy depends on the material they were produced in

ultraviolet radiation
: UV; ionizing photons slightly more energetic than violet light

visible light
: the range of photon energies the human eye can detect

infrared radiation
: photons with energies slightly less than red light

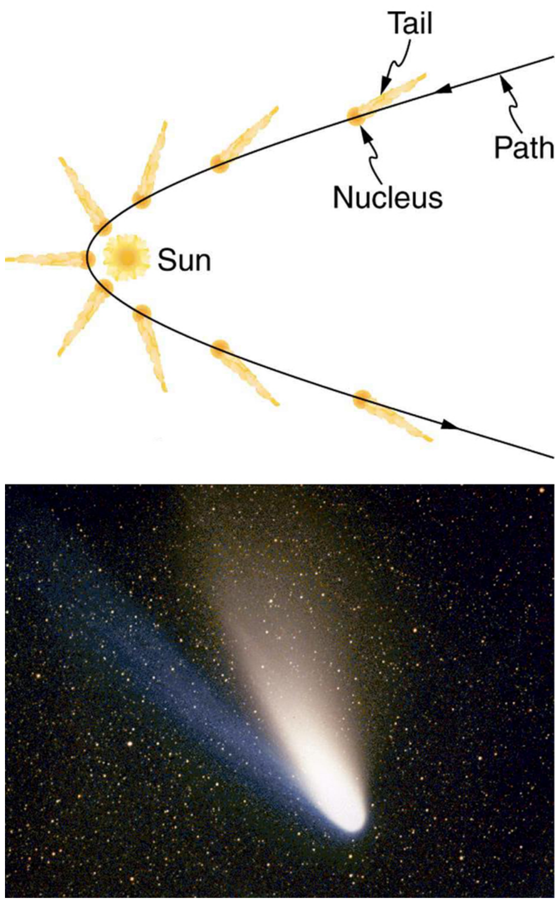
microwaves
: photons with wavelengths on the order of a micron (μm)

Photon Momentum

- Relate the linear momentum of a photon to its energy or wavelength, and apply linear momentum conservation to simple processes involving the emission, absorption, or reflection of photons.
- Account qualitatively for the increase of photon wavelength that is observed, and explain the significance of the Compton wavelength.

Measuring Photon Momentum

The quantum of EM radiation we call a **photon** has properties analogous to those of particles we can see, such as grains of sand. A photon interacts as a unit in collisions or when absorbed, rather than as an extensive wave. Massive quanta, like electrons, also act like macroscopic particles—something we expect, because they are the smallest units of matter. Particles carry momentum as well as energy. Despite photons having no mass, there has long been evidence that EM radiation carries momentum. (Maxwell and others who studied EM waves predicted that they would carry momentum.) It is now a well-established fact that photons *do* have momentum. In fact, photon momentum is suggested by the photoelectric effect, where photons knock electrons out of a substance. [link] shows macroscopic evidence of photon momentum.



The tails of the Hale-Bopp comet point away from the Sun, evidence that light has momentum. Dust emanating from the body of the comet forms this tail. Particles of dust are pushed away from the Sun by light reflecting from them. The blue ionized gas tail is also produced by photons interacting with atoms in the comet material. (credit: Geoff Chester, U.S. Navy, via Wikimedia Commons)

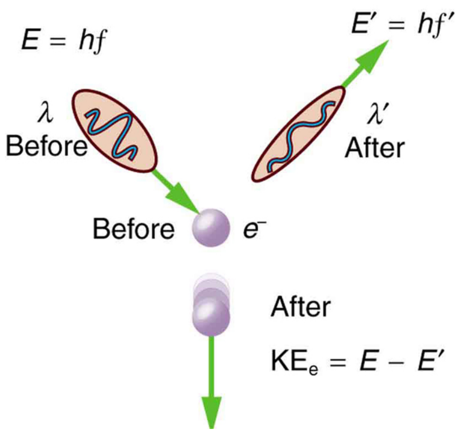
[link] shows a comet with two prominent tails. What most people do not know about the tails is that they always point *away* from the Sun rather than trailing behind the comet (like the tail of Bo Peep's sheep). Comet tails are composed of gases and dust evaporated from the body of the comet and ionized gas. The dust particles recoil away from the Sun when photons scatter from them. Evidently, photons carry momentum in the direction of their motion (away from the Sun), and some of this momentum is transferred to dust particles in collisions. Gas atoms and molecules in the blue tail are most affected by other particles of radiation, such as protons and electrons emanating from the Sun, rather than by the momentum of photons.

Note:
Connections: Conservation of Momentum
Not only is momentum conserved in all realms of physics, but all types of particles are found to have momentum. We expect particles with mass to have momentum, but now we see that massless particles including photons also carry momentum.

Momentum is conserved in quantum mechanics just as it is in relativity and classical physics. Some of the earliest direct experimental evidence of this came from scattering of x-ray photons by electrons in substances, named Compton scattering after the American physicist Arthur H. Compton (1892–1962). Around 1923, Compton observed that x rays scattered from materials had a decreased energy and correctly analyzed this as being due to the scattering of photons from electrons. This phenomenon could be handled as a collision between two particles—a photon and an electron at rest in the material. Energy and momentum are conserved in the collision. (See [link]) He won a Nobel Prize in 1929 for the discovery of this scattering, now called the **Compton effect**, because it helped prove that **photon momentum** is given by
Equation:

$$p = \frac{h}{\lambda},$$

where h is Planck's constant and λ is the photon wavelength. (Note that relativistic momentum given as $p = \gamma m u$ is valid only for particles having mass.)



The Compton effect is the name given to the scattering of a photon by an electron. Energy and momentum are conserved, resulting in a reduction of both for the scattered photon. Studying this effect, Compton verified that photons have momentum.

We can see that photon momentum is small, since $p = h/\lambda$ and h is very small. It is for this reason that we do not ordinarily observe photon

momentum. Our mirrors do not recoil when light reflects from them (except perhaps in cartoons). Compton saw the effects of photon momentum because he was observing x rays, which have a small wavelength and a relatively large momentum, interacting with the lightest of particles, the electron.

Example:
Electron and Photon Momentum Compared
(a) Calculate the momentum of a visible photon that has a wavelength of 500 nm. (b) Find the velocity of an electron having the same momentum. (c) What is the energy of the electron, and how does it compare with the energy of the photon?
Strategy
Finding the photon momentum is a straightforward application of its definition: $p=\frac{h}{\lambda}$. If we find the photon momentum is small, then we can assume that an electron with the same momentum will be nonrelativistic, making it easy to find its velocity and kinetic energy from the classical formulas.
Solution for (a)
Photon momentum is given by the equation:
Equation:

$$p=\frac{h}{\lambda}.$$

Entering the given photon wavelength yields
Equation:

$$p=\frac{6.63\times10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J\cdot s}}{500\times10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m}}=1.33\times10^{-27}\ \mathrm{kg\cdot m/s}.$$

Solution for (b)
Since this momentum is indeed small, we will use the classical expression $p=\mathrm{mv}$ to find the velocity of an electron with this momentum. Solving for v and using the known value for the mass of an electron gives

Equation:

$$v = \frac{p}{m} = \frac{1.33 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}}{9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg}} = 1460\ \text{m/s} \approx 1460\ \text{m/s}.$$

Solution for (c)

The electron has kinetic energy, which is classically given by

Equation:

$$\text{KE}_e = \frac{1}{2} m v^2.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\text{KE}_e = \frac{1}{2}(9.11 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg})(1455\ \text{m/s})^2 = 9.64 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{J}.$$

Converting this to eV by multiplying by $(1\ \text{eV})/(1.602 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J})$ yields

Equation:

$$\text{KE}_e = 6.02 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{eV}.$$

The photon energy E is

Equation:

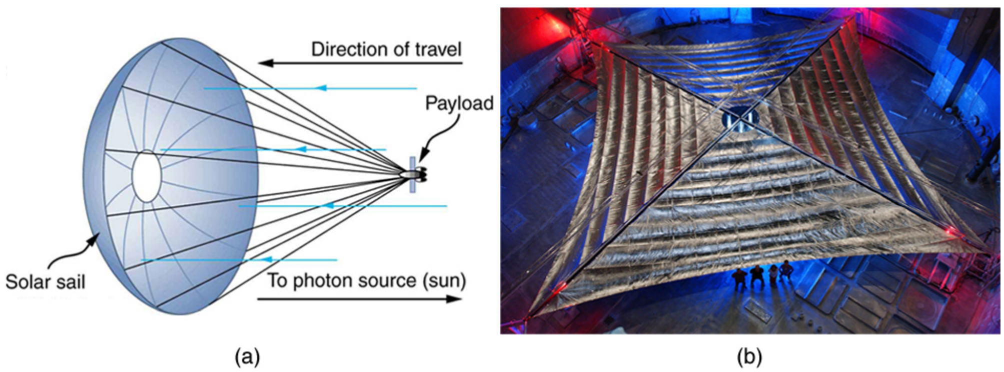
$$E = \frac{\text{hc}}{\lambda} = \frac{1240\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{nm}}{500\ \text{nm}} = 2.48\ \text{eV},$$

which is about five orders of magnitude greater.

Discussion

Photon momentum is indeed small. Even if we have huge numbers of them, the total momentum they carry is small. An electron with the same momentum has a 1460 m/s velocity, which is clearly nonrelativistic. A more massive particle with the same momentum would have an even smaller velocity. This is borne out by the fact that it takes far less energy to give an electron the same momentum as a photon. But on a quantum-mechanical scale, especially for high-energy photons interacting with small

masses, photon momentum is significant. Even on a large scale, photon momentum can have an effect if there are enough of them and if there is nothing to prevent the slow recoil of matter. Comet tails are one example, but there are also proposals to build space sails that use huge low-mass mirrors (made of aluminized Mylar) to reflect sunlight. In the vacuum of space, the mirrors would gradually recoil and could actually take spacecraft from place to place in the solar system. (See [link].)



(a) Space sails have been proposed that use the momentum of sunlight reflecting from gigantic low-mass sails to propel spacecraft about the solar system. A Russian test model of this (the Cosmos 1) was launched in 2005, but did not make it into orbit due to a rocket failure. (b) A U.S. version of this, labeled LightSail-1, is scheduled for trial launches in the first part of this decade. It will have a 40-m^2 sail. (credit: Kim Newton/NASA)

Relativistic Photon Momentum

There is a relationship between photon momentum p and photon energy E that is consistent with the relation given previously for the relativistic total energy of a particle as $E^2 = (\text{pc})^2 + (\text{mc})^2$. We know m is zero for a photon, but p is not, so that $E^2 = (\text{pc})^2 + (\text{mc})^2$ becomes

Equation:

$$E = \text{pc},$$

or

Equation:

$$p = \frac{E}{c} \text{ (photons)}.$$

To check the validity of this relation, note that $E = \text{hc}/\lambda$ for a photon. Substituting this into $p = E/c$ yields

Equation:

$$p = (\text{hc}/\lambda)/c = \frac{h}{\lambda},$$

as determined experimentally and discussed above. Thus, $p = E/c$ is equivalent to Compton's result $p = h/\lambda$. For a further verification of the relationship between photon energy and momentum, see [link].

Note:

Photon Detectors

Almost all detection systems talked about thus far—eyes, photographic plates, photomultiplier tubes in microscopes, and CCD cameras—rely on particle-like properties of photons interacting with a sensitive area. A change is caused and either the change is cascaded or zillions of points are recorded to form an image we detect. These detectors are used in biomedical imaging systems, and there is ongoing research into improving the efficiency of receiving photons, particularly by cooling detection systems and reducing thermal effects.

Example:

Photon Energy and Momentum

Show that $p = E/c$ for the photon considered in the [link].

Strategy

We will take the energy E found in [link], divide it by the speed of light, and see if the same momentum is obtained as before.

Solution

Given that the energy of the photon is 2.48 eV and converting this to joules, we get

Equation:

$$p = \frac{E}{c} = \frac{(2.48\ \text{eV})(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J/eV})}{3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}} = 1.33 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}.$$

Discussion

This value for momentum is the same as found before (note that unrounded values are used in all calculations to avoid even small rounding errors), an expected verification of the relationship $p = E/c$. This also means the relationship between energy, momentum, and mass given by $E^2 = (\text{pc})^2 + (\text{mc})^2$ applies to both matter and photons. Once again, note that p is not zero, even when m is.

Note:

Problem-Solving Suggestion

Note that the forms of the constants $h = 4.14 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{s}$ and $\text{hc} = 1240\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{nm}$ may be particularly useful for this section’s Problems and Exercises.

Section Summary

- Photons have momentum, given by $p = \frac{h}{\lambda}$, where λ is the photon wavelength.

- Photon energy and momentum are related by $p = \frac{E}{c}$, where $E = \text{hf} = \text{hc}/\lambda$ for a photon.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Which formula may be used for the momentum of all particles, with or without mass?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is there any measurable difference between the momentum of a photon and the momentum of matter?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why don't we feel the momentum of sunlight when we are on the beach?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the momentum of a 4.00-cm-wavelength microwave photon.
(b) Discuss why you expect the answer to (a) to be very small.

Solution:

(a) $1.66 \times 10^{-32}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$

(b) The wavelength of microwave photons is large, so the momentum they carry is very small.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the momentum of a 0.0100-nm-wavelength photon that could detect details of an atom? (b) What is its energy in MeV?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the wavelength of a photon that has a momentum of $5.00 \times 10^{-29}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$? (b) Find its energy in eV.

Solution:

(a) 13.3 μm

(b) 9.38×10^{-2} eV

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A γ-ray photon has a momentum of $8.00 \times 10^{-21}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$. What is its wavelength? (b) Calculate its energy in MeV.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the momentum of a photon having a wavelength of $2.50\ \mu\text{m}$. (b) Find the velocity of an electron having the same momentum. (c) What is the kinetic energy of the electron, and how does it compare with that of the photon?

Solution:

(a) $2.65 \times 10^{-28}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$

(b) 291 m/s

(c) electron 3.86×10^{-26} J, photon 7.96×10^{-20} J, ratio 2.06×10^{6}

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat the previous problem for a 10.0-nm-wavelength photon.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the wavelength of a photon that has the same momentum as a proton moving at 1.00% of the speed of light. (b) What is the energy of the photon in MeV? (c) What is the kinetic energy of the proton in MeV?

Solution:

(a) 1.32×10^{-13} m

(b) 9.39 MeV

(c) 4.70×10^{-2} MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the momentum of a 100-keV x-ray photon. (b) Find the equivalent velocity of a neutron with the same momentum. (c) What is the neutron's kinetic energy in keV?

Exercise:

Problem:

Take the ratio of relativistic rest energy, $E = \gamma mc^2$, to relativistic momentum, $p = \gamma m\mathrm{u}$, and show that in the limit that mass approaches zero, you find $E/p = c$.

Solution:

$E = \gamma mc^2$ and $P = \gamma mu$, so

Equation:

$$\frac{E}{P} = \frac{\gamma mc^2}{\gamma mu} = \frac{c^2}{u}.$$

As the mass of particle approaches zero, its velocity u will approach c, so that the ratio of energy to momentum in this limit is

Equation:

$$\lim_{m \to 0} \frac{E}{P} = \frac{c^2}{c} = c$$

which is consistent with the equation for photon energy.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a space sail such as mentioned in [link]. Construct a problem in which you calculate the light pressure on the sail in $\mathrm{N/m^2}$ produced by reflecting sunlight. Also calculate the force that could be produced and how much effect that would have on a spacecraft. Among the things to be considered are the intensity of sunlight, its average wavelength, the number of photons per square meter this implies, the area of the space sail, and the mass of the system being accelerated.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A car feels a small force due to the light it sends out from its headlights, equal to the momentum of the light divided by the time in which it is emitted. (a) Calculate the power of each headlight, if they

exert a total force of 2.00×10^{-2} N backward on the car. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 3.00×10^{6} W

(b) Headlights are way too bright.

(c) Force is too large.

Glossary

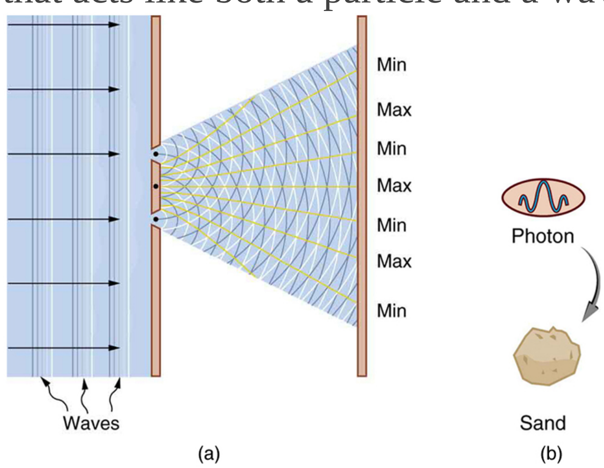
photon momentum
: the amount of momentum a photon has, calculated by $p = \frac{h}{\lambda} = \frac{E}{c}$

Compton effect
: the phenomenon whereby x rays scattered from materials have decreased energy

The Particle-Wave Duality

- Explain what the term particle-wave duality means, and why it is applied to EM radiation.

We have long known that EM radiation is a wave, capable of interference and diffraction. We now see that light can be modeled as photons, which are massless particles. This may seem contradictory, since we ordinarily deal with large objects that never act like both wave and particle. An ocean wave, for example, looks nothing like a rock. To understand small-scale phenomena, we make analogies with the large-scale phenomena we observe directly. When we say something behaves like a wave, we mean it shows interference effects analogous to those seen in overlapping water waves. (See [link].) Two examples of waves are sound and EM radiation. When we say something behaves like a particle, we mean that it interacts as a discrete unit with no interference effects. Examples of particles include electrons, atoms, and photons of EM radiation. How do we talk about a phenomenon that acts like both a particle and a wave?



(a) The interference pattern for light through a double slit is a wave property understood by analogy to water waves. (b) The properties of photons having quantized energy and momentum and acting as a concentrated unit are

understood by analogy to macroscopic particles.

There is no doubt that EM radiation interferes and has the properties of wavelength and frequency. There is also no doubt that it behaves as particles—photons with discrete energy. We call this twofold nature the **particle-wave duality**, meaning that EM radiation has both particle and wave properties. This so-called duality is simply a term for properties of the photon analogous to phenomena we can observe directly, on a macroscopic scale. If this term seems strange, it is because we do not ordinarily observe details on the quantum level directly, and our observations yield either particle *or* wavelike properties, but never both simultaneously.

Since we have a particle-wave duality for photons, and since we have seen connections between photons and matter in that both have momentum, it is reasonable to ask whether there is a particle-wave duality for matter as well. If the EM radiation we once thought to be a pure wave has particle properties, is it possible that matter has wave properties? The answer is yes. The consequences are tremendous, as we will begin to see in the next section.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Quantum Wave Interference
When do photons, electrons, and atoms behave like particles and when do they behave like waves? Watch waves spread out and interfere as they pass through a double slit, then get detected on a screen as tiny dots. Use quantum detectors to explore how measurements change the waves and the patterns they produce on the screen.

Quantum Wave Interference

Section Summary

- EM radiation can behave like either a particle or a wave.
- This is termed particle-wave duality.

Glossary

particle-wave duality
: the property of behaving like either a particle or a wave; the term for the phenomenon that all particles have wave characteristics

The Wave Nature of Matter

- Describe the Davisson-Germer experiment, and explain how it provides evidence for the wave nature of electrons.

De Broglie Wavelength

In 1923 a French physics graduate student named Prince Louis-Victor de Broglie (1892–1987) made a radical proposal based on the hope that nature is symmetric. If EM radiation has both particle and wave properties, then nature would be symmetric if matter also had both particle and wave properties. If what we once thought of as an unequivocal wave (EM radiation) is also a particle, then what we think of as an unequivocal particle (matter) may also be a wave. De Broglie's suggestion, made as part of his doctoral thesis, was so radical that it was greeted with some skepticism. A copy of his thesis was sent to Einstein, who said it was not only probably correct, but that it might be of fundamental importance. With the support of Einstein and a few other prominent physicists, de Broglie was awarded his doctorate.

De Broglie took both relativity and quantum mechanics into account to develop the proposal that *all particles have a wavelength*, given by
Equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{p} \text{ (matter and photons)},$$

where h is Planck's constant and p is momentum. This is defined to be the **de Broglie wavelength**. (Note that we already have this for photons, from the equation $p = h/\lambda$.) The hallmark of a wave is interference. If matter is a wave, then it must exhibit constructive and destructive interference. Why isn't this ordinarily observed? The answer is that in order to see significant interference effects, a wave must interact with an object about the same size as its wavelength. Since h is very small, λ is also small, especially for macroscopic objects. A 3-kg bowling ball moving at 10 m/s, for example, has

Equation:

$$\lambda = h/p = (6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s})/[(3\ \text{kg})(10\ \text{m/s}\ )]= 2 \times 10^{-35}\ \text{m}.$$

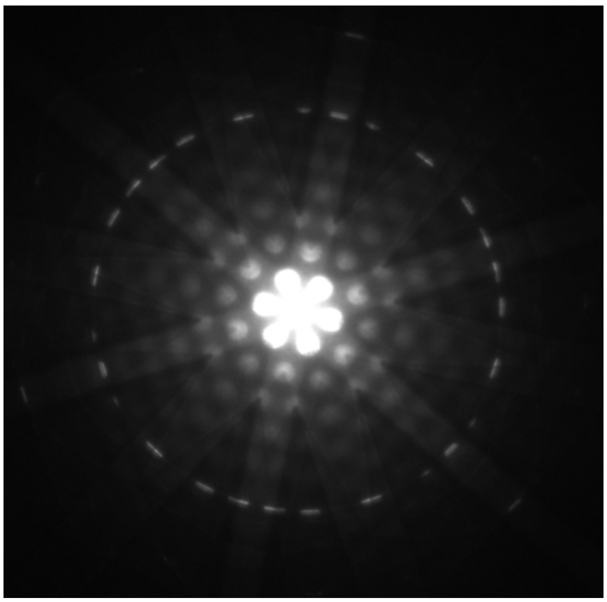
This means that to see its wave characteristics, the bowling ball would have to interact with something about 10^{-35} m in size—far smaller than anything known. When waves interact with objects much larger than their wavelength, they show negligible interference effects and move in straight lines (such as light rays in geometric optics). To get easily observed interference effects from particles of matter, the longest wavelength and hence smallest mass possible would be useful. Therefore, this effect was first observed with electrons.

American physicists Clinton J. Davisson and Lester H. Germer in 1925 and, independently, British physicist G. P. Thomson (son of J. J. Thomson, discoverer of the electron) in 1926 scattered electrons from crystals and found diffraction patterns. These patterns are exactly consistent with interference of electrons having the de Broglie wavelength and are somewhat analogous to light interacting with a diffraction grating. (See [link].)

Note:
Connections: Waves
All microscopic particles, whether massless, like photons, or having mass, like electrons, have wave properties. The relationship between momentum and wavelength is fundamental for all particles.

De Broglie’s proposal of a wave nature for all particles initiated a remarkably productive era in which the foundations for quantum mechanics were laid. In 1926, the Austrian physicist Erwin Schrödinger (1887–1961) published four papers in which the wave nature of particles was treated explicitly with wave equations. At the same time, many others began important work. Among them was German physicist Werner Heisenberg

(1901–1976) who, among many other contributions to quantum mechanics, formulated a mathematical treatment of the wave nature of matter that used matrices rather than wave equations. We will deal with some specifics in later sections, but it is worth noting that de Broglie's work was a watershed for the development of quantum mechanics. De Broglie was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1929 for his vision, as were Davisson and G. P. Thomson in 1937 for their experimental verification of de Broglie's hypothesis.



This diffraction pattern was obtained for electrons diffracted by crystalline silicon. Bright regions are those of constructive interference, while dark regions are those of destructive interference. (credit: Ndthe, Wikimedia Commons)

Example:

Electron Wavelength versus Velocity and Energy

For an electron having a de Broglie wavelength of 0.167 nm (appropriate for interacting with crystal lattice structures that are about this size): (a) Calculate the electron's velocity, assuming it is nonrelativistic. (b) Calculate the electron's kinetic energy in eV.

Strategy

For part (a), since the de Broglie wavelength is given, the electron's velocity can be obtained from $\lambda = h/p$ by using the nonrelativistic formula for momentum, $p = \text{mv}$. For part (b), once v is obtained (and it has been verified that v is nonrelativistic), the classical kinetic energy is simply $(1/2)mv^2$.

Solution for (a)

Substituting the nonrelativistic formula for momentum ($p = \text{mv}$) into the de Broglie wavelength gives

Equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{p} = \frac{h}{\text{mv}}.$$

Solving for v gives

Equation:

$$v = \frac{h}{m\lambda}.$$

Substituting known values yields

Equation:

$$v = \frac{6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}}{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(0.167 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})} = 4.36 \times 10^{6}\ \text{m/s}.$$

Solution for (b)

While fast compared with a car, this electron's speed is not highly relativistic, and so we can comfortably use the classical formula to find the electron's kinetic energy and convert it to eV as requested.

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{KE} &= \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(9.11\times10^{-31}\text{ kg})(4.36\times10^{6}\text{ m/s})^2 \\ &= (86.4\times10^{-18}\text{ J})\left(\frac{1\text{ eV}}{1.602\times10^{-19}\text{ J}}\right) \\ &= 54.0\text{ eV} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This low energy means that these 0.167-nm electrons could be obtained by accelerating them through a 54.0-V electrostatic potential, an easy task. The results also confirm the assumption that the electrons are nonrelativistic, since their velocity is just over 1% of the speed of light and the kinetic energy is about 0.01% of the rest energy of an electron (0.511 MeV). If the electrons had turned out to be relativistic, we would have had to use more involved calculations employing relativistic formulas.

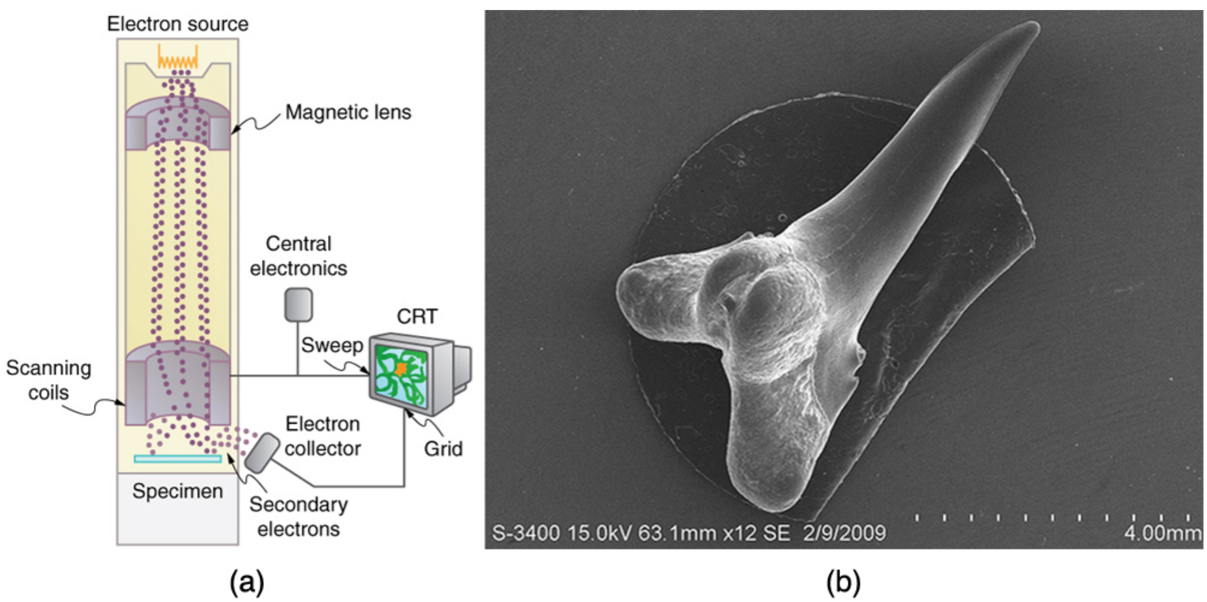
Electron Microscopes

One consequence or use of the wave nature of matter is found in the electron microscope. As we have discussed, there is a limit to the detail observed with any probe having a wavelength. Resolution, or observable detail, is limited to about one wavelength. Since a potential of only 54 V can produce electrons with sub-nanometer wavelengths, it is easy to get electrons with much smaller wavelengths than those of visible light (hundreds of nanometers). Electron microscopes can, thus, be constructed to detect much smaller details than optical microscopes. (See [link].)

There are basically two types of electron microscopes. The transmission electron microscope (TEM) accelerates electrons that are emitted from a hot filament (the cathode). The beam is broadened and then passes through the sample. A magnetic lens focuses the beam image onto a fluorescent screen, a photographic plate, or (most probably) a CCD (light sensitive camera), from which it is transferred to a computer. The TEM is similar to the optical microscope, but it requires a thin sample examined in a vacuum. However it can resolve details as small as 0.1 nm (10^{-10} m), providing magnifications

of 100 million times the size of the original object. The TEM has allowed us to see individual atoms and structure of cell nuclei.

The scanning electron microscope (SEM) provides images by using secondary electrons produced by the primary beam interacting with the surface of the sample (see [link]). The SEM also uses magnetic lenses to focus the beam onto the sample. However, it moves the beam around electrically to “scan” the sample in the *x* and *y* directions. A CCD detector is used to process the data for each electron position, producing images like the one at the beginning of this chapter. The SEM has the advantage of not requiring a thin sample and of providing a 3-D view. However, its resolution is about ten times less than a TEM.



Schematic of a scanning electron microscope (SEM) (a) used to observe small details, such as those seen in this image of a tooth of a *Himipristis*, a type of shark (b). (credit: Dallas Krentzel, Flickr)

Electrons were the first particles with mass to be directly confirmed to have the wavelength proposed by de Broglie. Subsequently, protons, helium nuclei, neutrons, and many others have been observed to exhibit

interference when they interact with objects having sizes similar to their de Broglie wavelength. The de Broglie wavelength for massless particles was well established in the 1920s for photons, and it has since been observed that all massless particles have a de Broglie wavelength $\lambda = h/p.$ The wave nature of all particles is a universal characteristic of nature. We shall see in following sections that implications of the de Broglie wavelength include the quantization of energy in atoms and molecules, and an alteration of our basic view of nature on the microscopic scale. The next section, for example, shows that there are limits to the precision with which we may make predictions, regardless of how hard we try. There are even limits to the precision with which we may measure an object's location or energy.

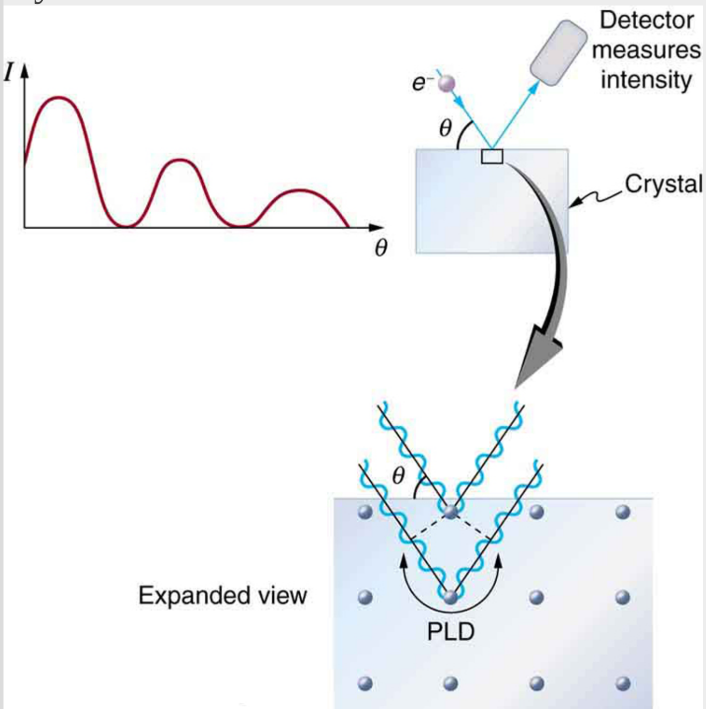
Note:

Making Connections: A Submicroscopic Diffraction Grating

The wave nature of matter allows it to exhibit all the characteristics of other, more familiar, waves. Diffraction gratings, for example, produce diffraction patterns for light that depend on grating spacing and the wavelength of the light. This effect, as with most wave phenomena, is most pronounced when the wave interacts with objects having a size similar to its wavelength. For gratings, this is the spacing between multiple slits.) When electrons interact with a system having a spacing similar to the electron wavelength, they show the same types of interference patterns as light does for diffraction gratings, as shown at top left in [link].

Atoms are spaced at regular intervals in a crystal as parallel planes, as shown in the bottom part of [link]. The spacings between these planes act like the openings in a diffraction grating. At certain incident angles, the paths of electrons scattering from successive planes differ by one wavelength and, thus, interfere constructively. At other angles, the path length differences are not an integral wavelength, and there is partial to total destructive interference. This type of scattering from a large crystal with well-defined lattice planes can produce dramatic interference patterns. It is called *Bragg reflection*, for the father-and-son team who first explored and analyzed it in some detail. The expanded view also shows the path-length differences and indicates how these depend on incident angle θ in a

manner similar to the diffraction patterns for x rays reflecting from a crystal.



The diffraction pattern at top left is produced by scattering electrons from a crystal and is graphed as a function of incident angle relative to the regular array of atoms in a crystal, as shown at bottom. Electrons scattering from the second layer of atoms travel farther than those scattered from the top layer. If the path length difference (PLD) is an integral wavelength, there is constructive interference.

Let us take the spacing between parallel planes of atoms in the crystal to be d. As mentioned, if the path length difference (PLD) for the electrons is a whole number of wavelengths, there will be constructive interference—that is, $\text{PLD} = n\lambda (n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots)$. Because $\text{AB} = \text{BC} = d \sin \theta$, we have constructive interference when $n\lambda = 2d \sin \theta$. This relationship is

called the *Bragg equation* and applies not only to electrons but also to x rays.
The wavelength of matter is a submicroscopic characteristic that explains a macroscopic phenomenon such as Bragg reflection. Similarly, the wavelength of light is a submicroscopic characteristic that explains the macroscopic phenomenon of diffraction patterns.

Section Summary

- Particles of matter also have a wavelength, called the de Broglie wavelength, given by $\lambda = \frac{h}{p}$, where p is momentum.
- Matter is found to have the same *interference characteristics* as any other wave.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How does the interference of water waves differ from the interference of electrons? How are they analogous?

Exercise:

Problem: Describe one type of evidence for the wave nature of matter.

Exercise:

Problem:

Describe one type of evidence for the particle nature of EM radiation.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

At what velocity will an electron have a wavelength of 1.00 m?

Solution:

7.28×10^{-4} m

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the wavelength of an electron moving at 3.00% of the speed of light?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what velocity does a proton have a 6.00-fm wavelength (about the size of a nucleus)? Assume the proton is nonrelativistic. (1 femtometer = 10^{-15} m.)

Solution:

$6.62 \times 10^{7}\ \mathrm{m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the velocity of a 0.400-kg billiard ball if its wavelength is 7.50 cm (large enough for it to interfere with other billiard balls)?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the wavelength of a proton moving at 1.00% of the speed of light.

Solution:

1.32×10^{-13} m

Exercise:

Problem:

Experiments are performed with ultracold neutrons having velocities as small as 1.00 m/s. (a) What is the wavelength of such a neutron? (b) What is its kinetic energy in eV?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the velocity of a neutron that has a 6.00-fm wavelength (about the size of a nucleus). Assume the neutron is nonrelativistic. (b) What is the neutron's kinetic energy in MeV?

Solution:

(a) $6.62 \times 10^{7}\ \text{m/s}$

(b) $22.9\ \text{MeV}$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the wavelength of an electron accelerated through a 30.0-kV potential, as in a TV tube?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the kinetic energy of an electron in a TEM having a 0.0100-nm wavelength?

Solution:
Equation:15.1 keV

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the velocity of an electron that has a wavelength of $1.00\ \mu\mathrm{m}$. (b) Through what voltage must the electron be accelerated to have this velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

The velocity of a proton emerging from a Van de Graaff accelerator is 25.0% of the speed of light. (a) What is the proton's wavelength? (b) What is its kinetic energy, assuming it is nonrelativistic? (c) What was the equivalent voltage through which it was accelerated?

Solution:

(a) 5.29 fm

(b) 4.70×10^{-12} J

(c) 29.4 MV

Exercise:

Problem:

The kinetic energy of an electron accelerated in an x-ray tube is 100 keV. Assuming it is nonrelativistic, what is its wavelength?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Assuming it is nonrelativistic, calculate the velocity of an electron with a 0.100-fm wavelength (small enough to detect details of a nucleus). (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) $7.28 \times 10^{12}\ \mathrm{m/s}$

(b) This is thousands of times the speed of light (an impossibility).

(c) The assumption that the electron is non-relativistic is unreasonable at this wavelength.

Glossary

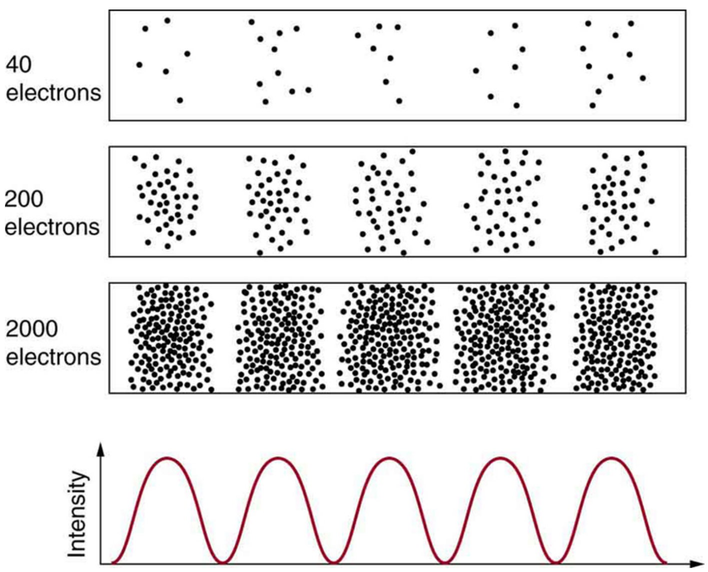
de Broglie wavelength
: the wavelength possessed by a particle of matter, calculated by $\lambda = h/p$

Probability: The Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle

- Use both versions of Heisenberg’s uncertainty principle in calculations.
- Explain the implications of Heisenberg’s uncertainty principle for measurements.

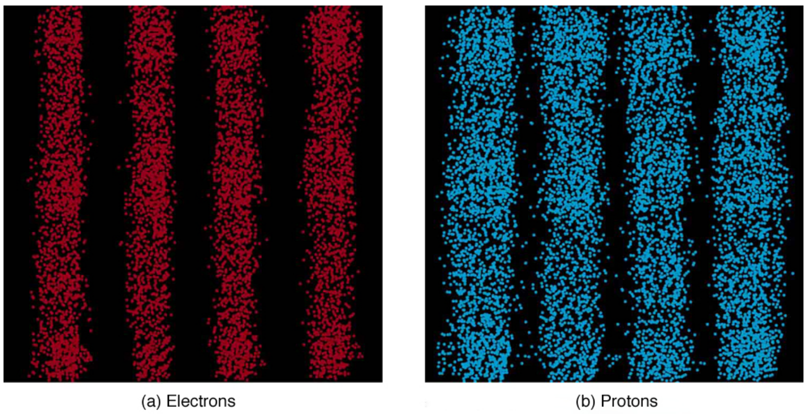
Probability Distribution

Matter and photons are waves, implying they are spread out over some distance. What is the position of a particle, such as an electron? Is it at the center of the wave? The answer lies in how you measure the position of an electron. Experiments show that you will find the electron at some definite location, unlike a wave. But if you set up exactly the same situation and measure it again, you will find the electron in a different location, often far outside any experimental uncertainty in your measurement. Repeated measurements will display a statistical distribution of locations that appears wavelike. (See [link].)



The building up of the diffraction pattern of electrons scattered from a crystal surface. Each electron arrives

at a definite location, which cannot be precisely predicted. The overall distribution shown at the bottom can be predicted as the diffraction of waves having the de Broglie wavelength of the electrons.



Double-slit interference for electrons (a) and protons (b) is identical for equal wavelengths and equal slit separations. Both patterns are probability distributions in the sense that they are built up by individual particles traversing the apparatus, the paths of which are not individually predictable.

After de Broglie proposed the wave nature of matter, many physicists, including Schrödinger and Heisenberg, explored the consequences. The idea quickly emerged that, *because of its wave character, a particle's trajectory and destination cannot be precisely predicted for each particle individually*. However, each particle goes to a definite place (as illustrated in [link]). After compiling enough data, you get a distribution related to the

particle’s wavelength and diffraction pattern. There is a certain *probability* of finding the particle at a given location, and the overall pattern is called a **probability distribution**. Those who developed quantum mechanics devised equations that predicted the probability distribution in various circumstances.

It is somewhat disquieting to think that you cannot predict exactly where an individual particle will go, or even follow it to its destination. Let us explore what happens if we try to follow a particle. Consider the double-slit patterns obtained for electrons and photons in [link]. First, we note that these patterns are identical, following $d \sin \theta = m\lambda$, the equation for double-slit constructive interference developed in Photon Energies and the Electromagnetic Spectrum, where d is the slit separation and λ is the electron or photon wavelength.

Both patterns build up statistically as individual particles fall on the detector. This can be observed for photons or electrons—for now, let us concentrate on electrons. You might imagine that the electrons are interfering with one another as any waves do. To test this, you can lower the intensity until there is never more than one electron between the slits and the screen. The same interference pattern builds up! This implies that a particle’s probability distribution spans both slits, and the particles actually interfere with themselves. Does this also mean that the electron goes through both slits? An electron is a basic unit of matter that is not divisible. But it is a fair question, and so we should look to see if the electron traverses one slit or the other, or both. One possibility is to have coils around the slits that detect charges moving through them. What is observed is that an electron always goes through one slit or the other; it does not split to go through both. But there is a catch. If you determine that the electron went through one of the slits, you no longer get a double slit pattern—instead, you get single slit interference. There is no escape by using another method of determining which slit the electron went through. Knowing the particle went through one slit forces a single-slit pattern. If you do not observe which slit the electron goes through, you obtain a double-slit pattern.

Heisenberg Uncertainty

How does knowing which slit the electron passed through change the pattern? The answer is fundamentally important—*measurement affects the system being observed*. Information can be lost, and in some cases it is impossible to measure two physical quantities simultaneously to exact precision. For example, you can measure the position of a moving electron by scattering light or other electrons from it. Those probes have momentum themselves, and by scattering from the electron, they change its momentum *in a manner that loses information*. There is a limit to absolute knowledge, even in principle.

Werner Heisenberg was one of the best of those physicists who developed early quantum mechanics. Not only did his work enable a description of nature on the very small scale, it also changed our

view of the availability of knowledge. Although he is universally recognized for his brilliance and the importance of his work (he received the Nobel Prize in 1932, for example), Heisenberg remained in Germany during World War II and headed the German effort to build a nuclear bomb, permanently alienating himself from most of the scientific community. (credit: Author Unknown, via Wikimedia Commons)

It was Werner Heisenberg who first stated this limit to knowledge in 1929 as a result of his work on quantum mechanics and the wave characteristics of all particles. (See [link]). Specifically, consider simultaneously measuring the position and momentum of an electron (it could be any particle). There is an **uncertainty in position** Δx that is approximately equal to the wavelength of the particle. That is,

Equation:

$$\Delta x \approx \lambda.$$

As discussed above, a wave is not located at one point in space. If the electron's position is measured repeatedly, a spread in locations will be observed, implying an uncertainty in position Δx. To detect the position of the particle, we must interact with it, such as having it collide with a detector. In the collision, the particle will lose momentum. This change in momentum could be anywhere from close to zero to the total momentum of the particle, $p = h/\lambda$. It is not possible to tell how much momentum will be transferred to a detector, and so there is an **uncertainty in momentum** Δp, too. In fact, the uncertainty in momentum may be as large as the momentum itself, which in equation form means that

Equation:

$$\Delta p \approx \frac{h}{\lambda}.$$

The uncertainty in position can be reduced by using a shorter-wavelength electron, since $\Delta x \approx \lambda$. But shortening the wavelength increases the uncertainty in momentum, since $\Delta p \approx h/\lambda$. Conversely, the uncertainty in momentum can be reduced by using a longer-wavelength electron, but this increases the uncertainty in position. Mathematically, you can express this trade-off by multiplying the uncertainties. The wavelength cancels, leaving

Equation:

$$\Delta x \Delta p \approx h.$$

So if one uncertainty is reduced, the other must increase so that their product is $\approx h$.

With the use of advanced mathematics, Heisenberg showed that the best that can be done in a *simultaneous measurement of position and momentum* is

Equation:

$$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \frac{h}{4\pi}.$$

This is known as the **Heisenberg uncertainty principle**. It is impossible to measure position x and momentum p simultaneously with uncertainties Δx and Δp that multiply to be less than $h/4\pi$. Neither uncertainty can be zero. Neither uncertainty can become small without the other becoming large. A small wavelength allows accurate position measurement, but it increases the momentum of the probe to the point that it further disturbs the momentum of a system being measured. For example, if an electron is scattered from an atom and has a wavelength small enough to detect the position of electrons in the atom, its momentum can knock the electrons from their orbits in a manner that loses information about their original motion. It is therefore impossible to follow an electron in its orbit around an atom. If you measure the electron's position, you will find it in a definite location, but the atom will be disrupted. Repeated measurements on identical atoms will produce interesting probability distributions for electrons around the atom, but they will not produce motion information. The probability distributions are referred to as electron clouds or orbitals. The shapes of these orbitals are often shown in general chemistry texts and are discussed in The Wave Nature of Matter Causes Quantization.

Example:
Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle in Position and Momentum for an Atom

(a) If the position of an electron in an atom is measured to an accuracy of 0.0100 nm, what is the electron's uncertainty in velocity? (b) If the electron has this velocity, what is its kinetic energy in eV?

Strategy

The uncertainty in position is the accuracy of the measurement, or $\Delta x = 0.0100$ nm. Thus the smallest uncertainty in momentum Δp can be calculated using $\Delta x \Delta p \geq h/4\pi$. Once the uncertainty in momentum Δp is found, the uncertainty in velocity can be found from $\Delta p = m\Delta v$.

Solution for (a)

Using the equals sign in the uncertainty principle to express the minimum uncertainty, we have

Equation:

$$\Delta x \Delta p = \frac{h}{4\pi}.$$

Solving for Δp and substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$\Delta p = \frac{h}{4\pi \Delta x} = \frac{6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}}{4\pi (1.00 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{m})} = 5.28 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\Delta p = 5.28 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s} = m \Delta v.$$

Solving for Δv and substituting the mass of an electron gives

Equation:

$$\Delta v = \frac{\Delta p}{m} = \frac{5.28 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}}{9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg}} = 5.79 \times 10^{6}\ \text{m/s}.$$

Solution for (b)

Although large, this velocity is not highly relativistic, and so the electron's kinetic energy is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{KE}_e &= \tfrac{1}{2} m v^2 \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2} (9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(5.79 \times 10^{6}\ \text{m/s})^2 \\ &= (1.53 \times 10^{-17}\ \text{J}) \left(\tfrac{1\ \text{eV}}{1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}} \right) = 95.5\ \text{eV}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

Since atoms are roughly 0.1 nm in size, knowing the position of an electron to 0.0100 nm localizes it reasonably well inside the atom. This

would be like being able to see details one-tenth the size of the atom. But the consequent uncertainty in velocity is large. You certainly could not follow it very well if its velocity is so uncertain. To get a further idea of how large the uncertainty in velocity is, we assumed the velocity of the electron was equal to its uncertainty and found this gave a kinetic energy of 95.5 eV. This is significantly greater than the typical energy difference between levels in atoms (see [link]), so that it is impossible to get a meaningful energy for the electron if we know its position even moderately well.

Why don't we notice Heisenberg's uncertainty principle in everyday life? The answer is that Planck's constant is very small. Thus the lower limit in the uncertainty of measuring the position and momentum of large objects is negligible. We can detect sunlight reflected from Jupiter and follow the planet in its orbit around the Sun. The reflected sunlight alters the momentum of Jupiter and creates an uncertainty in its momentum, but this is totally negligible compared with Jupiter's huge momentum. The correspondence principle tells us that the predictions of quantum mechanics become indistinguishable from classical physics for large objects, which is the case here.

Heisenberg Uncertainty for Energy and Time

There is another form of **Heisenberg's uncertainty principle** for *simultaneous measurements of energy and time*. In equation form,
Equation:

$$\Delta E \Delta t \geq \frac{h}{4\pi},$$

where ΔE is the **uncertainty in energy** and Δt is the **uncertainty in time**. This means that within a time interval Δt, it is not possible to measure energy precisely—there will be an uncertainty ΔE in the measurement. In order to measure energy more precisely (to make ΔE smaller), we must

increase Δt. This time interval may be the amount of time we take to make the measurement, or it could be the amount of time a particular state exists, as in the next [link].

Example:
Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle for Energy and Time for an Atom
An atom in an excited state temporarily stores energy. If the lifetime of this excited state is measured to be 1.0×10^{-10} s, what is the minimum uncertainty in the energy of the state in eV?
Strategy
The minimum uncertainty in energy ΔE is found by using the equals sign in $\Delta E \Delta t \geq h/4\pi$ and corresponds to a reasonable choice for the uncertainty in time. The largest the uncertainty in time can be is the full lifetime of the excited state, or $\Delta t = 1.0 \times 10^{-10}$ s.
Solution
Solving the uncertainty principle for ΔE and substituting known values gives
Equation:

$$\Delta E = \frac{h}{4\pi\Delta t} = \frac{6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}}{4\pi(1.0 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{s})} = 5.3 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{J}.$$

Now converting to eV yields
Equation:

$$\Delta E = (5.3 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{J})\left(\frac{1\ \text{eV}}{1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}}\right) = 3.3 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{eV}.$$

Discussion
The lifetime of 10^{-10} s is typical of excited states in atoms—on human time scales, they quickly emit their stored energy. An uncertainty in energy of only a few millionths of an eV results. This uncertainty is small compared with typical excitation energies in atoms, which are on the order of 1 eV. So here the uncertainty principle limits the accuracy with which

we can measure the lifetime and energy of such states, but not very significantly.

The uncertainty principle for energy and time can be of great significance if the lifetime of a system is very short. Then Δt is very small, and ΔE is consequently very large. Some nuclei and exotic particles have extremely short lifetimes (as small as 10^{-25} s), causing uncertainties in energy as great as many GeV (10^9 eV). Stored energy appears as increased rest mass, and so this means that there is significant uncertainty in the rest mass of short-lived particles. When measured repeatedly, a spread of masses or decay energies are obtained. The spread is ΔE. You might ask whether this uncertainty in energy could be avoided by not measuring the lifetime. The answer is no. Nature knows the lifetime, and so its brevity affects the energy of the particle. This is so well established experimentally that the uncertainty in decay energy is used to calculate the lifetime of short-lived states. Some nuclei and particles are so short-lived that it is difficult to measure their lifetime. But if their decay energy can be measured, its spread is ΔE, and this is used in the uncertainty principle ($\Delta E \Delta t \geq h/4\pi$) to calculate the lifetime Δt.

There is another consequence of the uncertainty principle for energy and time. If energy is uncertain by ΔE, then conservation of energy can be violated by ΔE for a time Δt. Neither the physicist nor nature can tell that conservation of energy has been violated, if the violation is temporary and smaller than the uncertainty in energy. While this sounds innocuous enough, we shall see in later chapters that it allows the temporary creation of matter from nothing and has implications for how nature transmits forces over very small distances.

Finally, note that in the discussion of particles and waves, we have stated that individual measurements produce precise or particle-like results. A definite position is determined each time we observe an electron, for example. But repeated measurements produce a spread in values consistent with wave characteristics. The great theoretical physicist Richard Feynman (1918–1988) commented, “What there are, are particles.” When you

observe enough of them, they distribute themselves as you would expect for a wave phenomenon. However, what there are as they travel we cannot tell because, when we do try to measure, we affect the traveling.

Section Summary

- Matter is found to have the same interference characteristics as any other wave.
- There is now a probability distribution for the location of a particle rather than a definite position.
- Another consequence of the wave character of all particles is the Heisenberg uncertainty principle, which limits the precision with which certain physical quantities can be known simultaneously. For position and momentum, the uncertainty principle is $\Delta x \Delta p \geq \frac{h}{4\pi}$, where Δx is the uncertainty in position and Δp is the uncertainty in momentum.
- For energy and time, the uncertainty principle is $\Delta E \Delta t \geq \frac{h}{4\pi}$ where ΔE is the uncertainty in energy and Δt is the uncertainty in time.
- These small limits are fundamentally important on the quantum-mechanical scale.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the Heisenberg uncertainty principle? Does it place limits on what can be known?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If the position of an electron in a membrane is measured to an accuracy of $1.00\ \mu\text{m}$, what is the electron's minimum uncertainty in velocity? (b) If the electron has this velocity, what is its kinetic energy in eV? (c) What are the implications of this energy, comparing it to typical molecular binding energies?

Solution:

(a) 57.9 m/s

(b) $9.55 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{eV}$

(c) From [link], we see that typical molecular binding energies range from about 1eV to 10 eV, therefore the result in part (b) is approximately 9 orders of magnitude smaller than typical molecular binding energies.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If the position of a chlorine ion in a membrane is measured to an accuracy of $1.00\ \mu\text{m}$, what is its minimum uncertainty in velocity, given its mass is $5.86 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{kg}$? (b) If the ion has this velocity, what is its kinetic energy in eV, and how does this compare with typical molecular binding energies?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the velocity of an electron in an atom is known to an accuracy of $2.0 \times 10^{3}\ \text{m/s}$ (reasonably accurate compared with orbital velocities). What is the electron's minimum uncertainty in position, and how does this compare with the approximate 0.1-nm size of the atom?

Solution:

29 nm,

290 times greater

Exercise:

Problem:

The velocity of a proton in an accelerator is known to an accuracy of 0.250% of the speed of light. (This could be small compared with its velocity.) What is the smallest possible uncertainty in its position?

Exercise:

Problem:

A relatively long-lived excited state of an atom has a lifetime of 3.00 ms. What is the minimum uncertainty in its energy?

Solution:

1.10×10^{-13} eV

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The lifetime of a highly unstable nucleus is 10^{-20} s. What is the smallest uncertainty in its decay energy? (b) Compare this with the rest energy of an electron.

Exercise:

Problem:

The decay energy of a short-lived particle has an uncertainty of 1.0 MeV due to its short lifetime. What is the smallest lifetime it can have?

Solution:

3.3×10^{-22} s

Exercise:

Problem:

The decay energy of a short-lived nuclear excited state has an uncertainty of 2.0 eV due to its short lifetime. What is the smallest lifetime it can have?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the approximate uncertainty in the mass of a muon, as determined from its decay lifetime?

Solution:

2.66×10^{-46} kg

Exercise:

Problem:

Derive the approximate form of Heisenberg's uncertainty principle for energy and time, $\Delta E \Delta t \approx h$, using the following arguments: Since the position of a particle is uncertain by $\Delta x \approx \lambda$, where λ is the wavelength of the photon used to examine it, there is an uncertainty in the time the photon takes to traverse Δx. Furthermore, the photon has an energy related to its wavelength, and it can transfer some or all of this energy to the object being examined. Thus the uncertainty in the energy of the object is also related to λ. Find Δt and ΔE; then multiply them to give the approximate uncertainty principle.

Glossary

Heisenberg's uncertainty principle
: a fundamental limit to the precision with which pairs of quantities (momentum and position, and energy and time) can be measured

uncertainty in energy
: lack of precision or lack of knowledge of precise results in measurements of energy

uncertainty in time
: lack of precision or lack of knowledge of precise results in measurements of time

uncertainty in momentum
: lack of precision or lack of knowledge of precise results in measurements of momentum

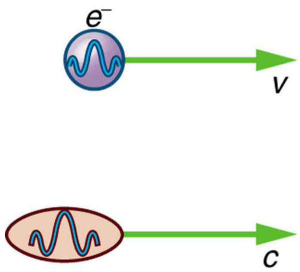
uncertainty in position
: lack of precision or lack of knowledge of precise results in measurements of position

probability distribution
: the overall spatial distribution of probabilities to find a particle at a given location

The Particle-Wave Duality Reviewed

- Explain the concept of particle-wave duality, and its scope.

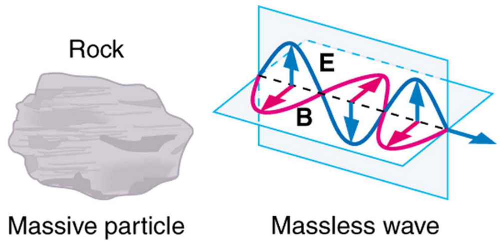
Particle-wave duality—the fact that all particles have wave properties—is one of the cornerstones of quantum mechanics. We first came across it in the treatment of photons, those particles of EM radiation that exhibit both particle and wave properties, but not at the same time. Later it was noted that particles of matter have wave properties as well. The dual properties of particles and waves are found for all particles, whether massless like photons, or having a mass like electrons. (See [link].)



On a quantum-mechanical scale (i.e., very small), particles with and without mass have wave properties. For example, both electrons and photons have wavelengths but also behave as particles.

There are many submicroscopic particles in nature. Most have mass and are expected to act as particles, or the smallest units of matter. All these masses have wave properties, with wavelengths given by the de Broglie relationship $\lambda = h/p$. So, too, do combinations of these particles, such as nuclei, atoms, and molecules. As a combination of masses becomes large, particularly if it is large enough to be called macroscopic, its wave nature becomes difficult to observe. This is consistent with our common experience with matter.

Some particles in nature are massless. We have only treated the photon so far, but all massless entities travel at the speed of light, have a wavelength, and exhibit particle and wave behaviors. They have momentum given by a rearrangement of the de Broglie relationship, $p = h/\lambda$. In large combinations of these massless particles (such large combinations are common only for photons or EM waves), there is mostly wave behavior upon detection, and the particle nature becomes difficult to observe. This is also consistent with experience. (See [link].)



On a classical scale (macroscopic), particles with mass behave as particles and not as waves. Particles without mass act as waves and not as particles.

The particle-wave duality is a universal attribute. It is another connection between matter and energy. Not only has modern physics been able to

describe nature for high speeds and small sizes, it has also discovered new connections and symmetries. There is greater unity and symmetry in nature than was known in the classical era—but they were dreamt of. A beautiful poem written by the English poet William Blake some two centuries ago contains the following four lines:

To see the World in a Grain of Sand

And a Heaven in a Wild Flower

Hold Infinity in the palm of your hand

And Eternity in an hour

Integrated Concepts

The problem set for this section involves concepts from this chapter and several others. Physics is most interesting when applied to general situations involving more than a narrow set of physical principles. For example, photons have momentum, hence the relevance of Linear Momentum and Collisions. The following topics are involved in some or all of the problems in this section:

- Dynamics: Newton’s Laws of Motion
- Work, Energy, and Energy Resources
- Linear Momentum and Collisions
- Heat and Heat Transfer Methods
- Electric Potential and Electric Field
- Electric Current, Resistance, and Ohm’s Law
- Wave Optics
- Special Relativity

Note:
Problem-Solving Strategy

1. Identify which physical principles are involved.

2. Solve the problem using strategies outlined in the text.

[link] illustrates how these strategies are applied to an integrated-concept problem.

Example:
Recoil of a Dust Particle after Absorbing a Photon
The following topics are involved in this integrated concepts worked example:

Photons (quantum mechanics)
Linear Momentum

Topics

A 550-nm photon (visible light) is absorbed by a 1.00-μg particle of dust in outer space. (a) Find the momentum of such a photon. (b) What is the recoil velocity of the particle of dust, assuming it is initially at rest?
Strategy Step 1
To solve an *integrated-concept problem*, such as those following this example, we must first identify the physical principles involved and identify the chapters in which they are found. Part (a) of this example asks for the *momentum of a photon*, a topic of the present chapter. Part (b) considers *recoil following a collision*, a topic of Linear Momentum and Collisions.
Strategy Step 2

The following solutions to each part of the example illustrate how specific problem-solving strategies are applied. These involve identifying knowns and unknowns, checking to see if the answer is reasonable, and so on.

Solution for (a)

The momentum of a photon is related to its wavelength by the equation:

Equation:

$$p = \frac{h}{\lambda}.$$

Entering the known value for Planck's constant h and given the wavelength λ, we obtain

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} p &= \frac{6.63\times10^{-34}\text{ J}\cdot\text{s}}{550\times10^{-9}\text{ m}} \\ &= 1.21\times10^{-27}\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)

This momentum is small, as expected from discussions in the text and the fact that photons of visible light carry small amounts of energy and momentum compared with those carried by macroscopic objects.

Solution for (b)

Conservation of momentum in the absorption of this photon by a grain of dust can be analyzed using the equation:

Equation:

$$p_1 + p_2 = p\prime_1 + p\prime_2 (F_{\text{net}} = 0).$$

The net external force is zero, since the dust is in outer space. Let 1 represent the photon and 2 the dust particle. Before the collision, the dust is at rest (relative to some observer); after the collision, there is no photon (it is absorbed). So conservation of momentum can be written

Equation:

$$p_1 = p\prime_2 = \text{mv},$$

where p_1 is the photon momentum before the collision and $p\prime_2$ is the dust momentum after the collision. The mass and recoil velocity of the dust are

m and v, respectively. Solving this for v, the requested quantity, yields
Equation:

$$v = \frac{p}{m},$$

where p is the photon momentum found in part (a). Entering known values (noting that a microgram is 10^{-9} kg) gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \frac{1.21 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}}{1.00 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{kg}} \\ &= 1.21 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
The recoil velocity of the particle of dust is extremely small. As we have noted, however, there are immense numbers of photons in sunlight and other macroscopic sources. In time, collisions and absorption of many photons could cause a significant recoil of the dust, as observed in comet tails.

Section Summary

- The particle-wave duality refers to the fact that all particles—those with mass and those without mass—have wave characteristics.
- This is a further connection between mass and energy.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:
In what ways are matter and energy related that were not known before the development of relativity and quantum mechanics?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The 54.0-eV electron in [link] has a 0.167-nm wavelength. If such electrons are passed through a double slit and have their first maximum at an angle of 25.0°, what is the slit separation d?

Solution:

0.395 nm

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

An electron microscope produces electrons with a 2.00-pm wavelength. If these are passed through a 1.00-nm single slit, at what angle will the first diffraction minimum be found?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A certain heat lamp emits 200 W of mostly IR radiation averaging 1500 nm in wavelength. (a) What is the average photon energy in joules? (b) How many of these photons are required to increase the temperature of a person's shoulder by 2.0°C, assuming the affected mass is 4.0 kg with a specific heat of $0.83\ \text{kcal/kg}\cdot^{\circ}\text{C}$. Also assume no other significant heat transfer. (c) How long does this take?

Solution:

(a) 1.3×10^{-19} J

(b) 2.1×10^{23}

(c) 1.4×10^2 s

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

On its high power setting, a microwave oven produces 900 W of 2560 MHz microwaves. (a) How many photons per second is this? (b) How many photons are required to increase the temperature of a 0.500-kg mass of pasta by 45.0ºC, assuming a specific heat of $0.900\text{ kcal/kg}\cdot\text{ºC}$? Neglect all other heat transfer. (c) How long must the microwave operator wait for their pasta to be ready?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) Calculate the amount of microwave energy in joules needed to raise the temperature of 1.00 kg of soup from 20.0ºC to 100ºC. (b) What is the total momentum of all the microwave photons it takes to do this? (c) Calculate the velocity of a 1.00-kg mass with the same momentum. (d) What is the kinetic energy of this mass?

Solution:

(a) 3.35×10^5 J

(b) $1.12 \times 10^{-3}\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$

(c) $1.12 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m/s}$

(d) 6.23×10^{-7} J

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) What is γ for an electron emerging from the Stanford Linear Accelerator with a total energy of 50.0 GeV? (b) Find its momentum. (c) What is the electron's wavelength?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) What is γ for a proton having an energy of 1.00 TeV, produced by the Fermilab accelerator? (b) Find its momentum. (c) What is the proton's wavelength?

Solution:

(a) 1.06×10^{3}

(b) $5.33 \times 10^{-16}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s}$

(c) $1.24 \times 10^{-18}\ \mathrm{m}$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

An electron microscope passes 1.00-pm-wavelength electrons through a circular aperture $2.00\ \mu\mathrm{m}$ in diameter. What is the angle between two just-resolvable point sources for this microscope?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) Calculate the velocity of electrons that form the same pattern as 450-nm light when passed through a double slit. (b) Calculate the kinetic energy of each and compare them. (c) Would either be easier to generate than the other? Explain.

Solution:

(a) $1.62 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{m/s}$

(b) $4.42 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{J}$ for photon, $1.19 \times 10^{-24}\ \mathrm{J}$ for electron, photon energy is 3.71×10^{5} times greater

(c) The light is easier to make because 450-nm light is blue light and therefore easy to make. Creating electrons with $7.43\ \mu\mathrm{eV}$ of energy would not be difficult, but would require a vacuum.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) What is the separation between double slits that produces a second-order minimum at 45.0^{o} for 650-nm light? (b) What slit separation is needed to produce the same pattern for 1.00-keV protons.

Solution:

(a) $2.30 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m}$

(b) $3.20 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{m}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A laser with a power output of 2.00 mW at a wavelength of 400 nm is projected onto calcium metal. (a) How many electrons per second are ejected? (b) What power is carried away by the electrons, given that the binding energy is 2.71 eV? (c) Calculate the current of ejected electrons. (d) If the photoelectric material is electrically insulated and acts like a 2.00-pF capacitor, how long will current flow before the capacitor voltage stops it?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

One problem with x rays is that they are not sensed. Calculate the temperature increase of a researcher exposed in a few seconds to a nearly fatal accidental dose of x rays under the following conditions. The energy of the x-ray photons is 200 keV, and 4.00×10^{13} of them are absorbed per kilogram of tissue, the specific heat of which is $0.830 \text{ kcal/kg} \cdot \text{ºC}$. (Note that medical diagnostic x-ray machines *cannot* produce an intensity this great.)

Solution:

$3.69 \times 10^{-4} \text{ ºC}$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A 1.00-fm photon has a wavelength short enough to detect some information about nuclei. (a) What is the photon momentum? (b) What is its energy in joules and MeV? (c) What is the (relativistic) velocity of an electron with the same momentum? (d) Calculate the electron's kinetic energy.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The momentum of light is exactly reversed when reflected straight back from a mirror, assuming negligible recoil of the mirror. Thus the change in momentum is twice the photon momentum. Suppose light of intensity 1.00 kW/m^2 reflects from a mirror of area 2.00 m^2. (a) Calculate the energy reflected in 1.00 s. (b) What is the momentum imparted to the mirror? (c) Using the most general form of Newton's second law, what is the force on the mirror? (d) Does the assumption of no mirror recoil seem reasonable?

Solution:

(a) 2.00 kJ

(b) $1.33 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s}$

(c) $1.33 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{N}$

(d) yes

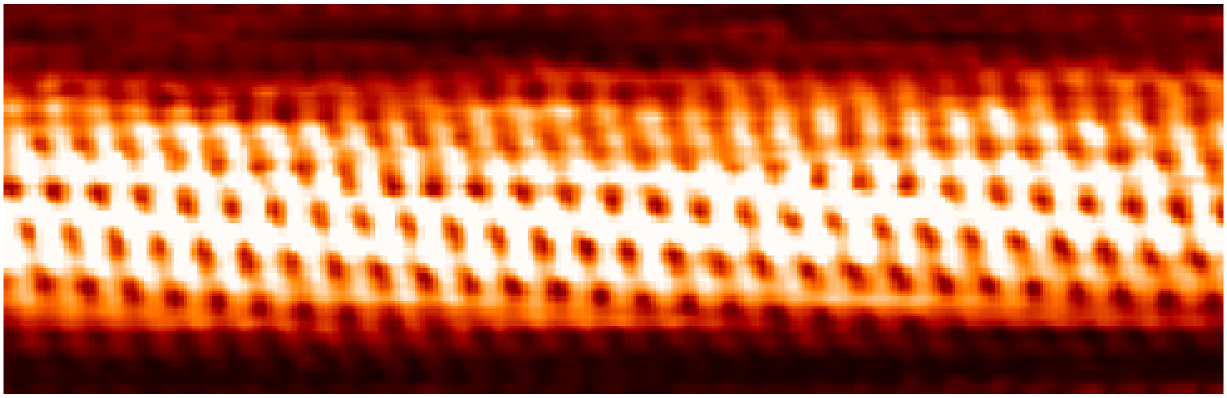
Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Sunlight above the Earth's atmosphere has an intensity of $1.30\ \mathrm{kW/m^2}$. If this is reflected straight back from a mirror that has only a small recoil, the light's momentum is exactly reversed, giving the mirror twice the incident momentum. (a) Calculate the force per square meter of mirror. (b) Very low mass mirrors can be constructed in the near weightlessness of space, and attached to a spaceship to sail it. Once done, the average mass per square meter of the spaceship is 0.100 kg. Find the acceleration of the spaceship if all other forces are balanced. (c) How fast is it moving 24 hours later?

Introduction to Atomic Physics
class="introduction"

Individual carbon atoms are visible in this image of a carbon nanotube made by a scanning tunneling electron microscope. (credit: Taner Yildirim, National Institute of Standards and Technology, via Wikimedia Commons)



From childhood on, we learn that atoms are a substructure of all things around us, from the air we breathe to the autumn leaves that blanket a forest trail. Invisible to the eye, the existence and properties of atoms are used to explain many phenomena—a theme found throughout this text. In this chapter, we discuss the discovery of atoms and their own substructures; we then apply quantum mechanics to the description of atoms, and their properties and interactions. Along the way, we will find, much like the scientists who made the original discoveries, that new concepts emerge with applications far beyond the boundaries of atomic physics.

Discovery of the Atom

- Describe the basic structure of the atom, the substructure of all matter.

How do we know that atoms are really there if we cannot see them with our eyes? A brief account of the progression from the proposal of atoms by the Greeks to the first direct evidence of their existence follows.

People have long speculated about the structure of matter and the existence of atoms. The earliest significant ideas to survive are due to the ancient Greeks in the fifth century BCE, especially those of the philosophers Leucippus and Democritus. (There is some evidence that philosophers in both India and China made similar speculations, at about the same time.) They considered the question of whether a substance can be divided without limit into ever smaller pieces. There are only a few possible answers to this question. One is that infinitesimally small subdivision is possible. Another is what Democritus in particular believed—that there is a smallest unit that cannot be further subdivided. Democritus called this the **atom**. We now know that atoms themselves can be subdivided, but their identity is destroyed in the process, so the Greeks were correct in a respect. The Greeks also felt that atoms were in constant motion, another correct notion.

The Greeks and others speculated about the properties of atoms, proposing that only a few types existed and that all matter was formed as various combinations of these types. The famous proposal that the basic elements were earth, air, fire, and water was brilliant, but incorrect. The Greeks had identified the most common examples of the four states of matter (solid, gas, plasma, and liquid), rather than the basic elements. More than 2000 years passed before observations could be made with equipment capable of revealing the true nature of atoms.

Over the centuries, discoveries were made regarding the properties of substances and their chemical reactions. Certain systematic features were recognized, but similarities between common and rare elements resulted in efforts to transmute them (lead into gold, in particular) for financial gain. Secrecy was endemic. Alchemists discovered and rediscovered many facts but did not make them broadly available. As the Middle Ages ended, alchemy gradually faded, and the science of chemistry arose. It was no

longer possible, nor considered desirable, to keep discoveries secret. Collective knowledge grew, and by the beginning of the 19th century, an important fact was well established—the masses of reactants in specific chemical reactions always have a particular mass ratio. This is very strong indirect evidence that there are basic units (atoms and molecules) that have these same mass ratios. The English chemist John Dalton (1766–1844) did much of this work, with significant contributions by the Italian physicist Amedeo Avogadro (1776–1856). It was Avogadro who developed the idea of a fixed number of atoms and molecules in a mole, and this special number is called Avogadro's number in his honor. The Austrian physicist Johann Josef Loschmidt was the first to measure the value of the constant in 1865 using the kinetic theory of gases.

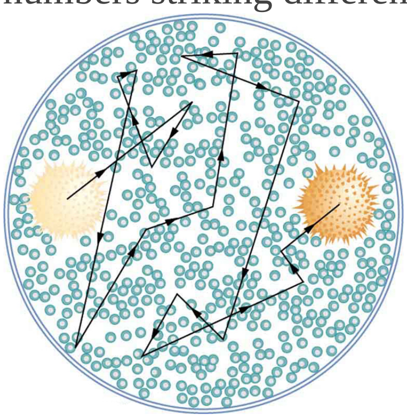
Note:
Patterns and Systematics
The recognition and appreciation of patterns has enabled us to make many discoveries. The periodic table of elements was proposed as an organized summary of the known elements long before all elements had been discovered, and it led to many other discoveries. We shall see in later chapters that patterns in the properties of subatomic particles led to the proposal of quarks as their underlying structure, an idea that is still bearing fruit.

Knowledge of the properties of elements and compounds grew, culminating in the mid-19th-century development of the periodic table of the elements by Dmitri Mendeleev (1834–1907), the great Russian chemist. Mendeleev proposed an ingenious array that highlighted the periodic nature of the properties of elements. Believing in the systematics of the periodic table, he also predicted the existence of then-unknown elements to complete it. Once these elements were discovered and determined to have properties predicted by Mendeleev, his periodic table became universally accepted.

Also during the 19th century, the kinetic theory of gases was developed. Kinetic theory is based on the existence of atoms and molecules in random

thermal motion and provides a microscopic explanation of the gas laws, heat transfer, and thermodynamics (see Introduction to Temperature, Kinetic Theory, and the Gas Laws and Introduction to Laws of Thermodynamics). Kinetic theory works so well that it is another strong indication of the existence of atoms. But it is still indirect evidence—individual atoms and molecules had not been observed. There were heated debates about the validity of kinetic theory until direct evidence of atoms was obtained.

The first truly direct evidence of atoms is credited to Robert Brown, a Scottish botanist. In 1827, he noticed that tiny pollen grains suspended in still water moved about in complex paths. This can be observed with a microscope for any small particles in a fluid. The motion is caused by the random thermal motions of fluid molecules colliding with particles in the fluid, and it is now called **Brownian motion**. (See [link].) Statistical fluctuations in the numbers of molecules striking the sides of a visible particle cause it to move first this way, then that. Although the molecules cannot be directly observed, their effects on the particle can be. By examining Brownian motion, the size of molecules can be calculated. The smaller and more numerous they are, the smaller the fluctuations in the numbers striking different sides.



The position of a pollen grain in water, measured every few seconds under a microscope,

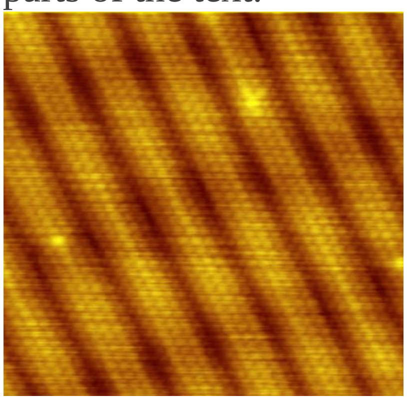
exhibits Brownian motion. Brownian motion is due to fluctuations in the number of atoms and molecules colliding with a small mass, causing it to move about in complex paths. This is nearly direct evidence for the existence of atoms, providing a satisfactory alternative explanation cannot be found.

It was Albert Einstein who, starting in his epochal year of 1905, published several papers that explained precisely how Brownian motion could be used to measure the size of atoms and molecules. (In 1905 Einstein created special relativity, proposed photons as quanta of EM radiation, and produced a theory of Brownian motion that allowed the size of atoms to be determined. All of this was done in his spare time, since he worked days as a patent examiner. Any one of these very basic works could have been the crowning achievement of an entire career—yet Einstein did even more in later years.) Their sizes were only approximately known to be 10^{-10} m, based on a comparison of latent heat of vaporization and surface tension made in about 1805 by Thomas Young of double-slit fame and the famous astronomer and mathematician Simon Laplace.

Using Einstein's ideas, the French physicist Jean-Baptiste Perrin (1870–1942) carefully observed Brownian motion; not only did he confirm Einstein's theory, he also produced accurate sizes for atoms and molecules.

Since molecular weights and densities of materials were well established, knowing atomic and molecular sizes allowed a precise value for Avogadro’s number to be obtained. (If we know how big an atom is, we know how many fit into a certain volume.) Perrin also used these ideas to explain atomic and molecular agitation effects in sedimentation, and he received the 1926 Nobel Prize for his achievements. Most scientists were already convinced of the existence of atoms, but the accurate observation and analysis of Brownian motion was conclusive—it was the first truly direct evidence.

A huge array of direct and indirect evidence for the existence of atoms now exists. For example, it has become possible to accelerate ions (much as electrons are accelerated in cathode-ray tubes) and to detect them individually as well as measure their masses (see More Applications of Magnetism for a discussion of mass spectrometers). Other devices that observe individual atoms, such as the scanning tunneling electron microscope, will be discussed elsewhere. (See [link].) All of our understanding of the properties of matter is based on and consistent with the atom. The atom’s substructures, such as electron shells and the nucleus, are both interesting and important. The nucleus in turn has a substructure, as do the particles of which it is composed. These topics, and the question of whether there is a smallest basic structure to matter, will be explored in later parts of the text.



Individual atoms can be detected with devices such as the scanning tunneling electron

microscope that produced this image of individual gold atoms on a graphite substrate. (credit: Erwin Rossen, Eindhoven University of Technology, via Wikimedia Commons)

Section Summary

- Atoms are the smallest unit of elements; atoms combine to form molecules, the smallest unit of compounds.
- The first direct observation of atoms was in Brownian motion.
- Analysis of Brownian motion gave accurate sizes for atoms (10^{-10} m on average) and a precise value for Avogadro’s number.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Name three different types of evidence for the existence of atoms.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why patterns observed in the periodic table of the elements are evidence for the existence of atoms, and why Brownian motion is a more direct type of evidence for their existence.

Exercise:

Problem: If atoms exist, why can't we see them with visible light?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the given charge-to-mass ratios for electrons and protons, and knowing the magnitudes of their charges are equal, what is the ratio of the proton's mass to the electron's? (Note that since the charge-to-mass ratios are given to only three-digit accuracy, your answer may differ from the accepted ratio in the fourth digit.)

Solution:

1.84×10^3

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the mass of a proton using the charge-to-mass ratio given for it in this chapter and its known charge. (b) How does your result compare with the proton mass given in this chapter?

Exercise:

Problem:

If someone wanted to build a scale model of the atom with a nucleus 1.00 m in diameter, how far away would the nearest electron need to be?

Solution:

50 km

Glossary

atom
: basic unit of matter, which consists of a central, positively charged nucleus surrounded by negatively charged electrons

Brownian motion
: the continuous random movement of particles of matter suspended in a liquid or gas

Discovery of the Parts of the Atom: Electrons and Nuclei

- Describe how electrons were discovered.
- Explain the Millikan oil drop experiment.
- Describe Rutherford’s gold foil experiment.
- Describe Rutherford’s planetary model of the atom.

Just as atoms are a substructure of matter, electrons and nuclei are substructures of the atom. The experiments that were used to discover electrons and nuclei reveal some of the basic properties of atoms and can be readily understood using ideas such as electrostatic and magnetic force, already covered in previous chapters.

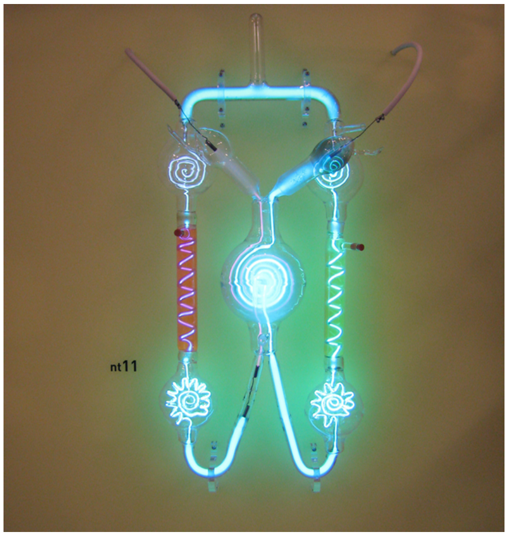
Note:
Charges and Electromagnetic Forces
In previous discussions, we have noted that positive charge is associated with nuclei and negative charge with electrons. We have also covered many aspects of the electric and magnetic forces that affect charges. We will now explore the discovery of the electron and nucleus as substructures of the atom and examine their contributions to the properties of atoms.

The Electron

Gas discharge tubes, such as that shown in [link], consist of an evacuated glass tube containing two metal electrodes and a rarefied gas. When a high voltage is applied to the electrodes, the gas glows. These tubes were the precursors to today’s neon lights. They were first studied seriously by Heinrich Geissler, a German inventor and glassblower, starting in the 1860s. The English scientist William Crookes, among others, continued to study what for some time were called Crookes tubes, wherein electrons are freed from atoms and molecules in the rarefied gas inside the tube and are accelerated from the cathode (negative) to the anode (positive) by the high potential. These “*cathode rays*” collide with the gas atoms and molecules and excite them, resulting in the emission of electromagnetic (EM)

radiation that makes the electrons’ path visible as a ray that spreads and fades as it moves away from the cathode.

Gas discharge tubes today are most commonly called **cathode-ray tubes**, because the rays originate at the cathode. Crookes showed that the electrons carry momentum (they can make a small paddle wheel rotate). He also found that their normally straight path is bent by a magnet in the direction expected for a negative charge moving away from the cathode. These were the first direct indications of electrons and their charge.



A gas discharge tube glows when a high voltage is applied to it. Electrons emitted from the cathode are accelerated toward the anode; they excite atoms and molecules in the gas, which glow in response. Once called Geissler tubes and later Crookes tubes, they are now known as cathode-ray

tubes (CRTs) and are found in older TVs, computer screens, and x-ray machines. When a magnetic field is applied, the beam bends in the direction expected for negative charge. (credit: Paul Downey, Flickr)

The English physicist J. J. Thomson (1856–1940) improved and expanded the scope of experiments with gas discharge tubes. (See [link] and [link].) He verified the negative charge of the cathode rays with both magnetic and electric fields. Additionally, he collected the rays in a metal cup and found an excess of negative charge. Thomson was also able to measure the ratio of the charge of the electron to its mass, q_e/m_e—an important step to finding the actual values of both q_e and m_e. [link] shows a cathode-ray tube, which produces a narrow beam of electrons that passes through charging plates connected to a high-voltage power supply. An electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is produced between the charging plates, and the cathode-ray tube is placed between the poles of a magnet so that the electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is perpendicular to the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ of the magnet. These fields, being perpendicular to each other, produce opposing forces on the electrons. As discussed for mass spectrometers in More Applications of Magnetism, if the net force due to the fields vanishes, then the velocity of the charged particle is $v=E/B$. In this manner, Thomson determined the velocity of the electrons and then moved the beam up and down by adjusting the electric field.

J. J. Thomson (credit: www.firstworldwar.com, via Wikimedia Commons)

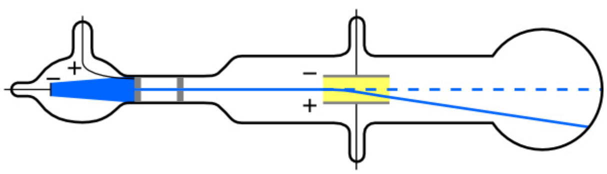
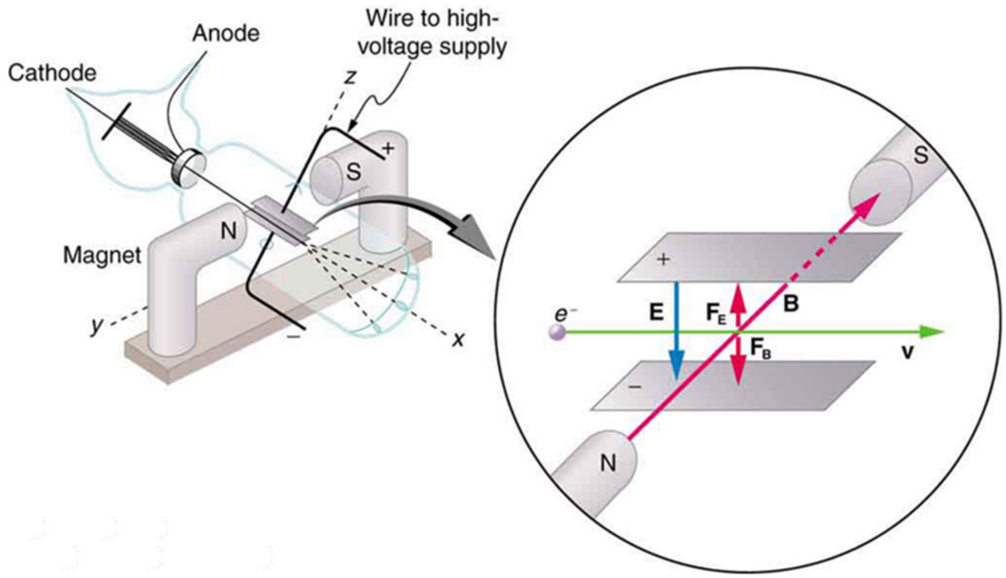


Diagram of Thomson’s CRT. (credit: Kurzon, Wikimedia Commons)



This schematic shows the electron beam in a CRT passing through crossed electric and magnetic fields and causing phosphor to glow when striking the end of the tube.

To see how the amount of deflection is used to calculate q_e/m_e, note that the deflection is proportional to the electric force on the electron:
Equation:

$$F = q_e E.$$

But the vertical deflection is also related to the electron's mass, since the electron's acceleration is
Equation:

$$a = \frac{F}{m_e}.$$

The value of F is not known, since q_e was not yet known. Substituting the expression for electric force into the expression for acceleration yields

Equation:

$$a = \frac{F}{m_e} = \frac{q_e E}{m_e}.$$

Gathering terms, we have

Equation:

$$\frac{q_e}{m_e} = \frac{a}{E}.$$

The deflection is analyzed to get a, and E is determined from the applied voltage and distance between the plates; thus, $\frac{q_e}{m_e}$ can be determined. With the velocity known, another measurement of $\frac{q_e}{m_e}$ can be obtained by bending the beam of electrons with the magnetic field. Since $F_{\text{mag}} = q_e \text{vB} = m_e a$, we have $q_e / m_e = a / \text{vB}$. Consistent results are obtained using magnetic deflection.

What is so important about q_e / m_e, the ratio of the electron's charge to its mass? The value obtained is

Equation:

$$\frac{q_e}{m_e} = -1.76 \times 10^{11}\ \text{C/kg (electron)}.$$

This is a huge number, as Thomson realized, and it implies that the electron has a very small mass. It was known from electroplating that about $10^8\ \text{C/kg}$ is needed to plate a material, a factor of about 1000 less than the charge per kilogram of electrons. Thomson went on to do the same experiment for positively charged hydrogen ions (now known to be bare protons) and found a charge per kilogram about 1000 times smaller than that for the electron, implying that the proton is about 1000 times more massive than the electron. Today, we know more precisely that

Equation:

$$\frac{q_p}{m_p} = 9.58 \times 10^7 \text{ C/kg (proton)},$$

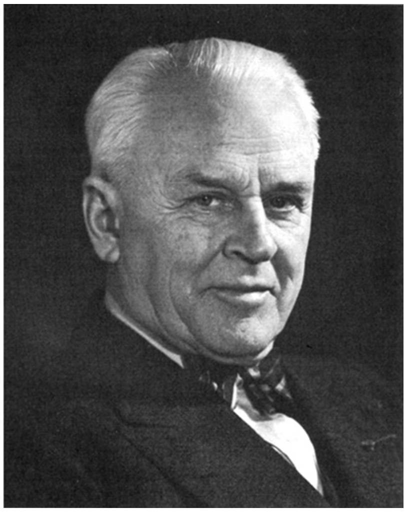
where q_p is the charge of the proton and m_p is its mass. This ratio (to four significant figures) is 1836 times less charge per kilogram than for the electron. Since the charges of electrons and protons are equal in magnitude, this implies $m_p = 1836 m_e$.

Thomson performed a variety of experiments using differing gases in discharge tubes and employing other methods, such as the photoelectric effect, for freeing electrons from atoms. He always found the same properties for the electron, proving it to be an independent particle. For his work, the important pieces of which he began to publish in 1897, Thomson was awarded the 1906 Nobel Prize in Physics. In retrospect, it is difficult to appreciate how astonishing it was to find that the atom has a substructure. Thomson himself said, “It was only when I was convinced that the experiment left no escape from it that I published my belief in the existence of bodies smaller than atoms.”

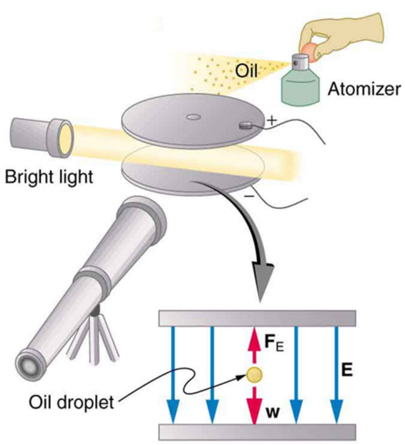
Thomson attempted to measure the charge of individual electrons, but his method could determine its charge only to the order of magnitude expected.

Since Faraday’s experiments with electroplating in the 1830s, it had been known that about 100,000 C per mole was needed to plate singly ionized ions. Dividing this by the number of ions per mole (that is, by Avogadro’s number), which was approximately known, the charge per ion was calculated to be about 1.6×10^{-19} C, close to the actual value.

An American physicist, Robert Millikan (1868–1953) (see [link]), decided to improve upon Thomson’s experiment for measuring q_e and was eventually forced to try another approach, which is now a classic experiment performed by students. The Millikan oil drop experiment is shown in [link].



Robert Millikan (credit: Unknown Author, via Wikimedia Commons)



The Millikan oil drop experiment produced the first accurate direct measurement of the

charge on electrons, one of the most fundamental constants in nature. Fine drops of oil become charged when sprayed. Their movement is observed between metal plates with a potential applied to oppose the gravitational force. The balance of gravitational and electric forces allows the calculation of the charge on a drop. The charge is found to be quantized in units of -1.6×10^{-19} C, thus determining directly the charge of the excess and missing electrons on the oil drops.

In the Millikan oil drop experiment, fine drops of oil are sprayed from an atomizer. Some of these are charged by the process and can then be suspended between metal plates by a voltage between the plates. In this situation, the weight of the drop is balanced by the electric force:

Equation:

$$m_{\text{drop}}g = q_e E$$

The electric field is produced by the applied voltage, hence, $E = V/d$, and V is adjusted to just balance the drop's weight. The drops can be seen as points of reflected light using a microscope, but they are too small to directly measure their size and mass. The mass of the drop is determined by observing how fast it falls when the voltage is turned off. Since air resistance is very significant for these submicroscopic drops, the more massive drops fall faster than the less massive, and sophisticated sedimentation calculations can reveal their mass. Oil is used rather than water, because it does not readily evaporate, and so mass is nearly constant. Once the mass of the drop is known, the charge of the electron is given by rearranging the previous equation:

Equation:

$$q = \frac{m_{\text{drop}}g}{E} = \frac{m_{\text{drop}}\text{gd}}{V},$$

where d is the separation of the plates and V is the voltage that holds the drop motionless. (The same drop can be observed for several hours to see that it really is motionless.) By 1913 Millikan had measured the charge of the electron q_e to an accuracy of 1%, and he improved this by a factor of 10 within a few years to a value of -1.60×10^{-19} C. He also observed that all charges were multiples of the basic electron charge and that sudden changes could occur in which electrons were added or removed from the drops. For this very fundamental direct measurement of q_e and for his studies of the photoelectric effect, Millikan was awarded the 1923 Nobel Prize in Physics.

With the charge of the electron known and the charge-to-mass ratio known, the electron's mass can be calculated. It is

Equation:

$$m = \frac{q_e}{\left(\frac{q_e}{m_e}\right)}.$$

Substituting known values yields
Equation:

$$m_e = \frac{-1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}}{-1.76 \times 10^{11}\ \text{C/kg}}$$

or
Equation:

$$m_e = 9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg}\ \ \text{(electron's mass)},$$

where the round-off errors have been corrected. The mass of the electron has been verified in many subsequent experiments and is now known to an accuracy of better than one part in one million. It is an incredibly small mass and remains the smallest known mass of any particle that has mass. (Some particles, such as photons, are massless and cannot be brought to rest, but travel at the speed of light.) A similar calculation gives the masses of other particles, including the proton. To three digits, the mass of the proton is now known to be
Equation:

$$m_p = 1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg}\ \ \text{(proton's mass)},$$

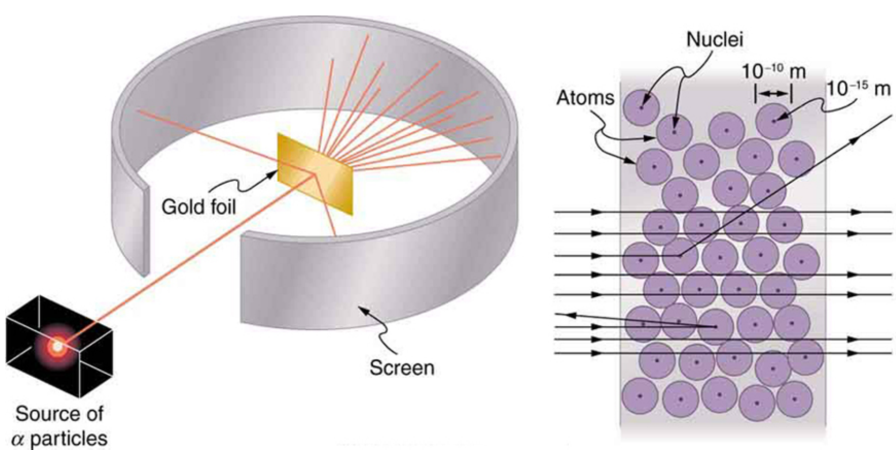
which is nearly identical to the mass of a hydrogen atom. What Thomson and Millikan had done was to prove the existence of one substructure of atoms, the electron, and further to show that it had only a tiny fraction of the mass of an atom. The nucleus of an atom contains most of its mass, and the nature of the nucleus was completely unanticipated.

Another important characteristic of quantum mechanics was also beginning to emerge. All electrons are identical to one another. The charge and mass of electrons are not average values; rather, they are unique values that all electrons have. This is true of other fundamental entities at the submicroscopic level. All protons are identical to one another, and so on.

The Nucleus

Here, we examine the first direct evidence of the size and mass of the nucleus. In later chapters, we will examine many other aspects of nuclear physics, but the basic information on nuclear size and mass is so important to understanding the atom that we consider it here.

Nuclear radioactivity was discovered in 1896, and it was soon the subject of intense study by a number of the best scientists in the world. Among them was New Zealander Lord Ernest Rutherford, who made numerous fundamental discoveries and earned the title of “father of nuclear physics.” Born in Nelson, Rutherford did his postgraduate studies at the Cavendish Laboratories in England before taking up a position at McGill University in Canada where he did the work that earned him a Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1908. In the area of atomic and nuclear physics, there is much overlap between chemistry and physics, with physics providing the fundamental enabling theories. He returned to England in later years and had six future Nobel Prize winners as students. Rutherford used nuclear radiation to directly examine the size and mass of the atomic nucleus. The experiment he devised is shown in [link]. A radioactive source that emits alpha radiation was placed in a lead container with a hole in one side to produce a beam of alpha particles, which are a type of ionizing radiation ejected by the nuclei of a radioactive source. A thin gold foil was placed in the beam, and the scattering of the alpha particles was observed by the glow they caused when they struck a phosphor screen.



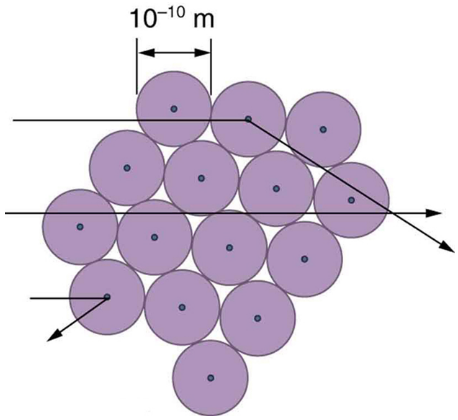
Rutherford’s experiment gave direct evidence for the size and mass of the nucleus by scattering alpha particles from a thin gold foil. Alpha particles with energies of about $5\ \mathrm{MeV}$ are emitted from a radioactive source (which is a small metal container in which a specific amount of a radioactive material is sealed), are collimated into a beam, and fall upon the foil. The number of particles that penetrate the foil or scatter to various angles indicates that gold nuclei are very small and contain nearly all of the gold atom’s mass. This is particularly indicated by the alpha particles that scatter to very large angles, much like a soccer ball bouncing off a goalie’s head.

Alpha particles were known to be the doubly charged positive nuclei of helium atoms that had kinetic energies on the order of $5\ \mathrm{MeV}$ when emitted in nuclear decay, which is the disintegration of the nucleus of an unstable nuclide by the spontaneous emission of charged particles. These particles interact with matter mostly via the Coulomb force, and the manner in which they scatter from nuclei can reveal nuclear size and mass. This is analogous to observing how a bowling ball is scattered by an object you cannot see directly. Because the alpha particle’s energy is so large compared with the typical energies associated with atoms (MeV versus eV), you would expect the alpha particles to simply crash through a thin foil much like a supersonic bowling ball would crash through a few dozen rows of bowling pins. Thomson had envisioned the atom to be a small sphere in which equal amounts of positive and negative charge were distributed evenly. The incident massive alpha particles would suffer only small deflections in such a model. Instead, Rutherford and his collaborators found that alpha particles occasionally were scattered to large angles, some even back in the direction from which they came! Detailed analysis using conservation of momentum and energy—particularly of the small number that came straight back—implied that gold nuclei are very small compared with the size of a gold atom, contain almost all of the atom’s mass, and are tightly bound. Since

the gold nucleus is several times more massive than the alpha particle, a head-on collision would scatter the alpha particle straight back toward the source. In addition, the smaller the nucleus, the fewer alpha particles that would hit one head on.

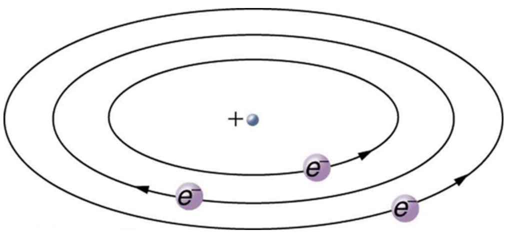
Although the results of the experiment were published by his colleagues in 1909, it took Rutherford two years to convince himself of their meaning. Like Thomson before him, Rutherford was reluctant to accept such radical results. Nature on a small scale is so unlike our classical world that even those at the forefront of discovery are sometimes surprised. Rutherford later wrote: “It was almost as incredible as if you fired a 15-inch shell at a piece of tissue paper and it came back and hit you. On consideration, I realized that this scattering backwards ... [meant] ... the greatest part of the mass of the atom was concentrated in a tiny nucleus.” In 1911, Rutherford published his analysis together with a proposed model of the atom. The size of the nucleus was determined to be about $10^{-15}\ \text{m}$, or 100,000 times smaller than the atom. This implies a huge density, on the order of $10^{15}\ \text{g/cm}^3$, vastly unlike any macroscopic matter. Also implied is the existence of previously unknown nuclear forces to counteract the huge repulsive Coulomb forces among the positive charges in the nucleus. Huge forces would also be consistent with the large energies emitted in nuclear radiation.

The small size of the nucleus also implies that the atom is mostly empty inside. In fact, in Rutherford’s experiment, most alphas went straight through the gold foil with very little scattering, since electrons have such small masses and since the atom was mostly empty with nothing for the alpha to hit. There were already hints of this at the time Rutherford performed his experiments, since energetic electrons had been observed to penetrate thin foils more easily than expected. [link] shows a schematic of the atoms in a thin foil with circles representing the size of the atoms (about $10^{-10}\ \text{m}$) and dots representing the nuclei. (The dots are not to scale—if they were, you would need a microscope to see them.) Most alpha particles miss the small nuclei and are only slightly scattered by electrons. Occasionally, (about once in 8000 times in Rutherford’s experiment), an alpha hits a nucleus head-on and is scattered straight backward.



An expanded view of the atoms in the gold foil in Rutherford's experiment. Circles represent the atoms (about 10^{-10} m in diameter), while the dots represent the nuclei (about 10^{-15} m in diameter). To be visible, the dots are much larger than scale. Most alpha particles crash through but are relatively unaffected because of their high energy and the electron's small mass. Some, however, head straight toward a nucleus and are scattered straight back. A detailed analysis gives the size and mass of the nucleus.

Based on the size and mass of the nucleus revealed by his experiment, as well as the mass of electrons, Rutherford proposed the **planetary model of the atom**. The planetary model of the atom pictures low-mass electrons orbiting a large-mass nucleus. The sizes of the electron orbits are large compared with the size of the nucleus, with mostly vacuum inside the atom. This picture is analogous to how low-mass planets in our solar system orbit the large-mass Sun at distances large compared with the size of the sun. In the atom, the attractive Coulomb force is analogous to gravitation in the planetary system. (See [link].) Note that a model or mental picture is needed to explain experimental results, since the atom is too small to be directly observed with visible light.



Rutherford’s planetary model of the atom incorporates the characteristics of the nucleus, electrons, and the size of the atom. This model was the first to recognize the structure of atoms, in which low-mass electrons orbit a very small, massive nucleus in orbits much larger than the nucleus. The atom is mostly empty and is analogous to our planetary system.

Rutherford’s planetary model of the atom was crucial to understanding the characteristics of atoms, and their interactions and energies, as we shall see in the next few sections. Also, it was an indication of how different nature is from the familiar classical world on the small, quantum mechanical scale. The discovery of a substructure to all matter in the form of atoms and molecules was now being taken a step further to reveal a substructure of atoms that was simpler than the 92 elements then known. We have continued to search for deeper substructures, such as those inside the nucleus, with some success. In later chapters, we will follow this quest in the discussion of quarks and other elementary particles, and we will look at the direction the search seems now to be heading.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Rutherford Scattering
How did Rutherford figure out the structure of the atom without being able to see it? Simulate the famous experiment in which he disproved the Plum Pudding model of the atom by observing alpha particles bouncing off atoms and determining that they must have a small core.

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/rutherford-scattering/latest/rutherford-scattering_en.html

Section Summary

- Atoms are composed of negatively charged electrons, first proved to exist in cathode-ray-tube experiments, and a positively charged nucleus.
- All electrons are identical and have a charge-to-mass ratio of
  Equation:

$$\frac{q_e}{m_e} = -1.76 \times 10^{11}\ \text{C/kg}.$$

- The positive charge in the nuclei is carried by particles called protons, which have a charge-to-mass ratio of
  Equation:

  $$\frac{q_p}{m_p} = 9.57 \times 10^7 \text{ C/kg.}$$

- Mass of electron,
  Equation:

  $$m_e = 9.11 \times 10^{-31} \text{ kg.}$$

- Mass of proton,
  Equation:

  $$m_p = 1.67 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg.}$$

- The planetary model of the atom pictures electrons orbiting the nucleus in the same way that planets orbit the sun.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What two pieces of evidence allowed the first calculation of m_e, the mass of the electron?

(a) The ratios q_e/m_e and q_p/m_p.

(b) The values of q_e and E_B.

(c) The ratio q_e/m_e and q_e.

Justify your response.

Exercise:

Problem:

How do the allowed orbits for electrons in atoms differ from the allowed orbits for planets around the sun? Explain how the correspondence principle applies here.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Rutherford found the size of the nucleus to be about 10^{-15} m. This implied a huge density. What would this density be for gold?

Solution:

$6 \times 10^{20}\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$

Exercise:

Problem:

In Millikan's oil-drop experiment, one looks at a small oil drop held motionless between two plates. Take the voltage between the plates to be 2033 V, and the plate separation to be 2.00 cm. The oil drop (of density $0.81\ \mathrm{g/cm^3}$) has a diameter of 4.0×10^{-6} m. Find the charge on the drop, in terms of electron units.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) An aspiring physicist wants to build a scale model of a hydrogen atom for her science fair project. If the atom is 1.00 m in diameter, how big should she try to make the nucleus?

(b) How easy will this be to do?

Solution:

(a) 10.0 μm

(b) It isn’t hard to make one of approximately this size. It would be harder to make it exactly 10.0 μm.

Glossary

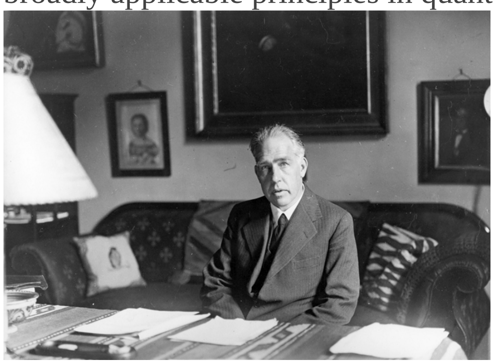
cathode-ray tube
: a vacuum tube containing a source of electrons and a screen to view images

planetary model of the atom
: the most familiar model or illustration of the structure of the atom

Bohr’s Theory of the Hydrogen Atom

- Describe the mysteries of atomic spectra.
- Explain Bohr’s theory of the hydrogen atom.
- Explain Bohr’s planetary model of the atom.
- Illustrate energy state using the energy-level diagram.
- Describe the triumphs and limits of Bohr’s theory.

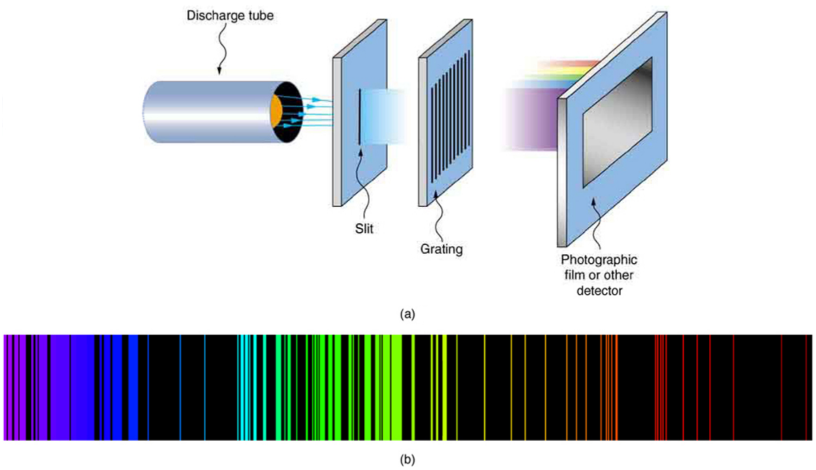
The great Danish physicist Niels Bohr (1885–1962) made immediate use of Rutherford’s planetary model of the atom. ([link]). Bohr became convinced of its validity and spent part of 1912 at Rutherford’s laboratory. In 1913, after returning to Copenhagen, he began publishing his theory of the simplest atom, hydrogen, based on the planetary model of the atom. For decades, many questions had been asked about atomic characteristics. From their sizes to their spectra, much was known about atoms, but little had been explained in terms of the laws of physics. Bohr’s theory explained the atomic spectrum of hydrogen and established new and broadly applicable principles in quantum mechanics.



Niels Bohr, Danish physicist, used the planetary model of the atom to explain the atomic spectrum and size of the hydrogen atom. His many contributions to the development of atomic physics and quantum mechanics, his personal influence on many students and colleagues, and his personal integrity, especially in the face of Nazi oppression, earned him a prominent place in history. (credit: Unknown Author, via Wikimedia Commons)

Mysteries of Atomic Spectra

As noted in Quantization of Energy , the energies of some small systems are quantized. Atomic and molecular emission and absorption spectra have been known for over a century to be discrete (or quantized). (See [link].) Maxwell and others had realized that there must be a connection between the spectrum of an atom and its structure, something like the resonant frequencies of musical instruments. But, in spite of years of efforts by many great minds, no one had a workable theory. (It was a running joke that any theory of atomic and molecular spectra could be destroyed by throwing a book of data at it, so complex were the spectra.) Following Einstein's proposal of photons with quantized energies directly proportional to their wavelengths, it became even more evident that electrons in atoms can exist only in discrete orbits.



Part (a) shows, from left to right, a discharge tube, slit, and diffraction grating producing a line spectrum. Part (b) shows the emission line spectrum for iron. The discrete lines imply quantized energy states for the atoms that produce them. The line spectrum for each element is unique, providing a powerful and much used analytical tool, and many line spectra were well known for many years before they could be explained with physics. (credit for (b): Yttrium91, Wikimedia Commons)

In some cases, it had been possible to devise formulas that described the emission spectra. As you might expect, the simplest atom—hydrogen, with its single electron—has a relatively simple spectrum. The hydrogen spectrum had been observed in the infrared (IR), visible, and ultraviolet (UV), and several series of spectral lines had been observed. (See [link].) These series are named after early researchers who studied them in particular depth.

The observed **hydrogen-spectrum wavelengths** can be calculated using the following formula:

Equation:

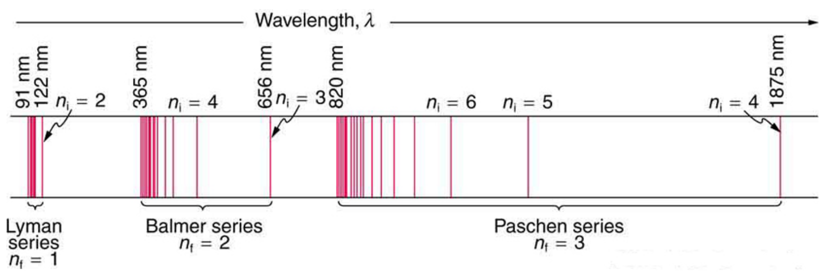
$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{f}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{i}}^2}\right),$$

where λ is the wavelength of the emitted EM radiation and R is the **Rydberg constant**, determined by the experiment to be

Equation:

$$R = 1.097 \times 10^7/\mathrm{m}\ (\mathrm{or\ m}^{-1}).$$

The constant n_{f} is a positive integer associated with a specific series. For the Lyman series, $n_{\mathrm{f}} = 1$; for the Balmer series, $n_{\mathrm{f}} = 2$; for the Paschen series, $n_{\mathrm{f}} = 3$; and so on. The Lyman series is entirely in the UV, while part of the Balmer series is visible with the remainder UV. The Paschen series and all the rest are entirely IR. There are apparently an unlimited number of series, although they lie progressively farther into the infrared and become difficult to observe as n_{f} increases. The constant n_{i} is a positive integer, but it must be greater than n_{f}. Thus, for the Balmer series, $n_{\mathrm{f}} = 2$ and $n_{\mathrm{i}} = 3, 4, 5, 6, \ldots$. Note that n_{i} can approach infinity. While the formula in the wavelengths equation was just a recipe designed to fit data and was not based on physical principles, it did imply a deeper meaning. Balmer first devised the formula for his series alone, and it was later found to describe all the other series by using different values of n_{f}. Bohr was the first to comprehend the deeper meaning. Again, we see the interplay between experiment and theory in physics. Experimentally, the spectra were well established, an equation was found to fit the experimental data, but the theoretical foundation was missing.



A schematic of the hydrogen spectrum shows several series named for those who contributed most to their determination. Part of the Balmer series is in the visible spectrum, while the Lyman series is entirely in the UV, and the Paschen series and others are in the IR. Values of n_{f} and n_{i} are shown for some of the lines.

Example:
Calculating Wave Interference of a Hydrogen Line

What is the distance between the slits of a grating that produces a first-order maximum for the second Balmer line at an angle of 15º?

Strategy and Concept

For an Integrated Concept problem, we must first identify the physical principles involved. In this example, we need to know (a) the wavelength of light as well as (b) conditions for an interference maximum for the pattern from a double slit. Part (a) deals with a topic of the present chapter, while part (b) considers the wave interference material of Wave Optics.

Solution for (a)

Hydrogen spectrum wavelength. The Balmer series requires that $n_{\mathrm{f}} = 2$. The first line in the series is taken to be for $n_{\mathrm{i}} = 3$, and so the second would have $n_{\mathrm{i}} = 4$.

The calculation is a straightforward application of the wavelength equation. Entering the determined values for n_{f} and n_{i} yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\lambda} &= R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{f}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{i}}^2}\right) \\ &= \left(1.097 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{m}^{-1}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2^2} - \frac{1}{4^2}\right) \\ &= 2.057 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{m}^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Inverting to find λ gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{1}{2.057 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{m}^{-1}} = 486 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m} \\ &= 486\ \mathrm{nm}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)

This is indeed the experimentally observed wavelength, corresponding to the second (blue-green) line in the Balmer series. More impressive is the fact that the same simple recipe predicts *all* of the hydrogen spectrum lines, including new ones observed in subsequent experiments. What is nature telling us?

Solution for (b)

Double-slit interference (Wave Optics). To obtain constructive interference for a double slit, the path length difference from two slits must be an integral multiple of the wavelength. This condition was expressed by the equation

Equation:

$$d \sin \theta = m\lambda,$$

where d is the distance between slits and θ is the angle from the original direction of the beam. The number m is the order of the interference; $m = 1$ in this example. Solving for d and entering known values yields

Equation:

$$d = \frac{(1)(486 \text{ nm})}{\sin 15^{\text{o}}} = 1.88 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}.$$

Discussion for (b)

This number is similar to those used in the interference examples of Introduction to Quantum Physics (and is close to the spacing between slits in commonly used diffraction glasses).

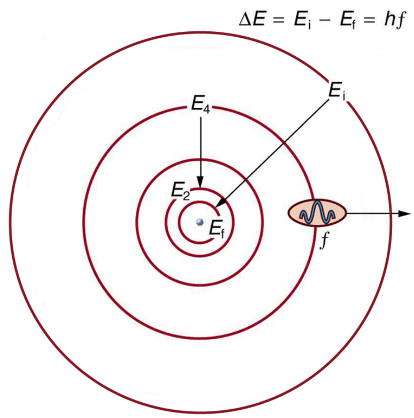
Bohr's Solution for Hydrogen

Bohr was able to derive the formula for the hydrogen spectrum using basic physics, the planetary model of the atom, and some very important new proposals. His first proposal is that only certain orbits are allowed: we say that *the orbits of electrons in atoms are quantized*. Each orbit has a different energy, and electrons can move to a higher orbit by absorbing energy and drop to a lower orbit by emitting energy. If the orbits are quantized, the amount of energy absorbed or emitted is also quantized, producing discrete spectra. Photon absorption and emission are among the primary methods of transferring energy into and out of atoms. The energies of the photons are quantized, and their energy is explained as being equal to the change in energy of the electron when it moves from one orbit to another. In equation form, this is

Equation:

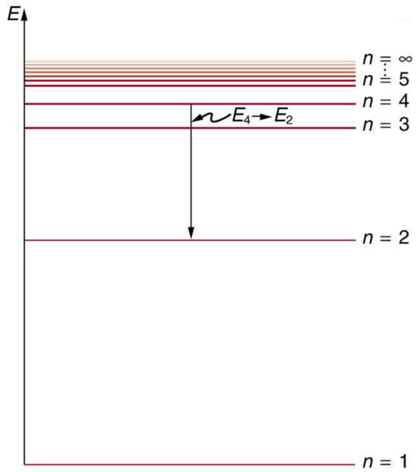
$$\Delta E = hf = E_{\text{i}} - E_{\text{f}}.$$

Here, ΔE is the change in energy between the initial and final orbits, and hf is the energy of the absorbed or emitted photon. It is quite logical (that is, expected from our everyday experience) that energy is involved in changing orbits. A blast of energy is required for the space shuttle, for example, to climb to a higher orbit. What is not expected is that atomic orbits should be quantized. This is not observed for satellites or planets, which can have any orbit given the proper energy. (See [link].)



The planetary model of the atom, as modified by Bohr, has the orbits of the electrons quantized. Only certain orbits are allowed, explaining why atomic spectra are discrete (quantized). The energy carried away from an atom by a photon comes from the electron dropping from one allowed orbit to another and is thus quantized. This is likewise true for atomic absorption of photons.

[link] shows an **energy-level diagram**, a convenient way to display energy states. In the present discussion, we take these to be the allowed energy levels of the electron. Energy is plotted vertically with the lowest or ground state at the bottom and with excited states above. Given the energies of the lines in an atomic spectrum, it is possible (although sometimes very difficult) to determine the energy levels of an atom. Energy-level diagrams are used for many systems, including molecules and nuclei. A theory of the atom or any other system must predict its energies based on the physics of the system.



An energy-level diagram plots energy vertically and is useful in visualizing the energy states of a system and the transitions between them. This diagram is for the hydrogen-atom electrons, showing a transition between two orbits having energies E_4 and E_2.

Bohr was clever enough to find a way to calculate the electron orbital energies in hydrogen. This was an important first step that has been improved upon, but it is well worth repeating here, because it does correctly describe many characteristics of hydrogen. Assuming circular orbits, Bohr proposed that the **angular momentum L of an electron in its orbit is quantized**, that is, it has only specific, discrete values. The value for L is given by the formula

Equation:

$$L = m_e \mathrm{vr}_n = n \frac{h}{2\pi} (n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots),$$

where L is the angular momentum, m_e is the electron's mass, r_n is the radius of the n th orbit, and h is Planck's constant. Note that angular momentum is $L = I\omega$. For a small object at a radius r, $I = mr^2$ and $\omega = v/r$, so that $L = \left(mr^2\right)(v/r) = mvr$. Quantization says that this value of mvr can only be equal to $h/2$, $2h/2$, $3h/2$, etc. At the time, Bohr himself did not know why angular momentum should be quantized, but using this assumption he was

able to calculate the energies in the hydrogen spectrum, something no one else had done at the time.

From Bohr's assumptions, we will now derive a number of important properties of the hydrogen atom from the classical physics we have covered in the text. We start by noting the centripetal force causing the electron to follow a circular path is supplied by the Coulomb force. To be more general, we note that this analysis is valid for any single-electron atom. So, if a nucleus has Z protons ($Z = 1$ for hydrogen, 2 for helium, etc.) and only one electron, that atom is called a **hydrogen-like atom**. The spectra of hydrogen-like ions are similar to hydrogen, but shifted to higher energy by the greater attractive force between the electron and nucleus. The magnitude of the centripetal force is $m_e v^2/r_n$, while the Coulomb force is $k(\mathrm{Zq}_e)(q_e)/r_n^2$. The tacit assumption here is that the nucleus is more massive than the stationary electron, and the electron orbits about it. This is consistent with the planetary model of the atom. Equating these,

Equation:

$$k\frac{Zq_e^2}{r_n^2} = \frac{m_e v^2}{r_n}\ (\text{Coulomb} = \text{centripetal}).$$

Angular momentum quantization is stated in an earlier equation. We solve that equation for v, substitute it into the above, and rearrange the expression to obtain the radius of the orbit. This yields:

Equation:

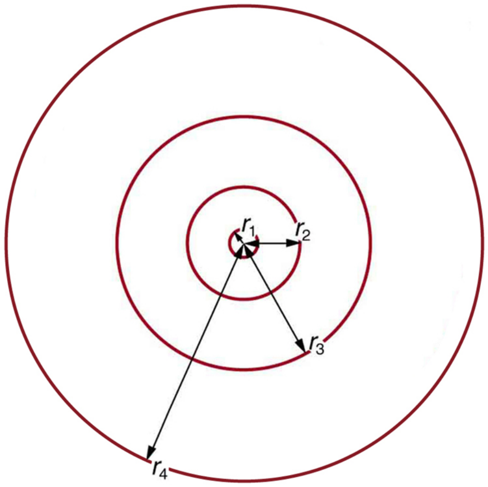
$$r_n = \frac{n^2}{Z}a_\mathrm{B}, \text{ for allowed orbits}(n = 1{,}2{,}3, \ldots),$$

where a_B is defined to be the **Bohr radius**, since for the lowest orbit $(n = 1)$ and for hydrogen $(Z = 1)$, $r_1 = a_\mathrm{B}$. It is left for this chapter's Problems and Exercises to show that the Bohr radius is

Equation:

$$a_\mathrm{B} = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 m_e k q_e^2} = 0.529 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m}.$$

These last two equations can be used to calculate the **radii of the allowed (quantized) electron orbits in any hydrogen-like atom**. It is impressive that the formula gives the correct size of hydrogen, which is measured experimentally to be very close to the Bohr radius. The earlier equation also tells us that the orbital radius is proportional to n^2, as illustrated in [link].



The allowed electron orbits in hydrogen have the radii shown. These radii were first calculated by Bohr and are given by the equation $r_n = \frac{n^2}{Z} a_{\mathrm{B}}$. The lowest orbit has the experimentally verified diameter of a hydrogen atom.

To get the electron orbital energies, we start by noting that the electron energy is the sum of its kinetic and potential energy:

Equation:

$$E_n = \mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE}.$$

Kinetic energy is the familiar $\mathrm{KE} = (1/2) m_e v^2$, assuming the electron is not moving at relativistic speeds. Potential energy for the electron is electrical, or $\mathrm{PE} = q_e V$, where V is the potential due to the nucleus, which looks like a point charge. The nucleus has a positive charge Zq_e ; thus, $V = \mathrm{kZq}_e / r_n$, recalling an earlier equation for the potential due to a point charge. Since the electron's charge is negative, we see that $\mathrm{PE} = -\mathrm{kZq}_e / r_n$. Entering the expressions for KE and PE, we find

Equation:

$$E_n = \frac{1}{2} m_e v^2 - k \frac{Z q_e^2}{r_n}.$$

Now we substitute r_n and v from earlier equations into the above expression for energy. Algebraic manipulation yields

Equation:

$$E_n = -\frac{Z^2}{n^2} E_0 (n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$$

for the orbital **energies of hydrogen-like atoms**. Here, E_0 is the **ground-state energy** $(n = 1)$ for hydrogen $(Z = 1)$ and is given by

Equation:

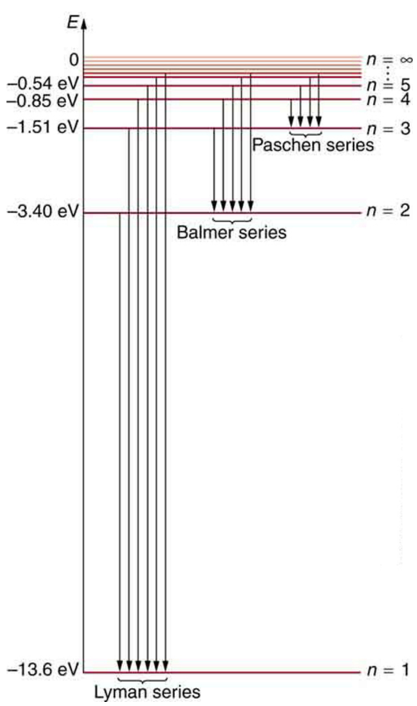
$$E_0 = \frac{2\pi^2 q_e^4 m_e k^2}{h^2} = 13.6 \text{ eV}.$$

Thus, for hydrogen,

Equation:

$$E_n = -\frac{13.6 \text{ eV}}{n^2} (n = 1, 2, 3, ...).$$

[link] shows an energy-level diagram for hydrogen that also illustrates how the various spectral series for hydrogen are related to transitions between energy levels.



Energy-level diagram for

hydrogen showing the Lyman, Balmer, and Paschen series of transitions. The orbital energies are calculated using the above equation, first derived by Bohr.

Electron total energies are negative, since the electron is bound to the nucleus, analogous to being in a hole without enough kinetic energy to escape. As n approaches infinity, the total energy becomes zero. This corresponds to a free electron with no kinetic energy, since r_n gets very large for large n, and the electric potential energy thus becomes zero. Thus, 13.6 eV is needed to ionize hydrogen (to go from –13.6 eV to 0, or unbound), an experimentally verified number. Given more energy, the electron becomes unbound with some kinetic energy. For example, giving 15.0 eV to an electron in the ground state of hydrogen strips it from the atom and leaves it with 1.4 eV of kinetic energy.

Finally, let us consider the energy of a photon emitted in a downward transition, given by the equation to be

Equation:

$$\Delta E = \mathrm{hf} = E_{\mathrm{i}} - E_{\mathrm{f}}.$$

Substituting $E_n = (-13.6\ \mathrm{eV}/n^2)$, we see that

Equation:

$$\mathrm{hf} = (13.6\ \mathrm{eV})\left(\frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{f}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{i}}^2}\right).$$

Dividing both sides of this equation by hc gives an expression for $1/\lambda$:

Equation:

$$\frac{\mathrm{hf}}{\mathrm{hc}} = \frac{f}{c} = \frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{(13.6\ \mathrm{eV})}{hc}\left(\frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{f}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{i}}^2}\right).$$

It can be shown that

Equation:

$$\left(\frac{13.6\ \mathrm{eV}}{hc}\right) = \frac{(13.6\ \mathrm{eV})\left(1.602 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{J/eV}\right)}{\left(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J{\cdot}s}\right)\left(2.998 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m/s}\right)} = 1.097 \times 10^{7}\ \mathrm{m}^{-1} = R$$

is the **Rydberg constant**. Thus, we have used Bohr’s assumptions to derive the formula first proposed by Balmer years earlier as a recipe to fit experimental data.

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{f}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{i}}^2}\right)$$

We see that Bohr’s theory of the hydrogen atom answers the question as to why this previously known formula describes the hydrogen spectrum. It is because the energy levels are proportional to $1/n^2$, where n is a non-negative integer. A downward transition releases energy, and so n_{i} must be greater than n_{f}. The various series are those where the transitions end on a certain level. For the Lyman series, $n_{\mathrm{f}} = 1$ — that is, all the transitions end in the ground state (see also [link]). For the Balmer series, $n_{\mathrm{f}} = 2$, or all the transitions end in the first excited state; and so on. What was once a recipe is now based in physics, and something new is emerging—angular momentum is quantized.

Triumphs and Limits of the Bohr Theory

Bohr did what no one had been able to do before. Not only did he explain the spectrum of hydrogen, he correctly calculated the size of the atom from basic physics. Some of his ideas are broadly applicable. Electron orbital energies are quantized in all atoms and molecules. Angular momentum is quantized. The electrons do not spiral into the nucleus, as expected classically (accelerated charges radiate, so that the electron orbits classically would decay quickly, and the electrons would sit on the nucleus—matter would collapse). These are major triumphs.

But there are limits to Bohr’s theory. It cannot be applied to multielectron atoms, even one as simple as a two-electron helium atom. Bohr’s model is what we call *semiclassical*. The orbits are quantized (nonclassical) but are assumed to be simple circular paths (classical). As quantum mechanics was developed, it became clear that there are no well-defined orbits; rather, there are clouds of probability. Bohr’s theory also did not explain that some spectral lines are doublets (split into two) when examined closely. We shall examine many of these aspects of quantum mechanics in more detail, but it should be kept in mind that Bohr did not fail. Rather, he made very important steps along the path to greater knowledge and laid the foundation for all of atomic physics that has since evolved.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Models of the Hydrogen Atom

How did scientists figure out the structure of atoms without looking at them? Try out different models by shooting light at the atom. Check how the prediction of the model

matches the experimental results.

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/d77cc1d0-33e4-11e6-b016-6726afecd2be/hydrogen-atom/#sim-hydrogen-atom

Section Summary

- The planetary model of the atom pictures electrons orbiting the nucleus in the way that planets orbit the sun. Bohr used the planetary model to develop the first reasonable theory of hydrogen, the simplest atom. Atomic and molecular spectra are quantized, with hydrogen spectrum wavelengths given by the formula
  Equation:
  $$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{f}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{i}}^2}\right),$$
  where λ is the wavelength of the emitted EM radiation and R is the Rydberg constant, which has the value
  Equation:
  $$R = 1.097 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{m}^{-1}.$$
- The constants n_{i} and n_{f} are positive integers, and n_{i} must be greater than n_{f}.
- Bohr correctly proposed that the energy and radii of the orbits of electrons in atoms are quantized, with energy for transitions between orbits given by
  Equation:
  $$\Delta E = hf = E_{\mathrm{i}} - E_{\mathrm{f}},$$
  where ΔE is the change in energy between the initial and final orbits and hf is the energy of an absorbed or emitted photon. It is useful to plot orbital energies on a vertical graph called an energy-level diagram.
- Bohr proposed that the allowed orbits are circular and must have quantized orbital angular momentum given by
  Equation:
  $$L = m_e v r_n = n\frac{h}{2\pi} (n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots),$$
  where L is the angular momentum, r_n is the radius of the $n\mathrm{th}$ orbit, and h is Planck's constant. For all one-electron (hydrogen-like) atoms, the radius of an orbit is given by
  Equation:
  $$r_n = \frac{n^2}{Z} a_{\mathrm{B}} (\text{allowed orbits } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots),$$

Z is the atomic number of an element (the number of electrons is has when neutral) and a_{B} is defined to be the Bohr radius, which is
Equation:

$$a_{\text{B}} = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 m_e k q_e^2} = 0.529 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{m}.$$

- Furthermore, the energies of hydrogen-like atoms are given by
  Equation:

  $$E_n = -\frac{Z^2}{n^2} E_0 (n = 1, 2, 3\ ...),$$

  where E_0 is the ground-state energy and is given by
  Equation:

  $$E_0 = \frac{2\pi^2 q_e^4 m_e k^2}{h^2} = 13.6\ \text{eV}.$$

  Thus, for hydrogen,
  Equation:

  $$E_n = -\frac{13.6\ \text{eV}}{n^2} (n, =, 1, 2, 3\ ...).$$

- The Bohr Theory gives accurate values for the energy levels in hydrogen-like atoms, but it has been improved upon in several respects.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How do the allowed orbits for electrons in atoms differ from the allowed orbits for planets around the sun? Explain how the correspondence principle applies here.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how Bohr's rule for the quantization of electron orbital angular momentum differs from the actual rule.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is a hydrogen-like atom, and how are the energies and radii of its electron orbits related to those in hydrogen?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

By calculating its wavelength, show that the first line in the Lyman series is UV radiation.

Solution:

$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_\mathrm{f}^2} - \frac{1}{n_\mathrm{i}^2}\right) \Rightarrow \lambda = \frac{1}{R}\left[\frac{(n_\mathrm{i} \cdot n_\mathrm{f})^2}{n_\mathrm{i}^2 - n_\mathrm{f}^2}\right]; n_\mathrm{i} = 2, n_\mathrm{f} = 1,$ so that

$\lambda = \left(\frac{\mathrm{m}}{1.097 \times 10^7}\right)\left[\frac{(2 \times 1)^2}{2^2 - 1^2}\right] = 1.22 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{m} = 122\ \mathrm{nm}$, which is UV radiation.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the wavelength of the third line in the Lyman series, and identify the type of EM radiation.

Exercise:

Problem:

Look up the values of the quantities in $a_\mathrm{B} = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 m_e k q_e^2}$, and verify that the Bohr radius a_B is 0.529×10^{-10} m.

Solution:

$$a_\mathrm{B} = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 m_e k Z q_e^2} = \frac{(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J \cdot s})^2}{4\pi^2 (9.109 \times 10^{-31}\ \mathrm{kg})(8.988 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2})(1)(1.602 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C})^2} = 0.529 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m}$$

Exercise:

Problem: Verify that the ground state energy E_0 is 13.6 eV by using $E_0 = \frac{2\pi^2 q_e^4 m_e k^2}{h^2}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a hydrogen atom has its electron in the $n = 4$ state, how much energy in eV is needed to ionize it?

Solution:

0.850 eV

Exercise:

Problem:

A hydrogen atom in an excited state can be ionized with less energy than when it is in its ground state. What is n for a hydrogen atom if 0.850 eV of energy can ionize it?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the radius of a hydrogen atom in the $n = 2$ state according to Bohr's theory.

Solution:

$2.12 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that $(13.6\ \text{eV})/\text{hc} = 1.097 \times 10^7\ \text{m} = R$ (Rydberg's constant), as discussed in the text.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the smallest-wavelength line in the Balmer series? Is it in the visible part of the spectrum?

Solution:

365 nm

It is in the ultraviolet.

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the entire Paschen series is in the infrared part of the spectrum. To do this, you only need to calculate the shortest wavelength in the series.

Exercise:

Problem:

Do the Balmer and Lyman series overlap? To answer this, calculate the shortest-wavelength Balmer line and the longest-wavelength Lyman line.

Solution:

No overlap

365 nm

122 nm

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Which line in the Balmer series is the first one in the UV part of the spectrum?

(b) How many Balmer series lines are in the visible part of the spectrum?

(c) How many are in the UV?

Exercise:

Problem:

A wavelength of $4.653\ \mu m$ is observed in a hydrogen spectrum for a transition that ends in the $n_f = 5$ level. What was n_i for the initial level of the electron?

Solution:

7

Exercise:

Problem:

A singly ionized helium ion has only one electron and is denoted He^+. What is the ion's radius in the ground state compared to the Bohr radius of hydrogen atom?

Exercise:

Problem:

A beryllium ion with a single electron (denoted Be^{3+}) is in an excited state with radius the same as that of the ground state of hydrogen.

(a) What is n for the Be^{3+} ion?

(b) How much energy in eV is needed to ionize the ion from this excited state?

Solution:

(a) 2

(b) 54.4 eV

Exercise:

Problem:

Atoms can be ionized by thermal collisions, such as at the high temperatures found in the solar corona. One such ion is C^{+5}, a carbon atom with only a single electron.

(a) By what factor are the energies of its hydrogen-like levels greater than those of hydrogen?

(b) What is the wavelength of the first line in this ion's Paschen series?

(c) What type of EM radiation is this?

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify Equations $r_n = \frac{n^2}{Z} a_{\mathrm{B}}$ and $a_{\mathrm{B}} = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 m_e k q_e^2} = 0.529 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m}$ using the approach stated in the text. That is, equate the Coulomb and centripetal forces and then insert an expression for velocity from the condition for angular momentum quantization.

Solution:

$\frac{kZq_e^2}{r_n^2} = \frac{m_e V^2}{r_n}$, so that $r_n = \frac{kZq_e^2}{m_e V^2} = \frac{kZq_e^2}{m_e} \frac{1}{V^2}$. From the equation $m_e v r_n = n \frac{h}{2\pi}$, we can substitute for the velocity, giving: $r_n = \frac{kZq_e^2}{m_e} \cdot \frac{4\pi^2 m_e^2 r_n^2}{n^2 h^2}$ so that $r_n = \frac{n^2}{Z} \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 m_e k q_e^2} = \frac{n^2}{Z} a_{\mathrm{B}}$, where $a_{\mathrm{B}} = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 m_e k q_e^2}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

The wavelength of the four Balmer series lines for hydrogen are found to be 410.3, 434.2, 486.3, and 656.5 nm. What average percentage difference is found between these wavelength numbers and those predicted by $\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{f}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\mathrm{i}}^2}\right)$? It is amazing how well a simple formula (disconnected originally from theory) could duplicate this phenomenon.

Glossary

hydrogen spectrum wavelengths
: the wavelengths of visible light from hydrogen; can be calculated by $\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\text{f}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\text{i}}^2}\right)$

Rydberg constant
: a physical constant related to the atomic spectra with an established value of $1.097 \times 10^7 \text{ m}^{-1}$

double-slit interference
: an experiment in which waves or particles from a single source impinge upon two slits so that the resulting interference pattern may be observed

energy-level diagram
: a diagram used to analyze the energy level of electrons in the orbits of an atom

Bohr radius
: the mean radius of the orbit of an electron around the nucleus of a hydrogen atom in its ground state

hydrogen-like atom
: any atom with only a single electron

energies of hydrogen-like atoms
: Bohr formula for energies of electron states in hydrogen-like atoms: $E_n = -\frac{Z^2}{n^2}E_0 (n = 1, 2, 3, \ \ldots)$

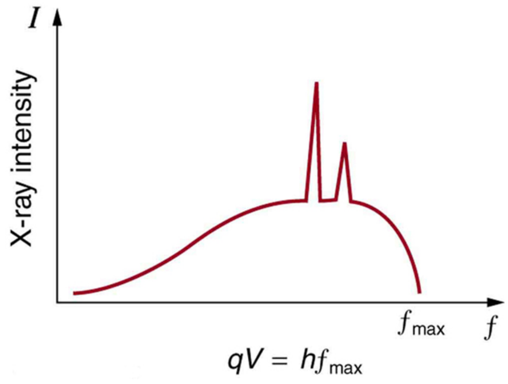
X Rays: Atomic Origins and Applications

- Define x-ray tube and its spectrum.
- Show the x-ray characteristic energy.
- Specify the use of x rays in medical observations.
- Explain the use of x rays in CT scanners in diagnostics.

Each type of atom (or element) has its own characteristic electromagnetic spectrum. **X rays** lie at the high-frequency end of an atom's spectrum and are characteristic of the atom as well. In this section, we explore characteristic x rays and some of their important applications.

We have previously discussed x rays as a part of the electromagnetic spectrum in Photon Energies and the Electromagnetic Spectrum. That module illustrated how an x-ray tube (a specialized CRT) produces x rays. Electrons emitted from a hot filament are accelerated with a high voltage, gaining significant kinetic energy and striking the anode.

There are two processes by which x rays are produced in the anode of an x-ray tube. In one process, the deceleration of electrons produces x rays, and these x rays are called *bremsstrahlung*, or braking radiation. The second process is atomic in nature and produces *characteristic x rays*, so called because they are characteristic of the anode material. The x-ray spectrum in [link] is typical of what is produced by an x-ray tube, showing a broad curve of bremsstrahlung radiation with characteristic x-ray peaks on it.



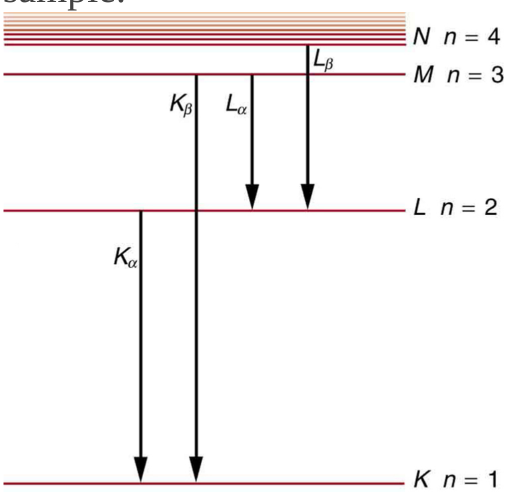
X-ray spectrum obtained when energetic electrons strike a material, such as

in the anode of a CRT. The smooth part of the spectrum is bremsstrahlung radiation, while the peaks are characteristic of the anode material. A different anode material would have characteristic x-ray peaks at different frequencies.

The spectrum in [link] is collected over a period of time in which many electrons strike the anode, with a variety of possible outcomes for each hit. The broad range of x-ray energies in the bremsstrahlung radiation indicates that an incident electron's energy is not usually converted entirely into photon energy. The highest-energy x ray produced is one for which all of the electron's energy was converted to photon energy. Thus the accelerating voltage and the maximum x-ray energy are related by conservation of energy. Electric potential energy is converted to kinetic energy and then to photon energy, so that $E_{\text{max}} = hf_{\text{max}} = q_e V$. Units of electron volts are convenient. For example, a 100-kV accelerating voltage produces x-ray photons with a maximum energy of 100 keV.

Some electrons excite atoms in the anode. Part of the energy that they deposit by collision with an atom results in one or more of the atom's inner electrons being knocked into a higher orbit or the atom being ionized. When the anode's atoms de-excite, they emit characteristic electromagnetic radiation. The most energetic of these are produced when an inner-shell vacancy is filled—that is, when an $n = 1$ or $n = 2$ shell electron has been excited to a higher level, and another electron falls into the vacant spot. A *characteristic x ray* (see Photon Energies and the Electromagnetic Spectrum) is electromagnetic (EM) radiation emitted by an atom when an inner-shell vacancy is filled. [link] shows a representative energy-level diagram that illustrates the labeling of characteristic x rays. X rays created

when an electron falls into an $n = 1$ shell vacancy are called K_α when they come from the next higher level; that is, an $n = 2$ to $n = 1$ transition. The labels K, L, M,... come from the older alphabetical labeling of shells starting with K rather than using the principal quantum numbers 1, 2, 3, ... A more energetic K_β x ray is produced when an electron falls into an $n = 1$ shell vacancy from the $n = 3$ shell; that is, an $n = 3$ to $n = 1$ transition. Similarly, when an electron falls into the $n = 2$ shell from the $n = 3$ shell, an L_α x ray is created. The energies of these x rays depend on the energies of electron states in the particular atom and, thus, are characteristic of that element: every element has it own set of x-ray energies. This property can be used to identify elements, for example, to find trace (small) amounts of an element in an environmental or biological sample.



A characteristic x ray is emitted when an electron fills an inner-shell vacancy, as shown for several transitions in this approximate energy level diagram for a multiple-electron atom. Characteristic x rays are labeled according to the shell that had the vacancy and the shell from which

the electron came. A K_α x ray, for example, is produced when an electron coming from the $n = 2$ shell fills the $n = 1$ shell vacancy.

Example:
Characteristic X-Ray Energy

Calculate the approximate energy of a K_α x ray from a tungsten anode in an x-ray tube.

Strategy

How do we calculate energies in a multiple-electron atom? In the case of characteristic x rays, the following approximate calculation is reasonable. Characteristic x rays are produced when an inner-shell vacancy is filled. Inner-shell electrons are nearer the nucleus than others in an atom and thus feel little net effect from the others. This is similar to what happens inside a charged conductor, where its excess charge is distributed over the surface so that it produces no electric field inside. It is reasonable to assume the inner-shell electrons have hydrogen-like energies, as given by $E_n = -\frac{Z^2}{n^2}E_0 (n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$. As noted, a K_α x ray is produced by an $n = 2$ to $n = 1$ transition. Since there are two electrons in a filled K shell, a vacancy would leave one electron, so that the effective charge would be $Z - 1$ rather than Z. For tungsten, $Z = 74$, so that the effective charge is 73.

Solution

$E_n = -\frac{Z^2}{n^2}E_0 (n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$ gives the orbital energies for hydrogen-like atoms to be $E_n = -(Z^2/n^2)E_0$, where $E_0 = 13.6$ eV. As noted, the effective Z is 73. Now the K_α x-ray energy is given by

Equation:

$$E_{K_\alpha} = \Delta E = E_\text{i} - E_\text{f} = E_2 - E_1,$$

where
Equation:

$$E_1 = -\frac{Z^2}{1^2}E_0 = -\frac{73^2}{1}\left(13.6\text{ eV}\right) = -72.5\text{ keV}$$

and
Equation:

$$E_2 = -\frac{Z^2}{2^2}E_0 = -\frac{73^2}{4}\left(13.6\text{ eV}\right) = -18.1\text{ keV}.$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$E_{K_\alpha} = -18.1\text{ keV} - (-72.5\text{ keV}) = 54.4\text{ keV}.$$

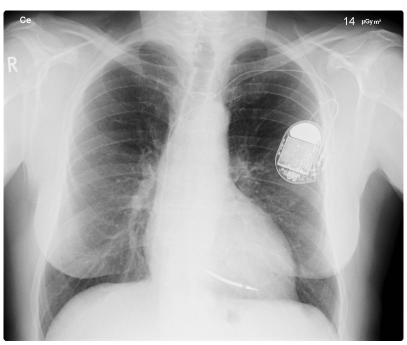
Discussion
This large photon energy is typical of characteristic x rays from heavy elements. It is large compared with other atomic emissions because it is produced when an inner-shell vacancy is filled, and inner-shell electrons are tightly bound. Characteristic x ray energies become progressively larger for heavier elements because their energy increases approximately as Z^2. Significant accelerating voltage is needed to create these inner-shell vacancies. In the case of tungsten, at least 72.5 kV is needed, because other shells are filled and you cannot simply bump one electron to a higher filled shell. Tungsten is a common anode material in x-ray tubes; so much of the energy of the impinging electrons is absorbed, raising its temperature, that a high-melting-point material like tungsten is required.

Medical and Other Diagnostic Uses of X-rays

All of us can identify diagnostic uses of x-ray photons. Among these are the universal dental and medical x rays that have become an essential part of medical diagnostics. (See [link] and [link].) X rays are also used to inspect

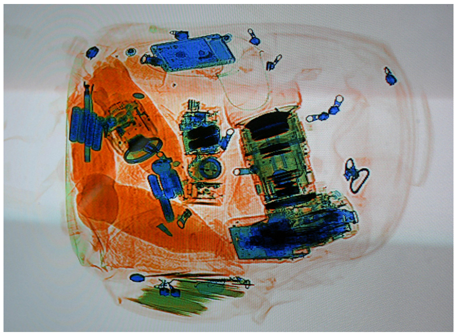
our luggage at airports, as shown in [link], and for early detection of cracks in crucial aircraft components. An x ray is not only a noun meaning high-energy photon, it also is an image produced by x rays, and it has been made into a familiar verb—to be x-rayed.

An x-ray image reveals fillings in a person's teeth. (credit: Dmitry G, Wikimedia Commons)



This x-ray image of a person's chest shows many details, including an artificial pacemaker. (credit: Sunzi99,

Wikimedia Commons)



This x-ray image shows the contents of a piece of luggage. The denser the material, the darker the shadow. (credit: IDuke, Wikimedia Commons)

The most common x-ray images are simple shadows. Since x-ray photons have high energies, they penetrate materials that are opaque to visible light. The more energy an x-ray photon has, the more material it will penetrate. So an x-ray tube may be operated at 50.0 kV for a chest x ray, whereas it may need to be operated at 100 kV to examine a broken leg in a cast. The depth of penetration is related to the density of the material as well as to the energy of the photon. The denser the material, the fewer x-ray photons get through and the darker the shadow. Thus x rays excel at detecting breaks in bones and in imaging other physiological structures, such as some tumors, that differ in density from surrounding material. Because of their high photon energy, x rays produce significant ionization in materials and

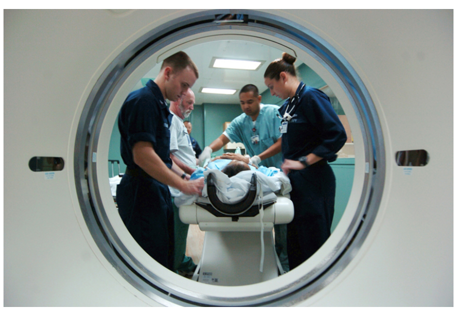
damage cells in biological organisms. Modern uses minimize exposure to the patient and eliminate exposure to others. Biological effects of x rays will be explored in the next chapter along with other types of ionizing radiation such as those produced by nuclei.

As the x-ray energy increases, the Compton effect (see Photon Momentum) becomes more important in the attenuation of the x rays. Here, the x ray scatters from an outer electron shell of the atom, giving the ejected electron some kinetic energy while losing energy itself. The probability for attenuation of the x rays depends upon the number of electrons present (the material's density) as well as the thickness of the material. Chemical composition of the medium, as characterized by its atomic number Z, is not important here. Low-energy x rays provide better contrast (sharper images). However, due to greater attenuation and less scattering, they are more absorbed by thicker materials. Greater contrast can be achieved by injecting a substance with a large atomic number, such as barium or iodine. The structure of the part of the body that contains the substance (e.g., the gastro-intestinal tract or the abdomen) can easily be seen this way.

Breast cancer is the second-leading cause of death among women worldwide. Early detection can be very effective, hence the importance of x-ray diagnostics. A mammogram cannot diagnose a malignant tumor, only give evidence of a lump or region of increased density within the breast. X-ray absorption by different types of soft tissue is very similar, so contrast is difficult; this is especially true for younger women, who typically have denser breasts. For older women who are at greater risk of developing breast cancer, the presence of more fat in the breast gives the lump or tumor more contrast. MRI (Magnetic resonance imaging) has recently been used as a supplement to conventional x rays to improve detection and eliminate false positives. The subject's radiation dose from x rays will be treated in a later chapter.

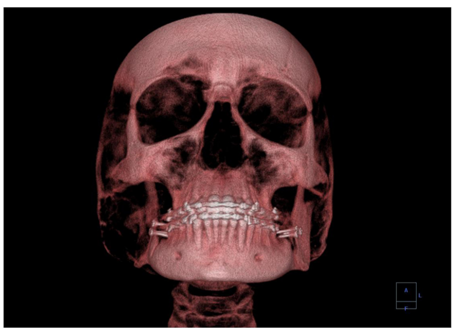
A standard x ray gives only a two-dimensional view of the object. Dense bones might hide images of soft tissue or organs. If you took another x ray from the side of the person (the first one being from the front), you would gain additional information. While shadow images are sufficient in many applications, far more sophisticated images can be produced with modern

technology. [link] shows the use of a computed tomography (CT) scanner, also called computed axial tomography (CAT) scanner. X rays are passed through a narrow section (called a slice) of the patient's body (or body part) over a range of directions. An array of many detectors on the other side of the patient registers the x rays. The system is then rotated around the patient and another image is taken, and so on. The x-ray tube and detector array are mechanically attached and so rotate together. Complex computer image processing of the relative absorption of the x rays along different directions produces a highly-detailed image. Different slices are taken as the patient moves through the scanner on a table. Multiple images of different slices can also be computer analyzed to produce three-dimensional information, sometimes enhancing specific types of tissue, as shown in [link]. G. Hounsfield (UK) and A. Cormack (US) won the Nobel Prize in Medicine in 1979 for their development of computed tomography.



A patient being positioned in a CT scanner aboard the hospital ship USNS Mercy. The CT scanner passes x rays through slices of the patient's body (or body part) over a range of directions. The relative absorption of the x rays along different

directions is computer analyzed to produce highly detailed images. Three-dimensional information can be obtained from multiple slices. (credit: Rebecca Moat, U.S. Navy)



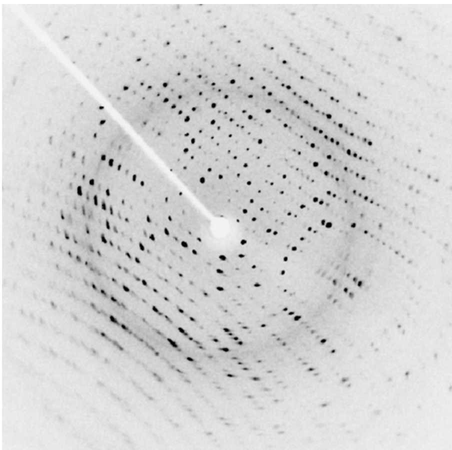
This three-dimensional image of a skull was produced by computed tomography, involving analysis of several x-ray slices of the head. (credit: Emailshankar, Wikimedia Commons)

X-Ray Diffraction and Crystallography

Since x-ray photons are very energetic, they have relatively short wavelengths. For example, the 54.4-keV K_α x ray of [link] has a

wavelength $\lambda = \text{hc}/E = 0.0228\ \text{nm}$. Thus, typical x-ray photons act like rays when they encounter macroscopic objects, like teeth, and produce sharp shadows; however, since atoms are on the order of 0.1 nm in size, x rays can be used to detect the location, shape, and size of atoms and molecules. The process is called **x-ray diffraction**, because it involves the diffraction and interference of x rays to produce patterns that can be analyzed for information about the structures that scattered the x rays. Perhaps the most famous example of x-ray diffraction is the discovery of the double-helix structure of DNA in 1953 by an international team of scientists working at the Cavendish Laboratory—American James Watson, Englishman Francis Crick, and New Zealand–born Maurice Wilkins. Using x-ray diffraction data produced by Rosalind Franklin, they were the first to discern the structure of DNA that is so crucial to life. For this, Watson, Crick, and Wilkins were awarded the 1962 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine. There is much debate and controversy over the issue that Rosalind Franklin was not included in the prize.

[link] shows a diffraction pattern produced by the scattering of x rays from a crystal. This process is known as x-ray crystallography because of the information it can yield about crystal structure, and it was the type of data Rosalind Franklin supplied to Watson and Crick for DNA. Not only do x rays confirm the size and shape of atoms, they give information on the atomic arrangements in materials. For example, current research in high-temperature superconductors involves complex materials whose lattice arrangements are crucial to obtaining a superconducting material. These can be studied using x-ray crystallography.



X-ray diffraction from the crystal of a protein, hen egg lysozyme, produced this interference pattern. Analysis of the pattern yields information about the structure of the protein. (credit: Del45, Wikimedia Commons)

Historically, the scattering of x rays from crystals was used to prove that x rays are energetic EM waves. This was suspected from the time of the discovery of x rays in 1895, but it was not until 1912 that the German Max von Laue (1879–1960) convinced two of his colleagues to scatter x rays from crystals. If a diffraction pattern is obtained, he reasoned, then the x rays must be waves, and their wavelength could be determined. (The spacing of atoms in various crystals was reasonably well known at the time, based on good values for Avogadro’s number.) The experiments were convincing, and the 1914 Nobel Prize in Physics was given to von Laue for his suggestion leading to the proof that x rays are EM waves. In 1915, the unique father-and-son team of Sir William Henry Bragg and his son Sir William Lawrence Bragg were awarded a joint Nobel Prize for inventing

the x-ray spectrometer and the then-new science of x-ray analysis. The elder Bragg had migrated to Australia from England just after graduating in mathematics. He learned physics and chemistry during his career at the University of Adelaide. The younger Bragg was born in Adelaide but went back to the Cavendish Laboratories in England to a career in x-ray and neutron crystallography; he provided support for Watson, Crick, and Wilkins for their work on unraveling the mysteries of DNA and to Max Perutz for his 1962 Nobel Prize-winning work on the structure of hemoglobin. Here again, we witness the enabling nature of physics—establishing instruments and designing experiments as well as solving mysteries in the biomedical sciences.

Certain other uses for x rays will be studied in later chapters. X rays are useful in the treatment of cancer because of the inhibiting effect they have on cell reproduction. X rays observed coming from outer space are useful in determining the nature of their sources, such as neutron stars and possibly black holes. Created in nuclear bomb explosions, x rays can also be used to detect clandestine atmospheric tests of these weapons. X rays can cause excitations of atoms, which then fluoresce (emitting characteristic EM radiation), making x-ray-induced fluorescence a valuable analytical tool in a range of fields from art to archaeology.

Section Summary

- X rays are relatively high-frequency EM radiation. They are produced by transitions between inner-shell electron levels, which produce x rays characteristic of the atomic element, or by decelerating electrons.
- X rays have many uses, including medical diagnostics and x-ray diffraction.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why characteristic x rays are the most energetic in the EM emission spectrum of a given element.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why does the energy of characteristic x rays become increasingly greater for heavier atoms?

Exercise:

Problem:

Observers at a safe distance from an atmospheric test of a nuclear bomb feel its heat but receive none of its copious x rays. Why is air opaque to x rays but transparent to infrared?

Exercise:

Problem:

Lasers are used to burn and read CDs. Explain why a laser that emits blue light would be capable of burning and reading more information than one that emits infrared.

Exercise:

Problem:

Crystal lattices can be examined with x rays but not UV. Why?

Exercise:

Problem:

CT scanners do not detect details smaller than about 0.5 mm. Is this limitation due to the wavelength of x rays? Explain.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the shortest-wavelength x-ray radiation that can be generated in an x-ray tube with an applied voltage of 50.0 kV? (b) Calculate the photon energy in eV. (c) Explain the relationship of the photon energy to the applied voltage.

Solution:

(a) 0.248×10^{-10} m

(b) 50.0 keV

(c) The photon energy is simply the applied voltage times the electron charge, so the value of the voltage in volts is the same as the value of the energy in electron volts.

Exercise:

Problem:

A color television tube also generates some x rays when its electron beam strikes the screen. What is the shortest wavelength of these x rays, if a 30.0-kV potential is used to accelerate the electrons? (Note that TVs have shielding to prevent these x rays from exposing viewers.)

Exercise:

Problem:

An x ray tube has an applied voltage of 100 kV. (a) What is the most energetic x-ray photon it can produce? Express your answer in electron volts and joules. (b) Find the wavelength of such an X–ray.

Solution:

(a) 100×10^{3} eV, 1.60×10^{-14} J

(b) 0.124×10^{-10} m

Exercise:

Problem:

The maximum characteristic x-ray photon energy comes from the capture of a free electron into a K shell vacancy. What is this photon energy in keV for tungsten, assuming the free electron has no initial kinetic energy?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the approximate energies of the K_α and K_β x rays for copper?

Solution:

(a) 8.00 keV

(b) 9.48 keV

Glossary

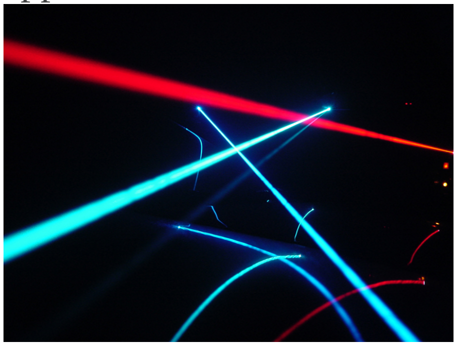
x rays
: a form of electromagnetic radiation

x-ray diffraction
: a technique that provides the detailed information about crystallographic structure of natural and manufactured materials

Applications of Atomic Excitations and De-Excitations

- Define and discuss fluorescence.
- Define metastable.
- Describe how laser emission is produced.
- Explain population inversion.
- Define and discuss holography.

Many properties of matter and phenomena in nature are directly related to atomic energy levels and their associated excitations and de-excitations. The color of a rose, the output of a laser, and the transparency of air are but a few examples. (See [link].) While it may not appear that glow-in-the-dark pajamas and lasers have much in common, they are in fact different applications of similar atomic de-excitations.



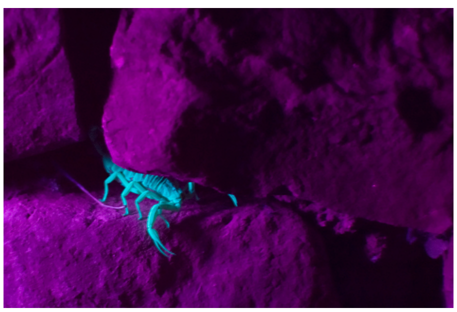
Light from a laser is based on a particular type of atomic de-excitation. (credit: Jeff Keyzer)

The color of a material is due to the ability of its atoms to absorb certain wavelengths while reflecting or reemitting others. A simple red material, for example a tomato, absorbs all visible wavelengths except red. This is because the atoms of its hydrocarbon pigment (lycopene) have levels separated by a variety of energies corresponding to all visible photon energies except red. Air is another interesting example. It is transparent to visible light, because there are few energy levels that visible photons can

excite in air molecules and atoms. Visible light, thus, cannot be absorbed. Furthermore, visible light is only weakly scattered by air, because visible wavelengths are so much greater than the sizes of the air molecules and atoms. Light must pass through kilometers of air to scatter enough to cause red sunsets and blue skies.

Fluorescence and Phosphorescence

The ability of a material to emit various wavelengths of light is similarly related to its atomic energy levels. [link] shows a scorpion illuminated by a UV lamp, sometimes called a black light. Some rocks also glow in black light, the particular colors being a function of the rock's mineral composition. Black lights are also used to make certain posters glow.



Objects glow in the visible spectrum when illuminated by an ultraviolet (black) light. Emissions are characteristic of the mineral involved, since they are related to its energy levels. In the case of scorpions, proteins near the surface of their skin give off the characteristic blue

glow. This is a colorful example of fluorescence in which excitation is induced by UV radiation while de-excitation occurs in the form of visible light. (credit: Ken Bosma, Flickr)

In the fluorescence process, an atom is excited to a level several steps above its ground state by the absorption of a relatively high-energy UV photon. This is called **atomic excitation**. Once it is excited, the atom can de-excite in several ways, one of which is to re-emit a photon of the same energy as excited it, a single step back to the ground state. This is called **atomic de-excitation**. All other paths of de-excitation involve smaller steps, in which lower-energy (longer wavelength) photons are emitted. Some of these may be in the visible range, such as for the scorpion in [link]. **Fluorescence** is defined to be any process in which an atom or molecule, excited by a photon of a given energy, and de-excites by emission of a lower-energy photon.

Fluorescence can be induced by many types of energy input. Fluorescent paint, dyes, and even soap residues in clothes make colors seem brighter in sunlight by converting some UV into visible light. X rays can induce fluorescence, as is done in x-ray fluoroscopy to make brighter visible images. Electric discharges can induce fluorescence, as in so-called neon lights and in gas-discharge tubes that produce atomic and molecular spectra. Common fluorescent lights use an electric discharge in mercury vapor to cause atomic emissions from mercury atoms. The inside of a fluorescent light is coated with a fluorescent material that emits visible light over a broad spectrum of wavelengths. By choosing an appropriate coating, fluorescent lights can be made more like sunlight or like the reddish glow of candlelight, depending on needs. Fluorescent lights are more efficient in converting electrical energy into visible light than incandescent filaments

(about four times as efficient), the blackbody radiation of which is primarily in the infrared due to temperature limitations.

This atom is excited to one of its higher levels by absorbing a UV photon. It can de-excite in a single step, re-emitting a photon of the same energy, or in several steps. The process is called fluorescence if the atom de-excites in smaller steps, emitting energy different from that which excited it. Fluorescence can be induced by a variety of energy inputs, such as UV, x-rays, and electrical discharge.

The spectacular Waitomo caves on North Island in New Zealand provide a natural habitat for glow-worms. The glow-worms hang up to 70 silk threads of about 30 or 40 cm each to trap prey that fly towards them in the dark. The fluorescence process is very efficient, with nearly 100% of the energy input turning into light. (In comparison, fluorescent lights are about 20% efficient.)

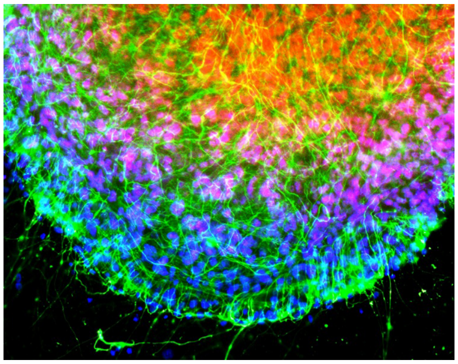
Fluorescence has many uses in biology and medicine. It is commonly used to label and follow a molecule within a cell. Such tagging allows one to study the structure of DNA and proteins. Fluorescent dyes and antibodies are usually used to tag the molecules, which are then illuminated with UV light and their emission of visible light is observed. Since the fluorescence of each element is characteristic, identification of elements within a sample can be done this way.

[link] shows a commonly used fluorescent dye called fluorescein. Below that, [link] reveals the diffusion of a fluorescent dye in water by observing it under UV light.

Fluorescein, shown here in powder form, is used to dye laboratory samples. (credit: Benjah-bmm27, Wikimedia Commons)

Here, fluorescent powder is added to a beaker of water. The mixture gives off a bright glow under ultraviolet light. (credit: Bricksnite, Wikimedia Commons)

Note:
Nano-Crystals
Recently, a new class of fluorescent materials has appeared—“nano-crystals.” These are single-crystal molecules less than 100 nm in size. The smallest of these are called “quantum dots.” These semiconductor indicators are very small (2–6 nm) and provide improved brightness. They also have the advantage that all colors can be excited with the same incident wavelength. They are brighter and more stable than organic dyes and have a longer lifetime than conventional phosphors. They have become an excellent tool for long-term studies of cells, including migration and morphology. ([link].)



Microscopic image of chicken cells using nano-crystals of a fluorescent dye. Cell nuclei exhibit blue fluorescence while neurofilaments exhibit green. (credit: Weerapong Prasongchean, Wikimedia Commons)

Once excited, an atom or molecule will usually spontaneously de-excite quickly. (The electrons raised to higher levels are attracted to lower ones by the positive charge of the nucleus.) Spontaneous de-excitation has a very short mean lifetime of typically about 10^{-8} s. However, some levels have significantly longer lifetimes, ranging up to milliseconds to minutes or even hours. These energy levels are inhibited and are slow in de-exciting because their quantum numbers differ greatly from those of available lower levels. Although these level lifetimes are short in human terms, they are many orders of magnitude longer than is typical and, thus, are said to be **metastable**, meaning relatively stable. **Phosphorescence** is the de-excitation of a metastable state. Glow-in-the-dark materials, such as luminous dials on some watches and clocks and on children’s toys and pajamas, are made of phosphorescent substances. Visible light excites the atoms or molecules to metastable states that decay slowly, releasing the stored excitation energy partially as visible light. In some ceramics, atomic excitation energy can be frozen in after the ceramic has cooled from its firing. It is very slowly released, but the ceramic can be induced to phosphoresce by heating—a process called “thermoluminescence.” Since the release is slow, thermoluminescence can be used to date antiquities. The less light emitted, the older the ceramic. (See [link].)

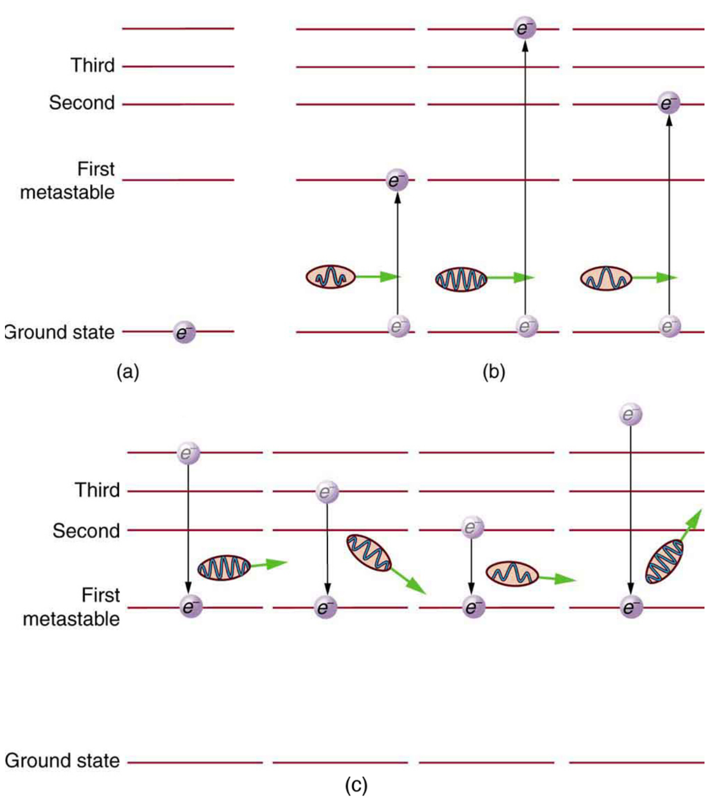
Atoms frozen in an excited state when this Chinese ceramic figure was fired can be stimulated to de-excite and emit EM radiation by heating a sample of the ceramic—a process called thermoluminescence. Since the states slowly de-excite over centuries, the amount of thermoluminescence decreases with age, making it possible to use this effect to date and authenticate antiquities. This figure dates from the 11th century. (credit: Vassil, Wikimedia Commons)

Lasers

Lasers today are commonplace. Lasers are used to read bar codes at stores and in libraries, laser shows are staged for entertainment, laser printers produce high-quality images at relatively low cost, and lasers send prodigious numbers of telephone messages through optical fibers. Among other things, lasers are also employed in surveying, weapons guidance,

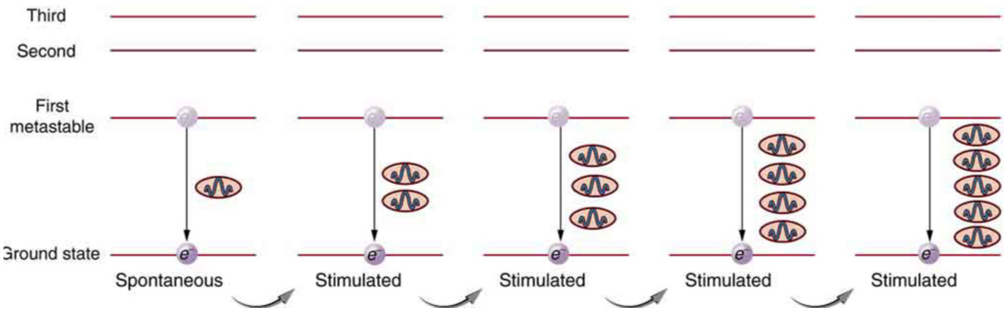
tumor eradication, retinal welding, and for reading music CDs and computer CD-ROMs.

Why do lasers have so many varied applications? The answer is that lasers produce single-wavelength EM radiation that is also very coherent—that is, the emitted photons are in phase. Laser output can, thus, be more precisely manipulated than incoherent mixed-wavelength EM radiation from other sources. The reason laser output is so pure and coherent is based on how it is produced, which in turn depends on a metastable state in the lasing material. Suppose a material had the energy levels shown in [link]. When energy is put into a large collection of these atoms, electrons are raised to all possible levels. Most return to the ground state in less than about 10^{-8} s, but those in the metastable state linger. This includes those electrons originally excited to the metastable state and those that fell into it from above. It is possible to get a majority of the atoms into the metastable state, a condition called a **population inversion**.



(a) Energy-level diagram for an atom showing the first few states, one of which is metastable. (b) Massive energy input excites atoms to a variety of states. (c) Most states decay quickly, leaving electrons only in the metastable and ground state. If a majority of electrons are in the metastable state, a population inversion has been achieved.

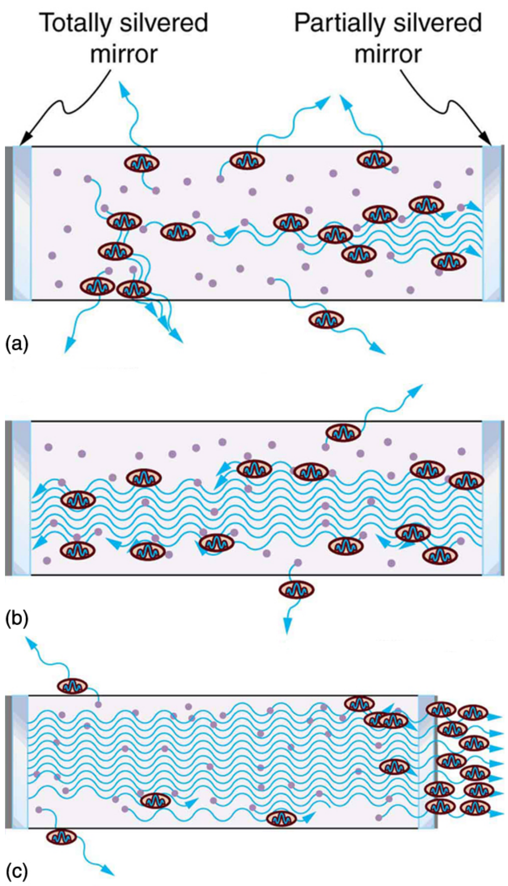
Once a population inversion is achieved, a very interesting thing can happen, as shown in [link]. An electron spontaneously falls from the metastable state, emitting a photon. This photon finds another atom in the metastable state and stimulates it to decay, emitting a second photon of *the same wavelength and in phase* with the first, and so on. **Stimulated emission** is the emission of electromagnetic radiation in the form of photons of a given frequency, triggered by photons of the same frequency. For example, an excited atom, with an electron in an energy orbit higher than normal, releases a photon of a specific frequency when the electron drops back to a lower energy orbit. If this photon then strikes another electron in the same high-energy orbit in another atom, another photon of the same frequency is released. The emitted photons and the triggering photons are always in phase, have the same polarization, and travel in the same direction. The probability of absorption of a photon is the same as the probability of stimulated emission, and so a majority of atoms must be in the metastable state to produce energy. Einstein (again Einstein, and back in 1917!) was one of the important contributors to the understanding of stimulated emission of radiation. Among other things, Einstein was the first to realize that stimulated emission and absorption are equally probable. The laser acts as a temporary energy storage device that subsequently produces a massive energy output of single-wavelength, in-phase photons.



One atom in the metastable state spontaneously decays to a lower level, producing a photon that goes on to stimulate another atom to de-excite. The second photon has exactly the same energy and wavelength as the first and is in phase with it. Both go on to stimulate the emission of other photons. A population inversion is necessary for there to be a net production rather than a net absorption of the photons.

The name **laser** is an acronym for light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation, the process just described. The process was proposed and developed following the advances in quantum physics. A joint Nobel Prize was awarded in 1964 to American Charles Townes (1915–), and Nikolay Basov (1922–2001) and Aleksandr Prokhorov (1916–2002), from the Soviet Union, for the development of lasers. The Nobel Prize in 1981 went to Arthur Schawlow (1921-1999) for pioneering laser applications. The original devices were called masers, because they produced microwaves. The first working laser was created in 1960 at Hughes Research labs (CA) by T. Maiman. It used a pulsed high-powered flash lamp and a ruby rod to produce red light. Today the name laser is used for all such devices developed to produce a variety of wavelengths, including microwave, infrared, visible, and ultraviolet radiation. [link] shows how a laser can be constructed to enhance the stimulated emission of radiation. Energy input can be from a flash tube, electrical discharge, or other sources, in a process sometimes called optical pumping. A large percentage of the original pumping energy is dissipated in other forms, but a population inversion must be achieved. Mirrors can be used to enhance stimulated

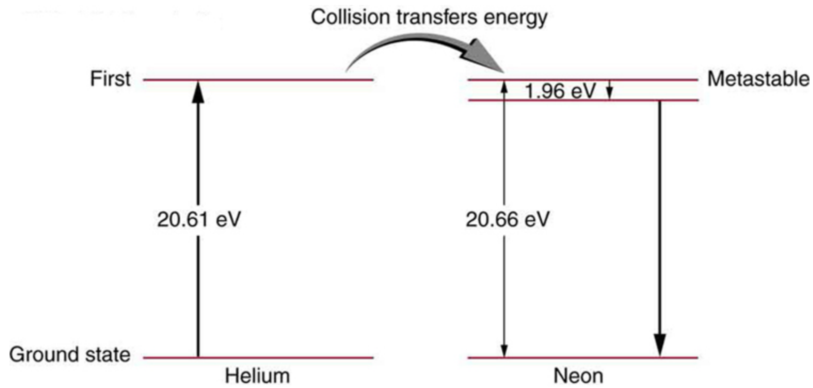
emission by multiple passes of the radiation back and forth through the lasing material. One of the mirrors is semitransparent to allow some of the light to pass through. The laser output from a laser is a mere 1% of the light passing back and forth in a laser.



Typical laser construction has a method of pumping energy into the lasing material to produce a population inversion. (a) Spontaneous emission begins with some photons escaping and others stimulating further emissions. (b) and (c)

Mirrors are used to enhance the probability of stimulated emission by passing photons through the material several times.

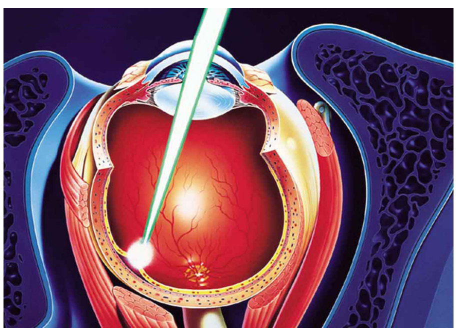
Lasers are constructed from many types of lasing materials, including gases, liquids, solids, and semiconductors. But all lasers are based on the existence of a metastable state or a phosphorescent material. Some lasers produce continuous output; others are pulsed in bursts as brief as 10^{-14} s. Some laser outputs are fantastically powerful—some greater than 10^{12} W—but the more common, everyday lasers produce something on the order of 10^{-3} W. The helium-neon laser that produces a familiar red light is very common. [link] shows the energy levels of helium and neon, a pair of noble gases that work well together. An electrical discharge is passed through a helium-neon gas mixture in which the number of atoms of helium is ten times that of neon. The first excited state of helium is metastable and, thus, stores energy. This energy is easily transferred by collision to neon atoms, because they have an excited state at nearly the same energy as that in helium. That state in neon is also metastable, and this is the one that produces the laser output. (The most likely transition is to the nearby state, producing 1.96 eV photons, which have a wavelength of 633 nm and appear red.) A population inversion can be produced in neon, because there are so many more helium atoms and these put energy into the neon. Helium-neon lasers often have continuous output, because the population inversion can be maintained even while lasing occurs. Probably the most common lasers in use today, including the common laser pointer, are semiconductor or diode lasers, made of silicon. Here, energy is pumped into the material by passing a current in the device to excite the electrons. Special coatings on the ends and fine cleavings of the semiconductor material allow light to bounce back and forth and a tiny fraction to emerge as laser light. Diode lasers can usually run continually and produce outputs in the milliwatt range.



Energy levels in helium and neon. In the common helium-neon laser, an electrical discharge pumps energy into the metastable states of both atoms. The gas mixture has about ten times more helium atoms than neon atoms. Excited helium atoms easily de-excite by transferring energy to neon in a collision. A population inversion in neon is achieved, allowing lasing by the neon to occur.

There are many medical applications of lasers. Lasers have the advantage that they can be focused to a small spot. They also have a well-defined wavelength. Many types of lasers are available today that provide wavelengths from the ultraviolet to the infrared. This is important, as one needs to be able to select a wavelength that will be preferentially absorbed by the material of interest. Objects appear a certain color because they absorb all other visible colors incident upon them. What wavelengths are absorbed depends upon the energy spacing between electron orbitals in that molecule. Unlike the hydrogen atom, biological molecules are complex and have a variety of absorption wavelengths or lines. But these can be determined and used in the selection of a laser with the appropriate wavelength. Water is transparent to the visible spectrum but will absorb light in the UV and IR regions. Blood (hemoglobin) strongly reflects red but absorbs most strongly in the UV.

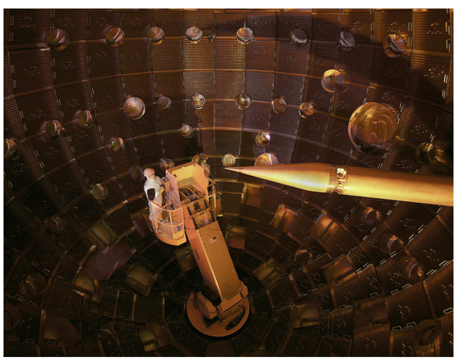
Laser surgery uses a wavelength that is strongly absorbed by the tissue it is focused upon. One example of a medical application of lasers is shown in [link]. A detached retina can result in total loss of vision. Burns made by a laser focused to a small spot on the retina form scar tissue that can hold the retina in place, salvaging the patient’s vision. Other light sources cannot be focused as precisely as a laser due to refractive dispersion of different wavelengths. Similarly, laser surgery in the form of cutting or burning away tissue is made more accurate because laser output can be very precisely focused and is preferentially absorbed because of its single wavelength. Depending upon what part or layer of the retina needs repairing, the appropriate type of laser can be selected. For the repair of tears in the retina, a green argon laser is generally used. This light is absorbed well by tissues containing blood, so coagulation or “welding” of the tear can be done.



A detached retina is burned by a laser designed to focus on a small spot on the retina, the resulting scar tissue holding it in place. The lens of the eye is used to focus the light, as is the device bringing the laser output to the eye.

In dentistry, the use of lasers is rising. Lasers are most commonly used for surgery on the soft tissue of the mouth. They can be used to remove ulcers, stop bleeding, and reshape gum tissue. Their use in cutting into bones and teeth is not quite so common; here the erbium YAG (yttrium aluminum garnet) laser is used.

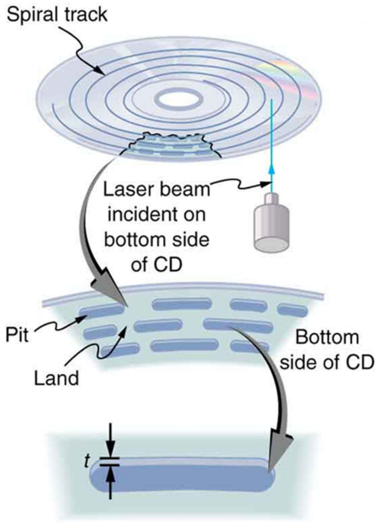
The massive combination of lasers shown in [link] can be used to induce nuclear fusion, the energy source of the sun and hydrogen bombs. Since lasers can produce very high power in very brief pulses, they can be used to focus an enormous amount of energy on a small glass sphere containing fusion fuel. Not only does the incident energy increase the fuel temperature significantly so that fusion can occur, it also compresses the fuel to great density, enhancing the probability of fusion. The compression or implosion is caused by the momentum of the impinging laser photons.



This system of lasers at Lawrence Livermore Laboratory is used to ignite nuclear fusion. A tremendous burst of energy is focused on a small fuel pellet, which is imploded to the high density and temperature needed to make the fusion

reaction proceed. (credit: Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, Lawrence Livermore National Security, LLC, and the Department of Energy)

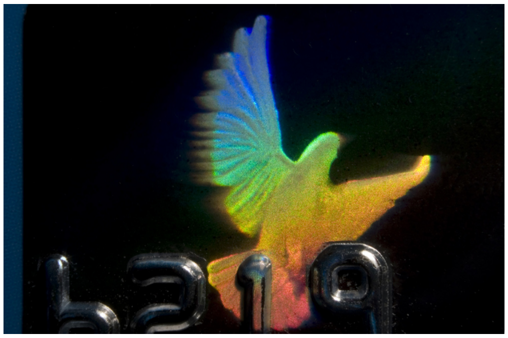
Music CDs are now so common that vinyl records are quaint antiquities. CDs (and DVDs) store information digitally and have a much larger information-storage capacity than vinyl records. An entire encyclopedia can be stored on a single CD. [link] illustrates how the information is stored and read from the CD. Pits made in the CD by a laser can be tiny and very accurately spaced to record digital information. These are read by having an inexpensive solid-state infrared laser beam scatter from pits as the CD spins, revealing their digital pattern and the information encoded upon them.



A CD has digital information

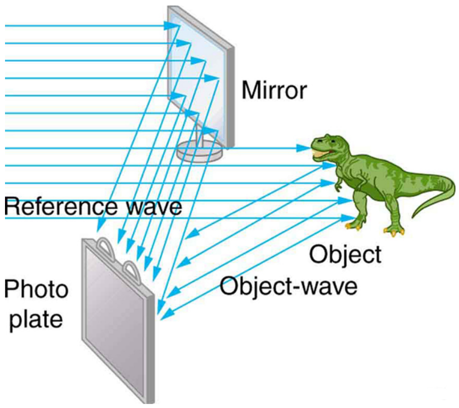
stored in the form of laser-created pits on its surface. These in turn can be read by detecting the laser light scattered from the pit. Large information capacity is possible because of the precision of the laser. Shorter-wavelength lasers enable greater storage capacity.

Holograms, such as those in [link], are true three-dimensional images recorded on film by lasers. Holograms are used for amusement, decoration on novelty items and magazine covers, security on credit cards and driver’s licenses (a laser and other equipment is needed to reproduce them), and for serious three-dimensional information storage. You can see that a hologram is a true three-dimensional image, because objects change relative position in the image when viewed from different angles.



Credit cards commonly have holograms for logos, making them difficult to reproduce (credit: Dominic Alves, Flickr)

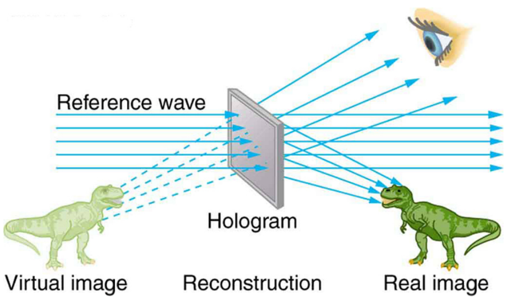
The name **hologram** means “entire picture” (from the Greek *holo*, as in holistic), because the image is three-dimensional. **Holography** is the process of producing holograms and, although they are recorded on photographic film, the process is quite different from normal photography. Holography uses light interference or wave optics, whereas normal photography uses geometric optics. [link] shows one method of producing a hologram. Coherent light from a laser is split by a mirror, with part of the light illuminating the object. The remainder, called the reference beam, shines directly on a piece of film. Light scattered from the object interferes with the reference beam, producing constructive and destructive interference. As a result, the exposed film looks foggy, but close examination reveals a complicated interference pattern stored on it. Where the interference was constructive, the film (a negative actually) is darkened. Holography is sometimes called lensless photography, because it uses the wave characteristics of light as contrasted to normal photography, which uses geometric optics and so requires lenses.



Production of a hologram. Single-wavelength coherent light from a laser produces a well-defined interference pattern on a piece of film. The laser beam is split by a partially silvered mirror, with part of the light illuminating the object and the remainder shining directly on the film.

Light falling on a hologram can form a three-dimensional image. The process is complicated in detail, but the basics can be understood as shown in [link], in which a laser of the same type that exposed the film is now used to illuminate it. The myriad tiny exposed regions of the film are dark and block the light, while less exposed regions allow light to pass. The film thus acts much like a collection of diffraction gratings with various spacings. Light passing through the hologram is diffracted in various directions, producing both real and virtual images of the object used to expose the film. The interference pattern is the same as that produced by the object. Moving

your eye to various places in the interference pattern gives you different perspectives, just as looking directly at the object would. The image thus looks like the object and is three-dimensional like the object.



A transmission hologram is one that produces real and virtual images when a laser of the same type as that which exposed the hologram is passed through it. Diffraction from various parts of the film produces the same interference pattern as the object that was used to expose it.

The hologram illustrated in [link] is a transmission hologram. Holograms that are viewed with reflected light, such as the white light holograms on credit cards, are reflection holograms and are more common. White light holograms often appear a little blurry with rainbow edges, because the diffraction patterns of various colors of light are at slightly different locations due to their different wavelengths. Further uses of holography include all types of 3-D information storage, such as of statues in museums and engineering studies of structures and 3-D images of human organs. Invented in the late 1940s by Dennis Gabor (1900–1970), who won the

1971 Nobel Prize in Physics for his work, holography became far more practical with the development of the laser. Since lasers produce coherent single-wavelength light, their interference patterns are more pronounced. The precision is so great that it is even possible to record numerous holograms on a single piece of film by just changing the angle of the film for each successive image. This is how the holograms that move as you walk by them are produced—a kind of lensless movie.

In a similar way, in the medical field, holograms have allowed complete 3-D holographic displays of objects from a stack of images. Storing these images for future use is relatively easy. With the use of an endoscope, high-resolution 3-D holographic images of internal organs and tissues can be made.

Section Summary

- An important atomic process is fluorescence, defined to be any process in which an atom or molecule is excited by absorbing a photon of a given energy and de-excited by emitting a photon of a lower energy.
- Some states live much longer than others and are termed metastable.
- Phosphorescence is the de-excitation of a metastable state.
- Lasers produce coherent single-wavelength EM radiation by stimulated emission, in which a metastable state is stimulated to decay.
- Lasing requires a population inversion, in which a majority of the atoms or molecules are in their metastable state.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How do the allowed orbits for electrons in atoms differ from the allowed orbits for planets around the sun? Explain how the correspondence principle applies here.

Exercise:

Problem:

Atomic and molecular spectra are discrete. What does discrete mean, and how are discrete spectra related to the quantization of energy and electron orbits in atoms and molecules?

Exercise:

Problem:

Hydrogen gas can only absorb EM radiation that has an energy corresponding to a transition in the atom, just as it can only emit these discrete energies. When a spectrum is taken of the solar corona, in which a broad range of EM wavelengths are passed through very hot hydrogen gas, the absorption spectrum shows all the features of the emission spectrum. But when such EM radiation passes through room-temperature hydrogen gas, only the Lyman series is absorbed. Explain the difference.

Exercise:

Problem:

Lasers are used to burn and read CDs. Explain why a laser that emits blue light would be capable of burning and reading more information than one that emits infrared.

Exercise:

Problem:

The coating on the inside of fluorescent light tubes absorbs ultraviolet light and subsequently emits visible light. An inventor claims that he is able to do the reverse process. Is the inventor’s claim possible?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the difference between fluorescence and phosphorescence?

Exercise:

Problem:

How can you tell that a hologram is a true three-dimensional image and that those in 3-D movies are not?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows the energy-level diagram for neon. (a) Verify that the energy of the photon emitted when neon goes from its metastable state to the one immediately below is equal to 1.96 eV. (b) Show that the wavelength of this radiation is 633 nm. (c) What wavelength is emitted when the neon makes a direct transition to its ground state?

Solution:

(a) 1.96 eV

(b) $(1240\ \text{eV}{\cdot}\text{nm})/(1.96\ \text{eV}) = 633\ \text{nm}$

(c) 60.0 nm

Exercise:

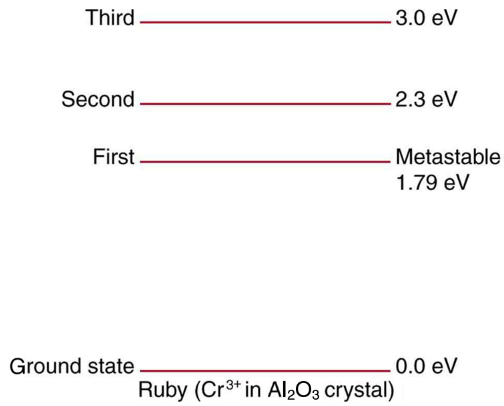
Problem:

A helium-neon laser is pumped by electric discharge. What wavelength electromagnetic radiation would be needed to pump it? See [link] for energy-level information.

Exercise:

Problem:

Ruby lasers have chromium atoms doped in an aluminum oxide crystal. The energy level diagram for chromium in a ruby is shown in [link]. What wavelength is emitted by a ruby laser?



Chromium atoms in an aluminum oxide crystal have these energy levels, one of which is metastable. This is the basis of a ruby laser. Visible light can pump the atom into an excited state above the metastable state to achieve a population inversion.

Solution:

693 nm

Exercise:

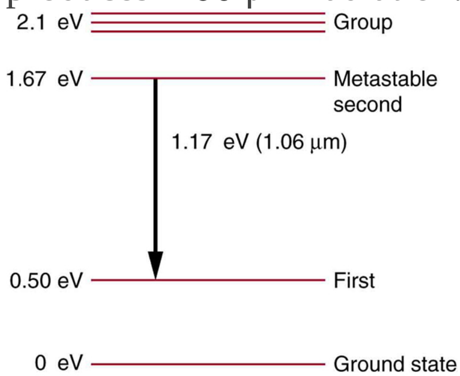
Problem:

(a) What energy photons can pump chromium atoms in a ruby laser from the ground state to its second and third excited states? (b) What are the wavelengths of these photons? Verify that they are in the visible part of the spectrum.

Exercise:

Problem:

Some of the most powerful lasers are based on the energy levels of neodymium in solids, such as glass, as shown in [link]. (a) What average wavelength light can pump the neodymium into the levels above its metastable state? (b) Verify that the 1.17 eV transition produces 1.06 μm radiation.



Neodymium atoms in glass have these energy levels, one of which is metastable. The group of levels above the metastable state is convenient for achieving a population inversion, since photons of many different energies can be absorbed by atoms in the ground state.

Solution:

(a) 590 nm

(b) $(1240\ \text{eV}\cdot\text{nm})/(1.17\ \text{eV}) = 1.06\ \mu\text{m}$

Glossary

metastable
: a state whose lifetime is an order of magnitude longer than the most short-lived states

atomic excitation
: a state in which an atom or ion acquires the necessary energy to promote one or more of its electrons to electronic states higher in energy than their ground state

atomic de-excitation
: process by which an atom transfers from an excited electronic state back to the ground state electronic configuration; often occurs by emission of a photon

laser
: acronym for light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation

phosphorescence
: the de-excitation of a metastable state

population inversion
: the condition in which the majority of atoms in a sample are in a metastable state

stimulated emission
: emission by atom or molecule in which an excited state is stimulated to decay, most readily caused by a photon of the same energy that is necessary to excite the state

hologram
: means *entire picture* (from the Greek word *holo*, as in holistic), because the image produced is three dimensional

holography
: the process of producing holograms

fluorescence

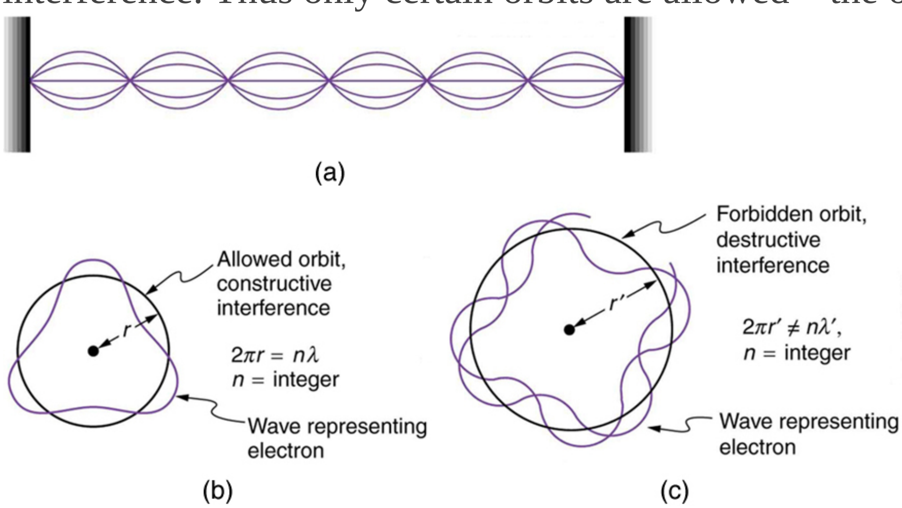
any process in which an atom or molecule, excited by a photon of a given energy, de-excites by emission of a lower-energy photon

The Wave Nature of Matter Causes Quantization

- Explain Bohr’s model of atom.
- Define and describe quantization of angular momentum.
- Calculate the angular momentum for an orbit of atom.
- Define and describe the wave-like properties of matter.

After visiting some of the applications of different aspects of atomic physics, we now return to the basic theory that was built upon Bohr’s atom. Einstein once said it was important to keep asking the questions we eventually teach children not to ask. Why is angular momentum quantized? You already know the answer. Electrons have wave-like properties, as de Broglie later proposed. They can exist only where they interfere constructively, and only certain orbits meet proper conditions, as we shall see in the next module.

Following Bohr’s initial work on the hydrogen atom, a decade was to pass before de Broglie proposed that matter has wave properties. The wave-like properties of matter were subsequently confirmed by observations of electron interference when scattered from crystals. Electrons can exist only in locations where they interfere constructively. How does this affect electrons in atomic orbits? When an electron is bound to an atom, its wavelength must fit into a small space, something like a standing wave on a string. (See [link].) Allowed orbits are those orbits in which an electron constructively interferes with itself. Not all orbits produce constructive interference. Thus only certain orbits are allowed—the orbits are quantized.



(a) Waves on a string have a wavelength related to the length of the string, allowing them to interfere constructively. (b) If we imagine the string bent into a closed circle, we get a rough idea of how electrons in circular orbits can interfere constructively. (c) If the wavelength does not fit into the circumference, the electron interferes destructively; it cannot exist in such an orbit.

For a circular orbit, constructive interference occurs when the electron's wavelength fits neatly into the circumference, so that wave crests always align with crests and wave troughs align with troughs, as shown in [link] (b). More precisely, when an integral multiple of the electron's wavelength equals the circumference of the orbit, constructive interference is obtained. In equation form, the *condition for constructive interference and an allowed electron orbit* is

Equation:

$$n\lambda_n = 2\pi r_n (n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots),$$

where λ_n is the electron's wavelength and r_n is the radius of that circular orbit. The de Broglie wavelength is $\lambda = h/p = h/\,mv$, and so here $\lambda = h/m_e v$. Substituting this into the previous condition for constructive interference produces an interesting result:

Equation:

$$\frac{\mathrm{nh}}{m_e v} = 2\mathrm{\pi} r_n.$$

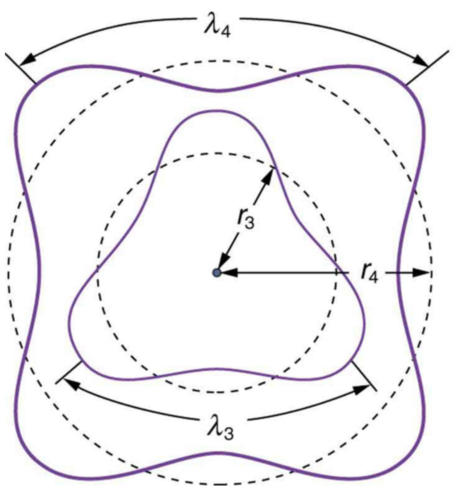
Rearranging terms, and noting that $L = \mathrm{mvr}$ for a circular orbit, we obtain the quantization of angular momentum as the condition for allowed orbits:

Equation:

$$L = m_e \mathrm{vr}_n = n\frac{h}{2\pi}(n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots).$$

This is what Bohr was forced to hypothesize as the rule for allowed orbits, as stated earlier. We now realize that it is the condition for constructive interference of an electron in a circular orbit. [link] illustrates this for $n = 3$ and $n = 4$.

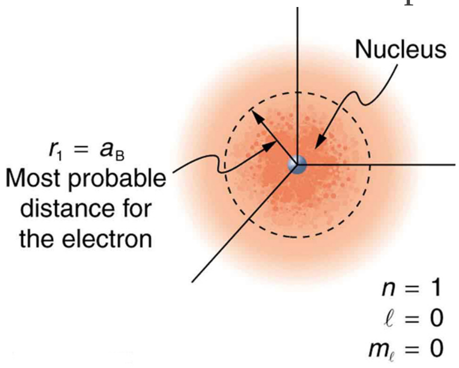
Note:
Waves and Quantization
The wave nature of matter is responsible for the quantization of energy levels in bound systems. Only those states where matter interferes constructively exist, or are "allowed." Since there is a lowest orbit where this is possible in an atom, the electron cannot spiral into the nucleus. It cannot exist closer to or inside the nucleus. The wave nature of matter is what prevents matter from collapsing and gives atoms their sizes.



The third and fourth allowed circular orbits have three and four wavelengths,

respectively, in their circumferences.

Because of the wave character of matter, the idea of well-defined orbits gives way to a model in which there is a cloud of probability, consistent with Heisenberg’s uncertainty principle. [link] shows how this applies to the ground state of hydrogen. If you try to follow the electron in some well-defined orbit using a probe that has a small enough wavelength to get some details, you will instead knock the electron out of its orbit. Each measurement of the electron’s position will find it to be in a definite location somewhere near the nucleus. Repeated measurements reveal a cloud of probability like that in the figure, with each speck the location determined by a single measurement. There is not a well-defined, circular-orbit type of distribution. Nature again proves to be different on a small scale than on a macroscopic scale.



The ground state of a hydrogen atom has a probability cloud describing the position of its electron. The probability of finding the electron is proportional to the darkness of the cloud. The electron can be closer or farther than

the Bohr radius, but it is very unlikely to be a great distance from the nucleus.

There are many examples in which the wave nature of matter causes quantization in bound systems such as the atom. Whenever a particle is confined or bound to a small space, its allowed wavelengths are those which fit into that space. For example, the particle in a box model describes a particle free to move in a small space surrounded by impenetrable barriers. This is true in blackbody radiators (atoms and molecules) as well as in atomic and molecular spectra. Various atoms and molecules will have different sets of electron orbits, depending on the size and complexity of the system. When a system is large, such as a grain of sand, the tiny particle waves in it can fit in so many ways that it becomes impossible to see that the allowed states are discrete. Thus the correspondence principle is satisfied. As systems become large, they gradually look less grainy, and quantization becomes less evident. Unbound systems (small or not), such as an electron freed from an atom, do not have quantized energies, since their wavelengths are not constrained to fit in a certain volume.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Quantum Wave Interference
When do photons, electrons, and atoms behave like particles and when do they behave like waves? Watch waves spread out and interfere as they pass through a double slit, then get detected on a screen as tiny dots. Use quantum detectors to explore how measurements change the waves and the patterns they produce on the screen.

Quantum Wave

Interference

Section Summary

- Quantization of orbital energy is caused by the wave nature of matter. Allowed orbits in atoms occur for constructive interference of electrons in the orbit, requiring an integral number of wavelengths to fit in an orbit's circumference; that is,
  Equation:
  $$n\lambda_n = 2\pi r_n (n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots),$$
  where λ_n is the electron's de Broglie wavelength.
- Owing to the wave nature of electrons and the Heisenberg uncertainty principle, there are no well-defined orbits; rather, there are clouds of probability.
- Bohr correctly proposed that the energy and radii of the orbits of electrons in atoms are quantized, with energy for transitions between orbits given by
  Equation:
  $$\Delta E = hf = E_{\mathrm{i}} - E_{\mathrm{f}},$$
  where ΔE is the change in energy between the initial and final orbits and hf is the energy of an absorbed or emitted photon.
- It is useful to plot orbit energies on a vertical graph called an energy-level diagram.
- The allowed orbits are circular, Bohr proposed, and must have quantized orbital angular momentum given by
  Equation:
  $$L = m_e v r_n = n\frac{h}{2\pi} (n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots),$$

where L is the angular momentum, r_n is the radius of orbit n, and h is Planck’s constant.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How is the de Broglie wavelength of electrons related to the quantization of their orbits in atoms and molecules?

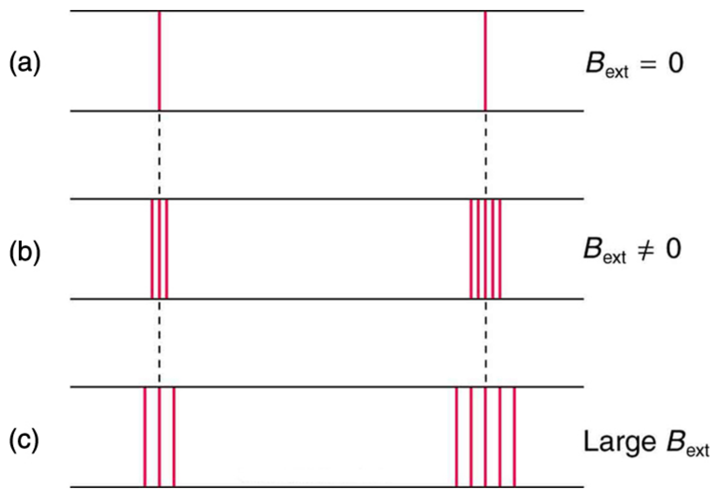
Patterns in Spectra Reveal More Quantization

- State and discuss the Zeeman effect.
- Define orbital magnetic field.
- Define orbital angular momentum.
- Define space quantization.

High-resolution measurements of atomic and molecular spectra show that the spectral lines are even more complex than they first appear. In this section, we will see that this complexity has yielded important new information about electrons and their orbits in atoms.

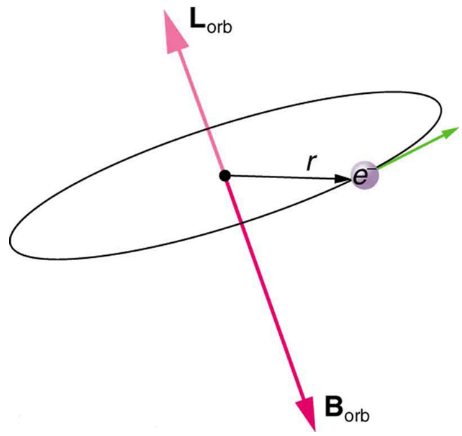
In order to explore the substructure of atoms (and knowing that magnetic fields affect moving charges), the Dutch physicist Hendrik Lorentz (1853–1930) suggested that his student Pieter Zeeman (1865–1943) study how spectra might be affected by magnetic fields. What they found became known as the **Zeeman effect**, which involved spectral lines being split into two or more separate emission lines by an external magnetic field, as shown in [link]. For their discoveries, Zeeman and Lorentz shared the 1902 Nobel Prize in Physics.

Zeeman splitting is complex. Some lines split into three lines, some into five, and so on. But one general feature is that the amount the split lines are separated is proportional to the applied field strength, indicating an interaction with a moving charge. The splitting means that the quantized energy of an orbit is affected by an external magnetic field, causing the orbit to have several discrete energies instead of one. Even without an external magnetic field, very precise measurements showed that spectral lines are doublets (split into two), apparently by magnetic fields within the atom itself.

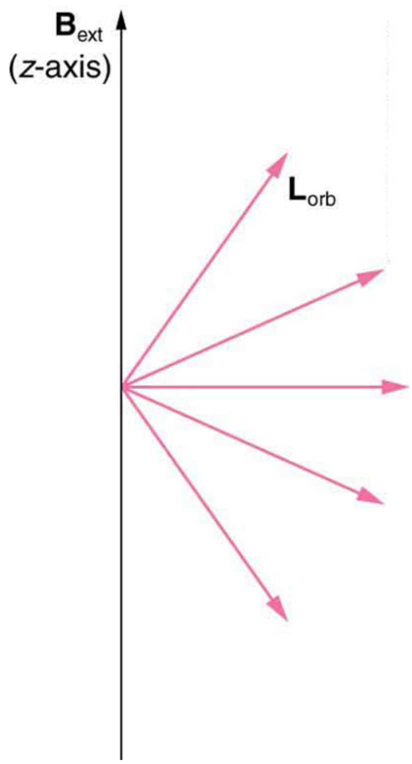


The Zeeman effect is the splitting of spectral lines when a magnetic field is applied. The number of lines formed varies, but the spread is proportional to the strength of the applied field. (a) Two spectral lines with no external magnetic field. (b) The lines split when the field is applied. (c) The splitting is greater when a stronger field is applied.

Bohr's theory of circular orbits is useful for visualizing how an electron's orbit is affected by a magnetic field. The circular orbit forms a current loop, which creates a magnetic field of its own, $\mathbf{B}_{\text{orb}}$ as seen in [link]. Note that the **orbital magnetic field** $\mathbf{B}_{\text{orb}}$ and the **orbital angular momentum** $\mathbf{L}_{\text{orb}}$ are along the same line. The external magnetic field and the orbital magnetic field interact; a torque is exerted to align them. A torque rotating a system through some angle does work so that there is energy associated with this interaction. Thus, orbits at different angles to the external magnetic field have different energies. What is remarkable is that the energies are quantized—the magnetic field splits the spectral lines into several discrete lines that have different energies. This means that only certain angles are allowed between the orbital angular momentum and the external field, as seen in [link].



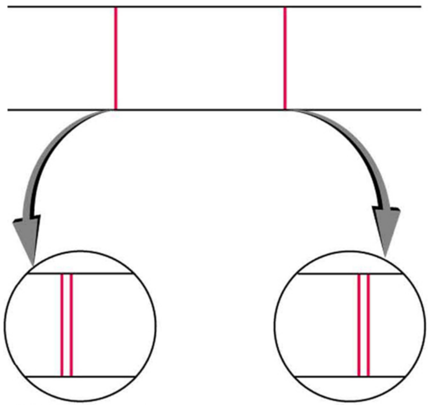
The approximate picture of an electron in a circular orbit illustrates how the current loop produces its own magnetic field, called $\mathbf{B}_{\text{orb}}$. It also shows how $\mathbf{B}_{\text{orb}}$ is along the same line as the orbital angular momentum $\mathbf{L}_{\text{orb}}$.



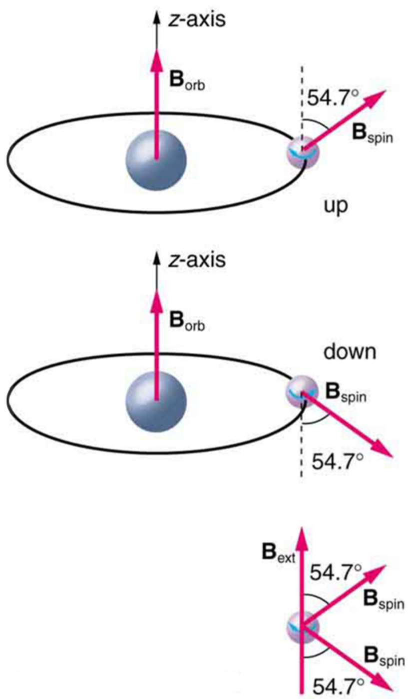
Only certain angles are allowed between the orbital angular momentum and an external magnetic field. This is implied by the fact that the Zeeman effect splits spectral lines into several discrete lines. Each line is associated with an angle between the external magnetic field and magnetic fields due to electrons and their orbits.

We already know that the magnitude of angular momentum is quantized for electron orbits in atoms. The new insight is that the *direction of the orbital angular momentum is also quantized*. The fact that the orbital angular momentum can have only certain directions is called **space quantization**. Like many aspects of quantum mechanics, this quantization of direction is totally unexpected. On the macroscopic scale, orbital angular momentum, such as that of the moon around the earth, can have any magnitude and be in any direction.

Detailed treatment of space quantization began to explain some complexities of atomic spectra, but certain patterns seemed to be caused by something else. As mentioned, spectral lines are actually closely spaced doublets, a characteristic called **fine structure**, as shown in [link]. The doublet changes when a magnetic field is applied, implying that whatever causes the doublet interacts with a magnetic field. In 1925, Sem Goudsmit and George Uhlenbeck, two Dutch physicists, successfully argued that electrons have properties analogous to a macroscopic charge spinning on its axis. Electrons, in fact, have an internal or intrinsic angular momentum called **intrinsic spin $\mathbf{S}$**. Since electrons are charged, their intrinsic spin creates an **intrinsic magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_{\text{int}}$**, which interacts with their orbital magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_{\text{orb}}$. Furthermore, *electron intrinsic spin is quantized in magnitude and direction*, analogous to the situation for orbital angular momentum. The spin of the electron can have only one magnitude, and its direction can be at only one of two angles relative to a magnetic field, as seen in [link]. We refer to this as spin up or spin down for the electron. Each spin direction has a different energy; hence, spectroscopic lines are split into two. Spectral doublets are now understood as being due to electron spin.



Fine structure. Upon close examination, spectral lines are doublets, even in the absence of an external magnetic field. The electron has an intrinsic magnetic field that interacts with its orbital magnetic field.



The intrinsic magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_{\text{int}}$ of an electron is attributed to its spin, $\mathbf{S}$, roughly pictured to be due to its charge spinning on its axis. This is only a crude model, since electrons seem to have no size. The spin and intrinsic magnetic field of the electron can make only one of two angles with another magnetic field, such as that created by the electron's orbital

motion. Space is quantized for spin as well as for orbital angular momentum.

These two new insights—that the direction of angular momentum, whether orbital or spin, is quantized, and that electrons have intrinsic spin—help to explain many of the complexities of atomic and molecular spectra. In magnetic resonance imaging, it is the way that the intrinsic magnetic field of hydrogen and biological atoms interact with an external field that underlies the diagnostic fundamentals.

Section Summary

- The Zeeman effect—the splitting of lines when a magnetic field is applied—is caused by other quantized entities in atoms.
- Both the magnitude and direction of orbital angular momentum are quantized.
- The same is true for the magnitude and direction of the intrinsic spin of electrons.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the Zeeman effect, and what type of quantization was discovered because of this effect?

Glossary

Zeeman effect

the effect of external magnetic fields on spectral lines

intrinsic spin
the internal or intrinsic angular momentum of electrons

orbital angular momentum
an angular momentum that corresponds to the quantum analog of classical angular momentum

fine structure
the splitting of spectral lines of the hydrogen spectrum when the spectral lines are examined at very high resolution

space quantization
the fact that the orbital angular momentum can have only certain directions

intrinsic magnetic field
the magnetic field generated due to the intrinsic spin of electrons

orbital magnetic field
the magnetic field generated due to the orbital motion of electrons

Quantum Numbers and Rules

- Define quantum number.
- Calculate angle of angular momentum vector with an axis.
- Define spin quantum number.

Physical characteristics that are quantized—such as energy, charge, and angular momentum—are of such importance that names and symbols are given to them. The values of quantized entities are expressed in terms of **quantum numbers**, and the rules governing them are of the utmost importance in determining what nature is and does. This section covers some of the more important quantum numbers and rules—all of which apply in chemistry, material science, and far beyond the realm of atomic physics, where they were first discovered. Once again, we see how physics makes discoveries which enable other fields to grow.

The *energy states of bound systems are quantized*, because the particle wavelength can fit into the bounds of the system in only certain ways. This was elaborated for the hydrogen atom, for which the allowed energies are expressed as $E_n \propto 1/n^2$, where $n = 1, 2, 3, ...$ We define n to be the principal quantum number that labels the basic states of a system. The lowest-energy state has $n = 1$, the first excited state has $n = 2$, and so on. Thus the allowed values for the principal quantum number are
Equation:

$$n = 1, 2, 3, ...$$

This is more than just a numbering scheme, since the energy of the system, such as the hydrogen atom, can be expressed as some function of n, as can other characteristics (such as the orbital radii of the hydrogen atom).

The fact that the *magnitude of angular momentum is quantized* was first recognized by Bohr in relation to the hydrogen atom; it is now known to be true in general. With the development of quantum mechanics, it was found that the magnitude of angular momentum L can have only the values
Equation:

$$L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi} \quad (l = 0, 1, 2, ..., n-1),$$

where l is defined to be the **angular momentum quantum number**. The rule for l in atoms is given in the parentheses. Given n, the value of l can be any integer from zero up to $n - 1$. For example, if $n = 4$, then l can be 0, 1, 2, or 3.

Note that for $n = 1$, l can only be zero. This means that the ground-state angular momentum for hydrogen is actually zero, not $h/2\pi$ as Bohr proposed. The picture of circular orbits is not valid, because there would be angular momentum for any circular orbit. A more valid picture is the cloud of probability shown for the ground state of hydrogen in [link]. The electron actually spends time in and near the nucleus. The reason the electron does not remain in the nucleus is related to Heisenberg's uncertainty principle—the electron's energy would have to be much too large to be confined to the small space of the nucleus. Now the first excited state of hydrogen has $n = 2$, so that l can be either 0 or 1, according to the rule in $L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi}$. Similarly, for $n = 3$, l can be 0, 1, or 2. It is often most convenient to state the value of l, a simple integer, rather than calculating the value of L from $L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi}$. For example, for $l = 2$, we see that

Equation:

$$L = \sqrt{2(2+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi} = \sqrt{6}\frac{h}{2\pi} = 0.390h = 2.58 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}.$$

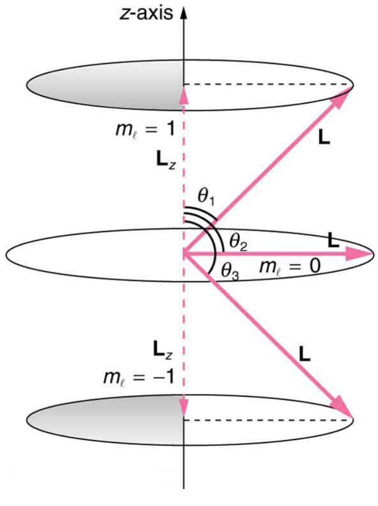
It is much simpler to state $l = 2$.

As recognized in the Zeeman effect, the *direction of angular momentum is quantized*. We now know this is true in all circumstances. It is found that the component of angular momentum along one direction in space, usually called the z-axis, can have only certain values of L_z. The direction in space must be related to something physical, such as the direction of the magnetic field at that location. This is an aspect of relativity. Direction has no meaning if there is nothing that varies with direction, as does magnetic force. The allowed values of L_z are

Equation:

$$L_z = m_l \frac{h}{2\pi} \quad (m_l = -l, -l+1, \ldots, \ -1, 0, 1, \ldots\ l-1, l),$$

where L_z is the z**-component of the angular momentum** and m_l is the angular momentum projection quantum number. The rule in parentheses for the values of m_l is that it can range from $-l$ to l in steps of one. For example, if $l = 2$, then m_l can have the five values –2, –1, 0, 1, and 2. Each m_l corresponds to a different energy in the presence of a magnetic field, so that they are related to the splitting of spectral lines into discrete parts, as discussed in the preceding section. If the z-component of angular momentum can have only certain values, then the angular momentum can have only certain directions, as illustrated in [link].



The component of a given angular momentum along the z-axis (defined by the direction of a magnetic field) can have only certain values; these are shown here for $l = 1$, for which $m_l = -1, 0, \text{and } +1$.

The direction of L is quantized in the sense that it can have only certain angles relative to the z-axis.

Example:
What Are the Allowed Directions?

Calculate the angles that the angular momentum vector $\mathbf{L}$ can make with the z-axis for $l = 1$, as illustrated in [link].

Strategy

[link] represents the vectors $\mathbf{L}$ and $\mathbf{L}_z$ as usual, with arrows proportional to their magnitudes and pointing in the correct directions. $\mathbf{L}$ and $\mathbf{L}_z$ form a right triangle, with $\mathbf{L}$ being the hypotenuse and $\mathbf{L}_z$ the adjacent side. This means that the ratio of $\mathbf{L}_z$ to $\mathbf{L}$ is the cosine of the angle of interest. We can find $\mathbf{L}$ and $\mathbf{L}_z$ using $L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi}$ and $L_z = m\frac{h}{2\pi}$.

Solution

We are given $l = 1$, so that m_l can be +1, 0, or −1. Thus L has the value given by $L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi}$.

Equation:

$$L = \frac{\sqrt{l(l+1)}h}{2\pi} = \frac{\sqrt{2}h}{2\pi}$$

L_z can have three values, given by $L_z = m_l\frac{h}{2\pi}$.

Equation:

$$L_z = m_l\frac{h}{2\pi} = \begin{cases} \frac{h}{2\pi}, & m_l = +1 \\ 0, & m_l = 0 \\ -\frac{h}{2\pi}, & m_l = -1 \end{cases}$$

As can be seen in [link], $\cos\theta = \mathrm{L}_z/\mathrm{L}$, and so for $m_l = +1$, we have

Equation:

$$\cos\theta_1 = \frac{L_Z}{L} = \frac{\frac{h}{2\pi}}{\frac{\sqrt{2}h}{2\pi}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\theta_1 = \cos^{-1}0.707 = 45.0^{\mathrm{o}}.$$

Similarly, for $m_l = 0$, we find $\cos\theta_2 = 0$; thus,

Equation:

$$\theta_2 = \cos^{-1} 0 = 90.0^{\text{o}}.$$

And for $m_l = -1$,
Equation:

$$\cos \theta_3 = \frac{L_Z}{L} = \frac{-\frac{h}{2\pi}}{\frac{\sqrt{2}h}{2\pi}} = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = -0.707,$$

so that
Equation:

$$\theta_3 = \cos^{-1}(-0.707) = 135.0^{\text{o}}.$$

Discussion
The angles are consistent with the figure. Only the angle relative to the z-axis is quantized. L can point in any direction as long as it makes the proper angle with the z-axis. Thus the angular momentum vectors lie on cones as illustrated. This behavior is not observed on the large scale. To see how the correspondence principle holds here, consider that the smallest angle (θ_1 in the example) is for the maximum value of $m_l = 0$, namely $m_l = l$. For that smallest angle,
Equation:

$$\cos \theta = \frac{L_z}{L} = \frac{l}{\sqrt{l(l+1)}},$$

which approaches 1 as l becomes very large. If $\cos \theta = 1$, then $\theta = 0^{\text{o}}$. Furthermore, for large l, there are many values of m_l, so that all angles become possible as l gets very large.

Intrinsic Spin Angular Momentum Is Quantized in Magnitude and Direction

There are two more quantum numbers of immediate concern. Both were first discovered for electrons in conjunction with fine structure in atomic spectra. It is now well established that electrons and other fundamental particles have *intrinsic spin*, roughly analogous to a planet spinning on its axis. This spin is a fundamental characteristic of particles, and only one magnitude of intrinsic spin is allowed for a given type of particle. Intrinsic angular momentum is quantized independently of orbital angular momentum. Additionally, the direction of the spin is also quantized. It has been found that the **magnitude of the intrinsic (internal) spin angular momentum**, S, of an electron is given by
Equation:

$$S = \sqrt{s(s+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi} \quad (s = 1/2 \text{ for electrons}),$$

where s is defined to be the **spin quantum number**. This is very similar to the quantization of L given in $L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi}$, except that the only value allowed for s for electrons is 1/2.

The *direction of intrinsic spin is quantized*, just as is the direction of orbital angular momentum. The direction of spin angular momentum along one direction in space, again called the z-axis, can have only the values

Equation:

$$S_z = m_s \frac{h}{2\pi} \quad \left(m_s = -\frac{1}{2}, +\frac{1}{2}\right)$$

for electrons. S_z is the z**-component of spin angular momentum** and m_s is the **spin projection quantum number**. For electrons, s can only be 1/2, and m_s can be either +1/2 or –1/2. Spin projection m_s=$+1/2$ is referred to as *spin up*, whereas $m_s = -1/2$ is called *spin down*. These are illustrated in [link].

> **Note:**
> Intrinsic Spin
> In later chapters, we will see that intrinsic spin is a characteristic of all subatomic particles. For some particles s is half-integral, whereas for others s is integral—there are crucial differences between half-integral spin particles and integral spin particles. Protons and neutrons, like electrons, have $s = 1/2$, whereas photons have $s = 1$, and other particles called pions have $s = 0$, and so on.

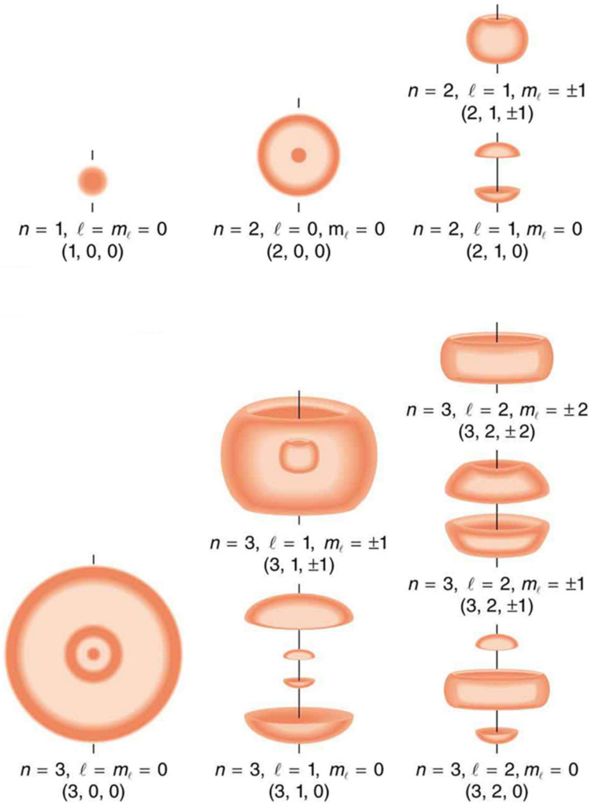
To summarize, the state of a system, such as the precise nature of an electron in an atom, is determined by its particular quantum numbers. These are expressed in the form (n, l, m_l, m_s) —see [link] *For electrons in atoms*, the principal quantum number can have the values $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. Once n is known, the values of the angular momentum quantum number are limited to $l = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, n - 1$. For a given value of l, the angular momentum projection quantum number can have only the values $m_l = -l, \ -l \ +1, \ldots, -1, 0, 1, \ldots, l-1, l$. Electron spin is independent of n, l, and m_l, always having $s = 1/2$. The spin projection quantum number can have two values, $m_s = 1/2$ or $-1/2$.

Name	Symbol	Allowed values
Principal quantum number	n	$1, 2, 3, \ldots$
Angular momentum	l	$0, 1, 2, \ldots n-1$
Angular momentum projection	m_l	$-l, \ -l \ +1, \ldots, \ -1, 0, 1, \ldots, l-1, l$ (or $0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \ \pm l$)

Name	Symbol	Allowed values
Spin[footnote] The spin quantum number *s* is usually not stated, since it is always 1/2 for electrons	s	$1/2(\text{electrons})$
Spin projection	m_s	$-1/2,\ +1/2$

Atomic Quantum Numbers

[link] shows several hydrogen states corresponding to different sets of quantum numbers. Note that these clouds of probability are the locations of electrons as determined by making repeated measurements—each measurement finds the electron in a definite location, with a greater chance of finding the electron in some places rather than others. With repeated measurements, the pattern of probability shown in the figure emerges. The clouds of probability do not look like nor do they correspond to classical orbits. The uncertainty principle actually prevents us and nature from knowing how the electron gets from one place to another, and so an orbit really does not exist as such. Nature on a small scale is again much different from that on the large scale.



Probability clouds for the electron in the ground state and several excited states of hydrogen. The nature of these states is determined by their sets of quantum numbers, here given as (n, l, m_l). The ground state is (0, 0, 0); one of the possibilities for the second excited state is (3, 2, 1). The probability of finding the electron is indicated by the shade of color; the darker the coloring the greater the chance of finding the electron.

We will see that the quantum numbers discussed in this section are valid for a broad range of particles and other systems, such as nuclei. Some quantum numbers, such as intrinsic spin, are related to fundamental classifications of subatomic particles, and they obey laws that will give us further insight into the substructure of matter and its interactions.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Stern-Gerlach Experiment
The classic Stern-Gerlach Experiment shows that atoms have a property called spin. Spin is a kind of intrinsic angular momentum, which has no classical counterpart. When the z-component of the spin is

measured, one always gets one of two values: spin up or spin down.

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/stern-gerlach/stern-gerlach_en.html

Section Summary

- Quantum numbers are used to express the allowed values of quantized entities. The principal quantum number n labels the basic states of a system and is given by
  Equation:
  $$n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots .$$
- The magnitude of angular momentum is given by
  Equation:
  $$L = \sqrt{l(l+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi} \quad (l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n-1),$$
  where l is the angular momentum quantum number. The direction of angular momentum is quantized, in that its component along an axis defined by a magnetic field, called the z-axis is given by
  Equation:
  $$L_z = m_l\frac{h}{2\pi} \quad (m_l = -l, -l+1, \ldots, -1, 0, 1, \ldots l-1, l),$$
  where L_z is the z-component of the angular momentum and m_l is the angular momentum projection quantum number. Similarly, the electron's intrinsic spin angular momentum S is given by
  Equation:
  $$S = \sqrt{s(s+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi} \quad (s = 1/2 \text{ for electrons}),$$
  s is defined to be the spin quantum number. Finally, the direction of the electron's spin along the z-axis is given by
  Equation:
  $$S_z = m_s\frac{h}{2\pi} \quad \left(m_s = -\frac{1}{2}, +\frac{1}{2}\right),$$
  where S_z is the z-component of spin angular momentum and m_s is the spin projection quantum number. Spin projection m_s=+$1/2$ is referred to as spin up, whereas $m_s = -1/2$ is called spin down. [link] summarizes the atomic quantum numbers and their allowed values.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: Define the quantum numbers n, l, m_l, s, and m_s.

Exercise:

Problem: For a given value of n, what are the allowed values of l?

Exercise:

Problem:

For a given value of l, what are the allowed values of m_l? What are the allowed values of m_l for a given value of n? Give an example in each case.

Exercise:

Problem:

List all the possible values of s and m_s for an electron. Are there particles for which these values are different? The same?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

If an atom has an electron in the $n = 5$ state with $m_l = 3$, what are the possible values of l?

Solution:

$l = 4$, 3 are possible since $l < n$ and $\mid m_l \mid \leq l$.

Exercise:

Problem: An atom has an electron with $m_l = 2$. What is the smallest value of n for this electron?

Exercise:

Problem: What are the possible values of m_l for an electron in the $n = 4$ state?

Solution:

$n = 4 \Rightarrow l = 3, 2, 1, 0 \Rightarrow m_l = \pm 3, \ \pm 2, \ \pm 1, 0$ are possible.

Exercise:

Problem:

What, if any, constraints does a value of $m_l = 1$ place on the other quantum numbers for an electron in an atom?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the magnitude of the angular momentum for an $l=1$ electron. (b) Compare your answer to the value Bohr proposed for the $n=1$ state.

Solution:

(a) $1.49\times10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}$

(b) $1.06\times10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the magnitude of the angular momentum for an $l=1$ electron? (b) Calculate the magnitude of the electron's spin angular momentum. (c) What is the ratio of these angular momenta?

Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link] for $l=3$.

Solution:

(a) $3.66\times10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}$

(b) $s=9.13\times10^{-35}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}$

(c) $\frac{L}{S}=\frac{\sqrt{12}}{\sqrt{3/4}}=4$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How many angles can L make with the z-axis for an $l=2$ electron? (b) Calculate the value of the smallest angle.

Exercise:

Problem: What angles can the spin S of an electron make with the z-axis?

Solution:

$\theta=54.7^{\text{o}}$, 125.3^{o}

Glossary

quantum numbers
: the values of quantized entities, such as energy and angular momentum

angular momentum quantum number

a quantum number associated with the angular momentum of electrons

spin quantum number
: the quantum number that parameterizes the intrinsic angular momentum (or spin angular momentum, or simply spin) of a given particle

spin projection quantum number
: quantum number that can be used to calculate the intrinsic electron angular momentum along the z-axis

z-component of spin angular momentum
: component of intrinsic electron spin along the z-axis

magnitude of the intrinsic (internal) spin angular momentum
: given by $S = \sqrt{s(s+1)}\frac{h}{2\pi}$

z-component of the angular momentum
: component of orbital angular momentum of electron along the z-axis

The Pauli Exclusion Principle

- Define the composition of an atom along with its electrons, neutrons, and protons.
- Explain the Pauli exclusion principle and its application to the atom.
- Specify the shell and subshell symbols and their positions.
- Define the position of electrons in different shells of an atom.
- State the position of each element in the periodic table according to shell filling.

Multiple-Electron Atoms

All atoms except hydrogen are multiple-electron atoms. The physical and chemical properties of elements are directly related to the number of electrons a neutral atom has. The periodic table of the elements groups elements with similar properties into columns. This systematic organization is related to the number of electrons in a neutral atom, called the **atomic number**, Z. We shall see in this section that the exclusion principle is key to the underlying explanations, and that it applies far beyond the realm of atomic physics.

In 1925, the Austrian physicist Wolfgang Pauli (see [link]) proposed the following rule: No two electrons can have the same set of quantum numbers. That is, no two electrons can be in the same state. This statement is known as the **Pauli exclusion principle**, because it excludes electrons from being in the same state. The Pauli exclusion principle is extremely powerful and very broadly applicable. It applies to any identical particles with half-integral intrinsic spin—that is, having $s = 1/2, 3/2, \ldots$ Thus no two electrons can have the same set of quantum numbers.

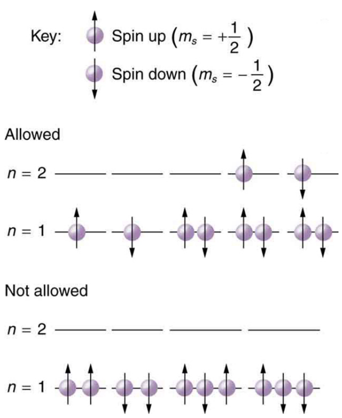
Note:
Pauli Exclusion Principle
No two electrons can have the same set of quantum numbers. That is, no two electrons can be in the same state.

The Austrian physicist Wolfgang Pauli (1900–1958) played a major role in the development of quantum mechanics. He proposed the exclusion principle; hypothesized the existence of an important particle,

called the neutrino, before it was directly observed; made fundamental contributions to several areas of theoretical physics; and influenced many students who went on to do important work of their own. (credit: Nobel Foundation, via Wikimedia Commons)

Let us examine how the exclusion principle applies to electrons in atoms. The quantum numbers involved were defined in Quantum Numbers and Rules as n, l, m_l, s, and m_s. Since s is always $1/2$ for electrons, it is redundant to list s, and so we omit it and specify the state of an electron by a set of four numbers (n, l, m_l, m_s). For example, the quantum numbers $(2, 1, 0, -1/2)$ completely specify the state of an electron in an atom.

Since no two electrons can have the same set of quantum numbers, there are limits to how many of them can be in the same energy state. Note that n determines the energy state in the absence of a magnetic field. So we first choose n, and then we see how many electrons can be in this energy state or energy level. Consider the $n = 1$ level, for example. The only value l can have is 0 (see [link] for a list of possible values once n is known), and thus m_l can only be 0. The spin projection m_s can be either $+1/2$ or $-1/2$, and so there can be two electrons in the $n = 1$ state. One has quantum numbers $(1, 0, 0, +1/2)$, and the other has $(1, 0, 0, -1/2)$. [link] illustrates that there can be one or two electrons having $n = 1$, but not three.



The Pauli exclusion principle explains why some configurations of electrons are allowed while others are not. Since electrons cannot have the same set of quantum numbers, a maximum of two can be

in the $n = 1$ level, and a third electron must reside in the higher-energy $n = 2$ level. If there are two electrons in the $n = 1$ level, their spins must be in opposite directions. (More precisely, their spin projections must differ.)

Shells and Subshells

Because of the Pauli exclusion principle, only hydrogen and helium can have all of their electrons in the $n = 1$ state. Lithium (see the periodic table) has three electrons, and so one must be in the $n = 2$ level. This leads to the concept of shells and shell filling. As we progress up in the number of electrons, we go from hydrogen to helium, lithium, beryllium, boron, and so on, and we see that there are limits to the number of electrons for each value of n. Higher values of the shell n correspond to higher energies, and they can allow more electrons because of the various combinations of l, m_l, and m_s that are possible. Each value of the principal quantum number n thus corresponds to an atomic **shell** into which a limited number of electrons can go. Shells and the number of electrons in them determine the physical and chemical properties of atoms, since it is the outermost electrons that interact most with anything outside the atom.

The probability clouds of electrons with the lowest value of l are closest to the nucleus and, thus, more tightly bound. Thus when shells fill, they start with $l = 0$, progress to $l = 1$, and so on. Each value of l thus corresponds to a **subshell**.

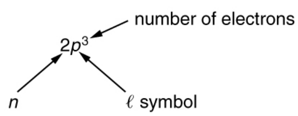
The table given below lists symbols traditionally used to denote shells and subshells.

Shell	**Subshell**	
n	l	***Symbol***
1	0	s
2	1	p
3	2	d
4	3	f

Shell	Subshell	
5	4	g
	5	h
	6[footnote] It is unusual to deal with subshells having l greater than 6, but when encountered, they continue to be labeled in alphabetical order.	i

Shell and Subshell Symbols

To denote shells and subshells, we write nl with a number for n and a letter for l. For example, an electron in the $n=1$ state must have $l=0$, and it is denoted as a $1s$ electron. Two electrons in the $n=1$ state is denoted as $1s^2$. Another example is an electron in the $n=2$ state with $l=1$, written as $2p$. The case of three electrons with these quantum numbers is written $2p^3$. This notation, called spectroscopic notation, is generalized as shown in [link].



Counting the number of possible combinations of quantum numbers allowed by the exclusion principle, we can determine how many electrons it takes to fill each subshell and shell.

Example:
How Many Electrons Can Be in This Shell?
List all the possible sets of quantum numbers for the $n=2$ shell, and determine the number of electrons that can be in the shell and each of its subshells.
Strategy
Given $n=2$ for the shell, the rules for quantum numbers limit l to be 0 or 1. The shell therefore has two subshells, labeled $2s$ and $2p$. Since the lowest l subshell fills first, we start with the $2s$ subshell possibilities and then proceed with the $2p$ subshell.
Solution
It is convenient to list the possible quantum numbers in a table, as shown below.

n	ℓ	m_l	m_s	Subshell	Total in subshell	Total in shell
2	0	0	+1/2	$2s$	2	8
2	0	0	−1/2			
2	1	1	+1/2	$2p$	6	
2	1	1	−1/2			
2	1	0	+1/2			
2	1	0	−1/2			
2	1	−1	+1/2			
2	1	−1	−1/2			

Discussion
It is laborious to make a table like this every time we want to know how many electrons can be in a shell or subshell. There exist general rules that are easy to apply, as we shall now see.

The number of electrons that can be in a subshell depends entirely on the value of l. Once l is known, there are a fixed number of values of m_l, each of which can have two values for m_s First, since m_l goes from $-l$ to l in steps of 1, there are $2l+1$ possibilities. This number is multiplied by 2, since each electron can be spin up or spin down. Thus the *maximum number of electrons that can be in a subshell* is $2(2l+1)$.

For example, the $2s$ subshell in [link] has a maximum of 2 electrons in it, since $2(2l+1)=2(0+1)=2$ for this subshell. Similarly, the $2p$ subshell has a maximum of 6 electrons, since $2(2l+1)=2(2+1)=6$. For a shell, the maximum number is the sum of what can fit in the subshells. Some algebra shows that the *maximum number of electrons that can be in a shell* is $2n^2$.

For example, for the first shell $n=1$, and so $2n^2=2$. We have already seen that only two electrons can be in the $n=1$ shell. Similarly, for the second shell, $n=2$, and so $2n^2=8$. As found in [link], the total number of electrons in the $n=2$ shell is 8.

Example:
Subshells and Totals for $n=3$
How many subshells are in the $n=3$ shell? Identify each subshell, calculate the maximum number of electrons that will fit into each, and verify that the total is $2n^2$.
Strategy
Subshells are determined by the value of l; thus, we first determine which values of l are allowed, and then we apply the equation "maximum number of electrons that can be in a subshell $=2(2l+1)$" to find the number of electrons in each subshell.
Solution
Since $n=3$, we know that l can be 0, 1, or 2; thus, there are three possible subshells. In standard notation, they are labeled the $3s$, $3p$, and $3d$ subshells. We have already seen that 2 electrons can be in an s state, and 6 in a p state, but let us use the equation "maximum number of electrons that can be in a subshell = $2(2l+1)$" to calculate the maximum number in each:
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{l}3s\text{ has }l=0;\text{ thus, }2(2l+1)=2(0+1)=2\\ 3p\text{ has }l=1;\text{ thus, }2(2l+1)=2(2+1)=6\\ 3d\text{ has }l=2;\text{ thus, }2(2l+1)=2(4+1)=10\\ \text{Total}=18\\ (\text{in the }n=3\text{ shell})\end{array}$$

The equation "maximum number of electrons that can be in a shell = $2n^2$" gives the maximum number in the $n=3$ shell to be
Equation:

$$\text{Maximum number of electrons}=2n^2=2(3)^2=2(9)=18.$$

Discussion
The total number of electrons in the three possible subshells is thus the same as the formula $2n^2$. In standard (spectroscopic) notation, a filled $n=3$ shell is denoted as $3s^2 3p^6 3d^{10}$. Shells do not fill in a simple manner. Before the $n=3$ shell is completely filled, for example, we begin to find electrons in the $n=4$ shell.

Shell Filling and the Periodic Table

[link] shows electron configurations for the first 20 elements in the periodic table, starting with hydrogen and its single electron and ending with calcium. The Pauli exclusion principle determines the maximum number of electrons allowed in each shell and subshell. But the order in which the shells and subshells are filled is complicated because of the large numbers of interactions between electrons.

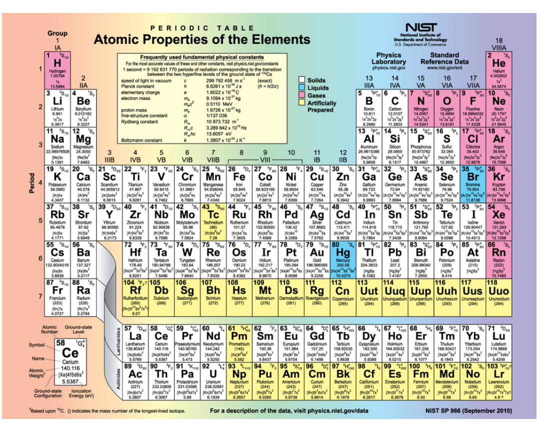
Element	Number of electrons (Z)	Ground state configuration					
H	1	$1s^1$					
He	2	$1s^2$					
Li	3	$1s^2$	$2s^1$				
Be	4	"	$2s^2$				
B	5	"	$2s^2$	$2p^1$			
C	6	"	$2s^2$	$2p^2$			
N	7	"	$2s^2$	$2p^3$			
O	8	"	$2s^2$	$2p^4$			
F	9	"	$2s^2$	$2p^5$			
Ne	10	"	$2s^2$	$2p^6$			
Na	11	"	$2s^2$	$2p^6$	$3s^1$		
Mg	12	"	"	"	$3s^2$		
Al	13	"	"	"	$3s^2$	$3p^1$	
Si	14	"	"	"	$3s^2$	$3p^2$	

Element	Number of electrons (Z)	Ground state configuration					
P	15	"	"	"	$3s^2$	$3p^3$	
S	16	"	"	"	$3s^2$	$3p^4$	
Cl	17	"	"	"	$3s^2$	$3p^5$	
Ar	18	"	"	"	$3s^2$	$3p^6$	
K	19	"	"	"	$3s^2$	$3p^6$	$4s^1$
Ca	20	"	"	"	"	"	$4s^2$

Electron Configurations of Elements Hydrogen Through Calcium

Examining the above table, you can see that as the number of electrons in an atom increases from 1 in hydrogen to 2 in helium and so on, the lowest-energy shell gets filled first—that is, the $n = 1$ shell fills first, and then the $n = 2$ shell begins to fill. Within a shell, the subshells fill starting with the lowest l, or with the s subshell, then the p, and so on, usually until all subshells are filled. The first exception to this occurs for potassium, where the $4s$ subshell begins to fill before any electrons go into the $3d$ subshell. The next exception is not shown in [link]; it occurs for rubidium, where the $5s$ subshell starts to fill before the $4d$ subshell. The reason for these exceptions is that $l = 0$ electrons have probability clouds that penetrate closer to the nucleus and, thus, are more tightly bound (lower in energy).

[link] shows the periodic table of the elements, through element 118. Of special interest are elements in the main groups, namely, those in the columns numbered 1, 2, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, and 18.



Periodic table of the elements (credit:

National Institute of Standards and Technology, U.S. Department of Commerce)

The number of electrons in the outermost subshell determines the atom’s chemical properties, since it is these electrons that are farthest from the nucleus and thus interact most with other atoms. If the outermost subshell can accept or give up an electron easily, then the atom will be highly reactive chemically. Each group in the periodic table is characterized by its outermost electron configuration. Perhaps the most familiar is Group 18 (Group VIII), the noble gases (helium, neon, argon, etc.). These gases are all characterized by a filled outer subshell that is particularly stable. This means that they have large ionization energies and do not readily give up an electron. Furthermore, if they were to accept an extra electron, it would be in a significantly higher level and thus loosely bound. Chemical reactions often involve sharing electrons. Noble gases can be forced into unstable chemical compounds only under high pressure and temperature.

Group 17 (Group VII) contains the halogens, such as fluorine, chlorine, iodine and bromine, each of which has one less electron than a neighboring noble gas. Each halogen has 5 p electrons (a p^5 configuration), while the p subshell can hold 6 electrons. This means the halogens have one vacancy in their outermost subshell. They thus readily accept an extra electron (it becomes tightly bound, closing the shell as in noble gases) and are highly reactive chemically. The halogens are also likely to form singly negative ions, such as $\mathrm{C1}^-$, fitting an extra electron into the vacancy in the outer subshell. In contrast, alkali metals, such as sodium and potassium, all have a single s electron in their outermost subshell (an s^1 configuration) and are members of Group 1 (Group I). These elements easily give up their extra electron and are thus highly reactive chemically. As you might expect, they also tend to form singly positive ions, such as Na^+, by losing their loosely bound outermost electron. They are metals (conductors), because the loosely bound outer electron can move freely.

Of course, other groups are also of interest. Carbon, silicon, and germanium, for example, have similar chemistries and are in Group 4 (Group IV). Carbon, in particular, is extraordinary in its ability to form many types of bonds and to be part of long chains, such as inorganic molecules. The large group of what are called transitional elements is characterized by the filling of the d subshells and crossing of energy levels. Heavier groups, such as the lanthanide series, are more complex—their shells do not fill in simple order. But the groups recognized by chemists such as Mendeleev have an explanation in the substructure of atoms.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Stern-Gerlach Experiment
Build an atom out of protons, neutrons, and electrons, and see how the element, charge, and mass change. Then play a game to test your ideas!

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/build-an-atom/latest/build-an-atom_en.html

Section Summary

- The state of a system is completely described by a complete set of quantum numbers. This set is written as (n, l, m_l, m_s).
- The Pauli exclusion principle says that no two electrons can have the same set of quantum numbers; that is, no two electrons can be in the same state.
- This exclusion limits the number of electrons in atomic shells and subshells. Each value of n corresponds to a shell, and each value of l corresponds to a subshell.
- The maximum number of electrons that can be in a subshell is $2(2l+1)$.
- The maximum number of electrons that can be in a shell is $2n^2$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Identify the shell, subshell, and number of electrons for the following: (a) $2p^3$. (b) $4d^9$. (c) $3s^1$. (d) $5g^{16}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Which of the following are not allowed? State which rule is violated for any that are not allowed. (a) $1p^3$ (b) $2p^8$(c) $3g^{11}$ (d) $4f^2$

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: (a) How many electrons can be in the $n = 4$ shell?

(b) What are its subshells, and how many electrons can be in each?

Solution:

(a) 32. (b) 2 in s, 6 in p, 10 in d, and 14 in f, for a total of 32.

Exercise:

Problem: (a) What is the minimum value of 1 for a subshell that has 11 electrons in it?

(b) If this subshell is in the $n = 5$ shell, what is the spectroscopic notation for this atom?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If one subshell of an atom has 9 electrons in it, what is the minimum value of l? (b) What is the spectroscopic notation for this atom, if this subshell is part of the $n = 3$ shell?

Solution:

(a) 2

(b) $3d^9$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) List all possible sets of quantum numbers (n, l, m_l, m_s) for the $n = 3$ shell, and determine the number of electrons that can be in the shell and each of its subshells.

(b) Show that the number of electrons in the shell equals $2n^2$ and that the number in each subshell is $2(2l + 1)$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Which of the following spectroscopic notations are not allowed? (a) $5s^1$ (b) $1d^1$ (c) $4s^3$ (d) $3p^7$ (e) $5g^{15}$. State which rule is violated for each that is not allowed.

Solution:

(b) $n \geq l$ is violated,

(c) cannot have 3 electrons in s subshell since $3 > (2l+1) = 2$

(d) cannot have 7 electrons in p subshell since $7 > (2l+1) = 2(2+1) = 6$

Exercise:

Problem:

Which of the following spectroscopic notations are allowed (that is, which violate none of the rules regarding values of quantum numbers)? (a) $1s^1$(b) $1d^3$(c) $4s^2$ (d) $3p^7$(e) $6h^{20}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using the Pauli exclusion principle and the rules relating the allowed values of the quantum numbers (n, l, m_l, m_s), prove that the maximum number of electrons in a subshell is $2n^2$.

(b) In a similar manner, prove that the maximum number of electrons in a shell is $2n^2$.

Solution:

(a) The number of different values of m_l is $\pm l, \pm(l-1), ...,0$ for each $l > 0$ and one for $l = 0 \Rightarrow (2l+1)$. Also an overall factor of 2 since each m_l can have m_s equal to either $+1/2$ or $-1/2 \Rightarrow 2(2l+1)$.

(b) for each value of l, you get $2(2l+1)$

$= 0, 1, 2, ...,(n–1) \Rightarrow 2\{[(2)(0)+1]+[(2)(1)+1]+....+[(2)(n-1)+1]\} = 2[1+3+...+(2n-3)+$

n terms

to see that the expression in the box is $= n^2$, imagine taking $(n-1)$ from the last term and adding it to first term $= 2[1+(n–1)+3+...+(2n-3)+(2n-1)–(n-1)] = 2[n+3+....+(2n-3)+n]$. Now take $(n-3)$ from penultimate term and add to the second term $2[\underbrace{n+n+...+n+n}_{n \text{ terms}}] = 2n^2$.

Exercise:

Problem:Integrated Concepts

Estimate the density of a nucleus by calculating the density of a proton, taking it to be a sphere 1.2 fm in diameter. Compare your result with the value estimated in this chapter.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The electric and magnetic forces on an electron in the CRT in [link] are supposed to be in opposite directions. Verify this by determining the direction of each force for the situation shown. Explain how you obtain the directions (that is, identify the rules used).

Solution:

The electric force on the electron is up (toward the positively charged plate). The magnetic force is down (by the RHR).

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the distance between the slits of a diffraction grating that produces a first-order maximum for the first Balmer line at an angle of $20.0º$?

(b) At what angle will the fourth line of the Balmer series appear in first order?

(c) At what angle will the second-order maximum be for the first line?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A galaxy moving away from the earth has a speed of $0.0100c$. What wavelength do we observe for an $n_{\text{i}} = 7$ to $n_{\text{f}} = 2$ transition for hydrogen in that galaxy?

Solution:

401 nm

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Calculate the velocity of a star moving relative to the earth if you observe a wavelength of 91.0 nm for ionized hydrogen capturing an electron directly into the lowest orbital (that is, a $n_{\text{i}} = \infty$ to $n_{\text{f}} = 1$, or a Lyman series transition).

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

In a Millikan oil-drop experiment using a setup like that in [link], a 500-V potential difference is applied to plates separated by 2.50 cm. (a) What is the mass of an oil drop having two extra electrons that is suspended motionless by the field between the plates? (b) What is the diameter of the drop, assuming it is a sphere with the density of olive oil?

Solution:

(a) $6.54 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{kg}$

(b) $5.54 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

What double-slit separation would produce a first-order maximum at $3.00º$ for 25.0-keV x rays? The small answer indicates that the wave character of x rays is best determined by having them interact with very small objects such as atoms and molecules.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

In a laboratory experiment designed to duplicate Thomson's determination of q_e/m_e, a beam of electrons having a velocity of $6.00 \times 10^7\ \text{m/s}$ enters a $5.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{T}$ magnetic field. The beam moves perpendicular

to the field in a path having a 6.80-cm radius of curvature. Determine q_e/m_e from these observations, and compare the result with the known value.

Solution:

$1.76 \times 10^{11}\ \mathrm{C/kg}$, which agrees with the known value of $1.759 \times 10^{11}\ \mathrm{C/kg}$ to within the precision of the measurement

Exercise:

Problem:Integrated Concepts

Find the value of l, the orbital angular momentum quantum number, for the moon around the earth. The extremely large value obtained implies that it is impossible to tell the difference between adjacent quantized orbits for macroscopic objects.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Particles called muons exist in cosmic rays and can be created in particle accelerators. Muons are very similar to electrons, having the same charge and spin, but they have a mass 207 times greater. When muons are captured by an atom, they orbit just like an electron but with a smaller radius, since the mass in $a_{\mathrm{B}} = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 m_e k q_e^2} = 0.529 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m}$ is 207 m_e.

(a) Calculate the radius of the $n = 1$ orbit for a muon in a uranium ion ($Z = 92$).

(b) Compare this with the 7.5-fm radius of a uranium nucleus. Note that since the muon orbits inside the electron, it falls into a hydrogen-like orbit. Since your answer is less than the radius of the nucleus, you can see that the photons emitted as the muon falls into its lowest orbit can give information about the nucleus.

Solution:

(a) 2.78 fm

(b) 0.37 of the nuclear radius.

Exercise:

Problem:Integrated Concepts

Calculate the minimum amount of energy in joules needed to create a population inversion in a helium-neon laser containing 1.00×10^{-4} moles of neon.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A carbon dioxide laser used in surgery emits infrared radiation with a wavelength of $10.6\ \mu\mathrm{m}$. In 1.00 ms, this laser raised the temperature of $1.00\ \mathrm{cm}^3$ of flesh to 100ºC and evaporated it.

(a) How many photons were required? You may assume flesh has the same heat of vaporization as water. (b) What was the minimum power output during the flash?

Solution:

(a) 1.34×10^{23}

(b) 2.52 MW

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Suppose an MRI scanner uses 100-MHz radio waves.

(a) Calculate the photon energy.

(b) How does this compare to typical molecular binding energies?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) An excimer laser used for vision correction emits 193-nm UV. Calculate the photon energy in eV.

(b) These photons are used to evaporate corneal tissue, which is very similar to water in its properties. Calculate the amount of energy needed per molecule of water to make the phase change from liquid to gas. That is, divide the heat of vaporization in kJ/kg by the number of water molecules in a kilogram.

(c) Convert this to eV and compare to the photon energy. Discuss the implications.

Solution:

(a) 6.42 eV

(b) $7.27 \times 10^{-20}\ \text{J/molecule}$

(c) 0.454 eV, 14.1 times less than a single UV photon. Therefore, each photon will evaporate approximately 14 molecules of tissue. This gives the surgeon a rather precise method of removing corneal tissue from the surface of the eye.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A neighboring galaxy rotates on its axis so that stars on one side move toward us as fast as 200 km/s, while those on the other side move away as fast as 200 km/s. This causes the EM radiation we receive to be Doppler shifted by velocities over the entire range of ±200 km/s. What range of wavelengths will we observe for the 656.0-nm line in the Balmer series of hydrogen emitted by stars in this galaxy. (This is called line broadening.)

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A pulsar is a rapidly spinning remnant of a supernova. It rotates on its axis, sweeping hydrogen along with it so that hydrogen on one side moves toward us as fast as 50.0 km/s, while that on the other side moves away as fast as 50.0 km/s. This means that the EM radiation we receive will be Doppler shifted over a range of $\pm 50.0\ \text{km/s}$. What range of wavelengths will we observe for the 91.20-nm line in the Lyman series of hydrogen? (Such line broadening is observed and actually provides part of the evidence for rapid rotation.)

Solution:

91.18 nm to 91.22 nm

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Prove that the velocity of charged particles moving along a straight path through perpendicular electric and magnetic fields is $v = E/B$. Thus crossed electric and magnetic fields can be used as a velocity selector independent of the charge and mass of the particle involved.

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

(a) What voltage must be applied to an X-ray tube to obtain 0.0100-fm-wavelength X-rays for use in exploring the details of nuclei? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 1.24×10^{11} V

(b) The voltage is extremely large compared with any practical value.

(c) The assumption of such a short wavelength by this method is unreasonable.

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

A student in a physics laboratory observes a hydrogen spectrum with a diffraction grating for the purpose of measuring the wavelengths of the emitted radiation. In the spectrum, she observes a yellow line and finds its wavelength to be 589 nm. (a) Assuming this is part of the Balmer series, determine n_{i}, the principal quantum number of the initial state. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

The solar corona is so hot that most atoms in it are ionized. Consider a hydrogen-like atom in the corona that has only a single electron. Construct a problem in which you calculate selected spectral energies and wavelengths of the Lyman, Balmer, or other series of this atom that could be used to identify its presence in a very hot gas. You will need to choose the atomic number of the atom, identify the element, and choose which spectral lines to consider.

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider the Doppler-shifted hydrogen spectrum received from a rapidly receding galaxy. Construct a problem in which you calculate the energies of selected spectral lines in the Balmer series and examine whether they can be described with a formula like that in the equation $\frac{1}{\lambda} = R \left(\frac{1}{n_{\text{f}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\text{i}}^2} \right)$, but with a different constant R.

Glossary

atomic number
: the number of protons in the nucleus of an atom

Pauli exclusion principle
: a principle that states that no two electrons can have the same set of quantum numbers; that is, no two electrons can be in the same state

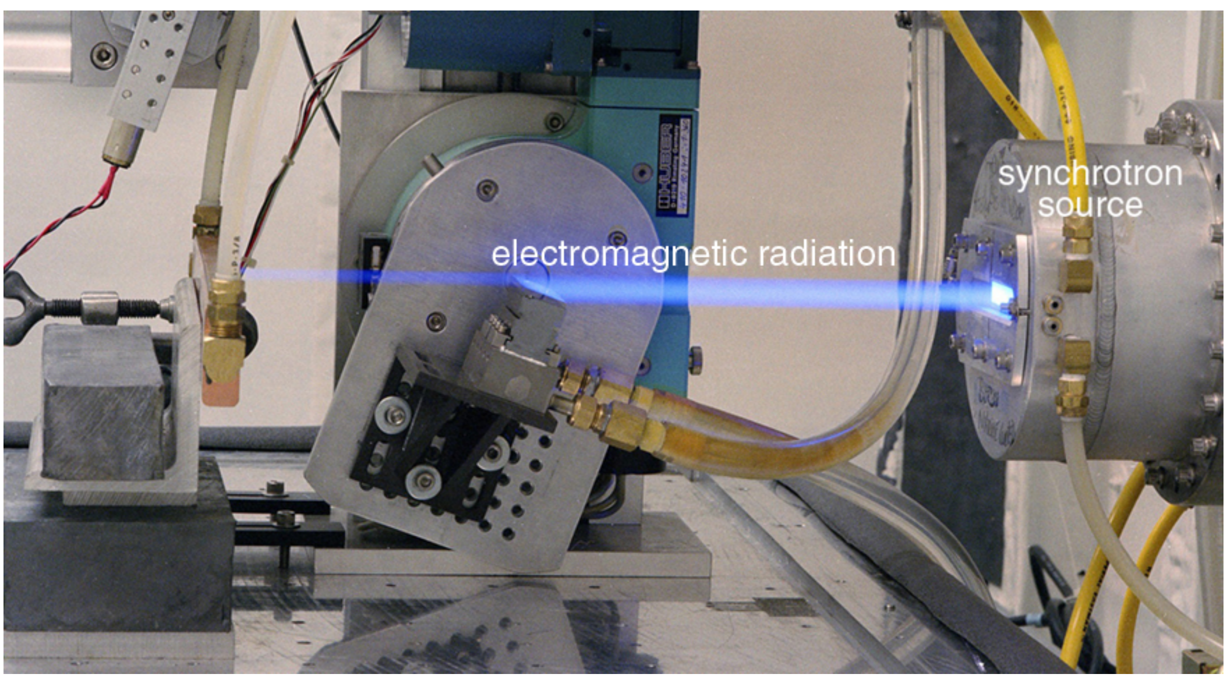
shell
: a probability cloud for electrons that has a single principal quantum number

subshell
: the probability cloud for electrons that has a single angular momentum quantum number l

Introduction to Radioactivity and Nuclear Physics class="introduction"

- Define radioactivity.

The synchrotron source produces electromagnetic radiation, as evident from the visible glow. (credit: United States Department of Energy, via Wikimedia Commons)

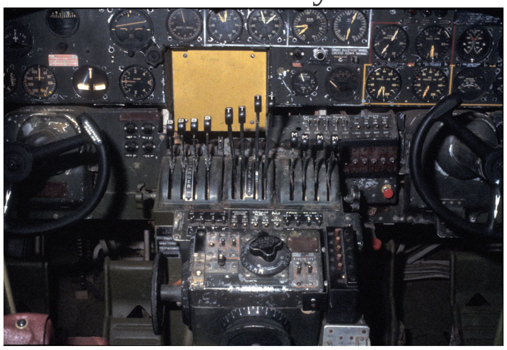


There is an ongoing quest to find substructures of matter. At one time, it was thought that atoms would be the ultimate substructure, but just when the first direct evidence of atoms was obtained, it became clear that they have a substructure and a tiny *nucleus*. The nucleus itself has spectacular characteristics. For example, certain nuclei are unstable, and their decay emits radiations with energies millions of times greater than atomic energies. Some of the mysteries of nature, such as why the core of the earth remains molten and how the sun produces its energy, are explained by nuclear phenomena. The exploration of *radioactivity* and the nucleus revealed fundamental and previously unknown particles, forces, and conservation laws. That exploration has evolved into a search for further underlying structures, such as quarks. In this chapter, the fundamentals of nuclear radioactivity and the nucleus are explored. The following two chapters explore the more important applications of nuclear physics in the field of medicine. We will also explore the basics of what we know about quarks and other substructures smaller than nuclei.

Nuclear Radioactivity

- Explain nuclear radiation.
- Explain the types of radiation—alpha emission, beta emission, and gamma emission.
- Explain the ionization of radiation in an atom.
- Define the range of radiation.

The discovery and study of nuclear radioactivity quickly revealed evidence of revolutionary new physics. In addition, uses for nuclear radiation also emerged quickly—for example, people such as Ernest Rutherford used it to determine the size of the nucleus and devices were painted with radon-doped paint to make them glow in the dark (see [link]). We therefore begin our study of nuclear physics with the discovery and basic features of nuclear radioactivity.



The dials of this World War II aircraft glow in the dark, because they are painted with radium-doped phosphorescent paint. It is a poignant reminder of the dual nature of radiation. Although radium paint dials are conveniently visible day and night, they emit radon, a radioactive gas that is hazardous and is not

directly sensed. (credit: U.S. Air Force Photo)

Discovery of Nuclear Radioactivity

In 1896, the French physicist Antoine Henri Becquerel (1852–1908) accidentally found that a uranium-rich mineral called pitchblende emits invisible, penetrating rays that can darken a photographic plate enclosed in an opaque envelope. The rays therefore carry energy; but amazingly, the pitchblende emits them continuously without any energy input. This is an apparent violation of the law of conservation of energy, one that we now understand is due to the conversion of a small amount of mass into energy, as related in Einstein's famous equation $E = mc^2$. It was soon evident that Becquerel's rays originate in the nuclei of the atoms and have other unique characteristics. The emission of these rays is called **nuclear radioactivity** or simply **radioactivity**. The rays themselves are called **nuclear radiation**. A nucleus that spontaneously destroys part of its mass to emit radiation is said to **decay** (a term also used to describe the emission of radiation by atoms in excited states). A substance or object that emits nuclear radiation is said to be **radioactive**.

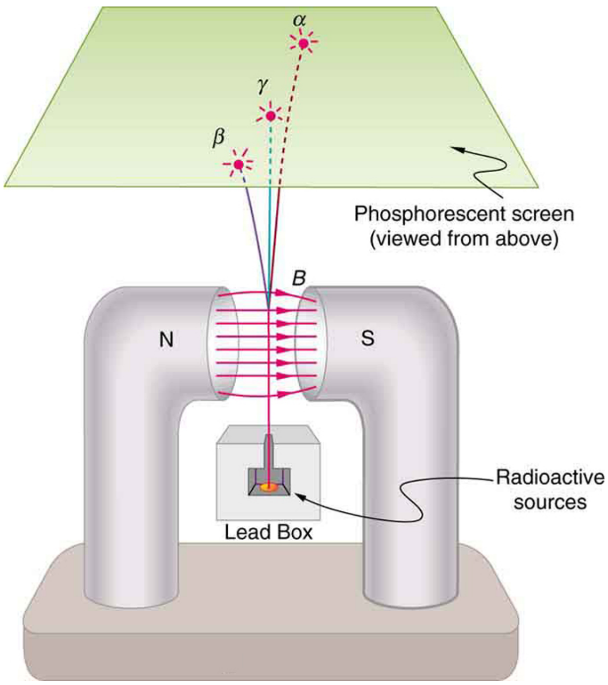
Two types of experimental evidence imply that Becquerel's rays originate deep in the heart (or nucleus) of an atom. First, the radiation is found to be associated with certain elements, such as uranium. Radiation does not vary with chemical state—that is, uranium is radioactive whether it is in the form of an element or compound. In addition, radiation does not vary with temperature, pressure, or ionization state of the uranium atom. Since all of these factors affect electrons in an atom, the radiation cannot come from electron transitions, as atomic spectra do. The huge energy emitted during each event is the second piece of evidence that the radiation cannot be atomic. Nuclear radiation has energies of the order of 10^6 eV per event, which is much greater than the typical atomic energies (a few eV), such as that observed in spectra and chemical reactions, and more than ten times as high as the most energetic characteristic x rays. Becquerel did not vigorously pursue his discovery for very long. In 1898, Marie Curie (1867–

1934), then a graduate student married the already well-known French physicist Pierre Curie (1859–1906), began her doctoral study of Becquerel's rays. She and her husband soon discovered two new radioactive elements, which she named *polonium* (after her native land) and *radium* (because it radiates). These two new elements filled holes in the periodic table and, further, displayed much higher levels of radioactivity per gram of material than uranium. Over a period of four years, working under poor conditions and spending their own funds, the Curies processed more than a ton of uranium ore to isolate a gram of radium salt. Radium became highly sought after, because it was about two million times as radioactive as uranium. Curie's radium salt glowed visibly from the radiation that took its toll on them and other unaware researchers. Shortly after completing her Ph.D., both Curies and Becquerel shared the 1903 Nobel Prize in physics for their work on radioactivity. Pierre was killed in a horse cart accident in 1906, but Marie continued her study of radioactivity for nearly 30 more years. Awarded the 1911 Nobel Prize in chemistry for her discovery of two new elements, she remains the only person to win Nobel Prizes in physics and chemistry. Marie's radioactive fingerprints on some pages of her notebooks can still expose film, and she suffered from radiation-induced lesions. She died of leukemia likely caused by radiation, but she was active in research almost until her death in 1934. The following year, her daughter and son-in-law, Irene and Frederic Joliot-Curie, were awarded the Nobel Prize in chemistry for their discovery of artificially induced radiation, adding to a remarkable family legacy.

Alpha, Beta, and Gamma

Research begun by people such as New Zealander Ernest Rutherford soon after the discovery of nuclear radiation indicated that different types of rays are emitted. Eventually, three types were distinguished and named **alpha** (α), **beta**(β), and **gamma**(γ), because, like x-rays, their identities were initially unknown. [link] shows what happens if the rays are passed through a magnetic field. The γs are unaffected, while the α s and β s are deflected in opposite directions, indicating the α s are positive, the β s negative, and the γ s uncharged. Rutherford used both magnetic and electric fields to show that α s have a positive charge twice the magnitude of an electron, or $+2 \mid q_e \mid$. In the process, he found the α s charge to mass ratio to be several

thousand times smaller than the electron’s. Later on, Rutherford collected α s from a radioactive source and passed an electric discharge through them, obtaining the spectrum of recently discovered helium gas. Among many important discoveries made by Rutherford and his collaborators was the proof that α *radiation is the emission of a helium nucleus*. Rutherford won the Nobel Prize in chemistry in 1908 for his early work. He continued to make important contributions until his death in 1934.



Alpha, beta, and gamma rays are passed through a magnetic field on the way to a phosphorescent screen. The α s and β s bend in opposite directions, while the γ s are unaffected, indicating a positive charge for α s, negative for β s, and neutral for γ s. Consistent results are obtained with electric fields. Collection of the radiation offers further

confirmation from the direct measurement of excess charge.

Other researchers had already proved that β s are negative and have the same mass and same charge-to-mass ratio as the recently discovered electron. By 1902, it was recognized that β *radiation is the emission of an electron*. Although β s are electrons, they do not exist in the nucleus before it decays and are not ejected atomic electrons—the electron is created in the nucleus at the instant of decay.

Since γ s remain unaffected by electric and magnetic fields, it is natural to think they might be photons. Evidence for this grew, but it was not until 1914 that this was proved by Rutherford and collaborators. By scattering γ radiation from a crystal and observing interference, they demonstrated that γ *radiation is the emission of a high-energy photon by a nucleus*. In fact, γ radiation comes from the de-excitation of a nucleus, just as an x ray comes from the de-excitation of an atom. The names "γ ray" and "x ray" identify the source of the radiation. At the same energy, γ rays and x rays are otherwise identical.

Type of Radiation	**Range**
α -Particles	A sheet of paper, a few cm of air, fractions of a mm of tissue

Type of Radiation	Range
β -Particles	A thin aluminum plate, or tens of cm of tissue
γ Rays	Several cm of lead or meters of concrete

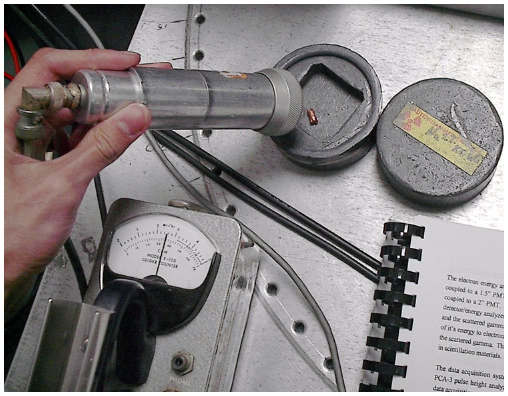
Properties of Nuclear Radiation

Ionization and Range

Two of the most important characteristics of α, β, and γ rays were recognized very early. All three types of nuclear radiation produce *ionization* in materials, but they penetrate different distances in materials—that is, they have different *ranges*. Let us examine why they have these characteristics and what are some of the consequences.

Like x rays, nuclear radiation in the form of α s, β s, and γ s has enough energy per event to ionize atoms and molecules in any material. The energy emitted in various nuclear decays ranges from a few keV to more than 10 MeV, while only a few eV are needed to produce ionization. The effects of x rays and nuclear radiation on biological tissues and other materials, such as solid state electronics, are directly related to the ionization they produce. All of them, for example, can damage electronics or kill cancer cells. In addition, methods for detecting x rays and nuclear radiation are based on ionization, directly or indirectly. All of them can ionize the air between the plates of a capacitor, for example, causing it to discharge. This is the basis of inexpensive personal radiation monitors, such as pictured in [link]. Apart from α, β, and γ, there are other forms of nuclear radiation as well, and these also produce ionization with similar effects. We define **ionizing radiation** as any form of radiation that produces ionization

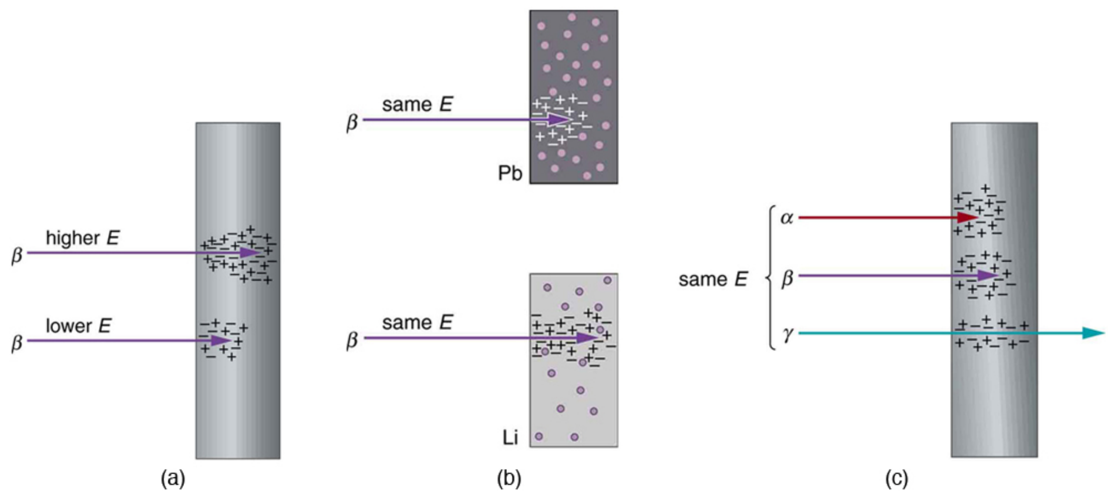
whether nuclear in origin or not, since the effects and detection of the radiation are related to ionization.



These dosimeters (literally, dose meters) are personal radiation monitors that detect the amount of radiation by the discharge of a rechargeable internal capacitor. The amount of discharge is related to the amount of ionizing radiation encountered, a measurement of dose. One dosimeter is shown in the charger. Its scale is read through an eyepiece on the top. (credit: L. Chang, Wikimedia Commons)

The **range of radiation** is defined to be the distance it can travel through a material. Range is related to several factors, including the energy of the

radiation, the material encountered, and the type of radiation (see [link]). The higher the *energy*, the greater the range, all other factors being the same. This makes good sense, since radiation loses its energy in materials primarily by producing ionization in them, and each ionization of an atom or a molecule requires energy that is removed from the radiation. The amount of ionization is, thus, directly proportional to the energy of the particle of radiation, as is its range.



The penetration or range of radiation depends on its energy, the material it encounters, and the type of radiation. (a) Greater energy means greater range. (b) Radiation has a smaller range in materials with high electron density. (c) Alphas have the smallest range, betas have a greater range, and gammas penetrate the farthest.

Radiation can be absorbed or shielded by materials, such as the lead aprons dentists drape on us when taking x rays. Lead is a particularly effective shield compared with other materials, such as plastic or air. How does the range of radiation depend on *material*? Ionizing radiation interacts best with charged particles in a material. Since electrons have small masses, they most readily absorb the energy of the radiation in collisions. The greater the

density of a material and, in particular, the greater the density of electrons within a material, the smaller the range of radiation.

Note:
Collisions
Conservation of energy and momentum often results in energy transfer to a less massive object in a collision. This was discussed in detail in Work, Energy, and Energy Resources, for example.

Different *types* of radiation have different ranges when compared at the same energy and in the same material. Alphas have the shortest range, betas penetrate farther, and gammas have the greatest range. This is directly related to charge and speed of the particle or type of radiation. At a given energy, each α, β, or γ will produce the same number of ionizations in a material (each ionization requires a certain amount of energy on average). The more readily the particle produces ionization, the more quickly it will lose its energy. The effect of *charge* is as follows: The α has a charge of $+2q_e$, the β has a charge of $-q_e$, and the γ is uncharged. The electromagnetic force exerted by the α is thus twice as strong as that exerted by the β and it is more likely to produce ionization. Although chargeless, the γ does interact weakly because it is an electromagnetic wave, but it is less likely to produce ionization in any encounter. More quantitatively, the change in momentum Δp given to a particle in the material is $\Delta p = F\Delta t$, where F is the force the α, β, or γ exerts over a time Δt. The smaller the charge, the smaller is F and the smaller is the momentum (and energy) lost. Since the speed of alphas is about 5% to 10% of the speed of light, classical (non-relativistic) formulas apply.

The *speed* at which they travel is the other major factor affecting the range of α s, β s, and γ s. The faster they move, the less time they spend in the vicinity of an atom or a molecule, and the less likely they are to interact. Since α s and β s are particles with mass (helium nuclei and electrons, respectively), their energy is kinetic, given classically by $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. The mass

of the β particle is thousands of times less than that of the α s, so that β s must travel much faster than α s to have the same energy. Since β s move faster (most at relativistic speeds), they have less time to interact than α s. Gamma rays are photons, which must travel at the speed of light. They are even less likely to interact than a β, since they spend even less time near a given atom (and they have no charge). The range of γ s is thus greater than the range of β s.

Alpha radiation from radioactive sources has a range much less than a millimeter of biological tissues, usually not enough to even penetrate the dead layers of our skin. On the other hand, the same α radiation can penetrate a few centimeters of air, so mere distance from a source prevents α radiation from reaching us. This makes α radiation relatively safe for our body compared to β and γ radiation. Typical β radiation can penetrate a few millimeters of tissue or about a meter of air. Beta radiation is thus hazardous even when not ingested. The range of β s in lead is about a millimeter, and so it is easy to store β sources in lead radiation-proof containers. Gamma rays have a much greater range than either αs or βs. In fact, if a given thickness of material, like a lead brick, absorbs 90% of the γ s, then a second lead brick will only absorb 90% of what got through the first. Thus, γs do not have a well-defined range; we can only cut down the amount that gets through. Typically, γs can penetrate many meters of air, go right through our bodies, and are effectively shielded (that is, reduced in intensity to acceptable levels) by many centimeters of lead. One benefit of γ s is that they can be used as radioactive tracers (see [link]).

This image of the concentration of a radioactive tracer in a patient's body reveals where the most active bone cells are, an indication of bone cancer. A short-lived radioactive substance that locates itself selectively is given to the patient, and the radiation is measured with an external detector. The emitted γ radiation has a sufficient range to leave the body—the range of α s and β s is too small for them to be observed outside the patient. (credit: Kieran Maher, Wikimedia Commons)

Note:
PhET Explorations: Beta Decay
Build an atom out of protons, neutrons, and electrons, and see how the element, charge, and mass change. Then play a game to test your ideas!

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/f0a27b96-f5c8-11e5-a22c-73f8c149bebf/beta-decay/#sim-multiple-atoms

Section Summary

- Some nuclei are radioactive—they spontaneously decay destroying some part of their mass and emitting energetic rays, a process called nuclear radioactivity.
- Nuclear radiation, like x rays, is ionizing radiation, because energy sufficient to ionize matter is emitted in each decay.
- The range (or distance traveled in a material) of ionizing radiation is directly related to the charge of the emitted particle and its energy, with greater-charge and lower-energy particles having the shortest ranges.
- Radiation detectors are based directly or indirectly upon the ionization created by radiation, as are the effects of radiation on living and inert materials.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the range for $5.0\ \text{MeV}\alpha$ ray is known to be 2.0 mm in a certain material. Does this mean that every $5.0\ \text{MeV}\alpha$ a ray that strikes this material travels 2.0 mm, or does the range have an average value with some statistical fluctuations in the distances traveled? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the difference between γ rays and characteristic x rays? Is either necessarily more energetic than the other? Which can be the most energetic?

Exercise:

Problem:

Ionizing radiation interacts with matter by scattering from electrons and nuclei in the substance. Based on the law of conservation of momentum and energy, explain why electrons tend to absorb more energy than nuclei in these interactions.

Exercise:

Problem:

What characteristics of radioactivity show it to be nuclear in origin and not atomic?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the source of the energy emitted in radioactive decay? Identify an earlier conservation law, and describe how it was modified to take such processes into account.

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider [link]. If an electric field is substituted for the magnetic field with positive charge instead of the north pole and negative charge instead of the south pole, in which directions will the α, β , and γ rays bend?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how an α particle can have a larger range in air than a β particle with the same energy in lead.

Exercise:

Problem:

Arrange the following according to their ability to act as radiation shields, with the best first and worst last. Explain your ordering in terms of how radiation loses its energy in matter.

(a) A solid material with low density composed of low-mass atoms.

(b) A gas composed of high-mass atoms.

(c) A gas composed of low-mass atoms.

(d) A solid with high density composed of high-mass atoms.

Exercise:

Problem:

Often, when people have to work around radioactive materials spills, we see them wearing white coveralls (usually a plastic material). What types of radiation (if any) do you think these suits protect the worker from, and how?

Glossary

alpha rays
: one of the types of rays emitted from the nucleus of an atom

beta rays
: one of the types of rays emitted from the nucleus of an atom

gamma rays

one of the types of rays emitted from the nucleus of an atom

ionizing radiation
radiation (whether nuclear in origin or not) that produces ionization whether nuclear in origin or not

nuclear radiation
rays that originate in the nuclei of atoms, the first examples of which were discovered by Becquerel

radioactivity
the emission of rays from the nuclei of atoms

radioactive
a substance or object that emits nuclear radiation

range of radiation
the distance that the radiation can travel through a material

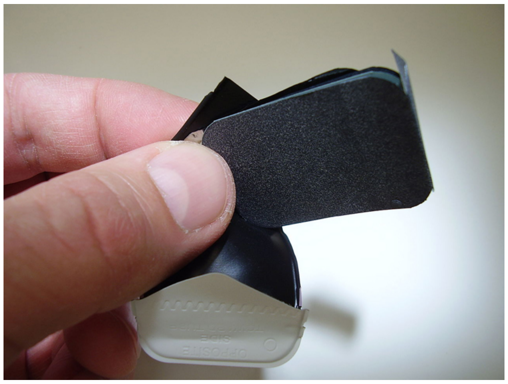
Radiation Detection and Detectors

- Explain the working principle of a Geiger tube.
- Define and discuss radiation detectors.

It is well known that ionizing radiation affects us but does not trigger nerve impulses. Newspapers carry stories about unsuspecting victims of radiation poisoning who fall ill with radiation sickness, such as burns and blood count changes, but who never felt the radiation directly. This makes the detection of radiation by instruments more than an important research tool. This section is a brief overview of radiation detection and some of its applications.

Human Application

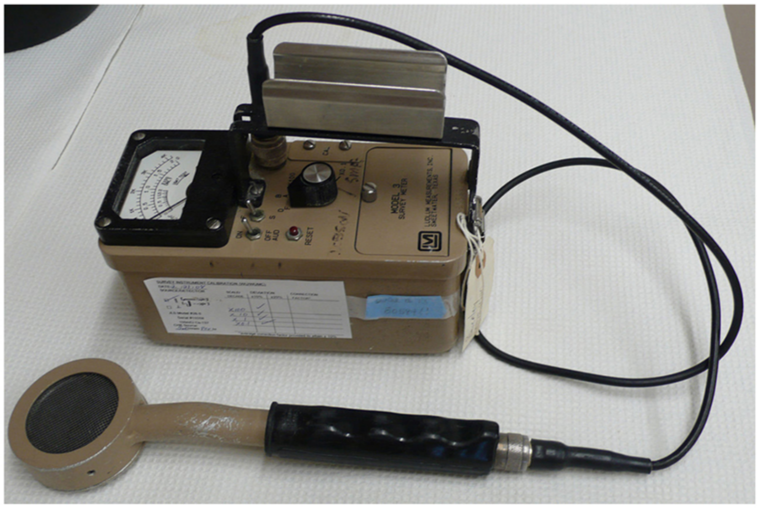
The first direct detection of radiation was Becquerel's fogged photographic plate. Photographic film is still the most common detector of ionizing radiation, being used routinely in medical and dental x rays. Nuclear radiation is also captured on film, such as seen in [link]. The mechanism for film exposure by ionizing radiation is similar to that by photons. A quantum of energy interacts with the emulsion and alters it chemically, thus exposing the film. The quantum come from an α-particle, β-particle, or photon, provided it has more than the few eV of energy needed to induce the chemical change (as does all ionizing radiation). The process is not 100% efficient, since not all incident radiation interacts and not all interactions produce the chemical change. The amount of film darkening is related to exposure, but the darkening also depends on the type of radiation, so that absorbers and other devices must be used to obtain energy, charge, and particle-identification information.



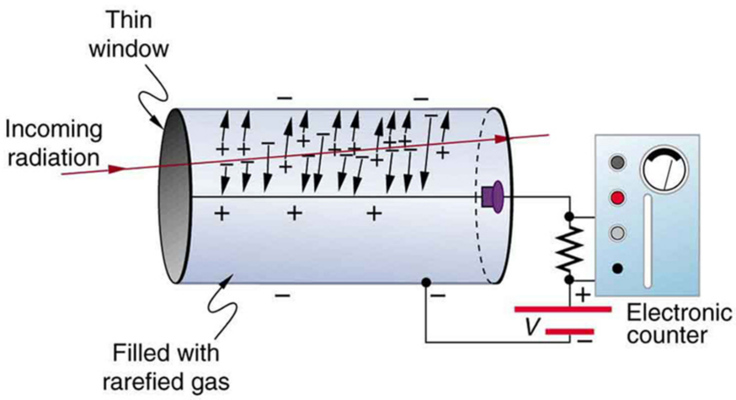
Film badges contain film similar to that used in this dental x-ray film and is sandwiched between various absorbers to determine the penetrating ability of the radiation as well as the amount. (credit: Werneuchen, Wikimedia Commons)

Another very common **radiation detector** is the **Geiger tube**. The clicking and buzzing sound we hear in dramatizations and documentaries, as well as in our own physics labs, is usually an audio output of events detected by a Geiger counter. These relatively inexpensive radiation detectors are based on the simple and sturdy Geiger tube, shown schematically in [link](b). A conducting cylinder with a wire along its axis is filled with an insulating gas so that a voltage applied between the cylinder and wire produces almost no current. Ionizing radiation passing through the tube produces free ion pairs that are attracted to the wire and cylinder, forming a current that is detected as a count. The word count implies that there is no information on energy, charge, or type of radiation with a simple Geiger counter. They do not detect every particle, since some radiation can pass through without producing enough ionization to be detected. However, Geiger counters are very useful in producing a prompt output that reveals the existence and relative intensity of ionizing radiation.

(a)



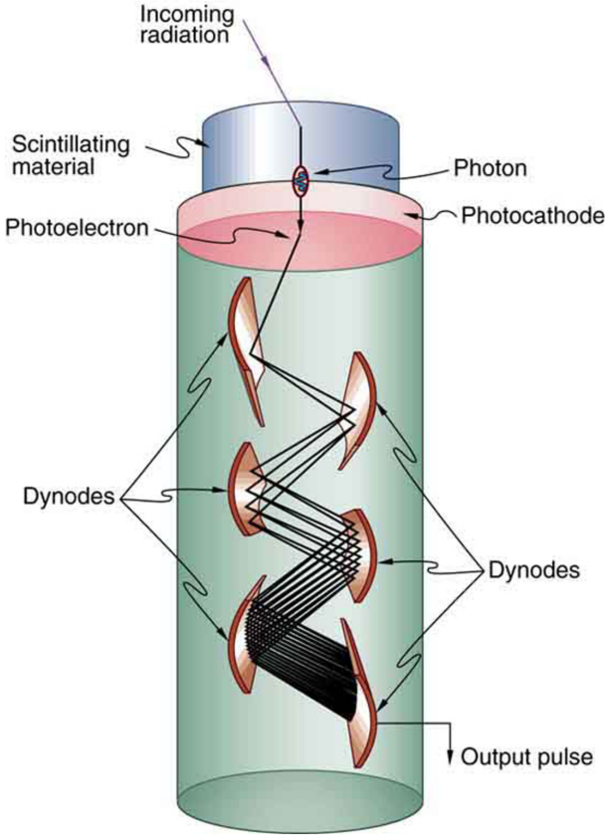
(b)



(a) Geiger counters such as this one are used for prompt monitoring of radiation levels, generally giving only relative intensity and not identifying the type or energy of the radiation. (credit: TimVickers, Wikimedia Commons) (b) Voltage applied between the cylinder and wire in a Geiger tube causes ions and electrons produced by radiation passing through the gas-filled cylinder to move towards them. The resulting current is detected and registered as a count.

Another radiation detection method records light produced when radiation interacts with materials. The energy of the radiation is sufficient to excite atoms in a material that may fluoresce, such as the phosphor used by Rutherford’s group. Materials called **scintillators** use a more complex collaborative process to convert radiation energy into light. Scintillators may be liquid or solid, and they can be very efficient. Their light output can provide information about the energy, charge, and type of radiation. Scintillator light flashes are very brief in duration, enabling the detection of a huge number of particles in short periods of time. Scintillator detectors are used in a variety of research and diagnostic applications. Among these are the detection by satellite-mounted equipment of the radiation from distant galaxies, the analysis of radiation from a person indicating body burdens, and the detection of exotic particles in accelerator laboratories.

Light from a scintillator is converted into electrical signals by devices such as the **photomultiplier** tube shown schematically in [link]. These tubes are based on the photoelectric effect, which is multiplied in stages into a cascade of electrons, hence the name photomultiplier. Light entering the photomultiplier strikes a metal plate, ejecting an electron that is attracted by a positive potential difference to the next plate, giving it enough energy to eject two or more electrons, and so on. The final output current can be made proportional to the energy of the light entering the tube, which is in turn proportional to the energy deposited in the scintillator. Very sophisticated information can be obtained with scintillators, including energy, charge, particle identification, direction of motion, and so on.



Photomultipliers use the photoelectric effect on the photocathode to convert the light output of a scintillator into an electrical signal. Each successive dynode has a more-positive potential than the last and attracts the ejected electrons, giving them more energy. The number of electrons is thus multiplied at each dynode, resulting in an easily detected output current.

Solid-state radiation detectors convert ionization produced in a semiconductor (like those found in computer chips) directly into an

electrical signal. Semiconductors can be constructed that do not conduct current in one particular direction. When a voltage is applied in that direction, current flows only when ionization is produced by radiation, similar to what happens in a Geiger tube. Further, the amount of current in a solid-state detector is closely related to the energy deposited and, since the detector is solid, it can have a high efficiency (since ionizing radiation is stopped in a shorter distance in solids fewer particles escape detection). As with scintillators, very sophisticated information can be obtained from solid-state detectors.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Radioactive Dating Game
Learn about different types of radiometric dating, such as carbon dating. Understand how decay and half life work to enable radiometric dating to work. Play a game that tests your ability to match the percentage of the dating element that remains to the age of the object.

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/d709a8b0-068c-11e6-bcfb-f38266817c66/radioactive-dating-game/#sim-half-life

Section Summary

- Radiation detectors are based directly or indirectly upon the ionization created by radiation, as are the effects of radiation on living and inert materials.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Is it possible for light emitted by a scintillator to be too low in frequency to be used in a photomultiplier tube? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The energy of 30.0 eV is required to ionize a molecule of the gas inside a Geiger tube, thereby producing an ion pair. Suppose a particle of ionizing radiation deposits 0.500 MeV of energy in this Geiger tube. What maximum number of ion pairs can it create?

Solution:

1.67×10^4

Exercise:

Problem:

A particle of ionizing radiation creates 4000 ion pairs in the gas inside a Geiger tube as it passes through. What minimum energy was deposited, if 30.0 eV is required to create each ion pair?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Repeat [link], and convert the energy to joules or calories. (b) If all of this energy is converted to thermal energy in the gas, what is its temperature increase, assuming $50.0\ \text{cm}^3$ of ideal gas at 0.250-atm pressure? (The small answer is consistent with the fact that the energy is large on a quantum mechanical scale but small on a macroscopic scale.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a particle of ionizing radiation deposits 1.0 MeV in the gas of a Geiger tube, all of which goes to creating ion pairs. Each ion pair requires 30.0 eV of energy. (a) The applied voltage sweeps the ions out of the gas in 1.00 μs. What is the current? (b) This current is smaller than the actual current since the applied voltage in the Geiger tube accelerates the separated ions, which then create other ion pairs in subsequent collisions. What is the current if this last effect multiplies the number of ion pairs by 900?

Glossary

Geiger tube
: a very common radiation detector that usually gives an audio output

photomultiplier
: a device that converts light into electrical signals

radiation detector
: a device that is used to detect and track the radiation from a radioactive reaction

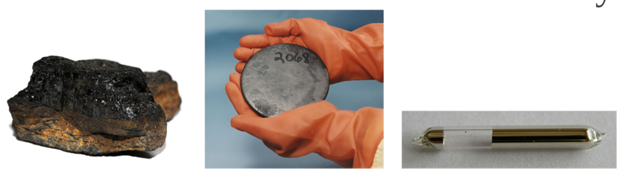
scintillators
: a radiation detection method that records light produced when radiation interacts with materials

solid-state radiation detectors
: semiconductors fabricated to directly convert incident radiation into electrical current

Substructure of the Nucleus

- Define and discuss the nucleus in an atom.
- Define atomic number.
- Define and discuss isotopes.
- Calculate the density of the nucleus.
- Explain nuclear force.

What is inside the nucleus? Why are some nuclei stable while others decay? (See [link].) Why are there different types of decay (α, β and γ)? Why are nuclear decay energies so large? Pursuing natural questions like these has led to far more fundamental discoveries than you might imagine.



(a) (b) (c)

Why is most of the carbon in this coal stable (a), while the uranium in the disk (b) slowly decays over billions of years? Why is cesium in this ampule (c) even less stable than the uranium, decaying in far less than 1/1,000,000 the time? What is the reason uranium and cesium undergo different types of decay (α and β, respectively)? (credits: (a) Bresson Thomas, Wikimedia Commons; (b) U.S. Department of Energy; (c) Tomihahndorf, Wikimedia Commons)

We have already identified **protons** as the particles that carry positive charge in the nuclei. However, there are actually *two* types of particles in the nuclei—the *proton* and the *neutron*, referred to collectively as **nucleons**, the constituents of nuclei. As its name implies, the **neutron** is a neutral particle ($q = 0$) that has

nearly the same mass and intrinsic spin as the proton. [link] compares the masses of protons, neutrons, and electrons. Note how close the proton and neutron masses are, but the neutron is slightly more massive once you look past the third digit. Both nucleons are much more massive than an electron. In fact, $m_p = 1836 m_e$ (as noted in Medical Applications of Nuclear Physics and $m_n = 1839 m_e$.

[link] also gives masses in terms of mass units that are more convenient than kilograms on the atomic and nuclear scale. The first of these is the *unified **atomic mass** unit* (u), defined as
Equation:

$$1\text{ u} = 1.6605 \times 10^{-27}\text{ kg}.$$

This unit is defined so that a neutral carbon ^{12}C atom has a mass of exactly 12 u. Masses are also expressed in units of MeV/c^2. These units are very convenient when considering the conversion of mass into energy (and vice versa), as is so prominent in nuclear processes. Using $E = mc^2$ and units of m in MeV/c^2, we find that c^2 cancels and E comes out conveniently in MeV. For example, if the rest mass of a proton is converted entirely into energy, then
Equation:

$$E = mc^2 = (938.27\text{ MeV}/c^2)c^2 = 938.27\text{ MeV}.$$

It is useful to note that 1 u of mass converted to energy produces 931.5 MeV, or
Equation:

$$1\text{ u} = 931.5\text{ MeV}/c^2.$$

All properties of a nucleus are determined by the number of protons and neutrons it has. A specific combination of protons and neutrons is called a **nuclide** and is a unique nucleus. The following notation is used to represent a particular nuclide:
Equation:

$$^{A}_{Z}\text{X}_N,$$

where the symbols A, X, Z , and N are defined as follows: The *number of protons in a nucleus* is the **atomic number** Z, as defined in Medical Applications of Nuclear Physics. X is the *symbol for the element*, such as Ca for calcium. However, once Z is known, the element is known; hence, Z and X are redundant. For example, $Z = 20$ is always calcium, and calcium always has $Z = 20$. N is the *number of neutrons* in a nucleus. In the notation for a nuclide, the subscript N is usually omitted. The symbol A is defined as the number of nucleons or the *total number of protons and neutrons*,

Equation:

$$A = N + Z,$$

where A is also called the **mass number**. This name for A is logical; the mass of an atom is nearly equal to the mass of its nucleus, since electrons have so little mass. The mass of the nucleus turns out to be nearly equal to the sum of the masses of the protons and neutrons in it, which is proportional to A. In this context, it is particularly convenient to express masses in units of u. Both protons and neutrons have masses close to 1 u, and so the mass of an atom is close to A u. For example, in an oxygen nucleus with eight protons and eight neutrons, $A = 16$, and its mass is 16 u. As noticed, the unified atomic mass unit is defined so that a neutral carbon atom (actually a $^{12}\mathrm{C}$ atom) has a mass of *exactly* 12 u. Carbon was chosen as the standard, partly because of its importance in organic chemistry (see Appendix A).

Particle	**Symbol**	**kg**	**u**	**MeV*c*²**
Proton	*p*	1.67262×10^{-27}	1.007276	938.27
Neutron	*n*	1.67493×10^{-27}	1.008665	939.57

Particle	Symbol	kg	u	MeVc^2
Electron	*e*	9.1094×10^{-31}	0.00054858	0.511

Masses of the Proton, Neutron, and Electron

Let us look at a few examples of nuclides expressed in the ${}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N}$ notation. The nucleus of the simplest atom, hydrogen, is a single proton, or ${}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$ (the zero for no neutrons is often omitted). To check this symbol, refer to the periodic table—you see that the atomic number Z of hydrogen is 1. Since you are given that there are no neutrons, the mass number A is also 1. Suppose you are told that the helium nucleus or α particle has two protons and two neutrons. You can then see that it is written ${}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}_{2}$. There is a scarce form of hydrogen found in nature called deuterium; its nucleus has one proton and one neutron and, hence, twice the mass of common hydrogen. The symbol for deuterium is, thus, ${}^{2}_{1}\mathrm{H}_{1}$ (sometimes D is used, as for deuterated water $\mathrm{D_2O}$). An even rarer—and radioactive—form of hydrogen is called tritium, since it has a single proton and two neutrons, and it is written ${}^{3}_{1}\mathrm{H}_{2}$. These three varieties of hydrogen have nearly identical chemistries, but the nuclei differ greatly in mass, stability, and other characteristics. Nuclei (such as those of hydrogen) having the same Z and different N s are defined to be **isotopes** of the same element.

There is some redundancy in the symbols A, X, Z, and N . If the element X is known, then Z can be found in a periodic table and is always the same for a given element. If both A and X are known, then N can also be determined (first find Z; then, $N = A - Z$). Thus the simpler notation for nuclides is
Equation:

$$^{A}\mathrm{X},$$

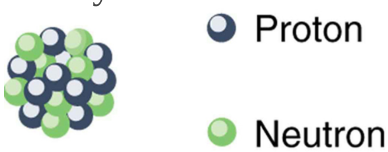
which is sufficient and is most commonly used. For example, in this simpler notation, the three isotopes of hydrogen are $^{1}\mathrm{H}$, $^{2}\mathrm{H}$, and $^{3}\mathrm{H}$, while the α particle is $^{4}\mathrm{He}$. We read this backward, saying helium-4 for $^{4}\mathrm{He}$, or uranium-238 for $^{238}\mathrm{U}$. So for $^{238}\mathrm{U}$, should we need to know, we can determine that $Z = 92$ for uranium from the periodic table, and, thus, $N = 238 - 92 = 146$.

A variety of experiments indicate that a nucleus behaves something like a tightly packed ball of nucleons, as illustrated in [link]. These nucleons have large kinetic energies and, thus, move rapidly in very close contact. Nucleons can be separated by a large force, such as in a collision with another nucleus, but resist strongly being pushed closer together. The most compelling evidence that nucleons are closely packed in a nucleus is that the **radius of a nucleus**, r, is found to be given approximately by

Equation:

$$r = r_0 A^{1/3},$$

where $r_0 = 1.2\ \text{fm}$ and A is the mass number of the nucleus. Note that $r^3 \propto A$. Since many nuclei are spherical, and the volume of a sphere is $V = (4/3)\pi r^3$, we see that $V \propto A$ —that is, the volume of a nucleus is proportional to the number of nucleons in it. This is what would happen if you pack nucleons so closely that there is no empty space between them.



A model of the nucleus.

Nucleons are held together by nuclear forces and resist both being pulled apart and pushed inside one another. The volume of the nucleus is the sum of the volumes of the nucleons in it, here shown in different colors to represent protons and neutrons.

Example:
How Small and Dense Is a Nucleus?

(a) Find the radius of an iron-56 nucleus. (b) Find its approximate density in kg/m^3, approximating the mass of ^{56}Fe to be 56 u.

Strategy and Concept

(a) Finding the radius of ^{56}Fe is a straightforward application of $r = r_0 A^{1/3}$, given $A = 56$. (b) To find the approximate density, we assume the nucleus is spherical (this one actually is), calculate its volume using the radius found in part (a), and then find its density from $\rho = m/V$. Finally, we will need to convert density from units of u/fm^3 to kg/m^3.

Solution

(a) The radius of a nucleus is given by

Equation:

$$r = r_0 A^{1/3}.$$

Substituting the values for r_0 and A yields

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} r & = & (1.2 \text{ fm})(56)^{1/3} = (1.2 \text{ fm})(3.83) \\ & = & 4.6 \text{ fm}. \end{array}$$

(b) Density is defined to be $\rho = m/V$, which for a sphere of radius r is

Equation:

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{m}{(4/3)\pi r^3}.$$

Substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \rho & = & \frac{56 \text{ u}}{(1.33)(3.14)(4.6 \text{ fm})^3} \\ & = & 0.138 \text{ u/fm}^3. \end{array}$$

Converting to units of kg/m^3, we find

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \rho & = & (0.138 \text{ u/fm}^3)(1.66 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg/u})\left(\frac{1 \text{ fm}}{10^{-15} \text{ m}}\right) \\ & = & 2.3 \times 10^{17} \text{ kg/m}^3. \end{array}$$

Discussion

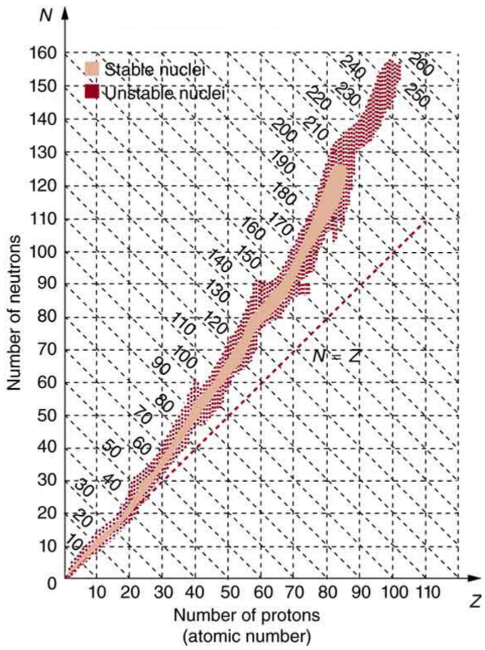
(a) The radius of this medium-sized nucleus is found to be approximately 4.6 fm, and so its diameter is about 10 fm, or 10^{-14} m. In our discussion of Rutherford's discovery of the nucleus, we noticed that it is about 10^{-15} m in diameter (which is for lighter nuclei), consistent with this result to an order of magnitude. The nucleus is much smaller in diameter than the typical atom, which has a diameter of the order of 10^{-10} m.
(b) The density found here is so large as to cause disbelief. It is consistent with earlier discussions we have had about the nucleus being very small and containing nearly all of the mass of the atom. Nuclear densities, such as found here, are about 2×10^{14} times greater than that of water, which has a density of "only" 10^3 kg/m^3. One cubic meter of nuclear matter, such as found in a neutron star, has the same mass as a cube of water 61 km on a side.

Nuclear Forces and Stability

What forces hold a nucleus together? The nucleus is very small and its protons, being positive, exert tremendous repulsive forces on one another. (The Coulomb force increases as charges get closer, since it is proportional to $1/r^2$, even at the tiny distances found in nuclei.) The answer is that two previously unknown forces hold the nucleus together and make it into a tightly packed ball of nucleons. These forces are called the *weak and strong nuclear forces*. Nuclear forces are so short ranged that they fall to zero strength when nucleons are separated by only a few fm. However, like glue, they are strongly attracted when the nucleons get close to one another. The strong nuclear force is about 100 times more attractive than the repulsive EM force, easily holding the nucleons together. Nuclear forces become extremely repulsive if the nucleons get too close, making nucleons strongly resist being pushed inside one another, something like ball bearings.

The fact that nuclear forces are very strong is responsible for the very large energies emitted in nuclear decay. During decay, the forces do work, and since work is force times the distance ($W = Fd \cos \theta$), a large force can result in a large emitted energy. In fact, we know that there are *two* distinct nuclear forces because of the different types of nuclear decay—the strong nuclear force is responsible for α decay, while the weak nuclear force is responsible for β decay.

The many stable and unstable nuclei we have explored, and the hundreds we have not discussed, can be arranged in a table called the **chart of the nuclides**, a simplified version of which is shown in [link]. Nuclides are located on a plot of N versus Z. Examination of a detailed chart of the nuclides reveals patterns in the characteristics of nuclei, such as stability, abundance, and types of decay, analogous to but more complex than the systematics in the periodic table of the elements.



Simplified chart of the nuclides, a graph of N versus Z for known nuclides. The patterns of stable and unstable nuclides reveal characteristics of the nuclear forces. The dashed line is for $N = Z$. Numbers along diagonals are mass numbers A.

In principle, a nucleus can have any combination of protons and neutrons, but [link] shows a definite pattern for those that are stable. For low-mass nuclei, there is a strong tendency for N and Z to be nearly equal. This means that the nuclear force is more attractive when $N = Z$. More detailed examination reveals greater stability when N and Z are even numbers—nuclear forces are more attractive when neutrons and protons are in pairs. For increasingly higher masses, there are progressively more neutrons than protons in stable nuclei. This is due to the ever-growing repulsion between protons. Since nuclear forces are short ranged, and the Coulomb force is long ranged, an excess of neutrons keeps the protons a little farther apart, reducing Coulomb repulsion. Decay modes of nuclides out of the region of stability consistently produce nuclides closer to the region of stability. There are more stable nuclei having certain numbers of protons and neutrons, called **magic numbers**. Magic numbers indicate a shell structure for the nucleus in which closed shells are more stable. Nuclear shell theory has been very successful in explaining nuclear energy levels, nuclear decay, and the greater stability of nuclei with closed shells. We have been producing ever-heavier transuranic elements since the early 1940s, and we have now produced the element with $Z = 118$. There are theoretical predictions of an island of relative stability for nuclei with such high Z s.

The German-born American physicist Maria Goeppert Mayer (1906–1972)

shared the 1963 Nobel Prize in physics with J. Jensen for the creation of the nuclear shell model. This successful nuclear model has nucleons filling shells analogous to electron shells in atoms. It was inspired by patterns observed in nuclear properties. (credit: Nobel Foundation via Wikimedia Commons)

Section Summary

- Two particles, both called nucleons, are found inside nuclei. The two types of nucleons are protons and neutrons; they are very similar, except that the proton is positively charged while the neutron is neutral. Some of their characteristics are given in [link] and compared with those of the electron. A mass unit convenient to atomic and nuclear processes is the unified atomic mass unit (u), defined to be
  Equation:

  $$1\ \text{u} = 1.6605 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg} = 931.46\ \text{MeV}/c^2.$$

- A nuclide is a specific combination of protons and neutrons, denoted by
  Equation:

$$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N} \text{ or simply} {}^{A}\mathrm{X}, $$

Z is the number of protons or atomic number, X is the symbol for the element, N is the number of neutrons, and A is the mass number or the total number of protons and neutrons,
Equation:

$$ A = N + Z. $$

- Nuclides having the same Z but different N are isotopes of the same element.
- The radius of a nucleus, r, is approximately
  Equation:

$$ r = r_0 A^{1/3}, $$

where $r_0 = 1.2\text{ fm}$. Nuclear volumes are proportional to A. There are two nuclear forces, the weak and the strong. Systematics in nuclear stability seen on the chart of the nuclides indicate that there are shell closures in nuclei for values of Z and N equal to the magic numbers, which correspond to highly stable nuclei.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

The weak and strong nuclear forces are basic to the structure of matter. Why we do not experience them directly?

Exercise:

Problem:

Define and make clear distinctions between the terms neutron, nucleon, nucleus, nuclide, and neutrino.

Exercise:

Problem:

What are isotopes? Why do different isotopes of the same element have similar chemistries?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that a 2.3×10^{17} kg mass of water at normal density would make a cube 60 km on a side, as claimed in [link]. (This mass at nuclear density would make a cube 1.0 m on a side.)

Solution:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} m = \rho V = \rho d^3 \quad \Rightarrow \quad a &= \left(\frac{m}{\rho}\right)^{1/3} = \left(\frac{2.3\times10^{17}\text{ kg}}{1000\text{ kg/m}^3}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \\ &= 61 \times 10^3\text{ m} = 61\text{ km} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the length of a side of a cube having a mass of 1.0 kg and the density of nuclear matter, taking this to be $2.3\times10^{17}\text{ kg/m}^3$.

Exercise:

Problem: What is the radius of an α particle?

Solution:

1.9 fm

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the radius of a ^{238}Pu nucleus. ^{238}Pu is a manufactured nuclide that is used as a power source on some space probes.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the radius of ^{58}Ni, one of the most tightly bound stable nuclei.

(b) What is the ratio of the radius of ^{58}Ni to that of ^{258}Ha, one of the largest nuclei ever made? Note that the radius of the largest nucleus is still much smaller than the size of an atom.

Solution:

(a) 4.6 fm

(b) $0.61\text{ to }1$

Exercise:

Problem:

The unified atomic mass unit is defined to be $1\text{ u}=1.6605\times10^{-27}\text{ kg}$. Verify that this amount of mass converted to energy yields 931.5 MeV. Note that you must use four-digit or better values for c and $\mid q_e\mid$.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the ratio of the velocity of a β particle to that of an α particle, if they have the same nonrelativistic kinetic energy?

Solution:

$85.4\text{ to }1$

Exercise:

Problem:

If a 1.50-cm-thick piece of lead can absorb 90.0% of the γ rays from a radioactive source, how many centimeters of lead are needed to absorb all but 0.100% of the γ rays?

Exercise:

Problem:

The detail observable using a probe is limited by its wavelength. Calculate the energy of a γ-ray photon that has a wavelength of $1 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{m}$, small enough to detect details about one-tenth the size of a nucleon. Note that a photon having this energy is difficult to produce and interacts poorly with the nucleus, limiting the practicability of this probe.

Solution:

$12.4\ \text{GeV}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Show that if you assume the average nucleus is spherical with a radius $r = r_0 A^{1/3}$, and with a mass of A u, then its density is independent of A.

(b) Calculate that density in u/fm^3 and kg/m^3, and compare your results with those found in [link] for ^{56}Fe.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the ratio of the velocity of a 5.00-MeV β ray to that of an α particle with the same kinetic energy? This should confirm that βs travel much faster than αs even when relativity is taken into consideration. (See also [link].)

Solution:

19.3 to 1

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the kinetic energy in MeV of a β ray that is traveling at $0.998c$? This gives some idea of how energetic a β ray must be to travel at nearly the same speed as a γ ray. (b) What is the velocity of the γ ray relative to the β ray?

Glossary

atomic mass
: the total mass of the protons, neutrons, and electrons in a single atom

atomic number
: number of protons in a nucleus

chart of the nuclides
: a table comprising stable and unstable nuclei

isotopes
: nuclei having the same Z and different Ns

magic numbers
: a number that indicates a shell structure for the nucleus in which closed shells are more stable

mass number
: number of nucleons in a nucleus

neutron
: a neutral particle that is found in a nucleus

nucleons
: the particles found inside nuclei

nucleus
: a region consisting of protons and neutrons at the center of an atom

nuclide

a type of atom whose nucleus has specific numbers of protons and neutrons

protons
: the positively charged nucleons found in a nucleus

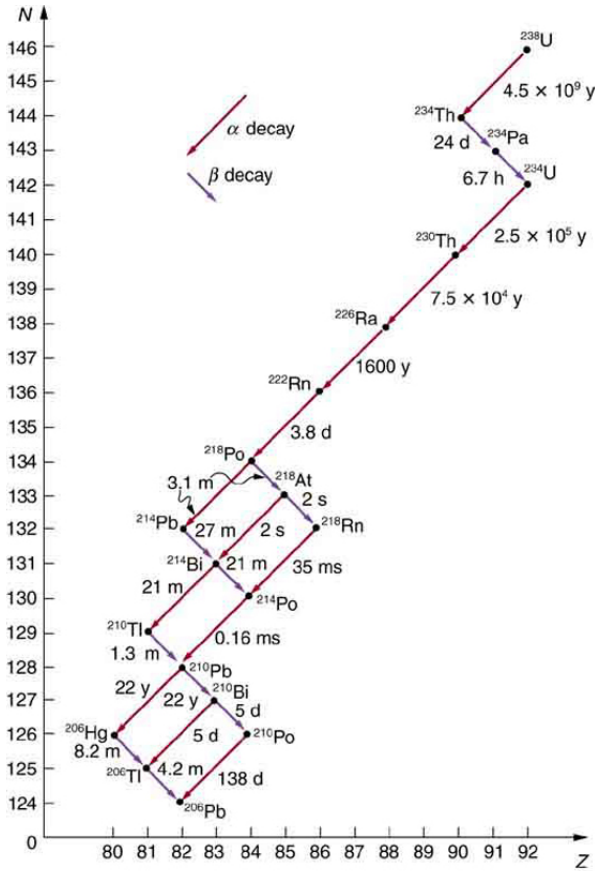
radius of a nucleus
: the radius of a nucleus is $r = r_0 A^{1/3}$

Nuclear Decay and Conservation Laws

- Define and discuss nuclear decay.
- State the conservation laws.
- Explain parent and daughter nucleus.
- Calculate the energy emitted during nuclear decay.

Nuclear **decay** has provided an amazing window into the realm of the very small. Nuclear decay gave the first indication of the connection between mass and energy, and it revealed the existence of two of the four basic forces in nature. In this section, we explore the major modes of nuclear decay; and, like those who first explored them, we will discover evidence of previously unknown particles and conservation laws.

Some nuclides are stable, apparently living forever. Unstable nuclides decay (that is, they are radioactive), eventually producing a stable nuclide after many decays. We call the original nuclide the **parent** and its decay products the **daughters**. Some radioactive nuclides decay in a single step to a stable nucleus. For example, ^{60}Co is unstable and decays directly to ^{60}Ni, which is stable. Others, such as ^{238}U, decay to another unstable nuclide, resulting in a **decay series** in which each subsequent nuclide decays until a stable nuclide is finally produced. The decay series that starts from ^{238}U is of particular interest, since it produces the radioactive isotopes ^{226}Ra and ^{210}Po, which the Curies first discovered (see [link]). Radon gas is also produced (^{222}Rn in the series), an increasingly recognized naturally occurring hazard. Since radon is a noble gas, it emanates from materials, such as soil, containing even trace amounts of ^{238}U and can be inhaled. The decay of radon and its daughters produces internal damage. The ^{238}U decay series ends with ^{206}Pb, a stable isotope of lead.



The decay series produced by ^{238}U, the most common uranium isotope. Nuclides are graphed in the same manner as in the chart of nuclides. The type of decay for each member of the series is shown, as well as the half-lives. Note that some nuclides decay by more than one mode. You can see why radium and polonium are found in uranium ore. A stable isotope of lead is the end product of the series.

Note that the daughters of α decay shown in [link] always have two fewer protons and two fewer neutrons than the parent. This seems reasonable, since we know that α decay is the emission of a ^{4}He nucleus, which has two protons and two neutrons. The daughters of β decay have one less neutron and one more proton than their parent. Beta decay is a little more subtle, as we shall see. No γ decays are shown in the figure, because they do not produce a daughter that differs from the parent.

Alpha Decay

In **alpha decay**, a ^{4}He nucleus simply breaks away from the parent nucleus, leaving a daughter with two fewer protons and two fewer neutrons than the parent (see [link]). One example of α decay is shown in [link] for ^{238}U. Another nuclide that undergoes α decay is ^{239}Pu. The decay equations for these two nuclides are

Equation:

$$^{238}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{234}\text{Th}_{92}^{234} + {}^{4}\text{He}$$

and

Equation:

$$^{239}\text{Pu} \rightarrow {}^{235}\text{U} + {}^{4}\text{He}.$$

Alpha decay is the separation of a ^{4}He nucleus from the parent. The daughter nucleus has two fewer protons and two fewer neutrons than the parent. Alpha decay occurs spontaneously only if the daughter and ^{4}He nucleus have less total mass than the parent.

If you examine the periodic table of the elements, you will find that Th has $Z = 90$, two fewer than U, which has $Z = 92$. Similarly, in the second **decay equation**, we see that U has two fewer protons than Pu, which has $Z = 94$. The general rule for α decay is best written in the format $^{A}_{Z}\text{X}_{N}$. If a certain nuclide is known to α decay (generally this information must be looked up in a table of isotopes, such as in Appendix B), its α **decay equation** is

Equation:

$$^A_Z\text{X}_N \rightarrow {}^{A-4}_{Z-2}\text{Y}_{N-2} + {}^4_2\text{He}_2 \quad (\alpha \text{ decay})$$

where Y is the nuclide that has two fewer protons than X, such as Th having two fewer than U. So if you were told that ^{239}Pu α decays and were asked to write the complete decay equation, you would first look up which element has two fewer protons (an atomic number two lower) and find that this is uranium. Then since four nucleons have broken away from the original 239, its atomic mass would be 235.

It is instructive to examine conservation laws related to α decay. You can see from the equation $^A_Z\text{X}_N \rightarrow {}^{A-4}_{Z-2}\text{Y}_{N-2} + {}^4_2\text{He}_2$ that total charge is conserved. Linear and angular momentum are conserved, too. Although conserved angular momentum is not of great consequence in this type of decay, conservation of linear momentum has interesting consequences. If the nucleus is at rest when it decays, its momentum is zero. In that case, the fragments must fly in opposite directions with equal-magnitude momenta so that total momentum remains zero. This results in the α particle carrying away most of the energy, as a bullet from a heavy rifle carries away most of the energy of the powder burned to shoot it. Total mass–energy is also conserved: the energy produced in the decay comes from conversion of a fraction of the original mass. As discussed in Atomic Physics, the general relationship is
Equation:

$$E = (\Delta m)c^2.$$

Here, E is the **nuclear reaction energy** (the reaction can be nuclear decay or any other reaction), and Δm is the difference in mass between initial and final products. When the final products have less total mass, Δm is positive, and the reaction releases energy (is exothermic). When the products have greater total mass, the reaction is endothermic (Δm is negative) and must be induced with an energy input. For α decay to be spontaneous, the decay products must have smaller mass than the parent.

Example:
Alpha Decay Energy Found from Nuclear Masses
Find the energy emitted in the α decay of ^{239}Pu.
Strategy
Nuclear reaction energy, such as released in α decay, can be found using the equation $E = (\Delta m)c^2$. We must first find Δm, the difference in mass between the parent nucleus and the products of the decay. This is easily done using masses given in Appendix A.
Solution
The decay equation was given earlier for ^{239}Pu ; it is
Equation:

$$^{239}\text{Pu} \rightarrow {}^{235}\text{U} + {}^{4}\text{He}.$$

Thus the pertinent masses are those of ^{239}Pu, ^{235}U, and the α particle or ^{4}He, all of which are listed in Appendix A. The initial mass was $m(^{239}\text{Pu}) = 239.052157\ \text{u}$. The final mass is the sum $m(^{235}\text{U})$+$m(^{4}\text{He})$= $235.043924\ \text{u} + 4.002602\ \text{u} = 239.046526\ \text{u}$. Thus,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta m &= m(^{239}\text{Pu}) - [m(^{235}\text{U}) + m(^{4}\text{He})] \\ &= 239.052157\ \text{u} - 239.046526\ \text{u} \\ &= 0.0005631\ \text{u}. \end{aligned}$$

Now we can find E by entering Δm into the equation:

Equation:

$$E = (\Delta m)c^2 = (0.005631\ \text{u})c^2.$$

We know $1\ \text{u} = 931.5\ \text{MeV}/c^2$, and so

Equation:

$$E = (0.005631)(931.5\ \text{MeV}/c^2)(c^2) = 5.25\ \text{MeV}.$$

Discussion

The energy released in this α decay is in the MeV range, about 10^6 times as great as typical chemical reaction energies, consistent with many previous discussions. Most of this energy becomes kinetic energy of the α particle (or ^{4}He nucleus), which moves away at high speed. The energy carried away by the recoil of the ^{235}U nucleus is much smaller in order to conserve momentum. The ^{235}U nucleus can be left in an excited state to later emit photons (γ rays). This decay is spontaneous and releases energy, because the products have less mass than the parent nucleus. The question of why the products have less mass will be discussed in Binding Energy. Note that the masses given in Appendix A are atomic masses of neutral atoms, including their electrons. The mass of the electrons is the same before and after α decay, and so their masses subtract out when finding Δm. In this case, there are 94 electrons before and after the decay.

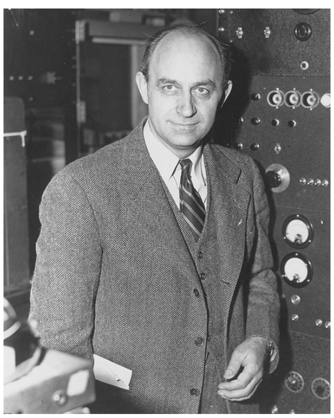
Beta Decay

There are actually *three* types of **beta decay**. The first discovered was “ordinary” beta decay and is called β^- decay or electron emission. The symbol β^- represents *an electron emitted in nuclear beta decay*. Cobalt-60 is a nuclide that β^- decays in the following manner:

Equation:

$$^{60}\text{Co} \rightarrow {}^{60}\text{Ni} + \beta^- + \text{neutrino}.$$

The **neutrino** is a particle emitted in beta decay that was unanticipated and is of fundamental importance. The neutrino was not even proposed in theory until more than 20 years after beta decay was known to involve electron emissions. Neutrinos are so difficult to detect that the first direct evidence of them was not obtained until 1953. Neutrinos are nearly massless, have no charge, and do not interact with nucleons via the strong nuclear force. Traveling approximately at the speed of light, they have little time to affect any nucleus they encounter. This is, owing to the fact that they have no charge (and they are not EM waves), they do not interact through the EM force. They do interact via the relatively weak and very short range weak nuclear force. Consequently, neutrinos escape almost any detector and penetrate almost any shielding. However, neutrinos do carry energy, angular momentum (they are fermions with half-integral spin), and linear momentum away from a beta decay. When accurate measurements of beta decay were made, it became apparent that energy, angular momentum, and linear momentum were not accounted for by the daughter nucleus and electron alone. Either a previously unsuspected particle was carrying them away, or three conservation laws were being violated. Wolfgang Pauli made a formal proposal for the existence of neutrinos in 1930. The Italian-born American physicist Enrico Fermi (1901–1954) gave neutrinos their name, meaning little neutral ones, when he developed a sophisticated theory of beta decay (see [link]). Part of Fermi's theory was the identification of the weak nuclear force as being distinct from the strong nuclear force and in fact responsible for beta decay.



Enrico Fermi was nearly unique among 20th-century physicists—he made significant contributions both as an experimentalist and a theorist. His many contributions to theoretical

physics included the identification of the weak nuclear force. The fermi (fm) is named after him, as are an entire class of subatomic particles (fermions), an element (Fermium), and a major research laboratory (Fermilab). His experimental work included studies of radioactivity, for which he won the 1938 Nobel Prize in physics, and creation of the first nuclear chain reaction. (credit: United States Department of Energy, Office of Public Affairs)

The neutrino also reveals a new conservation law. There are various families of particles, one of which is the electron family. We propose that the number of members of the electron family is constant in any process or any closed system. In our example of beta decay, there are no members of the electron family present before the decay, but after, there is an electron and a neutrino. So electrons are given an electron family number of $+1$. The neutrino in β^- decay is an **electron's antineutrino**, given the symbol ν_e, where ν is the Greek letter nu, and the subscript *e* means this neutrino is related to the electron. The bar indicates this is a particle of **antimatter**. (All particles have antimatter counterparts that are nearly identical except that they have the opposite charge. Antimatter is almost entirely absent on Earth, but it is found in nuclear decay and other nuclear and particle reactions as well as in outer space.) The electron's antineutrino ν_e, being antimatter, has an electron family number of –1. The total is zero, before and after the decay. The new conservation law, obeyed in all circumstances, states that the *total electron family number is constant*. An electron cannot be created without also creating an antimatter family member. This law is analogous to the conservation of charge in a situation where total charge is originally zero, and equal amounts of positive and negative charge must be created in a reaction to keep the total zero.

If a nuclide ${}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N}$ is known to β^- decay, then its β^- decay equation is

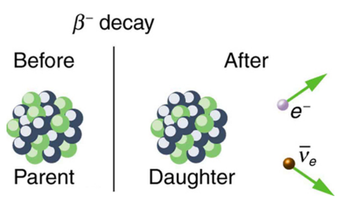
Equation:

$$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N} \rightarrow {}_{Z+1}^{A}\mathrm{Y}_{N-1} + \beta^- + \bar{\nu}_e \; (\beta^- \text{ decay}), $$

where Y is the nuclide having one more proton than X (see [link]). So if you know that a certain nuclide β^- decays, you can find the daughter nucleus by first looking up Z for the parent and then determining which element has atomic number $Z+1$. In the example of the β^- decay of ${}^{60}\mathrm{Co}$ given earlier, we see that $Z=27$ for Co and $Z=28$ is Ni. It is as if one of the neutrons in the parent nucleus decays into a proton, electron, and neutrino. In fact, neutrons outside of nuclei do just that—they live only an average of a few minutes and β^- decay in the following manner:

Equation:

$$ \mathrm{n} \rightarrow \mathrm{p} + \beta^- + \bar{\nu}_e. $$



In β^- decay, the parent nucleus emits an electron and an antineutrino. The daughter nucleus has one more proton and one less neutron than its parent. Neutrinos interact so weakly that they are almost never directly observed, but they play a fundamental role in particle physics.

We see that charge is conserved in β^- decay, since the total charge is Z before and after the decay. For example, in ^{60}Co decay, total charge is 27 before decay, since cobalt has $Z = 27$. After decay, the daughter nucleus is Ni, which has $Z = 28$, and there is an electron, so that the total charge is also $28 + (-1)$ or 27. Angular momentum is conserved, but not obviously (you have to examine the spins and angular momenta of the final products in detail to verify this). Linear momentum is also conserved, again imparting most of the decay energy to the electron and the antineutrino, since they are of low and zero mass, respectively. Another new conservation law is obeyed here and elsewhere in nature. *The total number of nucleons A is conserved*. In ^{60}Co decay, for example, there are 60 nucleons before and after the decay. Note that total A is also conserved in α decay. Also note that the total number of protons changes, as does the total number of neutrons, so that total Z and total N are *not* conserved in β^- decay, as they are in α decay. Energy released in β^- decay can be calculated given the masses of the parent and products.

Example:

β^- Decay Energy from Masses

Find the energy emitted in the β^- decay of ^{60}Co.

Strategy and Concept

As in the preceding example, we must first find Δm, the difference in mass between the parent nucleus and the products of the decay, using masses given in Appendix A. Then the emitted energy is calculated as before, using $E = (\Delta m)c^2$. The initial mass is just that of the parent nucleus, and the final mass is that of the daughter nucleus and the electron created in the decay. The neutrino is massless, or nearly so. However, since the masses given in Appendix A are for neutral atoms, the daughter nucleus has one more electron than the parent, and so the extra electron mass that corresponds to the β^- is included in the atomic mass of Ni. Thus,

Equation:

$$\Delta m = m(^{60}\text{Co}) - m(^{60}\text{Ni}\ ).$$

Solution

The β^- decay equation for ^{60}Co is

Equation:

$$^{60}_{27}\text{Co}_{33} \rightarrow {}^{60}_{28}\text{Ni}_{32} + \beta^- + \nu_e.$$

As noticed,

Equation:

$$\Delta m = m(^{60}\text{Co}) - m(^{60}\text{Ni}\ ).$$

Entering the masses found in Appendix A gives

Equation:

$$\Delta m = 59.933820 \text{ u} - 59.930789 \text{ u} = 0.003031 \text{ u}.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$E = (\Delta m)c^2 = (0.003031 \text{ u})c^2.$$

Using $1 \text{ u} = 931.5 \text{ MeV}/c^2$, we obtain

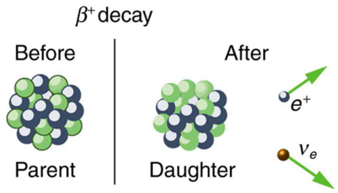
Equation:

$$E = (0.003031)(931.5 \text{ MeV}/c^2)(c^2) = 2.82 \text{ MeV}.$$

Discussion and Implications

Perhaps the most difficult thing about this example is convincing yourself that the β^- mass is included in the atomic mass of ^{60}Ni. Beyond that are other implications. Again the decay energy is in the MeV range. This energy is shared by all of the products of the decay. In many ^{60}Co decays, the daughter nucleus ^{60}Ni is left in an excited state and emits photons (γ rays). Most of the remaining energy goes to the electron and neutrino, since the recoil kinetic energy of the daughter nucleus is small. One final note: the electron emitted in β^- decay is created in the nucleus at the time of decay.

The second type of beta decay is less common than the first. It is β^+ decay. Certain nuclides decay by the emission of a *positive* electron. This is **antielectron** or **positron decay** (see [link]).



β^+ decay is the emission of a positron that eventually finds an electron to annihilate, characteristically producing gammas in opposite directions.

The antielectron is often represented by the symbol e^+, but in beta decay it is written as β^+ to indicate the antielectron was emitted in a nuclear decay. Antielectrons are the antimatter counterpart to electrons, being nearly identical, having the same mass, spin, and so on, but having a positive charge and an electron family number of -1. When a **positron** encounters an electron, there is a mutual annihilation in which all the mass of the antielectron-electron pair is converted into pure photon energy. (The reaction, $e^+ + e^- \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma$, conserves electron family number as well as all other conserved quantities.) If a nuclide ${}^A_Z\mathrm{X}_N$ is known to β^+ decay, then its β^+**decay equation** is

Equation:

$$ {}^A_Z\mathrm{X}_N \rightarrow {}_{Z-1}^{\ \ A}\mathrm{Y}_{N+1} + \beta^+ + \nu_e \ (\beta^+ \text{ decay}), $$

where Y is the nuclide having one less proton than X (to conserve charge) and ν_e is the symbol for the **electron's neutrino**, which has an electron family number of $+1$. Since an antimatter member of the electron family (the β^+) is created in the decay, a matter member of the family (here the ν_e) must also be created. Given, for example, that ${}^{22}\mathrm{Na}$ β^+ decays, you can write its full decay equation by first finding that $Z = 11$ for ${}^{22}\mathrm{Na}$, so that the daughter nuclide will have $Z = 10$, the atomic number for neon. Thus the β^+ decay equation for ${}^{22}\mathrm{Na}$ is

Equation:

$$ {}^{22}_{11}\mathrm{Na}_{11} \rightarrow {}^{22}_{10}\mathrm{Ne}_{12} + \beta^+ + \nu_e. $$

In β^+ decay, it is as if one of the protons in the parent nucleus decays into a neutron, a positron, and a neutrino. Protons do not do this outside of the nucleus, and so the decay is due to the complexities of the nuclear force. Note again that the total number of nucleons is constant in this and any other reaction. To find the energy emitted in β^+ decay, you must again count the number of electrons in the neutral atoms, since atomic masses are used. The daughter has one less electron than the parent, and one electron mass is created in the decay. Thus, in β^+ decay,

Equation:

$$ \Delta m = m(\text{parent}) - [m(\text{daughter}) + 2m_e], $$

since we use the masses of neutral atoms.

Electron capture is the third type of beta decay. Here, a nucleus captures an inner-shell electron and undergoes a nuclear reaction that has the same effect as β^+ decay. Electron capture is sometimes denoted by the letters EC. We know that electrons cannot reside in the nucleus, but this is a nuclear reaction that consumes the electron and occurs spontaneously only when the products have less mass than the parent plus the electron. If a nuclide ${}^A_Z\mathrm{X}_N$ is known to undergo electron capture, then its **electron capture equation** is

Equation:

$$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_N + e^- \rightarrow {}_{Z-1}^{A}\mathrm{Y}_{N+1} + \nu_e (\text{electron capture, or EC}). $$

Any nuclide that can β^+ decay can also undergo electron capture (and often does both). The same conservation laws are obeyed for EC as for β^+ decay. It is good practice to confirm these for yourself.

All forms of beta decay occur because the parent nuclide is unstable and lies outside the region of stability in the chart of nuclides. Those nuclides that have relatively more neutrons than those in the region of stability will β^- decay to produce a daughter with fewer neutrons, producing a daughter nearer the region of stability. Similarly, those nuclides having relatively more protons than those in the region of stability will β^- decay or undergo electron capture to produce a daughter with fewer protons, nearer the region of stability.

Gamma Decay

Gamma decay is the simplest form of nuclear decay—it is the emission of energetic photons by nuclei left in an excited state by some earlier process. Protons and neutrons in an excited nucleus are in higher orbitals, and they fall to lower levels by photon emission (analogous to electrons in excited atoms). Nuclear excited states have lifetimes typically of only about 10^{-14} s, an indication of the great strength of the forces pulling the nucleons to lower states. The γ decay equation is simply

Equation:

$$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}^{*}_N \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_N + \gamma_1 + \gamma_2 + \cdots \ (\gamma \text{ decay}) $$

where the asterisk indicates the nucleus is in an excited state. There may be one or more γ s emitted, depending on how the nuclide de-excites. In radioactive decay, γ emission is common and is preceded by γ or β decay. For example, when $^{60}\mathrm{Co}$ β^- decays, it most often leaves the daughter nucleus in an excited state, written $^{60}\mathrm{Ni}$*. Then the nickel nucleus quickly γ decays by the emission of two penetrating γ s:

Equation:

$$ {}^{60}\mathrm{Ni}^* \rightarrow {}^{60}\mathrm{Ni} + \gamma_1 + \gamma_2. $$

These are called cobalt γ rays, although they come from nickel—they are used for cancer therapy, for example. It is again constructive to verify the conservation laws for gamma decay. Finally, since γ decay does not change the nuclide to another species, it is not prominently featured in charts of decay series, such as that in [link].

There are other types of nuclear decay, but they occur less commonly than α, β, and γ decay. Spontaneous fission is the most important of the other forms of nuclear decay because of its applications in nuclear power and weapons. It is covered in the next chapter.

Section Summary

- When a parent nucleus decays, it produces a daughter nucleus following rules and conservation laws. There are three major types of nuclear decay, called alpha (α), beta (β), and gamma (γ). The α decay equation is
  Equation:
  $$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N} \rightarrow {}^{A-4}_{Z-2}\mathrm{Y}_{N-2} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}_{2}. $$
- Nuclear decay releases an amount of energy E related to the mass destroyed Δm by
  Equation:
  $$ E = (\Delta m)c^2. $$
- There are three forms of beta decay. The β^-decay equation is
  Equation:
  $$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z+1}\mathrm{Y}_{N-1} + \beta^- + \nu_e. $$
- The β^+ decay equation is
  Equation:
  $$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z-1}\mathrm{Y}_{N+1} + \beta^+ + \nu_e. $$
- The electron capture equation is
  Equation:
  $$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N} + e^- \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z-1}\mathrm{Y}_{N+1} + \nu_e. $$
- β^- is an electron, β^+ is an antielectron or positron, ν_e represents an electron's neutrino, and ν_e is an electron's antineutrino. In addition to all previously known conservation laws, two new ones arise— conservation of electron family number and conservation of the total number of nucleons. The γ decay equation is
  Equation:
  $$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}^{*}_{N} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N} + \gamma_1 + \gamma_2 + \cdots $$

  γ is a high-energy photon originating in a nucleus.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Star Trek fans have often heard the term "antimatter drive." Describe how you could use a magnetic field to trap antimatter, such as produced by nuclear decay, and later combine it with matter to produce energy. Be specific about the type of antimatter, the need for vacuum storage, and the fraction of matter converted into energy.

Exercise:

Problem:

What conservation law requires an electron's neutrino to be produced in electron capture? Note that the electron no longer exists after it is captured by the nucleus.

Exercise:

Problem:

Neutrinos are experimentally determined to have an extremely small mass. Huge numbers of neutrinos are created in a supernova at the same time as massive amounts of light are first produced. When the 1987A supernova occurred in the Large Magellanic Cloud, visible primarily in the Southern Hemisphere and some 100,000 light-years away from Earth, neutrinos from the explosion were observed at about the same time as the light from the blast. How could the relative arrival times of neutrinos and light be used to place limits on the mass of neutrinos?

Exercise:

Problem:

What do the three types of beta decay have in common that is distinctly different from alpha decay?

Problems & Exercises

In the following eight problems, write the complete decay equation for the given nuclide in the complete ${}_{Z}^{A}\mathrm{X}_{N}$ notation. Refer to the periodic table for values of Z.

Exercise:

Problem:

β^- decay of $^3\mathrm{H}$ (tritium), a manufactured isotope of hydrogen used in some digital watch displays, and manufactured primarily for use in hydrogen bombs.

Solution:
Equation:

$${}_{1}^{3}\mathrm{H}_{2} \rightarrow {}_{2}^{3}\mathrm{He}_{1} + \beta^- + \nu_e$$

Exercise:

Problem:

β^- decay of ^{40}K, a naturally occurring rare isotope of potassium responsible for some of our exposure to background radiation.

Exercise:

Problem: β^+ decay of ^{50}Mn.

Solution:
Equation:

$$^{50}_{25}M_{25} \rightarrow {}^{50}_{24}\mathrm{Cr}_{26} + \beta^+ + \nu_e$$

Exercise:

Problem: β^+ decay of ^{52}Fe.

Exercise:

Problem: Electron capture by ^{7}Be.

Solution:
Equation:

$$^{7}_{4}\mathrm{Be}_3 + e^- \rightarrow {}^{7}_{3}\mathrm{Li}_4 + \nu_e$$

Exercise:

Problem: Electron capture by ^{106}In.

Exercise:

Problem:

α decay of ^{210}Po, the isotope of polonium in the decay series of ^{238}U that was discovered by the Curies. A favorite isotope in physics labs, since it has a short half-life and decays to a stable nuclide.

Solution:
Equation:

$$^{210}_{84}\mathrm{Po}_{126} \rightarrow {}^{206}_{82}\mathrm{Pb}_{124} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}_2$$

Exercise:

Problem:

α decay of $^{226}\mathrm{Ra}$, another isotope in the decay series of $^{238}\mathrm{U}$, first recognized as a new element by the Curies. Poses special problems because its daughter is a radioactive noble gas.

In the following four problems, identify the parent nuclide and write the complete decay equation in the $^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}_{N}$ notation. Refer to the periodic table for values of Z.

Exercise:

Problem:

β^{-} decay producing $^{137}\mathrm{Ba}$. The parent nuclide is a major waste product of reactors and has chemistry similar to potassium and sodium, resulting in its concentration in your cells if ingested.

Solution:
Equation:

$$^{137}_{55}\mathrm{Cs}_{82} \rightarrow {}^{137}_{56}\mathrm{Ba}_{81} + \beta^{-} + \nu_{e}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

β^{-} decay producing $^{90}\mathrm{Y}$. The parent nuclide is a major waste product of reactors and has chemistry similar to calcium, so that it is concentrated in bones if ingested ($^{90}\mathrm{Y}$ is also radioactive.)

Exercise:

Problem:

α decay producing $^{228}\mathrm{Ra}$. The parent nuclide is nearly 100% of the natural element and is found in gas lantern mantles and in metal alloys used in jets ($^{228}\mathrm{Ra}$ is also radioactive).

Solution:
Equation:

$$^{232}_{90}\mathrm{Th}_{142} \rightarrow {}^{228}_{88}\mathrm{Ra}_{140} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}_{2}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

α decay producing ^{208}Pb. The parent nuclide is in the decay series produced by ^{232}Th, the only naturally occurring isotope of thorium.

Exercise:

Problem:

When an electron and positron annihilate, both their masses are destroyed, creating two equal energy photons to preserve momentum. (a) Confirm that the annihilation equation $e^+ + e^- \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma$ conserves charge, electron family number, and total number of nucleons. To do this, identify the values of each before and after the annihilation. (b) Find the energy of each γ ray, assuming the electron and positron are initially nearly at rest. (c) Explain why the two γ rays travel in exactly opposite directions if the center of mass of the electron-positron system is initially at rest.

Solution:

(a)
$\text{charge:}(+1) + (-1) = 0\textit{;} \quad \text{electron family number: } (+1) + (-1) = 0\textit{;} \quad A\text{: } 0 + 0 = 0$

(b) 0.511 MeV

(c) The two γ rays must travel in exactly opposite directions in order to conserve momentum, since initially there is zero momentum if the center of mass is initially at rest.

Exercise:

Problem:

Confirm that charge, electron family number, and the total number of nucleons are all conserved by the rule for α decay given in the equation ${}^{A}_{Z}\text{X}_N \rightarrow {}^{A-4}_{Z-2}\text{Y}_{N-2} + {}^{4}_{2}\text{He}_2$. To do this, identify the values of each before and after the decay.

Exercise:

Problem:

Confirm that charge, electron family number, and the total number of nucleons are all conserved by the rule for β^- decay given in the equation ${}^{A}_{Z}\text{X}_N \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z+1}\text{Y}_{N-1} + \beta^- + \nu_e$. To do this, identify the values of each before and after the decay.

Solution:
Equation:

$$Z = (Z+1) - 1; \quad A = A; \quad \text{efn} : 0 = (+1) + (-1)$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Confirm that charge, electron family number, and the total number of nucleons are all conserved by the rule for β^- decay given in the equation ${}^{A}_{Z}\text{X}_N \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z-1}\text{Y}_{N-1} + \beta^- + \nu_e$. To do this, identify the values of each before and after the decay.

Exercise:

Problem:

Confirm that charge, electron family number, and the total number of nucleons are all conserved by the rule for electron capture given in the equation ${}^{A}_{Z}\text{X}_N + e^- \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z-1}\text{Y}_{N+1} + \nu_e$. To do this, identify the values of each before and after the capture.

Solution:
Equation:

$$Z-1 = Z-1; \quad A = A; \quad \text{efn} :(+1) = (+1)$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A rare decay mode has been observed in which ${}^{222}\text{Ra}$ emits a ${}^{14}\text{C}$ nucleus. (a) The decay equation is ${}^{222}\text{Ra} \rightarrow {}^{A}\text{X} + {}^{14}\text{C}$. Identify the nuclide ${}^{A}\text{X}$. (b) Find the energy emitted in the decay. The mass of ${}^{222}\text{Ra}$ is 222.015353 u.

Exercise:

Problem: (a) Write the complete α decay equation for ${}^{226}\text{Ra}$.

(b) Find the energy released in the decay.

Solution:

(a) ${}^{226}_{88}\text{Ra}_{138} \rightarrow {}^{222}_{86}\text{Rn}_{136} + {}^{4}_{2}\text{He}_2$

(b) 4.87 MeV

Exercise:

Problem: (a) Write the complete α decay equation for ${}^{249}\text{Cf}$.

(b) Find the energy released in the decay.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Write the complete β^- decay equation for the neutron. (b) Find the energy released in the decay.

Solution:

(a) $\mathrm{n} \rightarrow \mathrm{p} + \beta^- + \nu_e$

(b)) 0.783 MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Write the complete β^- decay equation for $^{90}\mathrm{Sr}$, a major waste product of nuclear reactors. (b) Find the energy released in the decay.

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the energy released in the β^+ decay of $^{22}\mathrm{Na}$, the equation for which is given in the text. The masses of $^{22}\mathrm{Na}$ and $^{22}\mathrm{Ne}$ are 21.994434 and 21.991383 u, respectively.

Solution:

1.82 MeV

Exercise:

Problem: (a) Write the complete β^+ decay equation for $^{11}\mathrm{C}$.

(b) Calculate the energy released in the decay. The masses of $^{11}\mathrm{C}$ and $^{11}\mathrm{B}$ are 11.011433 and 11.009305 u, respectively.

Exercise:

Problem: (a) Calculate the energy released in the α decay of $^{238}\mathrm{U}$.

(b) What fraction of the mass of a single $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ is destroyed in the decay? The mass of $^{234}\mathrm{Th}$ is 234.043593 u.

(c) Although the fractional mass loss is large for a single nucleus, it is difficult to observe for an entire macroscopic sample of uranium. Why is this?

Solution:

(a) 4.274 MeV

(b) 1.927×10^{-5}

(c) Since U-238 is a slowly decaying substance, only a very small number of nuclei decay on human timescales; therefore, although those nuclei that decay lose a noticeable fraction of their mass, the change in the total mass of the sample is not detectable for a macroscopic sample.

Exercise:

Problem: (a) Write the complete reaction equation for electron capture by ${}^{7}\mathrm{Be}$.

(b) Calculate the energy released.

Exercise:

Problem: (a) Write the complete reaction equation for electron capture by ${}^{15}\mathrm{O}$.

(b) Calculate the energy released.

Solution:

(a) ${}^{15}_{8}\mathrm{O}_7 + e^- \rightarrow {}^{15}_{7}\mathrm{N}_8 + \nu_e$

(b) 2.754 MeV

Glossary

parent
: the original state of nucleus before decay

daughter
: the nucleus obtained when parent nucleus decays and produces another nucleus following the rules and the conservation laws

positron
: the particle that results from positive beta decay; also known as an antielectron

decay
: the process by which an atomic nucleus of an unstable atom loses mass and energy by emitting ionizing particles

alpha decay
: type of radioactive decay in which an atomic nucleus emits an alpha particle

beta decay
: type of radioactive decay in which an atomic nucleus emits a beta particle

gamma decay
: type of radioactive decay in which an atomic nucleus emits a gamma particle

decay equation
: the equation to find out how much of a radioactive material is left after a given period of time

nuclear reaction energy
: the energy created in a nuclear reaction

neutrino
: an electrically neutral, weakly interacting elementary subatomic particle

electron’s antineutrino
: antiparticle of electron’s neutrino

positron decay
: type of beta decay in which a proton is converted to a neutron, releasing a positron and a neutrino

antielectron
: another term for positron

decay series
: process whereby subsequent nuclides decay until a stable nuclide is produced

electron’s neutrino
: a subatomic elementary particle which has no net electric charge

antimatter
: composed of antiparticles

electron capture
: the process in which a proton-rich nuclide absorbs an inner atomic electron and simultaneously emits a neutrino

electron capture equation
: equation representing the electron capture

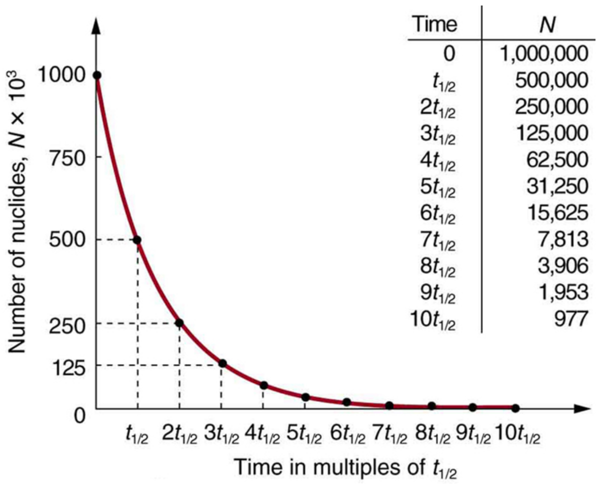
Half-Life and Activity

- Define half-life.
- Define dating.
- Calculate age of old objects by radioactive dating.

Unstable nuclei decay. However, some nuclides decay faster than others. For example, radium and polonium, discovered by the Curies, decay faster than uranium. This means they have shorter lifetimes, producing a greater rate of decay. In this section we explore half-life and activity, the quantitative terms for lifetime and rate of decay.

Half-Life

Why use a term like half-life rather than lifetime? The answer can be found by examining [link], which shows how the number of radioactive nuclei in a sample decreases with time. The *time in which half of the original number of nuclei decay* is defined as the **half-life**, $t_{1/2}$. Half of the remaining nuclei decay in the next half-life. Further, half of that amount decays in the following half-life. Therefore, the number of radioactive nuclei decreases from N to $N/2$ in one half-life, then to $N/4$ in the next, and to $N/8$ in the next, and so on. If N is a large number, then *many* half-lives (not just two) pass before all of the nuclei decay. Nuclear decay is an example of a purely statistical process. A more precise definition of half-life is that *each nucleus has a 50% chance of living for a time equal to one half-life* $t_{1/2}$. Thus, if N is reasonably large, half of the original nuclei decay in a time of one half-life. If an individual nucleus makes it through that time, it still has a 50% chance of surviving through another half-life. Even if it happens to make it through hundreds of half-lives, it still has a 50% chance of surviving through one more. The probability of decay is the same no matter when you start counting. This is like random coin flipping. The chance of heads is 50%, no matter what has happened before.



Radioactive decay reduces the number of radioactive nuclei over time. In one half-life $t_{1/2}$, the number decreases to half of its original value. Half of what remains decay in the next half-life, and half of those in the next, and so on. This is an exponential decay, as seen in the graph of the number of nuclei present as a function of time.

There is a tremendous range in the half-lives of various nuclides, from as short as 10^{-23} s for the most unstable, to more than 10^{16} y for the least unstable, or about 46 orders of magnitude. Nuclides with the shortest half-lives are those for which the nuclear forces are least attractive, an indication of the extent to which the nuclear force can depend on the particular combination of neutrons and protons. The concept of half-life is applicable to other subatomic particles, as will be discussed in Particle Physics. It is also applicable to the decay of excited states in atoms and nuclei. The following equation gives the quantitative relationship between the original

number of nuclei present at time zero (N_0) and the number (N) at a later time t:
Equation:

$$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t},$$

where $e = 2.71828...$ is the base of the natural logarithm, and λ is the **decay constant** for the nuclide. The shorter the half-life, the larger is the value of λ, and the faster the exponential $e^{-\lambda t}$ decreases with time. The relationship between the decay constant λ and the half-life $t_{1/2}$ is
Equation:

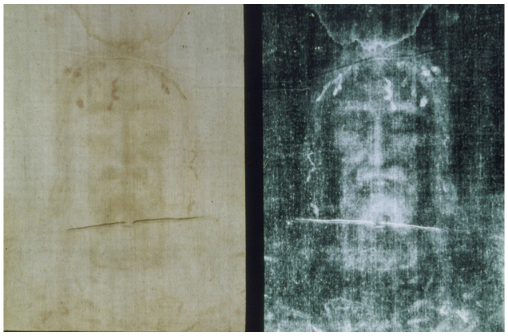
$$\lambda = \frac{\ln(2)}{t_{1/2}} \approx \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}}.$$

To see how the number of nuclei declines to half its original value in one half-life, let $t = t_{1/2}$ in the exponential in the equation $N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}$. This gives $N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t} = N_0 e^{-0.693} = 0.500 N_0$. For integral numbers of half-lives, you can just divide the original number by 2 over and over again, rather than using the exponential relationship. For example, if ten half-lives have passed, we divide N by 2 ten times. This reduces it to $N/1024$. For an arbitrary time, not just a multiple of the half-life, the exponential relationship must be used.

Radioactive dating is a clever use of naturally occurring radioactivity. Its most famous application is **carbon-14 dating**. Carbon-14 has a half-life of 5730 years and is produced in a nuclear reaction induced when solar neutrinos strike ^{14}N in the atmosphere. Radioactive carbon has the same chemistry as stable carbon, and so it mixes into the ecosphere, where it is consumed and becomes part of every living organism. Carbon-14 has an abundance of 1.3 parts per trillion of normal carbon. Thus, if you know the number of carbon nuclei in an object (perhaps determined by mass and Avogadro’s number), you multiply that number by 1.3×10^{-12} to find the number of ^{14}C nuclei in the object. When an organism dies, carbon exchange with the environment ceases, and ^{14}C is not replenished as it

decays. By comparing the abundance of ^{14}C in an artifact, such as mummy wrappings, with the normal abundance in living tissue, it is possible to determine the artifact's age (or time since death). Carbon-14 dating can be used for biological tissues as old as 50 or 60 thousand years, but is most accurate for younger samples, since the abundance of ^{14}C nuclei in them is greater. Very old biological materials contain no ^{14}C at all. There are instances in which the date of an artifact can be determined by other means, such as historical knowledge or tree-ring counting. These cross-references have confirmed the validity of carbon-14 dating and permitted us to calibrate the technique as well. Carbon-14 dating revolutionized parts of archaeology and is of such importance that it earned the 1960 Nobel Prize in chemistry for its developer, the American chemist Willard Libby (1908–1980).

One of the most famous cases of carbon-14 dating involves the Shroud of Turin, a long piece of fabric purported to be the burial shroud of Jesus (see [link]). This relic was first displayed in Turin in 1354 and was denounced as a fraud at that time by a French bishop. Its remarkable negative imprint of an apparently crucified body resembles the then-accepted image of Jesus, and so the shroud was never disregarded completely and remained controversial over the centuries. Carbon-14 dating was not performed on the shroud until 1988, when the process had been refined to the point where only a small amount of material needed to be destroyed. Samples were tested at three independent laboratories, each being given four pieces of cloth, with only one unidentified piece from the shroud, to avoid prejudice. All three laboratories found samples of the shroud contain 92% of the ^{14}C found in living tissues, allowing the shroud to be dated (see [link]).



Part of the Shroud of Turin, which shows a remarkable negative imprint likeness of Jesus complete with evidence of crucifixion wounds. The shroud first surfaced in the 14th century and was only recently carbon-14 dated. It has not been determined how the image was placed on the material. (credit: Butko, Wikimedia Commons)

Example:
How Old Is the Shroud of Turin?
Calculate the age of the Shroud of Turin given that the amount of ^{14}C found in it is 92% of that in living tissue.
Strategy
Knowing that 92% of the ^{14}C remains means that $N/N_0 = 0.92$. Therefore, the equation $N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}$ can be used to find λt. We also know that the half-life of ^{14}C is 5730 y, and so once λt is known, we can use the equation $\lambda = \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}}$ to find λ and then find t as requested. Here, we postulate that the decrease in ^{14}C is solely due to nuclear decay.
Solution
Solving the equation $N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}$ for N/N_0 gives
Equation:

$$\frac{N}{N_0} = e^{-\lambda t}.$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$0.92 = e^{-\lambda t}.$$

Taking the natural logarithm of both sides of the equation yields
Equation:

$$\ln 0.92 = -\lambda t$$

so that
Equation:

$$-0.0834 = -\lambda t.$$

Rearranging to isolate t gives
Equation:

$$t = \frac{0.0834}{\lambda}.$$

Now, the equation $\lambda = \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}}$ can be used to find λ for ^{14}C. Solving for λ and substituting the known half-life gives
Equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}} = \frac{0.693}{5730\text{ y}}.$$

We enter this value into the previous equation to find t:
Equation:

$$t = \frac{0.0834}{\frac{0.693}{5730\text{ y}}} = 690\text{ y}.$$

Discussion
This dates the material in the shroud to 1988–690 = a.d. 1300. Our calculation is only accurate to two digits, so that the year is rounded to 1300. The values obtained at the three independent laboratories gave a

weighted average date of a.d. 1320 ± 60. The uncertainty is typical of carbon-14 dating and is due to the small amount of ^{14}C in living tissues, the amount of material available, and experimental uncertainties (reduced by having three independent measurements). It is meaningful that the date of the shroud is consistent with the first record of its existence and inconsistent with the period in which Jesus lived.

There are other forms of radioactive dating. Rocks, for example, can sometimes be dated based on the decay of ^{238}U. The decay series for ^{238}U ends with ^{206}Pb, so that the ratio of these nuclides in a rock is an indication of how long it has been since the rock solidified. The original composition of the rock, such as the absence of lead, must be known with some confidence. However, as with carbon-14 dating, the technique can be verified by a consistent body of knowledge. Since ^{238}U has a half-life of 4.5×10^9 y, it is useful for dating only very old materials, showing, for example, that the oldest rocks on Earth solidified about 3.5×10^9 years ago.

Activity, the Rate of Decay

What do we mean when we say a source is highly radioactive? Generally, this means the number of decays per unit time is very high. We define **activity** R to be the **rate of decay** expressed in decays per unit time. In equation form, this is
Equation:

$$R = \frac{\Delta N}{\Delta t}$$

where ΔN is the number of decays that occur in time Δt. The SI unit for activity is one decay per second and is given the name **becquerel** (Bq) in honor of the discoverer of radioactivity. That is,
Equation:

$$1 \text{ Bq} = 1 \text{ decay/s.}$$

Activity R is often expressed in other units, such as decays per minute or decays per year. One of the most common units for activity is the **curie** (Ci), defined to be the activity of 1 g of ${}^{226}\text{Ra}$, in honor of Marie Curie's work with radium. The definition of curie is

Equation:

$$1 \text{ Ci} = 3.70 \times 10^{10} \text{ Bq},$$

or 3.70×10^{10} decays per second. A curie is a large unit of activity, while a becquerel is a relatively small unit. $1 \text{ MBq} = 100 \text{ microcuries } (\mu\text{Ci})$. In countries like Australia and New Zealand that adhere more to SI units, most radioactive sources, such as those used in medical diagnostics or in physics laboratories, are labeled in Bq or megabecquerel (MBq).

Intuitively, you would expect the activity of a source to depend on two things: the amount of the radioactive substance present, and its half-life. The greater the number of radioactive nuclei present in the sample, the more will decay per unit of time. The shorter the half-life, the more decays per unit time, for a given number of nuclei. So activity R should be proportional to the number of radioactive nuclei, N, and inversely proportional to their half-life, $t_{1/2}$. In fact, your intuition is correct. It can be shown that the activity of a source is

Equation:

$$R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}$$

where N is the number of radioactive nuclei present, having half-life $t_{1/2}$. This relationship is useful in a variety of calculations, as the next two examples illustrate.

Example:

How Great Is the ^{14}C Activity in Living Tissue?

Calculate the activity due to ^{14}C in 1.00 kg of carbon found in a living organism. Express the activity in units of Bq and Ci.

Strategy

To find the activity R using the equation $R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}$, we must know N and $t_{1/2}$. The half-life of ^{14}C can be found in Appendix B, and was stated above as 5730 y. To find N, we first find the number of ^{12}C nuclei in 1.00 kg of carbon using the concept of a mole. As indicated, we then multiply by 1.3×10^{-12} (the abundance of ^{14}C in a carbon sample from a living organism) to get the number of ^{14}C nuclei in a living organism.

Solution

One mole of carbon has a mass of 12.0 g, since it is nearly pure ^{12}C. (A mole has a mass in grams equal in magnitude to A found in the periodic table.) Thus the number of carbon nuclei in a kilogram is

Equation:

$$N(^{12}\text{C}) = \frac{6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{mol}^{-1}}{12.0\ \text{g/mol}} \times (1000\ \text{g}) = 5.02 \times 10^{25}.$$

So the number of ^{14}C nuclei in 1 kg of carbon is

Equation:

$$N(^{14}\text{C}) = (5.02 \times 10^{25})(1.3 \times 10^{-12}) = 6.52 \times 10^{13}.$$

Now the activity R is found using the equation $R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}$.

Entering known values gives

Equation:

$$R = \frac{0.693(6.52 \times 10^{13})}{5730\ \text{y}} = 7.89 \times 10^{9}\ \text{y}^{-1},$$

or 7.89×10^{9} decays per year. To convert this to the unit Bq, we simply convert years to seconds. Thus,

Equation:

$$R = (7.89\times10^9 \text{ y}^{-1})\frac{1.00 \text{ y}}{3.16\times10^7 \text{ s}} = 250 \text{ Bq},$$

or 250 decays per second. To express R in curies, we use the definition of a curie,

Equation:

$$R = \frac{250 \text{ Bq}}{3.7\times10^{10} \text{ Bq/Ci}} = 6.76\times10^{-9} \text{ Ci}.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$R = 6.76 \text{ nCi}.$$

Discussion

Our own bodies contain kilograms of carbon, and it is intriguing to think there are hundreds of ^{14}C decays per second taking place in us. Carbon-14 and other naturally occurring radioactive substances in our bodies contribute to the background radiation we receive. The small number of decays per second found for a kilogram of carbon in this example gives you some idea of how difficult it is to detect ^{14}C in a small sample of material. If there are 250 decays per second in a kilogram, then there are 0.25 decays per second in a gram of carbon in living tissue. To observe this, you must be able to distinguish decays from other forms of radiation, in order to reduce background noise. This becomes more difficult with an old tissue sample, since it contains less ^{14}C, and for samples more than 50 thousand years old, it is impossible.

Human-made (or artificial) radioactivity has been produced for decades and has many uses. Some of these include medical therapy for cancer, medical imaging and diagnostics, and food preservation by irradiation. Many applications as well as the biological effects of radiation are explored in Medical Applications of Nuclear Physics, but it is clear that radiation is hazardous. A number of tragic examples of this exist, one of the most disastrous being the meltdown and fire at the Chernobyl reactor complex in

the Ukraine (see [link]). Several radioactive isotopes were released in huge quantities, contaminating many thousands of square kilometers and directly affecting hundreds of thousands of people. The most significant releases were of ^{131}I, ^{90}Sr, ^{137}Cs, ^{239}Pu, ^{238}U, and ^{235}U. Estimates are that the total amount of radiation released was about 100 million curies.

Human and Medical Applications

The Chernobyl reactor. More than 100 people died soon after its meltdown, and there will be thousands of deaths from radiation-induced cancer in the future. While the accident was due to a series of human errors, the cleanup efforts were heroic. Most of the immediate fatalities were firefighters and reactor personnel. (credit: Elena Filatova)

Example:

What Mass of ^{137}Cs Escaped Chernobyl?

It is estimated that the Chernobyl disaster released 6.0 MCi of ^{137}Cs into the environment. Calculate the mass of ^{137}Cs released.

Strategy

We can calculate the mass released using Avogadro's number and the concept of a mole if we can first find the number of nuclei N released. Since the activity R is given, and the half-life of ^{137}Cs is found in Appendix B to be 30.2 y, we can use the equation $R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}$ to find N.

Solution

Solving the equation $R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}$ for N gives

Equation:

$$N = \frac{Rt_{1/2}}{0.693}.$$

Entering the given values yields

Equation:

$$N = \frac{(6.0 \text{ MCi})(30.2 \text{ y})}{0.693}.$$

Converting curies to becquerels and years to seconds, we get

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} N &= \frac{(6.0\times10^{6} \text{ Ci})(3.7\times10^{10} \text{ Bq/Ci})(30.2 \text{ y})(3.16\times10^{7} \text{ s/y})}{0.693} \\ &= 3.1 \times 10^{26}. \end{aligned}$$

One mole of a nuclide ^{A}X has a mass of A grams, so that one mole of ^{137}Cs has a mass of 137 g. A mole has 6.02×10^{23} nuclei. Thus the mass of ^{137}Cs released was

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} m &= \left(\frac{137 \text{ g}}{6.02\times10^{23}}\right)(3.1 \times 10^{26}) = 70 \times 10^{3} \text{ g} \\ &= 70 \text{ kg}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
While 70 kg of material may not be a very large mass compared to the amount of fuel in a power plant, it is extremely radioactive, since it only has a 30-year half-life. Six megacuries (6.0 MCi) is an extraordinary amount of activity but is only a fraction of what is produced in nuclear reactors. Similar amounts of the other isotopes were also released at Chernobyl. Although the chances of such a disaster may have seemed small, the consequences were extremely severe, requiring greater caution than was used. More will be said about safe reactor design in the next chapter, but it should be noted that Western reactors have a fundamentally safer design.

Activity R decreases in time, going to half its original value in one half-life, then to one-fourth its original value in the next half-life, and so on. Since $R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}$, the activity decreases as the number of radioactive nuclei decreases. The equation for R as a function of time is found by combining the equations $N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}$ and $R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}$, yielding

Equation:

$$R = R_0 e^{-\lambda t},$$

where R_0 is the activity at $t = 0$. This equation shows exponential decay of radioactive nuclei. For example, if a source originally has a 1.00-mCi activity, it declines to 0.500 mCi in one half-life, to 0.250 mCi in two half-lives, to 0.125 mCi in three half-lives, and so on. For times other than whole half-lives, the equation $R = R_0 e^{-\lambda t}$ must be used to find R.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Alpha Decay
Watch alpha particles escape from a polonium nucleus, causing radioactive alpha decay. See how random decay times relate to the half life.

Alpha Decay

Section Summary

- Half-life $t_{1/2}$ is the time in which there is a 50% chance that a nucleus will decay. The number of nuclei N as a function of time is
  Equation:
  $$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t},$$
  where N_0 is the number present at $t = 0$, and λ is the decay constant, related to the half-life by
  Equation:
  $$\lambda = \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}}.$$
- One of the applications of radioactive decay is radioactive dating, in which the age of a material is determined by the amount of radioactive decay that occurs. The rate of decay is called the activity R:
  Equation:
  $$R = \frac{\Delta N}{\Delta t}.$$
- The SI unit for R is the becquerel (Bq), defined by
  Equation:
  $$1 \text{ Bq} = 1 \text{ decay/s}.$$
- R is also expressed in terms of curies (Ci), where

Equation:

$$1 \text{ Ci} = 3.70 \times 10^{10} \text{ Bq}.$$

- The activity R of a source is related to N and $t_{1/2}$ by
  Equation:

  $$R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}.$$

- Since N has an exponential behavior as in the equation $N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}$, the activity also has an exponential behavior, given by
  Equation:

  $$R = R_0 e^{-\lambda t},$$

  where R_0 is the activity at $t = 0$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

In a 3×10^9-year-old rock that originally contained some ^{238}U, which has a half-life of 4.5×10^9 years, we expect to find some ^{238}U remaining in it. Why are ^{226}Ra, ^{222}Rn, and ^{210}Po also found in such a rock, even though they have much shorter half-lives (1600 years, 3.8 days, and 138 days, respectively)?

Exercise:

Problem:

Does the number of radioactive nuclei in a sample decrease to *exactly* half its original value in one half-life? Explain in terms of the statistical nature of radioactive decay.

Exercise:

Problem:

Radioactivity depends on the nucleus and not the atom or its chemical state. Why, then, is one kilogram of uranium more radioactive than one kilogram of uranium hexafluoride?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how a bound system can have less mass than its components. Why is this not observed classically, say for a building made of bricks?

Exercise:

Problem:

Spontaneous radioactive decay occurs only when the decay products have less mass than the parent, and it tends to produce a daughter that is more stable than the parent. Explain how this is related to the fact that more tightly bound nuclei are more stable. (Consider the binding energy per nucleon.)

Exercise:

Problem:

To obtain the most precise value of BE from the equation $\text{BE}=\left[ZM\left({}^{1}\text{H}\right)+Nm_{n}\right]c^{2}-m\left({}^{A}\text{X}\right)c^{2}$, we should take into account the binding energy of the electrons in the neutral atoms. Will doing this produce a larger or smaller value for BE? Why is this effect usually negligible?

Exercise:

Problem:

How does the finite range of the nuclear force relate to the fact that BE/A is greatest for A near 60?

Problems & Exercises

Data from the appendices and the periodic table may be needed for these problems.

Exercise:

Problem:

An old campfire is uncovered during an archaeological dig. Its charcoal is found to contain less than 1/1000 the normal amount of ^{14}C. Estimate the minimum age of the charcoal, noting that $2^{10} = 1024$.

Solution:

57,300 y

Exercise:

Problem:

A ^{60}Co source is labeled 4.00 mCi, but its present activity is found to be 1.85×10^{7} Bq. (a) What is the present activity in mCi? (b) How long ago did it actually have a 4.00-mCi activity?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the activity R in curies of 1.00 g of ^{226}Ra. (b) Discuss why your answer is not exactly 1.00 Ci, given that the curie was originally supposed to be exactly the activity of a gram of radium.

Solution:

(a) 0.988 Ci

(b) The half-life of ^{226}Ra is now better known.

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the activity of the ^{14}C in 1.00 g of ^{12}C found in living tissue is 0.250 Bq.

Exercise:

Problem:

Mantles for gas lanterns contain thorium, because it forms an oxide that can survive being heated to incandescence for long periods of time. Natural thorium is almost 100% ^{232}Th, with a half-life of 1.405×10^{10} y. If an average lantern mantle contains 300 mg of thorium, what is its activity?

Solution:

1.22×10^{3} Bq

Exercise:

Problem:

Cow's milk produced near nuclear reactors can be tested for as little as 1.00 pCi of ^{131}I per liter, to check for possible reactor leakage. What mass of ^{131}I has this activity?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Natural potassium contains ^{40}K, which has a half-life of 1.277×10^{9} y. What mass of ^{40}K in a person would have a decay rate of 4140 Bq? (b) What is the fraction of ^{40}K in natural potassium, given that the person has 140 g in his body? (These numbers are typical for a 70-kg adult.)

Solution:

(a) 16.0 mg

(b) 0.0114%

Exercise:

Problem:

There is more than one isotope of natural uranium. If a researcher isolates 1.00 mg of the relatively scarce ^{235}U and finds this mass to have an activity of 80.0 Bq, what is its half-life in years?

Exercise:

Problem:

^{50}V has one of the longest known radioactive half-lives. In a difficult experiment, a researcher found that the activity of 1.00 kg of ^{50}V is 1.75 Bq. What is the half-life in years?

Solution:

$1.48 \times 10^{17}\ \text{y}$

Exercise:

Problem:

You can sometimes find deep red crystal vases in antique stores, called uranium glass because their color was produced by doping the glass with uranium. Look up the natural isotopes of uranium and their half-lives, and calculate the activity of such a vase assuming it has 2.00 g of uranium in it. Neglect the activity of any daughter nuclides.

Exercise:

Problem:

A tree falls in a forest. How many years must pass before the ^{14}C activity in 1.00 g of the tree's carbon drops to 1.00 decay per hour?

Solution:

$5.6 \times 10^{4}\ \text{y}$

Exercise:

Problem:

What fraction of the $^{40}\mathrm{K}$ that was on Earth when it formed 4.5×10^9 years ago is left today?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 5000-Ci $^{60}\mathrm{Co}$ source used for cancer therapy is considered too weak to be useful when its activity falls to 3500 Ci. How long after its manufacture does this happen?

Solution:

2.71 y

Exercise:

Problem:

Natural uranium is 0.7200% $^{235}\mathrm{U}$ and 99.27% $^{238}\mathrm{U}$. What were the percentages of $^{235}\mathrm{U}$ and $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ in natural uranium when Earth formed 4.5×10^9 years ago?

Exercise:

Problem:

The β^- particles emitted in the decay of $^{3}\mathrm{H}$ (tritium) interact with matter to create light in a glow-in-the-dark exit sign. At the time of manufacture, such a sign contains 15.0 Ci of $^{3}\mathrm{H}$. (a) What is the mass of the tritium? (b) What is its activity 5.00 y after manufacture?

Solution:

(a) 1.56 mg

(b) 11.3 Ci

Exercise:

Problem:

World War II aircraft had instruments with glowing radium-painted dials (see [link]). The activity of one such instrument was 1.0×10^5 Bq when new. (a) What mass of ^{226}Ra was present? (b) After some years, the phosphors on the dials deteriorated chemically, but the radium did not escape. What is the activity of this instrument 57.0 years after it was made?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The ^{210}Po source used in a physics laboratory is labeled as having an activity of 1.0 μCi on the date it was prepared. A student measures the radioactivity of this source with a Geiger counter and observes 1500 counts per minute. She notices that the source was prepared 120 days before her lab. What fraction of the decays is she observing with her apparatus? (b) Identify some of the reasons that only a fraction of the α s emitted are observed by the detector.

Solution:

(a) 1.23×10^{-3}

(b) Only part of the emitted radiation goes in the direction of the detector. Only a fraction of that causes a response in the detector. Some of the emitted radiation (mostly α particles) is observed within the source. Some is absorbed within the source, some is absorbed by the detector, and some does not penetrate the detector.

Exercise:

Problem:

Armor-piercing shells with depleted uranium cores are fired by aircraft at tanks. (The high density of the uranium makes them effective.) The uranium is called depleted because it has had its ^{235}U removed for reactor use and is nearly pure ^{238}U. Depleted uranium has been erroneously called non-radioactive. To demonstrate that this is wrong: (a) Calculate the activity of 60.0 g of pure ^{238}U. (b) Calculate the activity of 60.0 g of natural uranium, neglecting the ^{234}U and all daughter nuclides.

Exercise:

Problem:

The ceramic glaze on a red-orange Fiestaware plate is U_2O_3 and contains 50.0 grams of ^{238}U , but very little ^{235}U. (a) What is the activity of the plate? (b) Calculate the total energy that will be released by the ^{238}U decay. (c) If energy is worth 12.0 cents per $\text{kW} \cdot \text{h}$, what is the monetary value of the energy emitted? (These plates went out of production some 30 years ago, but are still available as collectibles.)

Solution:

(a) $1.68 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{Ci}$

(b) $8.65 \times 10^{10}\ \text{J}$

(c) $\$2.9 \times 10^{3}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Large amounts of depleted uranium (^{238}U) are available as a by-product of uranium processing for reactor fuel and weapons. Uranium is very dense and makes good counter weights for aircraft. Suppose you have a 4000-kg block of ^{238}U. (a) Find its activity. (b) How many calories per day are generated by thermalization of the decay energy? (c) Do you think you could detect this as heat? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

The *Galileo* space probe was launched on its long journey past several planets in 1989, with an ultimate goal of Jupiter. Its power source is 11.0 kg of ^{238}Pu, a by-product of nuclear weapons plutonium production. Electrical energy is generated thermoelectrically from the heat produced when the 5.59-MeV α particles emitted in each decay crash to a halt inside the plutonium and its shielding. The half-life of ^{238}Pu is 87.7 years. (a) What was the original activity of the ^{238}Pu in becquerel? (b) What power was emitted in kilowatts? (c) What power was emitted 12.0 y after launch? You may neglect any extra energy from daughter nuclides and any losses from escaping γ rays.

Solution:

(a) $6.97 \times 10^{15}\ \text{Bq}$

(b) 6.24 kW

(c) 5.67 kW

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider the generation of electricity by a radioactive isotope in a space probe, such as described in [link]. Construct a problem in which you calculate the mass of a radioactive isotope you need in order to

supply power for a long space flight. Among the things to consider are the isotope chosen, its half-life and decay energy, the power needs of the probe and the length of the flight.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A nuclear physicist finds $1.0\ \mu g$ of ^{236}U in a piece of uranium ore and assumes it is primordial since its half-life is $2.3 \times 10^7\ y$. (a) Calculate the amount of ^{236}Uthat would had to have been on Earth when it formed 4.5×10^9 y ago for $1.0\ \mu g$ to be left today. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What assumption is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Repeat [link] but include the 0.0055% natural abundance of ^{234}U with its 2.45×10^5 y half-life. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What assumption is responsible? (d) Where does the ^{234}U come from if it is not primordial?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

The manufacturer of a smoke alarm decides that the smallest current of α radiation he can detect is $1.00\ \mu A$. (a) Find the activity in curies of an α emitter that produces a $1.00\ \mu A$ current of α particles. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What assumption is responsible?

Solution:

(a) 84.5 Ci

(b) An extremely large activity, many orders of magnitude greater than permitted for home use.

(c) The assumption of $1.00\ \mu\text{A}$ is unreasonably large. Other methods can detect much smaller decay rates.

Glossary

becquerel
: SI unit for rate of decay of a radioactive material

half-life
: the time in which there is a 50% chance that a nucleus will decay

radioactive dating
: an application of radioactive decay in which the age of a material is determined by the amount of radioactivity of a particular type that occurs

decay constant
: quantity that is inversely proportional to the half-life and that is used in equation for number of nuclei as a function of time

carbon-14 dating
: a radioactive dating technique based on the radioactivity of carbon-14

activity
: the rate of decay for radioactive nuclides

rate of decay
: the number of radioactive events per unit time

curie
: the activity of 1g of ^{226}Ra, equal to $3.70 \times 10^{10}\ \text{Bq}$

Binding Energy

- Define and discuss binding energy.
- Calculate the binding energy per nucleon of a particle.

The more tightly bound a system is, the stronger the forces that hold it together and the greater the energy required to pull it apart. We can therefore learn about nuclear forces by examining how tightly bound the nuclei are. We define the **binding energy** (BE) of a nucleus to be *the energy required to completely disassemble it into separate protons and neutrons*. We can determine the BE of a nucleus from its rest mass. The two are connected through Einstein's famous relationship $E=(\Delta m)c^2$. A bound system has a *smaller* mass than its separate constituents; the more tightly the nucleons are bound together, the smaller the mass of the nucleus.

Imagine pulling a nuclide apart as illustrated in [link]. Work done to overcome the nuclear forces holding the nucleus together puts energy into the system. By definition, the energy input equals the binding energy BE. The pieces are at rest when separated, and so the energy put into them increases their total rest mass compared with what it was when they were glued together as a nucleus. That mass increase is thus $\Delta m=\text{BE}/c^2$. This difference in mass is known as *mass defect*. It implies that the mass of the nucleus is less than the sum of the masses of its constituent protons and neutrons. A nuclide ${}^{A}\text{X}$ has Z protons and N neutrons, so that the difference in mass is

Equation:

$$\Delta m=(Zm_p+\text{Nm}_n)-m_{\text{tot}}.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\text{BE}=(\Delta m)c^2=[(\text{Zm}_p+\text{Nm}_n)-m_{\text{tot}}]c^2,$$

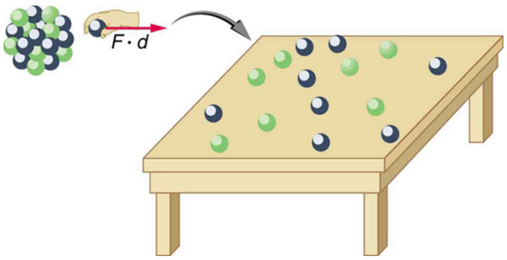
where m_{tot} is the mass of the nuclide ${}^{A}\text{X}$, m_p is the mass of a proton, and m_n is the mass of a neutron. Traditionally, we deal with the masses of

neutral atoms. To get atomic masses into the last equation, we first add Z electrons to m_{tot}, which gives $m\left({}^{A}\text{X}\right)$, the atomic mass of the nuclide. We then add Z electrons to the Z protons, which gives $\text{Zm}\left({}^{1}\text{H}\right)$, or Z times the mass of a hydrogen atom. Thus the binding energy of a nuclide ${}^{A}\text{X}$ is

Equation:

$$\text{BE} = \left\{[Zm({}^{1}\text{H}) + Nm_{n}] - m({}^{A}X)\right\}c^{2}.$$

The atomic masses can be found in Appendix A, most conveniently expressed in unified atomic mass units u ($1\text{ u} = 931.5\text{ MeV}/c^{2}$). BE is thus calculated from known atomic masses.



Work done to pull a nucleus apart into its constituent protons and neutrons increases the mass of the system. The work to disassemble the nucleus equals its binding energy BE. A bound system has less mass than the sum of its parts, especially noticeable in the nuclei, where forces and energies are very large.

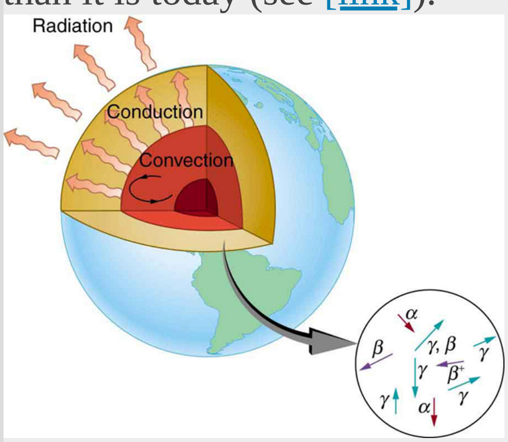
Note:

Things Great and Small

Nuclear Decay Helps Explain Earth’s Hot Interior

A puzzle created by radioactive dating of rocks is resolved by radioactive heating of Earth’s interior. This intriguing story is another example of how small-scale physics can explain large-scale phenomena.

Radioactive dating plays a role in determining the approximate age of the Earth. The oldest rocks on Earth solidified about 3.5×10^9 years ago—a number determined by uranium-238 dating. These rocks could only have solidified once the surface of the Earth had cooled sufficiently. The temperature of the Earth at formation can be estimated based on gravitational potential energy of the assemblage of pieces being converted to thermal energy. Using heat transfer concepts discussed in Thermodynamics it is then possible to calculate how long it would take for the surface to cool to rock-formation temperatures. The result is about 10^9 years. The first rocks formed have been solid for 3.5×10^9 years, so that the age of the Earth is approximately 4.5×10^9 years. There is a large body of other types of evidence (both Earth-bound and solar system characteristics are used) that supports this age. The puzzle is that, given its age and initial temperature, the center of the Earth should be much cooler than it is today (see [link]).



The center of the Earth cools by well-known heat transfer methods. Convection in the liquid regions and conduction

move thermal energy to the surface, where it radiates into cold, dark space. Given the age of the Earth and its initial temperature, it should have cooled to a lower temperature by now. The blowup shows that nuclear decay releases energy in the Earth's interior. This energy has slowed the cooling process and is responsible for the interior still being molten.

We know from seismic waves produced by earthquakes that parts of the interior of the Earth are liquid. Shear or transverse waves cannot travel through a liquid and are not transmitted through the Earth's core. Yet compression or longitudinal waves can pass through a liquid and do go through the core. From this information, the temperature of the interior can be estimated. As noticed, the interior should have cooled more from its initial temperature in the 4.5×10^9 years since its formation. In fact, it should have taken no more than about 10^9 years to cool to its present temperature. What is keeping it hot? The answer seems to be radioactive decay of primordial elements that were part of the material that formed the Earth (see the blowup in [link]).

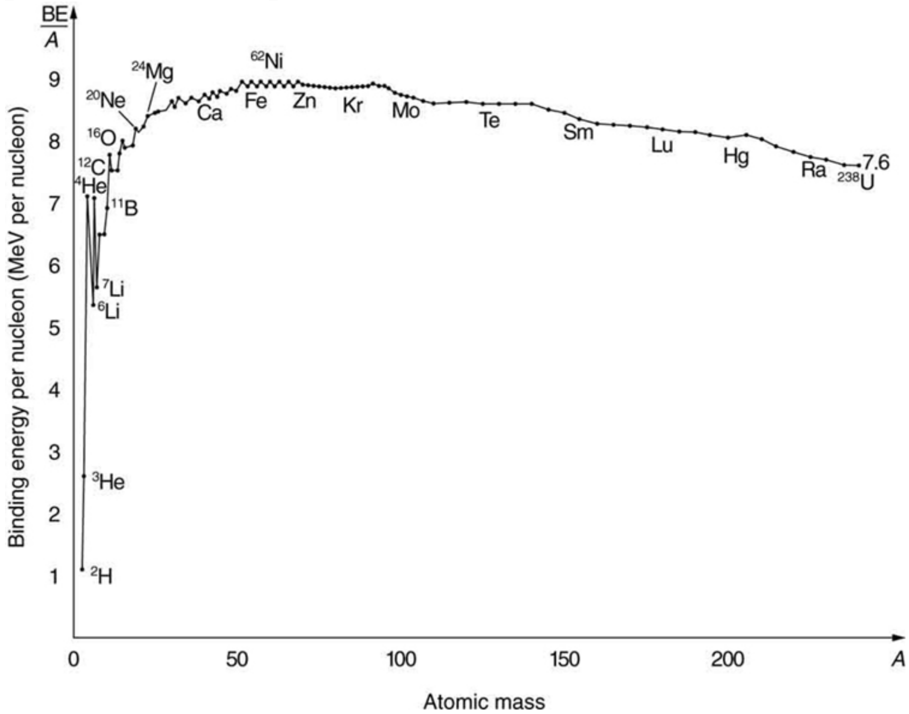
Nuclides such as ^{238}U and ^{40}K have half-lives similar to or longer than the age of the Earth, and their decay still contributes energy to the interior. Some of the primordial radioactive nuclides have unstable decay products that also release energy— ^{238}U has a long decay chain of these. Further, there were more of these primordial radioactive nuclides early in the life of the Earth, and thus the activity and energy contributed were greater then (perhaps by an order of magnitude). The amount of power created by these decays per cubic meter is very small. However, since a huge volume of

material lies deep below the surface, this relatively small amount of energy cannot escape quickly. The power produced near the surface has much less distance to go to escape and has a negligible effect on surface temperatures.

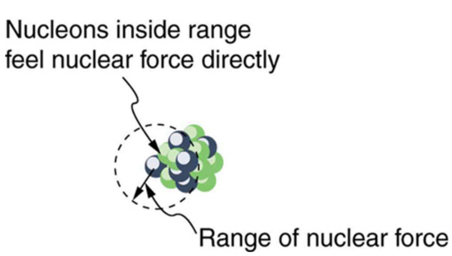
A final effect of this trapped radiation merits mention. Alpha decay produces helium nuclei, which form helium atoms when they are stopped and capture electrons. Most of the helium on Earth is obtained from wells and is produced in this manner. Any helium in the atmosphere will escape in geologically short times because of its high thermal velocity.

What patterns and insights are gained from an examination of the binding energy of various nuclides? First, we find that BE is approximately proportional to the number of nucleons A in any nucleus. About twice as much energy is needed to pull apart a nucleus like ^{24}Mg compared with pulling apart ^{12}C, for example. To help us look at other effects, we divide BE by A and consider the **binding energy per nucleon**, BE/A. The graph of BE/A in [link] reveals some very interesting aspects of nuclei. We see that the binding energy per nucleon averages about 8 MeV, but is lower for both the lightest and heaviest nuclei. This overall trend, in which nuclei with A equal to about 60 have the greatest BE/A and are thus the most tightly bound, is due to the combined characteristics of the attractive nuclear forces and the repulsive Coulomb force. It is especially important to note two things—the strong nuclear force is about 100 times stronger than the Coulomb force, *and* the nuclear forces are shorter in range compared to the Coulomb force. So, for low-mass nuclei, the nuclear attraction dominates and each added nucleon forms bonds with all others, causing progressively heavier nuclei to have progressively greater values of BE/A. This continues up to $A \approx 60$, roughly corresponding to the mass number of iron. Beyond that, new nucleons added to a nucleus will be too far from some others to feel their nuclear attraction. Added protons, however, feel the repulsion of all other protons, since the Coulomb force is longer in range. Coulomb repulsion grows for progressively heavier nuclei, but nuclear attraction remains about the same, and so BE/A becomes smaller. This is why stable nuclei heavier than $A \approx 40$ have more neutrons than

protons. Coulomb repulsion is reduced by having more neutrons to keep the protons farther apart (see [link]).



A graph of average binding energy per nucleon, BE/A, for stable nuclei. The most tightly bound nuclei are those with A near 60, where the attractive nuclear force has its greatest effect. At higher A s, the Coulomb repulsion progressively reduces the binding energy per nucleon, because the nuclear force is short ranged. The spikes on the curve are very tightly bound nuclides and indicate shell closures.



The nuclear force is

attractive and stronger than the Coulomb force, but it is short ranged. In low-mass nuclei, each nucleon feels the nuclear attraction of all others. In larger nuclei, the range of the nuclear force, shown for a single nucleon, is smaller than the size of the nucleus, but the Coulomb repulsion from all protons reaches all others. If the nucleus is large enough, the Coulomb repulsion can add to overcome the nuclear attraction.

There are some noticeable spikes on the BE/A graph, which represent particularly tightly bound nuclei. These spikes reveal further details of nuclear forces, such as confirming that closed-shell nuclei (those with magic numbers of protons or neutrons or both) are more tightly bound. The spikes also indicate that some nuclei with even numbers for Z and N, and with $Z = N$, are exceptionally tightly bound. This finding can be correlated with some of the cosmic abundances of the elements. The most common elements in the universe, as determined by observations of atomic spectra from outer space, are hydrogen, followed by $^4\mathrm{He}$, with much smaller amounts of $^{12}\mathrm{C}$ and other elements. It should be noted that the heavier elements are created in supernova explosions, while the lighter ones are produced by nuclear fusion during the normal life cycles of stars, as will be discussed in subsequent chapters. The most common elements have the

most tightly bound nuclei. It is also no accident that one of the most tightly bound light nuclei is ^4He, emitted in α decay.

Example:

What Is BE/A for an Alpha Particle?

Calculate the binding energy per nucleon of ^4He, the α particle.

Strategy

To find BE/A, we first find BE using the Equation $\text{BE} = \{[\text{Zm}(^1\text{H}) + \text{Nm}_n] - m(^A\text{X})\}c^2$ and then divide by A. This is straightforward once we have looked up the appropriate atomic masses in Appendix A.

Solution

The binding energy for a nucleus is given by the equation

Equation:

$$\text{BE} = \{[\text{Zm}(^1\text{H}) + \text{Nm}_n] - m(^A\text{X})\}c^2.$$

For ^4He, we have $Z = N = 2$; thus,

Equation:

$$\text{BE} = \{[2m(^1\text{H}) + 2m_n] - m(^4\text{He})\}c^2.$$

Appendix A gives these masses as $m(^4\text{He}) = 4.002602\ \text{u}$, $m(^1\text{H}) = 1.007825\ \text{u}$, and $m_n = 1.008665\ \text{u}$. Thus,

Equation:

$$\text{BE} = (0.030378\ \text{u})c^2.$$

Noting that $1\ \text{u} = 931.5\ \text{MeV}/c^2$, we find

Equation:

$$\text{BE} = (0.030378)(931.5\ \text{MeV}/c^2)c^2 = 28.3\ \text{MeV}.$$

Since $A = 4$, we see that BE/A is this number divided by 4, or

Equation:

$$\text{BE}/A = 7.07\ \text{MeV/nucleon.}$$

Discussion
This is a large binding energy per nucleon compared with those for other low-mass nuclei, which have $\text{BE}/A \approx 3\ \text{MeV/nucleon}$. This indicates that ${}^{4}\text{He}$ is tightly bound compared with its neighbors on the chart of the nuclides. You can see the spike representing this value of BE/A for ${}^{4}\text{He}$ on the graph in [link]. This is why ${}^{4}\text{He}$ is stable. Since ${}^{4}\text{He}$ is tightly bound, it has less mass than other $A = 4$ nuclei and, therefore, cannot spontaneously decay into them. The large binding energy also helps to explain why some nuclei undergo α decay. Smaller mass in the decay products can mean energy release, and such decays can be spontaneous. Further, it can happen that two protons and two neutrons in a nucleus can randomly find themselves together, experience the exceptionally large nuclear force that binds this combination, and act as a ${}^{4}\text{He}$ unit within the nucleus, at least for a while. In some cases, the ${}^{4}\text{He}$ escapes, and α decay has then taken place.

There is more to be learned from nuclear binding energies. The general trend in BE/A is fundamental to energy production in stars, and to fusion and fission energy sources on Earth, for example. This is one of the applications of nuclear physics covered in Medical Applications of Nuclear Physics. The abundance of elements on Earth, in stars, and in the universe as a whole is related to the binding energy of nuclei and has implications for the continued expansion of the universe.

Problem-Solving Strategies

For Reaction And Binding Energies and Activity Calculations in Nuclear Physics

1. *Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns)*. This will allow you to decide whether the energy of a decay or nuclear reaction is involved, for example, or whether the problem is primarily concerned with activity (rate of decay).

2. *Make a list of what is given or can be inferred from the problem as stated (identify the knowns).*
3. *For reaction and binding-energy problems, we use atomic rather than nuclear masses.* Since the masses of neutral atoms are used, you must count the number of electrons involved. If these do not balance (such as in β^+ decay), then an energy adjustment of 0.511 MeV per electron must be made. Also note that atomic masses may not be given in a problem; they can be found in tables.
4. *For problems involving activity, the relationship of activity to half-life, and the number of nuclei given in the equation* $R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}$ *can be very useful.* Owing to the fact that number of nuclei is involved, you will also need to be familiar with moles and Avogadro's number.
5. *Perform the desired calculation; keep careful track of plus and minus signs as well as powers of 10.*
6. *Check the answer to see if it is reasonable: Does it make sense?* Compare your results with worked examples and other information in the text. (Heeding the advice in Step 5 will also help you to be certain of your result.) You must understand the problem conceptually to be able to determine whether the numerical result is reasonable.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Nuclear Fission
Start a chain reaction, or introduce non-radioactive isotopes to prevent one. Control energy production in a nuclear reactor!

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/01caf0d0-116f-11e6-b891-abfdaa77b03b/nuclear-fission/#sim-one-nucleus

Section Summary

- The binding energy (BE) of a nucleus is the energy needed to separate it into individual protons and neutrons. In terms of atomic masses,
Equation:

$$\mathrm{BE} = \{[\mathrm{Zm}(^{1}\mathrm{H}) + \mathrm{Nm}_{n}] - m(^{A}\mathrm{X})\}c^{2},$$

where $m\left(^{1}\mathrm{H}\right)$ is the mass of a hydrogen atom, $m\left(^{A}\mathrm{X}\right)$ is the atomic mass of the nuclide, and m_{n} is the mass of a neutron. Patterns in the binding energy per nucleon, BE/A, reveal details of the nuclear force. The larger the BE/A, the more stable the nucleus.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is the number of neutrons greater than the number of protons in stable nuclei having A greater than about 40, and why is this effect more pronounced for the heaviest nuclei?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

$^{2}\mathrm{H}$ is a loosely bound isotope of hydrogen. Called deuterium or heavy hydrogen, it is stable but relatively rare—it is 0.015% of natural hydrogen. Note that deuterium has $Z = N$, which should tend to make it more tightly bound, but both are odd numbers. Calculate BE/A, the binding energy per nucleon, for $^{2}\mathrm{H}$ and compare it with the approximate value obtained from the graph in [link].

Solution:

1.112 MeV, consistent with graph

Exercise:

Problem:

^{56}Fe is among the most tightly bound of all nuclides. It is more than 90% of natural iron. Note that ^{56}Fe has even numbers of both protons and neutrons. Calculate BE/A, the binding energy per nucleon, for ^{56}Fe and compare it with the approximate value obtained from the graph in [link].

Exercise:

Problem:

^{209}Bi is the heaviest stable nuclide, and its BE/A is low compared with medium-mass nuclides. Calculate BE/A, the binding energy per nucleon, for ^{209}Bi and compare it with the approximate value obtained from the graph in [link].

Solution:

7.848 MeV, consistent with graph

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate BE/A for ^{235}U, the rarer of the two most common uranium isotopes. (b) Calculate BE/A for ^{238}U. (Most of uranium is ^{238}U.) Note that ^{238}U has even numbers of both protons and neutrons. Is the BE/A of ^{238}U significantly different from that of ^{235}U ?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate BE/A for ^{12}C. Stable and relatively tightly bound, this nuclide is most of natural carbon. (b) Calculate BE/A for ^{14}C. Is the difference in BE/A between ^{12}C and ^{14}C significant? One is stable and common, and the other is unstable and rare.

Solution:

(a) 7.680 MeV, consistent with graph

(b) 7.520 MeV, consistent with graph. Not significantly different from value for ${}^{12}\text{C}$, but sufficiently lower to allow decay into another nuclide that is more tightly bound.

Exercise:

Problem:

The fact that BE/A is greatest for A near 60 implies that the range of the nuclear force is about the diameter of such nuclides. (a) Calculate the diameter of an $A = 60$ nucleus. (b) Compare BE/A for ${}^{58}\text{Ni}$ and ${}^{90}\text{Sr}$. The first is one of the most tightly bound nuclides, while the second is larger and less tightly bound.

Exercise:

Problem:

The purpose of this problem is to show in three ways that the binding energy of the electron in a hydrogen atom is negligible compared with the masses of the proton and electron. (a) Calculate the mass equivalent in u of the 13.6-eV binding energy of an electron in a hydrogen atom, and compare this with the mass of the hydrogen atom obtained from Appendix A. (b) Subtract the mass of the proton given in [link] from the mass of the hydrogen atom given in Appendix A. You will find the difference is equal to the electron's mass to three digits, implying the binding energy is small in comparison. (c) Take the ratio of the binding energy of the electron (13.6 eV) to the energy equivalent of the electron's mass (0.511 MeV). (d) Discuss how your answers confirm the stated purpose of this problem.

Solution:

(a) 1.46×10^{-8} u vs. 1.007825 u for ${}^{1}\text{H}$

(b) 0.000549 u

(c) 2.66×10^{-5}

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

A particle physicist discovers a neutral particle with a mass of 2.02733 u that he assumes is two neutrons bound together. (a) Find the binding energy. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) -9.315 MeV

(b) The negative binding energy implies an unbound system.

(c) This assumption that it is two bound neutrons is incorrect.

Glossary

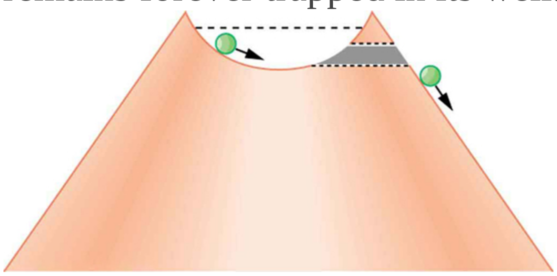
binding energy
: the energy needed to separate nucleus into individual protons and neutrons

binding energy per nucleon
: the binding energy calculated per nucleon; it reveals the details of the nuclear force—larger the BE/A, the more stable the nucleus

Tunneling

- Define and discuss tunneling.
- Define potential barrier.
- Explain quantum tunneling.

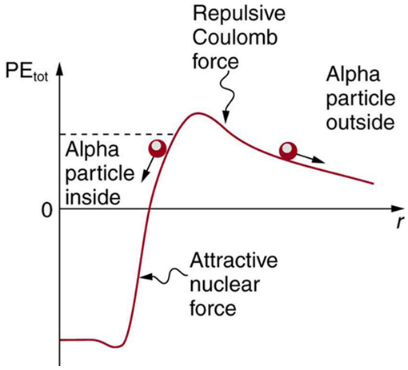
Protons and neutrons are *bound* inside nuclei, that means energy must be supplied to break them away. The situation is analogous to a marble in a bowl that can roll around but lacks the energy to get over the rim. It is bound inside the bowl (see [link]). If the marble could get over the rim, it would gain kinetic energy by rolling down outside. However classically, if the marble does not have enough kinetic energy to get over the rim, it remains forever trapped in its well.



The marble in this semicircular bowl at the top of a volcano has enough kinetic energy to get to the altitude of the dashed line, but not enough to get over the rim, so that it is trapped forever. If it could find a tunnel through the barrier, it would escape, roll downhill, and gain kinetic energy.

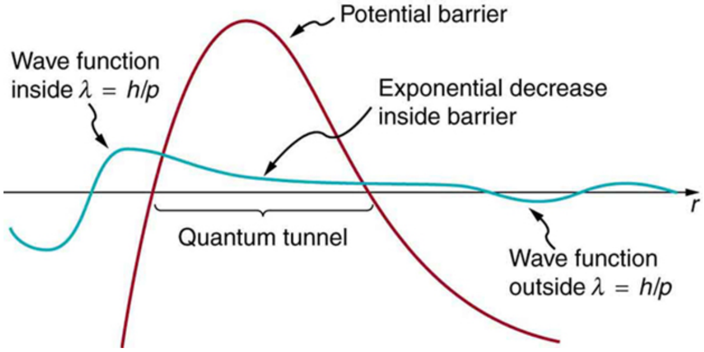
In a nucleus, the attractive nuclear potential is analogous to the bowl at the top of a volcano (where the "volcano" refers only to the shape). Protons and neutrons have kinetic energy, but it is about 8 MeV less than that needed to get out (see [link]). That is, they are bound by an average of 8 MeV per

nucleon. The slope of the hill outside the bowl is analogous to the repulsive Coulomb potential for a nucleus, such as for an α particle outside a positive nucleus. In α decay, two protons and two neutrons spontaneously break away as a ^4He unit. Yet the protons and neutrons do not have enough kinetic energy to get over the rim. So how does the α particle get out?



Nucleons within an atomic nucleus are bound or trapped by the attractive nuclear force, as shown in this simplified potential energy curve. An α particle outside the range of the nuclear force feels the repulsive Coulomb force. The α particle inside the nucleus does not have enough kinetic energy to get over the rim, yet it does manage to get out by quantum mechanical tunneling.

The answer was supplied in 1928 by the Russian physicist George Gamow (1904–1968). The α particle tunnels through a region of space it is forbidden to be in, and it comes out of the side of the nucleus. Like an electron making a transition between orbits around an atom, it travels from one point to another without ever having been in between. [link] indicates how this works. The wave function of a quantum mechanical particle varies smoothly, going from within an atomic nucleus (on one side of a potential energy barrier) to outside the nucleus (on the other side of the potential energy barrier). Inside the barrier, the wave function does not become zero but decreases exponentially, and we do not observe the particle inside the barrier. The probability of finding a particle is related to the square of its wave function, and so there is a small probability of finding the particle outside the barrier, which implies that the particle can tunnel through the barrier. This process is called **barrier penetration** or **quantum mechanical tunneling**. This concept was developed in theory by J. Robert Oppenheimer (who led the development of the first nuclear bombs during World War II) and was used by Gamow and others to describe α decay.

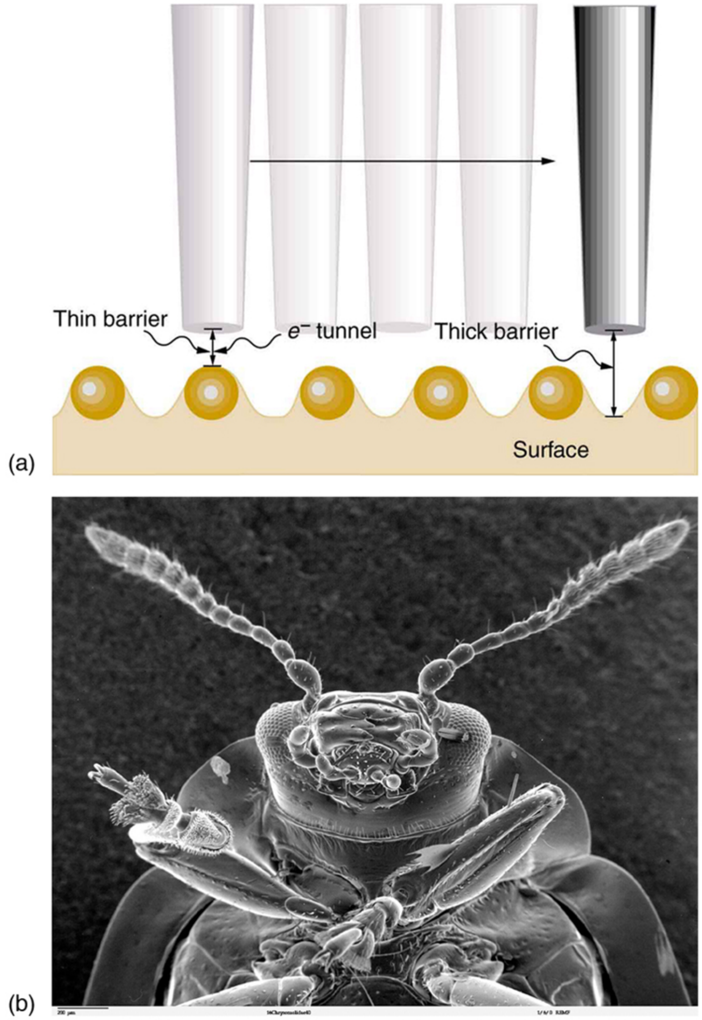


The wave function representing a quantum mechanical particle must vary smoothly, going from within the nucleus (to the left of the barrier) to outside the nucleus (to the right of the barrier). Inside the barrier, the wave function does not abruptly become zero; rather, it decreases exponentially. Outside the barrier, the

wave function is small but finite, and there it smoothly becomes sinusoidal. Owing to the fact that there is a small probability of finding the particle outside the barrier, the particle can tunnel through the barrier.

Good ideas explain more than one thing. In addition to qualitatively explaining how the four nucleons in an α particle can get out of the nucleus, the detailed theory also explains quantitatively the half-life of various nuclei that undergo α decay. This description is what Gamow and others devised, and it works for α decay half-lives that vary by 17 orders of magnitude. Experiments have shown that the more energetic the α decay of a particular nuclide is, the shorter is its half-life. **Tunneling** explains this in the following manner: For the decay to be more energetic, the nucleons must have more energy in the nucleus and should be able to ascend a little closer to the rim. The barrier is therefore not as thick for more energetic decay, and the exponential decrease of the wave function inside the barrier is not as great. Thus the probability of finding the particle outside the barrier is greater, and the half-life is shorter.

Tunneling as an effect also occurs in quantum mechanical systems other than nuclei. Electrons trapped in solids can tunnel from one object to another if the barrier between the objects is thin enough. The process is the same in principle as described for α decay. It is far more likely for a thin barrier than a thick one. Scanning tunneling electron microscopes function on this principle. The current of electrons that travels between a probe and a sample tunnels through a barrier and is very sensitive to its thickness, allowing detection of individual atoms as shown in [link].



(a) A scanning tunneling electron microscope can detect extremely small variations in dimensions, such as individual atoms. Electrons tunnel quantum mechanically between the probe and the sample. The probability of tunneling is extremely sensitive to barrier thickness, so that the electron current is a sensitive indicator of surface features. (b) Head and mouthparts of *Coleoptera Chrysomelidea* as seen through an electron microscope (credit: Louisa Howard, Dartmouth College)

Note:
PhET Explorations: Quantum Tunneling and Wave Packets
Watch quantum "particles" tunnel through barriers. Explore the properties of the wave functions that describe these particles.

Quantum Tunneling and Wave Packets

Section Summary

- Tunneling is a quantum mechanical process of potential energy barrier penetration. The concept was first applied to explain α decay, but tunneling is found to occur in other quantum mechanical systems.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

A physics student caught breaking conservation laws is imprisoned. She leans against the cell wall hoping to tunnel out quantum mechanically. Explain why her chances are negligible. (This is so in any classical situation.)

Exercise:

Problem:

When a nucleus α decays, does the α particle move continuously from inside the nucleus to outside? That is, does it travel each point along an imaginary line from inside to out? Explain.

Problems-Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Derive an approximate relationship between the energy of α decay and half-life using the following data. It may be useful to graph the log of $t_{1/2}$ against E_α to find some straight-line relationship.

Nuclide	E_α (MeV)	$t_{1/2}$
^{216}Ra	9.5	0.18 μs
^{194}Po	7.0	0.7 s
^{240}Cm	6.4	27 d
^{226}Ra	4.91	1600 y
^{232}Th	4.1	1.4×10^{10} y

Energy and Half-Life for α Decay

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A 2.00-T magnetic field is applied perpendicular to the path of charged particles in a bubble chamber. What is the radius of curvature of the path of a 10 MeV proton in this field? Neglect any slowing along its path.

Solution:

22.8 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Write the decay equation for the α decay of ^{235}U. (b) What energy is released in this decay? The mass of the daughter nuclide is 231.036298 u. (c) Assuming the residual nucleus is formed in its ground state, how much energy goes to the α particle?

Solution:

(a) ${}^{235}_{92}\text{U}_{143} \to {}^{231}_{90}\text{Th}_{141} + {}^{4}_{2}\text{He}_{2}$

(b) 4.679 MeV

(c) 4.599 MeV

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

The relatively scarce naturally occurring calcium isotope ^{48}Ca has a half-life of about 2×10^{16} y. (a) A small sample of this isotope is labeled as having an activity of 1.0 Ci. What is the mass of the ^{48}Ca in the sample? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What assumption is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A physicist scatters γ rays from a substance and sees evidence of a nucleus 7.5×10^{-13} m in radius. (a) Find the atomic mass of such a nucleus. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What is unreasonable about the assumption?

Solution:

a) 2.4×10^{8} u

(b) The greatest known atomic masses are about 260. This result found in (a) is extremely large.

(c) The assumed radius is much too large to be reasonable.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A frazzled theoretical physicist reckons that all conservation laws are obeyed in the decay of a proton into a neutron, positron, and neutrino (as in β^{+} decay of a nucleus) and sends a paper to a journal to announce the reaction as a possible end of the universe due to the spontaneous decay of protons. (a) What energy is released in this decay? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What assumption is responsible?

Solution:

(a) –1.805 MeV

(b) Negative energy implies energy input is necessary and the reaction cannot be spontaneous.

(c) Although all conversation laws are obeyed, energy must be supplied, so the assumption of spontaneous decay is incorrect.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider the decay of radioactive substances in the Earth's interior. The energy emitted is converted to thermal energy that reaches the earth's surface and is radiated away into cold dark space. Construct a problem in which you estimate the activity in a cubic meter of earth rock? And then calculate the power generated. Calculate how much power must cross each square meter of the Earth's surface if the power is dissipated at the same rate as it is generated. Among the things to consider are the activity per cubic meter, the energy per decay, and the size of the Earth.

Glossary

barrier penetration
: quantum mechanical effect whereby a particle has a nonzero probability to cross through a potential energy barrier despite not having sufficient energy to pass over the barrier; also called quantum mechanical tunneling

quantum mechanical tunneling
: quantum mechanical effect whereby a particle has a nonzero probability to cross through a potential energy barrier despite not having sufficient energy to pass over the barrier; also called barrier penetration

tunneling
: a quantum mechanical process of potential energy barrier penetration

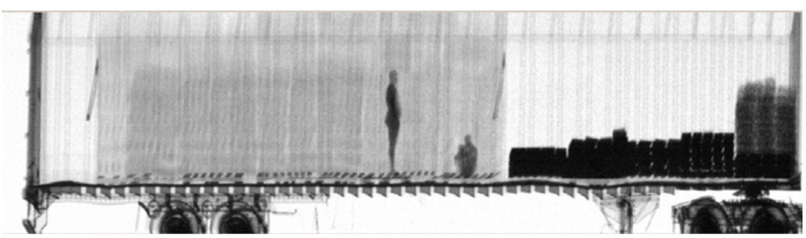
Introduction to Applications of Nuclear Physics
class="introduction"

- Provide examples of various nuclear physics applications.

Tori Randall, Ph.D., curator for the Department of Physical Anthropology at the San Diego Museum of Man, prepares a 550-year-old Peruvian child mummy for a CT scan at Naval Medical Center San Diego. (credit: U.S. Navy photo by Mass Communication Specialist 3rd Class Samantha A. Lewis)

Applications of nuclear physics have become an integral part of modern life. From the bone scan that detects a cancer to the radioiodine treatment that cures another, nuclear radiation has diagnostic and therapeutic effects on medicine. From the fission power reactor to the hope of controlled fusion, nuclear energy is now commonplace and is a part of our plans for the future. Yet, the destructive potential of nuclear weapons haunts us, as does the possibility of nuclear reactor accidents. Certainly, several applications of nuclear physics escape our view, as seen in [link]. Not only has nuclear physics revealed secrets of nature, it has an inevitable impact based on its applications, as they are intertwined with human values. Because of its potential for alleviation of suffering, and its power as an ultimate destructor of life, nuclear physics is often viewed with ambivalence. But it provides perhaps the best example that applications can be good or evil, while knowledge itself is neither.

Customs officers inspect vehicles using neutron irradiation. Cars and trucks pass through portable x-ray machines that reveal their contents. (credit: Gerald L. Nino, CBP, U.S. Dept. of Homeland Security)

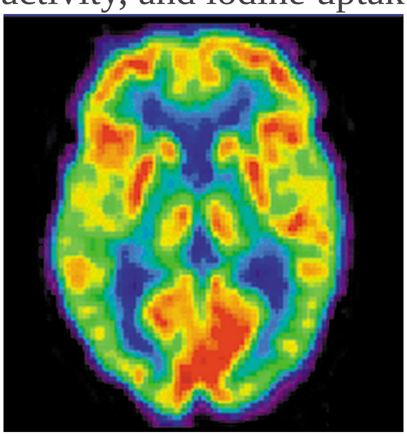


This image shows two stowaways caught illegally entering the United States from Canada. (credit: U.S. Customs and Border Protection)

Medical Imaging and Diagnostics

- Explain the working principle behind an anger camera.
- Describe the SPECT and PET imaging techniques.

A host of medical imaging techniques employ nuclear radiation. What makes nuclear radiation so useful? First, γ radiation can easily penetrate tissue; hence, it is a useful probe to monitor conditions inside the body. Second, nuclear radiation depends on the nuclide and not on the chemical compound it is in, so that a radioactive nuclide can be put into a compound designed for specific purposes. The compound is said to be **tagged**. A tagged compound used for medical purposes is called a **radiopharmaceutical**. Radiation detectors external to the body can determine the location and concentration of a radiopharmaceutical to yield medically useful information. For example, certain drugs are concentrated in inflamed regions of the body, and this information can aid diagnosis and treatment as seen in [link]. Another application utilizes a radiopharmaceutical which the body sends to bone cells, particularly those that are most active, to detect cancerous tumors or healing points. Images can then be produced of such bone scans. Radioisotopes are also used to determine the functioning of body organs, such as blood flow, heart muscle activity, and iodine uptake in the thyroid gland.



A radiopharmaceutical is used to produce this brain image of a patient with

Alzheimer’s disease. Certain features are computer enhanced. (credit: National Institutes of Health)

Medical Application

[link] lists certain medical diagnostic uses of radiopharmaceuticals, including isotopes and activities that are typically administered. Many organs can be imaged with a variety of nuclear isotopes replacing a stable element by a radioactive isotope. One common diagnostic employs iodine to image the thyroid, since iodine is concentrated in that organ. The most active thyroid cells, including cancerous cells, concentrate the most iodine and, therefore, emit the most radiation. Conversely, hypothyroidism is indicated by lack of iodine uptake. Note that there is more than one isotope that can be used for several types of scans. Another common nuclear diagnostic is the thallium scan for the cardiovascular system, particularly used to evaluate blockages in the coronary arteries and examine heart activity. The salt TlCl can be used, because it acts like NaCl and follows the blood. Gallium-67 accumulates where there is rapid cell growth, such as in tumors and sites of infection. Hence, it is useful in cancer imaging. Usually, the patient receives the injection one day and has a whole body scan 3 or 4 days later because it can take several days for the gallium to build up.

Procedure, isotope	**Typical activity (mCi), where** $1\ \text{mCi} = 3.7 \times 10^{7}\ \text{Bq}$

Procedure, isotope	**Typical activity (mCi), where** $1\ \text{mCi} = 3.7 \times 10^7\ \text{Bq}$
Brain scan	
^{99m}Tc	7.5
^{113m}In	7.5
$^{11}\text{C (PET)}$	20
$^{13}\text{N (PET)}$	20
$^{15}\text{O (PET)}$	50
$^{18}\text{F (PET)}$	10
Lung scan	
^{99m}Tc	2

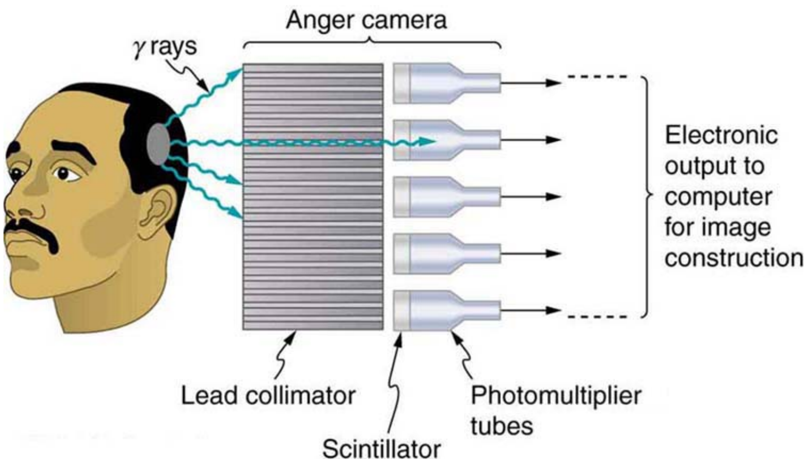
Procedure, isotope	Typical activity (mCi), where $1\ \mathrm{mCi} = 3.7 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{Bq}$
$^{133}\mathrm{Xe}$	7.5
Cardiovascular blood pool	
$^{131}\mathrm{I}$	0.2
$^{99\mathrm{m}}\mathrm{Tc}$	2
Cardiovascular arterial flow	
$^{201}\mathrm{Tl}$	3
$^{24}\mathrm{Na}$	7.5
Thyroid scan	
$^{131}\mathrm{I}$	0.05
$^{123}\mathrm{I}$	0.07

Procedure, isotope	**Typical activity (mCi), where** $1\ \mathrm{mCi} = 3.7 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{Bq}$
Liver scan	
$^{198}\mathrm{Au}$ (colloid)	0.1
$^{99\mathrm{m}}\mathrm{Tc}$ (colloid)	2
Bone scan	
$^{85}\mathrm{Sr}$	0.1
$^{99\mathrm{m}}\mathrm{Tc}$	10
Kidney scan	
$^{197}\mathrm{Hg}$	0.1
$^{99\mathrm{m}}\mathrm{Tc}$	1.5

Diagnostic Uses of Radiopharmaceuticals

Note that [link] lists many diagnostic uses for ${}^{99m}\text{Tc}$, where “m” stands for a metastable state of the technetium nucleus. Perhaps 80 percent of all radiopharmaceutical procedures employ ${}^{99m}\text{Tc}$ because of its many advantages. One is that the decay of its metastable state produces a single, easily identified 0.142-MeV γ ray. Additionally, the radiation dose to the patient is limited by the short 6.0-h half-life of ${}^{99m}\text{Tc}$. And, although its half-life is short, it is easily and continuously produced on site. The basic process for production is neutron activation of molybdenum, which quickly β decays into ${}^{99m}\text{Tc}$. Technetium-99m can be attached to many compounds to allow the imaging of the skeleton, heart, lungs, kidneys, etc.

[link] shows one of the simpler methods of imaging the concentration of nuclear activity, employing a device called an **Anger camera** or **gamma camera**. A piece of lead with holes bored through it collimates γ rays emerging from the patient, allowing detectors to receive γ rays from specific directions only. The computer analysis of detector signals produces an image. One of the disadvantages of this detection method is that there is no depth information (i.e., it provides a two-dimensional view of the tumor as opposed to a three-dimensional view), because radiation from any location under that detector produces a signal.



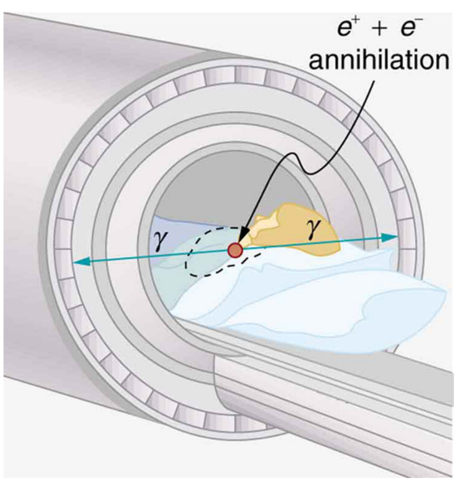
An Anger or gamma camera consists of a lead collimator and an array of detectors. Gamma rays produce light flashes in the

scintillators. The light output is converted to an electrical signal by the photomultipliers. A computer constructs an image from the detector output.

Imaging techniques much like those in x-ray computed tomography (CT) scans use nuclear activity in patients to form three-dimensional images. [link] shows a patient in a circular array of detectors that may be stationary or rotated, with detector output used by a computer to construct a detailed image. This technique is called **single-photon-emission computed tomography(SPECT)** or sometimes simply SPET. The spatial resolution of this technique is poor, about 1 cm, but the contrast (i.e. the difference in visual properties that makes an object distinguishable from other objects and the background) is good.

SPECT uses a geometry similar to a CT scanner to form an image of the concentration of a radiopharmaceutical compound. (credit: Woldo, Wikimedia Commons)

Images produced by β^+ emitters have become important in recent years. When the emitted positron (β^+) encounters an electron, mutual annihilation occurs, producing two γ rays. These γ rays have identical 0.511-MeV energies (the energy comes from the destruction of an electron or positron mass) and they move directly away from one another, allowing detectors to determine their point of origin accurately, as shown in [link]. The system is called **positron emission tomography (PET)**. It requires detectors on opposite sides to simultaneously (i.e., at the same time) detect photons of 0.511-MeV energy and utilizes computer imaging techniques similar to those in SPECT and CT scans. Examples of β^+ -emitting isotopes used in PET are ^{11}C, ^{13}N, ^{15}O, and ^{18}F, as seen in [link]. This list includes C, N, and O, and so they have the advantage of being able to function as tags for natural body compounds. Its resolution of 0.5 cm is better than that of SPECT; the accuracy and sensitivity of PET scans make them useful for examining the brain's anatomy and function. The brain's use of oxygen and water can be monitored with ^{15}O. PET is used extensively for diagnosing brain disorders. It can note decreased metabolism in certain regions prior to a confirmation of Alzheimer's disease. PET can locate regions in the brain that become active when a person carries out specific activities, such as speaking, closing their eyes, and so on.



A PET system takes

advantage of the two identical γ-ray photons produced by positron-electron annihilation. These γ rays are emitted in opposite directions, so that the line along which each pair is emitted is determined. Various events detected by several pairs of detectors are then analyzed by the computer to form an accurate image.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Simplified MRI
Is it a tumor? Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) can tell. Your head is full of tiny radio transmitters (the nuclear spins of the hydrogen nuclei of your water molecules). In an MRI unit, these little radios can be made to broadcast their positions, giving a detailed picture of the inside of your head.

Simplified MRI

Section Summary

- Radiopharmaceuticals are compounds that are used for medical imaging and therapeutics.
- The process of attaching a radioactive substance is called tagging.
- [link] lists certain diagnostic uses of radiopharmaceuticals including the isotope and activity typically used in diagnostics.
- One common imaging device is the Anger camera, which consists of a lead collimator, radiation detectors, and an analysis computer.
- Tomography performed with γ-emitting radiopharmaceuticals is called SPECT and has the advantages of x-ray CT scans coupled with organ- and function-specific drugs.
- PET is a similar technique that uses β^+ emitters and detects the two annihilation γ rays, which aid to localize the source.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

In terms of radiation dose, what is the major difference between medical diagnostic uses of radiation and medical therapeutic uses?

Exercise:

Problem:

One of the methods used to limit radiation dose to the patient in medical imaging is to employ isotopes with short half-lives. How would this limit the dose?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A neutron generator uses an α source, such as radium, to bombard beryllium, inducing the reaction ${}^{4}\mathrm{He} + {}^{9}\mathrm{Be} \rightarrow {}^{12}\mathrm{C} + n$. Such neutron sources are called RaBe sources, or PuBe sources if they use plutonium to get the α s. Calculate the energy output of the reaction in MeV.

Solution:

5.701 MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

Neutrons from a source (perhaps the one discussed in the preceding problem) bombard natural molybdenum, which is 24 percent ${}^{98}\mathrm{Mo}$. What is the energy output of the reaction ${}^{98}\mathrm{Mo} + n \rightarrow {}^{99}\mathrm{Mo} + \gamma$? The mass of ${}^{98}\mathrm{Mo}$ is given in Appendix A: Atomic Masses, and that of ${}^{99}\mathrm{Mo}$ is 98.907711 u.

Exercise:

Problem:

The purpose of producing ${}^{99}\mathrm{Mo}$ (usually by neutron activation of natural molybdenum, as in the preceding problem) is to produce ${}^{99\mathrm{m}}\mathrm{Tc}$. Using the rules, verify that the β^{-} decay of ${}^{99}\mathrm{Mo}$ produces ${}^{99\mathrm{m}}\mathrm{Tc}$. (Most ${}^{99\mathrm{m}}\mathrm{Tc}$ nuclei produced in this decay are left in a metastable excited state denoted ${}^{99\mathrm{m}}\mathrm{Tc}$.)

Solution:

${}^{99}_{42}\mathrm{Mo}_{57} \rightarrow {}^{99}_{43}\mathrm{Tc}_{56} + \beta^{-} + v_{e}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Two annihilation γ rays in a PET scan originate at the same point and travel to detectors on either side of the patient. If the point of origin is 9.00 cm closer to one of the detectors, what is the difference in arrival times of the photons? (This could be used to give position information, but the time difference is small enough to make it difficult.)

(b) How accurately would you need to be able to measure arrival time differences to get a position resolution of 1.00 mm?

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] indicates that 7.50 mCi of ^{99m}Tc is used in a brain scan. What is the mass of technetium?

Solution:

1.43×10^{-9} g

Exercise:

Problem:

The activities of ^{131}I and ^{123}I used in thyroid scans are given in [link] to be 50 and $70\ \mu\text{Ci}$, respectively. Find and compare the masses of ^{131}I and ^{123}I in such scans, given their respective half-lives are 8.04 d and 13.2 h. The masses are so small that the radioiodine is usually mixed with stable iodine as a carrier to ensure normal chemistry and distribution in the body.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Neutron activation of sodium, which is 100% ^{23}Na, produces ^{24}Na, which is used in some heart scans, as seen in [link]. The equation for the reaction is $^{23}\text{Na} + n \rightarrow {}^{24}\text{Na} + \gamma$. Find its energy output, given the mass of ^{24}Na is 23.990962 u.

(b) What mass of ^{24}Na produces the needed 5.0-mCi activity, given its half-life is 15.0 h?

Solution:

(a) 6.958 MeV

(b) 5.7×10^{-10} g

Glossary

Anger camera
: a common medical imaging device that uses a scintillator connected to a series of photomultipliers

gamma camera
: another name for an Anger camera

positron emission tomography (PET)
: tomography technique that uses β^{+} emitters and detects the two annihilation γ rays, aiding in source localization

radiopharmaceutical
: compound used for medical imaging

single-photon-emission computed tomography (SPECT)
: tomography performed with γ-emitting radiopharmaceuticals

tagged
: process of attaching a radioactive substance to a chemical compound

Biological Effects of Ionizing Radiation

- Define various units of radiation.
- Describe RBE.

We hear many seemingly contradictory things about the biological effects of ionizing radiation. It can cause cancer, burns, and hair loss, yet it is used to treat and even cure cancer. How do we understand these effects? Once again, there is an underlying simplicity in nature, even in complicated biological organisms. All the effects of ionizing radiation on biological tissue can be understood by knowing that **ionizing radiation affects molecules within cells, particularly DNA molecules.**

Let us take a brief look at molecules within cells and how cells operate. Cells have long, double-helical DNA molecules containing chemical codes called genetic codes that govern the function and processes undertaken by the cell. It is for unraveling the double-helical structure of DNA that James Watson, Francis Crick, and Maurice Wilkins received the Nobel Prize. Damage to DNA consists of breaks in chemical bonds or other changes in the structural features of the DNA chain, leading to changes in the genetic code. In human cells, we can have as many as a million individual instances of damage to DNA per cell per day. It is remarkable that DNA contains codes that check whether the DNA is damaged or can repair itself. It is like an auto check and repair mechanism. This repair ability of DNA is vital for maintaining the integrity of the genetic code and for the normal functioning of the entire organism. It should be constantly active and needs to respond rapidly. The rate of DNA repair depends on various factors such as the cell type and age of the cell. A cell with a damaged ability to repair DNA, which could have been induced by ionizing radiation, can do one of the following:

- The cell can go into an irreversible state of dormancy, known as senescence.
- The cell can commit suicide, known as programmed cell death.
- The cell can go into unregulated cell division leading to tumors and cancers.

Since ionizing radiation damages the DNA, which is critical in cell reproduction, it has its greatest effect on cells that rapidly reproduce, including most types of cancer. Thus, cancer cells are more sensitive to radiation than normal cells and can be killed by it easily. Cancer is characterized by a malfunction of cell reproduction, and can also be caused by ionizing radiation. Without contradiction, ionizing radiation can be both a cure and a cause.

To discuss quantitatively the biological effects of ionizing radiation, we need a radiation dose unit that is directly related to those effects. All effects of radiation are assumed to be directly proportional to the amount of ionization produced in the biological organism. The amount of ionization is in turn proportional to the amount of deposited energy. Therefore, we define a **radiation dose unit** called the **rad**, as $1/100$ of a joule of ionizing energy deposited per kilogram of tissue, which is

Equation:

$$1 \text{ rad} = 0.01 \text{ J/kg}.$$

For example, if a 50.0-kg person is exposed to ionizing radiation over her entire body and she absorbs 1.00 J, then her whole-body radiation dose is

Equation:

$$(1.00 \text{ J})/(50.0 \text{ kg}) = 0.0200 \text{ J/kg} = 2.00 \text{ rad}.$$

If the same 1.00 J of ionizing energy were absorbed in her 2.00-kg forearm alone, then the dose to the forearm would be

Equation:

$$(1.00 \text{ J})/(2.00 \text{ kg}) = 0.500 \text{ J/kg} = 50.0 \text{ rad},$$

and the unaffected tissue would have a zero rad dose. While calculating radiation doses, you divide the energy absorbed by the mass of affected tissue. You must specify the affected region, such as the whole body or forearm in addition to giving the numerical dose in rads. The SI unit for radiation dose is the **gray (Gy)**, which is defined to be

Equation:

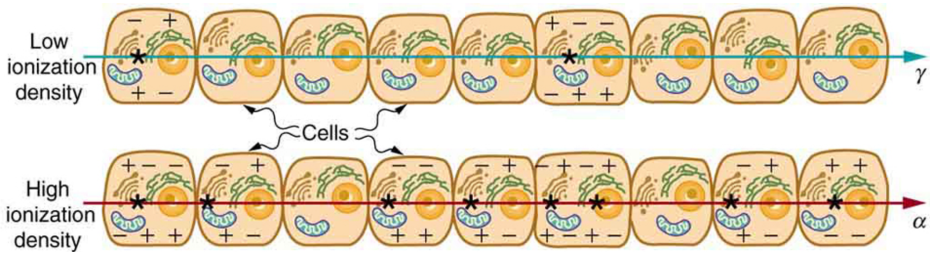
$$1 \text{ Gy} = 1 \text{ J/kg} = 100 \text{ rad}.$$

However, the rad is still commonly used. Although the energy per kilogram in 1 rad is small, it has significant effects since the energy causes ionization. The energy needed for a single ionization is a few eV, or less than 10^{-18} J. Thus, 0.01 J of ionizing energy can create a huge number of ion pairs and have an effect at the cellular level.

The effects of ionizing radiation may be directly proportional to the dose in rads, but they also depend on the type of radiation and the type of tissue. That is, for a given dose in rads, the effects depend on whether the radiation is α, β, γ, x-ray, or some other type of ionizing radiation. In the earlier discussion of the range of ionizing radiation, it was noted that energy is deposited in a series of ionizations and not in a single interaction. Each ion pair or ionization requires a certain amount of energy, so that the number of ion pairs is directly proportional to the amount of the deposited ionizing energy. But, if the range of the radiation is small, as it is for α s, then the ionization and the damage created is more concentrated and harder for the organism to repair, as seen in [link]. Concentrated damage is more difficult for biological organisms to repair than damage that is spread out, so short-range particles have greater biological effects. The **relative biological effectiveness** (RBE) or **quality factor** (QF) is given in [link] for several types of ionizing radiation—the effect of the radiation is directly proportional to the RBE. A dose unit more closely related to effects in biological tissue is called the **roentgen equivalent man** or rem and is defined to be the dose in rads multiplied by the relative biological effectiveness.

Equation:

$$\text{rem} = \text{rad} \times \text{RBE}$$



The image shows ionization created in cells by α and γ radiation. Because of its shorter range, the ionization and damage created by α is more concentrated and harder for the organism to repair. Thus, the RBE for α s is greater than the RBE for γ s, even though they create the same amount of ionization at the same energy.

So, if a person had a whole-body dose of 2.00 rad of γ radiation, the dose in rem would be $(2.00 \text{ rad})(1) = 2.00 \text{ rem whole body}$. If the person had a whole-body dose of 2.00 rad of α radiation, then the dose in rem would be $(2.00 \text{ rad})(20) = 40.0 \text{ rem whole body}$. The α s would have 20 times the effect on the person than the γ s for the same deposited energy. The SI equivalent of the rem is the **sievert** (Sv), defined to be $\text{Sv} = \text{Gy} \times \text{RBE}$, so that

Equation:

$$1 \text{ Sv} = 1 \text{ Gy} \times \text{RBE} = 100 \text{ rem.}$$

The RBEs given in [link] are approximate, but they yield certain insights. For example, the eyes are more sensitive to radiation, because the cells of the lens do not repair themselves. Neutrons cause more damage than γ rays, although both are neutral and have large ranges, because neutrons often cause secondary radiation when they are captured. Note that the RBEs are 1 for higher-energy β s, γ s, and x-rays, three of the most common types of radiation. For those types of radiation, the numerical values of the dose in rem and rad are identical. For example, 1 rad of γ radiation is also 1 rem. For that reason, rads are still widely quoted rather than rem. [link] summarizes the units that are used for radiation.

Note:

Misconception Alert: Activity vs. Dose
“Activity” refers to the radioactive source while “dose” refers to the amount of energy from the radiation that is deposited in a person or object.

A high level of activity doesn’t mean much if a person is far away from the source. The activity R of a source depends upon the quantity of material (kg) as well as the half-life. A short half-life will produce many more disintegrations per second. Recall that $R = \frac{0.693N}{t_{1/2}}$. Also, the activity decreases exponentially, which is seen in the equation $R = R_0 e^{-\lambda t}$.

Type and energy of radiation	**RBE[footnote]** **Values approximate, difficult to determine.**
X-rays	1
γ rays	1
β rays greater than 32 keV	1
βrays less than 32 keV	1.7
Neutrons, thermal to slow (<20 keV)	2–5
Neutrons, fast (1–10 MeV)	10 (body), 32 (eyes)
Protons (1–10 MeV)	10 (body), 32 (eyes)
α rays from radioactive decay	10–20
Heavy ions from accelerators	10–20

Relative Biological Effectiveness

Quantity	SI unit name	Definition	Former unit	Conversion
Activity	Becquerel (bq)	decay/sec	Curie (Ci)	$1 \text{ Bq} = 2.7 \times 10^{-11} \text{ Ci}$
Absorbed dose	Gray (Gy)	1 J/kg	rad	$\text{Gy} = 100 \text{ rad}$
Dose Equivalent	Sievert (Sv)	1 J/kg × RBE	rem	$\text{Sv} = 100 \text{ rem}$

Units for Radiation

The large-scale effects of radiation on humans can be divided into two categories: immediate effects and long-term effects. [link] gives the immediate effects of whole-body exposures received in less than one day. If the radiation exposure is spread out over more time, greater doses are needed to cause the effects listed. This is due to the body's ability to partially repair the damage. Any dose less than 100 mSv (10 rem) is called a **low dose**, 0.1 Sv to 1 Sv (10 to 100 rem) is called a **moderate dose**, and anything greater than 1 Sv (100 rem) is called a **high dose**. There is no known way to determine after the fact if a person has been exposed to less than 10 mSv.

Dose in Sv [footnote] Multiply by 100 to obtain dose in rem.	Effect
0–0.10	No observable effect.
0.1 – 1	Slight to moderate decrease in white blood cell counts.
0.5	Temporary sterility; 0.35 for women, 0.50 for men.
1 – 2	Significant reduction in blood cell counts, brief nausea and vomiting. Rarely fatal.
2 – 5	Nausea, vomiting, hair loss, severe blood damage, hemorrhage, fatalities.

Dose in Sv [footnote] Multiply by 100 to obtain dose in rem.	Effect
4.5	LD50/32. Lethal to 50% of the population within 32 days after exposure if not treated.
5 – 20	Worst effects due to malfunction of small intestine and blood systems. Limited survival.
>20	Fatal within hours due to collapse of central nervous system.

Immediate Effects of Radiation (Adults, Whole Body, Single Exposure)

Immediate effects are explained by the effects of radiation on cells and the sensitivity of rapidly reproducing cells to radiation. The first clue that a person has been exposed to radiation is a change in blood count, which is not surprising since blood cells are the most rapidly reproducing cells in the body. At higher doses, nausea and hair loss are observed, which may be due to interference with cell reproduction. Cells in the lining of the digestive system also rapidly reproduce, and their destruction causes nausea. When the growth of hair cells slows, the hair follicles become thin and break off. High doses cause significant cell death in all systems, but the lowest doses that cause fatalities do so by weakening the immune system through the loss of white blood cells.

The two known long-term effects of radiation are cancer and genetic defects. Both are directly attributable to the interference of radiation with cell reproduction. For high doses of radiation, the risk of cancer is reasonably well known from studies of exposed groups. Hiroshima and Nagasaki survivors and a smaller number of people exposed by their occupation, such as radium dial painters, have been fully documented. Chernobyl victims will be studied for many decades, with some data already available. For example, a significant increase in childhood thyroid cancer has been observed. The risk of a radiation-induced cancer for low and moderate doses is generally *assumed* to be proportional to the risk known for high doses. Under this assumption, any dose of radiation, no matter how small, involves a risk to human health. This is called the **linear hypothesis** and it may be prudent, but it *is* controversial. There is some evidence that, unlike the immediate effects of radiation, the long-term effects are cumulative and there is little self-repair. This is analogous to the risk of skin cancer from UV exposure, which is known to be cumulative.

There is a latency period for the onset of radiation-induced cancer of about 2 years for leukemia and 15 years for most other forms. The person is at risk for at least 30 years after the latency period. Omitting many details, the overall risk of a radiation-induced cancer

death per year per rem of exposure is about 10 in a million, which can be written as $10/10^6 \text{ rem} \cdot \text{y}$.

If a person receives a dose of 1 rem, his risk each year of dying from radiation-induced cancer is 10 in a million and that risk continues for about 30 years. The lifetime risk is thus 300 in a million, or 0.03 percent. Since about 20 percent of all worldwide deaths are from cancer, the increase due to a 1 rem exposure is impossible to detect demographically. But 100 rem (1 Sv), which was the dose received by the average Hiroshima and Nagasaki survivor, causes a 3 percent risk, which can be observed in the presence of a 20 percent normal or natural incidence rate.

The incidence of genetic defects induced by radiation is about one-third that of cancer deaths, but is much more poorly known. The lifetime risk of a genetic defect due to a 1 rem exposure is about 100 in a million or $3.3/10^6 \text{ rem} \cdot \text{y}$, but the normal incidence is 60,000 in a million. Evidence of such a small increase, tragic as it is, is nearly impossible to obtain. For example, there is no evidence of increased genetic defects among the offspring of Hiroshima and Nagasaki survivors. Animal studies do not seem to correlate well with effects on humans and are not very helpful. For both cancer and genetic defects, the approach to safety has been to use the linear hypothesis, which is likely to be an overestimate of the risks of low doses. Certain researchers even claim that low doses are *beneficial*. **Hormesis** is a term used to describe generally favorable biological responses to low exposures of toxins or radiation. Such low levels may help certain repair mechanisms to develop or enable cells to adapt to the effects of the low exposures. Positive effects may occur at low doses that could be a problem at high doses.

Even the linear hypothesis estimates of the risks are relatively small, and the average person is not exposed to large amounts of radiation. [link] lists average annual background radiation doses from natural and artificial sources for Australia, the United States, Germany, and world-wide averages. Cosmic rays are partially shielded by the atmosphere, and the dose depends upon altitude and latitude, but the average is about 0.40 mSv/y. A good example of the variation of cosmic radiation dose with altitude comes from the airline industry. Monitored personnel show an average of 2 mSv/y. A 12-hour flight might give you an exposure of 0.02 to 0.03 mSv.

Doses from the Earth itself are mainly due to the isotopes of uranium, thorium, and potassium, and vary greatly by location. Some places have great natural concentrations of uranium and thorium, yielding doses ten times as high as the average value. Internal doses come from foods and liquids that we ingest. Fertilizers containing phosphates have potassium and uranium. So we are all a little radioactive. Carbon-14 has about 66 Bq/kg radioactivity whereas fertilizers may have more than 3000 Bq/kg radioactivity. Medical and dental diagnostic exposures are mostly from x-rays. It should be noted that x-ray doses tend to be localized and are becoming much smaller with improved techniques. [link] shows typical doses received during various diagnostic x-ray examinations. Note the large dose from a CT scan. While CT scans only account for less than 20 percent of

the x-ray procedures done today, they account for about 50 percent of the annual dose received.

Radon is usually more pronounced underground and in buildings with low air exchange with the outside world. Almost all soil contains some $^{226}\mathrm{Ra}$ and $^{222}\mathrm{Rn}$, but radon is lower in mainly sedimentary soils and higher in granite soils. Thus, the exposure to the public can vary greatly, even within short distances. Radon can diffuse from the soil into homes, especially basements. The estimated exposure for $^{222}\mathrm{Rn}$ is controversial. Recent studies indicate there is more radon in homes than had been realized, and it is speculated that radon may be responsible for 20 percent of lung cancers, being particularly hazardous to those who also smoke. Many countries have introduced limits on allowable radon concentrations in indoor air, often requiring the measurement of radon concentrations in a house prior to its sale. Ironically, it could be argued that the higher levels of radon exposure and their geographic variability, taken with the lack of demographic evidence of any effects, means that low-level radiation is *less* dangerous than previously thought.

Radiation Protection

Laws regulate radiation doses to which people can be exposed. The greatest occupational whole-body dose that is allowed depends upon the country and is about 20 to 50 mSv/y and is rarely reached by medical and nuclear power workers. Higher doses are allowed for the hands. Much lower doses are permitted for the reproductive organs and the fetuses of pregnant women. Inadvertent doses to the public are limited to $1/10$ of occupational doses, except for those caused by nuclear power, which cannot legally expose the public to more than $1/1000$ of the occupational limit or 0.05 mSv/y (5 mrem/y). This has been exceeded in the United States only at the time of the Three Mile Island (TMI) accident in 1979. Chernobyl is another story. Extensive monitoring with a variety of radiation detectors is performed to assure radiation safety. Increased ventilation in uranium mines has lowered the dose there to about 1 mSv/y.

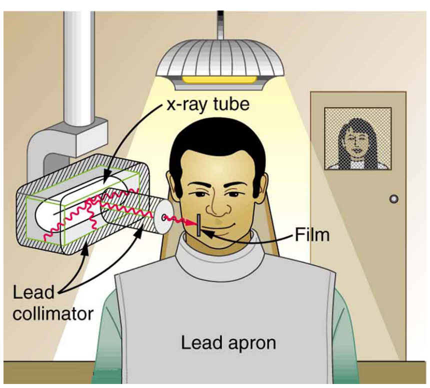
Source	**Dose (mSv/y)[footnote]** **Multiply by 100 to obtain dose in mrem/y.**			
Source	Australia	Germany	United States	World
Natural Radiation - external				

Source	Dose (mSv/y)[footnote] Multiply by 100 to obtain dose in mrem/y.			
Cosmic Rays	0.30	0.28	0.30	0.39
Soil, building materials	0.40	0.40	0.30	0.48
Radon gas	0.90	1.1	2.0	1.2
Natural Radiation - internal				
^{40}K, ^{14}C, ^{226}Ra	0.24	0.28	0.40	0.29
Medical & Dental	0.80	0.90	0.53	0.40
TOTAL	2.6	3.0	3.5	2.8

Background Radiation Sources and Average Doses

To physically limit radiation doses, we use **shielding**, increase the **distance** from a source, and limit the **time of exposure**.

[link] illustrates how these are used to protect both the patient and the dental technician when an x-ray is taken. Shielding absorbs radiation and can be provided by any material, including sufficient air. The greater the distance from the source, the more the radiation spreads out. The less time a person is exposed to a given source, the smaller is the dose received by the person. Doses from most medical diagnostics have decreased in recent years due to faster films that require less exposure time.



A lead apron is placed over the dental patient and shielding surrounds the x-ray tube to limit exposure to tissue other than the tissue that is being imaged. Fast films limit the time needed to obtain images, reducing exposure to the imaged tissue. The technician stands a few meters away behind a lead-lined door with a lead glass window, reducing her occupational exposure.

Procedure	Effective dose (mSv)
Chest	0.02
Dental	0.01
Skull	0.07
Leg	0.02
Mammogram	0.40
Barium enema	7.0
Upper GI	3.0
CT head	2.0
CT abdomen	10.0

Typical Doses Received During Diagnostic X-ray Exams

Problem-Solving Strategy

You need to follow certain steps for dose calculations, which are

Step 1. *Examine the situation to determine that a person is exposed to ionizing radiation.*

Step 2. *Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns).* The most straightforward problems ask for a dose calculation.

Step 3. *Make a list of what is given or can be inferred from the problem as stated (identify the knowns).* Look for information on the type of radiation, the energy per event, the activity, and the mass of tissue affected.

Step 4. *For dose calculations, you need to determine the energy deposited.* This may take one or more steps, depending on the given information.

Step 5. *Divide the deposited energy by the mass of the affected tissue.* Use units of joules for energy and kilograms for mass. If a dose in Sv is involved, use the definition that $1\text{ Sv}=1\text{ J/kg}$.

Step 6. *If a dose in mSv is involved, determine the RBE (QF) of the radiation.* Recall that $1\text{ mSv}=1\text{ mGy}\times\text{RBE}\text{ (or }1\text{ rem}=1\text{ rad}\times\text{RBE)}$.

Step 7. *Check the answer to see if it is reasonable: Does it make sense?* The dose should be consistent with the numbers given in the text for diagnostic, occupational, and therapeutic exposures.

Example:
Dose from Inhaled Plutonium
Calculate the dose in rem/y for the lungs of a weapons plant employee who inhales and retains an activity of 1.00 μCi of ^{239}Pu in an accident. The mass of affected lung tissue is 2.00 kg, the plutonium decays by emission of a 5.23-MeV α particle, and you may assume the higher value of the RBE for α s from [link].
Strategy
Dose in rem is defined by $1\text{ rad}=0.01\text{ J/kg}$ and $\text{rem}=\text{rad}\times\text{RBE}$. The energy deposited is divided by the mass of tissue affected and then multiplied by the RBE. The latter two quantities are given, and so the main task in this example will be to find the energy deposited in one year. Since the activity of the source is given, we can calculate the number of decays, multiply by the energy per decay, and convert MeV to joules to get the total energy.
Solution

The activity $R = 1.00\ \mu\text{Ci} = 3.70 \times 10^4\ \text{Bq} = 3.70 \times 10^4$ decays/s. So, the number of decays per year is obtained by multiplying by the number of seconds in a year:
Equation:

$$\left(3.70 \times 10^4\ \text{decays/s}\right)\left(3.16 \times 10^7\ \text{s}\right) = 1.17 \times 10^{12}\ \text{decays.}$$

Thus, the ionizing energy deposited per year is
Equation:

$$E = \left(1.17 \times 10^{12}\ \text{decays}\right)(5.23\ \text{MeV/decay}) \times \left(\frac{1.60 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{J}}{\text{MeV}}\right) = 0.978\ \text{J.}$$

Dividing by the mass of the affected tissue gives
Equation:

$$\frac{E}{\text{mass}} = \frac{0.978\ \text{J}}{2.00\ \text{kg}} = 0.489\ \text{J/kg.}$$

One Gray is 1.00 J/kg, and so the dose in Gy is
Equation:

$$\text{dose in Gy} = \frac{0.489\ \text{J/kg}}{1.00\ (\text{J/kg})/\text{Gy}} = 0.489\ \text{Gy.}$$

Now, the dose in Sv is
Equation:

$$\text{dose in Sv} = \text{Gy} \times \text{RBE}$$

Equation:

$$= (0.489\ \text{Gy})(20) = 9.8\ \text{Sv.}$$

Discussion
First note that the dose is given to two digits, because the RBE is (at best) known only to two digits. By any standard, this yearly radiation dose is high and will have a devastating effect on the health of the worker. Worse yet, plutonium has a long radioactive half-life and is not readily eliminated by the body, and so it will remain in the lungs. Being an α emitter makes the effects 10 to 20 times worse than the same ionization produced by β s, γ rays, or x-rays. An activity of 1.00 μCi is created by only 16 μg of ^{239}Pu (left as an end-of-chapter problem to verify), partly justifying claims that plutonium is the most toxic substance known. Its actual hazard depends on how likely it is to be spread out among a large population and then ingested. The Chernobyl disaster's deadly legacy, for example, has nothing to do with the plutonium it put into the environment.

Risk versus Benefit

Medical doses of radiation are also limited. Diagnostic doses are generally low and have further lowered with improved techniques and faster films. With the possible exception of routine dental x-rays, radiation is used diagnostically only when needed so that the low risk is justified by the benefit of the diagnosis. Chest x-rays give the lowest doses—about 0.1 mSv to the tissue affected, with less than 5 percent scattering into tissues that are not directly imaged. Other x-ray procedures range upward to about 10 mSv in a CT scan, and about 5 mSv (0.5 rem) per dental x-ray, again both only affecting the tissue imaged. Medical images with radiopharmaceuticals give doses ranging from 1 to 5 mSv, usually localized. One exception is the thyroid scan using ^{131}I. Because of its relatively long half-life, it exposes the thyroid to about 0.75 Sv. The isotope ^{123}I is more difficult to produce, but its short half-life limits thyroid exposure to about 15 mSv.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Alpha Decay
Watch alpha particles escape from a polonium nucleus, causing radioactive alpha decay. See how random decay times relate to the half life.

Alpha Decay

Section Summary

- The biological effects of ionizing radiation are due to two effects it has on cells: interference with cell reproduction, and destruction of cell function.
- A radiation dose unit called the rad is defined in terms of the ionizing energy deposited per kilogram of tissue:
  Equation:
  $$1\text{ rad}=0.01\text{ J/kg}.$$
- The SI unit for radiation dose is the gray (Gy), which is defined to be $1\text{ Gy}=1\text{ J/kg}=100\text{ rad}.$
- To account for the effect of the type of particle creating the ionization, we use the relative biological effectiveness (RBE) or quality factor (QF) given in [link] and define a unit called the roentgen equivalent man (rem) as

Equation:

$$\text{rem} = \text{rad} \times \text{RBE}.$$

- Particles that have short ranges or create large ionization densities have RBEs greater than unity. The SI equivalent of the rem is the sievert (Sv), defined to be
Equation:

$$\text{Sv} = \text{Gy} \times \text{RBE and } 1 \text{ Sv} = 100 \text{ rem}.$$

- Whole-body, single-exposure doses of 0.1 Sv or less are low doses while those of 0.1 to 1 Sv are moderate, and those over 1 Sv are high doses. Some immediate radiation effects are given in [link]. Effects due to low doses are not observed, but their risk is assumed to be directly proportional to those of high doses, an assumption known as the linear hypothesis. Long-term effects are cancer deaths at the rate of $10/10^6 \text{ rem}{\cdot}\text{y}$and genetic defects at roughly one-third this rate. Background radiation doses and sources are given in [link]. World-wide average radiation exposure from natural sources, including radon, is about 3 mSv, or 300 mrem. Radiation protection utilizes shielding, distance, and time to limit exposure.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Isotopes that emit α radiation are relatively safe outside the body and exceptionally hazardous inside. Yet those that emit γ radiation are hazardous outside and inside. Explain why.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is radon more closely associated with inducing lung cancer than other types of cancer?

Exercise:

Problem:

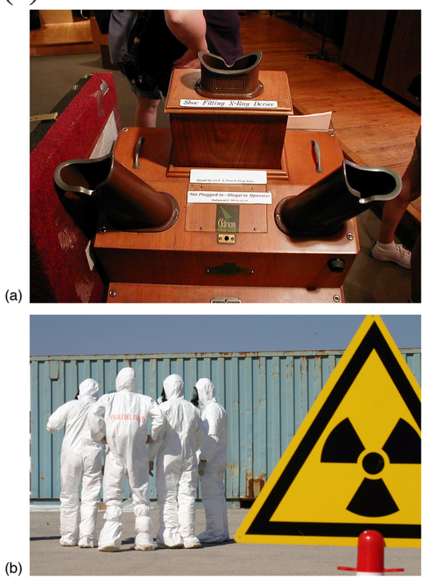
The RBE for low-energy βs is 1.7, whereas that for higher-energy βs is only 1. Explain why, considering how the range of radiation depends on its energy.

Exercise:

Problem:

Which methods of radiation protection were used in the device shown in the first photo in [link]? Which were used in the situation shown in the second photo?

(a)



(a) This x-ray fluorescence machine is one of the thousands used in shoe stores to produce images of feet as a check on the fit of shoes. They are unshielded and remain on as long as the feet are in them, producing doses much greater than medical images. Children were fascinated with them. These machines were used in shoe stores until laws preventing such unwarranted radiation exposure were enacted in the 1950s. (credit: Andrew Kuchling) (b) Now that we know the effects of exposure to

radioactive material, safety is a priority. (credit: U.S. Navy)

Exercise:

Problem:

What radioisotope could be a problem in homes built of cinder blocks made from uranium mine tailings? (This is true of homes and schools in certain regions near uranium mines.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Are some types of cancer more sensitive to radiation than others? If so, what makes them more sensitive?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a person swallows some radioactive material by accident. What information is needed to be able to assess possible damage?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the dose in mSv for: (a) a 0.1 Gy x-ray? (b) 2.5 mGy of neutron exposure to the eye? (c) 1.5 mGy of α exposure?

Solution:

(a) 100 mSv

(b) 80 mSv

(c) ~30 mSv

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the radiation dose in Gy for: (a) A 10-mSv fluoroscopic x-ray series. (b) 50 mSv of skin exposure by an α emitter. (c) 160 mSv of β^- and γ rays from the ^{40}K in your body.

Exercise:

Problem:

How many Gy of exposure is needed to give a cancerous tumor a dose of 40 Sv if it is exposed to α activity?

Solution:

~2 Gy

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the dose in Sv in a cancer treatment that exposes the patient to 200 Gy of γ rays?

Exercise:

Problem:

One half the γ rays from ^{99m}Tc are absorbed by a 0.170-mm-thick lead shielding. Half of the γ rays that pass through the first layer of lead are absorbed in a second layer of equal thickness. What thickness of lead will absorb all but one in 1000 of these γ rays?

Solution:

1.69 mm

Exercise:

Problem:

A plumber at a nuclear power plant receives a whole-body dose of 30 mSv in 15 minutes while repairing a crucial valve. Find the radiation-induced yearly risk of death from cancer and the chance of genetic defect from this maximum allowable exposure.

Exercise:

Problem:

In the 1980s, the term picowave was used to describe food irradiation in order to overcome public resistance by playing on the well-known safety of microwave radiation. Find the energy in MeV of a photon having a wavelength of a picometer.

Solution:

1.24 MeV

Exercise:

Problem: Find the mass of ^{239}Pu that has an activity of 1.00 μCi.

Glossary

gray (Gy)
: the SI unit for radiation dose which is defined to be $1\ \text{Gy} = 1\ \text{J/kg} = 100\ \text{rad}$

linear hypothesis
: assumption that risk is directly proportional to risk from high doses

rad
: the ionizing energy deposited per kilogram of tissue

sievert
: the SI equivalent of the rem

relative biological effectiveness (RBE)
: a number that expresses the relative amount of damage that a fixed amount of ionizing radiation of a given type can inflict on biological tissues

quality factor
: same as relative biological effectiveness

roentgen equivalent man (rem)
: a dose unit more closely related to effects in biological tissue

low dose
: a dose less than 100 mSv (10 rem)

moderate dose
: a dose from 0.1 Sv to 1 Sv (10 to 100 rem)

high dose
: a dose greater than 1 Sv (100 rem)

hormesis
: a term used to describe generally favorable biological responses to low exposures of toxins or radiation

shielding
: a technique to limit radiation exposure

Therapeutic Uses of Ionizing Radiation

- Explain the concept of radiotherapy and list typical doses for cancer therapy.

Therapeutic applications of ionizing radiation, called radiation therapy or **radiotherapy**, have existed since the discovery of x-rays and nuclear radioactivity. Today, radiotherapy is used almost exclusively for cancer therapy, where it saves thousands of lives and improves the quality of life and longevity of many it cannot save. Radiotherapy may be used alone or in combination with surgery and chemotherapy (drug treatment) depending on the type of cancer and the response of the patient. A careful examination of all available data has established that radiotherapy's beneficial effects far outweigh its long-term risks.

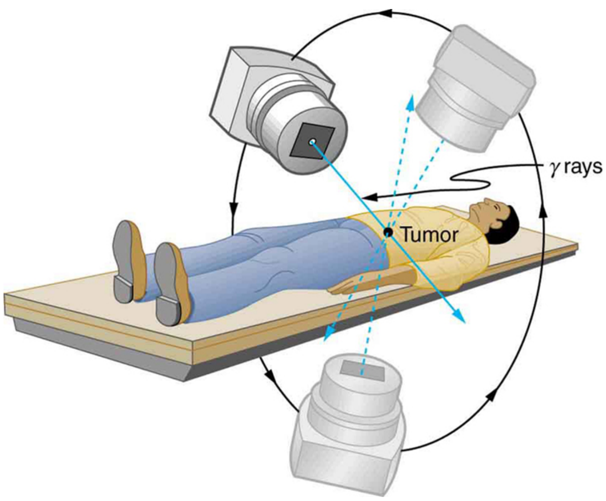
Medical Application

The earliest uses of ionizing radiation on humans were mostly harmful, with many at the level of snake oil as seen in [link]. Radium-doped cosmetics that glowed in the dark were used around the time of World War I. As recently as the 1950s, radon mine tours were promoted as healthful and rejuvenating—those who toured were exposed but gained no benefits. Radium salts were sold as health elixirs for many years. The gruesome death of a wealthy industrialist, who became psychologically addicted to the brew, alerted the unsuspecting to the dangers of radium salt elixirs. Most abuses finally ended after the legislation in the 1950s.

The properties of radiation were once touted for far more than its modern use in cancer therapy. Until 1932, radium was advertised for a variety of uses, often with tragic results. (credit: Struthious Bandersnatch.)

Radiotherapy is effective against cancer because cancer cells reproduce rapidly and, consequently, are more sensitive to radiation. The central problem in radiotherapy is to make the dose for cancer cells as high as possible while limiting the dose for normal cells. The ratio of abnormal cells killed to normal cells killed is called the **therapeutic ratio**, and all radiotherapy techniques are designed to enhance this ratio. Radiation can be concentrated in cancerous tissue by a number of techniques. One of the most prevalent techniques for well-defined tumors is a geometric technique

shown in [link]. A narrow beam of radiation is passed through the patient from a variety of directions with a common crossing point in the tumor. This concentrates the dose in the tumor while spreading it out over a large volume of normal tissue. The external radiation can be x-rays, ^{60}Co γ rays, or ionizing-particle beams produced by accelerators. Accelerator-produced beams of neutrons, π-mesons, and heavy ions such as nitrogen nuclei have been employed, and these can be quite effective. These particles have larger QFs or RBEs and sometimes can be better localized, producing a greater therapeutic ratio. But accelerator radiotherapy is much more expensive and less frequently employed than other forms.



The ^{60}Co source of γ-radiation is rotated around the patient so that the common crossing point is in the tumor, concentrating the dose there. This geometric technique works for well-defined tumors.

Another form of radiotherapy uses chemically inert radioactive implants. One use is for prostate cancer. Radioactive seeds (about 40 to 100 and the size of a grain of rice) are placed in the prostate region. The isotopes used

are usually ^{135}I (6-month half life) or ^{103}Pd (3-month half life). Alpha emitters have the dual advantages of a large QF and a small range for better localization.

Radiopharmaceuticals are used for cancer therapy when they can be localized well enough to produce a favorable therapeutic ratio. Thyroid cancer is commonly treated utilizing radioactive iodine. Thyroid cells concentrate iodine, and cancerous thyroid cells are more aggressive in doing this. An ingenious use of radiopharmaceuticals in cancer therapy tags antibodies with radioisotopes. Antibodies produced by a patient to combat his cancer are extracted, cultured, loaded with a radioisotope, and then returned to the patient. The antibodies are concentrated almost entirely in the tissue they developed to fight, thus localizing the radiation in abnormal tissue. The therapeutic ratio can be quite high for short-range radiation. There is, however, a significant dose for organs that eliminate radiopharmaceuticals from the body, such as the liver, kidneys, and bladder. As with most radiotherapy, the technique is limited by the tolerable amount of damage to the normal tissue.

[link] lists typical therapeutic doses of radiation used against certain cancers. The doses are large, but not fatal because they are localized and spread out in time. Protocols for treatment vary with the type of cancer and the condition and response of the patient. Three to five 200-rem treatments per week for a period of several weeks is typical. Time between treatments allows the body to repair normal tissue. This effect occurs because damage is concentrated in the abnormal tissue, and the abnormal tissue is more sensitive to radiation. Damage to normal tissue limits the doses. You will note that the greatest doses are given to any tissue that is not rapidly reproducing, such as in the adult brain. Lung cancer, on the other end of the scale, cannot ordinarily be cured with radiation because of the sensitivity of lung tissue and blood to radiation. But radiotherapy for lung cancer does alleviate symptoms and prolong life and is therefore justified in some cases.

Type of Cancer	Typical dose (Sv)
Lung	10–20
Hodgkin’s disease	40–45
Skin	40–50
Ovarian	50–75
Breast	50–80+
Brain	80+
Neck	80+
Bone	80+
Soft tissue	80+
Thyroid	80+

Cancer Radiotherapy

Finally, it is interesting to note that chemotherapy employs drugs that interfere with cell division and is, thus, also effective against cancer. It also has almost the same side effects, such as nausea and hair loss, and risks, such as the inducement of another cancer.

Section Summary

- Radiotherapy is the use of ionizing radiation to treat ailments, now limited to cancer therapy.
- The sensitivity of cancer cells to radiation enhances the ratio of cancer cells killed to normal cells killed, which is called the therapeutic ratio.

- Doses for various organs are limited by the tolerance of normal tissue for radiation. Treatment is localized in one region of the body and spread out in time.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Radiotherapy is more likely to be used to treat cancer in elderly patients than in young ones. Explain why. Why is radiotherapy used to treat young people at all?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A beam of 168-MeV nitrogen nuclei is used for cancer therapy. If this beam is directed onto a 0.200-kg tumor and gives it a 2.00-Sv dose, how many nitrogen nuclei were stopped? (Use an RBE of 20 for heavy ions.)

Solution:

7.44×10^8

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If the average molecular mass of compounds in food is 50.0 g, how many molecules are there in 1.00 kg of food? (b) How many ion pairs are created in 1.00 kg of food, if it is exposed to 1000 Sv and it takes 32.0 eV to create an ion pair? (c) Find the ratio of ion pairs to molecules. (d) If these ion pairs recombine into a distribution of 2000 new compounds, how many parts per billion is each?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the dose in Sv to the chest of a patient given an x-ray under the following conditions. The x-ray beam intensity is $1.50\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$, the area of the chest exposed is $0.0750\ \mathrm{m^2}$, 35.0% of the x-rays are absorbed in 20.0 kg of tissue, and the exposure time is 0.250 s.

Solution:

$4.92 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{Sv}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A cancer patient is exposed to γ rays from a 5000-Ci $^{60}\mathrm{Co}$ transillumination unit for 32.0 s. The γ rays are collimated in such a manner that only 1.00% of them strike the patient. Of those, 20.0% are absorbed in a tumor having a mass of 1.50 kg. What is the dose in rem to the tumor, if the average γ energy per decay is 1.25 MeV? None of the β s from the decay reach the patient. (b) Is the dose consistent with stated therapeutic doses?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the mass of $^{60}\mathrm{Co}$ in a cancer therapy transillumination unit containing 5.00 kCi of $^{60}\mathrm{Co}$?

Solution:

4.43 g

Exercise:

Problem:

Large amounts of $^{65}\mathrm{Zn}$ are produced in copper exposed to accelerator beams. While machining contaminated copper, a physicist ingests $50.0\ \mu\mathrm{Ci}$ of $^{65}\mathrm{Zn}$. Each $^{65}\mathrm{Zn}$ decay emits an average γ-ray energy of 0.550 MeV, 40.0% of which is absorbed in the scientist's 75.0-kg body. What dose in mSv is caused by this in one day?

Exercise:

Problem:

Naturally occurring $^{40}\mathrm{K}$ is listed as responsible for 16 mrem/y of background radiation. Calculate the mass of $^{40}\mathrm{K}$ that must be inside the 55-kg body of a woman to produce this dose. Each $^{40}\mathrm{K}$ decay emits a 1.32-MeV β, and 50% of the energy is absorbed inside the body.

Solution:

0.010 g

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Background radiation due to $^{226}\mathrm{Ra}$ averages only 0.01 mSv/y, but it can range upward depending on where a person lives. Find the mass of $^{226}\mathrm{Ra}$ in the 80.0-kg body of a man who receives a dose of 2.50-mSv/y from it, noting that each $^{226}\mathrm{Ra}$ decay emits a 4.80-MeV α particle. You may neglect dose due to daughters and assume a constant amount, evenly distributed due to balanced ingestion and bodily elimination. (b) Is it surprising that such a small mass could cause a measurable radiation dose? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

The annual radiation dose from ^{14}C in our bodies is 0.01 mSv/y. Each ^{14}C decay emits a β^- averaging 0.0750 MeV. Taking the fraction of ^{14}C to be 1.3×10^{-12} N of normal ^{12}C, and assuming the body is 13% carbon, estimate the fraction of the decay energy absorbed. (The rest escapes, exposing those close to you.)

Solution:

95%

Exercise:

Problem:

If everyone in Australia received an extra 0.05 mSv per year of radiation, what would be the increase in the number of cancer deaths per year? (Assume that time had elapsed for the effects to become apparent.) Assume that there are 200×10^{-4} deaths per Sv of radiation per year. What percent of the actual number of cancer deaths recorded is this?

Glossary

radiotherapy
: the use of ionizing radiation to treat ailments

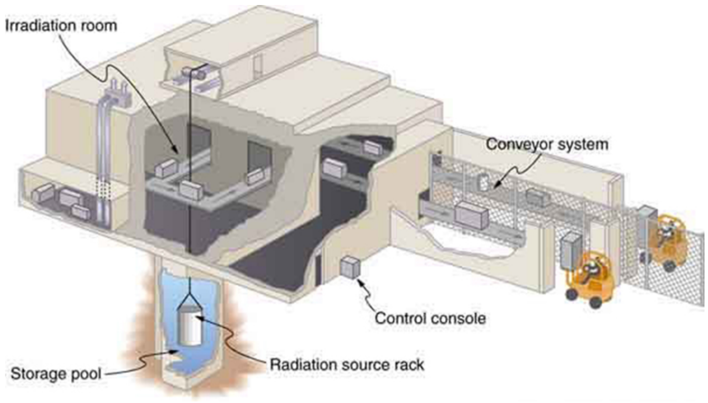
therapeutic ratio
: the ratio of abnormal cells killed to normal cells killed

Food Irradiation

- Define food irradiation low dose, and free radicals.

Ionizing radiation is widely used to sterilize medical supplies, such as bandages, and consumer products, such as tampons. Worldwide, it is also used to irradiate food, an application that promises to grow in the future. **Food irradiation** is the treatment of food with ionizing radiation. It is used to reduce pest infestation and to delay spoilage and prevent illness caused by microorganisms. Food irradiation is controversial. Proponents see it as superior to pasteurization, preservatives, and insecticides, supplanting dangerous chemicals with a more effective process. Opponents see its safety as unproven, perhaps leaving worse toxic residues as well as presenting an environmental hazard at treatment sites. In developing countries, food irradiation might increase crop production by 25.0% or more, and reduce food spoilage by a similar amount. It is used chiefly to treat spices and some fruits, and in some countries, red meat, poultry, and vegetables. Over 40 countries have approved food irradiation at some level.

Food irradiation exposes food to large doses of γ rays, x-rays, or electrons. These photons and electrons induce no nuclear reactions and thus create *no residual radioactivity*. (Some forms of ionizing radiation, such as neutron irradiation, cause residual radioactivity. These are not used for food irradiation.) The γ source is usually ^{60}Co or ^{137}Cs, the latter isotope being a major by-product of nuclear power. Cobalt-60 γ rays average 1.25 MeV, while those of ^{137}Cs are 0.67 MeV and are less penetrating. X-rays used for food irradiation are created with voltages of up to 5 million volts and, thus, have photon energies up to 5 MeV. Electrons used for food irradiation are accelerated to energies up to 10 MeV. The higher the energy per particle, the more penetrating the radiation is and the more ionization it can create. [link] shows a typical γ-irradiation plant.



A food irradiation plant has a conveyor system to pass items through an intense radiation field behind thick shielding walls. The γ source is lowered into a deep pool of water for safe storage when not in use. Exposure times of up to an hour expose food to doses up to 10^4 Gy.

Owing to the fact that food irradiation seeks to destroy organisms such as insects and bacteria, much larger doses than those fatal to humans must be applied. Generally, the simpler the organism, the more radiation it can tolerate. (Cancer cells are a partial exception, because they are rapidly reproducing and, thus, more sensitive.) Current licensing allows up to 1000 Gy to be applied to fresh fruits and vegetables, called a *low dose* in food irradiation. Such a dose is enough to prevent or reduce the growth of many microorganisms, but about 10,000 Gy is needed to kill salmonella, and even more is needed to kill fungi. Doses greater than 10,000 Gy are considered to be high doses in food irradiation and product sterilization.

The effectiveness of food irradiation varies with the type of food. Spices and many fruits and vegetables have dramatically longer shelf lives. These also show no degradation in taste and no loss of food value or vitamins. If not for the mandatory labeling, such foods subjected to low-level irradiation (up to 1000 Gy) could not be distinguished from untreated foods in quality.

However, some foods actually spoil faster after irradiation, particularly those with high water content like lettuce and peaches. Others, such as milk, are given a noticeably unpleasant taste. High-level irradiation produces significant and chemically measurable changes in foods. It produces about a 15% loss of nutrients and a 25% loss of vitamins, as well as some change in taste. Such losses are similar to those that occur in ordinary freezing and cooking.

How does food irradiation work? Ionization produces a random assortment of broken molecules and ions, some with unstable oxygen- or hydrogen-containing molecules known as **free radicals**. These undergo rapid chemical reactions, producing perhaps four or five thousand different compounds called **radiolytic products**, some of which make cell function impossible by breaking cell membranes, fracturing DNA, and so on. How safe is the food afterward? Critics argue that the radiolytic products present a lasting hazard, perhaps being carcinogenic. However, the safety of irradiated food is not known precisely. We do know that low-level food irradiation produces no compounds in amounts that can be measured chemically. This is not surprising, since trace amounts of several thousand compounds may be created. We also know that there have been no observable negative short-term effects on consumers. Long-term effects may show up if large number of people consume large quantities of irradiated food, but no effects have appeared due to the small amounts of irradiated food that are consumed regularly. The case for safety is supported by testing of animal diets that were irradiated; no transmitted genetic effects have been observed. Food irradiation (at least up to a million rad) has been endorsed by the World Health Organization and the UN Food and Agricultural Organization. Finally, the hazard to consumers, if it exists, must be weighed against the benefits in food production and preservation. It must also be weighed against the very real hazards of existing insecticides and food preservatives.

Section Summary

- Food irradiation is the treatment of food with ionizing radiation.
- Irradiating food can destroy insects and bacteria by creating free radicals and radiolytic products that can break apart cell membranes.

- Food irradiation has produced no observable negative short-term effects for humans, but its long-term effects are unknown.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Does food irradiation leave the food radioactive? To what extent is the food altered chemically for low and high doses in food irradiation?

Exercise:

Problem:

Compare a low dose of radiation to a human with a low dose of radiation used in food treatment.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose one food irradiation plant uses a ^{137}Cs source while another uses an equal activity of ^{60}Co. Assuming equal fractions of the γ rays from the sources are absorbed, why is more time needed to get the same dose using the ^{137}Cs source?

Glossary

food irradiation
: treatment of food with ionizing radiation

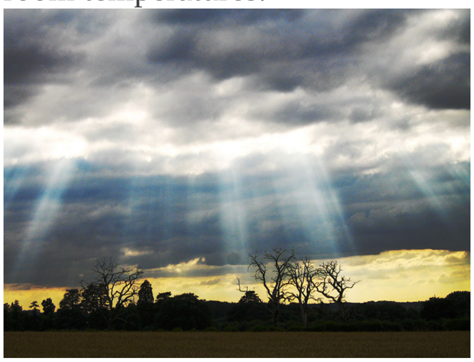
free radicals
: ions with unstable oxygen- or hydrogen-containing molecules

radiolytic products
: compounds produced due to chemical reactions of free radicals

Fusion

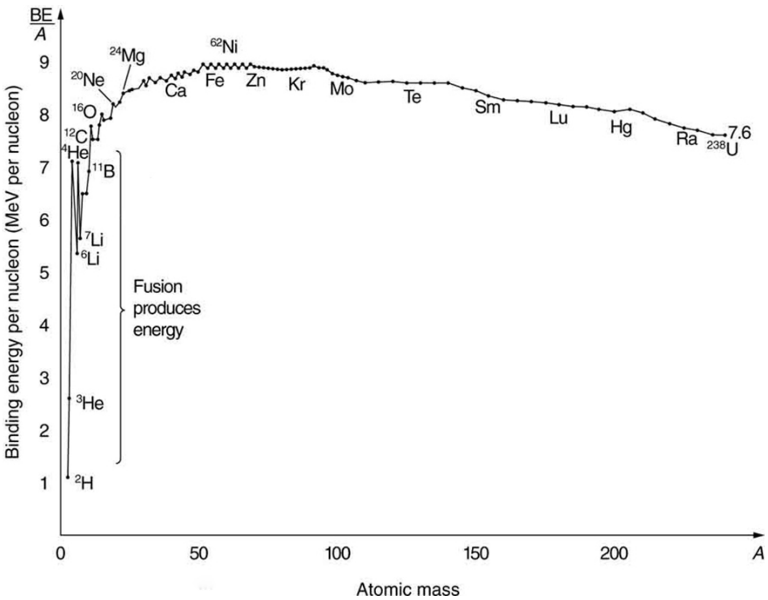
- Define nuclear fusion.
- Discuss processes to achieve practical fusion energy generation.

While basking in the warmth of the summer sun, a student reads of the latest breakthrough in achieving sustained thermonuclear power and vaguely recalls hearing about the cold fusion controversy. The three are connected. The Sun's energy is produced by nuclear fusion (see [link]). Thermonuclear power is the name given to the use of controlled nuclear fusion as an energy source. While research in the area of thermonuclear power is progressing, high temperatures and containment difficulties remain. The cold fusion controversy centered around unsubstantiated claims of practical fusion power at room temperatures.



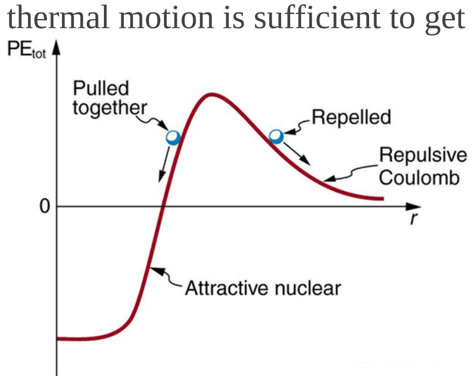
The Sun's energy is produced by nuclear fusion. (credit: Spiralz)

Nuclear fusion is a reaction in which two nuclei are combined, or *fused*, to form a larger nucleus. We know that all nuclei have less mass than the sum of the masses of the protons and neutrons that form them. The missing mass times c^2 equals the binding energy of the nucleus—the greater the binding energy, the greater the missing mass. We also know that BE/A, the binding energy per nucleon, is greater for medium-mass nuclei and has a maximum at Fe (iron). This means that if two low-mass nuclei can be fused together to form a larger nucleus, energy can be released. The larger nucleus has a greater binding energy and less mass per nucleon than the two that combined. Thus mass is destroyed in the fusion reaction, and energy is released (see [link]). On average, fusion of low-mass nuclei releases energy, but the details depend on the actual nuclides involved.



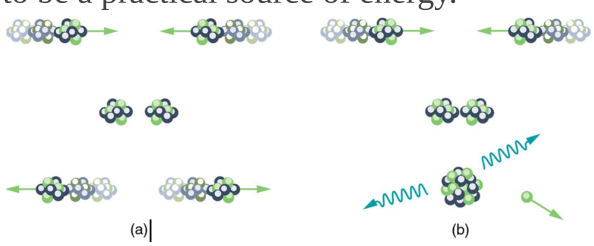
Fusion of light nuclei to form medium-mass nuclei destroys mass, because BE/A is greater for the product nuclei. The larger BE/A is, the less mass per nucleon, and so mass is converted to energy and released in these fusion reactions.

The major obstruction to fusion is the Coulomb repulsion between nuclei. Since the attractive nuclear force that can fuse nuclei together is short ranged, the repulsion of like positive charges must be overcome to get nuclei close enough to induce fusion. [link] shows an approximate graph of the potential energy between two nuclei as a function of the distance between their centers. The graph is analogous to a hill with a well in its center. A ball rolled from the right must have enough kinetic energy to get over the hump before it falls into the deeper well with a net gain in energy. So it is with fusion. If the nuclei are given enough kinetic energy to overcome the electric potential energy due to repulsion, then they can combine, release energy, and fall into a deep well. One way to accomplish this is to heat fusion fuel to high temperatures so that the kinetic energy of thermal motion is sufficient to get the nuclei together.



Potential energy between two light nuclei graphed as a function of distance between them. If the nuclei have enough kinetic energy to get over the Coulomb repulsion hump, they combine, release energy, and drop into a deep attractive well. Tunneling through the barrier is important in practice. The greater the kinetic energy and the higher the particles get up the barrier (or the lower the barrier), the more likely the tunneling.

You might think that, in the core of our Sun, nuclei are coming into contact and fusing. However, in fact, temperatures on the order of 10^8K are needed to actually get the nuclei in contact, exceeding the core temperature of the Sun. Quantum mechanical tunneling is what makes fusion in the Sun possible, and tunneling is an important process in most other practical applications of fusion, too. Since the probability of tunneling is extremely sensitive to barrier height and width, increasing the temperature greatly increases the rate of fusion. The closer reactants get to one another, the more likely they are to fuse (see [link]). Thus most fusion in the Sun and other stars takes place at their centers, where temperatures are highest. Moreover, high temperature is needed for thermonuclear power to be a practical source of energy.



(a) Two nuclei heading toward each other slow down, then stop, and then fly away without touching or fusing. (b) At higher energies, the two nuclei approach close enough for fusion via tunneling. The probability of tunneling increases as they approach,

but they do not have to touch for the reaction to occur.

The Sun produces energy by fusing protons or hydrogen nuclei ^{1}H (by far the Sun's most abundant nuclide) into helium nuclei ^{4}He. The principal sequence of fusion reactions forms what is called the **proton-proton cycle**:

Equation:

$$^1\text{H} + {}^1\text{H} \rightarrow {}^2\text{H} + e^+ + v_\text{e} \qquad (0.42\text{ MeV})$$

Equation:

$$^1\text{H} + {}^2\text{H} \rightarrow {}^3\text{He} + \gamma \qquad (5.49\text{ MeV})$$

Equation:

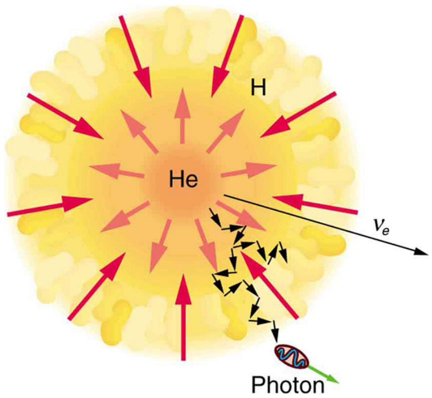
$$^3\text{He} + {}^3\text{He} \rightarrow {}^4\text{He} + {}^1\text{H} + {}^1\text{H} \qquad (12.86\text{ MeV})$$

where e^+ stands for a positron and v_e is an electron neutrino. (The energy in parentheses is *released* by the reaction.) Note that the first two reactions must occur twice for the third to be possible, so that the cycle consumes six protons (^{1}H) but gives back two. Furthermore, the two positrons produced will find two electrons and annihilate to form four more γ rays, for a total of six. The overall effect of the cycle is thus

Equation:

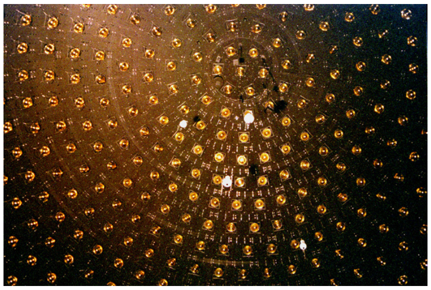
$$2e^- + 4{}^1\text{H} \rightarrow {}^4\text{He} + 2\text{v}_\text{e} + 6\gamma \qquad (26.7\text{ MeV})$$

where the 26.7 MeV includes the annihilation energy of the positrons and electrons and is distributed among all the reaction products. The solar interior is dense, and the reactions occur deep in the Sun where temperatures are highest. It takes about 32,000 years for the energy to diffuse to the surface and radiate away. However, the neutrinos escape the Sun in less than two seconds, carrying their energy with them, because they interact so weakly that the Sun is transparent to them. Negative feedback in the Sun acts as a thermostat to regulate the overall energy output. For instance, if the interior of the Sun becomes hotter than normal, the reaction rate increases, producing energy that expands the interior. This cools it and lowers the reaction rate. Conversely, if the interior becomes too cool, it contracts, increasing the temperature and reaction rate (see [link]). Stars like the Sun are stable for billions of years, until a significant fraction of their hydrogen has been depleted. What happens then is discussed in Introduction to Frontiers of Physics .

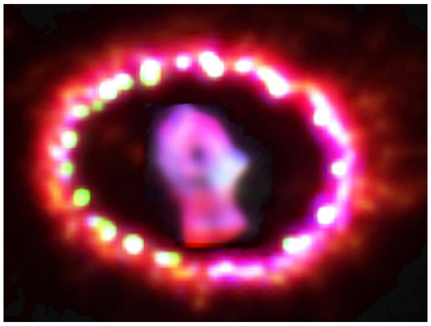


Nuclear fusion in the Sun converts hydrogen nuclei into helium; fusion occurs primarily at the boundary of the helium core, where temperature is highest and sufficient hydrogen remains. Energy released diffuses slowly to the surface, with the exception of neutrinos, which escape immediately. Energy production remains stable because of negative feedback effects.

Theories of the proton-proton cycle (and other energy-producing cycles in stars) were pioneered by the German-born, American physicist Hans Bethe (1906–2005), starting in 1938. He was awarded the 1967 Nobel Prize in physics for this work, and he has made many other contributions to physics and society. Neutrinos produced in these cycles escape so readily that they provide us an excellent means to test these theories and study stellar interiors. Detectors have been constructed and operated for more than four decades now to measure solar neutrinos (see [link]). Although solar neutrinos are detected and neutrinos were observed from Supernova 1987A ([link]), too few solar neutrinos were observed to be consistent with predictions of solar energy production. After many years, this solar neutrino problem was resolved with a blend of theory and experiment that showed that the neutrino does indeed have mass. It was also found that there are three types of neutrinos, each associated with a different type of nuclear decay.



This array of photomultiplier tubes is part of the large solar neutrino detector at the Fermi National Accelerator Laboratory in Illinois. In these experiments, the neutrinos interact with heavy water and produce flashes of light, which are detected by the photomultiplier tubes. In spite of its size and the huge flux of neutrinos that strike it, very few are detected each day since they interact so weakly. This, of course, is the same reason they escape the Sun so readily. (credit: Fred Ullrich)



Supernovas are the source of elements heavier than

iron. Energy released powers nucleosynthesis. Spectroscopic analysis of the ring of material ejected by Supernova 1987A observable in the southern hemisphere, shows evidence of heavy elements. The study of this supernova also provided indications that neutrinos might have mass. (credit: NASA, ESA, and P. Challis)

The proton-proton cycle is not a practical source of energy on Earth, in spite of the great abundance of hydrogen (^1H). The reaction $^1H + {}^1H \rightarrow {}^2H + e^+ + v_e$ has a very low probability of occurring. (This is why our Sun will last for about ten billion years.) However, a number of other fusion reactions are easier to induce. Among them are:

Equation:

$$^2H + {}^2H \rightarrow {}^3H + {}^1H \qquad (4.03\ \text{MeV})$$

Equation:

$$^2H + {}^2H \rightarrow {}^3He + n \qquad (3.27\ \text{MeV})$$

Equation:

$$^2H + {}^3H \rightarrow {}^4He + n \qquad (17.59\ \text{MeV})$$

Equation:

$$^2H + {}^2H \rightarrow {}^4He + \gamma \qquad (23.85\ \text{MeV}).$$

Deuterium (^2H) is about 0.015% of natural hydrogen, so there is an immense amount of it in sea water alone. In addition to an abundance of deuterium fuel, these fusion reactions produce large energies per reaction (in parentheses), but they do not produce much radioactive waste. Tritium (^3H) is radioactive, but it is consumed as a fuel (the reaction $^2H + {}^3H \rightarrow {}^4He + n$), and the neutrons and γs can be shielded. The neutrons produced can also be used to create more energy and fuel in reactions like

Equation:

$$n + {}^{1}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{2}\text{H} + \gamma \qquad (20.68\ \text{MeV})$$

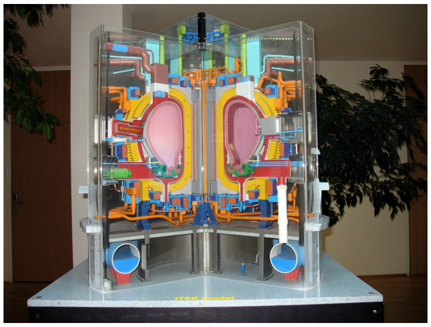
and
Equation:

$$n + {}^{1}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{2}\text{H} + \gamma \qquad (2.22\ \text{MeV}).$$

Note that these last two reactions, and ${}^{2}\text{H} + {}^{2}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + \gamma$, put most of their energy output into the γ ray, and such energy is difficult to utilize.

The three keys to practical fusion energy generation are to achieve the temperatures necessary to make the reactions likely, to raise the density of the fuel, and to confine it long enough to produce large amounts of energy. These three factors—temperature, density, and time—complement one another, and so a deficiency in one can be compensated for by the others. **Ignition** is defined to occur when the reactions produce enough energy to be self-sustaining after external energy input is cut off. This goal, which must be reached before commercial plants can be a reality, has not been achieved. Another milestone, called **break-even**, occurs when the fusion power produced equals the heating power input. Break-even has nearly been reached and gives hope that ignition and commercial plants may become a reality in a few decades.

Two techniques have shown considerable promise. The first of these is called **magnetic confinement** and uses the property that charged particles have difficulty crossing magnetic field lines. The tokamak, shown in [link], has shown particular promise. The tokamak's toroidal coil confines charged particles into a circular path with a helical twist due to the circulating ions themselves. In 1995, the Tokamak Fusion Test Reactor at Princeton in the US achieved world-record plasma temperatures as high as 500 million degrees Celsius. This facility operated between 1982 and 1997. A joint international effort is underway in France to build a tokamak-type reactor that will be the stepping stone to commercial power. ITER, as it is called, will be a full-scale device that aims to demonstrate the feasibility of fusion energy. It will generate 500 MW of power for extended periods of time and will achieve break-even conditions. It will study plasmas in conditions similar to those expected in a fusion power plant. Completion is scheduled for 2018.



(a) Artist’s rendition of ITER, a tokamak-type fusion reactor being built in southern France. It is hoped that this gigantic machine will reach the break-even point. Completion is scheduled for 2018. (credit: Stephan Mosel, Flickr)

The second promising technique aims multiple lasers at tiny fuel pellets filled with a mixture of deuterium and tritium. Huge power input heats the fuel, evaporating the confining pellet and crushing the fuel to high density with the expanding hot plasma produced. This technique is called **inertial confinement**, because the fuel’s inertia prevents it from escaping before significant fusion can take place. Higher densities have been reached than with tokamaks, but with smaller confinement times. In 2009, the Lawrence Livermore Laboratory (CA) completed a laser fusion device with 192 ultraviolet laser beams that are focused upon a D-T pellet (see [link]).

National Ignition Facility (CA). This image shows a laser bay where 192 laser beams will focus onto a small D-T target, producing fusion. (credit: Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, Lawrence Livermore National Security, LLC, and the Department of Energy)

Example:

Calculating Energy and Power from Fusion

(a) Calculate the energy released by the fusion of a 1.00-kg mixture of deuterium and tritium, which produces helium. There are equal numbers of deuterium and tritium nuclei in the mixture.

(b) If this takes place continuously over a period of a year, what is the average power output?

Strategy

According to ${}^{2}\text{H} + {}^{3}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + n$, the energy per reaction is 17.59 MeV. To find the total energy released, we must find the number of deuterium and tritium atoms in a kilogram. Deuterium has an atomic mass of about 2 and tritium has an atomic mass of about 3, for a total of about 5 g per mole of reactants or about 200 mol in 1.00 kg. To get a more precise figure, we will use the atomic masses from Appendix A. The power output is best expressed in watts, and so the energy output needs to be calculated in joules and then divided by the number of seconds in a year.

Solution for (a)

The atomic mass of deuterium (${}^{2}\text{H}$) is 2.014102 u, while that of tritium (${}^{3}\text{H}$) is 3.016049 u, for a total of 5.032151 u per reaction. So a mole of reactants has a mass of 5.03 g, and in 1.00 kg there are $(1000\text{ g})/(5.03\text{ g/mol}) = 198.8\text{ mol of reactants}$. The number of reactions that take place is therefore

Equation:

$$(198.8\text{ mol})\left(6.02 \times 10^{23}\text{ mol}^{-1}\right) = 1.20 \times 10^{26}\text{ reactions.}$$

The total energy output is the number of reactions times the energy per reaction:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \left(1.20 \times 10^{26}\text{ reactions}\right)(17.59\text{ MeV/reaction})\left(1.602 \times 10^{-13}\text{ J/MeV}\right) \\ &= 3.37 \times 10^{14}\text{ J.} \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (b)

Power is energy per unit time. One year has 3.16×10^{7} s, so

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \frac{E}{t} = \frac{3.37 \times 10^{14}\text{ J}}{3.16 \times 10^{7}\text{ s}} \\ &= 1.07 \times 10^{7}\text{ W} = 10.7\text{ MW.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

By now we expect nuclear processes to yield large amounts of energy, and we are not disappointed here. The energy output of 3.37×10^{14} J from fusing 1.00 kg of deuterium

and tritium is equivalent to 2.6 million gallons of gasoline and about eight times the energy output of the bomb that destroyed Hiroshima. Yet the average backyard swimming pool has about 6 kg of deuterium in it, so that fuel is plentiful if it can be utilized in a controlled manner. The average power output over a year is more than 10 MW, impressive but a bit small for a commercial power plant. About 32 times this power output would allow generation of 100 MW of electricity, assuming an efficiency of one-third in converting the fusion energy to electrical energy.

Section Summary

- Nuclear fusion is a reaction in which two nuclei are combined to form a larger nucleus. It releases energy when light nuclei are fused to form medium-mass nuclei.
- Fusion is the source of energy in stars, with the proton-proton cycle,
  Equation:
  $$^{1}\text{H} + {}^{1}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{2}\text{H} + e^{+} + v_{\text{e}} \qquad (0.42\ \text{MeV})$$
  Equation:
  $$^{1}\text{H} + {}^{2}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}\text{He} + \gamma \qquad (5.49\ \text{MeV})$$
  Equation:
  $$^{3}\text{He} + {}^{3}\text{He} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + {}^{1}\text{H} + {}^{1}\text{H} \qquad (12.86\ \text{MeV})$$
  being the principal sequence of energy-producing reactions in our Sun.
- The overall effect of the proton-proton cycle is
  Equation:
  $$2e^{-} + 4{}^{1}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + 2v_{\text{e}} + 6\gamma \qquad (26.7\ \text{MeV}),$$
  where the 26.7 MeV includes the energy of the positrons emitted and annihilated.
- Attempts to utilize controlled fusion as an energy source on Earth are related to deuterium and tritium, and the reactions play important roles.
- Ignition is the condition under which controlled fusion is self-sustaining; it has not yet been achieved. Break-even, in which the fusion energy output is as great as the external energy input, has nearly been achieved.
- Magnetic confinement and inertial confinement are the two methods being developed for heating fuel to sufficiently high temperatures, at sufficient density, and for sufficiently long times to achieve ignition. The first method uses magnetic fields

and the second method uses the momentum of impinging laser beams for confinement.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: Why does the fusion of light nuclei into heavier nuclei release energy?

Exercise:

Problem:

Energy input is required to fuse medium-mass nuclei, such as iron or cobalt, into more massive nuclei. Explain why.

Exercise:

Problem:

In considering potential fusion reactions, what is the advantage of the reaction $^{2}\text{H} + {}^{3}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + n$ over the reaction $^{2}\text{H} + {}^{2}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}\text{He} + n$?

Exercise:

Problem:

Give reasons justifying the contention made in the text that energy from the fusion reaction $^{2}\text{H} + {}^{2}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + \gamma$ is relatively difficult to capture and utilize.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the total number of nucleons, total charge, and electron family number are conserved for each of the fusion reactions in the proton-proton cycle in

Equation:

$$^{1}\text{H} + {}^{1}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{2}\text{H} + e^{+} + v_{\text{e}},$$

Equation:

$$^{1}\text{H} + {}^{2}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}\text{He} + \gamma,$$

and
Equation:

$$^{3}\text{He} + {}^{3}\text{He} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + {}^{1}\text{H} + {}^{1}\text{H}.$$

(List the value of each of the conserved quantities before and after each of the reactions.)

Solution:

(a) A=1+1=2, Z=1+1=1+1, efn $= 0 = -1 + 1$

(b) A=1+2=3, Z=1+1=2, efn=0=0

(c) A=3+3=4+1+1, Z=2+2=2+1+1, efn=0=0

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the energy output in each of the fusion reactions in the proton-proton cycle, and verify the values given in the above summary.

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the total energy released in the proton-proton cycle is 26.7 MeV, considering the overall effect in $^{1}\text{H} + {}^{1}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{2}\text{H} + e^{+} + v_{\text{e}}$, $^{1}\text{H} + {}^{2}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}\text{He} + \gamma$, and $^{3}\text{He} + {}^{3}\text{He} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + {}^{1}\text{H} + {}^{1}\text{H}$ and being certain to include the annihilation energy.

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned}
E &= (m_{\text{i}} - m_{\text{f}})c^2 \\
&= \left[4m\left({}^{1}\text{H}\right) - m\left({}^{4}\text{He}\right)\right]c^2 \\
&= [4(1.007825) - 4.002603](931.5\text{ MeV}) \\
&= 26.73\text{ MeV}
\end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify by listing the number of nucleons, total charge, and electron family number before and after the cycle that these quantities are conserved in the overall proton-proton cycle in $2e^{-} + 4{}^{1}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + 2v_{\text{e}} + 6\gamma$.

Exercise:

Problem:

The energy produced by the fusion of a 1.00-kg mixture of deuterium and tritium was found in Example Calculating Energy and Power from Fusion. Approximately how many kilograms would be required to supply the annual energy use in the United States?

Solution:

3.12×10^5 kg (about 200 tons)

Exercise:

Problem:

Tritium is naturally rare, but can be produced by the reaction $n + {}^{2}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}\text{H} + \gamma$. How much energy in MeV is released in this neutron capture?

Exercise:

Problem: Two fusion reactions mentioned in the text are

$n + {}^{3}\text{He} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + \gamma$

and

$n + {}^{1}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{2}\text{H} + \gamma.$

Both reactions release energy, but the second also creates more fuel. Confirm that the energies produced in the reactions are 20.58 and 2.22 MeV, respectively. Comment on which product nuclide is most tightly bound, ${}^{4}\text{He}$ or ${}^{2}\text{H}$.

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned}
E &= (m_{\text{i}} - m_{\text{f}})c^2 \\
E_1 &= (1.008665 + 3.016030 - 4.002603)(931.5\text{ MeV}) \\
&= 20.58\text{ MeV} \\
E_2 &= (1.008665 + 1.007825 - 2.014102)(931.5\text{ MeV}) \\
&= 2.224\text{ MeV}
\end{aligned}$$

${}^{4}\text{He}$ is more tightly bound, since this reaction gives off more energy per nucleon.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the number of grams of deuterium in an 80,000-L swimming pool, given deuterium is 0.0150% of natural hydrogen.

(b) Find the energy released in joules if this deuterium is fused via the reaction $^{2}\mathrm{H} + {}^{2}\mathrm{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}\mathrm{He} + n$.

(c) Could the neutrons be used to create more energy?

(d) Discuss the amount of this type of energy in a swimming pool as compared to that in, say, a gallon of gasoline, also taking into consideration that water is far more abundant.

Exercise:

Problem:

How many kilograms of water are needed to obtain the 198.8 mol of deuterium, assuming that deuterium is 0.01500% (by number) of natural hydrogen?

Solution:

1.19×10^{4} kg

Exercise:

Problem: The power output of the Sun is 4×10^{26} W.

(a) If 90% of this is supplied by the proton-proton cycle, how many protons are consumed per second?

(b) How many neutrinos per second should there be per square meter at the Earth from this process? This huge number is indicative of how rarely a neutrino interacts, since large detectors observe very few per day.

Exercise:

Problem:

Another set of reactions that result in the fusing of hydrogen into helium in the Sun and especially in hotter stars is called the carbon cycle. It is

Equation:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
{}^{12}\mathrm{C} + {}^{1}\mathrm{H} & \rightarrow & {}^{13}\mathrm{N} + \gamma, \\
{}^{13}\mathrm{N} & \rightarrow & {}^{13}\mathrm{C} + e^{+} + v_e, \\
{}^{13}\mathrm{C} + {}^{1}\mathrm{H} & \rightarrow & {}^{14}\mathrm{N} + \gamma, \\
{}^{14}\mathrm{N} + {}^{1}\mathrm{H} & \rightarrow & {}^{15}\mathrm{O} + \gamma, \\
{}^{15}\mathrm{O} & \rightarrow & {}^{15}\mathrm{N} + e^{+} + v_e, \\
{}^{15}\mathrm{N} + {}^{1}\mathrm{H} & \rightarrow & {}^{12}\mathrm{C} + {}^{4}\mathrm{He}.
\end{array}
$$

Write down the overall effect of the carbon cycle (as was done for the proton-proton cycle in $2e^{-} + 4{}^{1}\mathrm{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\mathrm{He} + 2v_e + 6\gamma$). Note the number of protons (${}^{1}\mathrm{H}$) required and assume that the positrons (e^{+}) annihilate electrons to form more γ rays.

Solution:

$2e^{-} + 4{}^{1}\mathrm{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\mathrm{He} + 7\gamma + 2v_e$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the total energy released in MeV in each carbon cycle (elaborated in the above problem) including the annihilation energy.

(b) How does this compare with the proton-proton cycle output?

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the total number of nucleons, total charge, and electron family number are conserved for each of the fusion reactions in the carbon cycle given in the above problem. (List the value of each of the conserved quantities before and after each of the reactions.)

Solution:

(a) A=12+1=13, Z=6+1=7, efn $= 0 = 0$

(b) A=13=13, Z=7=6+1, efn $= 0 = -1 + 1$

(c) A=13 + 1=14, Z=6+1=7, efn $= 0 = 0$

(d) A=14 + 1=15, Z=7+1=8, efn $= 0 = 0$

(e) A=15=15, Z=8=7+1, efn $= 0 = -1 + 1$

(f) $A = 15 + 1 = 12 + 4$, $Z = 7 + 1 = 6 + 2$, $\text{efn} = 0 = 0$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The laser system tested for inertial confinement can produce a 100-kJ pulse only 1.00 ns in duration. (a) What is the power output of the laser system during the brief pulse?

(b) How many photons are in the pulse, given their wavelength is 1.06 µm?

(c) What is the total momentum of all these photons?

(d) How does the total photon momentum compare with that of a single 1.00 MeV deuterium nucleus?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Find the amount of energy given to the ^{4}He nucleus and to the γ ray in the reaction $n + ^3\text{He} \rightarrow ^4\text{He} + \gamma$, using the conservation of momentum principle and taking the reactants to be initially at rest. This should confirm the contention that most of the energy goes to the γ ray.

Solution:

$E_{\gamma} = 20.6\ \text{MeV}$

$E_{^4\text{He}} = 5.68 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{MeV}$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) What temperature gas would have atoms moving fast enough to bring two ^{3}He nuclei into contact? Note that, because both are moving, the average kinetic energy only needs to be half the electric potential energy of these doubly charged nuclei when just in contact with one another.

(b) Does this high temperature imply practical difficulties for doing this in controlled fusion?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) Estimate the years that the deuterium fuel in the oceans could supply the energy needs of the world. Assume world energy consumption to be ten times that of the United States which is 8×10^{19} J/y and that the deuterium in the oceans could be converted to energy with an efficiency of 32%. You must estimate or look up the amount of water in the oceans and take the deuterium content to be 0.015% of natural hydrogen to find the mass of deuterium available. Note that approximate energy yield of deuterium is 3.37×10^{14} J/kg.

(b) Comment on how much time this is by any human measure. (It is not an unreasonable result, only an impressive one.)

Solution:

(a) 3×10^{9} y

(b) This is approximately half the lifetime of the Earth.

Glossary

break-even
: when fusion power produced equals the heating power input

ignition
: when a fusion reaction produces enough energy to be self-sustaining after external energy input is cut off

inertial confinement
: a technique that aims multiple lasers at tiny fuel pellets evaporating and crushing them to high density

magnetic confinement
: a technique in which charged particles are trapped in a small region because of difficulty in crossing magnetic field lines

nuclear fusion
: a reaction in which two nuclei are combined, or fused, to form a larger nucleus

proton-proton cycle
: the combined reactions $^{1}H+^{1}H \rightarrow ^{2}H+e^{+}+v_{e}$, $^{1}H+^{2}H \rightarrow ^{3}He+\gamma$, and $^{3}He+^{3}He \rightarrow ^{4}He+^{1}H+^{1}H$

Fission

- Define nuclear fission.
- Discuss how fission fuel reacts and describe what it produces.
- Describe controlled and uncontrolled chain reactions.

Nuclear fission is a reaction in which a nucleus is split (or *fissured*). Controlled fission is a reality, whereas controlled fusion is a hope for the future. Hundreds of nuclear fission power plants around the world attest to the fact that controlled fission is practical and, at least in the short term, economical, as seen in [link]. Whereas nuclear power was of little interest for decades following TMI and Chernobyl (and now Fukushima Daiichi), growing concerns over global warming has brought nuclear power back on the table as a viable energy alternative. By the end of 2009, there were 442 reactors operating in 30 countries, providing 15% of the world's electricity. France provides over 75% of its electricity with nuclear power, while the US has 104 operating reactors providing 20% of its electricity. Australia and New Zealand have none. China is building nuclear power plants at the rate of one start every month.

The people living near this nuclear power plant have no measurable exposure to radiation that is traceable to the plant. About 16% of the world's electrical power is generated by controlled nuclear fission in such plants. The cooling towers are the most prominent features but are not unique to nuclear

power. The reactor is in the small domed building to the left of the towers. (credit: Kalmthouts)

Fission is the opposite of fusion and releases energy only when heavy nuclei are split. As noted in Fusion, energy is released if the products of a nuclear reaction have a greater binding energy per nucleon (BE/A) than the parent nuclei. [link] shows that BE/A is greater for medium-mass nuclei than heavy nuclei, implying that when a heavy nucleus is split, the products have less mass per nucleon, so that mass is destroyed and energy is released in the reaction. The amount of energy per fission reaction can be large, even by nuclear standards. The graph in [link] shows BE/A to be about 7.6 MeV/nucleon for the heaviest nuclei (A about 240), while BE/A is about 8.6 MeV/nucleon for nuclei having A about 120. Thus, if a heavy nucleus splits in half, then about 1 MeV per nucleon, or approximately 240 MeV per fission, is released. This is about 10 times the energy per fusion reaction, and about 100 times the energy of the average α, β, or γ decay.

Example:
Calculating Energy Released by Fission
Calculate the energy released in the following spontaneous fission reaction:
Equation:

$$^{238}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{95}\mathrm{Sr} + {}^{140}\mathrm{Xe} + 3n$$

given the atomic masses to be $m(^{238}\mathrm{U}) = 238.050784\text{ u}$, $m(^{95}\mathrm{Sr}) = 94.919388\text{ u}$, $m(^{140}\mathrm{Xe}) = 139.921610\text{ u}$, and $m(n) = 1.008665\text{ u}$.
Strategy
As always, the energy released is equal to the mass destroyed times c^2 , so we must find the difference in mass between the parent $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ and the fission products.
Solution
The products have a total mass of
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} m_{\text{products}} &= 94.919388\ \text{u} + 139.921610\ \text{u} + 3(1.008665\ \text{u}) \\ &= 237.866993\ \text{u}. \end{aligned}$$

The mass lost is the mass of ^{238}U minus m_{products}, or

Equation:

$$\Delta m = 238.050784\ \text{u} - 237.8669933\ \text{u} = 0.183791\ \text{u},$$

so the energy released is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= (\Delta m)c^2 \\ &= (0.183791\ \text{u})\frac{931.5\ \text{MeV}/c^2}{\text{u}}c^2 = 171.2\ \text{MeV}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

A number of important things arise in this example. The 171-MeV energy released is large, but a little less than the earlier estimated 240 MeV. This is because this fission reaction produces neutrons and does not split the nucleus into two equal parts. Fission of a given nuclide, such as ^{238}U , does not always produce the same products. Fission is a statistical process in which an entire range of products are produced with various probabilities. Most fission produces neutrons, although the number varies with each fission. This is an extremely important aspect of fission, because *neutrons can induce more fission*, enabling self-sustaining chain reactions.

Spontaneous fission can occur, but this is usually not the most common decay mode for a given nuclide. For example, ^{238}U can spontaneously fission, but it decays mostly by α emission. Neutron-induced fission is crucial as seen in [link]. Being chargeless, even low-energy neutrons can strike a nucleus and be absorbed once they feel the attractive nuclear force. Large nuclei are described by a **liquid drop model** with surface tension and oscillation modes, because the large number of nucleons act like atoms in a drop. The neutron is attracted and thus, deposits energy, causing the nucleus to deform as a liquid drop. If stretched enough, the nucleus narrows in the middle. The number of nucleons in contact and the strength of the nuclear force binding the nucleus together are reduced. Coulomb repulsion between the two ends then succeeds in fissioning the nucleus, which pops like a water drop into two large pieces and a few neutrons. **Neutron-induced fission** can be written as

Equation:

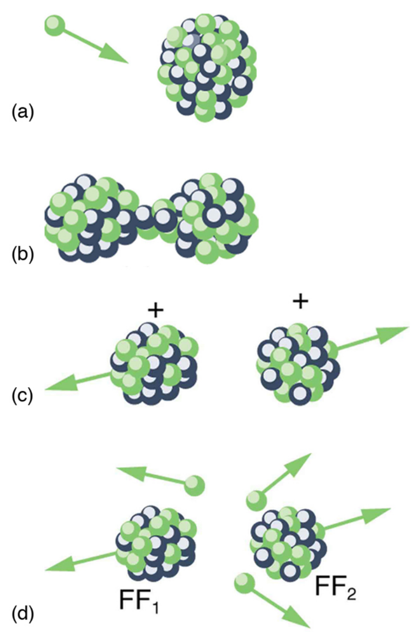
$$n + {}^{A}\mathrm{X} \rightarrow \mathrm{FF}_1 + \mathrm{FF}_2 + \mathrm{xn},$$

where FF_1 and FF_2 are the two daughter nuclei, called **fission fragments**, and x is the number of neutrons produced. Most often, the masses of the fission fragments are not the same. Most of the released energy goes into the kinetic energy of the fission fragments, with the remainder going into the neutrons and excited states of the fragments. Since neutrons can induce fission, a self-sustaining chain reaction is possible, provided more than one neutron is produced on average — that is, if $x > 1$ in $n + {}^{A}\mathrm{X} \rightarrow \mathrm{FF}_1 + \mathrm{FF}_2 + \mathrm{xn}$. This can also be seen in [link].

An example of a typical neutron-induced fission reaction is
Equation:

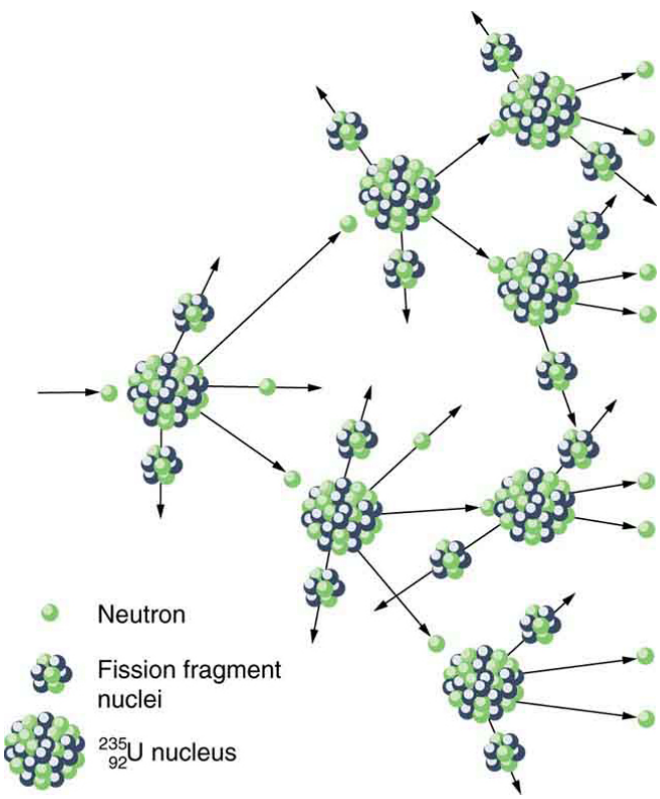
$$n + {}^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{142}_{56}\mathrm{Ba} + {}^{91}_{36}\mathrm{Kr} + 3n.$$

Note that in this equation, the total charge remains the same (is conserved): $92 + 0 = 56 + 36$. Also, as far as whole numbers are concerned, the mass is constant: $1 + 235 = 142 + 91 + 3$. This is not true when we consider the masses out to 6 or 7 significant places, as in the previous example.



Neutron-induced

fission is shown. First, energy is put into this large nucleus when it absorbs a neutron. Acting like a struck liquid drop, the nucleus deforms and begins to narrow in the middle. Since fewer nucleons are in contact, the repulsive Coulomb force is able to break the nucleus into two parts with some neutrons also flying away.



A chain reaction can produce self-sustained fission if each fission

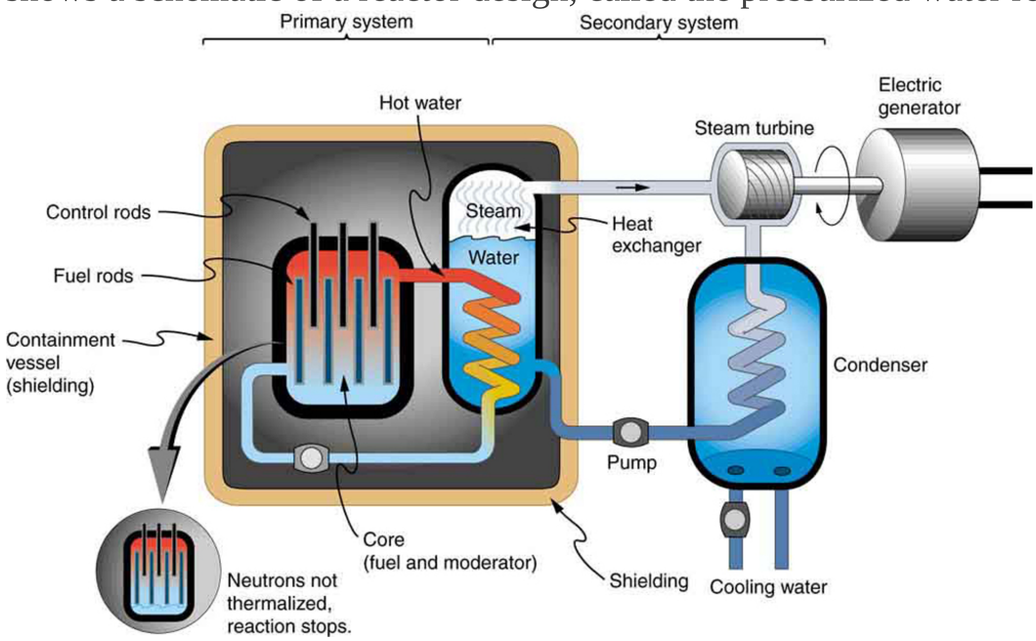
produces enough neutrons to induce at least one more fission. This depends on several factors, including how many neutrons are produced in an average fission and how easy it is to make a particular type of nuclide fission.

Not every neutron produced by fission induces fission. Some neutrons escape the fissionable material, while others interact with a nucleus without making it fission. We can enhance the number of fissions produced by neutrons by having a large amount of fissionable material. The minimum amount necessary for self-sustained fission of a given nuclide is called its **critical mass**. Some nuclides, such as $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$, produce more neutrons per fission than others, such as $^{235}\mathrm{U}$. Additionally, some nuclides are easier to make fission than others. In particular, $^{235}\mathrm{U}$ and $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$ are easier to fission than the much more abundant $^{238}\mathrm{U}$. Both factors affect critical mass, which is smallest for $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$.

The reason $^{235}\mathrm{U}$ and $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$ are easier to fission than $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ is that the nuclear force is more attractive for an even number of neutrons in a nucleus than for an odd number. Consider that $^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U}_{143}$ has 143 neutrons, and $^{239}_{94}\mathrm{P}_{145}$ has 145 neutrons, whereas $^{238}_{92}\mathrm{U}_{146}$ has 146. When a neutron encounters a nucleus with an odd number of neutrons, the nuclear force is more attractive, because the additional neutron will make the number even. About 2-MeV more energy is deposited in the resulting nucleus than would be the case if the number of neutrons was already even. This extra energy produces greater deformation, making fission more likely. Thus, $^{235}\mathrm{U}$ and $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$ are superior fission fuels. The isotope $^{235}\mathrm{U}$ is only 0.72 % of natural uranium, while $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ is 99.27%, and $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$ does not exist in nature. Australia has the largest deposits of uranium in the world, standing at 28% of the total. This is followed by Kazakhstan and Canada. The US has only 3% of global reserves.

Most fission reactors utilize $^{235}\mathrm{U}$, which is separated from $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ at some expense. This is called enrichment. The most common separation method is gaseous diffusion of uranium hexafluoride (UF_6) through membranes. Since $^{235}\mathrm{U}$ has less mass than $^{238}\mathrm{U}$, its UF_6 molecules have higher average velocity at the same temperature and diffuse faster. Another interesting characteristic of $^{235}\mathrm{U}$ is that it preferentially absorbs very slow moving neutrons (with energies a

fraction of an eV), whereas fission reactions produce fast neutrons with energies in the order of an MeV. To make a self-sustained fission reactor with ^{235}U , it is thus necessary to slow down (“thermalize”) the neutrons. Water is very effective, since neutrons collide with protons in water molecules and lose energy. [link] shows a schematic of a reactor design, called the pressurized water reactor.



A pressurized water reactor is cleverly designed to control the fission of large amounts of ^{235}U , while using the heat produced in the fission reaction to create steam for generating electrical energy. Control rods adjust neutron flux so that criticality is obtained, but not exceeded. In case the reactor overheats and boils the water away, the chain reaction terminates, because water is needed to thermalize the neutrons. This inherent safety feature can be overwhelmed in extreme circumstances.

Control rods containing nuclides that very strongly absorb neutrons are used to adjust neutron flux. To produce large power, reactors contain hundreds to thousands of critical masses, and the chain reaction easily becomes self-sustaining, a condition called **criticality**. Neutron flux should be carefully regulated to avoid an exponential increase in fissions, a condition called **supercriticality**. Control rods help prevent overheating, perhaps even a meltdown or explosive disassembly. The water that is used to thermalize

neutrons, necessary to get them to induce fission in ^{235}U , and achieve criticality, provides a negative feedback for temperature increases. In case the reactor overheats and boils the water to steam or is breached, the absence of water kills the chain reaction. Considerable heat, however, can still be generated by the reactor's radioactive fission products. Other safety features, thus, need to be incorporated in the event of a *loss of coolant* accident, including auxiliary cooling water and pumps.

Example:
Calculating Energy from a Kilogram of Fissionable Fuel
Calculate the amount of energy produced by the fission of 1.00 kg of ^{235}U , given the average fission reaction of ^{235}U produces 200 MeV.
Strategy
The total energy produced is the number of ^{235}U atoms times the given energy per ^{235}U fission. We should therefore find the number of ^{235}U atoms in 1.00 kg.
Solution
The number of ^{235}U atoms in 1.00 kg is Avogadro's number times the number of moles. One mole of ^{235}U has a mass of 235.04 g; thus, there are $(1000\text{ g})/(235.04\text{ g/mol})=4.25\text{ mol}$. The number of ^{235}U atoms is therefore,
Equation:

$$(4.25\text{ mol})\left(6.02\times 10^{23}\ ^{235}\text{U/mol}\right)=2.56\times 10^{24}\ ^{235}\text{U}.$$

So the total energy released is
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} E & = & \left(2.56\times 10^{24}\ ^{235}\text{U}\right)\left(\frac{200\text{ MeV}}{^{235}\text{U}}\right)\left(\frac{1.60\times 10^{-13}\text{ J}}{\text{MeV}}\right) \\ & = & 8.21\times 10^{13}\text{ J.} \end{array}$$

Discussion
This is another impressively large amount of energy, equivalent to about 14,000 barrels of crude oil or 600,000 gallons of gasoline. But, it is only one-fourth the energy produced by the fusion of a kilogram mixture of deuterium and tritium as seen in [link]. Even though each fission reaction yields about ten times the energy of a fusion reaction, the energy per kilogram of fission fuel is less, because there are far fewer moles per kilogram of the heavy nuclides. Fission

fuel is also much more scarce than fusion fuel, and less than 1% of uranium (the $^{235}\mathrm{U}$) is readily usable.

One nuclide already mentioned is $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$, which has a 24,120-y half-life and does not exist in nature. Plutonium-239 is manufactured from $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ in reactors, and it provides an opportunity to utilize the other 99% of natural uranium as an energy source. The following reaction sequence, called **breeding**, produces $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$. Breeding begins with neutron capture by $^{238}\mathrm{U}$:

Equation:

$$^{238}\mathrm{U} + n \rightarrow {}^{239}\mathrm{U} + \gamma.$$

Uranium-239 then β^{-} decays:

Equation:

$$^{239}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{239}\mathrm{Np} + \beta^{-} + v_e(\mathrm{t}_{1/2} = 23\ \mathrm{min}).$$

Neptunium-239 also β^{-} decays:

Equation:

$$^{239}\mathrm{Np} \rightarrow {}^{239}\mathrm{Pu} + \beta^{-} + v_e(\mathrm{t}_{1/2} = 2.4\ \mathrm{d}).$$

Plutonium-239 builds up in reactor fuel at a rate that depends on the probability of neutron capture by $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ (all reactor fuel contains more $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ than $^{235}\mathrm{U}$). Reactors designed specifically to make plutonium are called **breeder reactors**. They seem to be inherently more hazardous than conventional reactors, but it remains unknown whether their hazards can be made economically acceptable. The four reactors at Chernobyl, including the one that was destroyed, were built to breed plutonium and produce electricity. These reactors had a design that was significantly different from the pressurized water reactor illustrated above.

Plutonium-239 has advantages over $^{235}\mathrm{U}$ as a reactor fuel — it produces more neutrons per fission on average, and it is easier for a thermal neutron to cause it to fission. It is also chemically different from uranium, so it is inherently easier to separate from uranium ore. This means $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$ has a particularly small critical mass, an advantage for nuclear weapons.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Nuclear Fission
Start a chain reaction, or introduce non-radioactive isotopes to prevent one. Control energy production in a nuclear reactor!

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/01caf0d0-116f-11e6-b891-abfdaa77b03b/nuclear-fission/#sim-one-nucleus

Section Summary

- Nuclear fission is a reaction in which a nucleus is split.
- Fission releases energy when heavy nuclei are split into medium-mass nuclei.
- Self-sustained fission is possible, because neutron-induced fission also produces neutrons that can induce other fissions, $n + {}^{A}X \rightarrow \mathrm{FF}_1 + \mathrm{FF}_2 + \mathrm{xn}$, where FF_1 and FF_2 are the two daughter nuclei, or fission fragments, and *x* is the number of neutrons produced.
- A minimum mass, called the critical mass, should be present to achieve criticality.
- More than a critical mass can produce supercriticality.
- The production of new or different isotopes (especially ${}^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$) by nuclear transformation is called breeding, and reactors designed for this purpose are called breeder reactors.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why the fission of heavy nuclei releases energy. Similarly, why is it that energy input is required to fission light nuclei?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain, in terms of conservation of momentum and energy, why collisions of neutrons with protons will thermalize neutrons better than collisions with oxygen.

Exercise:

Problem:

The ruins of the Chernobyl reactor are enclosed in a huge concrete structure built around it after the accident. Some rain penetrates the building in winter, and radioactivity from the building increases. What does this imply is happening inside?

Exercise:

Problem:

Since the uranium or plutonium nucleus fissions into several fission fragments whose mass distribution covers a wide range of pieces, would you expect more residual radioactivity from fission than fusion? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

The core of a nuclear reactor generates a large amount of thermal energy from the decay of fission products, even when the power-producing fission chain reaction is turned off. Would this residual heat be greatest after the reactor has run for a long time or short time? What if the reactor has been shut down for months?

Exercise:

Problem:

How can a nuclear reactor contain many critical masses and not go supercritical? What methods are used to control the fission in the reactor?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why can heavy nuclei with odd numbers of neutrons be induced to fission with thermal neutrons, whereas those with even numbers of neutrons require more energy input to induce fission?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is a conventional fission nuclear reactor not able to explode as a bomb?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the energy released in the neutron-induced fission (similar to the spontaneous fission in [link])

Equation:

$$n + {}^{238}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{96}\text{Sr} + {}^{140}\text{Xe} + 3n,$$

given $m({}^{96}\text{Sr}) = 95.921750$ u and $m({}^{140}\text{Xe}) = 139.92164$. (b) This result is about 6 MeV greater than the result for spontaneous fission. Why? (c) Confirm that the total number of nucleons and total charge are conserved in this reaction.

Solution:

(a) 177.1 MeV

(b) Because the gain of an external neutron yields about 6 MeV, which is the average BE/A for heavy nuclei.

(c) $A = 1 + 238 = 96 + 140 + 1 + 1 + 1,\ Z = 92 = 38 + 53,\ \text{efn} = 0 = 0$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the energy released in the neutron-induced fission reaction
Equation:

$$n + {}^{235}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{92}\text{Kr} + {}^{142}\text{Ba} + 2n,$$

given $m({}^{92}\text{Kr}) = 91.926269\ \text{u}$ and $m({}^{142}\text{Ba}) = 141.916361\ \text{u}$.

(b) Confirm that the total number of nucleons and total charge are conserved in this reaction.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the energy released in the neutron-induced fission reaction
Equation:

$$n + {}^{239}\text{Pu} \rightarrow {}^{96}\text{Sr} + {}^{140}\text{Ba} + 4n,$$

given $m({}^{96}\text{Sr}) = 95.921750\ \text{u}$ and $m({}^{140}\text{Ba}) = 139.910581\ \text{u}$.

(b) Confirm that the total number of nucleons and total charge are conserved in this reaction.

Solution:

(a) 180.6 MeV

(b)
$A = 1 + 239 = 96 + 140 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1$, $Z = 94 = 38 + 56$, $\text{efn} = 0 = 0$

Exercise:

Problem:

Confirm that each of the reactions listed for plutonium breeding just following [link] conserves the total number of nucleons, the total charge, and electron family number.

Exercise:

Problem:

Breeding plutonium produces energy even before any plutonium is fissioned. (The primary purpose of the four nuclear reactors at Chernobyl was breeding plutonium for weapons. Electrical power was a by-product used by the civilian population.) Calculate the energy produced in each of the reactions listed for plutonium breeding just following [link]. The pertinent masses are $m(^{239}\text{U}) = 239.054289\text{ u}$, $m(^{239}\text{Np}) = 239.052932\text{ u}$, and $m(^{239}\text{Pu}) = 239.052157\text{ u}$.

Solution:

$^{238}\text{U} + n \ \rightarrow {}^{239}\text{U} + \gamma\ 4.81\text{ MeV}$

$^{239}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{239}\text{Np} + \beta^{-} + v_e\ 0.753\text{ MeV}$

$^{239}\text{Np} \rightarrow {}^{239}\text{Pu} + \beta^{-} + v_e\ 0.211\text{ MeV}$

Exercise:

Problem:

The naturally occurring radioactive isotope ^{232}Th does not make good fission fuel, because it has an even number of neutrons; however, it can be bred into a suitable fuel (much as ^{238}U is bred into ^{239}P).

(a) What are Z and N for ^{232}Th?

(b) Write the reaction equation for neutron captured by ^{232}Th and identify the nuclide ^{A}X produced in $n + {}^{232}\text{Th} \rightarrow {}^{A}X + \gamma$.

(c) The product nucleus β^{-} decays, as does its daughter. Write the decay equations for each, and identify the final nucleus.

(d) Confirm that the final nucleus has an odd number of neutrons, making it a better fission fuel.

(e) Look up the half-life of the final nucleus to see if it lives long enough to be a useful fuel.

Exercise:

Problem:

The electrical power output of a large nuclear reactor facility is 900 MW. It has a 35.0% efficiency in converting nuclear power to electrical.

(a) What is the thermal nuclear power output in megawatts?

(b) How many ^{235}U nuclei fission each second, assuming the average fission produces 200 MeV?

(c) What mass of ^{235}U is fissioned in one year of full-power operation?

Solution:

(a) $2.57 \times 10^3\ \text{MW}$

(b) $8.03 \times 10^{19}\ \text{fission/s}$

(c) 991 kg

Exercise:

Problem:

A large power reactor that has been in operation for some months is turned off, but residual activity in the core still produces 150 MW of power. If the average energy per decay of the fission products is 1.00 MeV, what is the core activity in curies?

Glossary

breeder reactors
: reactors that are designed specifically to make plutonium

breeding
: reaction process that produces ^{239}Pu

criticality
: condition in which a chain reaction easily becomes self-sustaining

critical mass

minimum amount necessary for self-sustained fission of a given nuclide

fission fragments
a daughter nuclei

liquid drop model
a model of nucleus (only to understand some of its features) in which nucleons in a nucleus act like atoms in a drop

nuclear fission
reaction in which a nucleus splits

neutron-induced fission
fission that is initiated after the absorption of neutron

supercriticality
an exponential increase in fissions

Nuclear Weapons

- Discuss different types of fission and thermonuclear bombs.
- Explain the ill effects of nuclear explosion.

The world was in turmoil when fission was discovered in 1938. The discovery of fission, made by two German physicists, Otto Hahn and Fritz Strassman, was quickly verified by two Jewish refugees from Nazi Germany, Lise Meitner and her nephew Otto Frisch. Fermi, among others, soon found that not only did neutrons induce fission; more neutrons were produced during fission. The possibility of a self-sustained chain reaction was immediately recognized by leading scientists the world over. The enormous energy known to be in nuclei, but considered inaccessible, now seemed to be available on a large scale.

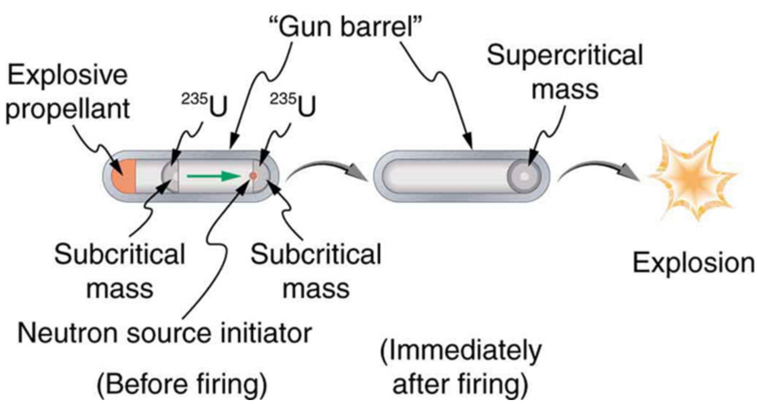
Within months after the announcement of the discovery of fission, Adolf Hitler banned the export of uranium from newly occupied Czechoslovakia. It seemed that the military value of uranium had been recognized in Nazi Germany, and that a serious effort to build a nuclear bomb had begun.

Alarmed scientists, many of them who fled Nazi Germany, decided to take action. None was more famous or revered than Einstein. It was felt that his help was needed to get the American government to make a serious effort at nuclear weapons as a matter of survival. Leo Szilard, an escaped Hungarian physicist, took a draft of a letter to Einstein, who, although pacifistic, signed the final version. The letter was for President Franklin Roosevelt, warning of the German potential to build extremely powerful bombs of a new type. It was sent in August of 1939, just before the German invasion of Poland that marked the start of World War II.

It was not until December 6, 1941, the day before the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor, that the United States made a massive commitment to building a nuclear bomb. The top secret Manhattan Project was a crash program aimed at beating the Germans. It was carried out in remote locations, such as Los Alamos, New Mexico, whenever possible, and eventually came to cost billions of dollars and employ the efforts of more than 100,000 people. J. Robert Oppenheimer (1904–1967), whose talent and ambitions made him ideal, was chosen to head the project. The first

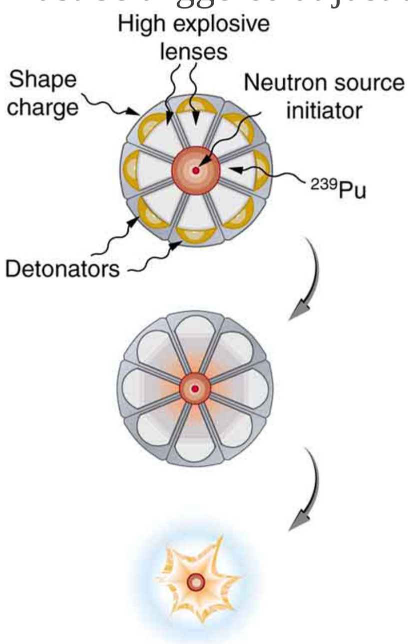
major step was made by Enrico Fermi and his group in December 1942, when they achieved the first self-sustained nuclear reactor. This first "atomic pile", built in a squash court at the University of Chicago, used carbon blocks to thermalize neutrons. It not only proved that the chain reaction was possible, it began the era of nuclear reactors. Glenn Seaborg, an American chemist and physicist, received the Nobel Prize in physics in 1951 for discovery of several transuranic elements, including plutonium. Carbon-moderated reactors are relatively inexpensive and simple in design and are still used for breeding plutonium, such as at Chernobyl, where two such reactors remain in operation.

Plutonium was recognized as easier to fission with neutrons and, hence, a superior fission material very early in the Manhattan Project. Plutonium availability was uncertain, and so a uranium bomb was developed simultaneously. [link] shows a gun-type bomb, which takes two subcritical uranium masses and blows them together. To get an appreciable yield, the critical mass must be held together by the explosive charges inside the cannon barrel for a few microseconds. Since the buildup of the uranium chain reaction is relatively slow, the device to hold the critical mass together can be relatively simple. Owing to the fact that the rate of spontaneous fission is low, a neutron source is triggered at the same time the critical mass is assembled.



A gun-type fission bomb for ^{235}U utilizes two subcritical masses forced together by explosive charges inside a cannon barrel. The energy yield depends on the amount of uranium and the time it can be held together before it disassembles itself.

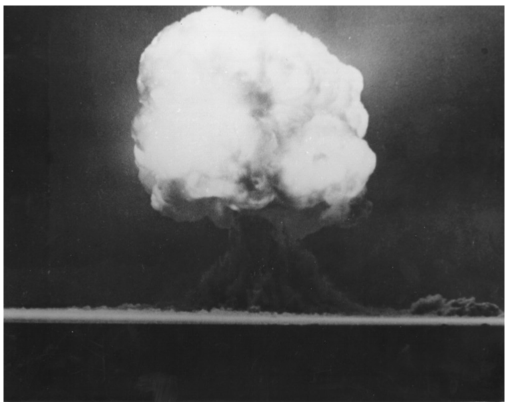
Plutonium’s special properties necessitated a more sophisticated critical mass assembly, shown schematically in [link]. A spherical mass of plutonium is surrounded by shape charges (high explosives that release most of their blast in one direction) that implode the plutonium, crushing it into a smaller volume to form a critical mass. The implosion technique is faster and more effective, because it compresses three-dimensionally rather than one-dimensionally as in the gun-type bomb. Again, a neutron source must be triggered at just the correct time to initiate the chain reaction.



An implosion created by high explosives compresses a sphere of ${}^{239}\text{Pu}$ into a critical mass. The superior fissionability of plutonium has made it the

universal bomb material.

Owing to its complexity, the plutonium bomb needed to be tested before there could be any attempt to use it. On July 16, 1945, the test named Trinity was conducted in the isolated Alamogordo Desert about 200 miles south of Los Alamos (see [link]). A new age had begun. The yield of this device was about 10 kilotons (kT), the equivalent of 5000 of the largest conventional bombs.



Trinity test (1945), the first nuclear bomb (credit: United States Department of Energy)

Although Germany surrendered on May 7, 1945, Japan had been steadfastly refusing to surrender for many months, forcing large casualties. Invasion plans by the Allies estimated a million casualties of their own and untold losses of Japanese lives. The bomb was viewed as a way to end the war. The first was a uranium bomb dropped on Hiroshima on August 6. Its yield of about 15 kT destroyed the city and killed an estimated 80,000 people, with 100,000 more being seriously injured (see [link]). The second was a plutonium bomb dropped on Nagasaki only three days later, on August 9. Its 20 kT yield killed at least 50,000 people, something less than Hiroshima because of the hilly terrain and the fact that it was a few kilometers off target. The Japanese were told that one bomb a week would be dropped

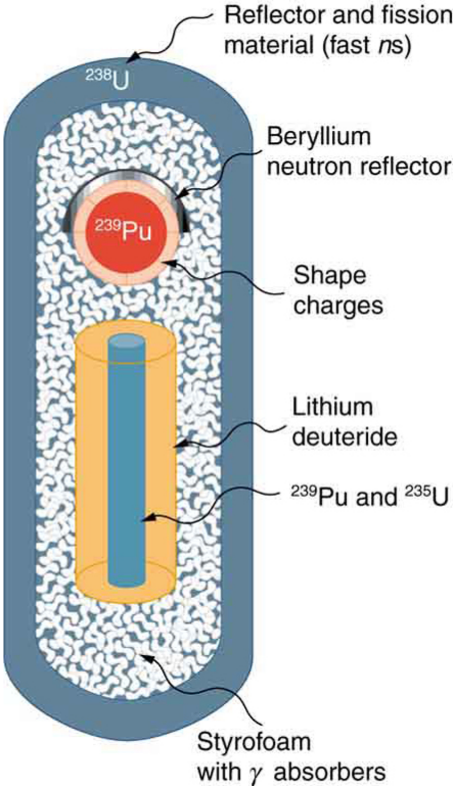
until they surrendered unconditionally, which they did on August 14. In actuality, the United States had only enough plutonium for one more and as yet unassembled bomb.

Destruction in Hiroshima (credit: United States Federal Government)

Knowing that fusion produces several times more energy per kilogram of fuel than fission, some scientists pushed the idea of a fusion bomb starting very early on. Calling this bomb the Super, they realized that it could have another advantage over fission—high-energy neutrons would aid fusion, while they are ineffective in $^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$ fission. Thus the fusion bomb could be virtually unlimited in energy release. The first such bomb was detonated by the United States on October 31, 1952, at Eniwetok Atoll with a yield of 10 megatons (MT), about 670 times that of the fission bomb that destroyed Hiroshima. The Soviets followed with a fusion device of their own in August 1953, and a weapons race, beyond the aim of this text to discuss, continued until the end of the Cold War.

[link] shows a simple diagram of how a thermonuclear bomb is constructed. A fission bomb is exploded next to fusion fuel in the solid form of lithium deuteride. Before the shock wave blows it apart, γ rays heat and compress the fuel, and neutrons create tritium through the reaction $n+^{6}\text{Li}\rightarrow^{3}\text{H}+^{4}\text{He}$. Additional fusion and fission fuels are enclosed in a dense shell of ^{238}U. The shell reflects some of the neutrons back into the fuel to enhance its fusion, but at high internal temperatures fast neutrons are

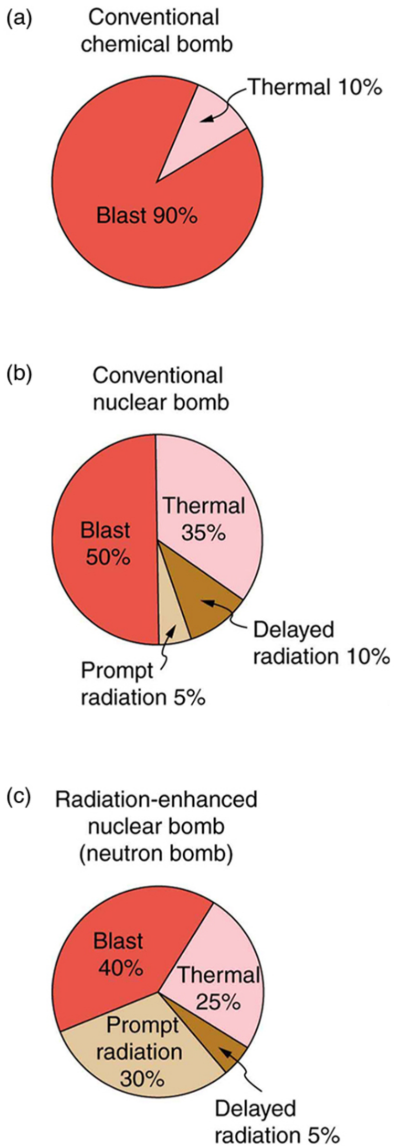
created that also cause the plentiful and inexpensive ^{238}U to fission, part of what allows thermonuclear bombs to be so large.



This schematic of a fusion bomb (H-bomb) gives some idea of how the ^{239}Pu fission trigger is used to ignite fusion fuel. Neutrons and γ rays transmit energy to the fusion fuel, create tritium from deuterium, and heat and compress the fusion fuel. The outer shell of ^{238}U serves to reflect some neutrons back into the fuel, causing more fusion,

and it boosts the energy output by fissioning itself when neutron energies become high enough.

The energy yield and the types of energy produced by nuclear bombs can be varied. Energy yields in current arsenals range from about 0.1 kT to 20 MT, although the Soviets once detonated a 67 MT device. Nuclear bombs differ from conventional explosives in more than size. [link] shows the approximate fraction of energy output in various forms for conventional explosives and for two types of nuclear bombs. Nuclear bombs put a much larger fraction of their output into thermal energy than do conventional bombs, which tend to concentrate the energy in blast. Another difference is the immediate and residual radiation energy from nuclear weapons. This can be adjusted to put more energy into radiation (the so-called neutron bomb) so that the bomb can be used to irradiate advancing troops without killing friendly troops with blast and heat.



Approximate fractions of energy output by conventional and two types of nuclear weapons. In addition to yielding more energy than conventional weapons, nuclear

bombs put a much larger fraction into thermal energy. This can be adjusted to enhance the radiation output to be more effective against troops. An enhanced radiation bomb is also called a neutron bomb.

At its peak in 1986, the combined arsenals of the United States and the Soviet Union totaled about 60,000 nuclear warheads. In addition, the British, French, and Chinese each have several hundred bombs of various sizes, and a few other countries have a small number. Nuclear weapons are generally divided into two categories. Strategic nuclear weapons are those intended for military targets, such as bases and missile complexes, and moderate to large cities. There were about 20,000 strategic weapons in 1988. Tactical weapons are intended for use in smaller battles. Since the collapse of the Soviet Union and the end of the Cold War in 1989, most of the 32,000 tactical weapons (including Cruise missiles, artillery shells, land mines, torpedoes, depth charges, and backpacks) have been demobilized, and parts of the strategic weapon systems are being dismantled with warheads and missiles being disassembled. According to the Treaty of Moscow of 2002, Russia and the United States have been required to reduce their strategic nuclear arsenal down to about 2000 warheads each.

A few small countries have built or are capable of building nuclear bombs, as are some terrorist groups. Two things are needed—a minimum level of technical expertise and sufficient fissionable material. The first is easy. Fissionable material is controlled but is also available. There are international agreements and organizations that attempt to control nuclear proliferation, but it is increasingly difficult given the availability of

fissionable material and the small amount needed for a crude bomb. The production of fissionable fuel itself is technologically difficult. However, the presence of large amounts of such material worldwide, though in the hands of a few, makes control and accountability crucial.

Section Summary

- There are two types of nuclear weapons—fission bombs use fission alone, whereas thermonuclear bombs use fission to ignite fusion.
- Both types of weapons produce huge numbers of nuclear reactions in a very short time.
- Energy yields are measured in kilotons or megatons of equivalent conventional explosives and range from 0.1 kT to more than 20 MT.
- Nuclear bombs are characterized by far more thermal output and nuclear radiation output than conventional explosives.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What are some of the reasons that plutonium rather than uranium is used in all fission bombs and as the trigger in all fusion bombs?

Exercise:

Problem:

Use the laws of conservation of momentum and energy to explain how a shape charge can direct most of the energy released in an explosion in a specific direction. (Note that this is similar to the situation in guns and cannons—most of the energy goes into the bullet.)

Exercise:

Problem:

How does the lithium deuteride in the thermonuclear bomb shown in [link] supply tritium $({}^{3}H)$ as well as deuterium $({}^{2}H)$?

Exercise:

Problem:

Fallout from nuclear weapons tests in the atmosphere is mainly ^{90}Sr and ^{137}Cs, which have 28.6- and 32.2-y half-lives, respectively. Atmospheric tests were terminated in most countries in 1963, although China only did so in 1980. It has been found that environmental activities of these two isotopes are decreasing faster than their half-lives. Why might this be?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: Find the mass converted into energy by a 12.0-kT bomb.

Solution:

0.56 g

Exercise:

Problem: What mass is converted into energy by a 1.00-MT bomb?

Exercise:

Problem:

Fusion bombs use neutrons from their fission trigger to create tritium fuel in the reaction $n +^6 \text{Li} \rightarrow^3 \text{H} +^4 \text{He}$. What is the energy released by this reaction in MeV?

Solution:

4.781 MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

It is estimated that the total explosive yield of all the nuclear bombs in existence currently is about 4,000 MT.

(a) Convert this amount of energy to kilowatt-hours, noting that $1\ \text{kW}\cdot\text{h} = 3.60 \times 10^6\ \text{J}$.

(b) What would the monetary value of this energy be if it could be converted to electricity costing 10 cents per kW·h?

Exercise:

Problem:

A radiation-enhanced nuclear weapon (or neutron bomb) can have a smaller total yield and still produce more prompt radiation than a conventional nuclear bomb. This allows the use of neutron bombs to kill nearby advancing enemy forces with radiation without blowing up your own forces with the blast. For a 0.500-kT radiation-enhanced weapon and a 1.00-kT conventional nuclear bomb: (a) Compare the blast yields. (b) Compare the prompt radiation yields.

Solution:

(a) Blast yields $2.1 \times 10^{12}\ \text{J}$ to $8.4 \times 10^{11}\ \text{J}$, or 2.5 to 1, conventional to radiation enhanced.

(b) Prompt radiation yields $6.3 \times 10^{11}\ \text{J}$ to $2.1 \times 10^{11}\ \text{J}$, or 3 to 1, radiation enhanced to conventional.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How many ^{239}Pu nuclei must fission to produce a 20.0-kT yield, assuming 200 MeV per fission? (b) What is the mass of this much ^{239}Pu?

Exercise:

Problem:

Assume one-fourth of the yield of a typical 320-kT strategic bomb comes from fission reactions averaging 200 MeV and the remainder from fusion reactions averaging 20 MeV.

(a) Calculate the number of fissions and the approximate mass of uranium and plutonium fissioned, taking the average atomic mass to be 238.

(b) Find the number of fusions and calculate the approximate mass of fusion fuel, assuming an average total atomic mass of the two nuclei in each reaction to be 5.

(c) Considering the masses found, does it seem reasonable that some missiles could carry 10 warheads? Discuss, noting that the nuclear fuel is only a part of the mass of a warhead.

Solution:

(a) 1.1×10^{25} fissions , 4.4 kg

(b) 3.2×10^{26} fusions , 2.7 kg

(c) The nuclear fuel totals only 6 kg, so it is quite reasonable that some missiles carry 10 overheads. The mass of the fuel would only be 60 kg and therefore the mass of the 10 warheads, weighing about 10 times the nuclear fuel, would be only 1500 lbs. If the fuel for the missiles weighs 5 times the total weight of the warheads, the missile would weigh about 9000 lbs or 4.5 tons. This is not an unreasonable weight for a missile.

Exercise:

Problem:

This problem gives some idea of the magnitude of the energy yield of a small tactical bomb. Assume that half the energy of a 1.00-kT nuclear depth charge set off under an aircraft carrier goes into lifting it out of the water—that is, into gravitational potential energy. How high is the carrier lifted if its mass is 90,000 tons?

Exercise:

Problem:

It is estimated that weapons tests in the atmosphere have deposited approximately 9 MCi of $^{90}\mathrm{Sr}$ on the surface of the earth. Find the mass of this amount of $^{90}\mathrm{Sr}$.

Solution:

7×10^4 g

Exercise:

Problem:

A 1.00-MT bomb exploded a few kilometers above the ground deposits 25.0% of its energy into radiant heat.

(a) Find the calories per cm^2 at a distance of 10.0 km by assuming a uniform distribution over a spherical surface of that radius.

(b) If this heat falls on a person's body, what temperature increase does it cause in the affected tissue, assuming it is absorbed in a layer 1.00-cm deep?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

One scheme to put nuclear weapons to nonmilitary use is to explode them underground in a geologically stable region and extract the

geothermal energy for electricity production. There was a total yield of about 4,000 MT in the combined arsenals in 2006. If 1.00 MT per day could be converted to electricity with an efficiency of 10.0%:

(a) What would the average electrical power output be?

(b) How many years would the arsenal last at this rate?

Solution:

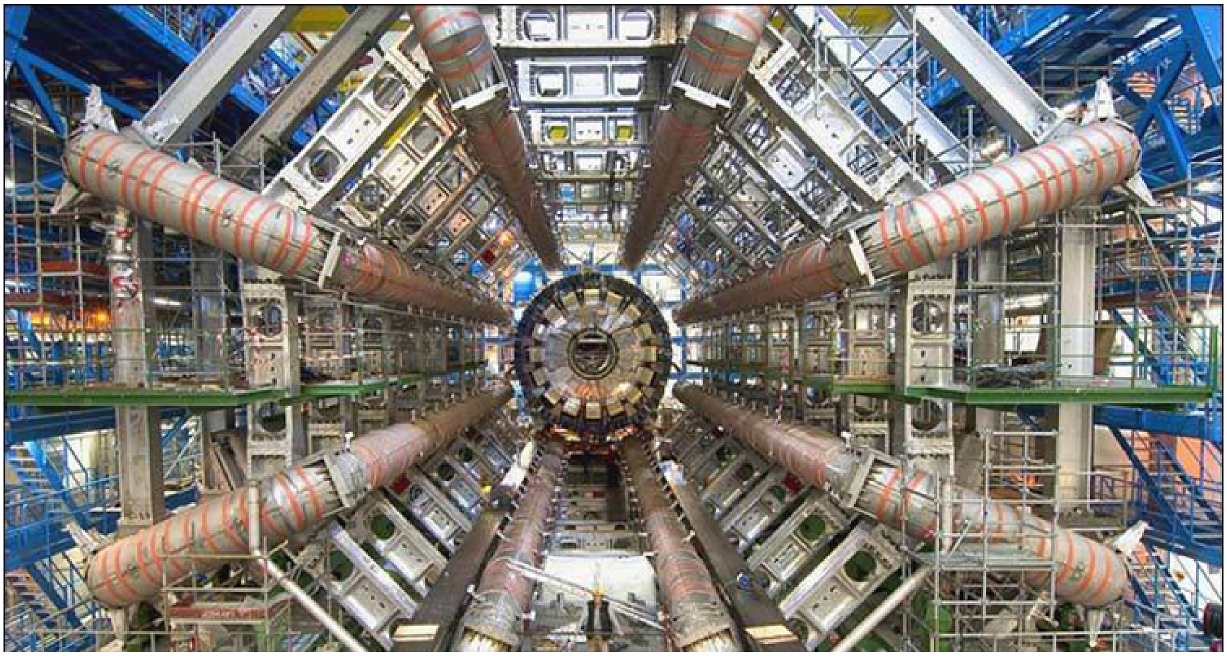
(a) 4.86×10^{9} W

(b) 11.0 y

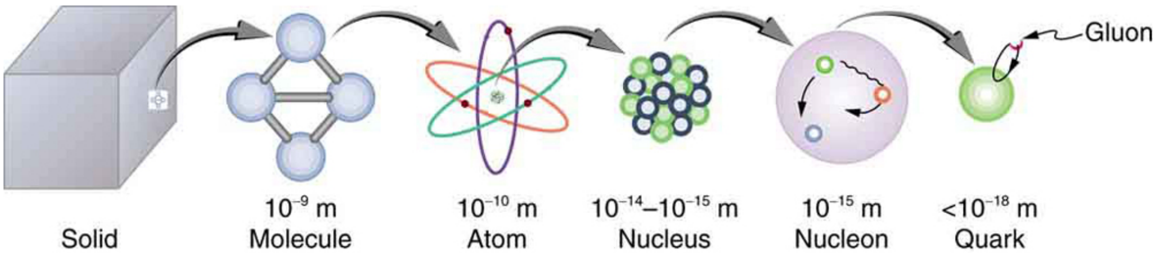
Introduction to Particle Physics
class="introduction"

- Explore the substructures of matter.
- Define particle physics.

Part of the Large Hadron Collider at CERN, on the border of Switzerland and France. The LHC is a particle accelerator, designed to study fundamental particles. (credit: Image Editor, Flickr)



Following ideas remarkably similar to those of the ancient Greeks, we continue to look for smaller and smaller structures in nature, hoping ultimately to find and understand the most fundamental building blocks that exist. Atomic physics deals with the smallest units of elements and compounds. In its study, we have found a relatively small number of atoms with systematic properties that explained a tremendous range of phenomena. Nuclear physics is concerned with the nuclei of atoms and their substructures. Here, a smaller number of components—the proton and neutron—make up all nuclei. Exploring the systematic behavior of their interactions has revealed even more about matter, forces, and energy. **Particle physics** deals with the substructures of atoms and nuclei and is particularly aimed at finding those truly fundamental particles that have no further substructure. Just as in atomic and nuclear physics, we have found a complex array of particles and properties with systematic characteristics analogous to the periodic table and the chart of nuclides. An underlying structure is apparent, and there is some reason to think that we *are* finding particles that have no substructure. Of course, we have been in similar situations before. For example, atoms were once thought to be the ultimate substructure. Perhaps we will find deeper and deeper structures and never come to an ultimate substructure. We may never really know, as indicated in [link].



The properties of matter are based on substructures called molecules and atoms. Atoms have the substructure of a nucleus with orbiting electrons, the interactions of which explain atomic properties. Protons and neutrons, the interactions of which explain the stability and abundance of elements, form the substructure of nuclei. Protons and neutrons are not fundamental—they are composed of quarks. Like electrons and a few other particles, quarks may be the fundamental building blocks of all there is, lacking any further substructure. But the story is not complete, because quarks and electrons may have substructure smaller than details that are presently observable.

This chapter covers the basics of particle physics as we know it today. An amazing convergence of topics is evolving in particle physics. We find that some particles are intimately related to forces, and that nature on the smallest scale may have its greatest influence on the large-scale character of the universe. It is an adventure exceeding the best science fiction because it is not only fantastic, it is real.

Summary

- Particle physics is the study of and the quest for those truly fundamental particles having no substructure.

Glossary

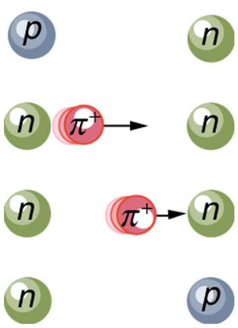
particle physics

the study of and the quest for those truly fundamental particles having no substructure

The Yukawa Particle and the Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle Revisited

- Define Yukawa particle.
- State the Heisenberg uncertainty principle.
- Describe pion.
- Estimate the mass of a pion.
- Explain meson.

Particle physics as we know it today began with the ideas of Hideki Yukawa in 1935. Physicists had long been concerned with how forces are transmitted, finding the concept of fields, such as electric and magnetic fields to be very useful. A field surrounds an object and carries the force exerted by the object through space. Yukawa was interested in the strong nuclear force in particular and found an ingenious way to explain its short range. His idea is a blend of particles, forces, relativity, and quantum mechanics that is applicable to all forces. Yukawa proposed that force is transmitted by the exchange of particles (called carrier particles). The field consists of these carrier particles.



The strong nuclear force is transmitted between a proton and neutron by the creation and exchange of a pion. The

pion is created through a temporary violation of conservation of mass-energy and travels from the proton to the neutron and is recaptured. It is not directly observable and is called a virtual particle. Note that the proton and neutron change identity in the process. The range of the force is limited by the fact that the pion can only exist for the short time allowed by the Heisenberg

uncertainty principle. Yukawa used the finite range of the strong nuclear force to estimate the mass of the pion; the shorter the range, the larger the mass of the carrier particle.

Specifically for the strong nuclear force, Yukawa proposed that a previously unknown particle, now called a **pion**, is exchanged between nucleons, transmitting the force between them. [link] illustrates how a pion would carry a force between a proton and a neutron. The pion has mass and can only be created by violating the conservation of mass-energy. This is allowed by the Heisenberg uncertainty principle if it occurs for a sufficiently short period of time. As discussed in Probability: The Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle the Heisenberg uncertainty principle relates the uncertainties ΔE in energy and Δt in time by

Equation:

$$\Delta E \Delta t \geq \frac{h}{4\pi},$$

where h is Planck's constant. Therefore, conservation of mass-energy can be violated by an amount ΔE for a time $\Delta t \approx \frac{h}{4\pi \Delta E}$ in which time no

process can detect the violation. This allows the temporary creation of a particle of mass m, where $\Delta E = mc^2$. The larger the mass and the greater the ΔE, the shorter is the time it can exist. This means the range of the force is limited, because the particle can only travel a limited distance in a finite amount of time. In fact, the maximum distance is $d \approx c\Delta t$, where c is the speed of light. The pion must then be captured and, thus, cannot be directly observed because that would amount to a permanent violation of mass-energy conservation. Such particles (like the pion above) are called **virtual particles**, because they cannot be directly observed but their *effects* can be directly observed. Realizing all this, Yukawa used the information on the range of the strong nuclear force to estimate the mass of the pion, the particle that carries it. The steps of his reasoning are approximately retraced in the following worked example:

Example:

Calculating the Mass of a Pion

Taking the range of the strong nuclear force to be about 1 fermi (10^{-15} m), calculate the approximate mass of the pion carrying the force, assuming it moves at nearly the speed of light.

Strategy

The calculation is approximate because of the assumptions made about the range of the force and the speed of the pion, but also because a more accurate calculation would require the sophisticated mathematics of quantum mechanics. Here, we use the Heisenberg uncertainty principle in the simple form stated above, as developed in Probability: The Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle. First, we must calculate the time Δt that the pion exists, given that the distance it travels at nearly the speed of light is about 1 fermi. Then, the Heisenberg uncertainty principle can be solved for the energy ΔE, and from that the mass of the pion can be determined. We will use the units of MeV/c^2 for mass, which are convenient since we are often considering converting mass to energy and vice versa.

Solution

The distance the pion travels is $d \approx c\Delta t$, and so the time during which it exists is approximately

Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Delta t &\approx \tfrac{d}{c} = \tfrac{10^{-15}\ \text{m}}{3.0\times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}} \\
&\approx 3.3 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{s}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Now, solving the Heisenberg uncertainty principle for ΔE gives

Equation:

$$\Delta E \approx \frac{h}{4\pi \Delta t} \approx \frac{6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}}{4\pi\left(3.3 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{s}\right)}.$$

Solving this and converting the energy to MeV gives

Equation:

$$\Delta E \approx \left(1.6 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{J}\right)\frac{1\ \text{MeV}}{1.6 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{J}} = 100\ \text{MeV}.$$

Mass is related to energy by $\Delta E = \text{mc}^2$, so that the mass of the pion is $m = \Delta E/c^2$, or

Equation:

$$m \approx 100\ \text{MeV}/c^2.$$

Discussion

This is about 200 times the mass of an electron and about one-tenth the mass of a nucleon. No such particles were known at the time Yukawa made his bold proposal.

Yukawa's proposal of particle exchange as the method of force transfer is intriguing. But how can we verify his proposal if we cannot observe the virtual pion directly? If sufficient energy is in a nucleus, it would be possible to free the pion—that is, to create its mass from external energy input. This can be accomplished by collisions of energetic particles with nuclei, but energies greater than 100 MeV are required to conserve both energy and momentum. In 1947, pions were observed in cosmic-ray experiments, which were designed to supply a small flux of high-energy protons that may collide with nuclei. Soon afterward, accelerators of

sufficient energy were creating pions in the laboratory under controlled conditions. Three pions were discovered, two with charge and one neutral, and given the symbols π^+, π^-, and π^0, respectively. The masses of π^+ and π^- are identical at $139.6 \text{ MeV}/c^2$, whereas π^0 has a mass of $135.0 \text{ MeV}/c^2$. These masses are close to the predicted value of $100 \text{ MeV}/c^2$ and, since they are intermediate between electron and nucleon masses, the particles are given the name **meson** (now an entire class of particles, as we shall see in Particles, Patterns, and Conservation Laws).

The pions, or π-mesons as they are also called, have masses close to those predicted and feel the strong nuclear force. Another previously unknown particle, now called the muon, was discovered during cosmic-ray experiments in 1936 (one of its discoverers, Seth Neddermeyer, also originated the idea of implosion for plutonium bombs). Since the mass of a muon is around $106 \text{ MeV}/c^2$, at first it was thought to be the particle predicted by Yukawa. But it was soon realized that muons do not feel the strong nuclear force and could not be Yukawa's particle. Their role was unknown, causing the respected physicist I. I. Rabi to comment, "Who ordered that?" This remains a valid question today. We have discovered hundreds of subatomic particles; the roles of some are only partially understood. But there are various patterns and relations to forces that have led to profound insights into nature's secrets.

Summary

- Yukawa's idea of virtual particle exchange as the carrier of forces is crucial, with virtual particles being formed in temporary violation of the conservation of mass-energy as allowed by the Heisenberg uncertainty principle.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A virtual particle having an approximate mass of $10^{14}\ \mathrm{GeV}/c^2$ may be associated with the unification of the strong and electroweak forces. For what length of time could this virtual particle exist (in temporary violation of the conservation of mass-energy as allowed by the Heisenberg uncertainty principle)?

Solution:

$3 \times 10^{-39}\ \mathrm{s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the mass in GeV/c^2 of a virtual carrier particle that has a range limited to 10^{-30} m by the Heisenberg uncertainty principle. Such a particle might be involved in the unification of the strong and electroweak forces.

Exercise:

Problem:

Another component of the strong nuclear force is transmitted by the exchange of virtual *K*-mesons. Taking *K*-mesons to have an average mass of $495\ \mathrm{MeV}/c^2$, what is the approximate range of this component of the strong force?

Solution:

$1.99 \times 10^{-16}\ \mathrm{m}\ \ (0.2\ \mathrm{fm})$

Glossary

pion

particle exchanged between nucleons, transmitting the force between them

virtual particles
: particles which cannot be directly observed but their effects can be directly observed

meson
: particle whose mass is intermediate between the electron and nucleon masses

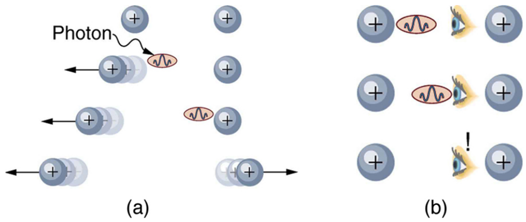
The Four Basic Forces

- State the four basic forces.
- Explain the Feynman diagram for the exchange of a virtual photon between two positive charges.
- Define QED.
- Describe the Feynman diagram for the exchange of a between a proton and a neutron.

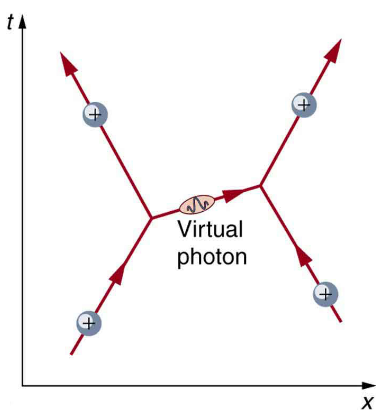
As first discussed in Problem-Solving Strategies and mentioned at various points in the text since then, there are only four distinct basic forces in all of nature. This is a remarkably small number considering the myriad phenomena they explain. Particle physics is intimately tied to these four forces. Certain fundamental particles, called carrier particles, carry these forces, and all particles can be classified according to which of the four forces they feel. The table given below summarizes important characteristics of the four basic forces.

Force	**Approximate relative strength**	**Range**	**+/− [footnote] + attractive; - repulsive; $+/-$ both.**	**Carrier particle**
Gravity	10^{-38}	∞	+ only	Graviton (conjectured)
Electromagnetic	10^{-2}	∞	$+/-$	Photon (observed)
Weak force	10^{-13}	$< 10^{-18}\ \text{m}$	$+/-$	W^{+}, W^{-}, Z^{0} (observed[footnote]) Predicted by theory and first observed in 1983.
Strong force	1	$< 10^{-15}\ \text{m}$	$+/-$	Gluons (conjectured[footnote]) Eight proposed—indirect evidence of existence. Underlie meson exchange.

Properties of the Four Basic Forces



The first image shows the exchange of a virtual photon transmitting the electromagnetic force between charges, just as virtual pion exchange carries the strong nuclear force between nucleons. The second image shows that the photon cannot be directly observed in its passage, because this would disrupt it and alter the force. In this case it does not get to the other charge.



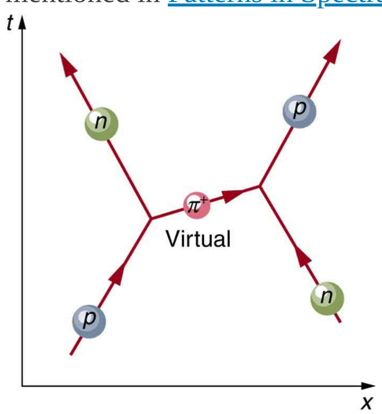
The Feynman diagram for the exchange of a virtual photon between two positive charges illustrates how the electromagnetic force is transmitted on a quantum mechanical scale. Time is graphed vertically while the distance is graphed horizontally. The two positive charges are seen to be repelled by the photon exchange.

Although these four forces are distinct and differ greatly from one another under all but the most extreme circumstances, we can see similarities among them. (In GUTs: the Unification of Forces, we will discuss how the four forces may be different manifestations of a single unified force.) Perhaps the most important characteristic among the forces is that they are all transmitted by the exchange of a carrier particle, exactly like what Yukawa had in mind for the strong nuclear force. Each carrier particle is a virtual particle—it cannot be directly observed while transmitting the force. [link] shows the exchange of a virtual photon between two positive charges. The photon cannot be directly observed in its passage, because this would disrupt it and alter the force.

[link] shows a way of graphing the exchange of a virtual photon between two positive charges. This graph of time versus position is called a **Feynman diagram**, after the brilliant American physicist Richard Feynman (1918–1988) who developed it.

[link] is a Feynman diagram for the exchange of a virtual pion between a proton and a neutron representing the same interaction as in [link]. Feynman diagrams are not only a useful tool for visualizing interactions at the quantum mechanical level, they are also used to calculate details of interactions, such as their strengths and probability of occurring. Feynman was one of the theorists who developed the field of **quantum electrodynamics** (QED), which is the quantum mechanics of electromagnetism. QED has been spectacularly successful in describing electromagnetic interactions on the submicroscopic scale. Feynman was an inspiring teacher, had a colorful personality, and made a profound impact on generations of physicists. He shared the 1965 Nobel Prize with Julian Schwinger and S. I. Tomonaga for work in QED with its deep implications for particle physics.

Why is it that particles called gluons are listed as the carrier particles for the strong nuclear force when, in The Yukawa Particle and the Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle Revisited, we saw that pions apparently carry that force? The answer is that pions are exchanged but they have a substructure and, as we explore it, we find that the strong force is actually related to the indirectly observed but more fundamental **gluons**. In fact, all the carrier particles are thought to be fundamental in the sense that they have no substructure. Another similarity among carrier particles is that they are all bosons (first mentioned in Patterns in Spectra Reveal More Quantization), having integral intrinsic spins.



The image shows a Feynman diagram for the exchange of a π^+ between a proton and a neutron, carrying the strong nuclear force between them. This diagram represents the

situation shown more pictorially in [link].

There is a relationship between the mass of the carrier particle and the range of the force. The photon is massless and has energy. So, the existence of (virtual) photons is possible only by virtue of the Heisenberg uncertainty principle and can travel an unlimited distance. Thus, the range of the electromagnetic force is infinite. This is also true for gravity. It is infinite in range because its carrier particle, the graviton, has zero rest mass. (Gravity is the most difficult of the four forces to understand on a quantum scale because it affects the space and time in which the others act. But gravity is so weak that its effects are extremely difficult to observe quantum mechanically. We shall explore it further in General Relativity and Quantum Gravity). The W^+, W^-, and Z^0 particles that carry the weak nuclear force have mass, accounting for the very short range of this force. In fact, the W^+, W^-, and Z^0 are about 1000 times more massive than pions, consistent with the fact that the range of the weak nuclear force is about 1/1000 that of the strong nuclear force. Gluons are actually massless, but since they act inside massive carrier particles like pions, the strong nuclear force is also short ranged.

The relative strengths of the forces given in the [link] are those for the most common situations. When particles are brought very close together, the relative strengths change, and they may become identical at extremely close range. As we shall see in GUTs: the Unification of Forces, carrier particles may be altered by the energy required to bring particles very close together—in such a manner that they become identical.

Summary

- The four basic forces and their carrier particles are summarized in the [link].
- Feynman diagrams are graphs of time versus position and are highly useful pictorial representations of particle processes.
- The theory of electromagnetism on the particle scale is called quantum electrodynamics (QED).

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the ratio of the strengths of the weak and electromagnetic forces under ordinary circumstances.

(b) What does that ratio become under circumstances in which the forces are unified?

Solution:

(a) 10^{-11} to 1, weak to EM

(b) 1 to 1

Exercise:

Problem:

The ratio of the strong to the weak force and the ratio of the strong force to the electromagnetic force become 1 under circumstances where they are unified. What are the ratios of the strong force to those two forces under normal circumstances?

Glossary

Feynman diagram
: a graph of time versus position that describes the exchange of virtual particles between subatomic particles

gluons
: exchange particles, analogous to the exchange of photons that gives rise to the electromagnetic force between two charged particles

quantum electrodynamics
: the theory of electromagnetism on the particle scale

Accelerators Create Matter from Energy

- State the principle of a cyclotron.
- Explain the principle of a synchrotron.
- Describe the voltage needed by an accelerator between accelerating tubes.
- State Fermilab's accelerator principle.

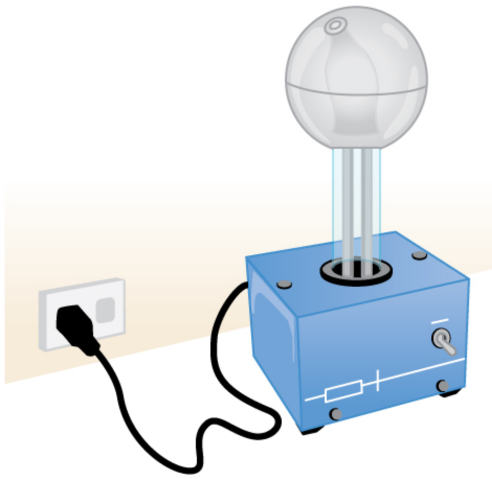
Before looking at all the particles we now know about, let us examine some of the machines that created them. The fundamental process in creating previously unknown particles is to accelerate known particles, such as protons or electrons, and direct a beam of them toward a target. Collisions with target nuclei provide a wealth of information, such as information obtained by Rutherford using energetic helium nuclei from natural α radiation. But if the energy of the incoming particles is large enough, new matter is sometimes created in the collision. The more energy input or ΔE, the more matter m can be created, since $m = \Delta E / c^2$. Limitations are placed on what can occur by known conservation laws, such as conservation of mass-energy, momentum, and charge. Even more interesting are the unknown limitations provided by nature. Some expected reactions do occur, while others do not, and still other unexpected reactions may appear. New laws are revealed, and the vast majority of what we know about particle physics has come from accelerator laboratories. It is the particle physicist's favorite indoor sport, which is partly inspired by theory.

Early Accelerators

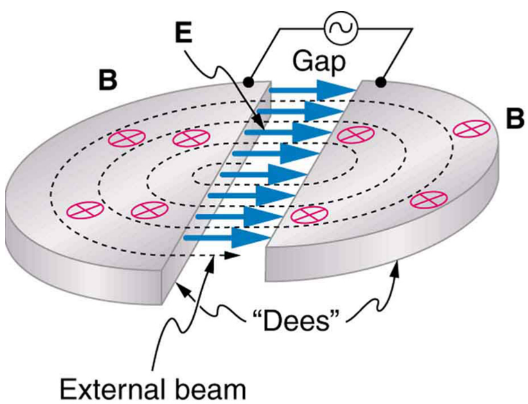
An early accelerator is a relatively simple, large-scale version of the electron gun. The **Van de Graaff** (named after the Dutch physicist), which you have likely seen in physics demonstrations, is a small version of the ones used for nuclear research since their invention for that purpose in 1932. For more, see [link]. These machines are electrostatic, creating potentials as great as 50 MV, and are used to accelerate a variety of nuclei for a range of experiments. Energies produced by Van de Graaffs are insufficient to produce new particles, but they have been instrumental in exploring several aspects of the nucleus. Another, equally famous, early accelerator is the **cyclotron**, invented in 1930 by the American physicist, E.

O. Lawrence (1901–1958). For a visual representation with more detail, see [link]. Cyclotrons use fixed-frequency alternating electric fields to accelerate particles. The particles spiral outward in a magnetic field, making increasingly larger radius orbits during acceleration. This clever arrangement allows the successive addition of electric potential energy and so greater particle energies are possible than in a Van de Graaff. Lawrence was involved in many early discoveries and in the promotion of physics programs in American universities. He was awarded the 1939 Nobel Prize in Physics for the cyclotron and nuclear activations, and he has an element and two major laboratories named for him.

A **synchrotron** is a version of a cyclotron in which the frequency of the alternating voltage and the magnetic field strength are increased as the beam particles are accelerated. Particles are made to travel the same distance in a shorter time with each cycle in fixed-radius orbits. A ring of magnets and accelerating tubes, as shown in [link], are the major components of synchrotrons. Accelerating voltages are synchronized (i.e., occur at the same time) with the particles to accelerate them, hence the name. Magnetic field strength is increased to keep the orbital radius constant as energy increases. High-energy particles require strong magnetic fields to steer them, so superconducting magnets are commonly employed. Still limited by achievable magnetic field strengths, synchrotrons need to be very large at very high energies, since the radius of a high-energy particle's orbit is very large. Radiation caused by a magnetic field accelerating a charged particle perpendicular to its velocity is called **synchrotron radiation** in honor of its importance in these machines. Synchrotron radiation has a characteristic spectrum and polarization, and can be recognized in cosmic rays, implying large-scale magnetic fields acting on energetic and charged particles in deep space. Synchrotron radiation produced by accelerators is sometimes used as a source of intense energetic electromagnetic radiation for research purposes.



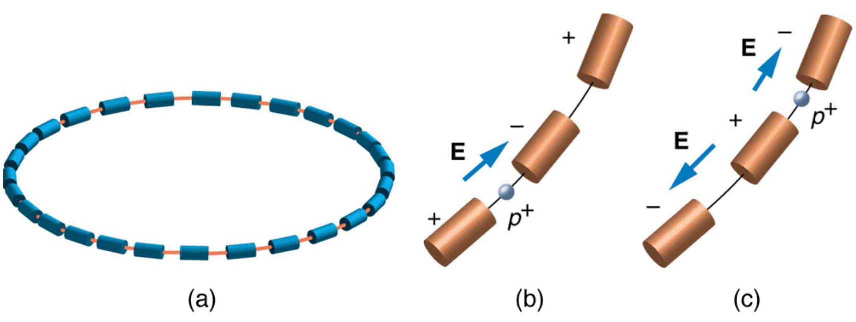
An artist's rendition of a Van de Graaff generator.



Cyclotrons use a magnetic field to cause particles to move in circular orbits. As the particles pass between the plates of the Ds, the voltage across the gap is oscillated to accelerate them twice in each orbit.

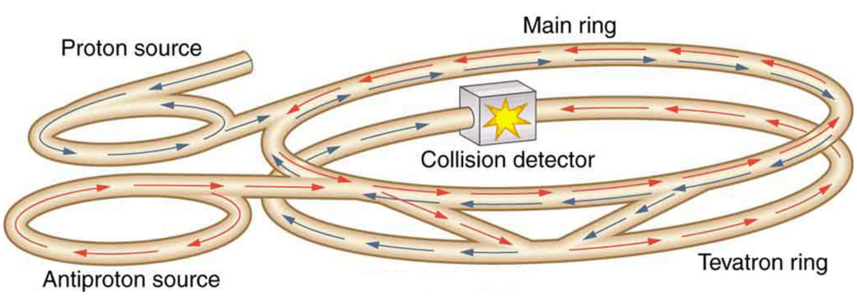
Modern Behemoths and Colliding Beams

Physicists have built ever-larger machines, first to reduce the wavelength of the probe and obtain greater detail, then to put greater energy into collisions to create new particles. Each major energy increase brought new information, sometimes producing spectacular progress, motivating the next step. One major innovation was driven by the desire to create more massive particles. Since momentum needs to be conserved in a collision, the particles created by a beam hitting a stationary target should recoil. This means that part of the energy input goes into recoil kinetic energy, significantly limiting the fraction of the beam energy that can be converted into new particles. One solution to this problem is to have head-on collisions between particles moving in opposite directions. **Colliding beams** are made to meet head-on at points where massive detectors are located. Since the total incoming momentum is zero, it is possible to create particles with momenta and kinetic energies near zero. Particles with masses equivalent to twice the beam energy can thus be created. Another innovation is to create the antimatter counterpart of the beam particle, which thus has the opposite charge and circulates in the opposite direction in the same beam pipe. For a schematic representation, see [link].



(a) A synchrotron has a ring of magnets and accelerating tubes. The frequency of the accelerating voltages is increased to cause the beam particles to travel the same distance in shorter time. The magnetic field should also be

increased to keep each beam burst traveling in a fixed-radius path. Limits on magnetic field strength require these machines to be very large in order to accelerate particles to very high energies. (b) A positive particle is shown in the gap between accelerating tubes. (c) While the particle passes through the tube, the potentials are reversed so that there is another acceleration at the next gap. The frequency of the reversals needs to be varied as the particle is accelerated to achieve successive accelerations in each gap.

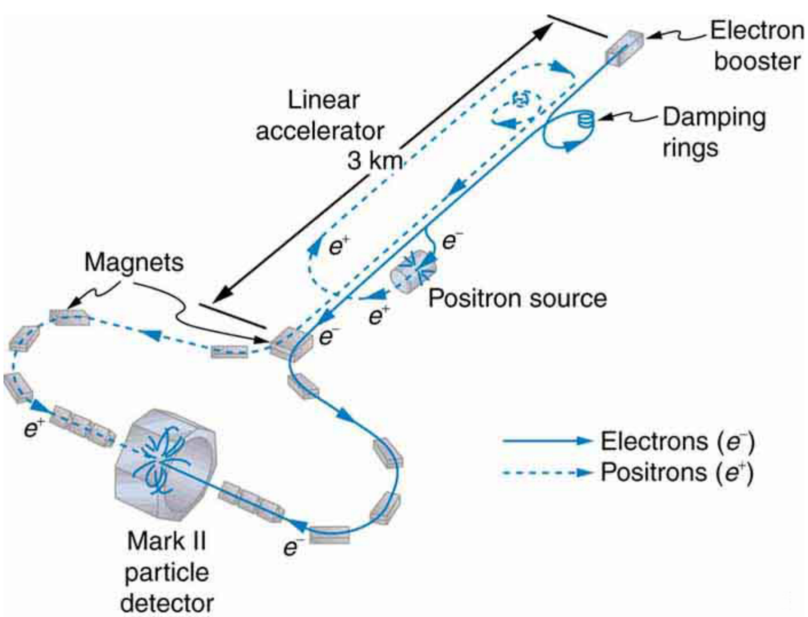


This schematic shows the two rings of Fermilab’s accelerator and the scheme for colliding protons and antiprotons (not to scale).

Detectors capable of finding the new particles in the spray of material that emerges from colliding beams are as impressive as the accelerators. While the Fermilab Tevatron had proton and antiproton beam energies of about 1 TeV, so that it can create particles up to $2\ \mathrm{TeV}/c^2$, the Large Hadron Collider (LHC) at the European Center for Nuclear Research (CERN) has achieved beam energies of 3.5 TeV, so that it has a 7-TeV collision energy; CERN hopes to double the beam energy in 2014. The now-canceled Superconducting Super Collider was being constructed in Texas with a

design energy of 20 TeV to give a 40-TeV collision energy. It was to be an oval 30 km in diameter. Its cost as well as the politics of international research funding led to its demise.

In addition to the large synchrotrons that produce colliding beams of protons and antiprotons, there are other large electron-positron accelerators. The oldest of these was a straight-line or **linear accelerator**, called the Stanford Linear Accelerator (SLAC), which accelerated particles up to 50 GeV as seen in [link]. Positrons created by the accelerator were brought to the same energy and collided with electrons in specially designed detectors. Linear accelerators use accelerating tubes similar to those in synchrotrons, but aligned in a straight line. This helps eliminate synchrotron radiation losses, which are particularly severe for electrons made to follow curved paths. CERN had an electron-positron collider appropriately called the Large Electron-Positron Collider (LEP), which accelerated particles to 100 GeV and created a collision energy of 200 GeV. It was 8.5 km in diameter, while the SLAC machine was 3.2 km long.



The Stanford Linear Accelerator was 3.2 km long and had the capability of colliding electron and positron beams. SLAC was also

used to probe nucleons by scattering extremely short wavelength electrons from them. This produced the first convincing evidence of a quark structure inside nucleons in an experiment analogous to those performed by Rutherford long ago.

Example:
Calculating the Voltage Needed by the Accelerator Between Accelerating Tubes

A linear accelerator designed to produce a beam of 800-MeV protons has 2000 accelerating tubes. What average voltage must be applied between tubes (such as in the gaps in [link]) to achieve the desired energy?

Strategy

The energy given to the proton in each gap between tubes is $\text{PE}_{\text{elec}} = qV$ where q is the proton's charge and V is the potential difference (voltage) across the gap. Since $q = q_e = 1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}$ and $1\ \text{eV} = (1\ \text{V})\left(1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}\right)$, the proton gains 1 eV in energy for each volt across the gap that it passes through. The AC voltage applied to the tubes is timed so that it adds to the energy in each gap. The effective voltage is the sum of the gap voltages and equals 800 MV to give each proton an energy of 800 MeV.

Solution

There are 2000 gaps and the sum of the voltages across them is 800 MV; thus,

Equation:

$$V_{\text{gap}} = \frac{800\ \text{MV}}{2000} = 400\ \text{kV}.$$

Discussion

A voltage of this magnitude is not difficult to achieve in a vacuum. Much larger gap voltages would be required for higher energy, such as those at

the 50-GeV SLAC facility. Synchrotrons are aided by the circular path of the accelerated particles, which can orbit many times, effectively multiplying the number of accelerations by the number of orbits. This makes it possible to reach energies greater than 1 TeV.

Summary

- A variety of particle accelerators have been used to explore the nature of subatomic particles and to test predictions of particle theories.
- Modern accelerators used in particle physics are either large synchrotrons or linear accelerators.
- The use of colliding beams makes much greater energy available for the creation of particles, and collisions between matter and antimatter allow a greater range of final products.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

The total energy in the beam of an accelerator is far greater than the energy of the individual beam particles. Why isn’t this total energy available to create a single extremely massive particle?

Exercise:

Problem:

Synchrotron radiation takes energy from an accelerator beam and is related to acceleration. Why would you expect the problem to be more severe for electron accelerators than proton accelerators?

Exercise:

Problem:

What two major limitations prevent us from building high-energy accelerators that are physically small?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the advantages of colliding-beam accelerators? What are the disadvantages?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

At full energy, protons in the 2.00-km-diameter Fermilab synchrotron travel at nearly the speed of light, since their energy is about 1000 times their rest mass energy.

(a) How long does it take for a proton to complete one trip around?

(b) How many times per second will it pass through the target area?

Solution:

(a) 2.09×10^{-5} s

(b) 4.77×10^{4} Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a W^- created in a bubble chamber lives for 5.00×10^{-25} s. What distance does it move in this time if it is traveling at 0.900 *c*? Since this distance is too short to make a track, the presence of the W^- must be inferred from its decay products. Note that the time is longer than the given W^- lifetime, which can be due to the statistical nature of decay or time dilation.

Exercise:

Problem:

What length track does a π^+ traveling at 0.100 *c* leave in a bubble chamber if it is created there and lives for 2.60×10^{-8} s? (Those moving faster or living longer may escape the detector before decaying.)

Solution:

78.0 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

The 3.20-km-long SLAC produces a beam of 50.0-GeV electrons. If there are 15,000 accelerating tubes, what average voltage must be across the gaps between them to achieve this energy?

Exercise:

Problem:

Because of energy loss due to synchrotron radiation in the LHC at CERN, only 5.00 MeV is added to the energy of each proton during each revolution around the main ring. How many revolutions are needed to produce 7.00-TeV (7000 GeV) protons, if they are injected with an initial energy of 8.00 GeV?

Solution:

1.40×10^6

Exercise:

Problem:

A proton and an antiproton collide head-on, with each having a kinetic energy of 7.00 TeV (such as in the LHC at CERN). How much collision energy is available, taking into account the annihilation of the two masses? (Note that this is not significantly greater than the extremely relativistic kinetic energy.)

Exercise:

Problem:

When an electron and positron collide at the SLAC facility, they each have 50.0 GeV kinetic energies. What is the total collision energy available, taking into account the annihilation energy? Note that the annihilation energy is insignificant, because the electrons are highly relativistic.

Solution:

100 GeV

Glossary

colliding beams
: head-on collisions between particles moving in opposite directions

cyclotron
: accelerator that uses fixed-frequency alternating electric fields and fixed magnets to accelerate particles in a circular spiral path

linear accelerator
: accelerator that accelerates particles in a straight line

synchrotron

a version of a cyclotron in which the frequency of the alternating voltage and the magnetic field strength are increased as the beam particles are accelerated

synchrotron radiation
radiation caused by a magnetic field accelerating a charged particle perpendicular to its velocity

Van de Graaff
early accelerator: simple, large-scale version of the electron gun

Particles, Patterns, and Conservation Laws

- Define matter and antimatter.
- Outline the differences between hadrons and leptons.
- State the differences between mesons and baryons.

In the early 1930s only a small number of subatomic particles were known to exist—the proton, neutron, electron, photon and, indirectly, the neutrino. Nature seemed relatively simple in some ways, but mysterious in others. Why, for example, should the particle that carries positive charge be almost 2000 times as massive as the one carrying negative charge? Why does a neutral particle like the neutron have a magnetic moment? Does this imply an internal structure with a distribution of moving charges? Why is it that the electron seems to have no size other than its wavelength, while the proton and neutron are about 1 fermi in size? So, while the number of known particles was small and they explained a great deal of atomic and nuclear phenomena, there were many unexplained phenomena and hints of further substructures.

Things soon became more complicated, both in theory and in the prediction and discovery of new particles. In 1928, the British physicist P.A.M. Dirac (see [link]) developed a highly successful relativistic quantum theory that laid the foundations of quantum electrodynamics (QED). His theory, for example, explained electron spin and magnetic moment in a natural way. But Dirac's theory also predicted negative energy states for free electrons. By 1931, Dirac, along with Oppenheimer, realized this was a prediction of positively charged electrons (or positrons). In 1932, American physicist Carl Anderson discovered the positron in cosmic ray studies. The positron, or e^{+} , is the same particle as emitted in β^{+} decay and was the first antimatter that was discovered. In 1935, Yukawa predicted pions as the carriers of the strong nuclear force, and they were eventually discovered. Muons were discovered in cosmic ray experiments in 1937, and they seemed to be heavy, unstable versions of electrons and positrons. After World War II, accelerators energetic enough to create these particles were built. Not only were predicted and known particles created, but many unexpected particles were observed. Initially called elementary particles, their numbers proliferated to dozens and then hundreds, and the term "particle zoo" became the physicist's lament at the lack of simplicity. But patterns were observed in the particle zoo that led to simplifying ideas such as quarks, as we shall soon see.

P.A.M. Dirac's theory of relativistic quantum mechanics not only explained a great deal of what was known, it also predicted antimatter. (credit: Cambridge University, Cavendish Laboratory)

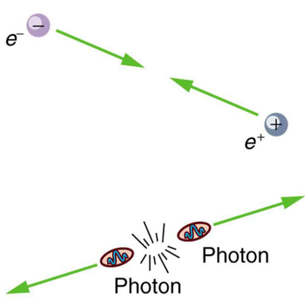
Matter and Antimatter

The positron was only the first example of antimatter. Every particle in nature has an antimatter counterpart, although some particles, like the photon, are their own antiparticles. Antimatter has charge opposite to that of matter (for example, the positron is positive while the electron is negative) but is nearly identical otherwise, having the same mass, intrinsic spin, half-life, and so on. When a particle and its antimatter counterpart interact, they annihilate one another, usually totally converting their masses to pure energy in the form of photons as seen in [link]. Neutral particles, such as neutrons, have neutral antimatter counterparts, which also annihilate when they interact. Certain neutral particles are their own antiparticle and live correspondingly short lives. For example, the neutral pion π^0 is its own antiparticle and has a half-life about 10^{-8} shorter than π^+ and π^-, which are each other's antiparticles. Without exception, nature is symmetric—all particles have antimatter counterparts. For example, antiprotons and antineutrons were first created in accelerator experiments in 1956 and the antiproton is negative. Antihydrogen atoms, consisting of an antiproton and antielectron, were observed in 1995 at CERN, too. It is possible to contain large-scale antimatter particles such as antiprotons by using electromagnetic traps that confine the particles within a magnetic field so that they don't annihilate with other particles. However, particles of the same charge repel each other, so the more particles that are contained in a trap, the more energy is needed to power the magnetic field that contains them. It is not currently possible to store a significant quantity of antiprotons. At any rate, we now see that negative charge is associated with both low-mass (electrons) and high-mass particles (antiprotons) and the apparent asymmetry is not there. But this knowledge does raise another question—why is there such a predominance of matter and so little antimatter? Possible explanations emerge later in this and the next chapter.

Hadrons and Leptons

Particles can also be revealingly grouped according to what forces they feel between them. All particles (even those that are massless) are affected by gravity, since gravity affects the space and time in which particles exist. All charged particles are affected by the electromagnetic force, as are neutral particles that have an internal distribution of charge (such as the neutron with its magnetic moment). Special names are given to particles that feel the strong and weak nuclear forces. **Hadrons** are particles that feel the strong nuclear force, whereas **leptons** are particles that do not. The proton, neutron, and the pions are examples of hadrons. The electron, positron, muons, and neutrinos are examples of leptons, the name meaning low mass. Leptons feel the weak nuclear force. In fact, all particles feel the weak nuclear force. This means that hadrons are distinguished by being able to feel both the strong and weak nuclear forces.

[link] lists the characteristics of some of the most important subatomic particles, including the directly observed carrier particles for the electromagnetic and weak nuclear forces, all leptons, and some hadrons. Several hints related to an underlying substructure emerge from an examination of these particle characteristics. Note that the carrier particles are called **gauge bosons**. First mentioned in Patterns in Spectra Reveal More Quantization, a **boson** is a particle with zero or an integer value of intrinsic spin (such as $s = 0, 1, 2, ...$), whereas a **fermion** is a particle with a half-integer value of intrinsic spin ($s = 1/2, 3/2, ...$). Fermions obey the Pauli exclusion principle whereas bosons do not. All the known and conjectured carrier particles are bosons.



When a particle

encounters its antiparticle, they annihilate, often producing pure energy in the form of photons. In this case, an electron and a positron convert all their mass into two identical energy rays, which move away in opposite directions to keep total momentum zero as it was before. Similar annihilations occur for other combinations of a particle with its antiparticle, sometimes producing more particles while obeying all conservation laws.

Category	**Particle name**	**Symbol**	**Antiparticle**	**Rest mass** (MeV/c^2)	B	L_e	L_μ	L_τ
Gauge	Photon	γ	Self	0	0	0	0	0
Bosons	W	W^+	W^-	80.39×10^3	0	0	0	0
	Z	Z^0	Self	91.19×10^3	0	0	0	0
Leptons	Electron	e^-	e^+	0.511	0	±1	0	0

	Neutrino *(e)*	ν_e	v_e	$0(7.0\mathrm{eV})$ [footnote] Neutrino masses may be zero. Experimental upper limits are given in parentheses.	0	± 1	0	0
	Muon	μ^-	μ^+	105.7	0	0	± 1	0
	Neutrino (μ)	v_μ	$\bar{v}_\mu$	$0(< 0.27)$	0	0	± 1	0
	Tau	τ^-	τ^+	1777	0	0	0	± 1
	Neutrino (τ)	v_τ	$\bar{v}_\tau$	$0(< 31)$	0	0	0	± 1
Hadrons (selected)								
Mesons	Pion	π^+	π^-	139.6	0	0	0	0
		π^0	Self	135.0	0	0	0	0
	Kaon	K^+	K^-	493.7	0	0	0	0
		K^0	$\overline{K}^0$	497.6	0	0	0	0
	Eta	η^0	Self	547.9	0	0	0	0
(many other mesons known)								

Baryons	Proton	p	$\bar{p}$	938.3	±1	0	0	0
	Neutron	n	$\bar{n}$	939.6	±1	0	0	0
	Lambda	Λ^0	$\bar{\Lambda}^0$	1115.7	±1	0	0	0
	Sigma	Σ^+	$\bar{\Sigma}^-$	1189.4	±1	0	0	0
		Σ^0	$\bar{\Sigma}^0$	1192.6	±1	0	0	0
		Σ^-	$\bar{\Sigma}^+$	1197.4	±1	0	0	0
	Xi	Ξ^0	$\bar{\Xi}^0$	1314.9	±1	0	0	0
		Ξ^-	Ξ^+	1321.7	±1	0	0	0
	Omega	Ω^-	Ω^+	1672.5	±1	0	0	0
(many other baryons known)								

Selected Particle Characteristics[footnote]
The lower of the $\mp$ or $\pm$ symbols are the values for antiparticles.

All known leptons are listed in the table given above. There are only six leptons (and their antiparticles), and they seem to be fundamental in that they have no apparent underlying structure. Leptons have no discernible size other than their wavelength, so that we know they are pointlike down to about 10^{-18} m. The leptons fall into three families, implying three conservation laws for three quantum numbers. One of these was known from β decay, where the existence of the electron's neutrino implied that a new quantum number, called the **electron family number** L_e is conserved. Thus, in β decay, an antielectron's neutrino $\bar{v}_e$ must be created with $L_e = -1$ when an electron with L_e=+1 is created, so that the total remains 0 as it was before decay.

Once the muon was discovered in cosmic rays, its decay mode was found to be
Equation:

$$\mu^- \to e^- + \bar{v}_e + v_\mu,$$

which implied another "family" and associated conservation principle. The particle v_μ is a muon's neutrino, and it is created to conserve **muon family number**L_μ. So muons are leptons with a family of their own, and **conservation of total** L_μ also seems to be obeyed in many experiments.

More recently, a third lepton family was discovered when τ particles were created and observed to decay in a manner similar to muons. One principal decay mode is
Equation:

$$\tau^- \to \mu^- + \bar{v}_\mu + v_\tau.$$

Conservation of total L_τ seems to be another law obeyed in many experiments. In fact, particle experiments have found that lepton family number is not universally conserved, due to neutrino "oscillations," or transformations of neutrinos from one family type to another.

Mesons and Baryons

Now, note that the hadrons in the table given above are divided into two subgroups, called mesons (originally for medium mass) and baryons (the name originally meaning large mass). The division between mesons and baryons is actually based on their observed decay modes and is not strictly associated with their masses. **Mesons** are hadrons that can decay to leptons and leave no hadrons, which implies that mesons are not conserved in number. **Baryons** are hadrons that always decay to another baryon. A new physical quantity called **baryon number** B seems to always be conserved in nature and is listed for the various particles in the table given above. Mesons and leptons have $B = 0$ so that they can decay to other particles with $B = 0$. But baryons have B=$+1$ if they are matter, and $B = -1$ if they are antimatter. The **conservation of total baryon number** is a more general rule than first noted in nuclear physics, where it was observed that the total number of nucleons was always conserved in nuclear reactions and decays. That rule in nuclear physics is just one consequence of the conservation of the total baryon number.

Forces, Reactions, and Reaction Rates

The forces that act between particles regulate how they interact with other particles. For example, pions feel the strong force and do not penetrate as far in matter as do muons, which do not feel the strong force. (This was the way those who discovered the muon knew it could not be the particle that carries the strong force—its penetration or range was too great for it to be feeling the strong force.) Similarly, reactions that create other particles, like cosmic rays interacting with nuclei in the atmosphere, have greater probability if they are caused by the strong force than if they are caused by the weak force. Such knowledge has been useful to physicists while analyzing the particles produced by various accelerators.

The forces experienced by particles also govern how particles interact with themselves if they are unstable and decay. For example, the stronger the force, the faster they decay and the shorter is their lifetime. An example of a nuclear decay via the strong force is $^8\text{Be} \to \alpha + \alpha$ with a lifetime of about 10^{-16} s. The neutron is a good example of decay via the weak force. The process $n \to p + e^- + \bar{v}_e$ has a longer lifetime of 882 s. The weak force causes this decay, as it does all β decay. An important clue that the weak force is responsible for β decay is the creation of leptons, such as e^- and $\bar{v}_e$. None would be created if the strong force was responsible, just as no leptons are created in the decay of ^{8}Be. The systematics of particle lifetimes is a little simpler than nuclear lifetimes when hundreds of particles are examined (not just the ones in the table given above). Particles that decay via the weak force have lifetimes mostly in the range of 10^{-16} to 10^{-12} s, whereas those that decay via the strong force have lifetimes mostly in the range of 10^{-16} to 10^{-23} s. Turning this around, if we measure the lifetime of a particle, we can tell if it decays via the weak or strong force.

Yet another quantum number emerges from decay lifetimes and patterns. Note that the particles Λ, Σ, Ξ, and Ω decay with lifetimes on the order of 10^{-10} s (the exception is Σ^0, whose short lifetime is explained by its particular quark substructure.), implying that their decay is caused by the weak force alone, although they are hadrons and feel the strong force. The decay modes of these particles also show patterns—in particular, certain decays that should be possible within all the known conservation laws do not occur. Whenever something is possible in physics, it will happen. If something does not happen, it is forbidden by a rule. All this seemed strange to those studying these particles when they were first discovered, so they named a new quantum number **strangeness**, given the symbol S in the table given above. The values of strangeness assigned to various particles are based on the decay systematics. It is found that **strangeness is conserved by the strong force**, which governs the production of most of these particles in accelerator experiments. However, **strangeness is *not conserved* by the weak force**. This conclusion is reached from the fact that particles that have long lifetimes decay via the weak force and do not conserve strangeness. All of this also has implications for the carrier particles, since they transmit forces and are thus involved in these decays.

Example:

Calculating Quantum Numbers in Two Decays

(a) The most common decay mode of the Ξ^- particle is $\Xi^- \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \pi^-$. Using the quantum numbers in the table given above, show that strangeness changes by 1, baryon number and charge are conserved, and lepton family numbers are unaffected.

(b) Is the decay $K^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu_\mu$ allowed, given the quantum numbers in the table given above?

Strategy

In part (a), the conservation laws can be examined by adding the quantum numbers of the decay products and comparing them with the parent particle. In part (b), the same procedure can reveal if a conservation law is broken or not.

Solution for (a)

Before the decay, the Ξ^- has strangeness $S = -2$. After the decay, the total strangeness is –1 for the Λ^0, plus 0 for the π^-. Thus, total strangeness has gone from –2 to –1 or a change of +1. Baryon number for the Ξ^- is $B = +1$ before the decay, and after the decay the Λ^0 has $B = +1$ and the π^- has $B = 0$ so that the total baryon number remains +1. Charge is –1 before the decay, and the total charge after is also $0 - 1 = -1$. Lepton numbers for all the particles are zero, and so lepton numbers are conserved.

Discussion for (a)

The Ξ^- decay is caused by the weak interaction, since strangeness changes, and it is consistent with the relatively long 1.64×10^{-10}-s lifetime of the Ξ^-.

Solution for (b)

The decay $K^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu_\mu$ is allowed if charge, baryon number, mass-energy, and lepton numbers are conserved. Strangeness can change due to the weak interaction. Charge is conserved as $s \rightarrow d$. Baryon number is conserved, since all particles have $B = 0$. Mass-energy is conserved in the sense that the K^+ has a greater mass than the products, so that the decay can be spontaneous. Lepton family numbers are conserved at 0 for the electron and tau family for all particles. The muon family number is $L_\mu = 0$ before and $L_\mu = -1 + 1 = 0$ after. Strangeness changes from +1 before to 0 + 0 after, for an allowed change of 1. The decay is allowed by all these measures.

Discussion for (b)

This decay is not only allowed by our reckoning, it is, in fact, the primary decay mode of the K^+ meson and is caused by the weak force, consistent with the long 1.24×10^{-8}-s lifetime.

There are hundreds of particles, all hadrons, not listed in [link], most of which have shorter lifetimes. The systematics of those particle lifetimes, their production probabilities, and decay products are completely consistent with the conservation laws noted for lepton families, baryon number, and strangeness, but they also imply other quantum numbers and conservation laws. There are a finite, and in fact relatively small, number of these conserved quantities, however, implying a finite set of substructures. Additionally, some of these short-lived particles resemble the excited states of other particles, implying an internal structure. All of this jigsaw puzzle can be tied together and explained relatively simply by the existence of fundamental substructures. Leptons seem to be

fundamental structures. Hadrons seem to have a substructure called quarks. Quarks: Is That All There Is? explores the basics of the underlying quark building blocks.

Murray Gell-Mann (b. 1929) proposed quarks as a substructure of hadrons in 1963 and was already known for his work on the concept of strangeness. Although quarks have never been directly observed, several predictions of the quark model were quickly confirmed, and their properties explain all known hadron characteristics. Gell-Mann was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1969. (credit: Luboš Motl)

Summary

- All particles of matter have an antimatter counterpart that has the opposite charge and certain other quantum numbers as seen in [link]. These matter-antimatter pairs are otherwise very similar but will annihilate when brought together. Known particles can be divided into three major groups—leptons, hadrons, and carrier particles (gauge bosons).

- Leptons do not feel the strong nuclear force and are further divided into three groups—electron family designated by electron family number L_e; muon family designated by muon family number L_μ; and tau family designated by tau family number L_τ. The family numbers are not universally conserved due to neutrino oscillations.
- Hadrons are particles that feel the strong nuclear force and are divided into baryons, with the baryon family number B being conserved, and mesons.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Large quantities of antimatter isolated from normal matter should behave exactly like normal matter. An antiatom, for example, composed of positrons, antiprotons, and antineutrons should have the same atomic spectrum as its matter counterpart. Would you be able to tell it is antimatter by its emission of antiphotons? Explain briefly.

Exercise:

Problem: Massless particles are not only neutral, they are chargeless (unlike the neutron). Why is this so?

Exercise:

Problem:

Massless particles must travel at the speed of light, while others cannot reach this speed. Why are all massless particles stable? If evidence is found that neutrinos spontaneously decay into other particles, would this imply they have mass?

Exercise:

Problem:

When a star erupts in a supernova explosion, huge numbers of electron neutrinos are formed in nuclear reactions. Such neutrinos from the 1987A supernova in the relatively nearby Magellanic Cloud were observed within hours of the initial brightening, indicating they traveled to earth at approximately the speed of light. Explain how this data can be used to set an upper limit on the mass of the neutrino, noting that if the mass is small the neutrinos could travel very close to the speed of light and have a reasonable energy (on the order of MeV).

Exercise:

Problem:

Theorists have had spectacular success in predicting previously unknown particles. Considering past theoretical triumphs, why should we bother to perform experiments?

Exercise:

Problem: What lifetime do you expect for an antineutron isolated from normal matter?

Exercise:

Problem: Why does the η^0 meson have such a short lifetime compared to most other mesons?

Exercise:

Problem: (a) Is a hadron always a baryon?

(b) Is a baryon always a hadron?

(c) Can an unstable baryon decay into a meson, leaving no other baryon?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how conservation of baryon number is responsible for conservation of total atomic mass (total number of nucleons) in nuclear decay and reactions.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The π^0 is its own antiparticle and decays in the following manner: $\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma$. What is the energy of each γ ray if the π^0 is at rest when it decays?

Solution:

67.5 MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

The primary decay mode for the negative pion is $\pi^- \rightarrow \mu^- + \bar{\nu}_\mu$. What is the energy release in MeV in this decay?

Exercise:

Problem:

The mass of a theoretical particle that may be associated with the unification of the electroweak and strong forces is $10^{14}\ \text{GeV}/c^2$.

(a) How many proton masses is this?

(b) How many electron masses is this? (This indicates how extremely relativistic the accelerator would have to be in order to make the particle, and how large the relativistic quantity γ would have to be.)

Solution:

(a) 1×10^{14}

(b) 2×10^{17}

Exercise:

Problem: The decay mode of the negative muon is $\mu^- \rightarrow e^- + \bar{\nu}_e + \nu_\mu$.

(a) Find the energy released in MeV.

(b) Verify that charge and lepton family numbers are conserved.

Exercise:

Problem: The decay mode of the positive tau is $\tau^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu_\mu + \bar{\nu}_\tau$.

(a) What energy is released?

(b) Verify that charge and lepton family numbers are conserved.

(c) The τ^+ is the antiparticle of the τ^-.Verify that all the decay products of the τ^+ are the antiparticles of those in the decay of the τ^- given in the text.

Solution:

(a) 1671 MeV

(b) $Q = 1$, $Q\prime = 1 + 0 + 0 = 1$. $L_\tau = -1$; $L\prime\tau = -1$; $L\mu = 0$; $L\prime\mu = -1 + 1 = 0$

(c) $\begin{array}{l} \tau^- \rightarrow \mu^- + v_\mu + v_\tau \\ \Rightarrow \mu^- \text{ antiparticle of } \mu^+; v_\mu \text{ of } v_\mu; v_\tau \text{ of } v_\tau \end{array}$

Exercise:

Problem: The principal decay mode of the sigma zero is $\Sigma^0 \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \gamma$.

(a) What energy is released?

(b) Considering the quark structure of the two baryons, does it appear that the Σ^0 is an excited state of the Λ^0 ?

(c) Verify that strangeness, charge, and baryon number are conserved in the decay.

(d) Considering the preceding and the short lifetime, can the weak force be responsible? State why or why not.

Exercise:

Problem: (a) What is the uncertainty in the energy released in the decay of a π^0 due to its short lifetime?

(b) What fraction of the decay energy is this, noting that the decay mode is $\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma$ (so that all the π^0 mass is destroyed)?

Solution:

(a) 3.9 eV

(b) 2.9×10^{-8}

Exercise:

Problem: (a) What is the uncertainty in the energy released in the decay of a τ^- due to its short lifetime?

(b) Is the uncertainty in this energy greater than or less than the uncertainty in the mass of the tau neutrino? Discuss the source of the uncertainty.

Glossary

boson
: particle with zero or an integer value of intrinsic spin

baryons
: hadrons that always decay to another baryon

baryon number

a conserved physical quantity that is zero for mesons and leptons and ± 1 for baryons and antibaryons, respectively

conservation of total baryon number
: a general rule based on the observation that the total number of nucleons was always conserved in nuclear reactions and decays

conservation of total electron family number
: a general rule stating that the total electron family number stays the same through an interaction

conservation of total muon family number
: a general rule stating that the total muon family number stays the same through an interaction

electron family number
: the number ± 1 that is assigned to all members of the electron family, or the number 0 that is assigned to all particles not in the electron family

fermion
: particle with a half-integer value of intrinsic spin

gauge boson
: particle that carries one of the four forces

hadrons
: particles that feel the strong nuclear force

leptons
: particles that do not feel the strong nuclear force

meson
: hadrons that can decay to leptons and leave no hadrons

muon family number
: the number ± 1 that is assigned to all members of the muon family, or the number 0 that is assigned to all particles not in the muon family

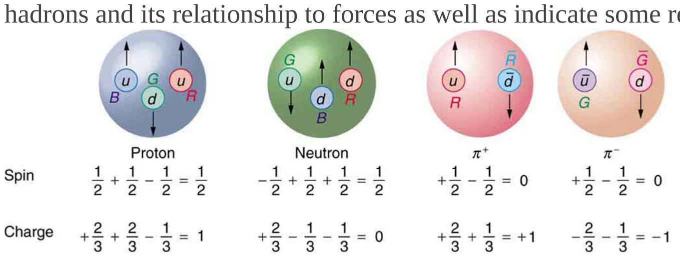
strangeness
: a physical quantity assigned to various particles based on decay systematics

tau family number
: the number ± 1 that is assigned to all members of the tau family, or the number 0 that is assigned to all particles not in the tau family

Quarks: Is That All There Is?

- Define fundamental particle.
- Describe quark and antiquark.
- List the flavors of quark.
- Outline the quark composition of hadrons.
- Determine quantum numbers from quark composition.

Quarks have been mentioned at various points in this text as fundamental building blocks and members of the exclusive club of truly elementary particles. Note that an elementary or **fundamental particle** has no substructure (it is not made of other particles) and has no finite size other than its wavelength. This does not mean that fundamental particles are stable—some decay, while others do not. Keep in mind that *all* leptons seem to be fundamental, whereas*no* hadrons are fundamental. There is strong evidence that **quarks** are the fundamental building blocks of hadrons as seen in [link]. Quarks are the second group of fundamental particles (leptons are the first). The third and perhaps final group of fundamental particles is the carrier particles for the four basic forces. Leptons, quarks, and carrier particles may be all there is. In this module we will discuss the quark substructure of hadrons and its relationship to forces as well as indicate some remaining questions and problems.



All baryons, such as the proton and neutron shown here, are composed of three quarks. All mesons, such as the pions shown here, are composed of a quark-antiquark pair. Arrows represent the spins of the quarks, which, as we shall see, are also colored. The colors are such that they need to add to white for any possible combination of quarks.

Conception of Quarks

Quarks were first proposed independently by American physicists Murray Gell-Mann and George Zweig in 1963. Their quaint name was taken by Gell-Mann from a James Joyce novel—Gell-Mann was also largely responsible for the concept and name of strangeness. (Whimsical names are common in particle physics, reflecting the personalities of modern physicists.) Originally, three quark types—or **flavors**—were proposed to account for the then-known mesons and baryons. These quark flavors are named **up** (u), **down** (d), and **strange** (s). All quarks have half-integral spin and are thus fermions. All mesons have integral spin while all baryons have half-integral spin. Therefore, mesons should be made up of an even number of quarks while baryons need to be made up of an odd number of quarks. [link] shows the quark substructure of the proton, neutron, and two pions. The most radical proposal by Gell-Mann and Zweig is the fractional charges of quarks, which are $\pm\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)q_e$ and $\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)q_e$, whereas all directly observed particles have charges that are integral multiples of q_e. Note that the fractional value of the quark does not violate the fact that the e is the smallest unit of charge that is observed, because a free quark cannot exist. [link] lists characteristics of the six quark flavors that are now thought to exist. Discoveries made since 1963 have required extra quark flavors, which are divided into three families quite analogous to leptons.

How Does it Work?

To understand how these quark substructures work, let us specifically examine the proton, neutron, and the two pions pictured in [link] before moving on to more general considerations. First, the proton p is composed of the

three quarks *uud*, so that its total charge is $+\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)q_e + \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)q_e - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)q_e = q_e$, as expected. With the spins aligned as in the figure, the proton's intrinsic spin is $+\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$, also as expected. Note that the spins of the up quarks are aligned, so that they would be in the same state except that they have different colors (another quantum number to be elaborated upon a little later). Quarks obey the Pauli exclusion principle. Similar comments apply to the neutron *n*, which is composed of the three quarks *udd*. Note also that the neutron is made of charges that add to zero but move internally, producing its well-known magnetic moment. When the neutron β^- decays, it does so by changing the flavor of one of its quarks. Writing neutron β^- decay in terms of quarks,
Equation:

$$n \rightarrow p + \beta^- + \bar{v}_e \text{ becomes udd} \rightarrow \text{uud} + \beta^- + \bar{v}_e.$$

We see that this is equivalent to a down quark changing flavor to become an up quark:
Equation:

$$d \rightarrow u + \beta^- + \bar{v}_e$$

Name	**Symbol**	**Antiparticle**	**Spin**	**Charge**	B [footnote] **B is baryon number, S is strangeness, c is charm, b is bottomness, t is topness.**	S	c	b
Up	u	$\bar{u}$	1/2	$\pm\frac{2}{3}q_e$	$\pm\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	0
Down	d	$\bar{d}$	1/2	$\mp\frac{1}{3}q_e$	$\pm\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	0
Strange	s	$\bar{s}$	1/2	$\mp\frac{1}{3}q_e$	$\pm\frac{1}{3}$	∓1	0	0
Charmed	c	$\bar{c}$	1/2	$\pm\frac{2}{3}q_e$	$\pm\frac{1}{3}$	0	±1	0

Bottom	b	$\bar{b}$	1/2	$\mp\frac{1}{3}q_e$	$\pm\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	∓1
Top	t	$\bar{t}$	1/2	$\pm\frac{2}{3}q_e$	$\pm\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	0

Quarks and Antiquarks[footnote]
The lower of the $\pm$ symbols are the values for antiquarks.

Particle	Quark Composition
Mesons	
π^+	$u\bar{d}$
π^-	$\bar{u}d$
π^0	$u\bar{u}$, $d\bar{d}$ mixture[footnote] These two mesons are different mixtures, but each is its own antiparticle, as indicated by its quark composition.
η^0	$u\bar{u}$, $d\bar{d}$ mixture[footnote] These two mesons are different mixtures, but each is its own antiparticle, as indicated by its quark composition.
K^0	$d\bar{s}$

Particle	Quark Composition
K^0	$\bar{d}s$
K^+	$u\bar{s}$
K^-	$\bar{u}s$
J/ψ	$c\bar{c}$
Υ	$b\bar{b}$
Baryons[footnote],[footnote] Antibaryons have the antiquarks of their counterparts. The antiproton $\bar{p}$ is $\bar{u}\bar{u}\bar{d}$, for example. Baryons composed of the same quarks are different states of the same particle. For example, the Δ^+ is an excited state of the proton.	
p	uud
n	udd
Δ^0	udd
Δ^+	uud
Δ^-	ddd
Δ^{++}	uuu
Λ^0	uds

Particle	Quark Composition
Σ^0	uds
Σ^+	uus
Σ^-	dds
Ξ^0	uss
Ξ^-	dss
Ω^-	sss

Quark Composition of Selected Hadrons[footnote]
These two mesons are different mixtures, but each is its own antiparticle, as indicated by its quark composition.

This is an example of the general fact that **the weak nuclear force can change the flavor of a quark**. By general, we mean that any quark can be converted to any other (change flavor) by the weak nuclear force. Not only can we get $d \to u$, we can also get $u \to d$. Furthermore, the strange quark can be changed by the weak force, too, making $s \to u$ and $s \to d$ possible. This explains the violation of the conservation of strangeness by the weak force noted in the preceding section. Another general fact is that **the strong nuclear force cannot change the flavor of a quark.**

Again, from [link], we see that the π^+ meson (one of the three pions) is composed of an up quark plus an antidown quark, or $u\bar{d}$. Its total charge is thus $+\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)q_e + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)q_e = q_e$, as expected. Its baryon number is 0, since it has a quark and an antiquark with baryon numbers $+\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) = 0$. The π^+ half-life is relatively long since, although it is composed of matter and antimatter, the quarks are different flavors and the weak force should cause the decay by changing the flavor of one into that of the other. The spins of the u and $\bar{d}$ quarks are antiparallel, enabling the pion to have spin zero, as observed experimentally. Finally, the π^- meson shown in [link] is the antiparticle of the π^+ meson, and it is composed of the corresponding quark antiparticles. That is, the π^+ meson is $u\bar{d}$, while the π^- meson is $\bar{u}d$. These two pions annihilate each other quickly, because their constituent quarks are each other's antiparticles.

Two general rules for combining quarks to form hadrons are:

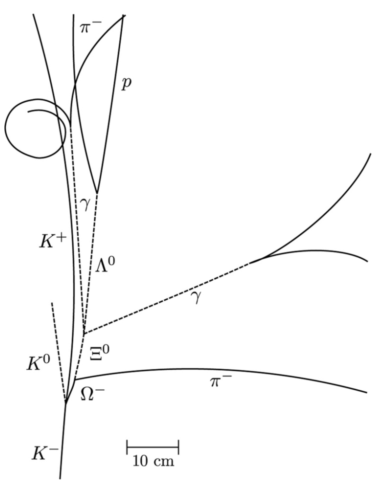
1. Baryons are composed of three quarks, and antibaryons are composed of three antiquarks.
2. Mesons are combinations of a quark and an antiquark.

One of the clever things about this scheme is that only integral charges result, even though the quarks have fractional charge.

All Combinations are Possible

All quark combinations are possible. [link] lists some of these combinations. When Gell-Mann and Zweig proposed the original three quark flavors, particles corresponding to all combinations of those three had not been observed. The pattern was there, but it was incomplete—much as had been the case in the periodic table of the elements and the chart of nuclides. The Ω^- particle, in particular, had not been discovered but was predicted by quark theory. Its combination of three strange quarks, sss, gives it a strangeness of -3 (see [link]) and other predictable characteristics, such as spin, charge, approximate mass, and lifetime. If the quark picture is complete, the Ω^- should exist. It was first observed in 1964 at Brookhaven National Laboratory and had the predicted characteristics as seen in [link]. The discovery of the Ω^- was convincing indirect evidence for the existence of the three original quark flavors and boosted theoretical and experimental efforts to further explore particle physics in terms of quarks.

Note:
Patterns and Puzzles: Atoms, Nuclei, and Quarks
Patterns in the properties of atoms allowed the periodic table to be developed. From it, previously unknown elements were predicted and observed. Similarly, patterns were observed in the properties of nuclei, leading to the chart of nuclides and successful predictions of previously unknown nuclides. Now with particle physics, patterns imply a quark substructure that, if taken literally, predicts previously unknown particles. These have now been observed in another triumph of underlying unity.



The image relates to the discovery of the Ω^-. It is a secondary reaction in which an accelerator-produced K^- collides with a proton via the strong force and conserves strangeness to produce the Ω^- with characteristics predicted by the quark model. As with other predictions of previously unobserved particles, this gave a tremendous boost to quark theory. (credit: Brookhaven National Laboratory)

Example:
Quantum Numbers From Quark Composition
Verify the quantum numbers given for the Ξ^0 particle in [link] by adding the quantum numbers for its quark composition as given in [link].

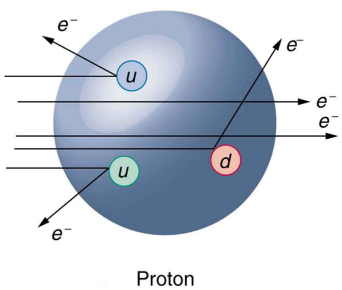
Strategy
The composition of the Ξ^0 is given as uss in [link]. The quantum numbers for the constituent quarks are given in [link]. We will not consider spin, because that is not given for the Ξ^0. But we can check on charge and the other quantum numbers given for the quarks.

Solution
The total charge of *uss* is $+\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)q_e - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)q_e - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)q_e = 0$, which is correct for the Ξ^0. The baryon number is $+\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) = 1$, also correct since the Ξ^0 is a matter baryon and has $B = 1$, as listed in [link]. Its strangeness is $S = 0 - 1 - 1 = -2$, also as expected from [link]. Its charm, bottomness, and topness are 0, as are its lepton family numbers (it is not a lepton).

Discussion
This procedure is similar to what the inventors of the quark hypothesis did when checking to see if their solution to the puzzle of particle patterns was correct. They also checked to see if all combinations were known, thereby predicting the previously unobserved Ω^- as the completion of a pattern.

Now, Let Us Talk About Direct Evidence

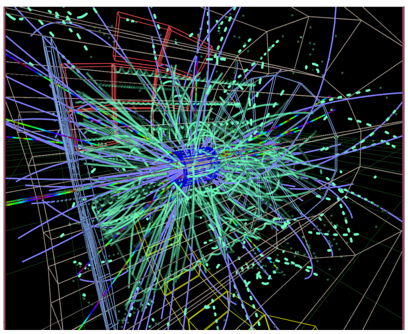
At first, physicists expected that, with sufficient energy, we should be able to free quarks and observe them directly. This has not proved possible. There is still no direct observation of a fractional charge or any isolated quark. When large energies are put into collisions, other particles are created—but no quarks emerge. There is nearly direct evidence for quarks that is quite compelling. By 1967, experiments at SLAC scattering 20-GeV electrons from protons had produced results like Rutherford had obtained for the nucleus nearly 60 years earlier. The SLAC scattering experiments showed unambiguously that there were three pointlike (meaning they had sizes considerably smaller than the probe's wavelength) charges inside the proton as seen in [link]. This evidence made all but the most skeptical admit that there was validity to the quark substructure of hadrons.



Scattering of high-energy electrons from protons at facilities like SLAC produces evidence of three point-like charges consistent with proposed quark properties. This experiment is analogous to Rutherford's discovery

of the small size of the nucleus by scattering α particles. High-energy electrons are used so that the probe wavelength is small enough to see details smaller than the proton.

More recent and higher-energy experiments have produced jets of particles in collisions, highly suggestive of three quarks in a nucleon. Since the quarks are very tightly bound, energy put into separating them pulls them only so far apart before it starts being converted into other particles. More energy produces more particles, not a separation of quarks. Conservation of momentum requires that the particles come out in jets along the three paths in which the quarks were being pulled. Note that there are only three jets, and that other characteristics of the particles are consistent with the three-quark substructure.



Simulation of a proton-proton collision at 14-TeV center-of-mass energy in the ALICE detector at CERN LHC. The lines follow particle trajectories and the cyan dots represent the energy depositions in the sensitive detector elements. (credit: Matevž Tadel)

Quarks Have Their Ups and Downs

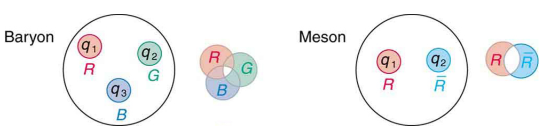
The quark model actually lost some of its early popularity because the original model with three quarks had to be modified. The up and down quarks seemed to compose normal matter as seen in [link], while the single strange quark explained strangeness. Why didn't it have a counterpart? A fourth quark flavor called **charm** (*c*) was proposed as the counterpart of the strange quark to make things symmetric—there would be two normal quarks (*u* and *d*) and two exotic quarks (*s* and *c*). Furthermore, at that time only four leptons were known, two normal and two exotic. It was attractive that there would be four quarks and four leptons. The problem was that no known particles contained a charmed quark. Suddenly, in November of 1974, two groups (one headed by C. C. Ting at Brookhaven National Laboratory and the other by Burton Richter at SLAC) independently and nearly simultaneously discovered a new meson with characteristics that made it clear that its substructure is $c\bar{c}$. It was called *J* by one group and psi (ψ) by the other and now is known as the J/ψ meson. Since then, numerous

particles have been discovered containing the charmed quark, consistent in every way with the quark model. The discovery of the J/ψ meson had such a rejuvenating effect on quark theory that it is now called the November Revolution. Ting and Richter shared the 1976 Nobel Prize.

History quickly repeated itself. In 1975, the tau (τ) was discovered, and a third family of leptons emerged as seen in [link]). Theorists quickly proposed two more quark flavors called **top** (t) or truth and **bottom** (b) or beauty to keep the number of quarks the same as the number of leptons. And in 1976, the upsilon (Υ) meson was discovered and shown to be composed of a bottom and an antibottom quark or $b\bar{b}$, quite analogous to the J/ψ being $c\bar{c}$ as seen in [link]. Being a single flavor, these mesons are sometimes called bare charm and bare bottom and reveal the characteristics of their quarks most clearly. Other mesons containing bottom quarks have since been observed. In 1995, two groups at Fermilab confirmed the top quark's existence, completing the picture of six quarks listed in [link]. Each successive quark discovery—first c, then b, and finally t —has required higher energy because each has higher mass. Quark masses in [link] are only approximately known, because they are not directly observed. They must be inferred from the masses of the particles they combine to form.

What's Color got to do with it?—A Whiter Shade of Pale

As mentioned and shown in [link], quarks carry another quantum number, which we call **color**. Of course, it is not the color we sense with visible light, but its properties are analogous to those of three primary and three secondary colors. Specifically, a quark can have one of three color values we call **red** (R), **green** (G), and **blue** (B) in analogy to those primary visible colors. Antiquarks have three values we call **antired or cyan** $\left(R\right)$, **antigreen or magenta** $\left(G\right)$, and **antiblue or yellow** $\left(B\right)$ in analogy to those secondary visible colors. The reason for these names is that when certain visual colors are combined, the eye sees white. The analogy of the colors combining to white is used to explain why baryons are made of three quarks, why mesons are a quark and an antiquark, and why we cannot isolate a single quark. The force between the quarks is such that their combined colors produce white. This is illustrated in [link]. A baryon must have one of each primary color or RGB, which produces white. A meson must have a primary color and its anticolor, also producing white.



The three quarks composing a baryon must be RGB, which add to white. The quark and antiquark composing a meson must be a color and anticolor, here RR also adding to white. The force between systems that have color is so great that they can neither be separated nor exist as colored.

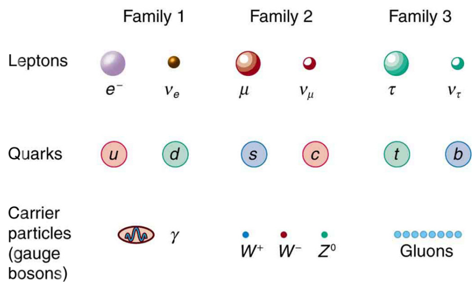
Why must hadrons be white? The color scheme is intentionally devised to explain why baryons have three quarks and mesons have a quark and an antiquark. Quark color is thought to be similar to charge, but with more values. An ion, by analogy, exerts much stronger forces than a neutral molecule. When the color of a combination of quarks is white, it is like a neutral atom. The forces a white particle exerts are like the polarization forces in molecules, but in hadrons these leftovers are the strong nuclear force. When a combination of quarks has color other than white, it exerts *extremely* large forces—even larger than the strong force—and perhaps cannot be stable or permanently separated. This is part of the **theory of quark confinement**, which explains how quarks can exist and yet never be isolated or directly observed. Finally, an extra quantum number with three values (like those we

assign to color) is necessary for quarks to obey the Pauli exclusion principle. Particles such as the Ω^-, which is composed of three strange quarks, sss, and the Δ^{++}, which is three up quarks, *uuu*, can exist because the quarks have different colors and do not have the same quantum numbers. Color is consistent with all observations and is now widely accepted. Quark theory including color is called **quantum chromodynamics** (QCD), also named by Gell-Mann.

The Three Families

Fundamental particles are thought to be one of three types—leptons, quarks, or carrier particles. Each of those three types is further divided into three analogous families as illustrated in [link]. We have examined leptons and quarks in some detail. Each has six members (and their six antiparticles) divided into three analogous families. The first family is normal matter, of which most things are composed. The second is exotic, and the third more exotic and more massive than the second. The only stable particles are in the first family, which also has unstable members.

Always searching for symmetry and similarity, physicists have also divided the carrier particles into three families, omitting the graviton. Gravity is special among the four forces in that it affects the space and time in which the other forces exist and is proving most difficult to include in a Theory of Everything or TOE (to stub the pretension of such a theory). Gravity is thus often set apart. It is not certain that there is meaning in the groupings shown in [link], but the analogies are tempting. In the past, we have been able to make significant advances by looking for analogies and patterns, and this is an example of one under current scrutiny. There are connections between the families of leptons, in that the τ decays into the μ and the μ into the *e*. Similarly for quarks, the higher families eventually decay into the lowest, leaving only *u* and *d* quarks. We have long sought connections between the forces in nature. Since these are carried by particles, we will explore connections between gluons, $W^{\pm}$ and Z^0, and photons as part of the search for unification of forces discussed in GUTs: The Unification of Forces..



The three types of particles are leptons, quarks, and carrier particles. Each of those types is divided into three analogous families, with the graviton left out.

Summary

- Hadrons are thought to be composed of quarks, with baryons having three quarks and mesons having a quark and an antiquark.
- The characteristics of the six quarks and their antiquark counterparts are given in [link], and the quark compositions of certain hadrons are given in [link].
- Indirect evidence for quarks is very strong, explaining all known hadrons and their quantum numbers, such as strangeness, charm, topness, and bottomness.
- Quarks come in six flavors and three colors and occur only in combinations that produce white.

- Fundamental particles have no further substructure, not even a size beyond their de Broglie wavelength.
- There are three types of fundamental particles—leptons, quarks, and carrier particles. Each type is divided into three analogous families as indicated in [link].

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

The quark flavor change $d \rightarrow u$ takes place in β^- decay. Does this mean that the reverse quark flavor change $u \rightarrow d$ takes place in β^+ decay? Justify your response by writing the decay in terms of the quark constituents, noting that it looks as if a proton is converted into a neutron in β^+ decay.

Exercise:

Problem: Explain how the weak force can change strangeness by changing quark flavor.

Exercise:

Problem:

Beta decay is caused by the weak force, as are all reactions in which strangeness changes. Does this imply that the weak force can change quark flavor? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is it easier to see the properties of the *c*, *b*, and *t* quarks in mesons having composition W^- or $t\bar{t}$ rather than in baryons having a mixture of quarks, such as *udb*?

Exercise:

Problem:

How can quarks, which are fermions, combine to form bosons? Why must an even number combine to form a boson? Give one example by stating the quark substructure of a boson.

Exercise:

Problem:

What evidence is cited to support the contention that the gluon force between quarks is greater than the strong nuclear force between hadrons? How is this related to color? Is it also related to quark confinement?

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss how we know that π-mesons (π^+,π,π^0) are not fundamental particles and are not the basic carriers of the strong force.

Exercise:

Problem: An antibaryon has three antiquarks with colors RGB. What is its color?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose leptons are created in a reaction. Does this imply the weak force is acting? (for example, consider β decay.)

Exercise:

Problem:

How can the lifetime of a particle indicate that its decay is caused by the strong nuclear force? How can a change in strangeness imply which force is responsible for a reaction? What does a change in quark flavor imply about the force that is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem:(a) Do all particles having strangeness also have at least one strange quark in them?

(b) Do all hadrons with a strange quark also have nonzero strangeness?

Exercise:

Problem:

The sigma-zero particle decays mostly via the reaction $\Sigma^0 \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \gamma$. Explain how this decay and the respective quark compositions imply that the Σ^0 is an excited state of the Λ^0.

Exercise:

Problem:

What do the quark compositions and other quantum numbers imply about the relationships between the Δ^+ and the proton? The Δ^0 and the neutron?

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss the similarities and differences between the photon and the Z^0 in terms of particle properties, including forces felt.

Exercise:

Problem: Identify evidence for electroweak unification.

Exercise:

Problem:

The quarks in a particle are confined, meaning individual quarks cannot be directly observed. Are gluons confined as well? Explain

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: (a) Verify from its quark composition that the Δ^+ particle could be an excited state of the proton.

(b) There is a spread of about 100 MeV in the decay energy of the Δ^+, interpreted as uncertainty due to its short lifetime. What is its approximate lifetime?

(c) Does its decay proceed via the strong or weak force?

Solution:

(a) The uud composition is the same as for a proton.

(b) 3.3×10^{-24} s

(c) Strong (short lifetime)

Exercise:

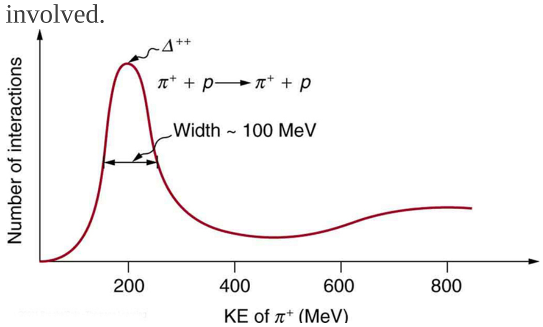
Problem:

Accelerators such as the Triangle Universities Meson Facility (TRIUMF) in British Columbia produce secondary beams of pions by having an intense primary proton beam strike a target. Such “meson factories” have been used for many years to study the interaction of pions with nuclei and, hence, the strong nuclear force. One reaction that occurs is $\pi^+ + p \rightarrow \Delta^{++} \rightarrow \pi^+ + p$, where the Δ^{++} is a very short-lived particle. The graph in [link] shows the probability of this reaction as a function of energy. The width of the bump is the uncertainty in energy due to the short lifetime of the Δ^{++}.

(a) Find this lifetime.

(b) Verify from the quark composition of the particles that this reaction annihilates and then re-creates a d quark and a $\bar{d}$ antiquark by writing the reaction and decay in terms of quarks.

(c) Draw a Feynman diagram of the production and decay of the Δ^{++} showing the individual quarks involved.



This graph shows the probability of an interaction between a π^+ and a proton as a function of energy. The bump is interpreted as a very short lived particle called a Δ^{++}. The approximately 100-MeV width of the bump is due to the short lifetime of the Δ^{++}.

Exercise:

Problem:

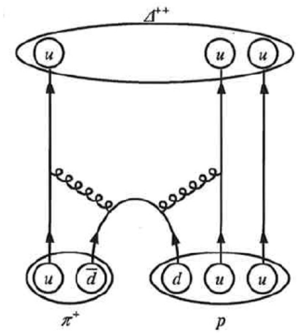
The reaction $\pi^+ + p \rightarrow \Delta^{++}$ (described in the preceding problem) takes place via the strong force. (a) What is the baryon number of the Δ^{++} particle?

(b) Draw a Feynman diagram of the reaction showing the individual quarks involved.

Solution:

a) $\Delta^{++}(\mathrm{uuu}); B = \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3} = 1$

b)



Exercise:

Problem: One of the decay modes of the omega minus is $\Omega^- \to \Xi^0 + \pi^-$.

(a) What is the change in strangeness?

(b) Verify that baryon number and charge are conserved, while lepton numbers are unaffected.

(c) Write the equation in terms of the constituent quarks, indicating that the weak force is responsible.

Exercise:

Problem: Repeat the previous problem for the decay mode $\Omega^- \to \Lambda^0 + K^-$.

Solution:

(a) $+1$

(b) $B = 1 = 1 + 0$, $Z == 0 + (-1)$, all lepton numbers are 0 before and after

(c) $(\text{sss}) \to (\text{uds}) + \left(\bar{u}s\right)$

Exercise:

Problem: One decay mode for the eta-zero meson is $\eta^0 \to \gamma +$ γ.

(a) Find the energy released.

(b) What is the uncertainty in the energy due to the short lifetime?

(c) Write the decay in terms of the constituent quarks.

(d) Verify that baryon number, lepton numbers, and charge are conserved.

Exercise:

Problem: One decay mode for the eta-zero meson is $\eta^0 \to \pi^0 + \pi^0$.

(a) Write the decay in terms of the quark constituents.

(b) How much energy is released?

(c) What is the ultimate release of energy, given the decay mode for the pi zero is $\pi^0 \to \gamma + \gamma$?

Solution:

(a) $(u\bar{u} + dd) \to (u\bar{u} + dd) + (u\bar{u} + dd)$

(b) 277.9 MeV

(c) 547.9 MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the decay $n \to e^{+} + e^{-}$ possible considering the appropriate conservation laws? State why or why not.

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the decay $\mu^{-} \to e^{-} + \nu_e + \nu_\mu$ possible considering the appropriate conservation laws? State why or why not.

Solution:

No. $\text{Charge} = -1$ is conserved. $L_{e_\text{i}} = 0 \neq L_{e_\text{f}} = 2$ is not conserved. $L_\mu = 1$ is conserved.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Is the decay $\Lambda^0 \to n + \pi^0$ possible considering the appropriate conservation laws? State why or why not.

(b) Write the decay in terms of the quark constituents of the particles.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Is the decay $\Sigma^{-} \to n + \pi^{-}$ possible considering the appropriate conservation laws? State why or why not. (b) Write the decay in terms of the quark constituents of the particles.

Solution:

(a)Yes. $Z = -1 = 0 + (-1)$, $B = 1 = 1 + 0$, all lepton family numbers are 0 before and after, spontaneous since mass greater before reaction.

(b) $\text{dds} \to \text{udd} + \bar{u}d$

Exercise:

Problem:

The only combination of quark colors that produces a white baryon is *RGB*. Identify all the color combinations that can produce a white meson.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Three quarks form a baryon. How many combinations of the six known quarks are there if all combinations are possible?

(b) This number is less than the number of known baryons. Explain why.

Solution:

(a) 216

(b) There are more baryons observed because we have the 6 antiquarks and various mixtures of quarks (as for the π-meson) as well.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Show that the conjectured decay of the proton, $p \to \pi^0 + e^+$, violates conservation of baryon number and conservation of lepton number.

(b) What is the analogous decay process for the antiproton?

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the quantum numbers given for the Ω^+ in [link] by adding the quantum numbers for its quark constituents as inferred from [link].

Solution:

$\Omega^+(\bar{s}\bar{s}\bar{s})$
$B = -\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{3} = -1,$
$L_e, \mu, \tau = 0 + 0 + 0 = 0,$
$Q = \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3} = 1,$
$S = 1 + 1 + 1 = 3.$

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the quantum numbers given for the proton and neutron in [link] by adding the quantum numbers for their quark constituents as given in [link].

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How much energy would be released if the proton did decay via the conjectured reaction $p \to \pi^0 + e^+$?

(b) Given that the π^0 decays to two γ s and that the e^+ will find an electron to annihilate, what total energy is ultimately produced in proton decay?

(c) Why is this energy greater than the proton's total mass (converted to energy)?

Solution:

(a)803 MeV

(b) 938.8 MeV

(c) The annihilation energy of an extra electron is included in the total energy.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the charge, baryon number, strangeness, charm, and bottomness of the J/Ψ particle from its quark composition.

(b) Do the same for the Υ particle.

Exercise:

Problem:

There are particles called D-mesons. One of them is the D^+ meson, which has a single positive charge and a baryon number of zero, also the value of its strangeness, topness, and bottomness. It has a charm of $+1$. What is its quark configuration?

Solution:

cd

Exercise:

Problem:

There are particles called bottom mesons or B-mesons. One of them is the B^- meson, which has a single negative charge; its baryon number is zero, as are its strangeness, charm, and topness. It has a bottomness of -1. What is its quark configuration?

Exercise:

Problem: (a) What particle has the quark composition $\bar{u}\bar{u}\bar{d}$?

(b) What should its decay mode be?

Solution:

a)The antiproton

b) $\bar{p} \rightarrow \pi^0 + e^-$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Show that all combinations of three quarks produce integral charges. Thus baryons must have integral charge.

(b) Show that all combinations of a quark and an antiquark produce only integral charges. Thus mesons must have integral charge.

Glossary

bottom
: a quark flavor

charm
: a quark flavor, which is the counterpart of the strange quark

color
: a quark flavor

down
: the second-lightest of all quarks

flavors

quark type

fundamental particle
particle with no substructure

quantum chromodynamics
quark theory including color

quark
an elementary particle and a fundamental constituent of matter

strange
the third lightest of all quarks

theory of quark confinement
explains how quarks can exist and yet never be isolated or directly observed

top
a quark flavor

up
the lightest of all quarks

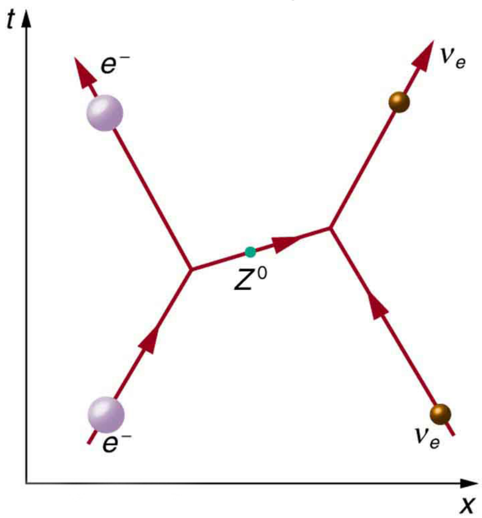
GUTs: The Unification of Forces

- State the grand unified theory.
- Explain the electroweak theory.
- Define gluons.
- Describe the principle of quantum chromodynamics.
- Define the standard model.

Present quests to show that the four basic forces are different manifestations of a single unified force follow a long tradition. In the 19th century, the distinct electric and magnetic forces were shown to be intimately connected and are now collectively called the electromagnetic force. More recently, the weak nuclear force has been shown to be connected to the electromagnetic force in a manner suggesting that a theory may be constructed in which all four forces are unified. Certainly, there are similarities in how forces are transmitted by the exchange of carrier particles, and the carrier particles themselves (the gauge bosons in [link]) are also similar in important ways. The analogy to the unification of electric and magnetic forces is quite good—the four forces are distinct under normal circumstances, but there are hints of connections even on the atomic scale, and there may be conditions under which the forces are intimately related and even indistinguishable. The search for a correct theory linking the forces, called the **Grand Unified Theory (GUT)**, is explored in this section in the realm of particle physics. Frontiers of Physics expands the story in making a connection with cosmology, on the opposite end of the distance scale.

[link] is a Feynman diagram showing how the weak nuclear force is transmitted by the carrier particle Z^0, similar to the diagrams in [link] and [link] for the electromagnetic and strong nuclear forces. In the 1960s, a gauge theory, called **electroweak theory**, was developed by Steven Weinberg, Sheldon Glashow, and Abdus Salam and proposed that the electromagnetic and weak forces are identical at sufficiently high energies. One of its predictions, in addition to describing both electromagnetic and weak force phenomena, was the existence of the W^+,W^-, and Z^0 carrier particles. Not only were three particles having spin 1 predicted, the mass of the W^+ and W^- was predicted to be $81\ \text{GeV}/c^2$, and that of the Z^0 was

predicted to be 90 GeV/c^2. (Their masses had to be about 1000 times that of the pion, or about 100 GeV/c^2, since the range of the weak force is about 1000 times less than the strong force carried by virtual pions.) In 1983, these carrier particles were observed at CERN with the predicted characteristics, including masses having the predicted values as seen in [link]. This was another triumph of particle theory and experimental effort, resulting in the 1984 Nobel Prize to the experiment's group leaders Carlo Rubbia and Simon van der Meer. Theorists Weinberg, Glashow, and Salam had already been honored with the 1979 Nobel Prize for other aspects of electroweak theory.

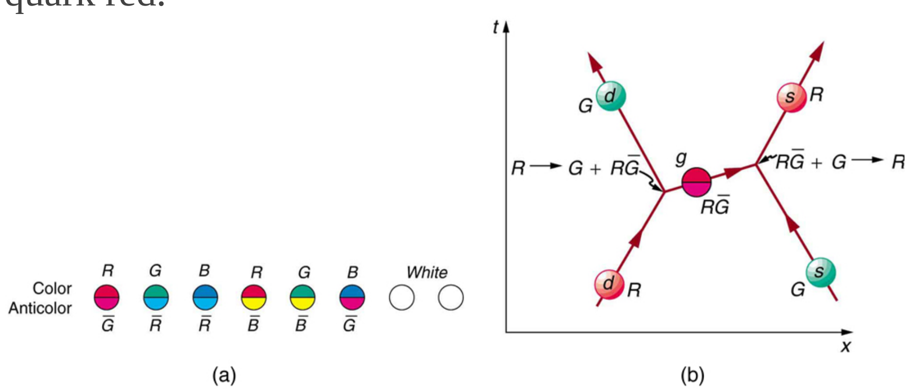


The exchange of a virtual Z^0 carries the weak nuclear force between an electron and a neutrino in this Feynman diagram. The Z^0 is one of the carrier particles for the weak nuclear force that has now been created in the laboratory with characteristics predicted by electroweak theory.

Although the weak nuclear force is very short ranged ($< 10^{-18}$ m, as indicated in [link]), its effects on atomic levels can be measured given the extreme precision of modern techniques. Since electrons spend some time in the nucleus, their energies are affected, and spectra can even indicate new aspects of the weak force, such as the possibility of other carrier particles. So systems many orders of magnitude larger than the range of the weak force supply evidence of electroweak unification in addition to evidence found at the particle scale.

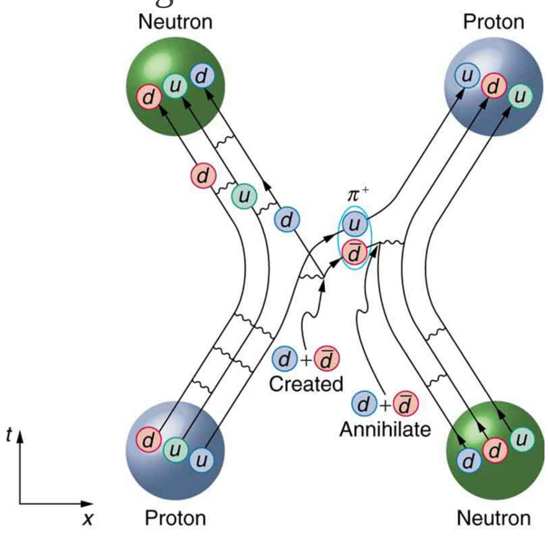
Gluons (g) are the proposed carrier particles for the strong nuclear force, although they are not directly observed. Like quarks, gluons may be confined to systems having a total color of white. Less is known about gluons than the fact that they are the carriers of the weak and certainly of the electromagnetic force. QCD theory calls for eight gluons, all massless and all spin 1. Six of the gluons carry a color and an anticolor, while two do not carry color, as illustrated in [link](a). There is indirect evidence of the existence of gluons in nucleons. When high-energy electrons are scattered from nucleons and evidence of quarks is seen, the momenta of the quarks are smaller than they would be if there were no gluons. That means that the gluons carrying force between quarks also carry some momentum, inferred by the already indirect quark momentum measurements. At any rate, the gluons carry color charge and can change the colors of quarks when exchanged, as seen in [link](b). In the figure, a red down quark interacts with a green strange quark by sending it a gluon. That gluon carries red

away from the down quark and leaves it green, because it is an RG (red-antigreen) gluon. (Taking antigreen away leaves you green.) Its antigreenness kills the green in the strange quark, and its redness turns the quark red.



In figure (a), the eight types of gluons that carry the strong nuclear force are divided into a group of six that carry color and a group of two that do not. Figure (b) shows that the exchange of gluons between quarks carries the strong force and may change the color of a quark.

The strong force is complicated, since observable particles that feel the strong force (hadrons) contain multiple quarks. [link] shows the quark and gluon details of pion exchange between a proton and a neutron as illustrated earlier in [link] and [link]. The quarks within the proton and neutron move along together exchanging gluons, until the proton and neutron get close together. As the u quark leaves the proton, a gluon creates a pair of virtual particles, a d quark and a $\bar{d}$ antiquark. The d quark stays behind and the proton turns into a neutron, while the u and $\bar{d}$ move together as a π^+ ([link] confirms the $u\bar{d}$ composition for the π^+.) The $\bar{d}$ annihilates a d quark in the neutron, the u joins the neutron, and the neutron becomes a proton. A pion is exchanged and a force is transmitted.



This Feynman diagram is the same interaction as shown in [link], but it shows

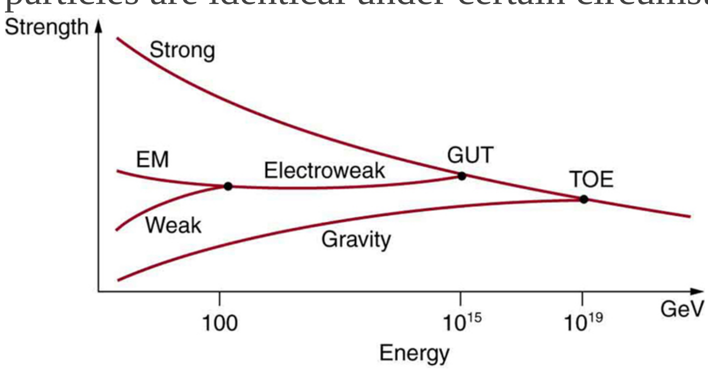
the quark and gluon details
of the strong force
interaction.

It is beyond the scope of this text to go into more detail on the types of quark and gluon interactions that underlie the observable particles, but the theory (**quantum chromodynamics** or QCD) is very self-consistent. So successful have QCD and the electroweak theory been that, taken together, they are called the **Standard Model**. Advances in knowledge are expected to modify, but not overthrow, the Standard Model of particle physics and forces.

Note:
Making Connections: Unification of Forces
Grand Unified Theory (GUT) is successful in describing the four forces as distinct under normal circumstances, but connected in fundamental ways. Experiments have verified that the weak and electromagnetic force become identical at very small distances and provide the GUT description of the carrier particles for the forces. GUT predicts that the other forces become identical under conditions so extreme that they cannot be tested in the laboratory, although there may be lingering evidence of them in the evolution of the universe. GUT is also successful in describing a system of carrier particles for all four forces, but there is much to be done, particularly in the realm of gravity.

How can forces be unified? They are definitely distinct under most circumstances, for example, being carried by different particles and having greatly different strengths. But experiments show that at extremely small distances, the strengths of the forces begin to become more similar. In fact, electroweak theory's prediction of the W^+, W^-, and Z^0 carrier particles was based on the strengths of the two forces being identical at extremely small distances as seen in [link]. As discussed in case of the creation of

virtual particles for extremely short times, the small distances or short ranges correspond to the large masses of the carrier particles and the correspondingly large energies needed to create them. Thus, the energy scale on the horizontal axis of [link] corresponds to smaller and smaller distances, with 100 GeV corresponding to approximately, 10^{-18}m for example. At that distance, the strengths of the EM and weak forces are the same. To test physics at that distance, energies of about 100 GeV must be put into the system, and that is sufficient to create and release the W^+, W^-, and Z^0 carrier particles. At those and higher energies, the masses of the carrier particles becomes less and less relevant, and the Z^0 in particular resembles the massless, chargeless, spin 1 photon. In fact, there is enough energy when things are pushed to even smaller distances to transform the, and Z^0 into massless carrier particles more similar to photons and gluons. These have not been observed experimentally, but there is a prediction of an associated particle called the **Higgs boson**. The mass of this particle is not predicted with nearly the certainty with which the mass of the W^+, W^-, and Z^0 particles were predicted, but it was hoped that the Higgs boson could be observed at the now-canceled Superconducting Super Collider (SSC). Ongoing experiments at the Large Hadron Collider at CERN have presented some evidence for a Higgs boson with a mass of 125 GeV, and there is a possibility of a direct discovery during 2012. The existence of this more massive particle would give validity to the theory that the carrier particles are identical under certain circumstances.



The relative strengths of the four basic forces vary with distance and, hence, energy is needed to probe small distances. At ordinary energies (a few eV or less), the forces differ greatly as

indicated in [link]. However, at energies available at accelerators, the weak and EM forces become identical, or unified. Unfortunately, the energies at which the strong and electroweak forces become the same are unreachable even in principle at any conceivable accelerator. The universe may provide a laboratory, and nature may show effects at ordinary energies that give us clues about the validity of this graph.

The small distances and high energies at which the electroweak force becomes identical with the strong nuclear force are not reachable with any conceivable human-built accelerator. At energies of about 10^{14} GeV (16,000 J per particle), distances of about 10^{-30} m can be probed. Such energies are needed to test theory directly, but these are about 10^{10} higher than the proposed giant SSC would have had, and the distances are about 10^{-12} smaller than any structure we have direct knowledge of. This would be the realm of various GUTs, of which there are many since there is no constraining evidence at these energies and distances. Past experience has shown that any time you probe so many orders of magnitude further (here, about 10^{12}), you find the unexpected. Even more extreme are the energies and distances at which gravity is thought to unify with the other forces in a TOE. Most speculative and least constrained by experiment are TOEs, one of which is called **Superstring theory**. Superstrings are entities that are 10^{-35} m in scale and act like one-dimensional oscillating strings and are also proposed to underlie all particles, forces, and space itself.

At the energy of GUTs, the carrier particles of the weak force would become massless and identical to gluons. If that happens, then both lepton and baryon conservation would be violated. We do not see such violations, because we do not encounter such energies. However, there is a tiny probability that, at ordinary energies, the virtual particles that violate the

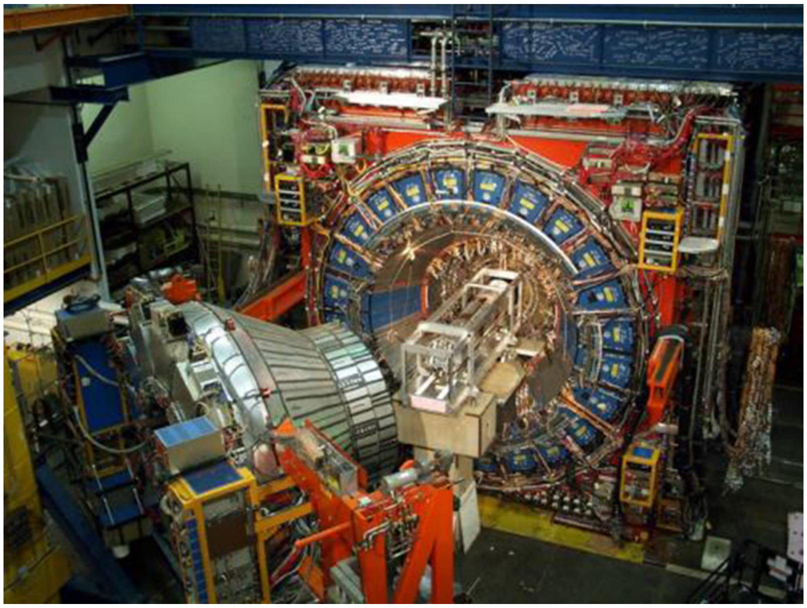
conservation of baryon number may exist for extremely small amounts of time (corresponding to very small ranges). All GUTs thus predict that the proton should be unstable, but would decay with an extremely long lifetime of about 10^{31} y. The predicted decay mode is

Equation:

$$p\to \pi^0+e^+,\text{ (proposed proton decay)}$$

which violates both conservation of baryon number and electron family number. Although 10^{31} y is an extremely long time (about 10^{21} times the age of the universe), there are a lot of protons, and detectors have been constructed to look for the proposed decay mode as seen in [link]. It is somewhat comforting that proton decay has not been detected, and its experimental lifetime is now greater than 5×10^{32} y. This does not prove GUTs wrong, but it does place greater constraints on the theories, benefiting theorists in many ways.

From looking increasingly inward at smaller details for direct evidence of electroweak theory and GUTs, we turn around and look to the universe for evidence of the unification of forces. In the 1920s, the expansion of the universe was discovered. Thinking backward in time, the universe must once have been very small, dense, and extremely hot. At a tiny fraction of a second after the fabled Big Bang, forces would have been unified and may have left their fingerprint on the existing universe. This, one of the most exciting forefronts of physics, is the subject of Frontiers of Physics.



In the Tevatron accelerator at Fermilab, protons and antiprotons collide at high energies, and some of those collisions could result in the production of a Higgs boson in association with a *W* boson. When the *W* boson decays to a high-energy lepton and a neutrino, the detector triggers on the lepton, whether it is an electron or a muon. (credit: D. J. Miller)

Summary

- Attempts to show unification of the four forces are called Grand Unified Theories (GUTs) and have been partially successful, with connections proven between EM and weak forces in electroweak theory.
- The strong force is carried by eight proposed particles called gluons, which are intimately connected to a quantum number called color—their governing theory is thus called quantum chromodynamics

(QCD). Taken together, QCD and the electroweak theory are widely accepted as the Standard Model of particle physics.
- Unification of the strong force is expected at such high energies that it cannot be directly tested, but it may have observable consequences in the as-yet unobserved decay of the proton and topics to be discussed in the next chapter. Although unification of forces is generally anticipated, much remains to be done to prove its validity.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

If a GUT is proven, and the four forces are unified, it will still be correct to say that the orbit of the moon is determined by the gravitational force. Explain why.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the Higgs boson is discovered and found to have mass, will it be considered the ultimate carrier of the weak force? Explain your response.

Exercise:

Problem:

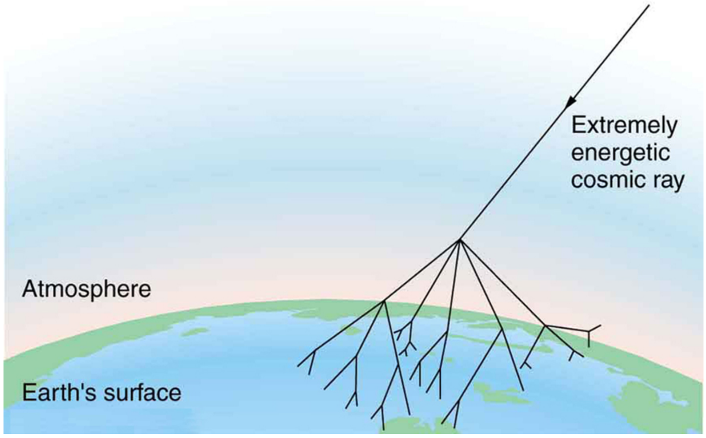
Gluons and the photon are massless. Does this imply that the W^+, W^-, and Z^0 are the ultimate carriers of the weak force?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

The intensity of cosmic ray radiation decreases rapidly with increasing energy, but there are occasionally extremely energetic cosmic rays that create a shower of radiation from all the particles they create by striking a nucleus in the atmosphere as seen in the figure given below. Suppose a cosmic ray particle having an energy of 10^{10} GeV converts its energy into particles with masses averaging $200\ \mathrm{MeV}/c^2$. (a) How many particles are created? (b) If the particles rain down on a $1.00\text{-}\mathrm{km}^2$ area, how many particles are there per square meter?



An extremely energetic cosmic ray creates a shower of particles on earth. The energy of these rare cosmic rays can approach a joule (about 10^{10} GeV) and, after multiple collisions, huge numbers of particles are created from this energy. Cosmic ray showers have been observed to extend over many square kilometers.

Solution:

(a) 5×10^{10}

(b) $5 \times 10^{4}\ \mathrm{particles/m^2}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Assuming conservation of momentum, what is the energy of each γ ray produced in the decay of a neutral at rest pion, in the reaction $\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma$?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

What is the wavelength of a 50-GeV electron, which is produced at SLAC? This provides an idea of the limit to the detail it can probe.

Solution:

2.5×10^{-17} m

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) Calculate the relativistic quantity $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^2/c^2}}$ for 1.00-TeV protons produced at Fermilab. (b) If such a proton created a π^+ having the same speed, how long would its life be in the laboratory? (c) How far could it travel in this time?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

The primary decay mode for the negative pion is $\pi^- \rightarrow \mu^- + \bar{\nu}_\mu$. (a) What is the energy release in MeV in this decay? (b) Using conservation of momentum, how much energy does each of the decay products receive, given the π^- is at rest when it decays? You may assume the muon antineutrino is massless and has momentum $p = E/c$, just like a photon.

Solution:

(a) 33.9 MeV

(b) Muon antineutrino 29.8 MeV, muon 4.1 MeV (kinetic energy)

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Plans for an accelerator that produces a secondary beam of *K*-mesons to scatter from nuclei, for the purpose of studying the strong force, call for them to have a kinetic energy of 500 MeV. (a) What would the relativistic quantity $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^2/c^2}}$ be for these particles? (b) How long would their average lifetime be in the laboratory? (c) How far could they travel in this time?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Suppose you are designing a proton decay experiment and you can detect 50 percent of the proton decays in a tank of water. (a) How many kilograms of water would you need to see one decay per month, assuming a lifetime of 10^{31} y? (b) How many cubic meters of water is this? (c) If the actual lifetime is 10^{33} y, how long would you have to wait on an average to see a single proton decay?

Solution:

(a) 7.2×10^5 kg

(b) 7.2×10^2 m^3

(c) 100 months

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

In supernovas, neutrinos are produced in huge amounts. They were detected from the 1987A supernova in the Magellanic Cloud, which is about 120,000 light years away from the Earth (relatively close to our Milky Way galaxy). If neutrinos have a mass, they cannot travel at the speed of light, but if their mass is small, they can get close. (a) Suppose a neutrino with a $7\text{-eV}/c^2$ mass has a kinetic energy of 700 keV. Find the relativistic quantity $\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^2/c^2}}$ for it. (b) If the neutrino leaves the 1987A supernova at the same time as a photon and both travel to Earth, how much sooner does the photon arrive? This is not a large time difference, given that it is impossible to know which neutrino left with which photon and the poor efficiency of the neutrino detectors. Thus, the fact that neutrinos were observed within hours of the brightening of the supernova only places an upper limit on the neutrino's mass. (Hint: You may need to use a series expansion to find *v* for the neutrino, since its γ is so large.)

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider an ultrahigh-energy cosmic ray entering the Earth's atmosphere (some have energies approaching a joule). Construct a problem in which you calculate the energy of the particle based on the number of particles in an observed cosmic ray shower. Among the things to consider are the average mass of the shower particles, the average number per square meter, and the extent (number of square meters covered) of the shower. Express the energy in eV and joules.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a detector needed to observe the proposed, but extremely rare, decay of an electron. Construct a problem in which you calculate

the amount of matter needed in the detector to be able to observe the decay, assuming that it has a signature that is clearly identifiable. Among the things to consider are the estimated half life (long for rare events), and the number of decays per unit time that you wish to observe, as well as the number of electrons in the detector substance.

Glossary

electroweak theory
: theory showing connections between EM and weak forces

grand unified theory
: theory that shows unification of the strong and electroweak forces

gluons
: eight proposed particles which carry the strong force

Higgs boson
: a massive particle that, if observed, would give validity to the theory that carrier particles are identical under certain circumstances

quantum chromodynamics
: the governing theory of connecting quantum number color to gluons

standard model
: combination of quantum chromodynamics and electroweak theory

superstring theory
: a theory of everything based on vibrating strings some 10^{-35} m in length

Introduction to Frontiers of Physics class="introduction"

This galaxy is ejecting huge jets of matter, powered by an immensely massive black hole at its center. (credit: X-ray: NASA/CXC/CfA/R. Kraft et al.)

Frontiers are exciting. There is mystery, surprise, adventure, and discovery. The satisfaction of finding the answer to a question is made keener by the fact that the answer always leads to a new question. The picture of nature becomes more complete, yet nature retains its sense of mystery and never loses its ability to awe us. The view of physics is beautiful looking both backward and forward in time. What marvelous patterns we have discovered. How clever nature seems in its rules and connections. How awesome. And we continue looking ever deeper and ever further, probing

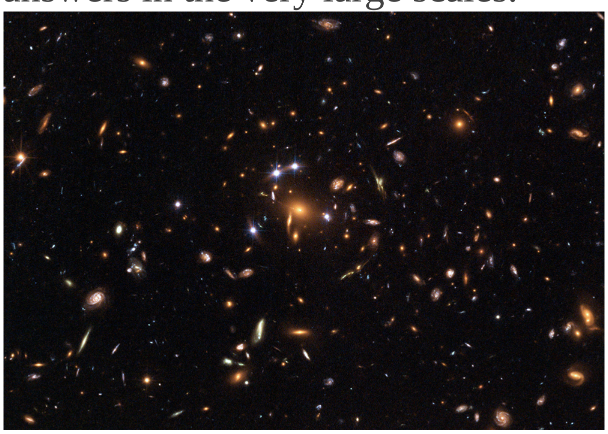
the basic structure of matter, energy, space, and time and wondering about the scope of the universe, its beginnings and future.

You are now in a wonderful position to explore the forefronts of physics, both the new discoveries and the unanswered questions. With the concepts, qualitative and quantitative, the problem-solving skills, the feeling for connections among topics, and all the rest you have mastered, you can more deeply appreciate and enjoy the brief treatments that follow. Years from now you will still enjoy the quest with an insight all the greater for your efforts.

Cosmology and Particle Physics

- Discuss the expansion of the universe.
- Explain the Big Bang.

Look at the sky on some clear night when you are away from city lights. There you will see thousands of individual stars and a faint glowing background of millions more. The Milky Way, as it has been called since ancient times, is an arm of our galaxy of stars—the word *galaxy* coming from the Greek word *galaxias*, meaning milky. We know a great deal about our Milky Way galaxy and of the billions of other galaxies beyond its fringes. But they still provoke wonder and awe (see [link]). And there are still many questions to be answered. Most remarkable when we view the universe on the large scale is that once again explanations of its character and evolution are tied to the very small scale. Particle physics and the questions being asked about the very small scales may also have their answers in the very large scales.

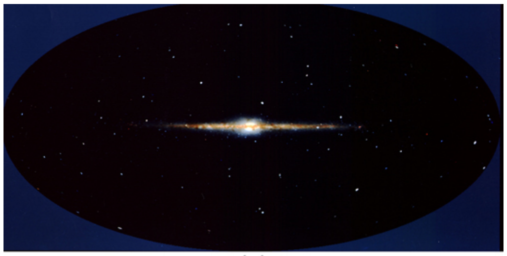


Take a moment to contemplate these clusters of galaxies, photographed by the Hubble Space Telescope. Trillions of stars linked by gravity in fantastic forms, glowing with light and showing evidence of undiscovered matter. What are they like, these myriad stars? How did they evolve? What can

they tell us of matter, energy, space, and time? (credit: NASA, ESA, K. Sharon (Tel Aviv University) and E. Ofek (Caltech))

As has been noted in numerous Things Great and Small vignettes, this is not the first time the large has been explained by the small and vice versa. Newton realized that the nature of gravity on Earth that pulls an apple to the ground could explain the motion of the moon and planets so much farther away. Minute atoms and molecules explain the chemistry of substances on a much larger scale. Decays of tiny nuclei explain the hot interior of the Earth. Fusion of nuclei likewise explains the energy of stars. Today, the patterns in particle physics seem to be explaining the evolution and character of the universe. And the nature of the universe has implications for unexplored regions of particle physics.

Cosmology is the study of the character and evolution of the universe. What are the major characteristics of the universe as we know them today? First, there are approximately 10^{11} galaxies in the observable part of the universe. An average galaxy contains more than 10^{11} stars, with our Milky Way galaxy being larger than average, both in its number of stars and its dimensions. Ours is a spiral-shaped galaxy with a diameter of about 100,000 light years and a thickness of about 2000 light years in the arms with a central bulge about 10,000 light years across. The Sun lies about 30,000 light years from the center near the galactic plane. There are significant clouds of gas, and there is a halo of less-dense regions of stars surrounding the main body. (See [link].) Evidence strongly suggests the existence of a large amount of additional matter in galaxies that does not produce light—the mysterious dark matter we shall later discuss.


(a)

(b)

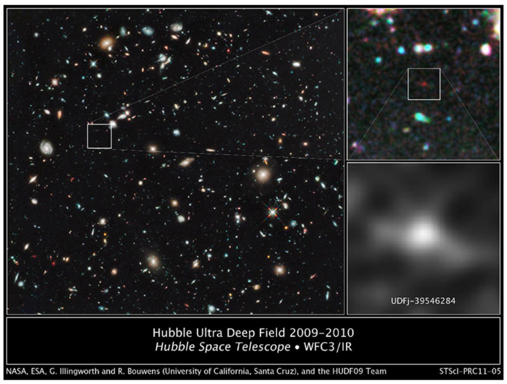
(c)

The Milky Way galaxy is typical of large spiral galaxies in its size, its shape, and the presence of gas and dust. We are fortunate to be in a location where we can see out of the galaxy and observe the vastly larger and fascinating universe

around us. (a) Side view. (b) View from above. (c) The Milky Way as seen from Earth. (credits: (a) NASA, (b) Nick Risinger, (c) Andy)

Distances are great even within our galaxy and are measured in light years (the distance traveled by light in one year). The average distance between galaxies is on the order of a million light years, but it varies greatly with galaxies forming clusters such as shown in [link]. The Magellanic Clouds, for example, are small galaxies close to our own, some 160,000 light years from Earth. The Andromeda galaxy is a large spiral galaxy like ours and lies 2 million light years away. It is just visible to the naked eye as an extended glow in the Andromeda constellation. Andromeda is the closest large galaxy in our local group, and we can see some individual stars in it with our larger telescopes. The most distant known galaxy is 14 billion light years from Earth—a truly incredible distance. (See [link].)

(a)



(b)

(a) Andromeda is the closest large galaxy, at 2 million light years distance, and is very similar to our Milky Way. The blue regions harbor young and emerging stars, while dark streaks are vast clouds of gas and dust. A smaller satellite galaxy is clearly visible. (b) The box indicates what may be the most distant known galaxy, estimated to be 13 billion light years from us. It exists in a much older part of the universe. (credit: NASA, ESA, G.

Illingworth (University of
California, Santa Cruz),
R. Bouwens (University
of California, Santa Cruz
and Leiden University),
and the HUDF09 Team)

Consider the fact that the light we receive from these vast distances has been on its way to us for a long time. In fact, the time in years is the same as the distance in light years. For example, the Andromeda galaxy is 2 million light years away, so that the light now reaching us left it 2 million years ago. If we could be there now, Andromeda would be different. Similarly, light from the most distant galaxy left it 14 billion years ago. We have an incredible view of the past when looking great distances. We can try to see if the universe was different then—if distant galaxies are more tightly packed or have younger-looking stars, for example, than closer galaxies, in which case there has been an evolution in time. But the problem is that the uncertainties in our data are great. Cosmology is almost typified by these large uncertainties, so that we must be especially cautious in drawing conclusions. One consequence is that there are more questions than answers, and so there are many competing theories. Another consequence is that any hard data produce a major result. Discoveries of some importance are being made on a regular basis, the hallmark of a field in its golden age.

Perhaps the most important characteristic of the universe is that all galaxies except those in our local cluster seem to be moving away from us at speeds proportional to their distance from our galaxy. It looks as if a gigantic explosion, universally called the **Big Bang**, threw matter out some billions of years ago. This amazing conclusion is based on the pioneering work of Edwin Hubble (1889–1953), the American astronomer. In the 1920s, Hubble first demonstrated conclusively that other galaxies, many previously called nebulae or clouds of stars, were outside our own. He then found that all but the closest galaxies have a red shift in their hydrogen spectra that is proportional to their distance. The explanation is that there is a **cosmological red shift** due to the expansion of space itself. The photon

wavelength is stretched in transit from the source to the observer. Double the distance, and the red shift is doubled. While this cosmological red shift is often called a Doppler shift, it is not—space itself is expanding. There is no center of expansion in the universe. All observers see themselves as stationary; the other objects in space appear to be moving away from them. Hubble was directly responsible for discovering that the universe was much larger than had previously been imagined and that it had this amazing characteristic of rapid expansion.

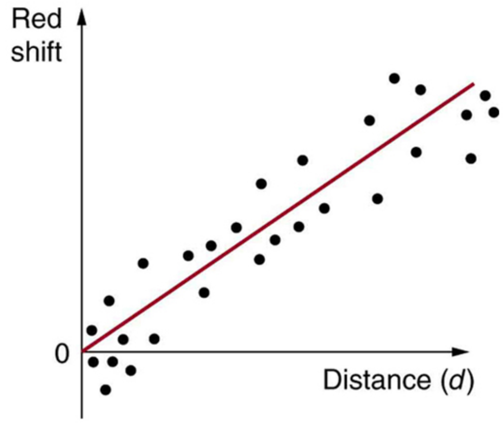
Universal expansion on the scale of galactic clusters (that is, galaxies at smaller distances are not uniformly receding from one another) is an integral part of modern cosmology. For galaxies farther away than about 50 Mly (50 million light years), the expansion is uniform with variations due to local motions of galaxies within clusters. A representative recession velocity v can be obtained from the simple formula

Equation:

$$\mathrm{v} = H_0 d,$$

where d is the distance to the galaxy and H_0 is the **Hubble constant**. The Hubble constant is a central concept in cosmology. Its value is determined by taking the slope of a graph of velocity versus distance, obtained from red shift measurements, such as shown in [link]. We shall use an approximate value of $H_0 = 20\ \mathrm{km/s} \cdot\ \mathrm{Mly}$. Thus, $v = H_0 d$ is an average behavior for all but the closest galaxies. For example, a galaxy 100 Mly away (as determined by its size and brightness) typically moves away from us at a speed of $v = (20\ \mathrm{km/s} \cdot\ \mathrm{Mly})(100\ \mathrm{Mly}) = 2000\ \mathrm{km/s}$. There can be variations in this speed due to so-called local motions or interactions with neighboring galaxies. Conversely, if a galaxy is found to be moving away from us at speed of 100,000 km/s based on its red shift, it is at a distance

$d = v/H_0 = (10{,}000\ \mathrm{km/s})/(20\ \mathrm{km/s} \cdot\ \mathrm{Mly}) = 5000\ \mathrm{Mly} = 5\ \mathrm{Gly}$ or 5×10^9 ly. This last calculation is approximate, because it assumes the expansion rate was the same 5 billion years ago as now. A similar calculation in Hubble's measurement changed the notion that the universe is in a steady state.

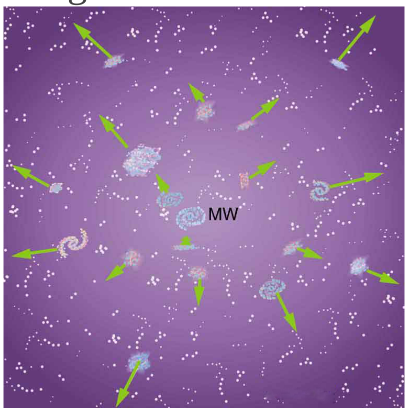


This graph of red shift versus distance for galaxies shows a linear relationship, with larger red shifts at greater distances, implying an expanding universe. The slope gives an approximate value for the expansion rate. (credit: John Cub).

One of the most intriguing developments recently has been the discovery that the expansion of the universe may be *faster now* than in the past, rather than slowing due to gravity as expected. Various groups have been looking, in particular, at supernovas in moderately distant galaxies (less than 1 Gly) to get improved distance measurements. Those distances are larger than expected for the observed galactic red shifts, implying the expansion was slower when that light was emitted. This has cosmological consequences that are discussed in Dark Matter and Closure. The first results, published in 1999, are only the beginning of emerging data, with astronomy now entering a data-rich era.

[link] shows how the recession of galaxies looks like the remnants of a gigantic explosion, the famous Big Bang. Extrapolating backward in time,

the Big Bang would have occurred between 13 and 15 billion years ago when all matter would have been at a point. Questions instantly arise. What caused the explosion? What happened before the Big Bang? Was there a before, or did time start then? Will the universe expand forever, or will gravity reverse it into a Big Crunch? And is there other evidence of the Big Bang besides the well-documented red shifts?

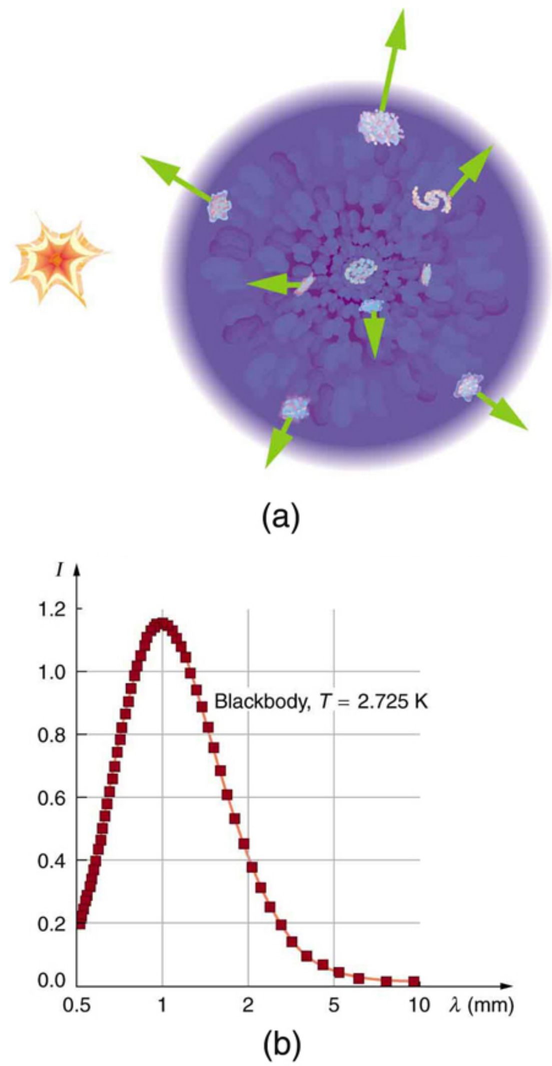


Galaxies are flying apart from one another, with the more distant moving faster as if a primordial explosion expelled the matter from which they formed. The most distant known galaxies move nearly at the speed of light relative to us.

The Russian-born American physicist George Gamow (1904–1968) was among the first to note that, if there was a Big Bang, the remnants of the primordial fireball should still be evident and should be blackbody radiation. Since the radiation from this fireball has been traveling to us

since shortly after the Big Bang, its wavelengths should be greatly stretched. It will look as if the fireball has cooled in the billions of years since the Big Bang. Gamow and collaborators predicted in the late 1940s that there should be blackbody radiation from the explosion filling space with a characteristic temperature of about 7 K. Such blackbody radiation would have its peak intensity in the microwave part of the spectrum. (See [link].) In 1964, Arno Penzias and Robert Wilson, two American scientists working with Bell Telephone Laboratories on a low-noise radio antenna, detected the radiation and eventually recognized it for what it is.

[link](b) shows the spectrum of this microwave radiation that permeates space and is of cosmic origin. It is the most perfect blackbody spectrum known, and the temperature of the fireball remnant is determined from it to be $2.725 \pm 0.\ 002\ \text{K}$. The detection of what is now called the **cosmic microwave background** (CMBR) was so important (generally considered as important as Hubble’s detection that the galactic red shift is proportional to distance) that virtually every scientist has accepted the expansion of the universe as fact. Penzias and Wilson shared the 1978 Nobel Prize in Physics for their discovery.



(a) The Big Bang is used to explain the present observed expansion of the universe. It was an incredibly energetic explosion some 10 to 20 billion years ago. After expanding and cooling, galaxies form inside the now-cold remnants of the primordial fireball. (b) The spectrum of cosmic microwave radiation is the most perfect blackbody

spectrum ever detected. It is characteristic of a temperature of 2.725 K, the expansion-cooled temperature of the Big Bang’s remnant. This radiation can be measured coming from any direction in space not obscured by some other source. It is compelling evidence of the creation of the universe in a gigantic explosion, already indicated by galactic red shifts.

Note:
Making Connections: Cosmology and Particle Physics
There are many connections of cosmology—by definition involving physics on the largest scale—with particle physics—by definition physics on the smallest scale. Among these are the dominance of matter over antimatter, the nearly perfect uniformity of the cosmic microwave background, and the mere existence of galaxies.

Matter versus antimatter
We know from direct observation that antimatter is rare. The Earth and the solar system are nearly pure matter. Space probes and cosmic rays give direct evidence—the landing of the Viking probes on Mars would have been spectacular explosions of mutual annihilation energy if Mars were antimatter. We also know that most of the universe is dominated by matter. This is proven by the lack of annihilation radiation coming to us from space, particularly the relative absence of 0.511-MeV γ rays created by the

mutual annihilation of electrons and positrons. It seemed possible that there could be entire solar systems or galaxies made of antimatter in perfect symmetry with our matter-dominated systems. But the interactions between stars and galaxies would sometimes bring matter and antimatter together in large amounts. The annihilation radiation they would produce is simply not observed. Antimatter in nature is created in particle collisions and in β^+ decays, but only in small amounts that quickly annihilate, leaving almost pure matter surviving.

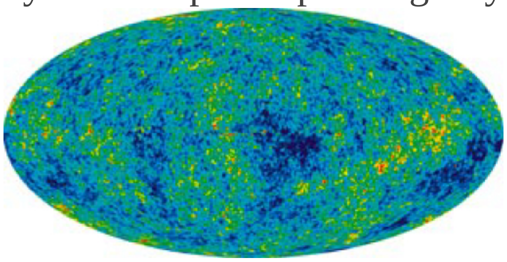
Particle physics seems symmetric in matter and antimatter. Why isn’t the cosmos? The answer is that particle physics is not quite perfectly symmetric in this regard. The decay of one of the neutral K-mesons, for example, preferentially creates more matter than antimatter. This is caused by a fundamental small asymmetry in the basic forces. This small asymmetry produced slightly more matter than antimatter in the early universe. If there was only one part in 10^9 more matter (a small asymmetry), the rest would annihilate pair for pair, leaving nearly pure matter to form the stars and galaxies we see today. So the vast number of stars we observe may be only a tiny remnant of the original matter created in the Big Bang. Here at last we see a very real and important asymmetry in nature. Rather than be disturbed by an asymmetry, most physicists are impressed by how small it is. Furthermore, if the universe were completely symmetric, the mutual annihilation would be more complete, leaving far less matter to form us and the universe we know.

How can something so old have so few wrinkles?

A troubling aspect of cosmic microwave background radiation (CMBR) was soon recognized. True, the CMBR verified the Big Bang, had the correct temperature, and had a blackbody spectrum as expected. But the CMBR was *too* smooth—it looked identical in every direction. Galaxies and other similar entities could not be formed without the existence of fluctuations in the primordial stages of the universe and so there should be hot and cool spots in the CMBR, nicknamed wrinkles, corresponding to dense and sparse regions of gas caused by turbulence or early fluctuations. Over time, dense regions would contract under gravity and form stars and galaxies. Why aren’t the fluctuations there? (This is a good example of an answer producing more questions.) Furthermore, galaxies are observed very

far from us, so that they formed very long ago. The problem was to explain how galaxies could form so early and so quickly after the Big Bang if its remnant fingerprint is perfectly smooth. The answer is that if you look very closely, the CMBR is not perfectly smooth, only extremely smooth.

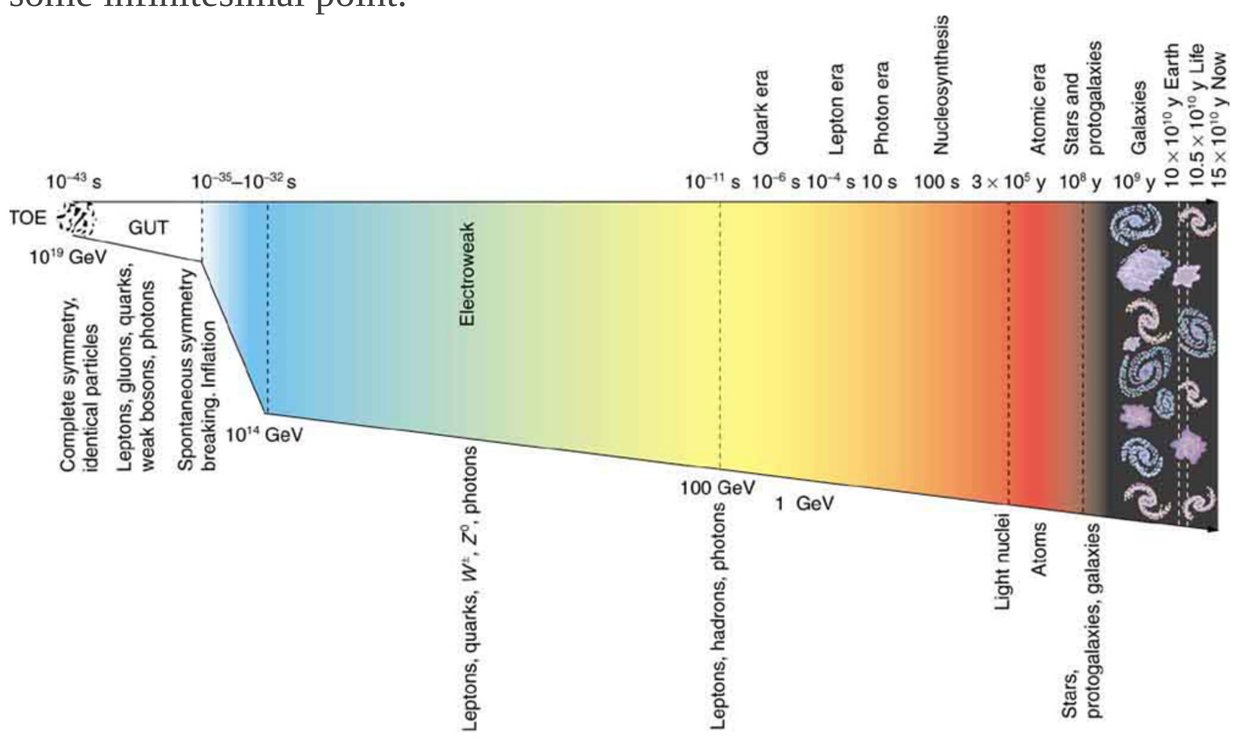
A satellite called the Cosmic Background Explorer (COBE) carried an instrument that made very sensitive and accurate measurements of the CMBR. In April of 1992, there was extraordinary publicity of COBE's first results—there were small fluctuations in the CMBR. Further measurements were carried out by experiments including NASA's Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe (WMAP), which launched in 2001. Data from WMAP provided a much more detailed picture of the CMBR fluctuations. (See [link].) These amount to temperature fluctuations of only $200\ \mu\text{k}$ out of 2.7 K, better than one part in 1000. The WMAP experiment will be followed up by the European Space Agency's Planck Surveyor, which launched in 2009.



This map of the sky uses color to show fluctuations, or wrinkles, in the cosmic microwave background observed with the WMAP spacecraft. The Milky Way has been removed for clarity. Red represents higher temperature and higher density, while blue is lower temperature and density. The fluctuations are small, less than one part in 1000, but these are still thought to be the

cause of the eventual formation of galaxies. (credit: NASA/WMAP Science Team)

Let us now examine the various stages of the overall evolution of the universe from the Big Bang to the present, illustrated in [link]. Note that scientific notation is used to encompass the many orders of magnitude in time, energy, temperature, and size of the universe. Going back in time, the two lines approach but do not cross (there is no zero on an exponential scale). Rather, they extend indefinitely in ever-smaller time intervals to some infinitesimal point.



The evolution of the universe from the Big Bang onward is intimately tied to the laws of physics, especially those of particle physics at the earliest stages. The universe is relativistic throughout its history. Theories of the unification of forces at high energies may be verified by their shaping of the universe and its evolution.

Going back in time is equivalent to what would happen if expansion stopped and gravity pulled all the galaxies together, compressing and heating all matter. At a time long ago, the temperature and density were too high for stars and galaxies to exist. Before then, there was a time when the temperature was too great for atoms to exist. And farther back yet, there was a time when the temperature and density were so great that nuclei could not exist. Even farther back in time, the temperature was so high that average kinetic energy was great enough to create short-lived particles, and the density was high enough to make this likely. When we extrapolate back to the point of $W^{\pm}$ and Z^0 production (thermal energies reaching 1 TeV, or a temperature of about 10^{15} K), we reach the limits of what we know directly about particle physics. This is at a time about 10^{-12} s after the Big Bang. While 10^{-12} s may seem to be negligibly close to the instant of creation, it is not. There are important stages before this time that are tied to the unification of forces. At those stages, the universe was at extremely high energies and average particle separations were smaller than we can achieve with accelerators. What happened in the early stages before 10^{-12} s is crucial to all later stages and is possibly discerned by observing present conditions in the universe. One of these is the smoothness of the CMBR.

Names are given to early stages representing key conditions. The stage before 10^{-11} s back to 10^{-34} s is called the **electroweak epoch**, because the electromagnetic and weak forces become identical for energies above about 100 GeV. As discussed earlier, theorists expect that the strong force becomes identical to and thus unified with the electroweak force at energies of about 10^{14} GeV. The average particle energy would be this great at 10^{-34} s after the Big Bang, if there are no surprises in the unknown physics at energies above about 1 TeV. At the immense energy of 10^{14} GeV (corresponding to a temperature of about 10^{26} K), the $W^{\pm}$ and Z^0 carrier particles would be transformed into massless gauge bosons to accomplish the unification. Before 10^{-34} s back to about 10^{-43} s, we have Grand Unification in the **GUT epoch**, in which all forces except gravity are identical. At 10^{-43} s, the average energy reaches the immense 10^{19} GeV needed to unify gravity with the other forces in TOE, the Theory of Everything. Before that time is the **TOE epoch**, but we have almost no idea

as to the nature of the universe then, since we have no workable theory of quantum gravity. We call the hypothetical unified force **superforce**.

Now let us imagine starting at TOE and moving forward in time to see what type of universe is created from various events along the way. As temperatures and average energies decrease with expansion, the universe reaches the stage where average particle separations are large enough to see differences between the strong and electroweak forces (at about 10^{-35} s). After this time, the forces become distinct in almost all interactions—they are no longer unified or symmetric. This transition from GUT to electroweak is an example of **spontaneous symmetry breaking**, in which conditions spontaneously evolved to a point where the forces were no longer unified, breaking that symmetry. This is analogous to a phase transition in the universe, and a clever proposal by American physicist Alan Guth in the early 1980s ties it to the smoothness of the CMBR. Guth proposed that spontaneous symmetry breaking (like a phase transition during cooling of normal matter) released an immense amount of energy that caused the universe to expand extremely rapidly for the brief time from 10^{-35} s to about 10^{-32} s. This expansion may have been by an incredible factor of 10^{50} or more in the size of the universe and is thus called the **inflationary scenario**. One result of this inflation is that it would stretch the wrinkles in the universe nearly flat, leaving an extremely smooth CMBR. While speculative, there is as yet no other plausible explanation for the smoothness of the CMBR. Unless the CMBR is not really cosmic but local in origin, the distances between regions of similar temperatures are too great for any coordination to have caused them, since any coordination mechanism must travel at the speed of light. Again, particle physics and cosmology are intimately entwined. There is little hope that we may be able to test the inflationary scenario directly, since it occurs at energies near 10^{14} GeV, vastly greater than the limits of modern accelerators. But the idea is so attractive that it is incorporated into most cosmological theories.

Characteristics of the present universe may help us determine the validity of this intriguing idea. Additionally, the recent indications that the universe’s expansion rate may be *increasing* (see Dark Matter and Closure) could even imply that we are *in* another inflationary epoch.

It is important to note that, if conditions such as those found in the early universe could be created in the laboratory, we would see the unification of forces directly today. The forces have not changed in time, but the average energy and separation of particles in the universe have. As discussed in The Four Basic Forces, the four basic forces in nature are distinct under most circumstances found today. The early universe and its remnants provide evidence from times when they were unified under most circumstances.

Section Summary

- Cosmology is the study of the character and evolution of the universe.
- The two most important features of the universe are the cosmological red shifts of its galaxies being proportional to distance and its cosmic microwave background (CMBR). Both support the notion that there was a gigantic explosion, known as the Big Bang that created the universe.
- Galaxies farther away than our local group have, on an average, a recessional velocity given by
  Equation:
  $$v = H_0 d,$$
  where d is the distance to the galaxy and H_0 is the Hubble constant, taken to have the average value $H_0 = 20\ \text{km/s} \cdot\text{Mly}$.
- Explanations of the large-scale characteristics of the universe are intimately tied to particle physics.
- The dominance of matter over antimatter and the smoothness of the CMBR are two characteristics that are tied to particle physics.
- The epochs of the universe are known back to very shortly after the Big Bang, based on known laws of physics.
- The earliest epochs are tied to the unification of forces, with the electroweak epoch being partially understood, the GUT epoch being speculative, and the TOE epoch being highly speculative since it involves an unknown single superforce.
- The transition from GUT to electroweak is called spontaneous symmetry breaking. It released energy that caused the inflationary

scenario, which in turn explains the smoothness of the CMBR.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why it only *appears* that we are at the center of expansion of the universe and why an observer in another galaxy would see the same relative motion of all but the closest galaxies away from her.

Exercise:

Problem:

If there is no observable edge to the universe, can we determine where its center of expansion is? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem: If the universe is infinite, does it have a center? Discuss.

Exercise:

Problem:

Another known cause of red shift in light is the source being in a high gravitational field. Discuss how this can be eliminated as the source of galactic red shifts, given that the shifts are proportional to distance and not to the size of the galaxy.

Exercise:

Problem:

If some unknown cause of red shift—such as light becoming “tired” from traveling long distances through empty space—is discovered, what effect would there be on cosmology?

Exercise:

Problem:

Olbers’s paradox poses an interesting question: If the universe is infinite, then any line of sight should eventually fall on a star’s surface. Why then is the sky dark at night? Discuss the commonly accepted evolution of the universe as a solution to this paradox.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the cosmic microwave background radiation (CMBR) is the remnant of the Big Bang’s fireball, we expect to see hot and cold regions in it. What are two causes of these wrinkles in the CMBR? Are the observed temperature variations greater or less than originally expected?

Exercise:

Problem:

The decay of one type of K-meson is cited as evidence that nature favors matter over antimatter. Since mesons are composed of a quark and an antiquark, is it surprising that they would preferentially decay to one type over another? Is this an asymmetry in nature? Is the predominance of matter over antimatter an asymmetry?

Exercise:

Problem:

Distances to local galaxies are determined by measuring the brightness of stars, called Cepheid variables, that can be observed individually and that have absolute brightnesses at a standard distance that are well known. Explain how the measured brightness would vary with distance as compared with the absolute brightness.

Exercise:

Problem:

Distances to very remote galaxies are estimated based on their apparent type, which indicate the number of stars in the galaxy, and their measured brightness. Explain how the measured brightness would vary with distance. Would there be any correction necessary to compensate for the red shift of the galaxy (all distant galaxies have significant red shifts)? Discuss possible causes of uncertainties in these measurements.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the smallest meaningful time interval is greater than zero, will the lines in [link] ever meet?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the approximate mass of the luminous matter in the Milky Way galaxy, given it has approximately 10^{11} stars of average mass 1.5 times that of our Sun.

Solution:

3×10^{41} kg

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the approximate mass of the dark and luminous matter in the Milky Way galaxy. Assume the luminous matter is due to approximately 10^{11} stars of average mass 1.5 times that of our Sun, and take the dark matter to be 10 times as massive as the luminous matter.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Estimate the mass of the luminous matter in the known universe, given there are 10^{11} galaxies, each containing 10^{11} stars of average mass 1.5 times that of our Sun. (b) How many protons (the most abundant nuclide) are there in this mass? (c) Estimate the total number of particles in the observable universe by multiplying the answer to (b) by two, since there is an electron for each proton, and then by 10^{9}, since there are far more particles (such as photons and neutrinos) in space than in luminous matter.

Solution:

(a) 3×10^{52} kg

(b) 2×10^{79}

(c) 4×10^{88}

Exercise:

Problem:

If a galaxy is 500 Mly away from us, how fast do we expect it to be moving and in what direction?

Exercise:

Problem:

On average, how far away are galaxies that are moving away from us at 2.0% of the speed of light?

Solution:

0.30 Gly

Exercise:

Problem:

Our solar system orbits the center of the Milky Way galaxy. Assuming a circular orbit 30,000 ly in radius and an orbital speed of 250 km/s, how many years does it take for one revolution? Note that this is approximate, assuming constant speed and circular orbit, but it is representative of the time for our system and local stars to make one revolution around the galaxy.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the approximate speed relative to us of a galaxy near the edge of the known universe, some 10 Gly away? (b) What fraction of the speed of light is this? Note that we have observed galaxies moving away from us at greater than $0.9c$.

Solution:

(a) $2.0 \times 10^5 \text{ km/s}$

(b) $0.67c$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the approximate age of the universe from the average value of the Hubble constant, $H_0 = 20 \text{ km/s}$ ·Mly. To do this, calculate the time it would take to travel 1 Mly at a constant expansion rate of 20 km/s. (b) If deceleration is taken into account, would the actual age of the universe be greater or less than that found here? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Assuming a circular orbit for the Sun about the center of the Milky Way galaxy, calculate its orbital speed using the following information: The mass of the galaxy is equivalent to a single mass 1.5×10^{11} times that of the Sun (or 3×10^{41} kg), located 30,000 ly away.

Solution:

$2.7 \times 10^{5} \text{ m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the approximate force of gravity on a 70-kg person due to the Andromeda galaxy, assuming its total mass is 10^{13} that of our Sun and acts like a single mass 2 Mly away? (b) What is the ratio of this force to the person's weight? Note that Andromeda is the closest large galaxy.

Exercise:

Problem:

Andromeda galaxy is the closest large galaxy and is visible to the naked eye. Estimate its brightness relative to the Sun, assuming it has luminosity 10^{12} times that of the Sun and lies 2 Mly away.

Solution:

6×10^{-11} (an overestimate, since some of the light from Andromeda is blocked by gas and dust within that galaxy)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A particle and its antiparticle are at rest relative to an observer and annihilate (completely destroying both masses), creating two γ rays of equal energy. What is the characteristic γ-ray energy you would look for if searching for evidence of proton-antiproton annihilation? (The fact that such radiation is rarely observed is evidence that there is very little antimatter in the universe.) (b) How does this compare with the 0.511-MeV energy associated with electron-positron annihilation?

Exercise:

Problem:

The average particle energy needed to observe unification of forces is estimated to be 10^{19} GeV. (a) What is the rest mass in kilograms of a particle that has a rest mass of $10^{19}\ \text{GeV}/c^2$? (b) How many times the mass of a hydrogen atom is this?

Solution:

(a) 2×10^{-8} kg

(b) 1×10^{19}

Exercise:

Problem:

The peak intensity of the CMBR occurs at a wavelength of 1.1 mm. (a) What is the energy in eV of a 1.1-mm photon? (b) There are approximately 10^9 photons for each massive particle in deep space. Calculate the energy of 10^9 such photons. (c) If the average massive particle in space has a mass half that of a proton, what energy would be created by converting its mass to energy? (d) Does this imply that space is “matter dominated”? Explain briefly.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What Hubble constant corresponds to an approximate age of the universe of 10^{10} y? To get an approximate value, assume the expansion rate is constant and calculate the speed at which two galaxies must move apart to be separated by 1 Mly (present average galactic separation) in a time of 10^{10} y. (b) Similarly, what Hubble constant corresponds to a universe approximately 2×10^{10}-y old?

Solution:

(a) $30 \text{ km/s} \cdot \text{Mly}$

(b) $15 \text{ km/s} \cdot \text{Mly}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the velocity of a star orbiting its galaxy in a circular orbit is inversely proportional to the square root of its orbital radius, assuming the mass of the stars inside its orbit acts like a single mass at the center of the galaxy. You may use an equation from a previous chapter to support your conclusion, but you must justify its use and define all terms used.

Exercise:

Problem:

The core of a star collapses during a supernova, forming a neutron star. Angular momentum of the core is conserved, and so the neutron star spins rapidly. If the initial core radius is $5.0 \times 10^5\ \text{km}$ and it collapses to 10.0 km, find the neutron star's angular velocity in revolutions per second, given the core's angular velocity was originally 1 revolution per 30.0 days.

Solution:

960 rev/s

Exercise:

Problem:

Using data from the previous problem, find the increase in rotational kinetic energy, given the core's mass is 1.3 times that of our Sun. Where does this increase in kinetic energy come from?

Exercise:

Problem:

Distances to the nearest stars (up to 500 ly away) can be measured by a technique called parallax, as shown in [link]. What are the angles θ_1 and θ_2 relative to the plane of the Earth's orbit for a star 4.0 ly directly above the Sun?

Solution:

89.999773º (many digits are used to show the difference between 90º)

Exercise:

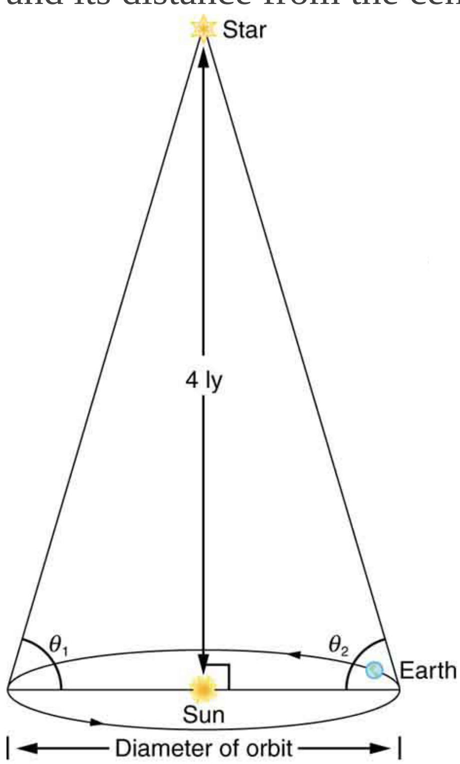
Problem:

(a) Use the Heisenberg uncertainty principle to calculate the uncertainty in energy for a corresponding time interval of 10^{-43} s. (b) Compare this energy with the 10^{19} GeV unification-of-forces energy and discuss why they are similar.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a star moving in a circular orbit at the edge of a galaxy. Construct a problem in which you calculate the mass of that galaxy in kg and in multiples of the solar mass based on the velocity of the star and its distance from the center of the galaxy.



Distances to nearby stars are measured using triangulation, also called the parallax method. The angle of

line of sight to the star is measured at intervals six months apart, and the distance is calculated by using the known diameter of the Earth's orbit. This can be done for stars up to about 500 ly away.

Glossary

Big Bang
: a gigantic explosion that threw out matter a few billion years ago

cosmic microwave background
: the spectrum of microwave radiation of cosmic origin

cosmological red shift
: the photon wavelength is stretched in transit from the source to the observer because of the expansion of space itself

cosmology
: the study of the character and evolution of the universe

electroweak epoch
: the stage before 10^{-11} back to 10^{-34} after the Big Bang

GUT epoch
: the time period from 10^{-43} to 10^{-34} after the Big Bang, when Grand Unification Theory, in which all forces except gravity are identical, governed the universe

Hubble constant

a central concept in cosmology whose value is determined by taking the slope of a graph of velocity versus distance, obtained from red shift measurements

inflationary scenario
: the rapid expansion of the universe by an incredible factor of 10^{-50} for the brief time from 10^{-35} to about 10^{-32}s

spontaneous symmetry breaking
: the transition from GUT to electroweak where the forces were no longer unified

superforce
: hypothetical unified force in TOE epoch

TOE epoch
: before 10^{-43} after the Big Bang

General Relativity and Quantum Gravity

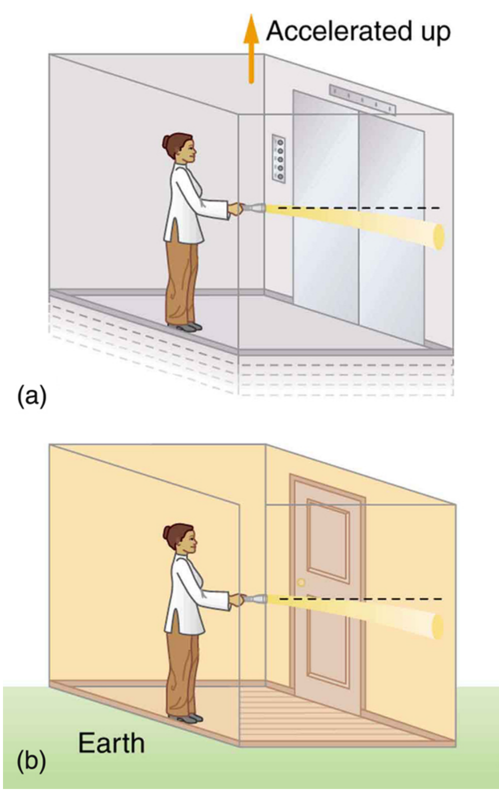
- Explain the effect of gravity on light.
- Discuss black hole.
- Explain quantum gravity.

When we talk of black holes or the unification of forces, we are actually discussing aspects of general relativity and quantum gravity. We know from Special Relativity that relativity is the study of how different observers measure the same event, particularly if they move relative to one another. Einstein's theory of **general relativity** describes all types of relative motion including accelerated motion and the effects of gravity. General relativity encompasses special relativity and classical relativity in situations where acceleration is zero and relative velocity is small compared with the speed of light. Many aspects of general relativity have been verified experimentally, some of which are better than science fiction in that they are bizarre but true. **Quantum gravity** is the theory that deals with particle exchange of gravitons as the mechanism for the force, and with extreme conditions where quantum mechanics and general relativity must both be used. A good theory of quantum gravity does not yet exist, but one will be needed to understand how all four forces may be unified. If we are successful, the theory of quantum gravity will encompass all others, from classical physics to relativity to quantum mechanics—truly a Theory of Everything (TOE).

General Relativity

Einstein first considered the case of no observer acceleration when he developed the revolutionary special theory of relativity, publishing his first work on it in 1905. By 1916, he had laid the foundation of general relativity, again almost on his own. Much of what Einstein did to develop his ideas was to mentally analyze certain carefully and clearly defined situations—doing this is to perform a **thought experiment**. [link] illustrates a thought experiment like the ones that convinced Einstein that light must fall in a gravitational field. Think about what a person feels in an elevator that is accelerated upward. It is identical to being in a stationary elevator in a gravitational field. The feet of a person are pressed against the floor, and

objects released from hand fall with identical accelerations. In fact, it is not possible, without looking outside, to know what is happening—acceleration upward or gravity. This led Einstein to correctly postulate that acceleration and gravity will produce identical effects in all situations. So, if acceleration affects light, then gravity will, too. [link] shows the effect of acceleration on a beam of light shone horizontally at one wall. Since the accelerated elevator moves up during the time light travels across the elevator, the beam of light strikes low, seeming to the person to bend down. (Normally a tiny effect, since the speed of light is so great.) The same effect must occur due to gravity, Einstein reasoned, since there is no way to tell the effects of gravity acting downward from acceleration of the elevator upward. Thus gravity affects the path of light, even though we think of gravity as acting between masses and photons are massless.



(a) A beam of light emerges from a flashlight in an upward-accelerating

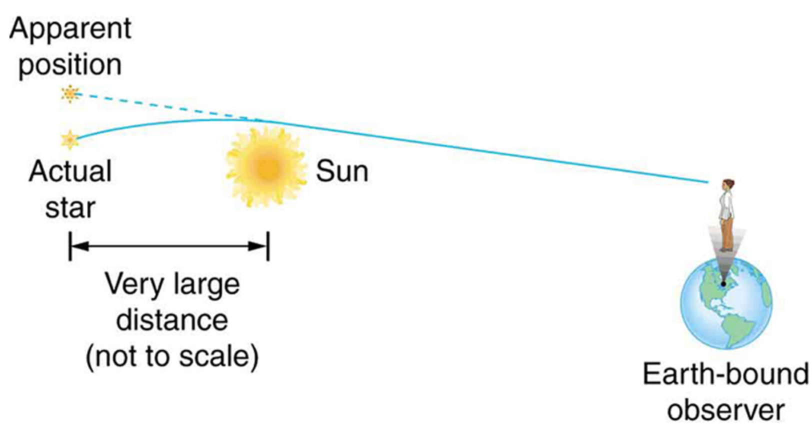
elevator. Since the elevator moves up during the time the light takes to reach the wall, the beam strikes lower than it would if the elevator were not accelerated. (b) Gravity has the same effect on light, since it is not possible to tell whether the elevator is accelerating upward or acted upon by gravity.

Einstein’s theory of general relativity got its first verification in 1919 when starlight passing near the Sun was observed during a solar eclipse. (See [link].) During an eclipse, the sky is darkened and we can briefly see stars. Those in a line of sight nearest the Sun should have a shift in their apparent positions. Not only was this shift observed, but it agreed with Einstein’s predictions well within experimental uncertainties. This discovery created a scientific and public sensation. Einstein was now a folk hero as well as a very great scientist. The bending of light by matter is equivalent to a bending of space itself, with light following the curve. This is another radical change in our concept of space and time. It is also another connection that any particle with mass or energy (massless photons) is affected by gravity.

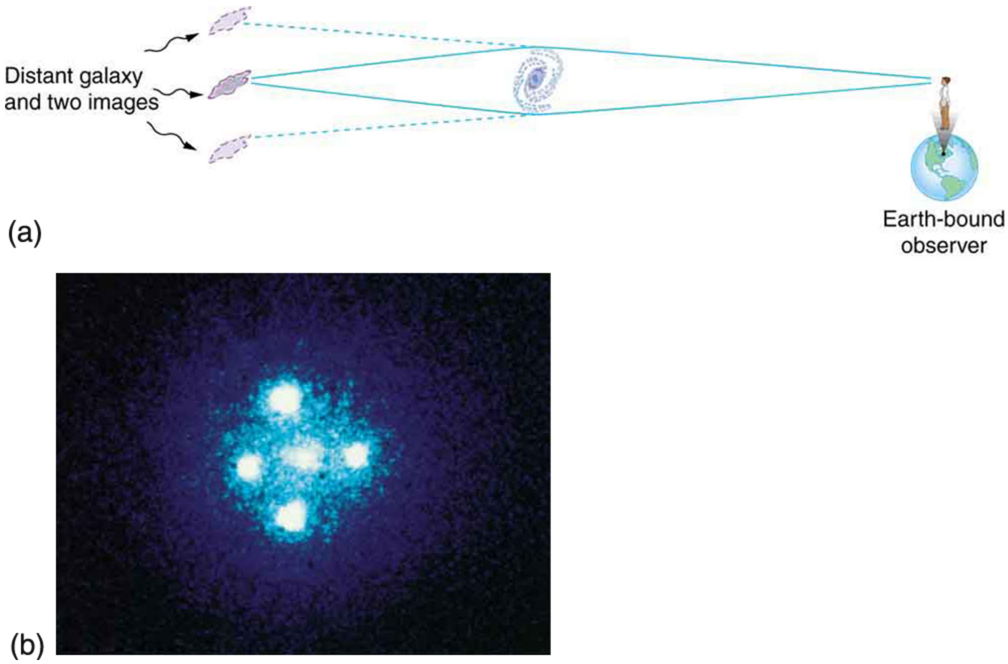
There are several current forefront efforts related to general relativity. One is the observation and analysis of gravitational lensing of light. Another is analysis of the definitive proof of the existence of black holes. Direct observation of gravitational waves or moving wrinkles in space is being searched for. Theoretical efforts are also being aimed at the possibility of time travel and wormholes into other parts of space due to black holes.

Gravitational lensing

As you can see in [link], light is bent toward a mass, producing an effect much like a converging lens (large masses are needed to produce observable effects). On a galactic scale, the light from a distant galaxy could be “lensed” into several images when passing close by another galaxy on its way to Earth. Einstein predicted this effect, but he considered it unlikely that we would ever observe it. A number of cases of this effect have now been observed; one is shown in [link]. This effect is a much larger scale verification of general relativity. But such gravitational lensing is also useful in verifying that the red shift is proportional to distance. The red shift of the intervening galaxy is always less than that of the one being lensed, and each image of the lensed galaxy has the same red shift. This verification supplies more evidence that red shift is proportional to distance. Confidence that the multiple images are not different objects is bolstered by the observations that if one image varies in brightness over time, the others also vary in the same manner.



This schematic shows how light passing near a massive body like the Sun is curved toward it. The light that reaches the Earth then seems to be coming from different locations than the known positions of the originating stars. Not only was this effect observed, the amount of bending was precisely what Einstein predicted in his general theory of relativity.



(a) Light from a distant galaxy can travel different paths to the Earth because it is bent around an intermediary galaxy by gravity. This produces several images of the more distant galaxy. (b) The images around the central galaxy are produced by gravitational lensing. Each image has the same spectrum and a larger red shift than the intermediary. (credit: NASA, ESA, and STScI)

Black holes

Black holes are objects having such large gravitational fields that things can fall in, but nothing, not even light, can escape. Bodies, like the Earth or the Sun, have what is called an **escape velocity**. If an object moves straight up from the body, starting at the escape velocity, it will just be able to escape the gravity of the body. The greater the acceleration of gravity on the body, the greater is the escape velocity. As long ago as the late 1700s, it was proposed that if the escape velocity is greater than the speed of light, then

light cannot escape. Simon Laplace (1749–1827), the French astronomer and mathematician, even incorporated this idea of a dark star into his writings. But the idea was dropped after Young's double slit experiment showed light to be a wave. For some time, light was thought not to have particle characteristics and, thus, could not be acted upon by gravity. The idea of a black hole was very quickly reincarnated in 1916 after Einstein's theory of general relativity was published. It is now thought that black holes can form in the supernova collapse of a massive star, forming an object perhaps 10 km across and having a mass greater than that of our Sun. It is interesting that several prominent physicists who worked on the concept, including Einstein, firmly believed that nature would find a way to prohibit such objects.

Black holes are difficult to observe directly, because they are small and no light comes directly from them. In fact, no light comes from inside the **event horizon**, which is defined to be at a distance from the object at which the escape velocity is exactly the speed of light. The radius of the event horizon is known as the **Schwarzschild radius** R_{S} and is given by
Equation:

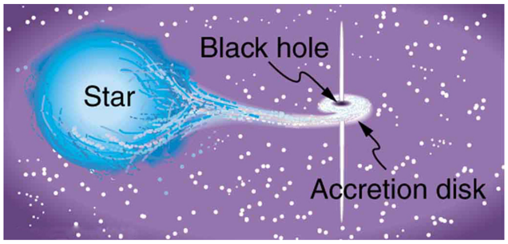
$$R_{\text{S}}=\frac{2\text{GM}}{c^2},$$

where G is the universal gravitational constant, M is the mass of the body, and c is the speed of light. The event horizon is the edge of the black hole and R_{S} is its radius (that is, the size of a black hole is twice R_{S}). Since G is small and c^2 is large, you can see that black holes are extremely small, only a few kilometers for masses a little greater than the Sun's. The object itself is inside the event horizon.

Physics near a black hole is fascinating. Gravity increases so rapidly that, as you approach a black hole, the tidal effects tear matter apart, with matter closer to the hole being pulled in with much more force than that only slightly farther away. This can pull a companion star apart and heat inflowing gases to the point of producing X rays. (See [link].) We have observed X rays from certain binary star systems that are consistent with such a picture. This is not quite proof of black holes, because the X rays

could also be caused by matter falling onto a neutron star. These objects were first discovered in 1967 by the British astrophysicists, Jocelyn Bell and Anthony Hewish. **Neutron stars** are literally a star composed of neutrons. They are formed by the collapse of a star's core in a supernova, during which electrons and protons are forced together to form neutrons (the reverse of neutron β decay). Neutron stars are slightly larger than a black hole of the same mass and will not collapse further because of resistance by the strong force. However, neutron stars cannot have a mass greater than about eight solar masses or they must collapse to a black hole. With recent improvements in our ability to resolve small details, such as with the orbiting Chandra X-ray Observatory, it has become possible to measure the masses of X-ray-emitting objects by observing the motion of companion stars and other matter in their vicinity. What has emerged is a plethora of X-ray-emitting objects too massive to be neutron stars. This evidence is considered conclusive and the existence of black holes is widely accepted. These black holes are concentrated near galactic centers.

We also have evidence that supermassive black holes may exist at the cores of many galaxies, including the Milky Way. Such a black hole might have a mass millions or even billions of times that of the Sun, and it would probably have formed when matter first coalesced into a galaxy billions of years ago. Supporting this is the fact that very distant galaxies are more likely to have abnormally energetic cores. Some of the moderately distant galaxies, and hence among the younger, are known as **quasars** and emit as much or more energy than a normal galaxy but from a region less than a light year across. Quasar energy outputs may vary in times less than a year, so that the energy-emitting region must be less than a light year across. The best explanation of quasars is that they are young galaxies with a supermassive black hole forming at their core, and that they become less energetic over billions of years. In closer superactive galaxies, we observe tremendous amounts of energy being emitted from very small regions of space, consistent with stars falling into a black hole at the rate of one or more a month. The Hubble Space Telescope (1994) observed an accretion disk in the galaxy M87 rotating rapidly around a region of extreme energy emission. (See [link].) A jet of material being ejected perpendicular to the plane of rotation gives further evidence of a supermassive black hole as the engine.



A black hole is shown pulling matter away from a companion star, forming a superheated accretion disk where X rays are emitted before the matter disappears forever into the hole. The in-fall energy also ejects some material, forming the two vertical spikes. (See also the photograph in Introduction to Frontiers of Physics.) There are several X-ray-emitting objects in space that are consistent with this picture and are likely to be black holes.

Gravitational waves

If a massive object distorts the space around it, like the foot of a water bug on the surface of a pond, then movement of the massive object should create waves in space like those on a pond. **Gravitational waves** are mass-created distortions in space that propagate at the speed of light and are predicted by general relativity. Since gravity is by far the weakest force, extreme conditions are needed to generate significant gravitational waves. Gravity near binary neutron star systems is so great that significant gravitational wave energy is radiated as the two neutron stars orbit one

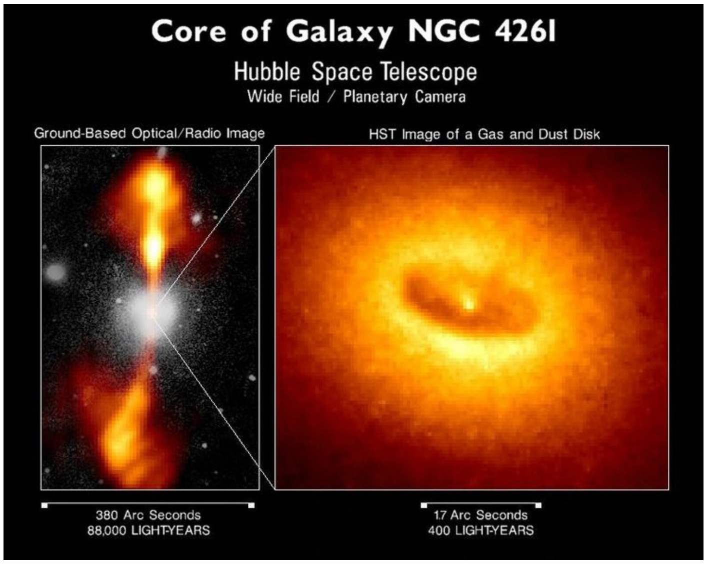
another. American astronomers, Joseph Taylor and Russell Hulse, measured changes in the orbit of such a binary neutron star system. They found its orbit to change precisely as predicted by general relativity, a strong indication of gravitational waves, and were awarded the 1993 Nobel Prize. But direct detection of gravitational waves on Earth would be conclusive. For many years, various attempts have been made to detect gravitational waves by observing vibrations induced in matter distorted by these waves. American physicist Joseph Weber pioneered this field in the 1960s, but no conclusive events have been observed. (No gravity wave detectors were in operation at the time of the 1987A supernova, unfortunately.) There are now several ambitious systems of gravitational wave detectors in use around the world. These include the LIGO (Laser Interferometer Gravitational Wave Observatory) system with two laser interferometer detectors, one in the state of Washington and another in Louisiana (See [link]) and the VIRGO (Variability of Irradiance and Gravitational Oscillations) facility in Italy with a single detector.

Quantum Gravity

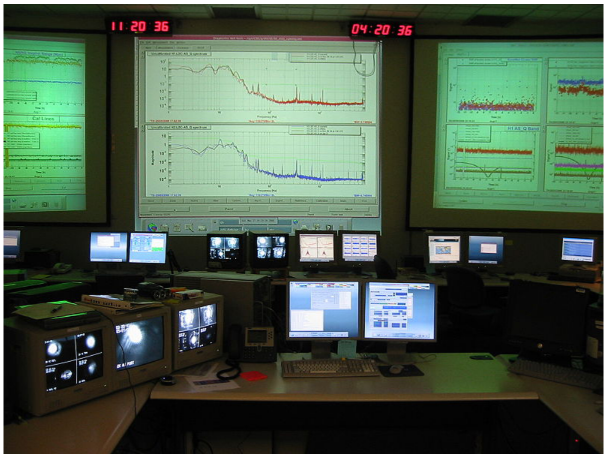
Black holes radiate

Quantum gravity is important in those situations where gravity is so extremely strong that it has effects on the quantum scale, where the other forces are ordinarily much stronger. The early universe was such a place, but black holes are another. The first significant connection between gravity and quantum effects was made by the Russian physicist Yakov Zel'dovich in 1971, and other significant advances followed from the British physicist Stephen Hawking. (See [link].) These two showed that black holes could radiate away energy by quantum effects just outside the event horizon (nothing can escape from inside the event horizon). Black holes are, thus, expected to radiate energy and shrink to nothing, although extremely slowly for most black holes. The mechanism is the creation of a particle-antiparticle pair from energy in the extremely strong gravitational field near the event horizon. One member of the pair falls into the hole and the other escapes, conserving momentum. (See [link].) When a black hole loses energy and, hence, rest mass, its event horizon shrinks, creating an even greater gravitational field. This increases the rate of pair production so that the process grows exponentially until the black hole is nuclear in size. A

final burst of particles and γ rays ensues. This is an extremely slow process for black holes about the mass of the Sun (produced by supernovas) or larger ones (like those thought to be at galactic centers), taking on the order of 10^{67} years or longer! Smaller black holes would evaporate faster, but they are only speculated to exist as remnants of the Big Bang. Searches for characteristic γ-ray bursts have produced events attributable to more mundane objects like neutron stars accreting matter.

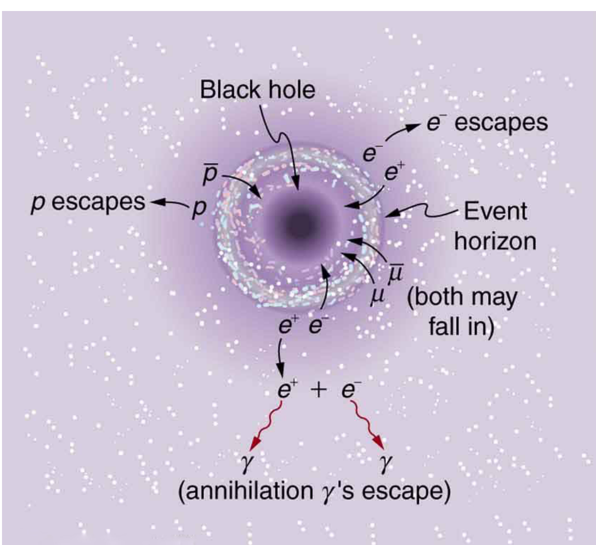


This Hubble Space Telescope photograph shows the extremely energetic core of the NGC 4261 galaxy. With the superior resolution of the orbiting telescope, it has been possible to observe the rotation of an accretion disk around the energy-producing object as well as to map jets of material being ejected from the object. A supermassive black hole is consistent with these observations, but other possibilities are not quite eliminated. (credit: NASA and ESA)



The control room of the LIGO gravitational wave detector. Gravitational waves will cause extremely small vibrations in a mass in this detector, which will be detected by laser interferometer techniques. Such detection in coincidence with other detectors and with astronomical events, such as supernovas, would provide direct evidence of gravitational waves. (credit: Tobin Fricke)

Stephen Hawking (b. 1942) has made many contributions to the theory of quantum gravity. Hawking is a long-time survivor of ALS and has produced popular books on general relativity, cosmology, and quantum gravity. (credit: Lwp Kommunikáció)



Gravity and quantum mechanics

come into play when a black hole creates a particle-antiparticle pair from the energy in its gravitational field. One member of the pair falls into the hole while the other escapes, removing energy and shrinking the black hole. The search is on for the characteristic energy.

Wormholes and time travel

The subject of time travel captures the imagination. Theoretical physicists, such as the American Kip Thorne, have treated the subject seriously, looking into the possibility that falling into a black hole could result in popping up in another time and place—a trip through a so-called wormhole. Time travel and wormholes appear in innumerable science fiction dramatizations, but the consensus is that time travel is not possible in theory. While still debated, it appears that quantum gravity effects inside a black hole prevent time travel due to the creation of particle pairs. Direct evidence is elusive.

The shortest time

Theoretical studies indicate that, at extremely high energies and correspondingly early in the universe, quantum fluctuations may make time intervals meaningful only down to some finite time limit. Early work indicated that this might be the case for times as long as 10^{-43} s, the time at which all forces were unified. If so, then it would be meaningless to consider the universe at times earlier than this. Subsequent studies indicate that the crucial time may be as short as 10^{-95} s. But the point remains—quantum gravity seems to imply that there is no such thing as a vanishingly short time. Time may, in fact, be grainy with no meaning to time intervals shorter than some tiny but finite size.

The future of quantum gravity

Not only is quantum gravity in its infancy, no one knows how to get started on a theory of gravitons and unification of forces. The energies at which TOE should be valid may be so high (at least 10^{19} GeV) and the necessary particle separation so small (less than 10^{-35} m) that only indirect evidence can provide clues. For some time, the common lament of theoretical physicists was one so familiar to struggling students—how do you even get started? But Hawking and others have made a start, and the approach many theorists have taken is called Superstring theory, the topic of the Superstrings.

Section Summary

- Einstein's theory of general relativity includes accelerated frames and, thus, encompasses special relativity and gravity. Created by use of careful thought experiments, it has been repeatedly verified by real experiments.
- One direct result of this behavior of nature is the gravitational lensing of light by massive objects, such as galaxies, also seen in the microlensing of light by smaller bodies in our galaxy.
- Another prediction is the existence of black holes, objects for which the escape velocity is greater than the speed of light and from which nothing can escape.
- The event horizon is the distance from the object at which the escape velocity equals the speed of light c. It is called the Schwarzschild radius R_S and is given by
  Equation:

  $$R_\text{S} = \frac{2\text{GM}}{c^2},$$

  where G is the universal gravitational constant, and M is the mass of the body.
- Physics is unknown inside the event horizon, and the possibility of wormholes and time travel are being studied.
- Candidates for black holes may power the extremely energetic emissions of quasars, distant objects that seem to be early stages of

galactic evolution.

- Neutron stars are stellar remnants, having the density of a nucleus, that hint that black holes could form from supernovas, too.
- Gravitational waves are wrinkles in space, predicted by general relativity but not yet observed, caused by changes in very massive objects.
- Quantum gravity is an incompletely developed theory that strives to include general relativity, quantum mechanics, and unification of forces (thus, a TOE).
- One unconfirmed connection between general relativity and quantum mechanics is the prediction of characteristic radiation from just outside black holes.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Quantum gravity, if developed, would be an improvement on both general relativity and quantum mechanics, but more mathematically difficult. Under what circumstances would it be necessary to use quantum gravity? Similarly, under what circumstances could general relativity be used? When could special relativity, quantum mechanics, or classical physics be used?

Exercise:

Problem:

Does observed gravitational lensing correspond to a converging or diverging lens? Explain briefly.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you measure the red shifts of all the images produced by gravitational lensing, such as in [link].You find that the central image has a red shift less than the outer images, and those all have the same red shift. Discuss how this not only shows that the images are of the same object, but also implies that the red shift is not affected by taking different paths through space. Does it imply that cosmological red shifts are not caused by traveling through space (light getting tired, perhaps)?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are gravitational waves, and have they yet been observed either directly or indirectly?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the event horizon of a black hole the actual physical surface of the object?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose black holes radiate their mass away and the lifetime of a black hole created by a supernova is about 10^{67} years. How does this lifetime compare with the accepted age of the universe? Is it surprising that we do not observe the predicted characteristic radiation?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the Schwarzschild radius of a black hole that has a mass eight times that of our Sun? Note that stars must be more massive than the Sun to form black holes as a result of a supernova.

Solution:

23.6 km

Exercise:

Problem:

Black holes with masses smaller than those formed in supernovas may have been created in the Big Bang. Calculate the radius of one that has a mass equal to the Earth's.

Exercise:

Problem:

Supermassive black holes are thought to exist at the center of many galaxies.

(a) What is the radius of such an object if it has a mass of 10^9 Suns?

(b) What is this radius in light years?

Solution:

(a) 2.95×10^{12} m

(b) 3.12×10^{-4} ly

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a supermassive black hole near the center of a galaxy. Calculate the radius of such an object based on its mass. You must consider how much mass is reasonable for these large objects, and which is now nearly directly observed. (Information on black holes posted on the Web by NASA and other agencies is reliable, for example.)

Glossary

black holes
: objects having such large gravitational fields that things can fall in, but nothing, not even light, can escape

general relativity
: Einstein's theory thatdescribes all types of relative motion including accelerated motion and the effects of gravity

gravitational waves
: mass-created distortions in space that propagate at the speed of light and that are predicted by general relativity

escape velocity
: takeoff velocity when kinetic energy just cancels gravitational potential energy

event horizon
: the distance from the object at which the escape velocity is exactly the speed of light

neutron stars
: literally a star composed of neutrons

Schwarzschild radius
: the radius of the event horizon

thought experiment

mental analysis of certain carefully and clearly defined situations to develop an idea

quasars
: the moderately distant galaxies that emit as much or more energy than a normal galaxy

Quantum gravity
: the theory that deals with particle exchange of gravitons as the mechanism for the force

Superstrings

- Define Superstring theory.
- Explain the relationship between Superstring theory and the Big Bang.

Introduced earlier in GUTS: The Unification of Forces **Superstring theory** is an attempt to unify gravity with the other three forces and, thus, must contain quantum gravity. The main tenet of Superstring theory is that fundamental particles, including the graviton that carries the gravitational force, act like one-dimensional vibrating strings. Since gravity affects the time and space in which all else exists, Superstring theory is an attempt at a Theory of Everything (TOE). Each independent quantum number is thought of as a separate dimension in some super space (analogous to the fact that the familiar dimensions of space are independent of one another) and is represented by a different type of Superstring. As the universe evolved after the Big Bang and forces became distinct (spontaneous symmetry breaking), some of the dimensions of superspace are imagined to have curled up and become unnoticed.

Forces are expected to be unified only at extremely high energies and at particle separations on the order of 10^{-35} m. This could mean that Superstrings must have dimensions or wavelengths of this size or smaller. Just as quantum gravity may imply that there are no time intervals shorter than some finite value, it also implies that there may be no sizes smaller than some tiny but finite value. That may be about 10^{-35} m. If so, and if Superstring theory can explain all it strives to, then the structures of Superstrings are at the lower limit of the smallest possible size and can have no further substructure. This would be the ultimate answer to the question the ancient Greeks considered. There is a finite lower limit to space.

Not only is Superstring theory in its infancy, it deals with dimensions about 17 orders of magnitude smaller than the 10^{-18} m details that we have been able to observe directly. It is thus relatively unconstrained by experiment, and there are a host of theoretical possibilities to choose from. This has led theorists to make choices subjectively (as always) on what is the most elegant theory, with less hope than usual that experiment will guide them. It has also led to speculation of alternate universes, with their Big Bangs

creating each new universe with a random set of rules. These speculations may not be tested even in principle, since an alternate universe is by definition unattainable. It is something like exploring a self-consistent field of mathematics, with its axioms and rules of logic that are not consistent with nature. Such endeavors have often given insight to mathematicians and scientists alike and occasionally have been directly related to the description of new discoveries.

Section Summary

- Superstring theory holds that fundamental particles are one-dimensional vibrations analogous to those on strings and is an attempt at a theory of quantum gravity.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The characteristic length of entities in Superstring theory is approximately 10^{-35} m.

(a) Find the energy in GeV of a photon of this wavelength.

(b) Compare this with the average particle energy of 10^{19} GeV needed for unification of forces.

Solution:

(a) 1×10^{20}

(b) 10 times greater

Glossary

Superstring theory

a theory to unify gravity with the other three forces in which the fundamental particles are considered to act like one-dimensional vibrating strings

Dark Matter and Closure

- Discuss the existence of dark matter.
- Explain neutrino oscillations and their consequences.

One of the most exciting problems in physics today is the fact that there is far more matter in the universe than we can see. The motion of stars in galaxies and the motion of galaxies in clusters imply that there is about 10 times as much mass as in the luminous objects we can see. The indirectly observed non-luminous matter is called **dark matter**. Why is dark matter a problem? For one thing, we do not know what it is. It may well be 90% of all matter in the universe, yet there is a possibility that it is of a completely unknown form—a stunning discovery if verified. Dark matter has implications for particle physics. It may be possible that neutrinos actually have small masses or that there are completely unknown types of particles. Dark matter also has implications for cosmology, since there may be enough dark matter to stop the expansion of the universe. That is another problem related to dark matter—we do not know how much there is. We keep finding evidence for more matter in the universe, and we have an idea of how much it would take to eventually stop the expansion of the universe, but whether there is enough is still unknown.

Evidence

The first clues that there is more matter than meets the eye came from the Swiss-born American astronomer Fritz Zwicky in the 1930s; some initial work was also done by the American astronomer Vera Rubin. Zwicky measured the velocities of stars orbiting the galaxy, using the relativistic Doppler shift of their spectra (see [link](a)). He found that velocity varied with distance from the center of the galaxy, as graphed in [link](b). If the mass of the galaxy was concentrated in its center, as are its luminous stars, the velocities should decrease as the square root of the distance from the center. Instead, the velocity curve is almost flat, implying that there is a tremendous amount of matter in the galactic halo. Although not immediately recognized for its significance, such measurements have now been made for many galaxies, with similar results. Further, studies of galactic clusters have also indicated that galaxies have a mass distribution

greater than that obtained from their brightness (proportional to the number of stars), which also extends into large halos surrounding the luminous parts of galaxies. Observations of other EM wavelengths, such as radio waves and X rays, have similarly confirmed the existence of dark matter. Take, for example, X rays in the relatively dark space between galaxies, which indicates the presence of previously unobserved hot, ionized gas (see [link] (c)).

Theoretical Yearnings for Closure

Is the universe open or closed? That is, will the universe expand forever or will it stop, perhaps to contract? This, until recently, was a question of whether there is enough gravitation to stop the expansion of the universe. In the past few years, it has become a question of the combination of gravitation and what is called the **cosmological constant**. The cosmological constant was invented by Einstein to prohibit the expansion or contraction of the universe. At the time he developed general relativity, Einstein considered that an illogical possibility. The cosmological constant was discarded after Hubble discovered the expansion, but has been re-invoked in recent years.

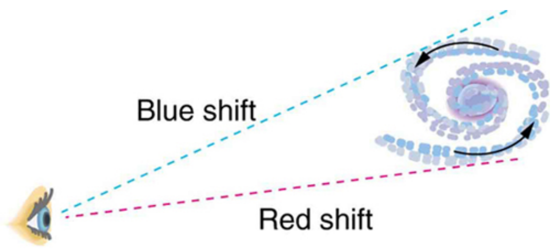
Gravitational attraction between galaxies is slowing the expansion of the universe, but the amount of slowing down is not known directly. In fact, the cosmological constant can counteract gravity's effect. As recent measurements indicate, the universe is expanding *faster* now than in the past—perhaps a "modern inflationary era" in which the dark energy is thought to be causing the expansion of the present-day universe to accelerate. If the expansion rate were affected by gravity alone, we should be able to see that the expansion rate between distant galaxies was once greater than it is now. However, measurements show it was *less* than now. We can, however, calculate the amount of slowing based on the average density of matter we observe directly. Here we have a definite answer—there is far less visible matter than needed to stop expansion. The **critical density** ρ_c is defined to be the density needed to just halt universal expansion in a universe with no cosmological constant. It is estimated to be about

Equation:

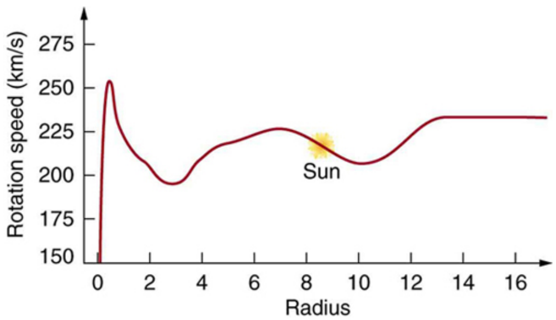
$$\rho_c \approx 10^{-26}\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}.$$

However, this estimate of ρ_c is only good to about a factor of two, due to uncertainties in the expansion rate of the universe. The critical density is equivalent to an average of only a few nucleons per cubic meter, remarkably small and indicative of how truly empty intergalactic space is. Luminous matter seems to account for roughly 0.5% to 2% of the critical density, far less than that needed for closure. Taking into account the amount of dark matter we detect indirectly and all other types of indirectly observed normal matter, there is only 10% to 40% of what is needed for closure. If we are able to refine the measurements of expansion rates now and in the past, we will have our answer regarding the curvature of space and we will determine a value for the cosmological constant to justify this observation. Finally, the most recent measurements of the CMBR have implications for the cosmological constant, so it is not simply a device concocted for a single purpose.

After the recent experimental discovery of the cosmological constant, most researchers feel that the universe should be just barely open. Since matter can be thought to curve the space around it, we call an open universe **negatively curved**. This means that you can in principle travel an unlimited distance in any direction. A universe that is closed is called **positively curved**. This means that if you travel far enough in any direction, you will return to your starting point, analogous to circumnavigating the Earth. In between these two is a **flat (zero curvature) universe**. The recent discovery of the cosmological constant has shown the universe is very close to flat, and will expand forever. Why do theorists feel the universe is flat? Flatness is a part of the inflationary scenario that helps explain the flatness of the microwave background. In fact, since general relativity implies that matter creates the space in which it exists, there is a special symmetry to a flat universe.



(a)



(b)

(c)

Evidence for dark matter: (a) We can measure the velocities of stars relative to their galaxies by observing the Doppler shift in emitted light, usually using the hydrogen spectrum. These measurements indicate the

rotation of a spiral galaxy. (b) A graph of velocity versus distance from the galactic center shows that the velocity does not decrease as it would if the matter were concentrated in luminous stars. The flatness of the curve implies a massive galactic halo of dark matter extending beyond the visible stars. (c) This is a computer-generated image of X rays from a galactic cluster. The X rays indicate the presence of otherwise unseen hot clouds of ionized gas in the regions of space previously considered more empty. (credit: NASA, ESA, CXC, M. Bradac (University of California, Santa Barbara), and S. Allen (Stanford University))

What Is the Dark Matter We See Indirectly?

There is no doubt that dark matter exists, but its form and the amount in existence are two facts that are still being studied vigorously. As always, we seek to explain new observations in terms of known principles. However, as more discoveries are made, it is becoming more and more difficult to explain dark matter as a known type of matter.

One of the possibilities for normal matter is being explored using the Hubble Space Telescope and employing the lensing effect of gravity on

light (see [link]). Stars glow because of nuclear fusion in them, but planets are visible primarily by reflected light. Jupiter, for example, is too small to ignite fusion in its core and become a star, but we can see sunlight reflected from it, since we are relatively close. If Jupiter orbited another star, we would not be able to see it directly. The question is open as to how many planets or other bodies smaller than about 1/1000 the mass of the Sun are there. If such bodies pass between us and a star, they will not block the star's light, being too small, but they will form a gravitational lens, as discussed in General Relativity and Quantum Gravity.

In a process called **microlensing**, light from the star is focused and the star appears to brighten in a characteristic manner. Searches for dark matter in this form are particularly interested in galactic halos because of the huge amount of mass that seems to be there. Such microlensing objects are thus called **massive compact halo objects**, or **MACHOs**. To date, a few MACHOs have been observed, but not predominantly in galactic halos, nor in the numbers needed to explain dark matter.

MACHOs are among the most conventional of unseen objects proposed to explain dark matter. Others being actively pursued are red dwarfs, which are small dim stars, but too few have been seen so far, even with the Hubble Telescope, to be of significance. Old remnants of stars called white dwarfs are also under consideration, since they contain about a solar mass, but are small as the Earth and may dim to the point that we ordinarily do not observe them. While white dwarfs are known, old dim ones are not. Yet another possibility is the existence of large numbers of smaller than stellar mass black holes left from the Big Bang—here evidence is entirely absent.

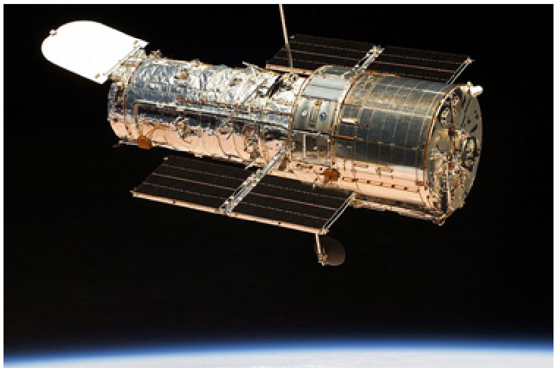
There is a very real possibility that dark matter is composed of the known neutrinos, which may have small, but finite, masses. As discussed earlier, neutrinos are thought to be massless, but we only have upper limits on their masses, rather than knowing they are exactly zero. So far, these upper limits come from difficult measurements of total energy emitted in the decays and reactions in which neutrinos are involved. There is an amusing possibility of proving that neutrinos have mass in a completely different way.

We have noted in Particles, Patterns, and Conservation Laws that there are three flavors of neutrinos (ν_e, v_μ, and v_τ) and that the weak interaction could change quark flavor. It should also change neutrino flavor—that is, any type of neutrino could change spontaneously into any other, a process called **neutrino oscillations**. However, this can occur only if neutrinos have a mass. Why? Crudely, because if neutrinos are massless, they must travel at the speed of light and time will not pass for them, so that they cannot change without an interaction. In 1999, results began to be published containing convincing evidence that neutrino oscillations do occur. Using the Super-Kamiokande detector in Japan, the oscillations have been observed and are being verified and further explored at present at the same facility and others.

Neutrino oscillations may also explain the low number of observed solar neutrinos. Detectors for observing solar neutrinos are specifically designed to detect electron neutrinos ν_e produced in huge numbers by fusion in the Sun. A large fraction of electron neutrinos ν_e may be changing flavor to muon neutrinos v_μ on their way out of the Sun, possibly enhanced by specific interactions, reducing the flux of electron neutrinos to observed levels. There is also a discrepancy in observations of neutrinos produced in cosmic ray showers. While these showers of radiation produced by extremely energetic cosmic rays should contain twice as many v_μ s as ν_e s, their numbers are nearly equal. This may be explained by neutrino oscillations from muon flavor to electron flavor. Massive neutrinos are a particularly appealing possibility for explaining dark matter, since their existence is consistent with a large body of known information and explains more than dark matter. The question is not settled at this writing.

The most radical proposal to explain dark matter is that it consists of previously unknown leptons (sometimes obtusely referred to as non-baryonic matter). These are called **weakly interacting massive particles**, or **WIMPs**, and would also be chargeless, thus interacting negligibly with normal matter, except through gravitation. One proposed group of WIMPs would have masses several orders of magnitude greater than nucleons and are sometimes called **neutralinos**. Others are called **axions** and would have masses about 10^{-10} that of an electron mass. Both neutralinos and axions would be gravitationally attached to galaxies, but because they are

chargeless and only feel the weak force, they would be in a halo rather than interact and coalesce into spirals, and so on, like normal matter (see [link]).



The Hubble Space Telescope is producing exciting data with its corrected optics and with the absence of atmospheric distortion. It has observed some MACHOs, disks of material around stars thought to precede planet formation, black hole candidates, and collisions of comets with Jupiter. (credit: NASA (crew of STS-125))

Dark matter may shepherd normal matter gravitationally in space, as this stream moves the leaves. Dark matter may be invisible and even move through the normal matter, as neutrinos penetrate us without small-scale effect. (credit: Shinichi Sugiyama)

Some particle theorists have built WIMPs into their unified force theories and into the inflationary scenario of the evolution of the universe so popular today. These particles would have been produced in just the correct numbers to make the universe flat, shortly after the Big Bang. The proposal is radical in the sense that it invokes entirely new forms of matter, in fact *two* entirely new forms, in order to explain dark matter and other phenomena. WIMPs have the extra burden of automatically being very difficult to observe directly. This is somewhat analogous to quark confinement, which guarantees that quarks are there, but they can never be seen directly. One of the primary goals of the LHC at CERN, however, is to produce and detect WIMPs. At any rate, before WIMPs are accepted as the best explanation, all other possibilities utilizing known phenomena will have to be shown inferior. Should that occur, we will be in the unanticipated position of admitting that, to date, all we know is only 10% of what exists.

A far cry from the days when people firmly believed themselves to be not only the center of the universe, but also the reason for its existence.

Section Summary

- Dark matter is non-luminous matter detected in and around galaxies and galactic clusters.
- It may be 10 times the mass of the luminous matter in the universe, and its amount may determine whether the universe is open or closed (expands forever or eventually stops).
- The determining factor is the critical density of the universe and the cosmological constant, a theoretical construct intimately related to the expansion and closure of the universe.
- The critical density ρ_c is the density needed to just halt universal expansion. It is estimated to be approximately 10^{-26} kg/m^3.
- An open universe is negatively curved, a closed universe is positively curved, whereas a universe with exactly the critical density is flat.
- Dark matter's composition is a major mystery, but it may be due to the suspected mass of neutrinos or a completely unknown type of leptonic matter.
- If neutrinos have mass, they will change families, a process known as neutrino oscillations, for which there is growing evidence.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss the possibility that star velocities at the edges of galaxies being greater than expected is due to unknown properties of gravity rather than to the existence of dark matter. Would this mean, for example, that gravity is greater or smaller than expected at large distances? Are there other tests that could be made of gravity at large distances, such as observing the motions of neighboring galaxies?

Exercise:

Problem:

How does relativistic time dilation prohibit neutrino oscillations if they are massless?

Exercise:

Problem:

If neutrino oscillations do occur, will they violate conservation of the various lepton family numbers (L_e, L_μ, and L_τ)? Will neutrino oscillations violate conservation of the total number of leptons?

Exercise:

Problem:

Lacking direct evidence of WIMPs as dark matter, why must we eliminate all other possible explanations based on the known forms of matter before we invoke their existence?

Problems Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

If the dark matter in the Milky Way were composed entirely of MACHOs (evidence shows it is not), approximately how many would there have to be? Assume the average mass of a MACHO is 1/1000 that of the Sun, and that dark matter has a mass 10 times that of the luminous Milky Way galaxy with its 10^{11} stars of average mass 1.5 times the Sun's mass.

Solution:
Equation:

$$1.5 \times 10^{15}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

The critical mass density needed to just halt the expansion of the universe is approximately $10^{-26}\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$.

(a) Convert this to $\mathrm{eV}/c^2 \cdot \mathrm{m}^3$.

(b) Find the number of neutrinos per cubic meter needed to close the universe if their average mass is $7\ \mathrm{eV}/c^2$ and they have negligible kinetic energies.

Exercise:

Problem:

Assume the average density of the universe is 0.1 of the critical density needed for closure. What is the average number of protons per cubic meter, assuming the universe is composed mostly of hydrogen?

Solution:
Equation:

$$0.6\ \mathrm{m}^{-3}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

To get an idea of how empty deep space is on the average, perform the following calculations:

(a) Find the volume our Sun would occupy if it had an average density equal to the critical density of $10^{-26}\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$ thought necessary to halt the expansion of the universe.

(b) Find the radius of a sphere of this volume in light years.

(c) What would this radius be if the density were that of luminous matter, which is approximately 5% that of the critical density?

(d) Compare the radius found in part (c) with the 4-ly average separation of stars in the arms of the Milky Way.

Glossary

axions
: a type of WIMPs having masses about 10^{-10} of an electron mass

cosmological constant
: a theoretical construct intimately related to the expansion and closure of the universe

critical density
: the density of matter needed to just halt universal expansion

dark matter
: indirectly observed non-luminous matter

flat (zero curvature) universe
: a universe that is infinite but not curved

microlensing
: a process in which light from a distant star is focused and the star appears to brighten in a characteristic manner, when a small body (smaller than about 1/1000 the mass of the Sun) passes between us and the star

MACHOs
: massive compact halo objects; microlensing objects of huge mass

neutrino oscillations
: a process in which any type of neutrino could change spontaneously into any other

neutralinos

a type of WIMPs having masses several orders of magnitude greater than nucleon masses

negatively curved

an open universe that expands forever

positively curved

a universe that is closed and eventually contracts

WIMPs

weakly interacting massive particles; chargeless leptons (non-baryonic matter) interacting negligibly with normal matter

Complexity and Chaos

- Explain complex systems.
- Discuss chaotic behavior of different systems.

Much of what impresses us about physics is related to the underlying connections and basic simplicity of the laws we have discovered. The language of physics is precise and well defined because many basic systems we study are simple enough that we can perform controlled experiments and discover unambiguous relationships. Our most spectacular successes, such as the prediction of previously unobserved particles, come from the simple underlying patterns we have been able to recognize. But there are systems of interest to physicists that are inherently complex. The simple laws of physics apply, of course, but complex systems may reveal patterns that simple systems do not. The emerging field of **complexity** is devoted to the study of complex systems, including those outside the traditional bounds of physics. Of particular interest is the ability of complex systems to adapt and evolve.

What are some examples of complex adaptive systems? One is the primordial ocean. When the oceans first formed, they were a random mix of elements and compounds that obeyed the laws of physics and chemistry. In a relatively short geological time (about 500 million years), life had emerged. Laboratory simulations indicate that the emergence of life was far too fast to have come from random combinations of compounds, even if driven by lightning and heat. There must be an underlying ability of the complex system to organize itself, resulting in the self-replication we recognize as life. Living entities, even at the unicellular level, are highly organized and systematic. Systems of living organisms are themselves complex adaptive systems. The grandest of these evolved into the biological system we have today, leaving traces in the geological record of steps taken along the way.

Complexity as a discipline examines complex systems, how they adapt and evolve, looking for similarities with other complex adaptive systems. Can, for example, parallels be drawn between biological evolution and the evolution of *economic systems*? Economic systems do emerge quickly, they show tendencies for self-organization, they are complex (in the number and

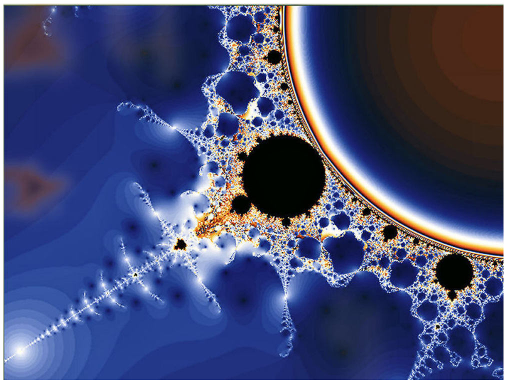
types of transactions), and they adapt and evolve. Biological systems do all the same types of things. There are other examples of complex adaptive systems being studied for fundamental similarities. *Cultures* show signs of adaptation and evolution. The comparison of different cultural evolutions may bear fruit as well as comparisons to biological evolution. *Science* also is a complex system of human interactions, like culture and economics, that adapts to new information and political pressure, and evolves, usually becoming more organized rather than less. Those who study *creative thinking* also see parallels with complex systems. Humans sometimes organize almost random pieces of information, often subconsciously while doing other things, and come up with brilliant creative insights. The development of *language* is another complex adaptive system that may show similar tendencies. *Artificial intelligence* is an overt attempt to devise an adaptive system that will self-organize and evolve in the same manner as an intelligent living being learns. These are a few of the broad range of topics being studied by those who investigate complexity. There are now institutes, journals, and meetings, as well as popularizations of the emerging topic of complexity.

In traditional physics, the discipline of complexity may yield insights in certain areas. Thermodynamics treats systems on the average, while statistical mechanics deals in some detail with complex systems of atoms and molecules in random thermal motion. Yet there is organization, adaptation, and evolution in those complex systems. Non-equilibrium phenomena, such as heat transfer and phase changes, are characteristically complex in detail, and new approaches to them may evolve from complexity as a discipline. Crystal growth is another example of self-organization spontaneously emerging in a complex system. Alloys are also inherently complex mixtures that show certain simple characteristics implying some self-organization. The organization of iron atoms into magnetic domains as they cool is another. Perhaps insights into these difficult areas will emerge from complexity. But at the minimum, the discipline of complexity is another example of human effort to understand and organize the universe around us, partly rooted in the discipline of physics.

A predecessor to complexity is the topic of chaos, which has been widely publicized and has become a discipline of its own. It is also based partly in physics and treats broad classes of phenomena from many disciplines. **Chaos** is a word used to describe systems whose outcomes are extremely sensitive to initial conditions. The orbit of the planet Pluto, for example, may be chaotic in that it can change tremendously due to small interactions with other planets. This makes its long-term behavior impossible to predict with precision, just as we cannot tell precisely where a decaying Earth satellite will land or how many pieces it will break into. But the discipline of chaos has found ways to deal with such systems and has been applied to apparently unrelated systems. For example, the heartbeat of people with certain types of potentially lethal arrhythmias seems to be chaotic, and this knowledge may allow more sophisticated monitoring and recognition of the need for intervention.

Chaos is related to complexity. Some chaotic systems are also inherently complex; for example, vortices in a fluid as opposed to a double pendulum. Both are chaotic and not predictable in the same sense as other systems. But there can be organization in chaos and it can also be quantified. Examples of chaotic systems are beautiful fractal patterns such as in [link]. Some chaotic systems exhibit self-organization, a type of stable chaos. The orbits of the planets in our solar system, for example, may be chaotic (we are not certain yet). But they are definitely organized and systematic, with a simple formula describing the orbital radii of the first eight planets *and* the asteroid belt. Large-scale vortices in Jupiter's atmosphere are chaotic, but the Great Red Spot is a stable self-organization of rotational energy. (See [link].) The Great Red Spot has been in existence for at least 400 years and is a complex self-adaptive system.

The emerging field of complexity, like the now almost traditional field of chaos, is partly rooted in physics. Both attempt to see similar systematics in a very broad range of phenomena and, hence, generate a better understanding of them. Time will tell what impact these fields have on more traditional areas of physics as well as on the other disciplines they relate to.



This image is related to the Mandelbrot set, a complex mathematical form that is chaotic. The patterns are infinitely fine as you look closer and closer, and they indicate order in the presence of chaos. (credit: Gilberto Santa Rosa)

The Great Red Spot on Jupiter is an example of self-organization in a complex and chaotic system. Smaller vortices in Jupiter's atmosphere

behave chaotically, but the triple-Earth-size spot is self-organized and stable for at least hundreds of years. (credit: NASA)

Section Summary

- Complexity is an emerging field, rooted primarily in physics, that considers complex adaptive systems and their evolution, including self-organization.
- Complexity has applications in physics and many other disciplines, such as biological evolution.
- Chaos is a field that studies systems whose properties depend extremely sensitively on some variables and whose evolution is impossible to predict.
- Chaotic systems may be simple or complex.
- Studies of chaos have led to methods for understanding and predicting certain chaotic behaviors.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Must a complex system be adaptive to be of interest in the field of complexity? Give an example to support your answer.

Exercise:

Problem: State a necessary condition for a system to be chaotic.

Glossary

complexity
: an emerging field devoted to the study of complex systems

chaos
: word used to describe systems the outcomes of which are extremely sensitive to initial conditions

High-temperature Superconductors

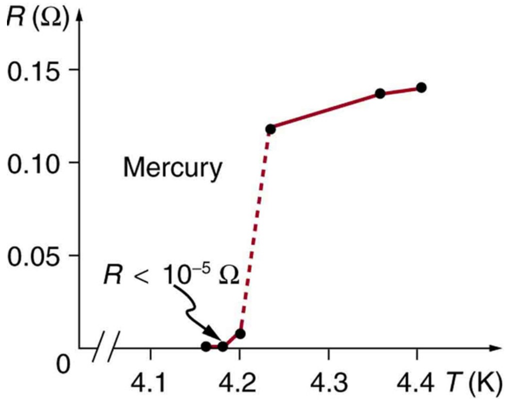
- Identify superconductors and their uses.
- Discuss the need for a high-T_c superconductor.

Superconductors are materials with a resistivity of zero. They are familiar to the general public because of their practical applications and have been mentioned at a number of points in the text. Because the resistance of a piece of superconductor is zero, there are no heat losses for currents through them; they are used in magnets needing high currents, such as in MRI machines, and could cut energy losses in power transmission. But most superconductors must be cooled to temperatures only a few kelvin above absolute zero, a costly procedure limiting their practical applications. In the past decade, tremendous advances have been made in producing materials that become superconductors at relatively high temperatures. There is hope that room temperature superconductors may someday be manufactured.

Superconductivity was discovered accidentally in 1911 by the Dutch physicist H. Kamerlingh Onnes (1853–1926) when he used liquid helium to cool mercury. Onnes had been the first person to liquefy helium a few years earlier and was surprised to observe the resistivity of a mediocre conductor like mercury drop to zero at a temperature of 4.2 K. We define the temperature at which and below which a material becomes a superconductor to be its **critical temperature**, denoted by T_c. (See [link].) Progress in understanding how and why a material became a superconductor was relatively slow, with the first workable theory coming in 1957. Certain other elements were also found to become superconductors, but all had T_c s less than 10 K, which are expensive to maintain. Although Onnes received a Nobel prize in 1913, it was primarily for his work with liquid helium.

In 1986, a breakthrough was announced—a ceramic compound was found to have an unprecedented T_c of 35 K. It looked as if much higher critical temperatures could be possible, and by early 1988 another ceramic (this of thallium, calcium, barium, copper, and oxygen) had been found to have $T_c = 125\text{ K}$ (see [link].) The economic potential of perfect conductors saving electric energy is immense for T_c s above 77 K, since that is the temperature of liquid nitrogen. Although liquid helium has a boiling point

of 4 K and can be used to make materials superconducting, it costs about $5 per liter. Liquid nitrogen boils at 77 K, but only costs about $0.30 per liter. There was general euphoria at the discovery of these complex ceramic superconductors, but this soon subsided with the sobering difficulty of forming them into usable wires. The first commercial use of a high temperature superconductor is in an electronic filter for cellular phones. High-temperature superconductors are used in experimental apparatus, and they are actively being researched, particularly in thin film applications.



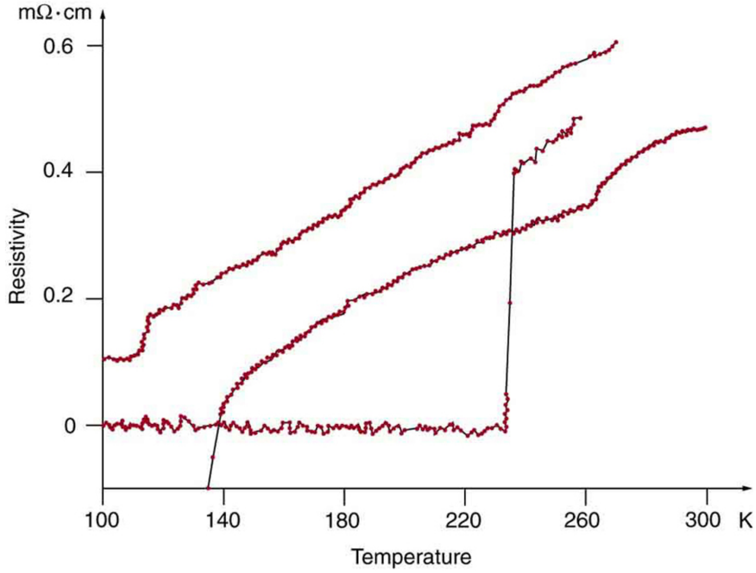
A graph of resistivity versus temperature for a superconductor shows a sharp transition to zero at the critical temperature T_c. High temperature superconductors have verifiable T_c s greater than 125 K, well above the easily achieved 77-K temperature of liquid nitrogen.

One characteristic of a superconductor is that it excludes magnetic flux and, thus, repels other magnets. The small magnet levitated above a high-temperature superconductor, which is cooled by liquid nitrogen, gives evidence that the material is superconducting. When the material warms and becomes conducting, magnetic flux can penetrate it, and the magnet will rest upon it. (credit: Saperaud)

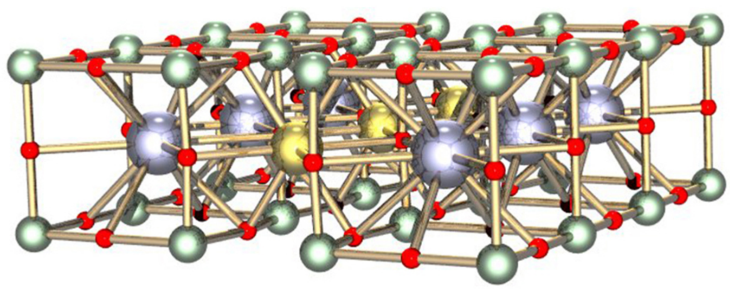
The search is on for even higher T_c superconductors, many of complex and exotic copper oxide ceramics, sometimes including strontium, mercury, or yttrium as well as barium, calcium, and other elements. Room temperature (about 293 K) would be ideal, but any temperature close to room temperature is relatively cheap to produce and maintain. There are persistent reports of T_c s over 200 K and some in the vicinity of 270 K. Unfortunately, these observations are not routinely reproducible, with

samples losing their superconducting nature once heated and recooled (cycled) a few times (see [link].) They are now called USOs or unidentified superconducting objects, out of frustration and the refusal of some samples to show high T_c even though produced in the same manner as others. Reproducibility is crucial to discovery, and researchers are justifiably reluctant to claim the breakthrough they all seek. Time will tell whether USOs are real or an experimental quirk.

The theory of ordinary superconductors is difficult, involving quantum effects for widely separated electrons traveling through a material. Electrons couple in a manner that allows them to get through the material without losing energy to it, making it a superconductor. High- T_c superconductors are more difficult to understand theoretically, but theorists seem to be closing in on a workable theory. The difficulty of understanding how electrons can sneak through materials without losing energy in collisions is even greater at higher temperatures, where vibrating atoms should get in the way. Discoverers of high T_c may feel something analogous to what a politician once said upon an unexpected election victory—“I wonder what we did right?”



(a)



(b)

(a) This graph, adapted from an article in *Physics Today*, shows the behavior of a single sample of a high-temperature superconductor in three different trials. In one case the sample exhibited a T_c of about 230 K, whereas in the others it did not become superconducting at all. The lack of reproducibility is typical of forefront experiments and prohibits definitive conclusions. (b) This colorful diagram shows the complex but systematic nature of the lattice structure of a high-temperature superconducting

ceramic. (credit: en:Cadmium, Wikimedia Commons)

Section Summary

- High-temperature superconductors are materials that become superconducting at temperatures well above a few kelvin.
- The critical temperature T_c is the temperature below which a material is superconducting.
- Some high-temperature superconductors have verified T_c s above 125 K, and there are reports of T_c s as high as 250 K.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is critical temperature T_c? Do all materials have a critical temperature? Explain why or why not.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how good thermal contact with liquid nitrogen can keep objects at a temperature of 77 K (liquid nitrogen's boiling point at atmospheric pressure).

Exercise:

Problem:

Not only is liquid nitrogen a cheaper coolant than liquid helium, its boiling point is higher (77 K vs. 4.2 K). How does higher temperature help lower the cost of cooling a material? Explain in terms of the rate of heat transfer being related to the temperature difference between the sample and its surroundings.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A section of superconducting wire carries a current of 100 A and requires 1.00 L of liquid nitrogen per hour to keep it below its critical temperature. For it to be economically advantageous to use a superconducting wire, the cost of cooling the wire must be less than the cost of energy lost to heat in the wire. Assume that the cost of liquid nitrogen is \$0.30 per liter, and that electric energy costs \$0.10 per kW·h. What is the resistance of a normal wire that costs as much in wasted electric energy as the cost of liquid nitrogen for the superconductor?

Solution:
Equation:

$$0.30\ \Omega$$

Glossary

Superconductors
: materials with resistivity of zero

critical temperature
: the temperature at which and below which a material becomes a superconductor

Some Questions We Know to Ask

- Identify sample questions to be asked on the largest scales.
- Identify sample questions to be asked on the intermediate scale.
- Identify sample questions to be asked on the smallest scales.

Throughout the text we have noted how essential it is to be curious and to ask questions in order to first understand what is known, and then to go a little farther. Some questions may go unanswered for centuries; others may not have answers, but some bear delicious fruit. Part of discovery is knowing which questions to ask. You have to know something before you can even phrase a decent question. As you may have noticed, the mere act of asking a question can give you the answer. The following questions are a sample of those physicists now know to ask and are representative of the forefronts of physics. Although these questions are important, they will be replaced by others if answers are found to them. The fun continues.

On the Largest Scale

1. *Is the universe open or closed*? Theorists would like it to be just barely closed and evidence is building toward that conclusion. Recent measurements in the expansion rate of the universe and in CMBR support a flat universe. There is a connection to small-scale physics in the type and number of particles that may contribute to closing the universe.
2. *What is dark matter*? It is definitely there, but we really do not know what it is. Conventional possibilities are being ruled out, but one of them still may explain it. The answer could reveal whole new realms of physics and the disturbing possibility that most of what is out there is unknown to us, a completely different form of matter.
3. *How do galaxies form*? They exist since very early in the evolution of the universe and it remains difficult to understand how they evolved so quickly. The recent finer measurements of fluctuations in the CMBR may yet allow us to explain galaxy formation.
4. *What is the nature of various-mass black holes*? Only recently have we become confident that many black hole candidates cannot be explained by other, less exotic possibilities. But we still do not know much about

how they form, what their role in the history of galactic evolution has been, and the nature of space in their vicinity. However, so many black holes are now known that correlations between black hole mass and galactic nuclei characteristics are being studied.

5. *What is the mechanism for the energy output of quasars*? These distant and extraordinarily energetic objects now seem to be early stages of galactic evolution with a supermassive black-hole-devouring material. Connections are now being made with galaxies having energetic cores, and there is evidence consistent with less consuming, supermassive black holes at the center of older galaxies. New instruments are allowing us to see deeper into our own galaxy for evidence of our own massive black hole.
6. *Where do the γ bursts come from*? We see bursts of γ rays coming from all directions in space, indicating the sources are very distant objects rather than something associated with our own galaxy. Some γ bursts finally are being correlated with known sources so that the possibility they may originate in binary neutron star interactions or black holes eating a companion neutron star can be explored.

On the Intermediate Scale

1. *How do phase transitions take place on the microscopic scale*? We know a lot about phase transitions, such as water freezing, but the details of how they occur molecule by molecule are not well understood. Similar questions about specific heat a century ago led to early quantum mechanics. It is also an example of a complex adaptive system that may yield insights into other self-organizing systems.
2. *Is there a way to deal with nonlinear phenomena that reveals underlying connections*? Nonlinear phenomena lack a direct or linear proportionality that makes analysis and understanding a little easier. There are implications for nonlinear optics and broader topics such as chaos.
3. *How do high- T_c superconductors become resistanceless at such high temperatures*? Understanding how they work may help make them more practical or may result in surprises as unexpected as the discovery of superconductivity itself.

4. *There are magnetic effects in materials we do not understand—how do they work*? Although beyond the scope of this text, there is a great deal to learn in condensed matter physics (the physics of solids and liquids). We may find surprises analogous to lasing, the quantum Hall effect, and the quantization of magnetic flux. Complexity may play a role here, too.

On the Smallest Scale

1. *Are quarks and leptons fundamental, or do they have a substructure*? The higher energy accelerators that are just completed or being constructed may supply some answers, but there will also be input from cosmology and other systematics.
2. *Why do leptons have integral charge while quarks have fractional charge*? If both are fundamental and analogous as thought, this question deserves an answer. It is obviously related to the previous question.
3. *Why are there three families of quarks and leptons*? First, does this imply some relationship? Second, why three and only three families?
4. *Are all forces truly equal (unified) under certain circumstances*? They don't have to be equal just because we want them to be. The answer may have to be indirectly obtained because of the extreme energy at which we think they are unified.
5. *Are there other fundamental forces*? There was a flurry of activity with claims of a fifth and even a sixth force a few years ago. Interest has subsided, since those forces have not been detected consistently. Moreover, the proposed forces have strengths similar to gravity, making them extraordinarily difficult to detect in the presence of stronger forces. But the question remains; and if there are no other forces, we need to ask why only four and why these four.
6. *Is the proton stable*? We have discussed this in some detail, but the question is related to fundamental aspects of the unification of forces. We may never know from experiment that the proton is stable, only that it is very long lived.
7. *Are there magnetic monopoles*? Many particle theories call for very massive individual north- and south-pole particles—magnetic

monopoles. If they exist, why are they so different in mass and elusiveness from electric charges, and if they do not exist, why not?
8. *Do neutrinos have mass*? Definitive evidence has emerged for neutrinos having mass. The implications are significant, as discussed in this chapter. There are effects on the closure of the universe and on the patterns in particle physics.
9. *What are the systematic characteristics of high-* Z *nuclei*? All elements with $Z=118$ or less (with the exception of 115 and 117) have now been discovered. It has long been conjectured that there may be an island of relative stability near $Z=114$, and the study of the most recently discovered nuclei will contribute to our understanding of nuclear forces.

These lists of questions are not meant to be complete or consistently important—you can no doubt add to it yourself. There are also important questions in topics not broached in this text, such as certain particle symmetries, that are of current interest to physicists. Hopefully, the point is clear that no matter how much we learn, there always seems to be more to know. Although we are fortunate to have the hard-won wisdom of those who preceded us, we can look forward to new enlightenment, undoubtedly sprinkled with surprise.

Section Summary

- On the largest scale, the questions which can be asked may be about dark matter, dark energy, black holes, quasars, and other aspects of the universe.
- On the intermediate scale, we can query about gravity, phase transitions, nonlinear phenomena, high- T_c superconductors, and magnetic effects on materials.
- On the smallest scale, questions may be about quarks and leptons, fundamental forces, stability of protons, and existence of monopoles.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

For experimental evidence, particularly of previously unobserved phenomena, to be taken seriously it must be reproducible or of sufficiently high quality that a single observation is meaningful. Supernova 1987A is not reproducible. How do we know observations of it were valid? The fifth force is not broadly accepted. Is this due to lack of reproducibility or poor-quality experiments (or both)? Discuss why forefront experiments are more subject to observational problems than those involving established phenomena.

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss whether you think there are limits to what humans can understand about the laws of physics. Support your arguments.

Atomic Masses

Atomic Number, *Z*	**Name**	**Atomic Mass Number, *A***	**Symbol**	**Atomic Mass (u)**	**Percent Abundance or Decay Mode**	**Half-life, $t_{1/2}$**
0	neutron	1	n	1.008 665	β^-	10.37 min
1	Hydrogen	1	$^1\mathrm{H}$	1.007 825	99.985%	
	Deuterium	2	$^2\mathrm{H}$ or D	2.014 102	0.015%	
	Tritium	3	$^3\mathrm{H}$ or T	3.016 050	β^-	12.33 y
2	Helium	3	$^3\mathrm{He}$	3.016 030	$1.38 \times 10^{-4}\%$	
		4	$^4\mathrm{He}$	4.002 603	$\approx 100\%$	
3	Lithium	6	$^6\mathrm{Li}$	6.015 121	7.5%	
		7	$^7\mathrm{Li}$	7.016 003	92.5%	
4	Beryllium	7	$^7\mathrm{Be}$	7.016 928	EC	53.29 d
		9	$^9\mathrm{Be}$	9.012 182	100%	
5	Boron	10	$^{10}\mathrm{B}$	10.012 937	19.9%	
		11	$^{11}\mathrm{B}$	11.009 305	80.1%	
6	Carbon	11	$^{11}\mathrm{C}$	11.011 432	EC, β^+	
		12	$^{12}\mathrm{C}$	12.000 000	98.90%	
		13	$^{13}\mathrm{C}$	13.003 355	1.10%	

Atomic Number, *Z*	**Name**	**Atomic Mass Number, *A***	**Symbol**	**Atomic Mass (u)**	**Percent Abundance or Decay Mode**	**Half-life, $t_{1/2}$**
		14	^{14}C	14.003 241	β^-	5730 y
7	Nitrogen	13	^{13}N	13.005 738	β^+	9.96 min
		14	^{14}N	14.003 074	99.63%	
		15	^{15}N	15.000 108	0.37%	
8	Oxygen	15	^{15}O	15.003 065	EC, β^+	122 s
		16	^{16}O	15.994 915	99.76%	
		18	^{18}O	17.999 160	0.200%	
9	Fluorine	18	^{18}F	18.000 937	EC, β^+	1.83 h
		19	^{19}F	18.998 403	100%	
10	Neon	20	^{20}Ne	19.992 435	90.51%	
		22	^{22}Ne	21.991 383	9.22%	
11	Sodium	22	^{22}Na	21.994 434	β^+	2.602 y
		23	^{23}Na	22.989 767	100%	
		24	^{24}Na	23.990 961	β^-	14.96 h
12	Magnesium	24	^{24}Mg	23.985 042	78.99%	
13	Aluminum	27	^{27}Al	26.981 539	100%	
14	Silicon	28	^{28}Si	27.976 927	92.23%	2.62h

Atomic Number, *Z*	**Name**	**Atomic Mass Number, *A***	**Symbol**	**Atomic Mass (u)**	**Percent Abundance or Decay Mode**	**Half-life, $t_{1/2}$**
		31	^{31}Si	30.975 362	β^-	
15	Phosphorus	31	^{31}P	30.973 762	100%	
		32	^{32}P	31.973 907	β^-	14.28 d
16	Sulfur	32	^{32}S	31.972 070	95.02%	
		35	^{35}S	34.969 031	β^-	87.4 d
17	Chlorine	35	^{35}Cl	34.968 852	75.77%	
		37	^{37}Cl	36.965 903	24.23%	
18	Argon	40	^{40}Ar	39.962 384	99.60%	
19	Potassium	39	^{39}K	38.963 707	93.26%	
		40	^{40}K	39.963 999	0.0117%, EC, β^-	$1.28 \times 10^9 \text{y}$
20	Calcium	40	^{40}Ca	39.962 591	96.94%	
21	Scandium	45	^{45}Sc	44.955 910	100%	
22	Titanium	48	^{48}Ti	47.947 947	73.8%	
23	Vanadium	51	^{51}V	50.943 962	99.75%	
24	Chromium	52	^{52}Cr	51.940 509	83.79%	
25	Manganese	55	^{55}Mn	54.938 047	100%	
26	Iron	56	^{56}Fe	55.934 939	91.72%	

Atomic Number, *Z*	**Name**	**Atomic Mass Number, *A***	**Symbol**	**Atomic Mass (u)**	**Percent Abundance or Decay Mode**	**Half-life, $t_{1/2}$**
27	Cobalt	59	^{59}Co	58.933 198	100%	
		60	^{60}Co	59.933 819	β^-	5.271 y
28	Nickel	58	^{58}Ni	57.935 346	68.27%	
		60	^{60}Ni	59.930 788	26.10%	
29	Copper	63	^{63}Cu	62.939 598	69.17%	
		65	^{65}Cu	64.927 793	30.83%	
30	Zinc	64	^{64}Zn	63.929 145	48.6%	
		66	^{66}Zn	65.926 034	27.9%	
31	Gallium	69	^{69}Ga	68.925 580	60.1%	
32	Germanium	72	^{72}Ge	71.922 079	27.4%	
		74	^{74}Ge	73.921 177	36.5%	
33	Arsenic	75	^{75}As	74.921 594	100%	
34	Selenium	80	^{80}Se	79.916 520	49.7%	
35	Bromine	79	^{79}Br	78.918 336	50.69%	
36	Krypton	84	^{84}Kr	83.911 507	57.0%	
37	Rubidium	85	^{85}Rb	84.911 794	72.17%	
38	Strontium	86	^{86}Sr	85.909 267	9.86%	

Atomic Number, Z	Name	Atomic Mass Number, A	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
		88	^{88}Sr	87.905 619	82.58%	
		90	^{90}Sr	89.907 738	β^-	28.8 y
39	Yttrium	89	^{89}Y	88.905 849	100%	
		90	^{90}Y	89.907 152	β^-	64.1 h
40	Zirconium	90	^{90}Zr	89.904 703	51.45%	
41	Niobium	93	^{93}Nb	92.906 377	100%	
42	Molybdenum	98	^{98}Mo	97.905 406	24.13%	
43	Technetium	98	^{98}Tc	97.907 215	β^-	4.2×10^6y
44	Ruthenium	102	^{102}Ru	101.904 348	31.6%	
45	Rhodium	103	^{103}Rh	102.905 500	100%	
46	Palladium	106	^{106}Pd	105.903 478	27.33%	
47	Silver	107	^{107}Ag	106.905 092	51.84%	
		109	^{109}Ag	108.904 757	48.16%	
48	Cadmium	114	^{114}Cd	113.903 357	28.73%	
49	Indium	115	^{115}In	114.903 880	95.7%, β^-	4.4×10^{14}y
50	Tin	120	^{120}Sn	119.902 200	32.59%	
51	Antimony	121	^{121}Sb	120.903 821	57.3%	

Atomic Number, *Z*	Name	Atomic Mass Number, *A*	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
52	Tellurium	130	^{130}Te	129.906 229	33.8%, β^-	2.5×10^{21}y
53	Iodine	127	^{127}I	126.904 473	100%	
		131	^{131}I	130.906 114	β^-	8.040 d
54	Xenon	132	^{132}Xe	131.904 144	26.9%	
		136	^{136}Xe	135.907 214	8.9%	
55	Cesium	133	^{133}Cs	132.905 429	100%	
		134	^{134}Cs	133.906 696	EC, β^-	2.06 y
56	Barium	137	^{137}Ba	136.905 812	11.23%	
		138	^{138}Ba	137.905 232	71.70%	
57	Lanthanum	139	^{139}La	138.906 346	99.91%	
58	Cerium	140	^{140}Ce	139.905 433	88.48%	
59	Praseodymium	141	^{141}Pr	140.907 647	100%	
60	Neodymium	142	^{142}Nd	141.907 719	27.13%	
61	Promethium	145	^{145}Pm	144.912 743	EC, α	17.7 y
62	Samarium	152	^{152}Sm	151.919 729	26.7%	
63	Europium	153	^{153}Eu	152.921 225	52.2%	
64	Gadolinium	158	^{158}Gd	157.924 099	24.84%	

Atomic Number, Z	Name	Atomic Mass Number, A	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
65	Terbium	159	^{159}Tb	158.925 342	100%	
66	Dysprosium	164	^{164}Dy	163.929 171	28.2%	
67	Holmium	165	^{165}Ho	164.930 319	100%	
68	Erbium	166	^{166}Er	165.930 290	33.6%	
69	Thulium	169	^{169}Tm	168.934 212	100%	
70	Ytterbium	174	^{174}Yb	173.938 859	31.8%	
71	Lutecium	175	^{175}Lu	174.940 770	97.41%	
72	Hafnium	180	^{180}Hf	179.946 545	35.10%	
73	Tantalum	181	^{181}Ta	180.947 992	99.98%	
74	Tungsten	184	^{184}W	183.950 928	30.67%	
75	Rhenium	187	^{187}Re	186.955 744	62.6%, β^-	4.6×10^{10}y
76	Osmium	191	^{191}Os	190.960 920	β^-	15.4 d
		192	^{192}Os	191.961 467	41.0%	
77	Iridium	191	^{191}Ir	190.960 584	37.3%	
		193	^{193}Ir	192.962 917	62.7%	
78	Platinum	195	^{195}Pt	194.964 766	33.8%	
79	Gold	197	^{197}Au	196.966 543	100%	

Atomic Number, Z	Name	Atomic Mass Number, A	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
		198	^{198}Au	197.968 217	β^-	2.696 d
80	Mercury	199	^{199}Hg	198.968 253	16.87%	
		202	^{202}Hg	201.970 617	29.86%	
81	Thallium	205	^{205}Tl	204.974 401	70.48%	
82	Lead	206	^{206}Pb	205.974 440	24.1%	
		207	^{207}Pb	206.975 872	22.1%	
		208	^{208}Pb	207.976 627	52.4%	
		210	^{210}Pb	209.984 163	α, β^-	22.3 y
		211	^{211}Pb	210.988 735	β^-	36.1 min
		212	^{212}Pb	211.991 871	β^-	10.64 h
83	Bismuth	209	^{209}Bi	208.980 374	100%	
		211	^{211}Bi	210.987 255	α, β^-	2.14 min
84	Polonium	210	^{210}Po	209.982 848	α	138.38 d
85	Astatine	218	^{218}At	218.008 684	α, β^-	1.6 s
86	Radon	222	^{222}Rn	222.017 570	α	3.82 d
87	Francium	223	^{223}Fr	223.019 733	α, β^-	21.8 min
88	Radium	226	^{226}Ra	226.025 402	α	1.60×10^3y

Atomic Number, *Z*	Name	Atomic Mass Number, *A*	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
89	Actinium	227	^{227}Ac	227.027 750	α, β^-	21.8 y
90	Thorium	228	^{228}Th	228.028 715	α	1.91 y
		232	^{232}Th	232.038 054	100%, α	$1.41 \times 10^{10}\text{y}$
91	Protactinium	231	^{231}Pa	231.035 880	α	$3.28 \times 10^{4}\text{y}$
92	Uranium	233	^{233}U	233.039 628	α	$1.59 \times 10^{3}\text{y}$
		235	^{235}U	235.043 924	0.720%, α	$7.04 \times 10^{8}\text{y}$
		236	^{236}U	236.045 562	α	$2.34 \times 10^{7}\text{y}$
		238	^{238}U	238.050 784	99.2745%, α	$4.47 \times 10^{9}\text{y}$
		239	^{239}U	239.054 289	β^-	23.5 min
93	Neptunium	239	^{239}Np	239.052 933	β^-	2.355 d
94	Plutonium	239	^{239}Pu	239.052 157	α	$2.41 \times 10^{4}\text{y}$
95	Americium	243	^{243}Am	243.061 375	α, fission	$7.37 \times 10^{3}\text{y}$
96	Curium	245	^{245}Cm	245.065 483	α	$8.50 \times 10^{3}\text{y}$
97	Berkelium	247	^{247}Bk	247.070 300	α	$1.38 \times 10^{3}\text{y}$
98	Californium	249	^{249}Cf	249.074 844	α	351 y
99	Einsteinium	254	^{254}Es	254.088 019	α, β^-	276 d
100	Fermium	253	^{253}Fm	253.085 173	EC, α	3.00 d

Atomic Number, *Z*	**Name**	**Atomic Mass Number, *A***	**Symbol**	**Atomic Mass (u)**	**Percent Abundance or Decay Mode**	**Half-life, $t_{1/2}$**
101	Mendelevium	255	^{255}Md	255.091 081	EC, α	27 min
102	Nobelium	255	^{255}No	255.093 260	EC, α	3.1 min
103	Lawrencium	257	^{257}Lr	257.099 480	EC, α	0.646 s
104	Rutherfordium	261	^{261}Rf	261.108 690	α	1.08 min
105	Dubnium	262	^{262}Db	262.113 760	α, fission	34 s
106	Seaborgium	263	^{263}Sg	263.11 86	α, fission	0.8 s
107	Bohrium	262	^{262}Bh	262.123 1	α	0.102 s
108	Hassium	264	^{264}Hs	264.128 5	α	0.08 ms
109	Meitnerium	266	^{266}Mt	266.137 8	α	3.4 ms

Atomic Masses

Selected Radioactive Isotopes

Decay modes are α, β^-, β^+, electron capture (EC) and isomeric transition (IT). EC results in the same daughter nucleus as would β^+ decay. IT is a transition from a metastable excited state. Energies for $\beta^\pm$ decays are the maxima; average energies are roughly one-half the maxima.

Isotope	$t_{1/2}$	**DecayMode(s)**	**Energy(MeV)**	**Percent**		**γ-Ray Energy(MeV)**
^{3}H	12.33 y	β^-	0.0186	100%		
^{14}C	5730 y	β^-	0.156	100%		
^{13}N	9.96 min	β^+	1.20	100%		
^{22}Na	2.602 y	β^+	0.55	90%	γ	1.27
^{32}P	14.28 d	β^-	1.71	100%		
^{35}S	87.4 d	β^-	0.167	100%		
^{36}Cl	3.00×10^5y	β^-	0.710	100%		
^{40}K	1.28×10^9y	β^-	1.31	89%		
^{43}K	22.3 h	β^-	0.827	87%	γs	0.373
						0.618
^{45}Ca	165 d	β^-	0.257	100%		
^{51}Cr	27.70 d	EC			γ	0.320
^{52}Mn	5.59d	β^+	3.69	28%	γs	1.33
						1.43
^{52}Fe	8.27 h	β^+	1.80	43%		0.169
						0.378
^{59}Fe	44.6 d	β^-s	0.273	45%	γs	1.10
			0.466	55%		1.29
^{60}Co	5.271 y	β^-	0.318	100%	γs	1.17
						1.33
^{65}Zn	244.1 d	EC			γ	1.12

Isotope	$t_{1/2}$	DecayMode(s)	Energy(MeV)	Percent		γ-Ray Energy(MeV)
^{67}Ga	78.3 h	EC			γs	0.0933
						0.185
						0.300
						others
^{75}Se	118.5 d	EC			γs	0.121
						0.136
						0.265
						0.280
						others
^{86}Rb	18.8 d	β^-s	0.69	9%	γ	1.08
			1.77	91%		
^{85}Sr	64.8 d	EC			γ	0.514
^{90}Sr	28.8 y	β^-	0.546	100%		
^{90}Y	64.1 h	β^-	2.28	100%		
^{99m}Tc	6.02 h	IT			γ	0.142
^{113m}In	99.5 min	IT			γ	0.392
^{123}I	13.0 h	EC			γ	0.159
^{131}I	8.040 d	β^-s	0.248	7%	γs	0.364
			0.607	93%		others
			others			
^{129}Cs	32.3 h	EC			γs	0.0400
						0.372
						0.411
						others
^{137}Cs	30.17 y	β^-s	0.511	95%	γ	0.662
			1.17	5%		

Isotope	$t_{1/2}$	DecayMode(s)	Energy(MeV)	Percent		γ-Ray Energy(MeV)
^{140}Ba	12.79 d	β^-	1.035	$\approx$100%	γs	0.030
						0.044
						0.537
						others
^{198}Au	2.696 d	β^-	1.161	$\approx$100%	γ	0.412
^{197}Hg	64.1 h	EC			γ	0.0733
^{210}Po	138.38 d	α	5.41	100%		
^{226}Ra	1.60×10^3y	αs	4.68	5%	γ	0.186
			4.87	95%		
^{235}U	7.038×10^8y	α	4.68	$\approx$100%	γs	numerous
^{238}U	4.468×10^9y	αs	4.22	23%	γ	0.050
			4.27	77%		
^{237}Np	2.14×10^6y	αs	numerous		γs	numerous
			4.96 (max.)			
^{239}Pu	2.41×10^4y	αs	5.19	11%	γs	7.5×10^{-5}
			5.23	15%		0.013
			5.24	73%		0.052
						others
^{243}Am	7.37×10^3y	αs	Max. 5.44		γs	0.075
			5.37	88%		others
			5.32	11%		
			others			

Selected Radioactive Isotopes

Useful Information

This appendix is broken into several tables.

- [link], Important Constants
- [link], Submicroscopic Masses
- [link], Solar System Data
- [link], Metric Prefixes for Powers of Ten and Their Symbols
- [link], The Greek Alphabet
- [link], SI units
- [link], Selected British Units
- [link], Other Units
- [link], Useful Formulae

Symbol	Meaning	Best Value	Approximate Value
c	Speed of light in vacuum	$2.99792458 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$	$3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$
G	Gravitational constant	$6.67408(31) \times 10^{-11} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$	$6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$
N_A	Avogadro's number	$6.02214129(27) \times 10^{23}$	6.02×10^{23}
k	Boltzmann's constant	$1.3806488(13) \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$	$1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$
R	Gas constant	$8.3144621(75) \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K}$	$8.31 \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K} = 1.99 \text{ cal/mol} \cdot \text{K} =$
σ	Stefan-Boltzmann constant	$5.670373(21) \times 10^{-8} \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}$	$5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}$
k	Coulomb force constant	$8.987551788... \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$	$8.99 \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$
q_e	Charge on electron	$-1.602176565(35) \times 10^{-19} \text{ C}$	$-1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C}$
ε_0	Permittivity of free space	$8.854187817... \times 10^{-12} \text{ C}^2/\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2$	$8.85 \times 10^{-12} \text{ C}^2/\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2$
μ_0	Permeability of free space	$4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ T} \cdot \text{m/A}$	$1.26 \times 10^{-6} \text{ T} \cdot \text{m/A}$
h	Planck's constant	$6.62606957(29) \times 10^{-34} \text{ J} \cdot \text{s}$	$6.63 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J} \cdot \text{s}$

Important Constants[footnote]

Stated values are according to the National Institute of Standards and Technology Reference on Constants, Units, an
www.physics.nist.gov/cuu (accessed May 18, 2012). Values in parentheses are the uncertainties in the last digits. Nu
are exact as defined.

Symbol	Meaning	Best Value	Approximate Value
m_e	Electron mass	$9.10938291(40) \times 10^{-31}\mathrm{kg}$	$9.11 \times 10^{-31}\mathrm{kg}$
m_p	Proton mass	$1.672621777(74) \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$	$1.6726 \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$
m_n	Neutron mass	$1.674927351(74) \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$	$1.6749 \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$
u	Atomic mass unit	$1.660538921(73) \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$	$1.6605 \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$

Submicroscopic Masses[footnote]
Stated values are according to the National Institute of Standards and Technology Reference on Constants, Units, and Uncertainty, www.physics.nist.gov/cuu (accessed May 18, 2012). Values in parentheses are the uncertainties in the last digits. Numbers without uncertainties are exact as defined.

Sun	mass	$1.99 \times 10^{30}\mathrm{kg}$
	average radius	$6.96 \times 10^{8}\mathrm{m}$
	Earth-sun distance (average)	$1.496 \times 10^{11}\mathrm{m}$
Earth	mass	$5.9736 \times 10^{24}\mathrm{kg}$
	average radius	$6.376 \times 10^{6}\mathrm{m}$
	orbital period	$3.16 \times 10^{7}\mathrm{s}$

Moon	mass	$7.35 \times 10^{22} \text{kg}$
	average radius	$1.74 \times 10^{6} \text{m}$
	orbital period (average)	$2.36 \times 10^{6} \text{s}$
	Earth-moon distance (average)	$3.84 \times 10^{8} \text{m}$

Solar System Data

Prefix	Symbol	Value	Prefix	Symbol	Value
tera	T	10^{12}	deci	d	10^{-1}
giga	G	10^{9}	centi	c	10^{-2}
mega	M	10^{6}	milli	m	10^{-3}
kilo	k	10^{3}	micro	μ	10^{-6}
hecto	h	10^{2}	nano	n	10^{-9}
deka	da	10^{1}	pico	p	10^{-12}
—	—	$10^{0}(=1)$	femto	f	10^{-15}

Metric Prefixes for Powers of Ten and Their Symbols

Alpha	A	α	Eta	H	η	Nu	N	ν	Tau	T	τ
Beta	B	β	Theta	Θ	θ	Xi	Ξ	ξ	Upsilon	Υ	υ
Gamma	Γ	γ	Iota	I	ι	Omicron	O	o	Phi	Φ	ϕ
Delta	Δ	δ	Kappa	K	κ	Pi	Π	π	Chi	X	χ

Epsilon	E	ε	Lambda	Λ	λ	Rho	P	ρ	Psi	Ψ	ψ
Zeta	Z	ζ	Mu	M	μ	Sigma	Σ	σ	Omega	Ω	ω

The Greek Alphabet

	Entity	**Abbreviation**	**Name**
Fundamental units	Length	m	meter
	Mass	kg	kilogram
	Time	s	second
	Current	A	ampere
Supplementary unit	Angle	rad	radian
Derived units	Force	$\mathrm{N} = \mathrm{kg} \cdot \mathrm{m}/\mathrm{s}^2$	newton
	Energy	$\mathrm{J} = \mathrm{kg} \cdot \mathrm{m}^2/\mathrm{s}^2$	joule
	Power	$\mathrm{W} = \mathrm{J}/\mathrm{s}$	watt
	Pressure	$\mathrm{Pa} = \mathrm{N}/\mathrm{m}^2$	pascal
	Frequency	$\mathrm{Hz} = 1/\mathrm{s}$	hertz
	Electronic potential	$\mathrm{V} = \mathrm{J}/\mathrm{C}$	volt
	Capacitance	$\mathrm{F} = \mathrm{C}/\mathrm{V}$	farad
	Charge	$\mathrm{C} = \mathrm{s} \cdot \mathrm{A}$	coulomb
	Resistance	$\Omega = \mathrm{V}/\mathrm{A}$	ohm

	Entity	Abbreviation	Name
	Magnetic field	$\mathrm{T} = \mathrm{N}/(\mathrm{A} \cdot \mathrm{m})$	tesla
	Nuclear decay rate	$\mathrm{Bq} = 1/\mathrm{s}$	becquerel

SI Units

Length	$1 \text{ inch (in.)} = 2.54 \text{ cm (exactly)}$
	$1 \text{ foot (ft)} = 0.3048 \text{ m}$
	$1 \text{ mile (mi)} = 1.609 \text{ km}$
Force	$1 \text{ pound (lb)} = 4.448 \text{ N}$
Energy	$1 \text{ British thermal unit (Btu)} = 1.055 \times 10^3 \text{ J}$
Power	$1 \text{ horsepower (hp)} = 746 \text{ W}$
Pressure	$1 \text{ lb/in}^2 = 6.895 \times 10^3 \text{ Pa}$

Selected British Units

Length	$1 \text{ light year (ly)} = 9.46 \times 10^{15} \text{ m}$
	$1 \text{ astronomical unit (au)} = 1.50 \times 10^{11} \text{ m}$
	$1 \text{ nautical mile} = 1.852 \text{ km}$
	$1 \text{ angstrom(Å)} = 10^{-10} \text{ m}$
Area	$1 \text{ acre (ac)} = 4.05 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^2$
	$1 \text{ square foot (ft}^2) = 9.29 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}^2$
	$1 \text{ barn } (b) = 10^{-28} \text{ m}^2$
Volume	$1 \text{ liter } (L) = 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3$

	1 U.S. gallon (gal) $= 3.785 \times 10^{-3}\,\mathrm{m}^3$
Mass	1 solar mass $= 1.99 \times 10^{30}\,\mathrm{kg}$
	1 metric ton $= 10^3\,\mathrm{kg}$
	1 atomic mass unit $(u) = 1.6605 \times 10^{-27}\,\mathrm{kg}$
Time	1 year $(y) = 3.16 \times 10^7\,\mathrm{s}$
	1 day $(d) = 86{,}400\,\mathrm{s}$
Speed	1 mile per hour (mph) $= 1.609\,\mathrm{km/h}$
	1 nautical mile per hour (naut) $= 1.852\,\mathrm{km/h}$
Angle	1 degree $(^\circ) = 1.745 \times 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{rad}$
	1 minute of arc $(') = 1/60$ degree
	1 second of arc $('') = 1/60$ minute of arc
	1 grad $= 1.571 \times 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{rad}$
Energy	1 kiloton TNT (kT) $= 4.2 \times 10^{12}\,\mathrm{J}$
	1 kilowatt hour $(\mathrm{kW} \cdot h) = 3.60 \times 10^6\,\mathrm{J}$
	1 food calorie (kcal) $= 4186\,\mathrm{J}$
	1 calorie (cal) $= 4.186\,\mathrm{J}$
	1 electron volt (eV) $= 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\,\mathrm{J}$
Pressure	1 atmosphere (atm) $= 1.013 \times 10^5\,\mathrm{Pa}$
	1 millimeter of mercury (mm Hg) $= 133.3\,\mathrm{Pa}$
	1 torricelli (torr) $= 1\,\mathrm{mm\,Hg} = 133.3\,\mathrm{Pa}$
Nuclear decay rate	1 curie (Ci) $= 3.70 \times 10^{10}\,\mathrm{Bq}$

Other Units

Circumference of a circle with radius r or diameter d	$C = 2\pi r = \pi d$
Area of a circle with radius r or diameter d	$A = \pi r^2 = \pi d^2/4$
Area of a sphere with radius r	$A = 4\pi r^2$

Volume of a sphere with radius r	$V = (4/3)\ \pi r^3$

Useful Formulae

Glossary of Key Symbols and Notation

In this glossary, key symbols and notation are briefly defined.

Symbol	**Definition**
any symbol	average (indicated by a bar over a symbol—e.g., v is average velocity)
$^\circ\text{C}$	Celsius degree
$^\circ\text{F}$	Fahrenheit degree
$//$	parallel
$\perp$	perpendicular
$\propto$	proportional to
$\pm$	plus or minus

Symbol	Definition
0	zero as a subscript denotes an initial value
α	alpha rays
α	angular acceleration
α	temperature coefficient(s) of resistivity
β	beta rays
β	sound level
β	volume coefficient of expansion
β^-	electron emitted in nuclear beta decay
β^+	positron decay
γ	gamma rays

Symbol	Definition
γ	surface tension
$\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$	a constant used in relativity
Δ	change in whatever quantity follows
δ	uncertainty in whatever quantity follows
ΔE	change in energy between the initial and final orbits of an electron in an atom
ΔE	uncertainty in energy
Δm	difference in mass between initial and final products
ΔN	number of decays that occur
Δp	change in momentum

Symbol	Definition
Δp	uncertainty in momentum
$\Delta \mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{g}}$	change in gravitational potential energy
$\Delta \theta$	rotation angle
Δs	distance traveled along a circular path
Δt	uncertainty in time
Δt_0	proper time as measured by an observer at rest relative to the process
ΔV	potential difference
Δx	uncertainty in position
ε_0	permittivity of free space
η	viscosity

Symbol	Definition
θ	angle between the force vector and the displacement vector
θ	angle between two lines
θ	contact angle
θ	direction of the resultant
θ_b	Brewster's angle
θ_c	critical angle
κ	dielectric constant
λ	decay constant of a nuclide
λ	wavelength
λ_n	wavelength in a medium

Symbol	Definition
μ_0	permeability of free space
μ_k	coefficient of kinetic friction
μ_s	coefficient of static friction
v_e	electron neutrino
π^+	positive pion
π^-	negative pion
π^0	neutral pion
ρ	density
ρ_c	critical density, the density needed to just halt universal expansion
ρ_fl	fluid density

Symbol	Definition
ρ_{obj}	average density of an object
ρ/ρ_{w}	specific gravity
τ	characteristic time constant for a resistance and inductance (RL) or resistance and capacitance (RC) circuit
τ	characteristic time for a resistor and capacitor (RC) circuit
τ	torque
Υ	upsilon meson
Φ	magnetic flux
ϕ	phase angle
Ω	ohm (unit)
ω	angular velocity

Symbol	Definition
A	ampere (current unit)
A	area
A	cross-sectional area
A	total number of nucleons
a	acceleration
a_{B}	Bohr radius
a_{c}	centripetal acceleration
a_{t}	tangential acceleration
AC	alternating current
AM	amplitude modulation

Symbol	Definition
atm	atmosphere
B	baryon number
B	blue quark color
B	antiblue (yellow) antiquark color
b	quark flavor bottom or beauty
B	bulk modulus
B	magnetic field strength
$\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{int}}$	electron’s intrinsic magnetic field
$\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{orb}}$	orbital magnetic field
BE	binding energy of a nucleus—it is the energy required to completely disassemble it into separate protons and neutrons

Symbol	Definition
BE/A	binding energy per nucleon
Bq	becquerel—one decay per second
C	capacitance (amount of charge stored per volt)
C	coulomb (a fundamental SI unit of charge)
C_{p}	total capacitance in parallel
C_{s}	total capacitance in series
CG	center of gravity
CM	center of mass
c	quark flavor charm
c	specific heat

Symbol	Definition
c	speed of light
Cal	kilocalorie
cal	calorie
COP_{hp}	heat pump’s coefficient of performance
COP_{ref}	coefficient of performance for refrigerators and air conditioners
$\cos \theta$	cosine
$\cot \theta$	cotangent
$\csc \theta$	cosecant
D	diffusion constant
d	displacement

Symbol	Definition
d	quark flavor down
dB	decibel
d_{i}	distance of an image from the center of a lens
d_{o}	distance of an object from the center of a lens
DC	direct current
E	electric field strength
ε	emf (voltage) or Hall electromotive force
emf	electromotive force
E	energy of a single photon
E	nuclear reaction energy

Symbol	Definition
E	relativistic total energy
E	total energy
E_0	ground state energy for hydrogen
E_0	rest energy
EC	electron capture
E_{cap}	energy stored in a capacitor
Eff	efficiency—the useful work output divided by the energy input
$\mathrm{Eff}_{\mathrm{C}}$	Carnot efficiency
E_{in}	energy consumed (food digested in humans)
E_{ind}	energy stored in an inductor

Symbol	Definition
E_{out}	energy output
e	emissivity of an object
e^+	antielectron or positron
eV	electron volt
F	farad (unit of capacitance, a coulomb per volt)
F	focal point of a lens
$\mathbf{F}$	force
F	magnitude of a force
F	restoring force
F_{B}	buoyant force

Symbol	Definition
F_{c}	centripetal force
F_{i}	force input
$\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{net}}$	net force
F_{o}	force output
FM	frequency modulation
f	focal length
f	frequency
f_0	resonant frequency of a resistance, inductance, and capacitance (RLC) series circuit
f_0	threshold frequency for a particular material (photoelectric effect)

Symbol	Definition
f_1	fundamental
f_2	first overtone
f_3	second overtone
f_B	beat frequency
f_k	magnitude of kinetic friction
f_s	magnitude of static friction
G	gravitational constant
G	green quark color
G	antigreen (magenta) antiquark color

Symbol	Definition
g	acceleration due to gravity
g	gluons (carrier particles for strong nuclear force)
h	change in vertical position
h	height above some reference point
h	maximum height of a projectile
h	Planck's constant
hf	photon energy
h_{i}	height of the image
h_{o}	height of the object
I	electric current

Symbol	Definition
I	intensity
I	intensity of a transmitted wave
I	moment of inertia (also called rotational inertia)
I_0	intensity of a polarized wave before passing through a filter
I_{ave}	average intensity for a continuous sinusoidal electromagnetic wave
I_{rms}	average current
J	joule
J/Ψ	Joules/psi meson
K	kelvin
k	Boltzmann constant

Symbol	Definition
k	force constant of a spring
K_α	x rays created when an electron falls into an $n = 1$ shell vacancy from the $n = 3$ shell
K_β	x rays created when an electron falls into an $n = 2$ shell vacancy from the $n = 3$ shell
kcal	kilocalorie
KE	translational kinetic energy
$\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE}$	mechanical energy
KE_e	kinetic energy of an ejected electron
$\mathrm{KE}_{\mathrm{rel}}$	relativistic kinetic energy
$\mathrm{KE}_{\mathrm{rot}}$	rotational kinetic energy
KE	thermal energy

Symbol	Definition
kg	kilogram (a fundamental SI unit of mass)
L	angular momentum
L	liter
L	magnitude of angular momentum
L	self-inductance
ℓ	angular momentum quantum number
L_α	x rays created when an electron falls into an $n = 2$ shell from the $n = 3$ shell
L_e	electron total family number
L_μ	muon family total number
L_τ	tau family total number

Symbol	Definition
L_{f}	heat of fusion
L_{f} and L_{v}	latent heat coefficients
$\mathrm{L_{orb}}$	orbital angular momentum
L_{s}	heat of sublimation
L_{v}	heat of vaporization
L_z	*z* - component of the angular momentum
M	angular magnification
M	mutual inductance
m	indicates metastable state
m	magnification

Symbol	Definition
m	mass
m	mass of an object as measured by a person at rest relative to the object
m	meter (a fundamental SI unit of length)
m	order of interference
m	overall magnification (product of the individual magnifications)
$m\left({}^{A}\mathrm{X}\right)$	atomic mass of a nuclide
MA	mechanical advantage
m_{e}	magnification of the eyepiece
m_e	mass of the electron
m_{ℓ}	angular momentum projection quantum number

Symbol	Definition
m_n	mass of a neutron
m_o	magnification of the objective lens
mol	mole
m_p	mass of a proton
m_s	spin projection quantum number
N	magnitude of the normal force
N	newton
$\mathbf{N}$	normal force
N	number of neutrons
n	index of refraction

Symbol	Definition
n	number of free charges per unit volume
N_{A}	Avogadro's number
N_{r}	Reynolds number
$\mathrm{N \cdot m}$	newton-meter (work-energy unit)
$\mathrm{N \cdot m}$	newtons times meters (SI unit of torque)
OE	other energy
P	power
P	power of a lens
P	pressure
$\mathbf{p}$	momentum

Symbol	**Definition**
p	momentum magnitude
p	relativistic momentum
$\mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}}$	total momentum
$\mathbf{p}_{\text{tot}}^{'}$	total momentum some time later
P_{abs}	absolute pressure
P_{atm}	atmospheric pressure
P_{atm}	standard atmospheric pressure
PE	potential energy
PE_{el}	elastic potential energy
PE_{elec}	electric potential energy

Symbol	Definition
$\mathrm{PE_s}$	potential energy of a spring
P_{g}	gauge pressure
P_{in}	power consumption or input
P_{out}	useful power output going into useful work or a desired, form of energy
Q	latent heat
Q	net heat transferred into a system
Q	flow rate—volume per unit time flowing past a point
$+Q$	positive charge
$-Q$	negative charge

Symbol	Definition
q	electron charge
q_p	charge of a proton
q	test charge
QF	quality factor
R	activity, the rate of decay
R	radius of curvature of a spherical mirror
R	red quark color
R	antired (cyan) quark color
R	resistance
R	resultant or total displacement

Symbol	Definition
R	Rydberg constant
R	universal gas constant
r	distance from pivot point to the point where a force is applied
r	internal resistance
$r_{\perp}$	perpendicular lever arm
r	radius of a nucleus
r	radius of curvature
r	resistivity
r or rad	radiation dose unit
rem	roentgen equivalent man

Symbol	Definition
rad	radian
RBE	relative biological effectiveness
RC	resistor and capacitor circuit
rms	root mean square
r_n	radius of the *n*th H-atom orbit
R_{p}	total resistance of a parallel connection
R_{s}	total resistance of a series connection
R_{s}	Schwarzschild radius
S	entropy
$\mathbf{S}$	intrinsic spin (intrinsic angular momentum)

Symbol	Definition
S	magnitude of the intrinsic (internal) spin angular momentum
S	shear modulus
S	strangeness quantum number
s	quark flavor strange
s	second (fundamental SI unit of time)
s	spin quantum number
$\mathbf{s}$	total displacement
$\sec\theta$	secant
$\sin\theta$	sine
s_z	z-component of spin angular momentum

Symbol	Definition
T	period—time to complete one oscillation
T	temperature
T_{c}	critical temperature—temperature below which a material becomes a superconductor
T	tension
T	tesla (magnetic field strength *B*)
t	quark flavor top or truth
t	time
$t_{1/2}$	half-life—the time in which half of the original nuclei decay
$\tan\theta$	tangent
U	internal energy

Symbol	Definition
u	quark flavor up
u	unified atomic mass unit
$\mathbf{u}$	velocity of an object relative to an observer
$\mathbf{u}'$	velocity relative to another observer
V	electric potential
V	terminal voltage
V	volt (unit)
V	volume
$\mathbf{v}$	relative velocity between two observers
v	speed of light in a material

Symbol	Definition
$\mathbf{v}$	velocity
$\mathbf{v}$	average fluid velocity
$V_{\mathrm{B}} - V_{\mathrm{A}}$	change in potential
$\mathbf{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$	drift velocity
V_{p}	transformer input voltage
V_{rms}	rms voltage
V_{s}	transformer output voltage
$\mathbf{v}_{\mathrm{tot}}$	total velocity
v_{w}	propagation speed of sound or other wave
$\mathbf{v}_{\mathrm{w}}$	wave velocity

Symbol	Definition
W	work
W	net work done by a system
W	watt
w	weight
w_{fl}	weight of the fluid displaced by an object
W_{c}	total work done by all conservative forces
W_{nc}	total work done by all nonconservative forces
W_{out}	useful work output
X	amplitude
X	symbol for an element

Symbol	Definition
${}^{Z}_{A}X_{N}$	notation for a particular nuclide
x	deformation or displacement from equilibrium
x	displacement of a spring from its undeformed position
x	horizontal axis
X_{C}	capacitive reactance
X_{L}	inductive reactance
x_{rms}	root mean square diffusion distance
y	vertical axis
Y	elastic modulus or Young's modulus
Z	atomic number (number of protons in a nucleus)

Symbol	Definition
Z	impedance